GLOBAL EDITION

University Physics

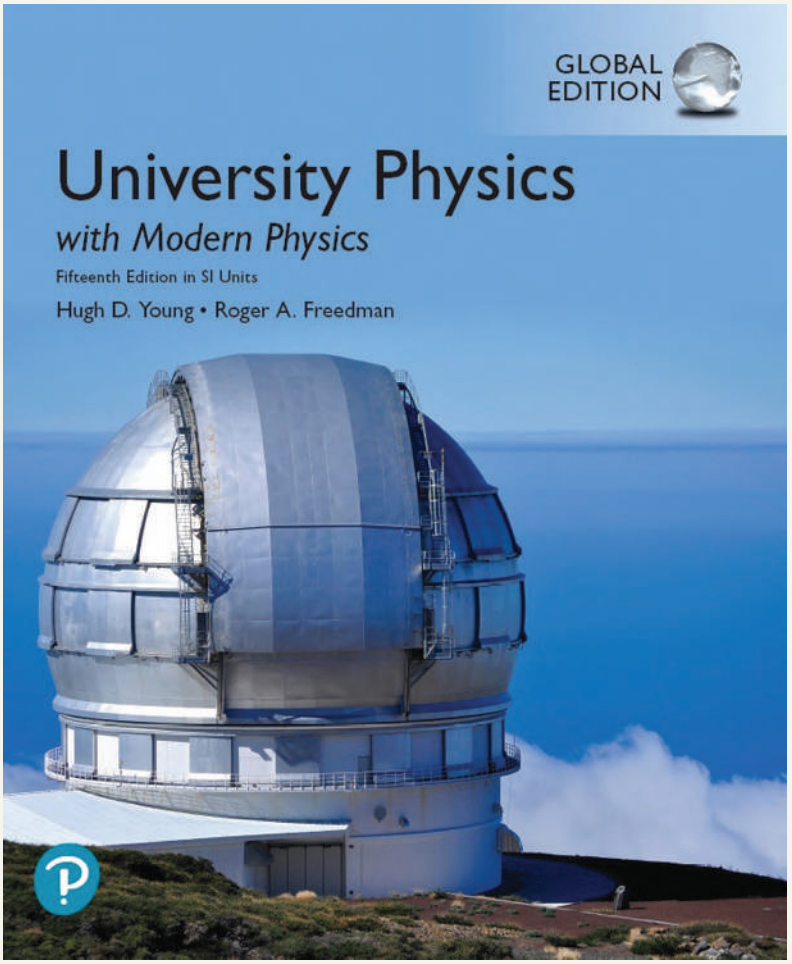
with Modern Physics

Fifteenth Edition in SI Units

Hugh D. Young • Roger A. Freedman

Practice makes perfect: Guided practice helps students develop into expert problem solvers

The new 15th Edition of *University Physics with Modern Physics,* in SI units, draws on data insights from hundreds of faculty and thousands of student users to address one of the biggest challenges for students in introductory physics courses: seeing the connections between worked examples in their textbook and related homework or exam problems. This edition offers multiple resources to address students' tendency to focus on the objects, situations, numbers, and questions posed in a problem, rather than recognizing the underlying principle or the problem's type. Mastering™ Physics gives students instructional support and just-in-time remediation as they work through problems.



Pearson

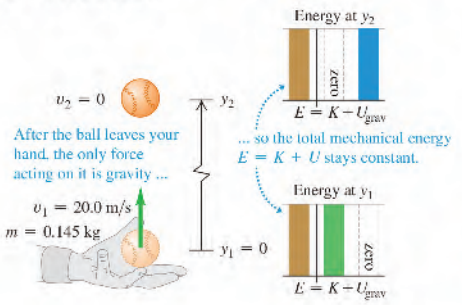
Guided practice features to help…

EXAMPLE 7.1 Height of a baseball from energy conservation WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

You throw a 0.145 kg baseball straight up, giving it an initial velocity of magnitude 20.0 m/s. Find how high it goes, ignoring air resistance.

IDENTIFY and SET UP After the ball leaves your hand, only gravity does work on it. Hence total mechanical energy is conserved, and we can use Eq. (7.4). We take point 1 to be where the ball leaves your hand and point 2 to be where it reaches its maximum height. As in Fig. 7.2, we take the positive y-direction to be upward. The ball's speed at point 1 is $v_1 = 20.0$ m/s; at its maximum height it is instantaneously at rest, so $v_2 = 0$. We take the origin at point 1, so $y_1 = 0$ (**Fig. 7.4**). Our target variable, the distance the ball moves vertically between the two points, is the displacement $y_2 - y_1 = y_2 - 0 = y_2$.

Figure 7.4 After a baseball leaves your hand, total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is conserved.



EXECUTE We have $y_1 = 0$, $U_{grav,1} = mgy_1 = 0$, and $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2 = 0$. Then Eq. (7.4), $K_1 + U_{grav,1} = K_2 + U_{grav,2}$, becomes

$$K_1 = U_{grav,2}$$

As the energy bar graphs in Fig. 7.4 show, this equation says that the kinetic energy of the ball at point 1 is completely converted to gravitational potential energy at point 2. We substitute $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2$ and $U_{grav,2} = mgy_2$ and solve for y_2:

$$\frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = mgy_2$$

$$y_2 = \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{(20.0\ \text{m/s})^2}{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)} = 20.4\ \text{m}$$

EVALUATE As a check, use the given value of v_1 and our result for y_2 to calculate the kinetic energy at point 1 and the gravitational potential energy at point 2. You should find that these are equal: $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = 29.0$ J and $U_{grav,2} = mgy_2 = 29.0$ J. Note that we could have found the result $y_2 = v_1^2/2g$ by using Eq. (2.13) in the form $v_{2y}^2 = v_{1y}^2 - 2g(y_2 - y_1)$.

What if we put the origin somewhere else—for example, 5.0 m below point 1, so that $y_1 = 5.0$ m? Then the total mechanical energy at point 1 is part kinetic and part potential; at point 2 it's still purely potential because $v_2 = 0$. You'll find that this choice of origin yields $y_2 = 25.4$ m, but again $y_2 - y_1 = 20.4$ m. In problems like this, you are free to choose the height at which $U_{grav} = 0$. The physics doesn't depend on your choice.

KEYCONCEPT Total mechanical energy (the sum of kinetic energy and gravitational potential energy) is conserved when only the force of gravity does work.

P. 232

NEW! Worked Example Key Concept statements appear at the end of every example, providing a brief summary of the key idea used in the solution to consolidate what was most important and what can be broadly applied to other problems, helping students identify strategies that can be used in future problems.

NEW! Key Example Variation Problems in the new Guided Practice section at the end of each chapter are based on selected worked examples. They build in difficulty by changing scenarios, swapping the knowns vs. unknowns, and adding complexity and/or steps of reasoning to provide the most helpful range of related problems that students must use the same basic approach to solve. Assignable in Mastering Physics, these "warm-up" exercises help students build problem-solving skills.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 7.1 and 7.2 (Section 7.1) before attempting these problems.

VP7.2.1 You throw a cricket ball (mass 0.156 kg) vertically upward. It leaves your hand moving at 12.0 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. At what height above your hand does the ball have (a) half as much upward velocity, (b) half as much kinetic energy as when it left your hand?

VP7.2.2 You toss a rock of mass m vertically upward. Air resistance can be neglected. The rock reaches a maximum height h above your hand. What is the speed of the rock when it is at height (a) $h/4$ and (b) $3h/4$?

VP7.2.3 You throw a tennis ball (mass 0.0570 kg) vertically upward. It leaves your hand moving at 15.0 m/s. Air resistance cannot be neglected, and the ball reaches a maximum height of 8.00 m. (a) By how much does the total mechanical energy decrease from when the ball leaves your hand to when it reaches its maximum height? (b) What is the magnitude of the average force of air resistance?

VP7.2.4 You catch a volleyball (mass 0.270 kg) that is moving downward at 7.50 m/s. In stopping the ball, your hands and the volleyball descend together a distance of 0.150 m. (a) How much work do your hands do on the volleyball in the process of stopping it? (b) What is the magnitude of the force (assumed constant) that your hands exert on the volleyball?

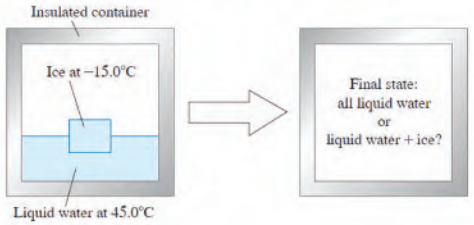
P. 253

. . . develop problem-solving skills

BRIDGING PROBLEM Entropy Changes: Cold Ice in Hot Water

An insulated container of negligible mass holds 0.600 kg of water at 45.0°C. You put a 0.0500 kg ice cube at −15.0°C in the water (**Fig. 20.23**). (a) Calculate the final temperature of the water once the ice has melted. (b) Calculate the change in entropy of the system.

Figure 20.23 What becomes of this ice–water mixture?



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Make a list of the known and unknown quantities, and identify the target variables.
2. How will you find the final temperature of the ice–water mixture? How will you decide whether or not all the ice melts?
3. Once you find the final temperature of the mixture, how will you determine the changes in entropy of (i) the ice initially at −15.0°C and (ii) the water initially at 45.0°C?

EXECUTE

4. Use the methods of Chapter 17 to calculate the final temperature T. (*Hint:* First assume that all of the ice melts, then write an equation which says that the heat that flows into the ice equals the heat that flows out of the water. If your assumption is correct, the final temperature that you calculate will be greater than 0°C. If your assumption is incorrect, the final temperature will be 0°C or less, which means that some ice remains. You'll then need to redo the calculation to account for this.)
5. Use your result from step 4 to calculate the entropy changes of the ice and the water. (*Hint:* You must include the heat flow associated with temperature changes, as in Example 20.6, as well as the heat flow associated with the change of phase.)
6. Find the total change in entropy of the system.

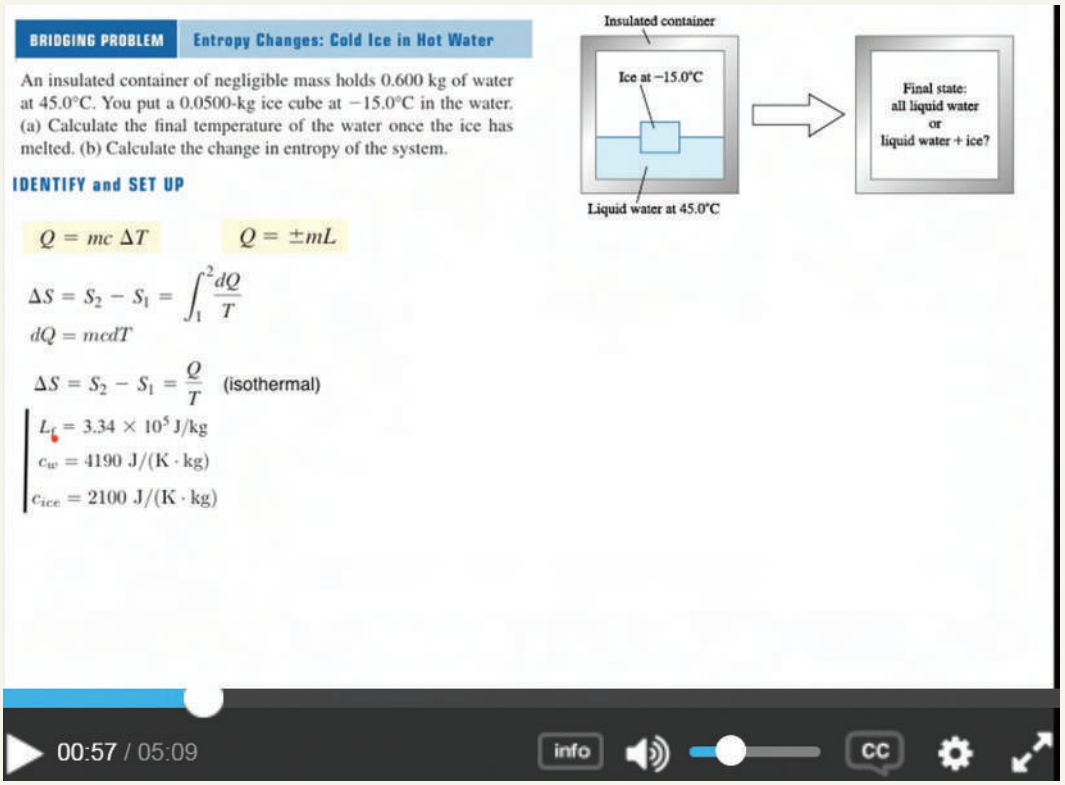
EVALUATE

7. Do the signs of the entropy changes make sense? Why or why not?

P. 699

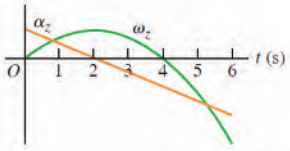
Scaffolded Bridging Problems now follow the Key Example Variation Problems in the Guided Practice section and help students move from single-concept worked examples to multiconcept homework problems.

NEW! Bridging Problem Tutorials, now assignable in Mastering Physics, walk students through the problem-solving process and provide links to the eText and detailed Video Tutor Solutions. In the Study Area in Mastering, these Video Tutor Solutions, as well as ones for every Worked Example in the book, provide a virtual teaching assistant on a round-the-clock basis.



Develop students' conceptual understanding of physics . . .

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.1 The figure shows a graph of ω_z and α_z versus time for a particular rotating body. (a) During which time intervals is the rotation speeding up? (i) $0 < t < 2$ s; (ii) $2 \text{ s} < t < 4$ s; (iii) $4 \text{ s} < t < 6$ s. (b) During which time intervals is the rotation slowing down? (i) $0 < t < 2$ s; (ii) $2 \text{ s} < t < 4$ s; (iii) $4 \text{ s} < t < 6$ s.



ANSWER

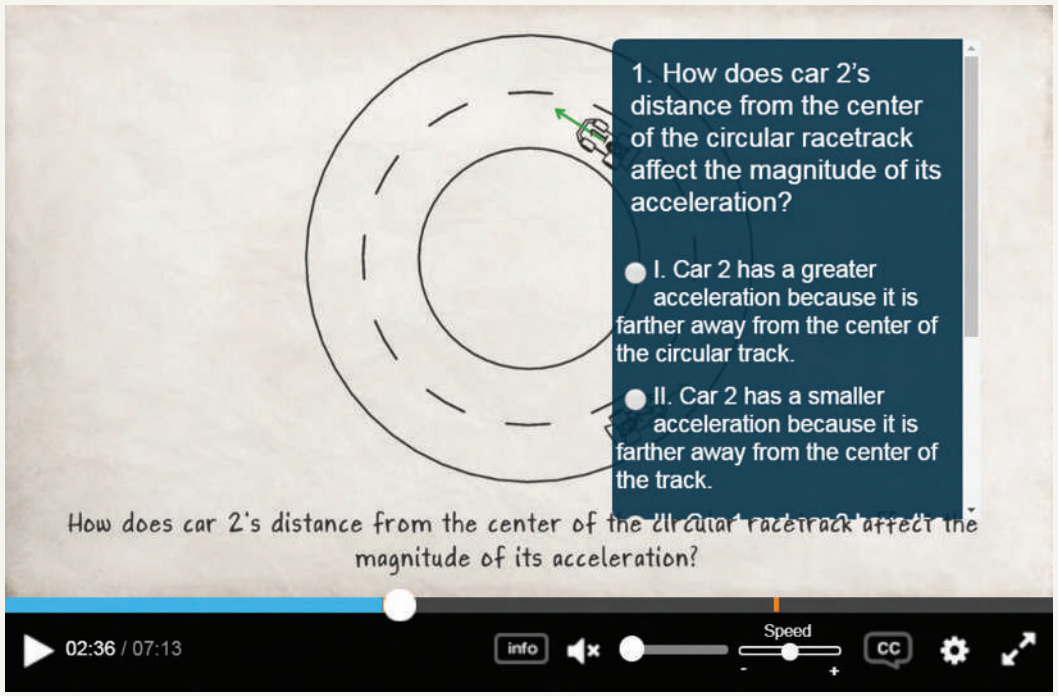
(a) **(i) and (iii)**, (b) **(ii)** The rotation is speeding up when the angular velocity and angular acceleration have the same sign, and slowing down when they have opposite signs. Hence it is speeding up for $0 < t < 2$ s (both ω_z and α_z are positive) and for $4 \text{ s} < t < 6$ s (both ω_z and α_z are negative) but is slowing down for $2 \text{ s} < t < 4$ s (ω_z is positive and α_z is negative). Note that the body is rotating in one direction for $t < 4$ s (ω_z is positive) and in the opposite direction for $t > 4$ s (ω_z is negative).

P. 305

Test Your Understanding questions at the end of most sections let students check their grasp of the material and use a multiple-choice or ranking-task format to probe for common misconceptions. The answers to these questions are now provided immediately after the question in order to encourage students to try them.

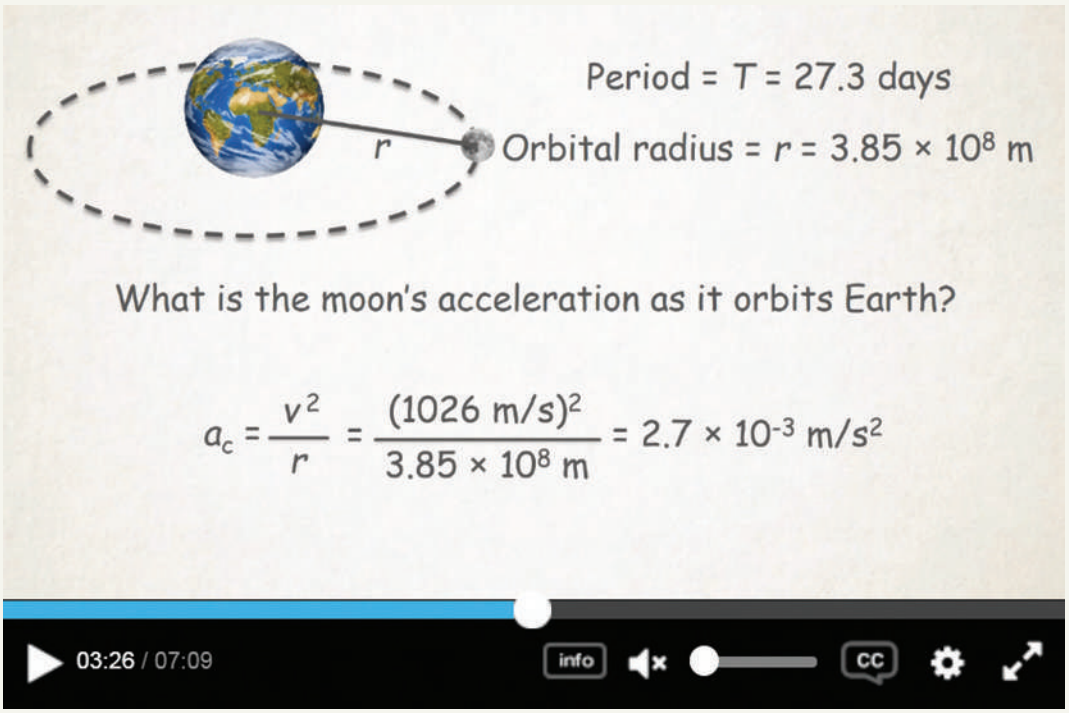
NEW! Direct Measurement Videos are short videos that show real situations of physical phenomena. Grids, rulers, and frame counters appear as overlays, helping students to make precise measurements of quantities such as position and time. Students then apply these quantities along with physics concepts to solve problems and answer questions about the motion of the objects in the video. These videos are assignable within Mastering.

. . . even before they come to class



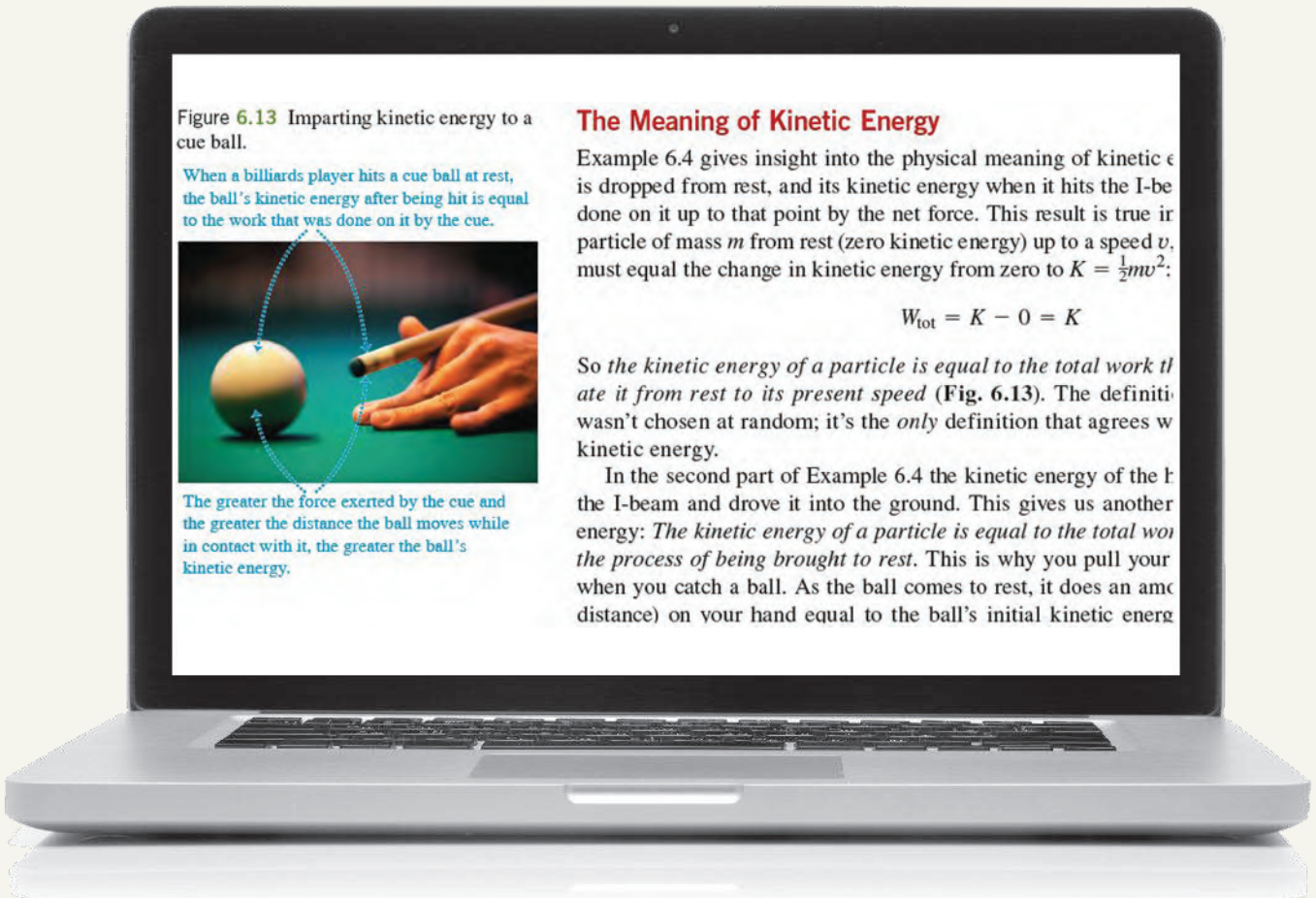
Conceptual Interactive Pre-lecture Videos provide an introduction to key topics with embedded assessment to help students prepare before lecture and to help professors identify students' misconceptions. These videos are assignable within Mastering.

NEW! Quantitative Pre-lecture Videos now complement the conceptual Interactive Pre-lecture Videos designed to expose students to concepts before class and help them learn how problems for a specific concept are worked. These videos are assignable within Mastering.

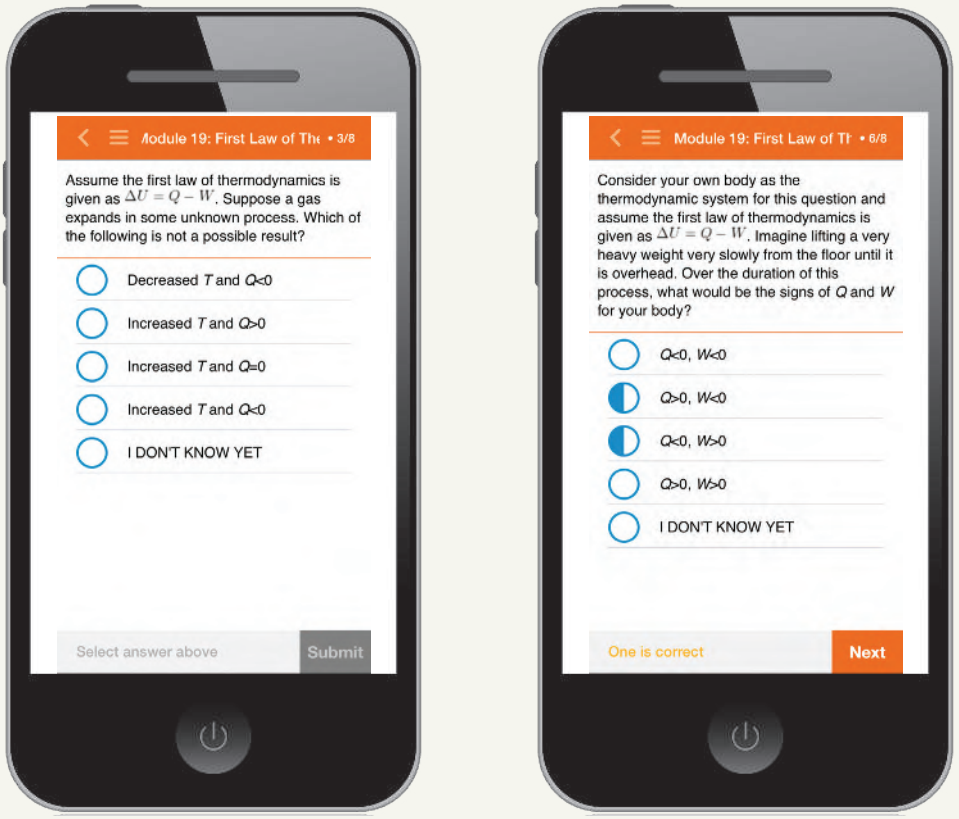


Reach every student...

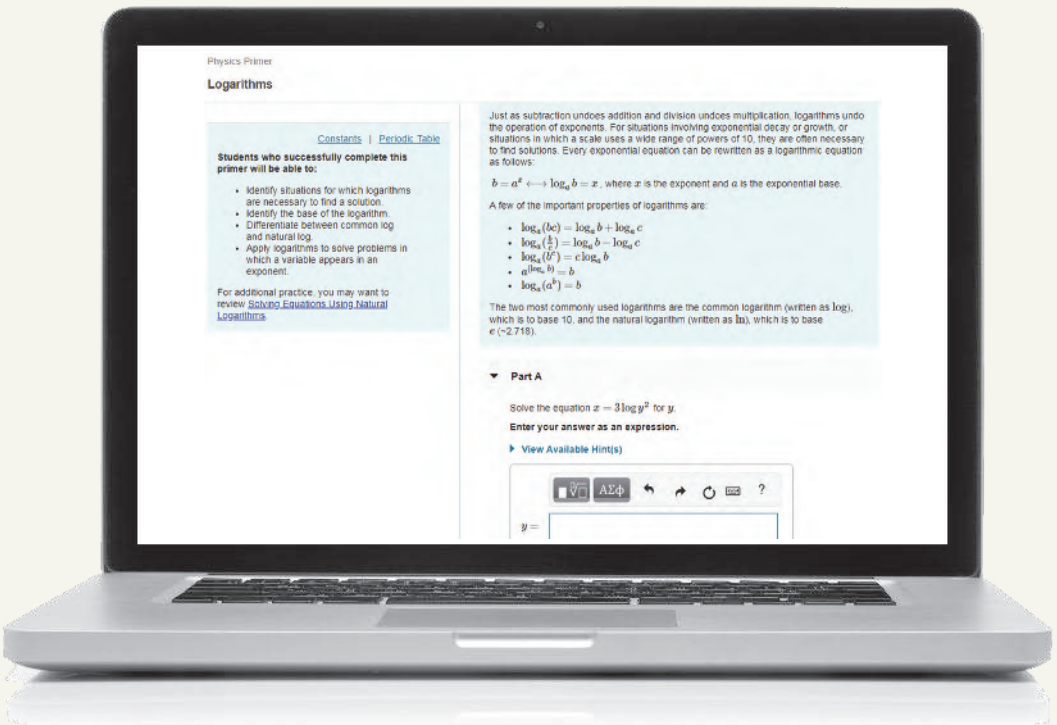
NEW! ***University Physics with Modern Physics, in SI units*** **is now available in Pearson eText.** Pearson eText is a simple-to-use, personalized reading experience available within Mastering. It allows students to easily highlight, take notes, and review key vocabulary all in one place—even when offline. Seamlessly integrated videos engage students and give them access to the help they need when they need it. Pearson eText is available within Mastering when packaged with a new book or as an upgrade students can purchase online.



. . . with Mastering Physics

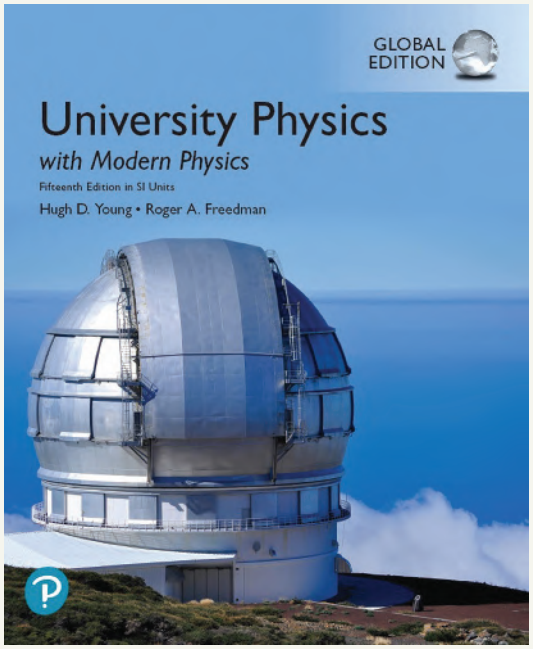


Dynamic Study Modules in Mastering Physics help students study effectively—and at their own pace—by keeping them motivated and engaged. The assignable modules rely on the latest research in cognitive science, using methods such as adaptivity, gamification, and intermittent rewards, to stimulate learning and improve retention.

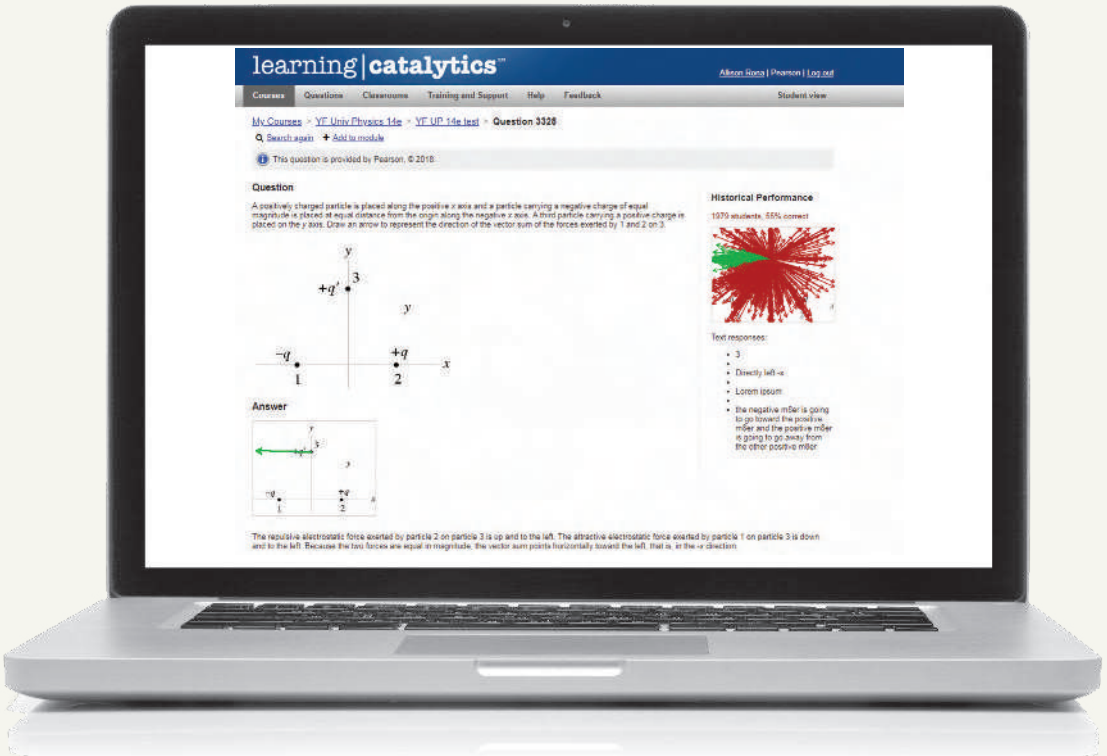


The Physics Primer refreshes students' math skills in the context of physics and prepares them for success in the course. These tutorials can be assigned before the course begins or throughout the course as just-in-time remediation. They utilize videos, hints, and feedback to ensure that students can practice and maintain their math skills, while tying together mathematical operations and physics analysis.

Instructor support you can rely on



University Physics with Modern Physics includes a full suite of instructor support materials in the Instructor Resources area in Mastering Physics. Resources include accessible PowerPoint lecture outlines; all annotated equations and problem-solving strategies; all figures, photos, tables, and end-of-chapter elements from the text; simulations; plus a solutions manual and test bank.



Instructors also have access to **Learning Catalytics**. With Learning Catalytics, you'll hear from every student when it matters most. You pose a variety of questions that help students recall ideas, apply concepts, and develop critical-thinking skills. Your students respond using their own smartphones, tablets, or laptops. You can monitor responses with real-time analytics and find out what your students do—and don't—understand. Then, you can adjust your teaching accordingly and even facilitate peer-to-peer learning, helping students stay motivated and engaged.

SEARS AND ZEMANSKY'S

UNIVERSITY PHYSICS

WITH MODERN PHYSICS

FIFTEENTH EDITION IN SI UNITS

HUGH D. YOUNG

ROGER A. FREEDMAN
University of California, Santa Barbara

CONTRIBUTING AUTHOR
A. LEWIS FORD
Texas A&M University

SI CONVERSION BY
KATARZYNA ZULETA ESTRUGO
École Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne

Pearson

Director Physical Science Portfolio: Jeanne Zalesky
Physics and Astronomy Portfolio Analyst: Ian Desrosiers
Senior Content Producer: Martha Steele
Managing Producer: Kristen Flathman
Courseware Director, Content Development: Barbara Yien
Courseware Senior Analyst: Alice Houston, Ph.D.
Courseware Senior Analyst: Margot Otway
Acquisitions Editor, Global Edition: KK Neelakantan
Contributing Editor: Karen Karlin
Courseware Editorial Assistant: Frances Lai
Assistant Project Editor, Global Edition: Aman Kumar
Director, Mastering Physics Content Development: Amir Said
Associate Producer, Science/ECS: Kristen Sanchez
Senior Content Developer (Physics/Astronomy): David Hoogewerff
Rich Media Content Producer: Keri Rand
Manager, Media Production: Vikram Kumar
Full-Service Vendor: Integra Software Services Pvt. Ltd.
Copyeditor: Carol Reitz
Compositor: Integra Software Services Pvt. Ltd.
Design Manager: Mark Ong/Side By Side Studios
Interior Designer: Preston Thomas/Cadence Design
Cover Designer: Lumina Datamatics Ltd.
Rights & Permissions Project Manager: Eric Schrader
Rights & Permissions Management: Ben Ferrini
Photo Researchers: Namrata Aggarwal and Beth Brenzel
Manufacturing Buyer: Stacey Weinberger
Senior Manufacturing Controller, Global Edition: Kay Holman
Director, Product Marketing: Allison Rona
Senior Product Marketing Manager: Elizabeth Bell

Cover Photo Credit: Hes Mundt/Alamy Stock Photo

Pearson Education Limited

KAO Two
KAO Park
Harlow
CM17 9SR
United Kingdom

and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: www.pearsonglobaleditions.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2020

The rights of Hugh D. Young and Roger A. Freedman to be identified as the authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Authorized adaptation from the United States edition, entitled University Physics with Modern Physics, *15th Edition, ISBN 978-0-135-15955-2 by Hugh D. Young and Roger A. Freedman, published by Pearson Education © 2020.*

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions department, please visit www.pearsoned.com/permissions/.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

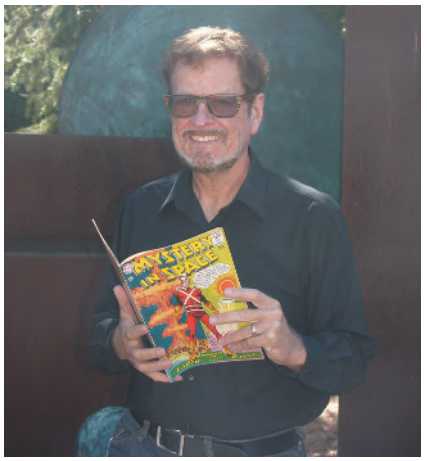
ISBN 10: 1-292-31473-7
ISBN 13: 978-1-292-31473-0
eBook ISBN 13: 978-1-292-31481-5

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

1 19

Typeset by Integra Publishing Services
eBook formatted by Integra Software Services

ABOUT THE AUTHORS



Roger A. Freedman is a Lecturer in Physics at the University of California, Santa Barbara. He was an undergraduate at the University of California campuses in San Diego and Los Angeles and did his doctoral research in nuclear theory at Stanford University under the direction of Professor J. Dirk Walecka. Dr. Freedman came to UCSB in 1981 after three years of teaching and doing research at the University of Washington.

At UCSB, Dr. Freedman has taught in both the Department of Physics and the College of Creative Studies, a branch of the university intended for highly gifted and motivated undergraduates. He has published research in nuclear physics, elementary particle physics, and laser physics. In recent years, he has worked to make physics lectures a more interactive experience through the use of classroom response systems and pre-lecture videos.

In the 1970s Dr. Freedman worked as a comic book letterer and helped organize the San Diego Comic-Con (now the world's largest popular culture convention) during its first few years. Today, when not in the classroom or slaving over a computer, Dr. Freedman can be found either flying (he holds a commercial pilot's license) or with his wife, Caroline, cheering on the rowers of UCSB Men's and Women's Crew.

IN MEMORIAM: HUGH YOUNG (1930–2013)

Hugh D. Young was Emeritus Professor of Physics at Carnegie Mellon University. He earned both his undergraduate and graduate degrees from that university. He earned his Ph.D. in fundamental particle theory under the direction of the late Richard Cutkosky. Dr. Young joined the faculty of Carnegie Mellon in 1956 and retired in 2004. He also had two visiting professorships at the University of California, Berkeley.

Dr. Young's career was centered entirely on undergraduate education. He wrote several undergraduate-level textbooks, and in 1973 he became a coauthor with Francis Sears and Mark Zemansky of their well-known introductory textbooks. In addition to his role on Sears and Zemansky's *University Physics,* he was the author of Sears and Zemansky's *College Physics*.

Dr. Young earned a bachelor's degree in organ performance from Carnegie Mellon in 1972 and spent several years as Associate Organist at St. Paul's Cathedral in Pittsburgh. He often ventured into the wilderness to hike, climb, or go caving with students in Carnegie Mellon's Explorers Club, which he founded as a graduate student and later advised. Dr. Young and his wife, Alice, hosted up to 50 students each year for Thanksgiving dinners in their home.

Always gracious, Dr. Young expressed his appreciation earnestly: "I want to extend my heartfelt thanks to my colleagues at Carnegie Mellon, especially Professors Robert Kraemer, Bruce Sherwood, Ruth Chabay, Helmut Vogel, and Brian Quinn, for many stimulating discussions about physics pedagogy and for their support and encouragement during the writing of several successive editions of this book. I am equally indebted to the many generations of Carnegie Mellon students who have helped me learn what good teaching and good writing are, by showing me what works and what doesn't. It is always a joy and a privilege to express my gratitude to my wife, Alice, and our children, Gretchen and Rebecca, for their love, support, and emotional sustenance during the writing of several successive editions of this book. May all men and women be blessed with love such as theirs." We at Pearson appreciated his professionalism, good nature, and collaboration. He will be missed.

A. Lewis Ford is Professor of Physics at Texas A&M University. He received a B.A. from Rice University in 1968 and a Ph.D. in chemical physics from the University of Texas at Austin in 1972. After a one-year postdoc at Harvard University, he joined the Texas A&M physics faculty in 1973 and has been there ever since. Professor Ford has specialized in theoretical atomic physics—in particular, atomic collisions. At Texas A&M he has taught a variety of undergraduate and graduate courses, but primarily introductory physics.

TO THE STUDENT

HOW TO SUCCEED IN PHYSICS BY REALLY TRYING

Mark Hollabaugh, Normandale Community College, Emeritus

Physics encompasses the large and the small, the old and the new. From the atom to galaxies, from electrical circuitry to aerodynamics, physics is very much a part of the world around us. You probably are taking this introductory course in calculus-based physics because it is required for subsequent courses that you plan to take in preparation for a career in science or engineering. Your professor wants you to learn physics and to enjoy the experience. He or she is very interested in helping you learn this fascinating subject. That is part of the reason your professor chose this textbook for your course. That is also the reason Drs. Young and Freedman asked me to write this introductory section. We want you to succeed!

The purpose of this section of *University Physics* is to give you some ideas that will assist your learning. Specific suggestions on how to use the textbook will follow a brief discussion of general study habits and strategies.

PREPARATION FOR THIS COURSE

If you had high school physics, you will probably learn concepts faster than those who have not because you will be familiar with the language of physics. If English is a second language for you, keep a glossary of new terms that you encounter and make sure you understand how they are used in physics. Likewise, if you are further along in your mathematics courses, you will pick up the mathematical aspects of physics faster. Even if your mathematics is adequate, you may find a book such as Edward Adelson's *Get Ready for Physics* to be a great help for sharpening your math skills as well as your study skills.

LEARNING TO LEARN

Each of us has a different learning style and a preferred means of learning. Understanding your own learning style will help you to focus on aspects of physics that may give you difficulty and to use those components of your course that will help you overcome the difficulty. Obviously you will want to spend more time on those aspects that give you the most trouble. If you learn by hearing, lectures will be very important. If you learn by explaining, then working with other students will be useful to you. If solving problems is difficult for you, spend more time learning how to solve problems. Also, it is important to understand and develop good study habits. Perhaps the most important thing you can do for yourself is set aside adequate, regularly scheduled study time in a distraction-free environment.

Answer the following questions for yourself:

- Am I able to use fundamental mathematical concepts from algebra, geometry, and trigonometry? (If not, plan a program of review with help from your professor.)
- In similar courses, what activity has given me the most trouble? (Spend more time on this.) What has been the easiest for me? (Do this first; it will build your confidence.)
- Do I understand the material better if I read the book before or after the lecture? (You may learn best by skimming the material, going to lecture, and then undertaking an in-depth reading.)
- Do I spend adequate time studying physics? (A rule of thumb for a class like this is to devote, on average, 2.5 hours out of class for each hour in class. For a course that meets 5 hours each week, that means you should spend about 10 to 15 hours per week studying physics.)
- Do I study physics every day? (Spread that 10 to 15 hours out over an entire week!) At what time of the day am I at my best for studying physics? (Pick a specific time of the day and stick to it.)
- Do I work in a quiet place where I can maintain my focus? (Distractions will break your routine and cause you to miss important points.)

WORKING WITH OTHERS

Scientists or engineers seldom work in isolation from one another but rather work cooperatively. You will learn more physics and have more fun doing it if you work with other students. Some professors may formalize the use of cooperative learning or facilitate the formation of study groups. You may wish to form your own informal study group with members of your class. Use e-mail to keep in touch with one another. Your study group is an excellent resource when you review for exams.

LECTURES AND TAKING NOTES

An important component of any college course is the lecture. In physics this is especially important, because your professor will frequently do demonstrations of physical principles, run computer simulations, or show video clips. All of these are learning activities that will help you understand the basic principles of physics. Don't miss lectures. If for some reason you do, ask a friend or member of your study group to provide you with notes and let you know what happened.

Take your class notes in outline form, and fill in the details later. It can be very difficult to take word-for-word notes, so just write down key ideas. Your professor may use a diagram from the textbook. Leave a space in your notes and add the diagram later. After class, edit your notes, filling in any gaps or omissions and noting things that you need to study further. Make references to the textbook by page, equation number, or section number.

Ask questions in class, or see your professor during office hours. Remember that the only "dumb" question is the one that is not asked. Your college may have teaching assistants or peer tutors who are available to help you with any difficulties.

EXAMINATIONS

Taking an examination is stressful. But if you feel adequately prepared and are well rested, your stress will be lessened. Preparing for an exam is a continuous process; it begins the moment the previous exam is over. You should immediately go over the exam to understand any mistakes you made. If you worked a problem and made substantial errors, try this: Take a piece of paper and divide it down the middle with a line from top to bottom. In one column, write the proper solution to the problem. In the other column, write what you did and why, if you know, and why your solution was incorrect. If you are uncertain why you made your mistake or how to avoid making it again, talk with your professor. Physics constantly builds on fundamental ideas, and it is important to correct any misunderstandings immediately. *Warning:* Although cramming at the last minute may get you through the present exam, you will not adequately retain the concepts for use on the next exam.

TO THE INSTRUCTOR

PREFACE

In the years since it was first published, *University Physics* has always embraced change, not just to include the latest developments in our understanding of the physical world, but also to address our understanding of how students learn physics and how they study.

In preparing for this new Fifteenth Edition, we listened to the thousands of students who have told us that they often struggle to see the connections between the worked examples in their textbook and problems on homework or exams. Every problem seems different because the objects, situations, numbers, and questions posed change with each problem. As a result, students experience frustration and a lack of confidence. By contrast, expert problem-solvers categorize problems by type, based on the underlying principles.

Several of the revisions we have made therefore address this particular challenge by, for example, helping students see the big picture of what each worked example is trying to illustrate and allowing them to practice sets of related problems to help them identify repeating patterns and strategies. These new features are explained in more detail below.

NEW TO THIS EDITION

- **Worked example KEYCONCEPT statements** appear at the end of every Example and Conceptual Example, providing a brief summary of the key idea used in the solution to consolidate what was most important and what can be broadly applied to other problems, to help students identify strategies that can be used in future problems.
- **KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS** in the new Guided Practice section at the end of each chapter are based on selected worked examples. They build in difficulty by changing scenarios, swapping the knowns and unknowns, and adding complexity and/or steps of reasoning to provide the most helpful range of related problems that use the same basic approach to solve. These scaffolded problem sets help students see patterns and make connections between problems that can be solved using the same underlying principles and strategies so that they are more able to tackle different problem types when exam time comes.
- **Expanded Caution paragraphs** focus on typical student misconceptions and problem areas. Over a dozen more have been added to this edition based on common errors made in Mastering™ Physics.
- **Updated and expanded Application sidebars** give students engaging and relevant real-world context.
- **Based on data from Mastering Physics and feedback from instructors, changes to the homework problems include the following:**
  - **Over 500 new problems,** with scores of other problems revised to improve clarity.
  - **Expanded three-dot-difficulty and Challenge Problems** significantly stretch students by requiring sophisticated reasoning that often involves multiple steps or concepts and/or mathematical skills. Challenge Problems are the most difficult problems in each chapter and often involve calculus, multiple steps that lead students through a complex analysis, and/or the exploration of a topic or application not explicitly covered in the chapter.
  - **New estimation problems** help students learn to analyze problem scenarios, assess data, and work with orders of magnitude. This problem type engages students to more thoroughly explore the situation by requiring them to not only estimate some of the data in the problem but also decide what data need to be estimated based on real-world experience, reasoning, assumptions, and/or modeling.
  - **Expanded cumulative problems** promote more advanced problem-solving techniques by requiring knowledge and skills covered in previous chapters to be integrated with understanding and skills from the current chapter.
  - **Expanded alternative problem sets** in Mastering Physics provide textbook-specific problems from previous editions to assign for additional student practice.

Extended Edition, Volume 1, Volume 2, and Volume 3:

With Mastering Physics:

- **Extended Edition:** Chapters 1–44 (ISBN 978-1-292-31475-4)

Without Mastering Physics:

- **Extended Edition:** Chapters 1–44 (ISBN 978-1-292-31473-0)
- **Volume 1:** Chapters 1–20 (ISBN 978-1-292-31733-5)
- **Volume 2:** Chapters 21–37 (ISBN 978-1-292-31735-9)
- **Volume 3:** Chapters 37–44 (ISBN 978-1-292-32526-2)

KEY FEATURES OF *UNIVERSITY PHYSICS WITH MODERN PHYSICS*

- A **QR code** at the beginning of the new Guided Practice section in each chapter allows students to use a mobile phone to access the Study Area of Mastering Physics, where they can watch interactive videos of a physics professor giving a relevant physics demonstration (Video Tutor Demonstrations) or showing a narrated and animated worked Example (Video Tutor Solutions).
- End-of-chapter **Bridging Problems** provide a transition between the single-concept Examples and the more challenging end-of-chapter problems. Each Bridging Problem poses a difficult, multiconcept problem that typically incorporates physics from earlier chapters. The **Solution Guide** that follows each problem provides questions and hints that help students approach and solve challenging problems with confidence.
- Deep and extensive **problem sets** cover a wide range of difficulty (with blue dots to indicate relative difficulty level) and exercise both physical understanding and problem-solving expertise. Many problems are based on complex real-life situations.
- This textbook offers more **Examples** and **Conceptual Examples** than most other leading calculus-based textbooks, allowing students to explore problem-solving challenges that are not addressed in other textbooks.
- A research-based **problem-solving approach (Identify, Set Up, Execute, Evaluate)** is used in every Example as well as in the Problem-Solving Strategies, in the Bridging Problems, and throughout the Instructor's Solutions Manual. This consistent approach teaches students to tackle problems thoughtfully rather than cutting straight to the math.
- **Problem-Solving Strategies** coach students in how to approach specific types of problems.
- The **figures** use a simplified graphical style to focus on the physics of a situation, and they incorporate blue **explanatory annotations.** Both techniques have been demonstrated to have a strong positive effect on learning.
- Many figures that illustrate Example solutions take the form of black-and-white **pencil sketches,** which directly represent what a student should draw in solving such problems themselves.
- The popular **Caution paragraphs** focus on typical misconceptions and student problem areas.
- End-of-section **Test Your Understanding** questions let students check their grasp of the material and use a multiple-choice or ranking-task format to probe for common misconceptions. Answers are now provided immediately after the question in order to encourage students to try them.
- **Visual Summaries** at the end of each chapter present the key ideas in words, equations, and thumbnail pictures, helping students review more effectively.

Mastering™ is the teaching and learning platform that empowers you to reach *every* student. By combining trusted author content with digital tools developed to engage students and emulate the office-hour experience, Mastering personalizes learning and improves results for each student.

Reach every student with Mastering

- **Teach your course your way:** Your course is unique. Whether you'd like to foster student engagement during class or give students anytime, anywhere access, Mastering gives you the flexibility to easily create *your* course to fit *your* needs.
  - With **Learning Catalytics,** you'll hear from every student when it matters most. You pose a variety of questions that help students recall ideas, apply concepts, and develop critical-thinking skills. Your students respond using their own smartphones, tablets, or laptops. You can monitor responses with real-time analytics and find out what your students do—and don't—understand. Then you can adjust your teaching accordingly and even facilitate peer-to-peer learning, helping students stay motivated and engaged.

- **Expanded alternative problem sets,** with hundreds of vetted problems from previous editions of the book, provide additional problem-solving practice and offer instructors more options when creating assignments.

- **Empower each learner:** Each student learns at a different pace. Personalized learning, including adaptive tools and wrong-answer feedback, pinpoints the precise areas where each student needs practice and gives all students the support they need—when and where they need it—to be successful.
  - **Interactive Pre-lecture Videos** provide an introduction to key topics with embedded assessment to help students prepare before lecture and to help professors identify student misconceptions.
    - **NEW! Quantitative Pre-lecture Videos** now complement the conceptual Interactive Pre-lecture Videos designed to expose students to concepts before class and help them learn how problems for a specific concept are worked.
  - **NEW! Direct Measurement Videos** are short videos that show real situations of physical phenomena. Grids, rulers, and frame counters appear as overlays, helping students to make precise measurements of quantities such as position and time. Students then apply these quantities along with physics concepts to solve problems and answer questions about the motion of the objects in the video. The problems are assignable in Mastering Physics and can be used to replace or supplement traditional word problems; they can also serve as open-ended questions to help develop problem-solving skills.
  - **NEW! Dynamic Study Modules** help students study effectively—and at their own pace. How? By keeping them motivated and engaged. The assignable modules rely on the latest research in cognitive science, using methods—such as adaptivity, gamification, and intermittent rewards—to stimulate learning and improve retention. Each module poses a series of questions about a course topic. These question sets adapt to each student's performance and offer personalized, targeted feedback to help students master key concepts.
  - **NEW! The Physics Primer** relies on videos, hints, and feedback to refresh students' math skills in the context of physics and prepares them for success in the course. These tutorials can be assigned before the course begins or throughout the course as just-in-time remediation. They ensure that students practice and maintain their math skills, while tying together mathematical operations and physics analysis.

- **Deliver trusted content:** We partner with highly respected authors to develop interactive content and course-specific resources that keep students on track and engaged.
  - **Video Tutor Demonstrations and Video Tutor Solutions** tie directly to relevant content in the textbook and can be accessed through Mastering Physics, via the eText, or from QR codes in the textbook.
    - **Video Tutor Solutions (VTSs) for most worked examples** in the book walk students through the problem-solving process, providing a virtual teaching assistant on a round-the-clock basis.
    - **Video Tutor Demonstrations (VTDs)** feature "pause-and-predict" demonstrations of key physics concepts and incorporate assessment to engage students in understanding key concepts. New VTDs build on the existing collection, adding new topics for a more robust set of demonstrations.
  - **NEW! Enhanced end-of-chapter questions** provide expanded remediation built into each question when and where students need it. Remediation includes scaffolded support, links to hints, links to appropriate sections of the eText, links from the eText to Mastering Physics, Video Tutor Solutions, math remediation, and wrong-answer feedback for homework assignments.
  - **NEW! Key Example Variation Problems,** assignable in Mastering Physics, build in difficulty by changing scenarios, swapping the knowns and unknowns, and adding complexity and/or steps of reasoning to provide the most helpful range of related problems that use the same basic approach to find their solutions.
  - **NEW! Bridging Problems are now assignable in Mastering Physics,** thus providing students with additional practice in moving from single-concept worked examples to multi-concept homework problems.

- **Improve student results:** Usage statistics show that when you teach with Mastering, student performance improves. That's why instructors have chosen Mastering for over 15 years, touching the lives of more than 20 million students.

INSTRUCTIONAL PACKAGE

University Physics with Modern Physics, Fifteenth Edition, Global Edition in SI units provides an integrated teaching and learning package of support material for students and instructors.

NOTE: For convenience, instructor supplements can be downloaded from the Instructor Resources area of Mastering Physics.

Supplement	Print	Online	Instructor or Student Supplement	Description
Mastering Physics with Pearson eText (ISBN 978-1-292-31475-4)		✓	Instructor and Student Supplement	This product features all of the resources of Mastering Physics in addition to the Pearson eText.
Instructor's Solutions Manual (ISBN 978-1-292-31474-7)		✓	Instructor Supplement	This comprehensive solutions manual contains complete solutions to all end-of-chapter questions and problems.
Instructor's Resource Materials		✓	Instructor Supplement	All art, photos, and tables from the book are available in JPEG format and as modifiable PowerPoints™. In addition, instructors can access lecture outlines as well as "clicker" questions in PowerPoint format; editable content for key features, including key equations and Problem-Solving Strategies; and the TestGen test bank.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to thank the hundreds of reviewers and colleagues who have offered valuable comments and suggestions over the life of this textbook. The continuing success of *University Physics* is due in large measure to their contributions.

Miah Adel (U. of Arkansas at Pine Bluff), Edward Adelson (Ohio State U.), Julie Alexander (Camosun C.), Ralph Alexander (U. of Missouri at Rolla), J. G. Anderson, R. S. Anderson, Wayne Anderson (Sacramento City C.), Sanjeev Arora (Fort Valley State U.), Alex Azima (Lansing Comm. C.), Dilip Balamore (Nassau Comm. C.), Harold Bale (U. of North Dakota), Arun Bansil (Northeastern U.), John Barach (Vanderbilt U.), J. D. Barnett, H. H. Barschall, Albert Bartlett (U. of Colorado), Marshall Bartlett (Hollins U.), Paul Baum (CUNY, Queens C.), Frederick Becchetti (U. of Michigan), B. Bederson, David Bennum (U. of Nevada, Reno), Lev I. Berger (San Diego State U.), Angela Biselli (Fairfield U.), Robert Boeke (William Rainey Harper C.), Bram Boroson (Clayton State U.), S. Borowitz, A. C. Braden, James Brooks (Boston U.), Nicholas E. Brown (California Polytechnic State U., San Luis Obispo), Tony Buffa (California Polytechnic State U., San Luis Obispo), Shane Burns (Colorado C.), A. Capecelatro, Michael Cardamone (Pennsylvania State U.), Duane Carmony (Purdue U.), Troy Carter (UCLA), P. Catranides, John Cerne (SUNY at Buffalo), Shinil Cho (La Roche C.), Tim Chupp (U. of Michigan), Roger Clapp (U. of South Florida), William M. Cloud (Eastern Illinois U.), Leonard Cohen (Drexel U.), W. R. Coker (U. of Texas, Austin), Malcolm D. Cole (U. of Missouri at Rolla), H. Conrad, David Cook (Lawrence U.), Gayl Cook (U. of Colorado), Hans Courant (U. of Minnesota), Carl Covatto (Arizona State U.), Bruce A. Craver (U. of Dayton), Larry Curtis (U. of Toledo), Jai Dahiya (Southeast Missouri State U.), Dedra Demaree (Georgetown U.), Steve Detweiler (U. of Florida), George Dixon (Oklahoma State U.), Steve Drasco (Grinnell C.), Donald S. Duncan, Boyd Edwards (West Virginia U.), Robert Eisenstein (Carnegie Mellon U.), Amy Emerson Missourn (Virginia Institute of Technology), Olena Erhardt (Richland C.), William Faissler (Northeastern U.), Gregory Falabella (Wagner C.), William Fasnacht (U.S. Naval Academy), Paul Feldker (St. Louis Comm. C.), Carlos Figueroa (Cabrillo C.), L. H. Fisher, Neil Fletcher (Florida State U.), Allen Flora (Hood C.), Robert Folk, Peter Fong (Emory U.), A. Lewis Ford (Texas A&M U.), D. Frantszog, James R. Gaines (Ohio State U.), Solomon Gartenhaus (Purdue U.), Ron Gautreau (New Jersey Institute of Technology), J. David Gavenda (U. of Texas, Austin), Dennis Gay (U. of North Florida), Elizabeth George (Wittenberg U.), James Gerhart (U. of Washington), N. S. Gingrich, J. L. Glathart, S. Goodwin, Rich Gottfried (Frederick Comm. C.), Walter S. Gray (U. of Michigan), Paul Gresser (U. of Maryland), Benjamin Grinstein (UC, San Diego), Howard Grotch (Pennsylvania State U.), John Gruber (San Jose State U.), Graham D. Gutsche (U.S. Naval Academy), Michael J. Harrison (Michigan State U.), Harold Hart (Western Illinois U.), Howard Hayden (U. of Connecticut), Carl Helrich (Goshen C.), Andrew Hirsch (Purdue U.), Linda Hirst (UC, Merced), Laurent Hodges (Iowa State U.), C. D. Hodgman, Elizabeth Holden (U. of Wisconsin, Platteville), Michael Hones (Villanova U.), Keith Honey (West Virginia Institute of Technology), Gregory Hood (Tidewater Comm. C.), John Hubisz (North Carolina State U.), Eric Hudson (Pennsylvania State U.), M. Iona, Bob Jacobsen (UC, Berkeley), John Jaszczak (Michigan Technical U.), Alvin Jenkins (North Carolina State U.), Charles Johnson (South Georgia State C.), Robert P. Johnson (UC, Santa Cruz), Lorella Jones (U. of Illinois), Manoj Kaplinghat (UC, Irvine), John Karchek (GMI Engineering & Management Institute), Thomas Keil (Worcester Polytechnic Institute), Robert Kraemer (Carnegie Mellon U.), Jean P. Krisch (U. of Michigan), Robert A. Kromhout, Andrew Kunz (Marquette U.), Charles Lane (Berry C.), Stewart Langton (U. of Victoria), Thomas N. Lawrence (Texas State U.), Robert J. Lee, Alfred Leitner (Rensselaer Polytechnic U.), Frederic Liebrand (Walla Walla U.), Gerald P. Lietz (DePaul U.), Gordon Lind (Utah State U.), S. Livingston (U. of Wisconsin, Milwaukee), Jorge Lopez (U. of Texas, El Paso), Elihu Lubkin (U. of Wisconsin, Milwaukee), Robert Luke (Boise State U.), David Lynch (Iowa State U.), Michael Lysak (San Bernardino Valley C.), Jeffrey Mallow (Loyola U.), Robert Mania (Kentucky State U.), Robert Marchina (U. of Memphis), David Markowitz (U. of Connecticut), Philip Matheson (Utah Valley U.), R. J. Maurer, Oren Maxwell (Florida International U.), Joseph L. McCauley (U. of Houston), T. K. McCubbin, Jr. (Pennsylvania State U.), Charles McFarland (U. of Missouri at Rolla), James Mcguire (Tulane U.), Lawrence McIntyre (U. of Arizona), Fredric Messing (Carnegie Mellon U.), Thomas Meyer (Texas A&M U.), Andre Mirabelli (St. Peter's C., New Jersey), Herbert Muether (SUNY, Stony Brook), Jack Munsee (California State U., Long Beach), Lorenzo Narducci (Drexel U.), Van E. Neie (Purdue U.), Forrest Newman (Sacramento City C.), David A. Nordling (U.S. Naval Academy), Benedict Oh (Pennsylvania State U.), L. O. Olsen, Michael Ottinger (Missouri Western State U.), Russell Palma (Minnesota State U., Mankato), Jim Pannell (DeVry Institute of Technology), Neeti Parashar (Purdue U., Calumet), W. F. Parks (U. of Missouri), Robert Paulson (California State U., Chico), Jerry Peacher (U. of Missouri at Rolla), Arnold Perlmutter (U. of Miami), Lennart Peterson (U. of Florida), R. J. Peterson (U. of

Colorado, Boulder), R. Pinkston, Ronald Poling (U. of Minnesota), Yuri Popov (U. of Michigan), J. G. Potter, C. W. Price (Millersville U.), Francis Prosser (U. of Kansas), Shelden H. Radin, Roberto Ramos (Drexel U.), Michael Rapport (Anne Arundel Comm. C.), R. Resnick, James A. Richards, Jr., John S. Risley (North Carolina State U.), Francesc Roig (UC, Santa Barbara), T. L. Rokoske, Richard Roth (Eastern Michigan U.), Carl Rotter (U. of West Virginia), S. Clark Rowland (Andrews U.), Rajarshi Roy (Georgia Institute of Technology), Russell A. Roy (Santa Fe Comm. C.), Desi Saludes (Hillsborough Comm. C.), Thomas Sandin (North Carolina A&T State U.), Dhiraj Sardar (U. of Texas, San Antonio), Tumer Sayman (Eastern Michigan U.), Bruce Schumm (UC, Santa Cruz), Melvin Schwartz (St. John's U.), F. A. Scott, L. W. Seagondollar, Paul Shand (U. of Northern Iowa), Stan Shepherd (Pennsylvania State U.), Douglas Sherman (San Jose State U.), Bruce Sherwood (Carnegie Mellon U.), Hugh Siefkin (Greenville C.), Christopher Sirola (U. of Southern Mississippi), Tomasz Skwarnicki (Syracuse U.), C. P. Slichter, Jason Slinker (U. of Texas, Dallas), Charles W. Smith (U. of Maine, Orono), Malcolm Smith (U. of Lowell), Ross Spencer (Brigham Young U.), Julien Sprott (U. of Wisconsin), Victor Stanionis (Iona C.), James Stith (American Institute of Physics), Chuck Stone (North Carolina A&T State U.), Edward Strother (Florida Institute of Technology), Conley Stutz (Bradley U.), Albert Stwertka (U.S. Merchant Marine Academy), Kenneth Szpara-DeNisco (Harrisburg Area Comm. C.), Devki Talwar (Indiana U. of Pennsylvania), Fiorella Terenzi (Florida International U.), Martin Tiersten (CUNY, City C.), David Toot (Alfred U.), Greg Trayling (Rochester Institute of Technology), Somdev Tyagi (Drexel U.), Matthew Vannette (Saginaw Valley State U.), Eswara Venugopal (U. of Detroit, Mercy), F. Verbrugge, Helmut Vogel (Carnegie Mellon U.), Aaron Warren (Purdue U., North Central), Robert Webb (Texas A&M U.), Thomas Weber (Iowa State U.), M. Russell Wehr (Pennsylvania State U.), Robert Weidman (Michigan Technical U.), Dan Whalen (UC, San Diego), Lester V. Whitney, Thomas Wiggins (Pennsylvania State U.), Robyn Wilde (Oregon Institute of Technology), David Willey (U. of Pittsburgh, Johnstown), George Williams (U. of Utah), John Williams (Auburn U.), Stanley Williams (Iowa State U.), Jack Willis, Suzanne Willis (Northern Illinois U.), Robert Wilson (San Bernardino Valley C.), L. Wolfenstein, James Wood (Palm Beach Junior C.), Lowell Wood (U. of Houston), R. E. Worley, D. H. Ziebell (Manatee Comm. C.), George O. Zimmerman (Boston U.)

In addition, I would like to thank my past and present colleagues at UCSB, including Rob Geller, Carl Gwinn, Al Nash, Elisabeth Nicol, and Francesc Roig, for their wholehearted support and for many helpful discussions. I owe a special debt of gratitude to my early teachers Willa Ramsay, Peter Zimmerman, William Little, Alan Schwettman, and Dirk Walecka for showing me what clear and engaging physics teaching is all about, and to Stuart Johnson for inviting me to become a coauthor of *University Physics* beginning with the Ninth Edition. Special acknowledgments go out to Lewis Ford for the huge and essential task of creating the revised end-of-chapter problem sets, and to Wayne Anderson, who carefully reviewed all of the new problems and solved them, and updated the *Instructor's Solutions Manual*. Thanks also go to Michael Faux, Elizabeth Holden, and Tom Sandin for their numerous contributions to the end-of-chapter problems. I want to express special thanks to the editorial staff at Pearson: to Jeanne Zalesky for her editorial vision; to Alice Houston for her keen eye and careful development of this edition; to Karen Karlin, Margot Otway, Joanna Dinsmore, and Jason Harlow for their careful reading of the page proofs; and to Martha Steele for keeping the editorial and production pipelines flowing. Most of all, I want to express my gratitude and love to my wife, Caroline, to whom I dedicate my contribution to this book. Hey, Caroline, the new edition's done at last—let's go flying!

PLEASE TELL ME WHAT YOU THINK!

I welcome communications from students and professors, especially concerning errors or deficiencies that you find in this edition. The late Hugh Young and I have devoted a lot of time and effort to writing the best book we know how to write, and I hope it will help as you teach and learn physics. In turn, you can help me by letting me know what still needs to be improved! Please feel free to contact me either electronically or by ordinary mail. Your comments will be greatly appreciated.

August 2018

Roger A. Freedman
Department of Physics
University of California, Santa Barbara
Santa Barbara, CA 93106-9530
airboy@physics.ucsb.edu
http://www.physics.ucsb.edu/~airboy/
Twitter: @RogerFreedman

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS FOR THE GLOBAL EDITION

Pearson would like to acknowledge and thank Prof. Katarzyna Zuleta Estrugo for her expert contributions to the Global Edition, and the following for reviewing it:

Harri Arnio (Åbo Akademi University), Justin Evans (University of Manchester), Kenneth Hong Chong Ming (National University of Singapore), and Wang Qinghai (National University of Singapore).

APPLICATIONS

CHAPTER 1
Scalar Temperature, Vector Wind 38

CHAPTER 2
BIO Testing Humans at High Accelerations 74

CHAPTER 3
BIO Horses on a Curved Path 98
The Moons of Jupiter 110
Watch Out: Tight Curves Ahead! 112
Relative Velocities near the Speed of Light 115

CHAPTER 4
Sledding with Newton's First Law 133
Blame Newton's Second Law 144

CHAPTER 5
Static Friction and Windshield Wipers 171
BIO Pollen and Fluid Resistance 175
BIO Circular Motion in a Centrifuge 182

CHAPTER 6
BIO Work and Muscle Fibers 201
BIO Tendons Are Nonideal Springs 212
BIO Muscle Power 215

CHAPTER 7
BIO Converting Gravitational Potential Energy to Kinetic Energy 231
BIO Elastic Potential Energy of a Cheetah 240
Nonconservative Forces and Internal Energy in a Tire 246
Topography and Potential Energy Gradient 249
Acrobats in Equilibrium 251

CHAPTER 8
BIO Woodpecker Impulse 265
Finding Planets Beyond Our Solar System 284
BIO Jet Propulsion in Squids 285

CHAPTER 9
BIO Rotational Motion in Bacteria 305
BIO Moment of Inertia of a Bird's Wing 311

CHAPTER 10
BIO Combined Translation and Rotation 337
BIO Rolling for Reproduction 342

CHAPTER 11
BIO Young's Modulus of a Tendon 374
BIO Bulk Stress on an Anglerfish 376

CHAPTER 12
BIO Liquid Cohesion in Trees 395
BIO Gauge Pressure of Blood 399
BIO Why Healthy Giraffes Have High Blood Pressure 407
BIO Listening for Turbulent Flow 411

CHAPTER 13
Walking and Running on the Moon 428
BIO Biological Hazards of Interplanetary Travel 437

CHAPTER 14
BIO Wing Frequencies 458
BIO Forced Oscillations 480
BIO Canine Resonance 481

CHAPTER 15
BIO Waves on a Snake's Body 493
BIO Eating and Transverse Waves 505
BIO Surface Waves and the Swimming Speed of Ducks 506

CHAPTER 16
BIO Hearing Loss from Amplified Sound 534
BIO Resonance and the Sensitivity of the Ear 547

CHAPTER 17
BIO Mammalian Body Temperatures 573
BIO Fur Versus Blubber 590

CHAPTER 18
BIO Respiration and the Ideal-Gas Equation 609
BIO Activation Energy and Moth Activity 627

CHAPTER 19
BIO The First Law of Exercise Thermodynamics 647
BIO Exhaling Adiabatically 658

CHAPTER 20
BIO Biological Efficiency 673
BIO Entropy Changes in a Living Organism 692
Polymers Coil in Solution 696

CHAPTER 21
BIO Electric Forces, Sweat, and Cystic Fibrosis 713
BIO Sharks and the "Sixth Sense" 718
BIO A Fish with an Electric Dipole Moment 732

CHAPTER 22
BIO Flux Through a Basking Shark's Mouth 751
BIO Charge Distribution Inside a Nerve Cell 762
Why Lightning Bolts Are Vertical 764

CHAPTER 23
BIO Electrocardiography 783
BIO Electron Volts and Cancer Radiotherapy 785
BIO Potential Gradient Across a Cell Membrane 796

CHAPTER 24
Touch Screens and Capacitance 815
Capacitors in the Toolbox 823
BIO Dielectric Cell Membrane 826
Smartphones, Capacitors, and Dielectrics 828

CHAPTER 25
BIO Resistivity and Nerve Conduction 846
BIO Danger: Electric Ray! 852

CHAPTER 26
BIO Electromyography 883
BIO Pacemakers and Capacitors 888

CHAPTER 27
BIO Spiny Lobsters and Magnetic Compasses 908
BIO Magnetic Fields of the Body 910
BIO Magnetic Resonance Imaging 926
BIO Exercise Machines and the Hall Effect 933

CHAPTER 28
Currents and Planetary Magnetism 950
BIO Magnetic Fields for MRI 957
BIO Ferro Magnetic Nanoparticles for Cancer Therapy 969

CHAPTER 29
BIO Exploring the Brain with Induced emfs 982
Eddy Currents Help Power Io's Volcanoes 998

CHAPTER 30
Inductors, Power Transmission, and Lightning Strikes 1020
A Magnetic Eruption on the Sun 1025

CHAPTER 31
BIO Measuring Body Fat by Bioelectric Impedance Analysis 1056
BIO Dangers of ac Versus dc Voltages 1064
When dc Power Transmission Is Better than ac 1066

CHAPTER 32
BIO Ultraviolet Vision 1080
BIO Electromagnetic Plane Waves from Space 1086
BIO Laser Surgery 1091

CHAPTER 33
BIO Transparency and Index of Refraction 1110
Circular Polarization and 3-D Movies 1124
Birefringence and Liquid Crystal Displays 1125
BIO Bee Vision and Polarized Light from the Sky 1126

CHAPTER 34
Satellite Television Dishes 1145
Inverting an Inverted Image 1165
BIO Focusing in the Animal Kingdom 1167
BIO The Telephoto Eyes of Chameleons 1170

CHAPTER 35
BIO Phase Difference, Path Difference, and Localization in Human Hearing 1190
BIO Interference and Butterfly Wings 1203
BIO Seeing Below the Surface with Interferometry 1204

CHAPTER 36
BIO Detecting DNA with Diffraction 1227
Bigger Telescope, Better Resolution 1231
BIO The Airy Disk in an Eagle's Eye 1233

CHAPTER 37
Which One's the Grandmother? 1255
Relative Velocity and Reference Frames 1261
Monitoring Mass-Energy Conversion 1269

CHAPTER 38
BIO Sterilizing with High-Energy Photons 1287
BIO X-Ray Absorption and Medical Imaging 1290
Butterfly Hunting with Heisenberg 1297

CHAPTER 39
Using Spectra to Analyze an Interstellar Gas Cloud 1314
BIO Fish Fluorescence 1321
BIO Blackbody Eyes 1333
Star Colors and the Planck Radiation Law 1334

CHAPTER 40
Particles in a Polymer "Box" 1361
BIO Electron Tunneling in Enzymes 1370

CHAPTER 41
BIO Electron Spins and Dating Human Origins 1409
BIO Electron Configurations and Bone Cancer Radiotherapy 1417
X Rays in Forensic Science 1421

CHAPTER 42
BIO Molecular Zipper 1438
BIO Using Crystals to Determine Protein Structure 1443
BIO Swallow This Semiconductor Device 1459

CHAPTER 43
Using Isotopes to Measure Ancient Climate 1472
BIO Deuterium and Heavy Water Toxicity 1476
BIO A Radioactive Building 1493
BIO Making Radioactive Isotopes for Medicine 1498

CHAPTER 44
BIO Pair Annihilation in Medical Diagnosis 1514
BIO Linear Accelerators in Medicine 1516
BIO A Fossil Both Ancient and Recent 1539

DETAILED CONTENTS

MECHANICS

1 UNITS, PHYSICAL QUANTITIES, AND VECTORS 29

1.1 The Nature of Physics 29
1.2 Solving Physics Problems 30
1.3 Standards and Units 31
1.4 Using and Converting Units 34
1.5 Uncertainty and Significant Figures 36
1.6 Estimates and Orders of Magnitude 38
1.7 Vectors and Vector Addition 38
1.8 Components of Vectors 42
1.9 Unit Vectors 46
1.10 Products of Vectors 47
Summary 53
Guided Practice 54
Questions/Exercises/Problems 55

2 MOTION ALONG A STRAIGHT LINE 62

2.1 Displacement, Time, and Average Velocity 62
2.2 Instantaneous Velocity 65
2.3 Average and Instantaneous Acceleration 68
2.4 Motion with Constant Acceleration 72
2.5 Freely Falling Objects 78
2.6 Velocity and Position by Integration 81
Summary 84
Guided Practice 85
Questions/Exercises/Problems 86

3 MOTION IN TWO OR THREE DIMENSIONS 94

3.1 Position and Velocity Vectors 94
3.2 The Acceleration Vector 97
3.3 Projectile Motion 102
3.4 Motion in a Circle 109
3.5 Relative Velocity 112
Summary 118
Guided Practice 119
Questions/Exercises/Problems 120

4 NEWTON'S LAWS OF MOTION 128

4.1 Force and Interactions 128
4.2 Newton's First Law 131
4.3 Newton's Second Law 135
4.4 Mass and Weight 140
4.5 Newton's Third Law 143

4.6 Free-Body Diagrams 147
Summary 148
Guided Practice 149
Questions/Exercises/Problems 151

5 APPLYING NEWTON'S LAWS 157

5.1 Using Newton's First Law: Particles in Equilibrium 157
5.2 Using Newton's Second Law: Dynamics of Particles 162
5.3 Friction Forces 169
5.4 Dynamics of Circular Motion 177
5.5 The Fundamental Forces of Nature 182
Summary 184
Guided Practice 185
Questions/Exercises/Problems 186

6 WORK AND KINETIC ENERGY 199

6.1 Work 199
6.2 Kinetic Energy and the Work–Energy Theorem 204
6.3 Work and Energy with Varying Forces 209
6.4 Power 215
Summary 218
Guided Practice 219
Questions/Exercises/Problems 220

7 POTENTIAL ENERGY AND ENERGY CONSERVATION 229

7.1 Gravitational Potential Energy 229
7.2 Elastic Potential Energy 238
7.3 Conservative and Nonconservative Forces 243
7.4 Force and Potential Energy 247

7.5 Energy Diagrams 250
Summary 252
Guided Practice 253
Questions/Exercises/Problems 254

8 MOMENTUM, IMPULSE, AND COLLISIONS 263

8.1 Momentum and Impulse 263
8.2 Conservation of Momentum 269
8.3 Momentum Conservation and Collisions 273
8.4 Elastic Collisions 277
8.5 Center of Mass 281
8.6 Rocket Propulsion 284
Summary 288
Guided Practice 289
Questions/Exercises/Problems 290

9 ROTATION OF RIGID BODIES 300

9.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration 300
9.2 Rotation with Constant Angular Acceleration 305
9.3 Relating Linear and Angular Kinematics 307
9.4 Energy in Rotational Motion 310
9.5 Parallel-Axis Theorem 315
9.6 Moment-of-Inertia Calculations 317
Summary 319
Guided Practice 320
Questions/Exercises/Problems 321

10 DYNAMICS OF ROTATIONAL MOTION 330

10.1 Torque 330
10.2 Torque and Angular Acceleration for a Rigid Body 333
10.3 Rigid-Body Rotation About a Moving Axis 336
10.4 Work and Power in Rotational Motion 342
10.5 Angular Momentum 344
10.6 Conservation of Angular Momentum 347
10.7 Gyroscopes and Precession 350
Summary 353
Guided Practice 354
Questions/Exercises/Problems 355

11 EQUILIBRIUM AND ELASTICITY 365

11.1 Conditions for Equilibrium 365
11.2 Center of Gravity 366
11.3 Solving Rigid-Body Equilibrium Problems 369
11.4 Stress, Strain, and Elastic Moduli 373
11.5 Elasticity and Plasticity 379
Summary 381
Guided Practice 382
Questions/Exercises/Problems 383

12 FLUID MECHANICS 394

12.1 Gases, Liquids, and Density 394
12.2 Pressure in a Fluid 396
12.3 Buoyancy 401
12.4 Fluid Flow 404
12.5 Bernoulli's Equation 406
12.6 Viscosity and Turbulence 410
Summary 413
Guided Practice 414
Questions/Exercises/Problems 415

13 GRAVITATION 423

13.1 Newton's Law of Gravitation 423
13.2 Weight 427
13.3 Gravitational Potential Energy 430
13.4 The Motion of Satellites 432
13.5 Kepler's Laws and the Motion of Planets 435
13.6 Spherical Mass Distributions 439
13.7 Apparent Weight and the Earth's Rotation 442
13.8 Black Holes 443
Summary 447
Guided Practice 448
Questions/Exercises/Problems 449

14 PERIODIC MOTION 457

14.1 Describing Oscillation 457
14.2 Simple Harmonic Motion 459
14.3 Energy in Simple Harmonic Motion 466
14.4 Applications of Simple Harmonic Motion 470
14.5 The Simple Pendulum 474
14.6 The Physical Pendulum 475
14.7 Damped Oscillations 477
14.8 Forced Oscillations and Resonance 479
Summary 481
Guided Practice 483
Questions/Exercises/Problems 484

WAVES/ACOUSTICS

15 MECHANICAL WAVES 492

15.1 Types of Mechanical Waves 492
15.2 Periodic Waves 494
15.3 Mathematical Description of a Wave 497
15.4 Speed of a Transverse Wave 502
15.5 Energy in Wave Motion 506
15.6 Wave Interference, Boundary Conditions, and Superposition 509
15.7 Standing Waves on a String 511
15.8 Normal Modes of a String 514
Summary 519
Guided Practice 520
Questions/Exercises/Problems 521

16 SOUND AND HEARING 529

16.1 Sound Waves 529
16.2 Speed of Sound Waves 534
16.3 Sound Intensity 538
16.4 Standing Sound Waves and Normal Modes 542
16.5 Resonance and Sound 546
16.6 Interference of Waves 548
16.7 Beats 550
16.8 The Doppler Effect 552
16.9 Shock Waves 557
Summary 559
Guided Practice 561
Questions/Exercises/Problems 562

THERMODYNAMICS

17 TEMPERATURE AND HEAT 569

17.1 Temperature and Thermal Equilibrium 569
17.2 Thermometers and Temperature Scales 571
17.3 Thermal Expansion 574
17.4 Quantity of Heat 580
17.5 Calorimetry and Phase Changes 583
17.6 Mechanisms of Heat Transfer 589
Summary 596
Guided Practice 597
Questions/Exercises/Problems 598

18 THERMAL PROPERTIES OF MATTER 607

18.1 Equations of State 607
18.2 Molecular Properties of Matter 613
18.3 Kinetic-Molecular Model of an Ideal Gas 616
18.4 Heat Capacities 622
18.5 Molecular Speeds 625
18.6 Phases of Matter 627
Summary 630
Guided Practice 631
Questions/Exercises/Problems 632

19 THE FIRST LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS 641

19.1 Thermodynamic Systems 641
19.2 Work Done During Volume Changes 643
19.3 Paths Between Thermodynamic States 645
19.4 Internal Energy and the First Law of Thermodynamics 646
19.5 Kinds of Thermodynamic Processes 651
19.6 Internal Energy of an Ideal Gas 653
19.7 Heat Capacities of an Ideal Gas 654
19.8 Adiabatic Processes for an Ideal Gas 657
Summary 660
Guided Practice 661
Questions/Exercises/Problems 662

20 THE SECOND LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS 670

20.1 Directions of Thermodynamic Processes 670
20.2 Heat Engines 672
20.3 Internal-Combustion Engines 675
20.4 Refrigerators 677
20.5 The Second Law of Thermodynamics 679
20.6 The Carnot Cycle 681
20.7 Entropy 687
20.8 Microscopic Interpretation of Entropy 693
Summary 697
Guided Practice 698
Questions/Exercises/Problems 699

ELECTROMAGNETISM

21 ELECTRIC CHARGE AND ELECTRIC FIELD 706

21.1 Electric Charge 707
21.2 Conductors, Insulators, and Induced Charges 710
21.3 Coulomb's Law 713
21.4 Electric Field and Electric Forces 718
21.5 Electric-Field Calculations 722
21.6 Electric Field Lines 728
21.7 Electric Dipoles 729
Summary 734
Guided Practice 735
Questions/Exercises/Problems 736

22 GAUSS'S LAW 746

22.1 Charge and Electric Flux 746
22.2 Calculating Electric Flux 749
22.3 Gauss's Law 753
22.4 Applications of Gauss's Law 757
22.5 Charges on Conductors 762
Summary 766
Guided Practice 767
Questions/Exercises/Problems 768

23 ELECTRIC POTENTIAL 775

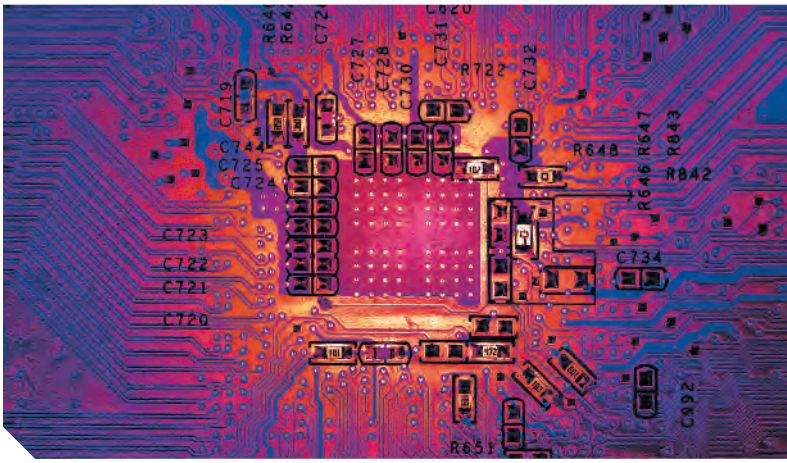
23.1 Electric Potential Energy 775
23.2 Electric Potential 782
23.3 Calculating Electric Potential 788
23.4 Equipotential Surfaces 792
23.5 Potential Gradient 795
Summary 798
Guided Practice 799
Questions/Exercises/Problems 800

24 CAPACITANCE AND DIELECTRICS 809

24.1 Capacitors and Capacitance 810
24.2 Capacitors in Series and Parallel 814
24.3 Energy Storage in Capacitors and Electric-Field Energy 818
24.4 Dielectrics 821
24.5 Molecular Model of Induced Charge 827
24.6 Gauss's Law in Dielectrics 829
Summary 830
Guided Practice 831
Questions/Exercises/Problems 832

25 CURRENT, RESISTANCE, AND ELECTROMOTIVE FORCE 840

25.1 Current 841
25.2 Resistivity 844
25.3 Resistance 847



25.4 Electromotive Force and Circuits 850
25.5 Energy and Power in Electric Circuits 856
25.6 Theory of Metallic Conduction 860
Summary 863
Guided Practice 864
Questions/Exercises/Problems 865

26 DIRECT-CURRENT CIRCUITS 872

26.1 Resistors in Series and Parallel 872
26.2 Kirchhoff's Rules 877
26.3 Electrical Measuring Instruments 882
26.4 *R-C* Circuits 886
26.5 Power Distribution Systems 891
Summary 895
Guided Practice 896
Questions/Exercises/Problems 897

27 MAGNETIC FIELD AND MAGNETIC FORCES 906

27.1 Magnetism 906
27.2 Magnetic Field 908
27.3 Magnetic Field Lines and Magnetic Flux 912
27.4 Motion of Charged Particles in a Magnetic Field 916
27.5 Applications of Motion of Charged Particles 919
27.6 Magnetic Force on a Current-Carrying Conductor 921
27.7 Force and Torque on a Current Loop 925
27.8 The Direct-Current Motor 930
27.9 The Hall Effect 932
Summary 934
Guided Practice 935
Questions/Exercises/Problems 936

28 SOURCES OF MAGNETIC FIELD 946

28.1 Magnetic Field of a Moving Charge 946
28.2 Magnetic Field of a Current Element 949

28.3 Magnetic Field of a Straight Current-Carrying Conductor 951
28.4 Force Between Parallel Conductors 954
28.5 Magnetic Field of a Circular Current Loop 955
28.6 Ampere's Law 958
28.7 Applications of Ampere's Law 961
28.8 Magnetic Materials 965
Summary 970
Guided Practice 971
Questions/Exercises/Problems 972

29 ELECTROMAGNETIC INDUCTION 981

29.1 Induction Experiments 982
29.2 Faraday's Law 983
29.3 Lenz's Law 990
29.4 Motional EMF 993
29.5 Induced Electric Fields 995
29.6 Eddy Currents 997
29.7 Displacement Current and Maxwell's Equations 998
29.8 Superconductivity 1003
Summary 1005
Guided Practice 1006
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1007

30 INDUCTANCE 1016

30.1 Mutual Inductance 1016
30.2 Self-Inductance and Inductors 1020
30.3 Magnetic-Field Energy 1023
30.4 The *R*-*L* Circuit 1026
30.5 The *L*-*C* Circuit 1030
30.6 The *L*-*R*-*C* Series Circuit 1035
Summary 1037
Guided Practice 1038
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1039

31 ALTERNATING CURRENT 1046

31.1 Phasors and Alternating Currents 1046
31.2 Resistance and Reactance 1050
31.3 The *L*-*R*-*C* Series Circuit 1055
31.4 Power in Alternating-Current Circuits 1059
31.5 Resonance in Alternating-Current Circuits 1062
31.6 Transformers 1064
Summary 1068
Guided Practice 1069
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1070

32 ELECTROMAGNETIC WAVES 1076

32.1 Maxwell's Equations and Electromagnetic Waves 1076
32.2 Plane Electromagnetic Waves and the Speed of Light 1080
32.3 Sinusoidal Electromagnetic Waves 1085
32.4 Energy and Momentum in Electromagnetic Waves 1089
32.5 Standing Electromagnetic Waves 1094
Summary 1097
Guided Practice 1098
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1099

OPTICS

33 THE NATURE AND PROPAGATION OF LIGHT 1105

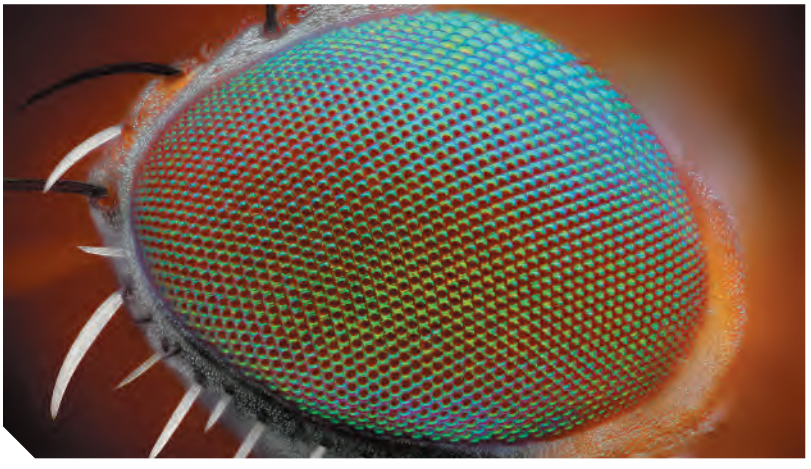
33.1 The Nature of Light 1105
33.2 Reflection and Refraction 1107
33.3 Total Internal Reflection 1113
33.4 Dispersion 1116
33.5 Polarization 1118
33.6 Scattering of Light 1125
33.7 Huygens's Principle 1127
Summary 1129
Guided Practice 1130
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1131

34 GEOMETRIC OPTICS 1138

34.1 Reflection and Refraction at a Plane Surface 1138
34.2 Reflection at a Spherical Surface 1142
34.3 Refraction at a Spherical Surface 1150
34.4 Thin Lenses 1155
34.5 Cameras 1163
34.6 The Eye 1166
34.7 The Magnifier 1170
34.8 Microscopes and Telescopes 1171
Summary 1176
Guided Practice 1177
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1178

35 INTERFERENCE 1187

35.1 Interference and Coherent Sources 1187
35.2 Two-Source Interference of Light 1191



35.3 Intensity in Interference Patterns 1194
35.4 Interference in Thin Films 1198
35.5 The Michelson Interferometer 1203
Summary 1205
Guided Practice 1206
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1207

36 DIFFRACTION 1213

36.1 Fresnel and Fraunhofer Diffraction 1213
36.2 Diffraction from a Single Slit 1215
36.3 Intensity in the Single-Slit Pattern 1218
36.4 Multiple Slits 1222
36.5 The Diffraction Grating 1224
36.6 X-Ray Diffraction 1228
36.7 Circular Apertures and Resolving Power 1231
36.8 Holography 1234
Summary 1236
Guided Practice 1236
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1237

MODERN PHYSICS

37 RELATIVITY 1245

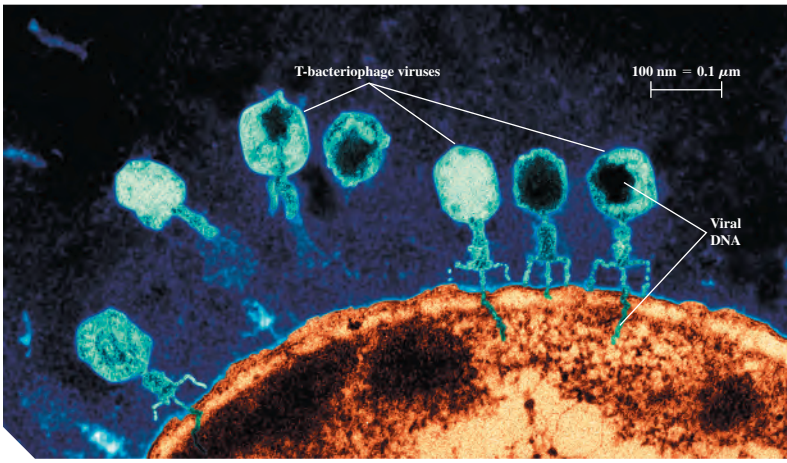
37.1 Invariance of Physical Laws 1245
37.2 Relativity of Simultaneity 1248
37.3 Relativity of Time Intervals 1250
37.4 Relativity of Length 1255
37.5 The Lorentz Transformations 1259
37.6 The Doppler Effect for Electromagnetic Waves 1263
37.7 Relativistic Momentum 1265
37.8 Relativistic Work and Energy 1267
37.9 Newtonian Mechanics and Relativity 1271
Summary 1272
Guided Practice 1273
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1274

38 PHOTONS: LIGHT WAVES BEHAVING AS PARTICLES 1281

38.1 Light Absorbed as Photons: The Photoelectric Effect 1281
38.2 Light Emitted as Photons: X-Ray Production 1287
38.3 Light Scattered as Photons: Compton Scattering and Pair Production 1290
38.4 Wave–Particle Duality, Probability, and Uncertainty 1293
Summary 1300
Guided Practice 1301
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1302

39 PARTICLES BEHAVING AS WAVES 1307

39.1 Electron Waves 1307
39.2 The Nuclear Atom and Atomic Spectra 1313



39.3 Energy Levels and the Bohr Model of the Atom 1318
39.4 The Laser 1328
39.5 Continuous Spectra 1331
39.6 The Uncertainty Principle Revisited 1336
Summary 1339
Guided Practice 1340
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1341

40 QUANTUM MECHANICS I: WAVE FUNCTIONS 1349

40.1 Wave Functions and the One-Dimensional Schrödinger Equation 1349
40.2 Particle in a Box 1359
40.3 Potential Wells 1364
40.4 Potential Barriers and Tunneling 1368
40.5 The Harmonic Oscillator 1371
40.6 Measurement in Quantum Mechanics 1375
Summary 1378
Guided Practice 1379
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1381

41 QUANTUM MECHANICS II: ATOMIC STRUCTURE 1388

41.1 The Schrödinger Equation in Three Dimensions 1388
41.2 Particle in a Three-Dimensional Box 1390
41.3 The Hydrogen Atom 1395
41.4 The Zeeman Effect 1403
41.5 Electron Spin 1406
41.6 Many-Electron Atoms and the Exclusion Principle 1413
41.7 X-Ray Spectra 1420
41.8 Quantum Entanglement 1423
Summary 1427
Guided Practice 1428
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1429

42 MOLECULES AND CONDENSED MATTER 1436

42.1 Types of Molecular Bonds 1436
42.2 Molecular Spectra 1439
42.3 Structure of Solids 1443
42.4 Energy Bands 1446
42.5 Free-Electron Model of Metals 1449
42.6 Semiconductors 1453
42.7 Semiconductor Devices 1456
42.8 Superconductivity 1461
Summary 1461
Guided Practice 1462
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1463

43 NUCLEAR PHYSICS 1470

43.1 Properties of Nuclei 1470
43.2 Nuclear Binding and Nuclear Structure 1475
43.3 Nuclear Stability and Radioactivity 1480
43.4 Activities and Half-Lives 1487
43.5 Biological Effects of Radiation 1491
43.6 Nuclear Reactions 1493
43.7 Nuclear Fission 1496
43.8 Nuclear Fusion 1500
Summary 1503
Guided Practice 1504
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1505

44 PARTICLE PHYSICS AND COSMOLOGY 1511

44.1 Fundamental Particles—A History 1511
44.2 Particle Accelerators and Detectors 1516
44.3 Particles and Interactions 1520
44.4 Quarks and Gluons 1526
44.5 The Standard Model and Beyond 1530
44.6 The Expanding Universe 1532
44.7 The Beginning of Time 1539
Summary 1547
Guided Practice 1548
Questions/Exercises/Problems 1549

APPENDICES

A The International System of Units A-1
B Unit Conversion Factors A-3
C The British System of Units A-3
D Useful Mathematical Relations A-6
E The Greek Alphabet A-7
F Periodic Table of the Elements A-8
G Numerical Constants A-9

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems A-11
Credits C-1
Index I-1

BRIEF CONTENTS

MECHANICS

1 Units, Physical Quantities, and Vectors 29
2 Motion Along a Straight Line 62
3 Motion in Two or Three Dimensions 94
4 Newton's Laws of Motion 128
5 Applying Newton's Laws 157
6 Work and Kinetic Energy 199
7 Potential Energy and Energy Conservation 229
8 Momentum, Impulse, and Collisions 263
9 Rotation of Rigid Bodies 300
10 Dynamics of Rotational Motion 330
11 Equilibrium and Elasticity 365
12 Fluid Mechanics 394
13 Gravitation 423
14 Periodic Motion 457

WAVES/ACOUSTICS

15 Mechanical Waves 492
16 Sound and Hearing 529

THERMODYNAMICS

17 Temperature and Heat 569
18 Thermal Properties of Matter 607
19 The First Law of Thermodynamics 641
20 The Second Law of Thermodynamics 670

ELECTROMAGNETISM

21 Electric Charge and Electric Field 706
22 Gauss's Law 746
23 Electric Potential 775
24 Capacitance and Dielectrics 809
25 Current, Resistance, and Electromotive Force 840
26 Direct-Current Circuits 872
27 Magnetic Field and Magnetic Forces 906
28 Sources of Magnetic Field 946
29 Electromagnetic Induction 981
30 Inductance 1016
31 Alternating Current 1046
32 Electromagnetic Waves 1076

OPTICS

33 The Nature and Propagation of Light 1105
34 Geometric Optics 1138
35 Interference 1187
36 Diffraction 1213

MODERN PHYSICS

37 Relativity 1245
38 Photons: Light Waves Behaving as Particles 1281
39 Particles Behaving as Waves 1307
40 Quantum Mechanics I: Wave Functions 1349
41 Quantum Mechanics II: Atomic Structure 1388
42 Molecules and Condensed Matter 1436
43 Nuclear Physics 1470
44 Particle Physics and Cosmology 1511

APPENDICES

A The International System of Units A-1
B Unit Conversion Factors A-3
C The British System of Units A-3
D Useful Mathematical Relations A-6
E The Greek Alphabet A-7
F Periodic Table of the Elements A-8
G Numerical Constants A-9

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems A-11
Credits C-1
Index I-1

? Tornadoes are spawned by severe thunderstorms, so being able to predict the path of thunderstorms is essential. If a thunderstorm is moving at 15 km/h in a direction 37° north of east, how far north does the thunderstorm move in 2.0 h? (i) 30 km; (ii) 24 km; (iii) 18 km; (iv) 12 km; (v) 9 km.

1 Units, Physical Quantities, and Vectors

Physics is one of the most fundamental of the sciences. Scientists of all disciplines use the ideas of physics, including chemists who study the structure of molecules, paleontologists who try to reconstruct how dinosaurs walked, and climatologists who study how human activities affect the atmosphere and oceans. Physics is also the foundation of all engineering and technology. No engineer could design a flat-screen TV, a prosthetic leg, or even a better mousetrap without first understanding the basic laws of physics.

The study of physics is also an adventure. You'll find it challenging, sometimes frustrating, occasionally painful, and often richly rewarding. If you've ever wondered why the sky is blue, how radio waves can travel through empty space, or how a satellite stays in orbit, you can find the answers by using fundamental physics. You'll come to see physics as a towering achievement of the human intellect in its quest to understand our world and ourselves.

In this opening chapter, we'll go over some important preliminaries that we'll need throughout our study. We'll discuss the nature of physical theory and the use of idealized models to represent physical systems. We'll introduce the systems of units used to describe physical quantities and discuss ways to describe the accuracy of a number. We'll look at examples of problems for which we can't (or don't want to) find a precise answer, but for which rough estimates can be useful and interesting. Finally, we'll study several aspects of vectors and vector algebra. We'll need vectors throughout our study of physics to help us describe and analyze physical quantities, such as velocity and force, that have direction as well as magnitude.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **1.1** What a physical theory is.
- **1.2** The four steps you can use to solve any physics problem.
- **1.3** Three fundamental quantities of physics and the units physicists use to measure them.
- **1.4** How to work with units in your calculations.
- **1.5** How to keep track of significant figures in your calculations.
- **1.6** How to make rough, order-of-magnitude estimates.
- **1.7** The difference between scalars and vectors, and how to add and subtract vectors graphically.
- **1.8** What the components of a vector are and how to use them in calculations.
- **1.9** What unit vectors are and how to use them with components to describe vectors.
- **1.10** Two ways to multiply vectors: the scalar (dot) product and the vector (cross) product.

1.1 THE NATURE OF PHYSICS

Physics is an *experimental* science. Physicists observe the phenomena of nature and try to find patterns that relate these phenomena. These patterns are called physical theories or, when they are very well established and widely used, physical laws or principles.

Figure **1.1** Two research laboratories.

(a) According to legend, Galileo investigated falling objects by dropping them from the Leaning Tower of Pisa, Italy, ...

... and he studied pendulum motion by observing the swinging chandelier in the adjacent cathedral.

(b) By doing experiments in apparent weightlessness on board the International Space Station, physicists have been able to make sensitive measurements that would be impossible in Earth's surface gravity.

CAUTION **The meaning of "theory"** A theory is *not* just a random thought or an unproven concept. Rather, a theory is an explanation of natural phenomena based on observation and accepted fundamental principles. An example is the well-established theory of biological evolution, which is the result of extensive research and observation by generations of biologists.

To develop a physical theory, a physicist has to ask appropriate questions, design experiments to try to answer the questions, and draw appropriate conclusions from the results. **Figure 1.1** shows two important facilities used for physics experiments.

Legend has it that Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) dropped light and heavy objects from the top of the Leaning Tower of Pisa (Fig. 1.1a) to find out whether their rates of fall were different. From examining the results of his experiments (which were actually much more sophisticated than in the legend), he deduced the theory that the acceleration of a freely falling object is independent of its weight.

The development of physical theories such as Galileo's often takes an indirect path, with blind alleys, wrong guesses, and the discarding of unsuccessful theories in favor of more promising ones. Physics is not simply a collection of facts and principles; it is also the *process* by which we arrive at general principles that describe how the physical universe behaves.

No theory is ever regarded as the ultimate truth. It's always possible that new observations will require that a theory be revised or discarded. Note that we can disprove a theory by finding behavior that is inconsistent with it, but we can never prove that a theory is always correct.

Getting back to Galileo, suppose we drop a feather and a cannonball. They certainly do *not* fall at the same rate. This does not mean that Galileo was wrong; it means that his theory was incomplete. If we drop the feather and the cannonball *in a vacuum* to eliminate the effects of the air, then they do fall at the same rate. Galileo's theory has a **range of validity:** It applies only to objects for which the force exerted by the air (due to air resistance and buoyancy) is much less than the weight. Objects like feathers or parachutes are clearly outside this range.

1.2 SOLVING PHYSICS PROBLEMS

At some point in their studies, almost all physics students find themselves thinking, "I understand the concepts, but I just can't solve the problems." But in physics, truly understanding a concept *means* being able to apply it to a variety of problems. Learning how to solve problems is absolutely essential; you don't *know* physics unless you can *do* physics.

How do you learn to solve physics problems? In every chapter of this book you'll find *Problem-Solving Strategies* that offer techniques for setting up and solving problems efficiently and accurately. Following each *Problem-Solving Strategy* are one or more worked *Examples* that show these techniques in action. (The *Problem-Solving Strategies* will also steer you away from some *incorrect* techniques that you may be tempted to use.) You'll also find additional examples that aren't associated with a particular *Problem-Solving Strategy.* In addition, at the end of each chapter you'll find a *Bridging Problem* that uses more than one of the key ideas from the chapter. Study these strategies and problems carefully, and work through each example for yourself on a piece of paper.

Different techniques are useful for solving different kinds of physics problems, which is why this book offers dozens of *Problem-Solving Strategies.* No matter what kind of problem you're dealing with, however, there are certain key steps that you'll always follow. (These same steps are equally useful for problems in math, engineering, chemistry, and many other fields.) In this book we've organized these steps into four stages of solving a problem.

All of the *Problem-Solving Strategies* and *Examples* in this book will follow these four steps. (In some cases we'll combine the first two or three steps.) We encourage you to follow these same steps when you solve problems yourself. You may find it useful to remember the acronym ***I SEE***—short for *Identify, Set up, Execute,* and *Evaluate.*

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 1.1 Solving Physics Problems

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:*

- Use the physical conditions stated in the problem to help you decide which physics concepts are relevant.
- Identify the **target variables** of the problem—that is, the quantities whose values you're trying to find, such as the speed at which a projectile hits the ground, the intensity of a sound made by a siren, or the size of an image made by a lens.
- Identify the known quantities, as stated or implied in the problem. This step is essential whether the problem asks for an algebraic expression or a numerical answer.

SET UP *the problem*:

- Given the concepts, known quantities, and target variables that you found in the IDENTIFY step, choose the equations that you'll use to solve the problem and decide how you'll use them. Study the worked examples in this book for tips on how to select the proper equations. If this seems challenging, don't worry—you'll get better with practice!
- Make sure that the variables you have identified correlate exactly with those in the equations.
- If appropriate, draw a sketch of the situation described in the problem. (Graph paper and a ruler will help you make clear, useful sketches.)

EXECUTE *the solution*:

- Here's where you'll "do the math" with the equations that you selected in the SET UP step to solve for the target variables that you found in the IDENTIFY step. Study the worked examples to see what's involved in this step.

EVALUATE *your answer:*

- Check your answer from the SOLVE step to see if it's reasonable. (If you're calculating how high a thrown baseball goes, an answer of 1.0 mm is unreasonably small and an answer of 100 km is unreasonably large.) If your answer includes an algebraic expression, confirm that it correctly represents what would happen if the variables in it had very large or very small values.
- For future reference, make note of any answer that represents a quantity of particular significance. Ask yourself how you might answer a more general or more difficult version of the problem you have just solved.

Idealized Models

In everyday conversation we use the word "model" to mean either a small-scale replica, such as a model railroad, or a person who displays articles of clothing (or the absence thereof). In physics a **model** is a simplified version of a physical system that would be too complicated to analyze in full detail.

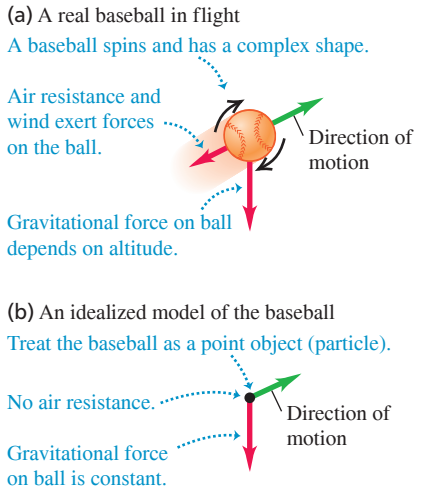
For example, suppose we want to analyze the motion of a thrown baseball (**Fig. 1.2a**). How complicated is this problem? The ball is not a perfect sphere (it has raised seams), and it spins as it moves through the air. Air resistance and wind influence its motion, the ball's weight varies a little as its altitude changes, and so on. If we try to include all these effects, the analysis gets hopelessly complicated. Instead, we invent a simplified version of the problem. We ignore the size, shape, and rotation of the ball by representing it as a point object, or **particle.** We ignore air resistance by making the ball move in a vacuum, and we make the weight constant. Now we have a problem that is simple enough to deal with (Fig. 1.2b). We'll analyze this model in detail in Chapter 3.

We have to overlook quite a few minor effects to make an idealized model, but we must be careful not to neglect too much. If we ignore the effects of gravity completely, then our model predicts that when we throw the ball up, it will go in a straight line and disappear into space. A useful model simplifies a problem enough to make it manageable, yet keeps its essential features.

The validity of the predictions we make using a model is limited by the validity of the model. For example, Galileo's prediction about falling objects (see Section 1.1) corresponds to an idealized model that does not include the effects of air resistance. This model works fairly well for a dropped cannonball, but not so well for a feather.

Idealized models play a crucial role throughout this book. Watch for them in discussions of physical theories and their applications to specific problems.

Figure 1.2 To simplify the analysis of (a) a baseball in flight, we use (b) an idealized model.



1.3 STANDARDS AND UNITS

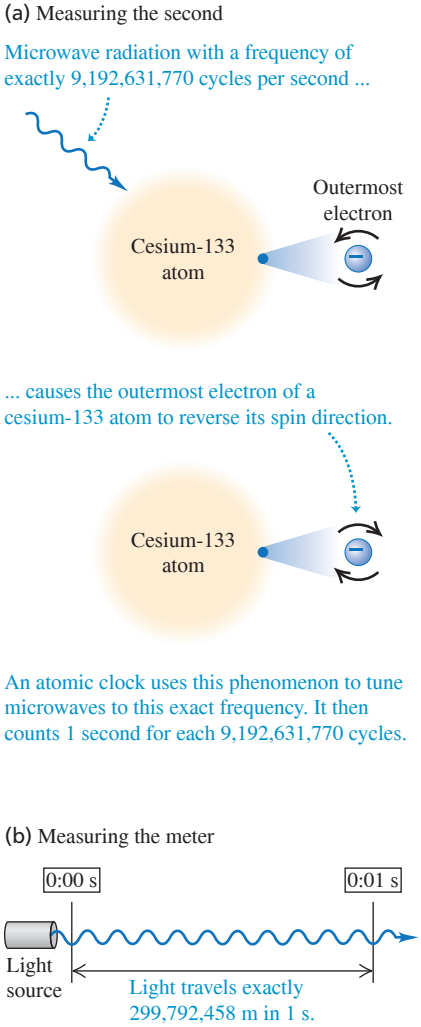
As we learned in Section 1.1, physics is an experimental science. Experiments require measurements, and we generally use numbers to describe the results of measurements. Any number that is used to describe a physical phenomenon quantitatively is called

a **physical quantity.** For example, two physical quantities that describe you are your weight and your height. Some physical quantities are so fundamental that we can define them only by describing how to measure them. Such a definition is called an **operational definition.** Two examples are measuring a distance by using a ruler and measuring a time interval by using a stopwatch. In other cases we define a physical quantity by describing how to calculate it from other quantities that we *can* measure. Thus we might define the average speed of a moving object as the distance traveled (measured with a ruler) divided by the time of travel (measured with a stopwatch).

When we measure a quantity, we always compare it with some reference standard. When we say that a basketball hoop is 3.05 meters above the ground, we mean that this distance is 3.05 times as long as a meter stick, which we define to be 1 meter long. Such a standard defines a **unit** of the quantity. The meter is a unit of distance, and the second is a unit of time. When we use a number to describe a physical quantity, we must always specify the unit that we are using; to describe a distance as simply "3.05" wouldn't mean anything.

To make accurate, reliable measurements, we need units of measurement that do not change and that can be duplicated by observers in various locations. The system of units used by scientists and engineers around the world is commonly called "the metric system," but since 1960 it has been known officially as the **International System,** or **SI** (the abbreviation for its French name, *Système International*). Appendix A gives a list of all SI units as well as definitions of the most fundamental units. The United States and a few other countries use the British System of Units. Appendix C gives a list of British units as well as their definitions.

Figure **1.3** The measurements used to determine (a) the duration of a second and (b) the length of a meter. These measurements are useful for setting standards because they give the same results no matter where they are made.



Time

From 1889 until 1967, the unit of time was defined as a certain fraction of the mean solar day, the average time between successive arrivals of the sun at its highest point in the sky. The present standard, adopted in 1967, is much more precise. It is based on an atomic clock, which uses the energy difference between the two lowest energy states of the cesium atom (^{133}Cs). When bombarded by microwaves of precisely the proper frequency, cesium atoms undergo a transition from one of these states to the other. One **second** (abbreviated s) is defined as the time required for 9,192,631,770 cycles of this microwave radiation (**Fig. 1.3a**).

Length

In 1960 an atomic standard for the meter was also established, using the wavelength of the orange-red light emitted by excited atoms of krypton (^{86}Kr). From this length standard, the speed of light in vacuum was measured to be 299,792,458 m/s. In November 1983, the length standard was changed again so that the speed of light in vacuum was *defined* to be precisely 299,792,458 m/s. Hence the new definition of the **meter** (abbreviated m) is the distance that light travels in vacuum in 1/299,792,458 second (Fig. 1.3b). This modern definition provides a much more precise standard of length than the one based on a wavelength of light.

Mass

Until recently the unit of mass, the **kilogram** (abbreviated kg), was defined to be the mass of a metal cylinder kept at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures in France (**Fig. 1.4**). This was a very inconvenient standard to use. Since 2018 the value of the kilogram has been based on a fundamental constant of nature called *Planck's constant* (symbol h), whose defined value $h = 6.62607015 \times 10^{-34}$ kg · m^2/s is related to those of the kilogram, meter, and second. Given the values of the meter and the second, the masses of objects can be experimentally determined in terms of h. (We'll explain the meaning of h in Chapter 28.) The *gram* (which is not a fundamental unit) is 0.001 kilogram.

Other *derived units* can be formed from the fundamental units. For example, the units of speed are meters per second, or m/s; these are the units of length (m) divided by the units of time (s).

Unit Prefixes

Once we have defined the fundamental units, it is easy to introduce larger and smaller units for the same physical quantities. In the metric system these other units are related to the fundamental units (or, in the case of mass, to the gram) by multiples of 10 or $\frac{1}{10}$. Thus one kilometer (1 km) is 1000 meters, and one centimeter (1 cm) is $\frac{1}{100}$ meter. We usually express multiples of 10 or $\frac{1}{10}$ in exponential notation: $1000 = 10^3$, $\frac{1}{1000} = 10^{-3}$, and so on. With this notation, $1\text{ km} = 10^3\text{ m}$ and $1\text{ cm} = 10^{-2}\text{ m}$.

The names of the additional units are derived by adding a **prefix** to the name of the fundamental unit. For example, the prefix "kilo-," abbreviated k, always means a unit larger by a factor of 1000; thus

$$1\text{ kilometer} = 1\text{ km} = 10^3\text{ meters} = 10^3\text{ m}$$

$$1\text{ kilogram} = 1\text{ kg} = 10^3\text{ grams} = 10^3\text{ g}$$

$$1\text{ kilowatt} = 1\text{ kW} = 10^3\text{ watts} = 10^3\text{ W}$$

A table in Appendix A lists the standard SI units, with their meanings and abbreviations.

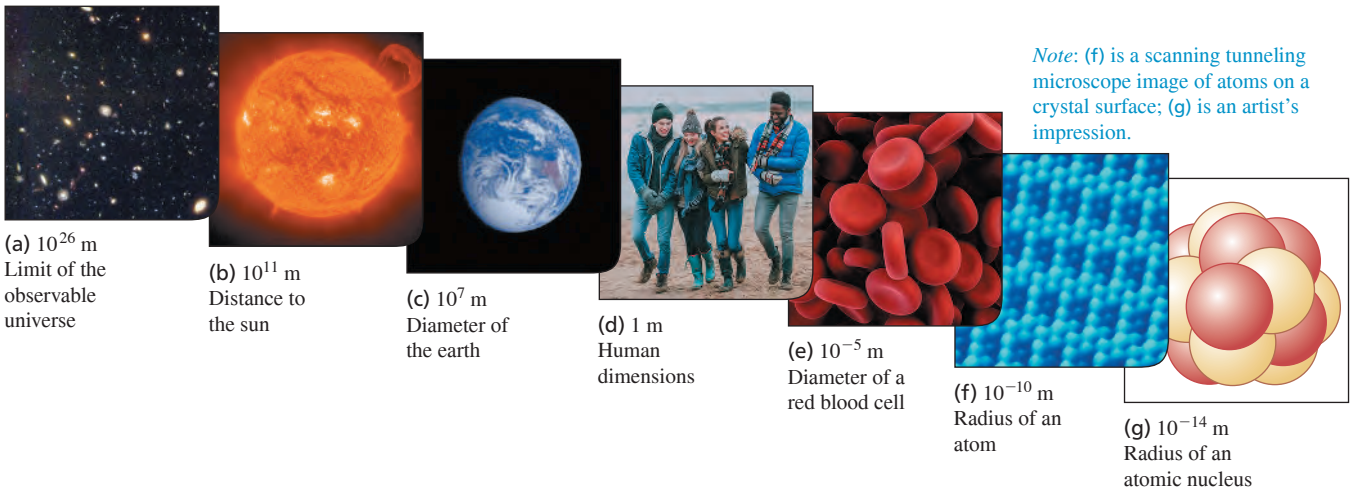
Table 1.1 gives some examples of the use of multiples of 10 and their prefixes with the units of length, mass, and time. **Figure 1.5** (next page) shows how these prefixes are used to describe both large and small distances.

Figure **1.4** Until 2018 a metal cylinder was used to define the value of the kilogram. (The one shown here, a copy of the one in France, was maintained by the U. S. National Institute of Standards and Technology.) Today the kilogram is defined in terms of one of the fundamental constants of nature.

TABLE 1.1 Some Units of Length, Mass, and Time

Length	Mass	Time
1 nanometer $= 1\text{ nm} = 10^{-9}\text{ m}$ (a few times the size of the largest atom)	1 microgram $= 1\ \mu\text{g} = 10^{-6}\text{ g} = 10^{-9}\text{ kg}$ (mass of a very small dust particle)	1 nanosecond $= 1\text{ ns} = 10^{-9}\text{ s}$ (time for light to travel 0.3 m)
1 micrometer $= 1\ \mu\text{m} = 10^{-6}\text{ m}$ (size of some bacteria and other cells)	1 milligram $= 1\text{ mg} = 10^{-3}\text{ g} = 10^{-6}\text{ kg}$ (mass of a grain of salt)	1 microsecond $= 1\ \mu\text{s} = 10^{-6}\text{ s}$ (time for space station to move 8 mm)
1 millimeter $= 1\text{ mm} = 10^{-3}\text{ m}$ (diameter of the point of a ballpoint pen)	1 gram $= 1\text{ g} = 10^{-3}\text{ kg}$ (mass of a paper clip)	1 millisecond $= 1\text{ ms} = 10^{-3}\text{ s}$ (time for a plane flying at cruising speed to travel 25 cm)
1 centimeter $= 1\text{ cm} = 10^{-2}\text{ m}$ (diameter of your little finger)		
1 kilometer $= 1\text{ km} = 10^3\text{ m}$ (distance in a 10 minute walk)		

Figure **1.5** Some typical lengths in the universe.



(a) 10^{26} m
Limit of the observable universe

(b) 10^{11} m
Distance to the sun

(c) 10^{7} m
Diameter of the earth

(d) 1 m
Human dimensions

(e) 10^{-5} m
Diameter of a red blood cell

(f) 10^{-10} m
Radius of an atom

(g) 10^{-14} m
Radius of an atomic nucleus

Note: (f) is a scanning tunneling microscope image of atoms on a crystal surface; (g) is an artist's impression.

1.4 USING AND CONVERTING UNITS

We use equations to express relationships among physical quantities, represented by algebraic symbols. Each algebraic symbol always denotes both a number and a unit. For example, d might represent a distance of 10 m, t a time of 5 s, and v a speed of 2 m/s.

An equation must always be **dimensionally consistent.** You can't add apples and automobiles; two terms may be added or equated only if they have the same units. For example, if an object moving with constant speed v travels a distance d in a time t, these quantities are related by the equation

$$d = vt$$

If d is measured in meters, then the product vt must also be expressed in meters. Using the above numbers as an example, we may write

$$10\ \text{m} = \left(2\ \frac{\text{m}}{\cancel{\text{s}}}\right)(5\ \cancel{\text{s}})$$

Because the unit s in the denominator of m/s cancels, the product has units of meters, as it must. In calculations, units are treated just like algebraic symbols with respect to multiplication and division.

CAUTION **Always use units in calculations** Make it a habit to *always* write numbers with the correct units and carry the units through the calculation as in the example above. This provides a very useful check. If at some stage in a calculation you find that an equation or an expression has inconsistent units, you know you have made an error. In this book we'll *always* carry units through all calculations, and we strongly urge you to follow this practice when you solve problems.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 1.2 Unit Conversions

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* In most cases, it's best to use the fundamental SI units (lengths in meters, masses in kilograms, and times in seconds) in every problem. If you need the answer to be in a different set of units (such as kilometers, grams, or hours), wait until the end of the problem to make the conversion.

SET UP *the problem* and **EXECUTE** *the solution:* Units are multiplied and divided just like ordinary algebraic symbols. This gives us an easy way to convert a quantity from one set of units to another: Express the same physical quantity in two different units and form an equality.

For example, when we say that 1 min = 60 s, we don't mean that the number 1 is equal to the number 60; rather, we mean that 1 min represents the same physical time interval as 60 s. For this reason, the ratio (1 min)/(60 s) equals 1, as does its reciprocal, (60 s)/(1 min). We may multiply a quantity by either of these factors (which we call *unit multipliers*) without changing that quantity's physical meaning. For example, to find the number of seconds in 3 min, we write

$$3\ \text{min} = (3\ \cancel{\text{min}})\left(\frac{60\ \text{s}}{1\ \cancel{\text{min}}}\right) = 180\ \text{s}$$

EVALUATE *your answer:* If you do your unit conversions correctly, unwanted units will cancel, as in the example above. If, instead, you had multiplied 3 min by (1 min)/(60 s), your result would have been the nonsensical $\frac{1}{20}$ min^2/s. To be sure you convert units properly, include the units at *all* stages of the calculation.

Finally, check whether your answer is reasonable. For example, the result 3 min = 180 s is reasonable because the second is a smaller unit than the minute, so there are more seconds than minutes in the same time interval.

EXAMPLE 1.1 Converting speed units

The world land speed record of 1228.0 km/h was set on October 15, 1997, by Andy Green in the jet-engine car *Thrust SSC*. Express this speed in meters per second.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE We need to convert the units of a speed from km/h to m/s. We must therefore use unit multipliers that relate (i) kilometers to meters and (ii) hours to seconds. We have 1 km = 1000 m, and 1 h = 3600 s. We set up the conversion as follows, which ensures that all the desired cancellations by division take place:

$$1228.0\ \text{km/h} = \left(1228.0\ \frac{\cancel{\text{km}}}{\cancel{\text{h}}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \text{m}}{1\ \cancel{\text{km}}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{\text{h}}}{3600\ \text{s}}\right)$$
$$= 341.1\ \text{m/s}$$

EVALUATE This example shows a useful rule: A speed expressed in m/s is the value expressed in km/h divided by 3.6 (hence, between one third and one quarter of the value in km/h). A speed expressed in km/h is the value expressed in m/s times 3.6. For example 20 m/s = 72 km/h and 90 km/h = 25 m/s.

KEYCONCEPT To convert units, multiply by an appropriate unit multiplier.

EXAMPLE 1.2 Converting volume units

One of the world's largest cut diamonds is the First Star of Africa (mounted in the British Royal Sceptre and kept in the Tower of London). Its volume is 30.2 cubic centimeters. What is its volume in cubic millimeters? In cubic meters?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE Here we are to convert the units of a volume from cubic centimeters (cm^3) to both cubic millimeters (mm^3) and cubic meters (m^3). Since 1 cm = 10 mm we have

$$30.2\ \text{cm}^3 = (30.2\ \text{cm}^3)\left(\frac{10\ \text{mm}}{1\ \text{cm}}\right)^3$$
$$= (30.2)(10)^3\ \frac{\cancel{\text{cm}^3}\ \text{mm}^3}{\cancel{\text{cm}^3}} = 30{,}200\ \text{mm}^3$$

Since 1 m = 100 cm, we also have

$$30.2\ \text{cm}^3 = (30.2\ \text{cm}^3)\left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{100\ \text{cm}}\right)^3$$
$$= (30.2)\left(\frac{1}{100}\right)^3\ \frac{\cancel{\text{cm}^3}\ \text{m}^3}{\cancel{\text{cm}^3}} = 30.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3$$
$$= 3.02 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^3$$

EVALUATE Following the pattern of these conversions, can you show that 1 $\text{km}^3 = 10^9\ \text{m}^3$ and that 1 $\mu\text{m}^3 = 10^{-18}\ \text{m}^3$?

KEYCONCEPT If the units of a quantity are a product of simpler units, such as $\text{m}^3 = \text{m} \times \text{m} \times \text{m}$, use a product of unit multipliers to convert these units.

Figure 1.6 This spectacular mishap was the result of a very small percent error—traveling a few meters too far at the end of a journey of hundreds of thousands of meters.

1.5 UNCERTAINTY AND SIGNIFICANT FIGURES

Measurements always have uncertainties. If you measure the thickness of the cover of a hardbound version of this book using an ordinary ruler, your measurement is reliable to only the nearest millimeter, and your result will be 3 mm. It would be *wrong* to state this result as 3.00 mm; given the limitations of the measuring device, you can't tell whether the actual thickness is 3.00 mm, 2.85 mm, or 3.11 mm. But if you use a micrometer caliper, a device that measures distances reliably to the nearest 0.01 mm, the result will be 2.91 mm. The distinction between the measurements with a ruler and with a caliper is in their **uncertainty**; the measurement with a caliper has a smaller uncertainty. The uncertainty is also called the **error** because it indicates the maximum difference there is likely to be between the measured value and the true value. The uncertainty or error of a measured value depends on the measurement technique used.

We often indicate the **accuracy** of a measured value—that is, how close it is likely to be to the true value—by writing the number, the symbol $\pm$, and a second number indicating the uncertainty of the measurement. If the diameter of a steel rod is given as 56.47 ± 0.02 mm, this means that the true value is likely to be within the range from 56.45 mm to 56.49 mm. In a commonly used shorthand notation, the number $1.6454(21)$ means 1.6454 ± 0.0021. The numbers in parentheses show the uncertainty in the final digits of the main number.

We can also express accuracy in terms of the maximum likely **fractional error** or **percent error** (also called *fractional uncertainty* and *percent uncertainty*). A resistor labeled "47 ohms $\pm$ 10%" probably has a true resistance that differs from 47 ohms by no more than 10% of 47 ohms—that is, by about 5 ohms. The resistance is probably between 42 and 52 ohms. For the diameter of the steel rod given above, the fractional error is $(0.02 \text{ mm})/(56.47 \text{ mm})$, or about 0.0004; the percent error is $(0.0004)(100\%)$, or about 0.04%. Even small percent errors can be very significant (**Fig. 1.6**).

In many cases the uncertainty of a number is not stated explicitly. Instead, the uncertainty is indicated by the number of meaningful digits, or **significant figures,** in the measured value. We gave the thickness of the cover of the book as 2.91 mm, which has three significant figures. By this we mean that the first two digits are known to be correct, while the third digit is uncertain. The last digit is in the hundredths place, so the uncertainty is about 0.01 mm. Two values with the *same* number of significant figures may have *different* uncertainties; a distance given as 137 km also has three significant figures, but the uncertainty is about 1 km. A distance given as 0.25 km has two significant figures (the zero to the left of the decimal point doesn't count); if given as 0.250 km, it has three significant figures.

When you use numbers that have uncertainties to compute other numbers, the computed numbers are also uncertain. When numbers are multiplied or divided, the result can have no more significant figures than the factor with the fewest significant figures has. For example, $3.1416 \times 2.34 \times 0.58 = 4.3$. When we add and subtract numbers, it's the location of the decimal point that matters, not the number of significant figures. For example, $123.62 + 8.9 = 132.5$. Although 123.62 has an uncertainty of about 0.01, 8.9 has an uncertainty of about 0.1. So their sum has an uncertainty of about 0.1 and should be written as 132.5, not 132.52. **Table 1.2** summarizes these rules for significant figures.

To apply these ideas, suppose you want to verify the value of π, the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter. The true value of this ratio to ten digits is 3.141592654. To test this, you draw a large circle and measure its circumference and diameter to the nearest millimeter, obtaining the values 424 mm and 135 mm (**Fig. 1.7**). You enter these into your calculator and obtain the quotient $(424 \text{ mm})/(135 \text{ mm}) = 3.140740741$. This may seem to disagree with the true value of π, but keep in mind that each of your measurements has three significant figures, so your measured value of π can have only three significant figures. It should be stated simply as 3.14. Within the limit of three significant figures, your value does agree with the true value.

In the examples and problems in this book we usually give numerical values with three significant figures, so your answers should usually have no more than three significant figures. (Many numbers in the real world have even less accuracy. The speedometer in a car, for example, usually gives only two significant figures.) Even if you do the arithmetic with a

TABLE 1.2 Using Significant Figures

Multiplication or division:
Result can have no more significant figures than the factor with the fewest significant figures:

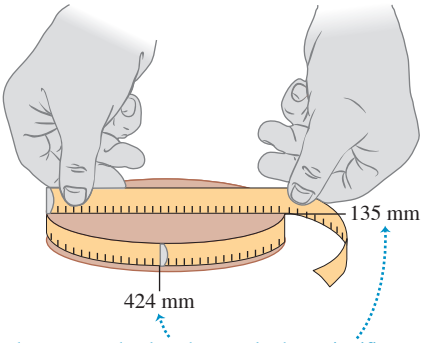
$$\frac{0.745 \times 2.2}{3.885} = 0.42$$

$$1.32578 \times 10^7 \times 4.11 \times 10^{-3} = 5.45 \times 10^4$$

Addition or subtraction:
Number of significant figures is determined by the term with the largest uncertainty (i.e., fewest digits to the right of the decimal point):

$$27.153 + 138.2 - 11.74 = 153.6$$

Figure 1.7 Determining the value of π from the circumference and diameter of a circle.



calculator that displays ten digits, a ten-digit answer would misrepresent the accuracy of the results. Always round your final answer to keep only the correct number of significant figures or, in doubtful cases, one more at most. In Example 1.1 it would have been wrong to state the answer as 341.01861 m/s. Note that when you reduce such an answer to the appropriate number of significant figures, you must *round,* not *truncate.* Your calculator will tell you that the ratio of 525 m to 311 m is 1.688102894; to three significant figures, this is 1.69, not 1.68.

Here's a special note about calculations that involve multiple steps: As you work, it's helpful to keep extra significant figures in your calculations. Once you have your final answer, round it to the correct number of significant figures. This will give you the most accurate results.

When we work with very large or very small numbers, we can show significant figures much more easily by using **scientific notation,** sometimes called **powers-of-10 notation.** The distance from the earth to the moon is about 384,000,000 m, but writing the number in this form doesn't indicate the number of significant figures. Instead, we move the decimal point eight places to the left (corresponding to dividing by 10^8) and multiply by 10^8; that is,

$$384{,}000{,}000\ \text{m} = 3.84 \times 10^8\ \text{m}$$

In this form, it is clear that we have three significant figures. The number 4.00×10^{-7} also has three significant figures, even though two of them are zeros. Note that in scientific notation the usual practice is to express the quantity as a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by the appropriate power of 10.

When an integer or a fraction occurs in an algebraic equation, we treat that number as having no uncertainty at all. For example, in the equation $v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0)$, which is Eq. (2.13) in Chapter 2, the coefficient 2 is *exactly* 2. We can consider this coefficient as having an infinite number of significant figures (2.000000 . . .). The same is true of the exponent 2 in v_x^2 and v_{0x}^2.

Finally, let's note that **precision** is not the same as *accuracy.* A cheap digital watch that gives the time as 10:35:17 a.m. is very *precise* (the time is given to the second), but if the watch runs several minutes slow, then this value isn't very *accurate.* On the other hand, a grandfather clock might be very accurate (that is, display the correct time), but if the clock has no second hand, it isn't very precise. A high-quality measurement is both precise *and* accurate.

EXAMPLE 1.3 Significant figures in multiplication

The rest energy E of an object with rest mass m is given by Albert Einstein's famous equation $E = mc^2$, where c is the speed of light in vacuum. Find E for an electron for which (to three significant figures) $m = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}$ kg. The SI unit for E is the joule (J); $1\ \text{J} = 1\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is the energy E. We are given the value of the mass m; from Section 1.3 (or Appendix G) the speed of light is $c = 2.99792458 \times 10^8$ m/s.

EXECUTE Substituting the values of m and c into Einstein's equation, we find

$$\begin{aligned} E &= (9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(2.99792458 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})^2 \\ &= (9.11)(2.99792458)^2(10^{-31})(10^8)^2\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 \\ &= (81.87659678)(10^{[-31+(2\times 8)]})\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 \\ &= 8.187659678 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Since the value of m was given to only three significant figures, we must round this to

$$E = 8.19 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 8.19 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{J}$$

EVALUATE While the rest energy contained in an electron may seem ridiculously small, on the atomic scale it is tremendous. Compare our answer to 10^{-19} J, the energy gained or lost by a single atom during a typical chemical reaction. The rest energy of an electron is about 1,000,000 times larger! (We'll discuss the significance of rest energy in Chapter 37.)

KEYCONCEPT When you are multiplying (or dividing) quantities, the result can have no more significant figures than the quantity with the fewest significant figures.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 1.5 The density of a material is equal to its mass divided by its volume. What is the density (in kg/m^3) of a rock of mass 1.80 kg and volume $6.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3$? (i) $3 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (ii) $3.0 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (iii) $3.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (iv) $3.000 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (v) any of these—all of these answers are mathematically equivalent.

ANSWER

(ii) Density $= (1.80\ \text{kg})/(6.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3) = 3.0 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$. When we multiply or divide, the number with the fewest significant figures controls the number of significant figures in the result.

1.6 ESTIMATES AND ORDERS OF MAGNITUDE

We have stressed the importance of knowing the accuracy of numbers that represent physical quantities. But even a very crude estimate of a quantity often gives us useful information. Sometimes we know how to calculate a certain quantity, but we have to guess at the data we need for the calculation. Or the calculation might be too complicated to carry out exactly, so we make rough approximations. In either case our result is also a guess, but such a guess can be useful even if it is uncertain by a factor of two, ten, or more. Such calculations are called **order-of-magnitude estimates.** The great Italian-American nuclear physicist Enrico Fermi (1901–1954) called them "back-of-the-envelope calculations."

Exercises 1.15 through 1.20 at the end of this chapter are of the estimating, or order-of-magnitude, variety. Most require guesswork for the needed input data. Don't try to look up a lot of data; make the best guesses you can. Even when they are off by a factor of ten, the results can be useful and interesting.

EXAMPLE 1.4 An order-of-magnitude estimate

You are writing an adventure novel in which the hero escapes with a billion dollars' worth of gold in his suitcase. Could anyone carry that much gold? Would it fit in a suitcase?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE Gold sells for about $40 a gram (the price per gram has varied between $34 and $45 over the past five years or so), or about $1000 for 25 grams, that is about $1 million for 25 kilograms. A billion (1×10^9) dollars' worth of gold has a mass 10^3 times greater, about 25,000 kilograms or 25 tonnes! No human could lift it, let alone carry it. (25 tonnes is about the same as the mass of five asian elephants or two double-decker buses.)

What would the density of gold need to be in order for this amount to fit in a suitcase? The same amount of water would have the volume of 25 m^3 or 25,000 liters (the density of water is 1 $g/cm^3 = 1000\ kg/m^3$ and 1 liter = 1 L = 10^{-3} m^3). This is more than 100 times the capacity of even the largest suitcase (120 to 160 L). Therefore, for 25,000 kilograms of gold to fit in a suitcase, gold would need to be at least 100 times denser than water. In other words, a cube of gold of side 10 cm would have a mass larger than 100 kg, which is certainly not the case. Gold is much denser than water, but not that dense. (The density of gold is actually 19.3 g/cm^3, which is roughly 20 times that of water; the densest naturally occurring element on earth is osmium which has the density of 22.6 g/cm^3.)

EVALUATE Clearly your novel needs rewriting. Maybe your hero could be satisfied with 1 million dollars' worth of gold? We have seen that the mass of gold in this case is about 25 kilograms, an amount which your hero should be able to carry and which would easily fit in a briefcase. If you want a more spectacular amount, try the calculation again with a suitcase full of five-carat (1-gram) diamonds, each worth $500,000. Would this work?

KEYCONCEPT To decide whether the numerical value of a quantity is reasonable, assess the quantity in terms of other quantities that you can estimate, even if only roughly.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 1.6 Can you estimate the total number of teeth in the mouths of all the students on your campus? (*Hint:* How many teeth are in your mouth? Count them!)

ANSWER The answer depends on how many students are enrolled at your campus.

APPLICATION Scalar Temperature, Vector Wind The comfort level on a wintry day depends on the temperature, a scalar quantity that can be positive or negative (say, +5°C or −20°C) but has no direction. It also depends on the wind velocity, a vector quantity with both magnitude and direction (for example, 15 km/h from the west).

1.7 VECTORS AND VECTOR ADDITION

Some physical quantities, such as time, temperature, mass, and density, can be described completely by a single number with a unit. But many other important quantities in physics have a *direction* associated with them and cannot be described by a single number. A simple example is the motion of an airplane: We must say not only how fast the plane is moving but also in what direction. The speed of the airplane combined with its direction of motion constitute a quantity called *velocity.* Another example is *force,* which in physics means a push or pull exerted on an object. Giving a complete description of a force means describing both how hard the force pushes or pulls on the object and the direction of the push or pull.

When a physical quantity is described by a single number, we call it a **scalar quantity.** In contrast, a **vector quantity** has both a **magnitude** (the "how much" or "how big" part) and a direction in space. Calculations that combine scalar quantities use the operations of ordinary arithmetic. For example, 6 kg + 3 kg = 9 kg, or 4×2 s = 8 s. However, combining vectors requires a different set of operations.

To understand more about vectors and how they combine, we start with the simplest vector quantity, **displacement.** Displacement is a change in the position of an object.

Displacement is a vector quantity because we must state not only how far the object moves but also in what direction. Walking 3 km north from your front door doesn't get you to the same place as walking 3 km southeast; these two displacements have the same magnitude but different directions.

We usually represent a vector quantity such as displacement by a single letter, such as $\vec{A}$ in **Fig. 1.8a**. In this book we always print vector symbols in ***boldface italic type with an arrow above them.*** We do this to remind you that vector quantities have different properties from scalar quantities; the arrow is a reminder that vectors have direction. When you handwrite a symbol for a vector, *always* write it with an arrow on top. If you don't distinguish between scalar and vector quantities in your notation, you probably won't make the distinction in your thinking either, and confusion will result.

We always *draw* a vector as a line with an arrowhead at its tip. The length of the line shows the vector's magnitude, and the direction of the arrowhead shows the vector's direction. Displacement is always a straight-line segment directed from the starting point to the ending point, even though the object's actual path may be curved (Fig. 1.8b). Note that displacement is not related directly to the total *distance* traveled. If the object were to continue past P_2 and then return to P_1, the displacement for the entire trip would be *zero* (Fig. 1.8c).

If two vectors have the same direction, they are **parallel.** If they have the same magnitude *and* the same direction, they are *equal,* no matter where they are located in space. The vector $\vec{A}'$ from point P_3 to point P_4 in **Fig. 1.9** has the same length and direction as the vector $\vec{A}$ from P_1 to P_2. These two displacements are equal, even though they start at different points. We write this as $\vec{A}' = \vec{A}$ in Fig. 1.9; the boldface equals sign emphasizes that equality of two vector quantities is not the same relationship as equality of two scalar quantities. Two vector quantities are equal only when they have the same magnitude *and* the same direction.

Vector $\vec{B}$ in Fig. 1.9, however, is not equal to $\vec{A}$ because its direction is *opposite* that of $\vec{A}$. We define the **negative of a vector** as a vector having the same magnitude as the original vector but the *opposite* direction. The negative of vector quantity $\vec{A}$ is denoted as $-\vec{A}$, and we use a boldface minus sign to emphasize the vector nature of the quantities. If $\vec{A}$ is 87 m south, then $-\vec{A}$ is 87 m north. Thus we can write the relationship between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in Fig. 1.9 as $\vec{A} = -\vec{B}$ or $\vec{B} = -\vec{A}$. When two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ have opposite directions, whether their magnitudes are the same or not, we say that they are **antiparallel.**

We usually represent the *magnitude* of a vector quantity by the same letter used for the vector, but in *lightface italic type* with *no* arrow on top. For example, if displacement vector $\vec{A}$ is 87 m south, then $A = 87$ m. An alternative notation is the vector symbol with vertical bars on both sides:

$$(\text{Magnitude of } \vec{A}) = A = |\vec{A}| \tag{1.1}$$

The magnitude of a vector quantity is a scalar quantity (a number) and is *always positive.* Note that a vector can never be equal to a scalar because they are different kinds of quantities. The expression "$\vec{A} = 6$ m" is just as wrong as "2 oranges = 3 apples"!

When we draw diagrams with vectors, it's best to use a scale similar to those used for maps. For example, a displacement of 5 km might be represented in a diagram by a vector 1 cm long, and a displacement of 10 km by a vector 2 cm long.

Figure **1.8** Displacement as a vector quantity.

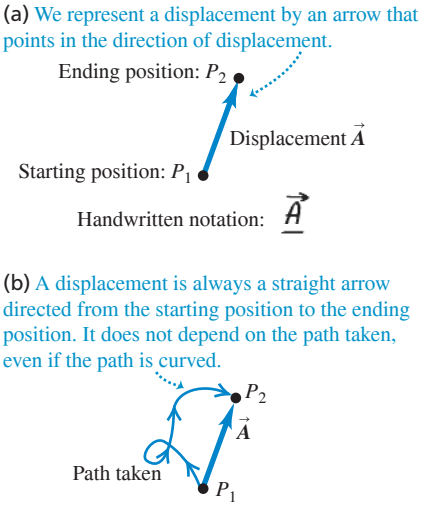
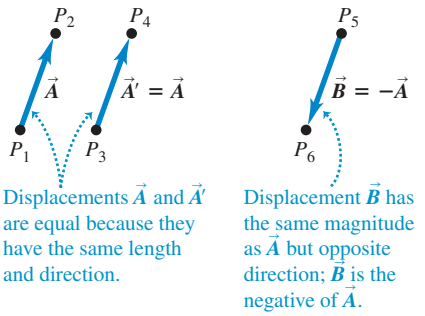


Figure **1.9** The meaning of vectors that have the same magnitude and the same or opposite direction.



Vector Addition and Subtraction

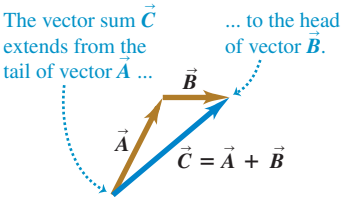
Suppose a particle undergoes a displacement $\vec{A}$ followed by a second displacement $\vec{B}$. The final result is the same as if the particle had started at the same initial point and undergone a single displacement $\vec{C}$ (**Fig. 1.10a,** next page). We call displacement $\vec{C}$ the **vector sum,** or **resultant,** of displacements $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. We express this relationship symbolically as

$$\vec{C} = \vec{A} + \vec{B} \tag{1.2}$$

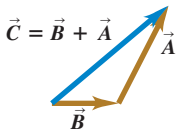
The boldface plus sign emphasizes that adding two vector quantities requires a geometrical process and is not the same operation as adding two scalar quantities such as $2 + 3 = 5$. In vector addition we usually place the *tail* of the *second* vector at the *head,* or tip, of the *first* vector (Fig. 1.10a).

Figure **1.10** Three ways to add two vectors.

(a) We can add two vectors by placing them head to tail.



(b) Adding them in reverse order gives the same result: $\vec{A} + \vec{B} = \vec{B} + \vec{A}$. The order doesn't matter in vector addition.



(c) We can also add two vectors by placing them tail to tail and constructing a parallelogram.

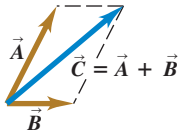
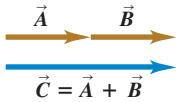
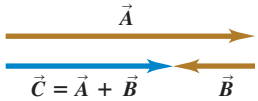


Figure **1.11** Adding vectors that are (a) parallel and (b) antiparallel.

(a) Only when vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are parallel does the magnitude of their vector sum $\vec{C}$ equal the sum of their magnitudes: $C = A + B$.



(b) When $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are antiparallel, the magnitude of their vector sum $\vec{C}$ equals the *difference* of their magnitudes: $C = |A - B|$.



If we make the displacements $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in reverse order, with $\vec{B}$ first and $\vec{A}$ second, the result is the same (Fig. 1.10b). Thus

$$\vec{C} = \vec{B} + \vec{A} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{A} + \vec{B} = \vec{B} + \vec{A} \tag{1.3}$$

This shows that the order of terms in a vector sum doesn't matter. In other words, vector addition obeys the *commutative* law.

Figure 1.10c shows another way to represent the vector sum: If we draw vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ with their tails at the same point, vector $\vec{C}$ is the diagonal of a parallelogram constructed with $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ as two adjacent sides.

CAUTION **Magnitudes in vector addition** It's a common error to conclude that if $\vec{C} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$, then magnitude C equals magnitude A plus magnitude B. In general, this conclusion is *wrong;* for the vectors shown in Fig. 1.10, $C < A + B$. The magnitude of $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$ depends on the magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ *and* on the angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. Only in the special case in which $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are *parallel* is the magnitude of $\vec{C} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$ equal to the sum of the magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ (**Fig. 1.11a**). When the vectors are *antiparallel* (Fig. 1.11b), the magnitude of $\vec{C}$ equals the *difference* of the magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. Be careful to distinguish between scalar and vector quantities, and you'll avoid making errors about the magnitude of a vector sum.

Figure 1.12a shows *three* vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$. To find the vector sum of all three, in Fig. 1.12b we first add $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ to give a vector sum $\vec{D}$; we then add vectors $\vec{C}$ and $\vec{D}$ by the same process to obtain the vector sum $\vec{R}$:

$$\vec{R} = (\vec{A} + \vec{B}) + \vec{C} = \vec{D} + \vec{C}$$

Alternatively, we can first add $\vec{B}$ and $\vec{C}$ to obtain vector $\vec{E}$ (Fig. 1.12c), and then add $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{E}$ to obtain $\vec{R}$:

$$\vec{R} = \vec{A} + (\vec{B} + \vec{C}) = \vec{A} + \vec{E}$$

We don't even need to draw vectors $\vec{D}$ and $\vec{E}$; all we need to do is draw $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ in succession, with the tail of each at the head of the one preceding it. The sum vector $\vec{R}$ extends from the tail of the first vector to the head of the last vector (Fig. 1.12d). The order makes no difference; Fig. 1.12e shows a different order, and you should try others. Vector addition obeys the *associative* law.

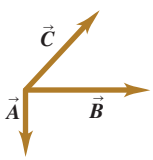
We can *subtract* vectors as well as add them. To see how, recall that vector $-\vec{A}$ has the same magnitude as $\vec{A}$ but the opposite direction. We define the difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$ of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ to be the vector sum of $\vec{A}$ and $-\vec{B}$:

$$\vec{A} - \vec{B} = \vec{A} + (-\vec{B}) \tag{1.4}$$

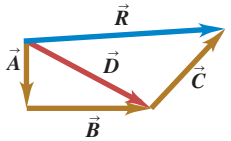
Figure 1.13 shows an example of vector subtraction.

Figure **1.12** Several constructions for finding the vector sum $\vec{A} + \vec{B} + \vec{C}$.

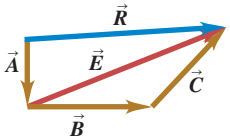
(a) To find the sum of these three vectors ...



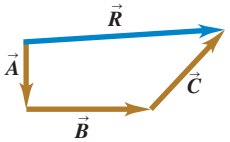
(b) ... add $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ to get $\vec{D}$ and then add $\vec{C}$ to $\vec{D}$ to get the final sum (resultant) $\vec{R}$ ...



(c) ... or add $\vec{B}$ and $\vec{C}$ to get $\vec{E}$ and then add $\vec{E}$ to $\vec{A}$ to get $\vec{R}$ ...



(d) ... or add $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ to get $\vec{R}$ directly ...



(e) ... or add $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ in any other order and still get $\vec{R}$.

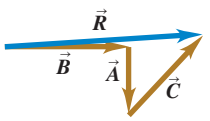
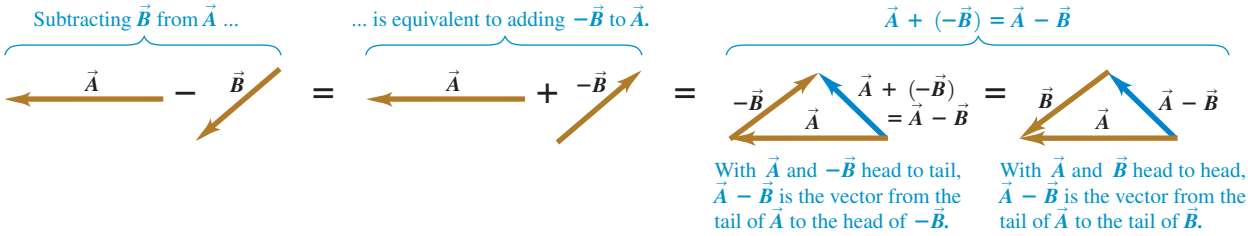


Figure 1.13 To construct the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$, you can either place the tail of $-\vec{B}$ at the head of $\vec{A}$ or place the two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ head to head.

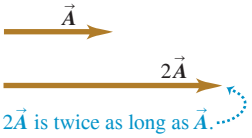


A vector quantity such as a displacement can be multiplied by a scalar quantity (an ordinary number). The displacement $2\vec{A}$ is a displacement (vector quantity) in the same direction as vector $\vec{A}$ but twice as long; this is the same as adding $\vec{A}$ to itself (**Fig. 1.14a**). In general, when we multiply a vector $\vec{A}$ by a scalar c, the result $c\vec{A}$ has magnitude $|c|A$ (the absolute value of c multiplied by the magnitude of vector $\vec{A}$). If c is positive, $c\vec{A}$ is in the same direction as $\vec{A}$; if c is negative, $c\vec{A}$ is in the direction opposite to $\vec{A}$. Thus $3\vec{A}$ is parallel to $\vec{A}$, while $-3\vec{A}$ is antiparallel to $\vec{A}$ (Fig. 1.14b).

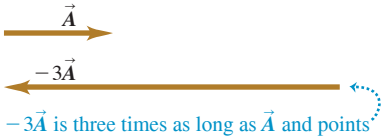
A scalar used to multiply a vector can also be a physical quantity. For example, you may be familiar with the relationship $\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$; the net force $\vec{F}$ (a vector quantity) that acts on an object is equal to the product of the object's mass m (a scalar quantity) and its acceleration $\vec{a}$ (a vector quantity). The direction of $\vec{F}$ is the same as that of $\vec{a}$ because m is positive, and the magnitude of $\vec{F}$ is equal to the mass m multiplied by the magnitude of $\vec{a}$. The unit of force is the unit of mass multiplied by the unit of acceleration.

Figure 1.14 Multiplying a vector by a scalar.

(a) Multiplying a vector by a positive scalar changes the magnitude (length) of the vector but not its direction.



(b) Multiplying a vector by a negative scalar changes its magnitude and reverses its direction.



EXAMPLE 1.5 Adding two vectors at right angles

A cross-country skier skis 1.00 km north and then 2.00 km east on a horizontal snowfield. How far and in what direction is she from the starting point?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The problem involves combining two displacements at right angles to each other. This vector addition amounts to solving a right triangle, so we can use the Pythagorean theorem and trigonometry. The target variables are the skier's straight-line distance and direction from her starting point. **Figure 1.15** is a scale diagram of the two displacements and the resultant net displacement. We denote the direction from the starting point by the angle ϕ (the Greek letter phi). The displacement appears to be a bit more than 2 km. Measuring the angle with a protractor indicates that ϕ is about 63°.

EXECUTE The distance from the starting point to the ending point is equal to the length of the hypotenuse:

$$\sqrt{(1.00\text{ km})^2 + (2.00\text{ km})^2} = 2.24\text{ km}$$

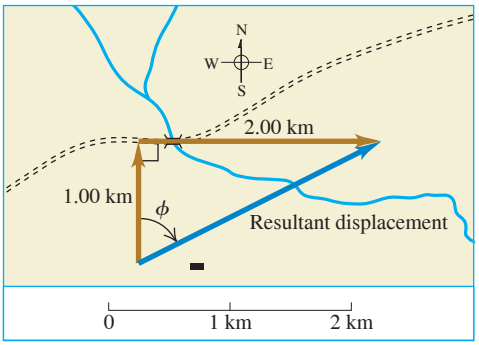
A little trigonometry (from Appendix D) allows us to find angle ϕ:

$$\tan\phi = \frac{\text{Opposite side}}{\text{Adjacent side}} = \frac{2.00\text{ km}}{1.00\text{ km}} = 2.00$$

$$\phi = \arctan 2.00 = 63.4°$$

We can describe the direction as 63.4° east of north or $90° - 63.4° = 26.6°$ north of east.

Figure 1.15 The vector diagram, drawn to scale, for a ski trip.



EVALUATE Our answers (2.24 km and $\phi = 63.4°$) are close to our predictions. In Section 1.8 we'll learn how to easily add two vectors *not* at right angles to each other.

KEYCONCEPT In every problem involving vector addition, draw the two vectors being added as well as the vector sum. The head-to-tail arrangement shown in Figs. 1.10a and 1.10b is easiest. This will help you to visualize the vectors and understand the direction of the vector sum. Drawing the vectors is equally important for problems involving vector subtraction (see Fig. 1.13).

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 1.7 Two displacement vectors, $\vec{S}$ and $\vec{T}$, have magnitudes $S = 3$ m and $T = 4$ m. Which of the following could be the magnitude of the difference vector $\vec{S} - \vec{T}$? (There may be more than one correct answer.) (i) 9 m; (ii) 7 m; (iii) 5 m; (iv) 1 m; (v) 0 m; (vi) −1 m.

ANSWER

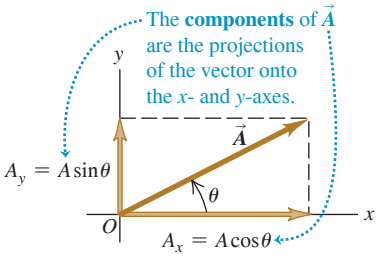
(ii), (iii), and (iv) Vector $-\vec{T}$ has the same magnitude as vector $\vec{T}$, so $\vec{S} - \vec{T} = \vec{S} + (-\vec{T})$ is the *sum* of one vector of magnitude 3 m and one of magnitude 4 m. This sum has magnitude 7 m if $\vec{S}$ and $-\vec{T}$ are parallel and magnitude 1 m if $\vec{S}$ and $-\vec{T}$ are antiparallel. The magnitude of $\vec{S} - \vec{T}$ is 5 m if $\vec{S}$ and $-\vec{T}$ are perpendicular, when vectors $\vec{S}$, $\vec{T}$, and $\vec{S} - \vec{T}$ form a 3–4–5 right triangle. Answer (i) is impossible because the magnitude of the sum of two vectors cannot be greater than the sum of the magnitudes; answer (v) is impossible because the sum of two vectors can be zero only if the two vectors are antiparallel and have the same magnitude; and answer (vi) is impossible because the magnitude of a vector cannot be negative.

1.8 COMPONENTS OF VECTORS

In Section 1.7 we added vectors by using a scale diagram and properties of right triangles. But calculations with right triangles work only when the two vectors are perpendicular. So we need a simple but general method for adding vectors. This is called the method of *components*.

To define what we mean by the components of a vector $\vec{A}$, we begin with a rectangular (Cartesian) coordinate system of axes (**Fig. 1.16**). If we think of $\vec{A}$ as a displacement vector, we can regard $\vec{A}$ as the sum of a displacement parallel to the x-axis and a displacement parallel to the y-axis. We use the numbers A_x and A_y to tell us how much displacement there is parallel to the x-axis and how much there is parallel to the y-axis, respectively. For example, if the $+x$-axis points east and the $+y$-axis points north, $\vec{A}$ in Fig. 1.16 could be the sum of a 2.00 m displacement to the east and a 1.00 m displacement to the north. Then $A_x = +2.00$ m and $A_y = +1.00$ m. We can use the same idea for any vectors, not just displacement vectors. The two numbers A_x and A_y are called the **components** of $\vec{A}$.

Figure **1.16** Representing a vector $\vec{A}$ in terms of its components A_x and A_y.



In this case, both A_x and A_y are positive.

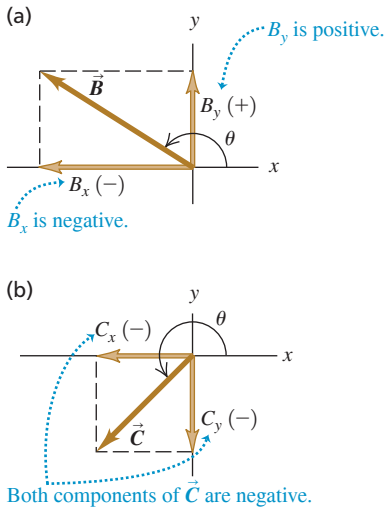
CAUTION **Components are not vectors** The components A_x and A_y of a vector $\vec{A}$ are numbers; they are *not* vectors themselves. This is why we print the symbols for components in lightface italic type with *no* arrow on top instead of in boldface italic with an arrow, which is reserved for vectors.

We can calculate the components of vector $\vec{A}$ if we know its magnitude A and its direction. We'll describe the direction of a vector by its angle relative to some reference direction. In Fig. 1.16 this reference direction is the positive x-axis, and the angle between vector $\vec{A}$ and the positive x-axis is θ (the Greek letter theta). Imagine that vector $\vec{A}$ originally lies along the $+x$-axis and that you then rotate it to its true direction, as indicated by the arrow in Fig. 1.16 on the arc for angle θ. If this rotation is from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis, as is the case in Fig. 1.16, then θ is *positive;* if the rotation is from the $+x$-axis toward the $-y$-axis, then θ is *negative*. Thus the $+y$-axis is at an angle of 90°, the $-x$-axis at 180°, and the $-y$-axis at 270° (or −90°). If θ is measured in this way, then from the definition of the trigonometric functions,

$$\frac{A_x}{A} = \cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{A_y}{A} = \sin\theta$$
$$A_x = A\cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad A_y = A\sin\theta \qquad (1.5)$$

(θ measured from the $+x$-axis, rotating toward the $+y$-axis)

Figure **1.17** The components of a vector may be positive or negative numbers.



In Fig. 1.16 A_x and A_y are positive. This is consistent with Eqs. (1.5); θ is in the first quadrant (between 0° and 90°), and both the cosine and the sine of an angle in this quadrant are positive. But in **Fig. 1.17a** the component B_x is negative and the component B_y is positive. (If the $+x$-axis points east and the $+y$-axis points north, $\vec{B}$ could represent a displacement of 2.00 m west and 1.00 m north. Since west is in the –x-direction and north is in the $+y$-direction, $B_x = -2.00$ m is negative and $B_y = +1.00$ m is positive.) Again,

this is consistent with Eqs. (1.5); now θ is in the second quadrant, so $\cos\theta$ is negative and $\sin\theta$ is positive. In Fig. 1.17b both C_x and C_y are negative (both $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ are negative in the third quadrant).

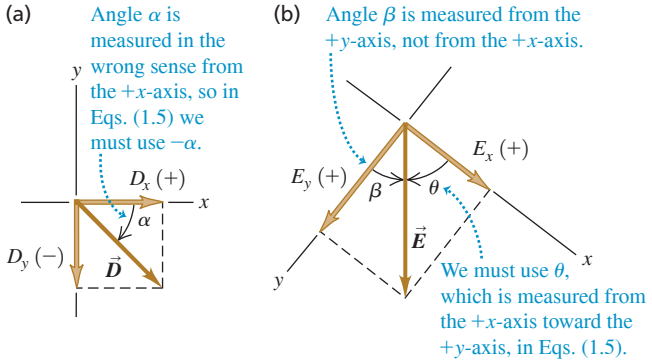
CAUTION **Relating a vector's magnitude and direction to its components** Equations (1.5) are correct *only* when the angle θ is measured from the positive x-axis. If the angle of the vector is given from a different reference direction or you use a different rotation direction, the relationships are different! Example 1.6 illustrates this point.

EXAMPLE 1.6 Finding components

(a) What are the x- and y-components of vector $\vec{D}$ in **Fig. 1.18a**? The magnitude of the vector is $D = 3.00$ m, and angle $\alpha = 45°$. (b) What are the x- and y-components of vector $\vec{E}$ in Fig. 1.18b? The magnitude of the vector is $E = 4.50$ m, and angle $\beta = 37.0°$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We can use Eqs. (1.5) to find the components of these vectors, but we must be careful: Neither angle α nor β in Fig. 1.18 is measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis. We estimate from the figure that the lengths of both components in part (a) are roughly 2 m, and that those in part (b) are 3 m and 4 m. The figure indicates the signs of the components.

Figure 1.18 Calculating the x- and y-components of vectors.



EXECUTE (a) The angle α (the Greek letter alpha) between the positive x-axis and $\vec{D}$ is measured toward the *negative* y-axis. The angle we must use in Eqs. (1.5) is $\theta = -\alpha = -45°$. We then find

$$D_x = D\cos\theta = (3.00\text{ m})(\cos(-45°)) = +2.1\text{ m}$$
$$D_y = D\sin\theta = (3.00\text{ m})(\sin(-45°)) = -2.1\text{ m}$$

Had we carelessly substituted $+45°$ for θ in Eqs. (1.5), our result for D_y would have had the wrong sign.

(b) The x- and y-axes in Fig. 1.18b are at right angles, so it doesn't matter that they aren't horizontal and vertical, respectively. But we can't use the angle β (the Greek letter beta) in Eqs. (1.5), because β is measured from the $+y$-axis. Instead, we must use the angle $\theta = 90.0° - \beta = 90.0° - 37.0° = 53.0°$. Then we find

$$E_x = E\cos 53.0° = (4.50\text{ m})(\cos 53.0°) = +2.71\text{ m}$$
$$E_y = E\sin 53.0° = (4.50\text{ m})(\sin 53.0°) = +3.59\text{ m}$$

EVALUATE Our answers to both parts are close to our predictions. But why do the answers in part (a) correctly have only two significant figures?

KEYCONCEPT When you are finding the components of a vector, always use a diagram of the vector and the coordinate axes to guide your calculations.

Using Components to Do Vector Calculations

Using components makes it relatively easy to do various calculations involving vectors. Let's look at three important examples: finding a vector's magnitude and direction, multiplying a vector by a scalar, and calculating the vector sum of two or more vectors.

1. **Finding a vector's magnitude and direction from its components.** We can describe a vector completely by giving either its magnitude and direction or its x- and y-components. Equations (1.5) show how to find the components if we know the magnitude and direction. We can also reverse the process: We can find the magnitude and direction if we know the components. By applying the Pythagorean theorem to Fig. 1.16, we find that the magnitude of vector $\vec{A}$ is

$$A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2} \tag{1.6}$$

(We always take the positive root.) Equation (1.6) is valid for any choice of x-axis and y-axis, as long as they are mutually perpendicular. The expression for the vector direction comes from the definition of the tangent of an angle. If θ is measured from

Figure **1.19** Drawing a sketch of a vector reveals the signs of its x- and y-components.

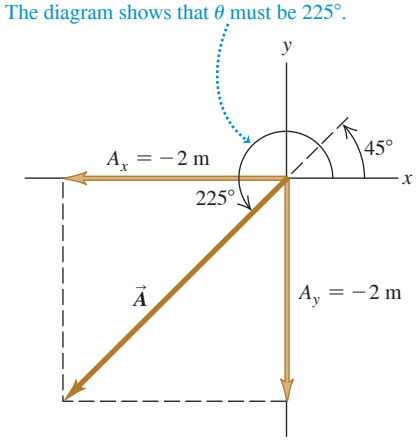


Figure **1.20** Finding the vector sum (resultant) of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ using components.

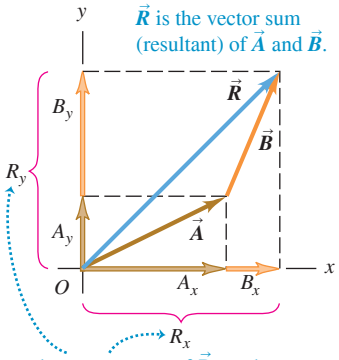
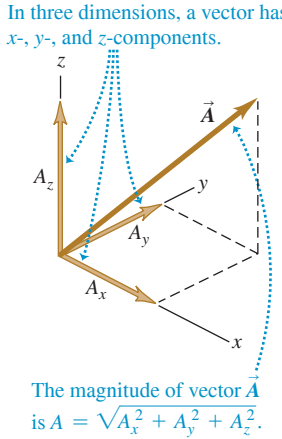


Figure **1.21** A vector in three dimensions.



the positive x-axis, and a positive angle is measured toward the positive y-axis (as in Fig. 1.16), then

$$\tan\theta = \frac{A_y}{A_x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \theta = \arctan\frac{A_y}{A_x} \tag{1.7}$$

We'll always use the notation arctan for the inverse tangent function (see Example 1.5 in Section 1.7). The notation $\tan^{-1}$ is also commonly used, and your calculator may have an INV or 2ND button to be used with the TAN button.

CAUTION **Finding the direction of a vector from its components** There's one complication in using Eqs. (1.7) to find θ: Any two angles that differ by 180° have the same tangent. For example, in **Fig. 1.19** the tangent of the angle θ is $\tan\theta = A_y/A_x = +1$. A calculator will tell you that $\theta = \tan^{-1}(+1) = 45°$. But the tangent of 180° + 45° = 225° is also equal to +1, so θ could also be 225° (which is actually the case in Fig. 1.19). *Always* draw a sketch like Fig. 1.19 to determine which of the two possibilities is correct.

2. **Multiplying a vector by a scalar.** If we multiply a vector $\vec{A}$ by a scalar c, each component of the product $\vec{D} = c\vec{A}$ is the product of c and the corresponding component of $\vec{A}$:

$$D_x = cA_x, \qquad D_y = cA_y \quad \text{(components of } \vec{D} = c\vec{A}\text{)} \tag{1.8}$$

For example, Eqs. (1.8) say that each component of the vector $2\vec{A}$ is twice as great as the corresponding component of $\vec{A}$, so $2\vec{A}$ is in the same direction as $\vec{A}$ but has twice the magnitude. Each component of the vector $-3\vec{A}$ is three times as great as the corresponding component of $\vec{A}$ but has the opposite sign, so $-3\vec{A}$ is in the opposite direction from $\vec{A}$ and has three times the magnitude. Hence Eqs. (1.8) are consistent with our discussion in Section 1.7 of multiplying a vector by a scalar (see Fig. 1.14).

3. **Using components to calculate the vector sum (resultant) of two or more vectors.** **Figure 1.20** shows two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ and their vector sum $\vec{R}$, along with the x- and y-components of all three vectors. The x-component R_x of the vector sum is simply the sum $(A_x + B_x)$ of the x-components of the vectors being added. The same is true for the y-components. In symbols,

Each **component of** $\vec{R} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$ ...

$$R_x = A_x + B_x, \qquad R_y = A_y + B_y \tag{1.9}$$

... is the sum of the corresponding components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.

Figure 1.20 shows this result for the case in which the components A_x, A_y, B_x, and B_y are all positive. Draw additional diagrams to verify for yourself that Eqs. (1.9) are valid for *any* signs of the components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.

If we know the components of any two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, perhaps by using Eqs. (1.5), we can compute the components of the vector sum $\vec{R}$. Then if we need the magnitude and direction of $\vec{R}$, we can obtain them from Eqs. (1.6) and (1.7) with the A's replaced by R's.

We can use the same procedure to find the sum of any number of vectors. If $\vec{R}$ is the vector sum of $\vec{A}, \vec{B}, \vec{C}, \vec{D}, \vec{E}, \ldots$, the components of $\vec{R}$ are

$$\begin{aligned} R_x &= A_x + B_x + C_x + D_x + E_x + \cdots \\ R_y &= A_y + B_y + C_y + D_y + E_y + \cdots \end{aligned} \tag{1.10}$$

We have talked about vectors that lie in the xy-plane only, but the component method works just as well for vectors having any direction in space. We can introduce a z-axis perpendicular to the xy-plane; then in general a vector $\vec{A}$ has components A_x, A_y, and A_z in the three coordinate directions. Its magnitude A is

$$A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2 + A_z^2} \tag{1.11}$$

Again, we always take the positive root **(Fig. 1.21)**. Also, Eqs. (1.10) for the vector sum $\vec{R}$ have a third component:

$$R_z = A_z + B_z + C_z + D_z + E_z + \cdots$$

We've focused on adding *displacement* vectors, but the method is applicable to all vector quantities. When we study the concept of force in Chapter 4, we'll find that forces are vectors that obey the same rules of vector addition.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 1.3 Vector Addition

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Decide what the target variable is. It may be the magnitude of the vector sum, the direction, or both.

SET UP *the problem:* Sketch the vectors being added, along with suitable coordinate axes. Place the tail of the first vector at the origin of the coordinates, place the tail of the second vector at the head of the first vector, and so on. Draw the vector sum $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$ from the tail of the first vector (at the origin) to the head of the last vector. Use your sketch to estimate the magnitude and direction of $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$. Select the equations you'll need: Eqs. (1.5) to obtain the components of the vectors given, if necessary, Eqs. (1.10) to obtain the components of the vector sum, Eq. (1.11) to obtain its magnitude, and Eqs. (1.7) to obtain its direction.

EXECUTE *the solution* as follows:

1. Find the x- and y-components of each individual vector and record your results in a table, as in Example 1.7 below. If a vector is described by a magnitude A and an angle θ, measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis, then its components are given by Eqs. (1.5):
$$A_x = A\cos\theta \qquad A_y = A\sin\theta$$
If the angles of the vectors are given in some other way, perhaps using a different reference direction, convert them to angles measured from the $+x$-axis as in Example 1.6.
2. Add the individual x-components algebraically (including signs) to find R_x, the x-component of the vector sum. Do the same for the y-components to find R_y. See Example 1.7.
3. Calculate the magnitude R and direction θ of the vector sum by using Eqs. (1.6) and (1.7):
$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2} \qquad \theta = \arctan\frac{R_y}{R_x}$$

EVALUATE *your answer:* Confirm that your results for the magnitude and direction of the vector sum agree with the estimates you made from your sketch. The value of θ that you find with a calculator may be off by 180°; your drawing will indicate the correct value. (See Example 1.7 below for an illustration of this.)

EXAMPLE 1.7 Using components to add vectors

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Three players on a reality TV show are brought to the center of a large, flat field. Each is given a meter stick, a compass, a calculator, a shovel, and (in a different order for each contestant) the following three displacements:

$\vec{\boldsymbol{A}}$: 72.4 m, 32.0° east of north
$\vec{\boldsymbol{B}}$: 57.3 m, 36.0° south of west
$\vec{\boldsymbol{C}}$: 17.8 m due south

The three displacements lead to the point in the field where the keys to a new Porsche are buried. Two players start measuring immediately, but the winner first *calculates* where to go. What does she calculate?

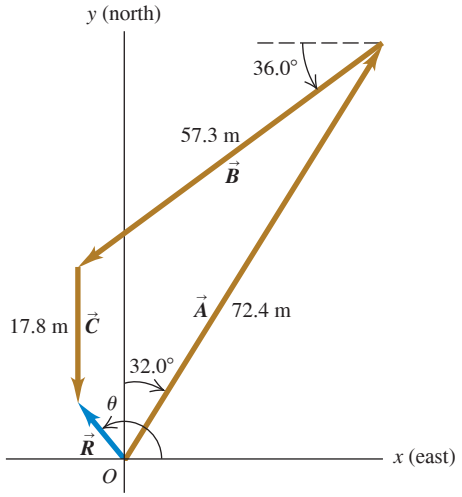
IDENTIFY and SET UP The goal is to find the sum (resultant) of the three displacements, so this is a problem in vector addition. See **Fig. 1.22**. We have chosen the $+x$-axis as east and the $+y$-axis as north. We estimate from the diagram that the vector sum $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$ is about 10 m, 40° west of north (so θ is about 90° plus 40°, or about 130°).

EXECUTE The angles of the vectors, measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis, are $(90.0° - 32.0°) = 58.0°$, $(180.0° + 36.0°) = 216.0°$, and 270.0°, respectively. We may now use Eqs. (1.5) to find the components of $\vec{\boldsymbol{A}}$:

$$A_x = A\cos\theta_A = (72.4\text{ m})(\cos 58.0°) = 38.37\text{ m}$$
$$A_y = A\sin\theta_A = (72.4\text{ m})(\sin 58.0°) = 61.40\text{ m}$$

We've kept an extra significant figure in the components; we'll round to the correct number of significant figures at the end of our calculation. The table at right shows the components of all the displacements, the addition of the components, and the other calculations from Eqs. (1.6) and (1.7).

Figure 1.22 Three successive displacements $\vec{\boldsymbol{A}}$, $\vec{\boldsymbol{B}}$, and $\vec{\boldsymbol{C}}$ and the resultant (vector sum) displacement $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}} = \vec{\boldsymbol{A}} + \vec{\boldsymbol{B}} + \vec{\boldsymbol{C}}$.



Distance	Angle	x-component	y-component
$A = 72.4$ m	58.0°	38.37 m	61.40 m
$B = 57.3$ m	216.0°	−46.36 m	−33.68 m
$C = 17.8$ m	270.0°	0.00 m	−17.80 m
		$R_x = -7.99$ m	$R_y = 9.92$ m

$$R = \sqrt{(-7.99\text{ m})^2 + (9.92\text{ m})^2} = 12.7\text{ m}$$
$$\theta = \arctan\frac{9.92\text{ m}}{-7.99\text{ m}} = -51°$$

Continued

Comparing to angle θ in Fig. 1.22 shows that the calculated angle is clearly off by 180°. The correct value is $\theta = 180° + (-51°) = 129°$, or 39° west of north.

EVALUATE Our calculated answers for R and θ agree with our estimates. Notice how drawing the diagram in Fig. 1.22 made it easy to avoid a 180° error in the direction of the vector sum.

KEYCONCEPT When you are adding vectors, the x-component of the vector sum is equal to the sum of the x-components of the vectors being added, and likewise for the y-component. Always use a diagram to help determine the direction of the vector sum.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 1.8 Two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ lie in the xy-plane. (a) Can $\vec{A}$ have the same magnitude as $\vec{B}$ but different components? (b) Can $\vec{A}$ have the same components as $\vec{B}$ but a different magnitude?

ANSWER

(a) **yes,** (b) **no** Vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ can have the same magnitude but different components if they point in different directions. If they have the same components, however, they are the same vector ($\vec{A} = \vec{B}$) and so must have the same magnitude.

1.9 UNIT VECTORS

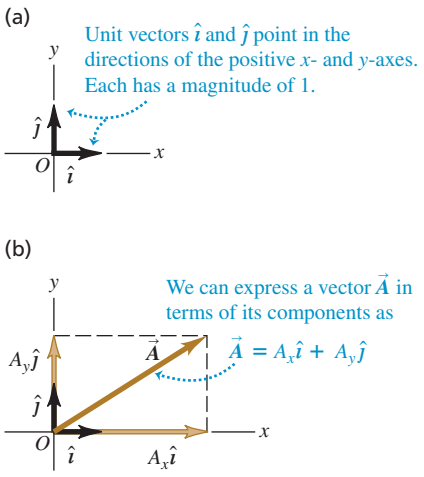
A **unit vector** is a vector that has a magnitude of 1, with no units. Its only purpose is to *point*—that is, to describe a direction in space. Unit vectors provide a convenient notation for many expressions involving components of vectors. We'll always include a caret, or "hat" (^), in the symbol for a unit vector to distinguish it from ordinary vectors whose magnitude may or may not be equal to 1.

In an xy-coordinate system we can define a unit vector $\hat{\imath}$ that points in the direction of the positive x-axis and a unit vector $\hat{\jmath}$ that points in the direction of the positive y-axis (**Fig. 1.23a**). Then we can write a vector $\vec{A}$ in terms of its components as

$$\vec{A} = A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} \tag{1.12}$$

Equation (1.12) is a vector equation; each term, such as $A_x\hat{\imath}$, is a vector quantity (Fig. 1.23b).

Figure **1.23** (a) The unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$ and $\hat{\jmath}$. (b) Expressing a vector $\vec{A}$ in terms of its components.



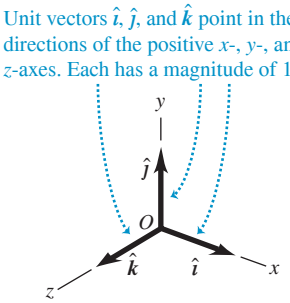
Using unit vectors, we can express the vector sum $\vec{R}$ of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{A} &= A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath}\\ \vec{B} &= B_x\hat{\imath} + B_y\hat{\jmath}\\ \vec{R} &= \vec{A} + \vec{B}\\ &= (A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath}) + (B_x\hat{\imath} + B_y\hat{\jmath})\\ &= (A_x + B_x)\hat{\imath} + (A_y + B_y)\hat{\jmath}\\ &= R_x\hat{\imath} + R_y\hat{\jmath}\end{aligned} \tag{1.13}$$

Equation (1.13) restates the content of Eqs. (1.9) in the form of a single vector equation rather than two component equations.

If not all of the vectors lie in the xy-plane, then we need a third component. We introduce a third unit vector $\hat{k}$ that points in the direction of the positive z-axis (**Fig. 1.24**). Then Eqs. (1.12) and (1.13) become

Figure **1.24** The unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$.



Any vector can be expressed in terms of its x-, y-, and z-components ...

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{A} &= A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} + A_z\hat{k}\\ \vec{B} &= B_x\hat{\imath} + B_y\hat{\jmath} + B_z\hat{k}\end{aligned} \tag{1.14}$$

... and unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{R} &= (A_x + B_x)\hat{\imath} + (A_y + B_y)\hat{\jmath} + (A_z + B_z)\hat{k}\\ &= R_x\hat{\imath} + R_y\hat{\jmath} + R_z\hat{k}\end{aligned} \tag{1.15}$$

EXAMPLE 1.8 Using unit vectors

Given the two displacements

$$\vec{D} = (6.00\hat{\imath} + 3.00\hat{\jmath} - 1.00\hat{k})\ \text{m} \quad \text{and}$$
$$\vec{E} = (4.00\hat{\imath} - 5.00\hat{\jmath} + 8.00\hat{k})\ \text{m}$$

find the magnitude of the displacement $2\vec{D} - \vec{E}$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We are to multiply vector $\vec{D}$ by 2 (a scalar) and subtract vector $\vec{E}$ from the result, so as to obtain the vector $\vec{F} = 2\vec{D} - \vec{E}$. Equation (1.8) says that to multiply $\vec{D}$ by 2, we multiply each of its components by 2. We can use Eq. (1.15) to do the subtraction; recall from Section 1.7 that subtracting a vector is the same as adding the negative of that vector.

EXECUTE We have

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{F} &= 2(6.00\hat{\imath} + 3.00\hat{\jmath} - 1.00\hat{k})\ \text{m} - (4.00\hat{\imath} - 5.00\hat{\jmath} + 8.00\hat{k})\ \text{m}\\ &= [(12.00 - 4.00)\hat{\imath} + (6.00 + 5.00)\hat{\jmath} + (-2.00 - 8.00)\hat{k}]\ \text{m}\\ &= (8.00\hat{\imath} + 11.00\hat{\jmath} - 10.00\hat{k})\ \text{m}\end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (1.11) the magnitude of $\vec{F}$ is

$$\begin{aligned}F &= \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2 + F_z^2}\\ &= \sqrt{(8.00\ \text{m})^2 + (11.00\ \text{m})^2 + (-10.00\ \text{m})^2}\\ &= 16.9\ \text{m}\end{aligned}$$

EVALUATE Our answer is of the same order of magnitude as the larger components that appear in the sum. We wouldn't expect our answer to be much larger than this, but it could be much smaller.

KEYCONCEPT By using unit vectors, you can write a single equation for vector addition that incorporates the x-, y-, and z-components.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 1.9 Arrange the following vectors in order of their magnitude, with the vector of largest magnitude first. (i) $\vec{A} = (3\hat{\imath} + 5\hat{\jmath} - 2\hat{k})$ m; (ii) $\vec{B} = (-3\hat{\imath} + 5\hat{\jmath} - 2\hat{k})$ m; (iii) $\vec{C} = (3\hat{\imath} - 5\hat{\jmath} - 2\hat{k})$ m; (iv) $\vec{D} = (3\hat{\imath} + 5\hat{\jmath} + 2\hat{k})$ m.

ANSWER **All have the same magnitude.** Vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, $\vec{C}$, and $\vec{D}$ point in different directions but have the same magnitude:

$$A = B = C = D = \sqrt{(\pm 3\ \text{m})^2 + (\pm 5\ \text{m})^2 + (\pm 2\ \text{m})^2} = \sqrt{9\ \text{m}^2 + 25\ \text{m}^2 + 4\ \text{m}^2} = \sqrt{38\ \text{m}^2} = 6.2\ \text{m}$$

1.10 PRODUCTS OF VECTORS

We saw how vector addition develops naturally from the problem of combining displacements. It will prove useful for calculations with many other vector quantities. We can also express many physical relationships by using *products* of vectors. Vectors are not ordinary numbers, so we can't directly apply ordinary multiplication to vectors. We'll define two different kinds of products of vectors. The first, called the *scalar product,* yields a result that is a scalar quantity. The second, the *vector product,* yields another vector.

Scalar Product

We denote the **scalar product** of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ by $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$. Because of this notation, the scalar product is also called the **dot product.** Although $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are vectors, the quantity $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ is a scalar.

To define the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ we draw the two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ with their tails at the same point (**Fig. 1.25a**). The angle ϕ (the Greek letter phi) between their directions ranges from 0° to 180°. Figure 1.25b shows the projection of vector $\vec{B}$ onto the direction of $\vec{A}$; this projection is the component of $\vec{B}$ in the direction of $\vec{A}$ and is equal to $B\cos\phi$. (We can take components along *any* direction that's convenient, not just the x- and y-axes.) We define $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ to be the magnitude of $\vec{A}$ multiplied by the component of $\vec{B}$ in the direction of $\vec{A}$, or

Scalar (dot) product of vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ — Magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi = |\vec{A}||\vec{B}|\cos\phi \qquad (1.16)$$

Angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ when placed tail to tail

Figure 1.25 Calculating the scalar product of two vectors, $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi$.

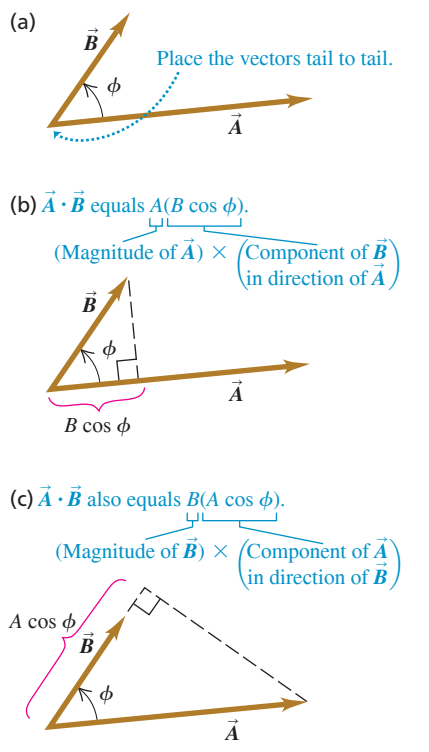
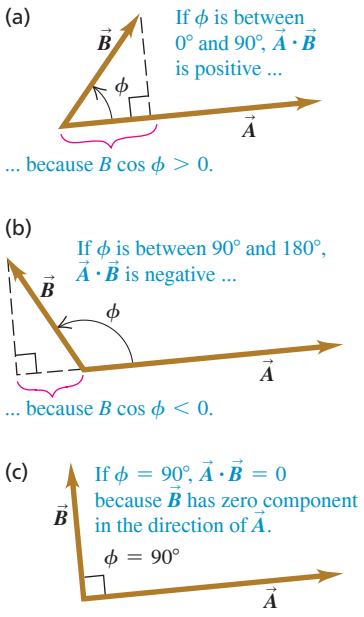


Figure 1.26 The scalar product $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = AB\cos\phi$ can be positive, negative, or zero, depending on the angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.



Alternatively, we can define $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B}$ to be the magnitude of $\vec{B}$ multiplied by the component of $\vec{A}$ in the direction of $\vec{B}$, as in Fig. 1.25c. Hence $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = B(A\cos\phi) = AB\cos\phi$, which is the same as Eq. (1.16).

The scalar product is a scalar quantity, not a vector, and it may be positive, negative, or zero. When ϕ is between 0° and 90°, $\cos\phi > 0$ and the scalar product is positive (**Fig. 1.26a**). When ϕ is between 90° and 180° so $\cos\phi < 0$, the component of $\vec{B}$ in the direction of $\vec{A}$ is negative, and $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B}$ is negative (Fig. 1.26b). Finally, when $\phi = 90°$, $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = 0$ (Fig. 1.26c). *The scalar product of two perpendicular vectors is always zero.*

For any two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, $AB\cos\phi = BA\cos\phi$. This means that $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = \vec{B}\cdot\vec{A}$. The scalar product obeys the commutative law of multiplication; the order of the two vectors does not matter.

We'll use the scalar product in Chapter 6 to describe work done by a force. In later chapters we'll use the scalar product for a variety of purposes, from calculating electric potential to determining the effects that varying magnetic fields have on electric circuits.

Using Components to Calculate the Scalar Product

We can calculate the scalar product $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B}$ directly if we know the x-, y-, and z-components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. To see how this is done, let's first work out the scalar products of the unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$. All unit vectors have magnitude 1 and are perpendicular to each other. Using Eq. (1.16), we find

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\imath}\cdot\hat{\imath} = \hat{\jmath}\cdot\hat{\jmath} = \hat{k}\cdot\hat{k} &= (1)(1)\cos 0° = 1\\ \hat{\imath}\cdot\hat{\jmath} = \hat{\imath}\cdot\hat{k} = \hat{\jmath}\cdot\hat{k} &= (1)(1)\cos 90° = 0\end{aligned} \tag{1.17}$$

Now we express $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in terms of their components, expand the product, and use these products of unit vectors:

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} &= (A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} + A_z\hat{k})\cdot(B_x\hat{\imath} + B_y\hat{\jmath} + B_z\hat{k})\\ &= A_x\hat{\imath}\cdot B_x\hat{\imath} + A_x\hat{\imath}\cdot B_y\hat{\jmath} + A_x\hat{\imath}\cdot B_z\hat{k}\\ &\quad + A_y\hat{\jmath}\cdot B_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath}\cdot B_y\hat{\jmath} + A_y\hat{\jmath}\cdot B_z\hat{k}\\ &\quad + A_z\hat{k}\cdot B_x\hat{\imath} + A_z\hat{k}\cdot B_y\hat{\jmath} + A_z\hat{k}\cdot B_z\hat{k}\\ &= A_xB_x\hat{\imath}\cdot\hat{\imath} + A_xB_y\hat{\imath}\cdot\hat{\jmath} + A_xB_z\hat{\imath}\cdot\hat{k}\\ &\quad + A_yB_x\hat{\jmath}\cdot\hat{\imath} + A_yB_y\hat{\jmath}\cdot\hat{\jmath} + A_yB_z\hat{\jmath}\cdot\hat{k}\\ &\quad + A_zB_x\hat{k}\cdot\hat{\imath} + A_zB_y\hat{k}\cdot\hat{\jmath} + A_zB_z\hat{k}\cdot\hat{k}\end{aligned} \tag{1.18}$$

From Eqs. (1.17) you can see that six of these nine terms are zero. The three that survive give

Scalar (dot) product of vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$

$$\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z \tag{1.19}$$

Components of $\vec{A}$ / Components of $\vec{B}$

Thus *the scalar product of two vectors is the sum of the products of their respective components.*

The scalar product gives a straightforward way to find the angle ϕ between any two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ whose components are known. In this case we can use Eq. (1.19) to find the scalar product of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. Example 1.10 shows how to do this.

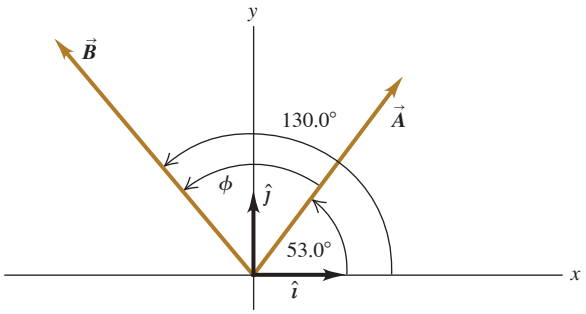
EXAMPLE 1.9 Calculating a scalar product

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Find the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ of the two vectors in **Fig. 1.27**. The magnitudes of the vectors are $A = 4.00$ and $B = 5.00$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We can calculate the scalar product in two ways: using the magnitudes of the vectors and the angle between them (Eq. 1.16) and using the components of the vectors (Eq. 1.19). We'll do it both ways, and the results will check each other.

Figure 1.27 Two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in two dimensions.



EXECUTE The angle between the two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is $\phi = 130.0° - 53.0° = 77.0°$, so Eq. (1.16) gives us

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi = (4.00)(5.00)\cos 77.0° = 4.50$$

To use Eq. (1.19), we must first find the components of the vectors. The angles of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are given with respect to the $+x$-axis and are measured in the sense from the $+x$-axis to the $+y$-axis, so we can use Eqs. (1.5):

$$A_x = (4.00)\cos 53.0° = 2.407$$
$$A_y = (4.00)\sin 53.0° = 3.195$$
$$B_x = (5.00)\cos 130.0° = -3.214$$
$$B_y = (5.00)\sin 130.0° = 3.830$$

As in Example 1.7, we keep an extra significant figure in the components and round at the end. Equation (1.19) now gives us

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z$$
$$= (2.407)(-3.214) + (3.195)(3.830) + (0)(0) = 4.50$$

EVALUATE Both methods give the same result, as they should.

KEYCONCEPT The scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ is a scalar (a number) that equals the sum of the products of the x-components, y-components, and z-components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.

EXAMPLE 1.10 Finding an angle with the scalar product

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Find the angle between the vectors

$$\vec{A} = 2.00\hat{\imath} + 3.00\hat{\jmath} + 1.00\hat{k}$$

and

$$\vec{B} = -4.00\hat{\imath} + 2.00\hat{\jmath} - 1.00\hat{k}$$

IDENTIFY and SET UP We're given the x-, y-, and z-components of two vectors. Our target variable is the angle ϕ between them (**Fig. 1.28**). To find this, we'll solve Eq. (1.16), $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi$, for ϕ in terms of the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ and the magnitudes A and B. We can use Eq. (1.19) to evaluate the scalar product, $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z$, and we can use Eq. (1.6) to find A and B.

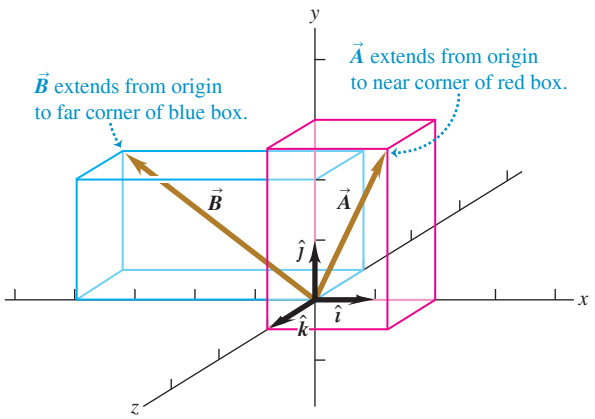
EXECUTE We solve Eq. (1.16) for $\cos\phi$ and use Eq. (1.19) to write $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$:

$$\cos\phi = \frac{\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}}{AB} = \frac{A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z}{AB}$$

We can use this formula to find the angle between *any* two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. Here we have $A_x = 2.00$, $A_y = 3.00$, and $A_z = 1.00$, and $B_x = -4.00$, $B_y = 2.00$, and $B_z = -1.00$. Thus

$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z$$
$$= (2.00)(-4.00) + (3.00)(2.00) + (1.00)(-1.00)$$
$$= -3.00$$
$$A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2 + A_z^2} = \sqrt{(2.00)^2 + (3.00)^2 + (1.00)^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{14.00}$$
$$B = \sqrt{B_x^2 + B_y^2 + B_z^2} = \sqrt{(-4.00)^2 + (2.00)^2 + (-1.00)^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{21.00}$$

Figure 1.28 Two vectors in three dimensions.



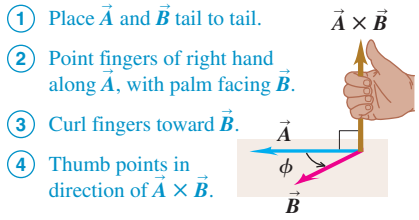
$$\cos\phi = \frac{A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z}{AB} = \frac{-3.00}{\sqrt{14.00}\sqrt{21.00}} = -0.175$$
$$\phi = 100°$$

EVALUATE As a check on this result, note that the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ is negative. This means that ϕ is between 90° and 180° (see Fig. 1.26), which agrees with our answer.

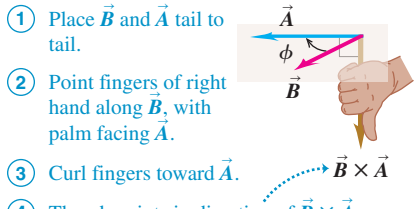
KEYCONCEPT You can find the angle ϕ between two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ whose components are known by first finding their scalar product, then using the equation $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi$.

Figure 1.29 The vector product of (a) $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ and (b) $\vec{B} \times \vec{A}$.

(a) Using the right-hand rule to find the direction of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$



(b) Using the right-hand rule to find the direction of $\vec{B} \times \vec{A} = -\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ (vector product is anticommutative)



Vector Product

We denote the **vector product** of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, also called the **cross product,** by $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$. As the name suggests, the vector product is itself a vector. We'll use this product in Chapter 10 to describe torque and angular momentum; in Chapters 27 and 28 we'll use it to describe magnetic fields and forces.

To define the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$, we again draw the two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ with their tails at the same point (**Fig. 1.29a**). The two vectors then lie in a plane. We define the vector product to be a vector quantity with a direction perpendicular to this plane (that is, perpendicular to both $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$) and a magnitude equal to $AB\sin\phi$. That is, if $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$, then

Magnitude of **vector (cross) product** of vectors $\vec{B}$ and $\vec{A}$

$$C = AB\sin\phi \tag{1.20}$$

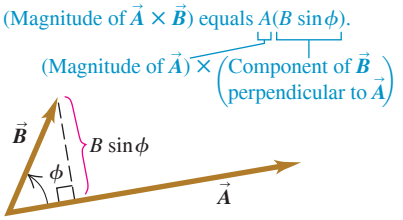
Magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ — Angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ when placed tail to tail

We measure the angle ϕ from $\vec{A}$ toward $\vec{B}$ and take it to be the smaller of the two possible angles, so ϕ ranges from 0° to 180°. Then $\sin\phi \geq 0$ and C in Eq. (1.20) is never negative, as must be the case for a vector magnitude. Note that when $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are parallel or antiparallel, $\phi = 0°$ or 180° and $C = 0$. That is, *the vector product of two parallel or antiparallel vectors is always zero.* In particular, *the vector product of any vector with itself is zero.*

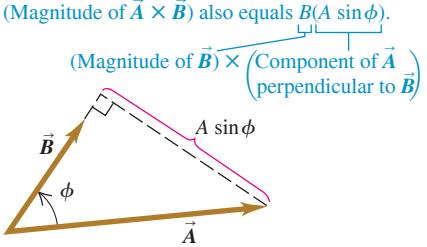
CAUTION **Vector product vs. scalar product** Don't confuse the expression $AB\sin\phi$ for the magnitude of the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ with the similar expression $AB\cos\phi$ for the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$. To see the difference between these two expressions, imagine that we vary the angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ while keeping their magnitudes constant. When $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are parallel, the magnitude of the vector product will be zero and the scalar product will be maximum. When $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are perpendicular, the magnitude of the vector product will be maximum and the scalar product will be zero.

Figure 1.30 Calculating the magnitude $AB\sin\phi$ of the vector product of two vectors, $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$.

(a)



(b)



There are always *two* directions perpendicular to a given plane, one on each side of the plane. We choose which of these is the direction of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ as follows. Imagine rotating vector $\vec{A}$ about the perpendicular line until $\vec{A}$ is aligned with $\vec{B}$, choosing the smaller of the two possible angles between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. Curl the fingers of your right hand around the perpendicular line so that your fingertips point in the direction of rotation; your thumb will then point in the direction of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$. Figure 1.29a shows this **right-hand rule** and describes a second way to think about this rule.

Similarly, we determine the direction of $\vec{B} \times \vec{A}$ by rotating $\vec{B}$ into $\vec{A}$ as in Fig. 1.29b. The result is a vector that is *opposite* to the vector $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$. The vector product is *not* commutative but instead is *anticommutative:* For any two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$,

$$\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = -\vec{B} \times \vec{A} \tag{1.21}$$

Just as we did for the scalar product, we can give a geometrical interpretation of the magnitude of the vector product. In **Fig. 1.30a,** $B\sin\phi$ is the component of vector $\vec{B}$ that is *perpendicular* to the direction of vector $\vec{A}$. From Eq. (1.20) the magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ equals the magnitude of $\vec{A}$ multiplied by the component of $\vec{B}$ that is perpendicular to $\vec{A}$. Figure 1.30b shows that the magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ also equals the magnitude of $\vec{B}$ multiplied by the component of $\vec{A}$ that is perpendicular to $\vec{B}$. Note that Fig. 1.30 shows the case in which ϕ is between 0° and 90°; draw a similar diagram for ϕ between 90° and 180° to show that the same geometrical interpretation of the magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ applies.

Using Components to Calculate the Vector Product

If we know the components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, we can calculate the components of the vector product by using a procedure similar to that for the scalar product. First we work out the multiplication table for unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$, all three of which are perpendicular to each other (**Fig. 1.31a**). The vector product of any vector with itself is zero, so

$$\hat{\imath} \times \hat{\imath} = \hat{\jmath} \times \hat{\jmath} = \hat{k} \times \hat{k} = \mathbf{0}$$

The boldface zero is a reminder that each product is a zero *vector*—that is, one with all components equal to zero and an undefined direction. Using Eqs. (1.20) and (1.21) and the right-hand rule, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\imath} \times \hat{\jmath} &= -\hat{\jmath} \times \hat{\imath} = \hat{k} \\ \hat{\jmath} \times \hat{k} &= -\hat{k} \times \hat{\jmath} = \hat{\imath} \\ \hat{k} \times \hat{\imath} &= -\hat{\imath} \times \hat{k} = \hat{\jmath} \end{aligned} \tag{1.22}$$

You can verify these equations by referring to Fig. 1.31a.

Next we express $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in terms of their components and the corresponding unit vectors, and we expand the expression for the vector product:

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{A} \times \vec{B} &= (A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} + A_z\hat{k}) \times (B_x\hat{\imath} + B_y\hat{\jmath} + B_z\hat{k}) \\ &= A_x\hat{\imath} \times B_x\hat{\imath} + A_x\hat{\imath} \times B_y\hat{\jmath} + A_x\hat{\imath} \times B_z\hat{k} \\ &\quad + A_y\hat{\jmath} \times B_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} \times B_y\hat{\jmath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} \times B_z\hat{k} \\ &\quad + A_z\hat{k} \times B_x\hat{\imath} + A_z\hat{k} \times B_y\hat{\jmath} + A_z\hat{k} \times B_z\hat{k} \end{aligned} \tag{1.23}$$

We can also rewrite the individual terms in Eq. (1.23) as $A_x\hat{\imath} \times B_y\hat{\jmath} = (A_xB_y)\hat{\imath} \times \hat{\jmath}$, and so on. Evaluating these by using the multiplication table for the unit vectors in Eqs. (1.22) and then grouping the terms, we get

$$\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = (A_yB_z - A_zB_y)\hat{\imath} + (A_zB_x - A_xB_z)\hat{\jmath} + (A_xB_y - A_yB_x)\hat{k} \tag{1.24}$$

If you compare Eq. (1.24) with Eq. (1.14), you'll see that the components of $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ are

Components of vector (cross) product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$

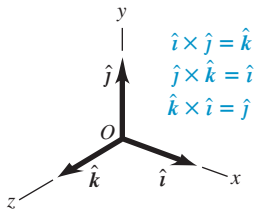
$$C_x = A_yB_z - A_zB_y \qquad C_y = A_zB_x - A_xB_z \qquad C_z = A_xB_y - A_yB_x \tag{1.25}$$

A_x, A_y, A_z = components of $\vec{A}$ $\qquad$ B_x, B_y, B_z = components of $\vec{B}$

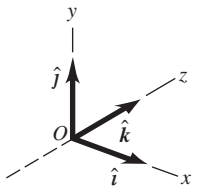
With the axis system of Fig. 1.31a, if we reverse the direction of the z-axis, we get the system shown in Fig. 1.31b. Then, as you may verify, the definition of the vector product gives $\hat{\imath} \times \hat{\jmath} = -\hat{k}$ instead of $\hat{\imath} \times \hat{\jmath} = \hat{k}$. In fact, all vector products of unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$ would have signs opposite to those in Eqs. (1.22). So there are two kinds of coordinate systems, which differ in the signs of the vector products of unit vectors. An axis system in which $\hat{\imath} \times \hat{\jmath} = \hat{k}$, as in Fig. 1.31a, is called a **right-handed system.** The usual practice is to use *only* right-handed systems, and we'll follow that practice throughout this book.

Figure **1.31** (a) We'll always use a right-handed coordinate system, like this one. (b) We'll never use a left-handed coordinate system (in which $\hat{\imath} \times \hat{\jmath} = -\hat{k}$, and so on).

(a) A right-handed coordinate system



(b) A left-handed coordinate system; we will not use these.

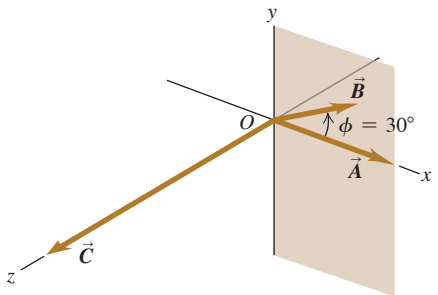


EXAMPLE 1.11 Calculating a vector product

Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 6 units and is in the direction of the $+x$-axis. Vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 4 units and lies in the xy-plane, making an angle of 30° with the $+x$-axis (**Fig. 1.32**). Find the vector product $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll find the vector product in two ways, which will provide a check of our calculations. First we'll use Eq. (1.20) and the right-hand rule; then we'll use Eqs. (1.25) to find the vector product by using components.

Figure 1.32 Vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ and their vector product $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$. Vector $\vec{B}$ lies in the xy-plane.



EXECUTE From Eq. (1.20) the magnitude of the vector product is

$$AB \sin\phi = (6)(4)(\sin 30°) = 12$$

By the right-hand rule, the direction of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ is along the $+z$-axis (the direction of the unit vector $\hat{k}$), so $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B} = 12\hat{k}$.

To use Eqs. (1.25), we first determine the components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. Note that $\vec{A}$ points along the x-axis, so its only nonzero component is A_x. For $\vec{B}$, Fig. 1.32 shows that $\phi = 30°$ is measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis, so we can use Eqs. (1.5):

$$A_x = 6 \qquad A_y = 0 \qquad A_z = 0$$

$$B_x = 4\cos 30° = 2\sqrt{3} \qquad B_y = 4\sin 30° = 2 \qquad B_z = 0$$

Then Eqs. (1.25) yield

$$C_x = (0)(0) - (0)(2) = 0$$

$$C_y = (0)(2\sqrt{3}) - (6)(0) = 0$$

$$C_z = (6)(2) - (0)(2\sqrt{3}) = 12$$

Thus again we have $\vec{C} = 12\hat{k}$.

EVALUATE Both methods give the same result. Depending on the situation, one or the other of the two approaches may be the more convenient one to use.

KEYCONCEPT The vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ of two vectors is a third vector that is perpendicular to both $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. You can find the vector product either from the magnitudes of the two vectors, the angle between them, and the right-hand rule, or from the components of the two vectors.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 1.10 Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 2 and vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 3. The angle ϕ between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is (i) 0°, (ii) 90°, or (iii) 180°. For each of the following situations, state what the value of ϕ must be. (In each situation there may be more than one correct answer.) (a) $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = 0$; (b) $\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = \mathbf{0}$; (c) $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = 6$; (d) $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = -6$; (e) (magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$) $= 6$.

ANSWER

(a) (ii) $\phi = 90°$, (b) (i) $\phi = 0°$ or (iii) $\phi = 180°$, (c) (i) $\phi = 0°$, (d) (iii) $\phi = 180°$, (e) (ii) $\phi = 90°$ (a) The scalar product is zero only if $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are perpendicular. (b) The vector product is zero only if $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are parallel or antiparallel. (c) The scalar product is equal to the product of the magnitudes ($\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB$) only if $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are parallel. (d) The scalar product is equal to the negative of the product of the magnitudes ($\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = -AB$) only if $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are antiparallel. (e) The magnitude of the vector product is equal to the product of the magnitudes [(magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$) $= AB$] only if $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are perpendicular.

CHAPTER 1 SUMMARY

Physical quantities and units: Three fundamental physical quantities are mass, length, and time. The corresponding fundamental SI units are the kilogram, the meter, and the second. Derived units for other physical quantities are products or quotients of the basic units. Equations must be dimensionally consistent; two terms can be added only when they have the same units. (See Examples 1.1 and 1.2.)

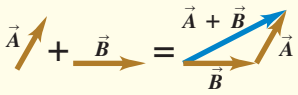
Significant figures: The accuracy of a measurement can be indicated by the number of significant figures or by a stated uncertainty. The significant figures in the result of a calculation are determined by the rules summarized in Table 1.2. When only crude estimates are available for input data, we can often make useful order-of-magnitude estimates. (See Examples 1.3 and 1.4.)

Significant figures in magenta

$$\pi = \frac{C}{2r} = \frac{0.424\ \text{m}}{2(0.06750\ \text{m})} = 3.14$$

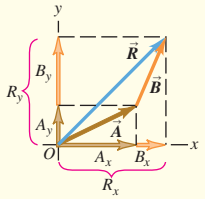
$$123.62 + 8.9 = 132.5$$

Scalars, vectors, and vector addition: Scalar quantities are numbers and combine according to the usual rules of arithmetic. Vector quantities have direction as well as magnitude and combine according to the rules of vector addition. The negative of a vector has the same magnitude but points in the opposite direction. (See Example 1.5.)



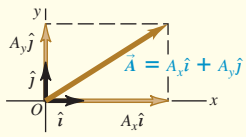
Vector components and vector addition: Vectors can be added by using components of vectors. The x-component of $\vec{R} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$ is the sum of the x-components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, and likewise for the y- and z-components. (See Examples 1.6 and 1.7.)

$$R_x = A_x + B_x$$
$$R_y = A_y + B_y \qquad (1.9)$$
$$R_z = A_z + B_z$$



Unit vectors: Unit vectors describe directions in space. A unit vector has a magnitude of 1, with no units. The unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$, aligned with the x-, y-, and z-axes of a rectangular coordinate system, are especially useful. (See Example 1.8.)

$$\vec{A} = A_x\hat{\imath} + A_y\hat{\jmath} + A_z\hat{k} \qquad (1.14)$$



Scalar product: The scalar product $C = \vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is a scalar quantity. It can be expressed in terms of the magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ and the angle ϕ between the two vectors, or in terms of the components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. The scalar product is commutative; $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = \vec{B} \cdot \vec{A}$. The scalar product of two perpendicular vectors is zero. (See Examples 1.9 and 1.10.)

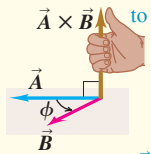
$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi = |\vec{A}||\vec{B}|\cos\phi \qquad (1.16)$$
$$\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z \qquad (1.19)$$

Scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = AB\cos\phi$

Vector product: The vector product $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ of two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is a third vector $\vec{C}$. The magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ depends on the magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ and the angle ϕ between the two vectors. The direction of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ is perpendicular to the plane of the two vectors being multiplied, as given by the right-hand rule. The components of $\vec{C} = \vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ can be expressed in terms of the components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. The vector product is not commutative; $\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = -\vec{B} \times \vec{A}$. The vector product of two parallel or antiparallel vectors is zero. (See Example 1.11.)

$$C = AB\sin\phi \qquad (1.20)$$
$$C_x = A_yB_z - A_zB_y$$
$$C_y = A_zB_x - A_xB_z \qquad (1.25)$$
$$C_z = A_xB_y - A_yB_x$$

$\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ is perpendicular to the plane of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$.



(Magnitude of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$) $= AB\sin\phi$

Chapter 1 Media Assets

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE VARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 1.7 (Section 1.8) before attempting these problems.

VP1.7.1 Consider the three vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ in Example 1.7. If a fourth vector $\vec{D}$ is added to $\vec{A} + \vec{B} + \vec{C}$, the result is zero: $\vec{A} + \vec{B} + \vec{C} + \vec{D} = \mathbf{0}$. Find the magnitude and direction of $\vec{D}$. State the direction of $\vec{D}$ in terms of an angle measured counterclockwise from the positive x-axis, and state in which quadrant this angle lies.

VP1.7.2 Consider the three vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ in Example 1.7. Calculate the magnitude and direction of the vector $\vec{S} = \vec{A} - \vec{B} + \vec{C}$. State the direction of $\vec{S}$ in terms of an angle measured counterclockwise from the positive x-axis, and state in which quadrant this angle lies. (*Hint:* The components of $-\vec{B}$ are just the negatives of the components of $\vec{B}$.)

VP1.7.3 Consider the three vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ in Example 1.7. (a) Find the components of the vector $\vec{T} = \vec{A} + \vec{B} + 2\vec{C}$. (b) Find the magnitude and direction of $\vec{T}$. State the direction of $\vec{T}$ in terms of an angle measured counterclockwise from the positive x-axis, and state in which quadrant this angle lies.

VP1.7.4 A hiker undergoes the displacement $\vec{A}$ shown in Example 1.7. The hiker then undergoes a second displacement such that she ends up 38.0 m from her starting point, in a direction from her starting point that is 37.0° west of north. Find the magnitude and direction of this second displacement. State the direction in terms of an angle measured counterclockwise from the positive x-axis, and state in which quadrant this angle lies.

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 1.9 and 1.10 (Section 1.10) before attempting these problems.

VP1.10.1 Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 5.00 and is at an angle of 36.9° south of east. Vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 6.40 and is at an angle of 20.0° west of north. (a) Choose the positive x-direction to the east and the positive y-direction to the north. Find the components of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$. (b) Calculate the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$.

VP1.10.2 Vector $\vec{C}$ has magnitude 6.50 and is at an angle of 55.0° measured counterclockwise from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis. Vector $\vec{D}$ has components $D_x = +4.80$ and $D_y = -8.40$. (a) Calculate the scalar product $\vec{C} \cdot \vec{D}$. (b) Find the angle ϕ between the vectors $\vec{C}$ and $\vec{D}$.

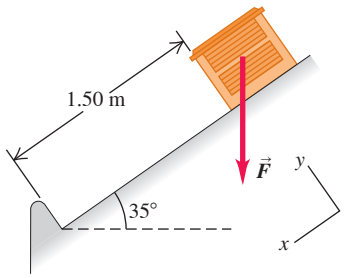
VP1.10.3 Vector $\vec{A}$ has components $A_x = -5.00$, $A_y = 3.00$, and $A_z = 0$. Vector $\vec{B}$ has components $B_x = 2.50$, $B_y = 4.00$, and $B_z = -1.50$. Find the angle between the two vectors.

VP1.10.4 If a force $\vec{F}$ acts on an object as that object moves through a displacement $\vec{s}$, the *work* done by that force equals the scalar product of $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$: $W = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{s}$. A certain object moves through displacement $\vec{s} = (4.00\ \text{m})\hat{\imath} + (5.00\ \text{m})\hat{\jmath}$. As it moves it is acted on by force $\vec{F}$, which has x-component $F_x = -12.0$ N (1 N = 1 newton is the SI unit of force). The work done by this force is 26.0 N · m = 26.0 J (1 J = 1 joule = 1 newton-meter is the SI unit of work). (a) Find the y-component of $\vec{F}$. (b) Find the angle between $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$.

BRIDGING PROBLEM Vectors on the Roof

An air-conditioning unit is fastened to a roof that slopes at an angle of 35° above the horizontal (**Fig. 1.33**). Its weight is a force $\vec{F}$ on the air conditioner that is directed vertically downward. In order that the unit not crush the roof tiles, the component of the unit's weight perpendicular to the roof cannot exceed 425 N. (One newton, or 1 N, is the SI unit of force.) (a) What is the maximum allowed weight of the unit? (b) If the fasteners fail, the unit slides 1.50 m along the roof before it comes to a halt against a ledge. How much work does the weight force do on the unit during its slide if the unit has the weight calculated in part (a)? The work done by a force $\vec{F}$ on an object that undergoes a displacement $\vec{s}$ is $W = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{s}$.

Figure 1.33 An air-conditioning unit on a slanted roof.



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. This problem involves vectors and components. What are the known quantities? Which aspect(s) of the weight vector (magnitude, direction, and/or particular components) represent the target variable for part (a)? Which aspect(s) must you know to solve part (b)?
2. Make a sketch based on Fig. 1.33. Draw the x- and y-axes, choosing the positive direction for each. Your axes don't have to be horizontal and vertical, but they do have to be mutually perpendicular. Figure 1.33 shows a convenient choice of axes: The x-axis is parallel to the slope of the roof.
3. Choose the equations you'll use to determine the target variables.

EXECUTE

4. Use the relationship between the magnitude and direction of a vector and its components to solve for the target variable in part (a). Be careful: Is 35° the correct angle to use in the equation? (*Hint:* Check your sketch.)
5. Make sure your answer has the correct number of significant figures.
6. Use the definition of the scalar product to solve for the target variable in part (b). Again, use the correct number of significant figures.

EVALUATE

7. Did your answer to part (a) include a vector component whose absolute value is greater than the magnitude of the vector? Is that possible?
8. There are two ways to find the scalar product of two vectors, one of which you used to solve part (b). Check your answer by repeating the calculation, using the other way. Do you get the same answer?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q1.1 How many correct experiments do we need to disprove a theory? How many do we need to prove a theory? Explain.

Q1.2 Suppose you are asked to compute the tangent of 5.00 meters. Is this possible? Why or why not?

Q1.3 A rather ordinary middle-aged woman is in the hospital for a routine checkup. The nurse writes "140" on the patient's medical chart but forgets to include the units. Which of these quantities could the 140 plausibly represent: the patient's mass in kilograms? her height in centimeters?

Q1.4 Several countries maintain accurate copies of the platinum-irydium cylinder used as the international standard of kilogram up until May 2019. The first batch of these copies, made in 1889, has on average gained 25 μg per century, in spite of careful cleaning. Does this apparent increase have any importance? Explain.

Q1.5 What physical phenomena (other than a pendulum or cesium clock) could you use to define a time standard?

Q1.6 Describe how you could measure the thickness of a sheet of paper with an ordinary ruler.

Q1.7 The quantity $\pi = 3.14159\ldots$ is a number with no dimensions, since it is a ratio of two lengths. Describe two or three other geometrical or physical quantities that are dimensionless.

Q1.8 What are the units of volume? Suppose another student tells you that a cylinder of radius r and height h has volume given by $\pi r^3 h$. Explain why this cannot be right.

Q1.9 Three archers each fire four arrows at a target. Joe's four arrows hit points that are spread around in a region that goes 10 cm above, 10 cm below, 10 cm to the left, and 10 cm to the right of the center of the target. All four of Moe's arrows hit within 1 cm of a point 20 cm from the center, and Flo's four arrows hit within 1 cm of the center. The contest judge says that one of the archers is precise but not accurate, another archer is accurate but not precise, and the third archer is both accurate and precise. Which description applies to which archer? Explain.

Q1.10 Is the vector $(\hat{\imath} + \hat{\jmath} + \hat{k})$ a unit vector? Is the vector $(3.0\hat{\imath} - 2.0\hat{\jmath})$ a unit vector? Justify your answers.

Q1.11 A circular racetrack has a radius of 500 m. What is the displacement of a bicyclist when she travels around the track from the north side to the south side? When she makes one complete circle around the track? Explain.

Q1.12 Can you find two vectors with different lengths that have a vector sum of zero? What length restrictions are required for three vectors to have a vector sum of zero? Explain.

Q1.13 The "direction of time" is said to proceed from past to future. Does this mean that time is a vector quantity? Explain.

Q1.14 Air traffic controllers give instructions called "vectors" to tell airline pilots in which direction they are to fly. If these are the only instructions given, is the name "vector" used correctly? Why or why not?

Q1.15 Can you find a vector quantity that has a magnitude of zero but components that are not zero? Explain. Can the magnitude of a vector be less than the magnitude of any of its components? Explain.

Q1.16 (a) Does it make sense to say that a vector is *negative*? Why? (b) Does it make sense to say that one vector is the negative of another? Why? Does your answer here contradict what you said in part (a)?

Q1.17 If $\vec{C} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$, what must be true about the directions and magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ if $C = A + B$? What must be true about the directions and magnitudes of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ if $C = 0$?

Q1.18 If $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are nonzero vectors, is it possible for *both* $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ and $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ to be zero? Explain.

Q1.19 What does $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{A}$, the scalar product of a vector with itself, give? What about $\vec{A} \times \vec{A}$, the vector product of a vector with itself?

Q1.20 Let $\vec{A}$ represent any nonzero vector. Why is $\vec{A}/A$ a unit vector, and what is its direction? If θ is the angle that $\vec{A}$ makes with the $+x$-axis, explain why $(\vec{A}/A) \cdot \hat{\imath}$ is called the *direction cosine* for that axis.

Q1.21 Figure 1.6 shows the result of an unacceptable error in the stopping position of a train. If a train travels 890 km from Berlin to Paris and then overshoots the end of the track by 10.0 m, what is the percent error in the total distance covered? Is it correct to write the total distance covered by the train as 890,010 m? Explain.

Q1.22 Which of the following are legitimate mathematical operations: (a) $\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{B} - \vec{C})$; (b) $(\vec{A} - \vec{B}) \times \vec{C}$; (c) $\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{B} \times \vec{C})$; (d) $\vec{A} \times (\vec{B} \times \vec{C})$; (e) $\vec{A} \times (\vec{B} \cdot \vec{C})$? In each case, give the reason for your answer.

Q1.23 Consider the vector products $\vec{A} \times (\vec{B} \times \vec{C})$ and $(\vec{A} \times \vec{B}) \times \vec{C}$. Give an example that illustrates the general rule that these two vector products do not have the same magnitude or direction. Can you choose vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ such that these two vector products *are* equal? If so, give an example.

Q1.24 Show that, no matter what $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are, $\vec{A} \cdot (\vec{A} \times \vec{B}) = 0$. (*Hint:* Do not look for an elaborate mathematical proof. Consider the definition of the direction of the cross product.)

Q1.25 (a) If $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} = 0$, does it necessarily follow that $A = 0$ or $B = 0$? Explain. (b) If $\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = \mathbf{0}$, does it necessarily follow that $A = 0$ or $B = 0$? Explain.

Q1.26 If $\vec{A} = \mathbf{0}$ for a vector in the xy-plane, does it follow that $A_x = -A_y$? What *can* you say about A_x and A_y?

EXERCISES

Section 1.3 Standards and Units

Section 1.4 Using and Converting Units

1.1 • How many years older will you be 1.00 gigasecond from now? (Assume a 365-day year.)

1.2 •• You read in a brochure that Kensington Gardens, one of London's eight Royal Parks, covers an area of 265 acres. An *acre* is a British unit widely used in land measurement in the UK (1 acre = 43,560 ft^2 and 1 ft = 0.3048 m, see Appendix C). What is the area of Kensington Gardens in square meters? in square kilometers? in hectares (a *hectare* is a unit of area equal to 10,000 m^2 used in land measurement)?

1.3 •• How many nanoseconds does it take light to travel 0.3 m in vacuum?

1.4 •• The density of silver is 10.5 g/cm^3. What is this value in kilograms per cubic meter?

1.5 • In the ancient Roman Empire, large distances were measured in miliarum. A miliarum was subdivided into 8 stadia, 1 stadium into 125 passus, 1 passus into 5 pes, 1 pes into 4 palmus, 1 palmus into 4 digitus. Knowing that 1 pes = 0.296 m, find the number of (a) meters in 1.00 miliarum and (b) centimeters in 1.00 digitus.

1.6 • The speed limits in Ireland were changed from imperial (miles per hour, mi/h) to metric (kilometers per hour, km/h) on 20 January 2005. Use 1 mi = 5280 ft and 1 ft = 30.48 cm to: (a) convert the former 30 mi/h speed limit for build-up areas to units of km/h and compare this result with the new 50 km/h speed limit; (b) convert the new 120 km/h speed limit for motorways to units of mi/h and compare this result with the old 70 mi/h speed limit.

1.7 • Fuel consumption of a car is the amount of fuel used per unit distance. It is customary to give fuel consumption in liters per 100 km (L/100 km). For example, the 2019 Austin Mini Cooper has a fuel consumption of 5.5 L/100 km, that is, it uses 5.5 liters of petrol per every 100 km driven. (a) If this car's petrol tank holds 40 L, how many tanks of petrol will you use to drive 1200 km? (b) You read in an English car magazine that the classic 1964 Austin Mini Cooper has an average estimated "mileage of 30.5 miles per gallon" (where 1 mile = 1.609 km is a British unit of distance and 1 gallon (UK) = 4.546 L is a British unit of capacity, see Appendix C). Find the fuel consumption of this car and compare it with the 2019 model.

1.8 • **BIO** (a) The recommended daily allowance (RDA) of the trace metal magnesium is 410 mg/day for males. Express this quantity in μg/day. (b) For adults, the RDA of the amino acid lysine is 12 mg per kg of body weight. How many grams per day should a 77-kg adult receive? (c) A typical multivitamin tablet can contain 2.0 mg of vitamin B_2 (riboflavin), and the RDA is 0.0030 g/day. How many such tablets should a person take each day to get the proper amount of this vitamin, if he gets none from other sources? (d) The RDA for the trace element selenium is 0.000070 g/day. Express this dose in mg/day.

1.9 •• **Neptunium.** In the fall of 2002, scientists at Los Alamos National Laboratory determined that the critical mass of neptunium-237 is about 60 kg. The critical mass of a fissionable material is the minimum amount that must be brought together to start a nuclear chain reaction. Neptunium-237 has a density of 19.5 g/cm^3. What would be the radius of a sphere of this material that has a critical mass?

1.10 •• **BIO Bacteria.** Bacteria vary in size, but a diameter of 2.0 μm is not unusual. What are the volume (in cubic centimeters) and surface area (in square millimeters) of a spherical bacterium of that size? (Consult Appendix D for relevant formulas.)

Section 1.5 Uncertainty and Significant Figures

1.11 • With a wooden ruler, you measure the length of a rectangular piece of sheet metal to be 12 mm. With micrometer calipers, you measure the width of the rectangle to be 5.98 mm. Use the correct number of significant figures: What are (a) the area of the rectangle; (b) the ratio of the rectangle's width to its length; (c) the perimeter of the rectangle; (d) the difference between the length and the width; and (e) the ratio of the length to the width?

1.12 • The volume of a solid cylinder is given by $V = \pi r^2 h$, where r is the radius and h is the height. You measure the radius and height of a thin cylindrical wire and obtain the results $r = 0.036$ cm and $h = 12.1$ cm. What do your measurements give for the volume of the wire in mm^3? Use the correct number of significant figures in your answer.

1.13 •• A useful and easy-to-remember approximate value for the number of seconds in a year is $\pi \times 10^7$. Determine the percent error in this approximate value. (There are 365.24 days in one year.)

1.14 • Express each approximation of π to six significant figures: (a) 22/7 and (b) 355/113. (c) Are these approximations accurate to that precision?

Section 1.6 Estimates and Orders of Magnitude

1.15 • **BIO** Which of the values given below are plausible for an average adult male giraffe: (a) height of 2 m or 5 m? (b) mass of 1500 kg or 5000 kg? (c) maximal speed of 15 m/s or 45 m/s?

1.16 • How many liters of petrol are used in Italy in one day? Assume that there are two cars for every three people, that each car is driven an average of 10,000 kilometers per year, and that the petrol consumption of an average car is 8 liters per 100 kilometers. Assume that the population of Italy is approximately 60 million.

1.17 • In Wagner's opera *Das Rheingold,* the goddess Freia is ransomed for a pile of gold just tall enough and wide enough to hide her from sight. Estimate the monetary value of this pile. The density of gold is 19.3 g/cm^3, and take its value to be about \$40 per gram.

1.18 • **BIO** Four astronauts are in a spherical space station. (a) If, as is typical, each of them breathes about 500 cm^3 of air with each breath, approximately what volume of air (in cubic meters) do these astronauts breathe in a year? (b) What would the diameter (in meters) of the space station have to be to contain all this air?

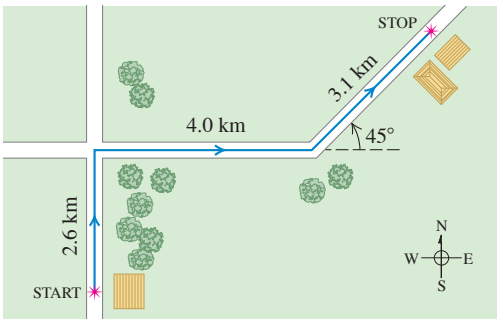
1.19 • You are using water to dilute small amounts of chemicals in the laboratory, drop by drop. How many drops of water are in a 1.0 L bottle? (*Hint:* Start by estimating the diameter of a drop of water.)

1.20 • **BIO** How many times does a human heart beat during a person's lifetime? How many liters of blood does it pump? (Estimate that the heart pumps 50 cm^3 of blood with each beat and assume a 365-day year.)

Section 1.7 Vectors and Vector Addition

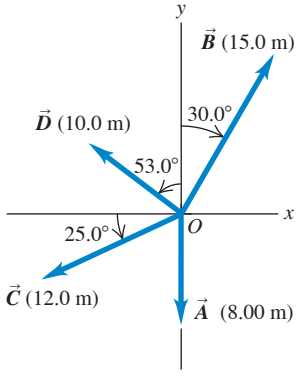
1.21 •• A postal employee drives a delivery truck along the route shown in **Fig. E1.21.** Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant displacement by drawing a scale diagram. (See also Exercise 1.28 for a different approach.)

Figure **E1.21**



1.22 •• For the vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in **Fig. E1.22,** use a scale drawing to find the magnitude and direction of (a) the vector sum $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$ and (b) the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$. Use your answers to find the magnitude and direction of (c) $-\vec{A} - \vec{B}$ and (d) $\vec{B} - \vec{A}$. (See also Exercise 1.29 for a different approach.)

Figure **E1.22**



1.23 •• A spelunker is surveying a cave. She follows a passage 180 m straight west, then 210 m in a direction 45° east of south, and then 280 m at 30° east of north. After a fourth displacement, she finds herself back where she started. Use a scale drawing to determine the magnitude and direction of the fourth displacement. (See also Problem 1.57 for a different approach.)

Section 1.8 Components of Vectors

1.24 •• Let θ be the angle that the vector $\vec{A}$ makes with the $+x$-axis, measured counterclockwise from that axis. Find angle θ for a vector that has these components: (a) $A_x = 2.00$ m, $A_y = -1.00$ m; (b) $A_x = 2.00$ m, $A_y = 1.00$ m; (c) $A_x = -2.00$ m, $A_y = 1.00$ m; (d) $A_x = -2.00$ m, $A_y = -1.00$ m.

1.25 • Compute the x- and y-components of the vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, $\vec{C}$, and $\vec{D}$ in Fig. E1.22.

1.26 • Vector $\vec{A}$ is in the direction 40.0° clockwise from the $-y$-axis. The x-component of $\vec{A}$ is $A_x = -20.0$ m. (a) What is the y-component of $\vec{A}$? (b) What is the magnitude of $\vec{A}$?

1.27 • Vector $\vec{A}$ has y-component $A_y = +13.0$ m. $\vec{A}$ makes an angle of 32.0° counterclockwise from the $+y$-axis. (a) What is the x-component of $\vec{A}$? (b) What is the magnitude of $\vec{A}$?

1.28 •• A postal employee drives a delivery truck over the route shown in Fig. E1.21. Use the method of components to determine the magnitude and direction of her resultant displacement. In a vector-addition diagram (roughly to scale), show that the resultant displacement found from your diagram is in qualitative agreement with the result you obtained by using the method of components.

1.29 • For the vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in Fig. E1.22, use the method of components to find the magnitude and direction of (a) the vector sum $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$; (b) the vector sum $\vec{B} + \vec{A}$; (c) the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$; (d) the vector difference $\vec{B} - \vec{A}$.

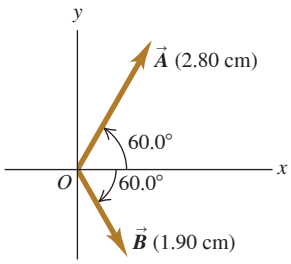
1.30 • Find the magnitude and direction of the vector represented by the following pairs of components: (a) $A_x = -8.60$ cm, $A_y = 5.20$ cm; (b) $A_x = -9.70$ m, $A_y = -2.45$ m; (c) $A_x = 7.75$ km, $A_y = -2.70$ km.

1.31 •• A disoriented physics professor drives 3.25 km north, then 2.20 km west, and then 1.50 km south. Find the magnitude and direction of the resultant displacement, using the method of components. In a vector-addition diagram (roughly to scale), show that the resultant displacement found from your diagram is in qualitative agreement with the result you obtained by using the method of components.

1.32 •• Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 8.00 m and is in the xy-plane at an angle of 127° counterclockwise from the $+x$–axis (37° past the $+y$-axis). What are the magnitude and direction of vector $\vec{B}$ if the sum $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$ is in the $-y$-direction and has magnitude 12.0 m?

1.33 •• Vector $\vec{A}$ is 2.80 cm long and is 60.0° above the x-axis in the first quadrant. Vector $\vec{B}$ is 1.90 cm long and is 60.0° below the x-axis in the fourth quadrant (**Fig. E1.33**). Use components to find the magnitude and direction of (a) $\vec{A} + \vec{B}$; (b) $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$; (c) $\vec{B} - \vec{A}$. In each case, sketch the vector addition or subtraction and show that your numerical answers are in qualitative agreement with your sketch.

Figure **E1.33**



Section 1.9 Unit Vectors

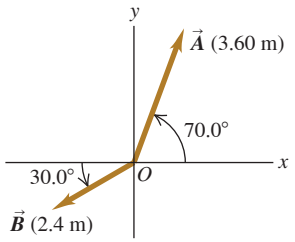
1.34 • In each case, find the x- and y-components of vector $\vec{A}$: (a) $\vec{A} = 3.20\hat{\imath} - 6.50\hat{\jmath}$; (b) $\vec{A} = 18.2\hat{\jmath} - 7.91\hat{\imath}$; (c) $\vec{A} = -12.0\hat{\imath} + 21.2\hat{\jmath}$; (d) $\vec{A} = 5.0\vec{B}$, where $\vec{B} = 8\hat{\imath} - 4\hat{\jmath}$.

1.35 •• Write each vector in Fig. E1.22 in terms of the unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$ and $\hat{\jmath}$.

1.36 •• Given two vectors $\vec{A} = 4.00\hat{\imath} + 7.00\hat{\jmath}$ and $\vec{B} = 5.00\hat{\imath} - 2.00\hat{\jmath}$, (a) find the magnitude of each vector; (b) use unit vectors to write an expression for the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$; and (c) find the magnitude and direction of the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$. (d) In a vector diagram show $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$, and show that your diagram agrees qualitatively with your answer to part (c).

1.37 •• (a) Write each vector in **Fig. E1.37** in terms of the unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$ and $\hat{\jmath}$. (b) Use unit vectors to express vector $\vec{C}$, where $\vec{C} = 3.00\vec{A} - 4.00\vec{B}$. (c) Find the magnitude and direction of $\vec{C}$.

Figure **E1.37**



1.38 • You are given two vectors $\vec{A} = -3.00\hat{\imath} + 6.00\hat{\jmath}$ and $\vec{B} = 7.00\hat{\imath} + 2.00\hat{\jmath}$. Let counterclockwise angles be positive. (a) What angle does $\vec{A}$ make with the $+x$-axis? (b) What angle does $\vec{B}$ make with the $+x$-axis? (c) Vector $\vec{C}$ is the sum of $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$, so $\vec{C} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$. What angle does $\vec{C}$ make with the $+x$-axis?

1.39 • Given two vectors $\vec{A} = -2.00\hat{\imath} + 3.00\hat{\jmath} + 4.00\hat{k}$ and $\vec{B} = 3.00\hat{\imath} + 1.00\hat{\jmath} - 3.00\hat{k}$, (a) find the magnitude of each vector; (b) use unit vectors to write an expression for the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$; and (c) find the magnitude of the vector difference $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$. Is this the same as the magnitude of $\vec{B} - \vec{A}$? Explain.

Section 1.10 Products of Vectors

1.40 •• (a) Find the scalar product of the vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ given in Exercise 1.36. (b) Find the angle between these two vectors.

1.41 • For the vectors $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ in Fig. E1.22, find the scalar products (a) $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$; (b) $\vec{B} \cdot \vec{C}$; (c) $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{C}$.

1.42 •• Find the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ (expressed in unit vectors) of the two vectors given in Exercise 1.36. What is the magnitude of the vector product?

1.43 •• Find the angle between each of these pairs of vectors:
(a) $\vec{A} = -2.00\hat{\imath} + 6.00\hat{\jmath}$ and $\vec{B} = 2.00\hat{\imath} - 3.00\hat{\jmath}$
(b) $\vec{A} = 3.00\hat{\imath} + 5.00\hat{\jmath}$ and $\vec{B} = 10.00\hat{\imath} + 6.00\hat{\jmath}$
(c) $\vec{A} = -4.00\hat{\imath} + 2.00\hat{\jmath}$ and $\vec{B} = 7.00\hat{\imath} + 14.00\hat{\jmath}$

1.44 • For the two vectors in Fig. E1.33, find the magnitude and direction of (a) the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$; (b) the vector product $\vec{B} \times \vec{A}$.

1.45 • For the two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{D}$ in Fig. E1.22, find the magnitude and direction of (a) the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{D}$; (b) the vector product $\vec{D} \times \vec{A}$.

1.46 • For the two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in Fig. E1.37, find (a) the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$; (b) the magnitude and direction of the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$.

1.47 •• The vector product of vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 16.0 m^2 and is in the $+z$-direction. If vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 8.0 m and is in the $-x$-direction, what are the magnitude and direction of vector $\vec{B}$ if it has no x-component?

1.48 • The angle between two vectors is θ. (a) If $\theta = 30.0^{\circ}$, which has the greater magnitude: the scalar product or the vector product of the two vectors? (b) For what value (or values) of θ are the magnitudes of the scalar product and the vector product equal?

PROBLEMS

1.49 •• **White Dwarfs and Neutron Stars.** Recall that density is mass divided by volume, and consult Appendix D as needed. (a) Calculate the average density of the earth in g/cm^3, assuming our planet is a perfect sphere. (b) In about 5 billion years, at the end of its lifetime, our sun will end up as a white dwarf that has about the same mass as it does now but is reduced to about 15,000 km in diameter. What will be its density at that stage? (c) A neutron star is the remnant of certain supernovae (explosions of giant stars). Typically, neutron stars are about 20 km in diameter and have about the same mass as our sun. What is a typical neutron star density in g/cm^3?

1.50 •• **The Hydrogen Maser.** A maser is a laser-type device that produces electromagnetic waves with frequencies in the microwave and radio-wave bands of the electromagnetic spectrum. You can use the radio waves generated by a hydrogen maser as a standard of frequency. The frequency of these waves is 1,420,405,751.786 hertz. (A hertz is another name for one cycle per second.) A clock controlled by a hydrogen maser is off by only 1 s in 100,000 years. For the following questions, use only three significant figures. (The large number of significant figures given for the frequency simply illustrates the remarkable accuracy to which it has been measured.) (a) What is the time for one cycle of the radio wave? (b) How many cycles occur in 1 h? (c) How many cycles would have occurred during the age of the earth, which is estimated to be 4.6×10^9 years? (d) By how many seconds would a hydrogen maser clock be off after a time interval equal to the age of the earth?

1.51 •• **An Earthlike Planet.** In January 2006 astronomers reported the discovery of a planet, comparable in size to the earth, orbiting another star and having a mass about 5.5 times the earth's mass. It is believed to consist of a mixture of rock and ice, similar to Neptune. If this planet has the same density as Neptune ($1.76\ \text{g/cm}^3$), what is its radius expressed (a) in kilometers and (b) as a multiple of earth's radius? Consult the back of the book for astronomical data.

1.52 ••• A rectangular piece of aluminum is 7.60 ± 0.01 cm long and 1.50 ± 0.01 cm wide. (a) Find the area of the rectangle and the uncertainty in the area. (b) Verify that the fractional uncertainty in the area is equal to the sum of the fractional uncertainties in the length and in the width. (This is a general result.)

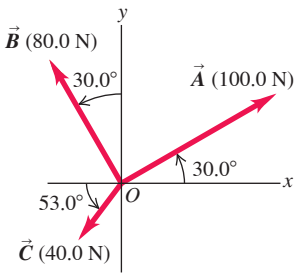
1.53 • BIO Estimate the number of atoms in your body. (*Hint:* Based on what you know about biology and chemistry, what are the most common types of atom in your body? What is the mass of each type of atom? Appendix F gives the atomic masses of different elements, measured in atomic mass units; you can find the value of an atomic mass unit, or 1 u, in Appendix B.)

1.54 • BIO Biological tissues are typically made up of 98% water. Given that the density of water is $1.0 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$, estimate the mass of (a) the heart of an adult human; (b) a cell with a diameter of 0.5 μm; (c) a honeybee.

1.55 •• Vector $\vec{A} = 3.0\hat{\imath} - 4.0\hat{k}$. (a) Construct a unit vector that is parallel to $\vec{A}$. (b) Construct a unit vector that is antiparallel to $\vec{A}$. (c) Construct two unit vectors that are perpendicular to $\vec{A}$ and that have no y-component.

1.56 •• Three horizontal ropes pull on a large stone stuck in the ground, producing the vector forces $\vec{A}$, $\vec{B}$, and $\vec{C}$ shown in **Fig. P1.56.** Find the magnitude and direction of a fourth force on the stone that will make the vector sum of the four forces zero.

Figure P1.56



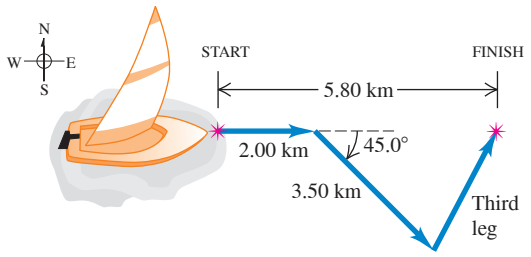
1.57 ••• As noted in Exercise 1.23, a spelunker is surveying a cave. She follows a passage 177 m straight west, then 215 m in a direction 45° east of south, and then 271 m at 30° east of north. After a fourth displacement, she finds herself back where she started. Use the method of components to determine the magnitude and direction of the fourth displacement. Draw the vector-addition diagram and show that it is in qualitative agreement with your numerical solution.

1.58 ••• **Emergency Landing.** A plane leaves the airport in Galisteo and flies 145 km at 68.0° east of north; then it changes direction to fly 250 km at 48.0° south of east, after which it makes an immediate emergency landing in a pasture. When the airport sends out a rescue crew, in which direction and how far should this crew fly to go directly to this plane?

1.59 •• A charged object with electric charge q produces an electric field. The SI unit for electric field is N/C, where N is the SI unit for force and C is the SI unit for charge. If at point P there are electric fields from two or more charged objects, then the resultant field is the vector sum of the fields from each object. At point P the electric field $\vec{E}_1$ from charge q_1 is 450 N/C in the $+y$-direction, and the electric field $\vec{E}_2$ from charge q_2 is 600 N/C in the direction 36.9° from the $-y$-axis toward the $-x$-axis. What are the magnitude and direction of the resultant field $\vec{E} = \vec{E}_1 + \vec{E}_2$ at point P due to these two charges?

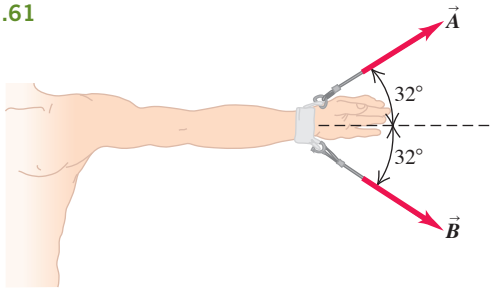
1.60 •• A sailor in a small sailboat encounters shifting winds. She sails 2.00 km east, next 3.50 km southeast, and then an additional distance in an unknown direction. Her final position is 5.80 km directly east of the starting point (**Fig. P1.60**). Find the magnitude and direction of the third leg of the journey. Draw the vector-addition diagram and show that it is in qualitative agreement with your numerical solution.

Figure P1.60



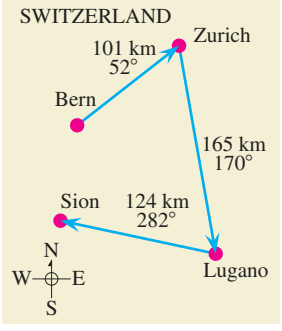
1.61 ••• BIO **Dislocated Shoulder.** A patient with a dislocated shoulder is put into a traction apparatus as shown in **Fig. P1.61.** The pulls $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ have equal magnitudes and must combine to produce an outward traction force of 5.52 N on the patient's arm. How large should these pulls be?

Figure P1.61



1.62 ••• On a training flight in Switzerland, a student pilot flies from Bern to Zurich, next to Lugano, and then to Sion (**Fig. P1.62**). The directions are shown relative to north: 0° is north, 90° is east, 180° is south, and 270° is west. Use the method of components to find (a) the distance she has to fly from Sion to get back to Bern, and (b) the direction (relative to north) she must fly to get there. Illustrate your solutions with a vector diagram.

Figure P1.62



1.63 •• You leave the airport in Wagga Wagga and fly 23.0 km in a direction 34.0° south of east. You then fly 46.0 km due north. How far and in what direction must you then fly to reach a private landing strip that is 32.0 km due west of the Wagga Wagga airport?

1.64 ••• **Getting Back.** An explorer in Antarctica leaves his shelter during a whiteout. He takes 43 steps northeast, next 80 steps at 60° north of west, and then 52 steps due south. Assume all of his steps are equal in length. (a) Sketch, roughly to scale, the three vectors and their resultant. (b) Save the explorer from becoming hopelessly lost by giving him the displacement, calculated by using the method of components, that will return him to his shelter.

1.65 •• As a test of orienteering skills, your physics class holds a contest in a large, open field. Each contestant is told to travel 20.8 m due north from the starting point, then 38.0 m due east, and finally 18.0 m in the direction 33.0° west of south. After the specified displacements, a contestant will find a silver coin hidden under a rock. The winner is the person who takes the shortest time to reach the location of the silver coin. Remembering what you learned in class, you run on a straight line from the starting point to the hidden coin. How far and in what direction do you run?

1.66 • You are standing on a street corner with your friend. You then travel 14.0 m due west across the street and into your apartment building. You travel in the lift 22.0 m upward to your floor, walk 12.0 m north to the door of your apartment, and then walk 6.0 m due east to your balcony that overlooks the street. Your friend is standing where you left her. Now how far are you from your friend?

1.67 •• You are lost at night in a large, open field. Your GPS tells you that you are 122.0 m from your car, in a direction 58.0° east of south. You walk 72.0 m due west along a ditch. How much farther, and in what direction, must you walk to reach your car?

1.68 ••• You live in a town where the streets are straight but are in a variety of directions. On Saturday you go from your apartment to the grocery store by driving 0.60 km due north and then 1.40 km in the direction 60.0° west of north. On Sunday you again travel from your apartment to the same store but this time by driving 0.80 km in the direction 50.0° north of west and then in a straight line to the store. (a) How far is the store from your apartment? (b) On which day do you travel the greater distance, and how much farther do you travel? Or, do you travel the same distance on each route to the store?

1.69 •• While following a treasure map, you start at an old oak tree. You first walk 825 m directly south, then turn and walk 1.25 km at 30.0° west of north, and finally walk 1.00 km at 32.0° north of east, where you find the treasure: a biography of Isaac Newton! (a) To return to the old oak tree, in what direction should you head and how far will you walk? Use components to solve this problem. (b) To see whether your calculation in part (a) is reasonable, compare it with a graphical solution drawn roughly to scale.

1.70 •• A fence post is 59.0 m from where you are standing, in a direction 38.0° north of east. A second fence post is due south from you. How far are you from the second post if the distance between the two posts is 70.0 m?

1.71 •• A dog in an open field runs 12.0 m east and then 28.0 m in a direction 50.0° west of north. In what direction and how far must the dog then run to end up 10.0 m south of her original starting point?

1.72 ••• Ricardo and Jane are standing under a tree in the middle of a pasture. An argument ensues, and they walk away in different directions. Ricardo walks 30.0 m in a direction 60.0° west of north. Jane walks 15.0 m in a direction 30.0° south of west. They then stop and turn to face each other. (a) What is the distance between them? (b) In what direction should Ricardo walk to go directly toward Jane?

1.73 ••• You are camping with Joe and Karl. Since all three of you like your privacy, you don't pitch your tents close together. Joe's tent is 21.0 m from yours, in the direction 23.0° south of east. Karl's tent is 32.0 m from yours, in the direction 37.0° north of east. What is the distance between Karl's tent and Joe's tent?

1.74 •• **Bond Angle in Methane.** In the methane molecule, CH_4, each hydrogen atom is at a corner of a regular tetrahedron with the carbon atom at the center. In coordinates for which one of the C—H bonds is in the direction of $\hat{\imath} + \hat{\jmath} + \hat{k}$, an adjacent C—H bond is in the $\hat{\imath} - \hat{\jmath} - \hat{k}$ direction. Calculate the angle between these two bonds.

1.75 •• The work W done by a constant force $\vec{F}$ on an object that undergoes displacement $\vec{s}$ from point 1 to point 2 is $W = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{s}$. For F in newtons (N) and s in meters (m), W is in joules (J). If, during a displacement of the object, $\vec{F}$ has constant direction 60.0° above the $-x$-axis and constant magnitude 5.00 N and if the displacement is 0.800 m in the $+x$-direction, what is the work done by the force $\vec{F}$?

1.76 •• Magnetic fields are produced by moving charges and exert forces on moving charges. When a particle with charge q is moving with velocity $\vec{v}$ in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$, the force $\vec{F}$ that the field exerts on the particle is given by $\vec{F} = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$. The SI units are as follows: For charge it is the coulomb (C), for magnetic field it is tesla (T), for force it is newton (N), and for velocity it is m/s. If $q = -8.00 \times 10^{-6}$ C, $\vec{v}$ is 3.00×10^4 m/s in the $+x$-direction, and $\vec{B}$ is 5.00 T in the $-y$-direction, what are the magnitude and direction of the force that the magnetic field exerts on the charged particle?

1.77 •• Vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ have scalar product -7.00, and their vector product has magnitude $+9.00$. What is the angle between these two vectors?

1.78 •• Torque is a vector quantity that specifies the effectiveness of a force in causing the rotation of an object. The torque that a force $\vec{F}$ exerts on a rigid object depends on the point where the force acts and on the location of the axis of rotation. If $\vec{r}$ is the length vector from the axis to the point of application of the force, then the torque is $\vec{r} \times \vec{F}$. If $\vec{F}$ is 22.0 N in the $-y$-direction and if $\vec{r}$ is in the xy-plane at an angle of 36° from the $+y$-axis toward the $-x$-axis and has magnitude 4.0 m, what are the magnitude and direction of the torque exerted by $\vec{F}$?

1.79 •• Vector $\vec{A} = a\hat{\imath} - b\hat{k}$ and vector $\vec{B} = -c\hat{\jmath} + d\hat{k}$. (a) In terms of the positive scalar quantities a, b, c, and d, what are $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ and $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$? (b) If $c = 0$, what is the magnitude of $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ and what are the magnitude and direction of $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$? Does your result for the direction for $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ agree with the result you get if you sketch $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ in the xz-plane and apply the right-hand rule? The scalar product can be described as the magnitude of $\vec{B}$ times the component of $\vec{A}$ that is parallel to $\vec{B}$. Does this agree with your result? The magnitude of the vector product can be described as the magnitude of $\vec{B}$ times the component of $\vec{A}$ that is perpendicular to $\vec{B}$. Does this agree with your result?

1.80 •• Vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ are in the xy-plane. Vector $\vec{A}$ is in the $+x$-direction, and the direction of vector $\vec{B}$ is at an angle θ from the $+x$-axis measured toward the $+y$-axis. (a) If θ is in the range $0° \le \theta \le 180°$, for what two values of θ does the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ have its maximum magnitude? For each of these values of θ, what is the magnitude of the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$? (b) If θ is in the range $0° \le \theta \le 180°$, for what value of θ does the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ have its maximum value? For this value of θ, what is the magnitude of the scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$? (c) What is the angle θ in the range $0° \le \theta \le 180°$ for which $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ is twice $|\vec{A} \times \vec{B}|$?

1.81 •• Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 12.0 m, and vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 12.0 m. The scalar product $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$ is 76.0 m^2. What is the magnitude of the vector product between these two vectors?

1.82 •• Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 5.00 m and lies in the xy-plane in a direction 53.0° from the $+x$-axis axis measured toward the $+y$-axis. Vector $\vec{B}$ has magnitude 8.00 m and a direction you can adjust. (a) You want the vector product $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ to have a positive z-component of the largest possible magnitude. What direction should you select for vector $\vec{B}$? (b) What is the direction of $\vec{B}$ for which $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ has the most negative z-component? (c) What are the two directions of $\vec{B}$ for which $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$ is zero?

1.83 •• The scalar product of vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ is $+59.0\ \text{m}^2$. Vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude 9.00 m and direction 28.0° west of south. If vector $\vec{B}$ has direction 39.0° south of east, what is the magnitude of $\vec{B}$?

1.84 ••• Obtain a *unit vector* perpendicular to the two vectors given in Exercise 1.39.

1.85 •• You are given vectors $\vec{A} = 5.0\hat{\imath} - 6.5\hat{\jmath}$ and $\vec{B} = 3.5\hat{\imath} - 7.0\hat{\jmath}$. A third vector, $\vec{C}$, lies in the xy-plane. Vector $\vec{C}$ is perpendicular to vector $\vec{A}$, and the scalar product of $\vec{C}$ with $\vec{B}$ is 15.0. From this information, find the components of vector $\vec{C}$.

1.86 •• Two vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ have magnitudes $A = 3.00$ and $B = 3.00$. Their vector product is $\vec{A} \times \vec{B} = -5.00\hat{k} + 2.00\hat{\imath}$. What is the angle between $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$?

1.87 ••• DATA You are a team leader at a pharmaceutical company. Several technicians are preparing samples, and you want to compare the densities of the samples (density = mass/volume) by using the mass and volume values they have reported. Unfortunately, you did not specify what units to use. The technicians used a variety of units in reporting their values, as shown in the following table.

Sample ID	Mass	Volume
A	8.00 g	$1.67 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3$
B	6.00 μg	$9.38 \times 10^{6}\ \mu\text{m}^3$
C	8.00 mg	$2.50 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{cm}^3$
D	9.00×10^{-4} kg	$2.81 \times 10^{3}\ \text{mm}^3$
E	9.00×10^{4} ng	$1.59 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mm}^3$
F	6.00×10^{-2} mg	$1.25 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{cm}^3$

List the sample IDs in order of increasing density of the sample.

1.88 ••• DATA You are a mechanical engineer working for a manufacturing company. Two forces, $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$, act on a component part of a piece of equipment. Your boss asked you to find the magnitude of the larger of these two forces. You can vary the angle between $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ from 0° to 90° while the magnitude of each force stays constant. And, you can measure the magnitude of the resultant force they produce (their vector sum), but you cannot directly measure the magnitude of each separate force. You measure the magnitude of the resultant force for four angles θ between the directions of the two forces as follows:

θ	Resultant force (N)
0.0°	8.00
45.0°	7.43
60.0°	7.00
90.0°	5.83

(a) What is the magnitude of the larger of the two forces? (b) When the equipment is used on the production line, the angle between the two forces is 30.0°. What is the magnitude of the resultant force in this case?

1.89 ••• DATA **Navigating in the Solar System.** The *Mars Polar Lander* spacecraft was launched on January 3, 1999. On December 3, 1999, the day *Mars Polar Lander* impacted the Martian surface at high velocity and probably disintegrated, the positions of the earth and Mars were given by these coordinates:

	x	y	z
Earth	0.3182 AU	0.9329 AU	−0.0000 AU
Mars	1.3087 AU	−0.4423 AU	−0.0414 AU

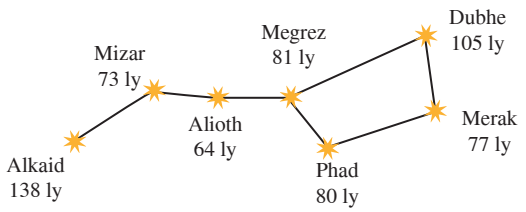
With these coordinates, the sun is at the origin and the earth's orbit is in the xy-plane. The earth passes through the $+x$-axis once a year on the autumnal equinox, the first day of autumn in the northern hemisphere (on or about September 22). One AU, or *astronomical unit,* is equal to 1.496×10^{8} km, the average distance from the earth to the sun. (a) Draw the positions of the sun, the earth, and Mars on December 3, 1999. (b) Find these distances in AU on December 3, 1999: from (i) the sun to the earth; (ii) the sun to Mars; (iii) the earth to Mars. (c) As seen from the earth, what was the angle between the direction to the sun and the direction to Mars on December 3, 1999? (d) Explain whether Mars was visible from your current location at midnight on December 3, 1999. (When it is midnight, the sun is on the opposite side of the earth from you.)

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

1.90 ••• **Drone Delivery.** You are testing parcel delivery by drone for a project. Your team uses vector displacements to record the route of the drone, with the origin taken to be the position of the control centre. During one test, the drone starts its flight at $+10\hat{\imath} - 50\hat{\jmath}$, where the units are meters, $\hat{\imath}$ is to the east, and $\hat{\jmath}$ is to the north. Subsequent displacements of the drone are $+90\hat{\imath}$, $+110\hat{\jmath}$, $-60\hat{\imath} + 40\hat{\jmath}$, and $+120\hat{\imath} + 180\hat{\jmath}$. If the final destination of the drone is $-70\hat{\jmath}$, how far and in which direction must the drone fly? (You are well advised to diagram the situation before solving this numerically.)

1.91 ••• **Navigating in the Big Dipper.** All of the stars of the Big Dipper (part of the constellation Ursa Major) may appear to be the same distance from the earth, but in fact they are very far from each other. **Figure P1.91** shows the distances from the earth to each of these stars. The distances are given in light-years (ly), the distance that light travels in one year. One light-year equals 9.461×10^{15} m. (a) Alkaid and Merak are 25.6° apart in the earth's sky. In a diagram, show the relative positions of Alkaid, Merak, and our sun. Find the distance in light-years from Alkaid to Merak. (b) To an inhabitant of a planet orbiting Merak, how many degrees apart in the sky would Alkaid and our sun be?

Figure P1.91



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

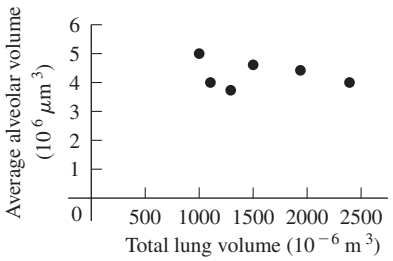
BIO Calculating Lung Volume in Humans. In humans, oxygen and carbon dioxide are exchanged in the blood within many small sacs called alveoli in the lungs. Alveoli provide a large surface area for gas exchange. Recent careful measurements show that the total number of alveoli in a typical pair of lungs is about 480×10^6 and that the average volume of a single alveolus is $4.2 \times 10^6\ \mu\text{m}^3$. (The volume of a sphere is $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$, and the area of a sphere is $A = 4\pi r^2$.)

1.92 What is total volume of the gas-exchanging region of the lungs? (a) 2000 μm^3; (b) 2 m^3; (c) 2.0 L; (d) 120 L.

1.93 If we assume that alveoli are spherical, what is the diameter of a typical alveolus? (a) 0.20 mm; (b) 2 mm; (c) 20 mm; (d) 200 mm.

1.94 Individuals vary considerably in total lung volume. **Figure P1.94** shows the results of measuring the total lung volume and average alveolar volume of six individuals. From these data, what can you infer about the relationship among alveolar size, total lung volume, and number of alveoli per individual? As the total volume of the lungs increases, (a) the number and volume of individual alveoli increase; (b) the number of alveoli increases and the volume of individual alveoli decreases; (c) the volume of the individual alveoli remains constant and the number of alveoli increases; (d) both the number of alveoli and the volume of individual alveoli remain constant.

Figure **P1.94**



ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iii) Take the $+x$-axis to point east and the $+y$-axis to point north. Then we need to find the y-component of the velocity vector, which has magnitude $v = 15$ km/h and is at an angle $\theta = 37°$ measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis. From Eqs. (1.5) we have $v_y = v\sin\theta = (15\ \text{km/h})\sin 37° = 9.0$ km/h. So the thunderstorm moves 9.0 km north in 1 h and 18 km north in 2 h.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP1.7.1 $D = 12.7$ m, $\theta = -51° = 309°$ (fourth quadrant)
VP1.7.2 $S = 115$ m, $\theta = 42°$ (first quadrant)
VP1.7.3 (a) $T_x = -7.99$ m, $T_y = -7.88$ m (b) $T = 11.2$ m, $\theta = 225°$ (third quadrant)
VP1.7.4 68.7 m, $\theta = 207°$ (third quadrant)
VP1.10.1 (a) $A_x = 4.00$, $A_y = -3.00$, $B_x = -2.19$, $B_y = 6.01$ (b) $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = -26.8$
VP1.10.2 (a) $\vec{C}\cdot\vec{D} = -26.8$ (b) $\phi = 115°$
VP1.10.3 $\phi = 91°$
VP1.10.4 (a) 14.8 N (b) 77.7°

Bridging Problem

(a) 5.2×10^2 N
(b) $4.5 \times 10^2\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$

? A typical runner gains speed gradually during the course of a sprinting foot race and then slows down after crossing the finish line. In which part of the motion is it accurate to say that the runner is accelerating? (i) During the race; (ii) after the runner crosses the finish line; (iii) both (i) and (ii); (iv) neither (i) nor (ii); (v) answer depends on how rapidly the runner gains speed during the race.

2 Motion Along a Straight Line

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **2.1** How the ideas of displacement and average velocity help us describe straight-line motion.
- **2.2** The meaning of instantaneous velocity; the difference between velocity and speed.
- **2.3** How to use average acceleration and instantaneous acceleration to describe changes in velocity.
- **2.4** How to use equations and graphs to solve problems that involve straight-line motion with constant acceleration.
- **2.5** How to solve problems in which an object is falling freely under the influence of gravity alone.
- **2.6** How to analyze straight-line motion when the acceleration is not constant.

You'll need to review...

- **1.7** The displacement vector.
- **1.8** Components of a vector.

What distance must an airliner travel down a runway before it reaches takeoff speed? When you throw a ball straight up in the air, how high does it go? When a glass slips from your hand, how much time do you have to catch it before it hits the floor? These are the kinds of questions you'll learn to answer in this chapter. *Mechanics* is the study of the relationships among force, matter, and motion. In this chapter and the next we'll study *kinematics,* the part of mechanics that enables us to describe motion. Later we'll study *dynamics,* which helps us understand why objects move in different ways.

In this chapter we'll concentrate on the simplest kind of motion: an object moving along a straight line. To describe this motion, we introduce the physical quantities *velocity* and *acceleration*. In physics these quantities have definitions that are more precise and slightly different from the ones used in everyday language. Both velocity and acceleration are *vectors:* As you learned in Chapter 1, this means that they have both magnitude and direction. Our concern in this chapter is with motion along a straight line only, so we won't need the full mathematics of vectors just yet. But using vectors will be essential in Chapter 3 when we consider motion in two or three dimensions.

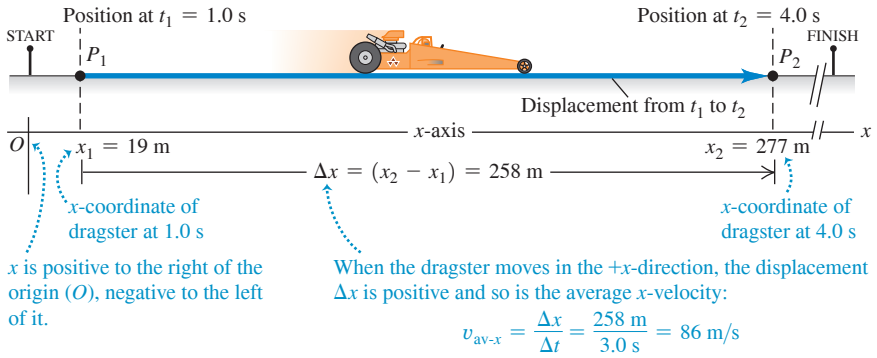
We'll develop simple equations to describe straight-line motion in the important special case when acceleration is constant. An example is the motion of a freely falling object. We'll also consider situations in which acceleration varies during the motion; in this case, it's necessary to use integration to describe the motion. (If you haven't studied integration yet, Section 2.6 is optional.)

2.1 DISPLACEMENT, TIME, AND AVERAGE VELOCITY

Suppose a drag racer drives her dragster along a straight track (**Fig. 2.1**). To study the dragster's motion, we need a coordinate system. We choose the x-axis to lie along the dragster's straight-line path, with the origin O at the starting line. We also choose a point on the dragster, such as its front end, and represent the entire dragster by that point. Hence we treat the dragster as a **particle.**

A useful way to describe the motion of this particle is in terms of the change in its coordinate x over a time interval. Suppose that 1.0 s after the start the front of the dragster is at point P_1, 19 m from the origin, and 4.0 s after the start it is at point P_2, 277 m

Figure **2.1** Positions of a dragster at two times during its run.



from the origin. The *displacement* of the particle is a vector that points from P_1 to P_2 (see Section 1.7). Figure 2.1 shows that this vector points along the x-axis. The x-component (see Section 1.8) of the displacement is the change in the value of x, (277 m − 19 m) = 258 m, that took place during the time interval of (4.0 s − 1.0 s) = 3.0 s. We define the dragster's **average velocity** during this time interval as a *vector* whose x-component is the change in x divided by the time interval: (258 m)/(3.0 s) = 86 m/s.

In general, the average velocity depends on the particular time interval chosen. For a 3.0 s time interval *before* the start of the race, the dragster is at rest at the starting line and has zero displacement, so its average velocity for this time interval is zero.

Let's generalize the concept of average velocity. At time t_1 the dragster is at point P_1, with coordinate x_1, and at time t_2 it is at point P_2, with coordinate x_2. The displacement of the dragster during the time interval from t_1 to t_2 is the vector from P_1 to P_2. The x-component of the displacement, denoted Δx, is the change in the coordinate x:

$$\Delta x = x_2 - x_1 \tag{2.1}$$

The dragster moves along the x-axis only, so the y- and z-components of the displacement are equal to zero.

The x-component of average velocity, or the **average *x*-velocity,** is the x-component of displacement, Δx, divided by the time interval Δt during which the displacement occurs. We use the symbol $v_{av\text{-}x}$ for average x-velocity (the subscript "av" signifies average value, and the subscript x indicates that this is the x-component):

Average *x*-velocity of a particle in **straight-line motion** during time interval from t_1 to t_2

$$v_{av\text{-}x} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{x_2 - x_1}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{2.2}$$

x-component of the particle's displacement

Final x-coordinate minus initial x-coordinate

Time interval

Final time minus initial time

As an example, for the dragster in Fig. 2.1, $x_1 = 19$ m, $x_2 = 277$ m, $t_1 = 1.0$ s, and $t_2 = 4.0$ s. So Eq. (2.2) gives

$$v_{av\text{-}x} = \frac{277\text{ m} - 19\text{ m}}{4.0\text{ s} - 1.0\text{ s}} = \frac{258\text{ m}}{3.0\text{ s}} = 86\text{ m/s}$$

The average x-velocity of the dragster is positive. This means that during the time interval, the coordinate x increased and the dragster moved in the positive x-direction (to the right in Fig. 2.1).

If a particle moves in the *negative* x-direction during a time interval, its average velocity for that time interval is negative. For example, suppose an official's truck moves to the left along the track (**Fig. 2.2**, next page). The truck is at $x_1 = 277$ m at $t_1 = 16.0$ s and is at $x_2 = 19$ m at $t_2 = 25.0$ s. Then $\Delta x = (19\text{ m} - 277\text{ m}) = -258$ m and $\Delta t = (25.0\text{ s} - 16.0\text{ s}) = 9.0$ s. The x-component of average velocity is $v_{av\text{-}x} = \Delta x/\Delta t = (-258\text{ m})/(9.0\text{ s}) = -29$ m/s. **Table 2.1** lists some simple rules for deciding whether the x-velocity is positive or negative.

CAUTION **The meaning of Δx** Note that Δx is *not* the product of Δ and x; it is a single symbol that means "the change in quantity x." We use the Greek capital letter Δ (delta) to represent a *change* in a quantity, equal to the *final* value of the quantity minus the *initial* value—never the reverse. Likewise, the time interval from t_1 to t_2 is Δt, the change in t: $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ (final time minus initial time).

TABLE 2.1 Rules for the Sign of x-Velocity

If x-coordinate is:	... x-velocity is:
Positive & increasing (getting more positive)	Positive: Particle is moving in +x-direction
Positive & decreasing (getting less positive)	Negative: Particle is moving in −x-direction
Negative & increasing (getting less negative)	Positive: Particle is moving in +x-direction
Negative & decreasing (getting more negative)	Negative: Particle is moving in −x-direction

Note: These rules apply to both the average x-velocity $v_{av\text{-}x}$ and the instantaneous x-velocity v_x (to be discussed in Section 2.2).

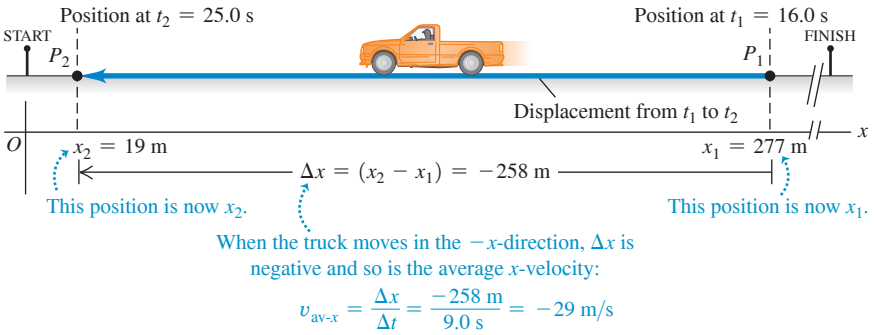


Figure **2.2** Positions of an official's truck at two times during its motion. The points P_1 and P_2 now indicate the positions of the truck, not the dragster, and so are the reverse of Fig. 2.1.

CAUTION **The sign of average *x*-velocity** In our example positive $v_{av\text{-}x}$ means motion to the right, as in Fig. 2.1, and negative $v_{av\text{-}x}$ means motion to the left, as in Fig. 2.2. But that's *only* because we chose the $+x$-direction to be to the right. Had we chosen the $+x$-direction to be to the left, the average x-velocity $v_{av\text{-}x}$ would have been negative for the dragster moving to the right and positive for the truck moving to the left. In many problems the direction of the coordinate axis is yours to choose. Once you've made your choice, you *must* take it into account when interpreting the signs of $v_{av\text{-}x}$ and other quantities that describe motion!

With straight-line motion we sometimes call Δx simply the displacement and $v_{av\text{-}x}$ simply the average velocity. But remember that these are the x-components of vector quantities that, in this special case, have *only* x-components. In Chapter 3, displacement, velocity, and acceleration vectors will have two or three nonzero components.

Figure 2.3 is a graph of the dragster's position as a function of time—that is, an ***x-t* graph.** The curve in the figure *does not* represent the dragster's path; as Fig. 2.1 shows, the path is a straight line. Rather, the graph represents how the dragster's position changes with time. The points p_1 and p_2 on the graph correspond to the points P_1 and P_2 along the dragster's path. Line p_1p_2 is the hypotenuse of a right triangle with vertical side $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$ and horizontal side $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$. The average x-velocity $v_{av\text{-}x} = \Delta x/\Delta t$ of the dragster equals the *slope* of the line p_1p_2—that is, the ratio of the triangle's vertical side Δx to its horizontal side Δt. (The slope has units of meters divided by seconds, or m/s, the correct units for average x-velocity.)

The average x-velocity depends on only the total displacement $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$ that occurs during the time interval $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$, not on what happens during the time interval. At time t_1 a motorcycle might have raced past the dragster at point P_1 in Fig. 2.1, then slowed down to pass through point P_2 at the same time t_2 as the dragster. Both vehicles have the same displacement during the same time interval and so have the same average x-velocity.

If distance is given in meters and time in seconds, average velocity is measured in meters per second, or m/s (**Table 2.2**). Other common units of velocity are kilometers per hour (km/h), miles per hour (1 mi/h = 1.609 km/h), and knots (1 knot = 1 nautical mile/h = 1.852 km/h).

TABLE 2.2 Typical Velocity Magnitudes

A snail's pace	10^{-3} m/s
A brisk walk	2 m/s
Fastest human	11 m/s
Motorway speed	30 m/s
Fastest car	341 m/s
Random motion of air molecules	500 m/s
Fastest airplane	1000 m/s
Orbiting communications satellite	3000 m/s
Average speed of an electron in a hydrogen atom	2×10^6 m/s
Light traveling in vacuum	3×10^8 m/s

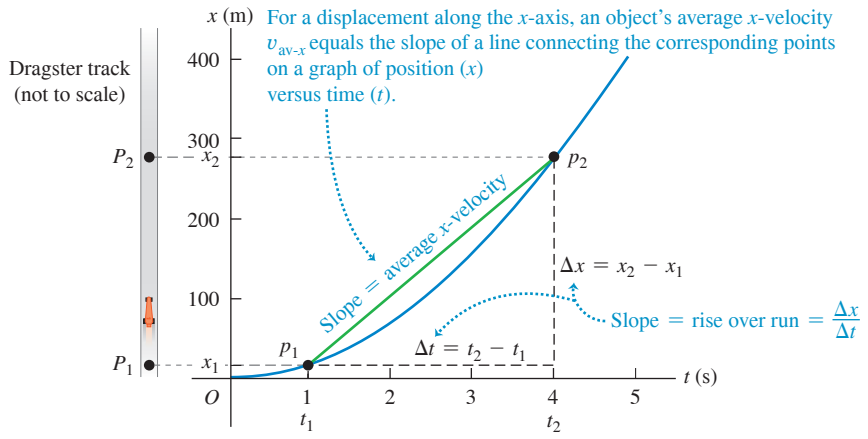


Figure **2.3** A graph of the position of a dragster as a function of time.

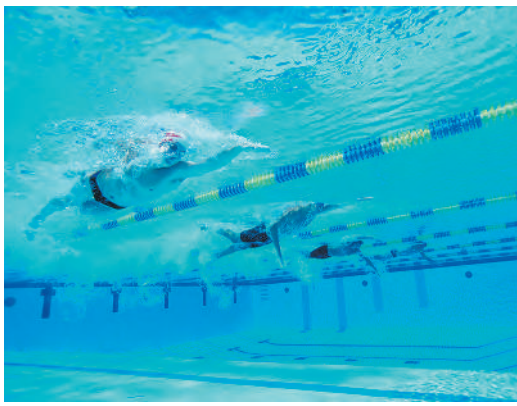
TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 2.1 Five cars, *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E*, each take a trip that lasts one hour. The positive *x*-direction is to the east. (i) *A* travels 50 km due east. (ii) *B* travels 50 km due west. (iii) *C* travels 60 km due east, then turns around and travels 10 km due west. (iv) *D* travels 70 km due east. (v) *E* travels 20 km due west, then turns around and travels 20 km due east. (a) Rank the five trips in order of average *x*-velocity from most positive to most negative. (b) Which trips, if any, have the same average *x*-velocity? (c) For which trip, if any, is the average *x*-velocity equal to zero?

ANSWERS (a): **(iv), (i) and (iii) (tie), (v), (ii);** (b): **(i) and (iii);** (c): **(v)** In (a) the average *x*-velocity is $v_{av\text{-}x} = \Delta x/\Delta t$. For all five trips, $\Delta t = 1$ h. For the individual trips, (i) $\Delta x = +50$ km, $v_{av\text{-}x} = +50$ km/h. (ii) $\Delta x = -50$ km, $v_{av\text{-}x} = -50$ km/h; (iii) $\Delta x = 60$ km $- 10$ km $= +50$ km, $v_{av\text{-}x} = +50$ km/h; (iv) $\Delta x = +70$ km, $v_{av\text{-}x} = +70$ km/h; (v) $\Delta x = -20$ km $+ 20$ km $= 0$, $v_{av\text{-}x} = 0$. In (b) both have $v_{av\text{-}x} = +50$ km/h.

2.2 INSTANTANEOUS VELOCITY

Sometimes average velocity is all you need to know about a particle's motion. For example, a race along a straight line is really a competition to see whose average velocity, $v_{av\text{-}x}$, has the greatest magnitude. The prize goes to the competitor who can travel the displacement Δx from the start to the finish line in the shortest time interval, Δt (**Fig. 2.4**).

Figure 2.4 The winner of a 50 m swimming race is the swimmer whose average velocity has the greatest magnitude—that is, the swimmer who traverses a displacement Δx of 50 m in the shortest elapsed time Δt.



But the average velocity of a particle during a time interval can't tell us how fast, or in what direction, the particle was moving at any given time during the interval. For that we need to know the **instantaneous velocity,** or the velocity at a specific instant of time or specific point along the path.

CAUTION How long is an instant? You might use the phrase "It lasted just an instant" to refer to something that spanned a very short time interval. But in physics an instant has no duration at all; it refers to a single value of time.

To find the instantaneous velocity of the dragster in Fig. 2.1 at point P_1, we move point P_2 closer and closer to point P_1 and compute the average velocity $v_{av\text{-}x} = \Delta x/\Delta t$ over the ever-shorter displacement and time interval. Both Δx and Δt become very small, but their ratio does not necessarily become small. In the language of calculus, the limit of $\Delta x/\Delta t$ as Δt approaches zero is called the **derivative** of x with respect to t and is written dx/dt. We use the symbol v_x, with no "av" subscript, for the instantaneous velocity along the *x*-axis, or the **instantaneous *x*-velocity:**

The **instantaneous *x*-velocity** of a particle in **straight-line motion** ...

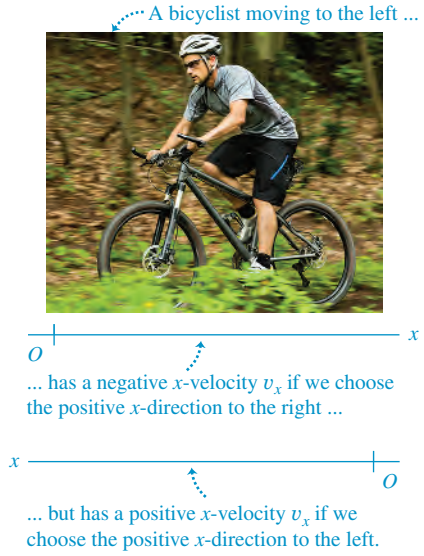
$$v_x = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{dx}{dt} \tag{2.3}$$

... equals the limit of the particle's average *x*-velocity as the time interval approaches zero ...

... and equals the instantaneous rate of change of the particle's *x*-coordinate.

The time interval Δt is always positive, so v_x has the same algebraic sign as Δx. A positive value of v_x means that x is increasing and the motion is in the positive *x*-direction; a negative value of v_x means that x is decreasing and the motion is in the negative *x*-direction. An object can have positive x and negative v_x, or the reverse; x tells us where the object is, while v_x tells us how it's moving (**Fig. 2.5**). The rules that we presented in Table 2.1 (Section 2.1) for the sign of average *x*-velocity $v_{av\text{-}x}$ also apply to the sign of instantaneous *x*-velocity v_x.

Figure 2.5 In any problem involving straight-line motion, the choice of which direction is positive and which is negative is entirely up to you.



Instantaneous velocity, like average velocity, is a vector; Eq. (2.3) defines its *x*-component. In straight-line motion, all other components of instantaneous velocity are zero. In this case we often call v_x simply the instantaneous velocity. (In Chapter 3 we'll deal with the general case in which the instantaneous velocity can have nonzero *x*-, *y*-, and *z*-components.) When we use the term "velocity," we'll always mean instantaneous rather than average velocity.

"Velocity" and "speed" are used interchangeably in everyday language, but they have distinct definitions in physics. We use the term **speed** to denote distance traveled divided by time, on either an average or an instantaneous basis. Instantaneous *speed,* for which we use the symbol v with *no* subscripts, measures how fast a particle is moving; instantaneous *velocity* measures how fast *and* in what direction it's moving. Instantaneous speed is the magnitude of instantaneous velocity and so can never be negative. For example, a particle with instantaneous velocity $v_x = 25$ m/s and a second particle with $v_x = -25$ m/s are moving in opposite directions at the same instantaneous speed 25 m/s.

CAUTION **Average speed and average velocity** Average speed is *not* the magnitude of average velocity. When César Cielo set a world record in 2009 by swimming 100.0 m in 46.91 s, his average speed was (100.0 m)/(46.91 s) = 2.132 m/s. But because he swam two lengths in a 50 m pool, he started and ended at the same point and so had zero total displacement and zero average *velocity!* Both average speed and instantaneous speed are scalars, not vectors, because these quantities contain no information about direction.

EXAMPLE 2.1 Average and instantaneous velocities

A cheetah is crouched 20 m to the east of a vehicle (**Fig. 2.6a**). At time $t = 0$ the cheetah begins to run due east toward an antelope that is 50 m to the east of the vehicle. During the first 2.0 s of the chase, the cheetah's x-coordinate varies with time according to the equation $x = 20\text{ m} + (5.0\text{ m/s}^2)t^2$. (a) Find the cheetah's displacement between $t_1 = 1.0$ s and $t_2 = 2.0$ s. (b) Find its average velocity during that interval. (c) Find its instantaneous velocity at $t_1 = 1.0$ s by taking $\Delta t = 0.1$ s, then 0.01 s, then 0.001 s. (d) Derive an expression for the cheetah's instantaneous velocity as a function of time, and use it to find v_x at $t = 1.0$ s and $t = 2.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Figure 2.6b shows our sketch of the cheetah's motion. We use Eq. (2.1) for displacement, Eq. (2.2) for average velocity, and Eq. (2.3) for instantaneous velocity.

EXECUTE (a) At $t_1 = 1.0$ s and $t_2 = 2.0$ s the cheetah's positions x_1 and x_2 are

$$x_1 = 20\text{ m} + (5.0\text{ m/s}^2)(1.0\text{ s})^2 = 25\text{ m}$$
$$x_2 = 20\text{ m} + (5.0\text{ m/s}^2)(2.0\text{ s})^2 = 40\text{ m}$$

The displacement during this 1.0 s interval is

$$\Delta x = x_2 - x_1 = 40\text{ m} - 25\text{ m} = 15\text{ m}$$

(b) The average x-velocity during this interval is

$$v_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{x_2 - x_1}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{40\text{ m} - 25\text{ m}}{2.0\text{ s} - 1.0\text{ s}} = \frac{15\text{ m}}{1.0\text{ s}} = 15\text{ m/s}$$

(c) With $\Delta t = 0.1$ s the time interval is from $t_1 = 1.0$ s to a new $t_2 = 1.1$ s. At t_2 the position is

$$x_2 = 20\text{ m} + (5.0\text{ m/s}^2)(1.1\text{ s})^2 = 26.05\text{ m}$$

The average x-velocity during this 0.1 s interval is

$$v_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{26.05\text{ m} - 25\text{ m}}{1.1\text{ s} - 1.0\text{ s}} = 10.5\text{ m/s}$$

Following this pattern, you can calculate the average x-velocities for 0.01 s and 0.001 s intervals: The results are 10.05 m/s and 10.005 m/s. As Δt gets smaller, the average x-velocity gets closer to 10.0 m/s, so we conclude that the instantaneous x-velocity at $t = 1.0$ s is 10.0 m/s. (We suspended the rules for significant-figure counting in these calculations.)

(d) From Eq. (2.3) the instantaneous x-velocity is $v_x = dx/dt$. The derivative of a constant is zero and the derivative of t^2 is $2t$, so

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}[20\text{ m} + (5.0\text{ m/s}^2)t^2]$$
$$= 0 + (5.0\text{ m/s}^2)(2t) = (10\text{ m/s}^2)t$$

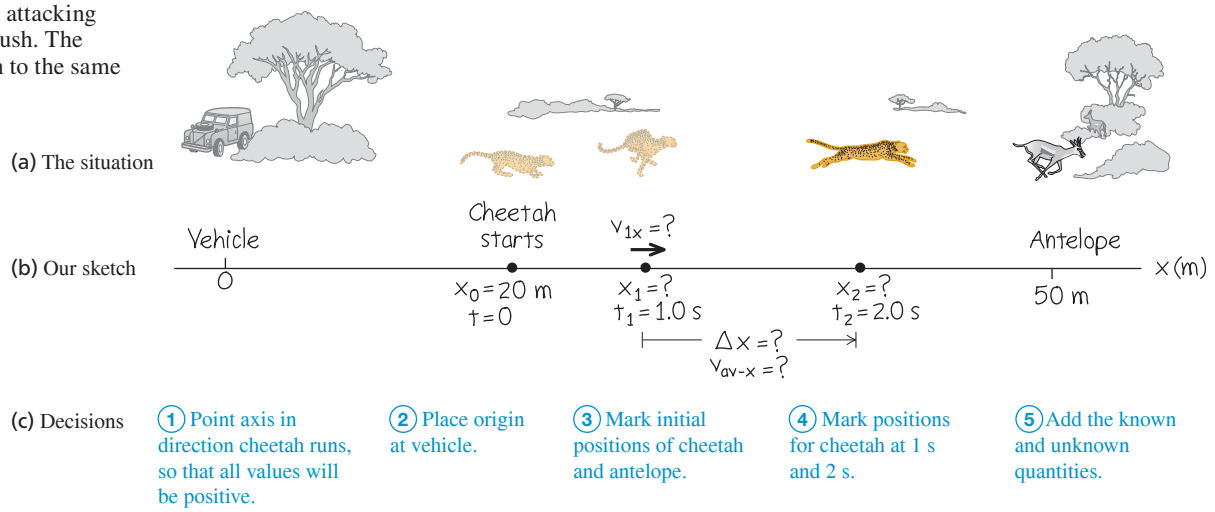


Figure 2.6 A cheetah attacking an antelope from ambush. The animals are not drawn to the same scale as the axis.

At $t = 1.0$ s, this yields $v_x = 10$ m/s, as we found in part (c); at $t = 2.0$ s, $v_x = 20$ m/s.

EVALUATE Our results show that the cheetah picked up speed from $t = 0$ (when it was at rest) to $t = 1.0$ s ($v_x = 10$ m/s) to $t = 2.0$ s ($v_x = 20$ m/s). This makes sense; the cheetah covered only 5 m during the interval $t = 0$ to $t = 1.0$ s, but it covered 15 m during the interval $t = 1.0$ s to $t = 2.0$ s.

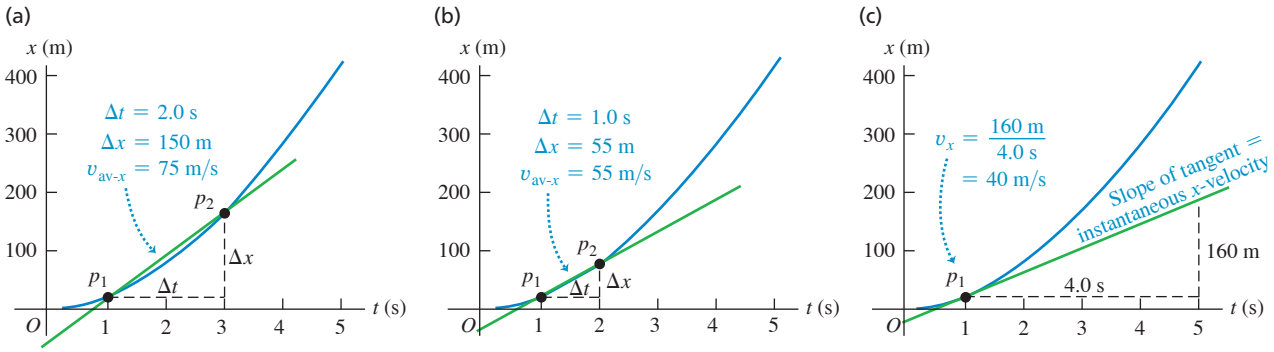
KEYCONCEPT To calculate the average velocity of an object in straight-line motion, first find its displacement (final coordinate minus initial coordinate) during a time interval. Then divide by the time interval. To calculate the object's instantaneous velocity (its average velocity over an infinitesimally short time interval), take the derivative of its position with respect to time.

Finding Velocity on an *x-t* Graph

We can also find the *x*-velocity of a particle from the graph of its position as a function of time. Suppose we want to find the *x*-velocity of the dragster in Fig. 2.1 at point P_1. As point P_2 in Fig. 2.1 approaches point P_1, point p_2 in the *x-t* graphs of **Figs. 2.7a** and 2.7b approaches point p_1 and the average *x*-velocity is calculated over shorter time intervals Δt. In the limit that $\Delta t \to 0$, shown in Fig. 2.7c, the slope of the line p_1p_2 equals the slope of the line tangent to the curve at point p_1. Thus, *on a graph of position as a function of time for straight-line motion, the instantaneous x-velocity at any point is equal to the slope of the tangent to the curve at that point.*

If the tangent to the *x-t* curve slopes upward to the right, as in Fig. 2.7c, then its slope is positive, the *x*-velocity is positive, and the motion is in the positive *x*-direction. If the tangent slopes downward to the right, the slopes of the *x-t* graph and the *x*-velocity are negative, and the motion is in the negative *x*-direction. When the tangent is horizontal, the slope and the *x*-velocity are zero. **Figure 2.8** illustrates these three possibilities.

Figure **2.7** Using an *x-t* graph to go from (a), (b) average *x*-velocity to (c) instantaneous *x*-velocity v_x. In (c) we find the slope of the tangent to the *x-t* curve by dividing any vertical interval (with distance units) along the tangent by the corresponding horizontal interval (with time units).

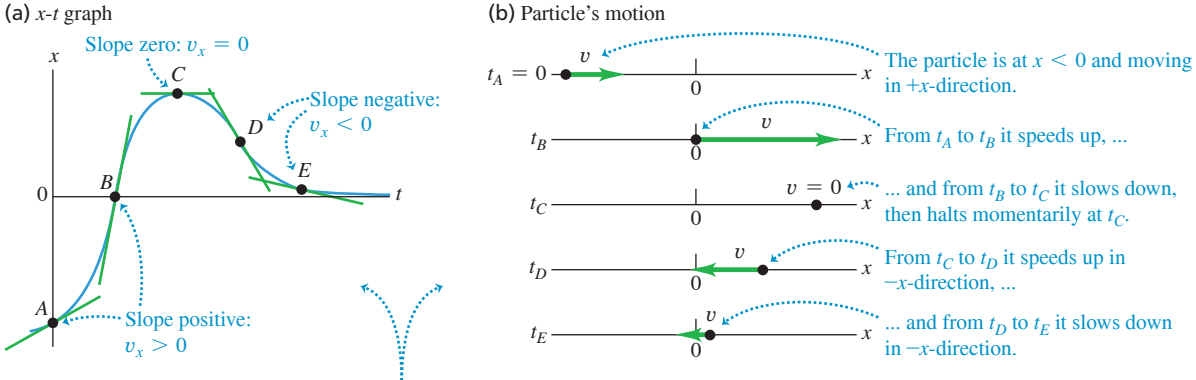


As the average *x*-velocity $v_{av\text{-}x}$ is calculated over shorter and shorter time intervals ...

... its value $v_{av\text{-}x} = \Delta x/\Delta t$ approaches the instantaneous *x*-velocity.

The instantaneous *x*-velocity v_x at any given point equals the slope of the tangent to the *x-t* curve at that point.

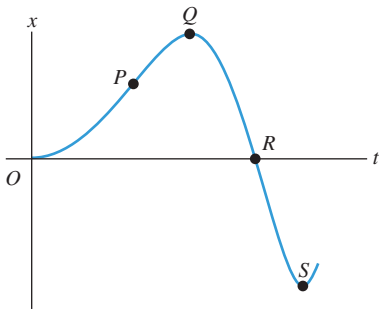
Figure **2.8** (a) The *x-t* graph of the motion of a particular particle. (b) A motion diagram showing the position and velocity of the particle at each of the times labeled on the *x-t* graph.



- On an *x-t* graph, the slope of the tangent at any point equals the particle's velocity at that point.
- The steeper the slope (positive or negative), the greater the particle's speed in the positive or negative *x*-direction.

Figure 2.8 depicts the motion of a particle in two ways: as (a) an x-t graph and (b) a **motion diagram** that shows the particle's position at various instants (like frames from a video of the particle's motion) as well as arrows to represent the particle's velocity at each instant. We'll use both x-t graphs and motion diagrams in this chapter to represent motion. You'll find it helpful to draw *both* an x-t graph and a motion diagram when you solve any problem involving motion.

Figure **2.9** An x-t graph for a particle.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 2.2 **Figure 2.9** is an x-t graph of the motion of a particle. (a) Rank the values of the particle's x-velocity v_x at points P, Q, R, and S from most positive to most negative. (b) At which points is v_x positive? (c) At which points is v_x negative? (d) At which points is v_x zero? (e) Rank the values of the particle's *speed* at points P, Q, R, and S from fastest to slowest.

ANSWER (a) **P, Q, and S (tie), R** The x-velocity is (b) positive when the slope of the x-t graph is positive (P), (c) negative when the slope is negative (R), and (d) zero when the slope is zero (Q **and** S). (e) **R, P, Q, and S (tie)** The speed is greatest when the slope of the x-t graph is steepest (either positive or negative) and zero when the slope is zero.

2.3 AVERAGE AND INSTANTANEOUS ACCELERATION

Just as velocity describes the rate of change of position with time, *acceleration* describes the rate of change of velocity with time. Like velocity, acceleration is a vector quantity. When the motion is along a straight line, its only nonzero component is along that line. In everyday language, acceleration refers only to speeding up; in physics, acceleration refers to *any* kind of velocity change, so we say an object accelerates if it is either speeding up or slowing down.

Average Acceleration

Let's consider again a particle moving along the x-axis. Suppose that at time t_1 the particle is at point P_1 and has x-component of (instantaneous) velocity v_{1x}, and at a later time t_2 it is at point P_2 and has x-component of velocity v_{2x}. So the x-component of velocity changes by an amount $\Delta v_x = v_{2x} - v_{1x}$ during the time interval $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$. As the particle moves from P_1 to P_2, its **average acceleration** is a vector quantity whose x-component $a_{\text{av-}x}$ (called the **average x-acceleration**) equals Δv_x, the change in the x-component of velocity, divided by the time interval Δt:

Average x-acceleration of a particle in **straight-line motion** during time interval from t_1 to t_2

$$a_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_{2x} - v_{1x}}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{2.4}$$

Change in x-component of the particle's velocity

Final x-velocity minus initial x-velocity

Time interval

Final time minus initial time

For straight-line motion along the x-axis we'll often call $a_{\text{av-}x}$ simply the average acceleration. (We'll encounter the other components of the average acceleration vector in Chapter 3.)

If we express velocity in meters per second and time in seconds, then average acceleration is in meters per second per second. This is usually written as m/s^2 and is read "meters per second squared."

CAUTION **Don't confuse velocity and acceleration** Velocity describes how an object's position changes with time; it tells us how fast and in what direction the object moves. Acceleration describes how the velocity changes with time; it tells us how the speed and direction of motion change. Another difference is that you can *feel* acceleration but you can't feel velocity. If you're a passenger in a car that accelerates forward and gains speed, you feel pushed backward in your seat; if it accelerates backward and loses speed, you feel pushed forward. If the velocity is constant and there's no acceleration, you feel neither sensation. (We'll explain these sensations in Chapter 4.)

EXAMPLE 2.2 Average acceleration

An astronaut has left an orbiting spacecraft to test a new personal maneuvering unit. As she moves along a straight line, her partner on the spacecraft measures her velocity every 2.0 s, starting at time $t = 1.0$ s:

t	v_x	t	v_x
1.0 s	0.8 m/s	9.0 s	−0.4 m/s
3.0 s	1.2 m/s	11.0 s	−1.0 m/s
5.0 s	1.6 m/s	13.0 s	−1.6 m/s
7.0 s	1.2 m/s	15.0 s	−0.8 m/s

Find the average x-acceleration, and state whether the speed of the astronaut increases or decreases over each of these 2.0 s time intervals: (a) $t_1 = 1.0$ s to $t_2 = 3.0$ s; (b) $t_1 = 5.0$ s to $t_2 = 7.0$ s; (c) $t_1 = 9.0$ s to $t_2 = 11.0$ s; (d) $t_1 = 13.0$ s to $t_2 = 15.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll use Eq. (2.4) to determine the average acceleration $a_{\text{av-}x}$ from the change in velocity over each time interval. To find the changes in speed, we'll use the idea that speed v is the magnitude of the instantaneous velocity v_x.

The upper part of **Fig. 2.10** is our graph of the x-velocity as a function of time. On this v_x-t graph, the slope of the line connecting the endpoints of each interval is the average x-acceleration $a_{\text{av-}x} = \Delta v_x/\Delta t$ for that interval. The four slopes (and thus the *signs* of the average accelerations) are, from left to right, positive, negative, negative, and positive. The third and fourth slopes (and thus the average accelerations themselves) have greater magnitude than the first and second.

EXECUTE Using Eq. (2.4), we find:

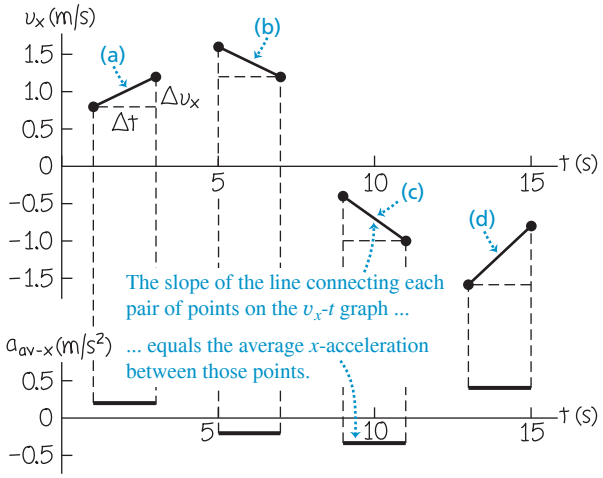
(a) $a_{\text{av-}x} = (1.2 \text{ m/s} - 0.8 \text{ m/s})/(3.0 \text{ s} - 1.0 \text{ s}) = 0.2 \text{ m/s}^2$. The speed (magnitude of instantaneous x-velocity) increases from 0.8 m/s to 1.2 m/s.

(b) $a_{\text{av-}x} = (1.2 \text{ m/s} - 1.6 \text{ m/s})/(7.0 \text{ s} - 5.0 \text{ s}) = -0.2 \text{ m/s}^2$. The speed decreases from 1.6 m/s to 1.2 m/s.

(c) $a_{\text{av-}x} = [-1.0 \text{ m/s} - (-0.4 \text{ m/s})]/(11.0 \text{ s} - 9.0 \text{ s}) = -0.3 \text{ m/s}^2$. The speed increases from 0.4 m/s to 1.0 m/s.

(d) $a_{\text{av-}x} = [-0.8 \text{ m/s} - (-1.6 \text{ m/s})]/(15.0 \text{ s} - 13.0 \text{ s}) = 0.4 \text{ m/s}^2$. The speed decreases from 1.6 m/s to 0.8 m/s.

Figure 2.10 Our graphs of x-velocity versus time (top) and average x-acceleration versus time (bottom) for the astronaut.



In the lower part of Fig. 2.10, we graph the values of $a_{\text{av-}x}$.

EVALUATE The signs and relative magnitudes of the average accelerations agree with our qualitative predictions.

Notice that when the average x-acceleration has the *same* algebraic sign as the initial velocity, as in intervals (a) and (c), the astronaut goes faster. When $a_{\text{av-}x}$ has the *opposite* algebraic sign from the initial velocity, as in intervals (b) and (d), she slows down. Thus positive x-acceleration means speeding up if the x-velocity is positive [interval (a)] but slowing down if the x-velocity is negative [interval (d)]. Similarly, negative x-acceleration means speeding up if the x-velocity is negative [interval (c)] but slowing down if the x-velocity is positive [interval (b)].

KEYCONCEPT To calculate the average acceleration of an object in straight-line motion, first find the change in its velocity (final velocity minus initial velocity) during a time interval. Then divide by the time interval.

Instantaneous Acceleration

We can now define **instantaneous acceleration** by following the same procedure that we used to define instantaneous velocity. Suppose a race car driver is driving along a straightaway as shown in **Fig. 2.11**. To define the instantaneous acceleration at point P_1, we take point P_2 in Fig. 2.11 to be closer and closer to P_1 so that the average acceleration is computed over shorter and shorter time intervals. Thus

The **instantaneous x-acceleration** of a particle in **straight-line motion** ...

$$a_x = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{dv_x}{dt} \tag{2.5}$$

... equals the limit of the particle's average x-acceleration as the time interval approaches zero ...

... and equals the instantaneous rate of change of the particle's x-velocity.

Figure 2.11 A Grand Prix car at two points on the straightaway.

In Eq. (2.5) a_x is the x-component of the acceleration vector, which we call the **instantaneous x-acceleration;** in straight-line motion, all other components of this vector are zero. From now on, when we use the term "acceleration," we'll always mean instantaneous acceleration, not average acceleration.

EXAMPLE 2.3 Average and instantaneous accelerations

Suppose the x-velocity v_x of the car in Fig. 2.11 at any time t is given by the equation

$$v_x = 60\ \text{m/s} + (0.50\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2$$

(a) Find the change in x-velocity of the car in the time interval $t_1 = 1.0$ s to $t_2 = 3.0$ s. (b) Find the average x-acceleration in this time interval. (c) Find the instantaneous x-acceleration at time $t_1 = 1.0$ s by taking Δt to be first 0.1 s, then 0.01 s, then 0.001 s. (d) Derive an expression for the instantaneous x-acceleration as a function of time, and use it to find a_x at $t = 1.0$ s and $t = 3.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This example is analogous to Example 2.1 in Section 2.2. In that example we found the average x-velocity from the change in position over shorter and shorter time intervals, and we obtained an expression for the instantaneous x-velocity by differentiating the position as a function of time. In this example we have an exact parallel. Using Eq. (2.4), we'll find the average *x-acceleration* from the change in *x-velocity* over a time interval. Likewise, using Eq. (2.5), we'll obtain an expression for the instantaneous *x-acceleration* by differentiating the *x-velocity* as a function of time.

EXECUTE (a) Before we can apply Eq. (2.4), we must find the x-velocity at each time from the given equation. At $t_1 = 1.0$ s and $t_2 = 3.0$ s, the velocities are

$$v_{1x} = 60\ \text{m/s} + (0.50\ \text{m/s}^3)(1.0\ \text{s})^2 = 60.5\ \text{m/s}$$
$$v_{2x} = 60\ \text{m/s} + (0.50\ \text{m/s}^3)(3.0\ \text{s})^2 = 64.5\ \text{m/s}$$

The change in x-velocity Δv_x between $t_1 = 1.0$ s and $t_2 = 3.0$ s is

$$\Delta v_x = v_{2x} - v_{1x} = 64.5\ \text{m/s} - 60.5\ \text{m/s} = 4.0\ \text{m/s}$$

(b) The average x-acceleration during this time interval of duration $t_2 - t_1 = 2.0$ s is

$$a_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{v_{2x} - v_{1x}}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{4.0\ \text{m/s}}{2.0\ \text{s}} = 2.0\ \text{m/s}^2$$

During this time interval the x-velocity and average x-acceleration have the same algebraic sign (in this case, positive), and the car speeds up.

(c) When $\Delta t = 0.1$ s, we have $t_2 = 1.1$ s. Proceeding as before, we find

$$v_{2x} = 60\ \text{m/s} + (0.50\ \text{m/s}^3)(1.1\ \text{s})^2 = 60.605\ \text{m/s}$$
$$\Delta v_x = 0.105\ \text{m/s}$$
$$a_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{0.105\ \text{m/s}}{0.1\ \text{s}} = 1.05\ \text{m/s}^2$$

You should follow this pattern to calculate $a_{\text{av-}x}$ for $\Delta t = 0.01$ s and $\Delta t = 0.001$ s; the results are $a_{\text{av-}x} = 1.005\ \text{m/s}^2$ and $a_{\text{av-}x} = 1.0005\ \text{m/s}^2$, respectively. As Δt gets smaller, the average x-acceleration gets closer to $1.0\ \text{m/s}^2$, so the instantaneous x-acceleration at $t = 1.0$ s is $1.0\ \text{m/s}^2$.

(d) By Eq. (2.5) the instantaneous x-acceleration is $a_x = dv_x/dt$. The derivative of a constant is zero and the derivative of t^2 is $2t$, so

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}[60\ \text{m/s} + (0.50\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2 = (0.50\ \text{m/s}^3)(2t) = (1.0\ \text{m/s}^3)t$$

When $t = 1.0$ s,

$$a_x = (1.0\ \text{m/s}^3)(1.0\ \text{s}) = 1.0\ \text{m/s}^2$$

When $t = 3.0$ s,

$$a_x = (1.0\ \text{m/s}^3)(3.0\ \text{s}) = 3.0\ \text{m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE Neither of the values we found in part (d) is equal to the average x-acceleration found in part (b). That's because the car's instantaneous x-acceleration varies with time. The rate of change of acceleration with time is sometimes called the "jerk."

KEYCONCEPT To calculate an object's instantaneous acceleration (its average acceleration over an infinitesimally short time interval), take the derivative of its velocity with respect to time.

Finding Acceleration on a v_x-t Graph or an x-t Graph

In Section 2.2 we interpreted average and instantaneous x-velocity in terms of the slope of a graph of position versus time. In the same way, we can interpret average and instantaneous x-acceleration by using a graph of instantaneous velocity v_x versus time t—that is, a **v_x-t graph** (**Fig. 2.12**). Points p_1 and p_2 on the graph correspond to points P_1 and P_2 in Fig. 2.11. The average x-acceleration $a_{\text{av-}x} = \Delta v_x/\Delta t$ during this interval is the slope of the line p_1p_2.

As point P_2 in Fig. 2.11 approaches point P_1, point p_2 in the v_x-t graph of Fig. 2.12 approaches point p_1, and the slope of the line p_1p_2 approaches the slope of the line tangent to the curve at point p_1. Thus, *on a graph of x-velocity as a function of time, the instantaneous x-acceleration at any point is equal to the slope of the tangent to the curve at that point.* Tangents drawn at different points along the curve in Fig. 2.12 have different slopes, so the instantaneous x-acceleration varies with time.

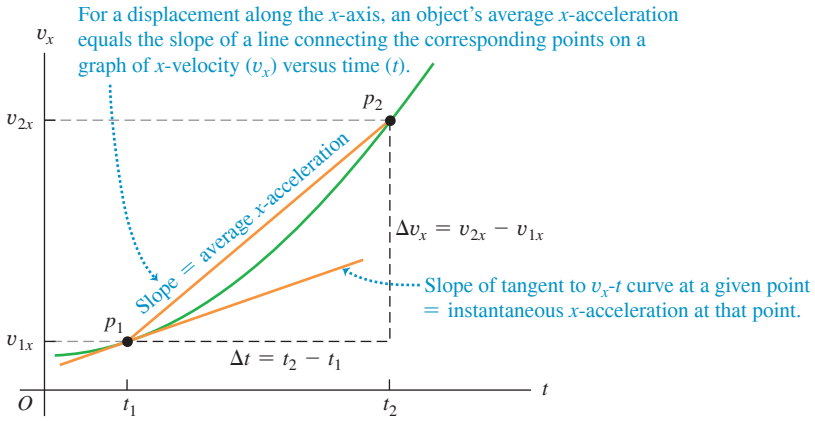


Figure **2.12** A v_x-t graph of the motion in Fig. 2.11.

CAUTION **Signs of *x*-acceleration and *x*-velocity** The algebraic sign of the x-acceleration does *not* tell you whether an object is speeding up or slowing down. You must compare the signs of the x-velocity and the x-acceleration. As we saw in Example 2.2, when v_x and a_x have the *same* sign, the object is speeding up. When v_x and a_x have *opposite* signs, the object is slowing down. **Table 2.3** summarizes these rules, and **Fig. 2.13** illustrates some of them.

TABLE 2.3 Rules for the Sign of x-Acceleration

If *x*-velocity is:	... *x*-acceleration is:
Positive & increasing (getting more positive)	Positive: Particle is moving in $+x$-direction & speeding up
Positive & decreasing (getting less positive)	Negative: Particle is moving in $+x$-direction & slowing down
Negative & increasing (getting less negative)	Positive: Particle is moving in $-x$-direction & slowing down
Negative & decreasing (getting more negative)	Negative: Particle is moving in $-x$-direction & speeding up

Note: These rules apply to both the average x-acceleration $a_{\text{av-}x}$ and the instantaneous x-acceleration a_x.

The term "deceleration" is sometimes used for a decrease in speed. Because it may mean positive or negative a_x, depending on the sign of v_x, we avoid this term.

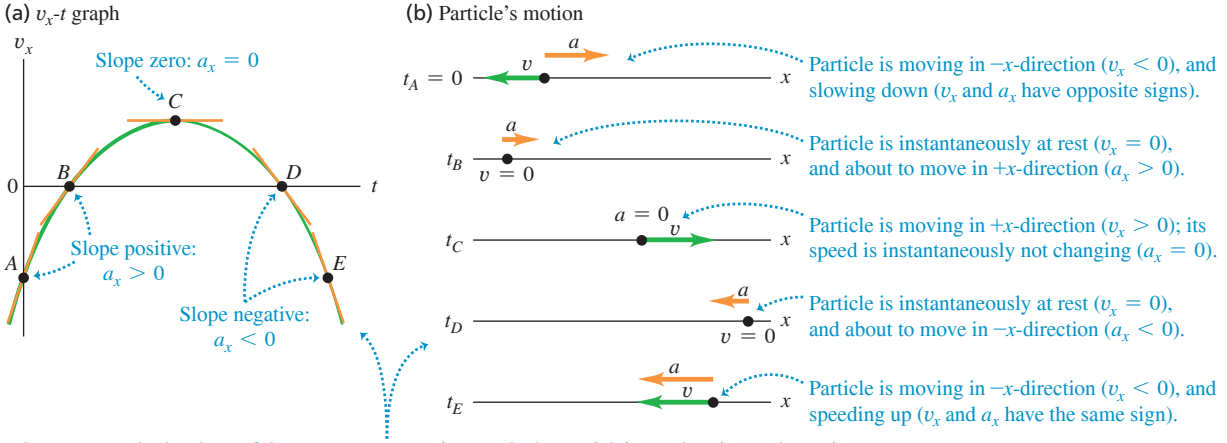
We can also learn about the acceleration of an object from a graph of its *position* versus time. Because $a_x = dv_x/dt$ and $v_x = dx/dt$, we can write

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right) = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \tag{2.6}$$

That is, a_x is the second derivative of x with respect to t. The second derivative of any function is directly related to the *concavity* or *curvature* of the graph of that function (**Fig. 2.14**, next page). At a point where the x-t graph is concave up (curved upward), such as point A or E in Fig. 2.14a, the x-acceleration is positive and v_x is increasing. At a point where the x-t graph is concave down (curved downward), such as point C in Fig. 2.14a, the x-acceleration is negative and v_x is decreasing. At a point where the x-t graph has no curvature, such as the inflection points B and D in Fig. 2.14a, the x-acceleration is zero and the velocity is not changing.

Examining the curvature of an x-t graph is an easy way to identify the *sign* of acceleration. This technique is less helpful for determining numerical values of acceleration because the curvature of a graph is hard to measure accurately.

Figure **2.13** (a) The v_x-t graph of the motion of a different particle from that shown in Fig. 2.8. (b) A motion diagram showing the position, velocity, and acceleration of the particle at each of the times labeled on the v_x-t graph.



- On a v_x-t graph, the slope of the tangent at any point equals the particle's acceleration at that point.
- The steeper the slope (positive or negative), the greater the particle's acceleration in the positive or negative x-direction.

Figure **2.14** (a) The same *x*-*t* graph as shown in Fig. 2.8a. (b) A motion diagram showing the position, velocity, and acceleration of the particle at each of the times labeled on the *x*-*t* graph.

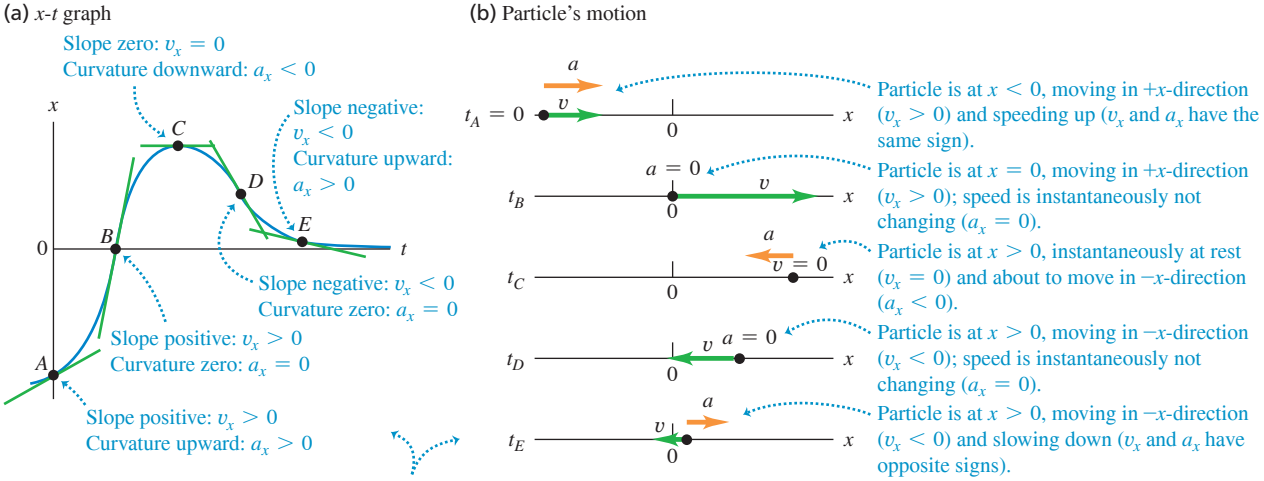


Table 2.4 summarizes what you can learn from the *x*-*t* graph and v_x-*t* graph of the straight-line motion of a particle.

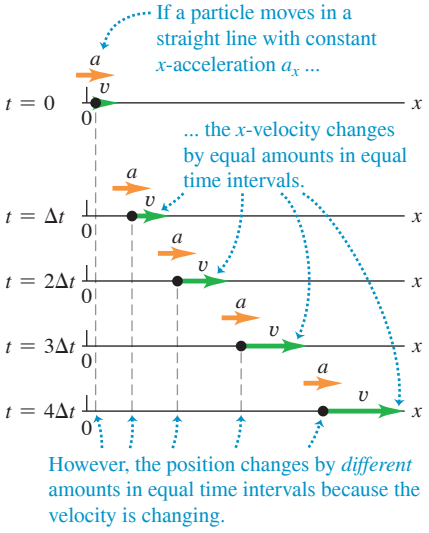
TABLE 2.4 What *x*-*t* Graphs and v_x-*t* Graphs Tell You

	On an *x*-*t* graph	**On a v_x-*t* graph**
The *value* of the graph at a given time tells you…	The coordinate x at that time	The velocity v_x at that time
The *slope* of the graph at a given time tells you…	The velocity v_x at that time	The acceleration a_x at that time
The *concavity* or *curvature* of the graph at a given time tells you…	The acceleration a_x at that time	If the acceleration a_x is changing at that time

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 2.3 Look again at the *x*-*t* graph in Fig. 2.9 at the end of Section 2.2. (a) At which of the points *P*, *Q*, *R*, and *S* is the *x*-acceleration a_x positive? (b) At which points is the *x*-acceleration negative? (c) At which points does the *x*-acceleration appear to be zero? (d) At each point state whether the velocity is increasing, decreasing, or not changing.

ANSWER (a) **S,** where the *x*-*t* graph is curved upward (concave up). (b) **Q,** where the *x*-*t* graph is curved downward (concave down). (c) **P and R,** where the *x*-*t* graph is not curved either up or down. (d) At **P,** $a_x = 0$ (velocity is **not changing**); at **Q,** $a_x < 0$ (velocity is **decreasing**, i.e., changing from positive to zero to negative); at **R,** $a_x = 0$ (velocity is **not changing**); and at **S,** $a_x > 0$ (velocity is **increasing**, i.e., changing from negative to zero to positive).

Figure **2.15** A motion diagram for a particle moving in a straight line in the positive *x*-direction with constant positive *x*-acceleration a_x.



2.4 MOTION WITH CONSTANT ACCELERATION

The simplest kind of accelerated motion is straight-line motion with *constant* acceleration. In this case the velocity changes at the same rate throughout the motion. As an example, a falling object has a constant acceleration if the effects of the air are not important. The same is true for an object sliding on an incline or along a rough horizontal surface, or for an airplane being catapulted from the deck of an aircraft carrier.

Figure 2.15 is a motion diagram showing the position, velocity, and acceleration of a particle moving with constant acceleration. **Figures 2.16** and **2.17** depict this same motion in the form of graphs. Since the *x*-acceleration is constant, the ***a_x*-*t* graph** (graph of *x*-acceleration versus time) in Fig. 2.16 is a horizontal line. The graph of *x*-velocity versus time, or v_x-*t* graph, has a constant *slope* because the acceleration is constant, so this graph is a straight line (Fig. 2.17).

When the x-acceleration a_x is constant, the average x-acceleration $a_{\text{av-}x}$ for any time interval is the same as a_x. This makes it easy to derive equations for the position x and the x-velocity v_x as functions of time. To find an equation for v_x, we first replace $a_{\text{av-}x}$ in Eq. (2.4) by a_x:

$$a_x = \frac{v_{2x} - v_{1x}}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{2.7}$$

Now we let $t_1 = 0$ and let t_2 be any later time t. We use the symbol v_{0x} for the *initial x-velocity* at time $t = 0$; the x-velocity at the later time t is v_x. Then Eq. (2.7) becomes

$$a_x = \frac{v_x - v_{0x}}{t - 0} \quad \text{or}$$

x-velocity at time t of a particle with **constant x-acceleration**

$$v_x = v_{0x} + a_x t \tag{2.8}$$

(v_{0x}: x-velocity of the particle at time 0; a_x: Constant x-acceleration of the particle; t: Time)

In Eq. (2.8) the term $a_x t$ is the product of the constant rate of change of x-velocity, a_x, and the time interval t. Therefore it equals the *total* change in x-velocity from $t = 0$ to time t. The x-velocity v_x at any time t then equals the initial x-velocity v_{0x} (at $t = 0$) plus the change in x-velocity $a_x t$ (Fig. 2.17).

Equation (2.8) also says that the change in x-velocity $v_x - v_{0x}$ of the particle between $t = 0$ and any later time t equals the *area* under the a_x-t graph between those two times. You can verify this from Fig. 2.16: Under this graph is a rectangle of vertical side a_x, horizontal side t, and area $a_x t$. From Eq. (2.8) the area $a_x t$ is indeed equal to the change in velocity $v_x - v_{0x}$. In Section 2.6 we'll show that even if the x-acceleration is not constant, the change in x-velocity during a time interval is still equal to the area under the a_x-t curve, although then Eq. (2.8) does not apply.

Next we'll derive an equation for the position x as a function of time when the x-acceleration is constant. To do this, we use two different expressions for the average x-velocity $v_{\text{av-}x}$ during the interval from $t = 0$ to any later time t. The first expression comes from the definition of $v_{\text{av-}x}$, Eq. (2.2), which is true whether or not the acceleration is constant. The position at time $t = 0$, called the *initial position*, is x_0. The position at time t is simply x. Thus for the time interval $\Delta t = t - 0$ the displacement is $\Delta x = x - x_0$, and Eq. (2.2) gives

$$v_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{x - x_0}{t} \tag{2.9}$$

To find a second expression for $v_{\text{av-}x}$, note that the x-velocity changes at a constant rate if the x-acceleration is constant. In this case the average x-velocity for the time interval from 0 to t is simply the average of the x-velocities at the beginning and end of the interval:

$$v_{\text{av-}x} = \tfrac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_x) \quad \text{(constant } x\text{-acceleration only)} \tag{2.10}$$

[Equation (2.10) is *not* true if the x-acceleration varies during the time interval.] We also know that with constant x-acceleration, the x-velocity v_x at any time t is given by Eq. (2.8). Substituting that expression for v_x into Eq. (2.10), we find

$$\begin{aligned} v_{\text{av-}x} &= \tfrac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_{0x} + a_x t) \\ &= v_{0x} + \tfrac{1}{2} a_x t \end{aligned} \quad \text{(constant } x\text{-acceleration only)} \tag{2.11}$$

Finally, we set Eqs. (2.9) and (2.11) equal to each other and simplify:

$$v_{0x} + \tfrac{1}{2} a_x t = \frac{x - x_0}{t} \quad \text{or}$$

Figure **2.16** An acceleration-time (a_x-t) graph of straight-line motion with constant positive x-acceleration a_x.

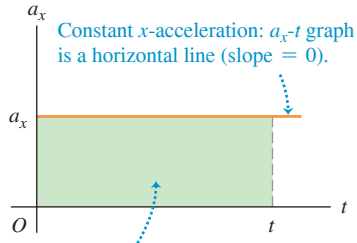
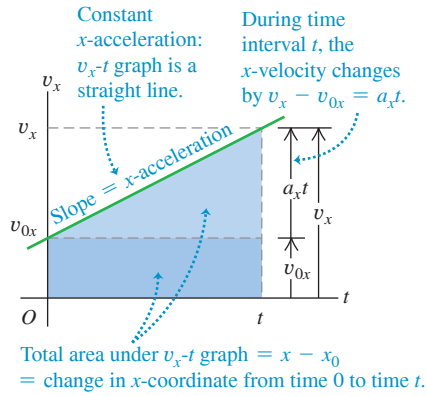


Figure **2.17** A velocity-time (v_x-t) graph of straight-line motion with constant positive x-acceleration a_x. The initial x-velocity v_{0x} is also positive in this case.



BIO APPLICATION Testing Humans at High Accelerations In experiments carried out by the U.S. Air Force in the 1940s and 1950s, humans riding a rocket sled could withstand accelerations as great as 440 m/s^2. The first three photos in this sequence show Air Force physician John Stapp speeding up from rest to 188 m/s (678 km/h) in just 5 s. Photos 4–6 show the even greater magnitude of acceleration as the rocket sled braked to a halt.

Position at time t of a particle with **constant x-acceleration**

$$x = x_0 + v_{0x}t + \tfrac{1}{2}a_x t^2 \qquad (2.12)$$

(x_0: position of the particle at time 0; v_{0x}: x-velocity of the particle at time 0; t: time; a_x: constant x-acceleration of the particle)

Equation (2.12) tells us that the particle's position at time t is the sum of three terms: its initial position at $t = 0$, x_0, plus the displacement $v_{0x}t$ it would have if its x-velocity remained equal to its initial value, plus an additional displacement $\frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$ caused by the change in x-velocity.

A graph of Eq. (2.12)—that is, an x-t graph for motion with constant x-acceleration **(Fig. 2.18a)**—is always a *parabola*. Figure 2.18b shows such a graph. The curve intercepts the vertical axis (x-axis) at x_0, the position at $t = 0$. The slope of the tangent at $t = 0$ equals v_{0x}, the initial x-velocity, and the slope of the tangent at any time t equals the x-velocity v_x at that time. The slope and x-velocity are continuously increasing, so the x-acceleration a_x is positive and the graph in Fig. 2.18b is concave up (it curves upward). If a_x is negative, the x-t graph is a parabola that is concave down (has a downward curvature).

If there is zero x-acceleration, the x-t graph is a straight line; if there is a constant x-acceleration, the additional $\frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$ term in Eq. (2.12) for x as a function of t curves the graph into a parabola **(Fig. 2.19a)**. Similarly, if there is zero x-acceleration, the v_x-t graph is a horizontal line (the x-velocity is constant). Adding a constant x-acceleration in Eq. (2.8) gives a slope to the graph (Fig. 2.19b).

Here's another way to derive Eq. (2.12). Just as the change in x-velocity of the particle equals the area under the a_x-t graph, the displacement (change in position) equals the area under the v_x-t graph. So the displacement $x - x_0$ of the particle between $t = 0$ and any later time t equals the area under the v_x-t graph between those times. In Fig. 2.17 we divide the area under the graph into a dark-colored rectangle (vertical side v_{0x}, horizontal side t, and area $v_{0x}t$) and a light-colored right triangle (vertical side $a_x t$, horizontal side t, and area $\frac{1}{2}(a_x t)(t) = \frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$). The total area under the v_x-t graph is $x - x_0 = v_{0x}t + \frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$, in accord with Eq. (2.12).

It's often useful to have a relationship for position, x-velocity, and (constant) x-acceleration that does not involve time. To obtain this, we first solve Eq. (2.8) for t and then substitute the resulting expression into Eq. (2.12):

$$t = \frac{v_x - v_{0x}}{a_x}$$

$$x = x_0 + v_{0x}\left(\frac{v_x - v_{0x}}{a_x}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}a_x\left(\frac{v_x - v_{0x}}{a_x}\right)^2$$

We transfer the term x_0 to the left side, multiply through by $2a_x$, and simplify:

$$2a_x(x - x_0) = 2v_{0x}v_x - 2v_{0x}^2 + v_x^2 - 2v_{0x}v_x + v_{0x}^2$$

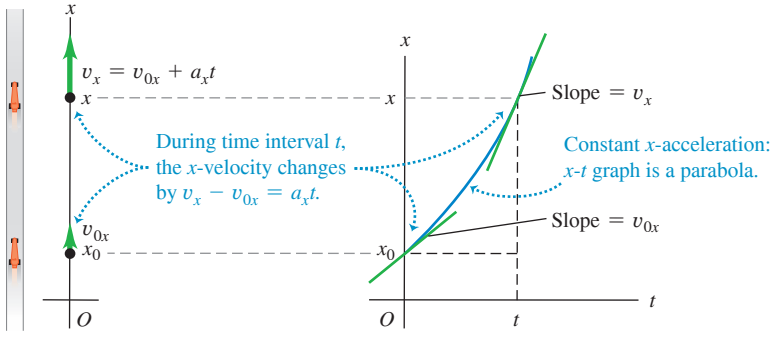


Figure **2.18** (a) Straight-line motion with constant acceleration. (b) A position-time (x-t) graph for this motion (the same motion as is shown in Figs. 2.15, 2.16, and 2.17). For this motion the initial position x_0, the initial velocity v_{0x}, and the acceleration a_x are all positive.

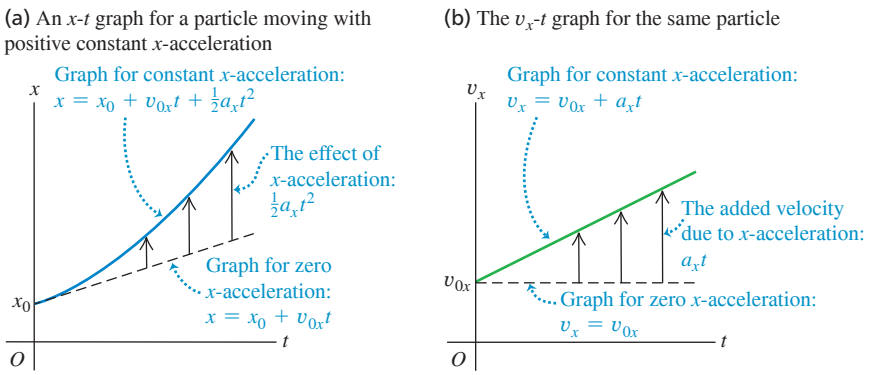


Figure 2.19 (a) How a constant x-acceleration affects a particle's (a) x-t graph and (b) v_x-t graph.

Finally,

$$v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0) \qquad (2.13)$$

x-velocity at time t of a particle with **constant x-acceleration**; x-velocity of the particle at time 0; Constant x-acceleration of the particle; Position of the particle at time t; Position of the particle at time 0

We can get one more useful relationship by equating the two expressions for $v_{\text{av-}x}$, Eqs. (2.9) and (2.10), and multiplying through by t:

$$x - x_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_x)t \qquad (2.14)$$

Position at time t of a particle with **constant x-acceleration**; Position of the particle at time 0; Time; x-velocity of the particle at time 0; x-velocity of the particle at time t

Note that Eq. (2.14) does not contain the x-acceleration a_x. This equation can be handy when a_x is constant but its value is unknown.

Equations (2.8), (2.12), (2.13), and (2.14) are the *equations of motion with constant acceleration* **(Table 2.5)**. By using these equations, we can solve *any* problem involving straight-line motion of a particle with constant acceleration.

For the particular case of motion with constant x-acceleration depicted in Fig. 2.15 and graphed in Figs. 2.16, 2.17, and 2.18, the values of x_0, v_{0x}, and a_x are all positive. We recommend that you redraw these figures for cases in which one, two, or all three of these quantities are negative.

TABLE 2.5 Equations of Motion with Constant Acceleration

Equation		Includes Quantities			
$v_x = v_{0x} + a_xt$	(2.8)	t		v_x	a_x
$x = x_0 + v_{0x}t + \frac{1}{2}a_xt^2$	(2.12)	t	x		a_x
$v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0)$	(2.13)		x	v_x	a_x
$x - x_0 = \frac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_x)t$	(2.14)	t	x	v_x	

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 2.1 Motion with Constant Acceleration

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* In most straight-line motion problems, you can use the constant-acceleration Equations (2.8), (2.12), (2.13), and (2.14). If you encounter a situation in which the acceleration *isn't* constant, you'll need a different approach (see Section 2.6).

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Read the problem carefully. Make a motion diagram showing the location of the particle at the times of interest. Decide where to place the origin of coordinates and which axis direction is positive. It's often helpful to place the particle at the origin at time $t = 0$; then $x_0 = 0$. Your choice of the positive axis direction automatically determines the positive directions for x-velocity and x-acceleration. If x is positive to the right of the origin, then v_x and a_x are also positive toward the right.
2. Identify the physical quantities (times, positions, velocities, and accelerations) that appear in Eqs. (2.8), (2.12), (2.13), and (2.14) and assign them appropriate symbols: t, x, x_0, v_x, v_{0x}, and a_x, or symbols related to those. Translate the prose into physics: "*When* does the particle arrive at its highest point" means "What is the value of t when x has its maximum value?" In Example 2.4, "Where is he when his speed is 25 m/s?" means "What is the value of x when $v_x = 25$ m/s?" Be alert for implicit information. For example, "A car sits at a stop light" usually means $v_{0x} = 0$.
3. List the quantities such as x, x_0, v_x, v_{0x}, a_x, and t. Some of them will be known and some will be unknown. Write down the values of the known quantities, and decide which of the unknowns are the target variables. Make note of the *absence* of any of the quantities that appear in the four constant-acceleration equations.

Continued

4. Use Table 2.5 to identify the applicable equations. (These are often the equations that don't include any of the absent quantities that you identified in step 3.) Usually you'll find a single equation that contains only one of the target variables. Sometimes you must find two equations, each containing the same two unknowns.
5. Sketch graphs corresponding to the applicable equations. The v_x-t graph of Eq. (2.8) is a straight line with slope a_x. The x-t graph of Eq. (2.12) is a parabola that's concave up if a_x is positive and concave down if a_x is negative.
6. On the basis of your experience with such problems, and taking account of what your sketched graphs tell you, make any qualitative and quantitative predictions you can about the solution.

EXECUTE *the solution:* If a single equation applies, solve it for the target variable, *using symbols only*; then substitute the known values and calculate the value of the target variable. If you have two equations in two unknowns, solve them simultaneously for the target variables.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Take a hard look at your results to see whether they make sense. Are they within the general range of values that you expected?

EXAMPLE 2.4 Constant-acceleration calculations

A motorcyclist heading east through a small town accelerates at a constant 4.0 m/s^2 after he leaves the city limits (**Fig. 2.20**). At time $t = 0$ he is 5.0 m east of the city-limits signpost while he moves east at 15 m/s. (a) Find his position and velocity at $t = 2.0$ s. (b) Where is he when his speed is 25 m/s?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The x-acceleration is constant, so we can use the constant-acceleration equations. We take the signpost as the origin of coordinates ($x = 0$) and choose the positive x-axis to point east (see Fig. 2.20, which is also a motion diagram). The known variables are the initial position and velocity, $x_0 = 5.0$ m and $v_{0x} = 15$ m/s, and the acceleration, $a_x = 4.0$ m/s^2. The unknown target variables in part (a) are the values of the position x and the x-velocity v_x at $t = 2.0$ s; the target variable in part (b) is the value of x when $v_x = 25$ m/s.

EXECUTE (a) Since we know the values of x_0, v_{0x}, and a_x, Table 2.5 tells us that we can find the position x at $t = 2.0$ s by using Eq. (2.12) and the x-velocity v_x at this time by using Eq. (2.8):

$$\begin{aligned} x &= x_0 + v_{0x}t + \tfrac{1}{2}a_x t^2 \\ &= 5.0\text{ m} + (15\text{ m/s})(2.0\text{ s}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(4.0\text{ m/s}^2)(2.0\text{ s})^2 = 43\text{ m} \\ v_x &= v_{0x} + a_x t \\ &= 15\text{ m/s} + (4.0\text{ m/s}^2)(2.0\text{ s}) = 23\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

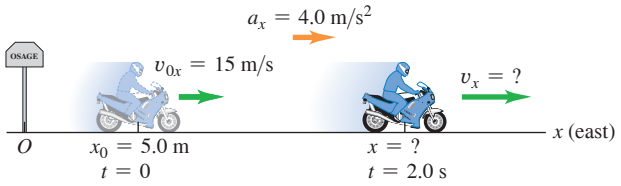
(b) We want to find the value of x when $v_x = 25$ m/s, but we don't know the time when the motorcycle has this velocity. Table 2.5 tells us that we should use Eq. (2.13), which involves x, v_x, and a_x but does *not* involve t:

$$v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0)$$

Solving for x and substituting the known values, we find

$$\begin{aligned} x &= x_0 + \frac{v_x^2 - v_{0x}^2}{2a_x} \\ &= 5.0\text{ m} + \frac{(25\text{ m/s})^2 - (15\text{ m/s})^2}{2(4.0\text{ m/s}^2)} = 55\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Figure **2.20** A motorcyclist traveling with constant acceleration.



EVALUATE You can check the result in part (b) by first using Eq. (2.8), $v_x = v_{0x} + a_x t$, to find the time at which $v_x = 25$ m/s, which turns out to be $t = 25$ s. You can then use Eq. (2.12), $x = x_0 + v_{0x}t + \frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$, to solve for x. You should find $x = 55$ m, the same answer as above. That's the long way to solve the problem, though. The method we used in part (b) is much more efficient.

KEYCONCEPT By using one or more of the four equations in Table 2.5, you can solve any problem involving straight-line motion with constant acceleration.

EXAMPLE 2.5 Two objects with different accelerations

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

A motorist traveling at a constant 15 m/s (54 km/h) passes a school crossing where the speed limit is 10 m/s (36 km/h). Just as the motorist passes the school-crossing sign, a police officer on a motorcycle stopped there starts in pursuit with constant acceleration 3.0 m/s^2 (**Fig. 2.21a**). (a) How much time elapses before the officer passes the motorist? At that time, (b) what is the officer's speed and (c) how far has each vehicle traveled?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Both the officer and the motorist move with constant acceleration (equal to zero for the motorist), so we can use the constant-acceleration formulas. We take the origin at the sign, so $x_0 = 0$ for both, and we take the positive direction to the right. Let x_P and x_M represent the positions of the police officer and the motorist at any time. Their initial velocities are $v_{P0x} = 0$ and $v_{M0x} = 15$ m/s, and their accelerations are $a_{Px} = 3.0$ m/s^2 and $a_{Mx} = 0$. Our target variable in part (a) is the time when the officer and motorist are at the same position x; Table 2.5 tells us that Eq. (2.12) is useful for this part. In part (b) we'll use Eq. (2.8) to find the officer's speed v (the magnitude of her velocity) at the time found in part (a). In part (c) we'll use Eq. (2.12) again to find the position of either vehicle at this same time.

Figure **2.21** (a) Motion with constant acceleration overtaking motion with constant velocity. (b) A graph of x versus t for each vehicle.

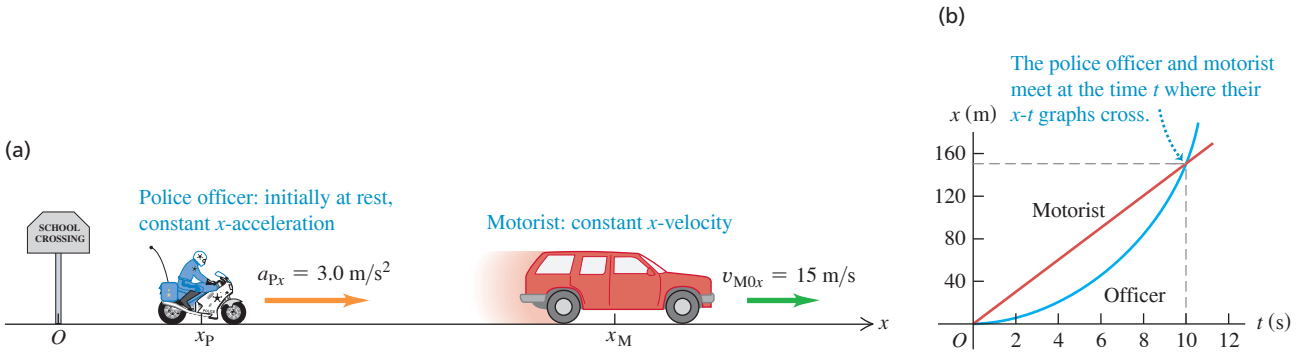


Figure 2.21b shows an x-t graph for both vehicles. The straight line represents the motorist's motion, $x_M = x_{M0} + v_{M0x}t = v_{M0x}t$. The graph for the officer's motion is the right half of a parabola with upward curvature:

$$x_P = x_{P0} + v_{P0x}t + \tfrac{1}{2}a_{Px}t^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}a_{Px}t^2$$

A good sketch shows that the officer and motorist are at the same position ($x_P = x_M$) at about $t = 10$ s, at which time both have traveled about 150 m from the sign.

EXECUTE (a) To find the value of the time t at which the motorist and police officer are at the same position, we set $x_P = x_M$ by equating the expressions above and solving that equation for t:

$$v_{M0x}t = \tfrac{1}{2}a_{Px}t^2$$

$$t = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad t = \frac{2v_{M0x}}{a_{Px}} = \frac{2(15\ \text{m/s})}{3.0\ \text{m/s}^2} = 10\ \text{s}$$

Both vehicles have the same x-coordinate at *two* times, as Fig. 2.21b indicates. At $t = 0$ the motorist passes the officer; at $t = 10$ s the officer passes the motorist.

(b) We want the magnitude of the officer's x-velocity v_{Px} at the time t found in part (a). Substituting the values of v_{P0x} and a_{Px} into Eq. (2.8) along with $t = 10$ s from part (a), we find

$$v_{Px} = v_{P0x} + a_{Px}t = 0 + (3.0\ \text{m/s}^2)(10\ \text{s}) = 30\ \text{m/s}$$

The officer's speed is the absolute value of this, which is also 30 m/s.

(c) In 10 s the motorist travels a distance

$$x_M = v_{M0x}t = (15\ \text{m/s})(10\ \text{s}) = 150\ \text{m}$$

and the officer travels

$$x_P = \tfrac{1}{2}a_{Px}t^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(3.0\ \text{m/s}^2)(10\ \text{s})^2 = 150\ \text{m}$$

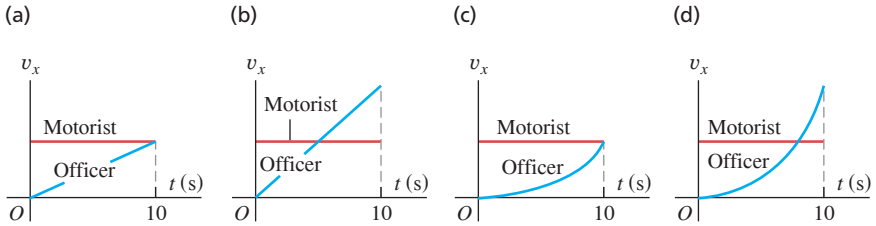
This verifies that they have gone equal distances after 10 s.

EVALUATE Our results in parts (a) and (c) agree with our estimates from our sketch. Note that when the officer passes the motorist, they do *not* have the same velocity: The motorist is moving at 15 m/s and the officer is moving at 30 m/s. You can also see this from Fig. 2.21b. Where the two x-t curves cross, their slopes (equal to the values of v_x for the two vehicles) are different.

Is it just coincidence that when the two vehicles are at the same position, the officer is going twice the speed of the motorist? Equation (2.14), $x - x_0 = \frac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_x)t$, gives the answer. The motorist has constant velocity, so $v_{M0x} = v_{Mx}$, and the motorist's displacement $x - x_0$ in time t is $v_{M0x}t$. Because $v_{P0x} = 0$, in the same time t the officer's displacement is $\frac{1}{2}v_{Px}t$. The two vehicles have the same displacement in the same amount of time, so $v_{M0x}t = \frac{1}{2}v_{Px}t$ and $v_{Px} = 2v_{M0x}$—that is, the officer has exactly twice the motorist's velocity. This is true no matter what the value of the officer's acceleration.

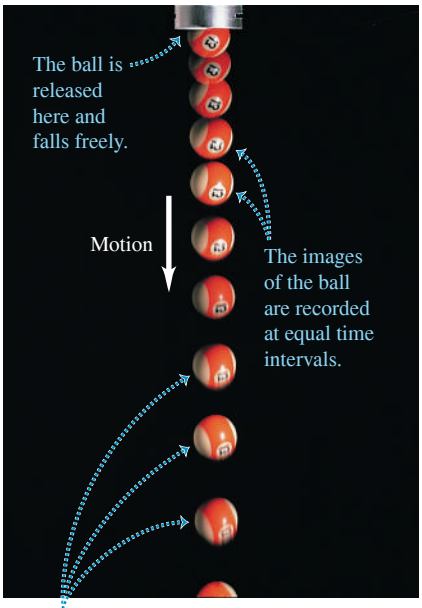
KEYCONCEPT In straight-line motion, one object meets or passes another at the time when the two objects have the same coordinate x (and so their x-t graphs cross). The objects can have different velocities at that time.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 2.4 Four possible v_x-t graphs are shown for the two vehicles in Example 2.5. Which graph is correct?



ANSWER ❙ **(b)** The officer's x-acceleration is constant, so her v_x-t graph is a straight line. The motorcycle is moving faster than the car when the two vehicles meet at $t = 10$ s.

Figure **2.22** Multiflash photo of a freely falling ball.



- The average velocity in each time interval is proportional to the distance between images.
- This distance continuously increases, so the ball's velocity is continuously changing; the ball is accelerating downward.

2.5 FREELY FALLING OBJECTS

The most familiar example of motion with (nearly) constant acceleration is an object falling under the influence of the earth's gravitational attraction. Such motion has held the attention of philosophers and scientists since ancient times. In the fourth century B.C., Aristotle thought (erroneously) that heavy objects fall faster than light objects, in proportion to their weight. Nineteen centuries later, Galileo (see Section 1.1) argued that an object should fall with a downward acceleration that is constant and independent of its weight.

Experiment shows that if the effects of the air can be ignored, Galileo is right; all objects at a particular location fall with the same downward acceleration, regardless of their size or weight. If in addition the distance of the fall is small compared with the radius of the earth, and if we ignore small effects due to the earth's rotation, the acceleration is constant. The idealized motion that results under all of these assumptions is called **free fall,** although it includes rising as well as falling motion. (In Chapter 3 we'll extend the discussion of free fall to include the motion of projectiles, which move both vertically and horizontally.)

Figure 2.22 is a photograph of a falling ball made with a stroboscopic light source that produces a series of short, intense flashes at equal time intervals. As each flash occurs, an image of the ball at that instant is recorded on the photograph. The increasing spacing between successive images in Fig. 2.22 indicates that the ball is accelerating downward. Careful measurement shows that the velocity change is the same in each time interval, so the acceleration of the freely falling ball is constant.

The constant acceleration of a freely falling object is called the **acceleration due to gravity,** and we denote its magnitude with the letter g. We'll frequently use the approximate value of g at or near the earth's surface:

$$g = 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2 \quad \text{(approximate value near the earth's surface)}$$

The exact value varies with location, so we'll often give the value of g at the earth's surface to only two significant figures as $9.8\ \text{m/s}^2$. On the moon's surface, the acceleration due to gravity is caused by the attractive force of the moon rather than the earth, and $g = 1.6\ \text{m/s}^2$. Near the surface of the sun, $g = 270\ \text{m/s}^2$.

CAUTION **Don't confuse speed, velocity, and acceleration in free fall** Speed can never be negative; velocity can be positive or negative, depending on the direction of motion. In free fall, speed and velocity change continuously but acceleration (the rate of change of velocity) is constant and downward.

CAUTION ***g* is always a positive number** Because g is the *magnitude* of a vector quantity, it is always a *positive* number. If you take the positive y-direction to be upward, as we do in most situations involving free fall, the y-component of the acceleration is negative and equal to $-g$. Be careful with the sign of g, or you'll have trouble with free-fall problems.

In the following examples we use the constant-acceleration equations developed in Section 2.4. Review Problem-Solving Strategy 2.1 in that section before you study the next examples.

EXAMPLE 2.6 A freely falling coin

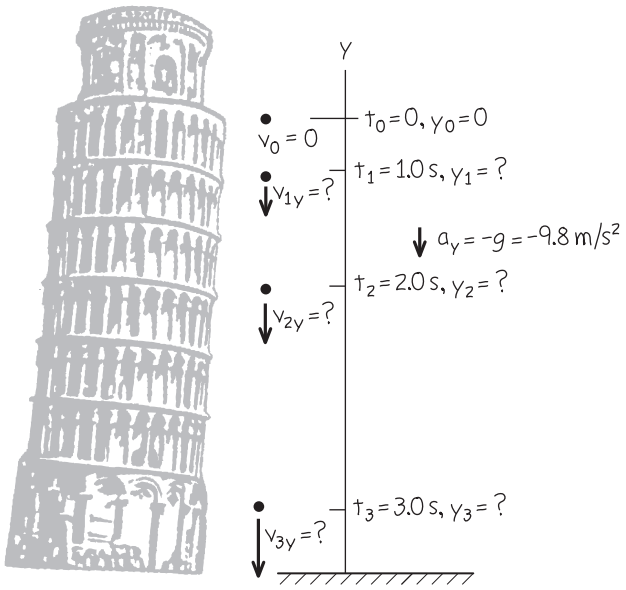
A one-euro coin is dropped from the Leaning Tower of Pisa and falls freely from rest. What are its position and velocity after 1.0 s, 2.0 s, and 3.0 s? Ignore air resistance.

IDENTIFY and SET UP "Falls freely" means "falls with constant acceleration due to gravity," so we can use the constant-acceleration equations. The right side of **Fig. 2.23** shows our motion diagram for the coin. The motion is vertical, so we use a vertical coordinate axis and call the coordinate y instead of x. We take the origin at the starting point and the *upward* direction as positive. Both the initial coordinate y_0 and initial y-velocity v_{0y} are zero. The y-acceleration is downward (in the negative y-direction), so $a_y = -g = -9.8\ \text{m/s}^2$. (Remember that g is a positive quantity.) Our target variables are the values of y and v_y at the three given times. To find these, we use Eqs. (2.12) and (2.8) with x replaced by y. Our choice of the upward direction as positive means that all positions and velocities we calculate will be negative.

EXECUTE At a time t after the coin is dropped, its position and y-velocity are

$$y = y_0 + v_{0y}t + \tfrac{1}{2}a_y t^2 = 0 + 0 + \tfrac{1}{2}(-g)t^2 = (-4.9\ \text{m/s}^2)t^2$$
$$v_y = v_{0y} + a_y t = 0 + (-g)t = (-9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)t$$

Figure **2.23** A coin freely falling from rest.



When $t = 1.0$ s, $y = (-4.9\ \text{m/s}^2)(1.0\ \text{s})^2 = -4.9$ m and $v_y = (-9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)(1.0\ \text{s}) = -9.8$ m/s; after 1.0 s, the coin is 4.9 m below the origin (y is negative) and has a downward velocity (v_y is negative) with magnitude 9.8 m/s.

We can find the positions and y-velocities at 2.0 s and 3.0 s in the same way. The results are $y = -20$ m and $v_y = -20$ m/s at $t = 2.0$ s, and $y = -44$ m and $v_y = -29$ m/s at $t = 3.0$ s.

EVALUATE All our answers are negative, as we expected. If we had chosen the positive y-axis to point downward, the acceleration would have been $a_y = +g$ and all our answers would have been positive.

KEYCONCEPT By using one or more of the four equations in Table 2.5 with x replaced by y, the positive y-direction chosen to be upward, and acceleration $a_y = -g$, you can solve any free-fall problem.

EXAMPLE 2.7 Up-and-down motion in free fall

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

You throw a ball vertically upward from the roof of a tall building. The ball leaves your hand at a point even with the roof railing with an upward speed of 15.0 m/s; the ball is then in free fall. (We ignore air resistance.) On its way back down, it just misses the railing. Find (a) the ball's position and velocity 1.00 s and 4.00 s after leaving your hand; (b) the ball's velocity when it is 5.00 m above the railing; (c) the maximum height reached; (d) the ball's acceleration when it is at its maximum height.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The words "in free fall" mean that the acceleration is due to gravity, which is constant. Our target variables are position [in parts (a) and (c)], velocity [in parts (a) and (b)], and acceleration [in part (d)]. We take the origin at the point where the ball leaves your hand, and take the positive direction to be upward (**Fig. 2.24**). The initial position y_0 is zero, the initial y-velocity v_{0y} is +15.0 m/s, and the y-acceleration is $a_y = -g = -9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$. In part (a), as in Example 2.6, we'll use Eqs. (2.12) and (2.8) to find the position and velocity as functions of time. In part (b) we must find the velocity at a given *position* (no time is given), so we'll use Eq. (2.13).

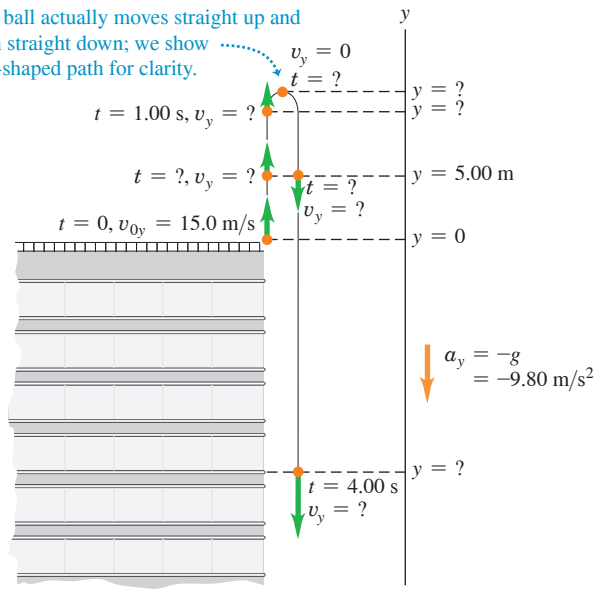
Figure 2.25 (next page) shows the y-t and v_y-t graphs for the ball. The y-t graph is a concave-down parabola that rises and then falls, and the v_y-t graph is a downward-sloping straight line. Note that the ball's velocity is zero when it is at its highest point.

EXECUTE (a) The position and y-velocity at time t are given by Eqs. (2.12) and (2.8) with x's replaced by y's:

$$\begin{aligned} y &= y_0 + v_{0y}t + \tfrac{1}{2}a_y t^2 = y_0 + v_{0y}t + \tfrac{1}{2}(-g)t^2 \\ &= (0) + (15.0\ \text{m/s})t + \tfrac{1}{2}(-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)t^2 \\ v_y &= v_{0y} + a_y t = v_{0y} + (-g)t \\ &= 15.0\ \text{m/s} + (-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)t \end{aligned}$$

When $t = 1.00$ s, these equations give $y = +10.1$ m and $v_y = +5.2$ m/s. That is, the ball is 10.1 m above the origin (y is positive) and moving upward (v_y is positive) with a speed of 5.2 m/s. This is less than the initial speed because the ball slows as it ascends. When $t = 4.00$ s, those equations give $y = -18.4$ m and $v_y = -24.2$ m/s. The ball has passed its highest point and is 18.4 m *below* the origin (y is negative). It is moving *downward* (v_y is negative) with a speed of 24.2 m/s.

Figure **2.24** Position and velocity of a ball thrown vertically upward.

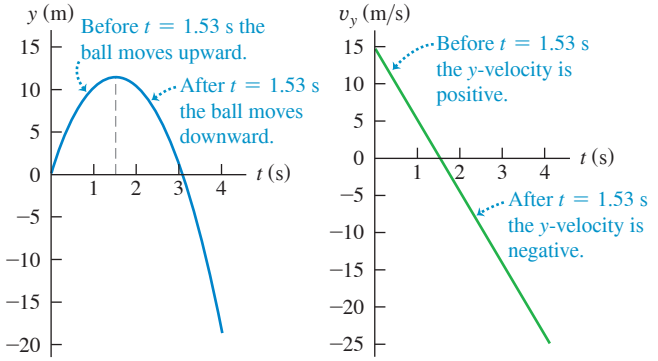


Continued

Figure **2.25** (a) Position and (b) velocity as functions of time for a ball thrown upward with an initial speed of 15.0 m/s.

(a) y-t graph (curvature is downward because $a_y = -g$ is negative)

(b) v_y-t graph (straight line with negative slope because $a_y = -g$ is constant and negative)



(b) The y-velocity at any position y is given by Eq. (2.13) with x's replaced by y's:

$$v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 + 2a_y(y - y_0) = v_{0y}^2 + 2(-g)(y - 0)$$
$$= (15.0\ \text{m/s})^2 + 2(-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)y$$

When the ball is 5.00 m above the origin we have $y = +5.00$ m, so

$$v_y^2 = (15.0\ \text{m/s})^2 + 2(-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(5.00\ \text{m}) = 127\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$$
$$v_y = \pm 11.3\ \text{m/s}$$

We get *two* values of v_y because the ball passes through the point $y = +5.00$ m twice, once on the way up (so v_y is positive) and once on the way down (so v_y is negative) (see Fig. 2.24). Note that the speed of the ball is 11.3 m/s each time it passes through this point.

(c) At the instant at which the ball reaches its maximum height y_1, its y-velocity is momentarily zero: $v_y = 0$. We use Eq. (2.13) to find y_1. With $v_y = 0$, $y_0 = 0$, and $a_y = -g$, we get

$$0 = v_{0y}^2 + 2(-g)(y_1 - 0)$$
$$y_1 = \frac{v_{0y}^2}{2g} = \frac{(15.0\ \text{m/s})^2}{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)} = +11.5\ \text{m}$$

(d) **CAUTION** **A free-fall misconception** It's a common misconception that at the highest point of free-fall motion, where the velocity is zero, the acceleration is also zero. If this were so, once the ball reached the highest point it would hang there suspended in midair! Remember that acceleration is the rate of change of velocity, and the ball's velocity is continuously changing. At every point, including the highest point, and at any velocity, including zero, the acceleration in free fall is always $a_y = -g = -9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$.

EVALUATE A useful way to check any free-fall problem is to draw the y-t and v_y-t graphs, as we did in Fig. 2.25. Note that these are graphs of Eqs. (2.12) and (2.8), respectively. Given the initial position, initial velocity, and acceleration, you can easily create these graphs by using a graphing calculator app or an online math program.

KEYCONCEPT If a freely falling object passes a given point at two different times, once moving upward and once moving downward, its speed will be the same at both times.

EXAMPLE 2.8 Two solutions or one?

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

At what time after being released has the ball in Example 2.7 fallen 5.00 m below the roof railing?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We treat this as in Example 2.7, so y_0, v_{0y}, and $a_y = -g$ have the same values as there. Now, however, the target variable is the time at which the ball is at $y = -5.00$ m. The best equation to use is Eq. (2.12) with a_y replaced by $-g$, which gives the position y as a function of time t:

$$y = y_0 + v_{0y}t + \tfrac{1}{2}(-g)t^2$$

This is a *quadratic* equation for t, which we want to solve for the value of t when $y = -5.00$ m.

EXECUTE We rearrange the equation so that it has the standard form of a quadratic equation for an unknown x, $Ax^2 + Bx + C = 0$:

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}g\right)t^2 + (-v_{0y})t + (y - y_0) = At^2 + Bt + C = 0$$

By comparison, we identify $A = \frac{1}{2}g$, $B = -v_{0y}$, and $C = y - y_0$. The quadratic formula (see Appendix D) tells us that this equation has *two* solutions:

$$t = \frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A}$$
$$= \frac{-(-v_{0y}) \pm \sqrt{(-v_{0y})^2 - 4\left(\tfrac{1}{2}g\right)(y - y_0)}}{2\left(\tfrac{1}{2}g\right)}$$
$$= \frac{v_{0y} \pm \sqrt{v_{0y}^2 - 2g(y - y_0)}}{g}$$

Substituting the values $y_0 = 0$, $v_{0y} = +15.0$ m/s, $g = 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$, and $y = -5.00$ m, we find

$$t = \frac{(15.0\ \text{m/s}) \pm \sqrt{(15.0\ \text{m/s})^2 - 2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(-5.00\ \text{m} - 0)}}{9.80\ \text{m/s}^2}$$

You can confirm that the numerical answers are $t = +3.36$ s and $t = -0.30$ s. The answer $t = -0.30$ s doesn't make physical sense, since it refers to a time *before* the ball left your hand at $t = 0$. So the correct answer is $t = +3.36$ s.

EVALUATE Why did we get a second, fictitious solution? The explanation is that constant-acceleration equations like Eq. (2.12) are based on the assumption that the acceleration is constant for *all* values of time, whether positive, negative, or zero. Hence the solution $t = -0.30$ s refers to an imaginary moment when a freely falling ball was 5.00 m below the roof railing and rising to meet your hand. Since the ball didn't leave your hand and go into free fall until $t = 0$, this result is pure fiction.

Repeat these calculations to find the times when the ball is 5.00 m *above* the origin ($y = +5.00$ m). The two answers are $t = +0.38$ s and $t = +2.68$ s. Both are positive values of t, and both refer to the real motion of the ball after leaving your hand. At the earlier time the ball passes through $y = +5.00$ m moving upward; at the later time it passes through this point moving downward. [Compare this with part (b) of Example 2.7, and again refer to Fig. 2.25a.]

You should also solve for the times when $y = +15.0$ m. In this case, both solutions involve the square root of a negative number, so there are *no* real solutions. Again Fig. 2.25a shows why; we found in part

(c) of Example 2.7 that the ball's maximum height is $y = +11.5$ m, so it *never* reaches $y = +15.0$ m. While a quadratic equation such as Eq. (2.12) always has two solutions, in some situations one or both of the solutions aren't physically reasonable.

In this example we encountered a quadratic equation for the case of free fall. But Eq. (2.12) is a quadratic equation that applies to *all* cases of straight-line motion with constant acceleration, so you'll need to exercise the same care in solving many problems of this kind.

KEYCONCEPT When the acceleration of an object is constant, its position as a function of time is given by a quadratic equation. Inspect the solutions to this equation to determine what they tell you about the problem you're solving.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 2.5 If you toss a ball upward with a certain initial speed, it falls freely and reaches a maximum height h a time t after it leaves your hand. (a) If you throw the ball upward with double the initial speed, what new maximum height does the ball reach? (i) $h\sqrt{2}$; (ii) $2h$; (iii) $4h$; (iv) $8h$; (v) $16h$. (b) If you throw the ball upward with double the initial speed, how long does it take to reach its new maximum height? (i) $t/2$; (ii) $t/\sqrt{2}$; (iii) t; (iv) $t\sqrt{2}$; (v) $2t$.

ANSWER

(a) **(iii)** Use Eq. (2.13) with x replaced by y and $a_y = -g$; $v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 - 2g(y - y_0)$. The starting height is $y_0 = 0$ and the y-velocity at the maximum height $y = h$ is $v_y = 0$, so $0 = v_{0y}^2 - 2gh$ and $h = v_{0y}^2/2g$. If the initial y-velocity is increased by a factor of 2, the maximum height increases by a factor of $2^2 = 4$ and the ball goes to height $4h$. (b) **(v)** Use Eq. (2.8) with x replaced by y and $a_y = -g$; $v_y = v_{0y} - gt$. The y-velocity at the maximum height is $v_y = 0$, so $0 = v_{0y} - gt$ and $t = v_{0y}/g$. If the initial y-velocity is increased by a factor of 2, the time to reach the maximum height increases by a factor of 2 and becomes $2t$.

2.6 VELOCITY AND POSITION BY INTEGRATION

This section is intended for students who have already learned a little integral calculus. In Section 2.4 we analyzed the special case of straight-line motion with constant acceleration. When a_x is not constant, as is frequently the case, the equations that we derived in that section are no longer valid (**Fig. 2.26**). But even when a_x varies with time, we can still use the relationship $v_x = dx/dt$ to find the x-velocity v_x as a function of time if the position x is a known function of time. And we can still use $a_x = dv_x/dt$ to find the x-acceleration a_x as a function of time if the x-velocity v_x is a known function of time.

In many situations, however, position and velocity are not known functions of time, while acceleration is (**Fig. 2.27**). How can we find the position and velocity in straight-line motion from the acceleration function $a_x(t)$?

Figure **2.26** When you push a car's accelerator pedal to the floorboard, the resulting acceleration is *not* constant: The greater the car's speed, the more slowly it gains additional speed. A typical car takes twice as long to accelerate from 50 km/h to 100 km/h as it does to accelerate from 0 to 50 km/h.

Figure **2.27** The inertial navigation system (INS) on board a long-range airliner keeps track of the airliner's acceleration. Given the airliner's initial position and velocity before takeoff, the INS uses the acceleration data to calculate the airliner's position and velocity throughout the flight.

Figure **2.28** An a_x-t graph for a particle whose x-acceleration is not constant.

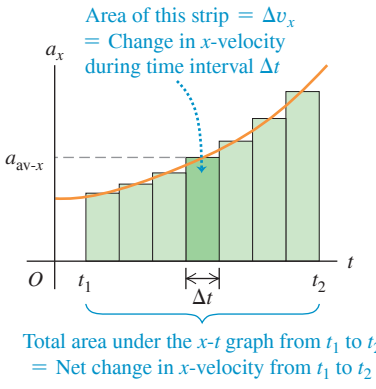


Figure 2.28 is a graph of x-acceleration versus time for a particle whose acceleration is not constant. We can divide the time interval between times t_1 and t_2 into many smaller subintervals, calling a typical one Δt. Let the average x-acceleration during Δt be $a_{\text{av-}x}$. From Eq. (2.4) the change in x-velocity Δv_x during Δt is

$$\Delta v_x = a_{\text{av-}x}\,\Delta t$$

Graphically, Δv_x equals the area of the shaded strip with height $a_{\text{av-}x}$ and width Δt—that is, the area under the curve between the left and right sides of Δt. The total change in x-velocity from t_1 to t_2 is the sum of the x-velocity changes Δv_x in the small subintervals. So the total x-velocity change is represented graphically by the *total* area under the a_x-t curve between the vertical lines t_1 and t_2. (In Section 2.4 we showed this for the special case in which a_x is constant.)

In the limit that all the Δt's become very small and they become very large in number, the value of $a_{\text{av-}x}$ for the interval from any time t to $t + \Delta t$ approaches the instantaneous x-acceleration a_x at time t. In this limit, the area under the a_x-t curve is the *integral* of a_x (which is in general a function of t) from t_1 to t_2. If v_{1x} is the x-velocity of the particle at time t_1 and v_{2x} is the velocity at time t_2, then

$$v_{2x} - v_{1x} = \int_{v_{1x}}^{v_{2x}} dv_x = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} a_x\,dt \tag{2.15}$$

The change in the x-velocity v_x is the time integral of the x-acceleration a_x.

We can carry out exactly the same procedure with the curve of x-velocity versus time. If x_1 is a particle's position at time t_1 and x_2 is its position at time t_2, from Eq. (2.2) the displacement Δx during a small time interval Δt is equal to $v_{\text{av-}x}\,\Delta t$, where $v_{\text{av-}x}$ is the average x-velocity during Δt. The total displacement $x_2 - x_1$ during the interval $t_2 - t_1$ is given by

$$x_2 - x_1 = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} v_x\,dt \tag{2.16}$$

The change in position x—that is, the displacement—is the time integral of x-velocity v_x. Graphically, the displacement between times t_1 and t_2 is the area under the v_x-t curve between those two times. [This is the same result that we obtained in Section 2.4 for the special case in which v_x is given by Eq. (2.8).]

If $t_1 = 0$ and t_2 is any later time t, and if x_0 and v_{0x} are the position and velocity, respectively, at time $t = 0$, then we can rewrite Eqs. (2.15) and (2.16) as

$$v_x = v_{0x} + \int_0^t a_x\,dt \tag{2.17}$$

(x-velocity of a particle at time t; x-velocity of the particle at time 0; integral of the x-acceleration of the particle from time 0 to time t)

$$x = x_0 + \int_0^t v_x\,dt \tag{2.18}$$

(Position of a particle at time t; Position of the particle at time 0; integral of the x-velocity of the particle from time 0 to time t)

If we know the x-acceleration a_x as a function of time and we know the initial velocity v_{0x}, we can use Eq. (2.17) to find the x-velocity v_x at any time; that is, we can find v_x as a function of time. Once we know this function, and given the initial position x_0, we can use Eq. (2.18) to find the position x at any time.

EXAMPLE 2.9 Motion with changing acceleration

Sally is driving along a straight road. At $t = 0$, when she is moving at 10 m/s in the positive x-direction, she passes a signpost at $x = 50$ m. Her x-acceleration as a function of time is

$$a_x = 2.0\ \text{m/s}^2 - (0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)t$$

(a) Find her x-velocity v_x and position x as functions of time. (b) When is her x-velocity greatest? (c) What is that maximum x-velocity? (d) Where is the car when it reaches that maximum x-velocity?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The x-acceleration is a function of time, so we *cannot* use the constant-acceleration formulas of Section 2.4. Instead, we use Eq. (2.17) to obtain an expression for v_x as a function of time, and then use that result in Eq. (2.18) to find an expression for x as a function of t. We'll then be able to answer a variety of questions about the motion.

EXECUTE (a) At $t = 0$, Sally's position is $x_0 = 50$ m and her x-velocity is $v_{0x} = 10$ m/s. To use Eq. (2.17), we note that the integral of t^n (except for $n = -1$) is $\int t^n\,dt = \frac{1}{n+1}t^{n+1}$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} v_x &= 10\ \text{m/s} + \int_0^t [2.0\ \text{m/s}^2 - (0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)t]\,dt \\ &= 10\ \text{m/s} + (2.0\ \text{m/s}^2)t - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now we use Eq. (2.18) to find x as a function of t:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 50\ \text{m} + \int_0^t [10\ \text{m/s} + (2.0\ \text{m/s}^2)t - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2]\,dt \\ &= 50\ \text{m} + (10\ \text{m/s})t + \tfrac{1}{2}(2.0\ \text{m/s}^2)t^2 - \tfrac{1}{6}(0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)t^3 \end{aligned}$$

Figure 2.29 shows graphs of a_x, v_x, and x as functions of time as given by the previous equations. Note that for any time t, the slope of the v_x-t graph equals the value of a_x and the slope of the x-t graph equals the value of v_x.

(b) The maximum value of v_x occurs when the x-velocity stops increasing and begins to decrease. At that instant, $dv_x/dt = a_x = 0$. So we set the expression for a_x equal to zero and solve for t:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= 2.0\ \text{m/s}^2 - (0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)t \\ t &= \frac{2.0\ \text{m/s}^2}{0.10\ \text{m/s}^3} = 20\ \text{s} \end{aligned}$$

(c) We find the maximum x-velocity by substituting $t = 20$ s, the time from part (b) when velocity is maximum, into the equation for v_x from part (a):

$$\begin{aligned} v_{\text{max-}x} &= 10\ \text{m/s} + (2.0\ \text{m/s}^2)(20\ \text{s}) - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)(20\ \text{s})^2 \\ &= 30\ \text{m/s} \end{aligned}$$

(d) To find the car's position at the time that we found in part (b), we substitute $t = 20$ s into the expression for x from part (a):

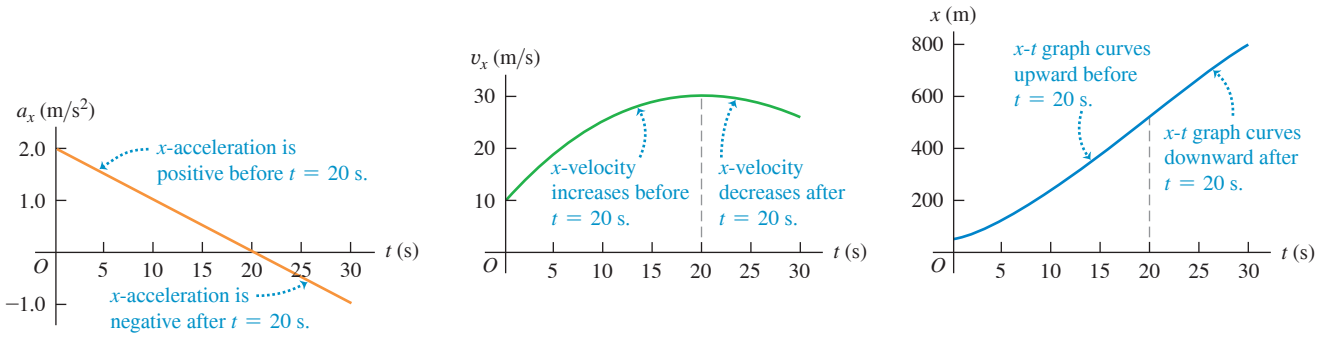
$$\begin{aligned} x &= 50\ \text{m} + (10\ \text{m/s})(20\ \text{s}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(2.0\ \text{m/s}^2)(20\ \text{s})^2 - \tfrac{1}{6}(0.10\ \text{m/s}^3)(20\ \text{s})^3 \\ &= 517\ \text{m} \end{aligned}$$

EVALUATE Figure 2.29 helps us interpret our results. The left-hand graph shows that a_x is positive between $t = 0$ and $t = 20$ s and negative after that. It is zero at $t = 20$ s, the time at which v_x is maximum (the high point in the middle graph). The car speeds up until $t = 20$ s (because v_x and a_x have the same sign) and slows down after $t = 20$ s (because v_x and a_x have opposite signs).

Since v_x is maximum at $t = 20$ s, the x-t graph (the right-hand graph in Fig. 2.29) has its maximum positive slope at this time. Note that the x-t graph is concave up (curved upward) from $t = 0$ to $t = 20$ s, when a_x is positive. The graph is concave down (curved downward) after $t = 20$ s, when a_x is negative.

KEYCONCEPT If the acceleration in straight-line motion is not constant but is a known function of time, you can find the velocity and position as functions of time by integration.

Figure **2.29** The position, velocity, and acceleration of the car in Example 2.9 as functions of time. Can you show that if this motion continues, the car will stop at $t = 44.5$ s?



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 2.6 If the x-acceleration a_x of an object moving in straight-line motion is increasing with time, will the v_x-t graph be (i) a straight line, (ii) concave up (i.e., with an upward curvature), or (iii) concave down (i.e., with a downward curvature)?

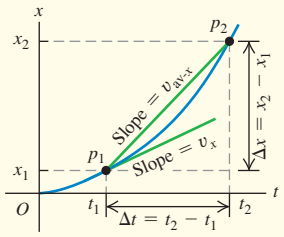
ANSWER (ii) The acceleration a_x is equal to the slope of the v_x-t graph. If a_x is increasing, the slope of the v_x-t graph is also increasing and the graph is concave up.

CHAPTER 2 SUMMARY

Straight-line motion, average and instantaneous *x*-velocity: When a particle moves along a straight line, we describe its position with respect to an origin O by means of a coordinate such as x. The particle's average x-velocity $v_{\text{av-}x}$ during a time interval $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ is equal to its displacement $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$ divided by Δt. The instantaneous x-velocity v_x at any time t is equal to the average x-velocity over the time interval from t to $t + \Delta t$ in the limit that Δt goes to zero. Equivalently, v_x is the derivative of the position function with respect to time. (See Example 2.1.)

$$v_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{x_2 - x_1}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{2.2}$$

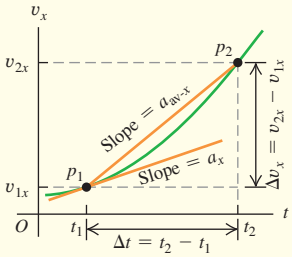
$$v_x = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{dx}{dt} \tag{2.3}$$



Average and instantaneous *x*-acceleration: The average x-acceleration $a_{\text{av-}x}$ during a time interval Δt is equal to the change in velocity $\Delta v_x = v_{2x} - v_{1x}$ during that time interval divided by Δt. The instantaneous x-acceleration a_x is the limit of $a_{\text{av-}x}$ as Δt goes to zero, or the derivative of v_x with respect to t. (See Examples 2.2 and 2.3.)

$$a_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_{2x} - v_{1x}}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{2.4}$$

$$a_x = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{dv_x}{dt} \tag{2.5}$$



Straight-line motion with constant acceleration: When the x-acceleration is constant, four equations relate the position x and the x-velocity v_x at any time t to the initial position x_0, the initial x-velocity v_{0x} (both measured at time $t = 0$), and the x-acceleration a_x. (See Examples 2.4 and 2.5.)

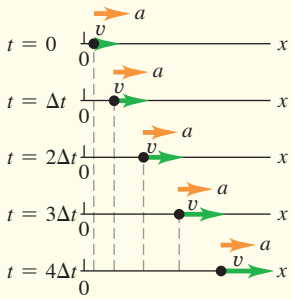
Constant x-acceleration only:

$$v_x = v_{0x} + a_x t \tag{2.8}$$

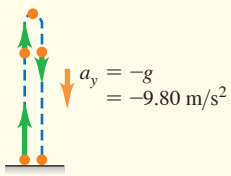
$$x = x_0 + v_{0x} t + \tfrac{1}{2} a_x t^2 \tag{2.12}$$

$$v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0) \tag{2.13}$$

$$x - x_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_x)t \tag{2.14}$$



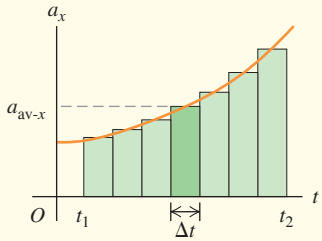
Freely falling objects: Free fall (vertical motion without air resistance, so only gravity affects the motion) is a case of motion with constant acceleration. The magnitude of the acceleration due to gravity is a positive quantity, g. The acceleration of an object in free fall is always downward. (See Examples 2.6–2.8.)



Straight-line motion with varying acceleration: When the acceleration is not constant but is a known function of time, we can find the velocity and position as functions of time by integrating the acceleration function. (See Example 2.9.)

$$v_x = v_{0x} + \int_0^t a_x\, dt \tag{2.17}$$

$$x = x_0 + \int_0^t v_x\, dt \tag{2.18}$$



Chapter 2 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE VARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 2.5 (Section 2.4) before attempting these problems.

VP2.5.1 A sports car starts from rest at an intersection and accelerates toward the east on a straight road at 8.0 m/s^2. Just as the sports car starts to move, a bus traveling east at a constant 18 m/s on the same straight road passes the sports car. When the sports car catches up with and passes the bus, (a) how much time has elapsed and (b) how far has the sports car traveled?

VP2.5.2 A car is traveling on a straight road at a constant 30.0 m/s, which is faster than the speed limit. Just as the car passes a police motorcycle that is stopped at the side of the road, the motorcycle accelerates forward in pursuit. The motorcycle passes the car 12.5 s after starting from rest. (a) What is the acceleration of the motorcycle (assumed to be constant)? (b) How far does the motorcycle travel before it passes the car?

VP2.5.3 A police car is traveling north on a straight road at a constant 20.0 m/s. An SUV traveling north at 30.0 m/s passes the police car. The driver of the SUV suspects he may be exceeding the speed limit, so just as he passes the police car he lets the SUV slow down at a constant 1.80 m/s^2. (a) How much time elapses from when the SUV passes the police car to when the police car passes the SUV? (b) What distance does the SUV travel during this time? (c) What is the speed of the SUV when the police car passes it?

VP2.5.4 At $t = 0$ a truck starts from rest at $x = 0$ and speeds up in the positive x-direction on a straight road with acceleration a_T. At the same time, $t = 0$, a car is at $x = 0$ and traveling in the positive x-direction with speed v_C. The car has a constant negative x-acceleration: $a_{car\text{-}x} = -a_C$, where a_C is a positive quantity. (a) At what time does the truck pass the car? (b) At what x-coordinate does the truck pass the car?

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 2.7 (Section 2.5) before attempting these problems.

VP2.7.1 You throw a ball straight up from the edge of a cliff. It leaves your hand moving at 12.0 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. Take the positive y-direction to be upward, and choose $y = 0$ to be the point where the ball leaves your hand. Find the ball's position and velocity (a) 0.300 s after it leaves your hand and (b) 2.60 s after it leaves your hand. At each time state whether the ball is above or below your hand and whether it is moving upward or downward.

VP2.7.2 You throw a stone straight down from the top of a tall tower. It leaves your hand moving at 8.00 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. Take the positive y-direction to be upward, and choose $y = 0$ to be the point where the stone leaves your hand. (a) Find the stone's position and velocity 1.50 s after it leaves your hand. (b) Find the stone's velocity when it is 8.00 m below your hand.

VP2.7.3 You throw a football straight up. Air resistance can be neglected. (a) When the football is 4.00 m above where it left your hand, it is moving upward at 0.500 m/s. What was the speed of the football when it left your hand? (b) How much time elapses from when the football leaves your hand until it is 4.00 m above your hand?

VP2.7.4 You throw a tennis ball straight up. Air resistance can be neglected. (a) The maximum height above your hand that the ball reaches is H. At what speed does the ball leave your hand? (b) What is the speed of the ball when it is a height $H/2$ above your hand? Express your answer as a fraction of the speed at which it left your hand. (c) At what height above your hand is the speed of the ball half as great as when it left your hand? Express your answer in terms of H.

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 2.8 (Section 2.5) before attempting these problems.

VP2.8.1 You throw a rock straight up from the edge of a cliff. It leaves your hand at time $t = 0$ moving at 12.0 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. (a) Find both times at which the rock is 4.00 m above where it left your hand. (b) Find the time when the rock is 4.00 m below where it left your hand.

VP2.8.2 You throw a basketball straight down from the roof of a building. The basketball leaves your hand at time $t = 0$ moving at 9.00 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. Find the time when the ball is 5.00 m below where it left your hand.

VP2.8.3 You throw an apple straight up. The apple leaves your hand at time $t = 0$ moving at 5.50 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. (a) How many times (two, one, or none) does the apple pass through a point 1.30 m above your hand? If the apple does pass through this point, at what times t does it do so, and is the apple moving upward or downward at each of these times? (b) How many times (two, one, or none) does the apple pass through a point 1.80 m above your hand? If the apple does pass through this point, at what times t does it do so, and is the apple moving upward or downward at each of these times?

VP2.8.4 You throw an orange straight up. The orange leaves your hand at time $t = 0$ moving at speed v_0. Air resistance can be neglected. (a) At what time(s) is the orange at a height $v_0^2/2g$ above the point where it left your hand? At these time(s) is the orange moving upward, downward, or neither? (b) At what time(s) is the orange at a height $3v_0^2/8g$ above the point where it left your hand? At these time(s) is the orange moving upward, downward, or neither?

BRIDGING PROBLEM The Fall of a Superhero

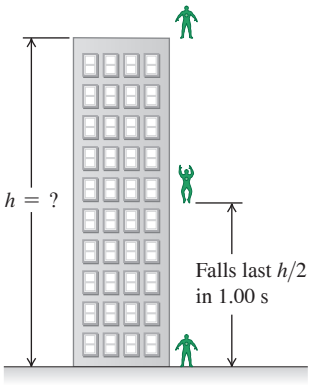
The superhero Green Lantern steps from the top of a tall building. He falls freely from rest to the ground, falling half the total distance to the ground during the last 1.00 s of his fall (**Fig. 2.30**). What is the height h of the building?

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. You're told that Green Lantern falls freely from rest. What does this imply about his acceleration? About his initial velocity?
2. Choose the direction of the positive y-axis. It's easiest to make the same choice we used for freely falling objects in Section 2.5.
3. You can divide Green Lantern's fall into two parts: from the top of the building to the halfway point and from the halfway point to the ground. You know that the second part of the fall lasts 1.00 s. Decide what you would need to know about Green Lantern's motion at the halfway point in order to solve for the target variable h. Then choose two equations, one for the first part of the fall and one for the second part, that you'll use

Figure 2.30 Green Lantern in free fall.



together to find an expression for h. (There are several pairs of equations that you could choose.)

EXECUTE

4. Use your two equations to solve for the height h. Heights are always positive numbers, so your answer should be positive.

EVALUATE

5. To check your answer for h, use one of the free-fall equations to find how long it takes Green Lantern to fall (i) from the top of the building to half the height and (ii) from the top of the building to the ground. If your answer for h is correct, time (ii) should be 1.00 s greater than time (i). If it isn't, go back and look for errors in how you found h.

PROBLEMS

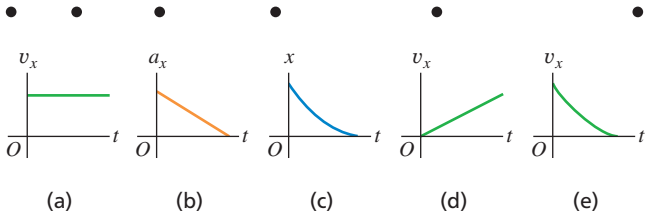
•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q2.1 Does the speedometer of a car measure speed or velocity? Explain.

Q2.2 The black dots at the top of **Fig. Q2.2** represent a series of high-speed photographs of an insect flying in a straight line from left to right (in the positive x-direction). Which of the graphs in Fig. Q2.2 most plausibly depicts this insect's motion?

Figure Q2.2



Q2.3 Can an object with constant acceleration reverse its direction of travel? Can it reverse its direction *twice*? In both cases, explain your reasoning.

Q2.4 Under what conditions is average velocity equal to instantaneous velocity?

Q2.5 Is it possible for an object to be (a) slowing down while its acceleration is increasing in magnitude; (b) speeding up while its acceleration is decreasing? In both cases, explain your reasoning.

Q2.6 Under what conditions does the magnitude of the average velocity equal the average speed?

Q2.7 When a Porsche 911 GT3 is at Nino's Pizza, a BMW Z4 is at the junction of Princess Street and Portland Street. Later, when the Porsche reaches the junction of Princess and Portland, the BMW reaches Nino's Pizza. How are the cars' average velocities between these two times related?

Q2.8 A driver in Nairobi was sent to traffic court for speeding. The evidence against the driver was that a policewoman observed the driver's car alongside a second car at a certain moment, and the policewoman had already clocked the second car going faster than the speed limit. The driver argued, "The second car was passing me. I was not speeding." The judge ruled against the driver because, in the judge's words, "If two cars were side by side, both of you were speeding." If you were a lawyer representing the accused driver, how would you argue this case?

Q2.9 Can you have zero displacement and nonzero average velocity? Zero displacement and nonzero velocity? Illustrate your answers on an x-t graph.

Q2.10 Can you have zero acceleration and nonzero velocity? Use a v_x-t graph to explain.

Q2.11 Can you have zero velocity and nonzero average acceleration? Zero velocity and nonzero acceleration? Use a v_x-t graph to explain, and give an example of such motion.

Q2.12 An automobile is traveling west. Can it have a velocity toward the west and at the same time have an acceleration toward the east? Under what circumstances?

Q2.13 The official's truck in Fig. 2.2 is at $x_1 = 277$ m at $t_1 = 16.0$ s and is at $x_2 = 19$ m at $t_2 = 25.0$ s. (a) Sketch *two* different possible x-t graphs for the motion of the truck. (b) Does the average velocity $v_{\text{av-}x}$ during the time interval from t_1 to t_2 have the same value for both of your graphs? Why or why not?

Q2.14 Under constant acceleration the average velocity of a particle is half the sum of its initial and final velocities. Is this still true if the acceleration is *not* constant? Explain.

Q2.15 You throw a tennis ball straight up in the air so that it rises to a maximum height much greater than your height. Is the magnitude of the ball's acceleration greater while it is being thrown or after it leaves your hand? Explain.

Q2.16 Prove these statements: (a) As long as you can ignore the effects of the air, if you throw anything vertically upward, it will have the same speed when it returns to the release point as when it was released. (b) The time of flight will be twice the time it takes to get to its highest point.

Q2.17 A dripping water faucet steadily releases drops 1.0 s apart. As these drops fall, does the distance between them increase, decrease, or remain the same? Prove your answer.

Q2.18 If you know the initial position and initial velocity of a vehicle and have a record of the acceleration at each instant, can you compute the vehicle's position after a certain time? If so, explain how this might be done.

Q2.19 From the top of a tall building, you throw one ball straight up with speed v_0 and one ball straight down with speed v_0. (a) Which ball has the greater speed when it reaches the ground? (b) Which ball gets to the ground first? (c) Which ball has a greater displacement when it reaches the ground? (d) Which ball has traveled the greater distance when it hits the ground?

Q2.20 You run due east at a constant speed of 3.00 m/s for a distance of 120.0 m and then continue running east at a constant speed of 5.00 m/s for another 120.0 m. For the total 240.0 m run, is your average velocity 4.00 m/s, greater than 4.00 m/s, or less than 4.00 m/s? Explain.

Q2.21 An object is thrown straight up into the air and feels no air resistance. How can the object have an acceleration when it has stopped moving at its highest point?

Q2.22 When you drop an object from a certain height, it takes time T to reach the ground with no air resistance. If you dropped it from three times that height, how long (in terms of T) would it take to reach the ground?

EXERCISES

Section 2.1 Displacement, Time, and Average Velocity

2.1 • A car travels in the $+x$-direction on a straight and level road. For the first 4.00 s of its motion, the average velocity of the car is $v_{\text{av-}x} = 6.25$ m/s. How far does the car travel in 4.00 s?

2.2 •• In an experiment, a shearwater (a seabird) was taken from its nest, flown 5150 km away, and released. The bird found its way back to its nest 13.5 days after release. If we place the origin at the nest and extend the $+x$-axis to the release point, what was the bird's average velocity in m/s (a) for the return flight and (b) for the whole episode, from leaving the nest to returning?

2.3 •• **Trip Home.** You normally drive from Glasgow to Edinburgh via M8 motorway at an average speed of 72 km/h, and the trip takes 1 h and 2 min. At peak times, however, heavy traffic slows you down and you drive the same distance at an average speed of only 49 km/h. How much longer does the trip take?

2.4 •• **From Pillar to Post.** Starting from a pillar, you run 200 m east (the $+x$-direction) at an average speed of 5.0 m/s and then run 280 m west at an average speed of 4.0 m/s to a post. Calculate (a) your average speed from pillar to post and (b) your average velocity from pillar to post.

2.5 • Starting from the front door of a farmhouse, you walk 60.0 m due east to a windmill, turn around, and then slowly walk 40.0 m west to a bench, where you sit and watch the sunrise. It takes you 28.0 s to walk from the house to the windmill and then 36.0 s to walk from the windmill to the bench. For the entire trip from the front door to the bench, what are your (a) average velocity and (b) average speed?

2.6 •• A Honda Civic travels in a straight line along a road. The car's distance x from a stop sign is given as a function of time t by the equation $x(t) = \alpha t^2 - \beta t^3$, where $\alpha = 1.50$ m/s^2 and $\beta = 0.0500$ m/s^3. Calculate the average velocity of the car for each time interval: (a) $t = 0$ to $t = 2.00$ s; (b) $t = 0$ to $t = 4.00$ s; (c) $t = 2.00$ s to $t = 4.00$ s.

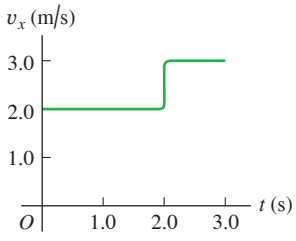
SECTION 2.2 Instantaneous Velocity

2.7 • **CALC** A car is stopped at a traffic light. It then travels along a straight road such that its distance from the light is given by $x(t) = bt^2 - ct^3$, where $b = 2.40$ m/s^2 and $c = 0.120$ m/s^3. (a) Calculate the average velocity of the car for the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 10.0$ s. (b) Calculate the instantaneous velocity of the car at $t = 0$, $t = 5.0$ s, and $t = 10.0$ s. (c) How long after starting from rest is the car again at rest?

2.8 • **CALC** A bird is flying due east. Its distance from a tall building is given by $x(t) = 28.0\text{ m} + (12.4\text{ m/s})t - (0.0450\text{ m/s}^3)t^3$. What is the instantaneous velocity of the bird when $t = 8.00$ s?

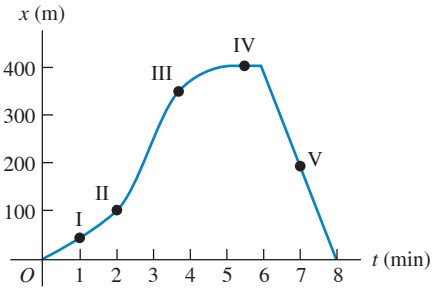
2.9 •• A ball moves in a straight line (the x-axis). The graph in **Fig. E2.9** shows this ball's velocity as a function of time. (a) What are the ball's average speed and average velocity during the first 3.0 s? (b) Suppose that the ball moved in such a way that the graph segment after 2.0 s was -3.0 m/s instead of $+3.0$ m/s. Find the ball's average speed and average velocity in this case.

Figure **E2.9**



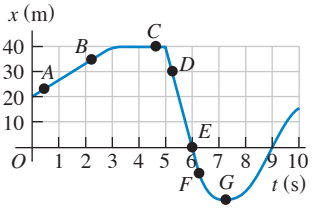
2.10 •• A physics professor leaves her house and walks along the pavement toward campus. After 5 min it starts to rain, and she returns home. Her distance from her house as a function of time is shown in **Fig. E2.10**. At which of the labeled points is her velocity (a) zero? (b) constant and positive? (c) constant and negative? (d) increasing in magnitude? (e) decreasing in magnitude?

Figure **E2.10**



2.11 •• A test car travels in a straight line along the x-axis. The graph in **Fig. E2.11** shows the car's position x as a function of time. Find its instantaneous velocity at points A through G.

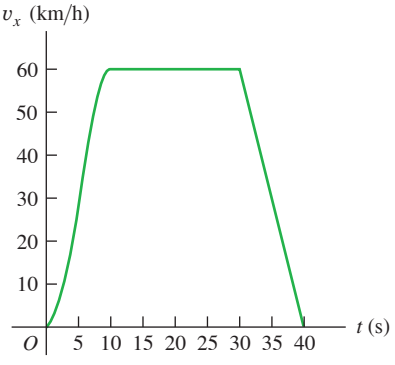
Figure **E2.11**



Section 2.3 Average and Instantaneous Acceleration

2.12 • **Figure E2.12** shows the velocity of a solar-powered car as a function of time. The driver accelerates from a stop sign, cruises for 20 s at a constant speed of 60 km/h, and then brakes to come to a stop 40 s after leaving the stop sign. (a) Compute the average acceleration during these time intervals: (i) $t = 0$ to $t = 10$ s; (ii) $t = 30$ s to $t = 40$ s; (iii) $t = 10$ s to $t = 30$ s; (iv) $t = 0$ to $t = 40$ s. (b) What is the instantaneous acceleration at $t = 20$ s and at $t = 35$ s?

Figure **E2.12**



2.13 • CALC A turtle crawls along a straight line, which we'll call the x-axis with the positive direction to the right. The equation for the turtle's position as a function of time is $x(t) = 50.0\text{ cm} + (2.00\text{ cm/s})t - (0.0625\text{ cm/s}^2)t^2$. (a) Find the turtle's initial velocity, initial position, and initial acceleration. (b) At what time t is the velocity of the turtle zero? (c) How long after starting does it take the turtle to return to its starting point? (d) At what times t is the turtle a distance of 10.0 cm from its starting point? What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the turtle at each of those times? (e) Sketch graphs of x versus t, v_x versus t, and a_x versus t, for the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 40$ s.

2.14 •• CALC A race car starts from rest and travels east along a straight and level track. For the first 5.0 s of the car's motion, the eastward component of the car's velocity is given by $v_x(t) = (0.860\text{ m/s}^3)t^2$. What is the acceleration of the car when $v_x = 12.0$ m/s?

2.15 • CALC A car's velocity as a function of time is given by $v_x(t) = \alpha + \beta t^2$, where $\alpha = 3.00$ m/s and $\beta = 0.100\text{ m/s}^3$. (a) Calculate the average acceleration for the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 5.00$ s. (b) Calculate the instantaneous acceleration for $t = 0$ and $t = 5.00$ s. (c) Draw v_x-t and a_x-t graphs for the car's motion between $t = 0$ and $t = 5.00$ s.

2.16 • An astronaut has left the International Space Station to test a new space scooter. Her partner measures the following velocity changes, each taking place in a 10 s interval. What are the magnitude, the algebraic sign, and the direction of the average acceleration in each interval? Assume that the positive direction is to the right. (a) At the beginning of the interval, the astronaut is moving toward the right along the x-axis at 15.0 m/s, and at the end of the interval she is moving toward the right at 5.0 m/s. (b) At the beginning she is moving toward the left at 5.0 m/s, and at the end she is moving toward the left at 15.0 m/s. (c) At the beginning she is moving toward the right at 15.0 m/s, and at the end she is moving toward the left at 15.0 m/s.

2.17 •• CALC The position of the front bumper of a test car under microprocessor control is given by $x(t) = 2.17\text{ m} + (4.80\text{ m/s}^2)t^2 - (0.100\text{ m/s}^6)t^6$. (a) Find its position and acceleration at the instants when the car has zero velocity. (b) Draw x-t, v_x-t, and a_x-t graphs for the motion of the bumper between $t = 0$ and $t = 2.00$ s.

Section 2.4 Motion with Constant Acceleration

2.18 • Estimate the distance that your car travels on the entrance ramp to a freeway as it accelerates from 50 km/h to the freeway speed of 110 km/h. During this motion what is the average acceleration of the car?

2.19 •• An antelope moving with constant acceleration covers the distance between two points 70.0 m apart in 6.00 s. Its speed as it passes the second point is 15.0 m/s. What are (a) its speed at the first point and (b) its acceleration?

2.20 •• A Tennis Serve. In the fastest measured tennis serve, the ball left the racquet at 73.14 m/s. A served tennis ball is typically in contact with the racquet for 30.0 ms and starts from rest. Assume constant acceleration. (a) What was the ball's acceleration during this serve? (b) How far did the ball travel during the serve?

2.21 • A Fast Pitch. The fastest measured pitched baseball left the pitcher's hand at a speed of 45.0 m/s. If the pitcher was in contact with the ball over a distance of 1.50 m and produced constant acceleration, (a) what acceleration did he give the ball, and (b) how much time did it take him to pitch it?

2.22 • You are traveling on a motorway at the posted speed limit of 110 km/h when you see that the traffic in front of you has stopped due to an accident up ahead. You step on your brakes to slow down as quickly as possible. (a) Estimate how many seconds it takes you to slow down to 50 km/h. What is the magnitude of the average acceleration of the car while it is slowing down? With this same average acceleration, (b) how much longer would it take you to stop, and (c) what total distance would you travel from when you first apply the brakes until the car stops?

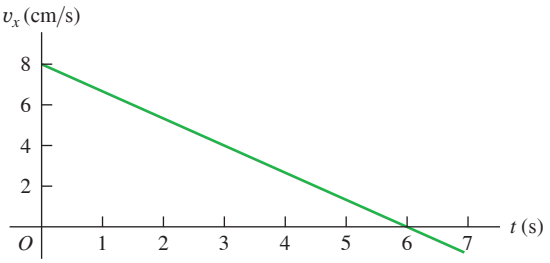
2.23 •• BIO Automobile Airbags. The human body can survive an acceleration trauma incident (sudden stop) if the magnitude of the acceleration is less than 250 m/s^2. If you are in an automobile accident with an initial speed of 105 km/h and are stopped by an airbag that inflates from the dashboard, over what minimum distance must the airbag stop you for you to survive the crash?

2.24 • Entering the Freeway. A car sits on an entrance ramp to a freeway, waiting for a break in the traffic. Then the driver accelerates with constant acceleration along the ramp and onto the freeway. The car starts from rest, moves in a straight line, and has a speed of 20 m/s when it reaches the end of the 120-m-long ramp. (a) What is the acceleration of the car? (b) How much time does it take the car to travel the length of the ramp? (c) The traffic on the freeway is moving at a constant speed of 20 m/s. What distance does the traffic travel while the car is moving the length of the ramp?

2.25 • BIO Airbag Injuries. During an auto accident, the vehicle's airbags deploy and slow down the passengers more gently than if they had hit the windshield or steering wheel. According to safety standards, airbags produce a maximum acceleration of $60g$ that lasts for only 36 ms (or less). How far (in meters) does a person travel in coming to a complete stop in 36 ms at a constant acceleration of $60g$?

2.26 •• A cat walks in a straight line, which we shall call the x-axis, with the positive direction to the right. As an observant physicist, you make measurements of this cat's motion and construct a graph of the feline's velocity as a function of time (**Fig. E2.26**). (a) Find the cat's velocity at $t = 4.0$ s and at $t = 7.0$ s. (b) What is the cat's acceleration at $t = 3.0$ s? At $t = 6.0$ s? At $t = 7.0$ s? (c) What distance does the cat move during the first 4.5 s? From $t = 0$ to $t = 7.0$ s? (d) Assuming that the cat started at the origin, sketch clear graphs of the cat's acceleration and position as functions of time.

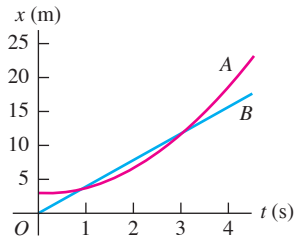
Figure **E2.26**



2.27 • BIO Are We Martians? It has been suggested, and not facetiously, that life might have originated on Mars and been carried to the earth when a meteor hit Mars and blasted pieces of rock (perhaps containing primitive life) free of the Martian surface. Astronomers know that many Martian rocks have come to the earth this way. (For instance, search the Internet for "ALH 84001.") One objection to this idea is that microbes would have had to undergo an enormous lethal acceleration during the impact. Let us investigate how large such an acceleration might be. To escape Mars, rock fragments would have to reach its escape velocity of 5.0 km/s, and that would most likely happen over a distance of about 4.0 m during the meteor impact. (a) What would be the acceleration (in m/s^2 and g's) of such a rock fragment, if the acceleration is constant? (b) How long would this acceleration last? (c) In tests, scientists have found that over 40% of *Bacillus subtilis* bacteria survived after an acceleration of $450{,}000g$. In light of your answer to part (a), can we rule out the hypothesis that life might have been blasted from Mars to the earth?

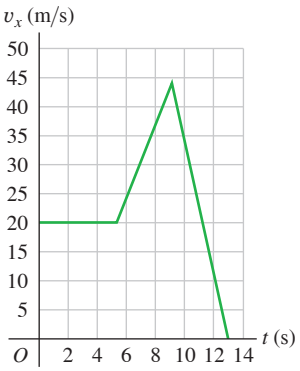
2.28 • Two cars, *A* and *B*, move along the *x*-axis. **Figure E2.28** is a graph of the positions of *A* and *B* versus time. (a) In motion diagrams (like Figs. 2.13b and 2.14b), show the position, velocity, and acceleration of each of the two cars at $t = 0$, $t = 1$ s, and $t = 3$ s. (b) At what time(s), if any, do *A* and *B* have the same position? (c) Graph velocity versus time for both *A* and *B*. (d) At what time(s), if any, do *A* and *B* have the same velocity? (e) At what time(s), if any, does car *A* pass car *B*? (f) At what time(s), if any, does car *B* pass car *A*?

Figure **E2.28**



2.29 •• The graph in **Fig. E2.29** shows the velocity of a motorcycle police officer plotted as a function of time. (a) Find the instantaneous acceleration at $t = 3$ s, $t = 7$ s, and $t = 11$ s. (b) How far does the officer go in the first 5 s? The first 9 s? The first 13 s?

Figure **E2.29**



2.30 •• A small block has constant acceleration as it slides down a frictionless incline. The block is released from rest at the top of the incline, and its speed after it has traveled 6.80 m to the bottom of the incline is 3.80 m/s. What is the speed of the block when it is 3.40 m from the top of the incline?

2.31 •• (a) If a flea can jump straight up to a height of 0.440 m, what is its initial speed as it leaves the ground? (b) How long is it in the air?

2.32 •• A small rock is thrown vertically upward with a speed of 22.0 m/s from the edge of the roof of a 30.0-m-tall building. The rock doesn't hit the building on its way back down and lands on the street below. Ignore air resistance. (a) What is the speed of the rock just before it hits the street? (b) How much time elapses from when the rock is thrown until it hits the street?

SECTION 2.5 Freely Falling Objects

2.33 • A juggler throws a bowling pin straight up with an initial speed of 8.20 m/s. How much time elapses until the bowling pin returns to the juggler's hand?

2.34 •• You throw a glob of putty straight up toward the ceiling, which is 3.60 m above the point where the putty leaves your hand. The initial speed of the putty as it leaves your hand is 9.50 m/s. (a) What is the speed of the putty just before it strikes the ceiling? (b) How much time from when it leaves your hand does it take the putty to reach the ceiling?

2.35 •• A tennis ball on Mars, where the acceleration due to gravity is $0.379g$ and air resistance is negligible, is hit directly upward and returns to the same level 8.5 s later. (a) How high above its original point did the ball go? (b) How fast was it moving just after it was hit? (c) Sketch graphs of the ball's vertical position, vertical velocity, and vertical acceleration as functions of time while it's in the Martian air.

2.36 •• Estimate the maximum height that you can throw a tennis ball straight up. (a) For this height, how long after the ball leaves your hand does it return to your hand? (b) Estimate the distance that the ball moves while you are throwing it—that is, the distance from where the ball is when you start your throw until it leaves your hand. Calculate the average acceleration in m/s^2 that the ball has while it is being thrown, as it moves from rest to the point where it leaves your hand.

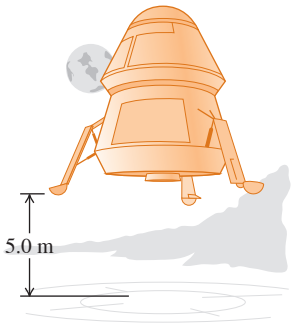
2.37 •• A rock is thrown straight up with an initial speed of 24.0 m/s. Neglect air resistance. (a) At $t = 1.0$ s, what are the directions of the velocity and acceleration of the rock? Is the speed of the rock increasing or decreasing? (b) At $t = 3.0$ s, what are the directions of the velocity and acceleration of the rock? Is the speed of the rock increasing or decreasing?

2.38 •• A brick is dropped (zero initial speed) from the roof of a building. The brick strikes the ground in 1.90 s. You may ignore air resistance, so the brick is in free fall. (a) How tall, in meters, is the building? (b) What is the magnitude of the brick's velocity just before it reaches the ground? (c) Sketch a_y-t, v_y-t, and y-t graphs for the motion of the brick.

2.39 •• **A Simple Reaction-Time Test.** A meter stick is held vertically above your hand, with the lower end between your thumb and first finger. When you see the meter stick released, you grab it with those two fingers. You can calculate your reaction time from the distance the meter stick falls, read directly from the point where your fingers grabbed it. (a) Derive a relationship for your reaction time in terms of this measured distance, *d*. (b) If the measured distance is 17.6 cm, what is your reaction time?

2.40 •• **Touchdown on the Moon.** A lunar lander is making its descent to Moon Base I (**Fig. E2.40**). The lander descends slowly under the retro-thrust of its descent engine. The engine is cut off when the lander is 5.0 m above the surface and has a downward speed of 0.8 m/s.With the engine off, the lander is in free fall. What is the speed of the lander just before it touches the surface? The acceleration due to gravity on the moon is 1.6 m/s^2.

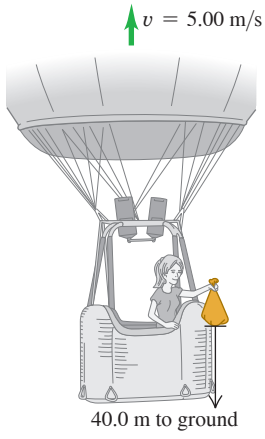
Figure **E2.40**



2.41 •• **Launch Failure.** A 7500 kg rocket blasts off vertically from the launch pad with a constant upward acceleration of 2.25 m/s^2 and feels no appreciable air resistance. When it has reached a height of 525 m, its engines suddenly fail; the only force acting on it is now gravity. (a) What is the maximum height this rocket will reach above the launch pad? (b) How much time will elapse after engine failure before the rocket comes crashing down to the launch pad, and how fast will it be moving just before it crashes? (c) Sketch a_y-t, v_y-t, and y-t graphs of the rocket's motion from the instant of blast-off to the instant just before it strikes the launch pad.

2.42 •• A hot-air balloonist, rising vertically with a constant velocity of magnitude 5.00 m/s, releases a sandbag at an instant when the balloon is 40.0 m above the ground (**Fig. E2.42**). After the sandbag is released, it is in free fall. (a) Compute the position and velocity of the sandbag at 0.250 s and 1.00 s after its release. (b) How many seconds after its release does the bag strike the ground? (c) With what magnitude of velocity does it strike the ground? (d) What is the greatest height above the ground that the sandbag reaches? (e) Sketch a_y-t, v_y-t, and y-t graphs for the motion.

Figure **E2.42**



2.43 • You throw a rock straight up and find that it returns to your hand 3.60 s after it left your hand. Neglect air resistance. What was the maximum height above your hand that the rock reached?

2.44 • An egg is thrown nearly vertically upward from a point near the cornice of a tall building. The egg just misses the cornice on the way down and passes a point 30.0 m below its starting point 5.00 s after it leaves the thrower's hand. Ignore air resistance. (a) What is the initial speed of the egg? (b) How high does it rise above its starting point? (c) What is the magnitude of its velocity at the highest point? (d) What are the magnitude and direction of its acceleration at the highest point? (e) Sketch a_y-t, v_y-t, and y-t graphs for the motion of the egg.

2.45 •• A 15 kg rock is dropped from rest on the earth and reaches the ground in 1.75 s. When it is dropped from the same height on Saturn's satellite Enceladus, the rock reaches the ground in 18.6 s. What is the acceleration due to gravity on Enceladus?

2.46 • A large boulder is ejected vertically upward from a volcano with an initial speed of 40.0 m/s. Ignore air resistance. (a) At what time after being ejected is the boulder moving at 20.0 m/s upward? (b) At what time is it moving at 20.0 m/s downward? (c) When is the displacement of the boulder from its initial position zero? (d) When is the velocity of the boulder zero? (e) What are the magnitude and direction of the acceleration while the boulder is (i) moving upward? (ii) Moving downward? (iii) At the highest point? (f) Sketch a_y-t, v_y-t, and y-t graphs for the motion.

2.47 •• You throw a small rock straight up from the edge of a bridge that crosses a river. The rock passes you on its way down, 6.00 s after it was thrown. What is the speed of the rock just before it reaches the water 28.0 m below the point where the rock left your hand? Ignore air resistance.

Section 2.6 Velocity and Position by Integration

2.48 •• Consider the motion described by the v_x-t graph of Fig. E2.26. (a) Calculate the area under the graph between $t = 0$ and $t = 6.0$ s. (b) For the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 6.0$ s, what is the magnitude of the average velocity of the cat? (c) Use constant-acceleration equations to calculate the distance the cat travels in this time interval. How does your result compare to the area you calculated in part (a)?

2.49 • CALC A rocket starts from rest and moves upward from the surface of the earth. For the first 10.0 s of its motion, the vertical acceleration of the rocket is given by $a_y = (2.80\ \text{m/s}^3)t$, where the $+y$-direction is upward. (a) What is the height of the rocket above the surface of the earth at $t = 10.0$ s? (b) What is the speed of the rocket when it is 325 m above the surface of the earth?

2.50 •• CALC A small object moves along the x-axis with acceleration $a_x(t) = -(0.0320\ \text{m/s}^3)(15.0\ \text{s} - t)$. At $t = 0$ the object is at $x = -14.0$ m and has velocity $v_{0x} = 8.00$ m/s. What is the x-coordinate of the object when $t = 10.0$ s?

2.51 •• CALC The acceleration of a motorcycle is given by $a_x(t) = At - Bt^2$, where $A = 1.50\ \text{m/s}^3$ and $B = 0.120\ \text{m/s}^4$. The motorcycle is at rest at the origin at time $t = 0$. (a) Find its position and velocity as functions of time. (b) Calculate the maximum velocity it attains.

2.52 •• CALC The acceleration of a bus is given by $a_x(t) = \alpha t$, where $\alpha = 1.2\ \text{m/s}^3$. (a) If the bus's velocity at time $t = 1.0$ s is 5.0 m/s, what is its velocity at time $t = 2.0$ s? (b) If the bus's position at time $t = 1.0$ s is 6.0 m, what is its position at time $t = 2.0$ s? (c) Sketch a_y-t, v_y-t, and x-t graphs for the motion.

PROBLEMS

2.53 • BIO A typical male sprinter can maintain his maximum acceleration for 2.0 s, and his maximum speed is 10 m/s. After he reaches this maximum speed, his acceleration becomes zero, and then he runs at constant speed. Assume that his acceleration is constant during the first 2.0 s of the race, that he starts from rest, and that he runs in a straight line. (a) How far has the sprinter run when he reaches his maximum speed? (b) What is the magnitude of his average velocity for a race of these lengths: (i) 50.0 m; (ii) 100.0 m; (iii) 200.0 m?

2.54 • CALC A lunar lander is descending toward the moon's surface. Until the lander reaches the surface, its height above the surface of the moon is given by $y(t) = b - ct + dt^2$, where $b = 800$ m is the initial height of the lander above the surface, $c = 60.0$ m/s, and $d = 1.05\ \text{m/s}^2$. (a) What is the initial velocity of the lander, at $t = 0$? (b) What is the velocity of the lander just before it reaches the lunar surface?

2.55 ••• **Earthquake Analysis.** Earthquakes produce several types of shock waves. The most well known are the P-waves (P for *primary* or *pressure*) and the S-waves (S for *secondary* or *shear*). In the earth's crust, P-waves travel at about 6.5 km/s and S-waves move at about 3.5 km/s. The time delay between the arrival of these two waves at a seismic recording station tells geologists how far away an earthquake occurred. If the time delay is 33 s, how far from the seismic station did the earthquake occur?

2.56 •• You throw a small rock straight up with initial speed V_0 from the edge of the roof of a building that is a distance H above the ground. The rock travels upward to a maximum height in time T_{max}, misses the edge of the roof on its way down, and reaches the ground in time T_{total} after it was thrown. Neglect air resistance. If the total time the rock is in the air is three times the time it takes it to reach its maximum height, so $T_{\text{total}} = 3T_{\text{max}}$, then in terms of H what must be the value of V_0?

2.57 ••• A rocket carrying a satellite is accelerating straight up from the earth's surface. At 1.15 s after liftoff, the rocket clears the top of its launch platform, 63 m above the ground. After an additional 4.75 s, it is 1.00 km above the ground. Calculate the magnitude of the average velocity of the rocket for (a) the 4.75 s part of its flight and (b) the first 5.90 s of its flight.

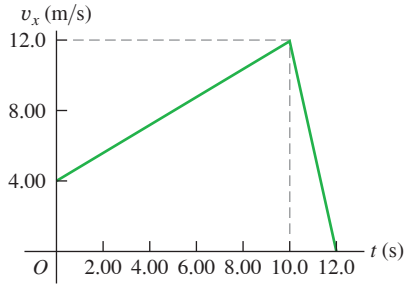
2.58 •• A block moving on a horizontal surface is at $x = 0$ when $t = 0$ and is sliding east with a speed of 12.0 m/s. Because of a net force acting on the block, it has a constant acceleration with direction west and magnitude $2.00\ \text{m/s}^2$. The block travels east, slows down, reverses direction, and then travels west with increasing speed. (a) At what value of t is the block again at $x = 0$? (b) What is the maximum distance east of $x = 0$ that the rock reaches, and how long does it take the rock to reach this point?

2.59 •• A block is sliding with constant acceleration down an incline. The block starts from rest at $t = 0$ and has speed 3.00 m/s after it has traveled a distance 8.00 m from its starting point. (a) What is the speed of the block when it is a distance of 16.0 m from its $t = 0$ starting point? (b) How long does it take the block to slide 16.0 m from its starting point?

2.60 ••• An underground train starts from rest at a station and accelerates at a rate of $1.60\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 14.0 s. It runs at constant speed for 70.0 s and slows down at a rate of $3.50\ \text{m/s}^2$ until it stops at the next station. Find the *total* distance covered.

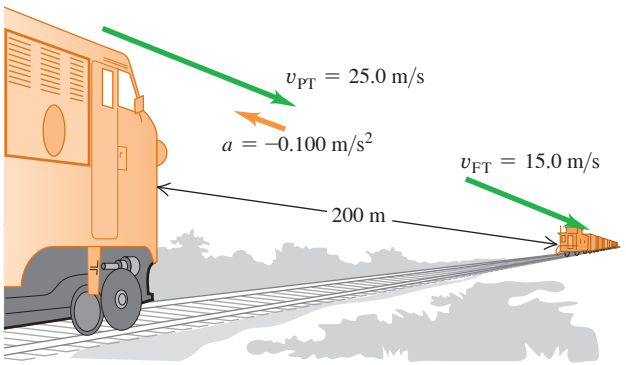
2.61 • A gazelle is running in a straight line (the x-axis). The graph in **Fig. P2.61** shows this animal's velocity as a function of time. During the first 12.0 s, find (a) the total distance moved and (b) the displacement of the gazelle. (c) Sketch an a_x-t graph showing this gazelle's acceleration as a function of time for the first 12.0 s.

Figure P2.61



2.62 •• Collision. The engineer of a passenger train traveling at 25.0 m/s sights a freight train whose caboose is 200 m ahead on the same track (**Fig. P2.62**). The freight train is traveling at 15.0 m/s in the same direction as the passenger train. The engineer of the passenger train immediately applies the brakes, causing a constant acceleration of 0.100 m/s^2 in a direction opposite to the train's velocity, while the freight train continues with constant speed. Take $x = 0$ at the location of the front of the passenger train when the engineer applies the brakes. (a) Will the cows nearby witness a collision? (b) If so, where will it take place? (c) On a single graph, sketch the positions of the front of the passenger train and the back of the freight train.

Figure **P2.62**



**2.63 ••• ** A ball starts from rest and rolls down a hill with uniform acceleration, traveling 200 m during the second 5.0 s of its motion. How far did it roll during the first 5.0 s of motion?

**2.64 •• ** A rock moving in the $+x$-direction with speed 16.0 m/s has a net force applied to it at time $t = 0$, and this produces a constant acceleration in the $-x$-direction that has magnitude 4.00 m/s^2. For what three times t after the force is applied is the rock a distance of 24.0 m from its position at $t = 0$? For each of these three values of t, what is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the rock?

**2.65 • ** A car and a truck start from rest at the same instant, with the car initially at some distance behind the truck. The truck has a constant acceleration of 2.10 m/s^2, and the car has an acceleration of 3.40 m/s^2. The car overtakes the truck after the truck has moved 60.0 m. (a) How much time does it take the car to overtake the truck? (b) How far was the car behind the truck initially? (c) What is the speed of each when they are abreast? (d) On a single graph, sketch the position of each vehicle as a function of time. Take $x = 0$ at the initial location of the truck.

**2.66 •• ** You are standing at rest at a bus stop. A bus moving at a constant speed of 5.00 m/s passes you. When the rear of the bus is 12.0 m past you, you realize that it is your bus, so you start to run toward it with a constant acceleration of 0.960 m/s^2. How far would you have to run before you catch up with the rear of the bus, and how fast must you be running then? Would an average college student be physically able to accomplish this?

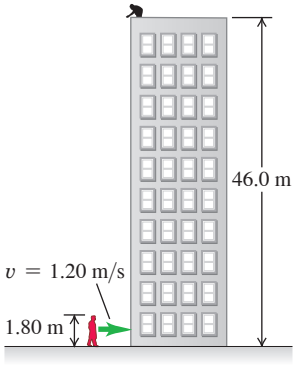
**2.67 •• ** A sprinter runs a 100 m dash in 12.0 s. She starts from rest with a constant acceleration a_x for 3.0 s and then runs with constant speed for the remainder of the race. What is the value of a_x?

2.68 •• CALC An object's velocity is measured to be $v_x(t) = \alpha - \beta t^2$, where $\alpha = 4.00$ m/s and $\beta = 2.00$ m/s^3. At $t = 0$ the object is at $x = 0$. (a) Calculate the object's position and acceleration as functions of time. (b) What is the object's maximum *positive* displacement from the origin?

2.69 •• CALC An object is moving along the x-axis. At $t = 0$ it is at $x = 0$. Its x-component of velocity v_x as a function of time is given by $v_x(t) = \alpha t - \beta t^3$, where $\alpha = 8.0$ m/s^2 and $\beta = 4.0$ m/s^4. (a) At what nonzero time t is the object again at $x = 0$? (b) At the time calculated in part (a), what are the velocity and acceleration of the object (magnitude and direction)?

2.70 • Egg Drop. You are on the roof of the physics building, 46.0 m above the ground (**Fig. P2.70**). Your physics professor, who is 1.80 m tall, is walking alongside the building at a constant speed of 1.20 m/s. If you wish to drop an egg on your professor's head, where should the professor be when you release the egg? Assume that the egg is in free fall.

Figure **P2.70**



2.71 ••• CALC The acceleration of a particle is given by $a_x(t) = -2.00$ m/s^2 + (3.00 m/s^3)t. (a) Find the initial velocity v_{0x} such that the particle will have the same x-coordinate at $t = 4.00$ s as it had at $t = 0$. (b) What will be the velocity at $t = 4.00$ s?

**2.72 •• ** A small rock is thrown straight up with initial speed v_0 from the edge of the roof of a building with height H. The rock travels upward and then downward to the ground at the base of the building. Let $+y$ be upward, and neglect air resistance. (a) For the rock's motion from the roof to the ground, what is the vertical component $v_{av\text{-}y}$ of its average velocity? Is this quantity positive or negative? Explain. (b) What does your expression for $v_{av\text{-}y}$ give in the limit that H is zero? Explain. (c) Show that your result in part (a) agrees with Eq. (2.10).

**2.73 •• ** A watermelon is dropped from the edge of the roof of a building and falls to the ground. You are standing on the pavement and see the watermelon falling when it is 30.0 m above the ground. Then 1.50 s after you first spot it, the watermelon lands at your feet. What is the height of the building? Neglect air resistance.

**2.74 ••• ** A flowerpot falls off a windowsill and passes the window of the story below. Ignore air resistance. It takes the pot 0.380 s to pass from the top to the bottom of this window, which is 1.90 m high. How far is the top of the window below the windowsill from which the flowerpot fell?

2.75 ••• Look Out Below. Kemal heaves a 7.26 kg shot straight up, giving it a constant upward acceleration from rest of 35.0 m/s^2 for 64.0 cm. He releases it 2.20 m above the ground. Ignore air resistance. (a) What is the speed of the shot when Kemal releases it? (b) How high above the ground does it go? (c) How much time does he have to get out of its way before it returns to the height of the top of his head, 1.83 m above the ground?

2.76 ••• A Multistage Rocket. In the first stage of a two-stage rocket, the rocket is fired from the launch pad starting from rest but with a constant acceleration of 3.50 m/s^2 upward. At 25.0 s after launch, the second stage fires for 10.0 s, which boosts the rocket's velocity to 132.5 m/s upward at 35.0 s after launch. This firing uses up all of the fuel, however, so after the second stage has finished firing, the only force acting on the rocket is gravity. Ignore air resistance. (a) Find the maximum height that the stage-two rocket reaches above the launch pad. (b) How much time after the end of the stage-two firing will it take for the rocket to fall back to the launch pad? (c) How fast will the stage-two rocket be moving just as it reaches the launch pad?

**2.77 •• ** Two stones are thrown vertically upward from the ground, one with three times the initial speed of the other. (a) If the faster stone takes 10 s to return to the ground, how long will it take the slower stone to return? (b) If the slower stone reaches a maximum height of H, how high (in terms of H) will the faster stone go? Assume free fall.

2.78 ••• During your summer internship for an aerospace company, you are asked to design a small research rocket. The rocket is to be launched from rest from the earth's surface and is to reach a maximum height of 960 m above the earth's surface. The rocket's engines give the rocket an upward acceleration of 16.0 m/s^2 during the time T that they fire. After the engines shut off, the rocket is in free fall. Ignore air resistance. What must be the value of T in order for the rocket to reach the required altitude?

2.79 ••• A helicopter carrying Dr. Evil takes off with a constant upward acceleration of 5.0 m/s^2. Secret agent Austin Powers jumps on just as the helicopter lifts off the ground. After the two men struggle for 10.0 s, Powers shuts off the engine and steps out of the helicopter. Assume that the helicopter is in free fall after its engine is shut off, and ignore the effects of air resistance. (a) What is the maximum height above ground reached by the helicopter? (b) Powers deploys a jet pack strapped on his back 7.0 s after leaving the helicopter, and then he has a constant downward acceleration with magnitude 2.0 m/s^2. How far is Powers above the ground when the helicopter crashes into the ground?

2.80 •• **Cliff Height.** You are climbing in the Altai when you suddenly find yourself at the edge of a fog-shrouded cliff. To find the height of this cliff, you drop a rock from the top; 8.00 s later you hear the sound of the rock hitting the ground at the foot of the cliff. (a) If you ignore air resistance, how high is the cliff if the speed of sound is 330 m/s? (b) Suppose you had ignored the time it takes the sound to reach you. In that case, would you have overestimated or underestimated the height of the cliff? Explain.

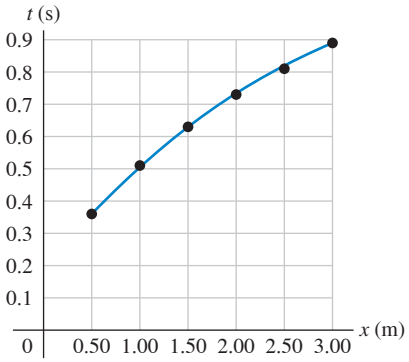
2.81 •• CALC An object is moving along the x-axis. At $t = 0$ it has velocity $v_{0x} = 20.0$ m/s. Starting at time $t = 0$ it has acceleration $a_x = -Ct$, where C has units of m/s^3. (a) What is the value of C if the object stops in 8.00 s after $t = 0$? (b) For the value of C calculated in part (a), how far does the object travel during the 8.00 s?

2.82 •• A ball is thrown straight up from the ground with speed v_0. At the same instant, a second ball is dropped from rest from a height H, directly above the point where the first ball was thrown upward. There is no air resistance. (a) Find the time at which the two balls collide. (b) Find the value of H in terms of v_0 and g such that at the instant when the balls collide, the first ball is at the highest point of its motion.

2.83 • CALC Cars A and B travel in a straight line. The distance of A from the starting point is given as a function of time by $x_A(t) = \alpha t + \beta t^2$, with $\alpha = 2.60$ m/s and $\beta = 1.20$ m/s^2. The distance of B from the starting point is $x_B(t) = \gamma t^2 - \delta t^3$, with $\gamma = 2.80$ m/s^2 and $\delta = 0.20$ m/s^3. (a) Which car is ahead just after the two cars leave the starting point? (b) At what time(s) are the cars at the same point? (c) At what time(s) is the distance from A to B neither increasing nor decreasing? (d) At what time(s) do A and B have the same acceleration?

2.84 •• DATA In your physics lab you release a small glider from rest at various points on a long, frictionless air track that is inclined at an angle θ above the horizontal. With an electronic photocell, you measure the time t it takes the glider to slide a distance x from the release point to the bottom of the track. Your measurements are given in **Fig. P2.84**, which shows a second-order polynomial (quadratic) fit to the plotted data. You are asked to find the glider's acceleration, which is assumed to be constant. There is some error in each measurement, so instead of using a single set of x and t values, you can be more accurate if you use graphical methods and obtain your measured value of the acceleration from the graph. (a) How can you re-graph the data so that the data points fall close to a straight line? (*Hint:* You might want to plot x or t, or both, raised to some power.) (b) Construct the graph you described in part (a) and find the equation for the straight line that is the best fit to the data points. (c) Use the straight-line fit from part (b) to calculate the acceleration of the glider. (d) The glider is released at a distance $x = 1.35$ m from the bottom of the track. Use the acceleration value you obtained in part (c) to calculate the speed of the glider when it reaches the bottom of the track.

Figure **P2.84**



2.85 •• DATA In a physics lab experiment, you release a small steel ball at various heights above the ground and measure the ball's speed just before it strikes the ground. You plot your data on a graph that has the release height (in meters) on the vertical axis and the square of the final speed (in m^2/s^2) on the horizontal axis. In this graph your data points lie close to a straight line. (a) Using $g = 9.80$ m/s^2 and ignoring the effect of air resistance, what is the numerical value of the slope of this straight line? (Include the correct units.) The presence of air resistance reduces the magnitude of the downward acceleration, and the effect of air resistance increases as the speed of the object increases. You repeat the experiment, but this time with a tennis ball as the object being dropped. Air resistance now has a noticeable effect on the data. (b) Is the final speed for a given release height higher than, lower than, or the same as when you ignored air resistance? (c) Is the graph of the release height versus the square of the final speed still a straight line? Sketch the qualitative shape of the graph when air resistance is present.

2.86 ••• DATA A model car starts from rest and travels in a straight line. A smartphone mounted on the car has an app that transmits the magnitude of the car's acceleration (measured by an accelerometer) every second. The results are given in the table:

Time (s)	Acceleration (m/s^2)
0	5.95
1.00	5.52
2.00	5.08
3.00	4.55
4.00	3.96
5.00	3.40

Each measured value has some experimental error. (a) Plot acceleration versus time and find the equation for the straight line that gives the best fit to the data. (b) Use the equation for $a(t)$ that you found in part (a) to calculate $v(t)$, the speed of the car as a function of time. Sketch the graph of v versus t. Is this graph a straight line? (c) Use your result from part (b) to calculate the speed of the car at $t = 5.00$ s. (d) Calculate the distance the car travels between $t = 0$ and $t = 5.00$ s.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

2.87 ••• In the vertical jump, an athlete starts from a crouch and jumps upward as high as possible. Even the best athletes spend little more than 1.00 s in the air (their "hang time"). Treat the athlete as a particle and let y_{max} be his maximum height above the floor. To explain why he seems to hang in the air, calculate the ratio of the time he is above $y_{max}/2$ to the time it takes him to go from the floor to that height. Ignore air resistance.

2.88 ••• **Catching the Bus.** A student is running at her top speed of 5.0 m/s to catch a bus, which is stopped at the bus stop. When the student is still 40.0 m from the bus, it starts to pull away, moving with a constant acceleration of 0.170 m/s^2. (a) For how much time and what distance does the student have to run at 5.0 m/s before she overtakes the bus? (b) When she reaches the bus, how fast is the bus traveling? (c) Sketch an x-t graph for both the student and the bus. Take $x = 0$ at the initial position of the student. (d) The equations you used in part (a) to find the time have a second solution, corresponding to a later time for which the student and bus are again at the same place if they continue their specified motions. Explain the significance of this second solution. How fast is the bus traveling at this point? (e) If the student's top speed is 3.5 m/s, will she catch the bus? (f) What is the *minimum* speed the student must have to just catch up with the bus? For what time and what distance does she have to run in that case?

2.89 ••• A ball is thrown straight up from the edge of the roof of a building. A second ball is dropped from the roof 1.00 s later. Ignore air resistance. (a) If the height of the building is 20.0 m, what must the initial speed of the first ball be if both are to hit the ground at the same time? On the same graph, sketch the positions of both balls as a function of time, measured from when the first ball is thrown. Consider the same situation, but now let the initial speed v_0 of the first ball be given and treat the height h of the building as an unknown. (b) What must the height of the building be for both balls to reach the ground at the same time if (i) v_0 is 6.0 m/s and (ii) v_0 is 9.5 m/s? (c) If v_0 is greater than some value v_{max}, no value of h exists that allows both balls to hit the ground at the same time. Solve for v_{max}. The value v_{max} has a simple physical interpretation. What is it? (d) If v_0 is less than some value v_{min}, no value of h exists that allows both balls to hit the ground at the same time. Solve for v_{min}. The value v_{min} also has a simple physical interpretation. What is it?

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

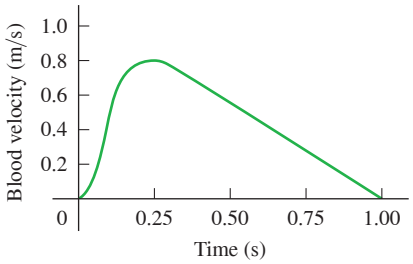
BIO Blood Flow in the Heart. The human circulatory system is closed—that is, the blood pumped out of the left ventricle of the heart into the arteries is constrained to a series of continuous, branching vessels as it passes through the capillaries and then into the veins as it returns to the heart. The blood in each of the heart's four chambers comes briefly to rest before it is ejected by contraction of the heart muscle.

2.90 If the contraction of the left ventricle lasts 250 ms and the speed of blood flow in the aorta (the large artery leaving the heart) is 0.80 m/s at the end of the contraction, what is the average acceleration of a red blood cell as it leaves the heart? (a) 310 m/s^2; (b) 31 m/s^2; (c) 3.2 m/s^2; (d) 0.32 m/s^2.

2.91 If the aorta (diameter d_a) branches into two equal-sized arteries with a combined area equal to that of the aorta, what is the diameter of one of the branches? (a) $\sqrt{d_a}$; (b) $d_a/\sqrt{2}$; (c) $2d_a$; (d) $d_a/2$.

2.92 The velocity of blood in the aorta can be measured directly with ultrasound techniques. A typical graph of blood velocity versus time during a single heartbeat is shown in **Fig. P2.92**. Which statement is the best interpretation of this graph? (a) The blood flow changes direction at about 0.25 s; (b) the speed of the blood flow begins to decrease at about 0.10 s; (c) the acceleration of the blood is greatest in magnitude at about 0.25 s; (d) the acceleration of the blood is greatest in magnitude at about 0.10 s.

Figure **P2.92**



ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iii) Acceleration refers to *any* change in velocity, including both speeding up and slowing down.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP2.5.1 (a) 4.5 s (b) 81 m
VP2.5.2 (a) 4.80 m/s^2 (b) 375 m
VP2.5.3 (a) 11.1 s (b) 222 m (c) 10.0 m/s
VP2.5.4 (a) $t = 2v_C/(a_T + a_C)$ (b) $x = 2a_T v_C^2/(a_T + a_C)^2$
VP2.7.1 (a) $y = 3.16$ m, $v_y = 9.06$ m/s, above your hand and moving upward (b) $y = -1.92$ m, $v_y = -13.5$ m/s, below your hand and moving downward
VP2.7.2 (a) $y = -23.0$ m, $v_y = -22.7$ m/s (b) $v_y = -14.9$ m/s
VP2.7.3 (a) 8.87 m/s (b) 0.854 s
VP2.7.4 (a) $\sqrt{2gH}$ (b) $\sqrt{gH} = 1/\sqrt{2} = 0.707$ times the speed at which it left your hand (c) $3H/4$
VP2.8.1 (a) 0.398 s and 2.05 s (b) 2.75 s
VP2.8.2 0.447 s
VP2.8.3 (a) two; $t = 0.338$ s (moving upward) and $t = 0.784$ s (moving downward) (b) none
VP2.8.4 (a) $t = v_0/g$ (neither upward nor downward) (b) $t = v_0/2g$ (upward), $t = 3v_0/2g$ (downward)

Bridging Problem

$h = 57.1$ m

? If a cyclist is going around a curve at constant speed, is he accelerating? If so, what is the direction of his acceleration? (i) No; (ii) yes, in the direction of his motion; (iii) yes, toward the inside of the curve; (iv) yes, toward the outside of the curve; (v) yes, but in some other direction.

3 Motion in Two or Three Dimensions

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **3.1** How to use vectors to represent the position and velocity of a particle in two or three dimensions.
- **3.2** How to find the vector acceleration of a particle, why a particle can have an acceleration even if its speed is constant, and how to interpret the components of acceleration parallel and perpendicular to a particle's path.
- **3.3** How to solve problems that involve the curved path followed by a projectile.
- **3.4** How to analyze motion in a circular path, with either constant speed or varying speed.
- **3.5** How to relate the velocities of a moving object as seen from two different frames of reference.

You'll need to review...

- **2.1** Average x-velocity.
- **2.2** Instantaneous x-velocity.
- **2.3** Average and instantaneous x-acceleration.
- **2.4** Straight-line motion with constant acceleration.
- **2.5** The motion of freely falling objects.

What determines where a batted baseball lands? How do you describe the motion of a roller coaster car along a curved track or the flight of a circling hawk? Which hits the ground first: a cricket ball that you simply drop or one that you throw horizontally?

We can't answer these kinds of questions by using the techniques of Chapter 2, in which particles moved only along a straight line. Instead, we need to extend our descriptions of motion to two- and three-dimensional situations. We'll still use the vector quantities displacement, velocity, and acceleration, but now these quantities will no longer lie along a single line. We'll find that several important kinds of motion take place in two dimensions only—that is, in a *plane*.

We also need to consider how the motion of a particle is described by different observers who are moving relative to each other. The concept of *relative velocity* will play an important role later in the book when we explore electromagnetic phenomena and when we introduce Einstein's special theory of relativity.

This chapter merges the vector mathematics of Chapter 1 with the kinematic language of Chapter 2. As before, we're concerned with describing motion, not with analyzing its causes. But the language you learn here will be an essential tool in later chapters when we study the relationship between force and motion.

3.1 POSITION AND VELOCITY VECTORS

Let's see how to describe a particle's motion in space. If the particle is at a point P at a certain instant, the **position vector** $\vec{r}$ of the particle at this instant is a vector that goes from the origin of the coordinate system to point P (**Fig. 3.1**). The Cartesian coordinates x, y, and z of point P are the x-, y-, and z-components of vector $\vec{r}$. Using the unit vectors we introduced in Section 1.9, we can write

Position vector of a particle at a given instant

$$\vec{r} = x\hat{\imath} + y\hat{\jmath} + z\hat{k} \qquad (3.1)$$

Coordinates of particle's position

Unit vectors in x-, y-, and z-directions

During a time interval Δt the particle moves from P_1, where its position vector is $\vec{r}_1$, to P_2, where its position vector is $\vec{r}_2$. The change in position (the displacement) during this interval is $\Delta\vec{r} = \vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_1 = (x_2 - x_1)\hat{\imath} + (y_2 - y_1)\hat{\jmath} + (z_2 - z_1)\hat{k}$. We define the **average velocity** $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ during this interval in the same way we did in Chapter 2 for straight-line motion, as the displacement divided by the time interval (**Fig. 3.2**):

Change in the particle's position vector

Average velocity vector of a particle during time interval from t_1 to t_2

$$\vec{v}_{\text{av}} = \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} = \frac{\vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_1}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{3.2}$$

Final position minus initial position

Time interval

Final time minus initial time

Dividing a vector by a scalar is a special case of *multiplying* a vector by a scalar, described in Section 1.7; the average velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ is equal to the displacement vector $\Delta\vec{r}$ multiplied by $1/\Delta t$. Note that the x-component of Eq. (3.2) is $v_{\text{av-}x} = (x_2 - x_1)/(t_2 - t_1) = \Delta x/\Delta t$. This is just Eq. (2.2), the expression for average x-velocity that we found in Section 2.1 for one-dimensional motion.

We now define **instantaneous velocity** just as we did in Chapter 2: It equals the instantaneous rate of change of position with time. The key difference is that both position $\vec{r}$ and instantaneous velocity $\vec{v}$ are now vectors:

The **instantaneous velocity vector** of a particle ...

$$\vec{v} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} \tag{3.3}$$

... equals the limit of its average velocity vector as the time interval approaches zero ...

... and equals the instantaneous rate of change of its position vector.

At any instant, the *magnitude* of $\vec{v}$ is the *speed* v of the particle at that instant, and the *direction* of $\vec{v}$ is the direction in which the particle is moving at that instant.

As $\Delta t \to 0$, points P_1 and P_2 in Fig. 3.2 move closer and closer together. In this limit, the vector $\Delta\vec{r}$ becomes tangent to the path. The direction of $\Delta\vec{r}$ in this limit is also the direction of $\vec{v}$. So *at every point along the path, the instantaneous velocity vector is tangent to the path at that point* (**Fig. 3.3**).

It's often easiest to calculate the instantaneous velocity vector by using components. During any displacement $\Delta\vec{r}$, the changes Δx, Δy, and Δz in the three coordinates of the particle are the *components* of $\Delta\vec{r}$. It follows that the components v_x, v_y, and v_z of the instantaneous velocity $\vec{v} = v_x\hat{\imath} + v_y\hat{\jmath} + v_z\hat{k}$ are simply the time derivatives of the coordinates x, y, and z:

Each **component of** a particle's **instantaneous velocity vector** ...

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} \qquad v_y = \frac{dy}{dt} \qquad v_z = \frac{dz}{dt} \tag{3.4}$$

... equals the instantaneous rate of change of its corresponding coordinate.

The x-component of $\vec{v}$ is $v_x = dx/dt$, which is the same as Eq. (2.3) for straight-line motion (see Section 2.2). Hence Eq. (3.4) is a direct extension of instantaneous velocity to motion in three dimensions.

We can also get Eq. (3.4) by taking the derivative of Eq. (3.1). The unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$, $\hat{\jmath}$, and $\hat{k}$ don't depend on time, so their derivatives are zero and we find

$$\vec{v} = \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt}\hat{\imath} + \frac{dy}{dt}\hat{\jmath} + \frac{dz}{dt}\hat{k} \tag{3.5}$$

This shows again that the components of $\vec{v}$ are dx/dt, dy/dt, and dz/dt.

The magnitude of the instantaneous velocity vector $\vec{v}$—that is, the speed—is given in terms of the components v_x, v_y, and v_z by the Pythagorean relationship:

$$|\vec{v}| = v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2 + v_z^2} \tag{3.6}$$

Figure **3.1** The position vector $\vec{r}$ from origin O to point P has components x, y, and z.

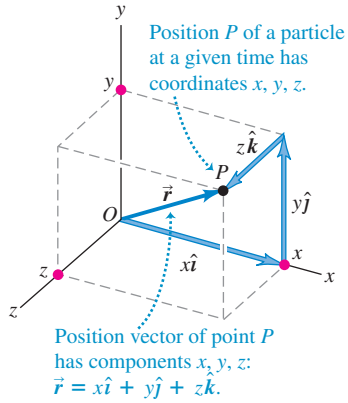


Figure **3.2** The average velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ between points P_1 and P_2 has the same direction as the displacement $\Delta\vec{r}$.

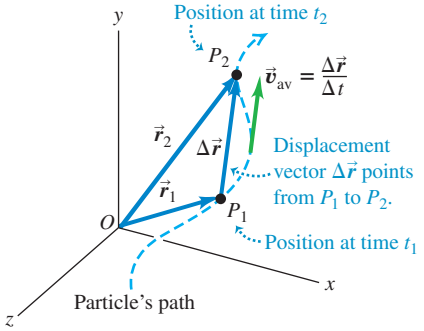


Figure **3.3** The vectors $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$ are the instantaneous velocities at the points P_1 and P_2 shown in Fig. 3.2.

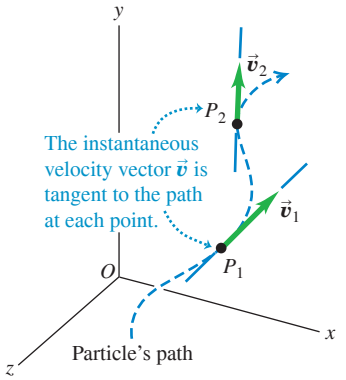


Figure 3.4 The two velocity components for motion in the xy-plane.

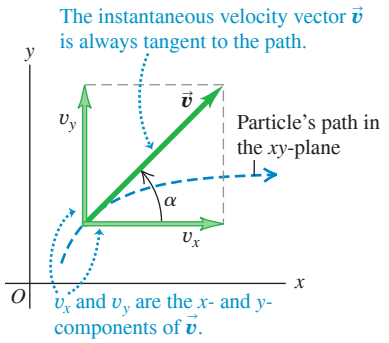


Figure 3.4 shows the situation when the particle moves in the xy-plane. In this case, z and v_z are zero. Then the speed (the magnitude of $\vec{v}$) is

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2}$$

and the direction of the instantaneous velocity $\vec{v}$ is given by angle α (the Greek letter alpha) in the figure. We see that

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{v_y}{v_x} \tag{3.7}$$

(We use α for the direction of the instantaneous velocity vector to avoid confusion with the direction θ of the *position* vector of the particle.)

From now on, when we use the word "velocity," we'll always mean the *instantaneous* velocity vector $\vec{v}$ (rather than the average velocity vector). Usually, we won't even bother to call $\vec{v}$ a vector; it's up to you to remember that velocity is a vector quantity with both magnitude and direction.

EXAMPLE 3.1 Calculating average and instantaneous velocity

A robotic vehicle, or rover, is exploring the surface of Mars. The stationary Mars lander is the origin of coordinates, and the surrounding Martian surface lies in the xy-plane. The rover, which we represent as a point, has x- and y-coordinates that vary with time:

$$x = 2.0\text{ m} - (0.25\text{ m/s}^2)t^2$$
$$y = (1.0\text{ m/s})t + (0.025\text{ m/s}^3)t^3$$

(a) Find the rover's coordinates and distance from the lander at $t = 2.0$ s. (b) Find the rover's displacement and average velocity vectors for the interval $t = 0.0$ s to $t = 2.0$ s. (c) Find a general expression for the rover's instantaneous velocity vector $\vec{v}$. Express $\vec{v}$ at $t = 2.0$ s in component form and in terms of magnitude and direction.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem involves motion in two dimensions, so we must use the vector equations obtained in this section. **Figure 3.5** shows the rover's path (dashed line). We'll use Eq. (3.1) for position $\vec{r}$, the expression $\Delta\vec{r} = \vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_1$ for displacement, Eq. (3.2) for average velocity, and Eqs. (3.5), (3.6), and (3.7) for instantaneous velocity and its magnitude and direction.

EXECUTE (a) At $t = 2.0$ s the rover's coordinates are

$$x = 2.0\text{ m} - (0.25\text{ m/s}^2)(2.0\text{ s})^2 = 1.0\text{ m}$$
$$y = (1.0\text{ m/s})(2.0\text{ s}) + (0.025\text{ m/s}^3)(2.0\text{ s})^3 = 2.2\text{ m}$$

The rover's distance from the origin at this time is

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \sqrt{(1.0\text{ m})^2 + (2.2\text{ m})^2} = 2.4\text{ m}$$

(b) To find the displacement and average velocity over the given time interval, we first express the position vector $\vec{r}$ as a function of time t. From Eq. (3.1) this is

$$\vec{r} = x\hat{\imath} + y\hat{\jmath}$$
$$= [2.0\text{ m} - (0.25\text{ m/s}^2)t^2]\hat{\imath} + [(1.0\text{ m/s})t + (0.025\text{ m/s}^3)t^3]\hat{\jmath}$$

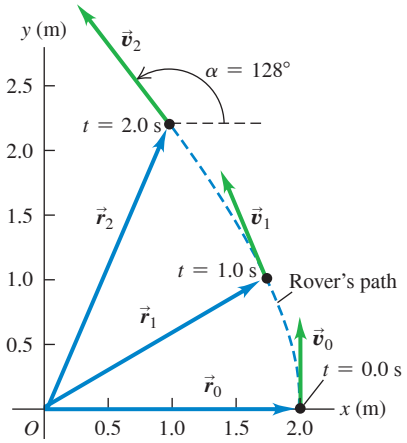
At $t = 0.0$ s the position vector $\vec{r}_0$ is

$$\vec{r}_0 = (2.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (0.0\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$$

From part (a), the position vector $\vec{r}_2$ at $t = 2.0$ s is

$$\vec{r}_2 = (1.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (2.2\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$$

Figure 3.5 At $t = 0.0$ s the rover has position vector $\vec{r}_0$ and instantaneous velocity vector $\vec{v}_0$. Likewise, $\vec{r}_1$ and $\vec{v}_1$ are the vectors at $t = 1.0$ s; $\vec{r}_2$ and $\vec{v}_2$ are the vectors at $t = 2.0$ s.



The displacement from $t = 0.0$ s to $t = 2.0$ s is therefore

$$\Delta\vec{r} = \vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_0 = (1.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (2.2\text{ m})\hat{\jmath} - (2.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath}$$
$$= (-1.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (2.2\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$$

During this interval the rover moves 1.0 m in the negative x-direction and 2.2 m in the positive y-direction. From Eq. (3.2), the average velocity over this interval is the displacement divided by the elapsed time:

$$\vec{v}_{\text{av}} = \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} = \frac{(-1.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (2.2\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}}{2.0\text{ s} - 0.0\text{ s}}$$
$$= (-0.50\text{ m/s})\hat{\imath} + (1.1\text{ m/s})\hat{\jmath}$$

The components of this average velocity are $v_{\text{av-}x} = -0.50$ m/s and $v_{\text{av-}y} = 1.1$ m/s.

(c) From Eq. (3.4) the components of *instantaneous* velocity are the time derivatives of the coordinates:

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} = (-0.25\text{ m/s}^2)(2t)$$
$$v_y = \frac{dy}{dt} = 1.0\text{ m/s} + (0.025\text{ m/s}^3)(3t^2)$$

Hence the instantaneous velocity vector is

$$\vec{v} = v_x\hat{\imath} + v_y\hat{\jmath}$$
$$= (-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2)t\hat{\imath} + [1.0\ \text{m/s} + (0.075\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2]\,\hat{\jmath}$$

At $t = 2.0$ s the velocity vector $\vec{v}_2$ has components

$$v_{2x} = (-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2)(2.0\ \text{s}) = -1.0\ \text{m/s}$$
$$v_{2y} = 1.0\ \text{m/s} + (0.075\ \text{m/s}^3)(2.0\ \text{s})^2 = 1.3\ \text{m/s}$$

The magnitude of the instantaneous velocity (that is, the speed) at $t = 2.0$ s is

$$v_2 = \sqrt{{v_{2x}}^2 + {v_{2y}}^2} = \sqrt{(-1.0\ \text{m/s})^2 + (1.3\ \text{m/s})^2} = 1.6\ \text{m/s}$$

Figure 3.5 shows the direction of velocity vector $\vec{v}_2$, which is at an angle α between 90° and 180° with respect to the positive x-axis. From Eq. (3.7) we have

$$\arctan\frac{v_y}{v_x} = \arctan\frac{1.3\ \text{m/s}}{-1.0\ \text{m/s}} = -52°$$

This is off by 180°; the correct value is $\alpha = 180° - 52° = 128°$, or 38° west of north.

EVALUATE Compare the components of *average* velocity from part (b) for the interval from $t = 0.0$ s to $t = 2.0$ s ($v_{\text{av-}x} = -0.50$ m/s, $v_{\text{av-}y} = 1.1$ m/s) with the components of *instantaneous* velocity at $t = 2.0$ s from part (c) ($v_{2x} = -1.0$ m/s, $v_{2y} = 1.3$ m/s). Just as in one dimension, the average velocity vector $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ over an interval is in general *not* equal to the instantaneous velocity $\vec{v}$ at the end of the interval (see Example 2.1).

Figure 3.5 shows the position vectors $\vec{r}$ and instantaneous velocity vectors $\vec{v}$ at $t = 0.0$ s, 1.0 s, and 2.0 s. (Calculate these quantities for $t = 0.0$ s and $t = 1.0$ s.) Notice that $\vec{v}$ is tangent to the path at every point. The magnitude of $\vec{v}$ increases as the rover moves, which means that its speed is increasing.

KEYCONCEPT To calculate the average velocity vector of an object, first find its displacement vector during a time interval. Then divide by the time interval. To calculate the object's instantaneous velocity vector (its average velocity vector over an infinitesimally short time interval), take the derivative of its position vector with respect to time.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 3.1 In which of these situations *would* the average velocity vector $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ over an interval be equal to the instantaneous velocity $\vec{v}$ at the end of the interval? (i) An object moving along a curved path at constant speed; (ii) an object moving along a curved path and speeding up; (iii) an object moving along a straight line at constant speed; (iv) an object moving along a straight line and speeding up.

ANSWER

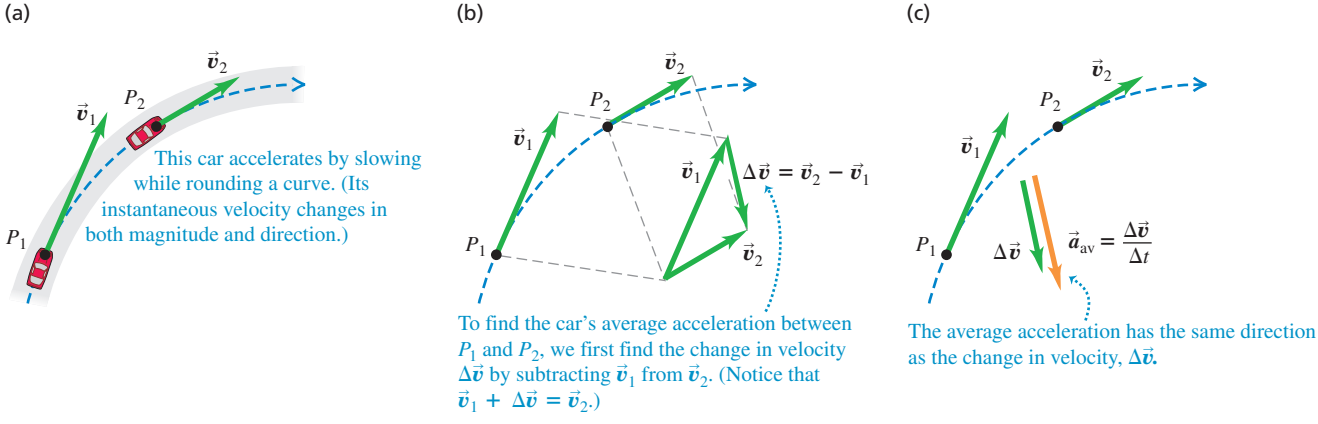
(iii) If the instantaneous velocity $\vec{v}$ is constant over an interval, its value at any point (including the end of the interval) is the same as the average velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ over the interval. In (i) and (ii) the direction of $\vec{v}$ at the end of the interval is tangent to the path at that point, while the direction of $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ points from the beginning of the path to its end (in the direction of the net displacement). In (iv) both $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{v}_{\text{av}}$ are directed along the straight line, but $\vec{v}$ has a greater magnitude because the speed has been increasing.

3.2 THE ACCELERATION VECTOR

Now let's consider the *acceleration* of a particle moving in space. Just as for motion in a straight line, acceleration describes how the velocity of the particle changes. But since we now treat velocity as a vector, acceleration will describe changes in the velocity magnitude (that is, the speed) *and* changes in the direction of velocity (that is, the direction in which the particle is moving).

In **Fig. 3.6a**, a car (treated as a particle) is moving along a curved road. Vectors $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$ represent the car's instantaneous velocities at time t_1, when the car is at point

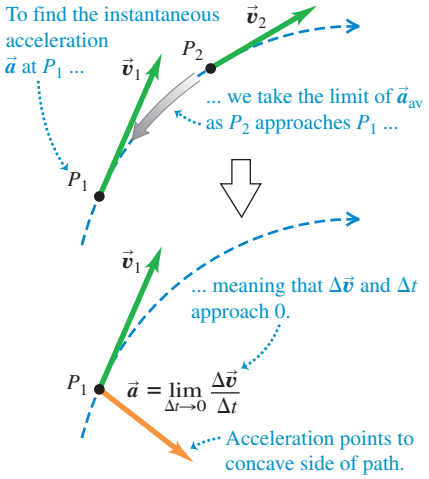
Figure 3.6 (a) A car moving along a curved road from P_1 to P_2. (b) How to obtain the change in velocity $\Delta\vec{v} = \vec{v}_2 - \vec{v}_1$ by vector subtraction. (c) The vector $\vec{a}_{\text{av}} = \Delta\vec{v}/\Delta t$ represents the average acceleration between P_1 and P_2.



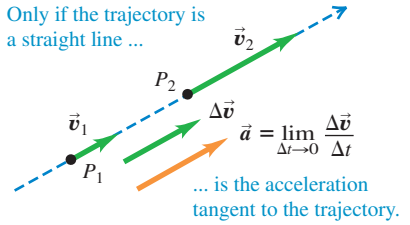
P_1, and at time t_2, when the car is at point P_2. During the time interval from t_1 to t_2, the *vector change in velocity* is $\vec{v}_2 - \vec{v}_1 = \Delta\vec{v}$, so $\vec{v}_2 = \vec{v}_1 + \Delta\vec{v}$ (Fig. 3.6b). The **average acceleration** $\vec{a}_{av}$ of the car during this time interval is the velocity change divided by the time interval $t_2 - t_1 = \Delta t$:

Figure **3.7** (a) Instantaneous acceleration $\vec{a}$ at point P_1 in Fig. 3.6. (b) Instantaneous acceleration for motion along a straight line.

(a) Acceleration: curved trajectory



(b) Acceleration: straight-line trajectory



Change in the particle's velocity

Average acceleration vector of a particle during time interval from t_1 to t_2

$$\vec{a}_{av} = \frac{\Delta\vec{v}}{\Delta t} = \frac{\vec{v}_2 - \vec{v}_1}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{3.8}$$

Final velocity minus initial velocity

Time interval

Final time minus initial time

Average acceleration is a *vector* quantity in the same direction as $\Delta\vec{v}$ (Fig. 3.6c). The x-component of Eq. (3.8) is $a_{av\text{-}x} = (v_{2x} - v_{1x})/(t_2 - t_1) = \Delta v_x/\Delta t$, which is just Eq. (2.4) for average acceleration in straight-line motion.

As in Chapter 2, we define the **instantaneous acceleration** $\vec{a}$ (a *vector* quantity) at point P_1 as the limit of the average acceleration vector when point P_2 approaches point P_1, so both $\Delta\vec{v}$ and Δt approach zero (**Fig. 3.7**):

The **instantaneous acceleration vector** of a particle ...

$$\vec{a} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\vec{v}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt} \tag{3.9}$$

... equals the limit of its average acceleration vector as the time interval approaches zero ...

... and equals the instantaneous rate of change of its velocity vector.

The velocity vector $\vec{v}$ is always tangent to the particle's path, but the instantaneous acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ does *not* have to be tangent to the path. If the path is curved, $\vec{a}$ points toward the concave side of the path—that is, toward the inside of any turn that the particle is making (Fig. 3.7a). The acceleration is tangent to the path only if the particle moves in a straight line (Fig. 3.7b).

CAUTION **Any particle following a curved path is accelerating** When a particle is moving in a curved path, it always has nonzero acceleration, even when it moves with constant speed. This conclusion is contrary to the everyday use of the word "acceleration" to mean that speed is increasing. The more precise definition given in Eq. (3.9) shows that there is a nonzero acceleration whenever the velocity vector changes in *any* way, whether there is a change of speed, direction, or both.

To convince yourself that a particle is accelerating as it moves on a curved path with constant speed, think of your sensations when you ride in a car. When the car accelerates, you tend to move inside the car in a direction *opposite* to the car's acceleration. (In Chapter 4 we'll learn why this is so.) Thus you tend to slide toward the back of the car when it accelerates forward (speeds up) and toward the front of the car when it accelerates backward (slows down). If the car makes a turn on a level road, you tend to slide toward the outside of the turn; hence the car is accelerating toward the inside of the turn.

We'll usually be interested in instantaneous acceleration, not average acceleration. From now on, we'll use the term "acceleration" to mean the instantaneous acceleration vector $\vec{a}$.

Each component of the acceleration vector $\vec{a} = a_x\hat{\imath} + a_y\hat{\jmath} + a_z\hat{k}$ is the derivative of the corresponding component of velocity:

Each **component of** a particle's **instantaneous acceleration vector** ...

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} \qquad a_y = \frac{dv_y}{dt} \qquad a_z = \frac{dv_z}{dt} \tag{3.10}$$

... equals the instantaneous rate of change of its corresponding velocity component.

BIO APPLICATION Horses on a Curved Path By leaning to the side and hitting the ground with their hooves at an angle, these horses give themselves the sideways acceleration necessary to make a sharp change in direction.

In terms of unit vectors,

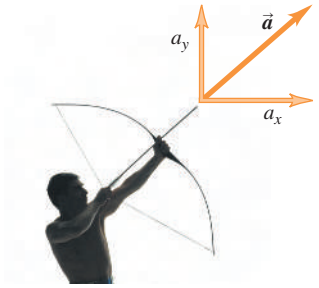
$$\vec{a} = \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt} = \frac{dv_x}{dt}\hat{\imath} + \frac{dv_y}{dt}\hat{\jmath} + \frac{dv_z}{dt}\hat{k} \tag{3.11}$$

The x-component of Eqs. (3.10) and (3.11), $a_x = dv_x/dt$, is just Eq. (2.5) for instantaneous acceleration in one dimension. **Figure 3.8** shows an example of an acceleration vector that has both x- and y-components.

Since each component of velocity is the derivative of the corresponding coordinate, we can express the components a_x, a_y, and a_z of the acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ as

$$a_x = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \qquad a_y = \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} \qquad a_z = \frac{d^2z}{dt^2} \tag{3.12}$$

Figure 3.8 When the fingers release the arrow, its acceleration vector has a horizontal component (a_x) and a vertical component (a_y).



EXAMPLE 3.2 Calculating average and instantaneous acceleration

Let's return to the motions of the Mars rover in Example 3.1. (a) Find the components of the average acceleration for the interval $t = 0.0$ s to $t = 2.0$ s. (b) Find the instantaneous acceleration at $t = 2.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP In Example 3.1 we found the components of the rover's instantaneous velocity at any time t:

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} = (-0.25\ \text{m/s}^2)(2t) = (-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2)t$$

$$v_y = \frac{dy}{dt} = 1.0\ \text{m/s} + (0.025\ \text{m/s}^3)(3t^2) = 1.0\ \text{m/s} + (0.075\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2$$

We'll use the vector relationships among velocity, average acceleration, and instantaneous acceleration. In part (a) we determine the values of v_x and v_y at the beginning and end of the interval and then use Eq. (3.8) to calculate the components of the average acceleration. In part (b) we obtain expressions for the instantaneous acceleration components at any time t by taking the time derivatives of the velocity components as in Eqs. (3.10).

EXECUTE (a) In Example 3.1 we found that at $t = 0.0$ s the velocity components are

$$v_x = 0.0\ \text{m/s} \qquad v_y = 1.0\ \text{m/s}$$

and that at $t = 2.0$ s the components are

$$v_x = -1.0\ \text{m/s} \qquad v_y = 1.3\ \text{m/s}$$

Thus the components of average acceleration in the interval $t = 0.0$ s to $t = 2.0$ s are

$$a_{\text{av-}x} = \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{-1.0\ \text{m/s} - 0.0\ \text{m/s}}{2.0\ \text{s} - 0.0\ \text{s}} = -0.50\ \text{m/s}^2$$

$$a_{\text{av-}y} = \frac{\Delta v_y}{\Delta t} = \frac{1.3\ \text{m/s} - 1.0\ \text{m/s}}{2.0\ \text{s} - 0.0\ \text{s}} = 0.15\ \text{m/s}^2$$

(b) Using Eqs. (3.10), we find

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = -0.50\ \text{m/s}^2 \qquad a_y = \frac{dv_y}{dt} = (0.075\ \text{m/s}^3)(2t)$$

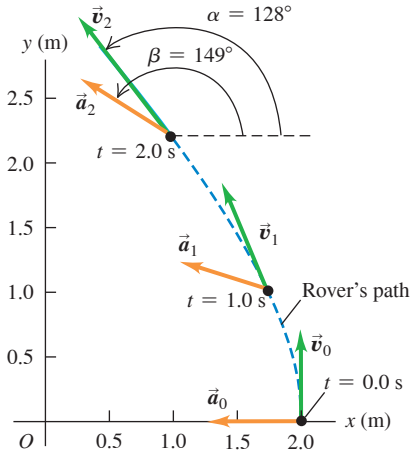
Hence the instantaneous acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ at time t is

$$\vec{a} = a_x\hat{\imath} + a_y\hat{\jmath} = (-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2)\hat{\imath} + (0.15\ \text{m/s}^3)t\hat{\jmath}$$

At $t = 2.0$ s the components of acceleration and the acceleration vector are

$$a_x = -0.50\ \text{m/s}^2 \qquad a_y = (0.15\ \text{m/s}^3)(2.0\ \text{s}) = 0.30\ \text{m/s}^2$$
$$\vec{a} = (-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2)\hat{\imath} + (0.30\ \text{m/s}^2)\hat{\jmath}$$

Figure 3.9 The path of the robotic rover, showing the velocity and acceleration at $t = 0.0$ s ($\vec{v}_0$ and $\vec{a}_0$), $t = 1.0$ s ($\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{a}_1$), and $t = 2.0$ s ($\vec{v}_2$ and $\vec{a}_2$).



The magnitude of acceleration at this time is

$$a = \sqrt{a_x^2 + a_y^2} = \sqrt{(-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2)^2 + (0.30\ \text{m/s}^2)^2} = 0.58\ \text{m/s}^2$$

A sketch of this vector (**Fig. 3.9**) shows that the direction angle β of $\vec{a}$ with respect to the positive x-axis is between 90° and 180°. From Eq. (3.7) we have

$$\arctan\frac{a_y}{a_x} = \arctan\frac{0.30\ \text{m/s}^2}{-0.50\ \text{m/s}^2} = -31°$$

Hence $\beta = 180° + (-31°) = 149°$.

EVALUATE Figure 3.9 shows the rover's path and the velocity and acceleration vectors at $t = 0.0$ s, 1.0 s, and 2.0 s. (Use the results of part (b) to calculate the instantaneous acceleration at $t = 0.0$ s and $t = 1.0$ s for yourself.) Note that $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{a}$ are *not* in the same direction at any of these times. The velocity vector $\vec{v}$ is tangent to the path at each point (as is always the case), and the acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ points toward the concave side of the path.

KEYCONCEPT To calculate the average acceleration vector of an object, first find the change in its velocity vector (final velocity minus initial velocity) during a time interval. Then divide by the time interval. To calculate the object's instantaneous acceleration vector (its average velocity vector over an infinitesimally short time interval), take the derivative of its velocity vector with respect to time.

Figure 3.10 The acceleration can be resolved into a component $a_\parallel$ parallel to the path (that is, along the tangent to the path) and a component $a_\perp$ perpendicular to the path (that is, along the normal to the path).

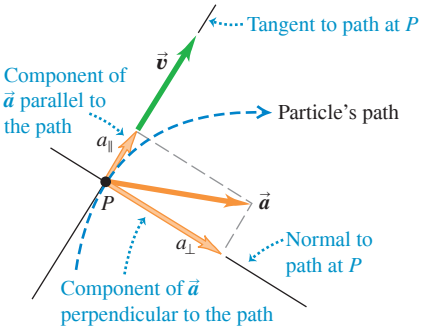
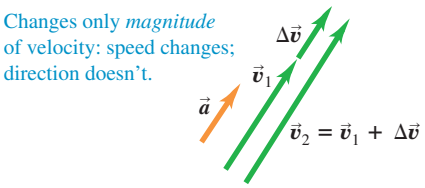
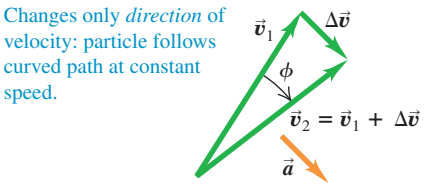


Figure 3.11 The effect of acceleration directed (a) parallel to and (b) perpendicular to a particle's velocity.

(a) Acceleration parallel to velocity



(b) Acceleration perpendicular to velocity



Parallel and Perpendicular Components of Acceleration

Equations (3.10) tell us about the components of a particle's instantaneous acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ along the x-, y-, and z-axes. Another useful way to think about $\vec{a}$ is in terms of one component *parallel* to the particle's path and to its velocity $\vec{v}$, and one component *perpendicular* to the path and to $\vec{v}$ (**Fig. 3.10**). That's because the parallel component $a_\parallel$ tells us about changes in the particle's *speed,* while the perpendicular component $a_\perp$ tells us about changes in the particle's *direction of motion*. To see why the parallel and perpendicular components of $\vec{a}$ have these properties, let's consider two special cases.

In **Fig. 3.11a** the acceleration vector is in the same direction as the velocity $\vec{v}_1$, so $\vec{a}$ has only a parallel component $a_\parallel$ (that is, $a_\perp = 0$). The velocity change $\Delta\vec{v}$ during a small time interval Δt is in the same direction as $\vec{a}$ and hence in the same direction as $\vec{v}_1$. The velocity $\vec{v}_2$ at the end of Δt is in the same direction as $\vec{v}_1$ but has greater magnitude. Hence during the time interval Δt the particle in Fig. 3.11a moved in a straight line with increasing speed (compare Fig. 3.7b).

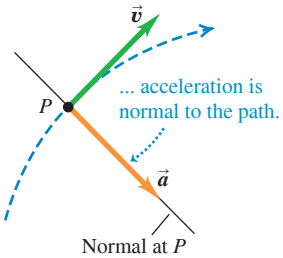
In Fig. 3.11b the acceleration is *perpendicular* to the velocity, so $\vec{a}$ has only a perpendicular component $a_\perp$ (that is, $a_\parallel = 0$). In a small time interval Δt, the velocity change $\Delta\vec{v}$ is very nearly perpendicular to $\vec{v}_1$, and so $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$ have different directions. As the time interval Δt approaches zero, the angle ϕ in the figure also approaches zero, $\Delta\vec{v}$ becomes perpendicular to *both* $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$, and $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_2$ have the same magnitude. In other words, the speed of the particle stays the same, but the direction of motion changes and the path of the particle curves.

In the most general case, the acceleration $\vec{a}$ has *both* components parallel and perpendicular to the velocity $\vec{v}$, as in Fig. 3.10. Then the particle's speed will change (described by the parallel component $a_\parallel$) *and* its direction of motion will change (described by the perpendicular component $a_\perp$).

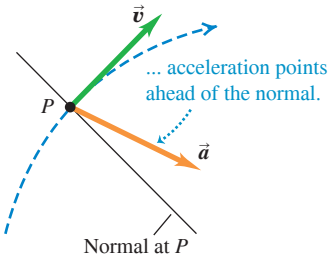
Figure 3.12 shows a particle moving along a curved path for three situations: constant speed, increasing speed, and decreasing speed. If the speed is constant, $\vec{a}$ is perpendicular, or *normal,* to the path and to $\vec{v}$ and points toward the concave side of the path (Fig. 3.12a). If the speed is increasing, there is still a perpendicular component of $\vec{a}$, but there is also a parallel component with the same direction as $\vec{v}$ (Fig. 3.12b). Then $\vec{a}$ points ahead of the normal to the path. (This was the case in Example 3.2.) If the speed is decreasing, the parallel component has the direction opposite to $\vec{v}$, and $\vec{a}$ points behind the normal to the path (Fig. 3.12c; compare Fig. 3.7a). We'll use these ideas again in Section 3.4 when we study the special case of motion in a circle.

Figure 3.12 Velocity and acceleration vectors for a particle moving through a point P on a curved path with (a) constant speed, (b) increasing speed, and (c) decreasing speed.

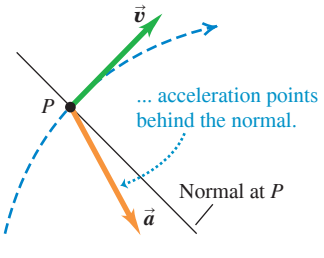
(a) When speed is constant along a curved path ...



(b) When speed is increasing along a curved path ...



(c) When speed is decreasing along a curved path ...



EXAMPLE 3.3 Calculating parallel and perpendicular components of acceleration

For the rover of Examples 3.1 and 3.2, find the parallel and perpendicular components of the acceleration at $t = 2.0$ s.

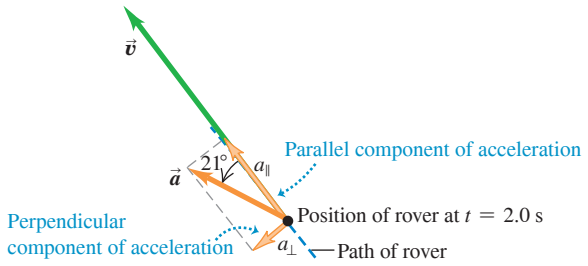
IDENTIFY and SET UP We want to find the components of the acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ that are parallel and perpendicular to velocity vector $\vec{v}$. We found the directions of $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{a}$ in Examples 3.1 and 3.2, respectively; Fig. 3.9 shows the results. From these directions we can find the angle between the two vectors and the components of $\vec{a}$ with respect to the direction of $\vec{v}$.

EXECUTE From Example 3.2, at $t = 2.0$ s the particle has an acceleration of magnitude 0.58 m/s^2 at an angle of 149° with respect to the positive x-axis. In Example 3.1 we found that at this time the velocity vector is at an angle of 128° with respect to the positive x-axis. The angle between $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{v}$ is therefore 149° − 128° = 21° (**Fig. 3.13**). Hence the components of acceleration parallel and perpendicular to $\vec{v}$ are

$$a_\parallel = a\cos 21° = (0.58\ \text{m/s}^2)\cos 21° = 0.54\ \text{m/s}^2$$
$$a_\perp = a\sin 21° = (0.58\ \text{m/s}^2)\sin 21° = 0.21\ \text{m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE The parallel component $a_\parallel$ is positive (in the same direction as $\vec{v}$), which means that the speed is increasing at this instant. The value $a_\parallel = +0.54$ m/s^2 tells us that the speed is increasing at this instant at a rate of 0.54 m/s per second. The perpendicular component $a_\perp$ is not zero, which means that at this instant the rover is turning—that is, it is changing direction and following a curved path.

Figure 3.13 The parallel and perpendicular components of the acceleration of the rover at $t = 2.0$ s.



KEYCONCEPT If an object's *speed* is changing, there is a component of its acceleration vector *parallel* to its velocity vector. If an object's *direction of motion* is changing—that is, it is turning—there is a component of its acceleration vector *perpendicular* to its velocity vector and toward the inside of the turn.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 3.4 Acceleration of a skier

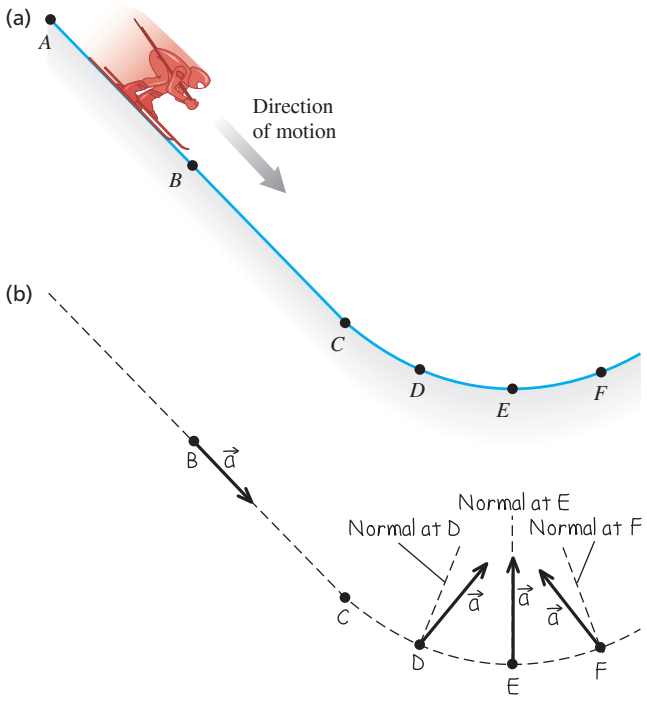
A skier moves along a ski-jump ramp (**Fig. 3.14a**). The ramp is straight from point A to point C and curved from point C onward. The skier speeds up as she moves downhill from point A to point E, where her speed is maximum. She slows down after passing point E. Draw the direction of the acceleration vector at each of the points B, D, E, and F.

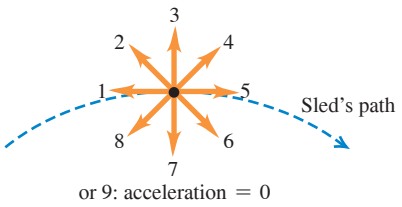
SOLUTION Figure 3.14b shows our solution. At point B the skier is moving in a straight line with increasing speed, so her acceleration points downhill, in the same direction as her velocity. At points D, E, and F the skier is moving along a curved path, so her acceleration has a component perpendicular to the path (toward the concave side of the path) at each of these points. At point D there is also an acceleration component in the direction of her motion because she is speeding up. So the acceleration vector points *ahead* of the normal to her path at point D. At point E, the skier's speed is instantaneously not changing; her speed is maximum at this point, so its derivative is zero. There is therefore no parallel component of $\vec{a}$, and the acceleration is perpendicular to her motion. At point F there is an acceleration component *opposite to* the direction of her motion because she's slowing down. The acceleration vector therefore points *behind* the normal to her path.

In the next section we'll consider the skier's acceleration after she flies off the ramp.

KEYCONCEPT If a moving object is turning (changing direction), its acceleration vector points ahead of the normal to its path if it is speeding up, behind the normal if it is slowing down, and along the normal if its speed is instantaneously not changing.

Figure 3.14 (a) The skier's path. (b) Our solution.





or 9: acceleration = 0

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 3.2 A sled travels over the crest of a snow-covered hill. The sled slows down as it climbs up one side of the hill and gains speed as it descends on the other side. Which of the vectors (1 through 9) in the figure correctly shows the direction of the sled's acceleration at the crest? (Choice 9 is that the acceleration is zero.)

ANSWER **Vector 7** At the high point of the sled's path, the speed is minimum. At that point the speed is neither increasing nor decreasing, and the parallel component of the acceleration (that is, the horizontal component) is zero. The acceleration has only a perpendicular component toward the inside of the sled's curved path. In other words, the acceleration is downward.

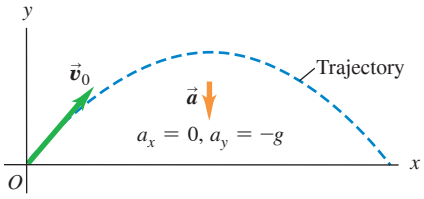
3.3 PROJECTILE MOTION

A **projectile** is any object that is given an initial velocity and then follows a path determined entirely by the effects of gravitational acceleration and air resistance. A batted baseball, a thrown basketball, and a bullet shot from a rifle are all projectiles. The path followed by a projectile is called its **trajectory.**

To analyze the motion of a projectile, we'll use an idealized model. We'll represent the projectile as a particle with an acceleration (due to gravity) that is constant in both magnitude and direction. We'll ignore the effects of air resistance and the curvature and rotation of the earth. This model has limitations, however: We have to consider the earth's curvature when we study the flight of long-range missiles, and air resistance is of crucial importance to a sky diver. Nevertheless, we can learn a lot from analysis of this simple model. For the remainder of this chapter the phrase "projectile motion" will imply that we're ignoring air resistance. In Chapter 5 we'll see what happens when air resistance cannot be ignored.

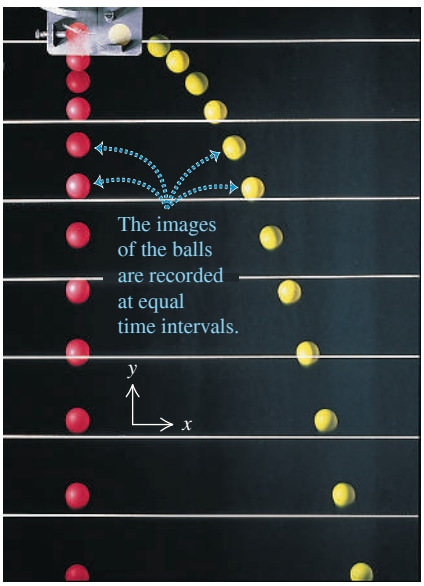
Figure **3.15** The trajectory of an idealized projectile.

- A projectile moves in a vertical plane that contains the initial velocity vector $\vec{v}_0$.
- Its trajectory depends only on $\vec{v}_0$ and on the downward acceleration due to gravity.



Projectile motion is always confined to a vertical plane determined by the direction of the initial velocity (**Fig. 3.15**). This is because the acceleration due to gravity is purely vertical; gravity can't accelerate the projectile sideways. Thus projectile motion is *two-dimensional*. We'll call the plane of motion the xy-coordinate plane, with the x-axis horizontal and the y-axis vertically upward.

Figure **3.16** The red ball is dropped from rest, and the yellow ball is simultaneously projected horizontally.



- At any time the two balls have different x-coordinates and x-velocities but the same y-coordinate, y-velocity, and y-acceleration.
- The horizontal motion of the yellow ball has no effect on its vertical motion.

The key to analyzing projectile motion is that we can treat the x- and y-coordinates separately. **Figure 3.16** illustrates this for two projectiles: a red ball dropped from rest and a yellow ball projected horizontally from the same height. The figure shows that the horizontal motion of the yellow projectile has *no* effect on its vertical motion. For both projectiles, the x-component of acceleration is zero and the y-component is constant and equal to $-g$. (By definition, g is always positive; with our choice of coordinate directions, a_y is negative.) So *we can analyze projectile motion as a combination of horizontal motion with constant velocity and vertical motion with constant acceleration.*

We can then express all the vector relationships for the projectile's position, velocity, and acceleration by separate equations for the horizontal and vertical components. The components of $\vec{a}$ are

$$a_x = 0 \qquad a_y = -g \quad \text{(projectile motion, no air resistance)} \tag{3.13}$$

Since both the x-acceleration and y-acceleration are constant, we can use Eqs. (2.8), (2.12), (2.13), and (2.14) directly. Suppose that at time $t = 0$ our particle is at the point (x_0, y_0) and its initial velocity at this time has components v_{0x} and v_{0y}. The components of acceleration are $a_x = 0$, $a_y = -g$. Considering the x-motion first, we substitute 0 for a_x in Eqs. (2.8) and (2.12). We find

$$v_x = v_{0x} \tag{3.14}$$

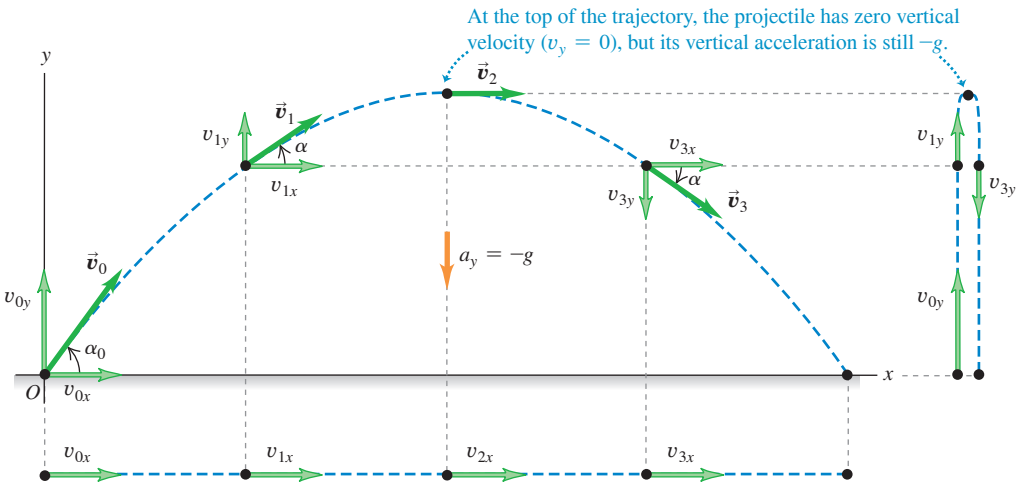
$$x = x_0 + v_{0x}t \tag{3.15}$$

For the y-motion we substitute y for x, v_y for v_x, v_{0y} for v_{0x}, and $a_y = -g$ for a_x:

$$v_y = v_{0y} - gt \tag{3.16}$$

$$y = y_0 + v_{0y}t - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 \tag{3.17}$$

Figure 3.17 If air resistance is negligible, the trajectory of a projectile is a combination of horizontal motion with constant velocity and vertical motion with constant acceleration.



It's usually simplest to take the initial position (at $t = 0$) as the origin; then $x_0 = y_0 = 0$. This might be the position of a ball at the instant it leaves the hand of the person who throws it or the position of a bullet at the instant it leaves the gun barrel.

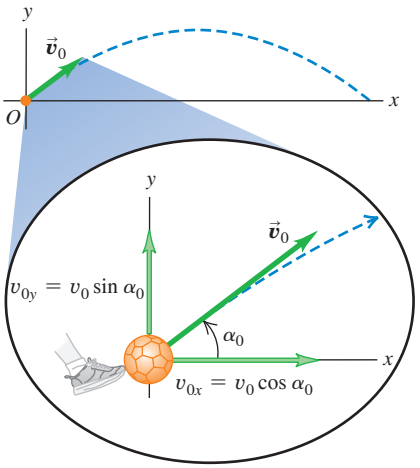
Figure 3.17 shows the trajectory of a projectile that starts at (or passes through) the origin at time $t = 0$, along with its position, velocity, and velocity components at equal time intervals. The x-velocity v_x is constant; the y-velocity v_y changes by equal amounts in equal times, just as if the projectile were launched vertically with the same initial y-velocity.

We can also represent the initial velocity $\vec{v}_0$ by its magnitude v_0 (the initial speed) and its angle α_0 with the positive x-axis (**Fig. 3.18**). In terms of these quantities, the components v_{0x} and v_{0y} of the initial velocity are

$$v_{0x} = v_0 \cos\alpha_0 \qquad v_{0y} = v_0 \sin\alpha_0 \tag{3.18}$$

If we substitute Eqs. (3.18) into Eqs. (3.14) through (3.17) and set $x_0 = y_0 = 0$, we get the following equations. They describe the position and velocity of the projectile in Fig. 3.17 at any time t:

Figure 3.18 The initial velocity components v_{0x} and v_{0y} of a projectile (such as a kicked football) are related to the initial speed v_0 and initial angle α_0.



$$x = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)t \tag{3.19}$$

Coordinates at time t of a **projectile** (positive y-direction is upward, and $x = y = 0$ at $t = 0$)

Speed at $t = 0$ · Direction at $t = 0$ · Time

$$y = (v_0 \sin\alpha_0)t - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 \tag{3.20}$$

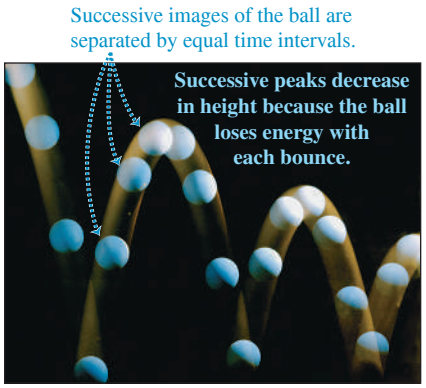
$$v_x = v_0 \cos\alpha_0 \tag{3.21}$$

Velocity components at time t of a **projectile** (positive y-direction is upward)

Speed at $t = 0$ · Direction at $t = 0$ · Acceleration due to gravity: Note $g > 0$. · Time

$$v_y = v_0 \sin\alpha_0 - gt \tag{3.22}$$

Figure 3.19 The nearly parabolic trajectories of a bouncing ball.



We can get a lot of information from Eqs. (3.19) through (3.22). For example, the distance r from the origin to the projectile at any time t is

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \tag{3.23}$$

The projectile's speed (the magnitude of its velocity) at any time is

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2} \tag{3.24}$$

The *direction* of the velocity, in terms of the angle α it makes with the positive x-direction (see Fig. 3.17), is

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{v_y}{v_x} \tag{3.25}$$

The velocity vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$ is tangent to the trajectory at each point.

We can derive an equation for the trajectory's shape in terms of x and y by eliminating t. From Eqs. (3.19) and (3.20), we find $t = x/(v_0\cos\alpha_0)$ and

$$y = (\tan\alpha_0)x - \frac{g}{2v_0^2\cos^2\alpha_0}x^2 \tag{3.26}$$

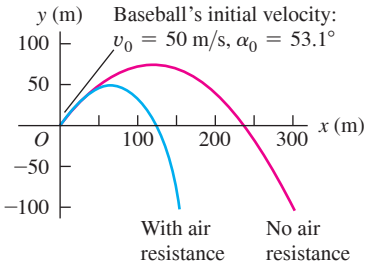
Don't worry about the details of this equation; the important point is its general form. Since v_0, $\tan\alpha_0$, $\cos\alpha_0$, and g are constants, Eq. (3.26) has the form

$$y = bx - cx^2$$

where b and c are constants. This is the equation of a *parabola*. In our simple model of projectile motion, the trajectory is always a parabola (**Fig. 3.19**).

When air resistance *isn't* negligible and has to be included, calculating the trajectory becomes a lot more complicated; the effects of air resistance depend on velocity, so the acceleration is no longer constant. **Figure 3.20** shows a computer simulation of the trajectory of a baseball both without air resistance and with air resistance proportional to the square of the baseball's speed. We see that air resistance has a very large effect; the projectile does not travel as far or as high, and the trajectory is no longer a parabola.

Figure 3.20 Air resistance has a large cumulative effect on the motion of a baseball. In this simulation we allow the baseball to fall below the height from which it was thrown (for example, the baseball could have been thrown from a cliff).



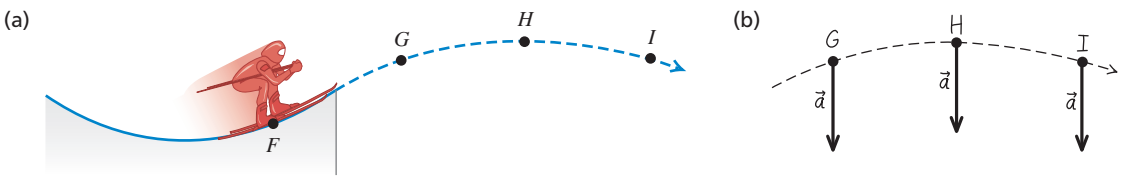
CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 3.5 Acceleration of a skier, continued

Let's consider again the skier in Conceptual Example 3.4. What is her acceleration at each of the points G, H, and I in **Fig. 3.21a** *after* she flies off the ramp? Neglect air resistance.

SOLUTION Figure 3.21b shows our answer. The skier's acceleration changed from point to point while she was on the ramp. But as soon as she leaves the ramp, she becomes a projectile. So at points G, H, and I, and indeed at *all* points after she leaves the ramp, the skier's acceleration points vertically downward and has magnitude g.

KEYCONCEPT No matter how complicated the acceleration of a particle before it becomes a projectile, its acceleration as a projectile is given by $a_x = 0$, $a_y = -g$.

Figure 3.21 (a) The skier's path during the jump. (b) Our solution.



PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 3.1 Projectile Motion

NOTE: The strategies we used in Sections 2.4 and 2.5 for straight-line, constant-acceleration problems are also useful here.

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* The key concept is that throughout projectile motion, the acceleration is downward and has a constant magnitude g. Projectile-motion equations don't apply to *throwing* a ball, because during the throw the ball is acted on by both the thrower's hand and gravity. These equations apply only *after* the ball leaves the thrower's hand.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Define your coordinate system and make a sketch showing your axes. It's almost always best to make the x-axis horizontal and the y-axis vertical, and to choose the origin to be where the object first becomes a projectile (for example, where a ball leaves the thrower's hand). Then the components of acceleration are $a_x = 0$ and $a_y = -g$, as in Eq. (3.13); the initial position is $x_0 = y_0 = 0$; and you can use Eqs. (3.19) through (3.22). (If you choose a different origin or axes, you'll have to modify these equations.)
2. List the unknown and known quantities, and decide which unknowns are your target variables. For example, you might be given the initial velocity (either the components or the magnitude and direction) and asked to find the coordinates and velocity components at some later time. Make sure that you have as many equations as there are target variables to be found. In addition to Eqs. (3.19) through (3.22), Eqs. (3.23) through (3.26) may be useful.
3. State the problem in words and then translate those words into symbols. For example, *when* does the particle arrive at a certain point? (That is, at what value of t?) *Where* is the particle when its velocity has a certain value? (That is, what are the values of x and y when v_x or v_y has the specified value?) Since $v_y = 0$ at the highest point in a trajectory, the question "When does the projectile reach its highest point?" translates into "What is the value of t when $v_y = 0$?" Similarly, "When does the projectile return to its initial elevation?" translates into "What is the value of t when $y = y_0$?"

EXECUTE *the solution:* Find the target variables using the equations you chose. Resist the temptation to break the trajectory into segments and analyze each segment separately. You don't have to start all over when the projectile reaches its highest point! It's almost always easier to use the same axes and time scale throughout the problem. If you need numerical values, use $g = 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$. Remember that g is positive!

EVALUATE *your answer:* Do your results make sense? Do the numerical values seem reasonable?

EXAMPLE 3.6 An object projected horizontally

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A motorcycle stunt rider rides off the edge of a cliff. Just at the edge his velocity is horizontal, with magnitude 9.0 m/s. Find the motorcycle's position, distance from the edge of the cliff, and velocity 0.50 s after it leaves the edge of the cliff. Ignore air resistance.

IDENTIFY and SET UP **Figure 3.22** shows our sketch of the trajectory of motorcycle and rider. He is in projectile motion as soon as he leaves the edge of the cliff, which we take to be the origin (so $x_0 = y_0 = 0$). His initial velocity $\vec{v}_0$ at the edge of the cliff is horizontal (that is, $\alpha_0 = 0$), so its components are $v_{0x} = v_0 \cos\alpha_0 = 9.0\ \text{m/s}$ and $v_{0y} = v_0 \sin\alpha_0 = 0$. To find the motorcycle's position at $t = 0.50$ s, we use Eqs. (3.19) and (3.20); we then find the distance from the origin using Eq. (3.23). Finally, we use Eqs. (3.21) and (3.22) to find the velocity components at $t = 0.50$ s.

EXECUTE From Eqs. (3.19) and (3.20), the motorcycle's x- and y-coordinates at $t = 0.50$ s are

$$x = v_{0x}t = (9.0\ \text{m/s})(0.50\ \text{s}) = 4.5\ \text{m}$$

$$y = -\tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 = -\tfrac{1}{2}(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.50\ \text{s})^2 = -1.2\ \text{m}$$

The negative value of y shows that the motorcycle is below its starting point.

From Eq. (3.23), the motorcycle's distance from the origin at $t = 0.50$ s is

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \sqrt{(4.5\ \text{m})^2 + (-1.2\ \text{m})^2} = 4.7\ \text{m}$$

From Eqs. (3.21) and (3.22), the velocity components at $t = 0.50$ s are

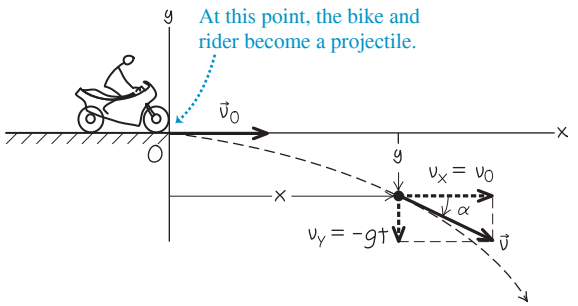
$$v_x = v_{0x} = 9.0\ \text{m/s}$$

$$v_y = -gt = (-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.50\ \text{s}) = -4.9\ \text{m/s}$$

The motorcycle has the same horizontal velocity v_x as when it left the cliff at $t = 0$, but in addition there is a downward (negative) vertical velocity v_y. The velocity vector at $t = 0.50$ s is

$$\vec{v} = v_x\hat{\imath} + v_y\hat{\jmath} = (9.0\ \text{m/s})\hat{\imath} + (-4.9\ \text{m/s})\hat{\jmath}$$

Figure 3.22 Our sketch for this problem.



From Eqs. (3.24) and (3.25), at $t = 0.50$ s the velocity has magnitude v and angle α given by

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2} = \sqrt{(9.0\ \text{m/s})^2 + (-4.9\ \text{m/s})^2} = 10.2\ \text{m/s}$$

$$\alpha = \arctan\frac{v_y}{v_x} = \arctan\left(\frac{-4.9\ \text{m/s}}{9.0\ \text{m/s}}\right) = -29°$$

The motorcycle is moving at 10.2 m/s in a direction 29° below the horizontal.

EVALUATE Just as in Fig. 3.17, the motorcycle's horizontal motion is unchanged by gravity; the motorcycle continues to move horizontally at 9.0 m/s, covering 4.5 m in 0.50 s. The motorcycle initially has zero vertical velocity, so it falls vertically just like an object released from rest and descends a distance $\frac{1}{2}gt^2 = 1.2$ m in 0.50 s.

KEYCONCEPT The motion of a projectile is a combination of motion with constant velocity in the horizontal x-direction and motion with constant downward acceleration in the vertical y-direction.

EXAMPLE 3.7 Height and range of a projectile I: A batted baseball

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A batter hits a baseball so that it leaves the bat at speed $v_0 = 37.0$ m/s at an angle $\alpha_0 = 53.1°$. (a) Find the position of the ball and its velocity (magnitude and direction) at $t = 2.00$ s. (b) Find the time when the ball reaches the highest point of its flight, and its height h at this time. (c) Find the *horizontal range* R—that is, the horizontal distance from the starting point to where the ball hits the ground—and the ball's velocity just before it hits.

IDENTIFY and SET UP As Fig. 3.20 shows, air resistance strongly affects the motion of a baseball. For simplicity, however, we'll ignore air resistance here and use the projectile-motion equations to describe the motion. The ball leaves the bat at $t = 0$ a meter or so above ground level, but we'll ignore this distance and assume that it starts at ground level ($y_0 = 0$). **Figure 3.23** shows our sketch of the ball's trajectory. We'll use the same coordinate system as in Figs. 3.17 and 3.18, so we can use Eqs. (3.19) through (3.22). Our target variables are (a) the position and velocity of the ball 2.00 s after it leaves the bat, (b) the time t when the ball is at its maximum height (that is, when $v_y = 0$) and the y-coordinate at this time, and (c) the x-coordinate when the ball returns to ground level ($y = 0$) and the ball's vertical component of velocity then.

EXECUTE (a) We want to find x, y, v_x, and v_y at $t = 2.00$ s. The initial velocity of the ball has components

$$v_{0x} = v_0 \cos\alpha_0 = (37.0 \text{ m/s})\cos 53.1° = 22.2 \text{ m/s}$$
$$v_{0y} = v_0 \sin\alpha_0 = (37.0 \text{ m/s})\sin 53.1° = 29.6 \text{ m/s}$$

From Eqs. (3.19) through (3.22),

$$x = v_{0x}t = (22.2 \text{ m/s})(2.00 \text{ s}) = 44.4 \text{ m}$$
$$y = v_{0y}t - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2$$
$$= (29.6 \text{ m/s})(2.00 \text{ s}) - \tfrac{1}{2}(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(2.00 \text{ s})^2 = 39.6 \text{ m}$$
$$v_x = v_{0x} = 22.2 \text{ m/s}$$
$$v_y = v_{0y} - gt = 29.6 \text{ m/s} - (9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(2.00 \text{ s}) = 10.0 \text{ m/s}$$

The y-component of velocity is positive at $t = 2.00$ s, so the ball is still moving upward (Fig. 3.23). From Eqs. (3.24) and (3.25), the magnitude and direction of the velocity are

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2} = \sqrt{(22.2 \text{ m/s})^2 + (10.0 \text{ m/s})^2} = 24.4 \text{ m/s}$$
$$\alpha = \arctan\left(\frac{10.0 \text{ m/s}}{22.2 \text{ m/s}}\right) = \arctan 0.450 = 24.2°$$

The ball is moving at 24.4 m/s in a direction 24.2° above the horizontal.

(b) At the highest point, the vertical velocity v_y is zero. Call the time when this happens t_1; then

$$v_y = v_{0y} - gt_1 = 0$$
$$t_1 = \frac{v_{0y}}{g} = \frac{29.6 \text{ m/s}}{9.80 \text{ m/s}^2} = 3.02 \text{ s}$$

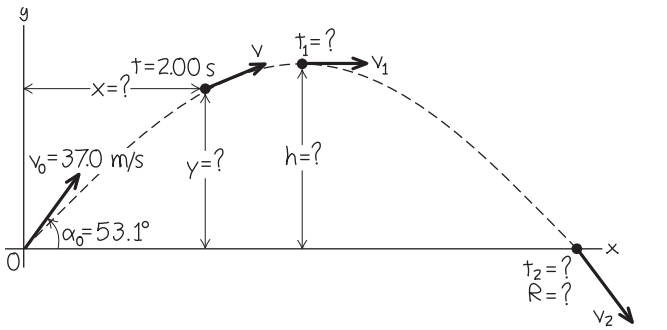
The height h at the highest point is the value of y at time t_1:

$$h = v_{0y}t_1 - \tfrac{1}{2}gt_1^2$$
$$= (29.6 \text{ m/s})(3.02 \text{ s}) - \tfrac{1}{2}(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(3.02 \text{ s})^2 = 44.7 \text{ m}$$

(c) We'll find the horizontal range in two steps. First, we find the time t_2 when $y = 0$ (the ball is at ground level):

$$y = 0 = v_{0y}t_2 - \tfrac{1}{2}gt_2^2 = t_2\left(v_{0y} - \tfrac{1}{2}gt_2\right)$$

Figure 3.23 Our sketch for this problem.



This is a quadratic equation for t_2. It has two roots:

$$t_2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad t_2 = \frac{2v_{0y}}{g} = \frac{2(29.6 \text{ m/s})}{9.80 \text{ m/s}^2} = 6.04 \text{ s}$$

The ball is at $y = 0$ at both times. The ball *leaves* the ground at $t_2 = 0$, and it hits the ground at $t_2 = 2v_{0y}/g = 6.04$ s.

The horizontal range R is the value of x when the ball returns to the ground at $t_2 = 6.04$ s:

$$R = v_{0x}t_2 = (22.2 \text{ m/s})(6.04 \text{ s}) = 134 \text{ m}$$

The vertical component of velocity when the ball hits the ground is

$$v_y = v_{0y} - gt_2 = 29.6 \text{ m/s} - (9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(6.04 \text{ s}) = -29.6 \text{ m/s}$$

That is, v_y has the same magnitude as the initial vertical velocity v_{0y} but the opposite direction (down). Since v_x is constant, the angle $\alpha = -53.1°$ (below the horizontal) at this point is the negative of the initial angle $\alpha_0 = 53.1°$.

EVALUATE As a check on our results, we can also find the maximum height in part (b) by applying the constant-acceleration formula Eq. (2.13) to the y-motion:

$$v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 + 2a_y(y - y_0) = v_{0y}^2 - 2g(y - y_0)$$

At the highest point, $v_y = 0$ and $y = h$. Solve this equation for h; you should get the answer that we obtained in part (b). (Do you?)

Note that the time to hit the ground, $t_2 = 6.04$ s, is exactly twice the time to reach the highest point, $t_1 = 3.02$ s. Hence the time of descent equals the time of ascent. This is *always* true if the starting point and end point are at the same elevation and if air resistance can be ignored.

Note also that $h = 44.7$ m in part (b) is comparable to the 61.0 m height above second base of the roof at Marlins Park in Miami, and the horizontal range $R = 134$ m in part (c) is greater than the 99.7 m distance from home plate to the right-field fence at Safeco Field in Seattle. In reality, due to air resistance (which we have ignored) a batted ball with the initial speed and angle we've used here won't go as high or as far as we've calculated (see Fig. 3.20).

KEYCONCEPT You can solve most projectile problems by using the equations for x, y, v_x, and v_y as functions of time. The highest point of a projectile's motion occurs at the time its vertical component of velocity is zero.

EXAMPLE 3.8 Height and range of a projectile II: Maximum height, maximum range

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Find the maximum height h and horizontal range R (see Fig. 3.23) of a projectile launched with speed v_0 at an initial angle α_0 between 0 and 90°. For a given v_0, what value of α_0 gives maximum height? What value gives maximum horizontal range?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This is almost the same as parts (b) and (c) of Example 3.7, except that now we want general expressions for h and R. We also want the values of α_0 that give the maximum values of h and R. In part (b) of Example 3.7 we found that the projectile reaches the high point of its trajectory (so that $v_y = 0$) at time $t_1 = v_{0y}/g$, and in part (c) we found that the projectile returns to its starting height (so that $y = y_0$) at time $t_2 = 2v_{0y}/g = 2t_1$. We'll use Eq. (3.20) to find the y-coordinate h at t_1 and Eq. (3.19) to find the x-coordinate R at time t_2. We'll express our answers in terms of the launch speed v_0 and launch angle α_0 by using Eqs. (3.18).

EXECUTE From Eqs. (3.18), $v_{0x} = v_0 \cos\alpha_0$ and $v_{0y} = v_0 \sin\alpha_0$. Hence we can write the time t_1 when $v_y = 0$ as

$$t_1 = \frac{v_{0y}}{g} = \frac{v_0 \sin\alpha_0}{g}$$

Equation (3.20) gives the height $y = h$ at this time:

$$h = (v_0 \sin\alpha_0)\left(\frac{v_0 \sin\alpha_0}{g}\right) - \tfrac{1}{2}g\left(\frac{v_0 \sin\alpha_0}{g}\right)^2 = \frac{v_0^2 \sin^2\alpha_0}{2g}$$

For a given launch speed v_0, the maximum value of h occurs for $\sin\alpha_0 = 1$ and $\alpha_0 = 90°$—that is, when the projectile is launched straight up. (If it is launched horizontally, as in Example 3.6, $\alpha_0 = 0$ and the maximum height is zero!)

The time t_2 when the projectile hits the ground is

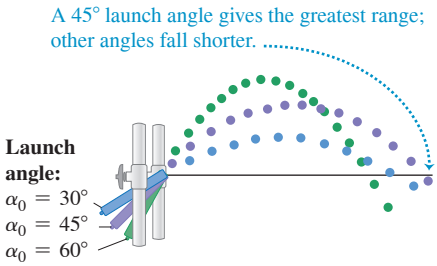
$$t_2 = \frac{2v_{0y}}{g} = \frac{2v_0 \sin\alpha_0}{g}$$

The horizontal range R is the value of x at this time. From Eq. (3.19), this is

$$R = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)t_2 = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)\frac{2v_0 \sin\alpha_0}{g} = \frac{v_0^2 \sin 2\alpha_0}{g}$$

(We used the trigonometric identity $2\sin\alpha_0\cos\alpha_0 = \sin 2\alpha_0$, found in Appendix D.) The maximum value of $\sin 2\alpha_0$ is 1; this occurs when $2\alpha_0 = 90°$, or $\alpha_0 = 45°$. This angle gives the maximum range for a given initial speed if air resistance can be ignored.

Figure 3.24 A launch angle of 45° gives the maximum horizontal range. The range is shorter with launch angles of 30° and 60°.



EVALUATE **Figure 3.24** is based on a composite photograph of three trajectories of a ball projected from a small spring gun at angles of 30°, 45°, and 60°. The initial speed v_0 is approximately the same in all three cases. The horizontal range is greatest for the 45° angle. The ranges are nearly the same for the 30° and 60° angles: Can you prove that for a given value of v_0 the range is the same for both an initial angle α_0 and an initial angle $90° - \alpha_0$? (This is not the case in Fig. 3.24 due to air resistance.)

CAUTION **Height and range of a projectile** We don't recommend memorizing the above expressions for h and R. They are applicable only in the special circumstances we've described. In particular, you can use the expression for the range R *only* when launch and landing heights are equal. There are many end-of-chapter problems to which these equations do *not* apply.

KEYCONCEPT When you solve physics problems in general, and projectile problems in particular, it's best to use symbols rather than numbers as far into the solution as possible. This allows you to better explore and understand your result.

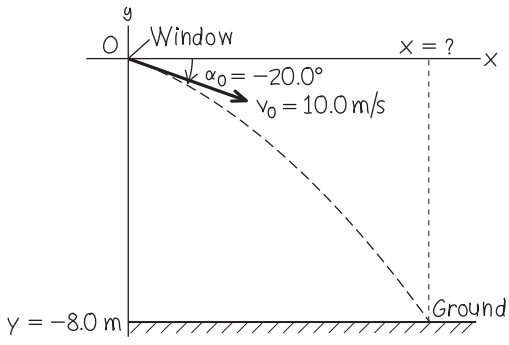
EXAMPLE 3.9 Different initial and final heights

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

You throw a ball from your window 8.0 m above the ground. When the ball leaves your hand, it is moving at 10.0 m/s at an angle of 20.0° below the horizontal. How far horizontally from your window will the ball hit the ground? Ignore air resistance.

IDENTIFY and SET UP As in Examples 3.7 and 3.8, we want to find the horizontal coordinate of a projectile when it is at a given y-value. The difference here is that this value of y is *not* the same as the initial value. We again choose the x-axis to be horizontal and the y-axis to be upward, and place the origin of coordinates at the point where the ball leaves your hand (**Fig. 3.25**). We have $v_0 = 10.0$ m/s and $\alpha_0 = -20.0°$ (the angle is negative because the initial velocity is below the horizontal). Our target variable is the value of x when the ball reaches the ground at $y = -8.0$ m. We'll use Eq. (3.20) to find the time t when this happens and then use Eq. (3.19) to find the value of x at this time.

Figure 3.25 Our sketch for this problem.



Continued

EXECUTE To determine t, we rewrite Eq. (3.20) in the standard form for a quadratic equation for t:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 - (v_0 \sin\alpha_0)t + y = 0$$

The roots of this equation are

$$t = \frac{v_0 \sin\alpha_0 \pm \sqrt{(-v_0 \sin\alpha_0)^2 - 4\left(\tfrac{1}{2}g\right)y}}{2\left(\tfrac{1}{2}g\right)}$$

$$= \frac{v_0 \sin\alpha_0 \pm \sqrt{v_0^2 \sin^2\alpha_0 - 2gy}}{g}$$

$$= \frac{\left[\begin{array}{l}(10.0\ \text{m/s})\sin(-20.0°) \\ \pm\sqrt{(10.0\ \text{m/s})^2 \sin^2(-20.0°) - 2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(-8.0\ \text{m})}\end{array}\right]}{9.80\ \text{m/s}^2}$$

$$= -1.7\ \text{s} \quad \text{or} \quad 0.98\ \text{s}$$

We discard the negative root, since it refers to a time before the ball left your hand. The positive root tells us that the ball reaches the ground at $t = 0.98$ s. From Eq. (3.19), the ball's x-coordinate at that time is

$$x = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)t = (10.0\ \text{m/s})[\cos(-20°)](0.98\ \text{s}) = 9.2\ \text{m}$$

The ball hits the ground a horizontal distance of 9.2 m from your window.

EVALUATE The root $t = -1.7$ s is an example of a "fictional" solution to a quadratic equation. We discussed these in Example 2.8 in Section 2.5; review that discussion.

KEYCONCEPT A projectile's vertical coordinate y as a function of time is given by a quadratic equation, which in general has more than one solution. Take care to select the solution that's appropriate for the problem you're solving.

EXAMPLE 3.10 The zookeeper and the monkey

A monkey escapes from the zoo and climbs a tree. After failing to entice the monkey down, the zookeeper fires a tranquilizer dart directly at the monkey (**Fig. 3.26**). The monkey lets go at the instant the dart leaves the gun. Show that the dart will *always* hit the monkey, provided that the dart reaches the monkey before he hits the ground and runs away.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We have *two* objects in projectile motion: the dart and the monkey. They have different initial positions and initial velocities, but they go into projectile motion at the same time $t = 0$. We'll first use Eq. (3.19) to find an expression for the time t when the x-coordinates x_{monkey} and x_{dart} are equal. Then we'll use that expression in Eq. (3.20) to see whether y_{monkey} and y_{dart} are also equal at this time; if they are, the dart hits the monkey. We make the usual choice for the x- and y-directions, and place the origin of coordinates at the muzzle of the tranquilizer gun (Fig. 3.26).

EXECUTE The monkey drops straight down, so $x_{\text{monkey}} = d$ at all times. From Eq. (3.19), $x_{\text{dart}} = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)t$. We solve for the time t when these x-coordinates are equal:

$$d = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)t \qquad \text{so} \qquad t = \frac{d}{v_0 \cos\alpha_0}$$

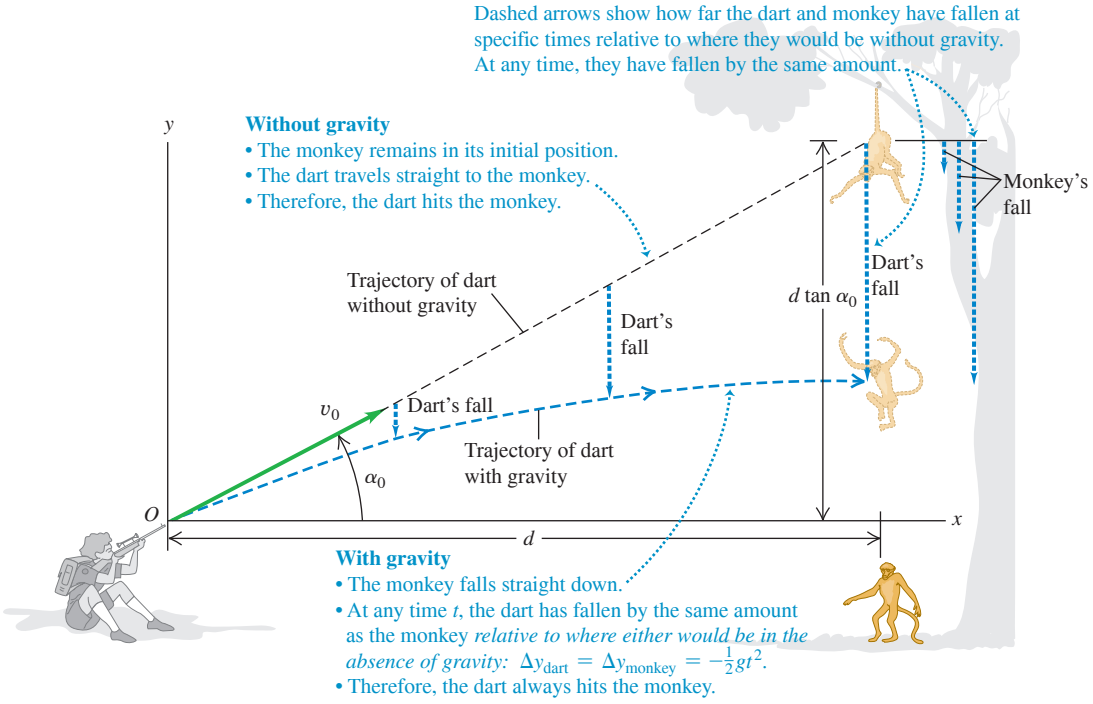
We must now show that $y_{\text{monkey}} = y_{\text{dart}}$ at this time. The monkey is in one-dimensional free fall; its position at any time is given by Eq. (2.12), with appropriate symbol changes. Figure 3.26 shows that the monkey's initial height above the dart-gun's muzzle is $y_{\text{monkey-0}} = d \tan\alpha_0$, so

$$y_{\text{monkey}} = d \tan\alpha_0 - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2$$

From Eq. (3.20),

$$y_{\text{dart}} = (v_0 \sin\alpha_0)t - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2$$

Figure **3.26** The tranquilizer dart hits the falling monkey.



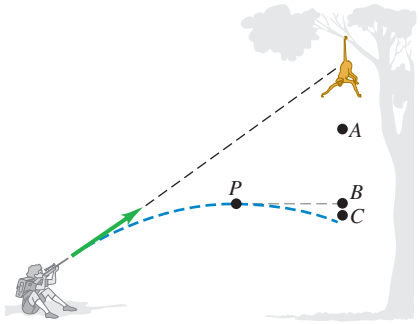
Comparing these two equations, we see that we'll have $y_{\text{monkey}} = y_{\text{dart}}$ (and a hit) if $d\tan\alpha_0 = (v_0\sin\alpha_0)t$ when the two x-coordinates are equal. To show that this happens, we replace t with $d/(v_0\cos\alpha_0)$, the time when $x_{\text{monkey}} = x_{\text{dart}}$. Sure enough,

$$(v_0\sin\alpha_0)t = (v_0\sin\alpha_0)\frac{d}{v_0\cos\alpha_0} = d\tan\alpha_0$$

EVALUATE We've proved that the y-coordinates of the dart and the monkey are equal at the same time that their x-coordinates are equal; a dart aimed at the monkey *always* hits it, no matter what v_0 is (provided the monkey doesn't hit the ground first). This result is independent of the value of g, the acceleration due to gravity. With no gravity ($g = 0$), the monkey would remain motionless, and the dart would travel in a straight line to hit him. With gravity, both fall the same distance $\frac{1}{2}gt^2$ below their $t = 0$ positions, and the dart still hits the monkey (Fig. 3.26).

KEYCONCEPT It can be useful to think of a projectile as following a straight-line path that's pulled downward by gravity a distance $\frac{1}{2}gt^2$ in a time t.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 3.3 In Example 3.10, suppose the tranquilizer dart has a relatively low muzzle velocity so that the dart reaches a maximum height at a point P before striking the monkey, as shown in the figure. When the dart is at point P, will the monkey be (i) at point A (higher than P), (ii) at point B (at the same height as P), or (iii) at point C (lower than P)? Ignore air resistance.



ANSWER **(i)** If there were no gravity ($g = 0$), the monkey would not fall and the dart would follow a straight-line path (shown as a dashed line). The effect of gravity is to make both the monkey and the dart fall the same distance $\frac{1}{2}gt^2$ below their $g = 0$ positions. Point A is the same distance below the monkey's initial position as point P is below the dashed straight line, so point A is where we would find the monkey at the time in question.

3.4 MOTION IN A CIRCLE

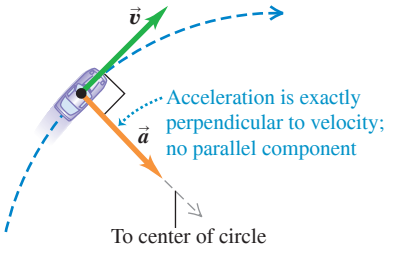
When a particle moves along a curved path, the direction of its velocity changes. As we saw in Section 3.2, this means that the particle *must* have a component of acceleration perpendicular to the path, even if its speed is constant (see Fig. 3.11b). In this section we'll calculate the acceleration for the important special case of motion in a circle.

Uniform Circular Motion

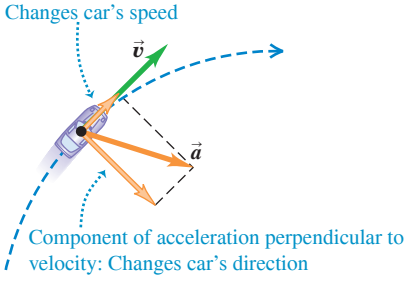
When a particle moves in a circle with *constant speed,* the motion is called **uniform circular motion.** A car rounding a curve with constant radius at constant speed, a satellite moving in a circular orbit, and an ice skater skating in a circle with constant speed are all examples of uniform circular motion (**Fig. 3.27a**; compare Fig. 3.12a). There is no component of acceleration parallel (tangent) to the path; otherwise, the speed would change. The acceleration vector is perpendicular (normal) to the path and hence directed inward (never outward!) toward the center of the circular path. This causes the direction of the velocity to change without changing the speed.

Figure 3.27 A car moving along a circular path. If the car is in uniform circular motion as in (a), the speed is constant and the acceleration is directed toward the center of the circular path (compare Fig. 3.12).

(a) **Uniform circular motion:** Constant speed along a circular path



(b) **Car speeding up along a circular path**



(c) **Car slowing down along a circular path**

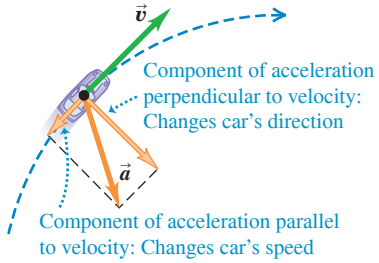
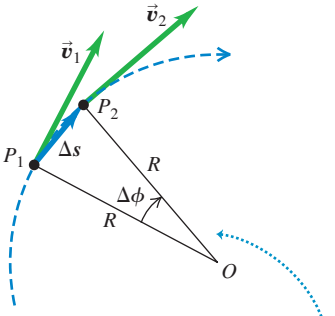
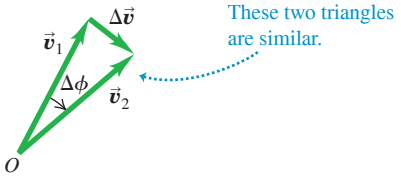


Figure 3.28 Finding the velocity change $\Delta\vec{v}$, average acceleration $\vec{a}_{av}$, and instantaneous acceleration $\vec{a}_{rad}$ for a particle moving in a circle with constant speed.

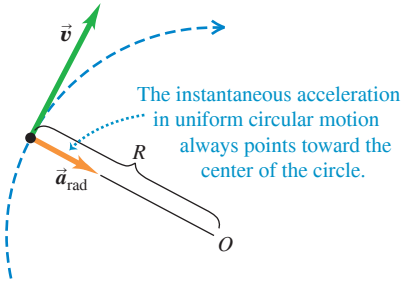
(a) A particle moves a distance Δs at constant speed along a circular path.



(b) The corresponding change in velocity $\Delta\vec{v}$. The average acceleration is in the same direction as $\Delta\vec{v}$.

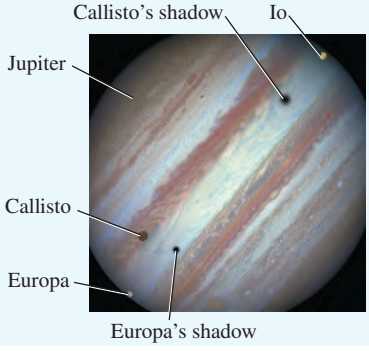


(c) The instantaneous acceleration



APPLICATION The Moons of Jupiter

Each of the three moons of Jupiter shown in this image from the Hubble Space Telescope—Io, Europa, and Callisto—moves around Jupiter in a nearly circular orbit at a nearly constant speed. The larger the radius R of a moon's orbit, the slower the speed v at which the moon moves and the smaller its centripetal acceleration $a_{rad} = v^2/R$.



We can find a simple expression for the magnitude of the acceleration in uniform circular motion. We begin with **Fig. 3.28a**, which shows a particle moving with constant speed in a circular path of radius R with center at O. The particle moves a distance Δs from P_1 to P_2 in a time interval Δt. Figure 3.28b shows the vector change in velocity $\Delta\vec{v}$ during this interval.

The angles labeled $\Delta\phi$ in Figs. 3.28a and 3.28b are the same because $\vec{v}_1$ is perpendicular to the line OP_1 and $\vec{v}_2$ is perpendicular to the line OP_2. Hence the triangles in Figs. 3.28a and 3.28b are *similar*. The ratios of corresponding sides of similar triangles are equal, so

$$\frac{|\Delta\vec{v}|}{v_1} = \frac{\Delta s}{R} \qquad \text{or} \qquad |\Delta\vec{v}| = \frac{v_1}{R}\Delta s$$

The magnitude a_{av} of the average acceleration during Δt is therefore

$$a_{av} = \frac{|\Delta\vec{v}|}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_1}{R}\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t}$$

The magnitude a of the *instantaneous* acceleration $\vec{a}$ at point P_1 is the limit of this expression as we take point P_2 closer and closer to point P_1:

$$a = \lim_{\Delta t\to 0}\frac{v_1}{R}\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_1}{R}\lim_{\Delta t\to 0}\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t}$$

If the time interval Δt is short, Δs is the distance the particle moves along its curved path. So the limit of $\Delta s/\Delta t$ is the speed v_1 at point P_1. Also, P_1 can be any point on the path, so we can drop the subscript and let v represent the speed at any point. Then

Magnitude of acceleration of an object in **uniform circular motion**

$$a_{rad} = \frac{v^2}{R}$$

v: Speed of object; R: Radius of object's circular path

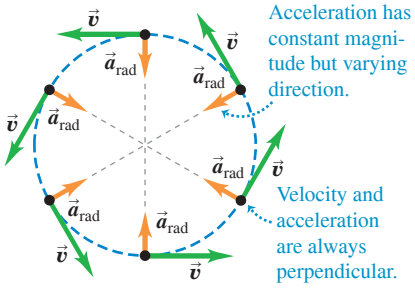
(3.27)

The subscript "rad" is a reminder that the direction of the instantaneous acceleration at each point is always along a radius of the circle (toward the center of the circle; see Figs. 3.27a and 3.28c). So *in uniform circular motion, the magnitude* a_{rad} *of the instantaneous acceleration is equal to the square of the speed* v *divided by the radius* R *of the circle. Its direction is perpendicular to* $\vec{v}$ *and inward along the radius* (**Fig. 3.29a**). Because the acceleration in uniform circular motion is along the radius, we often call it **radial acceleration.**

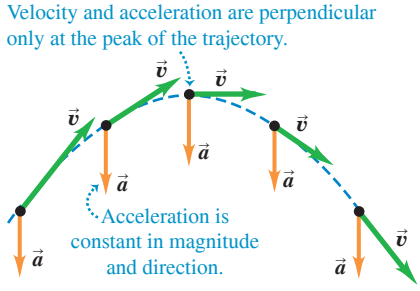
Because the acceleration in uniform circular motion is always directed toward the center of the circle, it is sometimes called **centripetal acceleration.** The word "centripetal" is derived from two Greek words meaning "seeking the center."

Figure 3.29 Acceleration and velocity (a) for a particle in uniform circular motion and (b) for a projectile with no air resistance.

(a) Uniform circular motion



(b) Projectile motion



CAUTION **Uniform circular motion vs. projectile motion** Notice the differences between acceleration in uniform circular motion (Fig. 3.29a) and acceleration in projectile motion (Fig. 3.29b). It's true that in both kinds of motion the *magnitude* of acceleration is the same at all times. However, in uniform circular motion the *direction* of $\vec{a}$ changes continuously—it always points toward the center of the circle and is always perpendicular to the velocity $\vec{v}$. In projectile motion, the direction of $\vec{a}$ remains the same at all times and is perpendicular to $\vec{v}$ only at the highest point of the trajectory.

We can also express the magnitude of the acceleration in uniform circular motion in terms of the **period** T of the motion, the time for one revolution (one complete trip around the circle). In a time T the particle travels a distance equal to the circumference $2\pi R$ of the circle, so its speed is

$$v = \frac{2\pi R}{T} \tag{3.28}$$

When we substitute this into Eq. (3.27), we obtain the alternative expression

Magnitude of acceleration of an object in **uniform circular motion**

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} \tag{3.29}$$

Radius of object's circular path

Period of motion

EXAMPLE 3.11 Centripetal acceleration on a curved road

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

An Aston Martin V12 Vantage sports car has a "lateral acceleration" of $0.97g = (0.97)(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2) = 9.5\ \text{m/s}^2$. This is the maximum centripetal acceleration the car can sustain without skidding out of a curved path. If the car is traveling at a constant 40 m/s (144 km/h) on level ground, what is the radius R of the tightest unbanked curve it can negotiate?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE The car is in uniform circular motion because it's moving at a constant speed along a curve that is a segment of a circle. Hence we can use Eq. (3.27) to solve for the target variable R in terms of the given centripetal acceleration a_{rad} and speed v:

$$R = \frac{v^2}{a_{\text{rad}}} = \frac{(40\ \text{m/s})^2}{9.5\ \text{m/s}^2} = 170\ \text{m}$$

This is the *minimum* turning radius because a_{rad} is the *maximum* centripetal acceleration.

EVALUATE The minimum turning radius R is proportional to the *square* of the speed, so even a small reduction in speed can make R substantially smaller. For example, reducing v by 20% (from 40 m/s to 32 m/s) would decrease R by 36% (from 170 m to 109 m).

Another way to make the minimum turning radius smaller is to *bank* the curve. We'll investigate this option in Chapter 5.

KEYCONCEPT For uniform circular motion at a given speed, decreasing the radius increases the centripetal acceleration.

EXAMPLE 3.12 Centripetal acceleration on a fairground ride

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Passengers on a fairground ride move at constant speed in a horizontal circle of radius 5.0 m, making a complete circle in 4.0 s. What is their acceleration?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The speed is constant, so this is uniform circular motion. We are given the radius $R = 5.0$ m and the period $T = 4.0$ s, so we can use Eq. (3.29) to calculate the acceleration directly, or we can calculate the speed v by using Eq. (3.28) and then find the acceleration by using Eq. (3.27).

EXECUTE From Eq. (3.29),

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{4\pi^2(5.0\ \text{m})}{(4.0\ \text{s})^2} = 12\ \text{m/s}^2 = 1.3g$$

EVALUATE We can check this answer by using the second, roundabout approach. From Eq. (3.28), the speed is

$$v = \frac{2\pi R}{T} = \frac{2\pi(5.0\ \text{m})}{4.0\ \text{s}} = 7.9\ \text{m/s}$$

The centripetal acceleration is then

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v^2}{R} = \frac{(7.9\ \text{m/s})^2}{5.0\ \text{m}} = 12\ \text{m/s}^2$$

As in Fig. 3.29a, the direction of $\vec{a}$ is always toward the center of the circle. The magnitude of $\vec{a}$ is relatively mild as fairground rides go; some roller coasters subject their passengers to accelerations as great as $4g$. To produce this acceleration with a fairground ride of radius 5.0 m would require a shorter period T and hence a faster speed v than in this example.

KEYCONCEPT For uniform circular motion with a given radius, decreasing the period increases the speed and the centripetal acceleration.

APPLICATION Watch Out: Tight Curves Ahead! These roller coaster cars are in nonuniform circular motion: They slow down and speed up as they move around a vertical loop. The large accelerations involved in traveling at high speed around a tight loop mean extra stress on the passengers' circulatory systems, which is why people with cardiac conditions are cautioned against going on such rides.

Nonuniform Circular Motion

We have assumed throughout this section that the particle's speed is constant as it goes around the circle. If the speed varies, we call the motion **nonuniform circular motion.** In nonuniform circular motion, Eq. (3.27) still gives the *radial* component of acceleration $a_{\text{rad}} = v^2/R$, which is always *perpendicular* to the instantaneous velocity and directed toward the center of the circle. But since the speed v has different values at different points in the motion, the value of a_{rad} is not constant. The radial (centripetal) acceleration is greatest at the point in the circle where the speed is greatest.

In nonuniform circular motion there is also a component of acceleration that is *parallel* to the instantaneous velocity (see Figs. 3.27b and 3.27c). This is the component $a_\parallel$ that we discussed in Section 3.2; here we call this component a_{tan} to emphasize that it is *tangent* to the circle. This component, called the **tangential acceleration** a_{tan}, is equal to the rate of change of *speed*. Thus

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v^2}{R} \qquad \text{and} \qquad a_{\text{tan}} = \frac{d|\vec{v}|}{dt} \quad \text{(nonuniform circular motion)} \qquad (3.30)$$

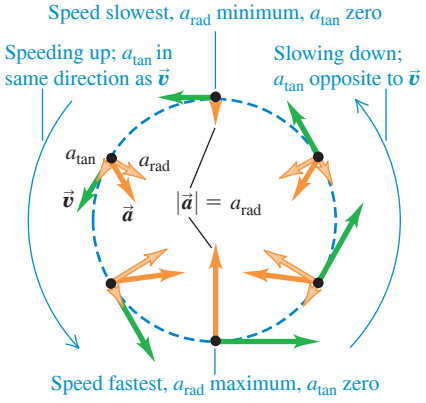
The tangential component is in the same direction as the velocity if the particle is speeding up, and in the opposite direction if the particle is slowing down (**Fig. 3.30**). If the particle's speed is constant, $a_{\text{tan}} = 0$.

CAUTION Uniform vs. nonuniform circular motion The two quantities

$$\frac{d|\vec{v}|}{dt} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \left|\frac{d\vec{v}}{dt}\right|$$

are *not* the same. The first, equal to the tangential acceleration, is the rate of change of speed; it is zero whenever a particle moves with constant speed, even when its direction of motion changes (such as in *uniform* circular motion). The second is the magnitude of the vector acceleration; it is zero only when the particle's acceleration *vector* is zero—that is, when the particle moves in a straight line with constant speed. In *uniform* circular motion $|d\vec{v}/dt| = a_{\text{rad}} = v^2/r$; in *nonuniform* circular motion there is also a tangential component of acceleration, so $|d\vec{v}/dt| = \sqrt{a_{\text{rad}}^2 + a_{\text{tan}}^2}$.

Figure **3.30** A particle moving in a vertical loop with a varying speed, like a roller coaster car.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 3.4 Suppose that the particle in Fig. 3.30 experiences four times the acceleration at the bottom of the loop as it does at the top of the loop. Compared to its speed at the top of the loop, is its speed at the bottom of the loop (i) $\sqrt{2}$ times as great; (ii) 2 times as great; (iii) $2\sqrt{2}$ times as great; (iv) 4 times as great; or (v) 16 times as great?

ANSWER

(ii) At both the top and bottom of the loop, the acceleration is purely radial and is given by Eq. (3.27). Radius R is the same at both points, so the difference in acceleration is due purely to differences in speed. Since a_{rad} is proportional to the square of v, the speed must be twice as great at the bottom of the loop as at the top.

3.5 RELATIVE VELOCITY

If you stand next to a one-way highway, all the cars appear to be moving forward. But if you're driving in the fast lane on that highway, slower cars appear to be moving backward. In general, when two observers measure the velocity of the same object, they get different results if one observer is moving relative to the other. The velocity seen by a particular observer is called the velocity *relative* to that observer, or simply **relative velocity.** In many situations relative velocity is extremely important (**Fig. 3.31**).

We'll first consider relative velocity along a straight line and then generalize to relative velocity in a plane.

Relative Velocity in One Dimension

A passenger walks with a velocity of +1.0 m/s along the aisle of a train that is moving with a velocity of +3.0 m/s (**Fig. 3.32a**). What is the passenger's velocity? It's a simple enough question, but it has no single answer. As seen by a second passenger sitting in the train, she is moving at +1.0 m/s. A person on a bicycle standing beside the train sees the walking passenger moving at +1.0 m/s + 3.0 m/s = +4.0 m/s. An observer in another train going in the opposite direction would give still another answer. We have to specify which observer we mean, and we speak of the velocity *relative* to a particular observer. The walking passenger's velocity relative to the train is +1.0 m/s, her velocity relative to the cyclist is +4.0 m/s, and so on. Each observer, equipped in principle with a meter stick and a stopwatch, forms what we call a **frame of reference**. Thus a frame of reference is a coordinate system plus a time scale.

Let's use the symbol A for the cyclist's frame of reference (at rest with respect to the ground) and the symbol B for the frame of reference of the moving train. In straight-line motion the position of a point P relative to frame A is given by $x_{P/A}$ (the position of P with respect to A), and the position of P relative to frame B is given by $x_{P/B}$ (Fig. 3.32b). The position of the origin of B with respect to the origin of A is $x_{B/A}$. Figure 3.32b shows that

$$x_{P/A} = x_{P/B} + x_{B/A} \tag{3.31}$$

In words, the coordinate of P relative to A equals the coordinate of P relative to B plus the coordinate of B relative to A.

The x-velocity of P relative to frame A, denoted by $v_{P/A\text{-}x}$, is the derivative of $x_{P/A}$ with respect to time. We can find the other velocities in the same way. So the time derivative of Eq. (3.31) gives us a relationship among the various velocities:

$$\frac{dx_{P/A}}{dt} = \frac{dx_{P/B}}{dt} + \frac{dx_{B/A}}{dt} \quad \text{or}$$

Relative velocity along a line:

$$v_{P/A\text{-}x} = v_{P/B\text{-}x} + v_{B/A\text{-}x} \tag{3.32}$$

($v_{P/A\text{-}x}$: x-velocity of P relative to A; $v_{P/B\text{-}x}$: x-velocity of P relative to B; $v_{B/A\text{-}x}$: x-velocity of B relative to A)

Getting back to the passenger on the train in Fig. 3.32a, we see that A is the cyclist's frame of reference, B is the frame of reference of the train, and point P represents the passenger. Using the above notation, we have

$$v_{P/B\text{-}x} = +1.0 \text{ m/s} \qquad v_{B/A\text{-}x} = +3.0 \text{ m/s}$$

From Eq. (3.32) the passenger's velocity $v_{P/A\text{-}x}$ relative to the cyclist is

$$v_{P/A\text{-}x} = +1.0 \text{ m/s} + 3.0 \text{ m/s} = +4.0 \text{ m/s}$$

as we already knew.

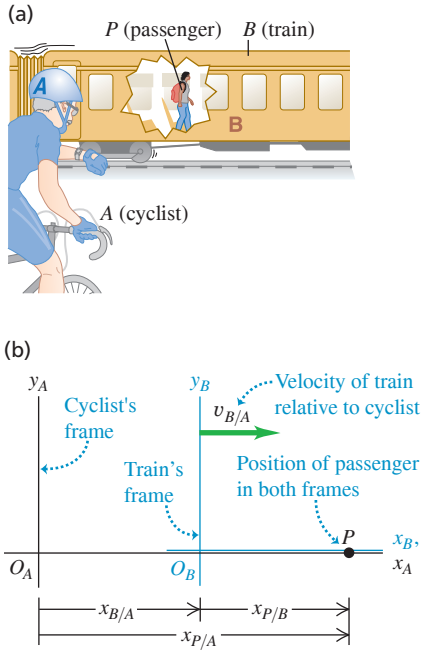
In this example, both velocities are toward the right, and we have taken this as the positive x-direction. If the passenger walks toward the *left* relative to the train, then $v_{P/B\text{-}x} = -1.0$ m/s, and her x-velocity relative to the cyclist is $v_{P/A\text{-}x} = -1.0 \text{ m/s} + 3.0 \text{ m/s} = +2.0$ m/s. The sum in Eq. (3.32) is always an algebraic sum, and any or all of the x-velocities may be negative.

When the passenger looks out the window, the stationary cyclist on the ground appears to her to be moving backward; we call the cyclist's velocity relative to her $v_{A/P\text{-}x}$. This is just the negative of the *passenger's* velocity relative to the *cyclist*, $v_{P/A\text{-}x}$. In general, if A and B are any two points or frames of reference,

$$v_{A/B\text{-}x} = -v_{B/A\text{-}x} \tag{3.33}$$

Figure **3.31** Airshow pilots face a complicated problem involving relative velocities. They must keep track of their motion relative to the air (to maintain enough airflow over the wings to sustain lift), relative to each other (to keep a tight formation without colliding), and relative to their audience (to remain in sight of the spectators).

Figure **3.32** (a) A passenger walking in a train. (b) The position of the passenger relative to the cyclist's frame of reference and the train's frame of reference.



PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 3.2 Relative Velocity

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Whenever you see the phrase "velocity relative to" or "velocity with respect to," it's likely that the concepts of relative velocity will be helpful.

SET UP *the problem:* Sketch and label each frame of reference in the problem. Each moving object has its own frame of reference; in addition, you'll almost always have to include the frame of reference of the earth's surface. (Statements such as "The car is traveling north at 90 km/h" implicitly refer to the car's velocity relative to the surface of the earth.) Use the labels to help identify the target variable. For example, if you want to find the x-velocity of a car (C) with respect to a bus (B), your target variable is $v_{C/B\text{-}x}$.

EXECUTE *the solution:* Solve for the target variable using Eq. (3.32). (If the velocities aren't along the same direction, you'll need to use the vector form of this equation, derived later in this section.) It's important to note the order of the double subscripts in Eq. (3.32): $v_{B/A\text{-}x}$ means "x-velocity of B relative to A." These subscripts obey a kind of algebra. If we regard each one as a fraction, then the fraction on the left side is the *product* of the fractions on the right side: $P/A = (P/B)(B/A)$. You can apply this rule to any number of frames of reference. For example, if there are three frames of reference A, B, and C, Eq. (3.32) becomes

$$v_{P/A\text{-}x} = v_{P/C\text{-}x} + v_{C/B\text{-}x} + v_{B/A\text{-}x}$$

EVALUATE *your answer:* Be on the lookout for stray minus signs in your answer. If the target variable is the x-velocity of a car relative to a bus $(v_{C/B\text{-}x})$, make sure that you haven't accidentally calculated the x-velocity of the *bus* relative to the *car* $(v_{B/C\text{-}x})$. If you've made this mistake, you can recover by using Eq. (3.33).

EXAMPLE 3.13 Relative velocity on a straight road

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

You drive north on a straight two-lane road at a constant 88 km/h. A truck in the other lane approaches you at a constant 104 km/h (**Fig. 3.33**). Find (a) the truck's velocity relative to you and (b) your velocity relative to the truck. (c) How do the relative velocities change after you and the truck pass each other? Treat this as a one-dimensional problem.

IDENTIFY and SET UP In this problem about relative velocities along a line, there are three reference frames: you (Y), the truck (T), and the earth's surface (E). Let the positive x-direction be north (Fig. 3.33). Then your x-velocity relative to the earth is $v_{\text{Y/E-}x} = +88$ km/h. The truck is initially approaching you, so it is moving south and its x-velocity with respect to the earth is $v_{\text{T/E-}x} = -104$ km/h. The target variables in parts (a) and (b) are $v_{\text{T/Y-}x}$ and $v_{\text{Y/T-}x}$, respectively. We'll use Eq. (3.32) to find the first target variable and Eq. (3.33) to find the second.

EXECUTE (a) To find $v_{\text{T/Y-}x}$, we write Eq. (3.32) for the known $v_{\text{T/E-}x}$ and rearrange:

$$v_{\text{T/E-}x} = v_{\text{T/Y-}x} + v_{\text{Y/E-}x}$$
$$v_{\text{T/Y-}x} = v_{\text{T/E-}x} - v_{\text{Y/E-}x} = -104 \text{ km/h} - 88 \text{ km/h} = -192 \text{ km/h}$$

The truck is moving at 192 km/h in the negative x-direction (south) relative to you.

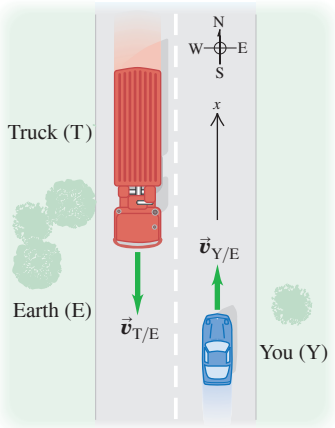
(b) From Eq. (3.33),

$$v_{\text{Y/T-}x} = -v_{\text{T/Y-}x} = -(-192 \text{ km/h}) = +192 \text{ km/h}$$

You are moving at 192 km/h in the positive x-direction (north) relative to the truck.

(c) The relative velocities do *not* change after you and the truck pass each other. The relative *positions* of the objects don't matter. After it passes you, the truck is still moving at 192 km/h toward the south relative to you, even though it is now moving away from you instead of toward you.

Figure 3.33 Reference frames for you and the truck.



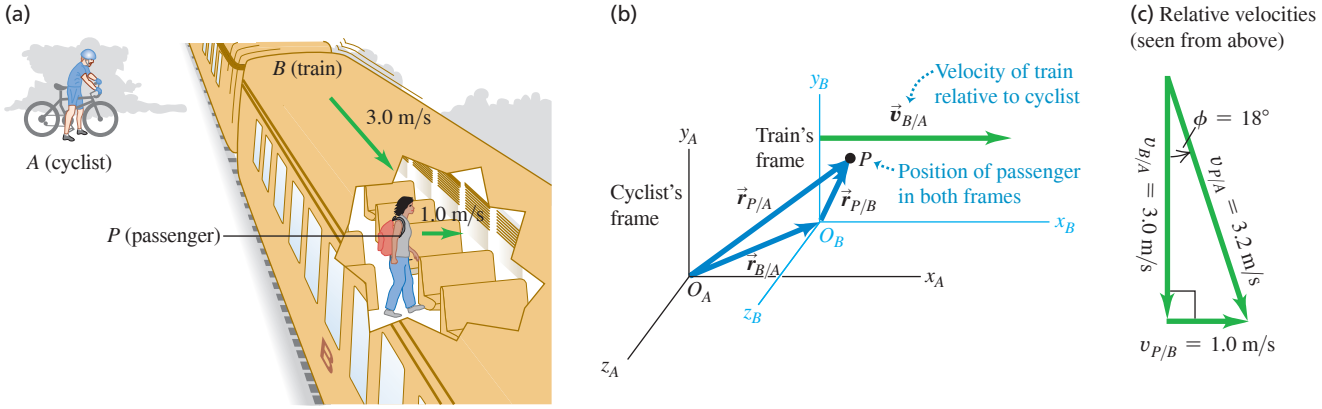
EVALUATE To check your answer in part (b), use Eq. (3.32) directly in the form $v_{\text{Y/T-}x} = v_{\text{Y/E-}x} + v_{\text{E/T-}x}$. (The x-velocity of the earth with respect to the truck is the opposite of the x-velocity of the truck with respect to the earth: $v_{\text{E/T-}x} = -v_{\text{T/E-}x}$.) Do you get the same result?

KEYCONCEPT To solve problems involving relative velocity along a line, use Eq. (3.32) and pay careful attention to the subscripts for the frames of reference in the problem.

Relative Velocity in Two or Three Dimensions

Let's extend the concept of relative velocity to include motion in a plane or in space. Suppose that the passenger in Fig. 3.32a is walking not down the aisle of the railroad car but from one side of the car to the other, with a speed of 1.0 m/s (**Fig. 3.34a**). We can again describe the passenger's position P in two frames of reference: A for the stationary ground observer and B for the moving train. But instead of coordinates x, we use position

Figure 3.34 (a) A passenger walking across a railroad car. (b) Position of the passenger relative to the cyclist's frame and the train's frame. (c) Vector diagram for the velocity of the passenger relative to the ground (the cyclist's frame), $\vec{v}_{P/A}$.



vectors $\vec{r}$ because the problem is now two-dimensional. Then, as Fig. 3.34b shows,

$$\vec{r}_{P/A} = \vec{r}_{P/B} + \vec{r}_{B/A} \tag{3.34}$$

Just as we did before, we take the time derivative of this equation to get a relationship among the various velocities; the velocity of P relative to A is $\vec{v}_{P/A} = d\vec{r}_{P/A}/dt$ and so on for the other velocities. We get

Relative velocity in space:

$$\vec{v}_{P/A} = \vec{v}_{P/B} + \vec{v}_{B/A} \tag{3.35}$$

Velocity of P relative to A = Velocity of P relative to B + Velocity of B relative to A

Equation (3.35) is known as the *Galilean velocity transformation*. It relates the velocity of an object P with respect to frame A and its velocity with respect to frame B ($\vec{v}_{P/A}$ and $\vec{v}_{P/B}$, respectively) to the velocity of frame B with respect to frame A ($\vec{v}_{B/A}$). If all three of these velocities lie along the same line, then Eq. (3.35) reduces to Eq. (3.32) for the components of the velocities along that line.

If the train is moving at $v_{B/A} = 3.0$ m/s relative to the ground and the passenger is moving at $v_{P/B} = 1.0$ m/s relative to the train, then the passenger's velocity vector $\vec{v}_{P/A}$ relative to the ground is as shown in Fig. 3.34c. The Pythagorean theorem then gives us

$$v_{P/A} = \sqrt{(3.0\text{ m/s})^2 + (1.0\text{ m/s})^2} = \sqrt{10\text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2} = 3.2\text{ m/s}$$

Figure 3.34c also shows that the *direction* of the passenger's velocity vector relative to the ground makes an angle ϕ with the train's velocity vector $\vec{v}_{B/A}$, where

$$\tan\phi = \frac{v_{P/B}}{v_{B/A}} = \frac{1.0\text{ m/s}}{3.0\text{ m/s}} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \phi = 18°$$

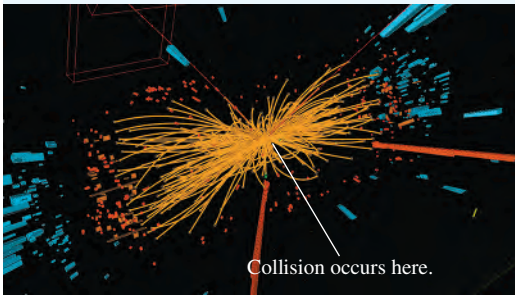
As in the case of motion along a straight line, we have the general rule that if A and B are *any* two points or frames of reference,

$$\vec{v}_{A/B} = -\vec{v}_{B/A} \tag{3.36}$$

The velocity of the passenger relative to the train is the negative of the velocity of the train relative to the passenger, and so on.

In the early 20th century Albert Einstein showed that Eq. (3.35) has to be modified when speeds approach the speed of light, denoted by c. It turns out that if the passenger in Fig. 3.32a could walk down the aisle at $0.30c$ and the train could move at $0.90c$, then her speed relative to the ground would be not $1.20c$ but $0.94c$; nothing can travel faster than light! We'll return to Einstein and his *special theory of relativity* in Chapter 37.

APPLICATION Relative Velocities near the Speed of Light This image shows a spray of subatomic particles produced by the head-on collision of two protons moving in opposite directions. Relative to the laboratory, before the collision each proton is moving only 11 m/s slower than the speed of light, $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s. According to the Galilean velocity transformation, the velocity of one proton relative to the other should be approximately $c + c = 2c$. But Einstein's special theory of relativity shows that the relative velocity of the two protons must be slower than the speed of light: In fact it is equal to c minus 0.19 millimeter per second.



EXAMPLE 3.14 Flying in a crosswind

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

An airplane's compass indicates that it is headed due north, and its airspeed indicator shows that it is moving through the air at 240 km/h. If there is a 100 km/h wind from west to east, what is the velocity of the airplane relative to the earth?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem involves velocities in two dimensions (northward and eastward), so it is a relative-velocity problem using vectors. We are given the magnitude and direction of the velocity of the plane (P) relative to the air (A). We are also given the magnitude and direction of the wind velocity, which is the velocity of the air A with respect to the earth (E):

$$\vec{v}_{P/A} = 240 \text{ km/h} \quad \text{due north}$$

$$\vec{v}_{A/E} = 100 \text{ km/h} \quad \text{due east}$$

We'll use Eq. (3.35) to find our target variables: the magnitude and direction of velocity $\vec{v}_{P/E}$ of the plane relative to the earth.

EXECUTE From Eq. (3.35) we have

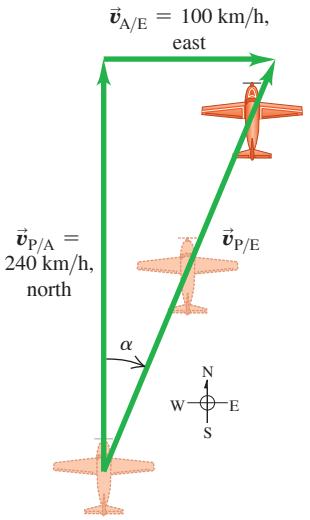
$$\vec{v}_{P/E} = \vec{v}_{P/A} + \vec{v}_{A/E}$$

Figure 3.35 shows that the three relative velocities constitute a right-triangle vector addition; the unknowns are the speed $v_{P/E}$ and the angle α. We find

$$v_{P/E} = \sqrt{(240 \text{ km/h})^2 + (100 \text{ km/h})^2} = 260 \text{ km/h}$$

$$\alpha = \arctan\left(\frac{100 \text{ km/h}}{240 \text{ km/h}}\right) = 23° \text{ E of N}$$

Figure 3.35 The plane is pointed north, but the wind blows east, giving the resultant velocity $\vec{v}_{P/E}$ relative to the earth.



EVALUATE You can check the results by taking measurements on the scale drawing in Fig. 3.35. The crosswind increases the speed of the airplane relative to the earth, but pushes the airplane off course.

KEYCONCEPT To solve problems involving relative velocity in a plane or in space, use Eq. (3.35). Pay careful attention to the subscripts for the frames of reference in the problem.

EXAMPLE 3.15 Correcting for a crosswind

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

With wind and airspeed as in Example 3.14, in what direction should the pilot head to travel due north? What will be her velocity relative to the earth?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Like Example 3.14, this is a relative-velocity problem with vectors. **Figure 3.36** is a scale drawing of the situation. Again the vectors add in accordance with Eq. (3.35) and form a right triangle:

$$\vec{v}_{P/E} = \vec{v}_{P/A} + \vec{v}_{A/E}$$

As Fig. 3.36 shows, the pilot points the nose of the airplane at an angle β into the wind to compensate for the crosswind. This angle, which tells us the direction of the vector $\vec{v}_{P/A}$ (the velocity of the airplane relative to the air), is one of our target variables. The other target variable is the speed of the airplane over the ground, which is the magnitude of the vector $\vec{v}_{P/E}$ (the velocity of the airplane relative to the earth). The known and unknown quantities are

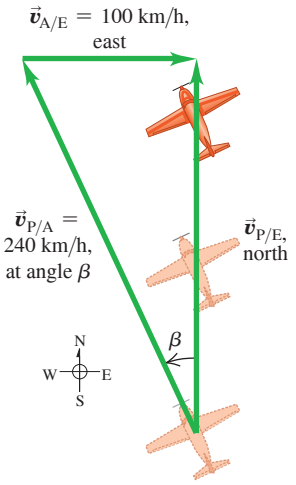
$$\vec{v}_{P/E} = \text{magnitude unknown} \quad \text{due north}$$

$$\vec{v}_{P/A} = 240 \text{ km/h} \quad \text{direction unknown}$$

$$\vec{v}_{A/E} = 100 \text{ km/h} \quad \text{due east}$$

We'll solve for the target variables by using Fig. 3.36 and trigonometry.

Figure 3.36 The pilot must point the plane in the direction of the vector $\vec{v}_{P/A}$ to travel due north relative to the earth.



EXECUTE From Fig. 3.36 the speed $v_{P/E}$ and the angle β are

$$v_{P/E} = \sqrt{(240\ \text{km/h})^2 - (100\ \text{km/h})^2} = 218\ \text{km/h}$$

$$\beta = \arcsin\left(\frac{100\ \text{km/h}}{240\ \text{km/h}}\right) = 25°$$

The pilot should point the airplane 25° west of north, and her ground speed is then 218 km/h.

EVALUATE There were two target variables—the magnitude of a vector and the direction of a vector—in both this example and Example 3.14. In Example 3.14 the magnitude and direction referred to the *same* vector ($\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/E}$); here they refer to *different* vectors ($\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/E}$ and $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/A}$).

While we expect a *headwind* to reduce an airplane's speed relative to the ground, this example shows that a *crosswind* does, too. That's an unfortunate fact of aeronautical life.

KEYCONCEPT The vector equation for relative velocity in a plane, Eq. (3.35), allows you to solve for two unknowns, such as an unknown vector magnitude and an unknown direction.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 3.5 Suppose the nose of an airplane is pointed due east and the airplane has an airspeed of 150 km/h. Due to the wind, the airplane is moving due *north* relative to the ground and its speed relative to the ground is 150 km/h. What is the velocity of the air relative to the earth? (i) 150 km/h from east to west; (ii) 150 km/h from south to north; (iii) 150 km/h from southeast to northwest; (iv) 212 km/h from east to west; (v) 212 km/h from south to north; (vi) 212 km/h from southeast to northwest; (vii) there is no possible wind velocity that could cause this.

ANSWER

(vi) The effect of the wind is to cancel the airplane's eastward motion and give it a northward motion. So the velocity of the air relative to the ground (the wind velocity) must have one 150 km/h component to the west and one 150 km/h component to the north. The combination of these is a vector of magnitude $\sqrt{(150\ \text{km/h})^2 + (150\ \text{km/h})^2} = 212\ \text{km/h}$ that points to the northwest.

CHAPTER 3 SUMMARY

Position, velocity, and acceleration vectors: The position vector $\vec{r}$ of a point P in space is the vector from the origin to P. Its components are the coordinates x, y, and z.

The average velocity vector $\vec{v}_{av}$ during the time interval Δt is the displacement $\Delta\vec{r}$ (the change in position vector $\vec{r}$) divided by Δt. The instantaneous velocity vector $\vec{v}$ is the time derivative of $\vec{r}$, and its components are the time derivatives of x, y, and z. The instantaneous speed is the magnitude of $\vec{v}$. The velocity $\vec{v}$ of a particle is always tangent to the particle's path. (See Example 3.1.)

The average acceleration vector $\vec{a}_{av}$ during the time interval Δt equals $\Delta\vec{v}$ (the change in velocity vector $\vec{v}$) divided by Δt. The instantaneous acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ is the time derivative of $\vec{v}$, and its components are the time derivatives of v_x, v_y, and v_z. (See Example 3.2.)

The component of acceleration parallel to the direction of the instantaneous velocity affects the speed, while the component of $\vec{a}$ perpendicular to $\vec{v}$ affects the direction of motion. (See Examples 3.3 and 3.4.)

$$\vec{r} = x\hat{\imath} + y\hat{\jmath} + z\hat{k} \tag{3.1}$$

$$\vec{v}_{av} = \frac{\vec{r}_2 - \vec{r}_1}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} \tag{3.2}$$

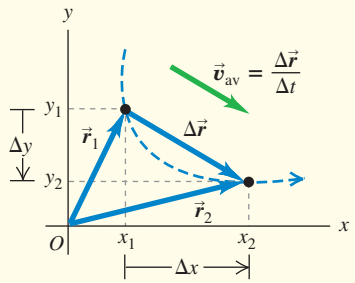
$$\vec{v} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\vec{r}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} \tag{3.3}$$

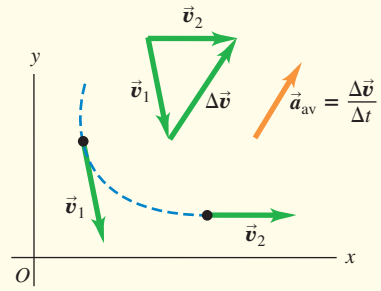
$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} \quad v_y = \frac{dy}{dt} \quad v_z = \frac{dz}{dt} \tag{3.4}$$

$$\vec{a}_{av} = \frac{\vec{v}_2 - \vec{v}_1}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{\Delta\vec{v}}{\Delta t} \tag{3.8}$$

$$\vec{a} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\vec{v}}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt} \tag{3.9}$$

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} \qquad a_y = \frac{dv_y}{dt} \qquad a_z = \frac{dv_z}{dt} \tag{3.10}$$





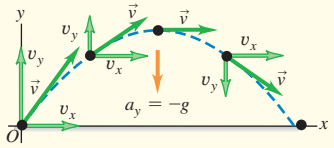
Projectile motion: In projectile motion with no air resistance, $a_x = 0$ and $a_y = -g$. The coordinates and velocity components are simple functions of time, and the shape of the path is always a parabola. We usually choose the origin to be at the initial position of the projectile. (See Examples 3.5 –3.10.)

$$x = (v_0 \cos\alpha_0)t \tag{3.19}$$

$$y = (v_0 \sin\alpha_0)t - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 \tag{3.20}$$

$$v_x = v_0 \cos\alpha_0 \tag{3.21}$$

$$v_y = v_0 \sin\alpha_0 - gt \tag{3.22}$$

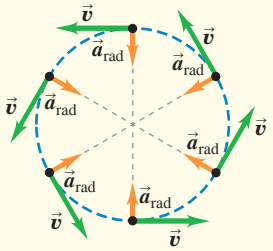


Uniform and nonuniform circular motion: When a particle moves in a circular path of radius R with constant speed v (uniform circular motion), its acceleration $\vec{a}$ is directed toward the center of the circle and perpendicular to $\vec{v}$. The magnitude a_{rad} of this radial acceleration can be expressed in terms of v and R or in terms of R and the period T (the time for one revolution), where $v = 2\pi R/T$. (See Examples 3.11 and 3.12.)

If the speed is not constant in circular motion (nonuniform circular motion), there is still a radial component of $\vec{a}$ given by Eq. (3.27) or (3.29), but there is also a component of $\vec{a}$ parallel (tangential) to the path. This tangential component is equal to the rate of change of speed, dv/dt.

$$a_{rad} = \frac{v^2}{R} \tag{3.27}$$

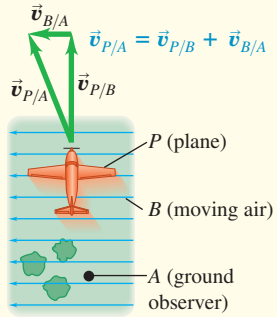
$$a_{rad} = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} \tag{3.29}$$



Relative velocity: When an object P moves relative to an object (or reference frame) B, and B moves relative to an object (or reference frame) A, we denote the velocity of P relative to B by $\vec{v}_{P/B}$, the velocity of P relative to A by $\vec{v}_{P/A}$, and the velocity of B relative to A by $\vec{v}_{B/A}$. If these velocities are all along the same line, their components along that line are related by Eq. (3.32). More generally, these velocities are related by Eq. (3.35). (See Examples 3.13 –3.15.)

$$v_{P/A\text{-}x} = v_{P/B\text{-}x} + v_{B/A\text{-}x} \tag{3.32}$$
(relative velocity along a line)

$$\vec{v}_{P/A} = \vec{v}_{P/B} + \vec{v}_{B/A} \tag{3.35}$$
(relative velocity in space)



Chapter 3 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE VARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, and 3.9 (Section 3.3) before attempting these problems. In all problems, ignore air resistance.

VP3.9.1 You launch a projectile from level ground at a speed of 25.0 m/s and an angle of 36.9° above the horizontal. (a) How long after it is launched does the projectile reach its maximum height above the ground, and what is that maximum height? (b) How long after the projectile is launched does it return to ground level, and how far from its launch point does it land?

VP3.9.2 You throw a baseball at an angle of 30.0° above the horizontal. It reaches the highest point of its trajectory 1.05 s later. (a) At what speed does the baseball leave your hand? (b) What is the maximum height above the launch point that the baseball reaches?

VP3.9.3 You toss a walnut at a speed of 15.0 m/s at an angle of 50.0° above the horizontal. The launch point is on the roof of a building that is 20.0 m above the ground. (a) How long after it is launched does the walnut reach the ground? (b) How far does the walnut travel horizontally from launch point to landing point? (c) What are the horizontal and vertical components of the walnut's velocity just before it reaches the ground?

VP3.9.4 You use a slingshot to launch a potato horizontally from the edge of a cliff with speed v_0. The acceleration due to gravity is g. Take the origin at the launch point. (a) How long after you launch the potato has it moved as far horizontally from the launch point as it has moved vertically? What are the coordinates of the potato at this time? (b) How long after you launch the potato is it moving in a direction exactly 45° below the horizontal? What are the coordinates of the potato at this time?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 3.11 and 3.12 (Section 3.4) before attempting these problems.

VP3.12.1 A cyclist going around a circular track at 10.0 m/s has a centripetal acceleration of 5.00 m/s^2. What is the radius of the curve?

VP3.12.2 A race car is moving at 40.0 m/s around a circular racetrack of radius 265 m. Calculate (a) the period of the motion and (b) the car's centripetal acceleration.

VP3.12.3 The wheel of a stationary exercise bicycle at your gym makes one rotation in 0.670 s. Consider two points on this wheel: Point P is 10.0 cm from the rotation axis, and point Q is 20.0 cm from the rotation axis. Find (a) the speed of each point on the spinning wheel and (b) the centripetal acceleration of each point. (c) For points on this spinning wheel, as the distance from the axis increases, does the speed increase or decrease? Does the centripetal acceleration increase or decrease?

VP3.12.4 The planets Venus, Earth, and Mars all move in approximately circular orbits around the sun. Use the data in the table to find (a) the speed of each planet in its orbit and (b) the centripetal acceleration of each planet. (c) As the size of a planet's orbit increases, does the speed increase or decrease? Does the centripetal acceleration increase or decrease?

Planet	Orbital radius (m)	Orbital period (days)
Venus	1.08×10^{11}	225
Earth	1.50×10^{11}	365
Mars	2.28×10^{11}	687

VP3.12.5 Object A is moving at speed v in a circle of radius R. Object B is moving at speed $2v$ in a circle of radius $R/2$. (a) What is the ratio of the period of object A to the period of object B? (b) What is the ratio of the centripetal acceleration of object A to the centripetal acceleration of object B?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15 (Section 3.5) before attempting these problems.

VP3.15.1 A police car in a high-speed chase is traveling north on a two-lane highway at 35.0 m/s. In the southbound lane of the same highway, an SUV is moving at 18.0 m/s. Take the positive x-direction to be toward the north. Find the x-velocity of (a) the police car relative to the SUV and (b) the SUV relative to the police car.

VP3.15.2 Race cars A and B are driving on the same circular racetrack at the same speed of 45.0 m/s. At a given instant car A is on the north side of the track moving eastward and car B is on the south side of the track moving westward. Find the velocity vector (magnitude and direction) of (a) car A relative to car B and (b) car B relative to car A. (c) Does the relative velocity have a component along the line connecting the two cars? Are the two cars approaching each other, moving away from each other, or neither?

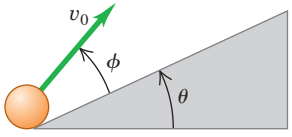
VP3.15.3 Two vehicles approach an intersection: a truck moving eastbound at 16.0 m/s and an SUV moving southbound at 20.0 m/s. Find the velocity vector (magnitude and direction) of (a) the truck relative to the SUV and (b) the SUV relative to the truck.

VP3.15.4 A jet is flying due north relative to the ground. The speed of the jet relative to the ground is 155 m/s. The wind at the jet's altitude is 40.0 m/s toward the northeast (45.0° north of east). Find the speed of the jet relative to the air (its airspeed) and the direction in which the pilot of the jet must point the plane so that it travels due north relative to the ground.

BRIDGING PROBLEM Launching Up an Incline

You fire a ball with an initial speed v_0 at an angle ϕ above the surface of an incline, which is itself inclined at an angle θ above the horizontal (**Fig. 3.37**). (a) Find the distance, measured along the incline, from the launch point to the point when the ball strikes the incline. (b) What angle ϕ gives the maximum range, measured along the incline? Ignore air resistance.

Figure 3.37 Launching a ball from an inclined ramp.



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Since there's no air resistance, this is a problem in projectile motion. The goal is to find the point where the ball's parabolic trajectory intersects the incline.

Continued

2. Choose the x- and y-axes and the position of the origin. When in doubt, use the suggestions given in Problem-Solving Strategy 3.1 in Section 3.3.
3. In the projectile equations in Section 3.3, the launch angle α_0 is measured from the horizontal. What is this angle in terms of θ and ϕ? What are the initial x- and y-components of the ball's initial velocity?
4. You'll need to write an equation that relates x and y for points along the incline. What is this equation? (This takes just geometry and trigonometry, not physics.)

EXECUTE

5. Write the equations for the x-coordinate and y-coordinate of the ball as functions of time t.
6. When the ball hits the incline, x and y are related by the equation that you found in step 4. Based on this, at what time t does the ball hit the incline?
7. Based on your answer from step 6, at what coordinates x and y does the ball land on the incline? How far is this point from the launch point?
8. What value of ϕ gives the *maximum* distance from the launch point to the landing point? (Use your knowledge of calculus.)

EVALUATE

9. Check your answers for the case $\theta = 0$, which corresponds to the incline being horizontal rather than tilted. (You already know the answers for this case. Do you know why?)

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q3.1 A simple pendulum (a mass swinging at the end of a string) swings back and forth in a circular arc. What is the direction of the acceleration of the mass when it is at the ends of the swing? At the midpoint? In each case, explain how you obtained your answer.

Q3.2 Redraw Fig. 3.11a if $\vec{a}$ is antiparallel to $\vec{v}_1$. Does the particle move in a straight line? What happens to its speed?

Q3.3 A projectile moves in a parabolic path without air resistance. Is there any point at which $\vec{a}$ is parallel to $\vec{v}$? Perpendicular to $\vec{v}$? Explain.

Q3.4 A book slides off a horizontal tabletop. As it leaves the table's edge, the book has a horizontal velocity of magnitude v_0. The book strikes the floor in time t. If the initial velocity of the book is doubled to $2v_0$, what happens to (a) the time the book is in the air, (b) the horizontal distance the book travels while it is in the air, and (c) the speed of the book just before it reaches the floor? In particular, does each of these quantities stay the same, double, or change in another way? Explain.

Q3.5 At the instant that you fire a bullet horizontally from a rifle, you drop a bullet from the height of the gun barrel. If there is no air resistance, which bullet hits the level ground first? Explain.

Q3.6 A package falls out of an airplane that is flying in a straight line at a constant altitude and speed. If you ignore air resistance, what would be the path of the package as observed by the pilot? As observed by a person on the ground?

Q3.7 Sketch the six graphs of the x- and y-components of position, velocity, and acceleration versus time for projectile motion with $x_0 = y_0 = 0$ and $0 < \alpha_0 < 90°$.

Q3.8 If a jumping frog can give itself the same initial speed regardless of the direction in which it jumps (forward or straight up), how is the maximum vertical height to which it can jump related to its maximum horizontal range $R_{max} = v_0^2/g$?

Q3.9 A projectile is fired upward at an angle θ above the horizontal with an initial speed v_0. At its maximum height, what are its velocity vector, its speed, and its acceleration vector?

Q3.10 In uniform circular motion, what are the *average* velocity and *average* acceleration for one revolution? Explain.

Q3.11 In uniform circular motion, how does the acceleration change when the speed is increased by a factor of 3? When the radius is decreased by a factor of 2?

Q3.12 In uniform circular motion, the acceleration is perpendicular to the velocity at every instant. Is this true when the motion is not uniform—that is, when the speed is not constant?

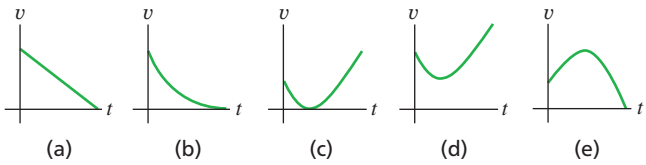
Q3.13 Raindrops hitting the side windows of a car in motion often leave diagonal streaks even if there is no wind. Why? Is the explanation the same or different for diagonal streaks on the windshield?

Q3.14 In a rainstorm with a strong wind, what determines the best position in which to hold an umbrella?

Q3.15 You are on the west bank of a river that is flowing north with a speed of 1.2 m/s. Your swimming speed relative to the water is 1.5 m/s, and the river is 60 m wide. What is your path relative to the earth that allows you to cross the river in the shortest time? Explain your reasoning.

Q3.16 A stone is thrown into the air at an angle above the horizontal and feels negligible air resistance. Which graph in **Fig. Q3.16** best depicts the stone's *speed* v as a function of time t while it is in the air?

Figure **Q3.16**



EXERCISES

Section 3.1 Position and Velocity Vectors

3.1 • A squirrel has x- and y-coordinates (1.5 m, 2.9 m) at time $t_1 = 0$ and coordinates (5.9 m, −0.6 m) at time $t_2 = 3.0$ s. For this time interval, find (a) the components of the average velocity, and (b) the magnitude and direction of the average velocity.

3.2 • A rhinoceros is at the origin of coordinates at time $t_1 = 0$. For the time interval from $t_1 = 0$ to $t_2 = 12.5$ s, the rhino's average velocity has x-component −4.0 m/s and y-component 4.3 m/s. At time $t_2 = 12.5$ s, (a) what are the x- and y-coordinates of the rhino? (b) How far is the rhino from the origin?

3.3 •• **CALC** A web page designer creates an animation in which a dot on a computer screen has position

$$\vec{r} = [4.4\text{ cm} + (2.8\text{ cm/s}^2)t^2]\hat{\imath} + (5.5\text{ cm/s})t\hat{\jmath}.$$

(a) Find the magnitude and direction of the dot's average velocity between $t = 0$ and $t = 2.0$ s. (b) Find the magnitude and direction of the instantaneous velocity at $t = 0$, $t = 1.0$ s, and $t = 2.0$ s. (c) Sketch the dot's trajectory from $t = 0$ to $t = 2.0$ s, and show the velocities calculated in part (b).

3.4 • **CALC** The position of a squirrel running in a park is given by $\vec{r} = [(0.280\text{ m/s})t + (0.0360\text{ m/s}^2)t^2]\hat{\imath} + (0.0190\text{ m/s}^3)t^3\hat{\jmath}$. (a) What are $v_x(t)$ and $v_y(t)$, the x- and y-components of the velocity of the squirrel, as functions of time? (b) At $t = 5.74$ s, how far is the squirrel from its initial position? (c) At $t = 5.74$ s, what are the magnitude and direction of the squirrel's velocity?

Section 3.2 The Acceleration Vector

3.5 • A jet plane is flying at a constant altitude. At time $t_1 = 0$, it has components of velocity $v_x = 88$ m/s, $v_y = 115$ m/s. At time $t_2 = 30.0$ s, the components are $v_x = -175$ m/s, $v_y = 35$ m/s. (a) Sketch the velocity vectors at t_1 and t_2. How do these two vectors differ? For this time interval calculate (b) the components of the average acceleration, and (c) the magnitude and direction of the average acceleration.

3.6 •• A dog running in an open field has components of velocity $v_x = 3.2$ m/s and $v_y = -1.8$ m/s at $t_1 = 11.1$ s. For the time interval from $t_1 = 11.1$ s to $t_2 = 24.9$ s, the average acceleration of the dog has magnitude 0.54 m/s^2 and direction 33.5° measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis. At $t_2 = 24.9$ s, (a) what are the x- and y-components of the dog's velocity? (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the dog's velocity? (c) Sketch the velocity vectors at t_1 and t_2. How do these two vectors differ?

3.7 •• **CALC** The coordinates of a bird flying in the xy-plane are given by $x(t) = \alpha t$ and $y(t) = 3.0\text{ m} - \beta t^2$, where $\alpha = 2.4$ m/s and $\beta = 1.2$ m/s^2. (a) Sketch the path of the bird between $t = 0$ and $t = 2.0$ s. (b) Calculate the velocity and acceleration vectors of the bird as functions of time. (c) Calculate the magnitude and direction of the bird's velocity and acceleration at $t = 2.0$ s. (d) Sketch the velocity and acceleration vectors at $t = 2.0$ s. At this instant, is the bird's speed increasing, decreasing, or not changing? Is the bird turning? If so, in what direction?

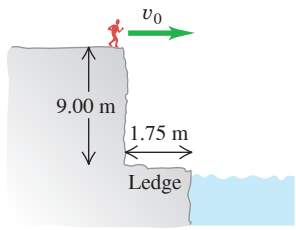
3.8 • **CALC** A remote-controlled car is moving in a vacant parking lot. The velocity of the car as a function of time is given by $\vec{v} = [5.00\text{ m/s} - (0.0180\text{ m/s}^3)t^2]\hat{\imath} + [2.00\text{ m/s} + (0.550\text{ m/s}^2)t]\hat{\jmath}$. (a) What are $a_x(t)$ and $a_y(t)$, the x- and y-components of the car's velocity as functions of time? (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the car's velocity at $t = 6.87$ s? (c) What are the magnitude and direction of the car's acceleration at $t = 6.87$ s?

SECTION 3.3 Projectile Motion

3.9 • A physics book slides off a horizontal tabletop with a speed of 1.40 m/s. It strikes the floor in 0.320 s. Ignore air resistance. Find (a) the height of the tabletop above the floor; (b) the horizontal distance from the edge of the table to the point where the book strikes the floor; (c) the horizontal and vertical components of the book's velocity, and the magnitude and direction of its velocity, just before the book reaches the floor. (d) Draw x-t, y-t, v_x-t, and v_y-t graphs for the motion.

3.10 •• A daring 510 N swimmer dives off a cliff with a running horizontal leap, as shown in **Fig. E3.10**. What must her minimum speed be just as she leaves the top of the cliff so that she will miss the ledge at the bottom, which is 1.75 m wide and 9.00 m below the top of the cliff?

Figure **E3.10**



3.11 • Crickets Chirpy and Milada jump from the top of a vertical cliff. Chirpy drops downward and reaches the ground in 3.10 s, while Milada jumps horizontally with an initial speed of 94.0 cm/s. How far from the base of the cliff will Milada hit the ground? Ignore air resistance.

3.12 • You throw a basketball with an initial upward velocity component of 8.0 m/s and a horizontal velocity component of 12.0 m/s. Ignore air resistance. (a) How much time is required for the basketball to reach the highest point of the trajectory? (b) How high is this point? (c) How much time (after it is thrown) is required for the basketball to return to its original level? How does this compare with the time calculated in part (a)? (d) How far has the basketball traveled horizontally during this time? (e) Draw x-t, y-t, v_x-t, and v_y-t graphs for the motion.

3.13 •• **Leaping the River I.** During a storm, a car traveling on a level horizontal road comes upon a bridge that has washed out. The driver must get to the other side, so he decides to try leaping the river with his car. The side of the road the car is on is 21.5 m above the river, while the opposite side is only 2.0 m above the river. The river itself is a raging torrent 57.0 m wide. (a) How fast should the car be traveling at the time it leaves the road in order just to clear the river and land safely on the opposite side? (b) What is the speed of the car just before it lands on the other side?

3.14 • **BIO** **The Champion Jumper of the Insect World.** The froghopper, *Philaenus spumarius,* holds the world record for insect jumps. When leaping at an angle of 58.0° above the horizontal, some of the tiny critters have reached a maximum height of 58.7 cm above the level ground. (See *Nature,* Vol. 424, July 31, 2003, p. 509.) Neglect air resistance in answering the following. (a) What was the takeoff speed for such a leap? (b) What horizontal distance did the froghopper cover for this world-record leap?

3.15 •• Inside a starship at rest on the earth, a ball rolls off the top of a horizontal table and lands a distance D from the foot of the table. This starship now lands on the unexplored Planet X. The commander, Captain Curious, rolls the same ball off the same table with the same initial speed as on earth and finds that it lands a distance $2.72D$ from the foot of the table. What is the acceleration due to gravity on Planet X?

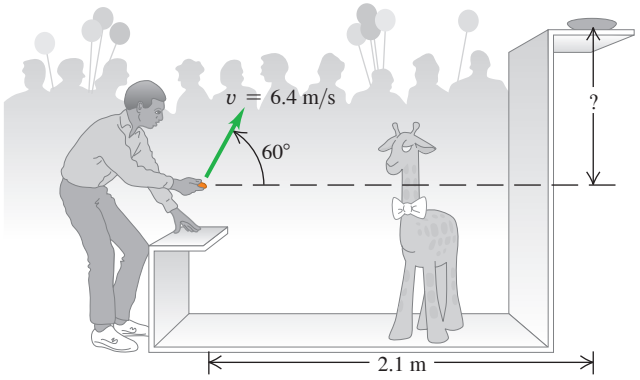
3.16 • On level ground a shell is fired with an initial velocity of 71.0 m/s at 55.9° above the horizontal and feels no appreciable air resistance. (a) Find the horizontal and vertical components of the shell's initial velocity. (b) How long does it take the shell to reach its highest point? (c) Find its maximum height above the ground. (d) How far from its firing point does the shell land? (e) At its highest point, find the horizontal and vertical components of its acceleration and velocity.

3.17 • A major leaguer hits a baseball so that it leaves the bat at a speed of 33.0 m/s and at an angle of 38.5° above the horizontal. Ignore air resistance. (a) At what *two* times is the baseball at a height of 10.7 m above the point at which it left the bat? (b) Calculate the horizontal and vertical components of the baseball's velocity at each of the two times calculated in part (a). (c) What are the magnitude and direction of the baseball's velocity when it returns to the level at which it left the bat?

3.18 • A shot putter releases the shot some distance above the level ground with a velocity of 12.0 m/s, 51.0° above the horizontal. The shot hits the ground 2.08 s later. Ignore air resistance. (a) What are the components of the shot's acceleration while in flight? (b) What are the components of the shot's velocity at the beginning and at the end of its trajectory? (c) How far did she throw the shot horizontally? (d) Why does the expression for R in Example 3.8 *not* give the correct answer for part (c)? (e) How high was the shot above the ground when she released it? (f) Draw x-t, y-t, v_x-t, and v_y-t graphs for the motion.

3.19 •• **Win the Prize.** At a funfair stall, you can win a plush giraffe toy if you toss a coin into a small dish. The dish is on a shelf above the point where the coin leaves your hand and is a horizontal distance of 2.1 m from this point (**Fig. E3.19**). If you toss the coin with a velocity of 6.4 m/s at an angle of 60° above the horizontal, the coin will land in the dish. Ignore air resistance. (a) What is the height of the shelf above the point where the coin leaves your hand? (b) What is the vertical component of the velocity of the coin just before it lands in the dish?

Figure **E3.19**



3.20 • Firefighters use a high-pressure hose to shoot a stream of water at a burning building. The water has a speed of 25.0 m/s as it leaves the end of the hose and then exhibits projectile motion. The firefighters adjust the angle of elevation α of the hose until the water takes 3.00 s to reach a building 45.0 m away. Ignore air resistance; assume that the end of the hose is at ground level. (a) Find α. (b) Find the speed and acceleration of the water at the highest point in its trajectory. (c) How high above the ground does the water strike the building, and how fast is it moving just before it hits the building?

3.21 •• A man stands on the roof of a 15.0-m-tall building and throws a rock with a speed of 30.0 m/s at an angle of 33.0° above the horizontal. Ignore air resistance. Calculate (a) the maximum height above the roof that the rock reaches; (b) the speed of the rock just before it strikes the ground; and (c) the horizontal range from the base of the building to the point where the rock strikes the ground. (d) Draw x-t, y-t, v_x-t, and v_y-t graphs for the motion.

3.22 •• At $t = 0$ a rock is projected from ground level with a speed of 15.0 m/s and at an angle of 53.0° above the horizontal. Neglect air resistance. At what two times t is the rock 5.00 m above the ground? At each of these two times, what are the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity of the rock? Let v_{0x} and v_{0y} be in the positive x- and y-directions, respectively.

3.23 • Estimate the maximum horizontal distance that you can throw a basketball. (a) Based on your estimate, what is the speed of the basketball as it leaves your hand? (b) If you could throw the basketball straight up at the same speed as in part (a), how high would it go? (c) The value of g on Mars is 3.7 m/s^2. What horizontal distance can you throw a basketball on Mars if you throw it with the same initial speed as in part (a)?

Section 3.4 Motion in a Circle

3.24 • Merry-go-rounds are a common ride in park playgrounds. The ride is a horizontal disk that rotates about a vertical axis at their center. A typical size is a diameter of 3.6 m. A rider sits at the outer edge of the disk and holds onto a metal bar while someone pushes on the ride to make it rotate. Estimate a typical time for one rotation. (a) For your estimated time, what is the speed of the rider, in m/s? (b) What is the rider's radial acceleration, in m/s^2? (c) What is the rider's radial acceleration if the time for one rotation is halved?

3.25 • The earth has a radius of 6380 km and turns around once on its axis in 24 h. (a) What is the radial acceleration of an object at the earth's equator? Give your answer in m/s^2 and as a fraction of g. (b) If a_{rad} at the equator is greater than g, objects will fly off the earth's surface and into space. (We'll see the reason for this in Chapter 5.) What would the period of the earth's rotation have to be for this to occur?

3.26 •• BIO **Dizziness.** Our balance is maintained, at least in part, by the endolymph fluid in the inner ear. Spinning displaces this fluid, causing dizziness. Suppose that a skater is spinning very fast at 2.8 revolutions per second about a vertical axis through the center of his head. Take the inner ear to be approximately 7.0 cm from the axis of spin. (The distance varies from person to person.) What is the radial acceleration (in m/s^2 and in g's) of the endolymph fluid?

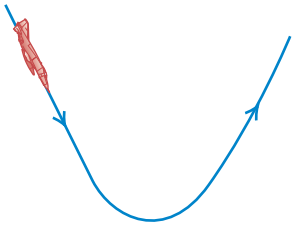
3.27 • A small ball is attached to the lower end of a 0.800-m-long string, and the other end of the string is tied to a horizontal rod. The string makes a constant angle of 37.0° with the vertical as the ball moves at a constant speed in a horizontal circle. If it takes the ball 0.600 s to complete one revolution, what is the magnitude of the radial acceleration of the ball?

3.28 •• A model of a helicopter rotor has four blades, each 3.00 m long from the central shaft to the blade tip. The model is rotated in a wind tunnel at 470 rev/min. (a) What is the linear speed of the blade tip, in m/s? (b) What is the radial acceleration of the blade tip expressed as a multiple of g?

3.29 • BIO **Pilot Blackout in a Power Dive.** A jet plane comes in for a downward dive as shown in **Fig. E3.29.** The bottom part of the path is a quarter circle with a radius of curvature of 280 m. According to medical tests, pilots will lose consciousness when they pull out of a dive at an upward acceleration greater than 5.5g. At what minimum speed (in m/s and in km/h) will the pilot black out during this dive?

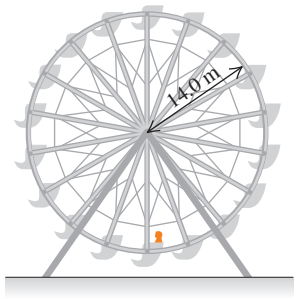
3.30 • An object moves in a horizontal circle at constant speed v (in units of m/s). It takes the object T seconds to complete one revolution. Derive an expression that gives the radial acceleration of the ball in terms of v and T, but not r. (a) If the speed doubles, by what factor must the period T change if a_{rad} is to remain unchanged? (b) If the radius doubles, by what factor must the period change to keep a_{rad} the same?

Figure **E3.29**



3.31 • A Ferris wheel with radius 14.0 m is turning about a horizontal axis through its center (**Fig. E3.31**). The linear speed of a passenger on the rim is constant and equal to 7.13 m/s. What are the magnitude and direction of the passenger's acceleration as she passes through (a) the lowest point in her circular motion and (b) the highest point in her circular motion? (c) How much time does it take the Ferris wheel to make one revolution?

Figure **E3.31**



3.32 • A roller coaster car moves in a vertical circle of radius R. At the top of the circle the car has speed v_1, and at the bottom of the circle it has speed v_2, where $v_2 > v_1$. (a) When the car is at the top of its circular path, what is the direction of its radial acceleration, $a_{\text{rad, top}}$? (b) When the car is at the bottom of its circular path, what is the direction of its radial acceleration, $a_{\text{rad, bottom}}$? (c) In terms of v_1 and v_2, what is the ratio $a_{\text{rad, bottom}}/a_{\text{rad, top}}$?

3.33 •• **BIO Hypergravity.** TsF-18 at the Yuri Gagarin Cosmonaut Training Centre, Star City, Russia, is the world's largest centrifuge. It is used to test the effects of very large accelerations ("hypergravity") on test pilots, cosmonauts, and astronauts. In this device, an arm 18.00 m long rotates about one end in a horizontal plane, and an astronaut is strapped in a seat at the other end, with their back parallel to the floor, is aligned along the centrifuge's arm. The device can reach up to $30g$, but a typical acceleration to which humans are subjected in it is between $4g$ and $9g$. (a) How fast must the astronaut's head be moving to experience a $9g$ acceleration (suppose that it is at the outermost end of the centrifuge's arm)? (b) What is the *difference* between the acceleration of their head and feet (suppose that the horizontal distance between the top of the head and the feet is 1.40 m; remember that the astronaut is seated during the process!)? (c) How fast in rpm (rev/min) is the arm turning to produce a $9g$ acceleration?

3.34 • The radius of the earth's orbit around the sun (assumed to be circular) is 1.50×10^8 km, and the earth travels around this orbit in 365 days. (a) What is the magnitude of the orbital velocity of the earth, in m/s? (b) What is the magnitude of the radial acceleration of the earth toward the sun, in m/s^2? (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the motion of the planet Mercury (orbit radius $= 5.79 \times 10^7$ km, orbital period $= 88.0$ days).

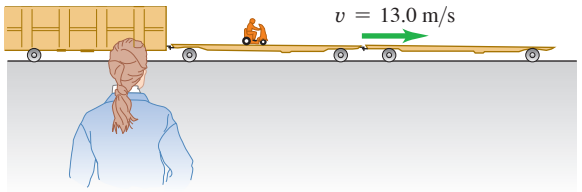
Section 3.5 Relative Velocity

3.35 • A travelator in an airport terminal moves at 1.4 m/s and is 32.0 m long. If a woman steps on at one end and walks at 1.7 m/s relative to the travelator how much time does it take her to reach the opposite end if she walks (a) in the same direction the travelator is moving? (b) In the opposite direction?

3.36 • A flat wagon is traveling to the right at a speed of 13.0 m/s relative to an observer standing on the ground. Someone is riding a motor scooter on the flat wagon (**Fig. E3.36**). What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the scooter relative to the wagon if the scooter's velocity relative to the observer on the ground is (a) 18.0 m/s to the right? (b) 3.0 m/s to the left? (c) zero?

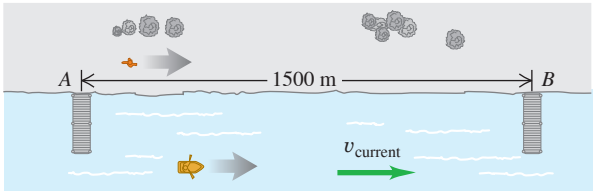
3.37 •• A canoe has a velocity of 0.41 m/s southeast relative to the earth. The canoe is on a river that is flowing 0.60 m/s east relative to the earth. Find the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the canoe relative to the river.

Figure **E3.36**



3.38 • Two piers, A and B, are located on a river; B is 1500 m downstream from A (**Fig. E3.38**). Two friends must make round trips from pier A to pier B and return. One rows a boat at a constant speed of 4.00 km/h relative to the water; the other walks on the shore at a constant speed of 4.00 km/h. The velocity of the river is 2.80 km/h in the direction from A to B. How much time does it take each person to make the round trip?

Figure **E3.38**



3.39 •• **BIO Bird Migration.** Canada geese migrate essentially along a north–south direction for well over a thousand kilometers in some cases, traveling at speeds up to about 100 km/h. If one goose is flying at 100 km/h relative to the air but a 50 km/h wind is blowing from west to east, (a) at what angle relative to the north–south direction should this bird head to travel directly southward relative to the ground? (b) How long will it take the goose to cover a ground distance of 550 km from north to south? (*Note:* Even on cloudy nights, many birds can navigate by using the earth's magnetic field to fix the north–south direction.)

3.40 •• The nose of an ultralight plane is pointed due south, and its airspeed indicator shows 35 m/s. The plane is in a 10 m/s wind blowing toward the southwest relative to the earth. (a) In a vector-addition diagram, show the relationship of $\vec{v}_{\text{P/E}}$ (the velocity of the plane relative to the earth) to the two given vectors. (b) Let x be east and y be north, and find the components of $\vec{v}_{\text{P/E}}$. (c) Find the magnitude and direction of $\vec{v}_{\text{P/E}}$.

3.41 • **Crossing the River I.** A river flows due south with a speed of 2.0 m/s. You steer a motorboat across the river; your velocity relative to the water is 4.2 m/s due east. The river is 500 m wide. (a) What is your velocity (magnitude and direction) relative to the earth? (b) How much time is required to cross the river? (c) How far south of your starting point will you reach the opposite bank?

3.42 • **Crossing the River II.** (a) In which direction should the motorboat in Exercise 3.41 head to reach a point on the opposite bank directly east from your starting point? (The boat's speed relative to the water remains 4.2 m/s.) (b) What is the velocity of the boat relative to the earth? (c) How much time is required to cross the river?

3.43 •• An airplane pilot wishes to fly due west. A wind of 80.0 km/h is blowing toward the south. (a) If the airspeed of the plane (its speed in still air) is 320.0 km/h, in which direction should the pilot head? (b) What is the speed of the plane over the ground? Draw a vector diagram.

PROBLEMS

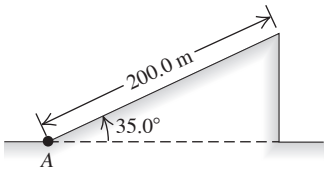
3.44 •• **CP CALC** A dog in an open field is at rest under a tree at time $t = 0$ and then runs with acceleration $\vec{a}(t) = (0.400 \text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\imath} - (0.180 \text{ m/s}^3)t\hat{\jmath}$. How far is the dog from the tree 8.00 s after it starts to run?

3.45 •• **CALC** If $\vec{r} = bt^2\hat{\imath} + ct^3\hat{\jmath}$, where b and c are positive constants, when does the velocity vector make an angle of 45.0° with the x- and y-axes?

3.46 ••• **CALC** A faulty model rocket moves in the xy-plane (the positive y-direction is vertically upward). The rocket's acceleration has components $a_x(t) = \alpha t^2$ and $a_y(t) = \beta - \gamma t$, where $\alpha = 2.50\ \text{m/s}^4$, $\beta = 9.00\ \text{m/s}^2$, and $\gamma = 1.40\ \text{m/s}^3$. At $t = 0$ the rocket is at the origin and has velocity $\vec{v}_0 = v_{0x}\hat{\imath} + v_{0y}\hat{\jmath}$ with $v_{0x} = 1.00\ \text{m/s}$ and $v_{0y} = 7.00\ \text{m/s}$. (a) Calculate the velocity and position vectors as functions of time. (b) What is the maximum height reached by the rocket? (c) What is the horizontal displacement of the rocket when it returns to $y = 0$?

3.47 ••• **CP** A test rocket starting from rest at point A is launched by accelerating it along a 200.0-m incline at $1.48\ \text{m/s}^2$ (**Fig. P3.47**). The incline rises at 35.0° above the horizontal, and at the instant the rocket leaves it, the engines turn off and the rocket is subject to gravity only (ignore air resistance). Find (a) the maximum height above the ground that the rocket reaches, and (b) the rocket's greatest horizontal range beyond point A.

Figure **P3.47**



3.48 •• **CALC** The position of a dragonfly that is flying parallel to the ground is given as a function of time by $\vec{r} = [2.90\ \text{m} + (0.0900\ \text{m/s}^2)t^2]\hat{\imath} - (0.0150\ \text{m/s}^3)t^3\hat{\jmath}$. (a) At what value of t does the velocity vector of the dragonfly make an angle of 32.0° clockwise from the $+x$-axis? (b) At the time calculated in part (a), what are the magnitude and direction of the dragonfly's acceleration vector?

3.49 •• In fighting forest fires, airplanes work in support of ground crews by dropping water on the fires. For practice, a pilot drops a canister of red dye, hoping to hit a target on the ground below. If the plane is flying in a horizontal path 90.0 m above the ground and has a speed of 62.0 m/s at what horizontal distance from the target should the pilot release the canister? Ignore air resistance.

3.50 •• **CALC** A bird flies in the xy-plane with a velocity vector given by $\vec{v} = (\alpha - \beta t^2)\hat{\imath} + \gamma t\hat{\jmath}$, with $\alpha = 2.4\ \text{m/s}$, $\beta = 1.6\ \text{m/s}^3$, and $\gamma = 4.0\ \text{m/s}^2$. The positive y-direction is vertically upward. At $t = 0$ the bird is at the origin. (a) Calculate the position and acceleration vectors of the bird as functions of time. (b) What is the bird's altitude (y-coordinate) as it flies over $x = 0$ for the first time after $t = 0$?

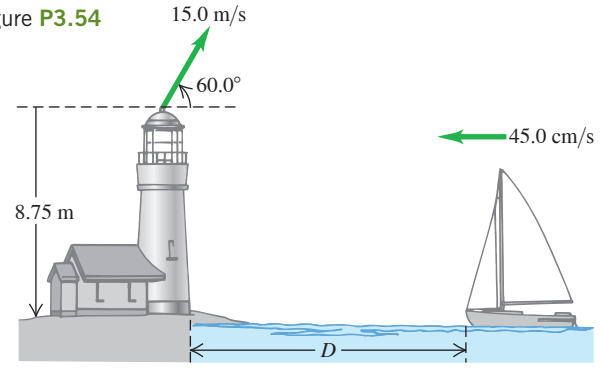
3.51 ••• A movie stuntwoman drops from a helicopter that is 30.0 m above the ground and moving with a constant velocity whose components are 10.0 m/s upward and 15.0 m/s horizontal and toward the south. Ignore air resistance. (a) Where on the ground (relative to the position of the helicopter when she drops) should the stuntwoman have placed foam mats to break her fall? (b) Draw x-t, y-t, v_x-t, and v_y-t graphs of her motion.

3.52 •• A cannon, located 60.0 m from the base of a vertical 25.0-m-tall cliff, shoots a 15 kg shell at 43.0° above the horizontal toward the cliff. (a) What must the minimum muzzle velocity be for the shell to clear the top of the cliff? (b) The ground at the top of the cliff is level, with a constant elevation of 25.0 m above the cannon. Under the conditions of part (a), how far does the shell land past the edge of the cliff?

3.53 • **CP** **CALC** A toy rocket is launched with an initial velocity of 15.0 m/s in the horizontal direction from the roof of a 39.0-m-tall building. The rocket's engine produces a horizontal acceleration of $(1.60\ \text{m/s}^3)t$, in the same direction as the initial velocity, but in the vertical direction the acceleration is g, downward. Ignore air resistance. What horizontal distance does the rocket travel before reaching the ground?

3.54 ••• An important piece of landing equipment must be thrown to a ship, which is moving at 45.0 cm/s, before the ship can dock. This equipment is thrown at 15.0 m/s at 60.0° above the horizontal from the top of a tower at the edge of the water, 8.75 m above the ship's deck (**Fig. P3.54**). For this equipment to land at the front of the ship, at what distance D from the dock should the ship be when the equipment is thrown? Ignore air resistance.

Figure **P3.54**

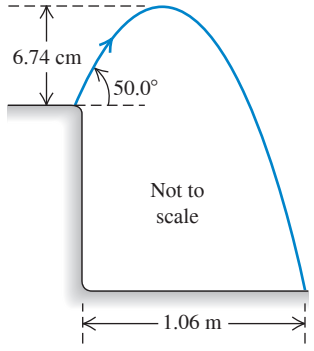


3.55 •• A cricket ball thrown at an angle of 60.0° above the horizontal strikes a building 18.0 m away at a point 8.00 m above the point from which it is thrown. Ignore air resistance. (a) Find the magnitude of the ball's initial velocity (the velocity with which the ball is thrown). (b) Find the magnitude and direction of the velocity of the ball just before it strikes the building.

3.56 •• **An Errand of Mercy.** An airplane is dropping bales of hay to cattle stranded in a blizzard on the Great Plains. The pilot releases the bales at 180 m above the level ground when the plane is flying at 80 m/s in a direction 60° above the horizontal. How far in front of the cattle should the pilot release the hay so that the bales land at the point where the cattle are stranded?

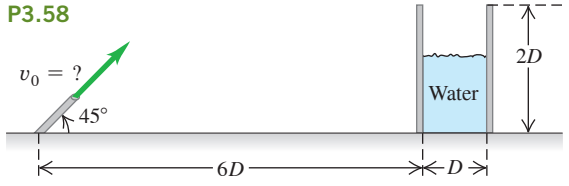
3.57 •• A grasshopper leaps into the air from the edge of a vertical cliff, as shown in **Fig. P3.57.** Find (a) the initial speed of the grasshopper and (b) the height of the cliff.

Figure **P3.57**



3.58 ••• A water hose is used to fill a large cylindrical storage tank of diameter D and height $2D$. The hose shoots the water at 45° above the horizontal from the same level as the base of the tank and is a distance $6D$ away (**Fig. P3.58**). For what *range* of launch speeds (v_0) will the water enter the tank? Ignore air resistance, and express your answer in terms of D and g.

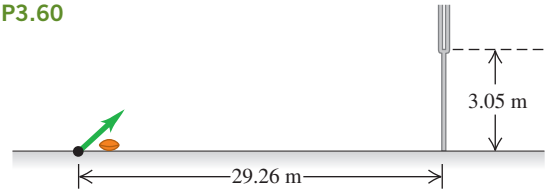
Figure **P3.58**



3.59 •• An object is projected with initial speed v_0 from the edge of the roof of a building that has height H. The initial velocity of the object makes an angle α_0 with the horizontal. Neglect air resistance. (a) If α_0 is 90°, so that the object is thrown straight up (but misses the roof on the way down), what is the speed v of the object just before it strikes the ground? (b) If $\alpha_0 = -90°$, so that the object is thrown straight down, what is its speed just before it strikes the ground? (c) Derive an expression for the speed v of the object just before it strikes the ground for general α_0. (d) The final speed v equals v_1 when α_0 equals α_1. If α_0 is increased, does v increase, decrease, or stay the same?

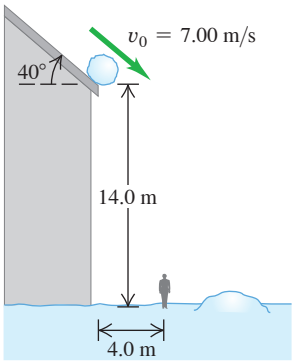
3.60 •• **Kicking an Extra Point.** In Canadian football, after a touchdown the team has the opportunity to earn one more point by kicking the ball over the bar between the goal posts. Football regulations are stated in British units (see Appendix C): the bar is 10 feet (3.05 m) above the ground, and the ball is kicked from ground level, 32 yards (29.26 m) horizontally from the bar (**Fig. P3.60**). (a) There is a minimum angle above the ground such that if the ball is launched below this angle, it can never clear the bar, no matter how fast it is kicked. What is this angle? (b) If the ball is kicked at 45.0° above the horizontal, what must its initial speed be if it is just to clear the bar? Express your answer in m/s and in km/h.

Figure **P3.60**



3.61 ••• **Look Out!** A snowball rolls off a barn roof that slopes downward at an angle of 40° (**Fig. P3.61**). The edge of the roof is 14.0 m above the ground, and the snowball has a speed of 7.00 m/s as it rolls off the roof. Ignore air resistance. (a) How far from the edge of the barn does the snowball strike the ground if it doesn't strike anything else while falling? (b) Draw x-t, y-t, v_x-t, and v_y-t graphs for the motion in part (a). (c) A man 1.9 m tall is standing 4.0 m from the edge of the barn. Will the snowball hit him?

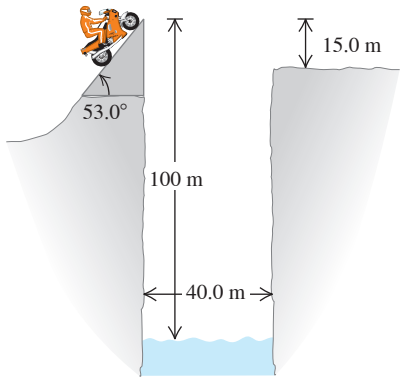
Figure **P3.61**



3.62 • A 2.7 kg ball is thrown upward with an initial speed of 20.0 m/s from the edge of a 45.0-m-high cliff. At the instant the ball is thrown, a woman starts running away from the base of the cliff with a constant speed of 6.00 m/s. The woman runs in a straight line on level ground. Ignore air resistance on the ball. (a) At what angle above the horizontal should the ball be thrown so that the runner will catch it just before it hits the ground, and how far does she run before she catches the ball? (b) Carefully sketch the ball's trajectory as viewed by (i) a person at rest on the ground and (ii) the runner.

3.63 •• **Leaping the River II.** A physics professor did daredevil stunts in his spare time. His last stunt was an attempt to jump across a river on a motorcycle (**Fig. P3.63**). The takeoff ramp was inclined at 53.0°, the river was 40.0 m wide, and the far bank was 15.0 m lower than the top of the ramp. The river itself was 100 m below the ramp. Ignore air resistance. (a) What should his speed have been at the top of the ramp to have just made it to the edge of the far bank? (b) If his speed was only half the value found in part (a), where did he land?

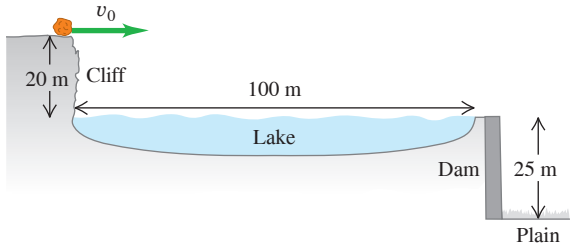
Figure **P3.63**



3.64 •• **Tossing Your Lunch.** Henrietta is jogging along the pavement at 3.0 m/s on the way to her physics class. Bruce realizes that she forgot her bag of bagels, so he runs to the window, which is 43.8 m above the street level and directly above the pavement, to throw the bag to her. He throws it horizontally 9.00 s after she has passed below the window, and she catches it on the run. Ignore air resistance. (a) With what initial speed must Bruce throw the bagels so that Henrietta can catch the bag just before it hits the ground? (b) Where is Henrietta when she catches the bagels?

3.65 • A 76.0 kg rock is rolling horizontally at the top of a vertical cliff that is 20 m above the surface of a lake (**Fig. P3.65**). The top of the vertical face of a dam is located 100 m from the foot of the cliff, with the top of the dam level with the surface of the water in the lake. A level plain is 25 m below the top of the dam. (a) What must be the minimum speed of the rock just as it leaves the cliff so that it will reach the plain without striking the dam? (b) How far from the foot of the dam does the rock hit the plain?

Figure **P3.65**



3.66 •• A firefighting crew uses a water cannon that shoots water at 25.0 m/s at a fixed angle of 53.0° above the horizontal. The firefighters want to direct the water at a blaze that is 10.0 m above ground level. How far from the building should they position their cannon? There are *two* possibilities; can you get them both? (*Hint:* Start with a sketch showing the trajectory of the water.)

3.67 •• On a level football pitch a football is projected from ground level. It has speed 8.0 m/s when it is at its maximum height. It travels a horizontal distance of 50.0 m. Neglect air resistance. How long is the ball in the air?

3.68 ••• You are standing on a loading dock at the top of a flat ramp that is at a constant angle α_0 below the horizontal. You slide a small box horizontally off the loading dock with speed v_0 in a direction so that it lands on the ramp. How far vertically downward does the box travel before it strikes the ramp?

3.69 ••• In the middle of the night you are standing a horizontal distance of 14.0 m from the high fence that surrounds the estate of your rich uncle. The top of the fence is 5.00 m above the ground. You have taped an important message to a rock that you want to throw over the fence. The ground is level, and the width of the fence is small enough to be ignored. You throw the rock from a height of 1.60 m above the ground and at an angle of 56.0° above the horizontal. (a) What minimum initial speed must the rock have as it leaves your hand to clear the top of the fence? (b) For the initial velocity calculated in part (a), what horizontal distance beyond the fence will the rock land on the ground?

3.70 ••• A small object is projected from level ground with an initial velocity of magnitude 16.0 m/s and directed at an angle of 60.0° above the horizontal. (a) What is the horizontal displacement of the object when it is at its maximum height? How does your result compare to the horizontal range R of the object? (b) What is the vertical displacement of the object when its horizontal displacement is 80.0% of its horizontal range R? How does your result compare to the maximum height h_{max} reached by the object? (c) For when the object has horizontal displacement $x - x_0 = \alpha R$, where α is a positive constant, derive an expression (in terms of α) for $(y - y_0)/h_{max}$. Your result should not depend on the initial velocity or the angle of projection. Show that your expression gives the correct result when $\alpha = 0.80$, as is the case in part (b). Also show that your expression gives the correct result for $\alpha = 0$, $\alpha = 0.50$, and $\alpha = 1.0$.

3.71 •• An airplane pilot sets a compass course due west and maintains an airspeed of 214 km/h. After flying for 0.470 h, she finds herself over a town 123 km west and 12 km south of her starting point. (a) Find the wind velocity (magnitude and direction). (b) If the wind velocity is 40 km/h due south, in what direction should the pilot set her course to travel due west? Use the same airspeed of 214 km/h.

3.72 •• **Raindrops.** When a train's velocity is 12.0 m/s eastward, raindrops that are falling vertically with respect to the earth make traces that are inclined 30.0° to the vertical on the windows of the train. (a) What is the horizontal component of a drop's velocity with respect to the earth? With respect to the train? (b) What is the magnitude of the velocity of the raindrop with respect to the earth? With respect to the train?

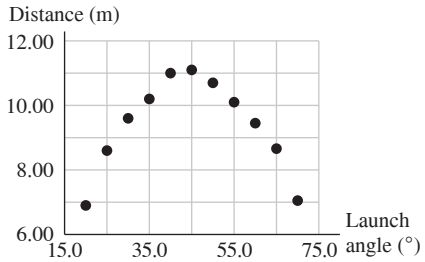
3.73 ••• In a World Cup football match, Juan is running due north toward the goal with a speed of 7.30 m/s relative to the ground. A teammate passes the ball to him. The ball has a speed of 13.3 m/s and is moving in a direction 30.6° east of north, relative to the ground. What are the magnitude and direction of the ball's velocity relative to Juan?

3.74 •• A shortstop is running due east as he throws a baseball to the catcher, who is standing at home plate. The velocity of the baseball relative to the shortstop is 6.00 m/s in the direction due south, and the speed of the baseball relative to the catcher is 9.00 m/s. What is the speed of the shortstop relative to the ground when he throws the ball?

3.75 •• Two football players, Mia and Alice, are running as Alice passes the ball to Mia. Mia is running due north with a speed of 6.30 m/s. The velocity of the ball relative to Mia is 6.80 m/s in a direction 30.0° east of south. What are the magnitude and direction of the velocity of the ball relative to the ground?

3.76 •• **DATA** A spring-gun projects a small rock from the ground with speed v_0 at an angle θ_0 above the ground. You have been asked to determine v_0. From the way the spring-gun is constructed, you know that to a good approximation v_0 is independent of the launch angle. You go to a level, open field, select a launch angle, and measure the horizontal distance the rock travels. You use $g = 9.80\ m/s^2$ and ignore the small height of the end of the spring-gun's barrel above the ground. Since your measurement includes some uncertainty in values measured for the launch angle and for the horizontal range, you repeat the measurement for several launch angles and obtain the results given in **Fig. 3.76**. You ignore air resistance because there is no wind and the rock is small and heavy. (a) Select a way to represent the data well as a straight line. (b) Use the slope of the best straight-line fit to your data from part (a) to calculate v_0. (c) When the launch angle is 36.9°, what maximum height above the ground does the rock reach?

Figure **P3.76**



3.77 •• **DATA** You have constructed a hair-spray-powered potato gun and want to find the muzzle speed v_0 of the potatoes, the speed they have as they leave the end of the gun barrel. You use the same amount of hair spray each time you fire the gun, and you have confirmed by repeated firings at the same height that the muzzle speed is approximately the same for each firing. You climb on a microwave relay tower (with permission, of course) to launch the potatoes horizontally from different heights above the ground. Your friend measures the height of the gun barrel above the ground and the range R of each potato. You obtain the data in the table.

Launch height h	Horizontal range R
2.00 m	10.4 m
6.00 m	17.1 m
9.00 m	21.3 m
12.00 m	25.8 m

Each of the values of h and R has some measurement error: The muzzle speed is not precisely the same each time, and the barrel isn't precisely horizontal. So you use all of the measurements to get the best estimate of v_0. No wind is blowing, so you decide to ignore air resistance. You use $g = 9.80\ m/s^2$ in your analysis. (a) Select a way to represent the data well as a straight line. (b) Use the slope of the best-fit line from part (a) to calculate the average value of v_0. (c) What would be the horizontal range of a potato that is fired from ground level at an angle of 30.0° above the horizontal? Use the value of v_0 that you calculated in part (b).

3.78 ••• **DATA** You are a member of a geological team in Central Africa. Your team comes upon a wide river that is flowing east. You must determine the width of the river and the current speed (the speed of the water relative to the earth). You have a small boat with an outboard motor. By measuring the time it takes to cross a pond where the water isn't flowing, you have calibrated the throttle settings to the speed of the boat in still water. You set the throttle so that the speed of the boat relative to the river is a constant 6.00 m/s. Traveling due north across the river, you reach the opposite bank in 20.1 s. For the return trip, you change the throttle setting so that the speed of the boat relative to the water is 9.00 m/s. You travel due south from one bank to the other and cross the river in 11.2 s. (a) How wide is the river, and what is the current speed? (b) With the throttle set so that the speed of the boat relative to the water is 6.00 m/s, what is the shortest time in which you could cross the river, and where on the far bank would you land?

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

3.79 ••• CALC A projectile thrown from a point P moves in such a way that its distance from P is always increasing. Find the maximum angle above the horizontal with which the projectile could have been thrown. Ignore air resistance.

3.80 ••• Two students are canoeing on a river. While heading upstream, they accidentally drop an empty bottle overboard. They then continue paddling for 60 minutes, reaching a point 2.0 km farther upstream. At this point they realize that the bottle is missing and, driven by ecological awareness, they turn around and head downstream. They catch up with and retrieve the bottle (which has been moving along with the current) 5.0 km downstream from the turnaround point. (a) Assuming a constant paddling effort throughout, how fast is the river flowing? (b) What would the canoe speed in a still lake be for the same paddling effort?

3.81 ••• CP A rocket designed to place small payloads into orbit is carried to an altitude of 12.0 km above sea level by a converted airliner. When the airliner is flying in a straight line at a constant speed of 850 km/h, the rocket is dropped. After the drop, the airliner maintains the same altitude and speed and continues to fly in a straight line. The rocket falls for a brief time, after which its rocket motor turns on. Once that motor is on, the combined effects of thrust and gravity give the rocket a constant acceleration of magnitude $3.00g$ directed at an angle of 30.0° above the horizontal. For safety, the rocket should be at least 1.00 km in front of the airliner when it climbs through the airliner's altitude. Your job is to determine the minimum time that the rocket must fall before its engine starts. Ignore air resistance. Your answer should include (i) a diagram showing the flight paths of both the rocket and the airliner, labeled at several points with vectors for their velocities and accelerations; (ii) an x-t graph showing the motions of both the rocket and the airliner; and (iii) a y-t graph showing the motions of both the rocket and the airliner. In the diagram and the graphs, indicate when the rocket is dropped, when the rocket motor turns on, and when the rocket climbs through the altitude of the airliner.

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO **Ballistic Seed Dispersal.** Some plants disperse their seeds when the fruit splits and contracts, propelling the seeds through the air. The trajectory of these seeds can be determined with a high-speed camera. In an experiment on one type of plant, seeds are projected at 20 cm above ground level with initial speeds between 2.3 m/s and 4.6 m/s. The launch angle is measured from the horizontal, with +90° corresponding to an initial velocity straight up and −90° straight down.

3.82 The experiment is designed so that the seeds move no more than 0.20 mm between photographic frames. What minimum frame rate for the high-speed camera is needed to achieve this? (a) 250 frames/s; (b) 2500 frames/s; (c) 25,000 frames/s; (d) 250,000 frames/s.

3.83 About how long does it take a seed launched at 90° at the highest possible initial speed to reach its maximum height? Ignore air resistance. (a) 0.23 s; (b) 0.47 s; (c) 1.0 s; (d) 2.3 s.

3.84 If a seed is launched at an angle of 0° with the maximum initial speed, how far from the plant will it land? Ignore air resistance, and assume that the ground is flat. (a) 20 cm; (b) 93 cm; (c) 2.2 m; (d) 4.6 m.

3.85 A large number of seeds are observed, and their initial launch angles are recorded. The range of projection angles is found to be −51° to 75°, with a mean of 31°. Approximately 65% of the seeds are launched between 6° and 56°. (See W. J. Garrison et al., "Ballistic seed projection in two herbaceous species," *Amer. J. Bot.,* Sept. 2000, 87:9, 1257–64.) Which of these hypotheses is best supported by the data? Seeds are preferentially launched (a) at angles that maximize the height they travel above the plant; (b) at angles below the horizontal in order to drive the seeds into the ground with more force; (c) at angles that maximize the horizontal distance the seeds travel from the plant; (d) at angles that minimize the time the seeds spend exposed to the air.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iii) A cyclist going around a curve at constant speed has an acceleration directed toward the inside of the curve (see Section 3.2, especially Fig. 3.12a).

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP3.9.1 (a) 1.53 s, 11.5 m (b) 3.06 s, 61.2 m
VP3.9.2 (a) 20.6 m/s (b) 5.40 m
VP3.9.3 (a) 3.51 s (b) 33.8 m (c) $v_x = 9.64$ m/s, $v_y = -22.9$ m/s
VP3.9.4 (a) $t = 2v_0/g$, $x = 2v_0^2/g$, $y = -2v_0^2/g$ (b) $t = v_0/g$, $x = v_0^2/g$, $y = -v_0^2/2g$
VP3.12.1 20.0 m
VP3.12.2 (a) 41.6 s (b) 6.04 m/s^2
VP3.12.3 (a) P: 0.938 m/s, Q: 1.88 m/s (b) P: 8.79 m/s^2, Q: 17.6 m/s^2 (c) increase, increase
VP3.12.4 (a) Venus: 3.49×10^4 m/s, Earth: 2.99×10^4 m/s, Mars: 2.41×10^4 m/s (b) Venus: 1.13×10^{-2} m/s^2, Earth: 5.95×10^{-3} m/s^2, Mars: 2.55×10^{-3} m/s^2 (c) decrease, decrease
VP3.12.5 (a) $T_A/T_B = 4$ (b) $a_{\text{rad},A}/a_{\text{rad},B} = 1/8$
VP3.15.1 (a) +53.0 m/s (b) −53.0 m/s
VP3.15.2 (a) 90.0 m/s eastward (b) 90.0 m/s westward (c) neither
VP3.15.3 (a) 25.6 m/s, 51.3° north of east (b) 25.6 m/s, 51.3° south of west
VP3.15.4 130 m/s, 12.6° west of north

Bridging Problem

(a) $R = \dfrac{2v_0^2}{g}\dfrac{\cos(\theta + \phi)\sin\phi}{\cos^2\theta}$ (b) $\phi = 45° - \dfrac{\theta}{2}$

? Under what circumstances does the barbell push on the weightlifter just as hard as she pushes on the barbell? (i) When she holds the barbell stationary; (ii) when she raises the barbell; (iii) when she lowers the barbell; (iv) two of (i), (ii), and (iii); (v) all of (i), (ii), and (iii); (vi) none of these.

4 Newton's Laws of Motion

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **4.1** What the concept of force means in physics, why forces are vectors, and the significance of the net force on an object.
- **4.2** What happens when the net external force on an object is zero, and the significance of inertial frames of reference.
- **4.3** How the acceleration of an object is determined by the net external force on the object and the object's mass.
- **4.4** The difference between the mass of an object and its weight.
- **4.5** How the forces that two objects exert on each other are related.
- **4.6** How to use a free-body diagram to help analyze the forces on an object.

You'll need to review...

- **1.7** Vectors and vector addition.
- **1.8** Vector components.
- **2.4** Straight-line motion with constant acceleration.
- **2.5** The motion of freely falling objects.
- **3.2** Acceleration as a vector.
- **3.4** Uniform circular motion.
- **3.5** Relative velocity.

We've seen in the last two chapters how to use *kinematics* to describe motion in one, two, or three dimensions. But what *causes* objects to move the way that they do? For example, why does a dropped feather fall more slowly than a dropped bowling ball? Why do you feel pushed backward in a car that accelerates forward? The answers to such questions take us into the subject of **dynamics,** the relationship of motion to the forces that cause it.

The principles of dynamics were clearly stated for the first time by Sir Isaac Newton (1642–1727); today we call them **Newton's laws of motion.** Newton did not *derive* the laws of motion, but rather *deduced* them from a multitude of experiments performed by other scientists, especially Galileo Galilei (who died the year Newton was born). Newton's laws are the foundation of **classical mechanics** (also called **Newtonian mechanics**); using them, we can understand most familiar kinds of motion. Newton's laws need modification only for situations involving extremely high speeds (near the speed of light) or very small sizes (such as within the atom).

Newton's laws are very simple to state, yet many students find these laws difficult to grasp and to work with. The reason is that before studying physics, you've spent years walking, throwing balls, pushing boxes, and doing dozens of things that involve motion. Along the way, you've developed a set of "common sense" ideas about motion and its causes. But many of these "common sense" ideas don't stand up to logical analysis. A big part of the job of this chapter—and of the rest of our study of physics—is helping you recognize how "common sense" ideas can sometimes lead you astray, and how to adjust your understanding of the physical world to make it consistent with what experiments tell us.

4.1 FORCE AND INTERACTIONS

A **force** is a push or a pull. More precisely, a force is an *interaction* between two objects or between an object and its environment (**Fig. 4.1**). That's why we always refer to the force that one object *exerts* on a second object. When you push on a car that is stuck in the snow, you exert a force on the car; a steel cable exerts a force on the beam it is hoisting at a construction site; and so on. As Fig. 4.1 shows, force is a *vector* quantity; you can push or pull an object in different directions.

When a force involves direct contact between two objects, such as a push or pull that you exert on an object with your hand, we call it a **contact force. Figures 4.2a,** 4.2b, and 4.2c show three common types of contact forces. The **normal force** (Fig. 4.2a) is exerted on an object by any surface with which it is in contact. The adjective "normal" means that the force always acts *perpendicular* to the surface of contact, no matter what the angle of that surface. By contrast, the **friction force** (Fig. 4.2b) exerted on an object by a surface acts *parallel* to the surface, in the direction that opposes sliding. The pulling force exerted by a stretched rope or cord on an object to which it's attached is called a **tension force** (Fig. 4.2c). When you tug on your dog's leash, the force that pulls on her collar is a tension force.

In addition to contact forces, there are **long-range forces** that act even when the objects are separated by empty space. The force between two magnets is an example of a long-range force, as is the force of gravity (Fig. 4.2d); the earth pulls a dropped object toward it even though there is no direct contact between the object and the earth. The gravitational force that the earth exerts on your body is called your **weight.**

To describe a force vector $\vec{F}$, we need to describe the *direction* in which it acts as well as its *magnitude,* the quantity that describes "how much" or "how hard" the force pushes or pulls. The SI unit of the magnitude of force is the *newton,* abbreviated N. (We'll give a precise definition of the newton in Section 4.3.) **Table 4.1** lists some typical force magnitudes.

A common instrument for measuring force magnitudes is the *spring balance.* It consists of a coil spring enclosed in a case with a pointer attached to one end. When forces are applied to the ends of the spring, it stretches by an amount that depends on the force. We can make a scale for the pointer by using a number of identical objects with weights of exactly 1 N each. When one, two, or more of these are suspended simultaneously from the balance, the total force stretching the spring is 1 N, 2 N, and so on, and we can label the corresponding positions of the pointer 1 N, 2 N, and so on. Then we can use this instrument to measure the magnitude of an unknown force. We can also make a similar instrument that measures pushes instead of pulls.

Figure 4.3 (next page) shows a spring balance being used to measure a pull or push that we apply to a box. In each case we draw a vector to represent the applied force. The length of the vector shows the magnitude; the longer the vector, the greater the force magnitude.

Superposition of Forces

When you hold a ball in your hand to throw it, at least two forces act on it: the push of your hand and the downward pull of gravity. Experiment shows that when two forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ act at the same time at the same point on an object (**Fig. 4.4**, next page), the effect on the object's motion is the same as if a single force $\vec{R}$ were acting equal to the vector sum, or resultant, of the original forces: $\vec{R} = \vec{F}_1 + \vec{F}_2$. More generally, *any number of*

TABLE 4.1 Typical Force Magnitudes

Sun's gravitational force on the earth	3.5×10^{22} N
Weight of a large blue whale	1.9×10^{6} N
Maximum pulling force of a locomotive	8.9×10^{5} N
Average weight of a sumo wrestler	1.45×10^{3} N
Weight of a medium apple	1 N
Weight of the smallest insect eggs	2×10^{-6} N
Electric attraction between the proton and the electron in a hydrogen atom	8.2×10^{-8} N
Weight of a very small bacterium	1×10^{-18} N
Weight of a hydrogen atom	1.6×10^{-26} N
Weight of an electron	8.9×10^{-30} N
Gravitational attraction between the proton and the electron in a hydrogen atom	3.6×10^{-47} N

Figure **4.1** Some properties of forces.

- A force is a push or a pull.
- A force is an interaction between two objects or between an object and its environment.
- A force is a vector quantity, with magnitude and direction.

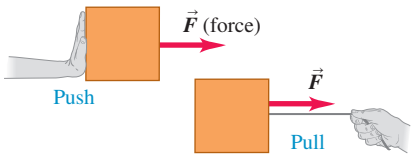
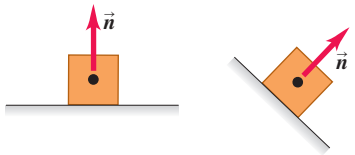
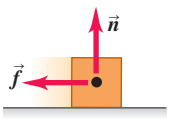


Figure **4.2** Four common types of forces.

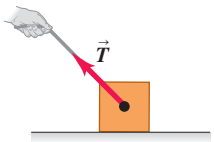
(a) **Normal force $\vec{n}$:** When an object rests or pushes on a surface, the surface exerts a push on it that is directed perpendicular to the surface.



(b) **Friction force $\vec{f}$:** In addition to the normal force, a surface may exert a friction force on an object, directed parallel to the surface.



(c) **Tension force $\vec{T}$:** A pulling force exerted on an object by a rope, cord, etc.



(d) **Weight $\vec{w}$:** The pull of gravity on an object is a long-range force (a force that acts over a distance).

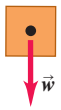


Figure 4.4 Superposition of forces.

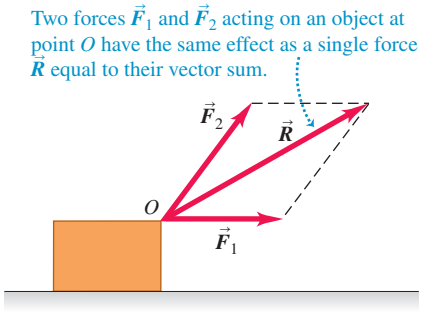


Figure 4.3 Using a vector arrow to denote the force that we exert when (a) pulling a block with a string or (b) pushing a block with a stick.

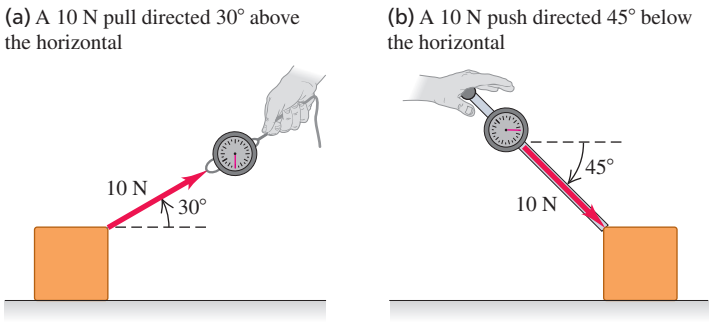
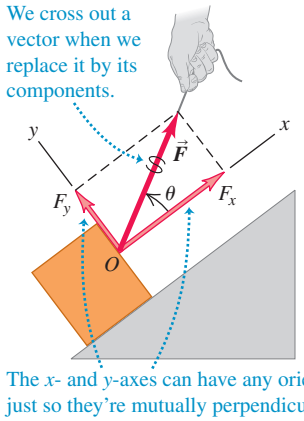


Figure 4.5 F_x and F_y are the components of $\vec{F}$ parallel and perpendicular to the sloping surface of the inclined plane.



forces applied at a point on an object have the same effect as a single force equal to the vector sum of the forces. This important principle is called **superposition of forces.**

Since forces are vector quantities and add like vectors, we can use all of the rules of vector mathematics that we learned in Chapter 1 to solve problems that involve vectors. This would be a good time to review the rules for vector addition presented in Sections 1.7 and 1.8.

We learned in Section 1.8 that it's easiest to add vectors by using components. That's why we often describe a force $\vec{F}$ in terms of its x- and y-components F_x and F_y. Note that the x- and y-coordinate axes do *not* have to be horizontal and vertical, respectively. As an example, **Fig. 4.5** shows a crate being pulled up a ramp by a force $\vec{F}$. In this situation it's most convenient to choose one axis to be parallel to the ramp and the other to be perpendicular to the ramp. For the case shown in Fig. 4.5, both F_x and F_y are positive; in other situations, depending on your choice of axes and the orientation of the force $\vec{F}$, either F_x or F_y may be negative or zero.

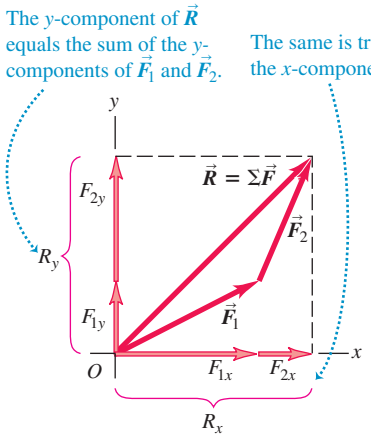
CAUTION **Using a wiggly line in force diagrams** In Fig. 4.5 we draw a wiggly line through the force vector $\vec{F}$ to show that we have replaced it by its x- and y-components. Otherwise, the diagram would include the same force twice. We'll draw such a wiggly line in any force diagram where a force is replaced by its components. We encourage you to do the same in your own diagrams!

We'll often need to find the vector sum (resultant) of *all* forces acting on an object. We call this the **net force** acting on the object. We'll use the Greek letter Σ (capital sigma, equivalent to the Roman S) as a shorthand notation for a sum. If the forces are labeled $\vec{F}_1$, $\vec{F}_2$, $\vec{F}_3$, and so on, we can write

The net force acting on an object ... $\vec{R} = \Sigma\vec{F} = \vec{F}_1 + \vec{F}_2 + \vec{F}_3 + \cdots$ (4.1)

... is the vector sum, or resultant, of all individual forces acting on that object.

Figure 4.6 Finding the components of the vector sum (resultant) $\vec{R}$ of two forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$.



We read $\Sigma\vec{F}$ as "the vector sum of the forces" or "the net force." The x-component of the net force is the sum of the x-components of the individual forces, and likewise for the y-component (**Fig. 4.6**):

$$R_x = \Sigma F_x \qquad R_y = \Sigma F_y \tag{4.2}$$

Each component may be positive or negative, so be careful with signs when you evaluate these sums.

Once we have R_x and R_y we can find the magnitude and direction of the net force $\vec{R} = \Sigma\vec{F}$ acting on the object. The magnitude is

$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2}$$

and the angle θ between $\vec{R}$ and the $+x$-axis can be found from the relationship $\tan\theta = R_y/R_x$. The components R_x and R_y may be positive, negative, or zero, and the angle θ may be in any of the four quadrants.

In three-dimensional problems, forces may also have z-components; then we add the equation $R_z = \sum F_z$ to Eqs. (4.2). The magnitude of the net force is then

$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2 + R_z^2}$$

EXAMPLE 4.1 Superposition of forces: Finding the net force

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Three professional wrestlers are fighting over a champion's belt. **Figure 4.7a** shows the horizontal force each wrestler applies to the belt, as viewed from above. The forces have magnitudes $F_1 = 50$ N, $F_2 = 120$ N, and $F_3 = 250$ N. Find the x- and y-components of the net force on the belt, and find its magnitude and direction.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This is a problem in vector addition in which the vectors happen to represent forces. To find the x- and y-components of the net force $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$, we'll use the component method of vector addition expressed by Eqs. (4.2). Once we know the components of $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$, we can find its magnitude and direction.

EXECUTE Figure 4.7a shows that force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_1$ (magnitude 50 N) points in the positive x-direction. Hence it has a positive x-component and zero y-component:

$$F_{1x} = 50 \text{ N} \qquad F_{1y} = 0 \text{ N}$$

Force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_2$ points in the negative y-direction and so has zero x-component and a negative y-component:

$$F_{2x} = 0 \text{ N} \qquad F_{2y} = -120 \text{ N}$$

Force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ doesn't point along either the x-direction or the y-direction: Figure 4.7a shows that its x-component is negative and its y-component is positive. The angle between $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ and the negative x-axis is 53°, so the absolute value of its x-component is equal to the magnitude of $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ times the cosine of 53°. The absolute value of the y-component is therefore the magnitude of $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ times the sine of 53°. Keeping track of the signs, we find the components of $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ are

$$F_{3x} = -(250 \text{ N}) \cos 53° = -150 \text{ N} \qquad F_{3y} = (250 \text{ N}) \sin 53° = 200 \text{ N}$$

From Eqs. (4.2) the components of the net force $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}} = \sum \vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ are

$$R_x = F_{1x} + F_{2x} + F_{3x} = 50 \text{ N} + 0 \text{ N} + (-150 \text{ N}) = -100 \text{ N}$$

$$R_y = F_{1y} + F_{2y} + F_{3y} = 0 \text{ N} + (-120 \text{ N}) + 200 \text{ N} = 80 \text{ N}$$

The net force has a negative x-component and a positive y-component, as Fig. 4.7b shows.

The magnitude of $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$ is

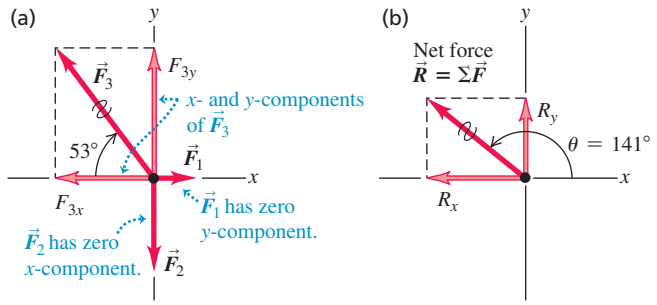
$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2} = \sqrt{(-100 \text{ N})^2 + (80 \text{ N})^2} = 128 \text{ N}$$

To find the angle between the net force and the $+x$-axis, we use Eq. (1.7):

$$\theta = \arctan\frac{R_y}{R_x} = \arctan\left(\frac{80 \text{ N}}{-100 \text{ N}}\right) = \arctan(-0.80)$$

The arctangent of -0.80 is $-39°$, but Fig. 4.7b shows that the net force lies in the second quadrant. Hence the correct solution is $\theta = -39° + 180° = 141°$.

Figure 4.7 (a) Three forces acting on a belt. (b) The net force $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}} = \sum \vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ and its components.



EVALUATE The net force is *not* zero. Wrestler 3 exerts the greatest force on the belt, $F_3 = 250$ N, and will walk away with it when the struggle ends.

You should check the direction of $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}}$ by adding the vectors $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_1$, $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_2$, and $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ graphically. Does your drawing show that $\vec{\boldsymbol{R}} = \vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_1 + \vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_2 + \vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_3$ points in the second quadrant as we found?

KEYCONCEPT The net force is the vector sum of all of the individual forces that act on the object. It can be specified by its components or by its magnitude and direction.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 4.1 Figure 4.5 shows a force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ acting on a crate. (a) With the x- and y-axes shown in the figure, is the x-component of the *gravitational* force that the earth exerts on the crate (the crate's weight) positive, negative, or zero? (b) What about the y-component?

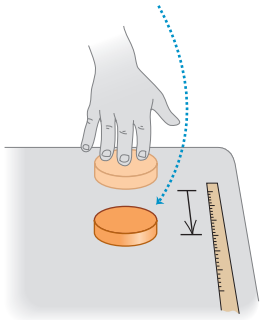
ANSWER (a) **negative**, (b) **negative**. The gravitational force on the crate points straight downward. In Fig. 4.5 the x-axis points up and to the right, and the y-axis points up and to the left. With this choice of axes, the gravitational force has both an x-component and a y-component, and both are negative.

4.2 NEWTON'S FIRST LAW

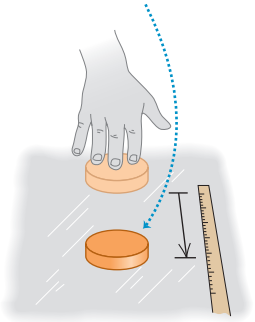
How do the forces acting on an object affect that object's motion? Let's first note that it's impossible for an object to affect its own motion by exerting a force on itself. If that were possible, you could lift yourself to the ceiling by pulling up on your belt! The forces that affect an object's motion are **external forces**, those forces exerted on the object by other

Figure 4.8 The slicker the surface, the farther a puck slides after being given an initial velocity. On an air-hockey table (c) the friction force is practically zero, so the puck continues with almost constant velocity.

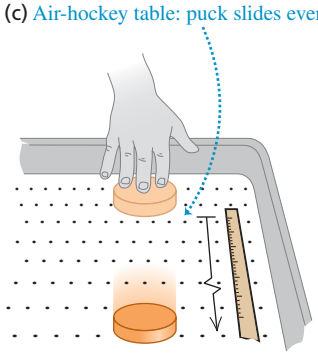
(a) Table: puck stops short.



(b) Ice: puck slides farther.



(c) Air-hockey table: puck slides even farther.



objects in its environment. So the question we must answer is this: How do the external forces that act on an object affect its motion?

To begin to answer this question, let's first consider what happens when the net external force on an object is *zero*. You would almost certainly agree that if an object is at rest, and if no net external force acts on it (that is, no net push or pull from other objects), that object will remain at rest. But what if there is zero net external force acting on an object in *motion*?

To see what happens in this case, suppose you slide a hockey puck along a horizontal tabletop, applying a horizontal force to it with your hand (**Fig. 4.8a**). After you stop pushing, the puck does *not* continue to move indefinitely; it slows down and stops. To keep it moving, you have to keep pushing (that is, applying a force). You might come to the "common sense" conclusion that objects in motion naturally come to rest and that a force is required to sustain motion.

But now imagine pushing the puck across a smooth surface of ice (Fig. 4.8b). After you quit pushing, the puck will slide a lot farther before it stops. Put it on an air-hockey table, where it floats on a thin cushion of air, and it moves still farther (Fig. 4.8c). In each case, what slows the puck down is *friction,* an interaction between the lower surface of the puck and the surface on which it slides. Each surface exerts a friction force on the puck that resists the puck's motion; the difference in the three cases is the magnitude of the friction force. The ice exerts less friction than the tabletop, so the puck travels farther. The gas molecules of the air-hockey table exert the least friction of all. If we could eliminate friction completely, the puck would never slow down, and we would need no force at all to keep the puck moving once it had been started. Thus the "common sense" idea that a force is required to sustain motion is *incorrect.*

Experiments like the ones we've just described show that when *no* net external force acts on an object, the object either remains at rest *or* moves with constant velocity in a straight line. Once an object has been set in motion, no net external force is needed to keep it moving. We call this observation *Newton's first law of motion:*

NEWTON'S FIRST LAW OF MOTION **An object acted on by no net external force has a constant velocity (which may be zero) and zero acceleration.**

The tendency of an object to keep moving once it is set in motion is called **inertia.** You use inertia when you try to get ketchup out of a bottle by shaking it. First you start the bottle (and the ketchup inside) moving forward; when you jerk the bottle back, the ketchup tends to keep moving forward and, you hope, ends up on your burger. Inertia is also the tendency of an object at rest to remain at rest. You may have seen a tablecloth yanked out from under a table setting without breaking anything. The force on the table setting isn't great enough to make it move appreciably during the short time it takes to pull the tablecloth away.

It's important to note that the *net* external force is what matters in Newton's first law. For example, a physics book at rest on a horizontal tabletop has two forces acting on it: an upward supporting force, or normal force, exerted by the tabletop (see Fig. 4.2a) and the downward force of the earth's gravity (see Fig. 4.2d). The upward push of the surface is just as great as the downward pull of gravity, so the *net* external force acting on the book (that is, the vector sum of the two forces) is zero. In agreement with Newton's first law, if the book is at rest on the tabletop, it remains at rest. The same principle applies to a hockey puck sliding on a horizontal, frictionless surface: The vector sum of the upward push of the surface and the downward pull of gravity is zero. Once the puck is in motion, it continues to move with constant velocity because the *net* external force acting on it is zero.

Here's another example. Suppose a hockey puck rests on a horizontal surface with negligible friction, such as an air-hockey table or a slab of wet ice. If the puck is initially at rest and a single horizontal force $\vec{F}_1$ acts on it (**Fig. 4.9a**), the puck starts to move. If the puck is in motion to begin with, the force changes its speed, its direction, or both, depending on the direction of the force. In this case the net external force is equal to $\vec{F}_1$, which is *not* zero. (There are also two vertical forces: the earth's gravitational attraction and the upward normal force exerted by the surface. But as we mentioned earlier, these two forces cancel.)

(a) A puck on a frictionless surface accelerates when acted on by a single horizontal force.

(b) This puck is acted on by two horizontal forces whose vector sum is zero. The puck behaves as though no external forces act on it.

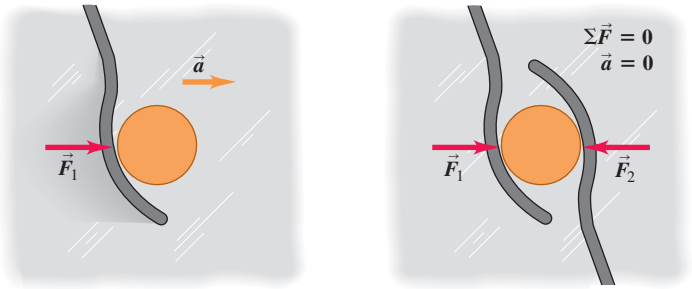


Figure 4.9 (a) A hockey puck accelerates in the direction of a net applied force $\vec{F}_1$. (b) When the net external force is zero, the acceleration is zero, and the puck is in equilibrium.

Now suppose we apply a second force, $\vec{F}_2$ (Fig. 4.9b), equal in magnitude to $\vec{F}_1$ but opposite in direction. The two forces are negatives of each other, $\vec{F}_2 = -\vec{F}_1$, and their vector sum is zero:

$$\Sigma\vec{F} = \vec{F}_1 + \vec{F}_2 = \vec{F}_1 + (-\vec{F}_1) = 0$$

Again, we find that if the object is at rest at the start, it remains at rest; if it is initially moving, it continues to move in the same direction with constant speed. These results show that in Newton's first law, *zero net external force is equivalent to no external force at all*. This is just the principle of superposition of forces that we saw in Section 4.1.

When an object is either at rest or moving with constant velocity (in a straight line with constant speed), we say that the object is in **equilibrium.** For an object to be in equilibrium, it must be acted on by no forces, or by several forces such that their vector sum—that is, the net external force—is zero:

Newton's first law: Net external force on an object ... $\Sigma\vec{F} = 0$ ... must be zero if the object is in **equilibrium**. (4.3)

We're assuming that the object can be represented adequately as a point particle. When the object has finite size, we also have to consider *where* on the object the forces are applied. We'll return to this point in Chapter 11.

APPLICATION Sledding with Newton's First Law The downward force of gravity acting on the child and sled is balanced by an upward normal force exerted by the ground. The adult's foot exerts a forward force that balances the backward force of friction on the sled. Hence there is no net external force on the child and sled, and they slide with a constant velocity.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.2 Using Newton's first law I

In the classic 1950 science-fiction film *Rocketship X-M*, a spaceship is moving in the vacuum of outer space, far from any star or planet, when its engine dies. As a result, the spaceship slows down and stops. What does Newton's first law say about this scene?

SOLUTION No external forces act on the spaceship after the engine dies, so according to Newton's first law it will *not* stop but will continue to move in a straight line with constant speed. Some science-fiction movies are based on accurate science; this is not one of them.

KEYCONCEPT If the net external force on an object is zero, the object either remains at rest or keeps moving at a constant velocity.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.3 Using Newton's first law II

You are driving a Porsche 918 Spyder on a straight testing track at a constant speed of 250 km/h. You pass a 1971 Volkswagen Beetle doing a constant 75 km/h. On which car is the net external force greater?

SOLUTION The key word in this question is "net." Both cars are in equilibrium because their velocities are constant; Newton's first law therefore says that the *net* external force on each car is *zero*.

This seems to contradict the "common sense" idea that the faster car must have a greater force pushing it. Thanks to your Porsche's high-power engine, it's true that the track exerts a greater forward force on your Porsche than it does on the Volkswagen. But a *backward* force also acts on each car due to road friction and air resistance. When the car is traveling with constant velocity, the vector sum of the forward and backward forces is zero. There is a greater backward force on the fast-moving Porsche than on the slow-moving Volkswagen, which is why the Porsche's engine must be more powerful than that of the Volkswagen.

KEYCONCEPT If an object either remains at rest or keeps moving at a constant velocity, the net external force on the object is zero.

Inertial Frames of Reference

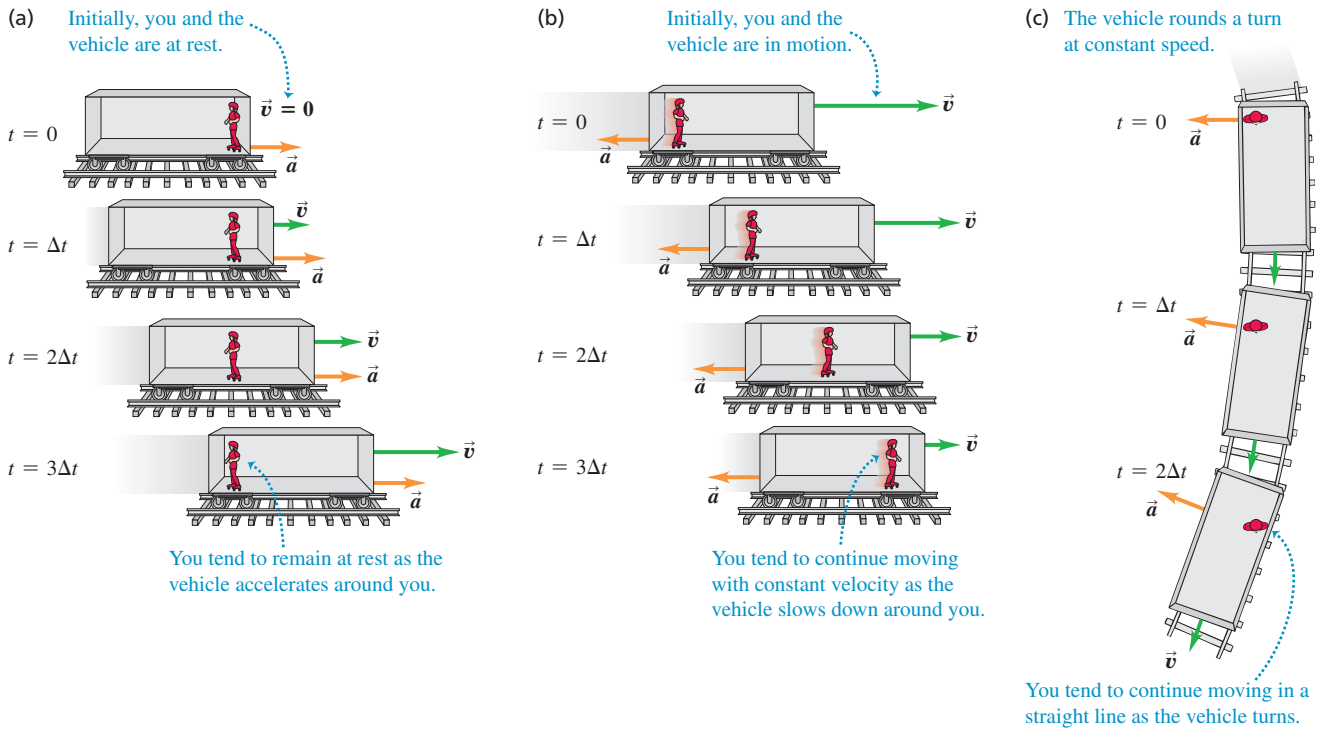
In discussing relative velocity in Section 3.5, we introduced the concept of *frame of reference*. This concept is central to Newton's laws of motion. Suppose you are in a bus that is traveling on a straight road and speeding up. If you could stand in the aisle on roller skates, you would start moving *backward* relative to the bus as the bus gains speed. If instead the bus was slowing to a stop, you would start moving *forward* down the aisle. In either case, it looks as though Newton's first law is not obeyed; there is no net external force acting on you, yet your velocity changes. What's wrong?

The point is that the bus is accelerating with respect to the earth and is *not* a suitable frame of reference for Newton's first law. This law is valid in some frames of reference and not valid in others. A frame of reference in which Newton's first law *is* valid is called an **inertial frame of reference.** The earth is at least approximately an inertial frame of reference, but the bus is not. (The earth is not a completely inertial frame, owing to the acceleration associated with its rotation and its motion around the sun. These effects are quite small, however; see Exercises 3.25 and 3.34.) Because Newton's first law is used to define what we mean by an inertial frame of reference, it is sometimes called the *law of inertia*.

Figure 4.10 helps us understand what you experience when riding in a vehicle that's accelerating. In Fig. 4.10a, a vehicle is initially at rest and then begins to accelerate to the right. A passenger standing on roller skates (which nearly eliminate the effects of friction) has virtually no net external force acting on her, so she tends to remain at rest relative to the inertial frame of the earth. As the vehicle accelerates around her, she moves backward relative to the vehicle. In the same way, a passenger in a vehicle that is slowing down tends to continue moving with constant velocity relative to the earth, and so moves forward relative to the vehicle (Fig. 4.10b). A vehicle is also accelerating if it moves at a constant speed but is turning (Fig. 4.10c). In this case a passenger tends to continue moving relative to the earth at constant speed in a straight line; relative to the vehicle, the passenger moves to the side of the vehicle on the outside of the turn.

In each case shown in Fig. 4.10, an observer in the vehicle's frame of reference might be tempted to conclude that there *is* a net external force acting on the passenger, since the passenger's velocity *relative to the vehicle* changes in each case. This conclusion is simply

Figure **4.10** Riding in an accelerating vehicle.



wrong; the net external force on the passenger is indeed zero. The vehicle observer's mistake is in trying to apply Newton's first law in the vehicle's frame of reference, which is *not* an inertial frame and in which Newton's first law isn't valid (**Fig. 4.11**). In this book we'll use *only* inertial frames of reference.

We've mentioned only one (approximately) inertial frame of reference: the earth's surface. But there are many inertial frames. If we have an inertial frame of reference A, in which Newton's first law is obeyed, then *any* second frame of reference B will also be inertial if it moves relative to A with constant velocity $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{B/A}$. We can prove this by using the relative-velocity relationship Eq. (3.35) from Section 3.5:

$$\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/A} = \vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/B} + \vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{B/A}$$

Suppose that P is an object that moves with constant velocity $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/A}$ with respect to an inertial frame A. By Newton's first law the net external force on this object is zero. The velocity of P relative to another frame B has a different value, $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/B} = \vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/A} - \vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{B/A}$. But if the relative velocity $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{B/A}$ of the two frames is constant, then $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}_{P/B}$ is constant as well. Thus B is also an inertial frame; the velocity of P in this frame is constant, and the net external force on P is zero, so Newton's first law is obeyed in B. Observers in frames A and B will disagree about the velocity of P, but they will agree that P has a constant velocity (zero acceleration) and has zero net external force acting on it.

There is no single inertial frame of reference that is preferred over all others for formulating Newton's laws. If one frame is inertial, then every other frame moving relative to it with constant velocity is also inertial. Viewed in this light, the state of rest and the state of motion with constant velocity are not very different; both occur when the vector sum of forces acting on the object is zero.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 4.2 In which of the following situations is there zero net external force on the object? (i) An airplane flying due north at a steady 120 m/s and at a constant altitude; (ii) a car driving straight up a hill with a 3° slope at a constant 90 km/h; (iii) a hawk circling at a constant 20 km/h at a constant height of 15 m above an open field; (iv) a box with slick, frictionless surfaces in the back of a truck as the truck accelerates forward on a level road at 5 m/s^2.

ANSWER **(i), (ii), and (iv)** In (i), (ii), and (iv) the object is not accelerating, so the net external force on the object is zero. [In (iv), if the truck starts from rest, the box remains stationary as seen in the inertial reference frame of the ground as the truck accelerates forward, like the person on skates in Fig. 4.10a.] In (iii), the hawk is moving in a circle; hence it is accelerating and is *not* in equilibrium.

Figure **4.11** From the frame of reference of the car, it seems as though a force is pushing the crash test dummies forward as the car comes to a sudden stop. But there is really no such force: As the car stops, the dummies keep moving forward as a consequence of Newton's first law.

4.3 NEWTON'S SECOND LAW

Newton's first law tells us that when an object is acted on by zero net external force, the object moves with constant velocity and zero acceleration. In **Fig. 4.12a** (next page), a hockey puck is sliding to the right on wet ice. There is negligible friction, so there are no horizontal forces acting on the puck; the downward force of gravity and the upward normal force exerted by the ice surface sum to zero. So the net external force $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ acting on the puck is zero, the puck has zero acceleration, and its velocity is constant.

But what happens when the net external force is *not* zero? In Fig. 4.12b we apply a constant horizontal force to a sliding puck in the same direction that the puck is moving. Then $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ is constant and in the same horizontal direction as $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$. We find that during the time the force is acting, the velocity of the puck changes at a constant rate; that is, the puck moves with constant acceleration. The speed of the puck increases, so the acceleration $\vec{\boldsymbol{a}}$ is in the same direction as $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$ and $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$.

In Fig. 4.12c we reverse the direction of the force on the puck so that $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ acts opposite to $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$. In this case as well, the puck has an acceleration; the puck moves more and more slowly to the right. The acceleration $\vec{\boldsymbol{a}}$ in this case is to the left, in the same direction as $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$. As in the previous case, experiment shows that the acceleration is constant if $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ is constant.

We conclude that *a net external force acting on an object causes the object to accelerate in the same direction as the net external force.* If the magnitude of the net external force is constant, as in Fig. 4.12b and Fig. 4.12c, then so is the magnitude of the acceleration.

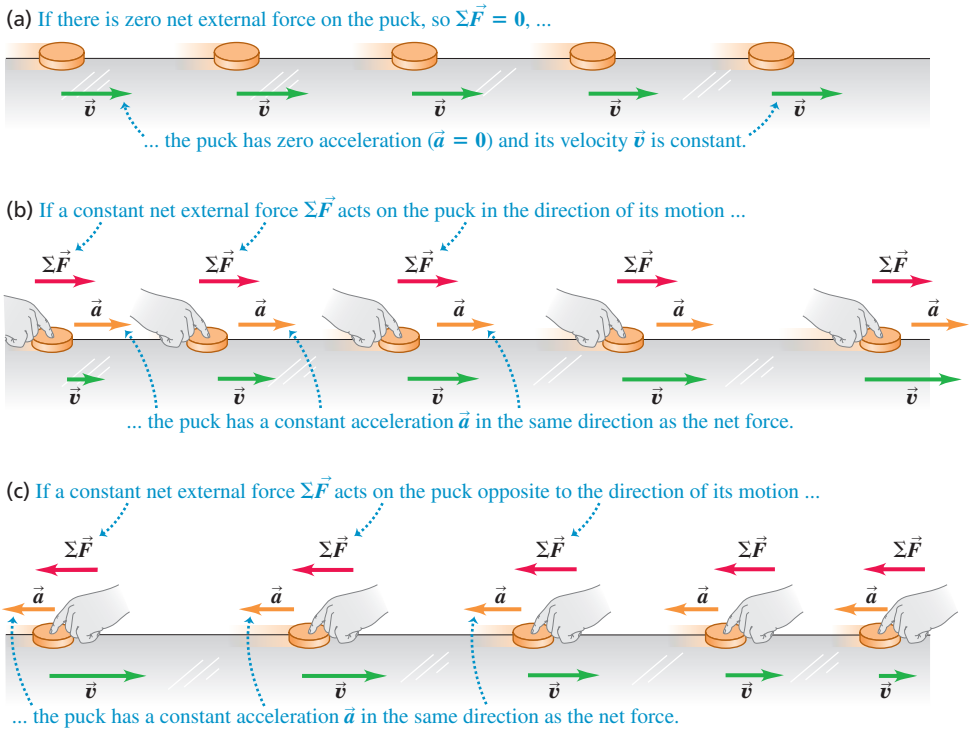


Figure **4.12** Using a hockey puck on a frictionless surface to explore the relationship between the net external force $\Sigma\vec{F}$ on an object and the resulting acceleration $\vec{a}$ of the object.

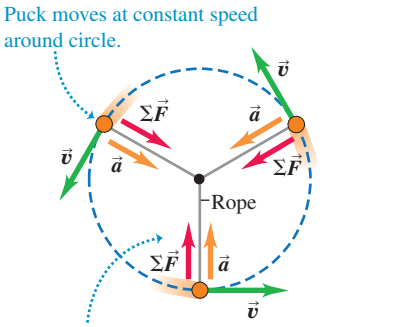


Figure **4.13** A top view of a hockey puck in uniform circular motion on a frictionless horizontal surface.

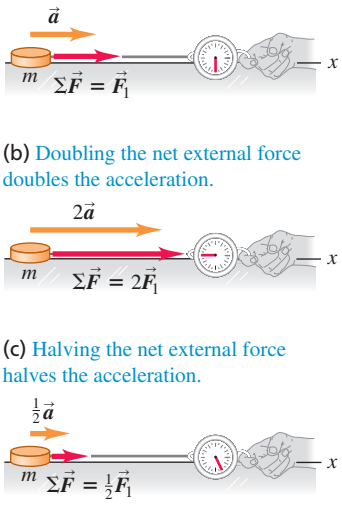


Figure **4.14** The magnitude of an object's acceleration $\vec{a}$ is directly proportional to the magnitude of the net external force $\Sigma\vec{F}$ acting on the object of mass m.

These conclusions about net external force and acceleration also apply to an object moving along a curved path. For example, **Fig. 4.13** shows a hockey puck moving in a horizontal circle on an ice surface of negligible friction. A rope is attached to the puck and to a stick in the ice, and this rope exerts an inward tension force of constant magnitude on the puck. The net external force and acceleration are both constant in magnitude and directed toward the center of the circle. The speed of the puck is constant, so this is uniform circular motion (see Section 3.4).

Figure 4.14a shows another experiment involving acceleration and net external force. We apply a constant horizontal force to a puck on a frictionless horizontal surface, using the spring balance described in Section 4.1 with the spring stretched a constant amount. As in Figs. 4.12b and Figs. 4.12c, this horizontal force equals the net external force on the puck. If we change the magnitude of the net external force, the acceleration changes in the same proportion. Doubling the net external force doubles the acceleration (Fig. 4.14b), halving the net external force halves the acceleration (Fig. 4.14c), and so on. Many such experiments show that *for any given object, the magnitude of the acceleration is directly proportional to the magnitude of the net external force acting on the object.*

Mass and Force

Our results mean that for a given object, the *ratio* of the magnitude $|\Sigma\vec{F}|$ of the net external force to the magnitude $a = |\vec{a}|$ of the acceleration is constant, regardless of the magnitude of the net external force. We call this ratio the *inertial mass,* or simply the **mass,** of the object and denote it by m. That is,

$$m = \frac{|\Sigma\vec{F}|}{a} \quad \text{or} \quad |\Sigma\vec{F}| = ma \quad \text{or} \quad a = \frac{|\Sigma\vec{F}|}{m} \tag{4.4}$$

Mass is a quantitative measure of inertia, which we discussed in Section 4.2. The last of the equations in Eqs. (4.4) says that the greater an object's mass, the more the object "resists" being accelerated. When you hold a piece of fruit in your hand at the supermarket and move it slightly up and down to estimate its heft, you're applying a force and seeing how much the fruit accelerates up and down in response. If a force causes a large acceleration, the fruit has a small mass; if the same force causes only a small acceleration, the fruit has a large mass. In the same way, if you hit a table-tennis ball and then a basketball with

the same force, the basketball has much smaller acceleration because it has much greater mass.

The SI unit of mass is the **kilogram.** We mentioned in Section 1.3 that the kilogram is officially defined in terms of the definitions of the second and the meter, as well as the value of a fundamental quantity called Planck's constant. We can use this definition:

One newton is the amount of net external force that gives an acceleration of 1 meter per second squared to an object with a mass of 1 kilogram.

This definition allows us to calibrate the spring balances and other instruments used to measure forces. Because of the way we have defined the newton, it is related to the units of mass, length, and time. For Eqs. (4.4) to be dimensionally consistent, it must be true that

$$1 \text{ newton} = (1 \text{ kilogram})(1 \text{ meter per second squared})$$

or

$$1 \text{ N} = 1 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$$

We'll use this relationship many times in the next few chapters, so keep it in mind.

Here's an application of Eqs. (4.4). Suppose we apply a constant net external force $\sum\vec{F}$ to an object of known mass m_1 and we find an acceleration of magnitude a_1 (**Fig. 4.15a**). We then apply the same force to another object of unknown mass m_2, and we find an acceleration of magnitude a_2 (Fig. 4.15b). Then, according to Eqs. (4.4),

$$m_1 a_1 = m_2 a_2$$

$$\frac{m_2}{m_1} = \frac{a_1}{a_2} \qquad \text{(same net external force)} \qquad (4.5)$$

For the same net external force, the ratio of the masses of two objects is the inverse of the ratio of their accelerations. In principle we could use Eq. (4.5) to measure an unknown mass m_2, but it is usually easier to determine mass indirectly by measuring the object's *weight*. We'll return to this point in Section 4.4.

When two objects with masses m_1 and m_2 are fastened together, we find that the mass of the composite object is always $m_1 + m_2$ (Fig. 4.15c). This additive property of mass may seem obvious, but it has to be verified experimentally. Ultimately, the mass of an object is related to the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons it contains. This wouldn't be a good way to *define* mass because there is no practical way to count these particles. But the concept of mass is the most fundamental way to characterize the quantity of matter in an object.

Stating Newton's Second Law

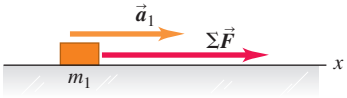
Experiment shows that the *net* external force on an object is what causes that object to accelerate. If a combination of forces $\vec{F}_1, \vec{F}_2, \vec{F}_3$, and so on is applied to an object, the object will have the same acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ as when only a single force is applied, if that single force is equal to the vector sum $\vec{F}_1 + \vec{F}_2 + \vec{F}_3 + \cdots$. In other words, the principle of superposition of forces (see Fig. 4.4) also holds true when the net external force is not zero and the object is accelerating.

Equations (4.4) relate the magnitude of the net external force on an object to the magnitude of the acceleration that it produces. We have also seen that the direction of the net external force is the same as the direction of the acceleration, whether the object's path is straight or curved. Finally, we've seen that the forces that affect an object's motion are *external* forces, those exerted on the object by other objects in its environment. Newton wrapped up all these results into a single concise statement that we now call *Newton's second law of motion:*

NEWTON'S SECOND LAW OF MOTION **If a net external force acts on an object, the object accelerates. The direction of acceleration is the same as the direction of the net external force. The mass of the object times the acceleration vector of the object equals the net external force vector.**

Figure **4.15** For a given net external force $\sum\vec{F}$ acting an object, the acceleration is inversely proportional to the mass of the object. Masses add like ordinary scalars.

(a) A known net external force $\sum\vec{F}$ causes an object with mass m_1 to have an acceleration $\vec{a}_1$.



(b) Applying the same net external force $\sum\vec{F}$ to a second object and noting the acceleration allow us to measure the mass.

(c) When the two objects are fastened together, the same method shows that their composite mass is the sum of their individual masses.

Figure **4.16** The design of high-performance motorcycles depends fundamentally on Newton's second law. To maximize the forward acceleration, the designer makes the motorcycle as light as possible (that is, minimizes the mass) and uses the most powerful engine possible (thus maximizing the forward force).

In symbols,

Newton's second law: If there is a net external force on an object ... $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ ... the object accelerates in the same direction as the net external force. (4.6)

Mass of object

An alternative statement is that the acceleration of an object is equal to the net external force acting on the object divided by the object's mass:

$$\vec{a} = \frac{\Sigma\vec{F}}{m}$$

Newton's second law is a fundamental law of nature, the basic relationship between force and motion. Most of the remainder of this chapter and all of the next are devoted to learning how to apply this principle in various situations.

Equation (4.6) has many practical applications (**Fig. 4.16**). You've actually been using it all your life to measure your body's acceleration. In your inner ear, microscopic hair cells are attached to a gelatinous substance that holds tiny crystals of calcium carbonate called *otoliths*. When your body accelerates, the hair cells pull the otoliths along with the rest of your body and sense the magnitude and direction of the force that they exert. By Newton's second law, the acceleration of the otoliths—and hence that of your body as a whole—is proportional to this force and has the same direction. In this way, you can sense the magnitude and direction of your acceleration even with your eyes closed!

Using Newton's Second Law

At least four aspects of Newton's second law deserve special attention. First, Eq. (4.6) is a *vector* equation. Usually we'll use it in component form, with a separate equation for each component of force and the corresponding component of acceleration:

Newton's second law: Each component of the net external force on an object ...

$$\Sigma F_x = ma_x \qquad \Sigma F_y = ma_y \qquad \Sigma F_z = ma_z \tag{4.7}$$

... equals the object's mass times the corresponding acceleration component.

This set of component equations is equivalent to the single vector Eq. (4.6).

Second, the statement of Newton's second law refers to *external* forces. As an example, how a kicked football moves isn't affected by the *internal* forces that hold the pieces of the ball together. That's why only external forces are included in the sum $\Sigma\vec{F}$ in Eqs. (4.6) and (4.7).

Third, Eqs. (4.6) and (4.7) are valid only when the mass m is *constant*. It's easy to think of systems whose masses change, such as a leaking tank truck or a moving railroad car being loaded with coal. Such systems are better handled by using the concept of momentum; we'll get to that in Chapter 8.

Finally, Newton's second law is valid in inertial frames of reference *only,* just like the first law. It's not valid in the reference frame of any of the accelerating vehicles in Fig. 4.10; relative to any of these frames, the passenger accelerates even though the net external force on the passenger is zero. We'll usually treat the earth as an adequate approximation to an inertial frame, although because of its rotation and orbital motion it is not precisely inertial.

CAUTION **$m\vec{a}$ is not a force** Even though the vector $m\vec{a}$ is equal to the vector sum $\Sigma\vec{F}$ of all the forces acting on the object, the vector $m\vec{a}$ is *not* a force. Acceleration is the *result* of the net external force; it is not a force itself. It's "common sense" to think that a "force of acceleration" pushes you back into your seat when your car accelerates forward from rest. But *there is no such force;* instead, your inertia causes you to tend to stay at rest relative to the earth, and the car accelerates around you (see Fig. 4.10a). The "common sense" confusion arises from trying to apply Newton's second law where it isn't valid—in the noninertial reference frame of an accelerating car. We'll always examine motion relative to *inertial* frames of reference only, and we strongly recommend that you do the same in solving problems.

In learning how to use Newton's second law, we'll begin in this chapter with examples of straight-line motion. Then in Chapter 5 we'll consider more general kinds of motion and develop more detailed problem-solving strategies.

EXAMPLE 4.4 Newton's second law I: Determining acceleration from force

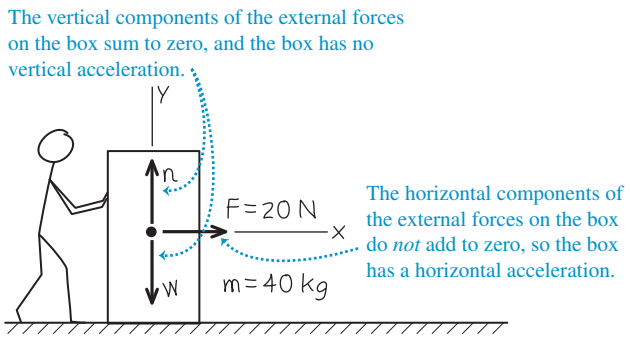
WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

A worker applies a constant horizontal force with magnitude 20 N to a box with mass 40 kg resting on a level, freshly waxed floor with negligible friction. What is the acceleration of the box?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem involves force and acceleration, so we'll use Newton's second law. That means we'll have to find the net external force acting on the box and set it equal to the mass of the box multiplied by its acceleration. In this example, the acceleration is our target variable.

In *any* problem involving forces, to find the *net* external force we must first identify all of the *individual* external forces that act on the object in question. (Remember that the net external force is the vector sum of these individual forces.) To identify these forces, we'll use the idea that two broad categories of forces act on an object like the box in **Fig. 4.17**: the *weight* of the object $\vec{\boldsymbol{w}}$—that is, the downward gravitational force exerted by the earth—and *contact forces*, which are forces exerted by other objects that the object in question is touching. Two objects are touching the box—the worker's hands and the floor—and both exert contact forces on the box. The worker's hands exert a horizontal force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ of magnitude 20 N. The floor exerts an upward supporting force; as in Section 4.1, we call this a *normal* force $\vec{\boldsymbol{n}}$ because it acts perpendicular to the surface of contact. (Remember that "normal" is a synonym for "perpendicular." It does not mean the opposite of "abnormal"!) If friction were present, the floor would also exert a friction force on the box; we'll ignore this here, since we're told that friction is negligible. Figure 4.17 shows these three external forces that act on the box.

Figure 4.17 Our sketch for this problem.



Just as we did for the forces in Example 4.1 (Section 4.1), we'll find the vector sum of these external forces using components. That's why the second step in any problem involving forces is choosing a coordinate system for finding vector components. It's usually convenient to take one axis either along or opposite the direction of the object's acceleration, which in this case is horizontal. Hence we take the $+x$-axis to be in the direction of the applied horizontal force (which is the direction in which the box accelerates) and the $+y$-axis to be upward. In most force problems that you'll encounter (including this one), the force vectors all lie in a plane, so the z-axis isn't used.

The box doesn't move vertically, so the y-acceleration is zero: $a_y = 0$. Our target variable is the x-acceleration, a_x. We'll find it by using Newton's second law in component form, Eqs. (4.7).

EXECUTE The force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ exerted by the worker has a positive x-component and zero y-component (so $F_x = F = 20$ N, $F_y = 0$); the normal force $\vec{\boldsymbol{n}}$ has zero x-component and an upward, positive y-component (so $n_x = 0, n_y = n$); and the weight $\vec{\boldsymbol{w}}$ has zero x-component and a downward, negative y-component (so $w_x = 0, w_y = -w$). From Newton's second law, Eqs. (4.7),

$$\Sigma F_x = F + 0 + 0 = F = 20\text{ N} = ma_x$$

$$\Sigma F_y = 0 + n - w = ma_y = 0$$

From the first equation, the x-component of acceleration is

$$a_x = \frac{\Sigma F_x}{m} = \frac{20\text{ N}}{40\text{ kg}} = \frac{20\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2}{40\text{ kg}} = 0.50\text{ m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE The net external force is constant, so the acceleration in the $+x$-direction is also constant. If we know the initial position and velocity of the box, we can find its position and velocity at any later time from the constant-acceleration equations of Chapter 2.

To determine a_x, we didn't need the y-component of Newton's second law from Eqs. (4.7), $\Sigma F_y = ma_y$. Can you use this equation to show that the magnitude n of the normal force in this situation is equal to the weight of the box?

KEYCONCEPT In problems involving forces and acceleration, first identify all of the external forces acting on an object, then choose a coordinate system. Find the vector sum of the external forces, and then set it equal to the mass of the object times the acceleration.

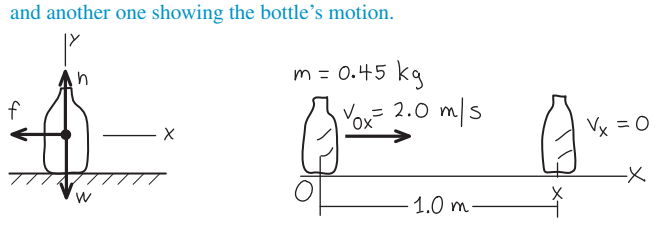
EXAMPLE 4.5 Newton's second law II: Determining force from acceleration

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

A waitress shoves a ketchup bottle with mass 0.45 kg to her right along a smooth, level lunch counter. The bottle leaves her hand moving at 2.0 m/s, then slows down as it slides because of a constant horizontal friction force exerted on it by the countertop. It slides for 1.0 m before coming to rest. What are the magnitude and direction of the friction force acting on the bottle?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem involves forces and acceleration (the slowing of the ketchup bottle), so we'll use Newton's second law to solve it. As in Example 4.4, we identify the external forces acting on the bottle and choose a coordinate system (**Fig. 4.18**). And as in

Figure 4.18 Our sketch for this problem.



Example 4.4, we have a downward gravitational force $\vec{w}$ and an upward normal force $\vec{n}$ exerted by the countertop. The countertop also exerts a friction force $\vec{f}$; this slows the bottle down, so its direction must be opposite the direction of the bottle's velocity (see Fig. 4.12c). We choose the $+x$-axis to be in the direction that the bottle slides, and take the origin to be where the bottle leaves the waitress's hand.

Our target variable is the magnitude f of the friction force. We'll find it by using the x-component of Newton's second law from Eqs. (4.7). We aren't told the x-component of the bottle's acceleration, a_x, but we know that it's constant because the friction force that causes the acceleration is constant. Hence we can use a constant-acceleration formula from Section 2.4 to calculate a_x. We know the bottle's initial and final x-coordinates ($x_0 = 0$ and $x = 1.0\text{ m}$) and its initial and final x-velocity ($v_{0x} = 2.0\text{ m/s}$ and $v_x = 0$), so the easiest equation to use is Eq. (2.13), $v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0)$.

EXECUTE We solve Eq. (2.13) for a_x:

$$a_x = \frac{v_x^2 - v_{0x}^2}{2(x - x_0)} = \frac{(0\text{ m/s})^2 - (2.0\text{ m/s})^2}{2(1.0\text{ m} - 0\text{ m})} = -2.0\text{ m/s}^2$$

The negative sign means that the bottle's acceleration is toward the *left* in Fig. 4.18, opposite to its velocity; this makes sense because the bottle is slowing down. As in Example 4.4, neither the normal force nor the weight has an x-component. That means the net external force in the x-direction is just the x-component $-f$ of the friction force:

$$\begin{aligned}\Sigma F_x &= -f = ma_x = (0.45\text{ kg})(-2.0\text{ m/s}^2)\\ &= -0.90\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2 = -0.90\text{ N}\end{aligned}$$

The negative sign shows that the net external force on the bottle is toward the left. The *magnitude* of the friction force is $f = 0.90\text{ N}$.

EVALUATE As a check on the result, try repeating the calculation with the $+x$-axis to the *left* in Fig. 4.18. You'll find that ΣF_x is equal to $+f = +0.90\text{ N}$ (because the friction force is now in the $+x$-direction), and again you'll find $f = 0.90\text{ N}$. The answers for the *magnitudes* of forces don't depend on the choice of coordinate axes!

We didn't write the y-component of Newton's second law in this example. You should do this and show that it's the same as in Example 4.4, so again the normal force and the weight have the same magnitude.

CAUTION Normal force and weight don't always have the same magnitude Be careful that you *never* assume automatically that the normal force $\vec{n}$ and the weight $\vec{w}$ have the same magnitude! Although that is the case in this example and the preceding one, we'll see many examples in Chapter 5 and later where the magnitude of the normal force is *not* equal to the weight.

KEYCONCEPT In problems involving forces in which you're given velocity, time, and/or displacement data, you'll need to use the equations for motion with constant acceleration as well as Newton's second law.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 4.3 Rank the following situations in order of the magnitude of the object's acceleration, from lowest to highest. Are there any cases that have the same magnitude of acceleration? (i) A 2.0 kg object acted on by a 2.0 N net force; (ii) a 2.0 kg object acted on by an 8.0 N net force; (iii) an 8.0 kg object acted on by a 2.0 N net force; (iv) an 8.0 kg object acted on by a 8.0 N net force.

ANSWER **(iii), (i) and (iv) (tie), (ii)** The acceleration is equal to the net force divided by the mass. Hence the magnitude of the acceleration in each situation is (i) $a = (2.0\text{ N})/(2.0\text{ kg}) = 1.0\text{ m/s}^2$; (ii) $a = (8.0\text{ N})/(2.0\text{ N}) = 4.0\text{ m/s}^2$; (iii) $a = (2.0\text{ N})/(8.0\text{ kg}) = 0.25\text{ m/s}^2$; (iv) $a = (8.0\text{ N})/(8.0\text{ kg}) = 1.0\text{ m/s}^2$.

4.4 MASS AND WEIGHT

The *weight* of an object is the gravitational force that the earth exerts on the object. (If you are on another planet, your weight is the gravitational force that planet exerts on you.) Unfortunately, the terms "mass" and "weight" are often misused and interchanged in everyday conversation. It's absolutely essential for you to understand clearly the distinctions between these two physical quantities.

Mass characterizes the *inertial* properties of an object. Mass is what keeps the table setting on the table when you yank the tablecloth out from under it. The greater the mass, the greater the force needed to cause a given acceleration; this is reflected in Newton's second law, $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$.

Weight, on the other hand, is a *force* exerted on an object by the pull of the earth. Mass and weight are related: Objects that have large mass also have large weight. A large stone is hard to throw because of its large *mass,* and hard to lift off the ground because of its large *weight.*

To understand the relationship between mass and weight, note that a freely falling object has an acceleration of magnitude g (see Section 2.5). Newton's second law tells us that a force must act to produce this acceleration. If a 1 kg object falls with an acceleration of 9.8 m/s^2, the required force has magnitude

$$F = ma = (1\text{ kg})(9.8\text{ m/s}^2) = 9.8\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2 = 9.8\text{ N}$$

The force that makes the object accelerate downward is its weight. Any object near the surface of the earth that has a mass of 1 kg *must* have a weight of 9.8 N to give it the acceleration we observe when it is in free fall. More generally,

$$w = mg \qquad (4.8)$$

(w: magnitude of weight of an object; m: mass of object; g: magnitude of acceleration due to gravity)

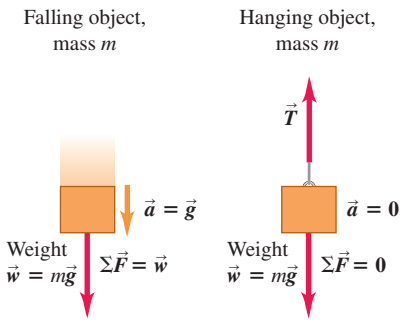
Hence the magnitude w of an object's weight is directly proportional to its mass m. The weight of an object is a force, a vector quantity, and we can write Eq. (4.8) as a vector equation (**Fig. 4.19**):

$$\vec{w} = m\vec{g} \qquad (4.9)$$

Remember that g is the *magnitude* of $\vec{g}$, the acceleration due to gravity, so g is always a positive number, by definition. Thus w, given by Eq. (4.8), is the *magnitude* of the weight and is also always positive.

CAUTION **An object's weight acts at all times** When keeping track of the external forces on an object, remember that the weight is present *all the time,* whether the object is in free fall or not. If we suspend an object from a rope, it is in equilibrium and its acceleration is zero. But its weight, given by Eq. (4.9), is still pulling down on it (Fig. 4.19). In this case the rope pulls up on the object, applying an upward force. The *vector sum* of the external forces is zero, but the weight still acts.

Figure **4.19** Relating the mass and weight of an object.



- The relationship of mass to weight: $\vec{w} = m\vec{g}$.
- This relationship is the same whether an object is falling or stationary.

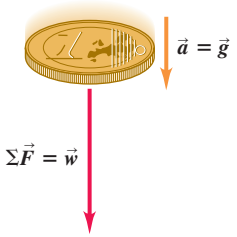
CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.6 Net external force and acceleration in free fall

In Example 2.6 of Section 2.5, a one-euro coin was dropped from rest from the Leaning Tower of Pisa. If the coin falls freely, so that the effects of the air are negligible, how does the net external force on the coin vary as it falls?

SOLUTION In free fall, the acceleration $\vec{a}$ of the coin is constant and equal to $\vec{g}$. Hence by Newton's second law the net external force $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ is also constant and equal to $m\vec{g}$, which is the coin's weight $\vec{w}$ (**Fig. 4.20**). The coin's velocity changes as it falls, but the net external force acting on it is constant.

The net external force on a freely falling coin is constant even if you initially toss it upward. The force that your hand exerts on the coin to toss it is a contact force, and it disappears the instant the coin leaves your hand. From then on, the only force acting on the coin is its weight $\vec{w}$.

Figure **4.20** The acceleration of a freely falling object is constant, and so is the net external force acting on the object.

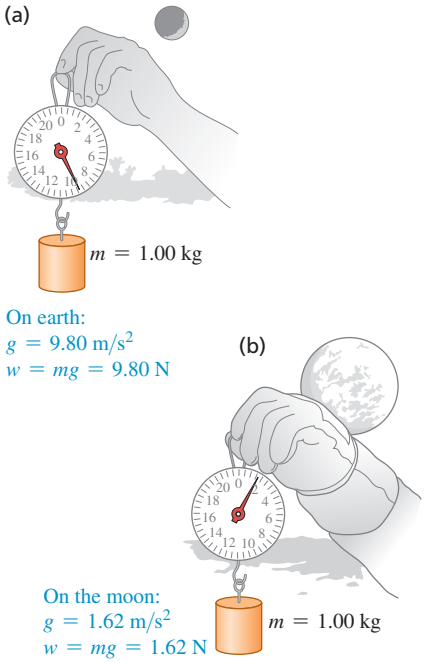


KEYCONCEPT The gravitational force on an object (its weight) does not depend on how the object is moving.

Variation of g with Location

We'll use $g = 9.80\text{ m/s}^2$ for problems set on the earth (or, if the other data in the problem are given to only two significant figures, $g = 9.8\text{ m/s}^2$). In fact, the value of g varies somewhat from point to point on the earth's surface—from about 9.78 to 9.82 m/s^2—because the earth is not perfectly spherical and because of effects due to its rotation. At a point where $g = 9.80\text{ m/s}^2$, the weight of a standard kilogram is $w = 9.80\text{ N}$.

Figure **4.21** The weight of a 1 kilogram mass (a) on earth and (b) on the moon.



At a different point, where $g = 9.78\ \text{m/s}^2$, the weight is $w = 9.78$ N but the mass is still 1 kg. The weight of an object varies from one location to another; the mass does not.

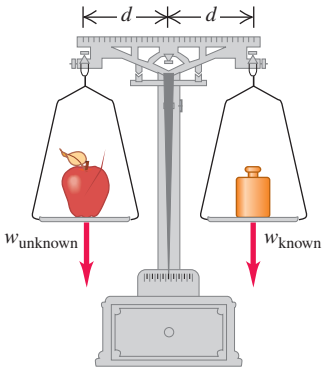
If we take a standard kilogram to the surface of the moon, where the value of g is $1.62\ \text{m/s}^2$, its weight is 1.62 N but its mass is still 1 kg (**Fig. 4.21**). An 80.0 kg astronaut has a weight on earth of $(80.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) = 784$ N, but on the moon the astronaut's weight would be only $(80.0\ \text{kg})(1.62\ \text{m/s}^2) = 130$ N. In Chapter 13 we'll see how to calculate the value of g at the surface of the moon or on other worlds.

Measuring Mass and Weight

In Section 4.3 we described a way to compare masses by comparing their accelerations when they are subjected to the same net external force. Usually, however, the easiest way to measure the mass of an object is to measure its weight, often by comparing with a standard. Equation (4.8) says that two objects that have the same weight at a particular location also have the same mass. We can compare weights very precisely; the familiar equal-arm balance (**Fig. 4.22**) can determine with great precision (up to 1 part in 10^6) when the weights of two objects are equal and hence when their masses are equal.

The concept of mass plays two rather different roles in mechanics. The weight of an object (the gravitational force acting on it) is proportional to its mass as stated in the equation $w = mg$; we call the property related to gravitational interactions *gravitational mass.* On the other hand, we call the inertial property that appears in Newton's second law ($\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$) the *inertial mass.* If these two quantities were different, the acceleration due to gravity might well be different for different objects. However, extraordinarily precise experiments have established that in fact the two *are* the same to a precision of better than one part in 10^{12}.

Figure **4.22** An equal-arm balance determines the mass of an object (such as an apple) by comparing its weight to a known weight.



CAUTION **Don't confuse mass and weight** The SI units for mass and weight are often misused in everyday life. For example, it's incorrect to say "This box weighs 6 kg." What this really means is that the *mass* of the box, probably determined indirectly by *weighing,* is 6 kg. Avoid this sloppy usage in your own work! In SI units, weight (a force) is measured in newtons, while mass is measured in kilograms.

EXAMPLE 4.7 Mass and weight

A 2.45×10^4 N truck traveling in the $+x$-direction makes an emergency stop; the x-component of the net external force acting on it is -1.83×10^4 N. What is its acceleration?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is the x-component of the truck's acceleration, a_x. We use the x-component portion of Newton's second law, Eqs. (4.7), to relate force and acceleration. To do this, we need to know the truck's mass. The newton is a unit for force, however, so 2.49×10^4 N is the truck's *weight,* not its mass. Hence we'll first use Eq. (4.8) to determine the truck's mass from its weight. The truck has a positive x-velocity and is slowing down, so its x-acceleration will be negative.

EXECUTE The mass of the truck is

$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{2.45 \times 10^4\ \text{N}}{9.80\ \text{m/s}^2} = \frac{2.45 \times 10^4\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2}{9.80\ \text{m/s}^2} = 2540\ \text{kg}$$

Then $\Sigma F_x = ma_x$ gives

$$a_x = \frac{\Sigma F_x}{m} = \frac{-1.83 \times 10^4\ \text{N}}{2540\ \text{kg}} = \frac{-1.83 \times 10^4\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2}{2540\ \text{kg}} = -7.20\ \text{m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE The negative sign means that the acceleration vector points in the negative x-direction, as we expected. The magnitude of this acceleration is pretty high; passengers in this truck will experience a lot of rearward force from their seat belts.

KEYCONCEPT In problems involving Newton's second law, make sure that for m you use the mass of the object, *not* its weight.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 4.4 Suppose an astronaut landed on a planet where $g = 19.6\ \text{m/s}^2$. Compared to earth, would it be easier, harder, or just as easy for her to walk around? Would it be easier, harder, or just as easy for her to catch a ball that is moving horizontally at 12 m/s? (Assume that the astronaut's spacesuit is a lightweight model that doesn't impede her movements in any way.)

ANSWER

It would take twice the effort for the astronaut to walk around because her weight on the planet would be twice as much as on the earth. But it would be just as easy to catch a ball moving horizontally. The ball's *mass* is the same as on earth, so the horizontal force the astronaut would have to exert to bring it to a stop (i.e., to give it the same acceleration) would also be the same as on earth.

4.5 NEWTON'S THIRD LAW

A force acting on an object is always the result of its interaction with another object, so forces always come in pairs. You can't pull on a doorknob without the doorknob pulling back on you. When you kick a football, your foot exerts a forward force on the ball, but you also feel the force the ball exerts back on your foot.

In each of these cases, the force that you exert on the other object is in the opposite direction to the force that object exerts on you. Experiments show that whenever two objects interact, the two forces that they exert on each other are always *equal in magnitude* and *opposite in direction*. This fact is called *Newton's third law of motion:*

NEWTON'S THIRD LAW OF MOTION **If object *A* exerts a force on object *B* (an "action"), then object *B* exerts a force on object *A* (a "reaction"). These two forces have the same magnitude but are opposite in direction. These two forces act on *different* objects.**

For example, in **Fig. 4.23** $\vec{F}_{A \text{ on } B}$ is the force applied *by* object *A* (first subscript) *on* object *B* (second subscript), and $\vec{F}_{B \text{ on } A}$ is the force applied *by* object *B* (first subscript) *on* object *A* (second subscript). In equation form,

Newton's third law: When two objects *A* and *B* exert forces on each other ...

$$\vec{F}_{A \text{ on } B} = -\vec{F}_{B \text{ on } A} \qquad (4.10)$$

... the two forces have the same magnitude but opposite directions.

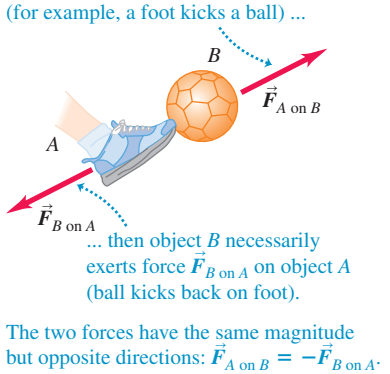
Note: The two forces act on *different* objects.

It doesn't matter whether one object is inanimate (like the football in Fig. 4.23) and the other is not (like the kicker's foot): They necessarily exert forces on each other that obey Eq. (4.10).

In the statement of Newton's third law, "action" and "reaction" are the two opposite forces (in Fig. 4.23, $\vec{F}_{A \text{ on } B}$ and $\vec{F}_{B \text{ on } A}$); we sometimes refer to them as an **action–reaction pair.** This is *not* meant to imply any cause-and-effect relationship; we can consider either force as the "action" and the other as the "reaction." We often say simply that the forces are "equal and opposite," meaning that they have equal magnitudes and opposite directions.

CAUTION **The two forces in an action–reaction pair act on different objects** We stress that the two forces described in Newton's third law act on *different* objects. This is important when you solve problems involving Newton's first or second law, which involve the forces that act *on* an object. For instance, the net external force on the football in Fig. 4.23 is the vector sum of the weight of the ball and the force $\vec{F}_{A \text{ on } B}$ exerted by kicker *A* on the ball *B*. You wouldn't include the force $\vec{F}_{B \text{ on } A}$ because this force acts on the kicker *A*, *not* on the ball.

Figure **4.23** Newton's third law of motion.



APPLICATION Blame Newton's Laws This car stopped because of Newton's second and third laws. During the impact, the car exerted a force on the tree; in accordance with the third law, the tree exerted an equally strong force back on the car. In accordance with the second law, the force of the tree on the car gave the car an acceleration that changed its velocity to zero.

In Fig. 4.23 the action and reaction forces are *contact* forces that are present only when the two objects are touching. But Newton's third law also applies to *long-range* forces that do not require physical contact, such as the force of gravitational attraction. A table-tennis ball exerts an upward gravitational force on the earth that's equal in magnitude to the downward gravitational force the earth exerts on the ball. When you drop the ball, both the ball and the earth accelerate toward each other. The net force on each object has the same magnitude, but the earth's acceleration is microscopically small because its mass is so great. Nevertheless, it does move!

CAUTION Contact forces need contact If your fingers push on an object, the force you exert acts only when your fingers and the object are in contact. Once contact is broken, the force is no longer present even if the object is still moving.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.8 Which force is greater?

After your sports car breaks down, you start to push it to the nearest repair shop. While the car is starting to move, how does the force you exert on the car compare to the force the car exerts on you? How do these forces compare when you are pushing the car along at a constant speed?

SOLUTION Newton's third law says that in *both* cases, the force you exert on the car is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force the car exerts on you. It's true that you have to push harder to get the car going than to keep it going. But no matter how hard you push on the car, the car pushes just as hard back on you. Newton's third law gives the same result whether the two objects are at rest, moving with constant velocity, or accelerating.

You may wonder how the car "knows" to push back on you with the same magnitude of force that you exert on it. It may help to visualize the forces you and the car exert on each other as interactions between the atoms at the surface of your hand and the atoms at the surface of the car. These interactions are analogous to miniature springs between adjacent atoms, and a compressed spring exerts equally strong forces on both of its ends.

KEYCONCEPT No matter how two interacting objects are moving, the forces that they exert on each other always have the same magnitude and point in opposite directions.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.9 Newton's third law I: Objects at rest

An apple sits at rest on a table, in equilibrium. What forces act on the apple? What is the reaction force to each of the forces acting on the apple? What are the action–reaction pairs?

SOLUTION **Figure 4.24a** shows the forces acting on the apple. $\vec{F}_{\text{earth on apple}}$ is the weight of the apple—that is, the downward gravitational force exerted *by* the earth *on* the apple. Similarly, $\vec{F}_{\text{table on apple}}$ is the upward normal force exerted *by* the table *on* the apple.

Figure 4.24b shows one of the action–reaction pairs involving the apple. As the earth pulls down on the apple, with force $\vec{F}_{\text{earth on apple}}$, the apple exerts an equally strong upward pull on the earth $\vec{F}_{\text{apple on earth}}$. By Newton's third law (Eq. 4.10) we have

$$\vec{F}_{\text{apple on earth}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{earth on apple}}$$

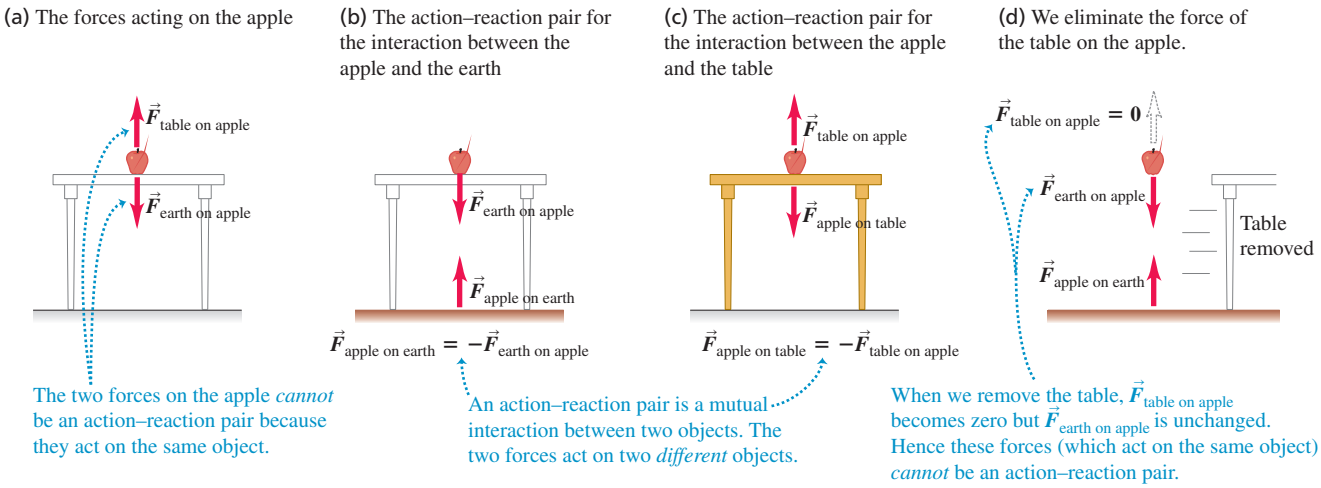
Figure 4.24c shows the other action–reaction pair involving the apple. The table pushes up on the apple with force $\vec{F}_{\text{table on apple}}$; the corresponding reaction is the downward force $\vec{F}_{\text{apple on table}}$ exerted by the apple on the table. For this action–reaction pair we have

$$\vec{F}_{\text{apple on table}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{table on apple}}$$

The two forces acting on the apple in Fig. 4.24a, $\vec{F}_{\text{table on apple}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{earth on apple}}$, are *not* an action–reaction pair, despite being equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. They do not represent the mutual interaction of two objects; they are two different forces acting on the *same* object. Figure 4.24d shows another way to see this. If we suddenly yank the table out from under the apple, the forces $\vec{F}_{\text{apple on table}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{table on apple}}$ suddenly become zero, but $\vec{F}_{\text{apple on earth}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{earth on apple}}$ are unchanged (the gravitational interaction is still present). Because $\vec{F}_{\text{table on apple}}$ is now zero, it can't be the negative of the nonzero $\vec{F}_{\text{earth on apple}}$, and these two forces can't be an action–reaction pair. *The two forces in an action–reaction pair* ***never*** *act on the same object.*

KEYCONCEPT The two forces in an action–reaction pair always act on two different objects.

Figure 4.24 Identifying action–reaction pairs.



CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.10 Newton's third law II: Objects in motion

A stonemason drags a marble block across a floor by pulling on a rope attached to the block (**Fig. 4.25a**). The block is not necessarily in equilibrium. What are the forces that correspond to the interactions between the block, rope, and mason? What are the action–reaction pairs?

SOLUTION We'll use the subscripts B for the block, R for the rope, and M for the mason. In Fig. 4.25b $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ is the force exerted by the *mason* on the *rope*, and the corresponding reaction is the force $\vec{F}_{\text{R on M}}$ exerted by the *rope* on the *mason.* Similarly, $\vec{F}_{\text{R on B}}$ is the force exerted by the *rope* on the *block,* and the corresponding reaction is the force $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ exerted by the *block* on the *rope.* The forces in each action–reaction pair are equal and opposite:

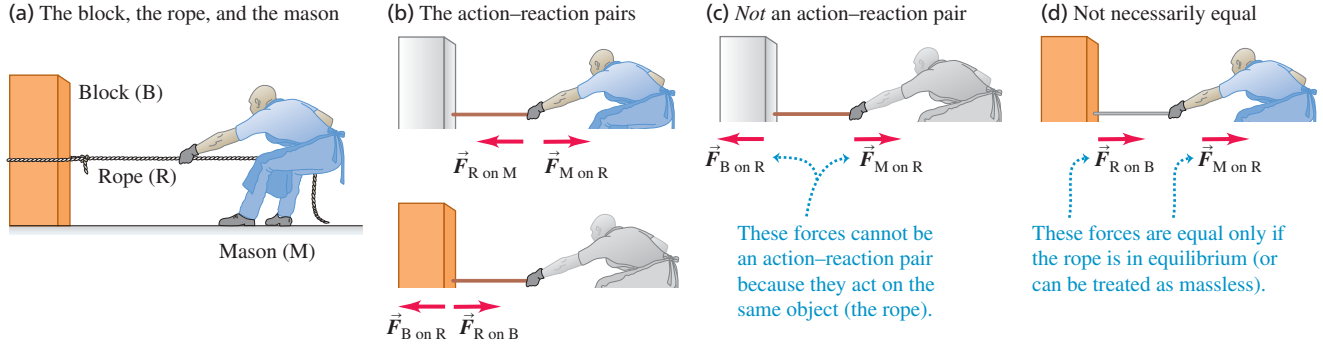
$$\vec{F}_{\text{R on M}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{F}_{\text{B on R}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{R on B}}$$

Forces $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ (Fig. 4.25c) are *not* an action–reaction pair because both of these forces act on the *same* object (the rope); an action and its reaction *must* always act on *different* objects. Furthermore, the forces $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ are not necessarily equal in magnitude. Applying Newton's second law to the rope, we get

$$\Sigma\vec{F} = \vec{F}_{\text{M on R}} + \vec{F}_{\text{B on R}} = m_{\text{R}}\vec{a}_{\text{R}}$$

If the block and rope are accelerating (speeding up or slowing down), the rope is not in equilibrium, and $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ must have a different magnitude than $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$. By contrast, the action–reaction forces $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{R on M}}$ are always equal in magnitude, as are $\vec{F}_{\text{R on B}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$. Newton's third law holds whether or not the objects are accelerating.

Figure 4.25 Identifying the interaction forces when a mason pulls on a rope attached to a block.



In the special case in which the rope is in equilibrium, the forces $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. But this is an example of Newton's *first* law, not his third; these are two forces on the same object, not forces of two objects on each other. Another way to look at this is that in equilibrium, $\vec{a}_{\text{R}} = \mathbf{0}$ in the previous equation. Then $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ because of Newton's first law.

Another special case is if the rope is accelerating but has negligibly small mass compared to that of the block or the mason. In this case, $m_{\text{R}} = 0$ in the previous equation, so again $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$. Since Newton's third law says that $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ *always* equals $-\vec{F}_{\text{R on B}}$ (they are an action–reaction pair), in this "massless-rope" case $\vec{F}_{\text{R on B}}$ also equals $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$.

For both the "massless-rope" case and a rope in equilibrium, the rope exerts the same force on the block as the mason exerts on the rope (Fig. 4.25d). Hence we can think of the rope as "transmitting" to the block the force the mason exerts on the rope. But remember that this is true *only* when the rope has negligibly small mass or is in equilibrium.

KEYCONCEPT In problems that involve more than one object, use Newton's third law to relate the forces that the objects exert on each other.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 4.11 A Newton's third law paradox?

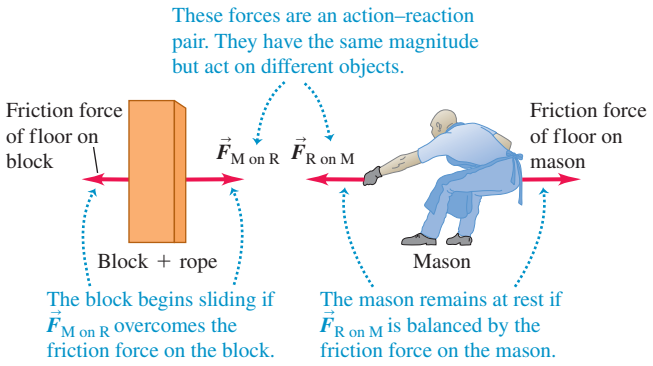
We saw in Conceptual Example 4.10 that the stonemason pulls as hard on the rope–block combination as that combination pulls back on him. Why, then, does the block move while the stonemason remains stationary?

SOLUTION To resolve this seeming paradox, keep in mind the difference between Newton's *second* and *third* laws. The only forces involved in Newton's second law are those that act *on* a given object. The vector sum of these forces determines the object's acceleration, if any. By contrast, Newton's third law relates the forces that two *different* objects exert on *each other*. The third law alone tells you nothing about the motion of either object.

If the rope–block combination is initially at rest, it begins to slide if the stonemason exerts a force on the rope $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ that is *greater* in magnitude than the friction force that the floor exerts on the block (**Fig. 4.26**). Then there is a net external force to the right on the rope–block combination, and it accelerates to the right. By contrast, the stonemason *doesn't* move because the net external force acting on him is *zero*. His shoes have nonskid soles that don't slip on the floor, so the friction force that the floor exerts on him is strong enough to balance the pull of the rope on him, $\vec{F}_{\text{R on M}}$. (Both the block and the stonemason also experience a downward force of gravity and an upward normal force exerted by the floor. These forces balance each other, and so don't affect the motion of the block or the mason.)

Once the block is moving, the stonemason doesn't need to pull as hard; he must exert only enough force to balance the friction force on the block. Then the net external force on the moving block is zero, and by Newton's first law the block continues to move toward the mason at a constant velocity.

Figure **4.26** The horizontal forces acting on the block–rope combination (left) and the mason (right). (The vertical forces are not shown.)



So the block accelerates but the stonemason doesn't because different amounts of friction act on them. If the floor were freshly waxed, so that there was little friction between the floor and the stonemason's shoes, pulling on the rope might start the block sliding to the right *and* start him sliding to the left.

Here's the moral: When analyzing the motion of an object, remember that only the forces acting *on* an object determine its motion. From this perspective, Newton's third law is merely a tool that can help you determine what those forces are.

KEYCONCEPT The motion of an object depends on the forces that are exerted on it, not the forces that it exerts on other objects.

An object that has pulling forces applied at its ends, such as the rope in Fig. 4.25, is said to be in *tension*. The **tension** at any point along the rope is the magnitude of the force acting at that point (see Fig. 4.2c). In Fig. 4.25b the tension at the right end of the rope is the magnitude of $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ (or of $\vec{F}_{\text{R on M}}$), and the tension at the left end is the magnitude of $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ (or of $\vec{F}_{\text{R on B}}$). If the rope is in equilibrium and if no forces act except at its ends, the net external force on the rope is zero and the tension is the *same* at both ends and throughout the rope. Thus, if the magnitudes of $\vec{F}_{\text{B on R}}$ and $\vec{F}_{\text{M on R}}$ are 50 N each, the tension in the rope is 50 N (*not* 100 N). The same is true if we can regard the rope as "massless" (that is, if its mass is small compared to that of the objects to which it's attached).

We emphasize once again that the two forces in an action–reaction pair *never* act on the same object. Remembering this fact can help you avoid confusion about action–reaction pairs and Newton's third law.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 4.5 You are driving a car on a country road when a mosquito splatters on the windshield. Which has the greater magnitude: the force that the car exerted on the mosquito or the force that the mosquito exerted on the car? Or are the magnitudes the same? If they are different, how can you reconcile this fact with Newton's third law? If they are equal, why is the mosquito splattered while the car is undamaged?

ANSWER By Newton's third law, the two forces have equal magnitude. Because the car has much greater mass than the mosquito, it undergoes only a tiny, imperceptible acceleration in response to the force of the impact. By contrast, the mosquito, with its minuscule mass, undergoes a catastrophically large acceleration.

4.6 FREE-BODY DIAGRAMS

Newton's three laws of motion contain all the basic principles we need to solve a wide variety of problems in mechanics. These laws are very simple in form, but the process of applying them to specific situations can pose real challenges. In this brief section we'll point out three key ideas and techniques to use in any problems involving Newton's laws. You'll learn others in Chapter 5, which also extends the use of Newton's laws to cover more complex situations.

1. *Newton's first and second laws apply to a specific object.* Whenever you use Newton's first law, $\sum\vec{F} = \mathbf{0}$, for an equilibrium situation or Newton's second law, $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, for a nonequilibrium situation, you must decide at the beginning to which object you are referring. This decision may sound trivial, but it isn't.
2. *Only forces acting on the object matter.* The sum $\sum\vec{F}$ includes all the forces that act *on* the object in question. Hence, once you've chosen the object to analyze, you have to identify all the forces acting on it. Don't confuse the forces acting on a object with the forces exerted by that object on some other object. For example, to analyze a person walking, you would include in $\sum\vec{F}$ the force that the ground exerts on the person as he walks, but *not* the force that the person exerts on the ground (**Fig. 4.27**). These forces form an action–reaction pair and are related by Newton's third law, but only the member of the pair that acts on the object you're working with goes into $\sum\vec{F}$.
3. *Free-body diagrams are essential to help identify the relevant forces.* A **free-body diagram** shows the chosen object by itself, "free" of its surroundings, with vectors drawn to show the magnitudes and directions of all the forces that act on the object. (Here "body" is another word for "object.") We've shown free-body diagrams in Figs. 4.17, 4.18, 4.19, and 4.24a. Be careful to include all the forces acting *on* the object, but be equally careful *not* to include any forces that the object exerts on any other object. In particular, the two forces in an action–reaction pair must *never* appear in the same free-body diagram because they never act on the same object. Furthermore, never include forces that a object exerts on itself, since these can't affect the object's motion.

When a problem involves more than one object, you have to take the problem apart and draw a separate free-body diagram for each object. For example, Fig. 4.25c shows a separate free-body diagram for the rope in the case in which the rope is considered massless (so that no gravitational force acts on it). Figure 4.26 also shows diagrams for the block and the mason, but these are *not* complete free-body diagrams because they don't show all the forces acting on each object. (We left out the vertical forces—the weight force exerted by the earth and the upward normal force exerted by the floor.)

In **Fig. 4.28** (next page) we present three real-life situations and the corresponding complete free-body diagrams. Note that in each situation a person exerts a force on something in his or her surroundings, but the force that shows up in the person's free-body diagram is the surroundings pushing back *on* the person.

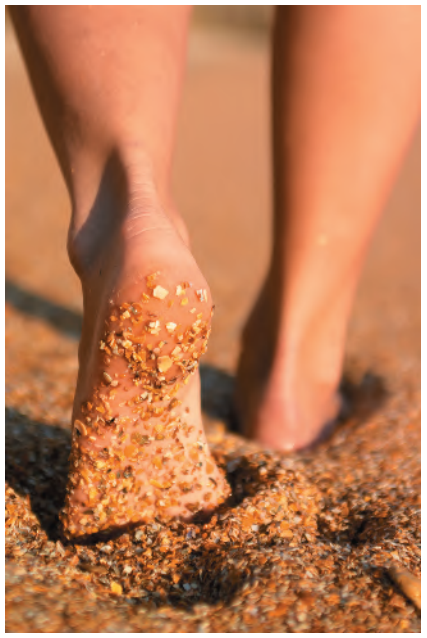


Figure **4.27** The simple act of walking depends crucially on Newton's third law. To start moving forward, you push backward on the ground with your foot. As a reaction, the ground pushes forward on your foot (and hence on your body as a whole) with a force of the same magnitude. This *external* force provided by the ground is what accelerates your body forward.

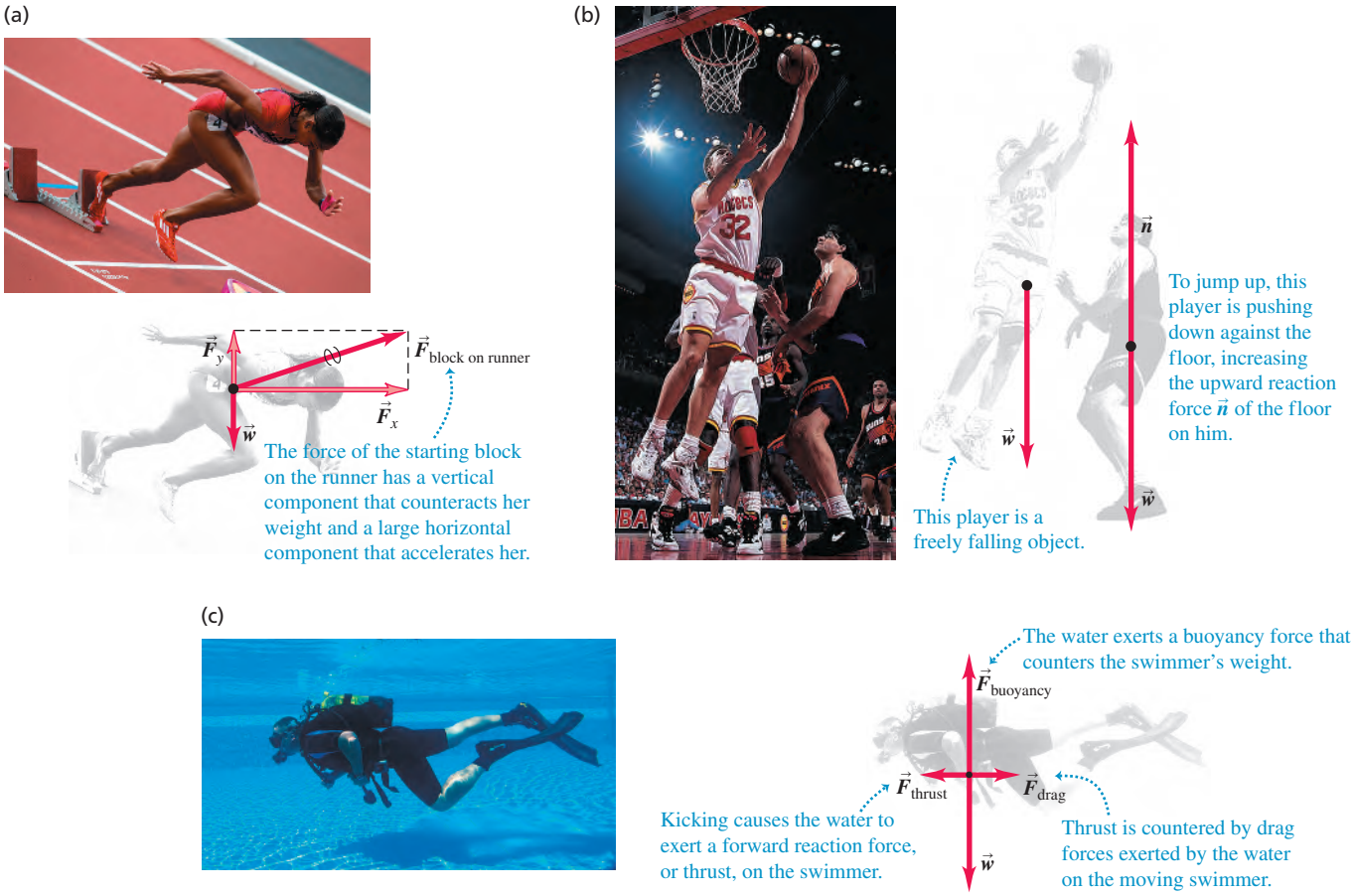
CAUTION **Forces in free-body diagrams** For a free-body diagram to be complete, you *must* be able to answer this question for each force: What other object is applying this force? If you can't answer that question, you may be dealing with a nonexistent force. Avoid nonexistent forces such as "the force of acceleration" or "the $m\vec{a}$ force," discussed in Section 4.3.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 4.6 The buoyancy force shown in Fig. 4.28c is one half of an action–reaction pair. What force is the other half of this pair? (i) The weight of the swimmer; (ii) the forward thrust force; (iii) the backward drag force; (iv) the downward force that the swimmer exerts on the water; (v) the backward force that the swimmer exerts on the water by kicking.

ANSWER

(iv) The buoyancy force is an *upward* force that the *water* exerts on the *swimmer*. By Newton's third law, the other half of the action–reaction pair is a *downward* force that the *swimmer* exerts on the *water* and has the same magnitude as the buoyancy force. It's true that the weight of the swimmer is also downward and has the same magnitude as the buoyancy force; however, the weight acts on the same object (the swimmer) as the buoyancy force, and so these forces aren't an action–reaction pair.

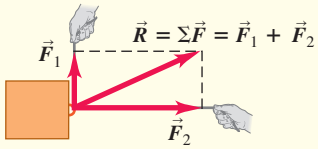
Figure **4.28** Examples of free-body diagrams. Each free-body diagram shows all of the external forces that act on the object in question.



CHAPTER 4 SUMMARY

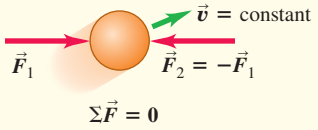
Force as a vector: Force is a quantitative measure of the interaction between two objects. It is a vector quantity. When several external forces act on an object, the effect on its motion is the same as if a single force, equal to the vector sum (resultant) of the forces, acts on the object. (See Example 4.1.)

$$\vec{R} = \Sigma\vec{F} = \vec{F}_1 + \vec{F}_2 + \vec{F}_3 + \cdots \quad (4.1)$$



The net external force on an object and Newton's first law: Newton's first law states that when the vector sum of all external forces acting on a object (the *net external force*) is zero, the object is in equilibrium and has zero acceleration. If the object is initially at rest, it remains at rest; if it is initially in motion, it continues to move with constant velocity. This law is valid in inertial frames of reference only. (See Examples 4.2 and 4.3.)

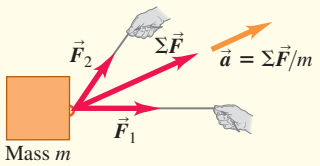
$$\Sigma\vec{F} = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.3)$$



Mass, acceleration, and Newton's second law: The inertial properties of an object are characterized by its *mass*. Newton's second law states that the acceleration of an object under the action of a given set of external forces is directly proportional to the vector sum of the forces (the *net force*) and inversely proportional to the mass of the object. Like Newton's first law, this law is valid in inertial frames of reference only. In SI units, the unit of force is the newton (N), equal to 1 kg · m/s^2. (See Examples 4.4 and 4.5.)

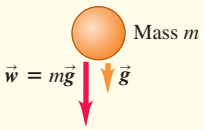
$$\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a} \qquad (4.6)$$

$$\Sigma F_x = ma_x \qquad \Sigma F_y = ma_y \qquad \Sigma F_z = ma_z \qquad (4.7)$$



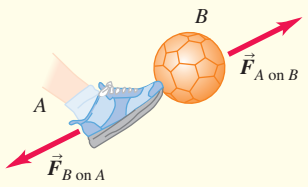
Weight: The weight $\vec{w}$ of an object is the gravitational force exerted on it by the earth. Weight is a vector quantity. The magnitude of the weight of an object at any specific location is equal to the product of its mass m and the magnitude of the acceleration due to gravity g at that location. The weight of an object depends on its location; its mass does not. (See Examples 4.6 and 4.7.)

$$w = mg \qquad (4.8)$$



Newton's third law and action–reaction pairs: Newton's third law states that when two objects interact, they exert forces on each other that are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. These forces are called action and reaction forces. Each of these two forces acts on only one of the two objects; they never act on the same object. (See Examples 4.8–4.11.)

$$\vec{F}_{A \text{ on } B} = -\vec{F}_{B \text{ on } A} \qquad (4.10)$$



Chapter 4 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 4.1 (Section 4.1) before attempting these problems.

VP4.1.1 Three professional wrestlers are fighting over a champion's belt, and each exerts a force on the belt. Wrestler 1 exerts a force $F_1 = 40.0$ N in the $+x$-direction, wrestler 2 exerts a force $F_2 = 80.0$ N in the $-y$-direction, and wrestler 3 exerts a force $F_3 = 60.0$ N at an angle of 36.9° counterclockwise from the $+x$-direction. Find the x- and y-components of the net external force on the belt, and find the force's magnitude and direction.

VP4.1.2 Three forces act on a statue. Force $\vec{F}_1$ (magnitude 45.0 N) points in the $+x$-direction, force $\vec{F}_2$ (magnitude 105 N) points in the $+y$-direction, and force $\vec{F}_3$ (magnitude 235 N) is at an angle of 36.9° from the $-x$-direction and 53.1° from the $+y$-direction. Find the x- and y-components of the net external force on the statue, and find the force's magnitude and direction.

VP4.1.3 An eagle descends steeply onto its prey. Its weight (the gravitational force on the eagle), of magnitude 60.0 N, points downward in the $-y$-direction. The lift force exerted on the eagle's wings by the air, also of magnitude 60.0 N, is at an angle of 20.0° from the vertical (the $+y$-direction) and 70.0° from the $+x$-direction. The drag force (air resistance) exerted on the eagle by the air has magnitude 15.0 N and is at an angle of 20.0° from the $-x$-direction and 70.0° from the $+y$-direction. Find the x- and y-components of the net external force on the eagle, and find the force's magnitude and direction.

VP4.1.4 A box containing pizza sits on a table. Ernesto, who sits due east of the pizza box, pulls the box toward him with a force of 35.0 N. Kamala, who sits due north of the pizza box, pulls the box toward her with a 50.0 N force. Tsuroku also sits at the table and pulls the box toward her so that the net external force on the box is 24.0 N in a direction 30.0° south of west. Take the $+x$-direction to be due east and the $+y$-direction to be due north. Find the x- and y-components of the force that Tsuroku exerts, and find the force's magnitude and direction.

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 4.4 (Section 4.3) before attempting these problems.

VP4.4.1 A box of books with mass 55 kg rests on the level floor of the campus bookstore. The floor is freshly waxed and has negligible friction.

A bookstore worker applies a constant horizontal force with magnitude 25 N to the box. What is the magnitude of the acceleration of the box?

VP4.4.2 A block of cheese of mass 2.0 kg sits on a freshly waxed, essentially frictionless table. You apply a constant horizontal force of 0.50 N to the cheese. (a) Name the three external forces that act on the cheese and what exerts each force. (b) What is the magnitude of the acceleration of the cheese?

VP4.4.3 In a game of ice hockey, you use a hockey stick to hit a puck of mass 0.16 kg that slides on essentially frictionless ice. During the hit you exert a constant horizontal force on the puck that gives it an acceleration of 75 m/s^2 for a fraction of a second. (a) During the hit, what is the magnitude of the horizontal force that you exert on the puck? (b) How does the magnitude of the normal force due to the ice compare to the weight of the puck?

VP4.4.4 A plate of cafeteria food is on a horizontal table. You push it away from you with a constant horizontal force of 14.0 N. The plate has a mass of 0.800 kg, and during the push it has an acceleration of 12.0 m/s^2 in the direction you are pushing it. (a) What is the magnitude of the net external force on the plate during the push? (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the friction force that the table exerts on the plate during the push?

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 4.5 (Section 4.3) before attempting these problems.

VP4.5.1 On a winter day a child of mass 20.0 kg slides on a horizontal footpath covered in ice. Initially she is moving at 3.00 m/s, but due to friction she comes to a halt in 2.25 m. What is the magnitude of the constant friction force that acts on her as she slides?

VP4.5.2 An airliner of mass 1.70×10^5 kg lands at a speed of 75.0 m/s. As it travels along the runway, the combined effects of air resistance, friction from the tires, and reverse thrust from the engines produce a constant force of 2.90×10^5 N opposite to the airliner's motion. What distance along the runway does the airliner travel before coming to a halt?

VP4.5.3 A truck of mass 2.40×10^3 kg is moving at 25.0 m/s. When the driver applies the brakes, the truck comes a stop after traveling 48.0 m. (a) How much time is required for the truck to stop? (b) What is the magnitude of the truck's constant acceleration as it slows down? (c) What is the magnitude of the constant braking force that acts on the truck as it slows down?

VP4.5.4 A car of mass 1.15×10^3 kg is stalled on a horizontal road. You and your friends give the car a constant, forward, horizontal push. There is friction between the car and the road. (a) Name the four external forces that act on the car as you and your friends push it and what exerts each force. (You can regard the combined push from you and your friends as a single force.) (b) The combined force that you and your friends exert has magnitude 8.00×10^2 N, and starting from rest the car reaches a speed of 1.40 m/s after you have pushed it 5.00 m. Find the magnitude of the constant friction force that acts on the car.

BRIDGING PROBLEM Links in a Chain

A student suspends a chain consisting of three links, each of mass $m = 0.250$ kg, from a light rope. The rope is attached to the top link of the chain, which does not swing. She pulls upward on the rope, so that the rope applies an upward force of 9.00 N to the chain. (a) Draw a free-body diagram for the entire chain, considered as an object, and one for each of the three links. (b) Use the diagrams of part (a) and Newton's laws to find (i) the acceleration of the chain, (ii) the force exerted by the top link on the middle link, and (iii) the force exerted by the middle link on the bottom link. Treat the rope as massless.

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. There are four objects of interest in this problem: the chain as a whole and the three individual links. For each of these four objects, make a list of the external forces that act on it. Besides the force of gravity, your list should include only forces exerted by other objects that *touch* the object in question.
2. Some of the forces in your lists form action–reaction pairs (one pair is the force of the top link on the middle link and the force of the middle link on the top link). Identify all such pairs.
3. Use your lists to help you draw a free-body diagram for each of the four objects. Choose the coordinate axes.
4. Use your lists to decide how many unknowns there are in this problem. Which of these are target variables?

EXECUTE

5. Write a Newton's second law equation for each of the four objects, and write a Newton's third law equation for each action–reaction pair. You should have at least as many equations as there are unknowns (see step 4). Do you?
6. Solve the equations for the target variables.

EVALUATE

7. You can check your results by substituting them back into the equations from step 5. This is especially important to do if you ended up with more equations in step 5 than you used in step 6.
8. Rank the force of the rope on the chain, the force of the top link on the middle link, and the force of the middle link on the bottom link in order from smallest to largest magnitude. Does this ranking make sense? Explain.
9. Repeat the problem for the case in which the upward force that the rope exerts on the chain is only 7.35 N. Is the ranking in step 8 the same? Does this make sense?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q4.1 Can an object be in equilibrium when only one force acts on it? Explain.

Q4.2 A ball thrown straight up has zero velocity at its highest point. Is the ball in equilibrium at this point? Why or why not?

Q4.3 A helium balloon hovers in midair, neither ascending nor descending. Is it in equilibrium? What forces act on it?

Q4.4 When you fly in an airplane at night in smooth air, you have no sensation of motion, even though the plane may be moving at 800 km/h. Why?

Q4.5 If the two ends of a rope in equilibrium are pulled with forces of equal magnitude and opposite directions, why isn't the total tension in the rope zero?

Q4.6 You tie a brick to the end of a rope and whirl the brick around you in a horizontal circle. Describe the path of the brick after you suddenly let go of the rope.

Q4.7 When a car stops suddenly, the passengers tend to move forward relative to their seats. Why? When a car makes a sharp turn, the passengers tend to slide to one side of the car. Why?

Q4.8 Some people say that the "force of inertia" (or "force of momentum") throws the passengers forward when a car brakes sharply. What is wrong with this explanation?

Q4.9 A passenger in a moving bus with no windows notices that a ball that has been at rest in the aisle suddenly starts to move toward the rear of the bus. Think of two possible explanations, and devise a way to decide which is correct.

Q4.10 Suppose you chose the fundamental physical quantities to be force, length, and time instead of mass, length, and time. What would be the units of mass in terms of those fundamental quantities?

Q4.11 Why is the earth only approximately an inertial reference frame?

Q4.12 Does Newton's second law hold true for an observer in a van as it speeds up, slows down, or rounds a corner? Explain.

Q4.13 Some students refer to the quantity $m\vec{a}$ as "the force of acceleration." Is it correct to refer to this quantity as a force? If so, what exerts this force? If not, what is a better description of this quantity?

Q4.14 The acceleration of a falling object is measured in a lift that is traveling upward at a constant speed of 9.8 m/s. What value is obtained?

Q4.15 You can play catch with a softball in a bus moving with constant speed on a straight road, just as though the bus were at rest. Is this still possible when the bus is making a turn at constant speed on a level road? Why or why not?

Q4.16 Students sometimes say that the force of gravity on an object is 9.8 m/s^2. What is wrong with this view?

Q4.17 Why can it hurt your foot more to kick a big rock than a small pebble? *Must* the big rock hurt more? Explain.

Q4.18 "It's not the fall that hurts you; it's the sudden stop at the bottom." Translate this saying into the language of Newton's laws of motion.

Q4.19 A person can dive into water from a height of 10 m without injury, but a person who jumps off the roof of a 10-m-tall building and lands on a concrete street is likely to be seriously injured. Why is there a difference?

Q4.20 Why are cars designed to crumple in front and back for safety? Why not for side collisions and rollovers?

Q4.21 When a string barely strong enough lifts a heavy weight, it can lift the weight by a steady pull; but if you jerk the string, it will break. Explain in terms of Newton's laws of motion.

Q4.22 A large crate is suspended from the end of a vertical rope. Is the tension in the rope greater when the crate is at rest or when it is moving upward at constant speed? If the crate is traveling upward, is the tension in the rope greater when the crate is speeding up or when it is slowing down? In each case, explain in terms of Newton's laws of motion.

Q4.23 Which feels a greater pull due to the earth's gravity: a 10 kg stone or a 20 kg stone? If you drop the two stones, why doesn't the 20 kg stone fall with twice the acceleration of the 10 kg stone? Explain.

Q4.24 A horse is hitched to a wagon. Since the wagon pulls back on the horse just as hard as the horse pulls on the wagon, why doesn't the wagon remain in equilibrium, no matter how hard the horse pulls?

Q4.25 True or false? You exert a push P on an object and it pushes back on you with a force F. If the object is moving at constant velocity, then F is equal to P, but if the object is being accelerated, then P must be greater than F.

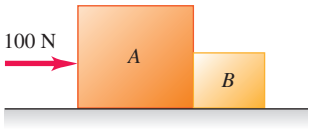
Q4.26 A large truck and a small compact car have a head-on collision. During the collision, the truck exerts a force $\vec{F}_{\text{T on C}}$ on the car, and the car exerts a force $\vec{F}_{\text{C on T}}$ on the truck. Which force has the larger magnitude, or are they the same? Does your answer depend on how fast each vehicle was moving before the collision? Why or why not?

Q4.27 When a car comes to a stop on a level road, what force causes it to slow down? When the car increases its speed on the same road, what force causes it to speed up? Explain.

Q4.28 A small compact car is pushing a large van that has broken down, and they travel along the road with equal velocities and accelerations. While the car is speeding up, is the force it exerts on the van larger than, smaller than, or the same magnitude as the force the van exerts on it? Which vehicle has the larger net force on it, or are the net forces the same? Explain.

Q4.29 Consider a tug-of-war between two people who pull in opposite directions on the ends of a rope. By Newton's third law, the force that A exerts on B is just as great as the force that B exerts on A. So what determines who wins? (*Hint:* Draw a free-body diagram showing all the forces that act on each person.)

Figure **Q4.31**



Q4.30 Boxes A and B are in contact on a horizontal, frictionless surface. You push on box A with a horizontal 100 N force (**Fig. Q4.31**). Box A weighs 150 N, and box B weighs 50 N. Is the force that box A exerts on box B equal to 100 N, greater than 100 N, or less than 100 N? Explain.

Q4.31 A manual for student pilots contains this passage: "When an airplane flies at a steady altitude, neither climbing nor descending, the upward lift force from the wings equals the plane's weight. When the plane is climbing at a steady rate, the upward lift is greater than the weight; when the plane is descending at a steady rate, the upward lift is less than the weight." Are these statements correct? Explain.

Q4.32 If your hands are wet and no towel is handy, you can remove some of the excess water by shaking them. Why does this work?

Q4.33 If you squat down (such as when you examine the books on a bottom shelf) and then suddenly get up, you may temporarily feel light-headed. What do Newton's laws of motion have to say about why this happens?

Q4.34 When a car is hit from behind, the occupants may experience whiplash. Use Newton's laws of motion to explain what causes this result.

Q4.35 In a head-on auto collision, passengers who are not wearing seat belts may be thrown through the windshield. Use Newton's laws of motion to explain why this happens.

Q4.36 In a head-on collision between a compact 1000 kg car and a large 2500 kg car, which one experiences the greater force? Explain. Which one experiences the greater acceleration? Explain why. Why are passengers in the small car more likely to be injured than those in the large car, even when the two car bodies are equally strong?

Q4.37 Suppose you are in a rocket with no windows, traveling in deep space far from other objects. Without looking outside the rocket or making any contact with the outside world, explain how you could determine whether the rocket is (a) moving forward at a constant 80% of the speed of light and (b) accelerating in the forward direction.

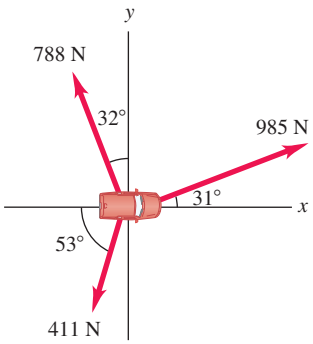
EXERCISES

Section 4.1 Force and Interactions

4.1 •• Two dogs pull horizontally on ropes attached to a post; the angle between the ropes is 51.0°. If Rover exerts a force of 288 N and Fido exerts a force of 324 N, find the magnitude of the resultant force and the angle it makes with Rover's rope.

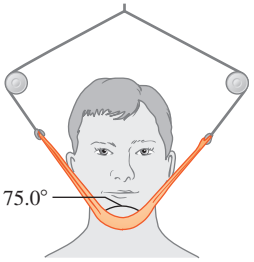
4.2 • To extricate an SUV stuck in the mud, workmen use three horizontal ropes, producing the force vectors shown in **Fig. E4.2.** (a) Find the x- and y-components of each of the three pulls. (b) Use the components to find the magnitude and direction of the resultant of the three pulls.

Figure **E4.2**



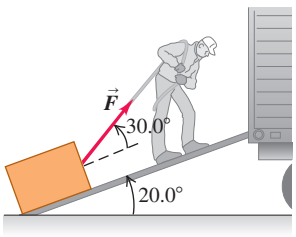
4.3 • **BIO Jaw Injury.** Due to a jaw injury, a patient must wear a strap (**Fig. E4.3**) that produces a net upward force of 5.00 N on his chin. The tension is the same throughout the strap. To what tension must the strap be adjusted to provide the necessary upward force?

Figure **E4.3**



4.4 • A man is dragging a trunk up the loading ramp of a mover's truck. The ramp has a slope angle of 20.0°, and the man pulls upward with a force $\vec{F}$ whose direction makes an angle of 30.0° with the ramp (**Fig. E4.4**). (a) How large a force $\vec{F}$ is necessary for the component F_x parallel to the ramp to be 90.0 N? (b) How large will the component F_y perpendicular to the ramp be then?

Figure **E4.4**



4.5 • Forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ act at a point. The magnitude of $\vec{F}_1$ is 8.00 N, and its direction is 64.0° above the x-axis in the second quadrant. The magnitude of $\vec{F}_2$ is 5.40 N, and its direction is 53.9° below the x-axis in the third quadrant. (a) What are the x- and y-components of the resultant force? (b) What is the magnitude of the resultant force?

Section 4.3 Newton's Second Law

4.6 • An electron (mass = 9.11×10^{-31} kg) leaves one end of a TV picture tube with zero initial speed and travels in a straight line to the accelerating grid, which is 1.80 cm away. It reaches the grid with a speed of 3.00×10^6 m/s. If the accelerating force is constant, compute (a) the acceleration; (b) the time to reach the grid; and (c) the net force, in newtons. Ignore the gravitational force on the electron.

4.7 •• A 68.5 kg skater moving initially at 2.40 m/s on rough horizontal ice comes to rest uniformly in 3.52 s due to friction from the ice. What force does friction exert on the skater?

4.8 •• You walk into a lift, step onto a scale, and push the "up" button. You recall that your normal weight is 655 N. Draw a free-body diagram. (a) When the lift has an upward acceleration of magnitude 2.46 m/s^2, what does the scale read? (b) If you hold a 3.65-kg package by a light vertical string, what will be the tension in this string when the lift accelerates as in part (a)?

4.9 • A box rests on a frozen pond, which serves as a frictionless horizontal surface. If a fisherman applies a horizontal force with magnitude 50.0 N to the box and produces an acceleration of magnitude 3.60 m/s^2, what is the mass of the box?

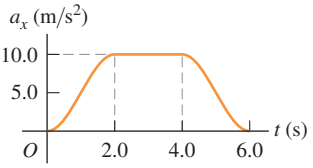
4.10 •• A dockworker applies a constant horizontal force of 80.0 N to a block of ice on a smooth horizontal floor. The frictional force is negligible. The block starts from rest and moves 11.0 m in 5.00 s. (a) What is the mass of the block of ice? (b) If the worker stops pushing at the end of 5.00 s, how far does the block move in the next 5.00 s?

4.11 • A hockey puck with mass 0.160 kg is at rest at the origin ($x = 0$) on the horizontal, frictionless surface of the rink. At time $t = 0$ a player applies a force of 0.250 N to the puck, parallel to the x-axis; she continues to apply this force until $t = 2.00$ s. (a) What are the position and speed of the puck at $t = 2.00$ s? (b) If the same force is again applied at $t = 5.00$ s, what are the position and speed of the puck at $t = 7.00$ s?

4.12 • A crate with mass 32.0 kg initially at rest on a warehouse floor is acted on by a net horizontal force of 140 N. (a) What acceleration is produced? (b) How far does the crate travel in 13.0 s? (c) What is its speed at the end of 13.0 s?

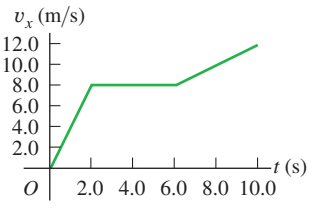
4.13 • A 4.50 kg experimental cart undergoes an acceleration in a straight line (the x-axis). The graph in **Fig. E4.13** shows this acceleration as a function of time. (a) Find the maximum net force on this cart. When does this maximum force occur? (b) During what times is the net force on the cart a constant? (c) When is the net force equal to zero?

Figure **E4.13**



4.14 • A 3.89-kg cat moves in a straight line (the x-axis). **Figure E4.14** shows a graph of the x-component of this cat's velocity as a function of time. (a) Find the maximum net force on this cat. When does this force occur? (b) When is the net force on the cat equal to zero? (c) What is the net force at time 8.5 s?

Figure **E4.14**



4.15 • A small 5.00 kg rocket burns fuel that exerts a time-varying upward force on the rocket (assume constant mass) as the rocket moves upward from the launch pad. This force obeys the equation $F = A + Bt^2$. Measurements show that at $t = 0$, the force is 130.0 N, and at the end of the first 2.00 s, it is 152.0 N. (a) Find the constants A and B, including their SI units. (b) Find the *net* force on this rocket and its acceleration (i) the instant after the fuel ignites and (ii) 3.50 s after the fuel ignites. (c) Suppose that you were using this rocket in outer space, far from all gravity. What would its acceleration be 3.50 s after fuel ignition?

Section 4.4 Mass and Weight

4.16 • An astronaut's pack weighs 17.4 N when she is on the earth but only 3.95 N when she is at the surface of a moon. (a) What is the acceleration due to gravity on this moon? (b) What is the mass of the pack on this moon?

4.17 • Superman throws a 1650 N boulder at an adversary. What horizontal force must Superman apply to the boulder to give it a horizontal acceleration of 13.6 m/s^2?

4.18 • **BIO** (a) An ordinary flea has a mass of 215 μg. How many newtons does it weigh? (b) The mass of a typical froghopper is 12.3 mg. How many newtons does it weigh? (c) A house cat typically weighs 43 N. What is its mass in kilograms?

4.19 • At the surface of Jupiter's moon Io, the acceleration due to gravity is $g = 1.81$ m/s^2. A watermelon weighs 48.0 N at the surface of the earth. (a) What is the watermelon's mass on the earth's surface? (b) What would be its mass and weight on the surface of Io?

Section 4.5 Newton's Third Law

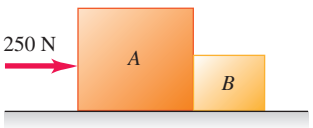
4.20 • Estimate the mass in kilograms and the weight of a typical sumo wrestler. How do your estimates for the wrestler compare to your estimates of the average mass and weight of the students in your physics class? Do a web search if necessary to help make the estimates. In your solution list what values you assume for the quantities you use in making your estimates.

4.21 • **BIO** World-class sprinters can accelerate out of the starting blocks with an acceleration that is nearly horizontal and has magnitude 15 m/s^2. How much horizontal force must a 45 kg sprinter exert on the starting blocks to produce this acceleration? Which body exerts the force that propels the sprinter: the blocks or the sprinter herself?

4.22 • A small car of mass 500 kg is pushing a large truck of mass 920 kg due east on a level road. The car exerts a horizontal force of 1490 N on the truck. What is the magnitude of the force that the truck exerts on the car?

4.23 •• Boxes A and B are in contact on a horizontal, frictionless surface (**Fig. E4.23**). Box A has mass 25.0 kg and box B has mass 8.0 kg. A horizontal force of 100 N is exerted on box A. What is the magnitude of the force that box A exerts on box B?

Figure **E4.23**



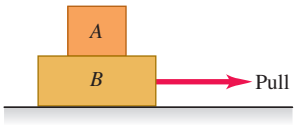
4.24 •• The upward normal force exerted by the floor is 620 N on a lift passenger who weighs 650 N. What are the reaction forces to these two forces? Is the passenger accelerating? If so, what are the magnitude and direction of the acceleration?

4.25 •• A student of mass 45 kg jumps off a high diving board. What is the acceleration of the earth toward her as she accelerates toward the earth with an acceleration of 9.8 m/s^2? Use 6.0×10^{24} kg for the mass of the earth, and assume that the net force on the earth is the force of gravity she exerts on it.

Section 4.6 Free-Body Diagrams

4.26 •• You pull horizontally on block B in **Fig. E4.26,** causing both blocks to move together as a unit. For this moving system, make a carefully labeled free-body diagram of block A if (a) the table is frictionless and (b) there is friction between block B and the table and the pull is equal in magnitude to the friction force on block B due to the table.

Figure **E4.26**



4.27 •• Crates A and B sit at rest side by side on a frictionless horizontal surface. They have masses m_A and m_B, respectively. When a horizontal force $\vec{F}$ is applied to crate A, the two crates move off to the right. (a) Draw clearly labeled free-body diagrams for crate A and for crate B. Indicate which pairs of forces, if any, are third-law action–reaction pairs. (b) If the magnitude of $\vec{F}$ is less than the total weight of the two crates, will it cause the crates to move? Explain.

4.28 •• **CP** A .22 caliber rifle bullet traveling at 350 m/s strikes a large tree and penetrates it to a depth of 0.130 m. The mass of the bullet is 1.80 g. Assume a constant retarding force. (a) How much time is required for the bullet to stop? (b) What force, in newtons, does the tree exert on the bullet?

4.29 • A ball is hanging from a long string that is tied to the ceiling of a train car traveling eastward on horizontal tracks. An observer inside the train car sees the ball hang motionless. Draw a clearly labeled free-body diagram for the ball if (a) the train has a uniform velocity and (b) the train is speeding up uniformly. Is the net force on the ball zero in either case? Explain.

4.30 •• A chair of mass 13.5 kg is sitting on the horizontal floor; the floor is not frictionless. You push on the chair with a force $F = 35.0$ N that is directed at an angle of 38.0° below the horizontal, and the chair slides along the floor. (a) Draw a clearly labeled free-body diagram for the chair. (b) Use your diagram and Newton's laws to calculate the normal force that the floor exerts on the chair.

PROBLEMS

4.31 •• **CP** Estimate the average force that a major-league pitcher exerts on the baseball when he throws a fastball. In your solution, list the quantities for which you estimate values and any assumptions you make. Do a web search to help determine the values you use in making your estimates.

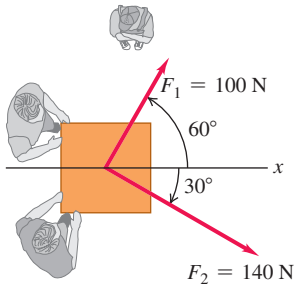
4.32 •• **CP** You have just landed on Planet X. You release a 100 g ball from rest from a height of 13.5 m and measure that it takes 2.10 s to reach the ground. Ignore any force on the ball from the atmosphere of the planet. How much does the 100 g ball weigh on the surface of Planet X?

4.33 •• **CP** A 4.40 kg bucket of water is accelerated upward by a cord of negligible mass whose breaking strength is 74.0 N. If the bucket starts from rest, what is the minimum time required to raise the bucket a vertical distance of 14.0 m without breaking the cord?

4.34 •• Block A rests on top of block B as shown in Fig. E4.26. The table is frictionless but there is friction (a horizontal force) between blocks A and B. Block B has mass 6.00 kg and block A has mass 2.00 kg. If the horizontal pull applied to block B equals 12.0 N, then block B has an acceleration of 1.80 m/s^2. What is the acceleration of block A?

4.35 •• Two adults and a child want to push a wheeled cart in the direction marked x in **Fig. P4.35** (next page). The two adults push with horizontal forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ as shown. (a) Find the magnitude and direction of the *smallest* force that the child should exert. Ignore the effects of friction. (b) If the child exerts the minimum force found in part (a), the cart accelerates at 2.0 m/s^2 in the $+x$-direction. What is the weight of the cart?

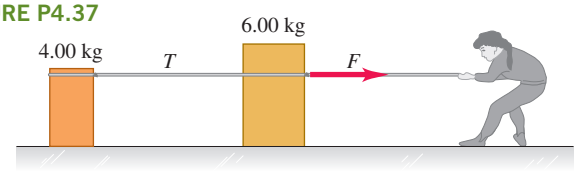
Figure P4.35



4.36 ••• CP An advertisement claims that a particular automobile can "stop on a dime." What net force would be necessary to stop a 840-kg automobile traveling initially at 37.0 km/h in a distance equal to the diameter of a dime, 1.8 cm?

4.37 • Two crates, one with mass 4.00 kg and the other with mass 6.00 kg, sit on the frictionless surface of a frozen pond, connected by a light rope (**Fig. P4.37**). A woman wearing golf shoes (for traction) pulls horizontally on the 6.00 kg crate with a force F that gives the crate an acceleration of 2.90 m/s^2. (a) What is the acceleration of the 4.00 kg crate? (b) Draw a free-body diagram for the 4.00 kg crate. Use that diagram and Newton's second law to find the tension T in the rope that connects the two crates. (c) Draw a free-body diagram for the 6.00 kg crate. What is the direction of the net force on the 6.00 kg crate? Which is larger in magnitude, T or F? (d) Use part (c) and Newton's second law to calculate the magnitude of F.

FIGURE P4.37



4.38 •• CP Two blocks connected by a light horizontal rope sit at rest on a horizontal, frictionless surface. Block A has mass 15.0 kg, and block B has mass m. A constant horizontal force F = 60.0 N is applied to block A (**Fig. P4.38**). In the first 5.00 s after the force is applied, block A moves 18.0 m to the right. (a) While the blocks are moving, what is the tension T in the rope that connects the two blocks? (b) What is the mass of block B?

Figure P4.38

4.39 • CALC To study damage to aircraft that collide with large birds, you design a test gun that will accelerate chicken-sized objects so that their displacement along the gun barrel is given by $x = (9.0 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}^2)t^2 - (8.0 \times 10^4\ \text{m/s}^3)t^3$. The object leaves the end of the barrel at t = 0.025 s. (a) How long must the gun barrel be? (b) What will be the speed of the objects as they leave the end of the barrel? (c) What net force must be exerted on a 1.50 kg object at (i) t = 0 and (ii) t = 0.025 s?

4.40 •• CP On a test flight a rocket with mass 400 kg blasts off from the surface of the earth. The rocket engines apply a constant upward force F until the rocket reaches a height of 100 m and then they shut off. If the rocket is to reach a maximum height of 400 m above the surface of the earth, what value of F is required? Assume the change in the rocket's mass is negligible.

4.41 •• CP After an annual checkup, you leave your physician's office, where you weighed 683 N. You then get into a lift that, conveniently, has a scale. Find the magnitude and direction of the lift's acceleration if the scale reads (a) 725 N and (b) 595 N.

4.42 • A loaded lift with very worn cables has a total mass of 2100 kg, and the cables can withstand a maximum tension of 29,000 N. (a) Draw the free-body force diagram for the lift. In terms of the forces on your diagram, what is the net force on the lift? Apply Newton's second law to the lift and find the maximum upward acceleration for the lift if the cables are not to break. (b) What would be the answer to part (a) if the lift were on the moon, where g = 1.62 m/s^2?

4.43 •• CP A batter swings at a baseball (mass 0.145 kg) that is moving horizontally toward him at a speed of 40.0 m/s. He hits the ball in such a way that it moves away from him horizontally at 50.0 m/s just after it leaves the bat. If the bat and ball are in contact for 8.00 ms, what is the average force that the bat applies to the ball?

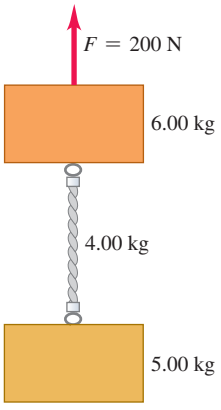
4.44 •• CP CALC An object with mass m is moving along the x-axis according to the equation $x(t) = \alpha t^2 - 2\beta t$, where α and β are positive constants. What is the magnitude of the net force on the object at time t = 0?

4.45 •• CP Boxes A and B are connected to each end of a light vertical rope (**Fig. P4.45**). A constant upward force F = 80.0 N is applied to box A. Starting from rest, box B descends 12.0 m in 4.00 s. The tension in the rope connecting the two boxes is 36.0 N. What are the masses of (a) box B, (b) box A?

Figure P4.45

4.46 •• The two blocks in **Fig. P4.46** are connected by a heavy uniform rope with a mass of 4.00 kg. An upward force of 200 N is applied as shown. (a) Draw three free-body diagrams: one for the 6.00 kg block, one for the 4.00 kg rope, and another one for the 5.00 kg block. For each force, indicate what object exerts that force. (b) What is the acceleration of the system? (c) What is the tension at the top of the heavy rope? (d) What is the tension at the midpoint of the rope?

Figure P4.46



4.47 ••• CP A small rocket with mass 20.0 kg is moving in free fall toward the earth. Air resistance can be neglected. When the rocket is 80.0 m above the surface of the earth, it is moving downward with a speed of 30.0 m/s. At that instant the rocket engines start to fire and produce a constant upward force F on the rocket. Assume the change in the rocket's mass is negligible. What is the value of F if the rocket's speed becomes zero just as it reaches the surface of the earth, for a soft landing? (*Hint:* The net force on the rocket is the combination of the upward force F from the engines and the downward weight of the rocket.)

4.48 •• CP **Extraterrestrial Physics.** You have landed on an unknown planet, Newtonia, and want to know what objects weigh there. When you push a certain tool, starting from rest, on a frictionless horizontal surface with a 12.0 N force, the tool moves 16.0 m in the first 2.00 s. You next observe that if you release this tool from rest at 10.0 m above the ground, it takes 2.58 s to reach the ground. What does the tool weigh on Newtonia, and what does it weigh on earth?

4.49 •• CP CALC A mysterious rocket-propelled object of mass 49.5 kg is initially at rest in the middle of the horizontal, frictionless surface of an ice-covered lake. Then a force directed east and with magnitude $F(t) = (15.5\ \text{N/s})t$ is applied. How far does the object travel in the first 4.25 s after the force is applied?

4.50 •• CP Starting at time $t = 0$, net force F_1 is applied to an object that is initially at rest. (a) If the force remains constant with magnitude F_1 while the object moves a distance d, the final speed of the object is v_1. What is the final speed v_2 (in terms of v_1) if the net force is $F_2 = 2F_1$ and the object moves the same distance d while the force is being applied? (b) If the force F_1 remains constant while it is applied for a time T, the final speed of the object is v_1. What is the final speed v_2 (in terms of v_1) if the applied force is $F_2 = 2F_1$ and is constant while it is applied for the same time T? In a later chapter we'll call force times distance work and force times *time* impulse and associate work and impulse with the change in speed.)

4.51 •• DATA The table* gives automobile performance data for a few types of cars:

Make and Model (Year)	Mass (kg)	Time (s) to go from 0 to 100 km/h
Alpha Romeo 4C (2013)	895	4.5
Honda Civic 2.0i (2011)	1320	6.6
Ferrari F430 (2004)	1435	4.0
Ford Focus RS500 (2010)	1468	5.6
Volvo S60 (2013)	1650	7.4

*Source: www.autosnout.com

(a) During an acceleration of 0 to 100 km/h, which car has the largest average net force acting on it? The smallest? (b) During this acceleration, for which car would the average net force on a 72.0 kg passenger be the largest? The smallest? (c) When the Ferrari F430 accelerates from 0 to 200 km/h in 12.2 s, what is the average net force acting on it? How does this net force compare with the average net force during the acceleration from 0 to 100 km/h? Explain why these average net forces might differ. (d) Discuss why a car has a top speed. What is the net force on the Ferrari F430 when it is traveling at its top speed, 315.4 km/h?

4.52 ••• CALC The position of a training helicopter (weight 2.75×10^5 N) in a test is given by $\hat{\boldsymbol{r}} = (0.020\ \text{m/s}^3)t^3\hat{\boldsymbol{\imath}} + (2.2\ \text{m/s})t\hat{\boldsymbol{\jmath}} - (0.060\ \text{m/s}^2)t^2\hat{\boldsymbol{k}}$. Find the net force on the helicopter at $t = 5.0$ s.

4.53 •• DATA You are a Starfleet captain going boldly where no one has gone before. You land on a distant planet and visit an engineering testing lab. In one experiment a short, light rope is attached to the top of a block and a constant upward force F is applied to the free end of the rope. The block has mass m and is initially at rest. As F is varied, the time for the block to move upward 8.00 m is measured. The values that you collected are given in the table:

F (N)	Time (s)
250	3.3
300	2.2
350	1.7
400	1.5
450	1.3
500	1.2

(a) Plot F versus the acceleration a of the block. (b) Use your graph to determine the mass m of the block and the acceleration of gravity g at the surface of the planet. Note that even on that planet, measured values contain some experimental error.

4.54 •• DATA An 8.00 kg box sits on a level floor. You give the box a sharp push and find that it travels 8.22 m in 2.8 s before coming to rest again. (a) You measure that with a different push the box traveled 4.20 m in 2.0 s. Do you think the box has a constant acceleration as it slows down? Explain your reasoning. (b) You add books to the box to increase its mass. Repeating the experiment, you give the box a push and measure how long it takes the box to come to rest and how far the box travels. The results, including the initial experiment with no added mass, are given in the table:

Added Mass (kg)	Distance (m)	Time (s)
0	8.22	2.8
3.00	10.75	3.2
7.00	9.45	3.0
12.0	7.10	2.6

In each case, did your push give the box the same initial speed? What is the ratio between the greatest initial speed and the smallest initial speed for these four cases? (c) Is the average horizontal force f exerted on the box by the floor the same in each case? Graph the magnitude of force f versus the total mass m of the box plus its contents, and use your graph to determine an equation for f as a function of m.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

4.55 ••• CP CALC A block of mass 2.00 kg is initially at rest at $x = 0$ on a slippery horizontal surface for which there is no friction. Starting at time $t = 0$, a horizontal force $F_x(t) = \beta - \alpha t$ is applied to the block, where $\alpha = 6.00$ N/s anwd $\beta = 4.00$ N. (a) What is the largest positive value of x reached by the block? How long does it take the block to reach this point, starting from $t = 0$, and what is the magnitude of the force when the block is at this value of x? (b) How long from $t = 0$ does it take the block to return to $x = 0$, and what is its speed at this point?

4.56 ••• CALC An object of mass m is at rest in equilibrium at the origin. At $t = 0$ a new force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}(t)$ is applied that has components

$$F_x(t) = k_1 + k_2 y \qquad F_y(t) = k_3 t$$

where k_1, k_2, and k_3 are constants. Calculate the position $\vec{\boldsymbol{r}}(t)$ and velocity $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}(t)$ vectors as functions of time.

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO **Forces on a Dancer's Body.** Dancers experience large forces associated with the jumps they make. For example, when a dancer lands after a vertical jump, the force exerted on the head by the neck must exceed the head's weight by enough to cause the head to slow down and come to rest. The head is about 9.4% of a typical person's mass. Video analysis of a 65 kg dancer landing after a vertical jump shows that her head decelerates from 4.0 m/s to rest in a time of 0.20 s.

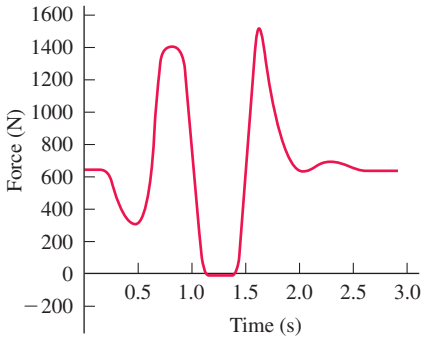
4.57 What is the magnitude of the average force that her neck exerts on her head during the landing? (a) 0 N; (b) 60 N; (c) 120 N; (d) 180 N.

4.58 Compared with the force her neck exerts on her head during the landing, the force her head exerts on her neck is (a) the same; (b) greater; (c) smaller; (d) greater during the first half of the landing and smaller during the second half of the landing.

4.59 While the dancer is in the air and holding a fixed pose, what is the magnitude of the force her neck exerts on her head? (a) 0 N; (b) 60 N; (c) 120 N; (d) 180 N.

4.60 The forces on a dancer can be measured directly when a dancer performs a jump on a force plate that measures the force between her feet and the ground. A graph of force versus time throughout a vertical jump performed on a force plate is shown in **Fig. P4.60.** What is happening at 0.4 s? The dancer is (a) bending her legs so that her body is accelerating downward; (b) pushing her body up with her legs and is almost ready to leave the ground; (c) in the air and at the top of her jump; (d) landing and her feet have just touched the ground.

Figure **P4.60**



ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(v) Newton's third law tells us that the barbell pushes on the weightlifter just as hard as the weightlifter pushes on the barbell in *all* circumstances, no matter how the barbell is moving. However, the magnitude of the force that the weightlifter exerts is different in different circumstances. This force magnitude is equal to the weight of the barbell when the barbell is stationary, moving upward at a constant speed, or moving downward at a constant speed; it is greater than the weight of the barbell when the barbell accelerates upward; and it is less than the weight of the barbell when the barbell accelerates downward. But in each case the push of the barbell on the weightlifter has exactly the same magnitude as the push of the weightlifter on the barbell.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP4.1.1 $\sum F_x = 88.0\,\text{N}$, $\sum F_y = -44.0\,\text{N}$, $F = 98.4\,\text{N}$, angle $= 26.6°$ clockwise from the $+x$-direction

VP4.1.2 $\sum F_x = -143\,\text{N}$, $\sum F_y = 246\,\text{N}$, $F = 285\,\text{N}$, angle $= 120°$ counterclockwise from the $+x$-direction

VP4.1.3 $\sum F_x = 6.4\,\text{N}$, $\sum F_y = 1.5\,\text{N}$, $F = 6.6\,\text{N}$, angle $= 13°$ counterclockwise from the $+x$-direction

VP4.1.4 $F_{\text{Tsuroku},\,x} = -55.8\,\text{N}$, $F_{\text{Tsuroku},\,y} = -62.0\,\text{N}$, magnitude $F_{\text{Tsuroku}} = 83.4\,\text{N}$, angle $= 48.0°$ south of west

VP4.4.1 $0.45\ \text{m/s}^2$

VP4.4.2 (a) normal force, exerted by the floor; weight or gravitational force, exerted by the earth; horizontal force, exerted by your hand (b) $0.25\ \text{m/s}^2$

VP4.4.3 (a) 12 N (b) equal

VP4.4.4 (a) 9.60 N (b) 4.4 N, in the direction opposite to your push

VP4.5.1 40.0 N

VP4.5.2 $1.65 \times 10^3\,\text{m}$

VP4.5.3 (a) 3.84 s (b) $6.51\ \text{m/s}^2$ (c) $1.56 \times 10^4\,\text{N}$

VP4.5.4 (a) gravity (the earth), normal force (the road), friction (the road), push (you and your friends) (b) 575 N

Bridging Problem

(a) *See the Video Tutor Solution in Mastering Physics.*
(b) (i) $2.20\ \text{m/s}^2$; (ii) 6.00 N; (iii) 3.00 N

? Each of the seeds being blown off the head of a dandelion (genus *Taraxacum*) has a feathery structure called a pappus. The pappus acts like a parachute and enables the seed to be borne by the wind and drift gently to the ground. If a seed with its pappus descends straight down at a steady speed, which force acting on the seed has a greater magnitude? (i) The force of gravity; (ii) the upward force exerted by the air; (iii) both forces have the same magnitude; (iv) it depends on the speed at which the seed descends.

5 Applying Newton's Laws

We saw in Chapter 4 that Newton's three laws of motion, the foundation of classical mechanics, can be stated very simply. But *applying* these laws to situations such as an iceboat skating across a frozen lake, a toboggan sliding down a hill, or an airplane making a steep turn requires analytical skills and problem-solving technique. In this chapter we'll help you extend the problem-solving skills you began to develop in Chapter 4.

We'll begin with equilibrium problems, in which we analyze the forces that act on an object that is at rest or moving with constant velocity. We'll then consider objects that are not in equilibrium. For these we'll have to take account of the relationship between forces and acceleration. We'll learn how to describe and analyze the contact force that acts on an object when it rests on or slides over a surface. We'll also analyze the forces that act on an object that moves in a circle with constant speed. We close the chapter with a brief look at the fundamental nature of force and the classes of forces found in our physical universe.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **5.1** How to use Newton's first law to solve problems involving the forces that act on an object in equilibrium.
- **5.2** How to use Newton's second law to solve problems involving the forces that act on an accelerating object.
- **5.3** The nature of the different types of friction forces—static friction, kinetic friction, rolling friction, and fluid resistance—and how to solve problems that involve these forces.
- **5.4** How to solve problems involving the forces that act on an object moving along a circular path.
- **5.5** The key properties of the four fundamental forces of nature.

You'll need to review...

- **1.8** Determining the components of a vector from its magnitude and direction.
- **2.4** Straight-line motion with constant acceleration.
- **3.3** Projectile motion.
- **3.4** Uniform and nonuniform circular motion.
- **4.1** Superposition of forces.
- **4.2** Newton's first law.
- **4.3** Newton's second law.
- **4.4** Mass and weight.
- **4.5** Newton's third law.

5.1 USING NEWTON'S FIRST LAW: PARTICLES IN EQUILIBRIUM

We learned in Chapter 4 that an object is in *equilibrium* when it is at rest or moving with constant velocity in an inertial frame of reference. A hanging lamp, a kitchen table, an airplane flying straight and level at a constant speed—all are examples of objects in equilibrium. In this section we consider only the equilibrium of an object that can be modeled as a particle. (In Chapter 11 we'll see how to analyze an object in equilibrium that can't be represented adequately as a particle, such as a bridge that's supported at various points along its span.) The essential physical principle is Newton's first law:

Newton's first law: *Net* force on an object ... $\Sigma\vec{F} = 0$ ... must be *zero* for an **object in equilibrium.**

$$\Sigma F_x = 0 \qquad \Sigma F_y = 0 \tag{5.1}$$

Sum of x-components of force on object must be zero. Sum of y-components of force on object must be zero.

This section is about using Newton's first law to solve problems dealing with objects in equilibrium. Some of these problems may seem complicated, but remember that *all* problems involving particles in equilibrium are done in the same way. Problem-Solving Strategy 5.1 details the steps you need to follow for any and all such problems. Study this strategy carefully, look at how it's applied in the worked-out examples, and try to apply it when you solve assigned problems.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 5.1 Newton's First Law: Equilibrium of a Particle

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* You must use Newton's *first* law, Eqs. (5.1), for any problem that involves forces acting on an object in equilibrium—that is, either at rest or moving with constant velocity. A car is in equilibrium when it's parked, but also when it's traveling down a straight road at a steady speed.

If the problem involves more than one object and the objects interact with each other, you'll also need to use Newton's *third* law. This law allows you to relate the force that one object exerts on a second object to the force that the second object exerts on the first one.

Identify the target variable(s). Common target variables in equilibrium problems include the magnitude and direction (angle) of one of the forces, or the components of a force.

SET UP *the problem* by using the following steps:

1. Draw a very simple sketch of the physical situation, showing dimensions and angles. You don't have to be an artist!
2. Draw a free-body diagram for each object that is in equilibrium. For now, we consider the object as a particle, so you can represent it as a large dot. In your free-body diagram, *do not* include the other objects that interact with it, such as a surface it may be resting on or a rope pulling on it.
3. Ask yourself what is interacting with the object by contact or in any other way. On your free-body diagram, draw a force vector for each interaction. Label each force with a symbol for the *magnitude* of the force. If you know the angle at which a force is directed, draw the angle accurately and label it. Include the object's weight, unless the object has negligible mass. If the mass is given, use $w = mg$ to find the weight. A surface in contact with the object exerts a normal force perpendicular to the surface and possibly a friction force parallel to the surface. A rope or chain exerts a pull (never a push) in a direction along its length.
4. *Do not* show in the free-body diagram any forces exerted *by* the object on any other object. The sums in Eqs. (5.1) include only forces that act *on* the object. For each force on the object, ask yourself "What other object causes that force?" If you can't answer that question, you may be imagining a force that isn't there.
5. Choose a set of coordinate axes and include them in your free-body diagram. (If there is more than one object in the problem, choose axes for each object separately.) Label the positive direction for each axis. If an object rests or slides on a plane surface, for simplicity choose axes that are parallel and perpendicular to this surface, even when the plane is tilted.

EXECUTE *the solution* as follows:

1. Find the components of each force along each of the object's coordinate axes. Draw a wiggly line through each force vector that has been replaced by its components, so you don't count it twice. The *magnitude* of a force is always positive, but its *components* may be positive or negative.
2. Set the sum of all x-components of force equal to zero. In a separate equation, set the sum of all y-components equal to zero. (*Never* add x- and y-components in a single equation.)
3. If there are two or more objects, repeat all of the above steps for each object. If the objects interact with each other, use Newton's third law to relate the forces they exert on each other.
4. Make sure that you have as many independent equations as the number of unknown quantities. Then solve these equations to obtain the target variables.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Look at your results and ask whether they make sense. When the result is a symbolic expression or formula, check to see that your formula works for any special cases (particular values or extreme cases for the various quantities) for which you can guess what the results ought to be.

EXAMPLE 5.1 One-dimensional equilibrium: Tension in a massless rope

A gymnast with mass $m_G = 50.0$ kg suspends herself from the lower end of a hanging rope of negligible mass. The upper end of the rope is attached to the gymnasium ceiling. (a) What is the gymnast's weight? (b) What force (magnitude and direction) does the rope exert on her? (c) What is the tension at the top of the rope?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The gymnast and the rope are in equilibrium, so we can apply Newton's first law to both objects. We'll use Newton's third law to relate the forces that they exert on each other. The target variables are the gymnast's weight, w_G; the force that the bottom of the rope exerts on the gymnast (call it $T_{R\text{ on }G}$); and the force that the ceiling exerts on the top of the rope (call it $T_{C\text{ on }R}$). **Figure 5.1** shows our sketch of the situation and free-body diagrams for the gymnast and for the rope. We take the positive y-axis to be upward in each

Figure 5.1 Our sketches for this problem.

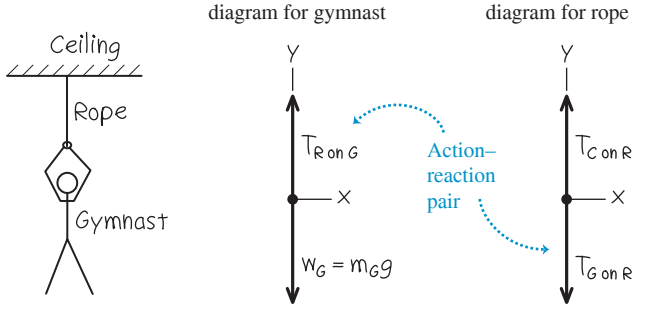


diagram. Each force acts in the vertical direction and so has only a y-component.

The forces $T_{\text{R on G}}$ (the upward force of the rope on the gymnast, Fig. 5.1b) and $T_{\text{G on R}}$ (the downward force of the gymnast on the rope, Fig. 5.1c) form an action–reaction pair. By Newton's third law, they must have the same magnitude.

Note that Fig. 5.1c includes only the forces that act *on* the rope. In particular, it doesn't include the force that the *rope* exerts on the *ceiling* (compare the discussion of the apple in Conceptual Example 4.9 in Section 4.5).

EXECUTE (a) The magnitude of the gymnast's weight is the product of her mass and the acceleration due to gravity, g:

$$w_{\text{G}} = m_{\text{G}}g = (50.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) = 490\ \text{N}$$

(b) The gravitational force on the gymnast (her weight) points in the negative y-direction, so its y-component is $-w_{\text{G}}$. The upward force of the rope on the gymnast has unknown magnitude $T_{\text{R on G}}$ and positive y-component $+T_{\text{R on G}}$. We find this by using Newton's first law from Eqs. (5.1):

$$\text{Gymnast:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_{\text{R on G}} + (-w_{\text{G}}) = 0 \quad \text{so}$$

$$T_{\text{R on G}} = w_{\text{G}} = 490\ \text{N}$$

The rope pulls *up* on the gymnast with a force $T_{\text{R on G}}$ of magnitude 490 N. (By Newton's third law, the gymnast pulls *down* on the rope with a force of the same magnitude, $T_{\text{G on R}} = 490$ N.)

(c) We have assumed that the rope is weightless, so the only forces on it are those exerted by the ceiling (upward force of unknown magnitude $T_{\text{C on R}}$) and by the gymnast (downward force of magnitude $T_{\text{G on R}} = 490$ N). From Newton's first law, the *net* vertical force on the rope in equilibrium must be zero:

$$\text{Rope:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_{\text{C on R}} + (-T_{\text{G on R}}) = 0 \quad \text{so}$$

$$T_{\text{C on R}} = T_{\text{G on R}} = 490\ \text{N}$$

EVALUATE The *tension* at any point in the rope is the magnitude of the force that acts at that point. For this weightless rope, the tension $T_{\text{G on R}}$ at the lower end has the same value as the tension $T_{\text{C on R}}$ at the upper end. For such an ideal weightless rope, the tension has the same value at any point along the rope's length. (See the discussion in Conceptual Example 4.10 in Section 4.5.)

KEYCONCEPT The sum of all the external forces on an object in equilibrium is zero. The tension has the same value at either end of a rope or string of negligible mass.

EXAMPLE 5.2 One-dimensional equilibrium: Tension in a rope with mass

Find the tension at each end of the rope in Example 5.1 if the weight of the rope is 120 N.

IDENTIFY and SET UP As in Example 5.1, the target variables are the magnitudes $T_{\text{G on R}}$ and $T_{\text{C on R}}$ of the forces that act at the bottom and top of the rope, respectively. Once again, we'll apply Newton's first law to the gymnast and to the rope, and use Newton's third law to relate the forces that the gymnast and rope exert on each other. Again we draw separate free-body diagrams for the gymnast (**Fig. 5.2a**) and the rope (Fig. 5.2b). There is now a *third* force acting on the rope, however: the weight of the rope, of magnitude $w_{\text{R}} = 120$ N.

EXECUTE The gymnast's free-body diagram is the same as in Example 5.1, so her equilibrium condition is also the same. From Newton's third law, $T_{\text{R on G}} = T_{\text{G on R}}$, and we again have

$$\text{Gymnast:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_{\text{R on G}} + (-w_{\text{G}}) = 0 \quad \text{so}$$

$$T_{\text{R on G}} = T_{\text{G on R}} = w_{\text{G}} = 490\ \text{N}$$

The equilibrium condition $\Sigma F_y = 0$ for the rope is now

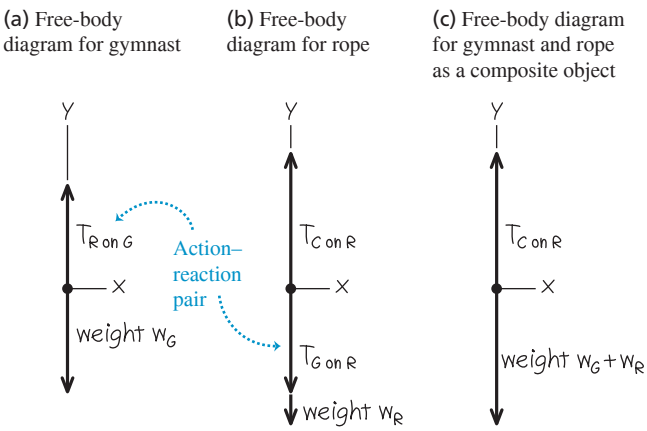
$$\text{Rope:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_{\text{C on R}} + (-T_{\text{G on R}}) + (-w_{\text{R}}) = 0$$

Note that the y-component of $T_{\text{C on R}}$ is positive because it points in the $+y$-direction, but the y-components of both $T_{\text{G on R}}$ and w_{R} are negative. We solve for $T_{\text{C on R}}$ and substitute the values $T_{\text{G on R}} = T_{\text{R on G}} = 490$ N and $w_{\text{R}} = 120$ N:

$$T_{\text{C on R}} = T_{\text{G on R}} + w_{\text{R}} = 490\ \text{N} + 120\ \text{N} = 610\ \text{N}$$

EVALUATE When we include the weight of the rope, the tension is *different* at the rope's two ends: 610 N at the top and 490 N at the bottom. The force $T_{\text{C on R}} = 610$ N exerted by the ceiling has to hold up both the 490 N weight of the gymnast and the 120 N weight of the rope.

Figure **5.2** Our sketches for this problem, including the weight of the rope.



To see this more clearly, we draw a free-body diagram for a composite object consisting of the gymnast and rope together (Fig. 5.2c). Only two external forces act on this composite object: the force $T_{\text{C on R}}$ exerted by the ceiling and the total weight $w_{\text{G}} + w_{\text{R}} = 490\ \text{N} + 120\ \text{N} = 610$ N. (The forces $T_{\text{G on R}}$ and $T_{\text{R on G}}$ are *internal* to the composite object. Newton's first law applies only to *external* forces, so these internal forces play no role.) Hence Newton's first law applied to this composite object is

$$\text{Composite object:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_{\text{C on R}} + [-(w_{\text{G}} + w_{\text{R}})] = 0$$

and so $T_{\text{C on R}} = w_{\text{G}} + w_{\text{R}} = 610$ N.

Treating the gymnast and rope as a composite object is simpler, but we can't find the tension $T_{\text{G on R}}$ at the bottom of the rope by this method.

KEYCONCEPT If there's more than one object in a problem that involves Newton's laws, the safest approach is to treat each object separately.

EXAMPLE 5.3 Two-dimensional equilibrium

In **Fig. 5.3a**, a car engine with weight w hangs from a chain that is linked at ring O to two other chains, one fastened to the ceiling and the other to the wall. Find expressions for the tension in each of the three chains in terms of w. The weights of the ring and chains are negligible compared with the weight of the engine.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The target variables are the tension magnitudes T_1, T_2, and T_3 in the three chains (Fig. 5.3a). All the objects are in equilibrium, so we'll use Newton's first law. We need three independent equations, one for each target variable. However, applying Newton's first law in component form to just one object gives only *two* equations [the x- and y-equations in Eqs. (5.1)]. So we'll have to consider more than one object in equilibrium. We'll look at the engine (which is acted on by T_1) and the ring (which is attached to all three chains and so is acted on by all three tensions).

Figures 5.3b and 5.3c show our free-body diagrams and choice of coordinate axes. Two forces act on the engine: its weight w and the upward force T_1 exerted by the vertical chain. Three forces act on the ring: the tensions from the vertical chain (T_1), the horizontal chain (T_2), and the slanted chain (T_3). Because the vertical chain has negligible weight, it exerts forces of the same magnitude T_1 at both of its ends (see Example 5.1). (If the weight of this chain were not negligible, these two forces would have different magnitudes; see Example 5.2.) The weight of the ring is also negligible, so it isn't included in Fig. 5.3c.

EXECUTE The forces acting on the engine are along the y-axis only, so Newton's first law [Eqs. (5.1)] says

$$\text{Engine:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_1 + (-w) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad T_1 = w$$

The horizontal and slanted chains don't exert forces on the engine itself because they are not attached to it. These forces do appear when we apply Newton's first law to the ring, however. In the free-body diagram for the ring (Fig. 5.3c), remember that T_1, T_2, and T_3 are the *magnitudes* of the forces. We resolve the force with magnitude T_3 into its x- and y-components. Applying Newton's first law in component form to the ring gives us the two equations

$$\text{Ring:} \quad \Sigma F_x = T_3\cos 60° + (-T_2) = 0$$

$$\text{Ring:} \quad \Sigma F_y = T_3\sin 60° + (-T_1) = 0$$

Because $T_1 = w$ (from the engine equation), we can rewrite the second ring equation as

$$T_3 = \frac{T_1}{\sin 60°} = \frac{w}{\sin 60°} = 1.2w$$

We can now use this result in the first ring equation:

$$T_2 = T_3\cos 60° = w\frac{\cos 60°}{\sin 60°} = 0.58w$$

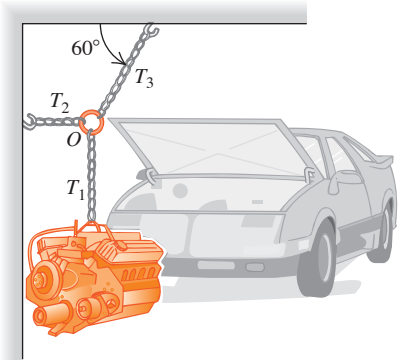
EVALUATE The chain attached to the ceiling exerts a force on the ring with a *vertical* component equal to T_1, which in turn is equal to w. But this force also has a horizontal component, so its magnitude T_3 is somewhat greater than w. This chain is under the greatest tension and is the one most susceptible to breaking.

To get enough equations to solve this problem, we had to consider not only the forces on the engine but also the forces acting on a second object (the ring connecting the chains). Situations like this are fairly common in equilibrium problems, so keep this technique in mind.

KEYCONCEPT In two-dimensional problems that involve forces, always write *two* force equations for each object: one for the x-components of the forces and one for the y-components of the forces.

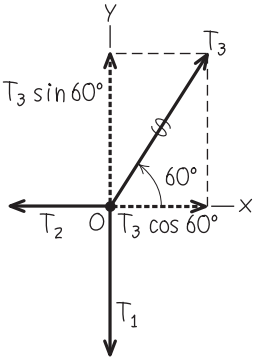
Figure 5.3 Our sketches for this problem. Note that with our choice of axes, all but one of the forces lie along either the x-axis or the y-axis.

(a) Engine, chains, and ring



(b) Free-body diagram for engine

(c) Free-body diagram for ring O



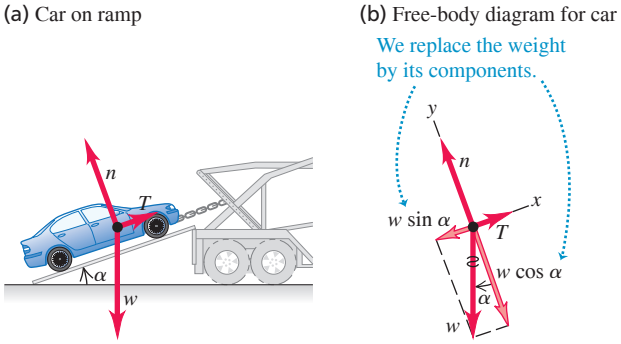
EXAMPLE 5.4 An inclined plane

A car of weight w rests on a slanted ramp attached to a trailer (**Fig. 5.4a**). Only a cable running from the trailer to the car prevents the car from rolling off the ramp. (The car's brakes are off and its transmission is in neutral.) Find the tension in the cable and the force that the ramp exerts on the car's tires.

IDENTIFY The car is in equilibrium, so we use Newton's first law. The ramp exerts a separate force on each of the car's tires, but for simplicity we lump these forces into a single force. For a further simplification, we'll neglect any friction force the ramp exerts on the tires (see Fig. 4.2b). Hence the ramp exerts only a force on the car that is *perpendicular* to the ramp. As in Section 4.1, we call this force the *normal* force (see Fig. 4.2a). The two target variables are the magnitude T of the tension in the cable and the magnitude n of the normal force.

SET UP Figure 5.4 shows the three forces acting on the car: its weight (magnitude w), the tension in the cable (magnitude T), and the normal force (magnitude n). Note that the angle α between the ramp and the

Figure 5.4 A cable holds a car at rest on a ramp.



horizontal is equal to the angle α between the weight vector $\vec{w}$ and the downward normal to the plane of the ramp. Note also that we choose the x- and y-axes to be parallel and perpendicular to the ramp so that we need to resolve only one force (the weight) into x- and y-components. If we had chosen axes that were horizontal and vertical, we'd have to resolve both the normal force and the tension into components.

EXECUTE To write down the x- and y-components of Newton's first law, we must first find the components of the weight. One complication is that the angle α in Fig. 5.4b is *not* measured from the $+x$-axis toward the $+y$-axis. Hence we *cannot* use Eqs. (1.5) directly to find the components. (You may want to review Section 1.8 to make sure that you understand this important point.)

One way to find the components of $\vec{w}$ is to consider the right triangles in Fig. 5.4b. The sine of α is the magnitude of the x-component of $\vec{w}$ (that is, the side of the triangle opposite α) divided by the magnitude w (the hypotenuse of the triangle). Similarly, the cosine of α is the magnitude of the y-component (the side of the triangle adjacent to α) divided by w. Both components are negative, so $w_x = -w\sin\alpha$ and $w_y = -w\cos\alpha$.

Another approach is to recognize that one component of $\vec{w}$ must involve $\sin\alpha$ while the other component involves $\cos\alpha$. To decide which is which, draw the free-body diagram so that the angle α is noticeably smaller or larger than 45°. (You'll have to fight the natural tendency to draw such angles as being close to 45°.) We've drawn Fig. 5.4b so that α is smaller than 45°, so $\sin\alpha$ is less than $\cos\alpha$. The figure shows that the x-component of $\vec{w}$ is smaller than the y-component, so the x-component must involve $\sin\alpha$ and the y-component must involve $\cos\alpha$. We again find $w_x = -w\sin\alpha$ and $w_y = -w\cos\alpha$.

In Fig. 5.4b we draw a wiggly line through the original vector representing the weight to remind us not to count it twice. Newton's first law gives us

$$\Sigma F_x = T + (-w\sin\alpha) = 0$$
$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-w\cos\alpha) = 0$$

(Remember that T, w, and n are all *magnitudes* of vectors and are therefore all positive.) Solving these equations for T and n, we find

$$T = w\sin\alpha$$
$$n = w\cos\alpha$$

EVALUATE Our answers for T and n depend on the value of α. To check this dependence, let's look at some special cases. If the ramp is horizontal ($\alpha = 0$), we get $T = 0$ and $n = w$: No cable tension T is needed to hold the car, and the normal force n is equal in magnitude to the weight. If the ramp is vertical ($\alpha = 90°$), we get $T = w$ and $n = 0$: The cable tension T supports all of the car's weight, and there's nothing pushing the car against the ramp.

CAUTION **Normal force and weight may not be equal** It's a common error to assume that the normal-force magnitude n equals the weight w. Our result shows that this is *not* always the case. Always treat n as a variable and solve for its value, as we've done here.

How would the answers for T and n be affected if the car were being pulled up the ramp at a constant speed? This, too, is an equilibrium situation, since the car's velocity is constant. So the calculation is the same, and T and n have the same values as when the car is at rest. (It's true that T must be greater than $w\sin\alpha$ to *start* the car moving up the ramp, but that's not what we asked.)

KEYCONCEPT In two-dimensional equilibrium problems, choose the coordinate axes so that as many forces as possible lie along either the x-axis or the y-axis.

EXAMPLE 5.5 Equilibrium of objects connected by cable and pulley

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Your firm needs to haul granite blocks up a 15° slope out of a quarry and to lower dirt into the quarry to fill the holes. You design a system in which a granite block on a cart with steel wheels (weight w_1, including both block and cart) is pulled uphill on steel rails by a dirt-filled bucket (weight w_2, including both dirt and bucket) that descends vertically into the quarry (**Fig. 5.5a**, next page). How must the weights w_1 and w_2 be related in order for the system to move with constant speed? Ignore friction in the pulley and wheels, and ignore the weight of the cable.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The cart and bucket each move with a constant velocity (in a straight line at constant speed). Hence each object is in equilibrium, and we can apply Newton's first law to each. Our target is an expression relating the weights w_1 and w_2.

Figure 5.5b shows our idealized model for the system, and Figs. 5.5c and 5.5d show our free-body diagrams. The two forces on the bucket are its weight w_2 and an upward tension exerted by the cable. As for the car on the ramp in Example 5.4, three forces act on the cart: its weight w_1, a normal force of magnitude n exerted by the rails, and a tension force from the cable. Since we're assuming that the cable has negligible weight, the tension forces that the cable exerts on the cart and on the bucket have the same magnitude T. (We're ignoring friction, so we assume that the rails exert no force on the cart parallel to the incline.) Note that we are free to orient the axes differently for each object; the choices shown are the most convenient ones. We find the components of the weight force in the same way that we did in Example 5.4. (Compare Fig. 5.5d with Fig. 5.4b.)

EXECUTE Applying $\Sigma F_y = 0$ to the bucket in Fig. 5.5c, we find

$$\Sigma F_y = T + (-w_2) = 0 \qquad \text{so} \qquad T = w_2$$

Applying $\Sigma F_x = 0$ to the cart (and block) in Fig. 5.5d, we get

$$\Sigma F_x = T + (-w_1\sin 15°) = 0 \qquad \text{so} \qquad T = w_1\sin 15°$$

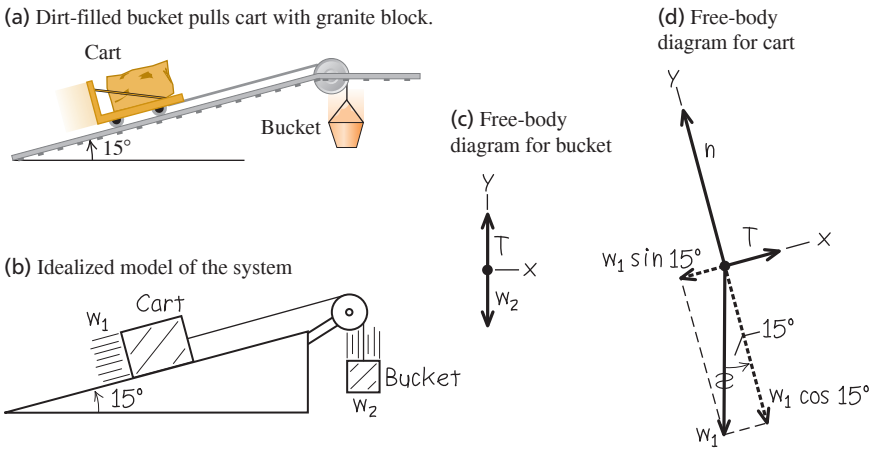
Equating the two expressions for T, we find

$$w_2 = w_1\sin 15° = 0.26w_1$$

EVALUATE Our analysis doesn't depend at all on the direction in which the cart and bucket move. Hence the system can move with constant speed in *either* direction if the weight of the dirt and bucket is 26% of

Continued

Figure **5.5** Our sketches for this problem.



the weight of the granite block and cart. What would happen if w_2 were greater than $0.26w_1$? If it were less than $0.26w_1$?

Notice that we didn't need the equation $\Sigma F_y = 0$ for the cart and block. Can you use this to show that $n = w_1 \cos 15°$?

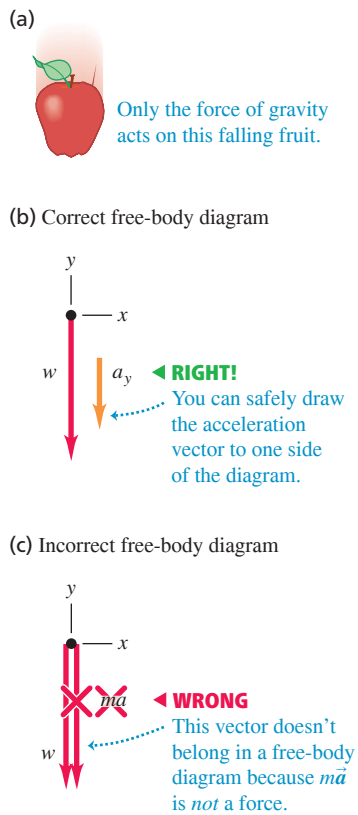
KEYCONCEPT If there's more than one object in a problem involving forces, you are free to choose different x- and y-axes for each object to make it easier to find force components.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 5.1 A traffic light of weight w hangs from two lightweight cables, one on each side of the light. Each cable hangs at a 45° angle from the horizontal. What is the tension in each cable? (i) $w/2$; (ii) $w/\sqrt{2}$; (iii) w; (iv) $w\sqrt{2}$; (v) $2w$.

ANSWER

(ii) The two cables are arranged symmetrically, so the tension in either cable has the same magnitude T. The vertical component of the tension from each cable is $T\sin 45°$ (or, equivalently, $T\cos 45°$), so Newton's first law applied to the vertical forces tells us that $2T\sin 45° - w = 0$. Hence $T = w/(2\sin 45°) = w/\sqrt{2} = 0.71w$. Each cable supports half of the weight of the traffic light, but the tension is greater than $w/2$ because only the vertical component of the tension counteracts the weight.

Figure **5.6** Correct and incorrect free-body diagrams for a falling object.



5.2 USING NEWTON'S SECOND LAW: DYNAMICS OF PARTICLES

We are now ready to discuss *dynamics* problems. In these problems, we apply Newton's second law to objects on which the net force is *not* zero. These objects are *not* in equilibrium and hence are accelerating:

Newton's second law: If the *net* force on an object is not zero ... $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ ... the object has *acceleration* in the same direction as the net force. Mass of object

$$\Sigma F_x = ma_x \qquad \Sigma F_y = ma_y \tag{5.2}$$

Each component of the net force on the object ... ... equals the object's mass times the corresponding acceleration component.

CAUTION $m\vec{a}$ **doesn't belong in free-body diagrams** Remember that the quantity $m\vec{a}$ is the *result* of forces acting on an object, *not* a force itself. When you draw the free-body diagram for an accelerating object (like the fruit in **Fig. 5.6a**), *never* include the "$m\vec{a}$ force" because *there is no such force* (Fig. 5.6c). Review Section 4.3 if you're not clear on this point. Sometimes we draw the acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ *alongside* a free-body diagram, as in Fig. 5.6b. But we *never* draw the acceleration vector with its tail touching the object (a position reserved exclusively for forces that act on the object).

The following problem-solving strategy is very similar to Problem-Solving Strategy 5.1 for equilibrium problems in Section 5.1. Study it carefully, watch how we apply it in our examples, and use it when you tackle the end-of-chapter problems. You can use this strategy to solve *any* dynamics problem.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 5.2 Newton's Second Law: Dynamics of Particles

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* You have to use Newton's second law, Eqs. (5.2), for *any* problem that involves forces acting on an accelerating object.

Identify the target variable—usually an acceleration or a force. If the target variable is something else, you'll need to select another concept to use. For example, suppose the target variable is how fast a sled is moving when it reaches the bottom of a hill. Newton's second law will let you find the sled's acceleration; you'll then use the constant-acceleration relationships from Section 2.4 to find velocity from acceleration.

SET UP *the problem* by using the following steps:

1. Draw a simple sketch of the situation that shows each moving object. For each object, draw a free-body diagram that shows all the forces acting *on* the object. [The sums in Eqs. (5.2) include the forces that act on the object, *not* the forces that it exerts on anything else.] Make sure you can answer the question "What other object is applying this force?" for each force in your diagram. Never include the quantity $m\vec{a}$ in your free-body diagram; it's not a force!
2. Label each force with an algebraic symbol for the force's *magnitude*. Usually, one of the forces will be the object's weight; it's usually best to label this as $w = mg$.
3. Choose your x- and y-coordinate axes for each object, and show them in its free-body diagram. Indicate the positive direction for each axis. If you know the direction of the acceleration, it usually simplifies things to take one positive axis along that direction. If your problem involves two or more objects that accelerate in different directions, you can use a different set of axes for each object.
4. In addition to Newton's second law, $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, identify any other equations you might need. For example, you might need one or more of the equations for motion with constant acceleration. If more than one object is involved, there may be relationships among their motions; for example, they may be connected by a rope. Express any such relationships as equations relating the accelerations of the various objects.

EXECUTE *the solution* as follows:

1. For each object, determine the components of the forces along each of the object's coordinate axes. When you represent a force in terms of its components, draw a wiggly line through the original force vector to remind you not to include it twice.
2. List all of the known and unknown quantities. In your list, identify the target variable or variables.
3. For each object, write a separate equation for each component of Newton's second law, as in Eqs. (5.2). Write any additional equations that you identified in step 4 of "Set Up." (You need as many equations as there are target variables.)
4. Do the easy part—the math! Solve the equations to find the target variable(s).

EVALUATE *your answer:* Does your answer have the correct units? (When appropriate, use the conversion $1\ \text{N} = 1\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2$.) Does it have the correct algebraic sign? When possible, consider particular values or extreme cases of quantities and compare the results with your intuitive expectations. Ask, "Does this result make sense?"

EXAMPLE 5.6 Straight-line motion with a constant force

An iceboat is at rest on a frictionless horizontal surface (**Fig. 5.7a**). Due to the blowing wind, 4.0 s after the iceboat is released, it is moving to the right at 6.0 m/s (about 22 km/h). What constant horizontal force F_W does the wind exert on the iceboat? The combined mass of iceboat and rider is 200 kg.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is one of the forces (F_W) acting on the accelerating iceboat, so we need to use Newton's second law. The forces acting on the iceboat and rider (considered as a unit) are the weight w, the normal force n exerted by the surface, and the horizontal force F_W. Figure 5.7b shows the free-body diagram. The net force and hence the acceleration are to the right, so we chose the positive x-axis in this direction. The acceleration isn't given; we'll need to find it. Since the wind is assumed to exert a constant force, the resulting acceleration is constant and we can use one of the constant-acceleration formulas from Section 2.4.

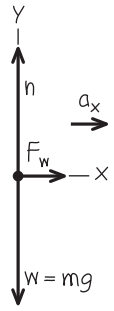
The iceboat starts at rest (its initial x-velocity is $v_{0x} = 0$) and it attains an x-velocity $v_x = 6.0$ m/s after an elapsed time $t = 4.0$ s. To relate the x-acceleration a_x to these quantities we use Eq. (2.8), $v_x = v_{0x} + a_x t$. There is no vertical acceleration, so we expect that the normal force on the iceboat is equal in magnitude to the iceboat's weight.

EXECUTE The *known* quantities are the mass $m = 200$ kg, the initial and final x-velocities $v_{0x} = 0$ and $v_x = 6.0$ m/s, and the elapsed time $t = 4.0$ s. There are three *unknown* quantities: the acceleration a_x, the normal force n, and the horizontal force F_W. Hence we need three equations.

Figure 5.7 Our sketches for this problem.

(a) Iceboat and rider on frictionless ice

(b) Free-body diagram for iceboat and rider



The first two equations are the x- and y-equations for Newton's second law, Eqs. (5.2). The force F_W is in the positive x-direction, while

Continued

the forces n and $w = mg$ are in the positive and negative y-directions, respectively. Hence we have

$$\Sigma F_x = F_W = ma_x$$

$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-mg) = 0 \qquad \text{so} \qquad n = mg$$

The third equation is Eq. (2.8) for constant acceleration:

$$v_x = v_{0x} + a_x t$$

To find F_W, we first solve this third equation for a_x and then substitute the result into the ΣF_x equation:

$$a_x = \frac{v_x - v_{0x}}{t} = \frac{6.0\ \text{m/s} - 0}{4.0\ \text{s}} = 1.5\ \text{m/s}^2$$

$$F_W = ma_x = (200\ \text{kg})(1.5\ \text{m/s}^2) = 300\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$$

Since $1\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2 = 1\ \text{N}$, the final answer is

$$F_W = 300\ \text{N}$$

EVALUATE Our answers for F_W and n have the correct units for a force, and (as expected) the magnitude n of the normal force is equal to mg. Does it seem reasonable that the force F_W is substantially *less* than the weight of the boat, mg?

KEYCONCEPT For problems in which an object is accelerating, it's usually best to choose one positive axis to be in the direction of the acceleration.

EXAMPLE 5.7 Straight-line motion with friction

Suppose a constant horizontal friction force with magnitude 100 N opposes the motion of the iceboat in Example 5.6. In this case, what constant force F_W must the wind exert on the iceboat to cause the same constant x-acceleration $a_x = 1.5\ \text{m/s}^2$?

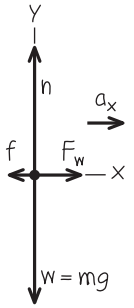
IDENTIFY and SET UP Again the target variable is F_W. We are given the x-acceleration, so to find F_W all we need is Newton's second law. **Figure 5.8** shows our new free-body diagram. The only difference from Fig. 5.7b is the addition of the friction force $\vec{f}$, which points in the negative x-direction (opposite the motion). Because the wind must now overcome the friction force to yield the same acceleration as in Example 5.6, we expect our answer for F_W to be greater than the 300 N we found there.

EXECUTE Two forces now have x-components: the force of the wind (x-component $+F_W$) and the friction force (x-component $-f$). The x-component of Newton's second law gives

$$\Sigma F_x = F_W + (-f) = ma_x$$

$$F_W = ma_x + f = (200\ \text{kg})(1.5\ \text{m/s}^2) + (100\ \text{N}) = 400\ \text{N}$$

Figure 5.8 Our free-body diagram for the iceboat and rider with friction force $\vec{f}$ opposing the motion.



EVALUATE The required value of F_W is 100 N greater than in Example 5.6 because the wind must now push against an additional 100 N friction force.

KEYCONCEPT When friction is present, the friction force on an object is always in the direction that opposes sliding.

EXAMPLE 5.8 Tension in a lift cable

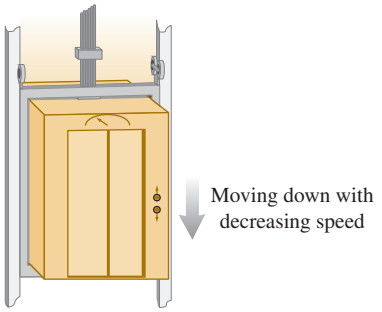
A lift and its load have a combined mass of 800 kg (**Fig. 5.9a**). The lift is initially moving downward at 10.0 m/s; it slows to a stop with constant acceleration in a distance of 25.0 m. What is the tension T in the supporting cable while the lift is being brought to rest?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The target variable is the tension T, which we'll find by using Newton's second law. As in Example 5.6, we'll use a constant-acceleration formula to determine the acceleration. Our free-body diagram (Fig. 5.9b) shows two forces acting on the lift: its weight w and the tension force T of the cable. The lift is moving downward with decreasing speed, so its acceleration is upward; we chose the positive y-axis to be upward.

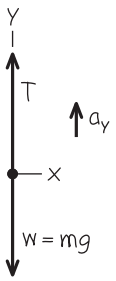
The lift is moving in the negative y-direction, so both its initial y-velocity v_{0y} and its y-displacement $y - y_0$ are negative: $v_{0y} = -10.0\ \text{m/s}$ and $y - y_0 = -25.0\ \text{m}$. The final y-velocity is $v_y = 0$.

Figure 5.9 Our sketches for this problem.

(a) Descending lift



(b) Free-body diagram for lift



To find the y-acceleration a_y from this information, we'll use Eq. (2.13) in the form $v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 + 2a_y(y - y_0)$. Once we have a_y, we'll substitute it into the y-component of Newton's second law from Eqs. (5.2) and solve for T. The net force must be upward to give an upward acceleration, so we expect T to be greater than the weight $w = mg = (800\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2) = 7840\text{ N}$.

EXECUTE First let's write out Newton's second law. The tension force acts upward and the weight acts downward, so

$$\Sigma F_y = T + (-w) = ma_y$$

We solve for the target variable T:

$$T = w + ma_y = mg + ma_y = m(g + a_y)$$

To determine a_y, we rewrite the constant-acceleration equation $v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 + 2a_y(y - y_0)$:

$$a_y = \frac{v_y^2 - v_{0y}^2}{2(y - y_0)} = \frac{(0)^2 - (-10.0\text{ m/s})^2}{2(-25.0\text{ m})} = +2.00\text{ m/s}^2$$

The acceleration is upward (positive), just as it should be.

Now we can substitute the acceleration into the equation for the tension:

$$T = m(g + a_y) = (800\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2 + 2.00\text{ m/s}^2) = 9440\text{ N}$$

EVALUATE The tension is greater than the weight, as expected. Can you see that we would get the same answers for a_y and T if the lift were moving *upward* and *gaining* speed at a rate of 2.00 m/s^2?

KEYCONCEPT If an object suspended from a cable (or rope or string) is accelerating vertically, the tension in the cable is *not* equal to the weight of the object.

EXAMPLE 5.9 Apparent weight in an accelerating lift

A 50.0 kg woman stands on a bathroom scale while riding in the lift in Example 5.8. While the lift is moving downward with decreasing speed, what is the reading on the scale?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The scale (**Fig. 5.10a**) reads the magnitude of the downward force exerted *by* the woman *on* the scale. By Newton's third law, this equals the magnitude of the upward normal force exerted *by* the scale *on* the woman. Hence our target variable is the magnitude n of the normal force. We'll find n by applying Newton's second law to the woman. We already know her acceleration; it's the same as the acceleration of the lift, which we calculated in Example 5.8.

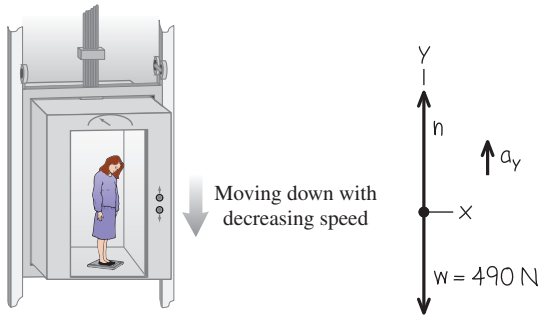
Figure 5.10b shows our free-body diagram for the woman. The forces acting on her are the normal force n exerted by the scale and her weight $w = mg = (50.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2) = 490\text{ N}$. (The tension force, which played a major role in Example 5.8, doesn't appear here because it doesn't act on the woman.) From Example 5.8, the y-acceleration of the lift and of the woman is $a_y = +2.00\text{ m/s}^2$. As in Example 5.8, the upward force on the object accelerating upward (in this case, the normal force on the woman) will have to be greater than the object's weight to produce the upward acceleration.

EXECUTE Newton's second law gives

$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-mg) = ma_y$$
$$n = mg + ma_y = m(g + a_y)$$
$$= (50.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2 + 2.00\text{ m/s}^2) = 590\text{ N}$$

EVALUATE Our answer for n means that while the lift is stopping, the scale pushes up on the woman with a force of 590 N. By Newton's third law, she pushes down on the scale with the same force. So the scale reads 590 N, which is 100 N more than her actual weight. The scale reading is called the passenger's **apparent weight.** The woman *feels* the floor pushing up harder on her feet than when the lift is stationary or moving with constant velocity.

Figure 5.10 Our sketches for this problem.



What would the woman feel if the lift were accelerating *downward,* so that $a_y = -2.00\text{ m/s}^2$? This would be the case if the lift were moving upward with decreasing speed or moving downward with increasing speed. To find the answer for this situation, we just insert the new value of a_y in our equation for n:

$$n = m(g + a_y) = (50.0\text{ kg})[9.80\text{ m/s}^2 + (-2.00\text{ m/s}^2)] = 390\text{ N}$$

Now the woman would feel as though she weighs only 390 N, or 100 N *less* than her actual weight w.

You can feel these effects yourself; try taking a few steps in a lift that is coming to a stop after descending (when your apparent weight is greater than w) or coming to a stop after ascending (when your apparent weight is less than w).

KEYCONCEPT When you are riding in an accelerating vehicle such as a lift, your apparent weight (the normal force that the vehicle exerts on you) is in general *not* equal to your actual weight.

Figure 5.11 Astronauts in orbit feel "weightless" because they have the same acceleration as their spacecraft. They are *not* outside the pull of the earth's gravity. (We'll discuss the motions of orbiting objects in detail in Chapter 12.)

Apparent Weight and Apparent Weightlessness

Let's generalize the result of Example 5.9. When a passenger with mass m rides in a lift with y-acceleration a_y, a scale shows the passenger's apparent weight to be

$$n = m(g + a_y)$$

When the lift is accelerating upward, a_y is positive and n is greater than the passenger's weight $w = mg$. When the lift is accelerating downward, a_y is negative and n is less than the weight. If the passenger doesn't know the lift is accelerating, she may feel as though her weight is changing; indeed, this is just what the scale shows.

The extreme case occurs when the lift has a downward acceleration $a_y = -g$—that is, when it is in free fall. In that case $n = 0$ and the passenger *seems* to be weightless. Similarly, an astronaut orbiting the earth with a spacecraft experiences *apparent weightlessness* (**Fig. 5.11**). In each case, the person is not truly weightless because a gravitational force still acts. But the person's *sensations* in this free-fall condition are exactly the same as though the person were in outer space with no gravitational force at all. In both cases the person and the vehicle (lift or spacecraft) fall together with the same acceleration g, so nothing pushes the person against the floor or walls of the vehicle.

EXAMPLE 5.10 Acceleration down a hill

A toboggan loaded with students (total weight w) slides down a snow-covered hill that slopes at a constant angle α. The toboggan is well waxed, so there is virtually no friction. What is its acceleration?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is the acceleration, which we'll find by using Newton's second law. There is no friction, so only two forces act on the toboggan: its weight w and the normal force n exerted by the hill.

Figure 5.12 shows our sketch and free-body diagram. We take axes parallel and perpendicular to the surface of the hill, so that the acceleration (which is parallel to the hill) is along the positive x-direction.

EXECUTE The normal force has only a y-component, but the weight has both x- and y-components: $w_x = w\sin\alpha$ and $w_y = -w\cos\alpha$. (In Example 5.4 we had $w_x = -w\sin\alpha$. The difference is that the positive x-axis was uphill in Example 5.4 but is downhill in Fig. 5.12b.) The wiggly line in Fig. 5.12b reminds us that we have resolved the weight into its components. The acceleration is purely in the $+x$-direction, so $a_y = 0$. Newton's second law in component form from Eqs. (5.2) then tells us that

$$\Sigma F_x = w\sin\alpha = ma_x$$
$$\Sigma F_y = n - w\cos\alpha = ma_y = 0$$

Since $w = mg$, the x-component equation gives $mg\sin\alpha = ma_x$, or

$$a_x = g\sin\alpha$$

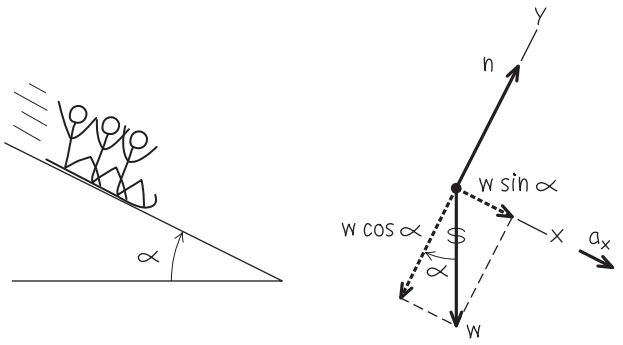
Note that we didn't need the y-component equation to find the acceleration. That's part of the beauty of choosing the x-axis to lie along the acceleration direction! The y-equation tells us the magnitude of the normal force exerted by the hill on the toboggan:

$$n = w\cos\alpha = mg\cos\alpha$$

EVALUATE Notice that the normal force n is not equal to the toboggan's weight (compare Example 5.4). Notice also that the mass m does not appear in our result for the acceleration. That's because the downhill force on the toboggan (a component of the weight) is proportional to m, so the mass cancels out when we use $\Sigma F_x = ma_x$ to calculate a_x. Hence *any* toboggan, regardless of its mass, slides down a frictionless hill with acceleration $g\sin\alpha$.

Figure 5.12 Our sketches for this problem.

(a) The situation (b) Free-body diagram for toboggan



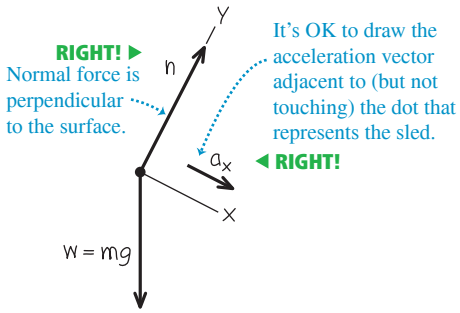
If the plane is horizontal, $\alpha = 0$ and $a_x = 0$ (the toboggan does not accelerate); if the plane is vertical, $\alpha = 90°$ and $a_x = g$ (the toboggan is in free fall).

CAUTION **Common free-body diagram errors** **Figure 5.13** shows both the correct way (Fig. 5.13a) and a common *incorrect* way (Fig. 5.13b) to draw the free-body diagram for the toboggan. The diagram in Fig. 5.13b is wrong for two reasons: The normal force must be drawn perpendicular to the surface (remember, "normal" means perpendicular), and there's no such thing as the "$m\vec{a}$ force." ❙

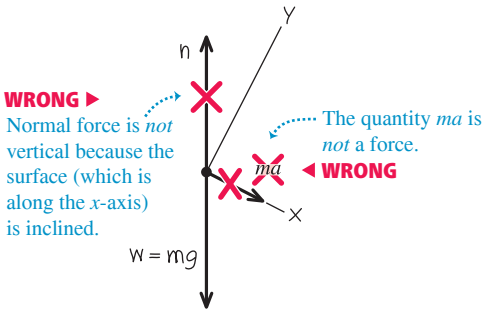
KEYCONCEPT In problems with an object on an incline, it's usually best to take the positive x-direction for that object to be down the incline. The force of gravity will then have both an x-component and a y-component.

Figure **5.13** Correct and incorrect free-body diagrams for a toboggan on a frictionless hill.

(a) Correct free-body diagram for the sled



(b) Incorrect free-body diagram for the sled



EXAMPLE 5.11 Two objects with the same acceleration

You push a 1.00 kg food tray through the cafeteria line with a constant 9.0 N force. The tray pushes a 0.50 kg milk carton (**Fig. 5.14a**). The tray and carton slide on a horizontal surface so greasy that friction can be ignored. Find the acceleration of the tray and carton and the horizontal force that the tray exerts on the carton.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our *two* target variables are the acceleration of the tray–carton system and the force of the tray on the carton. We'll use Newton's second law to get two equations, one for each target variable. We set up and solve the problem in two ways.

Method 1: We treat the carton (mass m_C) and tray (mass m_T) as separate objects, each with its own free-body diagram (Figs. 5.14b and 5.14c). The force F that you exert on the tray doesn't appear in the free-body diagram for the carton, which is accelerated by the force (of magnitude $F_{T\text{ on }C}$) exerted on it by the tray. By Newton's third law, the carton exerts a force of equal magnitude on the tray: $F_{C\text{ on }T} = F_{T\text{ on }C}$. We take the acceleration to be in the positive x-direction; both the tray and milk carton move with the same x-acceleration a_x.

Method 2: We treat the tray and milk carton as a composite object of mass $m = m_T + m_C = 1.50$ kg (Fig. 5.14d). The only horizontal force acting on this object is the force F that you exert. The forces $F_{T\text{ on }C}$ and $F_{C\text{ on }T}$ don't come into play because they're *internal* to this composite object, and Newton's second law tells us that only *external* forces affect an object's acceleration (see Section 4.3). To find the magnitude $F_{T\text{ on }C}$ we'll again apply Newton's second law to the carton, as in Method 1.

EXECUTE *Method 1:* The x-component equations of Newton's second law are

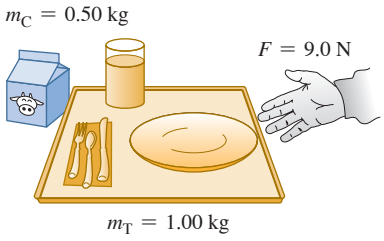
$$\text{Tray:} \quad \Sigma F_x = F - F_{C\text{ on }T} = F - F_{T\text{ on }C} = m_T a_x$$

$$\text{Carton:} \quad \Sigma F_x = F_{T\text{ on }C} = m_C a_x$$

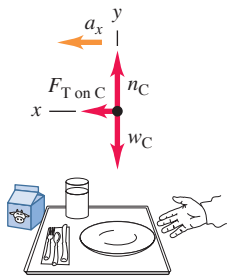
These are two simultaneous equations for the two target variables a_x and $F_{T\text{ on }C}$. (Two equations are all we need, which means that the

Figure **5.14** Pushing a food tray and milk carton in the cafeteria line.

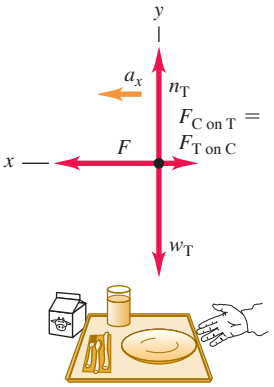
(a) A milk carton and a food tray



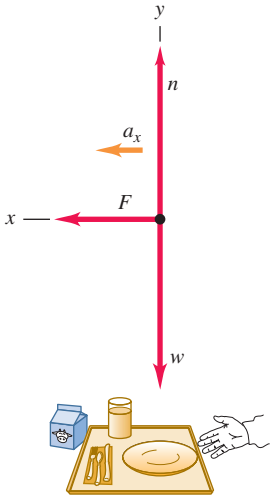
(b) Free-body diagram for milk carton



(c) Free-body diagram for food tray



(d) Free-body diagram for carton and tray as a composite object



Continued

y-components don't play a role in this example.) An easy way to solve the two equations for a_x is to add them; this eliminates $F_{\text{T on C}}$, giving

$$F = m_T a_x + m_C a_x = (m_T + m_C)a_x$$

We solve this equation for a_x:

$$a_x = \frac{F}{m_T + m_C} = \frac{9.0\text{ N}}{1.00\text{ kg} + 0.50\text{ kg}} = 6.0\text{ m/s}^2 = 0.61g$$

Substituting this value into the carton equation gives

$$F_{\text{T on C}} = m_C a_x = (0.50\text{ kg})(6.0\text{ m/s}^2) = 3.0\text{ N}$$

Method 2: The x-component of Newton's second law for the composite object of mass m is

$$\Sigma F_x = F = ma_x$$

The acceleration of this composite object is

$$a_x = \frac{F}{m} = \frac{9.0\text{ N}}{1.50\text{ kg}} = 6.0\text{ m/s}^2$$

Then, looking at the milk carton by itself, we see that to give it an acceleration of 6.0 m/s^2 requires that the tray exert a force

$$F_{\text{T on C}} = m_C a_x = (0.50\text{ kg})(6.0\text{ m/s}^2) = 3.0\text{ N}$$

EVALUATE The answers are the same with both methods. To check the answers, note that there are different forces on the two sides of the tray: $F = 9.0$ N on the right and $F_{\text{C on T}} = 3.0$ N on the left. The net horizontal force on the tray is $F - F_{\text{C on T}} = 6.0$ N, exactly enough to accelerate a 1.00 kg tray at 6.0 m/s^2.

Treating two objects as a single, composite object works *only* if the two objects have the same magnitude *and* direction of acceleration. If the accelerations are different we must treat the two objects separately, as in the next example.

KEYCONCEPT When two objects are touching each other, the free-body diagram for each object must include the force exerted on it by the other object.

EXAMPLE 5.12 Two objects with the same magnitude of acceleration

Figure 5.15a shows an air-track glider with mass m_1 moving on a level, frictionless air track in the physics lab. The glider is connected to a lab weight with mass m_2 by a light, flexible, nonstretching string that passes over a stationary, frictionless pulley. Find the acceleration of each object and the tension in the string.

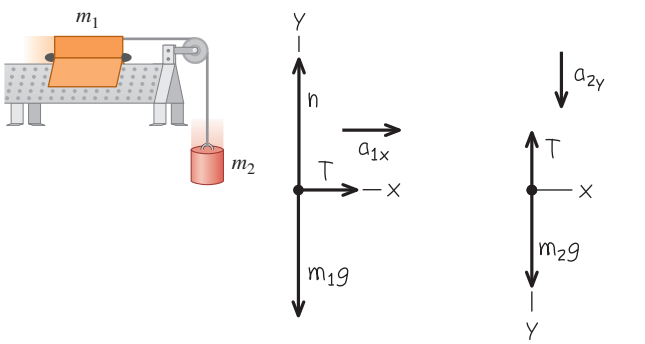
IDENTIFY and SET UP The glider and weight are accelerating, so again we must use Newton's second law. Our three target variables are the tension T in the string and the accelerations of the two objects.

The two objects move in different directions—one horizontal, one vertical—so we can't consider them to be a single unit as we did the objects in Example 5.11. Figures 5.15b and 5.15c show our free-body diagrams and coordinate systems. It's convenient to have both objects accelerate in the positive axis directions, so we chose the positive y-direction for the lab weight to be downward.

We consider the string to be massless and to slide over the pulley without friction, so the tension T in the string is the same throughout and it applies a force of the same magnitude T to each object. (You may want to review Conceptual Example 4.10, in which we discussed the tension force exerted by a massless rope.) The weights are $m_1 g$ and $m_2 g$.

Figure 5.15 Our sketches for this problem.

(a) Apparatus (b) Free-body diagram for glider (c) Free-body diagram for weight



While the *directions* of the two accelerations are different, their *magnitudes* are the same. (That's because the string doesn't stretch, so the two objects must move equal distances in equal times and their speeds at any instant must be equal. When the speeds change, they change at the same rate, so the accelerations of the two objects must have the same magnitude a.) We can express this relationship as $a_{1x} = a_{2y} = a$, which means that we have only *two* target variables: a and the tension T.

What results do we expect? If $m_1 = 0$ (or, approximately, for m_1 much less than m_2) the lab weight will fall freely with acceleration g, and the tension in the string will be zero. For $m_2 = 0$ (or, approximately, for m_2 much less than m_1) we expect zero acceleration and zero tension.

EXECUTE Newton's second law gives

$$\text{Glider:}\quad \Sigma F_x = T = m_1 a_{1x} = m_1 a$$

$$\text{Glider:}\quad \Sigma F_y = n + (-m_1 g) = m_1 a_{1y} = 0$$

$$\text{Lab weight:}\quad \Sigma F_y = m_2 g + (-T) = m_2 a_{2y} = m_2 a$$

(There are no forces on the lab weight in the x-direction.) In these equations we've used $a_{1y} = 0$ (the glider doesn't accelerate vertically) and $a_{1x} = a_{2y} = a$.

The x-equation for the glider and the equation for the lab weight give us two simultaneous equations for T and a:

$$\text{Glider:}\quad T = m_1 a$$

$$\text{Lab weight:}\quad m_2 g - T = m_2 a$$

We add the two equations to eliminate T, giving

$$m_2 g = m_1 a + m_2 a = (m_1 + m_2)a$$

and so the magnitude of each object's acceleration is

$$a = \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} g$$

Substituting this back into the glider equation $T = m_1 a$, we get

$$T = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} g$$

EVALUATE The acceleration is in general less than g, as you might expect; the string tension keeps the lab weight from falling freely. The tension T is *not* equal to the weight $m_2 g$ of the lab weight, but is *less* by a factor of $m_1/(m_1 + m_2)$. If T *were* equal to $m_2 g$, then the lab weight would be in equilibrium, and it isn't.

As predicted, the acceleration is equal to g for $m_1 = 0$ and equal to zero for $m_2 = 0$, and $T = 0$ for either $m_1 = 0$ or $m_2 = 0$.

CAUTION **Tension and weight may not be equal** It's a common mistake to assume that if an object is attached to a vertical string, the string tension must be equal to the object's weight. That was the case in Example 5.5, where the acceleration was zero, but it's not the case in this example! (Tension and weight were also not equal for the accelerating lift in Example 5.8.) The only safe approach is *always* to treat the tension as a variable, as we did here.

KEYCONCEPT If two objects are connected by a string under tension, both objects have the same magnitude of acceleration but may accelerate in different directions. Choose the positive x-direction for each object to be in the direction of its acceleration.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 5.2 Suppose you hold the glider in Example 5.12 so that it and the weight are initially at rest. You give the glider a push to the left in Fig. 5.15a and then release it. The string remains taut as the glider moves to the left, comes instantaneously to rest, then moves to the right. At the instant the glider has zero velocity, what is the tension in the string? (i) Greater than in Example 5.12; (ii) the same as in Example 5.12; (iii) less than in Example 5.12 but greater than zero; (iv) zero.

ANSWER **(ii)** No matter what the instantaneous velocity of the glider, its acceleration is constant and has the value found in Example 5.12. In the same way, the acceleration of an object in free fall is the same whether it is ascending, descending, or at the high point of its motion (see Section 2.5).

5.3 FRICTION FORCES

We've seen several problems in which an object rests or slides on a surface that exerts forces on the object. Whenever two objects interact by direct contact (touching) of their surfaces, we describe the interaction in terms of *contact forces*. The normal force is one example of a contact force; in this section we'll look in detail at another contact force, the force of friction.

Friction is important in many aspects of everyday life. The oil in a car engine minimizes friction between moving parts, but without friction between the tires and the road we couldn't drive or turn the car. Air drag—the friction force exerted by the air on an object moving through it—decreases automotive fuel economy but makes parachutes work. Without friction, nails would pull out and most forms of animal locomotion would be impossible (**Fig. 5.16**).

Kinetic and Static Friction

When you try to slide a heavy box of books across the floor, the box doesn't move at all unless you push with a certain minimum force. Once the box starts moving, you can usually keep it moving with less force than you needed to get it started. If you take some of the books out, you need less force to get it started or keep it moving. What can we say in general about this behavior?

First, when an object rests or slides on a surface, we can think of the surface as exerting a single contact force on the object, with force components perpendicular and parallel to the surface (**Fig. 5.17**, next page). The perpendicular component vector is the normal force, denoted by $\vec{n}$. The component vector parallel to the surface (and perpendicular to $\vec{n}$) is the **friction force,** denoted by $\vec{f}$. If the surface is frictionless, then $\vec{f}$ is zero but there is still a normal force. (Frictionless surfaces are an unattainable idealization, like a massless rope. But we can approximate a surface as frictionless if the effects of friction are negligibly small.) The direction of the friction force is always such as to oppose relative motion of the two surfaces.

Figure 5.16 There is friction between the feet of this caterpillar (the larval stage of a butterfly of the family Papilionidae) and the surfaces over which it walks. Without friction, the caterpillar could not move forward or climb over obstacles.

Figure 5.17 When a block is pushed or pulled over a surface, the surface exerts a contact force on it.

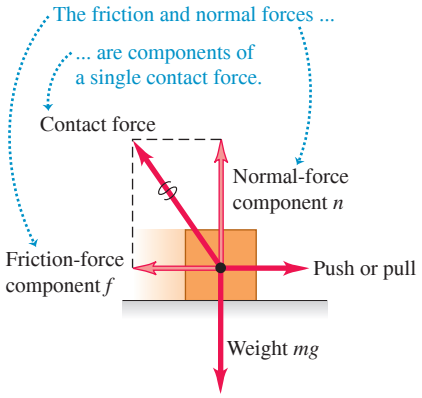


Figure 5.18 A microscopic view of the friction and normal forces.

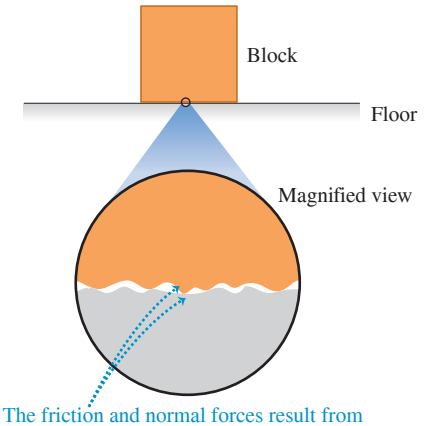


TABLE 5.1 Approximate Coefficients of Friction

Materials	Coefficient of Static Friction, μ_s	Coefficient of Kinetic Friction, μ_k
Steel on steel	0.74	0.57
Aluminum on steel	0.61	0.47
Copper on steel	0.53	0.36
Brass on steel	0.51	0.44
Zinc on cast iron	0.85	0.21
Copper on cast iron	1.05	0.29
Glass on glass	0.94	0.40
Copper on glass	0.68	0.53
Teflon on Teflon	0.04	0.04
Teflon on steel	0.04	0.04
Rubber on concrete (dry)	1.0	0.8
Rubber on concrete (wet)	0.30	0.25

The kind of friction that acts when an object slides over a surface is called a **kinetic friction force** $\vec{f}_k$. The adjective "kinetic" and the subscript "k" remind us that the two surfaces are moving relative to each other. The *magnitude* of the kinetic friction force usually increases when the normal force increases. This is why it takes more force to slide a full box of books across the floor than an empty one. Automotive brakes use the same principle: The harder the brake pads are squeezed against the rotating brake discs, the greater the braking effect. In many cases the magnitude of the kinetic friction force f_k is found experimentally to be approximately *proportional* to the magnitude n of the normal force:

$$\text{Magnitude of kinetic friction force: } f_k = \mu_k n \quad \begin{matrix}\text{Coefficient of kinetic friction}\\ \text{Magnitude of normal force}\end{matrix} \qquad (5.3)$$

Here μ_k (pronounced "mu-sub-k") is a constant called the **coefficient of kinetic friction.** The more slippery the surface, the smaller this coefficient. Because it is a quotient of two force magnitudes, μ_k is a pure number without units.

CAUTION Friction and normal forces are always perpendicular Remember that Eq. (5.3) is *not* a vector equation because $\vec{f}_k$ and $\vec{n}$ are always perpendicular. Rather, it is a scalar relationship between the magnitudes of the two forces.

Equation (5.3) is only an approximate representation of a complex phenomenon. On a microscopic level, friction and normal forces result from the intermolecular forces (electrical in nature) between two rough surfaces at points where they come into contact (**Fig. 5.18**). As a box slides over the floor, bonds between the two surfaces form and break, and the total number of such bonds varies. Hence the kinetic friction force is not perfectly constant. Smoothing the surfaces can actually increase friction, since more molecules can interact and bond; bringing two smooth surfaces of the same metal together can cause a "cold weld." Lubricating oils work because an oil film between two surfaces (such as the pistons and cylinder walls in a car engine) prevents them from coming into actual contact.

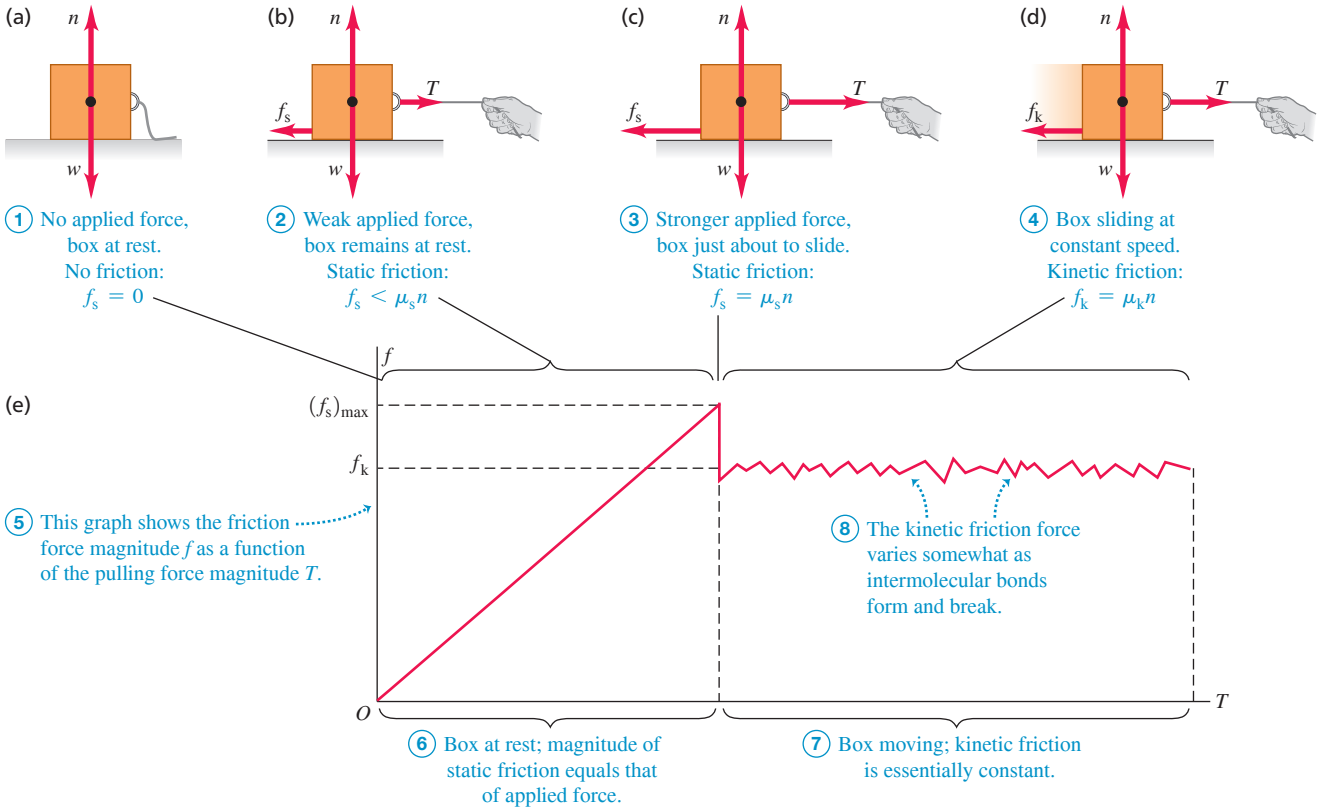
Table 5.1 lists some representative values of μ_k. Although these values are given with two significant figures, they are only approximate, since friction forces can also depend on the speed of the object relative to the surface. For now we'll ignore this effect and assume that μ_k and f_k are independent of speed, in order to concentrate on the simplest cases. Table 5.1 also lists coefficients of static friction; we'll define these shortly.

Friction forces may also act when there is *no* relative motion. If you try to slide a box across the floor, the box may not move at all because the floor exerts an equal and opposite friction force on the box. This is called a **static friction force** $\vec{f}_s$.

In **Fig. 5.19a**, the box is at rest, in equilibrium, under the action of its weight $\vec{w}$ and the upward normal force $\vec{n}$. The normal force is equal in magnitude to the weight $(n = w)$ and is exerted on the box by the floor. Now we tie a rope to the box (Fig. 5.19b) and gradually increase the tension T in the rope. At first the box remains at rest because the force of static friction f_s also increases and stays equal in magnitude to T.

At some point T becomes greater than the maximum static friction force f_s the surface can exert. Then the box "breaks loose" and starts to slide. Figure 5.19c shows the forces when T is at this critical value. For a given pair of surfaces the maximum value of f_s depends on the normal force. Experiment shows that in many cases this maximum value, called $(f_s)_{max}$, is approximately *proportional* to n; we call the proportionality factor μ_s the **coefficient of static friction.** Table 5.1 lists some representative values of μ_s. In a particular situation, the actual force of static friction can have any magnitude between zero (when there is no other force parallel to the surface) and a maximum value given by $\mu_s n$:

Figure 5.19 When there is no relative motion, the magnitude of the static friction force f_s is less than or equal to $\mu_s n$. When there is relative motion, the magnitude of the kinetic friction force f_k equals $\mu_k n$.



Magnitude of static friction force $f_s \leq (f_s)_{max} = \mu_s n$ (Coefficient of static friction; Maximum static friction force; Magnitude of normal force) (5.4)

Like Eq. (5.3), this is a relationship between magnitudes, *not* a vector relationship. The equality sign holds only when the applied force T has reached the critical value at which motion is about to start (Fig. 5.19c). When T is less than this value (Fig. 5.19b), the inequality sign holds. In that case we have to use the equilibrium conditions ($\sum \vec{F} = \mathbf{0}$) to find f_s. If there is no applied force ($T = 0$) as in Fig. 5.19a, then there is no static friction force either ($f_s = 0$).

As soon as the box starts to slide (Fig. 5.19d), the friction force usually *decreases* (Fig. 5.19e); it's easier to keep the box moving than to start it moving. Hence the coefficient of kinetic friction is usually *less* than the coefficient of static friction for any given pair of surfaces, as Table 5.1 shows.

In some situations the surfaces will alternately stick (static friction) and slip (kinetic friction). This is what causes the horrible sound made by chalk held at the wrong angle on a blackboard and the shriek of tires sliding on asphalt pavement. A more positive example is the motion of a violin bow against the string.

In the linear air tracks used in physics laboratories, gliders move with very little friction because they are supported on a layer of air. The friction force is velocity dependent, but at typical speeds the effective coefficient of friction is of the order of 0.001.

APPLICATION Static Friction and Windshield Wipers The squeak of windshield wipers on dry glass is a stick-slip phenomenon. The moving wiper blade sticks to the glass momentarily, then slides when the force applied to the blade by the wiper motor overcomes the maximum force of static friction. When the glass is wet from rain or windshield cleaning solution, friction is reduced and the wiper blade doesn't stick.

EXAMPLE 5.13 Friction in horizontal motion

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

You want to move a 500 N crate across a level floor. To start the crate moving, you have to pull with a 230 N horizontal force. Once the crate starts to move, you can keep it moving at constant velocity with only 200 N. What are the coefficients of static and kinetic friction?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The crate is in equilibrium both when it is at rest and when it is moving at constant velocity, so we use Newton's first law, as expressed by Eqs. (5.1). We use Eqs. (5.3) and (5.4) to find the target variables μ_s and μ_k.

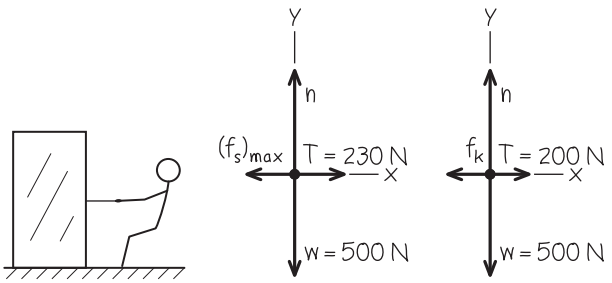
Figures 5.20a and 5.20b show our sketch and free-body diagram for the instant just before the crate starts to move, when the static friction force has its maximum possible value $(f_s)_{max} = \mu_s n$. Once the crate is moving, the friction force changes to its kinetic form (Fig. 5.20c). In both situations, four forces act on the crate: the downward weight (magnitude $w = 500$ N), the upward normal force (magnitude n) exerted by the floor, a tension force (magnitude T) to the right exerted by the rope, and a friction force to the left exerted by the floor.

Figure 5.20 Our sketches for this problem.

(a) Pulling a crate

(b) Free-body diagram for crate just before it starts to move

(c) Free-body diagram for crate moving at constant speed



Because the rope in Fig. 5.20a is in equilibrium, the tension is the same at both ends. Hence the tension force that the rope exerts on the crate has the same magnitude as the force you exert on the rope. Since it's easier to keep the crate moving than to start it moving, we expect that $\mu_k < \mu_s$.

EXECUTE Just before the crate starts to move (Fig. 5.20b), we have from Eqs. (5.1)

$$\Sigma F_x = T + (-(f_s)_{max}) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad (f_s)_{max} = T = 230\ \text{N}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-w) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad n = w = 500\ \text{N}$$

Now we solve Eq. (5.4), $(f_s)_{max} = \mu_s n$, for the value of μ_s:

$$\mu_s = \frac{(f_s)_{max}}{n} = \frac{230\ \text{N}}{500\ \text{N}} = 0.46$$

After the crate starts to move (Fig. 5.20c) we have

$$\Sigma F_x = T + (-f_k) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad f_k = T = 200\ \text{N}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-w) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad n = w = 500\ \text{N}$$

Using $f_k = \mu_k n$ from Eq. (5.3), we find

$$\mu_k = \frac{f_k}{n} = \frac{200\ \text{N}}{500\ \text{N}} = 0.40$$

EVALUATE As expected, the coefficient of kinetic friction is less than the coefficient of static friction.

KEYCONCEPT For any object, the *maximum* magnitude of the *static* friction force and the magnitude of the *kinetic* friction force are proportional to the magnitude of the normal force on that object.

EXAMPLE 5.14 Static friction can be less than the maximum

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

In Example 5.13, what is the friction force if the crate is at rest on the surface and a horizontal force of 50 N is applied to it?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The applied force is less than the maximum force of static friction, $(f_s)_{max} = 230$ N. Hence the crate remains at rest and the net force acting on it is zero. The target variable is the magnitude f_s of the friction force. The free-body diagram is the same as in Fig. 5.20b, but with $(f_s)_{max}$ replaced by f_s and $T = 230$ N replaced by $T = 50$ N.

EXECUTE From the equilibrium conditions, Eqs. (5.1), we have

$$\Sigma F_x = T + (-f_s) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad f_s = T = 50\ \text{N}$$

EVALUATE The friction force can prevent motion for any horizontal applied force up to $(f_s)_{max} = \mu_s n = 230$ N. Below that value, f_s has the same magnitude as the applied force.

KEYCONCEPT The magnitude f_s of the static friction force on an object at rest does *not* have to equal the maximum magnitude $\mu_s n$. The actual value of f_s depends on the other forces acting on the object; you can find this value using Newton's first law.

EXAMPLE 5.15 Minimizing kinetic friction

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

In Example 5.13, suppose you move the crate by pulling upward on the rope at an angle of 30° above the horizontal. How hard must you pull to keep it moving with constant velocity? Assume that $\mu_k = 0.40$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The crate is in equilibrium because its velocity is constant, so we again apply Newton's first law. Since the crate is in motion, the floor exerts a *kinetic* friction force. The target variable is the magnitude T of the tension force.

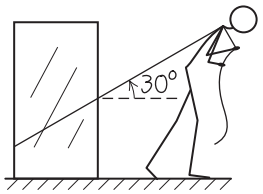
Figure 5.21 shows our sketch and free-body diagram. The kinetic friction force f_k is still equal to $\mu_k n$, but now the normal force n is *not* equal in magnitude to the crate's weight. The force exerted by the rope has a vertical component that tends to lift the crate off the floor; this *reduces* n and so reduces f_k.

EXECUTE From the equilibrium conditions and Eq. (5.3), $f_k = \mu_k n$, we have

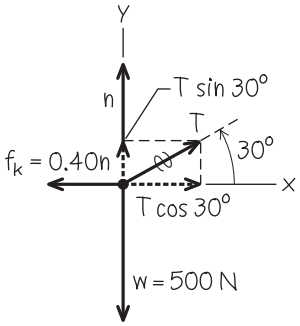
$$\Sigma F_x = T\cos 30^\circ + (-f_k) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad T\cos 30^\circ = \mu_k n$$
$$\Sigma F_y = T\sin 30^\circ + n + (-w) = 0 \quad \text{so} \quad n = w - T\sin 30^\circ$$

Figure **5.21** Our sketches for this problem.

(a) Pulling a crate at an angle



(b) Free-body diagram for moving crate



These are two equations for the two unknown quantities T and n. One way to find T is to substitute the expression for n in the second equation into the first equation and then solve the resulting equation for T:

$$T\cos 30^\circ = \mu_k(w - T\sin 30^\circ)$$
$$T = \frac{\mu_k w}{\cos 30^\circ + \mu_k \sin 30^\circ} = 188\ \text{N}$$

We can substitute this result into either of the original equations to obtain n. If we use the second equation, we get

$$n = w - T\sin 30^\circ = (500\ \text{N}) - (188\ \text{N})\sin 30^\circ = 406\ \text{N}$$

EVALUATE As expected, the normal force is less than the 500 N weight of the box. It turns out that the tension required to keep the crate moving at constant speed is a little less than the 200 N force needed when you pulled horizontally in Example 5.13. Can you find an angle where the required pull is *minimum*?

KEYCONCEPT In problems that involve kinetic friction, you'll always need at least three equations: two from Newton's first or second law in component form, and Eq. (5.3) for kinetic friction, $f_k = \mu_k n$.

EXAMPLE 5.16 Toboggan ride with friction I

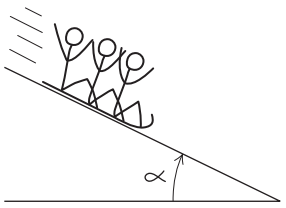
Let's go back to the toboggan we studied in Example 5.10. The wax has worn off, so there is now a nonzero coefficient of kinetic friction μ_k. The slope has just the right angle to make the toboggan slide with constant velocity. Find this angle in terms of w and μ_k.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is the slope angle α. The toboggan is in equilibrium because its velocity is constant, so we use Newton's first law in the form of Eqs. (5.1).

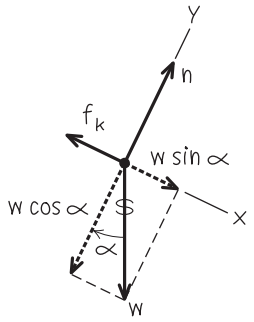
Three forces act on the toboggan: its weight, the normal force, and the kinetic friction force. The motion is downhill, so the friction force (which opposes the motion) is directed uphill. **Figure 5.22** shows our sketch and free-body diagram (compare Fig. 5.12b in Example 5.10). From Eq. (5.3), the magnitude of the kinetic friction force is $f_k = \mu_k n$. We expect that the greater the value of μ_k, the steeper will be the required slope.

Figure **5.22** Our sketches for this problem.

(a) The situation



(b) Free-body diagram for toboggan



EXECUTE The equilibrium conditions are

$$\Sigma F_x = w\sin\alpha + (-f_k) = w\sin\alpha - \mu_k n = 0$$
$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-w\cos\alpha) = 0$$

Rearranging these two equations, we get

$$\mu_k n = w\sin\alpha \quad \text{and} \quad n = w\cos\alpha$$

As in Example 5.10, the normal force is *not* equal to the weight. We eliminate n by dividing the first of these equations by the second, with the result

$$\mu_k = \frac{\sin\alpha}{\cos\alpha} = \tan\alpha \quad \text{so} \quad \alpha = \arctan\mu_k$$

EVALUATE The weight w doesn't appear in this expression. *Any* toboggan, regardless of its weight, slides down an incline with constant speed if the coefficient of kinetic friction equals the tangent of the slope angle of the incline. The arctangent function increases as its argument increases, so it's indeed true that the slope angle α for constant speed increases as μ_k increases.

KEYCONCEPT When kinetic friction of magnitude $f_k = \mu_k n$ is present for an object on an incline, the magnitude n of the normal force on the object is *not* equal to the object's weight.

EXAMPLE 5.17 Toboggan ride with friction II

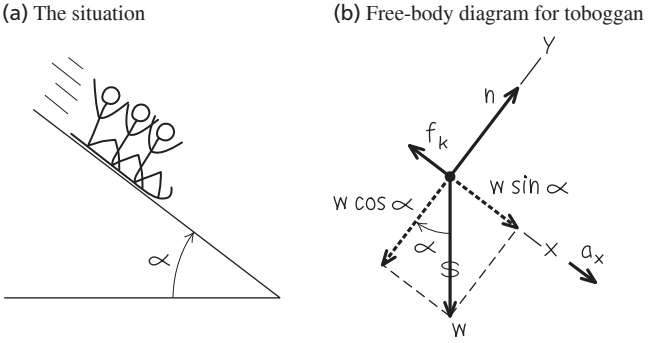
The same toboggan with the same coefficient of friction as in Example 5.16 *accelerates* down a steeper hill. Derive an expression for the acceleration in terms of g, α, μ_k, and w.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The toboggan is accelerating, so we must use Newton's second law as given in Eqs. (5.2). Our target variable is the downhill acceleration.

Our sketch and free-body diagram (**Fig. 5.23**, next page) are almost the same as for Example 5.16. The toboggan's y-component of acceleration a_y is still zero but the x-component a_x is not, so we've drawn w sin α, the downhill component of weight, as a longer vector than the (uphill) friction force.

Continued

Figure **5.23** Our sketches for this problem.



EXECUTE It's convenient to express the weight as $w = mg$. Then Newton's second law in component form says

$$\Sigma F_x = mg\sin\alpha + (-f_k) = ma_x$$
$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-mg\cos\alpha) = 0$$

From the second equation and Eq. (5.3) we get an expression for f_k:

$$n = mg\cos\alpha$$
$$f_k = \mu_k n = \mu_k mg\cos\alpha$$

We substitute this into the x-component equation and solve for a_x:

$$mg\sin\alpha + (-\mu_k mg\cos\alpha) = ma_x$$
$$a_x = g(\sin\alpha - \mu_k\cos\alpha)$$

EVALUATE As for the frictionless toboggan in Example 5.10, the acceleration doesn't depend on the mass m of the toboggan. That's because all of the forces that act on the toboggan (weight, normal force, and kinetic friction force) are proportional to m.

Let's check some special cases. If the hill is vertical ($\alpha = 90°$) so that $\sin\alpha = 1$ and $\cos\alpha = 0$, we have $a_x = g$ (the toboggan falls freely). For a certain value of α the acceleration is zero; this happens if

$$\sin\alpha = \mu_k\cos\alpha \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mu_k = \tan\alpha$$

This agrees with our result for the constant-velocity toboggan in Example 5.16. If the angle is even smaller, $\mu_k\cos\alpha$ is greater than $\sin\alpha$ and a_x is *negative;* if we give the toboggan an initial downhill push to start it moving, it will slow down and stop. Finally, if the hill is frictionless so that $\mu_k = 0$, we retrieve the result of Example 5.10: $a_x = g\sin\alpha$.

Notice that we started with a simple problem (Example 5.10) and extended it to more and more general situations. The general result we found in this example includes *all* the previous ones as special cases. Don't memorize this result, but do make sure you understand how we obtained it and what it means.

Suppose instead we give the toboggan an initial push *up* the hill. The direction of the kinetic friction force is now reversed, so the acceleration is different from the downhill value. It turns out that the expression for a_x is the same as for downhill motion except that the minus sign becomes plus. Can you show this?

KEYCONCEPT The magnitude $f_k = \mu_k n$ of the kinetic friction force is the same whether or not the object is accelerating.

Rolling Friction

It's a lot easier to move a loaded filing cabinet across a horizontal floor by using a cart with wheels than by sliding it. How much easier? We can define a **coefficient of rolling friction** μ_r, which is the horizontal force needed for constant speed on a flat surface divided by the upward normal force exerted by the surface. Transportation engineers call μ_r the *tractive resistance.* Typical values of μ_r are 0.002 to 0.003 for steel wheels on steel rails and 0.01 to 0.02 for rubber tires on concrete. These values show one reason trains are generally much more fuel efficient than trucks.

Fluid Resistance and Terminal Speed

Sticking your hand out the window of a fast-moving car will convince you of the existence of **fluid resistance,** the force that a fluid (a gas or liquid) exerts on an object moving through it. The moving object exerts a force on the fluid to push it out of the way. By Newton's third law, the fluid pushes back on the object with an equal and opposite force.

The *direction* of the fluid resistance force acting on an object is always opposite the direction of the object's velocity relative to the fluid. The *magnitude* of the fluid resistance force usually increases with the speed of the object through the fluid. This is very different from the kinetic friction force between two surfaces in contact, which we can usually regard as independent of speed. For small objects moving at very low speeds, the magnitude f of the fluid resistance force is approximately proportional to the object's speed v:

$$f = kv \qquad \text{(fluid resistance at low speed)} \tag{5.5}$$

where k is a proportionality constant that depends on the shape and size of the object and the properties of the fluid. Equation (5.5) is appropriate for dust particles falling in air or a ball bearing falling in oil. For larger objects moving through air at the speed of a tossed tennis ball or faster, the resisting force is approximately proportional to v^2 rather than to v.

It is then called **air drag** or simply *drag*. Airplanes, falling raindrops, and bicyclists all experience air drag. In this case we replace Eq. (5.5) by

$$f = Dv^2 \qquad \text{(fluid resistance at high speed)} \tag{5.6}$$

Because of the v^2 dependence, air drag increases rapidly with increasing speed. The air drag on a typical car is negligible at low speeds but comparable to or greater than rolling resistance at highway speeds. The value of D depends on the shape and size of the object and on the density of the air. You should verify that the units of the constant k in Eq. (5.5) are N · s/m or kg/s, and that the units of the constant D in Eq. (5.6) are N · s^2/m^2 or kg/m.

Because of the effects of fluid resistance, an object falling in a fluid does *not* have a constant acceleration. To describe its motion, we can't use the constant-acceleration relationships from Chapter 2; instead, we have to start over with Newton's second law. As an example, suppose you drop a metal ball at the surface of a bucket of oil and let it fall to the bottom (**Fig. 5.24a**). The fluid resistance force in this situation is given by Eq. (5.5). What are the acceleration, velocity, and position of the metal ball as functions of time?

Figure 5.24b shows the free-body diagram. We take the positive y-direction to be downward and neglect any force associated with buoyancy in the oil. Since the ball is moving downward, its speed v is equal to its y-velocity v_y and the fluid resistance force is in the $-y$-direction. There are no x-components, so Newton's second law gives

$$\Sigma F_y = mg + (-kv_y) = ma_y \tag{5.7}$$

When the ball first starts to move, $v_y = 0$, the resisting force is zero and the initial acceleration is $a_y = g$. As the speed increases, the resisting force also increases, until finally it is equal in magnitude to the weight. At this time $mg - kv_y = 0$, the acceleration is zero, and there is no further increase in speed. The final speed v_t, called the **terminal speed,** is given by $mg - kv_t = 0$, or

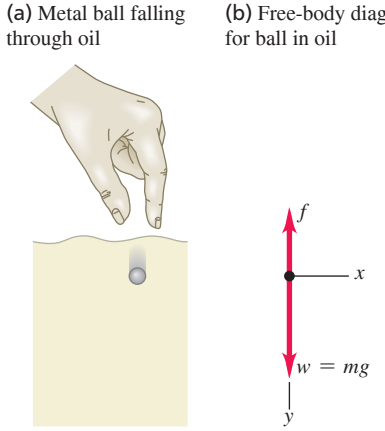
$$v_t = \frac{mg}{k} \qquad \text{(terminal speed, fluid resistance } f = kv\text{)} \tag{5.8}$$

Figure 5.25 shows how the acceleration, velocity, and position vary with time. As time goes by, the acceleration approaches zero and the velocity approaches v_t (remember that we chose the positive y-direction to be down). The slope of the graph of y versus t becomes constant as the velocity becomes constant.

To see how the graphs in Fig. 5.25 are derived, we must find the relationship between velocity and time during the interval before the terminal speed is reached. We go back to Newton's second law for the falling ball, Eq. (5.7), which we rewrite with $a_y = dv_y/dt$:

$$m\frac{dv_y}{dt} = mg - kv_y$$

Figure **5.24** Motion with fluid resistance.



BIO APPLICATION Pollen and Fluid Resistance These spiky spheres are pollen grains from the ragweed flower (*Ambrosia artemisiifolia*) and a common cause of hay fever. Because of their small radius (about 10 μm = 0.01 mm), when they are released into the air the fluid resistance force on them is proportional to their speed. The terminal speed given by Eq. (5.8) is only about 1 cm/s. Hence even a moderate wind can keep pollen grains aloft and carry them substantial distances from their source.

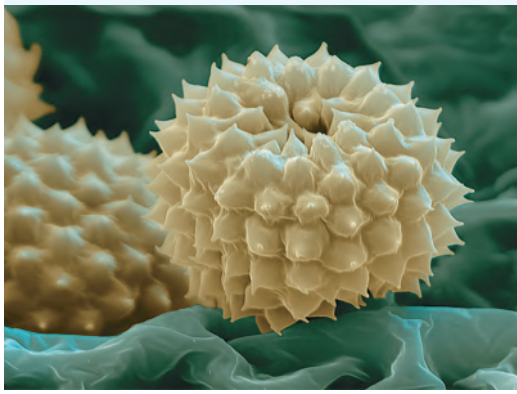


Figure **5.25** Graphs of the motion of an object falling without fluid resistance and with fluid resistance proportional to the speed.

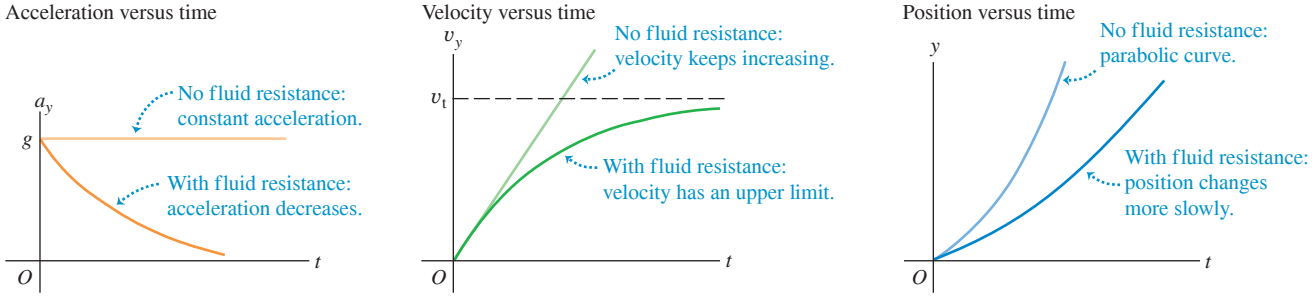
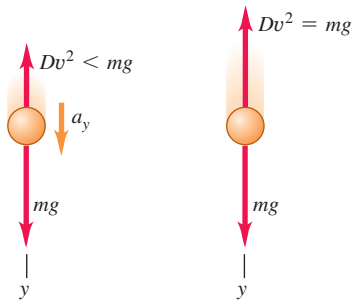


Figure **5.26** (a) Air drag and terminal speed. (b) By changing the positions of their arms and legs while falling, skydivers can change the value of the constant D in Eq. (5.6) and hence adjust the terminal speed of their fall [Eq. (5.12)].

(a) Free-body diagrams for falling with air drag

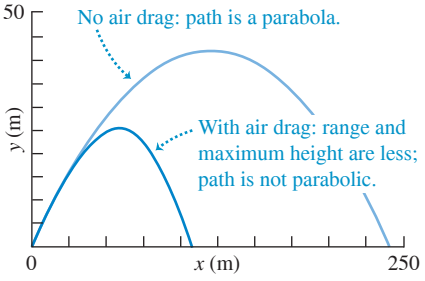


Slower than terminal speed: Object accelerating, drag force less than weight.

At terminal speed v_t: Object in equilibrium, drag force equals weight.

(b) A skydiver falling at terminal speed

Figure **5.27** Computer-generated trajectories of a baseball launched at 50 m/s at 35° above the horizontal. Note that the scales are different on the horizontal and vertical axes.



After rearranging terms and replacing mg/k by v_t, we integrate both sides, noting that $v_y = 0$ when $t = 0$:

$$\int_0^v \frac{dv_y}{v_y - v_t} = -\frac{k}{m}\int_0^t dt$$

which integrates to

$$\ln\frac{v_t - v_y}{v_t} = -\frac{k}{m}t \qquad \text{or} \qquad 1 - \frac{v_y}{v_t} = e^{-(k/m)t}$$

and finally

$$v_y = v_t\left[1 - e^{-(k/m)t}\right] \tag{5.9}$$

Note that v_y becomes equal to the terminal speed v_t only in the limit that $t \to \infty$; the ball cannot attain terminal speed in any finite length of time.

The derivative of v_y in Eq. (5.9) gives a_y as a function of time, and the integral of v_y gives y as a function of time. We leave the derivations for you to complete; the results are

$$a_y = ge^{-(k/m)t} \tag{5.10}$$

$$y = v_t\left[t - \frac{m}{k}(1 - e^{-(k/m)t})\right] \tag{5.11}$$

Now look again at Fig. 5.25, which shows graphs of these three relationships.

In deriving the terminal speed in Eq. (5.8), we assumed that the fluid resistance force is proportional to the speed. For an object falling through the air at high speeds, so that the fluid resistance is equal to Dv^2 as in Eq. (5.6), the terminal speed is reached when Dv^2 equals the weight mg (**Fig. 5.26a**). You can show that the terminal speed v_t is given by

$$v_t = \sqrt{\frac{mg}{D}} \qquad \text{(terminal speed, fluid resistance } f = Dv^2\text{)} \tag{5.12}$$

This expression for terminal speed explains why heavy objects in air tend to fall faster than light objects. Two objects that have the same physical size but different mass (say, a table-tennis ball and a lead ball with the same radius) have the same value of D but different values of m. The more massive object has a higher terminal speed and falls faster. The same idea explains why a sheet of paper falls faster if you first crumple it into a ball; the mass m is the same, but the smaller size makes D smaller (less air drag for a given speed) and v_t larger. Skydivers use the same principle to control their descent (Fig. 5.26b).

Figure 5.27 shows the trajectories of a baseball with and without air drag, assuming a coefficient $D = 1.3 \times 10^{-3}$ kg/m (appropriate for a batted ball at sea level). Both the range of the baseball and the maximum height reached are substantially smaller than the zero-drag calculation would lead you to believe. Hence the tennis ball trajectory we calculated in Example 3.7 (Section 3.3) by ignoring air drag is unrealistic. Air drag is an important part of the game of baseball!

EXAMPLE 5.18 Terminal speed of a skydiver

For a human body falling through air in a spread-eagle position (Fig. 5.26b), the numerical value of the constant D in Eq. (5.6) is about 0.25 kg/m. Find the terminal speed for a 50 kg skydiver.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This example uses the relationship among terminal speed, mass, and drag coefficient. We use Eq. (5.12) to find the target variable v_t.

EXECUTE We find for $m = 50$ kg:

$$v_t = \sqrt{\frac{mg}{D}} = \sqrt{\frac{(50\text{ kg})(9.8\text{ m/s}^2)}{0.25\text{ kg/m}}}$$

$$= 44\text{ m/s (about 160 km/h)}$$

EVALUATE The terminal speed is proportional to the square root of the skydiver's mass. A skydiver with the same drag coefficient D but twice the mass would have a terminal speed $\sqrt{2} = 1.41$ times greater, or 63 m/s. (A more massive skydiver would also have more frontal area and hence a larger drag coefficient, so his terminal speed would be a bit less than 63 m/s.) Even the 50 kg skydiver's terminal speed is quite high, so skydives don't last very long. A drop from 2800 m to the surface at the terminal speed takes only (2800 m)/(44 m/s) = 64 s.

When the skydiver deploys the parachute, the value of D increases greatly. Hence the terminal speed of the skydiver with parachute decreases dramatically to a much lower value.

KEYCONCEPT A falling object reaches its terminal speed when the upward force of fluid resistance equals the downward force of gravity. Depending on the object's speed, use either Eq. (5.8) or Eq. (5.12) to find the terminal speed.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 5.3 Consider a box that is placed on different surfaces. (a) In which situation(s) is *no* friction force acting on the box? (b) In which situation(s) is a *static* friction force acting on the box? (c) In which situation(s) is a *kinetic* friction force acting on the box? (i) The box is at rest on a rough horizontal surface. (ii) The box is at rest on a rough tilted surface. (iii) The box is on the rough-surfaced flat bed of a truck that is moving at a constant velocity on a straight, level road, and the box remains in place in the middle of the truck bed. (iv) The box is on the rough-surfaced flat bed of a truck that is speeding up on a straight, level road, and the box remains in place in the middle of the truck bed. (v) The box is on the rough-surfaced flat bed of a truck that is climbing a hill, and the box is sliding toward the back of the truck.

ANSWER (a): **(i)**, **(iii)**; (b): **(ii)**, **(iv)**; (c): **(v)** In situations (i) and (iii) the box is not accelerating (so the net force on it must be zero) and no other force is acting parallel to the horizontal surface; hence no friction force is needed to prevent sliding. In situations (ii) and (iv) the box would start to slide over the surface if no friction were present, so a static friction force must act to prevent this. In situation (v) the box is sliding over a rough surface, so a kinetic friction force acts on it.

5.4 DYNAMICS OF CIRCULAR MOTION

We talked about uniform circular motion in Section 3.4. We showed that when a particle moves in a circular path with constant speed, the particle's acceleration has a constant magnitude a_{rad} given by

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v^2}{R} \qquad (5.13)$$

Magnitude of acceleration of an object in **uniform circular motion**; v: Speed of object; R: Radius of object's circular path

The subscript "rad" is a reminder that at each point the acceleration points radially inward toward the center of the circle, perpendicular to the instantaneous velocity. We explained in Section 3.4 why this acceleration is often called *centripetal acceleration* or *radial acceleration*.

We can also express the centripetal acceleration a_{rad} in terms of the *period* T, the time for one revolution:

$$T = \frac{2\pi R}{v} \qquad (5.14)$$

In terms of the period, a_{rad} is

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} \qquad (5.15)$$

Magnitude of acceleration of an object in **uniform circular motion**; R: Radius of object's circular path; T: Period of motion

Uniform circular motion, like all other motion of a particle, is governed by Newton's second law. To make the particle accelerate toward the center of the circle, the net force $\Sigma\vec{F}$ on the particle must always be directed toward the center (**Fig. 5.28**). The magnitude of the acceleration is constant, so the magnitude F_{net} of the net force must also be constant. If the inward net force stops acting, the particle flies off in a straight line tangent to the circle (**Fig. 5.29**).

Figure **5.28** Net force, acceleration, and velocity in uniform circular motion.

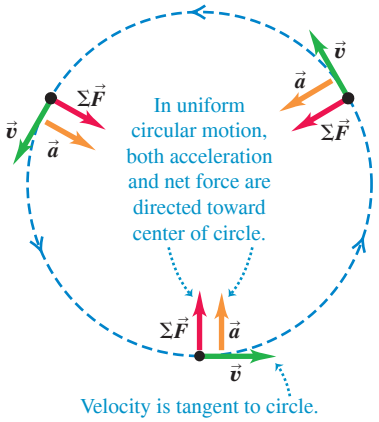


Figure **5.29** What happens if the inward radial force suddenly ceases to act on an object in circular motion?

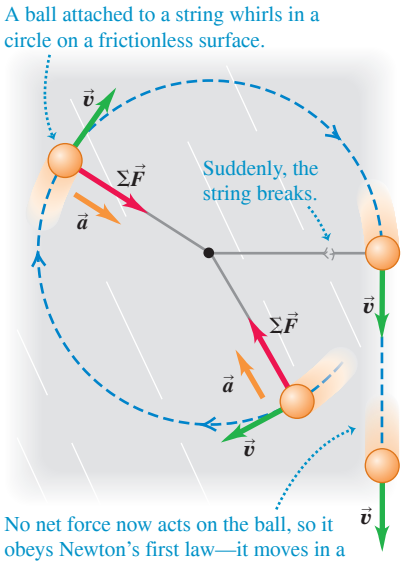
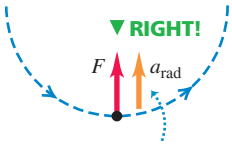


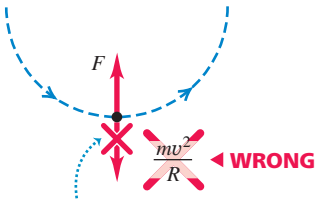
Figure **5.30** Right and wrong ways to depict uniform circular motion.

(a) Correct free-body diagram



If you include the acceleration, draw it to one side of the object to show that it's not a force.

(b) Incorrect free-body diagram



The quantity mv^2/R is *not* a force—it doesn't belong in a free-body diagram.

The magnitude of the radial acceleration is given by $a_{rad} = v^2/R$, so the magnitude F_{net} of the net force on a particle with mass m in uniform circular motion must be

$$F_{net} = ma_{rad} = m\frac{v^2}{R} \qquad \text{(uniform circular motion)} \tag{5.16}$$

Uniform circular motion can result from *any* combination of forces, just so the net force $\Sigma\vec{F}$ is always directed toward the center of the circle and has a constant magnitude. Note that the object need not move around a complete circle: Equation (5.16) is valid for *any* path that can be regarded as part of a circular arc.

CAUTION **Avoid using "centrifugal force"** **Figure 5.30** shows a correct free-body diagram for uniform circular motion (Fig. 5.30a) and an *incorrect* diagram (Fig. 5.30b). Figure 5.30b is incorrect because it includes an extra outward force of magnitude $m(v^2/R)$ to "keep the object out there" or to "keep it in equilibrium." There are three reasons not to include such an outward force, called *centrifugal force* ("centrifugal" means "fleeing from the center"). First, the object does *not* "stay out there": It is in constant motion around its circular path. Because its velocity is constantly changing in direction, the object accelerates and is *not* in equilibrium. Second, if there *were* an outward force that balanced the inward force, the net force would be zero and the object would move in a straight line, not a circle (Fig. 5.29). Third, the quantity $m(v^2/R)$ is *not* a force; it corresponds to the $m\vec{a}$ side of $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ and does not appear in $\Sigma\vec{F}$ (Fig. 5.30a). It's true that when you ride in a car that goes around a circular path, you tend to slide to the outside of the turn as though there was a "centrifugal force." But we saw in Section 4.2 that what happens is that you tend to keep moving in a straight line, and the outer side of the car "runs into" you as the car turns (Fig. 4.10c). *In an inertial frame of reference there is no such thing as "centrifugal force."* We won't mention this term again, and we strongly advise you to avoid it.

EXAMPLE 5.19 Force in uniform circular motion

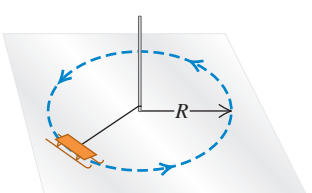
A sled with a mass of 25.0 kg rests on a horizontal sheet of essentially frictionless ice. It is attached by a 5.00 m rope to a post set in the ice. Once given a push, the sled revolves uniformly in a circle around the post (**Fig. 5.31a**). If the sled makes five complete revolutions every minute, find the force F exerted on it by the rope.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The sled is in uniform circular motion, so it has a constant radial acceleration. We'll apply Newton's second law to the sled to find the magnitude F of the force exerted by the rope (our target variable).

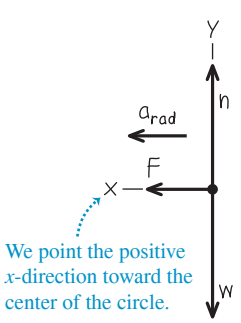
Figure 5.31b shows our free-body diagram for the sled. The acceleration has only an x-component; this is toward the center of the circle, so we denote it as a_{rad}. The acceleration isn't given, so we'll need to determine its value by using Eq. (5.13) or Eq. (5.15).

Figure **5.31** (a) The situation. (b) Our free-body diagram.

(a) A sled in uniform circular motion



(b) Free-body diagram for sled



We point the positive x-direction toward the center of the circle.

EXECUTE The force F appears in Newton's second law for the x-direction:

$$\Sigma F_x = F = ma_{rad}$$

We can find the centripetal acceleration a_{rad} by using Eq. (5.15). The sled moves in a circle of radius $R = 5.00$ m with a period $T = (60.0\text{ s})/(5\text{ rev}) = 12.0$ s, so

$$a_{rad} = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} = \frac{4\pi^2(5.00\text{ m})}{(12.0\text{ s})^2} = 1.37\text{ m/s}^2$$

The magnitude F of the force exerted by the rope is then

$$F = ma_{rad} = (25.0\text{ kg})(1.37\text{ m/s}^2) = 34.3\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2 = 34.3\text{ N}$$

EVALUATE You can check our value for a_{rad} by first using Eq. (5.14), $v = 2\pi R/T$, to find the speed and then using $a_{rad} = v^2/R$ from Eq. (5.13). Do you get the same result?

A greater force would be needed if the sled moved around the circle at a higher speed v. In fact, if v were doubled while R remained the same, F would be four times greater. Can you show this? How would F change if v remained the same but the radius R were doubled?

KEYCONCEPT In problems that involve forces on an object in uniform circular motion, take the positive x-direction to be toward the center of the circle. The net force component in that direction is equal to the object's mass times its radial acceleration.

EXAMPLE 5.20 A conical pendulum

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

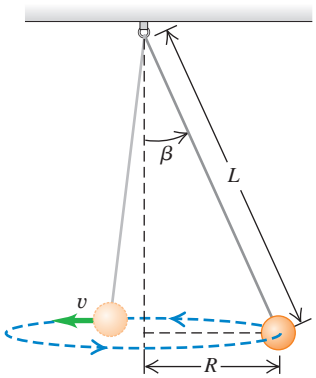
An inventor designs a pendulum clock using a bob with mass m at the end of a thin wire of length L. Instead of swinging back and forth, the bob is to move in a horizontal circle at constant speed v, with the wire making a fixed angle β with the vertical direction (**Fig. 5.32a**). This is called a *conical pendulum* because the suspending wire traces out a cone. Find the tension F in the wire and the period T (the time for one revolution of the bob).

IDENTIFY and SET UP To find our target variables, the tension F and period T, we need two equations. These will be the horizontal and vertical components of Newton's second law applied to the bob. We'll find the radial acceleration of the bob from one of the circular motion equations.

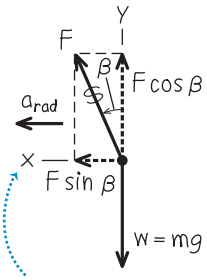
Figure 5.32b shows our free-body diagram and coordinate system for the bob at a particular instant. There are just two forces on the bob: the weight mg and the tension F in the wire. Note that the center of the circular path is in the same horizontal plane as the bob, *not* at the top end of the wire. The horizontal component of tension is the force that produces the radial acceleration a_{rad}.

Figure 5.32 (a) The situation. (b) Our free-body diagram.

(a) The situation



(b) Free-body diagram for pendulum bob



We point the positive x-direction toward the center of the circle.

EXECUTE The bob has zero vertical acceleration; the horizontal acceleration is toward the center of the circle, which is why we use the symbol a_{rad}. Newton's second law, Eqs. (5.2), says

$$\Sigma F_x = F\sin\beta = ma_{\text{rad}}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = F\cos\beta + (-mg) = 0$$

These are two equations for the two unknowns F and β. The equation for ΣF_y gives $F = mg/\cos\beta$; that's our target expression for F in terms of β. Substituting this result into the equation for ΣF_x and using $\sin\beta/\cos\beta = \tan\beta$, we find

$$a_{\text{rad}} = g\tan\beta$$

To relate β to the period T, we use Eq. (5.15) for a_{rad}, solve for T, and insert $a_{\text{rad}} = g\tan\beta$:

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} \quad \text{so} \quad T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{a_{\text{rad}}}$$

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{R}{g\tan\beta}}$$

Figure 5.32a shows that $R = L\sin\beta$. We substitute this and use $\sin\beta/\tan\beta = \cos\beta$:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L\cos\beta}{g}}$$

EVALUATE For a given length L, as the angle β increases, $\cos\beta$ decreases, the period T becomes smaller, and the tension $F = mg/\cos\beta$ increases. The angle can never be 90°, however; this would require that $T = 0$, $F = \infty$, and $v = \infty$. A conical pendulum would not make a very good clock because the period depends on the angle β in such a direct way.

KEYCONCEPT In uniform circular motion, any kind of force (or component of a force) can produce the radial acceleration.

EXAMPLE 5.21 Rounding a flat curve

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

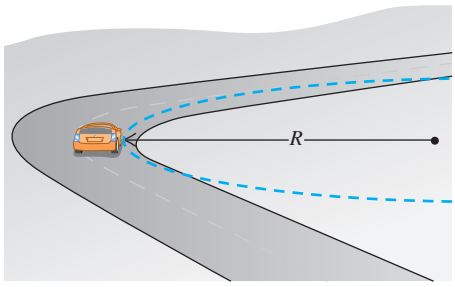
The sports car in Example 3.11 (Section 3.4) is rounding a flat, unbanked curve with radius R (**Fig. 5.33a**). If the coefficient of static friction between tires and road is μ_s, what is the maximum speed v_{max} at which the driver can take the curve without sliding?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The car's acceleration as it rounds the curve has magnitude $a_{\text{rad}} = v^2/R$. Hence the maximum speed v_{max} (our target variable) corresponds to the maximum acceleration a_{rad} and to the maximum horizontal force on the car toward the center of its circular path. The only horizontal force acting on the car is the friction force exerted by the road. So to solve this problem we'll need Newton's second law, the equations of uniform circular motion, and our knowledge of the friction force from Section 5.3.

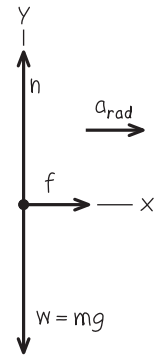
The free-body diagram in Fig. 5.33b includes the car's weight $w = mg$ and the two forces exerted by the road: the normal force n and the horizontal friction force f. The friction force must point toward the center of the circular path in order to cause the radial acceleration. The car doesn't slide toward or away from the center of the circle, so the friction force is *static* friction, with a maximum magnitude $f_{\text{max}} = \mu_s n$ [see Eq. (5.4)].

Figure 5.33 (a) The situation. (b) Our free-body diagram.

(a) Car rounding flat curve



(b) Free-body diagram for car



Continued

EXECUTE The acceleration toward the center of the circular path is $a_{rad} = v^2/R$. There is no vertical acceleration. Thus

$$\Sigma F_x = f = ma_{rad} = m\frac{v^2}{R}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-mg) = 0$$

The second equation shows that $n = mg$. The first equation shows that the friction force *needed* to keep the car moving in its circular path increases with the car's speed. But the maximum friction force *available* is $f_{max} = \mu_s n = \mu_s mg$, and this determines the car's maximum speed. Substituting $\mu_s mg$ for f and v_{max} for v in the first equation, we find

$$\mu_s mg = m\frac{v_{max}^2}{R} \quad \text{so} \quad v_{max} = \sqrt{\mu_s gR}$$

As an example, if $\mu_s = 0.96$ and $R = 230$ m, we have

$$v_{max} = \sqrt{(0.96)(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)(230\ \text{m})} = 47\ \text{m/s}$$

or about 170 km/h. This is the maximum speed for this radius.

EVALUATE If the car's speed is slower than $v_{max} = \sqrt{\mu_s gR}$, the required friction force is less than the maximum value $f_{max} = \mu_s mg$, and the car can easily make the curve. If we try to take the curve going *faster* than v_{max}, we'll skid. We could still go in a circle without skidding at this higher speed, but the radius would have to be larger.

The maximum centripetal acceleration (called the "lateral acceleration" in Example 3.11) is equal to $\mu_s g$. That's why it's best to take curves at less than the posted speed limit if the road is wet or icy, either of which can reduce the value of μ_s and hence $\mu_s g$.

KEYCONCEPT For a vehicle following a curved path on a level road, the radial acceleration is produced by the static friction force exerted by the road on the vehicle.

EXAMPLE 5.22 Rounding a banked curve

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

For a car traveling at a certain speed, it is possible to bank a curve at just the right angle so that no friction is needed to maintain the car's turning radius. Then a car can safely round the curve even on wet ice. (Bobsled racing depends on this idea.) Your engineering firm plans to rebuild the curve in Example 5.21 so that a car moving at a chosen speed v can safely make the turn even with no friction (**Fig. 5.34a**). At what angle β should the curve be banked?

IDENTIFY and SET UP With no friction, the only forces acting on the car are its weight and the normal force. Because the road is banked, the normal force (which acts perpendicular to the road surface) has a horizontal component. This component causes the car's horizontal acceleration toward the center of the car's circular path. We'll use Newton's second law to find the target variable β.

Our free-body diagram (Fig. 5.34b) is very similar to the diagram for the conical pendulum in Example 5.20 (Fig. 5.32b). The normal force acting on the car plays the role of the tension force exerted by the wire on the pendulum bob.

EXECUTE The normal force $\vec{n}$ is perpendicular to the roadway and is at an angle β with the vertical (Fig. 5.34b). Thus it has a vertical component $n\cos\beta$ and a horizontal component $n\sin\beta$. The acceleration in the x-direction is the centripetal acceleration $a_{rad} = v^2/R$; there is no acceleration in the y-direction. Thus the equations of Newton's second law are

$$\Sigma F_x = n\sin\beta = ma_{rad}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = n\cos\beta + (-mg) = 0$$

From the ΣF_y equation, $n = mg/\cos\beta$. Substituting this into the ΣF_x equation and using $a_{rad} = v^2/R$, we get an expression for the bank angle:

$$\tan\beta = \frac{a_{rad}}{g} = \frac{v^2}{gR} \quad \text{so} \quad \beta = \arctan\frac{v^2}{gR}$$

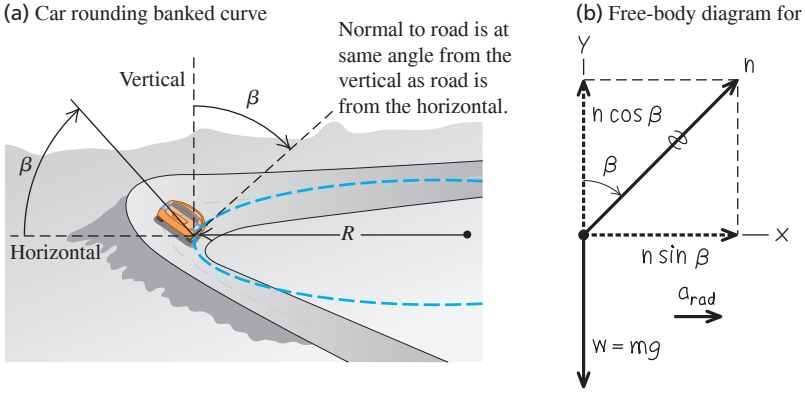
EVALUATE The bank angle depends on both the speed and the radius. For a given radius, no one angle is correct for all speeds. In the design of highways and railroads, curves are often banked for the average speed of the traffic over them. If $R = 230$ m and $v = 25$ m/s (equal to a highway speed of 90 km/h), then

$$\beta = \arctan\frac{(25\ \text{m/s})^2}{(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)(230\ \text{m})} = 15.5°$$

This is within the range of bank angles actually used in highways.

KEYCONCEPT The normal force exerted by the road on a vehicle can provide the radial acceleration needed for the vehicle to follow a curved path, provided the road is banked at the correct angle for the vehicle's speed.

Figure 5.34 (a) The situation. (b) Our free-body diagram.

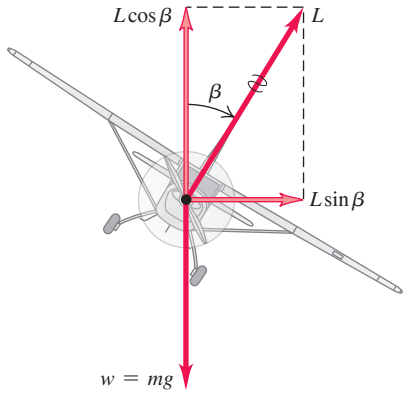


Banked Curves and the Flight of Airplanes

The results of Example 5.22 also apply to an airplane when it makes a turn in level flight (**Fig. 5.35**). When an airplane is flying in a straight line at a constant speed and at a steady altitude, the airplane's weight is exactly balanced by the lift force $\vec{L}$ exerted by the air. (The upward lift force that the air exerts on the wings is a reaction to the downward push the wings exert on the air as they move through it.) To make the airplane turn, the pilot banks the airplane to one side so that the lift force has a horizontal component, as Fig. 5.35 shows. (The pilot also changes the angle at which the wings "bite" into the air so that the vertical component of lift continues to balance the weight.) The bank angle is related to the airplane's speed v and the radius R of the turn by the same expression as in Example 5.22: $\tan\beta = v^2/gR$. For an airplane to make a tight turn (small R) at high speed (large v), $\tan\beta$ must be large and the required bank angle β must approach 90°.

We can also apply the results of Example 5.22 to the *pilot* of an airplane. The free-body diagram for the pilot of the airplane is exactly as shown in Fig. 5.34b; the normal force $n = mg/\cos\beta$ is exerted on the pilot by the seat. As in Example 5.9, n is equal to the apparent weight of the pilot, which is greater than the pilot's true weight mg. In a tight turn with a large bank angle β, the pilot's apparent weight can be tremendous: $n = 5.8mg$ at $\beta = 80°$ and $n = 9.6mg$ at $\beta = 84°$. Pilots black out in such tight turns because the apparent weight of their blood increases by the same factor, and the human heart isn't strong enough to pump such apparently "heavy" blood to the brain.

Figure **5.35** An airplane banks to one side in order to turn in that direction. The vertical component of the lift force $\vec{L}$ balances the force of gravity; the horizontal component of $\vec{L}$ causes the acceleration v^2/R.



Motion in a Vertical Circle

In Examples 5.19, 5.20, 5.21, and 5.22 the object moved in a horizontal circle. Motion in a *vertical* circle is no different in principle, but the weight of the object has to be treated carefully. The following example shows what we mean.

EXAMPLE 5.23 Uniform circular motion in a vertical circle

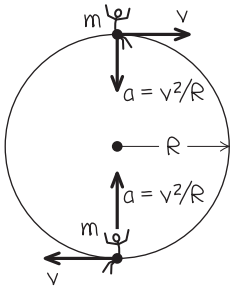
A passenger on a funfair Ferris wheel moves in a vertical circle of radius R with constant speed v. The seat remains upright during the motion. Find expressions for the force the seat exerts on the passenger when at the top of the circle and when at the bottom.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The target variables are n_T, the upward normal force the seat applies to the passenger at the top of the circle, and n_B, the normal force at the bottom. We'll find these by using Newton's second law and the uniform circular motion equations.

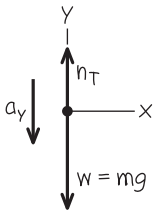
Figure 5.36a shows the passenger's velocity and acceleration at the two positions. The acceleration always points toward the center of the circle—downward at the top of the circle and upward at the bottom of the circle. At each position the only forces acting are vertical: the upward normal force and the downward force of gravity. Hence we need only the vertical component of Newton's second law. Figures 5.36b and 5.36c show free-body diagrams for the two positions. We take the positive y-direction as upward in both cases (that is, *opposite* the direction of the acceleration at the top of the circle).

Figure **5.36** Our sketches for this problem.

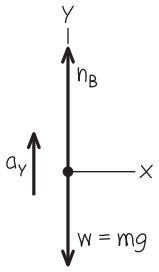
(a) Sketch of two positions



(b) Free-body diagram for passenger at top



(c) Free-body diagram for passenger at bottom



EXECUTE At the top the acceleration has magnitude v^2/R, but its vertical component is negative because its direction is downward. Hence $a_y = -v^2/R$ and Newton's second law tells us that

$$\text{Top:}\quad \sum F_y = n_T + (-mg) = -m\frac{v^2}{R} \qquad \text{or}$$

$$n_T = mg\left(1 - \frac{v^2}{gR}\right)$$

At the bottom the acceleration is upward, so $a_y = +v^2/R$ and Newton's second law says

$$\text{Bottom:}\quad \sum F_y = n_B + (-mg) = +m\frac{v^2}{R} \qquad \text{or}$$

$$n_B = mg\left(1 + \frac{v^2}{gR}\right)$$

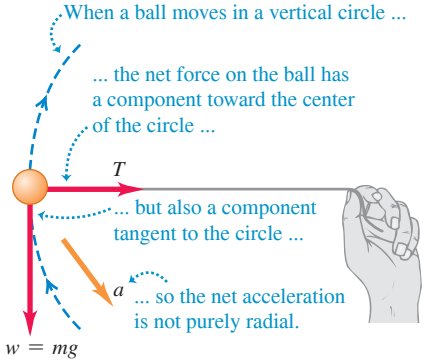
EVALUATE Our result for n_T tells us that at the top of the Ferris wheel, the upward force the seat applies to the passenger is *smaller* in magnitude than the passenger's weight $w = mg$. If the ride goes fast enough that $g - v^2/R$ becomes zero, the seat applies *no* force, and the passenger is about to become airborne. If v becomes still larger, n_T becomes negative; this means that a *downward* force (such as from a seat belt) is needed to keep the passenger in the seat. By contrast, the normal force

Continued

n_B at the bottom is always *greater* than the passenger's weight. You feel the seat pushing up on you more firmly than when you are at rest. You can see that n_T and n_B are the values of the passenger's *apparent weight* at the top and bottom of the circle (see Section 5.2).

KEYCONCEPT Even when an object moves with varying speed along a circular path, at any point along the path the net force component toward the center of the circle equals the object's mass times its radial acceleration.

Figure **5.37** A ball moving in a vertical circle.



When we tie a string to an object and whirl it in a vertical circle, the analysis in Example 5.23 isn't directly applicable. The reason is that v is *not* constant in this case; except at the top and bottom of the circle, the net force (and hence the acceleration) does *not* point toward the center of the circle (**Fig. 5.37**). So both $\sum\vec{F}$ and $\vec{a}$ have a component tangent to the circle, which means that the speed changes. Hence this is a case of *nonuniform* circular motion (see Section 3.4). Even worse, we can't use the constant-acceleration formulas to relate the speeds at various points because *neither* the magnitude nor the direction of the acceleration is constant. The speed relationships we need are best obtained by using the concept of energy. We'll consider such problems in Chapter 7.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 5.4 Satellites are held in orbit by the force of our planet's gravitational attraction. A satellite in a small-radius orbit moves at a higher speed than a satellite in an orbit of large radius. Based on this information, what can you conclude about the earth's gravitational attraction for the satellite? (i) It increases with increasing distance from the earth. (ii) It is the same at all distances from the earth. (iii) It decreases with increasing distance from the earth. (iv) This information by itself isn't enough to answer the question.

ANSWER

(iii) A satellite of mass m orbiting the earth at speed v in an orbit of radius r has an acceleration of magnitude v^2/r, so the net force acting on it from the earth's gravity has magnitude $F = mv^2/r$. The farther the satellite is from the earth, the greater the value of r, the smaller the value of v, and hence the smaller the values of v^2/r and of F. In other words, the earth's gravitational force decreases with increasing distance.

BIO APPLICATION Circular Motion in a Centrifuge An important tool in medicine and biological research is the ultracentrifuge, a device that makes use of the dynamics of circular motion. A tube is filled with a solvent that contains various small particles (for example, blood containing platelets and white and red blood cells). The tube is inserted into the centrifuge, which then spins at thousands of revolutions per minute. The solvent provides the inward force that keeps the particles in circular motion. The particles slowly drift away from the rotation axis within the solvent. Because the drift rate depends on the particle size and density, particles of different types become separated in the tube, making analysis much easier.

5.5 THE FUNDAMENTAL FORCES OF NATURE

We have discussed several kinds of forces—including weight, tension, friction, fluid resistance, and the normal force—and we'll encounter others as we continue our study of physics. How many kinds of forces are there? Our best understanding is that all forces are expressions of just four distinct classes of *fundamental* forces, or interactions between particles (**Fig. 5.38**). Two are familiar in everyday experience. The other two involve interactions between subatomic particles that we cannot observe with the unaided senses.

Gravitational interactions include the familiar force of your *weight,* which results from the earth's gravitational attraction acting on you. The mutual gravitational attraction of various parts of the earth for each other holds our planet together, and likewise for the other planets (Fig. 5.38a). Newton recognized that the sun's gravitational attraction for the earth keeps our planet in its nearly circular orbit around the sun. In Chapter 13 we'll study gravitational interactions in more detail, including their vital role in the motions of planets and satellites.

The second familiar class of forces, **electromagnetic interactions,** includes electric and magnetic forces. If you run a comb through your hair, the comb ends up with an electric charge; you can use the electric force exerted by this charge to pick up bits of paper. All atoms contain positive and negative electric charge, so atoms and molecules can exert electric forces on one another. Contact forces, including the normal force, friction, and fluid resistance, are the result of electrical interactions between atoms on the surface of an object and atoms in its surroundings (Fig. 5.38b). *Magnetic* forces, such as those between magnets or between a magnet and a piece of iron, are actually the result of electric charges in motion. For example, an electromagnet causes magnetic interactions because electric charges move through its wires. We'll study electromagnetic interactions in detail in the second half of this book.

On the atomic or molecular scale, gravitational forces play no role because electric forces are enormously stronger: The electrical repulsion between two protons is stronger than their gravitational attraction by a factor of about 10^{35}. But in objects of astronomical

Figure **5.38** Examples of the fundamental interactions in nature.

size, positive and negative charges are usually present in nearly equal amounts, and the resulting electrical interactions nearly cancel out. Gravitational interactions are thus the dominant influence in the motion of planets and in the internal structure of stars.

The other two classes of interactions are less familiar. One, the **strong interaction,** is responsible for holding the nucleus of an atom together (Fig. 5.38c). Nuclei contain electrically neutral neutrons and positively charged protons. The electric force between charged protons tries to push them apart; the strong attractive force between nuclear particles counteracts this repulsion and makes the nucleus stable. In this context the strong interaction is also called the *strong nuclear force*. It has much shorter range than electrical interactions, but within its range it is much stronger. Without the strong interaction, the nuclei of atoms essential to life, such as carbon (six protons, six neutrons) and oxygen (eight protons, eight neutrons), would not exist and you would not be reading these words!

Finally, there is the **weak interaction.** Its range is so short that it plays a role only on the scale of the nucleus or smaller. The weak interaction is responsible for a common form of radioactivity called beta decay, in which a neutron in a radioactive nucleus is transformed into a proton while ejecting an electron and a nearly massless particle called an antineutrino. The weak interaction between the antineutrino and ordinary matter is so feeble that an antineutrino could easily penetrate a wall of lead a million kilometers thick!

An important application of the weak interaction is *radiocarbon dating,* a technique that enables scientists to determine the ages of many biological specimens (Fig. 5.38d). Naturally occurring carbon includes atoms of both carbon-12 (with six protons and six neutrons in the nucleus) and carbon-14 (with two additional neutrons). Living organisms take in carbon atoms of both kinds from their environment but stop doing so when they die. The weak interaction makes carbon-14 nuclei unstable—one of the neutrons changes

to a proton, an electron, and an antineutrino—and these nuclei decay at a known rate. By measuring the fraction of carbon-14 that is left in an organism's remains, scientists can determine how long ago the organism died.

In the 1960s physicists developed a theory that described the electromagnetic and weak interactions as aspects of a single *electroweak* interaction. This theory has passed every experimental test to which it has been put. Encouraged by this success, physicists have made similar attempts to describe the strong, electromagnetic, and weak interactions in terms of a single *grand unified theory* (GUT) and have taken steps toward a possible unification of all interactions into a *theory of everything* (TOE). Such theories are still speculative, and there are many unanswered questions in this very active field of current research.

CHAPTER 5 SUMMARY

Using Newton's first law: When an object is in equilibrium in an inertial frame of reference—that is, either at rest or moving with constant velocity—the vector sum of forces acting on it must be zero (Newton's first law). Free-body diagrams are essential in identifying the forces that act on the object being considered.

Newton's third law (action and reaction) is also frequently needed in equilibrium problems. The two forces in an action–reaction pair *never* act on the same object. (See Examples 5.1–5.5.)

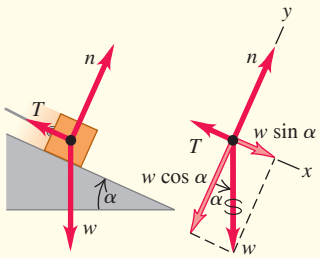
The normal force exerted on an object by a surface is *not* always equal to the object's weight. (See Example 5.4.)

Vector form:

$$\Sigma \vec{F} = \mathbf{0} \qquad (5.1)$$

Component form:

$$\Sigma F_x = 0 \quad \Sigma F_y = 0$$



Using Newton's second law: If the vector sum of forces on an object is *not* zero, the object accelerates. The acceleration is related to the net force by Newton's second law.

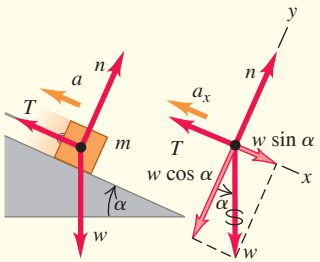
Just as for equilibrium problems, free-body diagrams are essential for solving problems involving Newton's second law, and the normal force exerted on an object is not always equal to its weight. (See Examples 5.6–5.12.)

Vector form:

$$\Sigma \vec{F} = m\vec{a} \qquad (5.2)$$

Component form:

$$\Sigma F_x = ma_x \qquad \Sigma F_y = ma_y$$



Friction and fluid resistance: The contact force between two objects can always be represented in terms of a normal force $\vec{n}$ perpendicular to the surface of contact and a friction force $\vec{f}$ parallel to the surface.

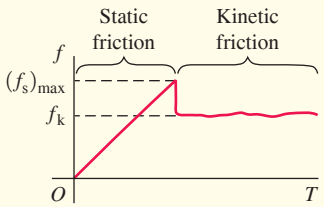
When an object is sliding over the surface, the friction force is called *kinetic* friction. Its magnitude f_k is approximately equal to the normal force magnitude n multiplied by the coefficient of kinetic friction μ_k.

Magnitude of kinetic friction force:

$$f_k = \mu_k n \qquad (5.3)$$

Magnitude of static friction force:

$$f_s \leq (f_s)_{max} = \mu_s n \qquad (5.4)$$



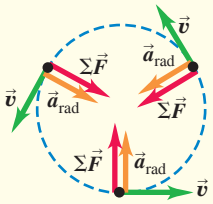
When an object is *not* moving relative to a surface, the friction force is called *static* friction. The *maximum* possible static friction force is approximately equal to the magnitude n of the normal force multiplied by the coefficient of static friction μ_s. The *actual* static friction force may be anything from zero to this maximum value, depending on the situation. Usually μ_s is greater than μ_k for a given pair of surfaces in contact. (See Examples 5.13–5.17.)

Rolling friction is similar to kinetic friction, but the force of fluid resistance depends on the speed of an object through a fluid. (See Example 5.18.)

Forces in circular motion: In uniform circular motion, the acceleration vector is directed toward the center of the circle. The motion is governed by Newton's second law, $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$. (See Examples 5.19–5.23.)

Acceleration in uniform circular motion:

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v^2}{R} = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} \qquad (5.13), (5.15)$$



Chapter 5 Media Assets

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 5.5 (Section 5.1) before attempting these problems. In all problems, ignore air resistance.

VP5.5.1 In a modified version of the cart and bucket in Fig. 5.5a, the angle of the slope is 36.9° and the bucket weighs 255 N. The cart moves up the incline and the bucket moves downward, both at constant speed. The cable has negligible mass, and there is no friction. (a) What is the weight of the cart? (b) What is the tension in the cable?

VP5.5.2 You increase the angle of the slope in Fig. 5.5a to 25.0° and use a different cart and a different bucket. You observe that the cart and bucket remain at rest when released and that the tension in the cable of negligible mass is 155 N. There is no friction. (a) What is the weight of the cart? (b) What is the *combined* weight of the cart and bucket?

VP5.5.3 You construct a version of the cart and bucket in Fig. 5.5a, but with a slope whose angle can be adjusted. You use a cart of mass 175 kg and a bucket of mass 65.0 kg. The cable has negligible mass, and there is no friction. (a) What must be the angle of the slope so that the cart moves downhill at a constant speed and the bucket moves upward at the same constant speed? (b) With this choice of angle, what will be the tension in the cable?

VP5.5.4 In the situation shown in Fig. 5.5a, let θ be the angle of the slope and suppose there *is* friction between the cart and the track. You find that if the cart and bucket each have the same weight w, they remain at rest when released. In this case, what is the magnitude of the friction force on the cart? Is it less than, greater than, or equal to w?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 5.13, 5.14, and 5.15 (Section 5.3) before attempting these problems.

VP5.15.1 You pull on a crate using a rope as in Fig. 5.21a, except the rope is at an angle of 20.0° above the horizontal. The weight of the crate is 325 N, and the coefficient of kinetic friction between the crate and the floor is 0.250. (a) What must be the tension in the rope to make the crate move at a constant velocity? (b) What is the normal force that the floor exerts on the crate?

VP5.15.2 You pull on a large box using a rope as in Fig. 5.21a, except the rope is at an angle of 15.0° *below* the horizontal. The weight of the box is 325 N, and the coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the floor is 0.250. (a) What must be the tension in the rope to make the box move at a constant velocity? (b) What is the normal force that the floor exerts on the box?

VP5.15.3 You are using a lightweight rope to pull a sled along level ground. The sled weighs 475 N, the coefficient of kinetic friction between the sled and the ground is 0.200, the rope is at an angle of 12.0° above the horizontal, and you pull on the rope with a force of 125 N. (a) Find the normal force that the ground exerts on the sled. (b) Find the acceleration of the sled. Is the sled speeding up or slowing down?

VP5.15.4 A large box of mass m sits on a horizontal floor. You attach a lightweight rope to this box, hold the rope at an angle θ above the horizontal, and pull. You find that the minimum tension you can apply to the rope in order to make the box start moving is T_{min}. Find the coefficient of static friction between the floor and the box.

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 5.20, 5.21, and 5.22 (Section 5.4) before attempting these problems.

VP5.22.1 You make a conical pendulum (see Fig. 5.32a) using a string of length 0.800 m and a bob of mass 0.250 kg. When the bob is moving in a circle at a constant speed, the string is at an angle of 20.0° from the vertical. (a) What is the radius of the circle around which the bob moves? (b) How much time does it take the bob to complete one circle? (c) What is the tension in the string?

VP5.22.2 A competition cyclist rides at a constant 12.5 m/s around a curve that is banked at 40.0°. The cyclist and her bicycle have a combined mass of 64.0 kg. (a) What must be the radius of her turn if there is to be no friction force pushing her either up or down the banked curve? (b) What is the magnitude of her acceleration? (c) What is the magnitude of the normal force that the surface of the banked curve exerts on the bicycle?

VP5.22.3 An aerobatic airplane flying at a constant 80.0 m/s makes a horizontal turn of radius 175 m. The pilot has mass 80.0 kg. (a) What is the bank angle of the airplane? (b) What is the pilot's apparent weight during the turn? How many times greater than his actual weight is this?

VP5.22.4 A sports car moves around a banked curve at just the right constant speed v so that no friction is needed to make the turn. During the turn, the driver (mass m) feels as though she weighs x times her actual weight. (a) Find the magnitude of the *net* force on the driver during the turn in terms of m, g, and x. (b) Find the radius of the turn in terms of v, g, and x.

BRIDGING PROBLEM In a Rotating Cone

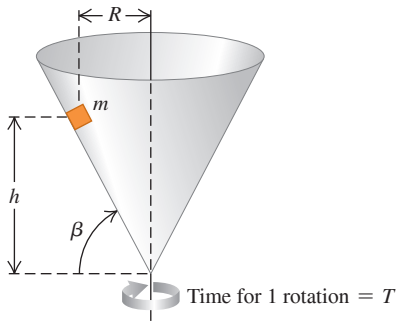
A small block with mass m is placed inside an inverted cone that is rotating about a vertical axis such that the time for one revolution of the cone is T (**Fig. 5.39**). The walls of the cone make an angle β with the horizontal. The coefficient of static friction between the block and the cone is μ_s. If the block is to remain at a constant height h above the apex of the cone, what are (a) the maximum value of T and (b) the minimum value of T? (That is, find expressions for T_{max} and T_{min} in terms of β and h.)

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Although we want the block not to slide up or down on the inside of the cone, this is *not* an equilibrium problem. The block rotates with the cone and is in uniform circular motion, so it has an acceleration directed toward the center of its circular path.
2. Identify the forces on the block. What is the direction of the friction force when the cone is rotating as slowly as possible, so T has its maximum value T_{max}? What is the direction of the friction force when the cone is rotating as rapidly as possible, so T has its minimum value T_{min}? In these situations does the static friction force have its *maximum* magnitude? Why or why not?
3. Draw a free-body diagram for the block when the cone is rotating with $T = T_{max}$ and a free-body diagram when the cone is rotating with $T = T_{min}$. Choose coordinate axes, and remember that it's usually easiest to choose one of the axes to be in the direction of the acceleration.
4. What is the radius of the circular path that the block follows? Express this in terms of β and h.
5. List the unknown quantities, and decide which of these are the target variables.

Figure **5.39** A block inside a spinning cone.



EXECUTE

6. Write Newton's second law in component form for the case in which the cone is rotating with $T = T_{max}$. Write the acceleration in terms of T_{max}, β, and h, and write the static friction force in terms of the normal force n.
7. Solve these equations for the target variable T_{max}.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 for the case in which the cone is rotating with $T = T_{min}$, and solve for the target variable T_{min}.

EVALUATE

9. You'll end up with some fairly complicated expressions for T_{max} and T_{min}, so check them over carefully. Do they have the correct units? Is the minimum time T_{min} less than the maximum time T_{max}, as it must be?
10. What do your expressions for T_{max} and T_{min} become if $\mu_s = 0$? Check your results by comparing them with Example 5.22 in Section 5.4.

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

[Always assume that pulleys are frictionless and massless and that strings and cords are massless, unless otherwise noted.]

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q5.1 A man sits in a seat that is hanging from a rope. The rope passes over a pulley suspended from the ceiling, and the man holds the other end of the rope in his hands. What is the tension in the rope, and what force does the seat exert on him? Draw a free-body force diagram for the man.

Q5.2 "In general, the normal force is not equal to the weight." Give an example in which these two forces are equal in magnitude, and at least two examples in which they are not.

Q5.3 A clothesline hangs between two poles. No matter how tightly the line is stretched, it sags a little at the center. Explain why.

Q5.4 You drive a car up a steep hill at constant speed. Discuss all of the forces that act on the car. What pushes it up the hill?

Q5.5 For medical reasons, astronauts in outer space must determine their body mass at regular intervals. Devise a scheme for measuring body mass in an apparently weightless environment.

Q5.6 To push a box up a ramp, which requires less force: pushing horizontally or pushing parallel to the ramp? Why?

Q5.7 A woman in a lift lets go of her briefcase, but it does not fall to the floor. How is the lift moving?

Q5.8 A block rests on an inclined plane with enough friction to prevent it from sliding down. To start the block moving, is it easier to push it up the plane or down the plane? Why?

Q5.9 A crate slides up an inclined ramp and then slides down the ramp after momentarily stopping near the top. There is kinetic friction between the surface of the ramp and the crate. Which is greater? (i) The crate's acceleration going up the ramp; (ii) the crate's acceleration going down the ramp; (iii) both are the same. Explain.

Q5.10 A crate of books rests on a level floor. To move it along the floor at a constant velocity, why do you exert less force if you pull it at an angle θ above the horizontal than if you push it at the same angle below the horizontal?

Q5.11 In a world without friction, which of the following activities could you do (or not do)? Explain your reasoning. (a) Drive around an unbanked highway curve; (b) jump into the air; (c) start walking on a horizontal footpath; (d) climb a vertical ladder; (e) change lanes while you drive.

Q5.12 When you stand with bare feet in a wet bathtub, the grip feels fairly secure, and yet a catastrophic slip is quite possible. Explain this in terms of the two coefficients of friction.

Q5.13 You are pushing a large crate from the back of a freight lift to the front as the lift is moving to the next floor. In which situation is the force you must apply to move the crate the least, and in which is it the greatest: when the lift is accelerating upward, when it is accelerating downward, or when it is traveling at constant speed? Explain.

Q5.14 It is often said that "friction always opposes motion." Give at least one example in which (a) static friction *causes* motion, and (b) kinetic friction *causes* motion.

Q5.15 If there is a net force on a particle in uniform circular motion, why doesn't the particle's speed change?

Q5.16 A curve in a road has a bank angle calculated and posted for 80 km/h. However, the road is covered with ice, so you cautiously plan to drive slower than this limit. What might happen to your car? Why?

Q5.17 You swing a ball on the end of a lightweight string in a horizontal circle at constant speed. Can the string ever be truly horizontal? If not, would it slope above the horizontal or below the horizontal? Why?

Q5.18 The centrifugal force is not included in the free-body diagrams of Figs. 5.34b and 5.35. Explain why not.

Q5.19 A professor swings a rubber stopper in a horizontal circle on the end of a string in front of his class. He tells Caroline, in the front row, that he is going to let the string go when the stopper is directly in front of her face. Should Caroline worry?

Q5.20 To keep the forces on the riders within allowable limits, many loop-the-loop roller coaster rides are designed so that the loop is not a perfect circle but instead has a larger radius of curvature at the bottom than at the top. Explain.

Q5.21 A tennis ball drops from rest at the top of a tall glass cylinder—first with the air pumped out of the cylinder so that there is no air resistance, and again after the air has been readmitted to the cylinder. You examine multiflash photographs of the two drops. Can you tell which photo belongs to which drop? If so, how?

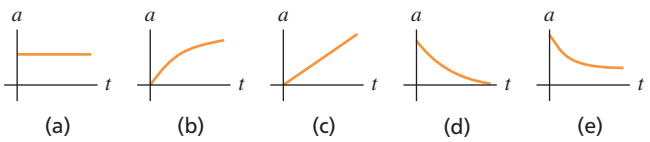
Q5.22 You throw a tennis ball straight upward with speed v_0. When the ball returns to the point from where you threw it, how does its speed compare to v_0 (a) in the absence of air resistance and (b) in the presence of air resistance? Explain.

Q5.23 You throw a tennis ball straight upward. If you do *not* ignore air resistance, how does the time required for the ball to reach its maximum height compare to the time required for it to fall from its maximum height back down to the height from which you threw it? Explain.

Q5.24 You have two identical tennis balls and fill one with water. You release both balls simultaneously from the top of a tall building. If air resistance is negligible, which ball will strike the ground first? Explain. What if air resistance is *not* negligible?

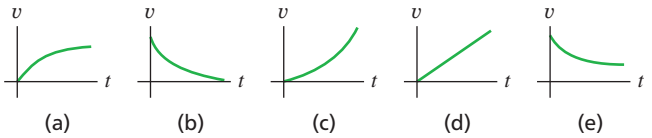
Q5.25 A ball is dropped from rest and feels air resistance as it falls. Which of the graphs in **Fig. Q5.25** best represents its acceleration as a function of time?

Figure **Q5.25**



Q5.26 A ball is dropped from rest and feels air resistance as it falls. Which of the graphs in **Fig. Q5.26** best represents its vertical velocity component as a function of time, if the $+y$-direction is taken to be downward?

Figure **Q5.26**



Q5.27 When a batted baseball moves with air drag, when does the ball travel a greater horizontal distance? (i) While climbing to its maximum height; (ii) while descending from its maximum height back to the ground; (iii) the same for both. Explain in terms of the forces acting on the ball.

Q5.28 "A ball is thrown from the edge of a high cliff. Regardless of the angle at which it is thrown, due to air resistance, the ball will eventually end up moving vertically downward." Justify this statement.

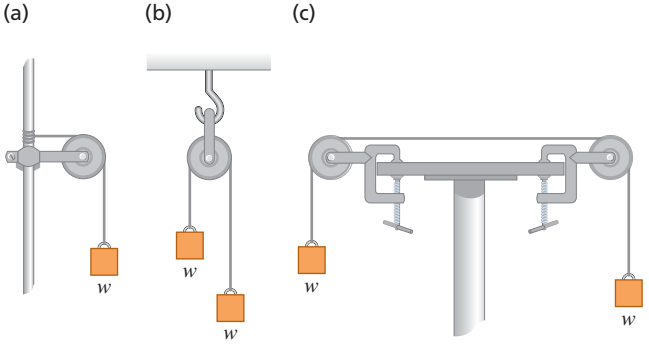
EXERCISES

Section 5.1 Using Newton's First Law: Particles in Equilibrium

5.1 • Two 23.0-N weights are suspended at opposite ends of a rope that passes over a light, frictionless pulley. The pulley is attached to a chain from the ceiling. (a) What is the tension in the rope? (b) What is the tension in the chain?

5.2 • In **Fig. E5.2** each of the suspended blocks has weight w. The pulleys are frictionless, and the ropes have negligible weight. In each case, draw a free-body diagram and calculate the tension T in the rope in terms of w.

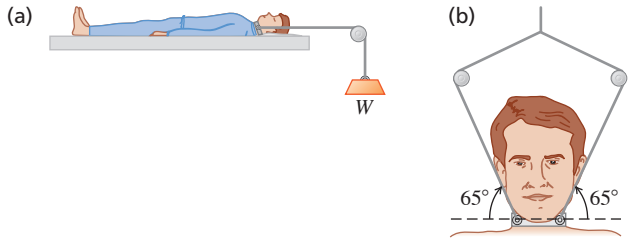
Figure **E5.2**



5.3 • A 75.0 kg wrecking ball hangs from a uniform, heavy-duty chain of mass 26.0 kg. (a) Find the maximum and minimum tensions in the chain. (b) What is the tension at a point three-fourths of the way up from the bottom of the chain?

5.4 •• BIO **Injuries to the Spinal Column.** In the treatment of spine injuries, it is often necessary to provide tension along the spinal column to stretch the backbone. One device for doing this is the Stryker frame (**Fig. E5.4a**). A weight W is attached to the patient (sometimes around a neck collar, Fig. E5.4b), and friction between the person's body and the bed prevents sliding. (a) If the coefficient of static friction between a 80.5-kg patient's body and the bed is 0.745, what is the maximum traction force along the spinal column that W can provide without causing the patient to slide? (b) Under the conditions of maximum traction, what is the tension in each cable attached to the neck collar?

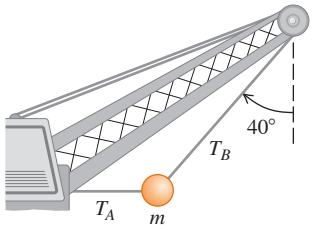
Figure E5.4



5.5 •• A picture frame hung against a wall is suspended by two wires attached to its upper corners. If the two wires make the same angle with the vertical, what must this angle be if the tension in each wire is equal to 0.75 of the weight of the frame? (Ignore any friction between the wall and the picture frame.)

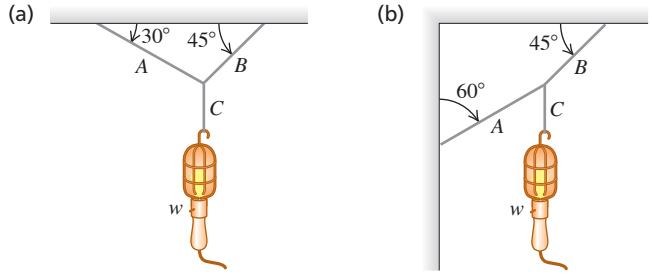
5.6 •• A large wrecking ball is held in place by two light steel cables (**Fig. E5.6**). If the mass m of the wrecking ball is 3620 kg, what are (a) the tension T_B in the cable that makes an angle of 40° with the vertical and (b) the tension T_A in the horizontal cable?

Figure E5.6



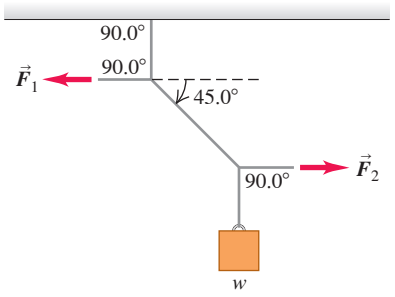
5.7 •• Find the tension in each cord in **Fig. E5.7** if the weight of the suspended object is w.

Figure E5.7



5.9 •• In **Fig. E5.8** the weight w is 60.0 N. (a) What is the tension in the diagonal string? (b) Find the magnitudes of the horizontalforces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ that must be applied to hold the system in the position shown.

Figure E5.8



5.9 •• A man pushes on a piano with mass 180 kg; it slides at constant velocity down a ramp that is inclined at 18.4° above the horizontal floor. Neglect any friction acting on the piano. Calculate the magnitude of the force applied by the man if he pushes (a) parallel to the incline and (b) parallel to the floor.

Section 5.2 Using Newton's Second Law: Dynamics of Particles

5.10 •• **Apparent Weight.** A 505 N physics student stands on a bathroom scale in a lift that is supported by a cable. The combined mass of student plus lift is 863 kg. As the lift starts moving, the scale reads 477 N. (a) Find the acceleration of the lift (magnitude and direction). (b) What is the acceleration if the scale reads 688 N? (c) If the scale reads zero, should the student worry? Explain. (d) What is the tension in the cable in parts (a) and (c)?

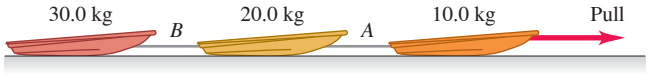
5.11 •• BIO **Stay Awake!** An astronaut is inside a 2.25×10^6 kg rocket that is blasting off vertically from the launch pad. You want this rocket to reach the speed of sound (331 m/s) as quickly as possible, but astronauts are in danger of blacking out at an acceleration greater than $4g$. (a) What is the maximum initial thrust this rocket's engines can have but just barely avoid blackout? Start with a free-body diagram of the rocket. (b) What force, in terms of the astronaut's weight w, does the rocket exert on her? Start with a free-body diagram of the astronaut. (c) What is the shortest time it can take the rocket to reach the speed of sound?

5.12 •• A rocket of initial mass 125 kg (including all the contents) has an engine that produces a constant vertical force (the *thrust*) of 1720 N. Inside this rocket, a 15.5 N electric power supply rests on the floor. (a) Find the initial acceleration of the rocket. (b) When the rocket initially accelerates, how hard does the floor push on the power supply? (*Hint:* Start with a free-body diagram for the power supply.)

5.13 •• CP ***Genesis* Crash.** On September 8, 2004, the *Genesis* spacecraft crashed in the Utah desert because its parachute did not open. The 210 kg capsule hit the ground at 311 km/h and penetrated the soil to a depth of 81.0 cm. (a) What was its acceleration (in m/s^2 and in g's), assumed to be constant, during the crash? (b) What force did the ground exert on the capsule during the crash? Express the force in newtons and as a multiple of the capsule's weight. (c) How long did this force last?

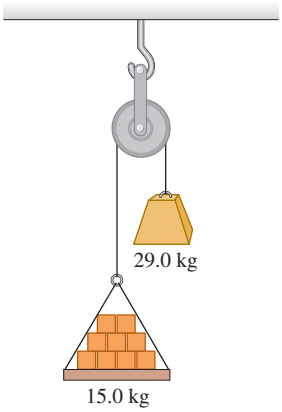
5.14 • Three sleds are being pulled horizontally on frictionless horizontal ice using horizontal ropes (**Fig. E5.14**). The pull is of magnitude 132 N. Find (a) the acceleration of the system and (b) the tension in ropes A and B.

Figure E5.14



5.15 •• **Atwood's Machine.** A 15.0 kg load of bricks hangs from one end of a rope that passes over a small, frictionless pulley. A 29.0 kg counterweight is suspended from the other end of the rope (**Fig. E5.15**). The system is released from rest. (a) Draw two free-body diagrams, one for the load of bricks and one for the counterweight. (b) What is the magnitude of the upward acceleration of the load of bricks? (c) What is the tension in the rope while the load is moving? How does the tension compare to the weight of the load of bricks? To the weight of the counterweight?

Figure E5.15



5.16 •• **CP** An 8.00 kg block of ice, released from rest at the top of a 1.31-m-long frictionless ramp, slides downhill, reaching a speed of 2.59 m/s at the bottom. (a) What is the angle between the ramp and the horizontal? (b) What would be the speed of the ice at the bottom if the motion were opposed by a constant friction force of 10.0 N parallel to the surface of the ramp?

5.17 •• A light rope is attached to a block with mass 4.70 kg that rests on a frictionless, horizontal surface. The horizontal rope passes over a frictionless, massless pulley, and a block with mass m is suspended from the other end. When the blocks are released, the tension in the rope is 13.6 N. (a) Draw two free-body diagrams: one for each block. (b) What is the acceleration of either block? (c) Find m. (d) How does the tension compare to the weight of the hanging block?

5.18 •• **CP** **Runway Design.** A transport plane takes off from a level landing field with two gliders in tow, one behind the other. The mass of each glider is 700 kg, and the total resistance (air drag plus friction with the runway) on each may be assumed constant and equal to 2700 N. The tension in the towrope between the transport plane and the first glider is not to exceed 12,000 N. (a) If a speed of 40 m/s is required for takeoff, what minimum length of runway is needed? (b) What is the tension in the towrope between the two gliders while they are accelerating for the takeoff?

5.19 •• **CP** **BIO** **Force During a Jump.** When jumping straight up from a crouched position, an average person can reach a maximum height of about 60 cm. During the jump, the person's body from the knees up typically rises a distance of around 50 cm. To keep the calculations simple and yet get a reasonable result, assume that the *entire body* rises this much during the jump. (a) With what initial speed does the person leave the ground to reach a height of 60 cm? (b) Draw a free-body diagram of the person during the jump. (c) In terms of this jumper's weight w, what force does the ground exert on him or her during the jump?

5.20 **CP** **CALC** A 2080 kg test rocket is launched vertically from the launch pad. Its fuel (of negligible mass) provides a thrust force such that its vertical velocity as a function of time is given by $v(t) = At + Bt^2$, where A and B are constants and time is measured from the instant the fuel is ignited. The rocket has an upward acceleration of 1.80 m/s^2 at the instant of ignition and, 1.10 s later, an upward velocity of 1.80 m/s. (a) Determine A and B, including their SI units. (b) At 4.00 s after fuel ignition, what is the acceleration of the rocket, and (c) what thrust force does the burning fuel exert on it, assuming no air resistance? Express the thrust in newtons and as a multiple of the rocket's weight. (d) What was the initial thrust due to the fuel?

5.21 •• **CP** **CALC** A 2.10 kg box is moving to the right with speed 8.50 m/s on a horizontal, frictionless surface. At $t = 0$ a horizontal force is applied to the box. The force is directed to the left and has magnitude $F(t) = (6.00\ \text{N/s}^2)t^2$. (a) What distance does the box move from its position at $t = 0$ before its speed is reduced to zero? (b) If the force continues to be applied, what is the speed of the box at $t = 3.00$ s?

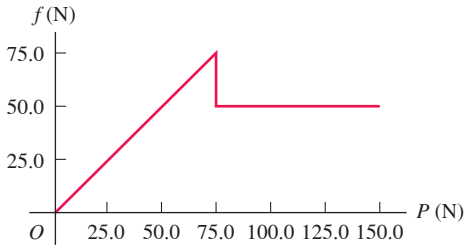
5.22 •• **CP** **CALC** A 4.50 kg crate is suspended from the end of a short vertical rope of negligible mass. An upward force $F(t)$ is applied to the end of the rope, and the height of the crate above its initial position is given by $y(t) = (2.80\ \text{m/s})t + (0.610\ \text{m/s}^3)t^3$. What is the magnitude of F when $t = 4.30$ s?

SECTION 5.3 Friction Forces

5.23 • **BIO** **The Trendelenburg Position.** After emergencies with major blood loss, a patient is placed in the Trendelenburg position, in which the foot of the bed is raised to get maximum blood flow to the brain. If the coefficient of static friction between a typical patient and the bedsheets is 1.20, what is the maximum angle at which the bed can be tilted with respect to the floor before the patient begins to slide?

5.24 • In a laboratory experiment on friction, a 130 N block resting on a rough horizontal table is pulled by a horizontal wire. The pull gradually increases until the block begins to move and continues to increase thereafter. **Figure E5.24** shows a graph of the friction force on this block as a function of the pull. (a) Identify the regions of the graph where static friction and kinetic friction occur. (b) Find the coefficients of static friction and kinetic friction between the block and the table. (c) Why does the graph slant upward at first but then level out? (d) What would the graph look like if a 130 N brick were placed on the block, and what would the coefficients of friction be?

Figure **E5.24**



5.25 •• **CP** A stockroom worker pushes a box with mass 16.8 kg on a horizontal surface with a constant speed of 3.50 m/s. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the surface is 0.20. (a) What horizontal force must the worker apply to maintain the motion? (b) If the force calculated in part (a) is removed, how far does the box slide before coming to rest?

5.26 •• A box of bananas weighing 40.0 N rests on a horizontal surface. The coefficient of static friction between the box and the surface is 0.40, and the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.20. (a) If no horizontal force is applied to the box and the box is at rest, how large is the friction force exerted on it? (b) What is the magnitude of the friction force if a monkey applies a horizontal force of 6.0 N to the box and the box is initially at rest? (c) What minimum horizontal force must the monkey apply to start the box in motion? (d) What minimum horizontal force must the monkey apply to keep the box moving at constant velocity once it has been started? (e) If the monkey applies a horizontal force of 18.0 N, what is the magnitude of the friction force and what is the box's acceleration?

5.27 •• A 38.4 kg crate of tools rests on a horizontal floor. You exert a gradually increasing horizontal push on it, and the crate just begins to move when your force exceeds 320 N. Then you must reduce your push to 221 N to keep it moving at a steady 24.8 cm/s. (a) What are the coefficients of static and kinetic friction between the crate and the floor? (b) What push must you exert to give it an acceleration of 1.41 m/s^2? (c) Suppose you were performing the same experiment on the moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is 1.62 m/s^2. (i) What magnitude push would cause it to move? (ii) What would its acceleration be if you maintained the push in part (b)?

5.28 • Consider the heaviest box that you can push at constant speed across a level floor, where the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.50, and estimate the maximum horizontal force that you can apply to the box. A box sits on a ramp that is inclined at an angle of 60° above the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the ramp is 0.50. If you apply the same magnitude force, now parallel to the ramp, that you applied to the box on the floor, what is the heaviest box that you can push up the ramp at constant speed? (In both cases assume you can give enough extra push to get the box started moving.)

5.29 • **CP** Estimate the height of a typical playground slide and the angle its surface makes with the horizontal. (a) Some children like to slide down while sitting on a sheet of wax paper. This makes the friction force exerted by the slide very small. If a child starts from rest and we take the friction force to be zero, what is the speed of the child when he reaches the bottom of the slide? (b) If the child doesn't use the wax paper, his speed at the bottom is half the value calculated in part (a). What is the coefficient of kinetic friction between the child and the slide when wax paper isn't used? (c) A child wearing a different sort of clothing than the first child climbs the ladder to the top of the slide, sits on the slide, lets go of the handrail, and remains at rest. What is the minimum possible value for the coefficient of static friction between this child and the surface of the slide?

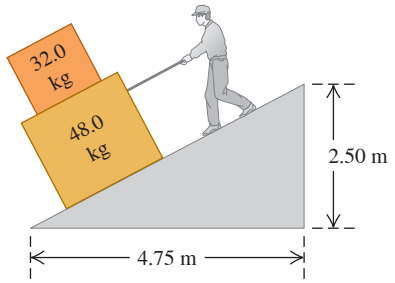
5.30 •• Some sliding rocks approach the base of a hill with a speed of 13 m/s. The hill rises at 42° above the horizontal and has coefficients of kinetic friction and static friction of 0.43 and 0.61, respectively, with these rocks. (a) Find the acceleration of the rocks as they slide up the hill. (b) Once a rock reaches its highest point, will it stay there or slide down the hill? If it stays, show why. If it slides, find its acceleration on the way down.

5.31 •• A box with mass 10.0 kg moves on a ramp that is inclined at an angle of 55.0° above the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the ramp surface is $\mu_k = 0.300$. Calculate the magnitude of the acceleration of the box if you push on the box with a constant force $F = 120.0$ N that is parallel to the ramp surface and (a) directed down the ramp, moving the box down the ramp; (b) directed up the ramp, moving the box up the ramp.

5.32 •• A pickup truck is carrying a toolbox, but the rear gate of the truck is missing. The toolbox will slide out if it is set moving. The coefficients of kinetic friction and static friction between the box and the level bed of the truck are 0.355 and 0.650, respectively. Starting from rest, what is the shortest time this truck could accelerate uniformly to 30.0 m/s without causing the box to slide? Draw a free-body diagram of the toolbox.

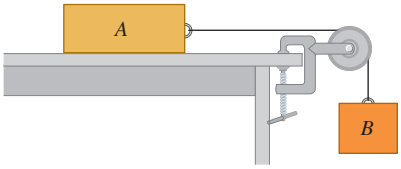
5.33 •• You are lowering two boxes, one on top of the other, down a ramp by pulling on a rope parallel to the surface of the ramp (**Fig. E5.33**). Both boxes move together at a constant speed of 15.0 cm/s. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the ramp and the lower box is 0.444, and the coefficient of static friction between the two boxes is 0.800. (a) What force do you need to exert to accomplish this? (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the friction force on the upper box?

Figure **E5.33**



5.34 •• Consider the system shown in **Fig. E5.34.** Block A weighs 45.0 N, and block B weighs 25.0 N. Once block B is set into downward motion, it descends at a constant speed. (a) Calculate the coefficient of kinetic friction between block A and the tabletop. (b) A cat, also of weight 45.0 N, falls asleep on top of block A. If block B is now set into downward motion, what is its acceleration (magnitude and direction)?

Figure **E5.34**

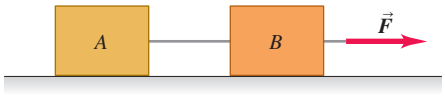


5.35 •• **CP** **Stopping Distance.** (a) If the coefficient of kinetic friction between tires and dry pavement is 0.80, what is the shortest distance in which you can stop a car by locking the brakes when the car is traveling at 28.7 m/s? (b) On wet pavement the coefficient of kinetic friction may be only 0.25. How fast should you drive on wet pavement to be able to stop in the same distance as in part (a)? (*Note:* Locking the brakes is *not* the safest way to stop.)

5.36 •• **CP** A 25.4 kg box of textbooks rests on a loading ramp that makes an angle α with the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.25, and the coefficient of static friction is 0.37. (a) As α is increased, find the minimum angle at which the box starts to slip. (b) At this angle, find the acceleration once the box has begun to move. (c) At this angle, how fast will the box be moving after it has slid 5.3 m along the loading ramp?

5.37 • Two crates connected by a rope lie on a horizontal surface (**Fig. E5.37**). Crate A has mass m_A, and crate B has mass m_B. The coefficient of kinetic friction between each crate and the surface is μ_k. The crates are pulled to the right at constant velocity by a horizontal force $\vec{F}$. Draw one or more free-body diagrams to calculate the following in terms of m_A, m_B, and μ_k: (a) the magnitude of $\vec{F}$ and (b) the tension in the rope connecting the blocks.

Figure **E5.37**



5.38 •• A box with mass m is dragged across a level floor with coefficient of kinetic friction μ_k by a rope that is pulled upward at an angle θ above the horizontal with a force of magnitude F. (a) In terms of m, μ_k, θ, and g, obtain an expression for the magnitude of the force required to move the box with constant speed. (b) Knowing that you are studying physics, a CPR instructor asks you how much force it would take to slide a 90 kg patient across a floor at constant speed by pulling on him at an angle of 25° above the horizontal. By dragging weights wrapped in an old pair of pants down the hall with a spring balance, you find that $\mu_k = 0.35$. Use the result of part (a) to answer the instructor's question.

5.39 •• **CP** As shown in Fig. E5.34, block A (mass 2.19 kg) rests on a tabletop. It is connected by a horizontal cord passing over a light, frictionless pulley to a hanging block B (mass 2.27 kg). The coefficient of kinetic friction between block A and the tabletop is 0.331. The blocks are released then from rest. Draw one or more free-body diagrams to find (a) the speed of each block after they move 3.30 cm and (b) the tension in the cord.

5.40 •• You throw a cricket ball straight upward. The drag force is proportional to v^2. In terms of g, what is the y-component of the ball's acceleration when the ball's speed is half its terminal speed and (a) it is moving up? (b) It is moving back down?

5.41 •• A large crate with mass m rests on a horizontal floor. The coefficients of friction between the crate and the floor are μ_s and μ_k. A woman pushes downward with a force $\vec{F}$ on the crate at an angle θ below the horizontal. (a) What magnitude of force $\vec{F}$ is required to keep the crate moving at constant velocity? (b) If μ_s is greater than some critical value, the woman cannot start the crate moving no matter how hard she pushes. Calculate this critical value of μ_s.

Section 5.4 Dynamics of Circular Motion

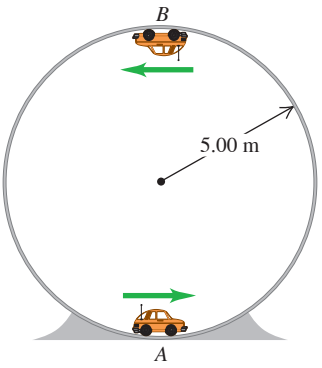
5.42 • You are sitting on the edge of a horizontal disk (for example, a playground merry-go-round) that has radius 3.00 m and is rotating at a constant rate about a vertical axis. (a) If the coefficient of static friction between you and the surface of the disk is 0.400, what is the minimum time for one revolution of the disk if you are not to slide off? (b) Your friend's weight is half yours. If the coefficient of static friction for him is the same as for you, what is the minimum time for one revolution if he is not to slide off?

5.43 • A stone with mass 0.80 kg is attached to one end of a string 0.90 m long. The string will break if its tension exceeds 60.0 N. The stone is whirled in a horizontal circle on a frictionless tabletop; the other end of the string remains fixed. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the stone. (b) Find the maximum speed the stone can attain without the string breaking.

5.44 • BIO **Force on a Skater's Wrist.** A 52 kg ice skater spins about a vertical axis through her body with her arms horizontally outstretched; she makes 2.0 turns each second. The distance from one hand to the other is 1.50 m. Biometric measurements indicate that each hand typically makes up about 1.25% of body weight. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of one of the skater's hands. (b) What horizontal force must her wrist exert on her hand? (c) Express the force in part (b) as a multiple of the weight of her hand.

5.45 •• A small remote-controlled car with mass 1.60 kg moves at a constant speed of $v = 12.0$ m/s in a track formed by a vertical circle inside a hollow metal cylinder that has a radius of 5.00 m (**Fig. E5.45**). What is the magnitude of the normal force exerted on the car by the walls of the cylinder at (a) point A (bottom of the track) and (b) point B (top of the track)?

Figure **E5.45**



5.46 •• A small car with mass 0.800 kg travels at constant speed on the inside of a track that is a vertical circle with radius 5.00 m (Fig. E5.45). If the normal force exerted by the track on the car when it is at the top of the track (point B) is 6.00 N, what is the normal force on the car when it is at the bottom of the track (point A)?

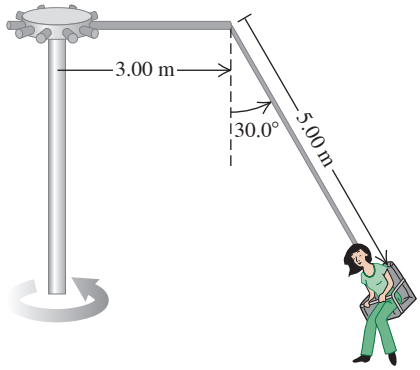
5.47 • A small model car with mass m travels at constant speed on the inside of a track that is a vertical circle with radius 5.00 m (Fig. E5.45). If the normal force exerted by the track on the car when it is at the bottom of the track (point A) is equal to $2.50mg$, how much time does it take the car to complete one revolution around the track?

5.48 • A flat (unbanked) curve on a highway has a radius of 230.0 m. A car rounds the curve at a speed of 28.0 m/s. (a) What is the minimum coefficient of static friction that will prevent sliding? (b) Suppose that the highway is icy and the coefficient of static friction between the tires and pavement is only one-third of what you found in part (a). What should be the maximum speed of the car so that it can round the curve safely?

5.49 •• A 1125 kg car and a 2250 kg pickup truck approach a curve on a highway that has a radius of 225 m. (a) At what angle should the highway engineer bank this curve so that vehicles traveling at 105 km/h can safely round it regardless of the condition of their tires? Should the heavy truck go slower than the lighter car? (b) As the car and truck round the curve at 105 km/h, find the normal force on each one due to the highway surface.

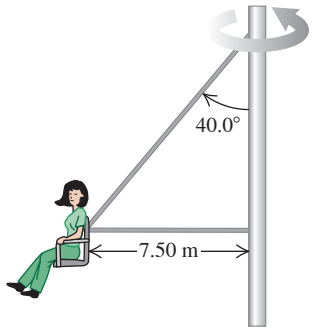
5.50 •• The "Giant Swing" at a county fair consists of a vertical central shaft with a number of horizontal arms attached at its upper end. Each arm supports a seat suspended from a cable 5.00 m long, and the upper end of the cable is fastened to the arm at a point 3.00 m from the central shaft (**Fig. E5.50**). (a) Find the time of one revolution of the swing if the cable supporting a seat makes an angle of 30.0° with the vertical. (b) Does the angle depend on the weight of the passenger for a given rate of revolution?

Figure **E5.50**



5.51 •• In another version of the "Giant Swing" (see Exercise 5.50), the seat is connected to two cables, one of which is horizontal (**Fig. E5.51**). The seat swings in a horizontal circle at a rate of 28.0 rpm (rev/min). If the seat weighs 255 N and an 825 N person is sitting in it, find the tension in each cable.

Figure **E5.51**



5.52 • A steel ball with mass m is suspended from the ceiling at the bottom end of a light, 15.0-m-long rope. The ball swings back and forth like a pendulum. When the ball is at its lowest point and the rope is vertical, the tension in the rope is three times the weight of the ball, so $T = 3mg$. (a) What is the speed of the ball as it swings through this point? (b) What is the speed of the ball if $T = mg$ at this point, where the rope is vertical?

5.53 •• **Rotating Space Stations.** One problem for humans living in outer space is that they are apparently weightless. One way around this problem is to design a space station that spins about its center at a constant rate. This creates "artificial gravity" at the outside rim of the station. (a) If the diameter of the space station is 890 m, how many revolutions per minute are needed for the "artificial gravity" acceleration to be 9.80 m/s^2? (b) If the space station is a waiting area for travelers going to Mars, it might be desirable to simulate the acceleration due to gravity on the Martian surface (3.70 m/s^2). How many revolutions per minute are needed in this case?

5.54 • The Cosmo Clock 21 Ferris wheel in Yokohama, Japan, has a diameter of 100 m. Its name comes from its 60 arms, each of which can function as a second hand (so that it makes one revolution every 60.0 s). (a) Find the speed of the passengers when the Ferris wheel is rotating at this rate. (b) A passenger weighs 902 N at the weight-guessing booth on the ground. What is his apparent weight at the highest and at the lowest point on the Ferris wheel? (c) What would be the time for one revolution if the passenger's apparent weight at the highest point were zero? (d) What then would be the passenger's apparent weight at the lowest point?

5.55 •• A small rock with mass m is attached to a light string of length L and whirled in a vertical circle of radius R. (a) What is the minimum speed v at the rock's highest point for which it stays in a circular path? (b) If the speed at the rock's lowest point in its circular path is twice the value found in part (a), what is the tension in the string when the rock is at this point?

5.56 •• A 50.0 kg stunt pilot who has been diving her airplane vertically pulls out of the dive by changing her course to a circle in a vertical plane. (a) If the plane's speed at the lowest point of the circle is 95.0 m/s, what is the minimum radius of the circle so that the acceleration at this point will not exceed 4.00g? (b) What is the apparent weight of the pilot at the lowest point of the pullout?

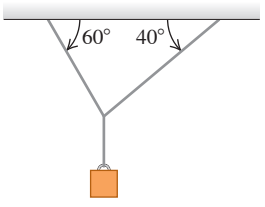
5.57 • **Stay Dry!** You tie a cord to a pail of water and swing the pail in a vertical circle of radius 0.600 m. What minimum speed must you give the pail at the highest point of the circle to avoid spilling water?

5.58 •• A bowling ball weighing 71.2 N is attached to the ceiling by a 3.80 m rope. The ball is pulled to one side and released; it then swings back and forth as a pendulum. As the rope swings through the vertical, the speed of the bowling ball is 4.20 m/s. At this instant, what are (a) the acceleration of the bowling ball, in magnitude and direction, and (b) the tension in the rope?

PROBLEMS

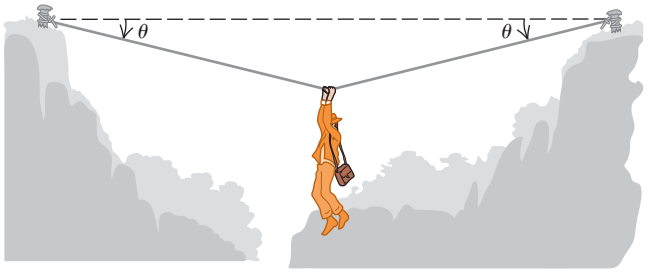
5.59 ••• Two ropes are connected to a steel cable that supports a hanging weight (**Fig. P5.59**). (a) Draw a free-body diagram showing all of the forces acting at the knot that connects the two ropes to the steel cable. Based on your diagram, which of the two ropes will have the greater tension? (b) If the maximum tension either rope can sustain without breaking is 5000 N, determine the maximum value of the hanging weight that these ropes can safely support. Ignore the weight of the ropes and of the steel cable.

Figure P5.59



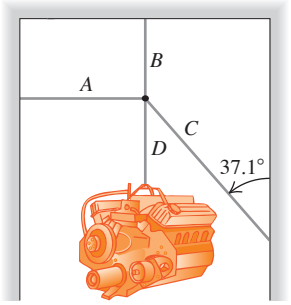
5.60 •• An adventurous archaeologist crosses between two rock cliffs by slowly going hand over hand along a rope stretched between the cliffs. He stops to rest at the middle of the rope (**Fig. P5.60**). The rope will break if the tension in it exceeds 2.10×10^4 N, and our hero's mass is 91.2 kg. (a) If the angle θ is 10.0°, what is the tension in the rope? (b) What is the smallest value θ can have if the rope is not to break?

Figure P5.60



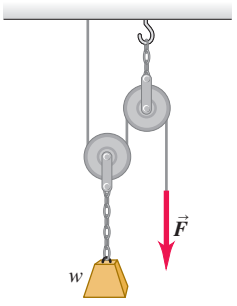
5.61 •• In a repair shop a truck engine that has mass 409 kg is held in place by four light cables (**Fig. P5.61**). Cable A is horizontal, cables B and D are vertical, and cable C makes an angle of 37.1° with a vertical wall. If the tension in cable A is 722 N, what are the tensions in cables B and C?

Figure P5.61



5.62 •• In **Fig. P5.62** a worker lifts a weight w by pulling down on a rope with a force $\vec{F}$. The upper pulley is attached to the ceiling by a chain, and the lower pulley is attached to the weight by another chain. Draw one or more free-body diagrams to find the tension in each chain and the magnitude of $\vec{F}$, in terms of w, if the weight is lifted at constant speed. Assume that the rope, pulleys, and chains have negligible weights.

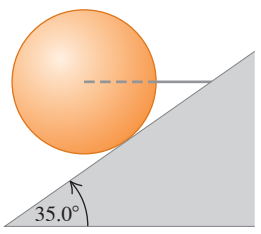
Figure P5.62



5.63 •• **CP** A small block sits at one end of a flat board that is 3.00 m long. The coefficients of friction between the block and the board are $\mu_s = 0.600$ and $\mu_k = 0.400$. The end of the board where the block sits is slowly raised until the angle the board makes with the horizontal is α_0, and then the block starts to slide down the board. If the angle is kept equal to α_0 as the block slides, what is the speed of the block when it reaches the bottom of the board?

5.64 ••• A horizontal wire holds a solid uniform ball of mass m in place on a tilted ramp that rises 35.0° above the horizontal. The surface of this ramp is perfectly smooth, and the wire is directed away from the center of the ball (**Fig. P5.64**). (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the ball. (b) How hard does the surface of the ramp push on the ball? (c) What is the tension in the wire?

Figure P5.64



5.65 •• **CP** A box of mass 12.0 kg sits at rest on a horizontal surface. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the surface and the box is 0.300. The box is initially at rest, and then a constant force of magnitude F and direction 37.0° below the horizontal is applied to the box; the box slides along the surface. (a) What is F if the box has a speed of 6.00 m/s after traveling a distance of 8.00 m? (b) What is F if the surface is frictionless and all the other quantities are the same? (c) What is F if all the quantities are the same as in part (a) but the force applied to the box is horizontal?

5.66 •• **CP** A box is sliding with a constant speed of 4.00 m/s in the $+x$-direction on a horizontal, frictionless surface. At $x = 0$ the box encounters a rough patch of the surface, and then the surface becomes even rougher. Between $x = 0$ and $x = 2.00$ m, the coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the surface is 0.200; between $x = 2.00$ m and $x = 4.00$ m, it is 0.400. (a) What is the x-coordinate of the point where the box comes to rest? (b) How much time does it take the box to come to rest after it first encounters the rough patch at $x = 0$?

5.67 •• **CP** **BIO** **Forces During Chin-ups.** When you do a chin-up, you raise your chin just over a bar (the chinning bar), supporting yourself with only your arms. Typically, the body below the arms is raised by about 30 cm in a time of 1.0 s, starting from rest. Assume that the entire body of a 700 N person doing chin-ups is raised by 30 cm, and that half the 1.0 s is spent accelerating upward and the other half accelerating downward, uniformly in both cases. Draw a free-body diagram of the person's body, and use it to find the force his arms must exert on him during the accelerating part of the chin-up.

5.68 •• **CP** **CALC** A 2.00 kg box is suspended from the end of a light vertical rope. A time-dependent force is applied to the upper end of the rope, and the box moves upward with a velocity magnitude that varies in time according to $v(t) = (2.00\ \text{m/s}^2)t + (0.600\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2$. What is the tension in the rope when the velocity of the box is 9.00 m/s?

5.69 ••• **CALC** A 3.00 kg box that is several hundred meters above the earth's surface is suspended from the end of a short vertical rope of negligible mass. A time-dependent upward force is applied to the upper end of the rope and results in a tension in the rope of $T(t) = (36.0\ \text{N/s})t$. The box is at rest at $t = 0$. The only forces on the box are the tension in the rope and gravity. (a) What is the velocity of the box at (i) $t = 1.00$ s and (ii) $t = 3.00$ s? (b) What is the maximum distance that the box descends below its initial position? (c) At what value of t does the box return to its initial position?

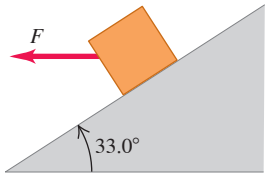
5.70 •• **CP** A 5.96 kg box sits at rest at the bottom of a ramp that is 8.00 m long and is inclined at 35.6° above the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction is $\mu_k = 0.23$, and the coefficient of static friction is $\mu_s = 0.43$. What constant force F, applied parallel to the surface of the ramp, is required to push the box to the top of the ramp in a time of 6.00 s?

5.71 •• When a crate with mass 25.0 kg is placed on a ramp that is inclined at an angle α below the horizontal, it slides down the ramp with an acceleration of 4.9 m/s^2. The ramp is not frictionless. To increase the acceleration of the crate, a downward vertical force $\vec{F}$ is applied to the top of the crate. What must F be in order to increase the acceleration of the crate so that it is 9.8 m/s^2? How does the value of F that you calculate compare to the weight of the crate?

5.72 •• A large crate is at rest on a horizontal floor. The coefficient of static friction between the crate and the floor is 0.400. A force $\vec{F}$ is applied to the crate in a direction 30.0° above the horizontal. The minimum value of F required to get the crate to start sliding is 380 N. What is the mass of the crate?

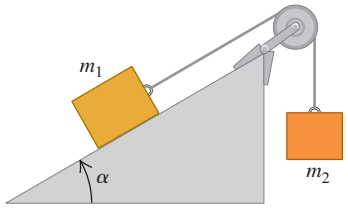
5.73 •• **CP** An 8.00 kg box sits on a ramp that is inclined at 33.0° above the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the surface of the ramp is $\mu_k = 0.300$. A constant *horizontal* force $F = 26.0$ N is applied to the box (**Fig. P5.73**), and the box moves down the ramp. If the box is initially at rest, what is its speed 2.00 s after the force is applied?

Figure **P5.73**



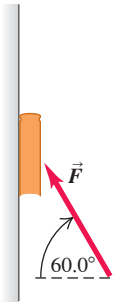
5.74 •• **CP** In **Fig. P5.74,** $m_1 = 20.0$ kg and $\alpha = 53.1°$. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the block of mass m_1 and the incline is $\mu_k = 0.40$. What must be the mass m_2 of the hanging block if it is to descend 12.0 m in the first 3.00 s after the system is released from rest?

Figure **P5.74**



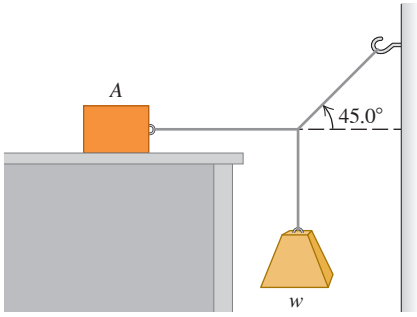
5.75 •• **CP** You place a book of mass 5.00 kg against a vertical wall. You apply a constant force $\vec{F}$ to the book, where $F = 96.0$ N and the force is at an angle of 60.0° above the horizontal (**Fig. P5.75**). The coefficient of kinetic friction between the book and the wall is 0.300. If the book is initially at rest, what is its speed after it has traveled 0.400 m up the wall?

Figure **P5.75**



5.76 •• Block A in **Fig. P5.76** weighs 64.5 N. The coefficient of static friction between the block and the surface on which it rests is 0.30. The weight w is 11.4 N, and the system is in equilibrium. (a) Find the friction force exerted on block A. (b) Find the maximum weight w for which the system will remain in equilibrium.

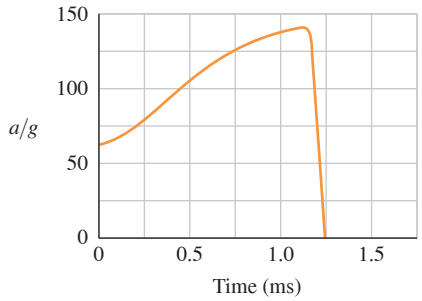
Figure **P5.76**



5.77 •• A block with mass m_1 is placed on an inclined plane with slope angle α and is connected to a hanging block with mass m_2 by a cord passing over a small, frictionless pulley (Fig. P5.74). The coefficient of static friction is μ_s, and the coefficient of kinetic friction is μ_k. (a) Find the value of m_2 for which the block of mass m_1 moves up the plane at constant speed once it is set in motion. (b) Find the value of m_2 for which the block of mass m_1 moves down the plane at constant speed once it is set in motion. (c) For what range of values of m_2 will the blocks remain at rest if they are released from rest?

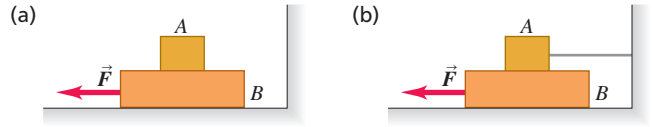
5.78 •• DATA BIO **The Flying Leap of a Flea.** High-speed motion pictures (3500 frames/second) of a jumping 210 μg flea yielded the data to plot the flea's acceleration as a function of time, as shown in **Fig. P5.78.** (See "The Flying Leap of the Flea," by M. Rothschild et al., *Scientific American,* November 1973.) This flea was about 2 mm long and jumped at a nearly vertical takeoff angle. Using the graph, (a) find the *initial* net external force on the flea. How does it compare to the flea's weight? (b) Find the *maximum* net external force on this jumping flea. When does this maximum force occur? (c) Use the graph to find the flea's maximum speed.

Figure P5.78



5.79 •• Block A in **Fig. P5.79** weighs 1.20 N, and block B weighs 3.60 N. The coefficient of kinetic friction between all surfaces is 0.300. Find the magnitude of the horizontal force $\vec{F}$ necessary to drag block

Figure P5.79



B to the left at constant speed (a) if A rests on B and moves with it (Fig. P5.79a), (b) if A is held at rest (Fig. P5.79b).

5.80 ••• CP **Lift Design.** You are designing an lift for a hospital. The force exerted on a passenger by the floor of the lift is not to exceed 1.60 times the passenger's weight. The lift accelerates upward with constant acceleration for a distance of 3.0 m and then starts to slow down. What is the maximum speed of the lift?

5.81 ••• CP CALC You are standing on a bathroom scale a lift in a tall building. Your mass is 64 kg. The lift starts from rest and travels upward with a speed that varies with time according to $v(t) = (3.0\ \text{m/s}^2)t + (0.20\ \text{m/s}^3)t^2$. When $t = 4.0$ s, what is the reading on the bathroom scale?

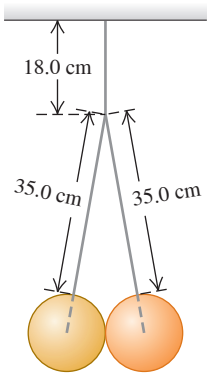
5.82 •• CP Consider the system shown in Fig. E5.34. As in Exercise 5.34, block A weighs 45.0 N and block B weighs 25.0 N. The system is released from rest, and block B has speed 3.30 m/s after it has descended 2.00 m. (a) While the blocks are moving, what is the tension in the rope connecting the blocks? (b) What is the coefficient of kinetic friction between block A and the tabletop?

5.83 •• CP Two blocks are suspended from opposite ends of a light rope that passes over a light, frictionless pulley. One block has mass m_1 and the other has mass m_2, where $m_2 > m_1$. The two blocks are released from rest, and the block with mass m_2 moves downward 5.00 m in 2.00 s after being released. While the blocks are moving, the tension in the rope is 16.0 N. Calculate m_1 and m_2.

5.84 ••• If the coefficient of static friction between a table and a uniform, massive rope is μ_s, what fraction of the rope can hang over the edge of the table without the rope sliding?

5.85 ••• Two identical 16.1 kg balls, each 21.1 cm in diameter, are suspended by two 35.0 cm wires (**Fig. P5.85**). The entire apparatus is supported by a single 18.0 cm wire, and the surfaces of the balls are perfectly smooth. (a) Find the tension in each of the three wires. (b) How hard does each ball push on the other one?

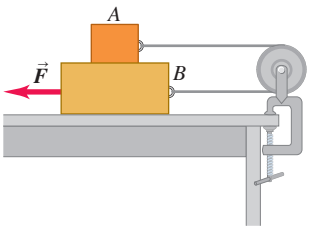
Figure P5.85



5.86 • CP **Traffic Court.** You are called as an expert witness in a trial for a traffic violation. The facts are these: A driver slammed on his brakes and came to a stop with constant acceleration. Measurements of his tires and the skid marks on the pavement indicate that he locked his car's wheels, the car traveled 23.3 m before stopping, and the coefficient of kinetic friction between the road and his tires was 0.750. He was charged with speeding in a 50 km/h zone but pleads innocent. What is your conclusion: guilty or innocent? How fast was he going when he hit his brakes?

5.87 ••• Block A in **Fig. P5.87** weighs 1.40 N, and block B weighs 3.66 N. The coefficient of kinetic friction between all surfaces is 0.36. Find the magnitude of the horizontal force $\vec{F}$ necessary to drag block B to the left at constant speed if A and B are connected by a light, flexible cord passing around a fixed, frictionless pulley.

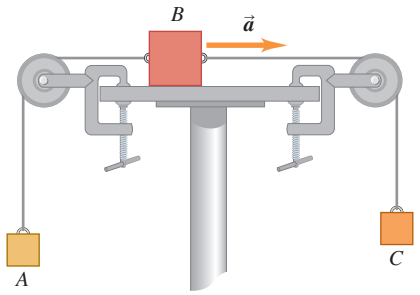
Figure P5.87



5.88 •• Block B has mass 5.00 kg and sits at rest on a horizontal, frictionless surface. Block A has mass 2.00 kg and sits at rest on top of block B. The coefficient of static friction between the two blocks is 0.400. A horizontal force $\vec{P}$ is then applied to block A. What is the largest value P can have and the blocks move together with equal accelerations?

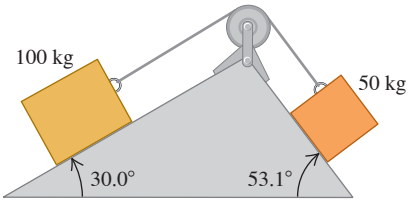
5.89 •• Block A in **Fig. P5.89** has mass 5.00 kg, and block B has mass 14.0 kg. The coefficient of kinetic friction between block B and the horizontal surface is 0.25. (a) What is the mass of block C if block B is moving to the right and speeding up with an acceleration of 2.70 m/s^2? (b) What is the tension in each cord when block B has this acceleration?

Figure P5.89



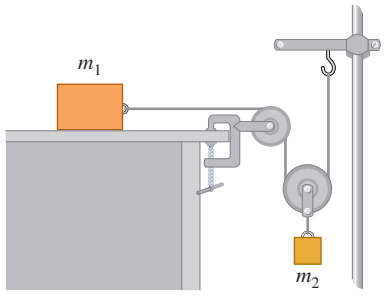
5.90 •• Two blocks connected by a cord passing over a small, frictionless pulley rest on frictionless planes (**Fig. P5.90**). (a) Which way will the system move when the blocks are released from rest? (b) What is the acceleration of the blocks? (c) What is the tension in the cord?

Figure P5.90



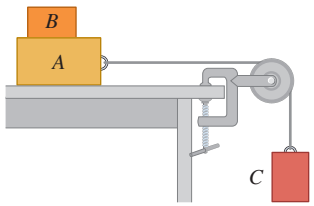
5.91 •• In terms of m_1, m_2, and g, find the acceleration of each block in **Fig. P5.91.** There is no friction anywhere in the system.

Figure P5.91



5.92 ••• Block B, with mass 5.00 kg, rests on block A, with mass 8.00 kg, which in turn is on a horizontal tabletop (**Fig. P5.92**). There is no friction between block A and the tabletop, but the coefficient of static friction between blocks A and B is 0.750. A light string attached to block A passes over a frictionless, massless pulley, and block C is suspended from the other end of the string. What is the largest mass that block C can have so that blocks A and B still slide together when the system is released from rest?

Figure P5.92

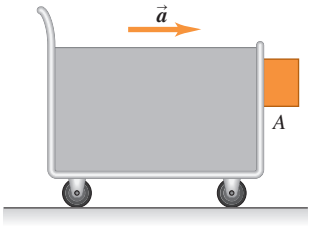


5.93 •• Consider two blocks connected as shown in Fig. P5.87. Block A has mass 2.00 kg, and block B has mass 5.00 kg. The table on which B sits is frictionless, the cord connecting the blocks is light and flexible, and the pulley is light and frictionless. The horizontal force $\vec{F}$ has magnitude $F = 20.0$ N, and block B moves to the left with an acceleration of 1.50 m/s^2. (a) What is the tension in the cord that connects the two blocks? (b) What is the coefficient of kinetic friction that one block exerts on the other?

5.94 •• **Friction in a Lift.** You are riding in a lift on the way to the 18th floor of your dormitory. The lift is accelerating upward with $a = 1.81$ m/s^2. Beside you is the box containing your new computer; the box and its contents have a total mass of 29.0 kg. While the lift is accelerating upward, you push horizontally on the box to slide it at constant speed toward the lift door. If the coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the lift floor is $\mu_k = 0.31$, what magnitude of force must you apply?

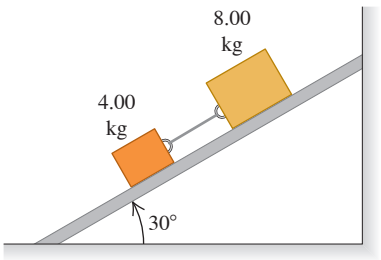
5.95 • A block is placed against the vertical front of a cart (**Fig. P5.95**). What acceleration must the cart have so that block A does not fall? The coefficient of static friction between the block and the cart is μ_s. How would an observer on the cart describe the behavior of the block?

Figure P5.95



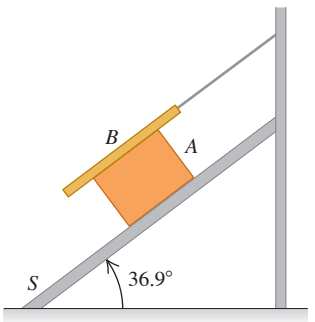
5.96 ••• Two blocks, with masses 4.00 kg and 8.00 kg, are connected by a string and slide down a 30.0° inclined plane (**Fig. P5.96**). The coefficient of kinetic friction between the 4.00 kg block and the plane is 0.25; that between the 8.00 kg block and the plane is 0.35. Calculate (a) the acceleration of each block and (b) the tension in the string. (c) What happens if the positions of the blocks are reversed, so that the 4.00 kg block is uphill from the 8.00 kg block?

Figure P5.96



5.97 ••• Block A, with weight $3w$, slides down an inclined plane S of slope angle 36.9° at a constant speed while plank B, with weight w, rests on top of A. The plank is attached by a cord to the wall (**Fig. P5.97**). (a) Draw a diagram of all the forces acting on block A. (b) If the coefficient of kinetic friction is the same between A and B and between S and A, determine its value.

Figure P5.97



5.98 •• Jack sits in the chair of a Ferris wheel that is rotating at a constant 0.100 rev/s. As Jack passes through the highest point of his circular path, the upward force that the chair exerts on him is equal to one-fourth of his weight. What is the radius of the circle in which Jack travels? Treat him as a point mass.

5.99 •• On the now defunct ride "Spindletop" at the amusement park Six Flags Over Texas, people stood against the inner wall of a hollow vertical cylinder with radius 2.5 m. The cylinder started to rotate, and when it reached a constant rotation rate of 0.60 rev/s, the floor dropped about 0.5 m. The people remained pinned against the wall without touching the floor. (a) Draw a force diagram for a person on this ride after the floor has dropped. (b) What minimum coefficient of static friction was required for the person not to slide downward to the new position of the floor? (c) Does your answer in part (b) depend on the person's mass? (*Note:* When such a ride is over, the cylinder is slowly brought to rest. As it slows down, people slide down the wall to the floor.)

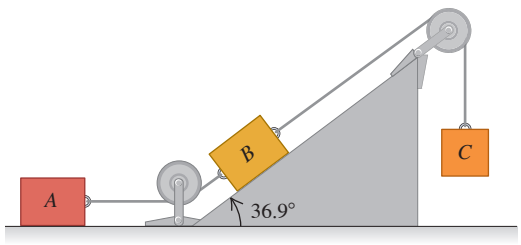
5.100 •• A large piece of ice breaks loose from the roof of a chalet at a ski resort and slides across the snow-covered terrain. It passes over the top of a hill in a path that has the shape of the arc of a circle of radius R. What is the speed v of the piece of ice as it passes over the top of the hill if the normal force exerted on it at this point is half its weight?

5.101 ••• A racetrack curve has radius 90.0 m and is banked at an angle of 18.0°. The coefficient of static friction between the tires and the roadway is 0.400. A race car with mass 1200 kg rounds the curve with the maximum speed to avoid skidding. (a) As the car rounds the curve, what is the normal force exerted on it by the road? What are the car's (b) radial acceleration and (c) speed?

5.102 ••• A racetrack curve has radius 120.0 m and is banked at an angle of 18.0°. The coefficient of static friction between the tires and the roadway is 0.300. A race car with mass 900 kg rounds the curve with the minimum speed needed to not slide down the banking. (a) As the car rounds the curve, what is the normal force exerted on it by the road? (b) What is the car's speed?

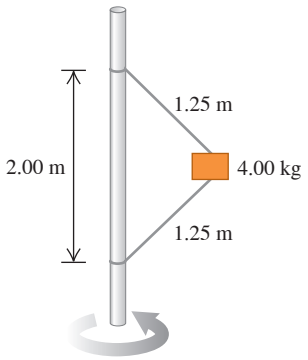
5.103 ••• Blocks A, B, and C are placed as in **Fig. P5.103** and connected by ropes of negligible mass. Both A and B weigh 23.8 N each, and the coefficient of kinetic friction between each block and the surface is 0.32. Block C descends with constant velocity. (a) Draw separate free-body diagrams showing the forces acting on A and on B. (b) Find the tension in the rope connecting blocks A and B. (c) What is the weight of block C? (d) If the rope connecting A and B were cut, what would be the acceleration of C?

Figure **P5.103**



5.104 ••• A 4.00 kg block is attached to a vertical rod by means of two strings. When the system rotates about the axis of the rod, the strings are extended as shown in **Fig. P5.104** and the tension in the upper string is 80.0 N. (a) What is the tension in the lower cord? (b) How many revolutions per minute does the system make? (c) Find the number of revolutions per minute at which the lower cord just goes slack. (d) Explain what happens if the number of revolutions per minute is less than that in part (c).

Figure **P5.104**

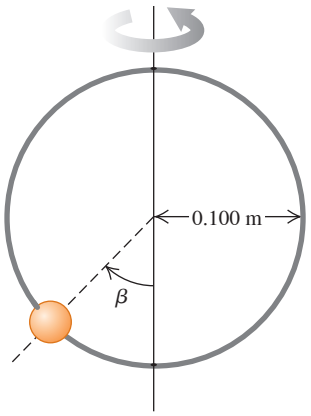


5.105 •• **CALC** You throw a rock downward into water with a speed of $3mg/k$, where k is the coefficient in Eq. (5.5). Assume that the relationship between fluid resistance and speed is as given in Eq. (5.5), and calculate the speed of the rock as a function of time.

5.106 ••• A box with mass m sits at the bottom of a long ramp that is sloped upward at an angle α above the horizontal. You give the box a quick shove, and after it leaves your hands it is moving up the ramp with an initial speed v_0. The box travels a distance d up the ramp and then slides back down. When it returns to its starting point, the speed of the box is half the speed it started with; it has speed $v_0/2$. What is the coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the ramp? (Your answer should depend on only α.)

5.107 •• A small bead can slide without friction on a circular hoop that is in a vertical plane and has a radius of 0.100 m. The hoop rotates at a constant rate of 4.80 rev/s about a vertical diameter (**Fig. P5.107**). (a) Find the angle β at which the bead is in vertical equilibrium. (It has a radial acceleration toward the axis.) (b) Is it possible for the bead to "ride" at the same elevation as the center of the hoop? (c) What will happen if the hoop rotates at 1.00 rev/s?

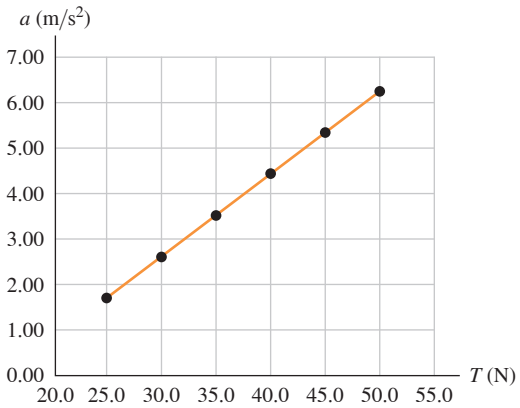
Figure **P5.107**



5.108 •• Gina works in a traveling funfair. She rides a motorcycle inside a hollow, transparent plastic sphere. After gaining sufficient speed, she travels in a vertical circle with radius 14.2 m. She has mass 68.0 kg, and her motorcycle has mass 40.0 kg. (a) What minimum speed must she have at the top of the circle for the motorcycle tires to remain in contact with the sphere? (b) At the bottom of the circle, her speed is twice the value calculated in part (a). What is the magnitude of the normal force exerted on the motorcycle by the sphere at this point?

5.109 •• **DATA** In your physics lab, a block of mass m is at rest on a horizontal surface. You attach a light cord to the block and apply a horizontal force to the free end of the cord. You find that the block remains at rest until the tension T in the cord exceeds 20.0 N. For $T > 20.0$ N, you measure the acceleration of the block when T is maintained at a constant value, and you plot the results (**Fig. P5.109**). The equation for the straight line that best fits your data is $a = [0.182\ \text{m}/(\text{N}\cdot\text{s}^2)]T - 2.842\ \text{m}/\text{s}^2$. For this block and surface, what are (a) the coefficient of static friction and (b) the coefficient of kinetic friction? (c) If the experiment were done on the earth's moon, where g is much smaller than on the earth, would the graph of a versus T still be fit well by a straight line? If so, how would the slope and intercept of the line differ from the values in Fig. P5.109? Or, would each of them be the same?

Figure **P5.109**



5.110 •• **DATA** A road heading due east passes over a small hill. You drive a car of mass m at constant speed v over the top of the hill, where the shape of the roadway is well approximated as an arc of a circle with radius R. Sensors have been placed on the road surface there to measure the downward force that cars exert on the surface at various speeds. The table gives values of this force versus speed for your car:

Speed (*m/s*)	6.00	8.00	10.0	12.0	14.0	16.0
Force (N)	8100	7690	7050	6100	5200	4200

Treat the car as a particle. (a) Plot the values in such a way that they are well fitted by a straight line. You might need to raise the speed, the force, or both to some power. (b) Use your graph from part (a) to calculate m and R. (c) What maximum speed can the car have at the top of the hill and still not lose contact with the road?

5.111 •• **DATA** You are an engineer working for a manufacturing company. You are designing a mechanism that uses a cable to drag heavy metal blocks a distance of 8.00 m along a ramp that is sloped at 40.0° above the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between these blocks and the incline is $\mu_k = 0.350$. Each block has a mass of 2170 kg. The block will be placed on the bottom of the ramp, the cable will be attached, and the block will then be given just enough of a momentary push to overcome static friction. The block is then to accelerate at a constant rate to move the 8.00 m in 4.20 s. The cable is made of wire rope and is parallel to the ramp surface. The table gives the breaking strength of the cable as a function of its diameter; the safe load tension, which is 20% of the breaking strength; and the mass per meter of the cable:

Cable Diameter (mm)	**Breaking Strength (kN)**	**Safe Load (kN)**	**Mass per Meter (kg/m)**
6.4	24.4	4.89	0.16
9.5	54.3	10.9	0.36
13	95.2	19.0	0.63
16	149	29.7	0.98
19	212	42.3	1.41
22	286	57.4	1.92
26	372	74.3	2.50

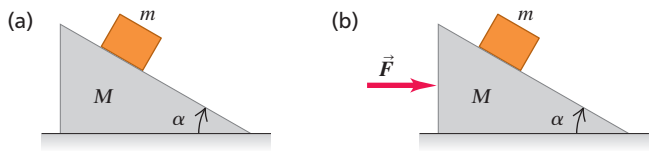
Source: www.engineeringtoolbox.com

(a) What is the minimum diameter of the cable that can be used to pull a block up the ramp without exceeding the safe load value of the tension in the cable? Ignore the mass of the cable, and select the diameter from those listed in the table. (b) You need to know safe load values for diameters that aren't in the table, so you hypothesize that the breaking strength and safe load limit are proportional to the cross-sectional area of the cable. Draw a graph that tests this hypothesis, and discuss its accuracy. What is your estimate of the safe load value for a cable with diameter 14.5 mm? (c) The coefficient of static friction between the crate and the ramp is $\mu_s = 0.620$, which is nearly twice the value of the coefficient of kinetic friction. If the machinery jams and the block stops in the middle of the ramp, what is the tension in the cable? Is it larger or smaller than the value when the block is moving? (d) Is the actual tension in the cable, at its upper end, larger or smaller than the value calculated when you ignore the mass of the cable? If the cable is 9.00 m long, how accurate is it to ignore the cable's mass?

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

5.112 ••• **Moving Wedge.** A wedge with mass M rests on a frictionless, horizontal tabletop. A block with mass m is placed on the wedge (**Fig. P5.112a**). There is no friction between the block and the wedge. The system is released from rest. (a) Calculate the acceleration of the wedge and the horizontal and vertical components of the acceleration of the block. (b) Do your answers to part (a) reduce to the correct results when M is very large? (c) As seen by a stationary observer, what is the shape of the trajectory of the block?

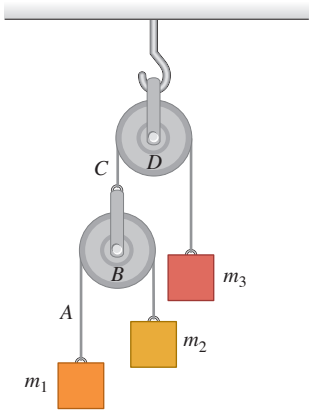
Figure **P5.112**



5.113 ••• A wedge with mass M rests on a frictionless, horizontal tabletop. A block with mass m is placed on the wedge, and a horizontal force $\vec{F}$ is applied to the wedge (Fig. P5.112b). What must the magnitude of $\vec{F}$ be if the block is to remain at a constant height above the tabletop?

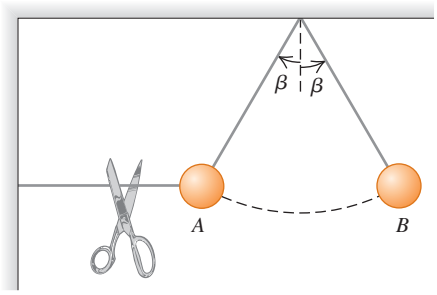
5.114 ●●● **Double Atwood's Machine.** In **Fig. P5.114** masses m_1 and m_2 are connected by a light string A over a light, frictionless pulley B. The axle of pulley B is connected by a light string C over a light, frictionless pulley D to a mass m_3. Pulley D is suspended from the ceiling by an attachment to its axle. The system is released from rest. In terms of m_1, m_2, m_3, and g, what are (a) the acceleration of block m_3; (b) the acceleration of pulley B; (c) the acceleration of block m_1; (d) the acceleration of block m_2; (e) the tension in string A; (f) the tension in string C? (g) What do your expressions give for the special case of $m_1 = m_2$ and $m_3 = m_1 + m_2$? Is this reasonable?

Figure **P5.114**



5.115 ●●● A ball is held at rest at position A in **Fig. P5.115** by two light strings. The horizontal string is cut, and the ball starts swinging as a pendulum. Position B is the farthest to the right that the ball can go as it swings back and forth. What is the ratio of the tension in the supporting string at B to its value at A before the string was cut?

Figure **P5.115**



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

Friction and Climbing Shoes. Shoes made for the sports of bouldering and rock climbing are designed to provide a great deal of friction between the foot and the surface of the ground. Such shoes on smooth rock might have a coefficient of static friction of 1.2 and a coefficient of kinetic friction of 0.90.

5.116 For a person wearing these shoes, what's the maximum angle (with respect to the horizontal) of a smooth rock that can be walked on without slipping? (a) 42°; (b) 50°; (c) 64°; (d) larger than 90°.

5.117 If the person steps onto a smooth rock surface that's inclined at an angle large enough that these shoes begin to slip, what will happen? (a) She will slide a short distance and stop; (b) she will accelerate down the surface; (c) she will slide down the surface at constant speed; (d) we can't tell what will happen without knowing her mass.

5.118 A person wearing these shoes stands on a smooth, horizontal rock. She pushes against the ground to begin running. What is the maximum horizontal acceleration she can have without slipping? (a) $0.20g$; (b) $0.75g$; (c) $0.90g$; (d) $1.2g$.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iii) The upward force exerted by the air has the same magnitude as the force of gravity. Although the seed and pappus are descending, their vertical velocity is constant, so their vertical acceleration is zero. According to Newton's first law, the net vertical force on the seed and pappus must also be zero. The individual vertical forces must balance.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP5.5.1 (a) 425 N (b) 255 N
VP5.5.2 (a) 367 N (b) 522 N
VP5.5.3 (a) 21.8° (b) 637 N
VP5.5.4 $w(1 - \sin\theta)$, less than w
VP5.15.1 (a) 79.3 N (b) 298 N
VP5.15.2 (a) 90.2 N (b) 348 N
VP5.15.3 (a) 449 N (b) 0.670 m/s^2, speeding up
VP5.15.4 $\mu_s = (T_{\min}\cos\theta)/(mg - T_{\min}\sin\theta)$
VP5.22.1 (a) 0.274 m (b) 1.74 s (c) 2.61 N
VP5.22.2 (a) 19.0 m (b) 8.22 m/s^2 (c) 819 N
VP5.22.3 (a) 75.0° (b) 3.03×10^3 N, 3.86 times greater
VP5.22.4 (a) $mg\sqrt{x^2 - 1}$ (b) $\dfrac{v^2}{g\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$

Bridging Problem

(a) $T_{\max} = 2\pi\sqrt{\dfrac{h(\cos\beta + \mu_s\sin\beta)}{g\tan\beta(\sin\beta - \mu_s\cos\beta)}}$

(b) $T_{\min} = 2\pi\sqrt{\dfrac{h(\cos\beta - \mu_s\sin\beta)}{g\tan\beta(\sin\beta + \mu_s\cos\beta)}}$

? A baseball pitcher does work with his throwing arm to give the ball a property called kinetic energy, which depends on the ball's mass and speed. Which has the greatest kinetic energy? (i) A ball of mass 0.145 kg moving at 20.0 m/s; (ii) a smaller ball of mass 0.0145 kg moving at 200 m/s; (iii) a larger ball of mass 1.45 kg moving at 2.00 m/s; (iv) all three balls have the same kinetic energy; (v) it depends on the directions in which the balls move.

6 Work and Kinetic Energy

Suppose you try to find the speed of an arrow that has been shot from a bow. You apply Newton's laws and all the problem-solving techniques that we've learned, but you run across a major stumbling block: After the archer releases the arrow, the bow string exerts a *varying* force that depends on the arrow's position. As a result, the simple methods that we've learned aren't enough to calculate the speed. Never fear; we aren't by any means finished with mechanics, and there are other methods for dealing with such problems.

The new method that we're about to introduce uses the ideas of *work* and *energy*. The importance of the energy idea stems from the *principle of conservation of energy*: Energy is a quantity that can be converted from one form to another but cannot be created or destroyed. In an automobile engine, chemical energy stored in the fuel is converted partially to the energy of the automobile's motion and partially to thermal energy. In a microwave oven, electromagnetic energy obtained from your power company is converted to thermal energy of the food being cooked. In these and all other processes, the *total* energy—the sum of all energy present in all different forms—remains the same. No exception has ever been found.

We'll use the energy idea throughout the rest of this book to study a tremendous range of physical phenomena. This idea will help you understand how automotive engines work, how a camera's flash unit can produce a short burst of light, and the meaning of Einstein's famous equation $E = mc^2$.

In this chapter, though, our concentration will be on mechanics. We'll learn about one important form of energy called *kinetic energy,* or energy of motion, and how it relates to the concept of *work*. We'll also consider *power,* which is the time rate of doing work. In Chapter 7 we'll expand these ideas into a deeper understanding of the concepts of energy and the conservation of energy.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **6.1** What it means for a force to do work on an object, and how to calculate the amount of work done.
- **6.2** The definition of the kinetic energy (energy of motion) of an object, and how the total work done on an object changes the object's kinetic energy.
- **6.3** How to use the relationship between total work and change in kinetic energy when the forces are not constant, the object follows a curved path, or both.
- **6.4** How to solve problems involving power (the rate of doing work).

You'll need to review...

- **1.10** The scalar product (or dot product) of two vectors.
- **2.4** Straight-line motion with constant acceleration.
- **4.3** Newton's second law.
- **4.5** Newton's third law.
- **5.1, 5.2** Using components to find the net force.

6.1 WORK

You'd probably agree that it's hard work to pull a heavy sofa across the room, to lift a stack of encyclopedias from the floor to a high shelf, or to push a stalled car off the road. Indeed, all of these examples agree with the everyday meaning of "work"—any activity that requires muscular or mental effort.

Figure 6.1 These people are doing work as they push on the car because they exert a force on the car as it moves.

In physics, work has a much more precise definition. By making use of this definition we'll find that in any motion, no matter how complicated, the total work done on a particle by all forces that act on it equals the change in its *kinetic energy*—a quantity that's related to the particle's mass and speed. This relationship holds even when the forces acting on the particle aren't constant, a situation that can be difficult or impossible to handle with the techniques you learned in Chapters 4 and 5. The ideas of work and kinetic energy enable us to solve problems in mechanics that we could not have attempted before.

In this section we'll see how work is defined and how to calculate work in a variety of situations involving *constant* forces. Later in this chapter we'll relate work and kinetic energy, and then apply these ideas to problems in which the forces are *not* constant.

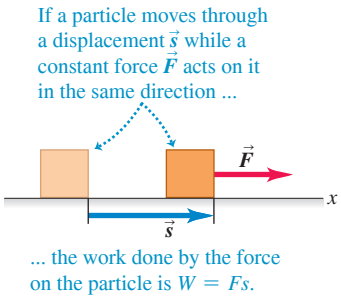
The three examples of work described above—pulling a sofa, lifting encyclopedias, and pushing a car—have something in common. In each case you do work by exerting a *force* on an object while that object *moves* from one place to another—that is, undergoes a *displacement* (**Fig. 6.1**). You do more work if the force is greater (you push harder on the car) or if the displacement is greater (you push the car farther down the road).

The physicist's definition of work is based on these observations. Consider an object that undergoes a displacement of magnitude s along a straight line. (For now, we'll assume that any object we discuss can be treated as a particle so that we can ignore any rotation or changes in shape of the object.) While the object moves, a constant force $\vec{F}$ acts on it in the same direction as the displacement $\vec{s}$ (**Fig. 6.2**). We define the **work** W done by this constant force under these circumstances as the product of the force magnitude F and the displacement magnitude s:

$$W = Fs \qquad \text{(constant force in direction of straight-line displacement)} \qquad (6.1)$$

The work done on the object is greater if either the force F or the displacement s is greater, in agreement with our observations above.

Figure 6.2 The work done by a constant force acting in the same direction as the displacement.



CAUTION **Work = *W*, weight = *w*** Don't confuse uppercase W (work) with lowercase w (weight). Though the symbols are similar, work and weight are different quantities.

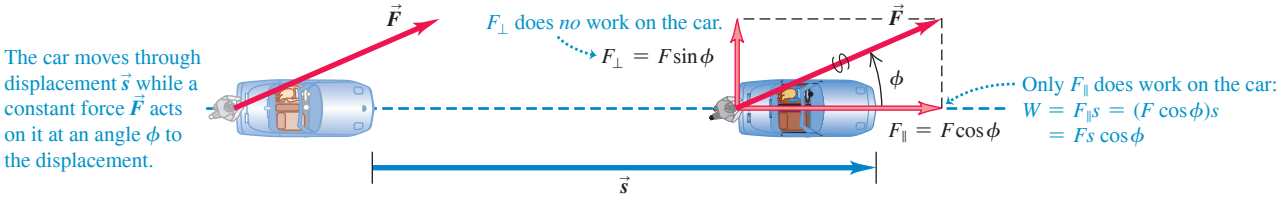
The SI unit of work is the **joule** (abbreviated J, pronounced "jool," and named in honor of the 19th-century English physicist James Prescott Joule). From Eq. (6.1) we see that in any system of units, the unit of work is the unit of force multiplied by the unit of distance. In SI units the unit of force is the newton and the unit of distance is the meter, so 1 joule is equivalent to 1 *newton-meter* (N · m):

$$1 \text{ joule} = (1 \text{ newton})(1 \text{ meter}) \quad \text{or} \quad 1 \text{ J} = 1 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$$

If you lift an object with a weight of 1 N (about the weight of a medium-sized apple) a distance of 1 m at a constant speed, you exert a 1 N force on the object in the same direction as its 1 m displacement and so do 1 J of work on it.

As an illustration of Eq. (6.1), think of a person pushing a stalled car. If he pushes the car through a displacement $\vec{s}$ with a constant force $\vec{F}$ in the direction of motion, the amount of work he does on the car is given by Eq. (6.1): $W = Fs$. But what if the person pushes at an angle ϕ to the car's displacement (**Fig. 6.3**)? Then $\vec{F}$ has a component $F_\parallel = F\cos\phi$ in the direction of the displacement $\vec{s}$ and a component $F_\perp = F\sin\phi$ that acts perpendicular to $\vec{s}$. (Other forces must act on the car so that it moves along $\vec{s}$, not

Figure 6.3 The work done by a constant force acting at an angle to the displacement.



in the direction of $\vec{F}$. We're interested in only the work that the person does, however, so we'll consider only the force he exerts.) Only the parallel component $F_\parallel$ is effective in moving the car, so we define the work as the product of this force component and the magnitude of the displacement. Hence $W = F_\parallel s = (F\cos\phi)s$, or

Work done on a particle by **constant force** $\vec{F}$ during **straight-line displacement** $\vec{s}$: $W = Fs\cos\phi$ (Magnitude of $\vec{F}$; Angle between $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$; Magnitude of $\vec{s}$) (6.2)

If $\phi = 0$, so that $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$ are in the same direction, then $\cos\phi = 1$ and we are back to Eq. (6.1).

Equation (6.2) has the form of the *scalar product* of two vectors, which we introduced in Section 1.10: $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = AB\cos\phi$. You may want to review that definition. Hence we can write Equation (6.2) more compactly as

Work done on a particle by **constant force** $\vec{F}$ during **straight-line displacement** $\vec{s}$: $W = \vec{F}\cdot\vec{s}$ (Scalar product (dot product) of vectors $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$) (6.3)

CAUTION **Work is a scalar** An essential point: Work is a *scalar* quantity, even though it's calculated from two vector quantities (force and displacement). A 5 N force toward the east acting on an object that moves 6 m to the east does the same amount of work as a 5 N force toward the north acting on an object that moves 6 m to the north.

BIO APPLICATION Work and Muscle Fibers Our ability to do work with our bodies comes from our skeletal muscles. The fiberlike cells of skeletal muscle, shown in this micrograph, can shorten, causing the muscle as a whole to contract and to exert force on the tendons to which it attaches. Muscle can exert a force of about 0.3 N per square millimeter of cross-sectional area: The greater the cross-sectional area, the more fibers the muscle has and the more force it can exert when it contracts.

EXAMPLE 6.1 Work done by a constant force

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

(a) Steve exerts a steady force of magnitude 210 N on the stalled car in Fig. 6.3 as he pushes it a distance of 18 m. The car also has a flat tire, so to make the car track straight Steve must push at an angle of 30° to the direction of motion. How much work does Steve do? (b) In a helpful mood, Steve pushes a second stalled car with a steady force $\vec{F} = (160\text{ N})\hat{\imath} - (40\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$. The displacement of the car is $\vec{s} = (14\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (11\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$. How much work does Steve do in this case?

IDENTIFY and SET UP In both parts (a) and (b), the target variable is the work W done by Steve. In each case the force is constant and the displacement is along a straight line, so we can use Eq. (6.2) or (6.3). The angle between $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$ is given in part (a), so we can apply Eq. (6.2) directly. In part (b) both $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$ are given in terms of components, so it's best to calculate the scalar product by using Eq. (1.19): $\vec{A}\cdot\vec{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z$.

EXECUTE (a) From Eq. (6.2),

$$W = Fs\cos\phi = (210\text{ N})(18\text{ m})\cos 30^\circ = 3.3\times10^3\text{ J}$$

(b) The components of $\vec{F}$ are $F_x = 160$ N and $F_y = -40$ N, and the components of $\vec{s}$ are $x = 14$ m and $y = 11$ m. (There are no z-components for either vector.) Hence, using Eqs. (1.19) and (6.3), we have

$$W = \vec{F}\cdot\vec{s} = F_xx + F_yy$$
$$= (160\text{ N})(14\text{ m}) + (-40\text{ N})(11\text{ m}) = 1.8\times10^3\text{ J}$$

EVALUATE In each case the work that Steve does is more than 1000 J. This shows that 1 joule is a rather small amount of work.

KEYCONCEPT To find the work W done by a constant force $\vec{F}$ acting on an object that undergoes a straight-line displacement $\vec{s}$, calculate the scalar product of these two vectors: $W = \vec{F}\cdot\vec{s}$.

Work: Positive, Negative, or Zero

In Example 6.1 the work done in pushing the cars was positive. But it's important to understand that work can also be negative or zero. This is the essential way in which work as defined in physics differs from the "everyday" definition of work. When the force has a component in the *same direction* as the displacement (ϕ between 0° and 90°), $\cos\phi$ in Eq. (6.2) is positive and the work W is *positive* (**Fig. 6.4a**, next page). When the force has a component *opposite* to the displacement (ϕ between 90° and 180°), $\cos\phi$ is negative and the work is *negative* (Fig. 6.4b). When the force is *perpendicular* to the displacement, $\phi = 90°$ and the work done by the force is *zero* (Fig. 6.4c). The cases of zero work and negative work bear closer examination, so let's look at some examples.

Figure 6.4 A constant force $\vec{F}$ can do positive, negative, or zero work depending on the angle between $\vec{F}$ and the displacement $\vec{s}$.

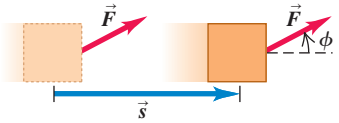
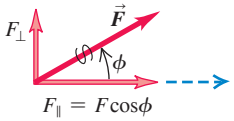
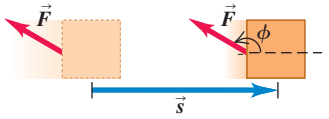
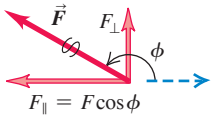
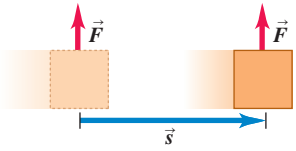
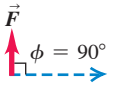
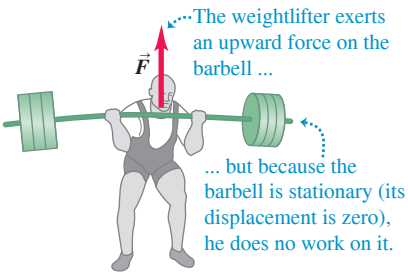
Direction of Force (or Force Component)	Situation	Force Diagram
(a) **Force $\vec{F}$ has a component in direction of displacement:** $W = F_{\parallel}s = (F\cos\phi)s$ Work is *positive*.		
(b) **Force $\vec{F}$ has a component opposite to direction of displacement:** $W = F_{\parallel}s = (F\cos\phi)s$ Work is *negative* (because $F\cos\phi$ is negative for $90° < \phi < 180°$).		
(c) **Force $\vec{F}$ (or force component $F_{\perp}$) is perpendicular to direction of displacement:** The force (or force component) does *no* work on the object.		

Figure 6.5 A weightlifter does no work on a barbell as long as he holds it stationary.

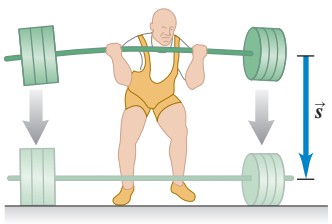


There are many situations in which forces act but do zero work. You might think it's "hard work" to hold a barbell motionless in the air for 5 minutes (**Fig. 6.5**). But in fact, you aren't doing any work on the barbell because there is no displacement. (Holding the barbell requires you to keep the muscles of your arms contracted, and this consumes energy stored in carbohydrates and fat within your body. As these energy stores are used up, your muscles feel fatigued even though you do no work on the barbell.) Even when you carry a book while you walk with constant velocity on a level floor, you do no work on the book. It has a displacement, but the (vertical) supporting force that you exert on the book has no component in the direction of the (horizontal) motion. Then $\phi = 90°$ in Eq. (6.2), and $\cos\phi = 0$. When an object slides along a surface, the work done on the object by the normal force is zero; and when a ball on a string moves in uniform circular motion, the work done on the ball by the tension in the string is also zero. In both cases the work is zero because the force has no component in the direction of motion.

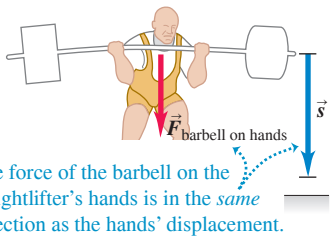
What does it mean to do *negative* work? The answer comes from Newton's third law of motion. When a weightlifter lowers a barbell as in **Fig. 6.6a**, his hands and the barbell move together with the same displacement $\vec{s}$. The barbell exerts a force $\vec{F}_{\text{barbell on hands}}$ on his hands in the same direction as the hands' displacement, so the work done by the *barbell* on his *hands* is positive (Fig. 6.6b). But by Newton's third law the weightlifter's hands exert an equal and opposite force $\vec{F}_{\text{hands on barbell}} = -\vec{F}_{\text{barbell on hands}}$ on the barbell (Fig. 6.6c). This force, which keeps the barbell from crashing to the floor, acts opposite to the barbell's displacement. Thus the work done by his *hands* on the *barbell* is negative.

Figure 6.6 This weightlifter's hands do negative work on a barbell as the barbell does positive work on his hands.

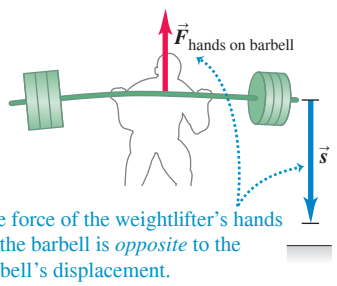
(a) A weightlifter lowers a barbell to the floor.



(b) The barbell does *positive* work on the weightlifter's hands.



(c) The weightlifter's hands do *negative* work on the barbell.



Because the weightlifter's hands and the barbell have the same displacement, the work that his hands do on the barbell is just the negative of the work that the barbell does on his hands. In general, when one object does negative work on a second object, the second object does an equal amount of *positive* work on the first object.

As a final note, you should review Fig. 6.4 to help remember when work is positive, when it is zero, and when it is negative.

CAUTION **Keep track of who's doing the work** We always speak of work done *on* a particular object *by* a specific force. Always specify exactly what force is doing the work. When you lift a book, you exert an upward force on it and the book's displacement is upward, so the work done by the lifting force on the book is positive. But the work done by the *gravitational* force (weight) on a book being lifted is *negative* because the downward gravitational force is opposite to the upward displacement.

Total Work

How do we calculate work when *several* forces act on an object? One way is to use Eq. (6.2) or (6.3) to compute the work done by each separate force. Then, because work is a scalar quantity, the *total* work W_{tot} done on the object by all the forces is the algebraic sum of the quantities of work done by the individual forces. An alternative way to find the total work W_{tot} is to compute the vector sum of the forces (that is, the net force) and then use this vector sum as $\vec{F}$ in Eq. (6.2) or (6.3). The following example illustrates both of these techniques.

EXAMPLE 6.2 Work done by several forces

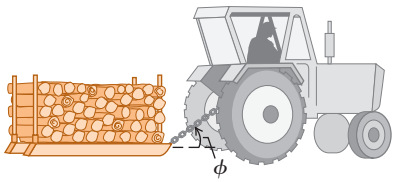
WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A farmer hitches her tractor to a sled loaded with firewood and pulls it a distance of 20 m along level ground (**Fig. 6.7a**). The total weight of sled and load is 14,700 N. The tractor exerts a constant 5000 N force at an angle of 36.9° above the horizontal. A 3500 N friction force opposes the sled's motion. Find the work done by each force acting on the sled and the total work done by all the forces.

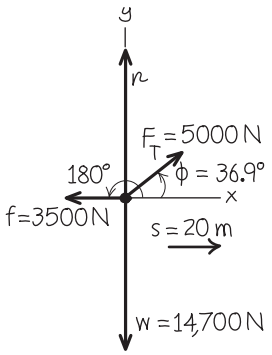
IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll find the total work in two ways: (1) by adding the work done on the sled by each force and (2) by finding the work done by the net force on the sled. We first draw a free-body diagram showing all of the forces acting on the sled, and we choose a coordinate system (Fig. 6.7b). Each of these forces—weight, normal force, force of the tractor, and friction force—is constant, the sled's displacement is along a straight line, and we know the angle between the displacement (in the positive x-direction) and each force. Hence we can use Eq. (6.2) to calculate the work each force does.

Figure 6.7 Calculating the work done on a sled of firewood being pulled by a tractor.

(a)



(b) Free-body diagram for sled



As in Chapter 5, we'll find the net force by adding the components of the four forces. Newton's second law tells us that because the sled's motion is purely horizontal, the net force can have only a horizontal component.

EXECUTE (1) The work W_w done by the weight is zero because its direction is perpendicular to the displacement (compare Fig. 6.4c). For the same reason, the work W_n done by the normal force is also zero. (Note that we don't need to calculate the magnitude n to conclude this.) So $W_w = W_n = 0$.

That leaves the work W_{T} done by the force F_{T} exerted by the tractor and the work W_f done by the friction force f. From Eq. (6.2),

$$W_{\text{T}} = F_{\text{T}} s \cos 36.9° = (5000\ \text{N})(20\ \text{m})(0.800) = 80{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$$
$$= 80\ \text{kJ}$$

The friction force $\vec{f}$ is opposite to the displacement, so for this force $\phi = 180°$ and $\cos\phi = -1$. Again from Eq. (6.2),

$$W_f = fs \cos 180° = (3500\ \text{N})(20\ \text{m})(-1) = -70{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$$
$$= -70\ \text{kJ}$$

The total work W_{tot} done on the sled by all forces is the *algebraic* sum of the work done by the individual forces:

$$W_{\text{tot}} = W_w + W_n + W_{\text{T}} + W_f = 0 + 0 + 80\ \text{kJ} + (-70\ \text{kJ})$$
$$= 10\ \text{kJ}$$

(2) In the second approach, we first find the *vector* sum of all the forces (the net force) and then use it to compute the total work. It's easiest to find the net force by using components. From Fig. 6.7b,

$$\Sigma F_x = F_{\text{T}} \cos\phi + (-f) = (5000\ \text{N}) \cos 36.9° - 3500\ \text{N}$$
$$= 500\ \text{N}$$
$$\Sigma F_y = F_{\text{T}} \sin\phi + n + (-w)$$
$$= (5000\ \text{N}) \sin 36.9° + n - 14{,}700\ \text{N}$$

Continued

We don't need the second equation; we know that the y-component of force is perpendicular to the displacement, so it does no work. Besides, there is no y-component of acceleration, so ΣF_y must be zero anyway. The total work is therefore the work done by the total x-component:

$$W_{\text{tot}} = (\Sigma \vec{F}) \cdot \vec{s} = (\Sigma F_x)s = (500\ \text{N})(20\ \text{m}) = 10{,}000\ \text{J} = 10\ \text{kJ}$$

EVALUATE We get the same result for W_{tot} with either method, as we should. Note that the net force in the x-direction is *not* zero, and so the sled must accelerate as it moves. In Section 6.2 we'll return to this example and see how to use the concept of work to explore the sled's changes of speed.

KEYCONCEPT To find the total work done on a moving object, calculate the sum of the amounts of work done by each force that acts on the object. The total work also equals the work done by the *net* force on the object.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 6.1 An electron moves in a straight line toward the east with a constant speed of 8×10^7 m/s. It has electric, magnetic, and gravitational forces acting on it. During a 1 m displacement, the total work done on the electron is (i) positive; (ii) negative; (iii) zero; (iv) not enough information is given.

ANSWER

(iii) The electron has constant velocity, so its acceleration is zero and (by Newton's second law) the net force on the electron is also zero. Therefore the total work done by all the forces (equal to the work done by the net force) must be zero as well. The individual forces may do nonzero work, but that's not what the question asks.

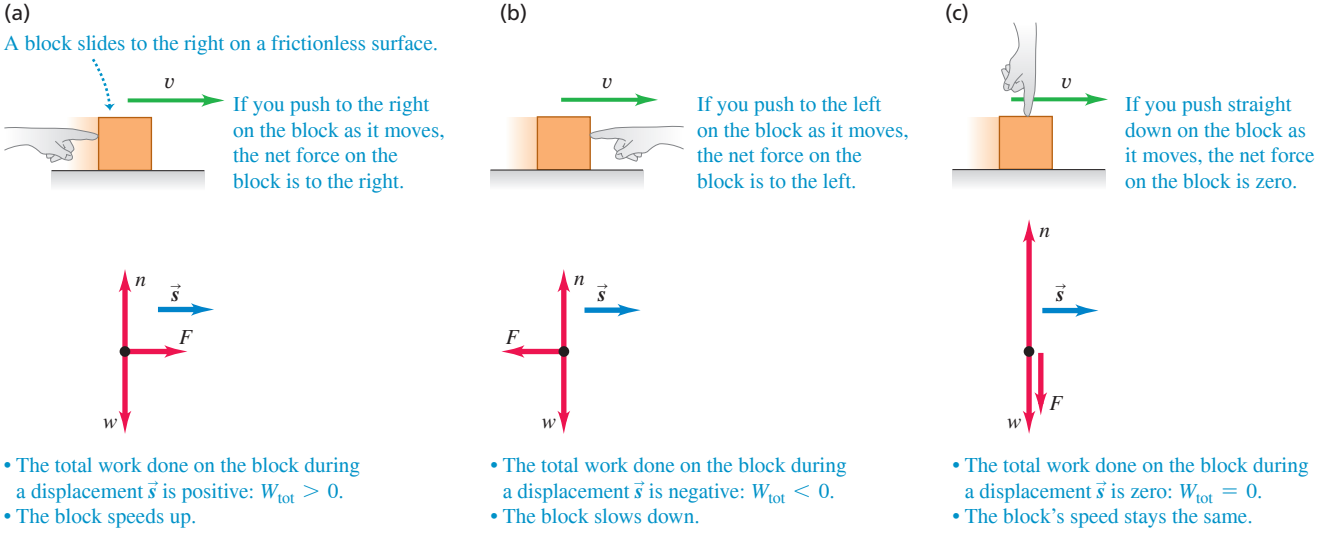
6.2 KINETIC ENERGY AND THE WORK–ENERGY THEOREM

The total work done on an object by external forces is related to the object's displacement—that is, to changes in its position. But the total work is also related to changes in the *speed* of the object. To see this, consider **Fig. 6.8**, which shows a block sliding on a frictionless table. The forces acting on the block are its weight $\vec{w}$, the normal force $\vec{n}$, and the force $\vec{F}$ exerted on it by the hand.

In Fig. 6.8a the net force on the block is in the direction of its motion. From Newton's second law, this means that the block speeds up; from Eq. (6.1), this also means that the total work W_{tot} done on the block is positive. The total work is *negative* in Fig. 6.8b because the net force opposes the displacement; in this case the block slows down. The net force is zero in Fig. 6.8c, so the speed of the block stays the same and the total work done on the block is zero. We can conclude that *when a particle undergoes a displacement, it speeds up if* $W_{\text{tot}} > 0$, *slows down if* $W_{\text{tot}} < 0$, *and maintains the same speed if* $W_{\text{tot}} = 0$.

Let's make this more quantitative. In **Fig. 6.9** (next page) a particle with mass m moves along the x-axis under the action of a constant net force with magnitude F that points in the positive x-direction. The particle's acceleration is constant and given by Newton's second law

Figure 6.8 The relationship between the total work done on an object and how the object's speed changes.



(Section 4.3): $F = ma_x$. As the particle moves from point x_1 to x_2, it undergoes a displacement $s = x_2 - x_1$ and its speed changes from v_1 to v_2. Using a constant-acceleration equation from Section 2.4, Eq. (2.13), and replacing v_{0x} by v_1, v_x by v_2, and $(x - x_0)$ by s, we have

$$v_2^2 = v_1^2 + 2a_x s$$
$$a_x = \frac{v_2^2 - v_1^2}{2s}$$

When we multiply this equation by m and equate ma_x to the net force F, we find

$$F = ma_x = m\frac{v_2^2 - v_1^2}{2s} \qquad \text{and}$$
$$Fs = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 \tag{6.4}$$

In Eq. (6.4) the product Fs is the work done by the net force F and thus is equal to the total work W_{tot} done by all the forces acting on the particle. The quantity $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ is called the **kinetic energy** K of the particle:

Kinetic energy of a particle $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ (Mass of particle; Speed of particle) (6.5)

Like work, the kinetic energy of a particle is a scalar quantity; it depends on only the particle's mass and speed, not its direction of motion (**Fig. 6.10**). Kinetic energy can never be negative, and it is zero only when the particle is at rest.

We can now interpret Eq. (6.4) in terms of work and kinetic energy. The first term on the right side of Eq. (6.4) is $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2$, the final kinetic energy of the particle (that is, after the displacement). The second term is the initial kinetic energy, $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2$, and the difference between these terms is the *change* in kinetic energy. So Eq. (6.4) says:

Work–energy theorem: Work done by the net force on a particle equals the change in the particle's kinetic energy.

Total work done on particle = work done by net force: $W_{\text{tot}} = K_2 - K_1 = \Delta K$ (Change in kinetic energy) (6.6)

Final kinetic energy; Initial kinetic energy

This **work–energy theorem** agrees with our observations about the block in Fig. 6.8. When W_{tot} is *positive,* the kinetic energy *increases* (the final kinetic energy K_2 is greater than the initial kinetic energy K_1) and the particle is going faster at the end of the displacement than at the beginning. When W_{tot} is *negative,* the kinetic energy *decreases* (K_2 is less than K_1) and the speed is less after the displacement. When $W_{\text{tot}} = 0$, the kinetic energy stays the same ($K_1 = K_2$) and the speed is unchanged. Note that the work–energy theorem by itself tells us only about changes in *speed,* not velocity, since the kinetic energy doesn't depend on the direction of motion.

From Eq. (6.4) or Eq. (6.6), kinetic energy and work must have the same units. Hence the joule is the SI unit of both work and kinetic energy (and, as we'll see later, of all kinds of energy). To verify this, note that in SI the quantity $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ has units $\text{kg} \cdot (\text{m/s})^2$ or $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$; we recall that $1\ \text{N} = 1\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$, so

$$1\ \text{J} = 1\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m} = 1\ (\text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2) \cdot \text{m} = 1\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$$

Because we used Newton's laws in deriving the work–energy theorem, we can use this theorem only in an inertial frame of reference. Note that the work–energy theorem is valid in *any* inertial frame, but the values of W_{tot} and $K_2 - K_1$ may differ from one inertial frame to another (because the displacement and speed of an object may be different in different frames).

We've derived the work–energy theorem for the special case of straight-line motion with constant forces, and in the following examples we'll apply it to this special case only. We'll find in the next section that the theorem is valid even when the forces are not constant and the particle's trajectory is curved.

Figure **6.9** A constant net force $\vec{F}$ does work on a moving object.

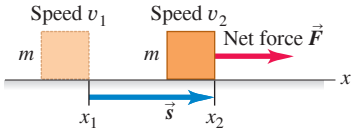
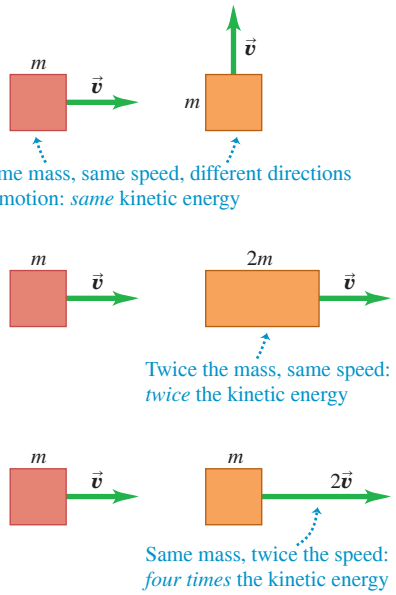


Figure **6.10** Comparing the kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ of different objects.



PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 6.1 Work and Kinetic Energy

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* The work–energy theorem, $W_{tot} = K_2 - K_1$, is extremely useful when you want to relate an object's speed v_1 at one point in its motion to its speed v_2 at a different point. (It's less useful for problems that involve the *time* it takes an object to go from point 1 to point 2 because the work–energy theorem doesn't involve time at all. For such problems it's usually best to use the relationships among time, position, velocity, and acceleration described in Chapters 2 and 3.)

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Identify the initial and final positions of the object, and draw a free-body diagram showing all the forces that act on the object.
2. Choose a coordinate system. (If the motion is along a straight line, it's usually easiest to have both the initial and final positions lie along one of the axes.)
3. List the unknown and known quantities, and decide which unknowns are your target variables. The target variable may be the object's initial or final speed, the magnitude of one of the forces acting on the object, or the object's displacement.

EXECUTE *the solution:* Calculate the work W done by each force. If the force is constant and the displacement is a straight line, you can use Eq. (6.2) or Eq. (6.3). (Later in this chapter we'll see how to handle varying forces and curved trajectories.) Be sure to check signs; W must be positive if the force has a component in the direction of the displacement, negative if the force has a component opposite to the displacement, and zero if the force and displacement are perpendicular.

Add the amounts of work done by each force to find the total work W_{tot}. Sometimes it's easier to calculate the vector sum of the forces (the net force) and then find the work done by the net force; this value is also equal to W_{tot}.

Write expressions for the initial and final kinetic energies, K_1 and K_2. Note that kinetic energy involves *mass,* not *weight*; if you are given the object's weight, use $w = mg$ to find the mass.

Finally, use Eq. (6.6), $W_{tot} = K_2 - K_1$, and Eq. (6.5), $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, to solve for the target variable. Remember that the right-hand side of Eq. (6.6) represents the change of the object's kinetic energy between points 1 and 2; that is, it is the *final* kinetic energy minus the *initial* kinetic energy, never the other way around. (If you can predict the sign of W_{tot}, you can predict whether the object speeds up or slows down.)

EVALUATE *your answer:* Check whether your answer makes sense. Remember that kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ can never be negative. If you come up with a negative value of K, perhaps you interchanged the initial and final kinetic energies in $W_{tot} = K_2 - K_1$ or made a sign error in one of the work calculations.

EXAMPLE 6.3 Using work and energy to calculate speed

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Let's look again at the sled in Fig. 6.7 and our results from Example 6.2. Suppose the sled's initial speed v_1 is 2.0 m/s. What is the speed of the sled after it moves 20 m?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll use the work–energy theorem, Eq. (6.6), $W_{tot} = K_2 - K_1$, since we are given the initial speed $v_1 = 2.0$ m/s and want to find the final speed v_2. **Figure 6.11** shows our sketch of the situation. The motion is in the positive x-direction. In Example 6.2 we calculated the total work done by all the forces: $W_{tot} = 10$ kJ. Hence the kinetic energy of the sled and its load must increase by 10 kJ, and the speed of the sled must also increase.

EXECUTE To write expressions for the initial and final kinetic energies, we need the mass of the sled and load. The combined *weight* is 14,700 N, so the mass is

$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{14{,}700\ \text{N}}{9.8\ \text{m/s}^2} = 1500\ \text{kg}$$

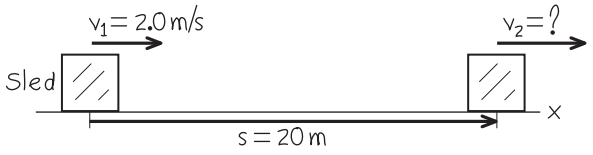
Then the initial kinetic energy K_1 is

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(1500\ \text{kg})(2.0\ \text{m/s})^2 = 3000\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 3000\ \text{J}$$

The final kinetic energy K_2 is

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(1500\ \text{kg})v_2^2$$

Figure 6.11 Our sketch for this problem.



The work–energy theorem, Eq. (6.6), gives

$$K_2 = K_1 + W_{tot} = 3000\ \text{J} + 10{,}000\ \text{J} = 13{,}000\ \text{J}$$

Setting these two expressions for K_2 equal, substituting $1\ \text{J} = 1\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$, and solving for the final speed v_2, we find

$$v_2 = 4.2\ \text{m/s}$$

EVALUATE The total work is positive, so the kinetic energy increases ($K_2 > K_1$) and the speed increases ($v_2 > v_1$).

This problem can also be solved without the work–energy theorem. We can find the acceleration from $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ and then use the equations of motion for constant acceleration to find v_2. Since the acceleration is along the x-axis,

$$a = a_x = \frac{\Sigma F_x}{m} = \frac{500\ \text{N}}{1500\ \text{kg}} = 0.333\ \text{m/s}^2$$

Then, using Eq. (2.13), we have

$$v_2^2 = v_1^2 + 2as = (2.0\ \text{m/s})^2 + 2(0.333\ \text{m/s}^2)(20\ \text{m}) = 17.3\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$$
$$v_2 = 4.2\ \text{m/s}$$

This is the same result we obtained with the work–energy approach, but there we avoided the intermediate step of finding the acceleration. You'll find several other examples in this chapter and the next that *can* be done without using energy considerations but that are easier when energy methods are used. When a problem can be done by two methods, doing it by both methods (as we did here) is a good way to check your work.

KEYCONCEPT You can use the work–energy theorem to easily relate the initial and final speeds of an object that moves while being acted on by constant forces.

EXAMPLE 6.4 Forces on a hammerhead

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

The 200 kg steel hammerhead of a pile driver is lifted 3.00 m above the top of a vertical I-beam being driven into the ground (**Fig. 6.12a**). The hammerhead is then dropped, driving the I-beam 7.4 cm deeper into the ground. The vertical guide rails exert a constant 60 N friction force on the hammerhead. Use the work–energy theorem to find (a) the speed of the hammerhead just as it hits the I-beam and (b) the average force the hammerhead exerts on the I-beam. Ignore the effects of the air.

IDENTIFY We'll use the work–energy theorem to relate the hammerhead's speed at different locations and the forces acting on it. There are *three* locations of interest: point 1, where the hammerhead starts from rest; point 2, where it first contacts the I-beam; and point 3, where the hammerhead and I-beam come to a halt (Fig. 6.12a). The two target variables are the hammerhead's speed at point 2 and the average force the hammerhead exerts between points 2 and 3. Hence we'll apply the work–energy theorem twice: once for the motion from 1 to 2, and once for the motion from 2 to 3.

SET UP Figure 6.12b shows the vertical forces on the hammerhead as it falls from point 1 to point 2. (We can ignore any horizontal forces that may be present because they do no work as the hammerhead moves vertically.) For this part of the motion, our target variable is the hammerhead's final speed v_2.

Figure 6.12c shows the vertical forces on the hammerhead during the motion from point 2 to point 3. In addition to the forces shown in Fig. 6.12b, the I-beam exerts an upward normal force of magnitude n on the hammerhead. This force actually varies as the hammerhead comes to a halt, but for simplicity we'll treat n as a constant. Hence n represents the *average* value of this upward force during the motion. Our target variable for this part of the motion is the force that the *hammerhead* exerts on the I-beam; it is the reaction force to the normal force exerted by the I-beam, so by Newton's third law its magnitude is also n.

EXECUTE (a) From point 1 to point 2, the vertical forces are the downward weight $w = mg = (200\text{ kg})(9.8\text{ m/s}^2) = 1960\text{ N}$ and the upward friction force $f = 60\text{ N}$. Thus the net downward force is $w - f = 1900\text{ N}$. The displacement of the hammerhead from point 1 to point 2 is downward and equal to $s_{12} = 3.00\text{ m}$. The total work done on the hammerhead between point 1 and point 2 is then

$$W_{\text{tot}} = (w - f)s_{12} = (1900\text{ N})(3.00\text{ m}) = 5700\text{ J}$$

At point 1 the hammerhead is at rest, so its initial kinetic energy K_1 is zero. Hence the kinetic energy K_2 at point 2 equals the total work done on the hammerhead between points 1 and 2:

$$W_{\text{tot}} = K_2 - K_1 = K_2 - 0 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - 0$$

$$v_2 = \sqrt{\frac{2W_{\text{tot}}}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(5700\text{ J})}{200\text{ kg}}} = 7.55\text{ m/s}$$

This is the hammerhead's speed at point 2, just as it hits the I-beam.

(b) As the hammerhead moves downward from point 2 to point 3, its displacement is $s_{23} = 7.4\text{ cm} = 0.074\text{ m}$ and the net downward force acting on it is $w - f - n$ (Fig. 6.12c). The total work done on the hammerhead during this displacement is

$$W_{\text{tot}} = (w - f - n)s_{23}$$

The initial kinetic energy for this part of the motion is K_2, which from part (a) equals 5700 J. The final kinetic energy is $K_3 = 0$ (the hammerhead ends at rest). From the work–energy theorem,

$$W_{\text{tot}} = (w - f - n)s_{23} = K_3 - K_2$$

$$n = w - f - \frac{K_3 - K_2}{s_{23}}$$

$$= 1960\text{ N} - 60\text{ N} - \frac{0\text{ J} - 5700\text{ J}}{0.074\text{ m}} = 79{,}000\text{ N}$$

The downward force that the hammerhead exerts on the I-beam has this same magnitude, 79,000 N—more than 40 times the weight of the hammerhead.

EVALUATE The net change in the hammerhead's kinetic energy from point 1 to point 3 is zero; a relatively small net force does positive work over a large distance, and then a much larger net force does negative work over a much smaller distance. The same thing happens if you speed up your car gradually and then drive it into a brick wall. The very large force needed to reduce the kinetic energy to zero over a short distance is what does the damage to your car—and possibly to you.

KEYCONCEPT If you know the initial and final speeds of an object that moves over a given straight-line distance, the work–energy theorem lets you calculate the net force that causes the change in speed.

Figure 6.12 (a) A pile driver pounds an I-beam into the ground. (b), (c) Free-body diagrams. Vector lengths are not to scale.

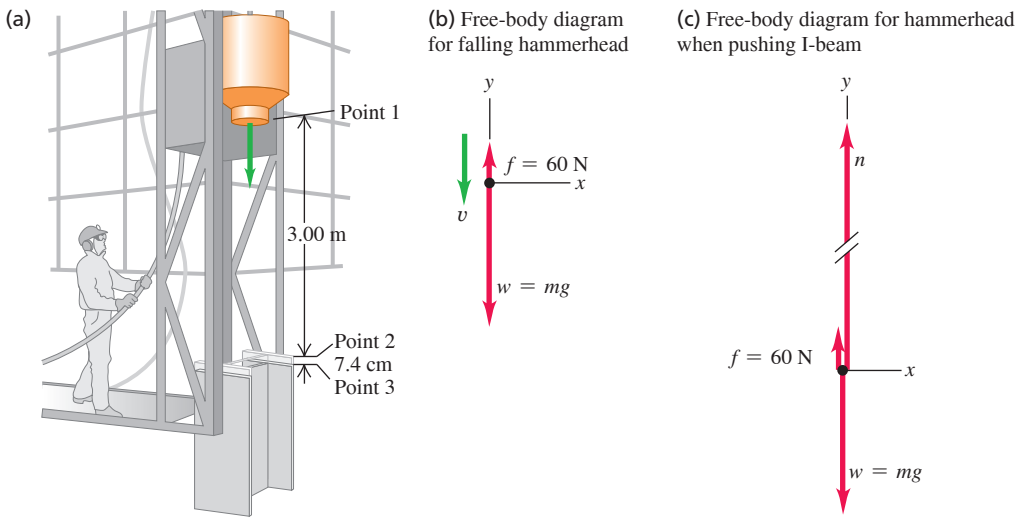


Figure 6.13 Imparting kinetic energy to a cue ball.

When a billiards player hits a cue ball at rest, the ball's kinetic energy after being hit is equal to the work that was done on it by the cue.

The greater the force exerted by the cue and the greater the distance the ball moves while in contact with it, the greater the ball's kinetic energy.

The Meaning of Kinetic Energy

Example 6.4 gives insight into the physical meaning of kinetic energy. The hammerhead is dropped from rest, and its kinetic energy when it hits the I-beam equals the total work done on it up to that point by the net force. This result is true in general: To accelerate a particle of mass m from rest (zero kinetic energy) up to a speed v, the total work done on it must equal the change in kinetic energy from zero to $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$:

$$W_{\text{tot}} = K - 0 = K$$

So *the kinetic energy of a particle is equal to the total work that was done to accelerate it from rest to its present speed* (**Fig. 6.13**). The definition $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, Eq. (6.5), wasn't chosen at random; it's the *only* definition that agrees with this interpretation of kinetic energy.

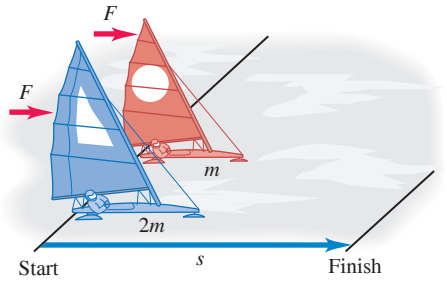
In the second part of Example 6.4 the kinetic energy of the hammerhead did work on the I-beam and drove it into the ground. This gives us another interpretation of kinetic energy: *The kinetic energy of a particle is equal to the total work that particle can do in the process of being brought to rest.* This is why you pull your hand and arm backward when you catch a ball. As the ball comes to rest, it does an amount of work (force times distance) on your hand equal to the ball's initial kinetic energy. By pulling your hand back, you maximize the distance over which the force acts and so minimize the force on your hand.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 6.5 Comparing kinetic energies

Two iceboats like the one in Example 5.6 (Section 5.2) hold a race on a frictionless horizontal lake (**Fig. 6.14**). The two iceboats have masses m and $2m$. The iceboats have identical sails, so the wind exerts the same constant force $\vec{F}$ on each iceboat. They start from rest and cross the finish line a distance s away. Which iceboat crosses the finish line with greater kinetic energy?

SOLUTION If you use the definition of kinetic energy, $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, Eq. (6.5), the answer to this problem isn't obvious. The iceboat of mass $2m$ has greater mass, so you might guess that it has greater kinetic energy at the finish line. But the lighter iceboat, of mass m, has greater acceleration and crosses the finish line with a greater speed, so you might guess that *this* iceboat has the greater kinetic energy. How can we decide?

Figure 6.14 A race between iceboats.



The key is to remember that *the kinetic energy of a particle is equal to the total work done to accelerate it from rest*. Both iceboats travel the same distance s from rest, and only the horizontal force F in the direction of motion does work on either iceboat. Hence the total work done between the starting line and the finish line is the *same* for each iceboat, $W_{\text{tot}} = Fs$. At the finish line, each iceboat has a kinetic energy equal to the work W_{tot} done on it, because each iceboat started from rest. So both iceboats have the *same* kinetic energy at the finish line!

You might think this is a "trick" question, but it isn't. If you really understand the meanings of quantities such as kinetic energy, you can solve problems more easily and with better insight.

Notice that we didn't need to know anything about how much time each iceboat took to reach the finish line. This is because the work–energy theorem makes no direct reference to time, only to displacement. In fact the iceboat of mass m has greater acceleration and so takes less time to reach the finish line than does the iceboat of mass $2m$.

KEYCONCEPT The kinetic energy of an object with speed v equals the amount of work you must do to accelerate it from rest to speed v.

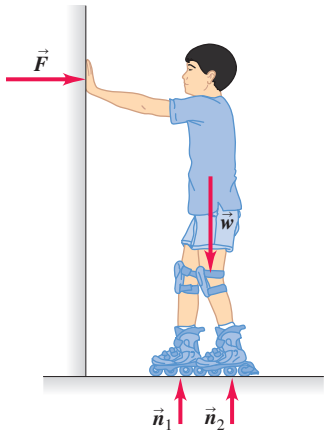
Work and Kinetic Energy in Composite Systems

In this section we've been careful to apply the work–energy theorem only to objects that we can represent as *particles*—that is, as moving point masses. New subtleties appear for more complex systems that have to be represented as many particles with different motions. We can't go into these subtleties in detail in this chapter, but here's an example.

Suppose a boy stands on frictionless roller skates on a level surface, facing a rigid wall (**Fig. 6.15**). He pushes against the wall, which makes him move to the right. The forces acting on him are his weight $\vec{\boldsymbol{w}}$, the upward normal forces $\vec{\boldsymbol{n}}_1$ and $\vec{\boldsymbol{n}}_2$ exerted by the ground on his skates, and the horizontal force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ exerted on him by the wall. There is no vertical displacement, so $\vec{\boldsymbol{w}}$, $\vec{\boldsymbol{n}}_1$, and $\vec{\boldsymbol{n}}_2$ do no work. Force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ accelerates him to the right, but the parts of his body where that force is applied (the boy's hands) do not move while the force acts. Thus the force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}$ also does no work. Where, then, does the boy's kinetic energy come from?

The explanation is that it's not adequate to represent the boy as a single point mass. Different parts of the boy's body have different motions; his hands remain stationary against the wall while his torso is moving away from the wall. The various parts of his body interact with each other, and one part can exert forces and do work on another part. Therefore the *total* kinetic energy of this *composite* system of body parts can change, even though no work is done by forces applied by objects (such as the wall) that are outside the system. In Chapter 8 we'll consider further the motion of a collection of particles that interact with each other. We'll discover that just as for the boy in this example, the total kinetic energy of such a system can change even when no work is done on any part of the system by anything outside it.

Figure **6.15** The external forces acting on a skater pushing off a wall. The work done by these forces is zero, but the skater's kinetic energy changes nonetheless.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 6.2 Rank the following objects in order of their kinetic energy, from least to greatest. (i) A 2.0 kg object moving at 5.0 m/s; (ii) a 1.0 kg object that initially was at rest and then had 30 J of work done on it; (iii) a 1.0 kg object that initially was moving at 4.0 m/s and then had 20 J of work done on it; (iv) a 2.0 kg object that initially was moving at 10 m/s and then did 80 J of work on another object.

ANSWER

(iv), (i), (iii), (ii) Object (i) has kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(2.0\text{ kg})(5.0\text{ m/s})^2 = 25\text{ J}$. Object (ii) had zero kinetic energy initially and then had 30 J of work done on it, so its final kinetic energy is $K_2 = K_1 + W = 0 + 30\text{ J} = 30\text{ J}$. Object (iii) had initial kinetic energy $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = \frac{1}{2}(1.0\text{ kg})(4.0\text{ m/s})^2 = 8.0\text{ J}$ and then had 20 J of work done on it, so its final kinetic energy is $K_2 = K_1 + W = 8.0\text{ J} + 20\text{ J} = 28\text{ J}$. Object (iv) had initial kinetic energy $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = \frac{1}{2}(2.0\text{ kg})(10\text{ m/s})^2 = 100\text{ J}$; when it did 80 J of work on another object, the other object did -80 J of work on object (iv), so the final kinetic energy of object (iv) is $K_2 = K_1 + W = 100\text{ J} + (-80\text{ J}) = 20\text{ J}$.

6.3 WORK AND ENERGY WITH VARYING FORCES

So far we've considered work done by *constant forces* only. But what happens when you stretch a spring? The more you stretch it, the harder you have to pull, so the force you exert is *not* constant as the spring is stretched. We've also restricted our discussion to *straight-line* motion. There are many situations in which an object moves along a curved path and is acted on by a force that varies in magnitude, direction, or both. We need to be able to compute the work done by the force in these more general cases. Fortunately, the work–energy theorem holds true even when forces are varying and when the object's path is not straight.

Work Done by a Varying Force, Straight-Line Motion

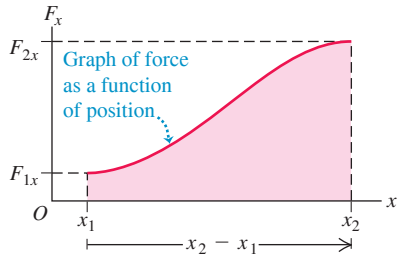
To add only one complication at a time, let's consider straight-line motion along the x-axis with a force whose x-component F_x may change as the object moves. (A real-life example is driving a car along a straight road with stop signs, so the driver has to alternately step on the gas and apply the brakes.) Suppose a particle moves along the x-axis from point x_1 to x_2 (**Fig. 6.16a**). Figure 6.16b is a graph of the x-component of force as a function of the particle's coordinate x. To find the work done by this force, we divide the total displacement into narrow segments Δx_a, Δx_b, and so on (Fig. 6.16c). We approximate the work done by the force during segment Δx_a as the average x-component of force F_{ax} in that segment multiplied by the x-displacement Δx_a. We do this for each segment and then add the results for all the segments. The work done by the force in the total displacement from x_1 to x_2 is approximately

$$W = F_{ax}\Delta x_a + F_{bx}\Delta x_b + \cdots$$

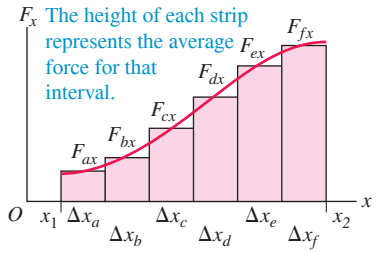
Figure **6.16** Calculating the work done by a varying force F_x in the x-direction as a particle moves from x_1 to x_2.

(a) A particle moves from x_1 to x_2 in response to a changing force in the x-direction.

(b) The force F_x varies with position x ...



(c) ... but over a short displacement Δx, the force is essentially constant.



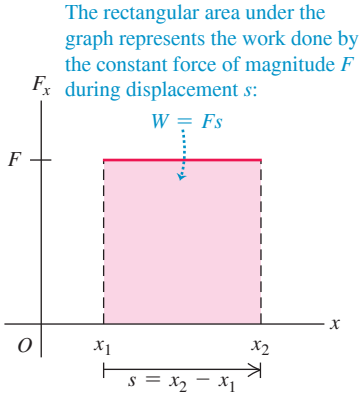
In the limit that the number of segments becomes very large and the width of each becomes very small, this sum becomes the *integral* of F_x from x_1 to x_2:

Work done on a particle by a **varying *x*-component of force** F_x during **straight-line displacement** along *x*-axis

$$W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F_x\,dx \qquad (6.7)$$

Upper limit = final position; Integral of *x*-component of force; Lower limit = initial position

Figure **6.17** The work done by a constant force F in the x-direction as a particle moves from x_1 to x_2.



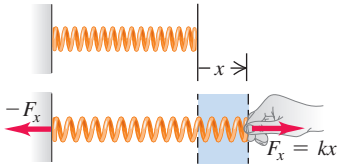
Note that $F_{ax}\,\Delta x_a$ represents the *area* of the first vertical strip in Fig. 6.16c and that the integral in Eq. (6.7) represents the area under the curve of Fig. 6.16b between x_1 and x_2. *On such a graph of force as a function of position, the total work done by the force is represented by the area under the curve between the initial and final positions.* Alternatively, the work W equals the average force that acts over the entire displacement, multiplied by the displacement.

In the special case that F_x, the x-component of the force, is constant, we can take it outside the integral in Eq. (6.7):

$$W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F_x\,dx = F_x \int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx = F_x(x_2 - x_1) \qquad \text{(constant force)}$$

But $x_2 - x_1 = s$, the total displacement of the particle. So in the case of a constant force F, Eq. (6.7) says that $W = Fs$, in agreement with Eq. (6.1). The interpretation of work as the area under the curve of F_x as a function of x also holds for a constant force: $W = Fs$ is the area of a rectangle of height F and width s (**Fig. 6.17**).

Figure **6.18** The force needed to stretch an ideal spring is proportional to the spring's elongation: $F_x = kx$.

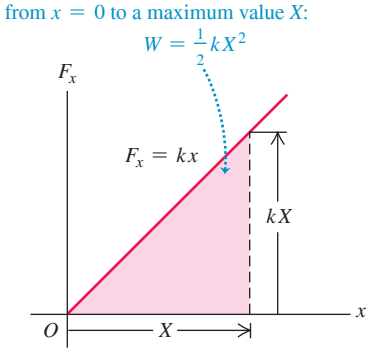


Now let's apply these ideas to the stretched spring. To keep a spring stretched beyond its unstretched length by an amount x, we have to apply a force of equal magnitude at each end (**Fig. 6.18**). If the elongation x is not too great, the force we apply to the right-hand end has an x-component directly proportional to x:

$$F_x = kx \qquad \text{(force required to stretch a spring)} \qquad (6.8)$$

where k is a constant called the **force constant** (or spring constant) of the spring. The units of k are force divided by distance: N/m in SI units. A floppy toy spring such as a Slinky™ has a force constant of about 1 N/m; for the much stiffer springs in an automobile's suspension, k is about 10^5 N/m. The observation that force is directly proportional to elongation for elongations that are not too great was made by Robert Hooke in 1678 and is known as **Hooke's law.** It really shouldn't be called a "law," since it's a statement about a specific device and not a fundamental law of nature. Real springs don't always obey Eq. (6.8) precisely, but it's still a useful idealized model. We'll discuss Hooke's law more fully in Chapter 11.

Figure **6.19** Calculating the work done to stretch a spring by a length X.



To stretch a spring, we must do work. We apply equal and opposite forces to the ends of the spring and gradually increase the forces. We hold the left end stationary, so the force we apply at this end does no work. The force at the moving end *does* do work. **Figure 6.19** is a graph of F_x as a function of x, the elongation of the spring. The work done by this force when the elongation goes from zero to a maximum value X is

$$W = \int_0^X F_x\,dx = \int_0^X kx\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}kX^2 \qquad (6.9)$$

We can also obtain this result graphically. The area of the shaded triangle in Fig. 6.19, representing the total work done by the force, is equal to half the product of the base and altitude, or

$$W = \tfrac{1}{2}(X)(kX) = \tfrac{1}{2}kX^2$$

This equation also says that the work is the *average* force $kX/2$ multiplied by the total displacement X. We see that the total work is proportional to the *square* of the final

elongation X. To stretch an ideal spring by 2 cm, you must do four times as much work as is needed to stretch it by 1 cm.

Equation (6.9) assumes that the spring was originally unstretched. If initially the spring is already stretched a distance x_1, the work we must do to stretch it to a greater elongation x_2 (**Fig. 6.20a**) is

$$W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F_x\,dx = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} kx\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 \qquad (6.10)$$

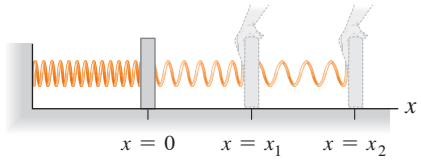
Use your knowledge of geometry to convince yourself that the trapezoidal area under the graph in Fig. 6.20b is given by the expression in Eq. (6.10).

If the spring has spaces between the coils when it is unstretched, then it can also be compressed, and Hooke's law holds for compression as well as stretching. In this case the force and displacement are in the opposite directions from those shown in Fig. 6.18, so both F_x and x in Eq. (6.8) are negative. Since both F_x and x are reversed, the force again is in the same direction as the displacement, and the work done by F_x is again positive. So the total work is still given by Eq. (6.9) or (6.10), even when X is negative or either or both of x_1 and x_2 are negative.

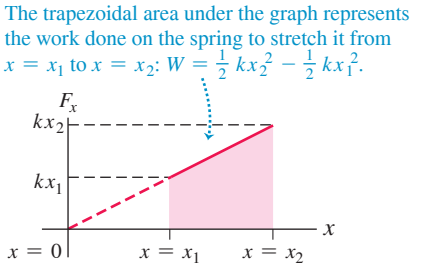
CAUTION **Work done *on* a spring vs. work done *by* a spring** Equation (6.10) gives the work that *you* must do *on* a spring to change its length. If you stretch a spring that's originally relaxed, then $x_1 = 0$, $x_2 > 0$, and $W > 0$: The force you apply to one end of the spring is in the same direction as the displacement, and the work you do is positive. By contrast, the work that the *spring* does on whatever it's attached to is given by the *negative* of Eq. (6.10). Thus, as you pull on the spring, the spring does negative work on you.

Figure **6.20** Calculating the work done to stretch a spring from one elongation to a greater one.

(a) Stretching a spring from elongation x_1 to elongation x_2



(b) Force-versus-distance graph

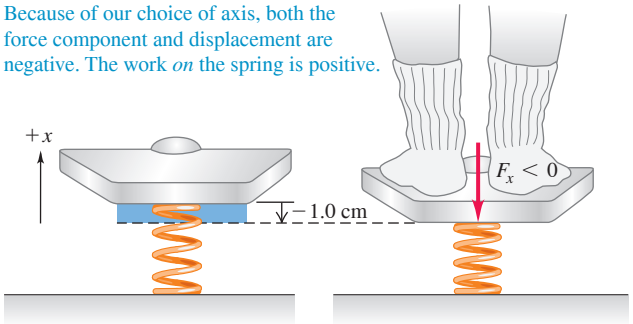


EXAMPLE 6.6 Work done on a spring scale

A woman weighing 600 N steps on a bathroom scale that contains a stiff spring (**Fig. 6.21**). In equilibrium, the spring is compressed 1.0 cm under her weight. Find the force constant of the spring and the total work done on it during the compression.

IDENTIFY and SET UP In equilibrium the upward force exerted by the spring balances the downward force of the woman's weight. We'll use this principle and Eq. (6.8) to determine the force constant k, and we'll use Eq. (6.10) to calculate the work W that the woman does on the spring to compress it. We take positive values of x to correspond to elongation (upward in Fig. 6.21), so that both the displacement of the end of the spring (x) and the x-component of the force that the woman exerts on it (F_x) are negative. The applied force and the displacement are in the same direction, so the work done on the spring will be positive.

Figure **6.21** Compressing a spring in a bathroom scale.



EXECUTE The top of the spring is displaced by $x = -1.0\text{ cm} = -0.010\text{ m}$, and the woman exerts a force $F_x = -600\text{ N}$ on the spring. From Eq. (6.8) the force constant is then

$$k = \frac{F_x}{x} = \frac{-600\text{ N}}{-0.010\text{ m}} = 6.0 \times 10^4\text{ N/m}$$

Then, using $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = -0.010$ m in Eq. (6.10), we have

$$W = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}(6.0 \times 10^4\text{ N/m})(-0.010\text{ m})^2 - 0 = 3.0\text{ J}$$

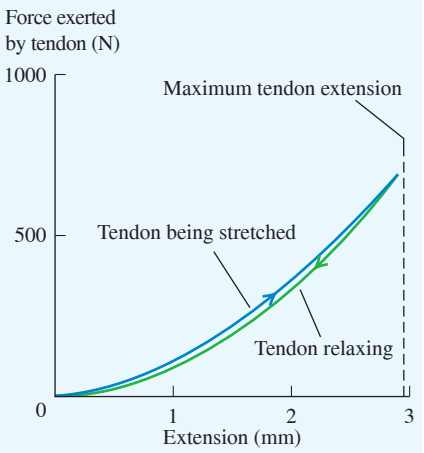
EVALUATE The work done is positive, as expected. Our arbitrary choice of the positive direction has no effect on the answer for W. You can test this by taking the positive x-direction to be downward, corresponding to compression. Do you get the same values for k and W as we found here?

KEYCONCEPT You must use Eq. (6.10) to calculate the work done by the nonconstant force that a spring exerts.

Work–Energy Theorem for Straight-Line Motion, Varying Forces

In Section 6.2 we derived the work–energy theorem, $W_{\text{tot}} = K_2 - K_1$, for the special case of straight-line motion with a constant net force. We can now prove that this

BIO APPLICATION Tendons Are Nonideal Springs Muscles exert forces via the tendons that attach them to bones. A tendon consists of long, stiff, elastic collagen fibers. The graph shows how the tendon from the hind leg of a wallaby (a small kangaroo-like marsupial) stretches in response to an applied force. The tendon does not exhibit the simple, straight-line behavior of an ideal spring, so the work it does has to be found by integration [Eq. (6.7)]. The tendon exerts less force while relaxing than while stretching. As a result, the relaxing tendon does only about 93% of the work that was done to stretch it.



theorem is true even when the force varies with position. As in Section 6.2, let's consider a particle that undergoes a displacement x while being acted on by a net force with x-component F_x, which we now allow to vary. Just as in Fig. 6.16, we divide the total displacement x into a large number of small segments Δx. We can apply the work–energy theorem, Eq. (6.6), to each segment because the value of F_x in each small segment is approximately constant. The change in kinetic energy in segment Δx_a is equal to the work $F_{ax}\Delta x_a$, and so on. The total change of kinetic energy is the sum of the changes in the individual segments, and thus is equal to the total work done on the particle during the entire displacement. So $W_{\text{tot}} = \Delta K$ holds for varying forces as well as for constant ones.

Here's an alternative derivation of the work–energy theorem for a force that may vary with position. It involves making a change of variable from x to v_x in the work integral. Note first that the acceleration a of the particle can be expressed in various ways, using $a_x = dv_x/dt$, $v_x = dx/dt$, and the chain rule for derivatives:

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{dv_x}{dx}\frac{dx}{dt} = v_x\frac{dv_x}{dx} \tag{6.11}$$

From this result, Eq. (6.7) tells us that the total work done by the *net* force F_x is

$$W_{\text{tot}} = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F_x\,dx = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} ma_x\,dx = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} mv_x\frac{dv_x}{dx}\,dx \tag{6.12}$$

Now $(dv_x/dx)dx$ is the change in velocity dv_x during the displacement dx, so we can make that substitution in Eq. (6.12). This changes the integration variable from x to v_x, so we change the limits from x_1 and x_2 to the corresponding x-velocities v_1 and v_2:

$$W_{\text{tot}} = \int_{v_1}^{v_2} mv_x\,dv_x$$

The integral of $v_x\,dv_x$ is just $v_x^2/2$. Substituting the upper and lower limits, we finally find

$$W_{\text{tot}} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 \tag{6.13}$$

This is the same as Eq. (6.6), so the work–energy theorem is valid even without the assumption that the net force is constant.

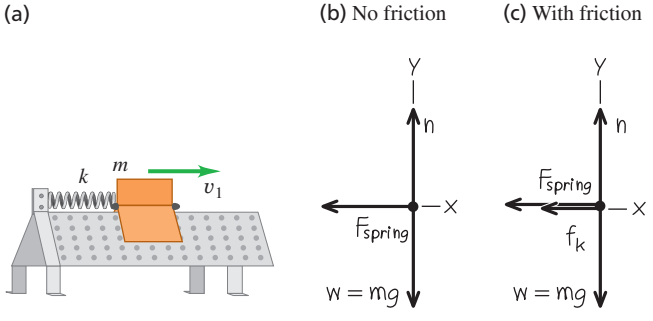
EXAMPLE 6.7 Motion with a varying force

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

An air-track glider of mass 0.100 kg is attached to the end of a horizontal air track by a spring with force constant 20.0 N/m (**Fig. 6.22a**). Initially the spring is unstretched and the glider is moving at 1.50 m/s to the right. Find the maximum distance d that the glider moves to the right (a) if the air track is turned on, so that there is no friction, and (b) if the air is turned off, so that there is kinetic friction with coefficient $\mu_k = 0.47$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The force exerted by the spring is not constant, so we *cannot* use the constant-acceleration formulas of Chapter 2 to solve this problem. Instead, we'll use the work–energy theorem, since the total work done involves the distance moved (our target variable). In Figs. 6.22b and 6.22c we choose the positive x-direction to be to the right (in the direction of the glider's motion). We take $x = 0$ at the glider's initial position (where the spring is unstretched) and $x = d$ (the target variable) at the position where the glider stops. The motion

Figure 6.22 (a) A glider attached to an air track by a spring. (b), (c) Our free-body diagrams.



is purely horizontal, so only the horizontal forces do work. Note that Eq. (6.10) gives the work done by the *glider* on the *spring* as it stretches; to use the work–energy theorem we need the work done by the *spring* on the *glider*, which is the negative of Eq. (6.10). We expect the glider to move farther without friction than with friction.

EXECUTE (a) Equation (6.10) says that as the glider moves from $x_1 = 0$ to $x_2 = d$, it does an amount of work $W = \frac{1}{2}kd^2 - \frac{1}{2}k(0)^2 = \frac{1}{2}kd^2$ on the spring. The amount of work that the *spring* does on the *glider* is the negative of this, $-\frac{1}{2}kd^2$. The spring stretches until the glider comes instantaneously to rest, so the final kinetic energy K_2 is zero. The initial kinetic energy is $\frac{1}{2}mv_1^2$, where $v_1 = 1.50$ m/s is the glider's initial speed. From the work–energy theorem,

$$-\tfrac{1}{2}kd^2 = 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2$$

We solve for the distance d the glider moves:

$$d = v_1\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = (1.50\text{ m/s})\sqrt{\frac{0.100\text{ kg}}{20.0\text{ N/m}}} = 0.106\text{ m} = 10.6\text{ cm}$$

The stretched spring subsequently pulls the glider back to the left, so the glider is at rest only instantaneously.

(b) If the air is turned off, we must include the work done by the kinetic friction force. The normal force n is equal in magnitude to the weight of the glider, since the track is horizontal and there are no other vertical forces. Hence the kinetic friction force has constant magnitude $f_k = \mu_k n = \mu_k mg$. The friction force is directed opposite to the displacement, so the work done by friction is

$$W_{\text{fric}} = f_k d\cos 180° = -f_k d = -\mu_k mgd$$

The total work is the sum of W_{fric} and the work done by the spring, $-\frac{1}{2}kd^2$. The work–energy theorem then says that

$$-\mu_k mgd - \tfrac{1}{2}kd^2 = 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 \quad \text{or}$$

$$\tfrac{1}{2}kd^2 + \mu_k mgd - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = 0$$

This is a quadratic equation for d. The solutions are

$$d = -\frac{\mu_k mg}{k} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\mu_k mg}{k}\right)^2 + \frac{mv_1^2}{k}}$$

We have

$$\frac{\mu_k mg}{k} = \frac{(0.47)(0.100\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{20.0\text{ N/m}} = 0.02303\text{ m}$$

$$\frac{mv_1^2}{k} = \frac{(0.100\text{ kg})(1.50\text{ m/s})^2}{20.0\text{ N/m}} = 0.01125\text{ m}^2$$

so

$$d = -(0.02303\text{ m}) \pm \sqrt{(0.02303\text{ m})^2 + 0.01125\text{ m}^2}$$

$$= 0.086\text{ m} \quad \text{or} \quad -0.132\text{ m}$$

The quantity d is a positive displacement, so only the positive value of d makes sense. Thus with friction the glider moves a distance $d = 0.086\text{ m} = 8.6\text{ cm}$.

EVALUATE If we set $\mu_k = 0$, our algebraic solution for d in part (b) reduces to $d = v_1\sqrt{m/k}$, the zero-friction result from part (a). With friction, the glider goes a shorter distance. Again the glider stops instantaneously, and again the spring force pulls it toward the left; whether it moves or not depends on how great the *static* friction force is. How large would the coefficient of static friction μ_s have to be to keep the glider from springing back to the left?

KEYCONCEPT The work–energy theorem also allows you to solve problems with *varying* forces, such as the force exerted by a spring.

Work–Energy Theorem for Motion Along a Curve

We can generalize our definition of work further to include a force that varies in direction as well as magnitude, and a displacement that lies along a curved path. **Figure 6.23a** shows a particle moving from P_1 to P_2 along a curve. We divide the curve between these points into many infinitesimal vector displacements, and we call a typical one of these $d\vec{l}$. Each $d\vec{l}$ is tangent to the path at its position. Let $\vec{F}$ be the force at a typical point along the path, and let ϕ be the angle between $\vec{F}$ and $d\vec{l}$ at this point. Then the small element of work dW done on the particle during the displacement $d\vec{l}$ may be written as

$$dW = \vec{F}\cdot d\vec{l} = F\cos\phi\, dl = F_\parallel dl$$

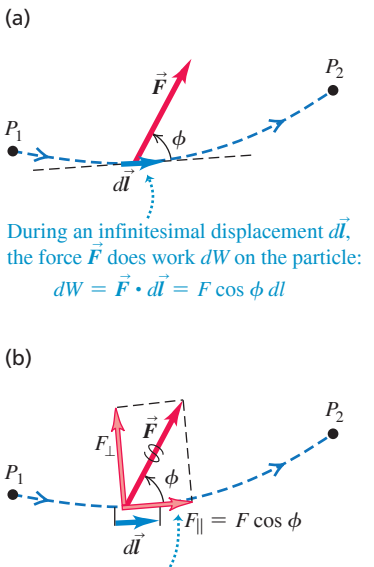
where $F_\parallel = F\cos\phi$ is the component of $\vec{F}$ in the direction parallel to $d\vec{l}$ (Fig. 6.23b). The work done by $\vec{F}$ on the particle as it moves from P_1 to P_2 is

$$W = \int_{P_1}^{P_2}\vec{F}\cdot d\vec{l} = \int_{P_1}^{P_2}F\cos\phi\, dl = \int_{P_1}^{P_2}F_\parallel dl \qquad (6.14)$$

Upper limit = final position. Scalar product (dot product) of $\vec{F}$ and displacement $d\vec{l}$. **Work** done on a particle by a **varying force** $\vec{F}$ along a **curved path**. Lower limit = initial position. Angle between $\vec{F}$ and $d\vec{l}$. Component of $\vec{F}$ parallel to $d\vec{l}$.

The integral in Eq. (6.14) (shown in three versions) is called a *line integral*. We'll see shortly how to evaluate an integral of this kind.

Figure 6.23 A particle moves along a curved path from point P_1 to P_2, acted on by a force $\vec{F}$ that varies in magnitude and direction.



We can now show that the work–energy theorem, Eq. (6.6), holds true even with varying forces and a displacement along a curved path. The force $\vec{F}$ is essentially constant over any given infinitesimal segment $d\vec{l}$ of the path, so we can apply the work–energy theorem for straight-line motion to that segment. Thus the change in the particle's kinetic energy K over that segment equals the work $dW = F_\parallel dl = \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l}$ done on the particle. Adding up these infinitesimal quantities of work from all the segments along the whole path gives the total work done, Eq. (6.14), which equals the total change in kinetic energy over the whole path. So $W_{\text{tot}} = \Delta K = K_2 - K_1$ is true *in general,* no matter what the path and no matter what the character of the forces. This can be proved more rigorously by using steps like those in Eq. (6.11) through (6.13).

Note that only the component of the net force parallel to the path, $F_\parallel$, does work on the particle, so only this component can change the speed and kinetic energy of the particle. The component perpendicular to the path, $F_\perp = F \sin\phi$, has no effect on the particle's speed; it acts only to change the particle's direction.

To evaluate the line integral in Eq. (6.14) in a specific problem, we need some sort of detailed description of the path and of the way in which $\vec{F}$ varies along the path. We usually express the line integral in terms of some scalar variable, as in the following example.

EXAMPLE 6.8 Motion on a curved path

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

At a family picnic you are appointed to push your obnoxious cousin Throckmorton in a swing (**Fig. 6.24a**). His weight is w, the length of the chains is R, and you push Throcky until the chains make an angle θ_0 with the vertical. To do this, you exert a varying horizontal force $\vec{F}$ that starts at zero and gradually increases just enough that Throcky and the swing move very slowly and remain very nearly in equilibrium throughout the process. (a) What is the total work done on Throcky by all forces? (b) What is the work done by the tension T in the chains? (c) What is the work you do by exerting force $\vec{F}$? (Ignore the weight of the chains and seat.)

IDENTIFY and SET UP The motion is along a curve, so we'll use Eq. (6.14) to calculate the work done by the net force, by the tension force, and by the force $\vec{F}$. Figure 6.24b shows our free-body diagram and coordinate system for some arbitrary point in Throcky's motion. We have replaced the sum of the tensions in the two chains with a single tension T.

EXECUTE (a) There are two ways to find the total work done during the motion: (1) by calculating the work done by each force and then adding those quantities, and (2) by calculating the work done by the net force. The second approach is far easier here because Throcky is nearly in equilibrium at every point. Hence the net force on him is zero, the integral of the net force in Eq. (6.14) is zero, and the total work done on him is zero.

(b) It's also easy to find the work done by the chain tension T because this force is perpendicular to the direction of motion at all points along the path. Hence at all points the angle between the chain tension and the displacement vector $d\vec{l}$ is 90° and the scalar product in Eq. (6.14) is zero. Thus the chain tension does zero work.

(c) To compute the work done by $\vec{F}$, we need to calculate the line integral in Eq. (6.14). Inside the integral is the quantity $F\cos\phi\, dl$; let's see how to express each term in this quantity.

Figure 6.24a shows that the angle between $\vec{F}$ and $d\vec{l}$ is θ, so we replace ϕ in Eq. (6.14) with θ. The value of θ changes as Throcky moves.

To find the magnitude F of force $\vec{F}$, note that the net force on Throcky is zero (he is nearly in equilibrium at all points), so $\Sigma F_x = 0$ and $\Sigma F_y = 0$. From Fig. 6.24b,

$$\Sigma F_x = F + (-T\sin\theta) = 0 \qquad \Sigma F_y = T\cos\theta + (-w) = 0$$

If you eliminate T from these two equations, you can show that $F = w\tan\theta$. As the angle θ increases, the tangent increases and F increases (you have to push harder).

To find the magnitude dl of the infinitesimal displacement $d\vec{l}$, note that Throcky moves through a circular arc of radius R (Fig. 6.24a). The arc length s equals the radius R multiplied by the length θ (in radians): $s = R\theta$. Therefore the displacement $d\vec{l}$ corresponding to a small change of angle $d\theta$ has a magnitude $dl = ds = R\, d\theta$.

When we put all the pieces together, the integral in Eq. (6.14) becomes

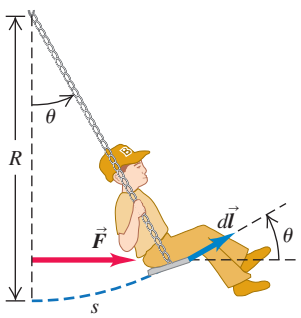
$$W = \int_{P_1}^{P_2} F\cos\phi\, dl = \int_0^{\theta_0} (w\tan\theta)\cos\theta(R\, d\theta) = \int_0^{\theta_0} wR\sin\theta\, d\theta$$

(Recall that $\tan\theta = \sin\theta/\cos\theta$, so $\tan\theta\cos\theta = \sin\theta$.) We've converted the *line* integral into an *ordinary* integral in terms of the angle θ. The limits of integration are from the starting position at $\theta = 0$ to the final position at $\theta = \theta_0$. The final result is

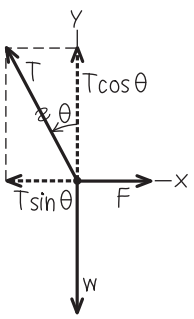
$$W = wR\int_0^{\theta_0} \sin\theta\, d\theta = -wR\cos\theta\Big|_0^{\theta_0} = -wR(\cos\theta_0 - 1)$$
$$= wR(1 - \cos\theta_0)$$

Figure 6.24 (a) Pushing cousin Throckmorton in a swing. (b) Our free-body diagram.

(a)



(b) Free-body diagram for Throckmorton (neglecting the weight of the chains and seat)



EVALUATE If $\theta_0 = 0$, there is no displacement; then $\cos\theta_0 = 1$ and $W = 0$, as we should expect. As θ_0 increases, $\cos\theta_0$ decreases and $W = wR(1 - \cos\theta_0)$ increases. So the farther along the arc you push Throcky, the more work you do. You can confirm that the quantity $R(1 - \cos\theta_0)$ is equal to h, the increase in Throcky's height during the displacement. So the work that you do to raise Throcky is just equal to his weight multiplied by the height that you raise him.

We can check our results by calculating the work done by the force of gravity $\vec{w}$. From part (a) the total work done on Throcky is zero, and from part (b) the work done by tension is zero. So gravity must do a negative amount of work that just balances the positive work done by the force $\vec{F}$ that we calculated in part (c).

For variety, let's calculate the work done by gravity by using the form of Eq. (6.14) that involves the quantity $\vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l}$, and express the force $\vec{w}$ and displacement $d\vec{l}$ in terms of their x- and y-components. The force of gravity has zero x-component and a y-component of $-w$. Figure 6.24a shows that $d\vec{l}$ has a magnitude of ds, an x-component of $ds\cos\theta$, and a y-component of $ds\sin\theta$.

So

$$\vec{w} = \hat{j}(-w)$$

$$d\vec{l} = \hat{i}(ds\cos\theta) + \hat{j}(ds\sin\theta)$$

Use Eq. (1.19) to calculate the scalar product $\vec{w} \cdot d\vec{l}$:

$$\vec{w} \cdot d\vec{l} = (-w)(ds\sin\theta) = -w\sin\theta\, ds$$

Using $ds = R\,d\theta$, we find the work done by the force of gravity:

$$\int_{P_1}^{P_2} \vec{w} \cdot d\vec{l} = \int_0^{\theta_0} (-w\sin\theta) R\,d\theta = -wR\int_0^{\theta_0} \sin\theta\, d\theta$$

$$= -wR(1 - \cos\theta_0)$$

The work done by gravity is indeed the negative of the work done by force $\vec{F}$ that we calculated in part (c). Gravity does negative work because the force pulls downward while Throcky moves upward.

As we saw earlier, $R(1 - \cos\theta_0)$ is equal to h, the increase in Throcky's height during the displacement. So the work done by gravity along the curved path is $-mgh$, the *same* work that gravity would have done if Throcky had moved *straight upward* a distance h. This is an example of a more general result that we'll prove in Section 7.1.

KEYCONCEPT The work–energy theorem can help you solve problems in which an object follows a curved path. Take care in calculating the work done on such a path.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 6.3 In Example 5.20 (Section 5.4) we examined a conical pendulum. The speed of the pendulum bob remains constant as it travels around the circle shown in Fig. 5.32a. (a) Over one complete circle, how much work does the tension force F do on the bob? (i) A positive amount; (ii) a negative amount; (iii) zero. (b) Over one complete circle, how much work does the weight do on the bob? (i) A positive amount; (ii) a negative amount; (iii) zero.

ANSWER

(a) **(iii)** (b) **(iii)** At any point during the pendulum bob's motion, both the tension force and the weight act perpendicular to the motion—that is, perpendicular to an infinitesimal displacement $d\vec{l}$ of the bob. (In Fig. 5.32b, the displacement $d\vec{l}$ would be directed outward from the plane of the free-body diagram.) Hence for either force the scalar product inside the integral in Eq. (6.14) is $\vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l} = 0$, and the work done along any part of the circular path (including a complete circle) is $W = \int \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l} = 0$.

6.4 POWER

The definition of work makes no reference to the passage of time. If you lift a barbell weighing 100 N through a vertical distance of 1.0 m at constant velocity, you do $(100\text{ N})(1.0\text{ m}) = 100\text{ J}$ of work whether it takes you 1 second, 1 hour, or 1 year to do it. But often we need to know how quickly work is done. We describe this in terms of *power*. In ordinary conversation the word "power" is often synonymous with "energy" or "force." In physics we use a much more precise definition: **Power** is the time *rate* at which work is done. Like work and energy, power is a scalar quantity.

The average work done per unit time, or **average power** P_{av}, is defined to be

Average power during time interval Δt:

$$P_{\text{av}} = \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} \qquad (6.15)$$

(ΔW: Work done during time interval; Δt: Duration of time interval)

The rate at which work is done might not be constant. We define **instantaneous power** P as the quotient in Eq. (6.15) as Δt approaches zero:

Instantaneous power:

$$P = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} = \frac{dW}{dt} \qquad (6.16)$$

($\frac{dW}{dt}$: Time rate of doing work; $\lim_{\Delta t \to 0}$: Average power over infinitesimally short time interval)

BIO APPLICATION Muscle Power

Skeletal muscles provide the power that makes animals move. Muscle fibers that rely on anaerobic metabolism do not require oxygen; they produce large amounts of power but are useful for short sprints only. Muscle fibers that metabolize aerobically use oxygen and produce smaller amounts of power for long intervals. Both fiber types are visible in a fish fillet: The pale (anaerobic) muscle is used for brief bursts of speed, while the darker (aerobic) muscle is used for sustained swimming.

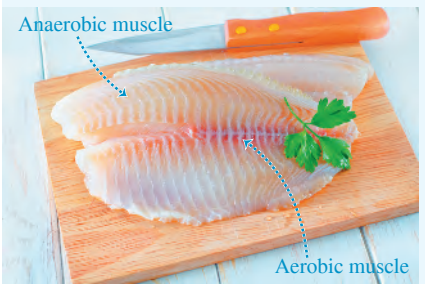
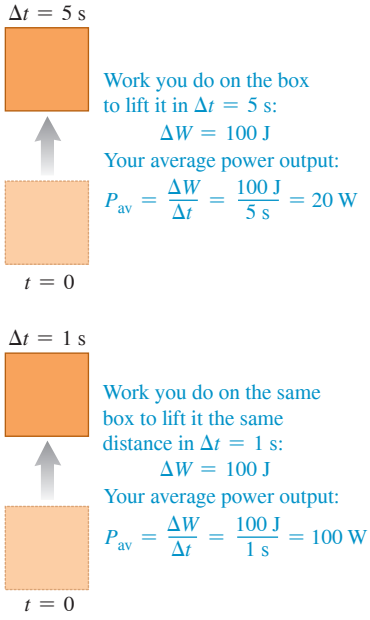


Figure 6.25 The same amount of work is done in both of these situations, but the power (the rate at which work is done) is different.



The SI unit of power is the **watt** (W), named for the English inventor James Watt. One watt equals 1 joule per second: $1\ \text{W} = 1\ \text{J/s}$ (**Fig. 6.25**). The kilowatt $(1\ \text{kW} = 10^3\ \text{W})$ and the megawatt $(1\ \text{MW} = 10^6\ \text{W})$ are also commonly used.

The watt is a familiar unit of *electrical* power; a 100 W light bulb converts 100 J of electrical energy into light and heat each second.

The *kilowatt-hour* $(\text{kW}\cdot\text{h})$ is the usual commercial unit of electrical energy. One kilowatt-hour is the total work done in 1 hour (3600 s) when the power is 1 kilowatt $(10^3\ \text{J/s})$, so

$$1\ \text{kW}\cdot\text{h} = (10^3\ \text{J/s})(3600\ \text{s}) = 3.6 \times 10^6\ \text{J} = 3.6\ \text{MJ}$$

The kilowatt-hour is a unit of *work* or *energy,* not power.

In mechanics we can also express power in terms of force and velocity. Suppose that a force $\vec{F}$ acts on an object while it undergoes a vector displacement $\Delta\vec{s}$. If $F_\parallel$ is the component of $\vec{F}$ tangent to the path (parallel to $\Delta\vec{s}$), then the work done by the force is $\Delta W = F_\parallel \Delta s$. The average power is

$$P_{\text{av}} = \frac{F_\parallel \Delta s}{\Delta t} = F_\parallel \frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t} = F_\parallel v_{\text{av}} \tag{6.17}$$

Instantaneous power P is the limit of this expression as $\Delta t \to 0$:

$$P = F_\parallel v \tag{6.18}$$

where v is the magnitude of the instantaneous velocity. We can also express Eq. (6.18) in terms of the scalar product:

Instantaneous power for a force doing work on a particle

$$P = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{v} \tag{6.19}$$

($\vec{F}$: Force that acts on particle; $\vec{v}$: Velocity of particle)

EXAMPLE 6.9 Force and power

Each of the four jet engines on an Airbus A380 airliner develops a thrust (a forward force on the airliner) of 322,000 N. When the airplane is flying at 250 m/s (900 km/h), what power does each engine develop?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE Our target variable is the instantaneous power P, which is the rate at which the thrust does work. We use Eq. (6.18). The thrust is in the direction of motion, so $F_\parallel$ is just equal to the thrust. At $v = 250\ \text{m/s}$, the power developed by each engine is

$$P = F_\parallel v = (3.22 \times 10^5\ \text{N})(250\ \text{m/s}) = 8.05 \times 10^7\ \text{W} = 80.5\ \text{MW}$$

EVALUATE The speed of modern airliners is directly related to the power of their engines (**Fig. 6.26**). The largest propeller-driven airliners of the 1950s had engines that each developed about 2.5 MW, giving them maximum speeds of about 600 km/h. Each engine on an Airbus A380 develops more than 30 times more power, enabling it to fly at about 900 km/h and to carry a much heavier load.

Figure 6.26 (a) Propeller-driven and (b) jet airliners.

(a)

(b)

If the engines are at maximum thrust while the airliner is at rest on the ground so that $v = 0$, the engines develop *zero* power. Force and power are not the same thing!

KEYCONCEPT To find the power of a force acting on a moving object, multiply the component of force in the direction of motion by the object's speed.

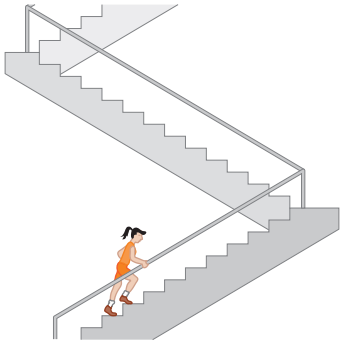
EXAMPLE 6.10 A "power climb"

A 50.0 kg vertical marathon runner runs up the stairs of the 632-meter-high, 127-storey Shanghai Tower, the world's second highest building (**Fig. 6.27**). To climb the 119 stories of the race (552 meters) in 25 minutes, what must be her average power output?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll treat the runner as a particle of mass m. Her average power output P_{av} must be enough to lift her at constant speed against gravity.

We can find P_{av} in two ways: (1) by determining how much work she must do and dividing that quantity by the elapsed time, as in Eq. (6.15), or (2) by calculating the average upward force she must exert (in the direction of the climb) and multiplying that quantity by her upward velocity, as in Eq. (6.17).

Figure 6.27 How much power is required to climb 119 stories of the Shanghai Tower in 25 minutes?



EXECUTE (1) As in Example 6.8, lifting a mass m against gravity requires an amount of work equal to the weight mg multiplied by the height h it is lifted. Hence the work the runner must do is

$$W = mgh = (50.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(552\text{ m}) = 2.70 \times 10^5\text{ J}$$

She does this work in a time 25.0 min = 1500 s, so from Eq. (6.15) the average power is

$$P_{av} = \frac{2.70 \times 10^5\text{ J}}{1500\text{ s}} = 180\text{ W}$$

(2) The force exerted is vertical and the average vertical component of velocity is $(552\text{ m})/(1500\text{ s}) = 0.368\text{ m/s}$, so from Eq. (6.17) the average power is

$$P_{av} = F_{\parallel} v_{av} = (mg)v_{av}$$
$$= (50.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(0.368\text{ m/s}) = 180\text{ W}$$

which is the same result as before.

EVALUATE The runner's *total* power output will be several times greater than 180 W. The reason is that the runner isn't really a particle but a collection of parts that exert forces on each other and do work, such as the work done to inhale and exhale and to make her arms and legs swing. What we've calculated is only the part of her power output that lifts her 119 stories.

KEYCONCEPT To calculate average power (the average rate of doing work), divide the work done by the time required to do that work.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 6.4 The air surrounding an airplane in flight exerts a drag force that acts opposite to the airplane's motion. When the Airbus A380 in Example 6.9 is flying in a straight line at a constant altitude at a constant 250 m/s, what is the rate at which the drag force does work on it? (i) 322 MW; (ii) 80.5 MW; (iii) 0; (iv) −80.5 MW; (v) −322 MW.

ANSWER

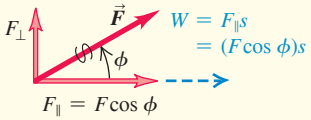
(v) The airliner has a constant horizontal velocity, so the net horizontal force on it must be zero. Hence the backward drag force must have the same magnitude as the forward force due to the combined thrust of the four engines. This means that the drag force must do *negative* work on the airplane at the same rate that the combined thrust force does *positive* work. The combined thrust does work at a rate of $4(80.5\text{ MW}) = 322\text{ MW}$, so the drag force must do work at a rate of −322 MW.

CHAPTER 6 SUMMARY

Work done by a force: When a constant force $\vec{F}$ acts on a particle that undergoes a straight-line displacement $\vec{s}$, the work done by the force on the particle is defined to be the scalar product of $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$. The unit of work in SI units is 1 joule = 1 newton-meter (1 J = 1 N · m). Work is a scalar quantity; it can be positive or negative, but it has no direction in space. (See Examples 6.1 and 6.2.)

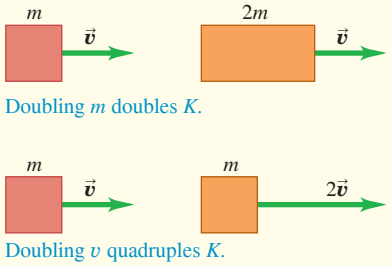
$$W = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{s} = Fs\cos\phi \qquad (6.2), (6.3)$$

ϕ = angle between $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{s}$



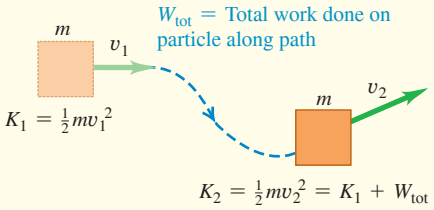
Kinetic energy: The kinetic energy K of a particle equals the amount of work required to accelerate the particle from rest to speed v. It is also equal to the amount of work the particle can do in the process of being brought to rest. Kinetic energy is a scalar that has no direction in space; it is always positive or zero. Its units are the same as the units of work: 1 J = 1 N · m = 1 kg · m^2/s^2.

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 \qquad (6.5)$$



The work–energy theorem: When forces act on a particle while it undergoes a displacement, the particle's kinetic energy changes by an amount equal to the total work done on the particle by all the forces. This relationship, called the work–energy theorem, is valid whether the forces are constant or varying and whether the particle moves along a straight or curved path. It is applicable only to objects that can be treated as particles. (See Examples 6.3–6.5.)

$$W_{\text{tot}} = K_2 - K_1 = \Delta K \qquad (6.6)$$

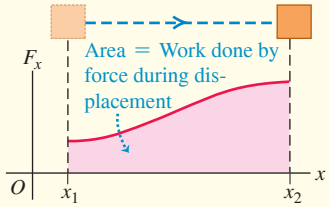


Work done by a varying force or on a curved path: When a force varies during a straight-line displacement, the work done by the force is given by an integral, Eq. (6.7). (See Examples 6.6 and 6.7.) When a particle follows a curved path, the work done on it by a force $\vec{F}$ is given by an integral that involves the angle ϕ between the force and the displacement. This expression is valid even if the force magnitude and the angle ϕ vary during the displacement. (See Example 6.8.)

$$W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F_x\,dx \qquad (6.7)$$

$$W = \int_{P_1}^{P_2} \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l} \qquad (6.14)$$

$$= \int_{P_1}^{P_2} F\cos\phi\,dl = \int_{P_1}^{P_2} F_\parallel\,dl$$

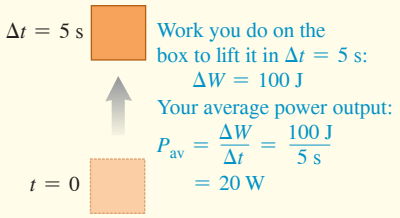


Power: Power is the time rate of doing work. The average power P_{av} is the amount of work ΔW done in time Δt divided by that time. The instantaneous power is the limit of the average power as Δt goes to zero. When a force $\vec{F}$ acts on a particle moving with velocity $\vec{v}$, the instantaneous power (the rate at which the force does work) is the scalar product of $\vec{F}$ and $\vec{v}$. Like work and kinetic energy, power is a scalar quantity. The SI unit of power is 1 watt = 1 joule/second (1 W = 1 J/s). (See Examples 6.9 and 6.10.)

$$P_{\text{av}} = \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} \qquad (6.15)$$

$$P = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta W}{\Delta t} = \frac{dW}{dt} \qquad (6.16)$$

$$P = \vec{F} \cdot \vec{v} \qquad (6.19)$$



Chapter 6 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 6.1 and 6.2 (Section 6.1) before attempting these problems.

VP6.2.1 As a rugby player moves in a straight line [displacement $(3.00\text{ m})\hat{\imath} - (6.50\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$], an opponent exerts a constant force $(126\text{ N})\hat{\imath} + (168\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$ on him. (a) How much work does the opponent do on the rugby player? (b) How much work does the rugby player do on the opponent?

VP6.2.2 You push a stalled car with a constant force of 215 N as it moves a distance 8.40 m in a straight line. The amount of work that you do in this process is 1.47×10^3 J. What is the angle between the direction of your push and the direction of the car's motion?

VP6.2.3 A block of mass 15.0 kg slides down a ramp inclined at 28.0° above **the horiz**ontal. As it slides, a kinetic friction force of 30.0 N parallel to the ramp acts on it. If the block slides for 3.00 m along the ramp, find (a) the work done on the block by friction, (b) the work done on the block by the force of gravity, (c) the work done on the block by the normal force, and (d) the total work done on the block.

VP6.2.4 Three students are fighting over a T-shirt. Student 1 exerts a constant force $\vec{F}_1 = F_0\hat{\imath}$ on the shirt, student 2 exerts a constant force $\vec{F}_2 = -3F_0\,\hat{\jmath}$ and student 3 exerts a constant force $\vec{F}_3 = -4F_0\,\hat{\imath} + G\hat{\jmath}$. (In these expressions F_0 and G are positive constants with units of force.) As the three students exert these forces, the T-shirt undergoes a straight-line displacemen $2d\hat{\imath} + d\hat{\jmath}$ where d is a positive constant with units of distance. (a) Find the work done on the T-shirt by each student. (b) What must be the value of G in order for the total work to be equal to zero?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 6.3 and 6.4 (Section 6.2) before attempting these problems.

VP6.4.1 A nail is partially inserted into a block of wood, with a length of 0.0300 m protruding above the top of the block. To hammer the nail in the rest of the way, you drop a 20.0 kg metal cylinder onto it. The cylinder rides on vertical tracks that exert an upward friction force of 16.0 N on the cylinder as it falls. You release the cylinder from rest at a height of 1.50 m above the top of the nail. The cylinder comes to rest on top of the block of wood, with the nail fully inside the block. Use the work–energy theorem to find (a) the speed of the cylinder just as it hits the nail and (b) the average force the cylinder exerts on the nail while pushing it into the block. Ignore the effects of the air.

VP6.4.2 You are using a rope to lift a 14.5 kg crate of fruit. Initially you are lifting the crate at 0.500 m/s. You then increase the tension in the rope to 175 N and lift the crate an additional 1.25 m. During this 1.25 m motion, how much work is done on the crate by (a) the tension force, (b) the force of gravity, and (c) the net force? (d) What are the kinetic energy and speed of the crate after being lifted the additional 1.25 m?

VP6.4.3 A helicopter of mass 1.40×10^3 kg is descending vertically at 3.00 m/s. The pilot increases the upward thrust provided by the main rotor so that the vertical speed decreases to 0.450 m/s as the helicopter descends 2.00 m. (a) What are the initial and final kinetic energies of the helicopter? (b) As the helicopter descends this 2.00 m distance, how much total work is done on it? How much work is done on it by gravity? How much work is done on it by the upward thrust force? (c) What is the magnitude of the upward thrust force (assumed constant)?

VP6.4.4 A block of mass m is released from rest on a ramp that is inclined at an angle θ from the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and the ramp is μ_k. The block slides a distance d along the ramp until it reaches the bottom. (a) How much work is done on the block by the force of gravity? (b) How much work is done on the block by the friction force? (c) Use the work–energy theorem to find the speed of the block just as it reaches the bottom of the ramp.

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 6.7 and 6.8 (Section 6.3) before attempting these problems.

VP6.8.1 An air-track glider of mass 0.150 kg is attached to the end of a horizontal air track by a spring with force constant 30.0 N/m (see Fig. 6.22a). Initially the spring is unstretched and the glider is moving at 1.25 m/s to the right. Find the maximum distance d that the glider moves to the right (a) if the air track is turned on, so that there is no friction, and (b) if the air is turned off, so that there is kinetic friction with coefficient $\mu_k = 0.320$.

VP6.8.2 An air-track glider of mass m is attached to the end of a horizontal air track by a spring with force constant k as in Fig. 6.22a. The air track is turned off, so there is friction between the glider and the track. Initially the spring is unstretched, but unlike the situation in Fig. 6.22a, the glider is initially moving to the *left* at speed v_1 The glider moves a distance d to the left before coming momentarily to rest. Use the work–energy theorem to find the coefficient of kinetic friction between the glider and the track.

VP6.8.3 A pendulum is made up of a small sphere of mass 0.500 kg attached to a string of length 0.750 m. The sphere is swinging back and forth between point A, where the string is at the maximum angle of 35.0° to the left of vertical, and point C, where the string is at the maximum angle of 35.0° to the right of vertical. The string is vertical when the sphere is at point B. Calculate how much work the force of gravity does on the sphere (a) from A to B, (b) from B to C, and (c) from A to C.

VP6.8.4 A spider of mass m is swinging back and forth at the end of a strand of silk of length L. During the spider's swing the strand makes a maximum angle of θ with the vertical. What is the speed of the spider at the low point of its motion, when the strand of silk is vertical?

BRIDGING PROBLEM A Spring That Disobeys Hooke's Law

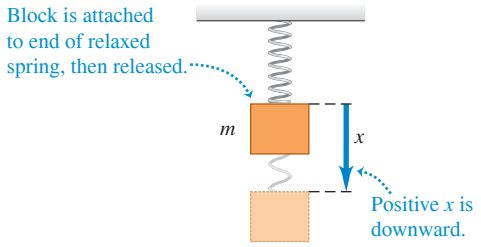
Consider a hanging spring of negligible mass that does *not* obey Hooke's law. When the spring is pulled downward by a distance x, the spring exerts an upward force of magnitude αx^2, where α is a positive constant. Initially the hanging spring is relaxed (not extended). We then attach a block of mass m to the spring and release the block. The block stretches the spring as it falls (**Fig. 6.28**). (a) How fast is the block moving when it has fallen a distance x_1? (b) At what rate does the spring do work on the block at this point? (c) Find the maximum distance x_2 that the spring stretches. (d) Will the block *remain* at the point found in part (c)?

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. The spring force in this problem isn't constant, so you have to use the work–energy theorem. You'll also need Eq. (6.7) to find the work done by the spring over a given displacement.
2. Draw a free-body diagram for the block, including your choice of coordinate axes. Note that x represents how far the spring is *stretched,* so choose the positive x-direction to be downward, as in Fig. 6.28. On your coordinate axis, label the points $x = x_1$ and $x = x_2$.
3. Make a list of the unknown quantities, and decide which of these are the target variables.

Figure **6.28** The block is attached to a spring that does not obey Hooke's law.



EXECUTE

4. Calculate the work done on the block by the spring as the block falls an arbitrary distance x. (The integral isn't a difficult one. Use Appendix D if you need a reminder.) Is the work done by the spring positive, negative, or zero?
5. Calculate the work done on the block by any other forces as the block falls an arbitrary distance x. Is this work positive, negative, or zero?
6. Use the work–energy theorem to find the target variables. (You'll also need an equation for power.) *Hint:* When the spring is at its maximum stretch, what is the speed of the block?
7. To answer part (d), consider the *net* force that acts on the block when it is at the point found in part (c).

EVALUATE

8. We learned in Section 2.5 that after an object dropped from rest has fallen freely a distance x_1, its speed is $\sqrt{2gx_1}$. Use this to decide whether your answer in part (a) makes sense. In addition, ask yourself whether the algebraic sign of your answer in part (b) makes sense.
9. Find the value of x where the net force on the block would be zero. How does this compare to your result for x_2? Is this consistent with your answer in part (d)?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q6.1 The sign of many physical quantities depends on the choice of coordinates. For example, a_y for free-fall motion can be negative or positive, depending on whether we choose upward or downward as positive. Is the same true of work? In other words, can we make positive work negative by a different choice of coordinates? Explain.

Q6.2 A lift is hoisted by its cables at constant speed. Is the total work done on the lift positive, negative, or zero? Explain.

Q6.3 A rope tied to an object is pulled, causing the object to accelerate. But according to Newton's third law, the object pulls back on the rope with a force of equal magnitude and opposite direction. Is the total work done then zero? If so, how can the object's kinetic energy change? Explain.

Q6.4 If it takes total work W to give an object a speed v and kinetic energy K, starting from rest, what will be the object's speed (in terms of v) and kinetic energy (in terms of K) if we do twice as much work on it, again starting from rest?

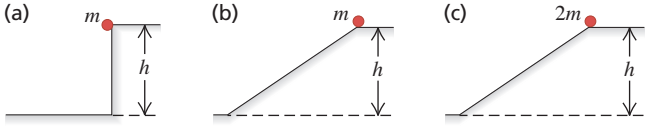
Q6.5 If there is a net nonzero force on a moving object, can the total work done on the object be zero? Explain, using an example.

Q6.6 In Example 5.5 (Section 5.1), how does the work done on the bucket by the tension in the cable compare with the work done on the cart by the tension in the cable?

Q6.7 In the conical pendulum of Example 5.20 (Section 5.4), which of the forces do work on the bob while it is swinging?

Q6.8 For the cases shown in **Fig. Q6.8,** the object is released from rest at the top and feels no friction or air resistance. In which (if any) cases will the mass have (i) the greatest speed at the bottom and (ii) the most work done on it by the time it reaches the bottom?

Figure **Q6.8**



Q6.9 A force $\vec{F}$ is in the x-direction and has a magnitude that depends on x. Sketch a possible graph of F versus x such that the force does zero work on an object that moves from x_1 to x_2, even though the force magnitude is not zero at all x in this range.

Q6.10 Does a car's kinetic energy change more when the car speeds up from 10 to 15 m/s or from 15 to 20 m/s? Explain.

Q6.11 A falling brick has a mass of 1.5 kg and is moving straight downward with a speed of 5.0 m/s. A 1.5 kg physics book is sliding across the floor with a speed of 5.0 m/s. A 1.5 kg melon is traveling with a horizontal velocity component 3.0 m/s to the right and a vertical component 4.0 m/s upward. Do all of these objects have the same velocity? Do all of them have the same kinetic energy? For both questions, give your reasoning.

Q6.12 Can the *total* work done on an object during a displacement be negative? Explain. If the total work is negative, can its magnitude be larger than the initial kinetic energy of the object? Explain.

Q6.13 A net force acts on an object and accelerates it from rest to a speed v_1. In doing so, the force does an amount of work W_1. By what factor must the work done on the object be increased to produce three times the final speed, with the object again starting from rest?

Q6.14 A truck speeding down the motorway has a lot of kinetic energy relative to a stopped traffic officer but no kinetic energy relative to the truck driver. In these two frames of reference, is the same amount of work required to stop the truck? Explain.

Q6.15 You are holding a briefcase by the handle, with your arm straight down by your side. Does the force your hand exerts do work on the briefcase when (a) you walk at a constant speed down a horizontal hallway and (b) you ride a lift from the first to second floor of a building? In both cases justify your answer.

Q6.16 When a book slides along a tabletop, the force of friction does negative work on it. Can friction ever do *positive* work? Explain. (*Hint:* Think of a box in the back of an accelerating truck.)

Q6.17 Time yourself while running up a flight of steps, and compute the average rate at which you do work against the force of gravity.

Q6.18 **Fractured Physics.** Many terms from physics are badly misused in everyday language. In both cases, explain the errors involved. (a) A *strong* person is called *powerful*. What is wrong with this use of *power*? (b) When a worker carries a bag of concrete along a level construction site, people say he did a lot of *work*. Did he?

Q6.19 An advertisement for a portable electrical generating unit claims that the unit's diesel engine produces 20 MW to drive an electrical generator that produces 30 MW of electrical power. Is this possible? Explain.

Q6.20 A car speeds up while the engine delivers constant power. Is the acceleration greater at the beginning of this process or at the end? Explain.

Q6.21 Consider a graph of instantaneous power versus time, with the vertical P-axis starting at $P = 0$. What is the physical significance of the area under the P-versus-t curve between vertical lines at t_1 and t_2? How could you find the average power from the graph? Draw a P-versus-t curve that consists of two straight-line sections and for which the peak power is equal to twice the average power.

Q6.22 A nonzero net force acts on an object. Is it possible for any of the following quantities to be constant: the object's (a) speed; (b) velocity; (c) kinetic energy?

Q6.23 When a certain force is applied to an ideal spring, the spring stretches a distance x from its unstretched length and does work W. If instead twice the force is applied, what distance (in terms of x) does the spring stretch from its unstretched length, and how much work (in terms of W) is required to stretch it this distance?

Q6.24 If work W is required to stretch an ideal spring a distance x from its unstretched length, what work (in terms of W) is required to stretch the spring an *additional* distance x?

EXERCISES

Section 6.1 Work

6.1 • You push your physics book 1.10 m along a horizontal tabletop with a horizontal push of 3.00 N while the opposing force of friction is 0.700 N. How much work does each of the following forces do on the book: (a) your 3.00-N push, (b) the friction force, (c) the normal force from the tabletop, and (d) gravity? (e) What is the net work done on the book?

6.2 • Using a cable with a tension of 1350 N, a tow truck pulls a car 5.00 km along a horizontal roadway. (a) How much work does the cable do on the car if it pulls horizontally? If it pulls at 35.0° above the horizontal? (b) How much work does the cable do on the tow truck in both cases of part (a)? (c) How much work does gravity do on the car in part (a)?

6.3 • A factory worker pushes a 30.0 kg crate a distance of 4.5 m along a level floor at constant velocity by pushing horizontally on it. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the crate and the floor is 0.25. (a) What magnitude of force must the worker apply? (b) How much work is done on the crate by this force? (c) How much work is done on the crate by friction? (d) How much work is done on the crate by the normal force? By gravity? (e) What is the total work done on the crate?

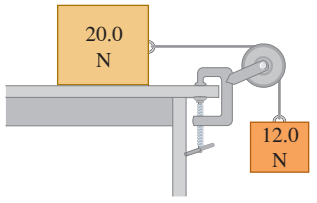
6.4 •• Suppose the worker in Exercise 6.3 pushes downward at an angle of 30° below the horizontal. (a) What magnitude of force must the worker apply to move the crate at constant velocity? (b) How much work is done on the crate by this force when the crate is pushed a distance of 4.5 m? (c) How much work is done on the crate by friction during this displacement? (d) How much work is done on the crate by the normal force? By gravity? (e) What is the total work done on the crate?

6.5 •• A 73.0 kg painter climbs a ladder that is 2.70 m long and leans against a vertical wall. The ladder makes a 25.0° angle with the wall. (a) How much work does gravity do on the painter? (b) Does the answer to part (a) depend on whether the painter climbs at constant speed or accelerates up the ladder?

6.6 •• Two tugboats pull a disabled supertanker. Each tug exerts a constant force of 1.80×10^6 N, one 16° west of north and the other 14° east of north, as they pull the tanker 0.63 km toward the north. What is the total work they do on the supertanker?

6.7 • Two blocks are connected by a very light string passing over a massless and frictionless pulley (**Fig. E6.7**). Traveling at constant speed, the 20.0 N block moves 75.0 cm to the right and the 12.0 N block moves 72.0 cm downward. How much work is done (a) on the 12.0 N block by (i) gravity and (ii) the tension in the string? (b) How much work is done on the 20.0 N block by (i) gravity, (ii) the tension in the string, (iii) friction, and (iv) the normal force? (c) Find the total work done on each block.

Figure **E6.7**



6.8 •• A loaded shopping trolley is rolling across a parking lot in a strong wind. You apply a constant force $\vec{F} = (30\text{ N})\hat{\imath} - (37\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$ to the trolley as it undergoes a displacement $\vec{s} = (-8.6\text{ m})\hat{\imath} - (3.8\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$. How much work does the force you apply do on the shopping trolley?

6.9 • Your physics book is resting in front of you on a horizontal table in the campus library. You push the book over to your friend, who is seated at the other side of the table, 0.400 m north and 0.300 m east of you. If you push the book in a straight line to your friend, friction does −4.8 J of work on the book. If instead you push the book 0.400 m due north and then 0.300 m due east, how much work is done by friction?

6.10 •• A 12.0 kg package in a mail-sorting room slides 2.00 m down a chute that is inclined at 53.0° below the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the package and the chute's surface is 0.40. Calculate the work done on the package by (a) friction, (b) gravity, and (c) the normal force. (d) What is the net work done on the package?

6.11 • A force $\vec{F}$ that is at an angle 60° above the horizontal is applied to a box that moves on a horizontal frictionless surface, and the force does work W as the box moves a distance d. (a) At what angle above the horizontal would the force have to be directed in order for twice the work to be done for the same displacement of the box? (b) If the angle is kept at 60° and the box is initially at rest, by what factor would F have to be increased to double the final speed of the box after moving distance d?

6.12 •• A boxed 11.0-kg computer monitor is dragged by friction 5.50 m upward along a conveyor belt inclined at an angle of 35.6° above the horizontal. If the monitor's speed is a constant 3.00 cm/s, how much work is done on the monitor by (a) friction, (b) gravity, and (c) the normal force of the conveyor belt?

6.13 •• A large crate sits on the floor of a warehouse. Paul and Bob apply constant horizontal forces to the crate. The force applied by Paul has magnitude 48.0 N and direction 61.0° south of west. How much work does Paul's force do during a displacement of the crate that is 12.0 m in the direction 22.0° east of north?

6.14 •• You apply a constant force $\vec{F} = (-68.0\text{ N})\hat{\imath} + (36.0\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$ to a 440-kg car as the car travels 48.0 m in a direction that is 240.0° counterclockwise from the $+x$-axis. How much work does the force you apply do on the car?

6.15 •• On a farm, you are pushing on a stubborn pig with a constant horizontal force with magnitude 30.0 N and direction 37.0° counterclockwise from the $+x$-axis. How much work does this force do during a displacement of the pig that is (a) $\vec{s} = (5.00\text{ m})\hat{\imath}$; (b) $\vec{s} = -(6.00\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$; (c) $\vec{s} = -(2.00\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (4.00\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$?

Section 6.2 Kinetic Energy and the Work–Energy Theorem

6.16 •• A 1.50 kg book is sliding along a rough horizontal surface. At point A it is moving at 3.21 m/s, and at point B it has slowed to 1.25 m/s. (a) How much total work was done on the book between A and B? (b) If −0.750 J of total work is done on the book from B to C, how fast is it moving at point C? (c) How fast would it be moving at C if +0.750 J of total work was done on it from B to C?

6.17 •• BIO **Animal Energy.** Adult cheetahs, the fastest of the great cats, have a mass of about 70 kg and have been clocked to run at up to 32 m/s (around 115 km/h). (a) How many joules of kinetic energy does such a swift cheetah have? (b) By what factor would its kinetic energy change if its speed were doubled?

6.18 •• A baseball has a mass of 0.145 kg. (a) In batting practice a batter hits a ball that is sitting at rest on top of a post. The ball leaves the post with a horizontal speed of 30.0 m/s. How much work did the force applied by the bat do on the ball? (b) During a game the same batter swings at a ball thrown by the pitcher and hits it in such a way that the ball moves away from him horizontally. Just before the ball is hit it is traveling at a speed of 20.0 m/s, and just after it is hit it is traveling in the opposite direction at a speed of 30.0 m/s. What is the total work done on the baseball by the force exerted by the bat? (c) How do the results of parts (a) and (b) compare? Explain.

6.19 • **Chicxulub impact.** About 66 million years ago, an asteroid crashed into Earth near the present-day town of Chicxulub in Mexico (Yukatán Peninsula.) The impact produced a crater of about 180 km in diameter and its effects are believed to have caused a massive extinction of plant and animal groups, including dinosaurs. According to recent simulations (2019), the asteroid had a mass of about 2.4×10^{15} kg and a velocity of about 20 km/s. (a) How much kinetic energy did this meteor deliver to the ground? (b) How does this energy compare to the energy released by a 1.0 megaton nuclear bomb? (A megaton bomb releases the same amount of energy as a million tonnes or 10^9 kg of TNT, 4.184×10^{15} J of energy.)

6.20 • A 5.10-kg watermelon is dropped from rest from the roof of a 29.0-m-tall building and feels no appreciable air resistance. (a) Calculate the work done by gravity on the watermelon during its displacement from the roof to the ground. (b) Just before it strikes the ground, what is the watermelon's (i) kinetic energy and (ii) speed? (c) Which of the answers in parts (a) and (b) would be *different* if there were appreciable air resistance?

6.21 • CP You are pushing a large box across a frictionless floor by applying a constant horizontal force. If the box starts at rest, you have to do work W_1 in order for the box to travel a distance d in time t. How much work would you have to do, in terms of W_1, to make the box go the same distance in half the time?

6.22 •• Use the work–energy theorem to solve each of these problems. You can use Newton's laws to check your answers. (a) A skier moving at 5.00 m/s encounters a long, rough horizontal patch of snow having a coefficient of kinetic friction of 0.220 with her skis. How far does she travel on this patch before stopping? (b) Suppose the rough patch in part (a) was only 2.90 m long. How fast would the skier be moving when she reached the end of the patch? (c) At the base of a frictionless icy hill that rises at 25.0° above the horizontal, a toboggan has a speed of 12.0 m/s toward the hill. How high vertically above the base will it go before stopping?

6.23 •• You are a member of an Alpine Rescue Team. You must project a box of supplies up an incline of constant slope angle α so that it reaches a stranded skier who is a vertical distance h above the bottom of the incline. The incline is slippery, but there is some friction present, with kinetic friction coefficient μ_k. Use the work–energy theorem to calculate the minimum speed you must give the box at the bottom of the incline so that it will reach the skier. Express your answer in terms of g, h, μ_k, and α.

6.24 •• You throw a 3.00 N rock vertically into the air from ground level. You observe that when it is 15.0 m above the ground, it is traveling at 25.0 m/s upward. Use the work–energy theorem to find (a) the rock's speed just as it left the ground and (b) its maximum height.

6.25 • A sled with mass 8.50 kg moves in a straight line on a frictionless, horizontal surface. At one point in its path, its speed is 4.20 m/s; after it has traveled 2.30 m beyond this point, its speed is 5.60 m/s. Use the work–energy theorem to find the force acting on the sled, assuming that this force is constant and that it acts in the direction of the sled's motion.

6.26 •• A football with mass 0.470 kg is initially moving with speed 2.10 m/s. A football player kicks the ball, exerting a constant force of magnitude 41.0 N in the same direction as the ball's motion. Over what distance must the player's foot be in contact with the ball to increase the ball's speed to 6.00 m/s?

6.27 • A 12-pack of Omni-Cola (mass 4.30 kg) is initially at rest on a horizontal floor. It is then pushed in a straight line for 1.20 m by a trained dog that exerts a horizontal force with magnitude 36.0 N. Use the work–energy theorem to find the final speed of the 12-pack if (a) there is no friction between the 12-pack and the floor, and (b) the coefficient of kinetic friction between the 12-pack and the floor is 0.30.

6.28 •• A block of ice with mass 2.00 kg slides 1.35 m down an inclined plane that slopes downward at an angle of 36.9° below the horizontal. If the block of ice starts from rest, what is its final speed? Ignore friction.

6.29 • Object A has 27 J of kinetic energy. Object B has one-quarter the mass of object A. (a) If object B also has 27 J of kinetic energy, is it moving faster or slower than object A? By what factor? (b) By what factor does the speed of each object change if total work −18 J is done on each?

6.30 •• A 36.0 kg crate is initially moving with a velocity that has magnitude 3.73 m/s in a direction 37.0° west of north. How much work must be done on the crate to change its velocity to 5.40 m/s in a direction 63.0° south of east?

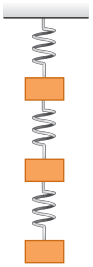
6.31 • **Stopping Distance.** A car is traveling on a level road with speed v_0 at the instant when the brakes lock, so that the tires slide rather than roll. (a) Use the work–energy theorem to calculate the minimum stopping distance of the car in terms of v_0, g, and the coefficient of kinetic friction μ_k between the tires and the road. (b) By what factor would the minimum stopping distance change if (i) the coefficient of kinetic friction were doubled, or (ii) the initial speed were doubled, or (iii) both the coefficient of kinetic friction and the initial speed were doubled?

Section 6.3 Work and Energy with Varying Forces

6.32 •• To stretch a spring 9.00 cm from its unstretched length, 19.0 J of work must be done. (a) What is the force constant of this spring? (b) What magnitude force is needed to stretch the spring 9.00 cm from its unstretched length? (c) How much work must be done to compress this spring 4.00 cm from its unstretched length, and what force is needed to compress it this distance?

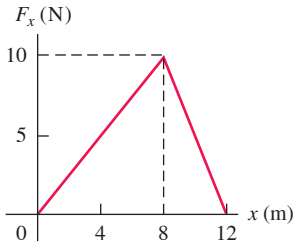
6.33 • Three identical 8.50 kg masses are hung by three identical springs (**Fig. E6.33**). Each spring has a force constant of 7.80 kN/m and was 12.0 cm long before any masses were attached to it. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of each mass. (b) How long is each spring when hanging as shown? (*Hint:* First isolate only the bottom mass. Then treat the bottom two masses as a system. Finally, treat all three masses as a system.)

Figure **E6.33**



6.34 • A child applies a force $\vec{F}$ parallel to the x-axis to a 10.0 kg sled moving on the frozen surface of a small pond. As the child controls the speed of the sled, the x-component of the force she applies varies with the x-coordinate of the sled as shown in **Fig. E6.34.** Calculate the work done by $\vec{F}$ when the sled moves (a) from $x = 0$ to $x = 8.0$ m; (b) from $x = 8.0$ m to $x = 12.0$ m; (c) from $x = 0$ to 12.0 m.

Figure **E6.34**



6.35 •• Suppose the sled in Exercise 6.34 is initially at rest at $x = 0$. Use the work–energy theorem to find the speed of the sled at (a) $x = 8.0$ m and (b) $x = 12.0$ m. Ignore friction between the sled and the surface of the pond.

6.36 •• A spring of force constant 300.0 N/m and unstretched length 0.240 m is stretched by two forces, pulling in opposite directions at opposite ends of the spring, that increase to 15.0 N. How long will the spring now be, and how much work was required to stretch it that distance?

6.37 •• A 6.0 kg box moving at 3.0 m/s on a horizontal, frictionless surface runs into one end of a light horizontal spring of force constant 75 N/cm that is fixed at the other end. Use the work–energy theorem to find the maximum compression of the spring.

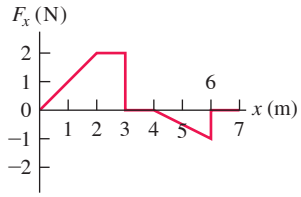
6.38 •• **Leg Presses.** As part of your daily workout, you lie on your back and push with your feet against a platform attached to two stiff springs arranged side by side so that they are parallel to each other. When you push the platform, you compress the springs. You do 77.0 J of work when you compress the springs 0.210 m from their uncompressed length. (a) What magnitude of force must you apply to hold the platform in this position? (b) How much *additional* work must you do to move the platform 0.210 m *farther,* and what maximum force must you apply?

6.39 •• (a) In Example 6.7 (Section 6.3) it was calculated that with the air track turned off, the glider travels 8.6 cm before it stops instantaneously. How large would the coefficient of static friction μ_s have to be to keep the glider from springing back to the left? (b) If the coefficient of static friction between the glider and the track is $\mu_s = 0.60$, what is the maximum initial speed v_1 that the glider can be given and still remain at rest after it stops instantaneously? With the air track turned off, the coefficient of kinetic friction is $\mu_k = 0.47$.

6.40 • A 3.70-kg block of ice is placed against a horizontal spring that has force constant $k = 250$ N/m and is compressed 0.021 m. The spring is released and accelerates the block along a horizontal surface. Ignore friction and the mass of the spring. (a) Calculate the work done on the block by the spring during the motion of the block from its initial position to where the spring has returned to its uncompressed length. (b) What is the speed of the block after it leaves the spring?

6.41 • A force $\vec{F}$ is applied to a 2.0-kg, radio-controlled model car parallel to the x-axis as it moves along a straight track. The x-component of the force varies with the x-coordinate of the car (**Fig. E6.41**). Calculate the work done by the force $\vec{F}$ when the car moves from (a) $x = 0$ to $x = 3.0$ m; (b) $x = 3.0$ m to $x = 4.0$ m; (c) $x = 4.0$ m to $x = 7.0$ m; (d) $x = 0$ to $x = 7.0$ m; (e) $x = 7.0$ m to $x = 2.0$ m.

Figure **E6.41**



6.42 • Suppose the 2.0 kg model car in Exercise 6.41 is initially at rest at $x = 0$ and $\vec{F}$ is the net force acting on it. Use the work–energy theorem to find the speed of the car at (a) $x = 3.0$ m; (b) $x = 4.0$ m; (c) $x = 7.0$ m.

6.43 •• At a waterpark, sleds with riders are sent along a slippery, horizontal surface by the release of a large compressed spring. The spring, with force constant $k = 4100$ N/m and negligible mass, rests on the frictionless horizontal surface. One end is in contact with a stationary wall. A sled and rider with total mass 74.0 kg are pushed against the other end, compressing the spring 0.395 m. The sled is then released with zero initial velocity. What is the sled's speed when the spring (a) returns to its uncompressed length and (b) is still compressed 0.220 m?

6.44 •• A small glider is placed against a compressed spring at the bottom of an air track that slopes upward at an angle of 40.0° above the horizontal. The glider has mass 0.0900 kg. The spring has $k = 640$ N/m and negligible mass. When the spring is released, the glider travels a maximum distance of 1.80 m along the air track before sliding back down. Before reaching this maximum distance, the glider loses contact with the spring. (a) What distance was the spring originally compressed? (b) When the glider has traveled along the air track 0.80 m from its initial position against the compressed spring, is it still in contact with the spring? What is the kinetic energy of the glider at this point?

6.45 •• **CALC** A force in the $+x$-direction with magnitude $F(x) = 18.0\text{ N} - (0.530\text{ N/m})x$ is applied to a 5.00 kg box that is sitting on the horizontal, frictionless surface of a frozen lake. $F(x)$ is the only horizontal force on the box. If the box is initially at rest at $x = 0$, what is its speed after it has traveled 11.0 m?

Section 6.4 Power

6.46 •• A crate on a motorized cart starts from rest and moves with a constant eastward acceleration of $a = 2.60\text{ m/s}^2$. A worker assists the cart by pushing on the crate with a force that is eastward and has magnitude that depends on time according to $F(t) = (5.40\text{ N/s})t$. What is the instantaneous power supplied by this force at $t = 4.70$ s?

6.47 • How many joules of energy does a 100 watt light bulb use per hour? How fast would a 75 kg person have to run to have that amount of kinetic energy?

6.48 •• BIO **Should You Walk or Run?** It is 5.0 km from your home to the physics lab. As part of your physical fitness program, you could run that distance at 10 km/h (which uses up energy at the rate of 700 W), or you could walk it leisurely at 3.0 km/h (which uses energy at 290 W). Which choice would burn up more energy, and how much energy (in joules) would it burn? Why does the more intense exercise burn up less energy than the less intense exercise?

6.49 • Estimate how many 12.7 kg boxes of copy paper an average student in your physics class can load into a van in 5.0 min. The van has a loading height of 0.7 m. If you assume that the magnitude of the work done on each box by the student equals the magnitude of the work done on the box by gravity when the box is lifted into the van, what is the average power output of the student?

6.50 •• A 20.0 kg rock is sliding on a rough, horizontal surface at 8.00 m/s and eventually stops due to friction. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the rock and the surface is 0.200. What average power is produced by friction as the rock stops?

6.51 • A student walks up three flights of stairs, a vertical height of about 10 m. Estimate the student's weight to be the average for students in your physics class. If the magnitude of the average rate at which the gravity force does work on the student equals 500 W, how long would it take the student to travel up the three flights of stairs?

6.52 •• When its 75 kW engine is generating full power, a small single-engine airplane with mass 700 kg gains altitude at a rate of 2.5 m/s (150 m/min). What fraction of the engine power is being used to make the airplane climb? (The remainder is used to overcome the effects of air resistance and of inefficiencies in the propeller and engine.)

6.53 •• Your job is to lift 30 kg crates a vertical distance of 0.90 m from the ground onto the bed of a truck. (a) If on average you can load 3 crates a minute onto the truck, what is your average power output? (b) How many crates would you have to load onto the truck in 1 minute for an average power output of 100 W?

6.54 •• A lift has mass 600 kg, not including passengers. The lift is designed to ascend, at constant speed, a vertical distance of 20.0 m (five floors) in 16.0 s, and it is driven by a motor that can provide up to 30 kW to the lift. What is the maximum number of passengers that can ride in the lift? Assume that an average passenger has mass 65.0 kg.

6.55 •• A ski tow operates on a 14.0° slope of length 340 m. The rope moves at 11.5 km/h and provides power for 55 riders at one time, with an average mass per rider of 70.0 kg. Estimate the power required to operate the tow.

6.56 • You are applying a constant horizontal force $\vec{F} = (-8.00\text{ N})\hat{\imath} + (3.00\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$ to a crate that is sliding on a factory floor. At the instant that the velocity of the crate is $\vec{v} = (3.20\text{ m/s})\hat{\imath} + (2.20\text{ m/s})\hat{\jmath}$, what is the instantaneous power supplied by this force?

6.57 • BIO While hovering, a typical flying insect applies an average force equal to twice its weight during each downward stroke. Take the mass of the insect to be 10 g, and assume the wings move an average downward distance of 1.0 cm during each stroke. Assuming 100 downward strokes per second, estimate the average power output of the insect.

PROBLEMS

6.58 ••• CALC An uncooperative cow is leaving the barn as you try harder and harder to push her back in. In coordinates with the origin at the barn door, the cow walks from $x = 0$ to $x = 6.9$ m as you apply a force with x-component $F_x = -[20.0\text{ N} + (3.0\text{ N/m})x]$. How much work does the force you apply do on the cow during this displacement?

6.59 • A luggage handler pulls a 20.0 kg suitcase up a ramp inclined at 32.0° above the horizontal by a force $\vec{F}$ of magnitude 160 N that acts parallel to the ramp. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the ramp and the incline is $\mu_k = 0.300$. If the suitcase travels 3.80 m along the ramp, calculate (a) the work done on the suitcase by $\vec{F}$; (b) the work done on the suitcase by the gravitational force; (c) the work done on the suitcase by the normal force; (d) the work done on the suitcase by the friction force; (e) the total work done on the suitcase. (f) If the speed of the suitcase is zero at the bottom of the ramp, what is its speed after it has traveled 3.80 m along the ramp?

6.60 •• CP A can of beans that has mass M is launched by a spring-powered device from level ground. The can is launched at an angle of α_0 above the horizontal and is in the air for time T before it returns to the ground. Air resistance can be neglected. (a) How much work was done on the can by the launching device? (b) How much work is done on the can if it is launched at the same angle α_0 but stays in the air twice as long? How does your result compare to the answer to part (a)?

6.61 •• A 5.00 kg block is released from rest on a ramp that is inclined at an angle of 60.0° below the horizontal. The initial position of the block is a vertical distance of 2.00 m above the bottom of the ramp. (a) If the speed of the block is 5.00 m/s when it reaches the bottom of the ramp, what was the work done on it by the friction force? (b) If the angle of the ramp is changed but the block is released from a point that is still 2.00 m above the base of the ramp, both the magnitude of the friction force and the distance along the ramp that the block travels change. If the angle of the incline is changed to 50.0°, does the magnitude of the work done by the friction force increase or decrease compared to the value calculated in part (a)? (c) How much work is done by friction when the ramp angle is 50.0°?

6.62 •• A block of mass m is released from rest at the top of an incline that makes an angle α with the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and incline is μ_k. The top of the incline is a vertical distance h above the bottom of the incline. Derive an expression for the work W_f done on the block by friction as it travels from the top of the incline to the bottom. When α is decreased, does the magnitude of W_f increase or decrease?

6.63 ••• Consider the blocks in Exercise 6.7 as they move 75.0 cm. Find the total work done on each one (a) if there is no friction between the table and the 20.0 N block, and (b) if $\mu_s = 0.500$ and $\mu_k = 0.325$ between the table and the 20.0 N block.

6.64 •• A 5.20 kg package slides 1.41 m down a long ramp that is inclined at 13.0° below the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the package and the ramp is $\mu_k = 0.313$. Calculate (a) the work done on the package by friction; (b) the work done on the package by gravity; (c) the work done on the package by the normal force; (d) the total work done on the package. (e) If the package has a speed of 2.22 m/s at the top of the ramp, what is its speed after it has slid 1.41 m down the ramp?

6.65 •• CP BIO **Whiplash Injuries.** When a car is hit from behind, its passengers undergo sudden forward acceleration, which can cause a severe neck injury known as *whiplash.* During normal acceleration, the neck muscles play a large role in accelerating the head so that the bones are not injured. But during a very sudden acceleration, the muscles do not react immediately because they are flexible; most of the accelerating force is provided by the neck bones. Experiments have shown that these bones will fracture if they absorb more than 8.0 J of energy. (a) If a car waiting at a stoplight is rear-ended in a collision that lasts for 10.0 ms, what is the greatest speed this car and its driver can reach without breaking neck bones if the driver's head has a mass of 5.0 kg (which is about right for a 70 kg person)? Express your answer in m/s and in km/h. (b) What is the acceleration of the passengers during the collision in part

(a), and how large a force is acting to accelerate their heads? Express the acceleration in m/s^2 and in g's.

6.66 •• CALC A net force along the x-axis that has x-component $F_x = -12.0\text{ N} + (0.300\text{ N/m}^2)x^2$ is applied to a 5.00 kg object that is initially at the origin and moving in the $-x$-direction with a speed of 6.00 m/s. What is the speed of the object when it reaches the point $x = 5.00$ m?

6.67 • CALC **Varying Coefficient of Friction.** A box is sliding with a speed of 4.50 m/s on a horizontal surface when, at point P, it encounters a rough section. The coefficient of friction there is not constant; it starts at 0.100 at P and increases linearly with distance past P, reaching a value of 0.600 at 12.5 m past point P. (a) Use the work–energy theorem to find how far this box slides before stopping. (b) What is the coefficient of friction at the stopping point? (c) How far would the box have slid if the friction coefficient didn't increase but instead had the constant value of 0.100?

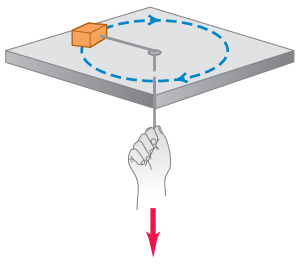
6.68 •• CALC Consider a spring that does not obey Hooke's law very faithfully. One end of the spring is fixed. To keep the spring stretched or compressed an amount x, a force along the x-axis with x-component $F_x = kx - bx^2 + cx^3$ must be applied to the free end. Here $k = 100\text{ N/m}$, $b = 700\text{ N/m}^2$, and $c = 12{,}000\text{ N/m}^3$. Note that $x > 0$ when the spring is stretched and $x < 0$ when it is compressed. How much work must be done (a) to stretch this spring by 0.050 m from its unstretched length? (b) To *compress* this spring by 0.050 m from its unstretched length? (c) Is it easier to stretch or compress this spring? Explain why in terms of the dependence of F_x on x. (Many real springs behave qualitatively in the same way.)

6.69 •• A net horizontal force $\vec{F}$ is applied to a box with mass M that is on a horizontal, frictionless surface. The box is initially at rest and then moves in the direction of the force. After the box has moved a distance D, the work that the constant force has done on it is W_D and the speed of the box is V. The equation $P = Fv$ tells us that the instantaneous rate at which $\vec{F}$ is doing work on the box depends on the speed of the box. (a) At the point in the motion of the box where the force has done half the total work, and so has done work $W_D/2$ on the box that started from rest, in terms of V what is the speed of the box? Is the speed at this point less than, equal to, or greater than half the final speed? (b) When the box has reached half its final speed, so its speed is $V/2$, how much work has been done on the box? Express your answer in terms of W_D. Is the amount of work done to produce this speed less than, equal to, or greater than half the work W_D done for the full displacement D?

6.70 •• You weigh 530 N. Your bathroom scale contains a light but very stiff ideal spring. When you stand at rest on the scale, the spring is compressed 1.80 cm. Your 180 N dog then gently jumps into your arms. How much work is done by the spring as the two of you are brought to rest by friction?

6.71 •• CP A small block with a mass of 0.0600 kg is attached to a cord passing through a hole in a frictionless, horizontal surface (**Fig. P6.71**). The block is originally revolving at a distance of 0.40 m from the hole with a speed of 0.70 m/s. The cord is then pulled from below, shortening the radius of the circle in which the block revolves to 0.10 m. At this new distance, the speed of the block is 2.80 m/s. (a) What is the tension in the cord in the original situation, when the block has speed $v = 0.70$ m/s? (b) What is the tension in the cord in the final situation, when the block has speed $v = 2.80$ m/s? (c) How much work was done by the person who pulled on the cord?

Figure **P6.71**

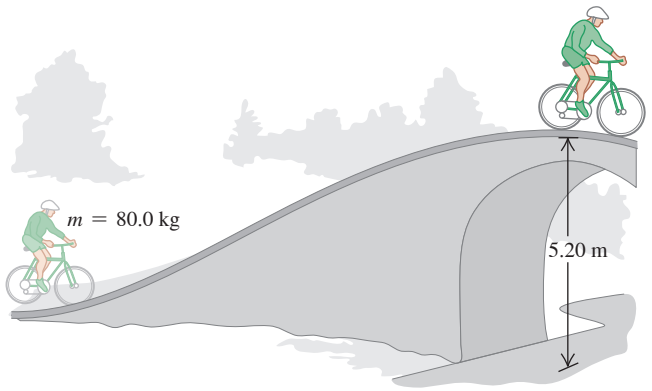


6.72 •• CALC **Proton Bombardment.** A proton with mass 1.67×10^{-27} kg is propelled at an initial speed of 3.00×10^5 m/s directly toward a uranium nucleus 5.00 m away. The proton is repelled by the uranium nucleus with a force of magnitude $F = \alpha/x^2$, where x is the separation between the two objects and $\alpha = 2.12 \times 10^{-26}\text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2$. Assume that the uranium nucleus remains at rest. (a) What is the speed of the proton when it is 8.00×10^{-10} m from the uranium nucleus? (b) As the proton approaches the uranium nucleus, the repulsive force slows down the proton until it comes momentarily to rest, after which the proton moves away from the uranium nucleus. How close to the uranium nucleus does the proton get? (c) What is the speed of the proton when it is again 5.00 m away from the uranium nucleus?

6.73 •• You are asked to design spring bumpers for the walls of a parking garage. A freely rolling 1200 kg car moving at 0.65 m/s is to compress the spring no more than 0.090 m before stopping. What should be the force constant of the spring? Assume that the spring has negligible mass.

6.74 •• You and your bicycle have combined mass 80.0 kg. When you reach the base of a bridge, you are traveling along the road at 7.50 m/s (**Fig. P6.74**). At the top of the bridge, you have climbed a vertical distance of 5.20 m and slowed to 2.50 m/s. Ignore work done by friction and any inefficiency in the bike or your legs. (a) What is the total work done on you and your bicycle when you go from the base to the top of the bridge? (b) How much work have you done with the force you apply to the pedals?

Figure **P6.74**



6.75 ••• A 2.90 kg textbook is forced against a horizontal spring of negligible mass and force constant 290 N/m, compressing the spring a distance of 0.300 m. When released, the textbook slides on a horizontal tabletop with coefficient of kinetic friction $\mu_k = 0.30$. Use the work–energy theorem to find how far the textbook moves from its initial position before it comes to rest.

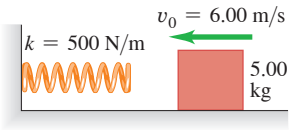
6.76 •• The spring of a spring gun has force constant $k = 400$ N/m and negligible mass. The spring is compressed 6.00 cm, and a ball with mass 0.0300 kg is placed in the horizontal barrel against the compressed spring. The spring is then released, and the ball is propelled out the barrel of the gun. The barrel is 6.00 cm long, so the ball leaves the barrel at the same point that it loses contact with the spring. The gun is held so that the barrel is horizontal. (a) Calculate the speed with which the ball leaves the barrel if you can ignore friction. (b) Calculate the speed of the ball as it leaves the barrel if a constant resisting force of 6.00 N acts on the ball as it moves along the barrel. (c) For the situation in part (b), at what position along the barrel does the ball have the greatest speed, and what is that speed? (In this case, the maximum speed does not occur at the end of the barrel.)

6.77 •• One end of a horizontal spring with force constant 130.0 N/m is attached to a vertical wall. A 4.00 kg block sitting on the floor is placed against the spring. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and the floor is $\mu_k = 0.400$. You apply a constant force $\vec{F}$ to the block. $\vec{F}$ has magnitude $F = 82.0$ N and is directed toward the wall. At the instant that the spring is compressed 80.0 cm, what are (a) the speed of the block, and (b) the magnitude and direction of the block's acceleration?

6.78 •• One end of a horizontal spring with force constant 76.0 N/m is attached to a vertical post. A 2.00 kg block of frictionless ice is attached to the other end and rests on the floor. The spring is initially neither stretched nor compressed. A constant horizontal force of 54.0 N is then applied to the block, in the direction away from the post. (a) What is the speed of the block when the spring is stretched 0.400 m? (b) At that instant, what are the magnitude and direction of the acceleration of the block?

6.79 • A 5.00 kg block is moving at $v_0 = 6.00$ m/s along a frictionless, horizontal surface toward a spring with force constant $k = 500$ N/m that is attached to a wall (**Fig. P6.79**). The spring has negligible mass. (a) Find the maximum distance the spring will be compressed. (b) If the spring is to compress by no more than 0.550 m, what should be the maximum value of v_0?

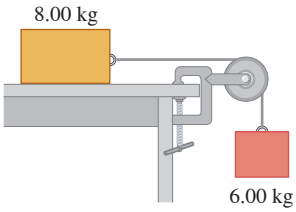
Figure **P6.79**



6.80 ••• A physics professor is pushed up a ramp inclined upward at 30.0° above the horizontal as she sits in her desk chair, which slides on frictionless rollers. The combined mass of the professor and chair is 85.0 kg. She is pushed 2.50 m along the incline by a group of students who together exert a constant horizontal force of 600 N. The professor's speed at the bottom of the ramp is 2.00 m/s. Use the work–energy theorem to find her speed at the top of the ramp.

6.81 •• Consider the system shown in **Fig. P6.81.** The rope and pulley have negligible mass, and the pulley is frictionless. Initially the 6.00 kg block is moving downward and the 8.00 kg block is moving to the right, both with a speed of 0.600 m/s. The blocks come to rest after moving 7.00 m. Use the work–energy theorem to calculate the coefficient of kinetic friction between the 8.00 kg block and the tabletop.

Figure **P6.81**



6.82 •• Consider the system shown in Fig. P6.81. The rope and pulley have negligible mass, and the pulley is frictionless. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the 8.00 kg block and the tabletop is $\mu_k = 0.250$. The blocks are released from rest. Use energy methods to calculate the speed of the 6.00 kg block after it has descended 1.50 m.

6.83 •• On an essentially frictionless, horizontal ice rink, a skater moving at 3.0 m/s encounters a rough patch that reduces her speed to 1.65 m/s due to a friction force that is 25% of her weight. Use the work–energy theorem to find the length of this rough patch.

6.84 •• BIO All birds, independent of their size, must maintain a power output of 10–25 watts per kilogram of object mass in order to fly by flapping their wings. (a) The Andean giant hummingbird (*Patagona gigas*) has mass 70 g and flaps its wings 10 times per second while hovering. Estimate the amount of work done by such a hummingbird in each wingbeat. (b) A 70 kg athlete can maintain a power output of 1.4 kW for no more than a few seconds; the *steady* power output of a typical athlete is only 500 W or so. Is it possible for a human-powered aircraft to fly for extended periods by flapping its wings? Explain.

6.85 •• A pump is required to lift 790 kg of water per minute from a well 14.1 m deep and eject it with a speed of 17.5 m/s. (a) How much work is done per minute in lifting the water? (b) How much work is done in giving the water the kinetic energy it has when ejected? (c) What must be the power output of the pump?

6.86 •• The upper end of a light rope of length $L = 0.600$ m is attached to the ceiling, and a small steel ball with mass $m = 0.200$ kg is suspended from the lower end of the rope. Initially the ball is at rest and the rope is vertical. Then a force $\vec{F}$ with constant magnitude $F = 0.760$ N and a direction that is maintained tangential to the path of the ball is applied and the ball moves in an arc of a circle of radius L. What is the speed of the ball when the rope makes an angle $\alpha = 37.0°$ with the vertical?

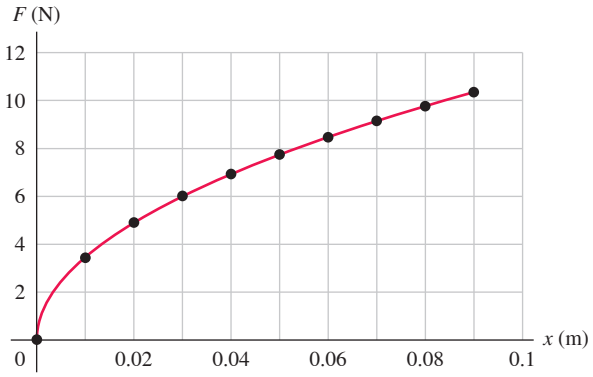
6.87 •• Consider the system of two blocks shown in Fig. P6.81, but with a different friction force on the 8.00 kg block. The blocks are released from rest. While the two blocks are moving, the tension in the light rope that connects them is 37.0 N. (a) During a 0.800 m downward displacement of the 6.00 kg block, how much work has been done on it by gravity? By the tension T in the rope? Use the work–energy theorem to find the speed of the 6.00 kg block after it has descended 0.800 m. (b) During the 0.800 m displacement of the 6.00 kg block, what is the total work done on the 8.00 kg block? During this motion how much work was done on the 8.00 kg block by the tension T in the cord? By the friction force exerted on the 8.00 kg block? (c) If the work–energy theorem is applied to the two blocks considered together as a composite system, use the theorem to find the net work done on the system during the 0.800 m downward displacement of the 6.00 kg block. How much work was done on the system of two blocks by gravity? By friction? By the tension in the rope?

6.88 • CALC An object has several forces acting on it. One of these forces is $\vec{F} = \alpha xy\hat{\imath}$, a force in the x-direction whose magnitude depends on the position of the object, with $\alpha = 2.50$ N/m^2. Calculate the work done on the object by this force for the following displacements of the object: (a) The object starts at the point ($x = 0$, $y = 3.00$ m) and moves parallel to the x-axis to the point ($x = 2.00$ m, $y = 3.00$ m). (b) The object starts at the point ($x = 2.00$ m, $y = 0$) and moves in the y-direction to the point ($x = 2.00$ m, $y = 3.00$ m). (c) The object starts at the origin and moves on the line $y = 1.5x$ to the point ($x = 2.00$ m, $y = 3.00$ m).

6.89 • BIO **Power of the Human Heart.** The human heart is a powerful and extremely reliable pump. Each day it takes in and discharges about 7500 L of blood. Assume that the work done by the heart is equal to the work required to lift this amount of blood a height equal to that of the average Australian woman (1.65 m). The density (mass per unit volume) of blood is 1.05×10^3 kg/m^3. (a) How much work does the heart do in a day? (b) What is the heart's power output?

6.90 •• DATA **Figure P6.90** shows the results of measuring the force F exerted on both ends of a rubber band to stretch it a distance x from its unstretched position. (Source: www.sciencebuddies.org) The data points are well fit by the equation $F = 33.55x^{0.4871}$, where F is in newtons and x is in meters. (a) Does this rubber band obey Hooke's law over the range of x shown in the graph? Explain. (b) The stiffness of a spring that obeys Hooke's law is measured by the value of its force constant k, where $k = F/x$. This can be written as $k = dF/dx$ to emphasize the quantities that are changing. Define $k_{\text{eff}} = dF/dx$ and calculate k_{eff} as a function of x for this rubber band. For a spring that obeys Hooke's law, k_{eff} is constant, independent of x. Does the stiffness of this band, as measured by k_{eff}, increase or decrease as x is increased, within the range of the data? (c) How much work must be done to stretch the rubber band from $x = 0$ to $x = 0.0400$ m? From $x = 0.0400$ m to $x = 0.0800$ m? (d) One end of the rubber band is attached to a stationary vertical rod, and the band is stretched horizontally 0.0800 m from its unstretched length. A 0.300 kg object on a horizontal, frictionless surface is attached to the free end of the rubber band and released from rest. What is the speed of the object after it has traveled 0.0400 m?

Figure P6.90

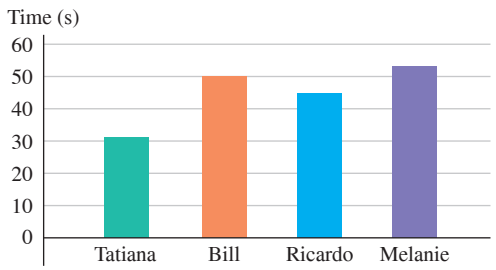


6.91 ••• DATA In a physics lab experiment, one end of a horizontal spring that obeys Hooke's law is attached to a wall. The spring is compressed 0.400 m, and a block with mass 0.300 kg is attached to it. The spring is then released, and the block moves along a horizontal surface. Electronic sensors measure the speed v of the block after it has traveled a distance d from its initial position against the compressed spring. The measured values are listed in the table. (a) The data show that the speed v of the block increases and then decreases as the spring returns to its unstretched length. Explain why this happens, in terms of the work done on the block by the forces that act on it. (b) Use the work–energy theorem to derive an expression for v^2 in terms of d. (c) Use a computer graphing program (for example, Excel or Matlab) to graph the data as v^2 (vertical axis) versus d (horizontal axis). The equation that you derived in part (b) should show that v^2 is a quadratic function of d, so, in your graph, fit the data by a second-order polynomial (quadratic) and have the graphing program display the equation for this trendline. Use that equation to find the block's maximum speed v and the value of d at which this speed occurs. (d) By comparing the equation from the graphing program to the formula you derived in part (b), calculate the force constant k for the spring and the coefficient of kinetic friction for the friction force that the surface exerts on the block.

d (m)	v (m/s)
0	0
0.05	0.85
0.10	1.11
0.15	1.24
0.25	1.26
0.30	1.14
0.35	0.90
0.40	0.36

6.92 •• DATA For a physics lab experiment, four classmates run up the stairs from the basement to the top floor of their physics building—a vertical distance of 16.0 m. The classmates and their masses are: Tatiana, 50.2 kg; Bill, 68.2 kg; Ricardo, 81.8 kg; and Melanie, 59.1 kg. The time it takes each of them is shown in **Fig. P6.92.** (a) Considering only the work done against gravity, which person had the largest average power output? The smallest? (b) Chang is very fit and has mass 62.3 kg. If his average power output is 700 W, how many seconds does it take him to run up the stairs?

Figure P6.92

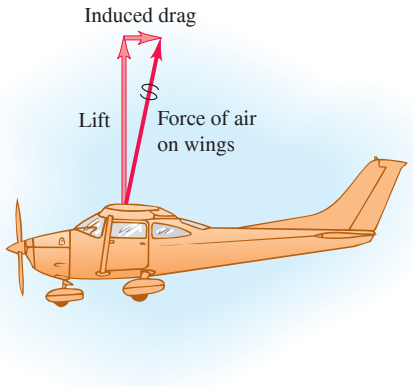


CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

6.93 ••• CALC **A Spring with Mass.** We usually ignore the kinetic energy of the moving coils of a spring, but let's try to get a reasonable approximation to this. Consider a spring of mass M, equilibrium length L_0, and force constant k. The work done to stretch or compress the spring by a distance L is $\frac{1}{2}kX^2$, where $X = L - L_0$. Consider a spring, as described above, that has one end fixed and the other end moving with speed v. Assume that the speed of points along the length of the spring varies linearly with distance l from the fixed end. Assume also that the mass M of the spring is distributed uniformly along the length of the spring. (a) Calculate the kinetic energy of the spring in terms of M and v. (*Hint:* Divide the spring into pieces of length dl; find the speed of each piece in terms of l, v, and L; find the mass of each piece in terms of dl, M, and L; and integrate from 0 to L. The result is *not* $\frac{1}{2}Mv^2$, since not all of the spring moves with the same speed.) In a spring gun, a spring of mass 0.249 kg and force constant 3100 N/m is compressed 2.70 cm from its unstretched length. When the trigger is pulled, the spring pushes horizontally on a 0.046 kg ball. The work done by friction is negligible. Calculate the ball's speed when the spring reaches its uncompressed length (b) ignoring the mass of the spring and (c) including, using the results of part (a), the mass of the spring. (d) In part (c), what is the final kinetic energy of the ball and of the spring?

6.94 ••• CALC An airplane in flight is subject to an air resistance force proportional to the square of its speed v. But there is an additional resistive force because the airplane has wings. Air flowing over the wings is pushed down and slightly forward, so from Newton's third law the air exerts a force on the wings and airplane that is up and slightly backward (**Fig. P6.94**). The upward force is the lift force that keeps the airplane aloft, and the backward force is called *induced drag.* At flying speeds, induced drag is inversely proportional to v^2, so the total air resistance force can be expressed by $F_{\text{air}} = \alpha v^2 + \beta/v^2$, where α and β are positive constants that depend on the shape and size of the airplane and the density of the air. For a Cessna 150, a small single-engine airplane, $\alpha = 0.35\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}^2/\text{m}^2$ and $\beta = 3.6 \times 10^5\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$. In steady flight, the engine must provide a forward force that exactly balances the air resistance force. (a) Calculate the speed (in km/h) at which this airplane will have the maximum *range* (that is, travel the greatest distance) for a given quantity of fuel. (b) Calculate the speed (in km/h) for which the airplane will have the maximum *endurance* (that is, remain in the air the longest time).

Figure P6.94



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO Energy of locomotion. On flat ground, a 70 kg person requires about 300 W of metabolic power to walk at a steady pace of 5.0 km/h (1.4 m/s). Using the same metabolic power output, that person can bicycle over the same ground at 15 km/h.

6.95 Based on the given data, how does the energy used in biking 1 km compare with that used in walking 1 km? Biking takes (a) $\frac{1}{3}$ of the energy of walking the same distance; (b) the same energy as walking the same distance; (c) 3 times the energy of walking the same distance; (d) 9 times the energy of walking the same distance.

6.96 A 70 kg person walks at a steady pace of 5.0 km/h on a treadmill at a 5.0% grade. (That is, the vertical distance covered is 5.0% of the horizontal distance covered.) If we assume the metabolic power required is equal to that required for walking on a flat surface plus the rate of doing work for the vertical climb, how much power is required? (a) 300 W; (b) 315 W; (c) 350 W; (d) 370 W.

6.97 How many times greater is the kinetic energy of the person when biking than when walking? Ignore the mass of the bike. (a) 1.7; (b) 3; (c) 6; (d) 9.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(ii) The expression for kinetic energy is $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. If we calculate K for the three balls, we find (i) $K = \frac{1}{2}(0.145\text{ kg}) \times (20.0\text{ m/s})^2 = 29.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 29.0\text{ J}$, (ii) $K = \frac{1}{2}(0.0145\text{ kg}) \times (200\text{ m/s})^2 = 290\text{ J}$, and (iii) $K = \frac{1}{2}(1.45\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})^2 = 2.90\text{ J}$. The smaller ball has the least mass of all three, but it also has the greatest speed and so the most kinetic energy. Since kinetic energy is a scalar, it does not depend on the direction of motion.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP6.2.1 (a) −714 J (b) +714 J
VP6.2.2 35.5°
VP6.2.3 (a) −90.0 J (b) 207 J (c) zero (d) 117 J
VP6.2.4 (a) Student 1: $2F_0d$; student 2: $-3F_0d$; student 3: $-8F_0d + Gd$ (b) $9F_0$
VP6.4.1 (a) 5.20 m/s (b) 9.18×10^3 N
VP6.4.2 (a) 219 J (b) −178 J (c) 41 J (d) 43 J, 2.4 m/s
VP6.4.3 (a) Initial: 6.30×10^3 J; final: 142 J (b) Total: -6.16×10^3 J; gravity: 2.74×10^4 J; thrust: -3.36×10^4 J (c) 1.68×10^4 N
VP6.4.4 (a) $mgd\sin\theta$ (b) $-\mu_k mgd\cos\theta$ (c) $\sqrt{2gd(\sin\theta - \mu_k\cos\theta)}$
VP6.8.1 (a) 8.84 cm (b) 7.41 cm
VP6.8.2 $(mv^2 - kd^2)/2mgd$
VP6.8.3 (a) +0.665 J (b) −0.665 J (c) zero
VP6.8.4 $\sqrt{2gL(1 - \cos\theta)}$

Bridging Problem

(a) $v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2}{m}(mgx_1 - \frac{1}{3}\alpha x_1^3)} = \sqrt{2gx_1 - \frac{2\alpha x_1^3}{3m}}$

(b) $P = -F_{\text{spring-1}}v_1 = -\alpha x_1^2\sqrt{2gx_1 - \frac{2\alpha x_1^3}{3m}}$

(c) $x_2 = \sqrt{\frac{3mg}{\alpha}}$ (d) no

? As this sandhill crane (*Grus canadensis*) glides in to a landing, it descends along a straight-line path at a constant speed. During the glide, what happens to the total mechanical energy (the sum of kinetic energy and gravitational potential energy)? (i) It stays the same; (ii) it increases due to the effect of gravity; (iii) it increases due to the effect of the air; (iv) it decreases due to the effect of gravity; (v) it decreases due to the effect of the air.

7 Potential Energy and Energy Conservation

When a diver jumps off a high board into a swimming pool, she hits the water moving pretty fast, with a lot of kinetic energy—energy of *motion*. Where does that energy come from? The answer we learned in Chapter 6 was that the gravitational force does work on the diver as she falls, and her kinetic energy increases by an amount equal to the work done.

However, there's a useful alternative way to think about work and kinetic energy. This new approach uses the idea of *potential energy*, which is associated with the *position* of a system rather than with its motion. In this approach, there is *gravitational potential energy* even when the diver is at rest on the high board. As she falls, this potential energy is *transformed* into her kinetic energy.

If the diver bounces on the end of the board before she jumps, the bent board stores a second kind of potential energy called *elastic potential energy*. We'll discuss elastic potential energy of simple systems such as a stretched or compressed spring. (An important third kind of potential energy is associated with the forces between electrically charged objects. We'll return to this in Chapter 23.)

We'll prove that in some cases the sum of a system's kinetic and potential energies, called the *total mechanical energy* of the system, is constant during the motion of the system. This will lead us to the general statement of the *law of conservation of energy,* one of the most fundamental principles in all of science.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **7.1** How to use the concept of gravitational potential energy in problems that involve vertical motion.
- **7.2** How to use the concept of elastic potential energy in problems that involve a moving object attached to a stretched or compressed spring.
- **7.3** The distinction between conservative and nonconservative forces, and how to solve problems in which both kinds of forces act on a moving object.
- **7.4** How to calculate the properties of a conservative force if you know the corresponding potential-energy function.
- **7.5** How to use energy diagrams to understand how an object moves in a straight line under the influence of a conservative force.

You'll need to review...

- **5.3** Kinetic friction and fluid resistance.
- **5.4** Dynamics of circular motion.
- **6.1, 6.2** Work and the work–energy theorem.
- **6.3** Work done by an ideal spring.

7.1 GRAVITATIONAL POTENTIAL ENERGY

In many situations it seems as though energy has been stored in a system, to be recovered later. For example, you must do work to lift a heavy stone over your head. It seems reasonable that in hoisting the stone into the air you are storing energy in the system, energy that is later converted into kinetic energy when you let the stone fall.

Figure 7.1 The greater the height of a basketball, the greater the associated gravitational potential energy. As the basketball descends, gravitational potential energy is converted to kinetic energy and the basketball's speed increases.

This example points to the idea of an energy associated with the *position* of objects in a system. This kind of energy is a measure of the *potential* or *possibility* for work to be done; if you raise a stone into the air, there is a potential for the gravitational force to do work on it, but only if you allow the stone to fall to the ground. For this reason, energy associated with position is called **potential energy.** The potential energy associated with an object's weight and its height above the ground is called *gravitational potential energy* (**Fig. 7.1**).

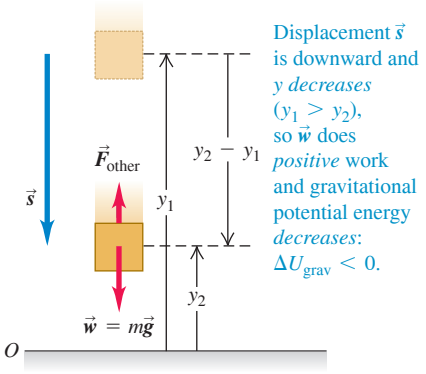
We now have *two* ways to describe what happens when an object falls without air resistance. One way, which we learned in Chapter 6, is to say that a falling object's kinetic energy increases because the force of the earth's gravity does work on the object. The other way is to say that the kinetic energy increases as the gravitational potential energy decreases. Later in this section we'll use the work–energy theorem to show that these two descriptions are equivalent.

Let's derive the expression for gravitational potential energy. Suppose an object with mass m moves along the (vertical) y-axis, as in **Fig. 7.2**. The forces acting on it are its weight, with magnitude $w = mg$, and possibly some other forces; we call the vector sum (resultant) of all the other forces $\vec{F}_{\text{other}}$. We'll assume that the object stays close enough to the earth's surface that the weight is constant. (We'll find in Chapter 13 that weight decreases with altitude.) We want to find the work done by the weight when the object moves downward from a height y_1 above the origin to a lower height y_2 (Fig. 7.2a). The weight and displacement are in the same direction, so the work W_{grav} done on the object by its weight is positive:

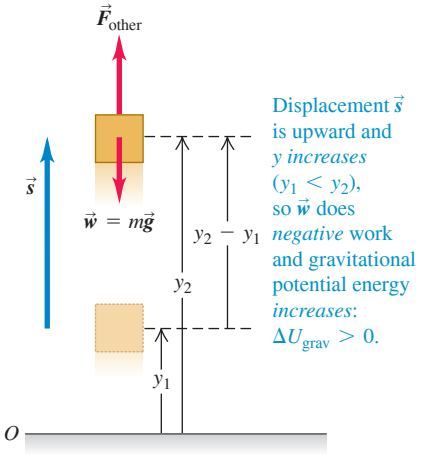
$$W_{\text{grav}} = Fs = w(y_1 - y_2) = mgy_1 - mgy_2 \tag{7.1}$$

Figure 7.2 When an object moves vertically from an initial height y_1 to a final height y_2, the gravitational force $\vec{w}$ does work and the gravitational potential energy changes.

(a) An object moves downward



(b) An object moves upward



This expression also gives the correct work when the object moves *upward* and y_2 is greater than y_1 (Fig. 7.2b). In that case the quantity $(y_1 - y_2)$ is negative, and W_{grav} is negative because the weight and displacement are opposite in direction.

Equation (7.1) shows that we can express W_{grav} in terms of the values of the quantity mgy at the beginning and end of the displacement. This quantity is called the **gravitational potential energy,** U_{grav}:

Gravitational potential energy associated with a particle

$$U_{\text{grav}} = mgy$$

Mass of particle; Acceleration due to gravity; Vertical coordinate of particle (y increases if particle moves upward)

(7.2)

Its initial value is $U_{\text{grav},1} = mgy_1$ and its final value is $U_{\text{grav},2} = mgy_2$. The change in U_{grav} is the final value minus the initial value, or $\Delta U_{\text{grav}} = U_{\text{grav},2} - U_{\text{grav},1}$. Using Eq. (7.2), we can rewrite Eq. (7.1) for the work done by the gravitational force during the displacement from y_1 to y_2:

$$W_{\text{grav}} = U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},2} = -(U_{\text{grav},2} - U_{\text{grav},1}) = -\Delta U_{\text{grav}}$$

or

Work done by the gravitational force on a particle ... equals the **negative of the change in the gravitational potential energy.**

$$W_{\text{grav}} = mgy_1 - mgy_2 = U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},2} = -\Delta U_{\text{grav}}$$

(7.3)

Mass of particle; Acceleration due to gravity; Initial and final vertical coordinates of particle

The negative sign in front of ΔU_{grav} is *essential*. When the object moves up, y increases, the work done by the gravitational force is negative, and the gravitational potential energy increases ($\Delta U_{\text{grav}} > 0$). When the object moves down, y decreases, the gravitational force does positive work, and the gravitational potential energy decreases ($\Delta U_{\text{grav}} < 0$). It's like drawing money out of the bank (decreasing U_{grav}) and spending it (doing positive work). The unit of potential energy is the joule (J), the same unit as is used for work.

CAUTION **To what object does gravitational potential energy "belong"?** It is *not* correct to call $U_{grav} = mgy$ the "gravitational potential energy of the object." The reason is that U_{grav} is a *shared* property of the object and the earth. The value of U_{grav} increases if the earth stays fixed and the object moves upward, away from the earth; it also increases if the object stays fixed and the earth is moved away from it. Notice that the formula $U_{grav} = mgy$ involves characteristics of both the object (its mass m) and the earth (the value of g).

Conservation of Total Mechanical Energy (Gravitational Forces Only)

To see what gravitational potential energy is good for, suppose an object's weight is the *only* force acting on it, so $\vec{F}_{other} = \mathbf{0}$. The object is then falling freely with no air resistance and can be moving either up or down. Let its speed at point y_1 be v_1 and let its speed at y_2 be v_2. The work–energy theorem, Eq. (6.6), says that the total work done on the object equals the change in the object's kinetic energy: $W_{tot} = \Delta K = K_2 - K_1$. If gravity is the only force that acts, then from Eq. (7.3), $W_{tot} = W_{grav} = -\Delta U_{grav} = U_{grav,1} - U_{grav,2}$. Putting these together, we get

$$\Delta K = -\Delta U_{grav} \qquad \text{or} \qquad K_2 - K_1 = U_{grav,1} - U_{grav,2}$$

which we can rewrite as

If only the gravitational force does work, total mechanical energy is conserved:

Initial kinetic energy $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2$; Initial gravitational potential energy $U_{grav,1} = mgy_1$

$$K_1 + U_{grav,1} = K_2 + U_{grav,2} \tag{7.4}$$

Final kinetic energy $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2$; Final gravitational potential energy $U_{grav,2} = mgy_2$

The sum $K + U_{grav}$ of kinetic and potential energies is called E, the **total mechanical energy of the system.** By "system" we mean the object of mass m and the earth considered together, because gravitational potential energy U is a shared property of both objects. Then $E_1 = K_1 + U_{grav,1}$ is the total mechanical energy at y_1 and $E_2 = K_2 + U_{grav,2}$ is the total mechanical energy at y_2. Equation (7.4) says that when the object's weight is the only force doing work on it, $E_1 = E_2$. That is, E is constant; it has the same value at y_1 and y_2. But since positions y_1 and y_2 are arbitrary points in the motion of the object, the total mechanical energy E has the same value at *all* points during the motion:

$$E = K + U_{grav} = \text{constant} \qquad \text{(if only gravity does work)}$$

A quantity that always has the same value is called a *conserved* quantity. *When only the force of gravity does work, the total mechanical energy is constant—that is, it is conserved* (**Fig. 7.3**). This is our first example of the **conservation of total mechanical energy.**

BIO APPLICATION Converting Gravitational Potential Energy to Kinetic Energy When a kingfisher (*Alcedo atthis*) spots a tasty fish, the bird dives from its perch with its wings tucked in to minimize air resistance. Effectively the only force acting on the diving kingfisher is the force of gravity, so the total mechanical energy is conserved: The gravitational potential energy lost as the kingfisher descends is converted into the bird's kinetic energy.

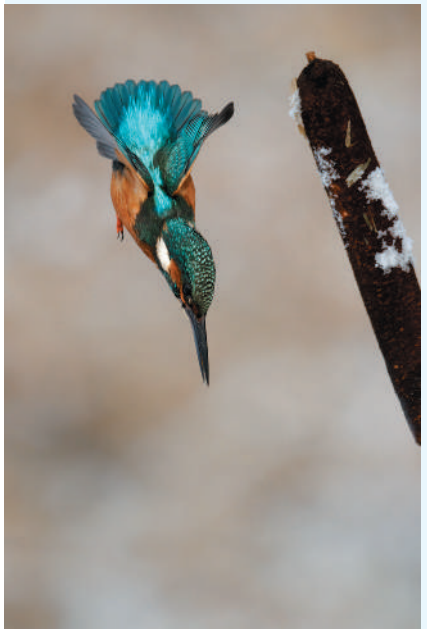
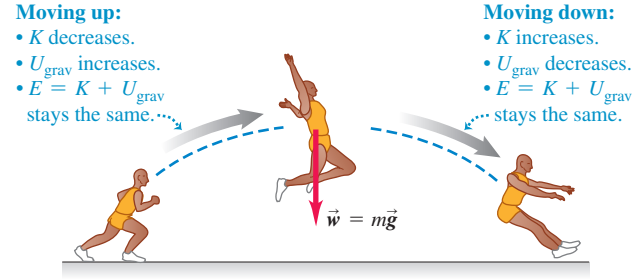


Figure 7.3 While this athlete is in midair, only gravity does work on him (if we neglect the minor effects of air resistance). Total mechanical energy E—the sum of kinetic and gravitational potential energies—is conserved.



When we throw a ball into the air, its speed decreases on the way up as kinetic energy is converted to potential energy: $\Delta K < 0$ and $\Delta U_{grav} > 0$. On the way back down, potential energy is converted back to kinetic energy and the ball's speed increases: $\Delta K > 0$ and $\Delta U_{grav} < 0$. But the *total* mechanical energy (kinetic plus potential) is the same at every point in the motion, provided that no force other than gravity does work on the ball (that is, air resistance must be negligible). It's still true that the gravitational force does work on the object as it moves up or down, but we no longer have to calculate work directly; keeping track of changes in the value of U_{grav} takes care of this completely.

Equation (7.4) is also valid if forces other than gravity are present but do *not* do work. We'll see a situation of this kind later, in Example 7.4.

CAUTION **Choose "zero height" to be wherever you like** When working with gravitational potential energy, we may choose any height to be $y = 0$. If we shift the origin for y, the values of y_1 and y_2 change, as do the values of $U_{grav,1}$ and $U_{grav,2}$. But this shift has no effect on the *difference* in height $y_2 - y_1$ or on the *difference* in gravitational potential energy $U_{grav,2} - U_{grav,1} = mg(y_2 - y_1)$. As Example 7.1 shows, the physically significant quantity is not the value of U_{grav} at a particular point but the *difference* in U_{grav} between two points. We can define U_{grav} to be zero at whatever point we choose.

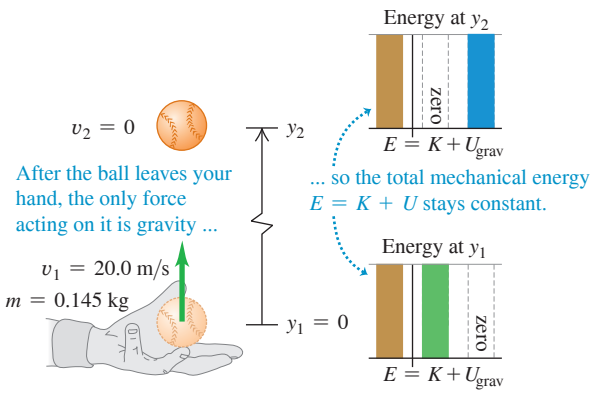
EXAMPLE 7.1 Height of a baseball from energy conservation

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

You throw a 0.145 kg baseball straight up, giving it an initial velocity of magnitude 20.0 m/s. Find how high it goes, ignoring air resistance.

IDENTIFY and SET UP After the ball leaves your hand, only gravity does work on it. Hence total mechanical energy is conserved, and we can use Eq. (7.4). We take point 1 to be where the ball leaves your hand and point 2 to be where it reaches its maximum height. As in Fig. 7.2, we take the positive y-direction to be upward. The ball's speed at point 1 is $v_1 = 20.0$ m/s; at its maximum height it is instantaneously at rest, so $v_2 = 0$. We take the origin at point 1, so $y_1 = 0$ (**Fig. 7.4**). Our target variable, the distance the ball moves vertically between the two points, is the displacement $y_2 - y_1 = y_2 - 0 = y_2$.

Figure 7.4 After a baseball leaves your hand, total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is conserved.



EXECUTE We have $y_1 = 0$, $U_{grav,1} = mgy_1 = 0$, and $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2 = 0$. Then Eq. (7.4), $K_1 + U_{grav,1} = K_2 + U_{grav,2}$, becomes

$$K_1 = U_{grav,2}$$

As the energy bar graphs in Fig. 7.4 show, this equation says that the kinetic energy of the ball at point 1 is completely converted to gravitational potential energy at point 2. We substitute $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2$ and $U_{grav,2} = mgy_2$ and solve for y_2:

$$\frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = mgy_2$$

$$y_2 = \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{(20.0 \text{ m/s})^2}{2(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 20.4 \text{ m}$$

EVALUATE As a check, use the given value of v_1 and our result for y_2 to calculate the kinetic energy at point 1 and the gravitational potential energy at point 2. You should find that these are equal: $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = 29.0$ J and $U_{grav,2} = mgy_2 = 29.0$ J. Note that we could have found the result $y_2 = v_1^2/2g$ by using Eq. (2.13) in the form $v_{2y}^2 = v_{1y}^2 - 2g(y_2 - y_1)$.

What if we put the origin somewhere else—for example, 5.0 m below point 1, so that $y_1 = 5.0$ m? Then the total mechanical energy at point 1 is part kinetic and part potential; at point 2 it's still purely potential because $v_2 = 0$. You'll find that this choice of origin yields $y_2 = 25.4$ m, but again $y_2 - y_1 = 20.4$ m. In problems like this, you are free to choose the height at which $U_{grav} = 0$. The physics doesn't depend on your choice.

KEYCONCEPT Total mechanical energy (the sum of kinetic energy and gravitational potential energy) is conserved when only the force of gravity does work.

When Forces Other Than Gravity Do Work

If other forces act on the object in addition to its weight, then $\vec{F}_{other}$ in Fig. 7.2 is *not* zero. For the pile driver described in Example 6.4 (Section 6.2), the force applied by the hoisting cable and the friction with the vertical guide rails are examples of forces that might be

included in $\vec{F}_{\text{other}}$. The gravitational work W_{grav} is still given by Eq. (7.3), but the total work W_{tot} is then the sum of W_{grav} and the work done by $\vec{F}_{\text{other}}$. We'll call this additional work W_{other}, so the total work done by all forces is $W_{\text{tot}} = W_{\text{grav}} + W_{\text{other}}$. Equating this to the change in kinetic energy, we have

$$W_{\text{other}} + W_{\text{grav}} = K_2 - K_1 \tag{7.5}$$

Also, from Eq. (7.3), $W_{\text{grav}} = U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},2}$, so Eq. (7.5) becomes

$$W_{\text{other}} + U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},2} = K_2 - K_1$$

which we can rearrange in the form

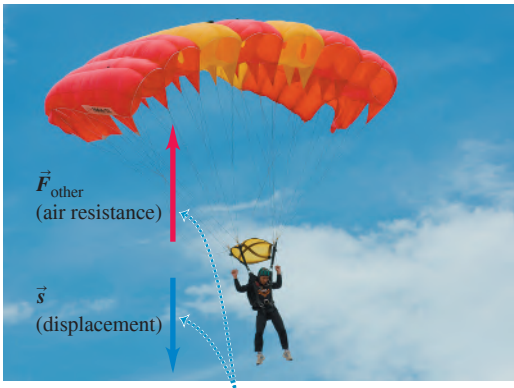
$$K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1} + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2} \qquad \text{(if forces other than gravity do work)} \tag{7.6}$$

We can use the expressions for the various energy terms to rewrite Eq. (7.6):

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 + mgy_1 + W_{\text{other}} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 + mgy_2 \qquad \text{(if forces other than gravity do work)} \tag{7.7}$$

The meaning of Eqs. (7.6) and (7.7) is this: *The work done by all forces other than the gravitational force equals the change in the total mechanical energy $E = K + U_{\text{grav}}$ of the system, where U_{grav} is the gravitational potential energy.* When W_{other} is positive, E increases and $K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2}$ is greater than $K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1}$. When W_{other} is negative, E decreases (**Fig. 7.5**). In the special case in which no forces other than the object's weight do work, $W_{\text{other}} = 0$. The total mechanical energy is then constant, and we are back to Eq. (7.4).

Figure **7.5** As this parachutist moves downward at a constant speed, the upward force of air resistance does negative work W_{other} on him. Hence the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ decreases.



- $\vec{F}_{\text{other}}$ and $\vec{s}$ are opposite, so $W_{\text{other}} < 0$.
- Hence $E = K + U_{\text{grav}}$ must decrease.
- The parachutist's speed remains constant, so K is constant.
- The parachutist descends, so U_{grav} decreases.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 7.1 Problems Using Total Mechanical Energy I

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Decide whether the problem should be solved by energy methods, by using $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ directly, or by a combination of these. The energy approach is best when the problem involves varying forces or motion along a curved path (discussed later in this section). If the problem involves elapsed time, the energy approach is usually *not* the best choice because it doesn't involve time directly.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. When using the energy approach, first identify the initial and final states (the positions and velocities) of the objects in question. Use the subscript 1 for the initial state and the subscript 2 for the final state. Draw sketches showing these states.
2. Define a coordinate system, and choose the level at which $y = 0$. Choose the positive y-direction to be upward. (The equations in this section require this.)
3. Identify any forces that do work on each object and that *cannot* be described in terms of potential energy. (So far, this means any forces other than gravity. In Section 7.2 we'll see that the work done by an ideal spring can also be expressed as a change in potential energy.) Sketch a free-body diagram for each object.
4. List the unknown and known quantities, including the coordinates and velocities at each point. Identify the target variables.

EXECUTE *the solution:* Write expressions for the initial and final kinetic and potential energies K_1, K_2, $U_{\text{grav},1}$, and $U_{\text{grav},2}$. If no other forces do work, use Eq. (7.4). If there are other forces that do work, use Eq. (7.6). Draw bar graphs showing the initial and final values of K, $U_{\text{grav},1}$, and $E = K + U_{\text{grav}}$. Then solve to find your target variables.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Check whether your answer makes physical sense. Remember that the gravitational work is included in ΔU_{grav}, so do not include it in W_{other}.

EXAMPLE 7.2 Work and energy in throwing a baseball

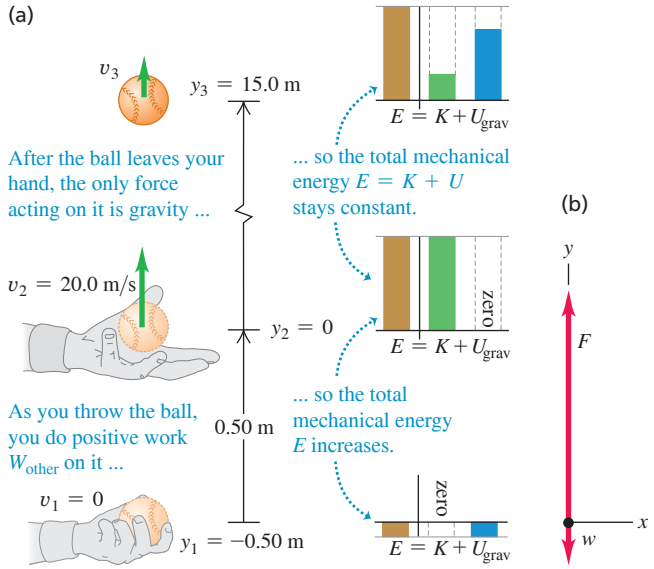
WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

In Example 7.1 suppose your hand moves upward by 0.50 m while you are throwing the ball. The ball leaves your hand with an upward velocity of 20.0 m/s. (a) Find the magnitude of the force (assumed constant) that your hand exerts on the ball. (b) Find the speed of the ball at a point 15.0 m above the point where it leaves your hand. Ignore air resistance.

IDENTIFY and SET UP In Example 7.1 only gravity did work. Here we must include the nongravitational, "other" work done by your hand. **Figure 7.6** (next page) shows a diagram of the situation, including a free-body diagram for the ball while it is being thrown. We let point 1 be where your hand begins to move, point 2 be where the ball leaves your hand, and point 3 be where the ball is 15.0 m above

Continued

Figure 7.6 (a) Applying energy ideas to a ball thrown vertically upward. (b) Free-body diagram for the ball as you throw it.



point 2. The nongravitational force $\vec{F}$ of your hand acts only between points 1 and 2. Using the same coordinate system as in Example 7.1, we have $y_1 = -0.50$ m, $y_2 = 0$, and $y_3 = 15.0$ m. The ball starts at rest at point 1, so $v_1 = 0$, and the ball's speed as it leaves your hand is $v_2 = 20.0$ m/s. Our target variables are (a) the magnitude F of the force of your hand and (b) the magnitude of the ball's velocity v_{3y} at point 3.

EXECUTE (a) To determine F, we'll first use Eq. (7.6) to calculate the work W_{other} done by this force. We have

$$K_1 = 0$$

$$U_{grav,1} = mgy_1 = (0.145\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(-0.50\text{ m}) = -0.71\text{ J}$$

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.145\text{ kg})(20.0\text{ m/s})^2 = 29.0\text{ J}$$

$$U_{grav,2} = mgy_2 = (0.145\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(0) = 0$$

(Don't worry that $U_{grav,1}$ is less than zero; all that matters is the *difference* in potential energy from one point to another.) From Eq. (7.6),

$$K_1 + U_{grav,1} + W_{other} = K_2 + U_{grav,2}$$

$$W_{other} = (K_2 - K_1) + (U_{grav,2} - U_{grav,1})$$

$$= (29.0\text{ J} - 0) + [0 - (-0.71\text{ J})] = 29.7\text{ J}$$

But since $\vec{F}$ is constant and upward, the work done by $\vec{F}$ equals the force magnitude times the displacement: $W_{other} = F(y_2 - y_1)$. So

$$F = \frac{W_{other}}{y_2 - y_1} = \frac{29.7\text{ J}}{0.50\text{ m}} = 59\text{ N}$$

This is more than 40 times the weight of the ball (1.42 N).

(b) To find v_{3y}, note that between points 2 and 3 only gravity acts on the ball. So between these points the total mechanical energy is conserved and $W_{other} = 0$. From Eq. (7.4), we can solve for K_3 and from that solve for v_{3y}:

$$K_2 + U_{grav,2} = K_3 + U_{grav,3}$$

$$U_{grav,3} = mgy_3 = (0.145\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(15.0\text{ m}) = 21.3\text{ J}$$

$$K_3 = (K_2 + U_{grav,2}) - U_{grav,3}$$

$$= (29.0\text{ J} + 0) - 21.3\text{ J} = 7.7\text{ J}$$

Since $K_3 = \frac{1}{2}mv_{3y}^2$, we find

$$v_{3y} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{2K_3}{m}} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{2(7.7\text{ J})}{0.145\text{ kg}}} = \pm 10\text{ m/s}$$

The plus-or-minus sign reminds us that the ball passes point 3 on the way up and again on the way down. The ball's kinetic energy $K_3 = 7.7$ J at point 3, and hence its speed at that point, doesn't depend on the direction the ball is moving. The velocity v_{3y} is positive $(+10\text{ m/s})$ when the ball is moving up and negative (-10 m/s) when it is moving down; the speed v_3 is 10 m/s in either case.

EVALUATE In Example 7.1 we found that the ball reaches a maximum height $y = 20.4$ m. At that point all of the kinetic energy it had when it left your hand at $y = 0$ has been converted to gravitational potential energy. At $y = 15.0$ m, the ball is about three-fourths of the way to its maximum height, so about three-fourths of its total mechanical energy should be in the form of potential energy. Can you verify this from our results for K_3 and $U_{grav,3}$?

KEYCONCEPT When a force that cannot be described in terms of potential energy does work W_{other}, the final value of the total mechanical energy equals the initial value of the mechanical energy plus W_{other}.

Gravitational Potential Energy for Motion Along a Curved Path

In our first two examples the object moved along a straight vertical line. What happens when the path is slanted or curved (**Fig. 7.7a**)? The object is acted on by the gravitational force $\vec{w} = m\vec{g}$ and possibly by other forces whose resultant we call $\vec{F}_{other}$. To find the work W_{grav} done by the gravitational force during this displacement, we divide the path into small segments $\Delta\vec{s}$; Fig. 7.7b shows a typical segment. The work done by the gravitational force over this segment is the scalar product of the force and the displacement. In terms of unit vectors, the force is $\vec{w} = m\vec{g} = -mg\hat{j}$ and the displacement is $\Delta\vec{s} = \Delta x\hat{\imath} + \Delta y\hat{j}$, so

$$W_{grav} = \vec{w}\cdot\Delta\vec{s} = -mg\hat{j}\cdot(\Delta x\hat{\imath} + \Delta y\hat{j}) = -mg\Delta y$$

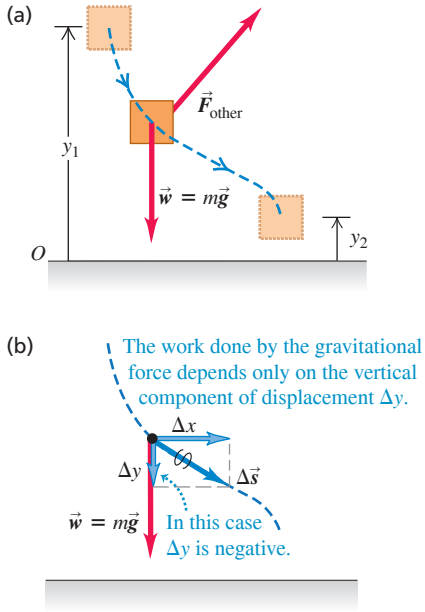
The work done by gravity is the same as though the object had been displaced vertically a distance Δy, with no horizontal displacement. This is true for every segment, so the *total* work done by the gravitational force is $-mg$ multiplied by the *total* vertical displacement $(y_2 - y_1)$:

$$W_{\text{grav}} = -mg(y_2 - y_1) = mgy_1 - mgy_2 = U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},2}$$

This is the same as Eq. (7.1) or (7.3), in which we assumed a purely vertical path. So even if the path an object follows between two points is curved, the total work done by the gravitational force depends on only the difference in height between the two points of the path. This work is unaffected by any horizontal motion that may occur. So *we can use the same expression for gravitational potential energy whether the object's path is curved or straight.*

CAUTION **With gravitational potential energy, only the change in height matters** The change in gravitational potential energy along a curved path depends only on the difference between the final and initial heights, not on the shape of the path. If gravity is the only force that does work along a curved path, then the total mechanical energy is conserved.

Figure 7.7 Calculating the change in gravitational potential energy for a displacement along a curved path.



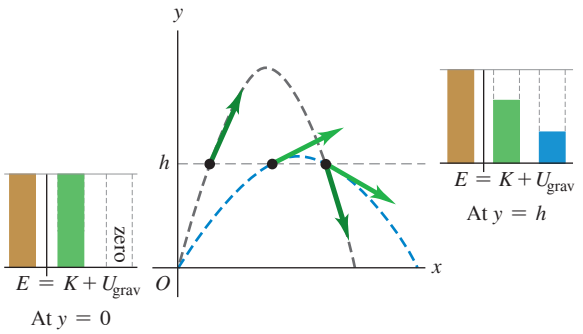
CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 7.3 Energy in projectile motion

A batter hits two identical baseballs with the same initial speed and from the same initial height but at different initial angles. Prove that both balls have the same speed at any height h if air resistance can be ignored.

SOLUTION The only force acting on each ball after it is hit is its weight. Hence the total mechanical energy for each ball is constant. **Figure 7.8** shows the trajectories of two balls batted at the same height with the same initial speed, and thus the same total mechanical energy, but with different initial angles. At all points at the same height the potential energy is the same. Thus the kinetic energy at this height must be the same for both balls, and the speeds are the same.

KEYCONCEPT The gravitational potential energy of an object depends on its height, not on the path the object took to reach that height.

Figure 7.8 For the same initial speed and initial height, the speed of a projectile at a given elevation h is always the same, if we ignore air resistance.



EXAMPLE 7.4 Speed at the bottom of a vertical circle

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

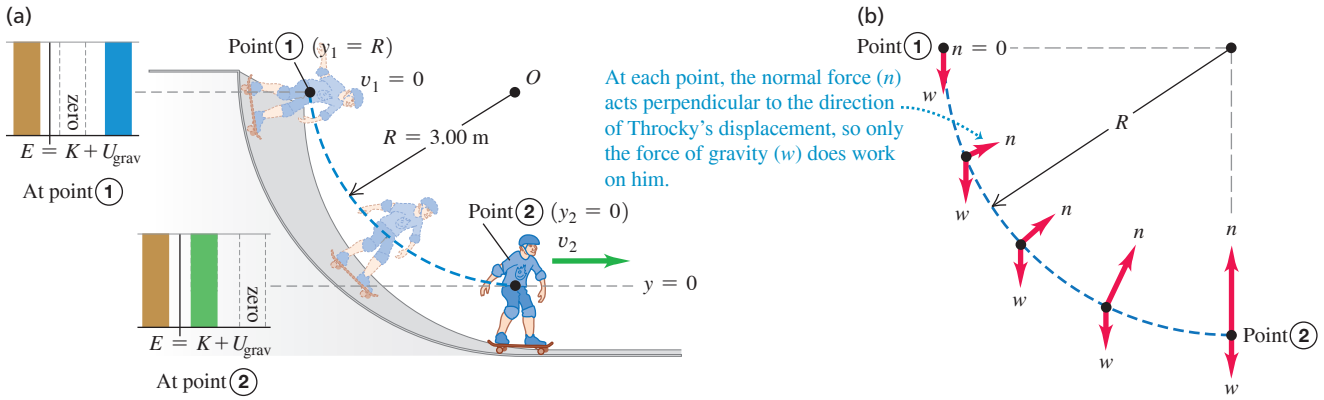
Your cousin Throckmorton skateboards from rest down a curved, frictionless ramp. If we treat Throcky and his skateboard as a particle, he moves through a quarter-circle with radius $R = 3.00$ m (**Fig. 7.9**, next page). Throcky and his skateboard have a total mass of 25.0 kg. (a) Find his speed at the bottom of the ramp. (b) Find the normal force that acts on him at the bottom of the curve.

IDENTIFY We can't use the constant-acceleration equations of Chapter 2 because Throcky's acceleration isn't constant; the slope decreases as he descends. Instead, we'll use the energy approach. Throcky moves along a circular arc, so we'll also use what we learned about circular motion in Section 5.4.

SET UP The only forces on Throcky are his weight and the normal force $\vec{n}$ exerted by the ramp (Fig. 7.9b). Although $\vec{n}$ acts all along the path, it does zero work because $\vec{n}$ is perpendicular to Throcky's displacement at every point. Hence $W_{\text{other}} = 0$ and the total mechanical energy is conserved. We treat Throcky as a particle located at the center of his body, take point 1 at the particle's starting point, and take point 2 (which we let be $y = 0$) at the particle's low point. We take the positive y-direction upward; then $y_1 = R$ and $y_2 = 0$. Throcky starts at rest at the top, so $v_1 = 0$. In part (a) our target variable is his speed v_2 at the bottom; in part (b) the target variable is the magnitude n of the normal force at point 2. To find n, we'll use Newton's second law and the relationship $a = v^2/R$.

Continued

Figure 7.9 (a) Throcky skateboarding down a frictionless circular ramp. The total mechanical energy is constant. (b) Free-body diagrams for Throcky and his skateboard at various points on the ramp.



EXECUTE (a) The various energy quantities are

$$K_1 = 0 \qquad U_{\text{grav},1} = mgR$$
$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 \qquad U_{\text{grav},2} = 0$$

From conservation of total mechanical energy, Eq. (7.4),

$$K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1} = K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2}$$
$$0 + mgR = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 + 0$$
$$v_2 = \sqrt{2gR} = \sqrt{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(3.00\ \text{m})} = 7.67\ \text{m/s}$$

This answer doesn't depend on the ramp being circular; Throcky would have the same speed $v_2 = \sqrt{2gR}$ at the bottom of any ramp of height R, no matter what its shape.

(b) To use Newton's second law to find n at point 2, we need the free-body diagram at that point (Fig. 7.9b). At point 2, Throcky is moving at speed $v_2 = \sqrt{2gR}$ in a circle of radius R; his acceleration is toward the center of the circle and has magnitude

$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v_2^2}{R} = \frac{2gR}{R} = 2g$$

The y-component of Newton's second law is

$$\Sigma F_y = n + (-w) = ma_{\text{rad}} = 2mg$$
$$n = w + 2mg = 3mg$$
$$= 3(25.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) = 735\ \text{N}$$

At point 2 the normal force is three times Throcky's weight. This result doesn't depend on the radius R of the ramp. We saw in Examples 5.9 and 5.23 that the magnitude of n is the *apparent weight,* so at the bottom of the *curved part* of the ramp Throcky feels as though he weighs three times his true weight mg. But when he reaches the *horizontal* part of the ramp, immediately to the right of point 2, the normal force decreases to $w = mg$ and thereafter Throcky feels his true weight again. Can you see why?

EVALUATE This example shows a general rule about the role of forces in problems in which we use energy techniques: What matters is not simply whether a force *acts,* but whether that force *does work.* If the force does no work, like the normal force $\vec{n}$ here, then it does not appear in Eqs. (7.4) and (7.6).

KEYCONCEPT If one of the forces that acts on a moving object is always perpendicular to the object's path, that force does no work on the object and plays no role in the equation for total mechanical energy.

EXAMPLE 7.5 A vertical circle with friction

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

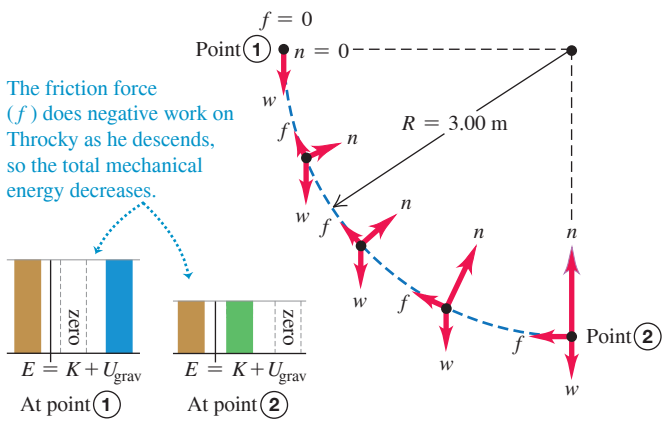
Suppose that the ramp of Example 7.4 is not frictionless and that Throcky's speed at the bottom is only 6.00 m/s, not the 7.67 m/s we found there. What work was done on him by the friction force?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The setup is the same as in Example 7.4. **Figure 7.10** shows that again the normal force does no work, but now there is a friction force $\vec{f}$ that *does* do work W_f. Hence the nongravitational work W_{other} done on Throcky between points 1 and 2 is equal to W_f and is not zero. Our target variable is $W_f = W_{\text{other}}$, which we'll find by using Eq. (7.6). Since $\vec{f}$ points opposite to Throcky's motion, W_f is negative.

EXECUTE The energy quantities are

$$K_1 = 0$$
$$U_{\text{grav},1} = mgR = (25.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(3.00\ \text{m}) = 735\ \text{J}$$
$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(25.0\ \text{kg})(6.00\ \text{m/s})^2 = 450\ \text{J}$$
$$U_{\text{grav},2} = 0$$

Figure 7.10 Energy bar graphs and free-body diagrams for Throcky skateboarding down a ramp with friction.



From Eq. (7.6),

$$\begin{aligned} W_f &= W_{\text{other}} \\ &= K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2} - K_1 - U_{\text{grav},1} \\ &= 450\ \text{J} + 0 - 0 - 735\ \text{J} = -285\ \text{J} \end{aligned}$$

The work done by the friction force is −285 J, and the total mechanical energy *decreases* by 285 J.

EVALUATE Our result for W_f is negative. Can you see from the free-body diagrams in Fig. 7.10 why this must be so?

It would be very difficult to apply Newton's second law, $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, directly to this problem because the normal and friction forces and the acceleration are continuously changing in both magnitude and direction as Throcky descends. The energy approach, by contrast, relates the motions at the top and bottom of the ramp without involving the details of the motion in between.

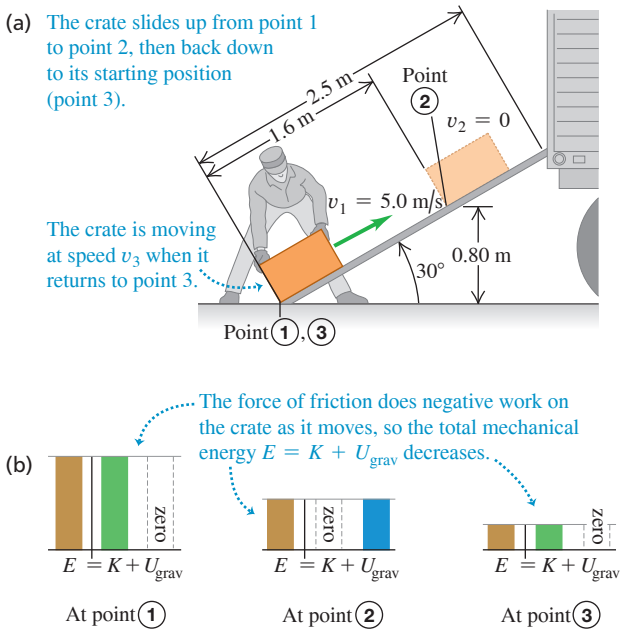
KEYCONCEPT Whether an object's path is straight or curved, the relationship is the same among the initial total mechanical energy, the final total mechanical energy, and the work done by forces other than gravity.

EXAMPLE 7.6 An inclined plane with friction

We want to slide a 12 kg crate up a 2.5-m-long ramp inclined at 30°. A worker, ignoring friction, calculates that he can do this by giving it an initial speed of 5.0 m/s at the bottom and letting it go. But friction is *not* negligible; the crate slides only 1.6 m up the ramp, stops, and slides back down (**Fig. 7.11a**). (a) Find the magnitude of the friction force acting on the crate, assuming that it is constant. (b) How fast is the crate moving when it reaches the bottom of the ramp?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The friction force does work on the crate as it slides from point 1, at the bottom of the ramp, to point 2, where the crate stops instantaneously ($v_2 = 0$). Friction also does work as the crate returns to the bottom of the ramp, which we'll call point 3 (Fig. 7.11a). We take the positive y-direction upward. We take $y = 0$ (and hence $U_{\text{grav}} = 0$) to be at ground level (point 1), so $y_1 = 0$, $y_2 = (1.6\ \text{m})\sin 30° = 0.80\ \text{m}$, and $y_3 = 0$. We are given $v_1 = 5.0$ m/s. In part (a) our target variable is f, the magnitude of the friction force as the crate slides up; we'll find this by using the energy approach. In part (b) our target variable is v_3, the crate's speed at the bottom of the ramp. We'll calculate the work done by friction as the crate slides back down, then use the energy approach to find v_3.

Figure 7.11 (a) A crate slides partway up the ramp, stops, and slides back down. (b) Energy bar graphs for points 1, 2, and 3.



EXECUTE (a) The energy quantities are

$$\begin{aligned} K_1 &= \tfrac{1}{2}(12\ \text{kg})(5.0\ \text{m/s})^2 = 150\ \text{J} \\ U_{\text{grav},1} &= 0 \\ K_2 &= 0 \\ U_{\text{grav},2} &= (12\ \text{kg})(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.80\ \text{m}) = 94\ \text{J} \\ W_{\text{other}} &= -fs \end{aligned}$$

Here $s = 1.6$ m. Using Eq. (7.6), we find

$$\begin{aligned} K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1} + W_{\text{other}} &= K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2} \\ W_{\text{other}} = -fs &= (K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2}) - (K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1}) \\ &= (0 + 94\ \text{J}) - (150\ \text{J} + 0) = -56\ \text{J} = -fs \\ f &= \frac{W_{\text{other}}}{s} = \frac{56\ \text{J}}{1.6\ \text{m}} = 35\ \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

The friction force of 35 N, acting over 1.6 m, causes the total mechanical energy of the crate to decrease from 150 J to 94 J (Fig. 7.11b).

(b) As the crate moves from point 2 to point 3, the work done by friction has the same negative value as from point 1 to point 2. (Both the friction force and the displacement reverse direction, but their magnitudes don't change.) The total work done by friction between points 1 and 3 is therefore

$$W_{\text{other}} = W_{\text{fric}} = -2fs = -2(56\ \text{J}) = -112\ \text{J}$$

From part (a), $K_1 = 150$ J and $U_{\text{grav},1} = 0$; in addition, $U_{\text{grav},3} = 0$ since $y_3 = 0$. Equation (7.6) then gives

$$\begin{aligned} K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1} + W_{\text{other}} &= K_3 + U_{\text{grav},3} \\ K_3 &= K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},3} + W_{\text{other}} \\ &= 150\ \text{J} + 0 - 0 + (-112\ \text{J}) = 38\ \text{J} \end{aligned}$$

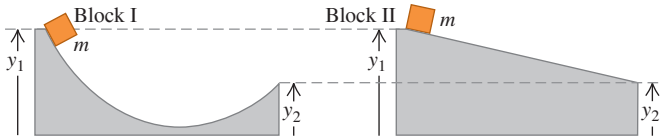
The crate returns to the bottom of the ramp with only 38 J of the original 150 J of total mechanical energy (Fig. 7.11b). Since $K_3 = \frac{1}{2}mv_3^2$,

$$v_3 = \sqrt{\frac{2K_3}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(38\ \text{J})}{12\ \text{kg}}} = 2.5\ \text{m/s}$$

EVALUATE Energy is lost due to friction, so the crate's speed $v_3 = 2.5$ m/s when it returns to the bottom of the ramp is less than the speed $v_1 = 5.0$ m/s at which it left that point. In part (b) we applied Eq. (7.6) to points 1 and 3, considering the round trip as a whole. Alternatively, we could have considered the second part of the motion by itself and applied Eq. (7.6) to points 2 and 3. Try it; do you get the same result for v_3?

KEYCONCEPT For straight-line motion problems in which the forces are constant in each stage of the motion, you can use the total mechanical energy to find the magnitude of an unknown force that does work.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 7.1 The figure shows two frictionless ramps. The heights y_1 and y_2 are the same for both ramps. If a block of mass m is released from rest at the left-hand end of each ramp, which block arrives at the right-hand end with the greater speed? (i) Block I; (ii) block II; (iii) the speed is the same for both blocks.



ANSWER

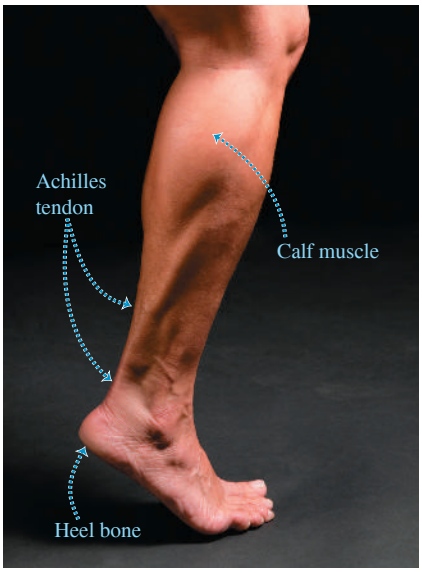
(iii) The initial kinetic energy $K_1 = 0$, the initial potential energy $U_1 = mgy_1$, and the final potential energy $U_2 = mgy_2$, are the same for both blocks. Total mechanical energy is conserved in both cases, so the final kinetic energy $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2$ is also the same for both blocks. Hence the speed at the right-hand end is the *same* in both cases!

7.2 ELASTIC POTENTIAL ENERGY

In many situations we encounter potential energy that is not gravitational in nature. One example is a rubber-band slingshot. Work is done on the rubber band by the force that stretches it, and that work is stored in the rubber band until you let it go. Then the rubber band gives kinetic energy to the projectile.

This is the same pattern we saw with the baseball in Example 7.2: Do work on the system to store energy, which can later be converted to kinetic energy. We'll describe the process of storing energy in a deformable object such as a spring or rubber band in terms of *elastic potential energy* (**Fig. 7.12**). An object is called *elastic* if it returns to its original shape and size after being deformed.

Figure 7.12 The Achilles tendon, which runs along the back of the ankle to the heel bone, acts like a natural spring. When it stretches and then relaxes, this tendon stores and then releases elastic potential energy. This spring action reduces the amount of work your leg muscles must do as you run.



To be specific, we'll consider storing energy in an ideal spring, like the ones we discussed in Section 6.3. To keep such an ideal spring stretched by a distance x, we must exert a force $F = kx$, where k is the force constant of the spring. Many elastic objects show this same direct proportionality between force $\vec{F}$ and displacement x, provided that x is sufficiently small.

Let's proceed just as we did for gravitational potential energy. We begin with the work done by the elastic (spring) force and then combine this with the work–energy theorem. The difference is that gravitational potential energy is a shared property of an object and the earth, but elastic potential energy is stored in just the spring (or other deformable object).

Figure 7.13 shows the ideal spring from Fig. 6.18 but with its left end held stationary and its right end attached to a block with mass m that can move along the x-axis. In Fig. 7.13a the block is at $x = 0$ when the spring is neither stretched nor compressed. We move the block to one side, thereby stretching or compressing the spring, then let it go. As the block moves from a different position x_1 to a different position x_2, how much work does the elastic (spring) force do on the block?

We found in Section 6.3 that the work we must do *on* the spring to move one end from an elongation x_1 to a different elongation x_2 is

$$W = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 \qquad \text{(work done } on \text{ a spring)} \tag{7.8}$$

where k is the force constant of the spring. If we stretch the spring farther, we do positive work on the spring; if we let the spring relax while holding one end, we do negative work on it. This expression for work is also correct when the spring is compressed such that x_1, x_2, or both are negative. Now, from Newton's third law the work done *by* the spring is just the negative of the work done *on* the spring. So by changing the signs in Eq. (7.8), we find that in a displacement from x_1 to x_2 the spring does an amount of work W_{el} given by

$$W_{\text{el}} = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 \qquad \text{(work done } by \text{ a spring)} \tag{7.9}$$

The subscript "el" stands for *elastic*. When both x_1 and x_2 are positive and $x_2 > x_1$ (Fig. 7.13b), the spring does negative work on the block, which moves in the $+x$-direction while the spring pulls on it in the $-x$-direction. The spring stretches farther, and the block

slows down. When both x_1 and x_2 are positive and $x_2 < x_1$ (Fig. 7.13c), the spring does positive work as it relaxes and the block speeds up. If the spring can be compressed as well as stretched, x_1, x_2, or both may be negative, but the expression for W_{el} is still valid. In Fig. 7.13d, both x_1 and x_2 are negative, but x_2 is less negative than x_1; the compressed spring does positive work as it relaxes, speeding the block up.

Just as for gravitational work, we can express Eq. (7.9) for the work done by the spring in terms of a quantity at the beginning and end of the displacement. This quantity is $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$, and we define it to be the **elastic potential energy:**

Elastic potential energy stored in a spring: $U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ (Force constant of spring; Elongation of spring ($x > 0$ if stretched, $x < 0$ if compressed)) (7.10)

Figure 7.14 is a graph of Eq. (7.10). As for all other energy and work quantities, the unit of U_{el} is the joule (J); to see this from Eq. (7.10), recall that the units of k are N/m and that 1 N · m = 1 J. We can now use Eq. (7.10) to rewrite Eq. (7.9) for the work W_{el} done by the spring:

Work done by the elastic force ... ... equals the **negative of the change in elastic potential energy.**

$$W_{el} = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 = U_{el,1} - U_{el,2} = -\Delta U_{el} \qquad (7.11)$$

Force constant of spring; Initial and final elongations of spring

When a stretched spring is stretched farther, as in Fig. 7.13b, W_{el} is negative and U_{el} increases; more elastic potential energy is stored in the spring. When a stretched spring relaxes, as in Fig. 7.13c, x decreases, W_{el} is positive, and U_{el} decreases; the spring loses elastic potential energy. Figure 7.14 shows that U_{el} is positive for both positive and negative x values; Eqs. (7.10) and (7.11) are valid for both cases. The more a spring is compressed or stretched, the greater its elastic potential energy.

CAUTION **Gravitational potential energy vs. elastic potential energy** An important difference between gravitational potential energy $U_{grav} = mgy$ and elastic potential energy $U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ is that we *cannot* choose $x = 0$ to be wherever we wish. In Eq. (7.10), $x = 0$ *must* be the position at which the spring is neither stretched nor compressed. At that position, both its elastic potential energy and the force that it exerts are zero.

The work–energy theorem says that $W_{tot} = K_2 - K_1$, no matter what kind of forces are acting on an object. If the elastic force is the *only* force that does work on the object, then

$$W_{tot} = W_{el} = U_{el,1} - U_{el,2}$$

and so

If only the elastic force does work, total mechanical energy is conserved:

$$K_1 + U_{el,1} = K_2 + U_{el,2} \qquad (7.12)$$

Initial kinetic energy $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2$; Initial elastic potential energy $U_{el,1} = \frac{1}{2}kx_1^2$

Final kinetic energy $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_2^2$; Final elastic potential energy $U_{el,2} = \frac{1}{2}kx_2^2$

In this case the total mechanical energy $E = K + U_{el}$—the sum of kinetic and *elastic* potential energies—is *conserved*. An example of this is the motion of the block in Fig. 7.13, provided the horizontal surface is frictionless so no force does work other than that exerted by the spring.

For Eq. (7.12) to be strictly correct, the ideal spring that we've been discussing must also be *massless*. If the spring has mass, it also has kinetic energy as the coils of the

Figure **7.13** Calculating the work done by a spring attached to a block on a horizontal surface. The quantity x is the extension or compression of the spring.

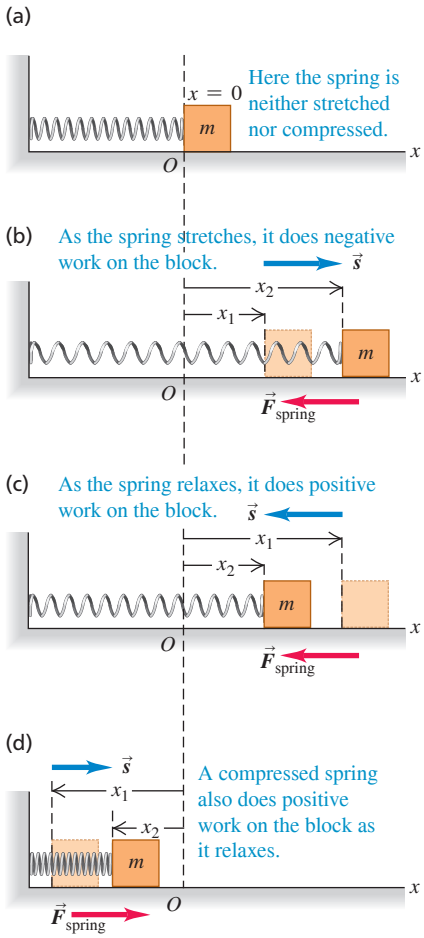
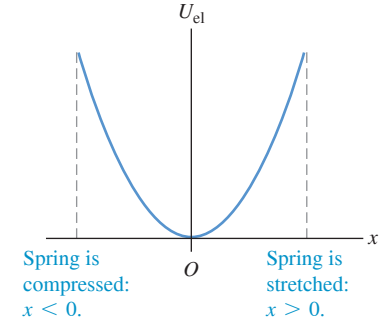
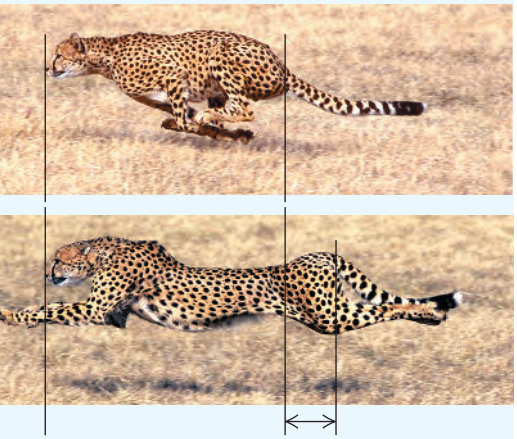


Figure **7.14** The graph of elastic potential energy for an ideal spring is a parabola: $U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where x is the extension or compression of the spring. Elastic potential energy U_{el} is never negative.



BIO APPLICATION Elastic Potential Energy of a Cheetah When a cheetah (*Acinonyx jubatus*) gallops, its back flexes and extends dramatically. Flexion of the back stretches tendons and muscles along the top of the spine and also compresses the spine, storing elastic potential energy. When the cheetah launches into its next bound, this energy is released, enabling the cheetah to run more efficiently.



spring move back and forth. We can ignore the kinetic energy of the spring if its mass is much less than the mass m of the object attached to the spring. For instance, a typical automobile has a mass of 1200 kg or more. The springs in its suspension have masses of only a few kilograms, so their mass can be ignored if we want to study how a car bounces on its suspension.

Situations with Both Gravitational and Elastic Potential Energy

Equation (7.12) is valid when the only potential energy in the system is elastic potential energy. What happens when we have *both* gravitational and elastic forces, such as a block attached to the lower end of a vertically hanging spring? And what if work is also done by other forces that *cannot* be described in terms of potential energy, such as the force of air resistance on a moving block? Then the total work is the sum of the work done by the gravitational force (W_{grav}), the work done by the elastic force (W_{el}), and the work done by other forces (W_{other}): $W_{\text{tot}} = W_{\text{grav}} + W_{\text{el}} + W_{\text{other}}$. The work–energy theorem then gives

$$W_{\text{grav}} + W_{\text{el}} + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 - K_1$$

The work done by the gravitational force is $W_{\text{grav}} = U_{\text{grav},1} - U_{\text{grav},2}$ and the work done by the spring is $W_{\text{el}} = U_{\text{el},1} - U_{\text{el},2}$. Hence we can rewrite the work–energy theorem for this most general case as

$$K_1 + U_{\text{grav},1} + U_{\text{el},1} + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_{\text{grav},2} + U_{\text{el},2} \quad \text{(valid in general)} \qquad (7.13)$$

or, equivalently,

General relationship for kinetic energy and potential energy:

Initial kinetic energy … Final kinetic energy

$$K_1 + U_1 + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_2 \qquad (7.14)$$

Initial potential energy of all kinds … Work done by other forces (not associated with potential energy) … Final potential energy of all kinds

where $U = U_{\text{grav}} + U_{\text{el}} = mgy + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ is the *sum* of gravitational potential energy and elastic potential energy. We call U simply "the potential energy."

Equation (7.14) is *the most general statement* of the relationship among kinetic energy, potential energy, and work done by other forces. It says:

The work done by all forces other than the gravitational force or elastic force equals the change in the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ of the system.

Figure **7.15** Trampoline jumping involves an interplay among kinetic energy, gravitational potential energy, and elastic potential energy. Due to air resistance and friction forces within the trampoline, total mechanical energy is not conserved. That's why the bouncing eventually stops unless the jumper does work with his or her legs to compensate for the lost energy.

The "system" is made up of the object of mass m, the earth with which it interacts through the gravitational force, and the spring of force constant k.

If W_{other} is positive, $E = K + U$ increases; if W_{other} is negative, E decreases. If the gravitational and elastic forces are the *only* forces that do work on the object, then $W_{\text{other}} = 0$ and the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is conserved. [Compare Eq. (7.14) to Eqs. (7.6) and (7.7), which include gravitational potential energy but not elastic potential energy.]

Trampoline jumping (**Fig. 7.15**) involves transformations among kinetic energy, elastic potential energy, and gravitational potential energy. As the jumper descends through the air from the high point of the bounce, gravitational potential energy U_{grav} decreases and kinetic energy K increases. Once the jumper touches the trampoline, some of the total mechanical energy goes into elastic potential energy U_{el} stored in the trampoline's springs. At the lowest point of the trajectory (U_{grav} is minimum), the jumper comes to a momentary halt ($K = 0$) and the springs are maximally stretched (U_{el} is maximum). The springs then convert their energy back into K and U_{grav}, propelling the jumper upward.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 7.2 Problems Using Total Mechanical Energy II

Problem-Solving Strategy 7.1 (Section 7.1) is useful in solving problems that involve elastic forces as well as gravitational forces. The only new wrinkle is that the potential energy U now includes the elastic potential energy $U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where x is the displacement of the spring *from its unstretched length*. The work done by the gravitational and elastic forces is accounted for by their potential energies; the work done by other forces, W_{other}, must still be included separately.

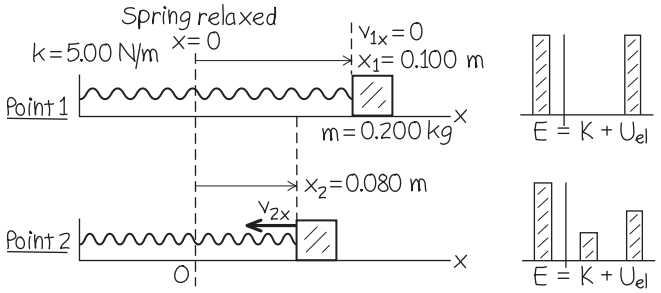
EXAMPLE 7.7 Motion with elastic potential energy

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

A glider with mass $m = 0.200$ kg sits on a frictionless, horizontal air track, connected to a spring with force constant $k = 5.00$ N/m. You pull on the glider, stretching the spring 0.100 m, and release it from rest. The glider moves back toward its equilibrium position ($x = 0$). What is its x-velocity when $x = 0.080$ m?

IDENTIFY and SET UP There is no friction, so total mechanical energy is conserved. As the glider starts to move, elastic potential energy is converted to kinetic energy. The glider remains at the same height throughout the motion, so gravitational potential energy is not a factor and $U = U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. **Figure 7.16** shows our sketches. Only the spring force does work on the glider, so $W_{other} = 0$ in Eq. (7.14). We designate the point where the glider is released as point 1 (that is, $x_1 = 0.100$ m) and $x_2 = 0.080$ m as point 2. We are given $v_{1x} = 0$; our target variable is v_{2x}.

Figure 7.16 Our sketches and energy bar graphs for this problem.



EXECUTE The energy quantities are

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_{1x}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.200\text{ kg})(0)^2 = 0$$
$$U_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(5.00\text{ N/m})(0.100\text{ m})^2 = 0.0250\text{ J}$$
$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_{2x}^2$$
$$U_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(5.00\text{ N/m})(0.080\text{ m})^2 = 0.0160\text{ J}$$

We use Eq. (7.14) with $W_{other} = 0$ to solve for K_2 and then find v_{2x}:

$$K_2 = K_1 + U_1 - U_2 = 0 + 0.0250\text{ J} - 0.0160\text{ J} = 0.0090\text{ J}$$

$$v_{2x} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{2K_2}{m}} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{2(0.0090\text{ J})}{0.200\text{ kg}}} = \pm 0.30\text{ m/s}$$

We choose the negative root because the glider is moving in the $-x$-direction. Our answer is $v_{2x} = -0.30$ m/s.

EVALUATE Eventually the spring will reverse the glider's motion, pushing it back in the $+x$-direction (see Fig. 7.13d). The solution $v_{2x} = +0.30$ m/s tells us that when the glider passes through $x = 0.080$ m on this return trip, its speed will be 0.30 m/s, just as when it passed through this point while moving to the left.

KEYCONCEPT You can use elastic potential energy to describe the work done by an ideal spring that obeys Hooke's law.

EXAMPLE 7.8 Motion with elastic potential energy and work done by other forces

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Suppose the glider in Example 7.7 is initially at rest at $x = 0$, with the spring unstretched. You then push on the glider with a constant force $\vec{F}$ (magnitude 0.610 N) in the $+x$-direction. What is the glider's velocity when it has moved to $x = 0.100$ m?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Although the force $\vec{F}$ you apply is constant, the spring force isn't, so the acceleration of the glider won't be constant. Total mechanical energy is not conserved because of the work done by force $\vec{F}$, so W_{other} in Eq. (7.14) is not zero. As in Example 7.7, we ignore gravitational potential energy because the glider's height doesn't change. Hence we again have $U = U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. This time, we let point 1 be at $x_1 = 0$, where the velocity is $v_{1x} = 0$, and let point 2 be at $x = 0.100$ m. The glider's displacement is then $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1 = 0.100$ m. Our target variable is v_{2x}, the velocity at point 2.

EXECUTE Force $\vec{F}$ is constant and in the same direction as the displacement, so the work done by this force is $F\Delta x$. Then the energy quantities are

$$K_1 = 0$$
$$U_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 = 0$$
$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_{2x}^2$$
$$U_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(5.00\text{ N/m})(0.100\text{ m})^2 = 0.0250\text{ J}$$
$$W_{other} = F\Delta x = (0.610\text{ N})(0.100\text{ m}) = 0.0610\text{ J}$$

Continued

The initial total mechanical energy is zero; the work done by $\vec{F}$ increases the total mechanical energy to 0.0610 J, of which $U_2 = 0.0250$ J is elastic potential energy. The remainder is kinetic energy. From Eq. (7.14),

$$K_1 + U_1 + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_2$$

$$K_2 = K_1 + U_1 + W_{\text{other}} - U_2$$

$$= 0 + 0 + 0.0610\ \text{J} - 0.0250\ \text{J} = 0.0360\ \text{J}$$

$$v_{2x} = \sqrt{\frac{2K_2}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(0.0360\ \text{J})}{0.200\ \text{kg}}} = 0.60\ \text{m/s}$$

We choose the positive square root because the glider is moving in the $+x$-direction.

EVALUATE What would be different if we disconnected the glider from the spring? Then only $\vec{F}$ would do work, there would be zero elastic potential energy at all times, and Eq. (7.14) would give us

$$K_2 = K_1 + W_{\text{other}} = 0 + 0.0610\ \text{J}$$

$$v_{2x} = \sqrt{\frac{2K_2}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(0.0610\ \text{J})}{0.200\ \text{kg}}} = 0.78\ \text{m/s}$$

Our answer $v_{2x} = 0.60$ m/s is less than 0.78 m/s because the spring does negative work on the glider as it stretches (see Fig. 7.13b).

If you stop pushing on the glider when it reaches $x = 0.100$ m, only the spring force does work on it thereafter. Hence for $x > 0.100$ m, the total mechanical energy $E = K + U = 0.0610$ J is constant. As the spring continues to stretch, the glider slows down and the kinetic energy K decreases as the potential energy increases. The glider comes to rest at some point $x = x_3$, at which the kinetic energy is zero and the potential energy $U = U_{\text{el}} = \frac{1}{2}kx_3^2$ equals the total mechanical energy 0.0610 J. Can you show that $x_3 = 0.156$ m? (It moves an additional 0.056 m after you stop pushing.) If there is no friction, will the glider remain at rest?

KEYCONCEPT You can solve problems that involve elastic potential energy by using the same steps as for problems that involve gravitational potential energy, even when work is done by other forces.

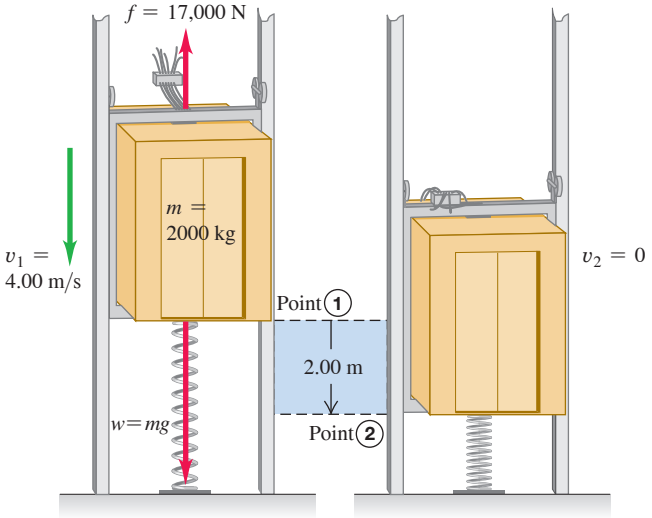
EXAMPLE 7.9 Motion with gravitational, elastic, and friction forces

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A 2000 kg (19,600 N) lift with broken cables in a test rig is falling at 4.00 m/s when it contacts a cushioning spring at the bottom of the shaft. The spring is intended to stop the lift, compressing 2.00 m as it does so (**Fig. 7.17**). During the motion a safety clamp applies a constant 17,000 N friction force to the lift. What is the necessary force constant k for the spring?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll use the energy approach and Eq. (7.14) to determine k, which appears in the expression for elastic potential energy. This problem involves *both* gravitational and elastic potential energies. Total mechanical energy is not conserved because the friction force does negative work W_{other} on the lift. We take point 1 as the position of the bottom of the lift when it contacts the spring, and point 2 as its position when it stops. We choose the origin to be at point 1, so $y_1 = 0$ and $y_2 = -2.00$ m. With this choice the coordinate of the upper end of the spring after contact is the same as the coordinate of the lift, so the elastic potential energy at any point between points 1 and 2 is $U_{\text{el}} = \frac{1}{2}ky^2$. The gravitational potential energy is $U_{\text{grav}} = mgy$ as usual. We know the initial and final speeds of the lift and the magnitude of the friction force, so the only unknown is the force constant k (our target variable).

Figure 7.17 The fall of a lift is stopped by a spring and by a constant friction force.



EXECUTE The lift's initial speed is $v_1 = 4.00$ m/s, so its initial kinetic energy is

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(2000\ \text{kg})(4.00\ \text{m/s})^2 = 16{,}000\ \text{J}$$

The lift stops at point 2, so $K_2 = 0$. At point 1 the potential energy $U_1 = U_{\text{grav}} + U_{\text{el}}$ is zero; U_{grav} is zero because $y_1 = 0$, and $U_{\text{el}} = 0$ because the spring is uncompressed. At point 2 there are both gravitational and elastic potential energies, so

$$U_2 = mgy_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}ky_2^2$$

The gravitational potential energy at point 2 is

$$mgy_2 = (2000\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(-2.00\ \text{m}) = -39{,}200\ \text{J}$$

The "other" force is the constant 17,000 N friction force. It acts opposite to the 2.00 m displacement, so

$$W_{\text{other}} = -(17{,}000\ \text{N})(2.00\ \text{m}) = -34{,}000\ \text{J}$$

We put these terms into Eq. (7.14), $K_1 + U_1 + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_2$:

$$K_1 + 0 + W_{\text{other}} = 0 + (mgy_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}ky_2^2)$$

$$k = \frac{2(K_1 + W_{\text{other}} - mgy_2)}{y_2^2}$$

$$= \frac{2[16{,}000\ \text{J} + (-34{,}000\ \text{J}) - (-39{,}200\ \text{J})]}{(-2.00\ \text{m})^2}$$

$$= 1.06 \times 10^4\ \text{N/m}$$

This is about one-tenth the force constant of a spring in an automobile suspension.

EVALUATE There might seem to be a paradox here. The elastic potential energy at point 2 is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}ky_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(1.06 \times 10^4\ \text{N/m})(-2.00\ \text{m})^2 = 21{,}200\ \text{J}$$

This is *more* than the total mechanical energy at point 1:

$$E_1 = K_1 + U_1 = 16{,}000\ \text{J} + 0 = 16{,}000\ \text{J}$$

But the friction force *decreased* the total mechanical energy of the system by 34,000 J between points 1 and 2. Did energy appear from nowhere? No. At point 2, which is below the origin, there is also *negative* gravitational potential energy $mgy_2 = -39{,}200$ J. The total mechanical energy at point 2 is therefore not 21,200 J but

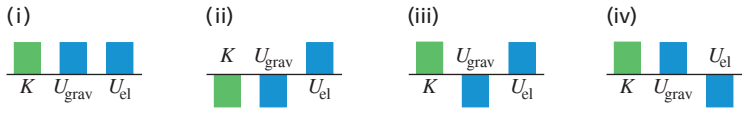
$$\begin{aligned} E_2 &= K_2 + U_2 = 0 + \tfrac{1}{2}ky_2^2 + mgy_2 \\ &= 0 + 21{,}200\ \text{J} + (-39{,}200\ \text{J}) = -18{,}000\ \text{J} \end{aligned}$$

This is just the initial total mechanical energy of 16,000 J minus 34,000 J lost to friction.

Will the lift stay at the bottom of the shaft? At point 2 the compressed spring exerts an upward force of magnitude $F_{\text{spring}} = (1.06 \times 10^4\ \text{N/m})(2.00\ \text{m}) = 21{,}200$ N, while the downward force of gravity is only $w = mg = (2000\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) = 19{,}600$ N. If there were no friction, there would be a net upward force of 21,200 N − 19,600 N = 1600 N, and the lift would rebound. But the safety clamp can exert a kinetic friction force of 17,000 N, and it can presumably exert a maximum static friction force greater than that. Hence the clamp will keep the lift from rebounding.

KEYCONCEPT For problems in which you use an energy approach to analyze an object that both changes height and interacts with an ideal spring, you must include both gravitational potential energy and elastic potential energy.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 7.2 Consider the situation in Example 7.9 at the instant when the lift is still moving downward and the spring is compressed by 1.00 m. Which of the energy bar graphs in the figure most accurately shows the kinetic energy K, gravitational potential energy U_{grav}, and elastic potential energy U_{el} at this instant?



ANSWER

(iii) The lift is still moving downward, so the kinetic energy K is positive (remember that K can never be negative); the lift is below point 1, so $y < 0$ and $U_{\text{grav}} < 0$; and the spring is compressed, so $U_{\text{el}} > 0$.

7.3 CONSERVATIVE AND NONCONSERVATIVE FORCES

In our discussions of potential energy we have talked about "storing" kinetic energy by converting it to potential energy, with the idea that we can retrieve it again as kinetic energy. For example, when you throw a ball up in the air, it slows down as kinetic energy is converted to gravitational potential energy. But on the way down the ball speeds up as potential energy is converted back to kinetic energy. If there is no air resistance, the ball is moving just as fast when you catch it as when you threw it.

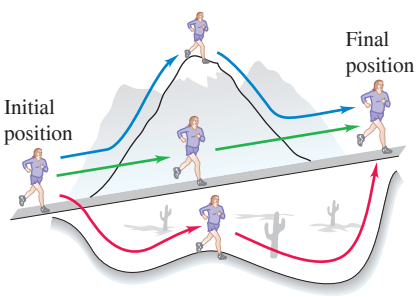
Another example is a glider moving on a frictionless horizontal air track that runs into a spring bumper. The glider compresses the spring and then bounces back. If there is no friction, the glider ends up with the same speed and kinetic energy it had before the collision. Again, there is a two-way conversion from kinetic to potential energy and back. In both cases the total mechanical energy, kinetic plus potential, is constant or *conserved* during the motion.

Conservative Forces

A force that offers this opportunity of two-way conversion between kinetic and potential energies is called a **conservative force.** We have seen two examples of conservative forces: the gravitational force and the spring force. (Later in this book we'll study another conservative force, the electric force between charged objects.) An essential feature of conservative forces is that their work is always *reversible*. Anything that we deposit in the energy "bank" can later be withdrawn without loss. Another important aspect of conservative forces is that if an object follows different paths from point 1 to point 2, the work done by a conservative force is the same for all of these paths (**Fig. 7.18**). For example, if an object stays close to the surface of the earth, the gravitational force $m\vec{g}$ is independent

Figure **7.18** The work done by a conservative force such as gravity depends on only the endpoints of a path, not the specific path taken between those points.

Because the gravitational force is conservative, the work it does is the same for all three paths.



of height, and the work done by this force depends on only the change in height. If the object moves around a closed path, ending at the same height where it started, the *total* work done by the gravitational force is always zero.

In summary, the work done by a conservative force has four properties:

1. It can be expressed as the difference between the initial and final values of a *potential-energy* function.
2. It is reversible.
3. It is independent of the path of the object and depends on only the starting and ending points.
4. When the starting and ending points are the same, the total work is zero.

When the *only* forces that do work are conservative forces, the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is constant.

Nonconservative Forces

Not all forces are conservative. Consider the friction force acting on the crate sliding on a ramp in Example 7.6 (Section 7.1). When the crate slides up and then back down to the starting point, the total work done on it by the friction force is *not* zero. When the direction of motion reverses, so does the friction force, and friction does *negative* work in *both* directions. Friction also acts when a car with its brakes locked skids with decreasing speed (and decreasing kinetic energy). The lost kinetic energy can't be recovered by reversing the motion or in any other way, and total mechanical energy is *not* conserved. So there is *no* potential-energy function for the friction force.

In the same way, the force of fluid resistance (see Section 5.3) is not conservative. If you throw a ball up in the air, air resistance does negative work on the ball while it's rising *and* while it's descending. The ball returns to your hand with less speed and less kinetic energy than when it left, and there is no way to get back the lost mechanical energy.

A force that is not conservative is called a **nonconservative force.** The work done by a nonconservative force *cannot* be represented by a potential-energy function. Some nonconservative forces, like kinetic friction or fluid resistance, cause mechanical energy to be lost or dissipated; a force of this kind is called a **dissipative force.** There are also nonconservative forces that *increase* mechanical energy. The fragments of an exploding firecracker fly off with very large kinetic energy, thanks to a chemical reaction of gunpowder with oxygen. The forces unleashed by this reaction are nonconservative because the process is not reversible. (The fragments never spontaneously reassemble themselves into a complete firecracker!)

EXAMPLE 7.10 Frictional work depends on the path

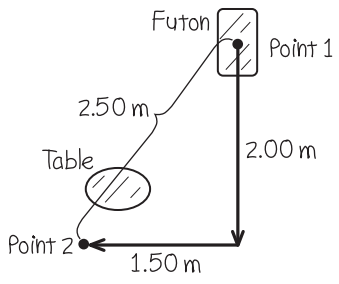
You are rearranging your furniture and wish to move a 40.0 kg futon 2.50 m across the room. A heavy coffee table, which you don't want to move, blocks this straight-line path. Instead, you slide the futon along a dogleg path; the doglegs are 2.00 m and 1.50 m long. How much more work must you do to push the futon along the dogleg path than along the straight-line path? The coefficient of kinetic friction is $\mu_k = 0.200$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Here both you and friction do work on the futon, so we must use the energy relationship that includes "other" forces. We'll use this relationship to find a connection between the work that *you* do and the work that *friction* does. **Figure 7.19** shows our sketch. The futon is at rest at both point 1 and point 2, so $K_1 = K_2 = 0$. There is no elastic potential energy (there are no springs), and the gravitational potential energy does not change because the futon moves only horizontally, so $U_1 = U_2$. From Eq. (7.14) it follows that $W_{other} = 0$. That "other" work done on the futon is the sum of the positive work you do, W_{you}, and the negative work done by friction, W_{fric}. Since the sum of these is zero, we have

$$W_{you} = -W_{fric}$$

So we can calculate the work done by friction to determine W_{you}.

Figure 7.19 Our sketch for this problem.



EXECUTE The floor is horizontal, so the normal force on the futon equals its weight mg and the magnitude of the friction force is $f_k = \mu_k n = \mu_k mg$. The work you do over each path is then

$$\begin{aligned} W_{you} &= -W_{fric} = -(-f_k s) = +\mu_k mgs \\ &= (0.200)(40.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(2.50\text{ m}) \\ &= 196\text{ J} \qquad \text{(straight-line path)} \\ W_{you} &= -W_{fric} = +\mu_k mgs \\ &= (0.200)(40.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(2.00\text{ m} + 1.50\text{ m}) \\ &= 274\text{ J} \qquad \text{(dogleg path)} \end{aligned}$$

The extra work you must do is 274 J − 196 J = 78 J.

EVALUATE Friction does different amounts of work on the futon, −196 J and −274 J, on these different paths between points 1 and 2. Hence friction is a *nonconservative* force.

KEYCONCEPT The work done by a nonconservative force on an object that moves between two points depends on the path that the object follows. Unlike for conservative forces, you *cannot* express the work done by a nonconservative force in terms of a change in potential energy.

EXAMPLE 7.11 Conservative or nonconservative?

In a region of space the force on an electron is $\vec{F} = Cx\hat{j}$, where C is a positive constant. The electron moves around a square loop in the xy-plane (**Fig. 7.20**). Calculate the work done on the electron by force $\vec{F}$ during a counterclockwise trip around the square. Is this force conservative or nonconservative?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Force $\vec{F}$ is not constant and in general is not in the same direction as the displacement. To calculate the work done by $\vec{F}$, we'll use the general expression Eq. (6.14):

$$W = \int_{P_1}^{P_2} \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l}$$

where $d\vec{l}$ is an infinitesimal displacement. We'll calculate the work done on each leg of the square separately, and add the results to find the work done on the round trip. If this round-trip work is zero, force $\vec{F}$ is conservative and can be represented by a potential-energy function.

EXECUTE On the first leg, from $(0, 0)$ to $(L, 0)$, the force is everywhere perpendicular to the displacement. So $\vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l} = 0$, and the work done on the first leg is $W_1 = 0$. The force has the same value $\vec{F} = CL\hat{j}$ everywhere on the second leg, from $(L, 0)$ to (L, L). The displacement on this leg is in the $+y$-direction, so $d\vec{l} = dy\hat{j}$ and

$$\vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l} = CL\hat{j} \cdot dy\hat{j} = CL\,dy$$

The work done on the second leg is then

$$W_2 = \int_{(L,0)}^{(L,L)} \vec{F} \cdot d\vec{l} = \int_{y=0}^{y=L} CL\,dy = CL\int_0^L dy = CL^2$$

On the third leg, from (L, L) to $(0, L)$, $\vec{F}$ is again perpendicular to the displacement and so $W_3 = 0$. The force is zero on the final leg, from $(0, L)$ to $(0, 0)$, so $W_4 = 0$. The work done by $\vec{F}$ on the round trip is therefore

$$W = W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + W_4 = 0 + CL^2 + 0 + 0 = CL^2$$

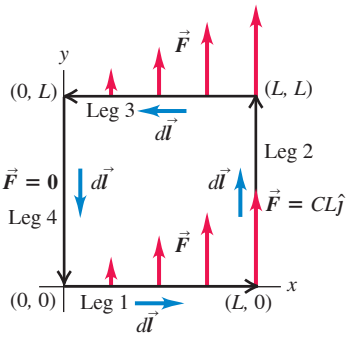
The starting and ending points are the same, but the total work done by $\vec{F}$ is not zero. This is a *nonconservative* force; it *cannot* be represented by a potential-energy function.

EVALUATE Because $W > 0$, the total mechanical energy *increases* as the electron goes around the loop. This is actually what happens in an electric generating plant: A loop of wire is moved through a magnetic field, which gives rise to a nonconservative force similar to the one here. Electrons in the wire gain energy as they move around the loop, and this energy is carried via transmission lines to the consumer. (We'll discuss this in Chapter 29.)

If the electron went *clockwise* around the loop, $\vec{F}$ would be unaffected but the direction of each infinitesimal displacement $d\vec{l}$ would be reversed. Thus the sign of work would also reverse, and the work for a clockwise round trip would be $W = -CL^2$. This is a different behavior than the nonconservative friction force. The work done by friction on an object that slides in any direction over a stationary surface is always negative (see Example 7.6 in Section 7.1).

KEYCONCEPT The work done on an object that makes a complete trip around a closed path is zero if the force is conservative, but nonzero if the force is nonconservative.

Figure 7.20 An electron moving around a square loop while being acted on by the force $\vec{F} = Cx\hat{j}$.



APPLICATION Nonconservative Forces and Internal Energy in a Tire

An automobile tire deforms and flexes like a spring as it rolls, but it is not an ideal spring: Nonconservative internal friction forces act within the rubber. As a result, mechanical energy is lost and converted to internal energy of the tire. Thus the temperature of a tire increases as it rolls, which causes the pressure of the air inside the tire to increase as well. That's why tire pressures are best checked before the car is driven, when the tire is cold.

Figure 7.21 The battery pack in this radio-controlled helicopter contains 2.4×10^4 J of electric energy. When this energy is used up, the internal energy of the battery pack decreases by this amount, so $\Delta U_{\text{int}} = -2.4 \times 10^4$ J. This energy can be converted to kinetic energy to make the rotor blades and helicopter go faster, or to gravitational potential energy to make the helicopter climb.

The Law of Conservation of Energy

Nonconservative forces cannot be represented in terms of potential energy. But we can describe the effects of these forces in terms of kinds of energy other than kinetic or potential energy. When a car with locked brakes skids to a stop, both the tires and the road surface become hotter. The energy associated with this change in the state of the materials is called **internal energy.** Raising the temperature of an object increases its internal energy; lowering the object's temperature decreases its internal energy.

To see the significance of internal energy, let's consider a block sliding on a rough surface. Friction does *negative* work on the block as it slides, and the change in internal energy of the block and surface (both of which get hotter) is *positive.* Careful experiments show that the increase in the internal energy is *exactly* equal to the absolute value of the work done by friction. In other words,

$$\Delta U_{\text{int}} = -W_{\text{other}}$$

where ΔU_{int} is the change in internal energy. We substitute this into Eq. (7.14):

$$K_1 + U_1 - \Delta U_{\text{int}} = K_2 + U_2$$

Writing $\Delta K = K_2 - K_1$ and $\Delta U = U_2 - U_1$, we can finally express this as

Law of conservation of energy:

$$\Delta K + \Delta U + \Delta U_{\text{int}} = 0 \qquad (7.15)$$

Change in kinetic energy — Change in potential energy — Change in internal energy

This remarkable statement is the general form of the **law of conservation of energy.** In a given process, the kinetic energy, potential energy, and internal energy of a system may all change. But the *sum* of those changes is always zero. If there is a decrease in one form of energy, it is made up for by an increase in the other forms (**Fig. 7.21**). When we expand our definition of energy to include internal energy, Eq. (7.15) says: *Energy is never created or destroyed; it only changes form.* No exception to this rule has ever been found.

The concept of work has been banished from Eq. (7.15); instead, it suggests that we think purely in terms of the conversion of energy from one form to another. For example, when you throw a baseball straight up, you convert a portion of the internal energy of your molecules to kinetic energy of the baseball. This is converted to gravitational potential energy as the ball climbs and back to kinetic energy as the ball falls. If there is air resistance, part of the energy is used to heat up the air and the ball and increase their internal energy. Energy is converted back to the kinetic form as the ball falls. If you catch the ball in your hand, whatever energy was not lost to the air once again becomes internal energy; the ball and your hand are now warmer than they were at the beginning.

In Chapters 19 and 20, we'll study the relationship of internal energy to temperature changes, heat, and work. This is the heart of the area of physics called *thermodynamics.*

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 7.12 Work done by friction

Let's return to Example 7.5 (Section 7.1), in which Throcky skateboards down a curved ramp. He starts with zero kinetic energy and 735 J of potential energy, and at the bottom he has 450 J of kinetic energy and zero potential energy; hence $\Delta K = +450$ J and $\Delta U = -735$ J. The work $W_{\text{other}} = W_{\text{fric}}$ done by the friction forces is -285 J, so the change in internal energy is $\Delta U_{\text{int}} = -W_{\text{other}} = +285$ J. The skateboard wheels and bearings and the ramp all get a little warmer. In accordance with Eq. (7.15), the sum of the energy changes equals zero:

$$\Delta K + \Delta U + \Delta U_{\text{int}} = +450\text{ J} + (-735\text{ J}) + 285\text{ J} = 0$$

The total energy of the system (including internal, nonmechanical forms of energy) is conserved.

KEYCONCEPT In any physical process, energy is never created or destroyed; it is merely converted among the forms of kinetic energy, potential energy, and internal energy.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 7.3 In a hydroelectric generating station, falling water is used to drive turbines ("water wheels"), which in turn run electric generators. Compared to the amount of gravitational potential energy released by the falling water, how much electrical energy is produced? (i) The same; (ii) more; (iii) less.

ANSWER **(iii)** Because of friction in the turbines and between the water and turbines, some of the potential energy goes into raising the temperatures of the water and the mechanism.

7.4 FORCE AND POTENTIAL ENERGY

For the two kinds of conservative forces (gravitational and elastic) we have studied, we started with a description of the behavior of the *force* and derived from that an expression for the *potential energy*. For example, for an object with mass m in a uniform gravitational field, the gravitational force is $F_y = -mg$. We found that the corresponding potential energy is $U(y) = mgy$. The force that an ideal spring exerts on an object is $F_x = -kx$, and the corresponding potential-energy function is $U(x) = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$.

In studying physics, however, you'll encounter situations in which you are given an expression for the *potential energy* as a function of position and have to find the corresponding *force*. We'll see several examples of this kind when we study electric forces later in this book: It's often far easier to calculate the electric potential energy first and then determine the corresponding electric force afterward.

Here's how we find the force that corresponds to a given potential-energy expression. First let's consider motion along a straight line, with coordinate x. We denote the x-component of force, a function of x, by $F_x(x)$ and the potential energy as $U(x)$. This notation reminds us that both F_x and U are *functions* of x. Now we recall that in any displacement, the work W done by a conservative force equals the negative of the change ΔU in potential energy:

$$W = -\Delta U$$

Let's apply this to a small displacement Δx. The work done by the force $F_x(x)$ during this displacement is approximately equal to $F_x(x)\,\Delta x$. We have to say "approximately" because $F_x(x)$ may vary a little over the interval Δx. So

$$F_x(x)\,\Delta x = -\Delta U \qquad \text{and} \qquad F_x(x) = -\frac{\Delta U}{\Delta x}$$

You can probably see what's coming. We take the limit as $\Delta x \to 0$; in this limit, the variation of F_x becomes negligible, and we have the exact relationship

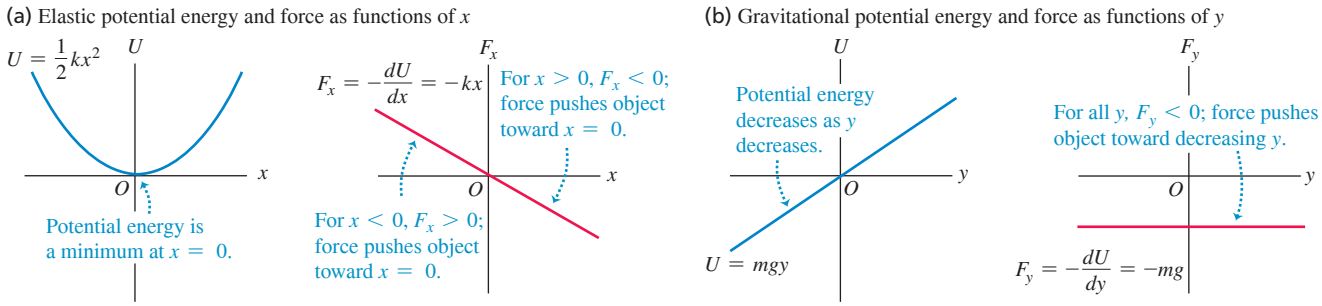
Force from potential energy: In **one-dimensional motion,** the value of a conservative force at point x ... $F_x(x) = -\dfrac{dU(x)}{dx}$ ... is the negative of the derivative at x of the associated potential-energy function. (7.16)

This result makes sense; in regions where $U(x)$ changes most rapidly with x (that is, where $dU(x)/dx$ is large), the greatest amount of work is done during a given displacement, and this corresponds to a large force magnitude. Also, when $F_x(x)$ is in the positive x-direction, $U(x)$ *decreases* with increasing x. So $F_x(x)$ and $dU(x)/dx$ should indeed have opposite signs. The physical meaning of Eq. (7.16) is that *a conservative force always acts to push the system toward lower potential energy.*

As a check, let's consider the function for elastic potential energy, $U(x) = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. Substituting this into Eq. (7.16) yields

$$F_x(x) = -\frac{d}{dx}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}kx^2\right) = -kx$$

Figure **7.22** A conservative force is the negative derivative of the corresponding potential energy.



which is the correct expression for the force exerted by an ideal spring (**Fig. 7.22a**). Similarly, for gravitational potential energy we have $U(y) = mgy$; taking care to change x to y for the choice of axis, we get $F_y = -dU/dy = -d(mgy)/dy = -mg$, which is the correct expression for gravitational force (Fig. 7.22b).

EXAMPLE 7.13 An electric force and its potential energy

An electrically charged particle is held at rest at the point $x = 0$; a second particle with equal charge is free to move along the positive x-axis. The potential energy of the system is $U(x) = C/x$, where C is a positive constant that depends on the magnitude of the charges. Derive an expression for the x-component of force acting on the movable particle as a function of its position.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We are given the potential-energy function $U(x)$. We'll find the corresponding force function by using Eq. (7.16), $F_x(x) = -dU(x)/dx$.

EXECUTE The derivative of $1/x$ with respect to x is $-1/x^2$. So for $x > 0$ the force on the movable charged particle is

$$F_x(x) = -\frac{dU(x)}{dx} = -C\left(-\frac{1}{x^2}\right) = \frac{C}{x^2}$$

EVALUATE The x-component of force is positive, corresponding to a repulsion between like electric charges. Both the potential energy and the force are very large when the particles are close together (small x), and both get smaller as the particles move farther apart (large x). The force pushes the movable particle toward large positive values of x, where the potential energy is lower. (We'll study electric forces in detail in Chapter 21.)

KEYCONCEPT For motion in one dimension, the force associated with a potential-energy function equals the negative derivative of that function with respect to position.

Force and Potential Energy in Three Dimensions

We can extend this analysis to three dimensions for a particle that may move in the x-, y-, or z-direction, or all at once, under the action of a conservative force that has components F_x, F_y, and F_z. Each component of force may be a function of the coordinates x, y, and z. The potential-energy function U is also a function of all three space coordinates. The potential-energy change ΔU when the particle moves a small distance Δx in the x-direction is again given by $-F_x\,\Delta x$; it doesn't depend on F_y and F_z, which represent force components that are perpendicular to the displacement and do no work. So we again have the approximate relationship

$$F_x = -\frac{\Delta U}{\Delta x}$$

We determine the y- and z-components in exactly the same way:

$$F_y = -\frac{\Delta U}{\Delta y} \qquad F_z = -\frac{\Delta U}{\Delta z}$$

To make these relationships exact, we take the limits $\Delta x \to 0$, $\Delta y \to 0$, and $\Delta z \to 0$ so that these ratios become derivatives. Because U may be a function of all three coordinates, we need to remember that when we calculate each of these derivatives, only one coordinate changes at a time. We compute the derivative of U with respect to x by assuming that y and z are constant and only x varies, and so on. Such a derivative is called

a *partial derivative*. The usual notation for a partial derivative is $\partial U/\partial x$ and so on; the symbol ∂ is a modified d. So we write

Force from potential energy: In **three-dimensional motion,** the value at a given point of each component of a conservative force ... ... is the negative of the partial derivative at that point of the associated potential-energy function.

$$F_x = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \qquad F_y = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial y} \qquad F_z = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \tag{7.17}$$

We can use unit vectors to write a single compact vector expression for the force $\vec{F}$:

Force from potential energy: The vector value of a conservative force at a given point ... ... is the negative of the gradient at that point of the associated potential-energy function.

$$\vec{F} = -\left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\hat{\imath} + \frac{\partial U}{\partial y}\hat{\jmath} + \frac{\partial U}{\partial z}\hat{k}\right) = -\vec{\nabla}U \tag{7.18}$$

In Eq. (7.18) we take the partial derivative of U with respect to each coordinate, multiply by the corresponding unit vector, and then take the vector sum. This operation is called the **gradient** of U and is often abbreviated as $\vec{\nabla}U$.

As a check, let's substitute into Eq. (7.18) the function $U = mgy$ for gravitational potential energy:

$$\vec{F} = -\vec{\nabla}(mgy) = -\left(\frac{\partial(mgy)}{\partial x}\hat{\imath} + \frac{\partial(mgy)}{\partial y}\hat{\jmath} + \frac{\partial(mgy)}{\partial z}\hat{k}\right) = (-mg)\hat{\jmath}$$

This is just the familiar expression for the gravitational force.

APPLICATION Topography and Potential Energy Gradient The greater the elevation of a hiker in Canada's Banff National Park, the greater the gravitational potential energy U_{grav}. Think of an x-axis that runs horizontally from west to east and a y-axis that runs horizontally from south to north. Then the function $U_{grav}(x, y)$ tells us the elevation as a function of position in the park. Where the mountains have steep slopes, $\vec{F} = -\vec{\nabla}U_{grav}$ has a large magnitude and there's a strong force pushing you along the mountain's surface toward a region of lower elevation (and hence lower U_{grav}). There's zero force along the surface of the lake, which is all at the same elevation. Hence U_{grav} is constant at all points on the lake surface, and $\vec{F} = -\vec{\nabla}U_{grav} = 0$.

EXAMPLE 7.14 Force and potential energy in two dimensions

A puck with coordinates x and y slides on a level, frictionless air-hockey table. It is acted on by a conservative force described by the potential-energy function

$$U(x, y) = \tfrac{1}{2}k(x^2 + y^2)$$

Note that $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ is the distance on the table surface from the puck to the origin. Find a vector expression for the force acting on the puck, and find an expression for the magnitude of the force.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Starting with the function $U(x, y)$, we need to find the vector components and magnitude of the corresponding force $\vec{F}$. We'll use Eq. (7.18) to find the components. The function U doesn't depend on z, so the partial derivative of U with respect to z is $\partial U/\partial z = 0$ and the force has no z-component. We'll determine the magnitude F of the force by using $F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2}$.

EXECUTE The x- and y-components of $\vec{F}$ are

$$F_x = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} = -kx \qquad F_y = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial y} = -ky$$

From Eq. (7.18), the vector expression for the force is

$$\vec{F} = (-kx)\hat{\imath} + (-ky)\hat{\jmath} = -k(x\hat{\imath} + y\hat{\jmath})$$

The magnitude of the force is

$$F = \sqrt{(-kx)^2 + (-ky)^2} = k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = kr$$

EVALUATE Because $x\hat{\imath} + y\hat{\jmath}$ is just the position vector $\vec{r}$ of the particle, we can rewrite our result as $\vec{F} = -k\vec{r}$. This represents a force that is opposite in direction to the particle's position vector— that is, a force directed toward the origin, $r = 0$. This is the force that would be exerted on the puck if it were attached to one end of a spring that obeys Hooke's law and has a negligibly small unstretched length compared to the other distances in the problem. (The other end is attached to the air-hockey table at $r = 0$.)

To check our result, note that $U = \frac{1}{2}kr^2$. We can find the force from this expression using Eq. (7.16) with x replaced by r:

$$F_r = -\frac{dU}{dr} = -\frac{d}{dr}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}kr^2\right) = -kr$$

As we found above, the force has magnitude kr; the minus sign indicates that the force is toward the origin (at $r = 0$).

KEYCONCEPT For motion in two or three dimensions, the force associated with a potential-energy function equals the negative gradient of that function.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 7.4 A particle moving along the x-axis is acted on by a conservative force F_x. At a certain point, the force is zero. (a) Which of the following statements about the value of the potential-energy function $U(x)$ at that point is correct? (i) $U(x) = 0$; (ii) $U(x) > 0$; (iii) $U(x) < 0$; (iv) not enough information is given to decide. (b) Which of the following statements about the value of the derivative of $U(x)$ at that point is correct? (i) $dU(x)/dx = 0$; (ii) $dU(x)/dx > 0$; (iii) $dU(x)/dx < 0$; (iv) not enough information is given to decide.

ANSWER

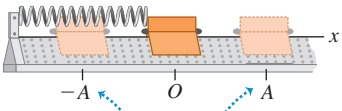
(a) **(iv)**, (b) **(i)** If $F_x = 0$ at a point, then the derivative of $U(x)$ must be zero at that point because $F_x = -dU(x)/dx$. However, this tells us absolutely nothing about the *value* of $U(x)$ at that point.

7.5 ENERGY DIAGRAMS

When a particle moves along a straight line under the action of a conservative force, we can get a lot of insight into its possible motions by looking at the graph of the potential-energy function $U(x)$. **Figure 7.23a** shows a glider with mass m that moves along the x-axis on an air track. The spring exerts on the glider a force with x-component $F_x = -kx$. Figure 7.23b is a graph of the corresponding potential-energy function $U(x) = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. If the elastic force of the spring is the *only* horizontal force acting on the glider, the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is constant, independent of x. A graph of E as a function of x is thus a straight horizontal line. We use the term **energy diagram** for a graph like this, which shows both the potential-energy function $U(x)$ and the energy of the particle subjected to the force that corresponds to $U(x)$.

Figure **7.23** (a) A glider on an air track. The spring exerts a force $F_x = -kx$. (b) The potential-energy function.

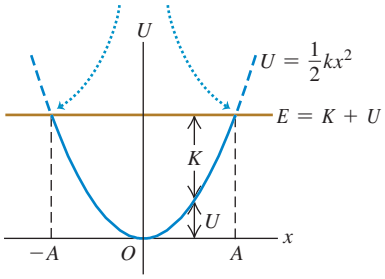
(a)



The limits of the glider's motion are at $x = A$ and $x = -A$.

(b)

On the graph, the limits of motion are the points where the U curve intersects the horizontal line representing total mechanical energy E.

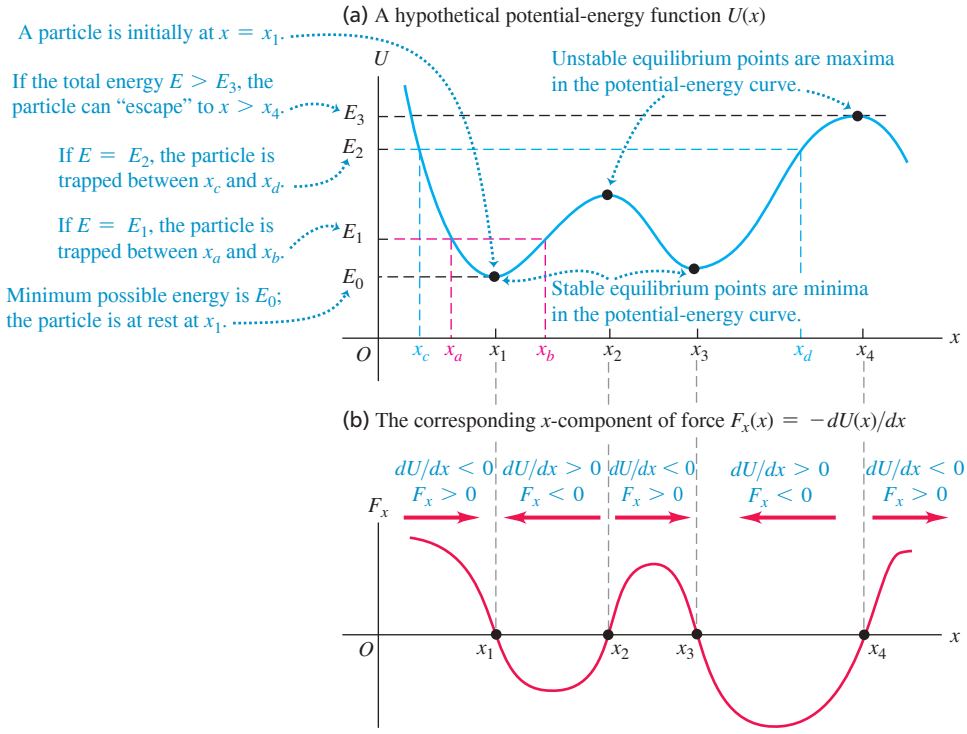


The vertical distance between the U and E graphs at each point represents the difference $E - U$, equal to the kinetic energy K at that point. We see that K is greatest at $x = 0$. It is zero at the values of x where the two graphs cross, labeled A and $-A$ in Fig. 7.23b. Thus the speed v is greatest at $x = 0$, and it is zero at $x = \pm A$, the points of *maximum* possible displacement from $x = 0$ for a given value of the total energy E. The potential energy U can never be greater than the total energy E; if it were, K would be negative, and that's impossible. The motion is a back-and-forth oscillation between the points $x = A$ and $x = -A$.

From Eq. (7.16), at each point the force F_x on the glider is equal to the negative of the slope of the $U(x)$ curve: $F_x = -dU/dx$ (see Fig. 7.22a). When the particle is at $x = 0$, the slope and the force are zero, so this is an *equilibrium* position. When x is positive, the slope of the $U(x)$ curve is positive and the force F_x is negative, directed toward the origin. When x is negative, the slope is negative and F_x is positive, again directed toward the origin. Such a force is called a *restoring force;* when the glider is displaced to either side of $x = 0$, the force tends to "restore" it back to $x = 0$. An analogous situation is a marble rolling around in a round-bottomed bowl. We say that $x = 0$ is a point of **stable equilibrium.** More generally, *any minimum in a potential-energy curve is a stable equilibrium position.*

Figure 7.24a shows a hypothetical but more general potential-energy function $U(x)$. Figure 7.24b shows the corresponding force $F_x = -dU/dx$. Points x_1 and x_3 are stable equilibrium points. At both points, F_x is zero because the slope of the $U(x)$ curve is zero. When the particle is displaced to either side, the force pushes back toward the equilibrium point. The slope of the $U(x)$ curve is also zero at points x_2 and x_4, and these are also equilibrium points. But when the particle is displaced a little to the right of either point, the slope of the $U(x)$ curve becomes negative, corresponding to a positive F_x that tends to push the particle still farther from the point. When the particle is displaced a little to the left, F_x is negative, again pushing away from equilibrium. This is analogous to a marble rolling on the top of a bowling ball. Points x_2 and x_4 are called **unstable equilibrium** points; *any maximum in a potential-energy curve is an unstable equilibrium position.*

Figure **7.24** The maxima and minima of a potential-energy function $U(x)$ correspond to points where $F_x = 0$.



CAUTION **Potential energy and the direction of a conservative force** The direction of the force on an object is *not* determined by the sign of the potential energy U. Rather, it's the sign of $F_x = -dU/dx$ that matters. The physically significant quantity is the *difference* in the values of U between two points (Section 7.1), which is what the derivative $F_x = -dU/dx$ measures. You can always add a constant to the potential-energy function without changing the physics.

If the total energy is E_1 and the particle is initially near x_1, it can move only in the region between x_a and x_b determined by the intersection of the E_1 and U graphs (Fig. 7.24a). Again, U cannot be greater than E_1 because K can't be negative. We speak of the particle as moving in a *potential well,* and x_a and x_b are the *turning points* of the particle's motion (since at these points, the particle stops and reverses direction). If we increase the total energy to the level E_2, the particle can move over a wider range, from x_c to x_d. If the total energy is greater than E_3, the particle can "escape" and move to indefinitely large values of x. At the other extreme, E_0 represents the minimum total energy the system can have.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 7.5 The curve in Fig. 7.24b has a maximum at a point between x_2 and x_3. Which statement correctly describes the particle's acceleration (with magnitude a) at this point? (i) $a_x = 0$. (ii) The particle accelerates in the $+x$-direction, so $a_x > 0$; a is less than at any other point between x_2 and x_3. (iii) The particle accelerates in the $+x$-direction, so $a_x > 0$; a is greater than at any other point between x_2 and x_3. (iv) The particle accelerates in the $-x$-direction, so $a_x < 0$; a is less than at any other point between x_2 and x_3. (v) The particle accelerates in the $-x$-direction, so $a_x < 0$; a is greater than at any other point between x_2 and x_3.

ANSWER

(iii) Figure 7.24b shows the x-component of force, F_x. Where this is maximum (most positive), the x-component of force and the x-acceleration have more positive values than at adjacent values of x.

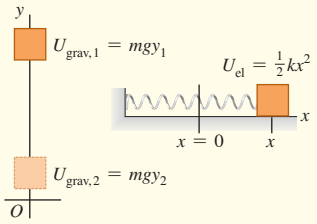
APPLICATION Acrobats in Equilibrium Each of these acrobats is in *unstable* equilibrium. The gravitational potential energy is lower no matter which way an acrobat tips, so if she begins to fall she will keep on falling. Staying balanced requires the acrobats' constant attention.

CHAPTER 7 SUMMARY

Gravitational potential energy and elastic potential energy: The work done on a particle by a constant gravitational force can be represented as a change in the gravitational potential energy, $U_{grav} = mgy$. This energy is a shared property of the particle and the earth. A potential energy is also associated with the elastic force $F_x = -kx$ exerted by an ideal spring, where x is the amount of stretch or compression. The work done by this force can be represented as a change in the elastic potential energy of the spring, $U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$.

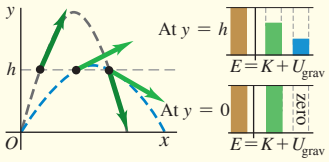
$$W_{grav} = mgy_1 - mgy_2 = U_{grav,1} - U_{grav,2} = -\Delta U_{grav} \quad (7.2), (7.3)$$

$$W_{el} = \tfrac{1}{2}kx_1^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}kx_2^2 = U_{el,1} - U_{el,2} = -\Delta U_{el} \quad (7.10), (7.11)$$



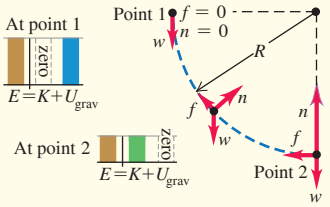
When total mechanical energy is conserved: The total potential energy U is the sum of the gravitational and elastic potential energies: $U = U_{grav} + U_{el}$. If no forces other than the gravitational and elastic forces do work on a particle, the sum of kinetic and potential energies is conserved. This sum $E = K + U$ is called the total mechanical energy. (See Examples 7.1, 7.3, 7.4, and 7.7.)

$$K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2 \quad (7.4), (7.12)$$



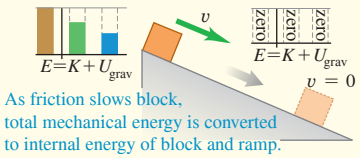
When total mechanical energy is not conserved: When forces other than the gravitational and elastic forces do work on a particle, the work W_{other} done by these other forces equals the change in total mechanical energy (kinetic energy plus total potential energy). (See Examples 7.2, 7.5, 7.6, 7.8, and 7.9.)

$$K_1 + U_1 + W_{other} = K_2 + U_2 \quad (7.14)$$



Conservative forces, nonconservative forces, and the law of conservation of energy: All forces are either conservative or nonconservative. A conservative force is one for which the work–kinetic energy relationship is completely reversible. The work of a conservative force can always be represented by a potential-energy function, but the work of a nonconservative force cannot. The work done by nonconservative forces manifests itself as changes in the internal energy of objects. The sum of kinetic, potential, and internal energies is always conserved. (See Examples 7.10–7.12.)

$$\Delta K + \Delta U + \Delta U_{int} = 0 \quad (7.15)$$

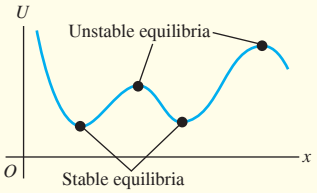


Determining force from potential energy: For motion along a straight line, a conservative force $F_x(x)$ is the negative derivative of its associated potential-energy function U. In three dimensions, the components of a conservative force are negative partial derivatives of U. (See Examples 7.13 and 7.14.)

$$F_x(x) = -\frac{dU(x)}{dx} \quad (7.16)$$

$$F_x = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \quad F_y = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial y} \quad F_z = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \quad (7.17)$$

$$\vec{F} = -\left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\hat{\imath} + \frac{\partial U}{\partial y}\hat{\jmath} + \frac{\partial U}{\partial z}\hat{k}\right) = -\vec{\nabla}U \quad (7.18)$$



Chapter 7 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE VARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 7.1 and 7.2 (Section 7.1) before attempting these problems.

VP7.2.1 You throw a cricket ball (mass 0.156 kg) vertically upward. It leaves your hand moving at 12.0 m/s. Air resistance can be neglected. At what height above your hand does the ball have (a) half as much upward velocity, (b) half as much kinetic energy as when it left your hand?

VP7.2.2 You toss a rock of mass m vertically upward. Air resistance can be neglected. The rock reaches a maximum height h above your hand. What is the speed of the rock when it is at height (a) $h/4$ and (b) $3h/4$?

VP7.2.3 You throw a tennis ball (mass 0.0570 kg) vertically upward. It leaves your hand moving at 15.0 m/s. Air resistance cannot be neglected, and the ball reaches a maximum height of 8.00 m. (a) By how much does the total mechanical energy decrease from when the ball leaves your hand to when it reaches its maximum height? (b) What is the magnitude of the average force of air resistance?

VP7.2.4 You catch a volleyball (mass 0.270 kg) that is moving downward at 7.50 m/s. In stopping the ball, your hands and the volleyball descend together a distance of 0.150 m. (a) How much work do your hands do on the volleyball in the process of stopping it? (b) What is the magnitude of the force (assumed constant) that your hands exert on the volleyball?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 7.4 and 7.5 (Section 7.1) before attempting these problems.

VP7.5.1 A well-greased, essentially frictionless, metal bowl has the shape of a hemisphere of radius 0.150 m. You place a pat of butter of mass 5.00×10^{-3} kg at the rim of the bowl and let it slide to the bottom of the bowl. (a) What is the speed of the pat of butter when it reaches the bottom of the bowl? (b) At the bottom of the bowl, what is the force that the bowl exerts on the pat of butter? How does this compare to the weight of the pat?

VP7.5.2 A snowboarder and her board (combined mass 40.0 kg) are moving at 9.30 m/s at the bottom of a curved ditch. (a) If friction can be ignored, what is the maximum vertical distance that she can travel up the sides of the ditch? Does this answer depend on the shape of the ditch? (b) The snowboarder finds that, due to friction, the maximum vertical distance she can travel up the sides of the ramp is 3.50 m. How much work did the force of friction do on her?

VP7.5.3 A pendulum is made of a small sphere of mass 0.250 kg attached to a lightweight string 1.20 m in length. As the pendulum swings back and forth, the maximum angle that the string makes with the vertical is 34.0°. Friction can be ignored. At the low point of the sphere's trajectory, what are (a) the kinetic energy of the sphere and (b) the tension in the string?

VP7.5.4 You are testing a new roller coaster ride in which a car of mass m moves around a vertical circle of radius R. In one test, the car starts at the bottom of the circle (point A) with initial kinetic energy K_i. When the car reaches the top of the circle (point B), its kinetic energy is $\frac{1}{4}K_i$, and its gravitational potential energy has increased by $\frac{1}{2}K_i$. (a) What was the speed of the car at point A, in terms of g and R? (b) How much work was done on the car by the force of friction as it moved from point A to point B, in terms of m, g, and R? (c) What was the magnitude of the friction force (assumed to be constant throughout the motion), in terms of m and g?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 7.7, 7.8, and 7.9 (Section 7.2) before attempting these problems.

VP7.9.1 A glider of mass 0.240 kg is on a frictionless, horizontal track, attached to a horizontal spring of force constant 6.00 N/m. Initially the spring (whose other end is fixed) is stretched by 0.100 m and the attached glider is moving at 0.400 m/s in the direction that causes the spring to stretch farther. (a) What is the total mechanical energy (kinetic energy plus elastic potential energy) of the system? (b) When the glider comes momentarily to rest, by what distance is the spring stretched?

VP7.9.2 A glider of mass 0.240 kg is on a horizontal track, attached to a horizontal spring of force constant 6.00 N/m. There is friction between the track and the glider. Initially the spring (whose other end is fixed) is stretched by 0.100 m and the attached glider is moving at 0.400 m/s in the direction that causes the spring to stretch farther. The glider comes momentarily to rest when the spring is stretched by 0.112 m. (a) How much work does the force of friction do on the glider as the stretch of the spring increases from 0.100 m to 0.112 m? (b) What is the coefficient of kinetic friction between the glider and the track?

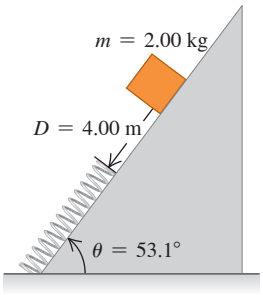
VP7.9.3 A lightweight vertical spring of force constant k has its lower end mounted on a table. You compress the spring by a distance d, place a block of mass m on top of the compressed spring, and then release the block. The spring launches the block upward, and the block rises to a maximum height some distance above the now-relaxed spring. (a) Find the speed of the block just as it loses contact with the spring. (b) Find the total vertical distance that the block travels from when it is first released to when it reaches its maximum height.

VP7.9.4 A cylinder of mass m is free to slide in a vertical tube. The kinetic friction force between the cylinder and the walls of the tube has magnitude f. You attach the upper end of a lightweight vertical spring of force constant k to the cap at the top of the tube, and attach the lower end of the spring to the top of the cylinder. Initially the cylinder is at rest and the spring is relaxed. You then release the cylinder. What vertical distance will the cylinder descend before it comes momentarily to rest?

BRIDGING PROBLEM A Spring and Friction on an Incline

A 2.00 kg package is released on a 53.1° incline, 4.00 m from a long spring with force constant 1.20×10^2 N/m that is attached at the bottom of the incline (**Fig. 7.25**). The coefficients of friction between the package and incline are $\mu_s = 0.400$ and $\mu_k = 0.200$. The mass of the spring is negligible. (a) What is the maximum compression of the spring? (b) The package rebounds up the incline. When it stops again, how close does it get to its original position? (c) What is the change in the internal energy of the package and incline from the point at which the package is released until it rebounds to its maximum height?

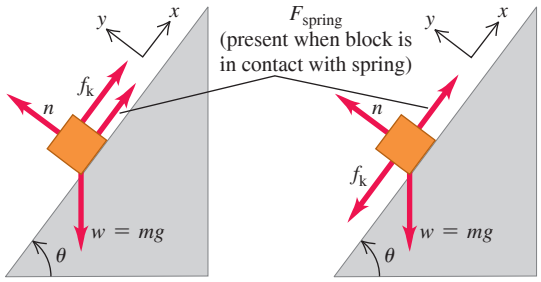
Figure **7.25** The initial situation.



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. This problem involves the gravitational force, a spring force, and the friction force, as well as the normal force that acts on the package. Since the spring force isn't constant, you'll have to use energy methods. Is total mechanical energy conserved during any part of the motion? Why or why not?
2. Draw free-body diagrams for the package as it is sliding down the incline and sliding back up the incline. Include your choice of coordinate axes (see below). (*Hint:* If you choose $x = 0$ to be at the end of the uncompressed spring, you'll be able to use $U_{el} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ for the elastic potential energy of the spring.)



3. Label the three critical points in the package's motion: its starting position, its position when it comes to rest with the spring maximally compressed, and its position when it has rebounded as far as possible up the incline. (*Hint:* You can assume that the package is no longer in contact with the spring at the last of these positions. If this turns out to be incorrect, you'll calculate a value of x that tells you the spring is still partially compressed at this point.)
4. List the unknown quantities and decide which of these are the target variables.

EXECUTE

5. Find the magnitude of the friction force that acts on the package. Does the magnitude of this force depend on whether the package is moving up or down the incline, or on whether the package is in contact with the spring? Does the *direction* of the friction force depend on any of these?
6. Write the general energy equation for the motion of the package between the first two points you labeled in step 3. Use this equation to solve for the distance that the spring is compressed when the package is at its lowest point. (*Hint:* You'll have to solve a quadratic equation. To decide which of the two solutions of this equation is the correct one, remember that the distance the spring is compressed is positive.)
7. Write the general energy equation for the motion of the package between the second and third points you labeled in step 3. Use this equation to solve for how far the package rebounds.
8. Calculate the change in internal energy for the package's trip down and back up the incline. Remember that the amount the internal energy *increases* is equal to the amount the total mechanical energy *decreases*.

EVALUATE

9. Was it correct to assume in part (b) that the package is no longer in contact with the spring when it reaches its maximum rebound height?
10. Check your result for part (c) by finding the total work done by the force of friction over the entire trip. Is this in accordance with your result from step 8?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q7.1 A baseball is thrown straight up with initial speed v_0. If air resistance cannot be ignored, when the ball returns to its initial height its speed is less than v_0. Explain why, using energy concepts.

Q7.2 A projectile has the same initial kinetic energy no matter what the angle of projection. Why doesn't it rise to the same maximum height in each case?

Q7.3 An object is released from rest at the top of a ramp. If the ramp is frictionless, does the object's speed at the bottom of the ramp depend on the shape of the ramp or just on its height? Explain. What if the ramp is *not* frictionless?

Q7.4 An egg is released from rest from the roof of a building and falls to the ground. Its fall is observed by a student on the roof of the building, who uses coordinates with origin at the roof, and by a student on the ground, who uses coordinates with origin at the ground. Do the values the two students assign to the following quantities match each other: initial gravitational potential energy, final gravitational potential energy, change in gravitational potential energy, and kinetic energy of the egg just before it strikes the ground? Explain.

Q7.5 A physics teacher had a bowling ball suspended from a very long rope attached to the high ceiling of a large lecture hall. To illustrate his faith in conservation of energy, he would back up to one side of the stage, pull the ball far to one side until the taut rope brought it just to the end of his nose, and then release it. The massive ball would swing in a mighty arc across the stage and then return to stop momentarily just in front of the nose of the stationary, unflinching teacher. However, one day after the demonstration he looked up just in time to see a student at the other side of the stage *push* the ball away from his nose as he tried to duplicate the demonstration. Tell the rest of the story, and explain the reason for the potentially tragic outcome.

Q7.6 Is it possible for a friction force to *increase* the total mechanical energy of a system? If so, give examples.

Q7.7 A woman bounces on a trampoline, going a little higher with each bounce. Explain how she increases the total mechanical energy.

Q7.8 **Fractured Physics.** People often call their electric bill a *power* bill, yet the quantity on which the bill is based is expressed in *kilowatt-hours*. What are people really being billed for?

Q7.9 (a) A book is lifted upward a vertical distance of 0.800 m. During this displacement, does the gravitational force acting on the book do positive work or negative work? Does the gravitational potential energy of the book increase or decrease? (b) A can of beans is released from rest and falls downward a vertical distance of 2.00 m. During this displacement, does the gravitational force acting on the can do positive work or negative work? Does the gravitational potential energy of the can increase or decrease?

Q7.10 (a) A block of wood is pushed against a spring, which is compressed 0.080 m. Does the force on the block exerted by the spring do positive or negative work? Does the potential energy stored in the spring increase or decrease? (b) A block of wood is placed against a vertical spring that is compressed 6.00 cm. The spring is released and pushes the block upward. From the point where the spring is compressed 6.00 cm to where it is compressed 2.00 cm from its equilibrium length and the block has moved 4.00 cm upward, does the spring force do positive or negative work on the block? During this motion, does the potential energy stored in the spring increase or decrease?

Q7.11 A 1.0 kg stone and a 10.0 kg stone are released from rest at the same height above the ground. Ignore air resistance. Which of these statements about the stones are true? Justify each answer. (a) Both have the same initial gravitational potential energy. (b) Both will have the same acceleration as they fall. (c) Both will have the same speed when they reach the ground. (d) Both will have the same kinetic energy when they reach the ground.

Q7.12 Two objects with different masses are launched vertically into the air by placing them on identical compressed springs and then releasing the springs. The two springs are compressed by the same amount before launching. Ignore air resistance and the masses of the springs. Which of these statements about the masses are true? Justify each answer. (a) Both reach the same maximum height. (b) At their maximum height, both have the same gravitational potential energy, if the initial gravitational potential of each mass is taken to be zero.

Q7.13 When people are cold, they often rub their hands together to warm up. How does doing this produce heat? Where does the heat come from?

Q7.14 A box slides down a ramp and work is done on the box by the forces of gravity and friction. Can the work of each of these forces be expressed in terms of the change in a potential-energy function? For each force explain why or why not.

Q7.15 In physical terms, explain why friction is a nonconservative force. Does it store energy for future use?

Q7.16 Since only changes in potential energy are important in any problem, a student decides to let the elastic potential energy of a spring be zero when the spring is stretched a distance x_1. The student decides, therefore, to let $U = \frac{1}{2}k(x - x_1)^2$. Is this correct? Explain.

Q7.17 Figure 7.22a shows the potential-energy function for the force $F_x = -kx$. Sketch the potential-energy function for the force $F_x = +kx$. For this force, is $x = 0$ a point of equilibrium? Is this equilibrium stable or unstable? Explain.

Q7.18 Figure 7.22b shows the potential-energy function associated with the gravitational force between an object and the earth. Use this graph to explain why objects always fall toward the earth when they are released.

Q7.19 For a system of two particles we often let the potential energy for the force between the particles approach zero as the separation of the particles approaches infinity. If this choice is made, explain why the potential energy at noninfinite separation is positive if the particles repel one another and negative if they attract.

Q7.20 Explain why the points $x = A$ and $x = -A$ in Fig. 7.23b are called *turning points.* How are the values of E and U related at a turning point?

Q7.21 A particle is in *neutral equilibrium* if the net force on it is zero and remains zero if the particle is displaced slightly in any direction. Sketch the potential-energy function near a point of neutral equilibrium for the case of one-dimensional motion. Give an example of an object in neutral equilibrium.

Q7.22 The net force on a particle of mass m has the potential-energy function graphed in Fig. 7.24a. If the total energy is E_1, graph the speed v of the particle versus its position x. At what value of x is the speed greatest? Sketch v versus x if the total energy is E_2.

Q7.23 The potential-energy function for a force $\vec{F}$ is $U = \alpha x^3$, where α is a positive constant. What is the direction of $\vec{F}$?

EXERCISES

Section 7.1 Gravitational Potential Energy

7.1 • In one day, a 90 kg mountain climber ascends from the 1560 m level on a vertical cliff to the top at 2500 m. The next day, she descends from the top to the base of the cliff, which is at an elevation of 1260 m. What is her change in gravitational potential energy (a) on the first day and (b) on the second day?

7.2 • BIO **How High Can We Jump?** The maximum height a typical human can jump from a crouched start is about 60 cm. By how much does the gravitational potential energy increase for a 66 kg person in such a jump? Where does this energy come from?

7.3 •• CP A 90.0 kg mail bag hangs by a vertical rope 3.5 m long. A postal worker then displaces the bag to a position 2.0 m sideways from its original position, always keeping the rope taut. (a) What horizontal force is necessary to hold the bag in the new position? (b) As the bag is moved to this position, how much work is done (i) by the rope and (ii) by the worker?

7.4 •• BIO **Food Calories.** The *food calorie,* equal to 4186 J, is a measure of how much energy is released when the body metabolizes food. A certain fruit-and-cereal bar contains 130 food calories. (a) If a 72 kg hiker eats one bar, how high a mountain must he climb to "work off" the calories, assuming that all the food energy goes into increasing gravitational potential energy? (b) If, as is typical, only 25% of the food calories go into mechanical energy, what would be the answer to part (a)? (*Note*: In this and all other problems, we are assuming that 100% of the food calories that are eaten are absorbed and used by the body. This is not true. A person's "metabolic efficiency" is the percentage of calories eaten that are actually used; the body eliminates the rest. Metabolic efficiency varies considerably from person to person.)

7.5 • A tennis ball is thrown from the roof of a 20.8-m-tall building with an initial velocity of magnitude 11.5 m/s and directed at an angle of 50.1° above the horizontal. (a) What is the speed of the ball just before it strikes the ground? Use energy methods and ignore air resistance. (b) What is the answer for part (a) if the initial velocity is at an angle of 50.1° *below* the horizontal? (c) If the effects of air resistance are included, will part (a) or (b) give the higher speed?

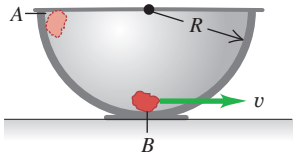
7.6 •• A crate of mass M starts from rest at the top of a frictionless ramp inclined at an angle α above the horizontal. Find its speed at the bottom of the ramp, a distance d from where it started. Do this in two ways: Take the level at which the potential energy is zero to be (a) at the bottom of the ramp with y positive upward, and (b) at the top of the ramp with y positive upward. (c) Why didn't the normal force enter into your solution?

7.7 •• BIO **Human Energy vs. Insect Energy.** For its size, the common flea is one of the most accomplished jumpers in the animal world. A 1.5-mm-long, 0.55 mg flea can reach a height of 17 cm in a single leap. (a) Ignoring air drag, what is the takeoff speed of such a flea? (b) Calculate the kinetic energy of this flea at takeoff and its kinetic energy per kilogram of mass. (c) If a 72 kg, 1.70-m-tall human could jump to the same height compared with his length as the flea jumps compared with its length, how high could the human jump, and what takeoff speed would the man need? (d) Most humans can jump no more than 60 cm from a crouched start. What is the kinetic energy per kilogram of mass at takeoff for such a 72 kg person? (e) Where does the flea store the energy that allows it to make sudden leaps?

7.8 • Estimate the maximum speed you can achieve while running a 100 m dash. Treat yourself as a point particle. (a) At this speed, what is your kinetic energy? (b) To what height above the ground would you have to climb in a tree to increase your gravitational potential energy by an amount equal to the kinetic energy you calculated in part (a)?

7.9 •• CP A small rock with mass 0.20 kg is released from rest at point A, which is at the top edge of a large, hemispherical bowl with radius $R = 0.50$ m (**Fig. E7.9**). Assume that the size of the rock is small compared to R, so that the rock can be treated as a particle, and assume that the rock slides rather than rolls. The work done by friction on the rock when it moves from point A to point B at the bottom of the bowl has magnitude 0.22 J. (a) Between points A and B, how much work is done on the rock by (i) the normal force and (ii) gravity? (b) What is the speed of the rock as it reaches point B? (c) Of the three forces acting on the rock as it slides down the bowl, which (if any) are constant and which are not? Explain. (d) Just as the rock reaches point B, what is the normal force on it due to the bottom of the bowl?

Figure E7.9



7.10 •• A 25.0 kg child plays on a swing having support ropes that are 2.20 m long. Her brother pulls her back until the ropes are 42.0° from the vertical and releases her from rest. (a) What is her potential energy just as she is released, compared with the potential energy at the bottom of the swing's motion? (b) How fast will she be moving at the bottom? (c) How much work does the tension in the ropes do as she swings from the initial position to the bottom of the motion?

7.11 •• You are testing a new amusement park roller coaster with an empty car of mass 120 kg. One part of the track is a vertical loop with radius 12.0 m. At the bottom of the loop (point A) the car has speed 25.0 m/s, and at the top of the loop (point B) it has speed 8.0 m/s. As the car rolls from point A to point B, how much work is done by friction?

7.12 • **Tarzan and Jane.** Tarzan, in one tree, sights Jane in another tree. He grabs the end of a vine with length 20 m that makes an angle of 45° with the vertical, steps off his tree limb, and swings down and then up to Jane's open arms. When he arrives, his vine makes an angle of 30° with the vertical. Determine whether he gives her a tender embrace or knocks her off her limb by calculating Tarzan's speed just before he reaches Jane. Ignore air resistance and the mass of the vine.

7.13 •• Two blocks are attached to either end of a light rope that passes over a light, frictionless pulley suspended from the ceiling. One block has mass 8.00 kg, and the other has mass 6.00 kg. The blocks are released from rest. (a) For a 0.200 m downward displacement of the 8.00 kg block, what is the change in the gravitational potential energy associated with each block? (b) If the tension in the rope is T, how much work is done on each block by the rope? (c) Apply conservation of energy to the system that includes both blocks. During the 0.200 m downward displacement, what is the total work done on the system by the tension in the rope? What is the change in gravitational potential energy associated with the system? Use energy conservation to find the speed of the 8.00 kg block after it has descended 0.200 m.

Section 7.2 Elastic Potential Energy

7.14 •• An ideal spring of negligible mass is 13.00 cm long when nothing is attached to it. When you hang a 3.30 kg weight from it, you measure its length to be 14.40 cm. If you wanted to store 10.0 J of potential energy in this spring, what would be its *total* length? Assume that it continues to obey Hooke's law.

7.15 •• A force of 900 N keeps a certain spring stretched a distance of 0.100 m. (a) What is the potential energy of the spring when it is stretched 0.100 m? (b) What is its potential energy when it is compressed 5.00 cm?

7.16 • BIO **Tendons.** Tendons are strong elastic fibers that attach muscles to bones. To a reasonable approximation, they obey Hooke's law. In laboratory tests on a particular tendon, it was found that, when a 248 g object was hung from it, the tendon stretched 1.22 cm. (a) Find the force constant of this tendon in N/m. (b) Because of its thickness, the maximum tension this tendon can support without rupturing is 140 N. By how much can the tendon stretch without rupturing, and how much energy is stored in it at that point?

7.17 • An ideal spring stores potential energy U_0 when it is compressed a distance x_0 from its uncompressed length. (a) In terms of U_0, how much energy does the spring store when it is compressed (i) twice as much and (ii) half as much? (b) In terms of x_0, how much must the spring be compressed from its uncompressed length to store (i) twice as much energy and (ii) half as much energy?

7.18 • A small block of mass m on a horizontal frictionless surface is attached to a horizontal spring that has force constant k. The block is pushed against the spring, compressing the spring a distance d. The block is released, and it moves back and forth on the end of the spring. During its motion, what is the maximum speed of the block?

7.19 •• A spring of negligible mass has force constant $k = 1800$ N/m. (a) How far must the spring be compressed for 3.30 J of potential energy to be stored in it? (b) You place the spring vertically with one end on the floor. You then lay a 1.30 kg book on top of the spring and release the book from rest. Find the maximum distance the spring will be compressed.

7.20 • A 1.33 kg piece of cheese is placed on a vertical spring of negligible mass and force constant $k = 2400$ N/m that is compressed 17.5 cm. When the spring is released, how high does the cheese rise from this initial position? (The cheese and the spring are *not* attached.)

7.21 •• A spring of negligible mass has force constant $k = 1600$ N/m. (a) How far must the spring be compressed for 3.20 J of potential energy to be stored in it? (b) You place the spring vertically with one end on the floor. You then drop a 1.20 kg book onto it from a height of 0.800 m above the top of the spring. Find the maximum distance the spring will be compressed.

7.22 •• (a) For the lift of Example 7.9 (Section 7.2), what is the speed of the lift after it has moved downward 1.00 m from point 1 in Fig. 7.17? (b) When the lift is 1.00 m below point 1 in Fig. 7.17, what is its acceleration?

7.23 •• A 2.10 kg mass is pushed against a horizontal spring of force constant 24.0 N/cm on a frictionless air table. The spring is attached to the tabletop, and the mass is not attached to the spring in any way. When the spring has been compressed enough to store 13.5 J of potential energy in it, the mass is suddenly released from rest. (a) Find the greatest speed the mass reaches. When does this occur? (b) What is the greatest acceleration of the mass, and when does it occur?

7.24 •• A 2.50 kg block on a horizontal floor is attached to a horizontal spring that is initially compressed 0.0300 m. The spring has force constant 840 N/m. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the floor and the block is $\mu_k = 0.40$. The block and spring are released from rest, and the block slides along the floor. What is the speed of the block when it has moved a distance of 0.0200 m from its initial position? (At this point the spring is compressed 0.0100 m.)

7.25 •• You are asked to design a spring that will give a 1260 kg satellite a speed of 2.20 m/s relative to an orbiting space shuttle. Your spring is to give the satellite a maximum acceleration of $5.00g$. The spring's mass, the recoil kinetic energy of the shuttle, and changes in gravitational potential energy will all be negligible. (a) What must the force constant of the spring be? (b) What distance must the spring be compressed?

7.26 • It takes a force of 5.00 N to stretch an ideal spring 2.00 cm. (a) What force does it take to stretch the spring an additional 4.00 cm? (b) By what factor does the stored elastic potential energy increase when the spring, originally stretched 2.00 cm, is stretched 4.00 cm more?

Section 7.3 Conservative and Nonconservative Forces

7.27 • A 0.54 kg book slides on a horizontal table. The kinetic friction force on the book has magnitude 1.1 N. (a) How much work is done on the book by friction during a displacement of 2.4 m to the left? (b) The book now slides 2.4 m to the right, returning to its starting point. During this second 2.4 m displacement, how much work is done on the book by friction? (c) What is the total work done on the book by friction during the complete round trip? (d) On the basis of your answer to part (c), would you say that the friction force is conservative or nonconservative? Explain.

7.28 •• **CALC** In an experiment, one of the forces exerted on a proton is $\vec{F} = -\alpha x^2 \hat{\imath}$, where $\alpha = 12\ \text{N/m}^2$. (a) How much work does $\vec{F}$ do when the proton moves along the straight-line path from the point $(0.10\ \text{m}, 0)$ to the point $(0.10\ \text{m}, 0.40\ \text{m})$? (b) Along the straight-line path from the point $(0.10\ \text{m}, 0)$ to the point $(0.30\ \text{m}, 0)$? (c) Along the straight-line path from the point $(0.30\ \text{m}, 0)$ to the point $(0.10\ \text{m}, 0)$? (d) Is the force $\vec{F}$ conservative? Explain. If $\vec{F}$ is conservative, what is the potential-energy function for it? Let $U = 0$ when $x = 0$.

7.29 •• A 62.0 kg skier is moving at 6.50 m/s on a frictionless, horizontal, snow-covered plateau when she encounters a rough patch 4.20 m long. The coefficient of kinetic friction between this patch and her skis is 0.300. After crossing the rough patch and returning to friction-free snow, she skis down an icy, frictionless hill 2.50 m high. (a) How fast is the skier moving when she gets to the bottom of the hill? (b) How much internal energy was generated in crossing the rough patch?

7.30 • While a roofer is working on a roof that slants at 43° above the horizontal, he accidentally nudges his 86.0 N toolbox, causing it to start sliding downward from rest. If it starts 4.80 m from the lower edge of the roof, how fast will the toolbox be moving just as it reaches the edge of the roof if the kinetic friction force on it is 22.0 N?

Section 7.4 Force and Potential Energy

7.31 •• **CALC** A force parallel to the x-axis acts on a particle moving along the x-axis. This force produces potential energy $U(x)$ given by $U(x) = \alpha x^4$, where $\alpha = 1.43\ \text{J/m}^4$. What is the force (magnitude and direction) when the particle is at $x = -0.780$ m?

7.32 •• **CALC** The potential energy of a pair of hydrogen atoms separated by a large distance x is given by $U(x) = -C_6/x^6$, where C_6 is a positive constant. What is the force that one atom exerts on the other? Is this force attractive or repulsive?

7.33 •• **CALC** A small block with mass 0.0400 kg is moving in the xy-plane. The net force on the block is described by the potential-energy function $U(x, y) = (5.85\ \text{J/m}^2)x^2 - (3.65\ \text{J/m}^3)y^3$. What are the magnitude and direction of the acceleration of the block when it is at the point $(x = 0.280\ \text{m}, y = 0.570\ \text{m})$?

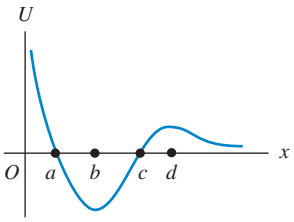
7.34 •• **CALC** An object moving in the xy-plane is acted on by a conservative force described by the potential-energy function $U(x, y) = \alpha[(1/x^2) + (1/y^2)]$, where α is a positive constant. Derive an expression for the force expressed in terms of the unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$ and $\hat{\jmath}$.

Section 7.5 Energy Diagrams

7.35 • **CALC** The potential energy of two atoms in a diatomic molecule is approximated by $U(r) = (a/r^{12}) - (b/r^6)$, where r is the spacing between atoms and a and b are positive constants. (a) Find the force $F(r)$ on one atom as a function of r. Draw two graphs: one of $U(r)$ versus r and one of $F(r)$ versus r. (b) Find the equilibrium distance between the two atoms. Is this equilibrium stable? (c) Suppose the distance between the two atoms is equal to the equilibrium distance found in part (b). What minimum energy must be added to the molecule to *dissociate* it—that is, to separate the two atoms to an infinite distance apart? This is called the *dissociation energy* of the molecule. (d) For the molecule CO, the equilibrium distance between the carbon and oxygen atoms is 1.13×10^{-10} m and the dissociation energy is 1.54×10^{-18} J per molecule. Find the values of the constants a and b.

7.36 • A marble moves along the x-axis. The potential-energy function is shown in **Fig. E7.36**. (a) At which of the labeled x-coordinates is the force on the marble zero? (b) Which of the labeled x-coordinates is a position of stable equilibrium? (c) Which of the labeled x-coordinates is a position of unstable equilibrium?

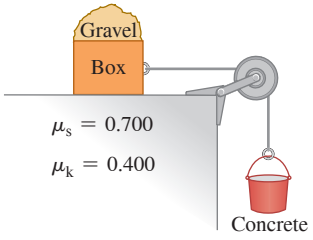
Figure **E7.36**



PROBLEMS

7.37 ••• At a construction site, a 67.0 kg bucket of concrete hangs from a light (but strong) cable that passes over a light, friction-free pulley and is connected to an 82.0 kg box on a horizontal roof (**Fig. P7.37**). The cable pulls horizontally on the box, and a 45.0 kg bag of gravel rests on top of the box. The coefficients of friction between the box and roof are shown. (a) Find the friction force on the bag of gravel and on the box. (b) Suddenly a worker picks up the bag of gravel. Use energy conservation to find the speed of the bucket after it has descended 1.60 m from rest. (Use Newton's laws to check your answer.)

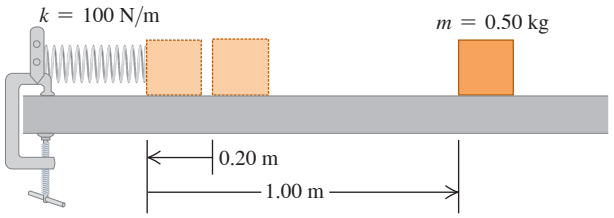
Figure **P7.37**



7.38 •• **CP** Estimate the maximum horizontal distance you can throw a cricket ball ($m = 0.156$ kg) if you throw it at an angle of $\alpha_0 = 45°$ above the horizontal in order to achieve the maximum range. (a) What is the kinetic energy of the ball just after it leaves your hand? Ignore air resistance and the small distance the ball is above the ground when it leaves your hand. Take the zero of potential energy to be at the ground. (b) At the ball's maximum height, what fraction of its total mechanical energy is kinetic energy and what fraction is gravitational potential energy? (c) If you throw the ball at an initial angle of 60° above the horizontal, at its maximum height what fraction of its total energy is kinetic energy and what fraction is gravitational potential energy? (d) What fraction of the total mechanical energy is kinetic energy at the maximum height in the limiting cases of $\alpha_0 = 0°$ and $\alpha_0 = 90°$?

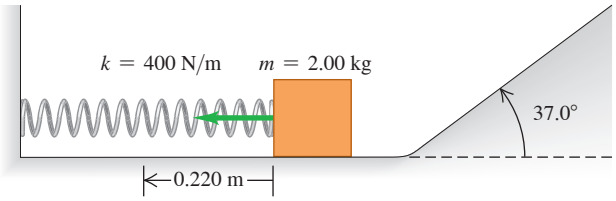
7.39 • A block with mass 0.50 kg is forced against a horizontal spring of negligible mass, compressing the spring a distance of 0.20 m (**Fig. P7.39**). When released, the block moves on a horizontal tabletop for 1.00 m before coming to rest. The force constant k is 100 N/m. What is the coefficient of kinetic friction μ_k between the block and the tabletop?

Figure **P7.39**



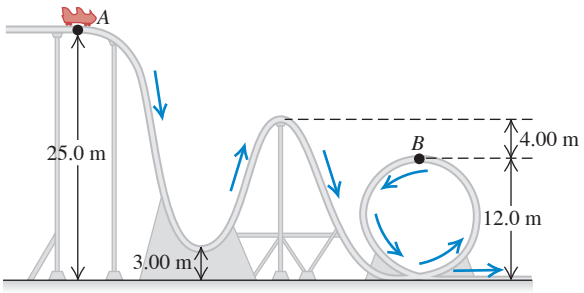
7.40 • A 2.00 kg block is pushed against a spring with negligible mass and force constant $k = 400$ N/m, compressing it 0.220 m. When the block is released, it moves along a frictionless, horizontal surface and then up a frictionless incline with slope 37.0° (**Fig. P7.40**). (a) What is the speed of the block as it slides along the horizontal surface after having left the spring? (b) How far does the block travel up the incline before starting to slide back down?

Figure **P7.40**



7.41 •• A 350 kg roller coaster car starts from rest at point A and slides down a frictionless loop-the-loop (**Fig. P7.41**). The car's wheels are designed to stay on the track. (a) How fast is this roller coaster car moving at point B? (b) How hard does it press against the track at point B?

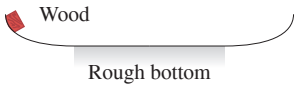
Figure **P7.41**



7.42 •• CP A small rock with mass m is released from rest at the inside rim of a large, hemispherical bowl (point A) that has radius R, as shown in Fig. E7.9. If the normal force exerted on the rock as it slides through its lowest point (point B) is twice the weight of the rock, how much work did friction do on the rock as it moved from A to B? Express your answer in terms of m, R, and g.

7.43 •• A 2.0 kg piece of wood slides on a curved surface (**Fig. P7.43**). The sides of the surface are perfectly smooth, but the rough horizontal bottom is 33 m long and has a kinetic friction coefficient of 0.30 with the wood. The piece of wood starts from rest 4.0 m above the rough bottom. (a) Where will this wood eventually come to rest? (b) For the motion from the initial release until the piece of wood comes to rest, what is the total amount of work done by friction?

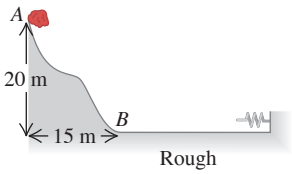
Figure **P7.43**



7.44 •• CP A small block with mass m slides without friction on the inside of a vertical circular track that has radius R. What minimum speed must the block have at the bottom of its path if it is not to fall off the track at the top of its path?

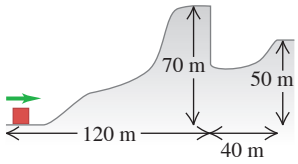
7.45 •• A 15.0 kg stone slides down a snow-covered hill (**Fig. P7.45**), leaving point A at a speed of 10.0 m/s. There is no friction on the hill between points A and B, but there is friction on the level ground at the bottom of the hill, between B and the wall. After entering the rough horizontal region, the stone travels 100 m and then runs into a very long, light spring with force constant 2.50 N/m. The coefficients of kinetic and static friction between the stone and the horizontal ground are 0.20 and 0.80, respectively. (a) What is the speed of the stone when it reaches point B? (b) How far will the stone compress the spring? (c) Will the stone move again after it has been stopped by the spring?

Figure **P7.45**



7.46 •• CP A 2.8 kg block slides over the smooth, icy hill shown in **Fig. P7.46.** The top of the hill is horizontal and 70 m higher than its base. What minimum speed must the block have at the base of the 70 m hill to pass over the pit at the far (right-hand) side of that hill?

Figure **P7.46**



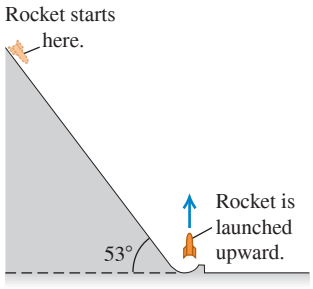
7.47 •• A small box with mass 0.600 kg is placed against a compressed spring at the bottom of an incline that slopes upward at 37.0° above the horizontal. The other end of the spring is attached to a wall. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the box and the surface of the incline is $\mu_k = 0.400$. The spring is released and the box travels up the incline, leaving the spring behind. What minimum elastic potential energy must be stored initially in the spring if the box is to travel 2.00 m from its initial position to the top of the incline?

7.48 ••• You are designing a delivery ramp for crates containing exercise equipment. The 1520 N crates will move at 2.2 m/s at the top of a ramp that slopes downward at 21.0°. The ramp exerts a 544 N kinetic friction force on each crate, and the maximum static friction force also has this value. Each crate will compress a spring at the bottom of the ramp and will come to rest after traveling a total distance of 7.6 m along the ramp. Once stopped, a crate must not rebound back up the ramp. Calculate the largest force constant of the spring that will be needed to meet the design criteria.

7.49 ••• The Great Sandini is a 60 kg circus performer who is shot from a cannon (actually a spring gun). You don't find many men of his caliber, so you help him design a new gun. This new gun has a very large spring with a very small mass and a force constant of 1100 N/m that he will compress with a force of 4400 N. The inside of the gun barrel is coated with Teflon, so the average friction force will be only 40 N during the 4.0 m he moves in the barrel. At what speed will he emerge from the end of the barrel, 2.5 m above his initial rest position?

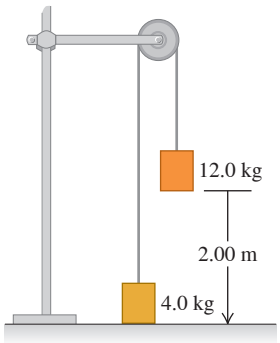
7.50 •• A 1580 kg rocket is to be launched with an initial upward speed of 55.0 m/s. In order to assist its engines, the engineers will start it from rest on a ramp that rises 53° above the horizontal (**Fig. P7.50**). At the bottom, the ramp turns upward and launches the rocket vertically. The engines provide a constant forward thrust of 2000 N, and friction with the ramp surface is a constant 500 N. How far from the base of the ramp should the rocket start, as measured along the surface of the ramp?

Figure **P7.50**



7.51 •• A system of two paint buckets connected by a lightweight rope is released from rest with the 12.0 kg bucket 2.00 m above the floor (**Fig. P7.51**). Use the principle of conservation of energy to find the speed with which this bucket strikes the floor. Ignore friction and the mass of the pulley.

Figure **P7.51**



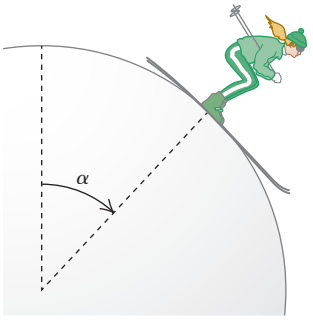
7.52 •• A block with mass $m = 0.200$ kg is placed against a compressed spring at the bottom of a ramp that is at an angle of 53.0° above the horizontal. The spring has 8.00 J of elastic potential energy stored in it. The spring is released, and the block moves up the incline. After the block has traveled a distance of 3.00 m, its speed is 4.00 m/s. What is the magnitude of the friction force that the ramp exerts on the block while the block is moving?

7.53 •• **CP** A 0.325 kg potato is tied to a string with length 2.50 m, and the other end of the string is tied to a rigid support. The potato is held straight out horizontally from the point of support, with the string pulled taut, and is then released. (a) What is the speed of the potato at the lowest point of its motion? (b) What is the tension in the string at this point?

7.54 •• A 60.0 kg skier starts from rest at the top of a ski slope 63.0 m high. (a) If friction forces do −10.9 kJ of work on her as she descends, how fast is she going at the bottom of the slope? (b) Now moving horizontally, the skier crosses a patch of soft snow where $\mu_k = 0.21$. If the patch is 65.0 m wide and the average force of air resistance on the skier is 180 N, how fast is she going after crossing the patch? (c) The skier hits a snowdrift and penetrates 3.0 m into it before coming to a stop. What is the average force exerted on her by the snowdrift as it stops her?

7.55 • **CP** A skier starts at the top of a very large, frictionless snowball, with a very small initial speed, and skis straight down the side (**Fig. P7.55**). At what point does she lose contact with the snowball and fly off at a tangent? That is, at the instant she loses contact with the snowball, what angle α does a radial line from the center of the snowball to the skier make with the vertical?

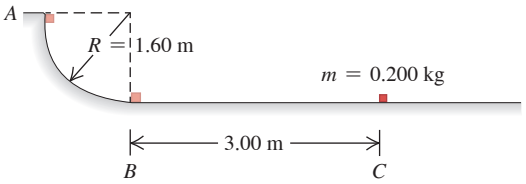
Figure **P7.55**



7.56 •• A block with mass 0.400 kg is on a horizontal frictionless surface and is attached to a horizontal compressed spring that has force constant $k = 200$ N/m. The other end of the spring is attached to a wall. The block is released, and it moves back and forth on the end of the spring. During this motion the block has speed 3.00 m/s when the spring is stretched 0.160 m. (a) During the motion of the block, what is its maximum speed? (b) During the block's motion, what is the maximum distance the spring is compressed from its equilibrium position? (c) When the spring has its maximum compression, what is the speed of the block and what is the magnitude of the acceleration of the block?

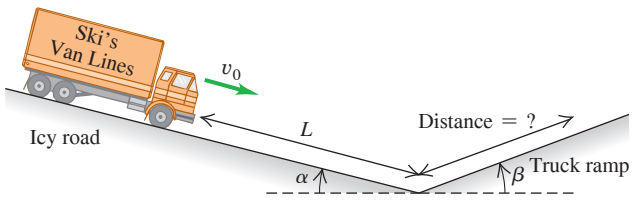
7.57 •• In a truck-loading station at a post office, a small 0.200 kg package is released from rest at point A on a track that is one-quarter of a circle with radius 1.60 m (**Fig. P7.57**). The size of the package is much less than 1.60 m, so the package can be treated as a particle. It slides down the track and reaches point B with a speed of 4.90 m/s. From point B, it slides on a level surface a distance of 3.00 m to point C, where it comes to rest. (a) What is the coefficient of kinetic friction on the horizontal surface? (b) How much work is done on the package by friction as it slides down the circular arc from A to B?

Figure **P7.57**



7.58 ••• A truck with mass m has a brake failure while going down an icy mountain road of constant downward slope angle α (**Fig. P7.58**). Initially the truck is moving downhill at speed v_0. After careening downhill a distance L with negligible friction, the truck driver steers the runaway vehicle onto a runaway truck ramp of constant upward slope angle β. The truck ramp has a soft sand surface for which the coefficient of rolling friction is μ_r. What is the distance that the truck moves up the ramp before coming to a halt? Solve by energy methods.

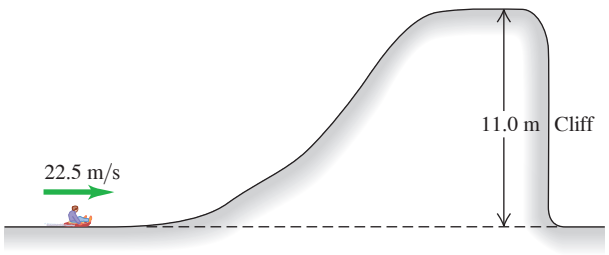
Figure **P7.58**



7.59 •• **CALC** A certain spring found *not* to obey Hooke's law exerts a restoring force $F_x(x) = -\alpha x - \beta x^2$ if it is stretched or compressed, where $\alpha = 60.0$ N/m and $\beta = 18.0$ N/m^2. The mass of the spring is negligible. (a) Calculate the potential-energy function $U(x)$ for this spring. Let $U = 0$ when $x = 0$. (b) An object with mass 0.900 kg on a frictionless, horizontal surface is attached to this spring, pulled a distance 1.00 m to the right (the $+x$-direction) to stretch the spring, and released. What is the speed of the object when it is 0.50 m to the right of the $x = 0$ equilibrium position?

7.60 •• **CP** A sled with rider having a combined mass of 130 kg travels over a perfectly smooth icy hill (**Fig. P7.60**). How far does the sled land from the foot of the cliff?

Figure **P7.60**



7.61 •• **CALC** A conservative force $\vec{F}$ is in the $+x$-direction and has magnitude $F(x) = \alpha/(x + x_0)^2$, where $\alpha = 0.800\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2$ and $x_0 = 0.200$ m. (a) What is the potential-energy function $U(x)$ for this force? Let $U(x) \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$. (b) An object with mass $m = 0.500$ kg is released from rest at $x = 0$ and moves in the $+x$-direction. If $\vec{F}$ is the only force acting on the object, what is the object's speed when it reaches $x = 0.400$ m?

7.62 •• **CP** A light rope of length 1.40 m is attached to the ceiling. A small steel ball with mass 0.200 kg swings on the lower end of the rope as a pendulum. As the ball swings back and forth, the angle θ between the rope and the vertical direction has a maximum value of 37.0°. (a) What is the tension in the rope when $\theta = 37.0°$? (b) What is the tension when $\theta = 25.0°$?

7.63 •• A 0.110 kg block of ice is placed against a horizontal, compressed spring mounted on a horizontal tabletop that is 1.30 m above the floor. The spring has force constant 2050 N/m and is initially compressed 0.045 m. The mass of the spring is negligible. The spring is released, and the block slides along the table, goes off the edge, and travels to the floor. If there is negligible friction between the block of ice and the tabletop, what is the speed of the block of ice when it reaches the floor?

7.64 •• If a fish is attached to a vertical spring and slowly lowered to its equilibrium position, it is found to stretch the spring by an amount d. If the same fish is attached to the end of the unstretched spring and then allowed to fall from rest, through what maximum distance does it stretch the spring? (*Hint:* Calculate the force constant of the spring in terms of the distance d and the mass m of the fish.)

7.65 ••• **CALC** You are an industrial engineer with a shipping company. As part of the package-handling system, a small box with mass 1.60 kg is placed against a light spring that is compressed 0.280 m. The spring, whose other end is attached to a wall, has force constant $k = 45.0$ N/m. The spring and box are released from rest, and the box travels along a horizontal surface for which the coefficient of kinetic friction with the box is $\mu_k = 0.300$. When the box has traveled 0.280 m and the spring has reached its equilibrium length, the box loses contact with the spring. (a) What is the speed of the box at the instant when it leaves the spring? (b) What is the maximum speed of the box during its motion?

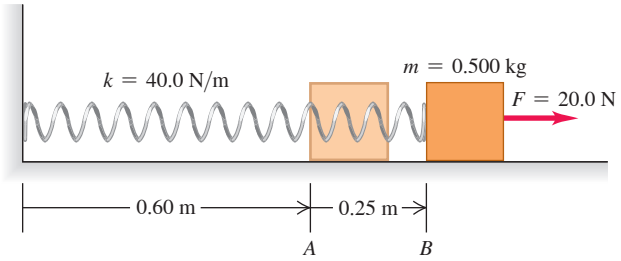
7.66 •• A basket of negligible weight hangs from a vertical spring scale of force constant 1500 N/m. (a) If you suddenly put a 3.0 kg adobe brick in the basket, find the maximum distance that the spring will stretch. (b) If, instead, you release the brick from 1.0 m above the basket, by how much will the spring stretch at its maximum elongation?

7.67 ••• **CALC** A 3.00 kg fish is attached to the lower end of a vertical spring that has negligible mass and force constant 900 N/m. The spring initially is neither stretched nor compressed. The fish is released from rest. (a) What is its speed after it has descended 0.0500 m from its initial position? (b) What is the maximum speed of the fish as it descends?

7.68 •• **CP** To test a slide at an amusement park, a block of wood with mass 3.00 kg is released at the top of the slide and slides down to the horizontal section at the end, a vertical distance of 23.0 m below the starting point. The block flies off the ramp in a horizontal direction and then lands on the ground after traveling through the air 30.0 m horizontally and 40.0 m downward. Neglect air resistance. How much work does friction do on the block as it slides down the ramp?

7.69 • A 0.500 kg block, attached to a spring with length 0.60 m and force constant 40.0 N/m, is at rest with the back of the block at point A on a frictionless, horizontal air table (**Fig. P7.69**). The mass of the spring is negligible. You move the block to the right along the surface by pulling with a constant 20.0 N horizontal force. (a) What is the block's speed when the back of the block reaches point B, which is 0.25 m to the right of point A? (b) When the back of the block reaches point B, you let go of the block. In the subsequent motion, how close does the block get to the wall where the left end of the spring is attached?

Figure **P7.69**



7.70 ••• **CP** A small block with mass 0.0350 kg slides in a vertical circle of radius $R = 0.400$ m on the inside of a circular track. During one of the revolutions of the block, when the block is at the bottom of its path, point A, the normal force exerted on the block by the track has magnitude 4.05 N. In this same revolution, when the block reaches the top of its path, point B, the normal force exerted on the block has magnitude 0.690 N. How much work is done on the block by friction during the motion of the block from point A to point B?

7.71 ••• **CP** A small block with mass 0.0500 kg slides in a vertical circle of radius $R = 0.800$ m on the inside of a circular track. There is no friction between the track and the block. At the bottom of the block's path, the normal force the track exerts on the block has magnitude 3.40 N. What is the magnitude of the normal force that the track exerts on the block when it is at the top of its path?

7.72 •• **CP** **Pendulum.** A small rock with mass 0.12 kg is fastened to a massless string with length 0.80 m to form a pendulum. The pendulum is swinging so as to make a maximum angle of 45° with the vertical. Air resistance is negligible. (a) What is the speed of the rock when the string passes through the vertical position? What is the tension in the string (b) when it makes an angle of 45° with the vertical, (c) as it passes through the vertical?

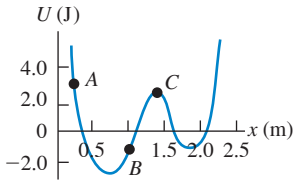
7.73 ••• A wooden block with mass 1.50 kg is placed against a compressed spring at the bottom of an incline of slope 30.0° (point A). When the spring is released, it projects the block up the incline. At point B, a distance of 6.00 m up the incline from A, the block is moving up the incline at 7.00 m/s and is no longer in contact with the spring. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and the incline is $\mu_k = 0.50$. The mass of the spring is negligible. Calculate the amount of potential energy that was initially stored in the spring.

7.74 •• **CALC** A small object with mass $m = 0.0900\ \text{kg}$ moves along the $+x$-axis. The only force on the object is a conservative force that has the potential-energy function $U(x) = -\alpha x^2 + \beta x^3$, where $\alpha = 2.00\ \text{J/m}^2$ and $\beta = 0.300\ \text{J/m}^3$. The object is released from rest at small x. When the object is at $x = 4.00\ \text{m}$, what are its (a) speed and (b) acceleration (magnitude and direction)? (c) What is the maximum value of x reached by the object during its motion?

7.75 ••• **CALC** A cutting tool under microprocessor control has several forces acting on it. One force is $\vec{F} = -\alpha x y^2 \hat{j}$, a force in the negative y-direction whose magnitude depends on the position of the tool. For $\alpha = 2.40\ \text{N/m}^3$, consider the displacement of the tool from the origin to the point $(x = 3.60\ \text{m},\ y = 3.60\ \text{m})$. (a) Calculate the work done on the tool by $\vec{F}$ if this displacement is along the straight line $y = x$ that connects these two points. (b) Calculate the work done on the tool by $\vec{F}$ if the tool is first moved out along the x-axis to the point $(x = 3.60\ \text{m},\ y = 0)$ and then moved parallel to the y-axis to the point $(x = 3.60\ \text{m},\ y = 3.60\ \text{m})$. (c) Compare the work done by $\vec{F}$ along these two paths. Is $\vec{F}$ conservative or nonconservative? Explain.

7.76 • A particle moves along the x-axis while acted on by a single conservative force parallel to the x-axis. The force corresponds to the potential-energy function graphed in **Fig. P7.76**. The particle is released from rest at point A. (a) What is the direction of the force on the particle when it is at point A? (b) At point B? (c) At what value of x is the kinetic energy of the particle a maximum? (d) What is the force on the particle when it is at point C? (e) What is the largest value of x reached by the particle during its motion? (f) What value or values of x correspond to points of stable equilibrium? (g) Of unstable equilibrium?

Figure **P7.76**



7.77 •• **DATA** You are designing a pendulum for a science museum. The pendulum is made by attaching a brass sphere with mass m to the lower end of a long, light metal wire of (unknown) length L. A device near the top of the wire measures the tension in the wire and transmits that information to your laptop computer. When the wire is vertical and the sphere is at rest, the sphere's center is 0.800 m above the floor and the tension in the wire is 265 N. Keeping the wire taut, you then pull the sphere to one side (using a ladder if necessary) and gently release it. You record the height h of the center of the sphere above the floor at the point where the sphere is released and the tension T in the wire as the sphere swings through its lowest point. You collect your results:

h (m)	0.800	2.00	4.00	6.00	8.00	10.0	12.0
T (N)	265	274	298	313	330	348	371

Assume that the sphere can be treated as a point mass, ignore the mass of the wire, and assume that total mechanical energy is conserved through each measurement. (a) Plot T versus h, and use this graph to calculate L. (b) If the breaking strength of the wire is 822 N, from what maximum height h can the sphere be released if the tension in the wire is not to exceed half the breaking strength? (c) The pendulum is swinging when you leave at the end of the day. You lock the museum doors, and no one enters the building until you return the next morning. You find that the sphere is hanging at rest. Using energy considerations, how can you explain this behavior?

7.78 •• **DATA** A long ramp made of cast iron is sloped at a constant angle $\theta = 52.0°$ above the horizontal. Small blocks, each with mass 0.42 kg but made of different materials, are released from rest at a vertical height h above the bottom of the ramp. In each case the coefficient of static friction is small enough that the blocks start to slide down the ramp as soon as they are released. You are asked to find h so that each block will have a speed of 4.00 m/s when it reaches the bottom of the ramp. You are given these coefficients of sliding (kinetic) friction for different pairs of materials:

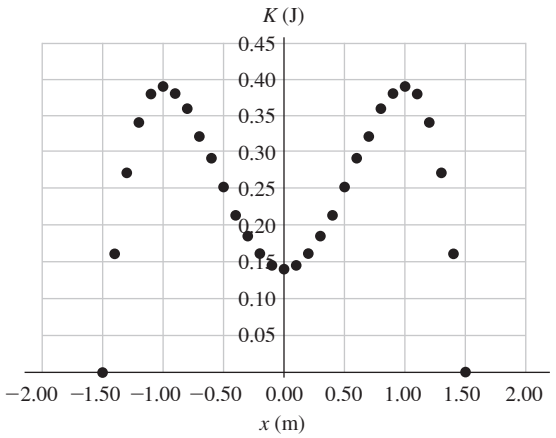
Material 1	Material 2	Coefficient of Sliding Friction
Cast iron	Cast iron	0.15
Cast iron	Copper	0.29
Cast iron	Lead	0.43
Cast iron	Zinc	0.85

Source: www.engineershandbook.com

(a) Use work and energy considerations to find the required value of h if the block is made from (i) cast iron; (ii) copper; (iii) zinc. (b) What is the required value of h for the copper block if its mass is doubled to 0.84 kg? (c) For a given block, if θ is increased while h is kept the same, does the speed v of the block at the bottom of the ramp increase, decrease, or stay the same?

7.79 •• **DATA** A single conservative force $F(x)$ acts on a small sphere of mass m while the sphere moves along the x-axis. You release the sphere from rest at $x = -1.50\ \text{m}$. As the sphere moves, you measure its velocity as a function of position. You use the velocity data to calculate the kinetic energy K; **Fig. P7.79** shows your data. (a) Let $U(x)$ be the potential-energy function for $F(x)$. Is $U(x)$ symmetric about $x = 0$? [If so, then $U(x) = U(-x)$.] (b) If you set $U = 0$ at $x = 0$, what is the value of U at $x = -1.50\ \text{m}$? (c) Sketch $U(x)$. (d) At what values of x (if any) is $F = 0$? (e) For what range of values of x between $x = -1.50\ \text{m}$ and $x = +1.50\ \text{m}$ is F positive? Negative? (f) If you release the sphere from rest at $x = -1.30\ \text{m}$, what is the largest value of x that it reaches during its motion? The largest value of kinetic energy that it has during its motion?

Figure **P7.79**



CHALLENGE PROBLEM

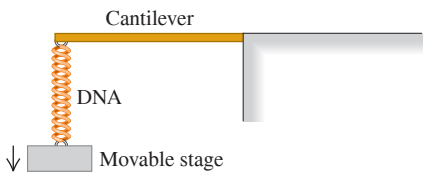
7.80 ••• CALC A proton with mass m moves in one dimension. The potential-energy function is $U(x) = (\alpha/x^2) - (\beta/x)$, where α and β are positive constants. The proton is released from rest at $x_0 = \alpha/\beta$. (a) Show that $U(x)$ can be written as

$$U(x) = \frac{\alpha}{x_0^2}\left[\left(\frac{x_0}{x}\right)^2 - \frac{x_0}{x}\right]$$

Graph $U(x)$. Calculate $U(x_0)$ and thereby locate the point x_0 on the graph. (b) Calculate $v(x)$, the speed of the proton as a function of position. Graph $v(x)$ and give a qualitative description of the motion. (c) For what value of x is the speed of the proton a maximum? What is the value of that maximum speed? (d) What is the force on the proton at the point in part (c)? (e) Let the proton be released instead at $x_1 = 3\alpha/\beta$. Locate the point x_1 on the graph of $U(x)$. Calculate $v(x)$ and give a qualitative description of the motion. (f) For each release point ($x = x_0$ and $x = x_1$), what are the maximum and minimum values of x reached during the motion?

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

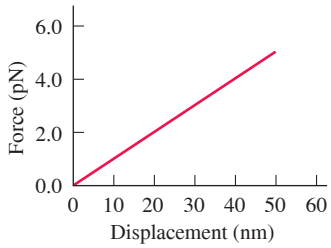
BIO **The DNA Spring.** A DNA molecule, with its double-helix structure, can in some situations behave like a spring. Measuring the force required to stretch single DNA molecules under various conditions can provide information about the biophysical properties of DNA. A technique for measuring the stretching force makes use of a very small cantilever, which consists of a beam that is supported at one end and is free to move at the other end, like a tiny diving board. The cantilever is constructed so that it obeys Hooke's law—that is, the displacement of its free end is proportional to the force applied to it. Because different cantilevers have different force constants, the cantilever's response must first be calibrated by applying a known force and determining the resulting deflection of the cantilever. Then one end of a DNA molecule is attached to the free end of the cantilever, and the other end of the DNA molecule is attached to a small stage that can be moved away from the cantilever, stretching the DNA. The stretched DNA pulls on the cantilever, deflecting the end of the cantilever very slightly. The measured deflection is then used to determine the force on the DNA molecule.



7.81 During the calibration process, the cantilever is observed to deflect by 0.10 nm when a force of 3.0 pN is applied to it. What deflection of the cantilever would correspond to a force of 6.0 pN? (a) 0.07 nm; (b) 0.14 nm; (c) 0.20 nm; (d) 0.40 nm.

7.82 A segment of DNA is put in place and stretched. **Figure P7.82** shows a graph of the force exerted on the DNA as a function of the displacement of the stage. Based on this graph, which statement is the best interpretation of the DNA's behavior over this range of displacements? The DNA (a) does not follow Hooke's law, because its force constant increases as the force on it increases; (b) follows Hooke's law and has a force constant of about 0.1 pN/nm; (c) follows Hooke's law and has a force constant of about 10 pN/nm; (d) does not follow Hooke's law, because its force constant decreases as the force on it increases.

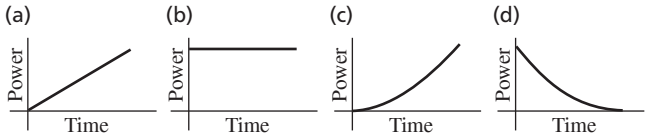
Figure P7.82



7.83 Based on Fig. P7.82, how much elastic potential energy is stored in the DNA when it is stretched 50 nm? (a) 2.5×10^{-19} J; (b) 1.2×10^{-19} J; (c) 5.0×10^{-12} J; (d) 2.5×10^{-12} J.

7.84 The stage moves at a constant speed while stretching the DNA. Which of the graphs in **Fig. P7.84** best represents the power supplied to the stage versus time?

Figure P7.84



ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(v) As the crane descends, air resistance directed opposite to the bird's motion prevents its speed from increasing. Because the crane's speed stays the same, its kinetic energy K remains constant, but the gravitational potential energy U_{grav} decreases as the crane descends. Hence the total mechanical energy $E = K + U_{grav}$ decreases. The lost mechanical energy goes into warming the crane's skin (that is, an increase in the crane's internal energy) and stirring up the air through which the crane passes (an increase in the internal energy of the air). See Section 7.3.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP7.2.1 (a) 5.51 m (b) 3.67 m
VP7.2.2 (a) $\sqrt{3gh/2}$ (b) $\sqrt{gh/2}$
VP7.2.3 (a) 1.94 J (b) 0.243 N
VP7.2.4 (a) −7.99 J (b) 53.3 N
VP7.5.1 (a) 1.71 m/s (b) 0.147 N, or 3.00 times the weight
VP7.5.2 (a) 4.41 m; no (b) −358 J
VP7.5.3 (a) 0.503 J (b) 3.29 N
VP7.5.4 (a) $\sqrt{8gR}$ (b) $-mgR$ (c) mg/π
VP7.9.1 (a) 0.0492 J (b) 0.128 m
VP7.9.2 (a) −0.0116 J (b) 0.410
VP7.9.3 (a) $\sqrt{(kd^2/m) - 2gx}$ (b) $kd^2/2mg$
VP7.9.4 $2(mg - f)/k$

Bridging Problem

(a) 1.06 m (b) 1.32 m (c) 20.7 J

? Hailstorms such as the one that broke the tiles on this roof cause billions of dollars of damage every year in North America alone. Which would do the greater amount of damage? (i) A 0.2 kg hailstone that hits at speed 15 m/s; (ii) a 0.1 kg hailstone that hits at speed 30 m/s; (iii) both would do the same amount of damage.

8 Momentum, Impulse, and Collisions

Many questions involving forces can't be answered by directly applying Newton's second law, $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$. For example, when a truck collides head-on with a compact car, what determines which way the wreckage moves after the collision? In playing pool, how do you decide how to aim the cue ball in order to knock the eight ball into the pocket? And when a meteorite collides with the earth, how much of the meteorite's kinetic energy is released in the impact?

All of these questions involve forces about which we know very little: the forces between the car and the truck, between the two pool balls, or between the meteorite and the earth. Remarkably, we'll find in this chapter that we don't have to know *anything* about these forces to answer questions of this kind!

Our approach uses two new concepts, *momentum* and *impulse,* and a new conservation law, *conservation of momentum.* This conservation law is every bit as important as the law of conservation of energy. The law of conservation of momentum is valid even in situations in which Newton's laws are inadequate, such as objects moving at very high speeds (near the speed of light) or objects on a very small scale (such as the constituents of atoms). Within the domain of Newtonian mechanics, conservation of momentum enables us to analyze many situations that would be very difficult if we tried to use Newton's laws directly. Among these are *collision* problems, in which two objects collide and can exert very large forces on each other for a short time. We'll also use momentum ideas to solve problems in which an object's mass changes as it moves, including the important special case of a rocket (which loses mass as it expends fuel).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **8.1** The meaning of the momentum of a particle, and how the impulse of the net external force acting on a particle causes its momentum to change.
- **8.2** The circumstances under which the total momentum of a system of particles is constant (conserved).
- **8.3** How to use momentum conservation to solve problems in which two objects collide with each other, and what the differences are among elastic, inelastic, and completely inelastic collisions.
- **8.4** How to analyze what happens in the important special case of an elastic collision.
- **8.5** What's meant by the center of mass of a system, and what determines how the center of mass moves.
- **8.6** How to analyze situations such as rocket propulsion in which the mass of an object changes as it moves.

You'll need to review...

- **3.5** Relative velocity.
- **4.2** Inertial frames of reference.
- **6.1, 6.2** Work, kinetic energy, and the work–energy theorem.
- **6.3** Work done by an ideal spring.

8.1 MOMENTUM AND IMPULSE

In Section 6.2 we re-expressed Newton's second law for a particle, $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, in terms of the work–energy theorem. This theorem helped us tackle a great number of problems and led us to the law of conservation of energy. Let's return to $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ and see yet another useful way to restate this fundamental law.

Newton's Second Law in Terms of Momentum

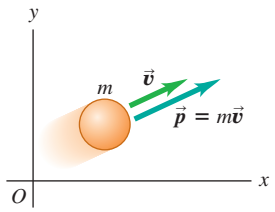
Consider a particle of constant mass m. Because $\vec{a} = d\vec{v}/dt$, we can write Newton's second law for this particle as

$$\sum \vec{F} = m\frac{d\vec{v}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(m\vec{v}) \tag{8.1}$$

We can move the mass m inside the derivative because it is constant. Thus Newton's second law says that the net external force $\sum \vec{F}$ acting on a particle equals the time rate of change of the product of the particle's mass and velocity. We'll call this product the **momentum,** or **linear momentum,** of the particle:

Momentum of a particle (a vector quantity) $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ (Particle mass; Particle velocity) (8.2)

Figure 8.1 The velocity and momentum vectors of a particle.



Momentum $\vec{p}$ is a vector quantity; a particle's momentum has the same direction as its velocity $\vec{v}$.

The greater the mass m and speed v of a particle, the greater is its magnitude of momentum mv. Keep in mind that momentum is a *vector* quantity with the same direction as the particle's velocity (**Fig. 8.1**). A car driving north at 20 m/s and an identical car driving east at 20 m/s have the same *magnitude* of momentum (mv) but different momentum *vectors* $(m\vec{v})$ because their directions are different.

We often express the momentum of a particle in terms of its components. If the particle has velocity components v_x, v_y, and v_z, then its momentum components p_x, p_y, and p_z (which we also call the *x-momentum, y-momentum,* and *z-momentum*) are

$$p_x = mv_x \qquad p_y = mv_y \qquad p_z = mv_z \tag{8.3}$$

These three component equations are equivalent to Eq. (8.2).

The units of the magnitude of momentum are units of mass times speed; the SI units of momentum are kg · m/s. The plural of momentum is "momenta."

Let's now substitute the definition of momentum, Eq. (8.2), into Eq. (8.1):

Newton's second law in terms of momentum: The net external force acting on a particle ... $\sum \vec{F} = \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt}$ ... equals the rate of change of the particle's momentum. (8.4)

The net external force (vector sum of all forces) acting on a particle equals the time rate of change of momentum of the particle. This, not $\sum \vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, is the form in which Newton originally stated his second law (although he called momentum the "quantity of motion"). This law is valid only in inertial frames of reference (see Section 4.2). As Eq. (8.4) shows, a rapid change in momentum requires a large net external force, while a gradual change in momentum requires a smaller net external force (**Fig. 8.2**).

Figure 8.2 When you land after jumping upward, your momentum changes from a downward value to zero. It's best to land with your knees bent so that your legs can flex: You then take a relatively long time to stop, and the force that the ground exerts on your legs is small. If you land with your legs extended, you stop in a short time, the force on your legs is larger, and the possibility of injury is greater.

The Impulse–Momentum Theorem

Both a particle's momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ and its kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ depend on the mass and velocity of the particle. What is the fundamental difference between these two quantities? A purely mathematical answer is that momentum is a vector whose magnitude is proportional to speed, while kinetic energy is a scalar proportional to the speed squared. But to see the *physical* difference between momentum and kinetic energy, we must first define a quantity closely related to momentum called *impulse.*

Let's first consider a particle acted on by a *constant* net external force $\sum \vec{F}$ during a time interval Δt from t_1 to t_2. The **impulse** of the net external force, denoted by $\vec{J}$, is defined to be the product of the net external force and the time interval:

Impulse of a **constant net external force** $\vec{J} = \sum \vec{F}(t_2 - t_1) = \sum \vec{F}\,\Delta t$ (Constant net external force; Time interval over which net external force acts) (8.5)

Impulse is a vector quantity; its direction is the same as the net external force $\sum\vec{F}$. The SI unit of impulse is the newton-second (N · s). Because 1 N = 1 kg · m/s^2, an alternative set of units for impulse is kg · m/s, the same as for momentum.

To see what impulse is good for, let's go back to Newton's second law as restated in terms of momentum, Eq. (8.4). If the net external force $\sum\vec{F}$ is constant, then $d\vec{p}/dt$ is also constant. In that case, $d\vec{p}/dt$ is equal to the *total* change in momentum $\vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1$ during the time interval $t_2 - t_1$, divided by the interval:

$$\sum\vec{F} = \frac{\vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1}{t_2 - t_1}$$

Multiplying this equation by $(t_2 - t_1)$, we have

$$\sum\vec{F}(t_2 - t_1) = \vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1$$

Comparing with Eq. (8.5), we end up with

Impulse–momentum theorem: The impulse of the net external force on a particle during a time interval equals the change in momentum of that particle during that interval:

Impulse of net external force over a time interval: $\vec{J} = \vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1 = \Delta\vec{p}$: Change in momentum

Final momentum; Initial momentum (8.6)

The impulse–momentum theorem also holds when forces are not constant. To see this, we integrate both sides of Newton's second law $\sum\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$ over time between the limits t_1 and t_2:

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \sum\vec{F}\,dt = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt}\,dt = \int_{p_1}^{p_2} d\vec{p} = \vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1$$

We see from Eq. (8.6) that the integral on the left is the impulse of the net external force:

Impulse of a **general net external force** (either constant or varying): $\vec{J} = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \sum\vec{F}\,dt$

Upper limit = final time; Time integral of net external force; Lower limit = initial time (8.7)

If the net external force $\sum\vec{F}$ is constant, the integral in Eq. (8.7) reduces to Eq. (8.5). We can define an *average* net external force $\vec{F}_{\text{av}}$ such that even when $\sum\vec{F}$ is not constant, the impulse $\vec{J}$ is given by

$$\vec{J} = \vec{F}_{\text{av}}(t_2 - t_1) \tag{8.8}$$

When $\sum\vec{F}$ is constant, $\sum\vec{F} = \vec{F}_{\text{av}}$ and Eq. (8.8) reduces to Eq. (8.5).

Figure 8.3a shows the x-component of net external force $\sum F_x$ as a function of time during a collision. This might represent the force on a football that is in contact with a player's foot from time t_1 to t_2. The x-component of impulse during this interval is represented by the red area under the curve between t_1 and t_2. This area is equal to the green rectangular area bounded by t_1, t_2, and $(F_{\text{av}})_x$, so $(F_{\text{av}})_x(t_2 - t_1)$ is equal to the impulse of the actual time-varying force during the same interval. Note that a large force acting for a short time can have the same impulse as a smaller force acting for a longer time if the areas under the force–time curves are the same (Fig. 8.3b). We used this idea in Fig. 8.2: A small force acting for a relatively long time (as when you land with your legs bent) has the same effect as a larger force acting for a short time (as when you land stiff-legged). Automotive air bags use the same principle (**Fig. 8.4**, next page).

BIO APPLICATION Woodpecker Impulse The pileated woodpecker (*Dryocopus pileatus*) has been known to strike its beak against a tree up to 20 times a second and up to 12,000 times a day. The impact force can be as much as 1200 times the weight of the bird's head. Because the impact lasts such a short time, the impulse—the net external force during the impact multiplied by the duration of the impact—is relatively small. (The woodpecker has a thick skull of spongy bone as well as shock-absorbing cartilage at the base of the lower jaw, and so avoids injury.)

Figure **8.3** The meaning of the area under a graph of $\sum F_x$ versus t.

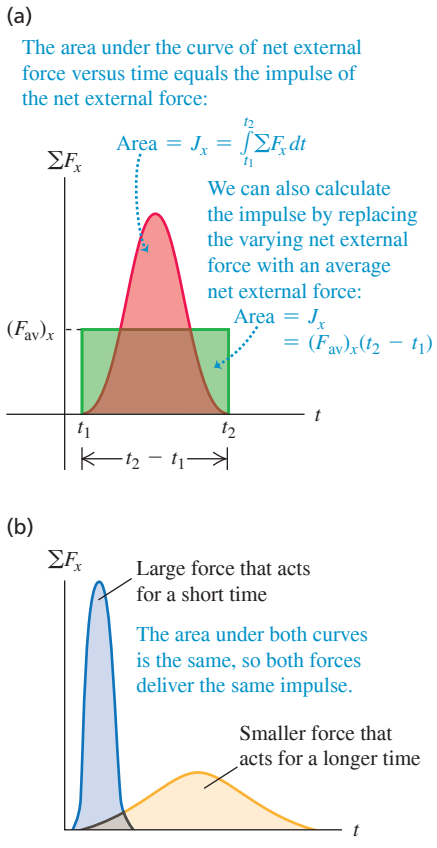
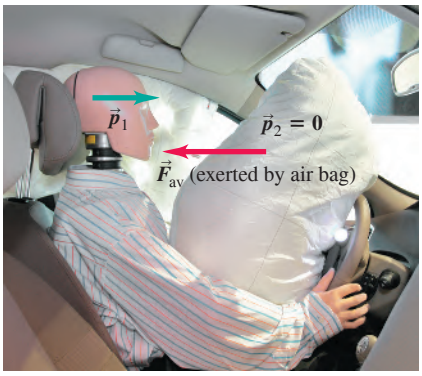
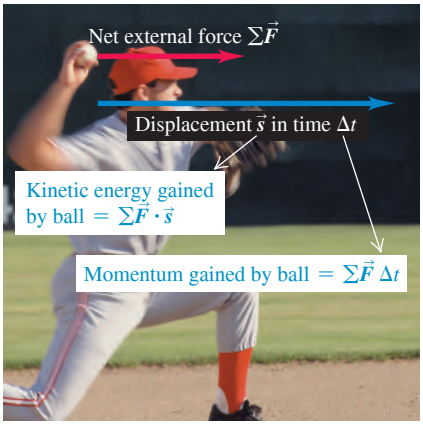


Figure 8.4 The impulse–momentum theorem explains how air bags reduce the chance of injury by minimizing the force on an occupant of a car.



- Impulse–momentum theorem: $\vec{J} = \vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1 = \vec{F}_{av}\Delta t$
- Impulse is the same no matter how the driver is brought to rest (so $\vec{p}_2 = \mathbf{0}$).
- Compared to striking the steering wheel, striking the air bag brings the driver to rest over a longer time interval Δt.
- Hence with an air bag, average force $\vec{F}_{av}$ on the driver is less.

Figure 8.5 The *kinetic energy* of a pitched baseball is equal to the work the pitcher does on it (force multiplied by the distance the ball moves during the throw). The *momentum* of the ball is equal to the impulse the pitcher imparts to it (force multiplied by the time it took to bring the ball up to speed).



Both impulse and momentum are vector quantities, and Eqs. (8.5)–(8.8) are vector equations. It's often easiest to use them in component form:

$$J_x = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \Sigma F_x dt = (F_{av})_x(t_2 - t_1) = p_{2x} - p_{1x} = mv_{2x} - mv_{1x}$$
$$J_y = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \Sigma F_y dt = (F_{av})_y(t_2 - t_1) = p_{2y} - p_{1y} = mv_{2y} - mv_{1y} \qquad (8.9)$$

and similarly for the z-component.

Momentum and Kinetic Energy Compared

We can now see the fundamental difference between momentum and kinetic energy. The impulse–momentum theorem, $\vec{J} = \vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1$, says that changes in a particle's momentum are due to impulse, which depends on the *time* over which the net external force acts. By contrast, the work–energy theorem, $W_{tot} = K_2 - K_1$, tells us that kinetic energy changes when work is done on a particle; the total work depends on the *distance* over which the net external force acts.

Let's consider a particle that starts from rest at t_1 so that $\vec{v}_1 = \mathbf{0}$. Its initial momentum is $\vec{p}_1 = m\vec{v}_1 = \mathbf{0}$, and its initial kinetic energy is $K_1 = \frac{1}{2}mv_1^2 = 0$. Now let a constant net external force equal to $\vec{F}$ act on that particle from time t_1 until time t_2. During this interval, the particle moves a distance s in the direction of the force. From Eq. (8.6), the particle's momentum at time t_2 is

$$\vec{p}_2 = \vec{p}_1 + \vec{J} = \vec{J}$$

where $\vec{J} = \vec{F}(t_2 - t_1)$ is the impulse that acts on the particle. So *the momentum of a particle equals the impulse that accelerated it from rest to its present speed;* impulse is the product of the net external force that accelerated the particle and the *time* required for the acceleration. By comparison, the kinetic energy of the particle at t_2 is $K_2 = W_{tot} = Fs$, the total *work* done on the particle to accelerate it from rest. The total work is the product of the net external force and the *distance* required to accelerate the particle (**Fig. 8.5**).

Here's an application of the distinction between momentum and kinetic energy. Which is easier to catch: a 0.50 kg ball moving at 4.0 m/s or a 0.10 kg ball moving at 20 m/s? Both balls have the same magnitude of momentum, $p = mv = (0.50\text{ kg}) \times (4.0\text{ m/s}) = (0.10\text{ kg})(20\text{ m/s}) = 2.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$. However, the two balls have different values of kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$: The large, slow-moving ball has $K = 4.0$ J, while the small, fast-moving ball has $K = 20$ J. Since the momentum is the same for both balls, both require the same *impulse* to be brought to rest. But stopping the 0.10 kg ball with your hand requires five times more *work* than stopping the 0.50 kg ball because the smaller ball has five times more kinetic energy. For a given force that you exert with your hand, it takes the same amount of time (the duration of the catch) to stop either ball, but your hand and arm will be pushed back five times farther if you choose to catch the small, fast-moving ball. To minimize arm strain, you should choose to catch the 0.50 kg ball with its lower kinetic energy.

Both the impulse–momentum and work–energy theorems rest on the foundation of Newton's laws. They are *integral* principles, relating the motion at two different times separated by a finite interval. By contrast, Newton's second law itself (in either of the forms $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ or $\Sigma\vec{F} = d\vec{p}/dt$) is a *differential* principle that concerns the rate of change of velocity or momentum at each instant.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 8.1 Momentum versus kinetic energy

Consider again the race described in Conceptual Example 6.5 (Section 6.2) between two iceboats on a frictionless frozen lake. The boats have masses m and $2m$, and the wind exerts the same constant horizontal force $\vec{F}$ on each boat (see Fig. 6.14). The boats start from rest and cross the finish line a distance s away. Which boat crosses the finish line with greater momentum?

SOLUTION In Conceptual Example 6.5 we asked how the *kinetic energies* of the boats compare when they cross the finish line. We answered this by remembering that *an object's kinetic energy equals the total work done to accelerate it from rest*. Both boats started from rest, and the total work done was the same for both boats (because the net external force and the displacement were the same for both). Hence both boats had the same kinetic energy at the finish line.

Similarly, to compare the *momenta* of the boats we use the idea that *the momentum of each boat equals the impulse that accelerated it from rest*. As in Conceptual Example 6.5, the net external force on each boat equals the constant horizontal wind force $\vec{F}$. Let Δt be the time a boat takes to reach the finish line, so that the impulse on the boat during that time is $\vec{J} = \vec{F}\Delta t$. Since the boat starts from rest, this equals the boat's momentum $\vec{p}$ at the finish line:

$$\vec{p} = \vec{F}\Delta t$$

Both boats are subjected to the same force $\vec{F}$, but they take different times Δt to reach the finish line. The boat of mass $2m$ accelerates more slowly and takes a longer time to travel the distance s; thus there is a greater impulse on this boat between the starting and finish lines. So the boat of mass $2m$ crosses the finish line with a greater magnitude of momentum than the boat of mass m (but with the same kinetic energy). Can you show that the boat of mass $2m$ has $\sqrt{2}$ times as much momentum at the finish line as the boat of mass m?

KEYCONCEPT The momentum of an object equals the product of its mass and its velocity $\vec{v}$, and also equals the impulse (net external force multiplied by time) needed to accelerate it from rest to $\vec{v}$.

EXAMPLE 8.2 A ball hits a wall

You throw a ball with a mass of 0.40 kg against a brick wall. It is moving horizontally to the left at 30 m/s when it hits the wall; it rebounds horizontally to the right at 20 m/s. (a) Find the impulse of the net external force on the ball during its collision with the wall. (b) If the ball is in contact with the wall for 0.010 s, find the average horizontal force that the wall exerts on the ball during the impact.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We're given enough information to determine the initial and final values of the ball's momentum, so we can use the impulse–momentum theorem to find the impulse. We'll then use the definition of impulse to determine the average force. **Figure 8.6** shows our sketch. We need only a single axis because the motion is purely horizontal. We'll take the positive x-direction to be to the right. In part (a) our target variable is the x-component of impulse, J_x, which we'll find by using Eqs. (8.9). In part (b), our target variable is the average x-component of force $(F_{\text{av}})_x$; once we know J_x, we can also find this force by using Eqs. (8.9).

EXECUTE (a) With our choice of x-axis, the initial and final x-components of momentum of the ball are

$$p_{1x} = mv_{1x} = (0.40\text{ kg})(-30\text{ m/s}) = -12\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$
$$p_{2x} = mv_{2x} = (0.40\text{ kg})(+20\text{ m/s}) = +8.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

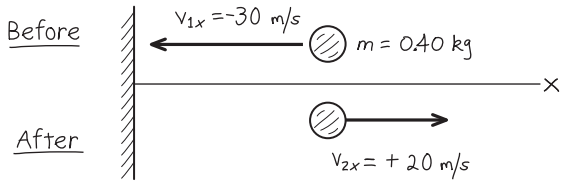
From the x-equation in Eqs. (8.9), the x-component of impulse equals the *change* in the x-momentum:

$$J_x = p_{2x} - p_{1x}$$
$$= 8.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} - (-12\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}) = 20\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} = 20\text{ N}\cdot\text{s}$$

(b) The collision time is $t_2 - t_1 = \Delta t = 0.010$ s. From the x-equation in Eqs. (8.9), $J_x = (F_{\text{av}})_x(t_2 - t_1) = (F_{\text{av}})_x\Delta t$, so

$$(F_{\text{av}})_x = \frac{J_x}{\Delta t} = \frac{20\text{ N}\cdot\text{s}}{0.010\text{ s}} = 2000\text{ N}$$

Figure **8.6** Our sketch for this problem.



EVALUATE The x-component of impulse J_x is positive—that is, to the right in Fig. 8.6. The impulse represents the "kick" that the wall imparts to the ball, and this "kick" is certainly to the right.

CAUTION **Momentum is a vector** Because momentum is a vector, we had to include the negative sign in writing $p_{1x} = -12\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$. Had we omitted it, we would have calculated the impulse to be $8.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} - (12\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}) = -4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$. This would say that the wall had somehow given the ball a kick to the *left*! Remember the *direction* of momentum in your calculations.

The force that the wall exerts on the ball must have such a large magnitude (2000 N, equal to the weight of a 200 kg object) to change the ball's momentum in such a short time. Other forces that act on the ball during the collision are comparatively weak; for instance, the gravitational force is only 3.9 N. Thus, during the short time that the collision lasts, we can ignore all other forces on the ball. **Figure 8.7** shows the impact of a tennis ball and racket.

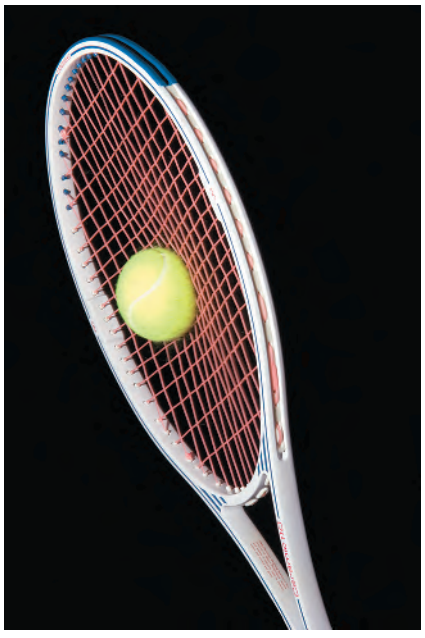


Figure **8.7** Typically, a tennis ball is in contact with the racket for approximately 0.01 s. The ball flattens noticeably due to the tremendous force exerted by the racket.

Continued

Note that the 2000 N value we calculated is the *average* horizontal force that the wall exerts on the ball during the impact. It corresponds to the horizontal line $(F_{av})_x$ in Fig. 8.3a. The horizontal force is zero before impact, rises to a maximum, and then decreases to zero when the ball loses contact with the wall. If the ball is relatively rigid, like a baseball or golf ball, the collision lasts a short time and the maximum force is large, as in the blue curve in Fig. 8.3b. If the ball is softer, like a tennis ball, the collision time is longer and the maximum force is less, as in the orange curve in Fig. 8.3b.

KEYCONCEPT The impulse-momentum theorem states that when a net external force acts on an object, the object's momentum changes by an amount equal to the impulse of the net external force. Both momentum and impulse are vector quantities.

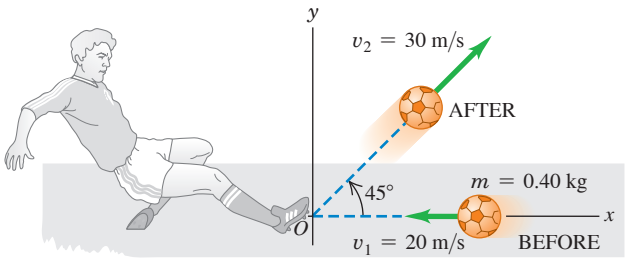
EXAMPLE 8.3 Kicking a football

A football has a mass of 0.40 kg. Initially it is moving to the left at 20 m/s, but then it is kicked. After the kick it is moving at 45° upward and to the right with speed 30 m/s (**Fig. 8.8a**). Find the impulse of the net external force and the average net external force, assuming a collision time $\Delta t = 0.010$ s.

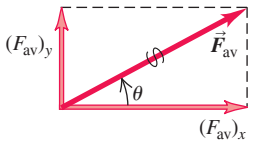
IDENTIFY and SET UP The ball moves in two dimensions, so we must treat momentum and impulse as vector quantities. We take the x-axis to be horizontally to the right and the y-axis to be vertically upward. Our target variables are the components of the net impulse on the ball, J_x and J_y, and the components of the average net external force on the ball, $(F_{av})_x$ and $(F_{av})_y$. We'll find them by using the impulse–momentum theorem in its component form, Eqs. (8.9).

Figure 8.8 (a) Kicking a football. (b) Finding the average force on the ball from its components.

(a) Before-and-after diagram



(b) Average force on the ball



EXECUTE Using $\cos 45° = \sin 45° = 0.707$, we find the ball's velocity components before and after the kick:

$$v_{1x} = -20 \text{ m/s} \qquad v_{1y} = 0$$
$$v_{2x} = v_{2y} = (30 \text{ m/s})(0.707) = 21.2 \text{ m/s}$$

From Eqs. (8.9), the impulse components are

$$J_x = p_{2x} - p_{1x} = m(v_{2x} - v_{1x})$$
$$= (0.40 \text{ kg})[21.2 \text{ m/s} - (-20 \text{ m/s})] = 16.5 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$$

$$J_y = p_{2y} - p_{1y} = m(v_{2y} - v_{1y})$$
$$= (0.40 \text{ kg})(21.2 \text{ m/s} - 0) = 8.5 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$$

From Eq. (8.8), the average net external force components are

$$(F_{av})_x = \frac{J_x}{\Delta t} = 1650 \text{ N} \qquad (F_{av})_y = \frac{J_y}{\Delta t} = 850 \text{ N}$$

The magnitude and direction of the $\vec{F}_{av}$ vector (Fig. 8.8b) are

$$F_{av} = \sqrt{(1650 \text{ N})^2 + (850 \text{ N})^2} = 1.9 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$
$$\theta = \arctan\frac{850 \text{ N}}{1650 \text{ N}} = 27°$$

The ball was not initially at rest, so its final velocity does *not* have the same direction as the average force that acted on it.

EVALUATE $\vec{F}_{av}$ includes the force of gravity, which is very small; the weight of the ball is only 3.9 N. As in Example 8.2, the average force acting during the collision is exerted almost entirely by the object that the ball hit (in this case, the football player's foot).

KEYCONCEPT In two-dimensional problems involving impulse and momentum, you must apply the impulse–momentum theorem separately to the x-components and the y-components.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 8.1 Rank the following situations according to the magnitude of the impulse of the net external force, from largest value to smallest value. In each situation a 1000 kg automobile is moving along a straight east–west road. The automobile is initially (i) moving east at 25 m/s and comes to a stop in 10 s; (ii) moving east at 25 m/s and comes to a stop in 5 s; (iii) at rest, and a 2000 N net external force toward the east is applied to it for 10 s; (iv) moving east at 25 m/s, and a 2000 N net external force toward the west is applied to it for 10 s; (v) moving east at 25 m/s; over a 30 s period, the automobile reverses direction and ends up moving west at 25 m/s.

ANSWER **(v), (i) and (ii) (tied for second place), (iii) and (iv) (tied for third place)** We use two interpretations of the impulse of the net external force: (1) the net external force multiplied by the time that the net external force acts, and (2) the change in momentum of the particle on which the net external force acts. Which interpretation we use depends on what information we are given. We take the positive x-direction to be to the east. (i) The force is not given, so we use interpretation 2: $J_x = mv_{2x} - mv_{1x} = (1000\ \text{kg})(0) - (1000\ \text{kg})(25\ \text{m/s}) = -25{,}000\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$, so the magnitude of the impulse is $25{,}000\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s} = 25{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$. (ii) For the same reason and values as in (i), we use interpretation 2, and the magnitude of the impulse is again $25{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$. (iii) The final velocity is not given, so we use interpretation 1: $J_x = (\Sigma F_x)_{\text{av}}(t_2 - t_1) = (2000\ \text{N})(10\ \text{s}) = 20{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$, so the magnitude of the impulse is $20{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$. (iv) For the same reason as in (iii), we use interpretation 1: $J_x = (\Sigma F_x)_{\text{av}}(t_2 - t_1) = (-2000\ \text{N})(10\ \text{s}) = -20{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$, so the magnitude of the impulse is $20{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$. (v) The force is not given, so we use interpretation 2: $J_x = mv_{2x} - mv_{1x} = (1000\ \text{kg})(-25\ \text{m/s}) - (1000\ \text{kg})(25\ \text{m/s}) = -50{,}000\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$, so the magnitude of the impulse is $50{,}000\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s} = 50{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s}$.

8.2 CONSERVATION OF MOMENTUM

The concept of momentum is particularly important in situations in which we have two or more objects that *interact*. To see why, let's consider first an idealized system of two objects that interact with each other but not with anything else—for example, two astronauts who touch each other as they float freely in the zero-gravity environment of outer space (**Fig. 8.9**). Think of the astronauts as particles. Each particle exerts a force on the other; according to Newton's third law, the two forces are always equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. Hence, the *impulses* that act on the two particles are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, as are the changes in momentum of the two particles.

Let's go over that again with some new terminology. For any system, the forces that the particles of the system exert on each other are called **internal forces.** Forces exerted on any part of the system by some object outside it are called **external forces.** For the system shown in Fig. 8.9, the internal forces are $\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A}$, exerted by particle B on particle A, and $\vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B}$, exerted by particle A on particle B. There are *no* external forces; when this is the case, we have an **isolated system.**

The net external force on particle A is $\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A}$ and the net external force on particle B is $\vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B}$, so from Eq. (8.4) the rates of change of the momenta of the two particles are

$$\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A} = \frac{d\vec{p}_A}{dt} \qquad \vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B} = \frac{d\vec{p}_B}{dt} \tag{8.10}$$

The momentum of each particle changes, but these changes are related to each other by Newton's third law: Forces $\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A}$ and $\vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B}$ are always equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. That is, $\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A} = -\vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B}$, so $\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A} + \vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B} = \mathbf{0}$. Adding together the two equations in Eq. (8.10), we have

$$\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A} + \vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B} = \frac{d\vec{p}_A}{dt} + \frac{d\vec{p}_B}{dt} = \frac{d(\vec{p}_A + \vec{p}_B)}{dt} = \mathbf{0} \tag{8.11}$$

The rates of change of the two momenta are equal and opposite, so the rate of change of the vector sum $\vec{p}_A + \vec{p}_B$ is zero. We define the **total momentum** $\vec{P}$ of the system of two particles as the vector sum of the momenta of the individual particles; that is,

$$\vec{P} = \vec{p}_A + \vec{p}_B \tag{8.12}$$

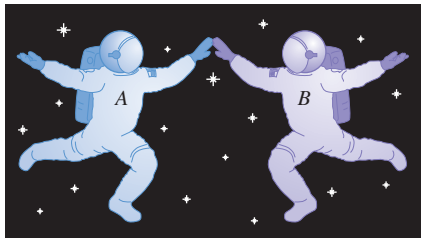
Then Eq. (8.11) becomes

$$\vec{F}_{B\text{ on }A} + \vec{F}_{A\text{ on }B} = \frac{d\vec{P}}{dt} = \mathbf{0} \tag{8.13}$$

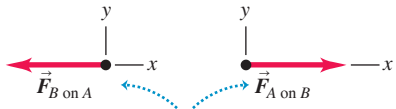
The time rate of change of the *total* momentum $\vec{P}$ is zero. Hence the total momentum of the system is constant, even though the individual momenta of the particles that make up the system can change.

If external forces are also present, they must be included on the left side of Eq. (8.13) along with the internal forces. Then the total momentum is, in general, not constant. But if the vector sum of the external forces is zero, as in **Fig. 8.10**, these forces have no

Figure **8.9** Two astronauts push each other as they float freely in the zero-gravity environment of space.

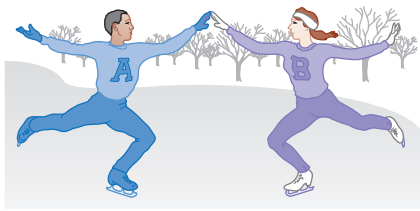


No external forces act on the two-astronaut system, so its total momentum is conserved.

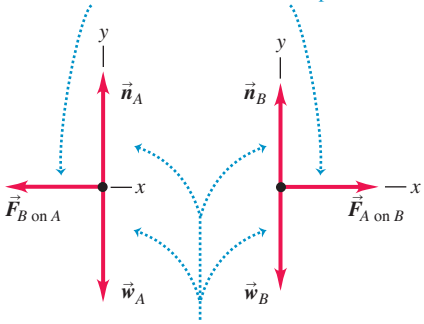


The forces the astronauts exert on each other form an action–reaction pair.

Figure **8.10** Two ice skaters push each other as they skate on a frictionless, horizontal surface. (Compare to Fig. 8.9.)



The forces the skaters exert on each other form an action–reaction pair.



Although the normal and gravitational forces are external, their vector sum is zero, so the total momentum is conserved.

effect on the left side of Eq. (8.13), and $d\vec{P}/dt$ is again zero. Thus we have the following general result:

CONSERVATION OF MOMENTUM **If the vector sum of the external forces on a system is zero, the total momentum of the system is constant.**

This is the simplest form of the **principle of conservation of momentum.** This principle is a direct consequence of Newton's third law. What makes this principle useful is that it doesn't depend on the detailed nature of the internal forces that act between members of the system. This means that we can apply conservation of momentum even if (as is often the case) we know very little about the internal forces. We have used Newton's second law to derive this principle, so we have to be careful to use it only in inertial frames of reference.

We can generalize this principle for a system that contains any number of particles A, B, C, … interacting only with one another, with total momentum

Total momentum of a system of particles A, B, C, ...

$$\vec{P} = \vec{p}_A + \vec{p}_B + \cdots = m_A\vec{v}_A + m_B\vec{v}_B + \cdots \tag{8.14}$$

... equals vector sum of momenta of all particles in the system.

We make the same argument as before: The total rate of change of momentum of the system due to each action–reaction pair of internal forces is zero. Thus the total rate of change of momentum of the entire system is zero whenever the vector sum of the external forces acting on it is zero. The internal forces can change the momenta of individual particles but not the *total* momentum of the system.

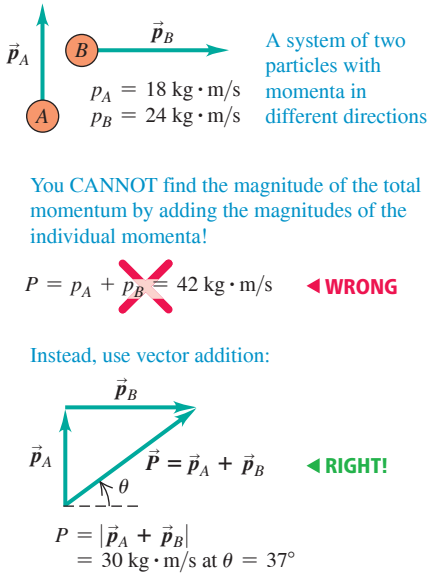
CAUTION **Conservation of momentum means conservation of its components** When you apply the conservation of momentum to a system, remember that momentum is a *vector* quantity. Hence you must use vector addition to compute the total momentum of a system (**Fig. 8.11**). Using components is usually the simplest method. If p_{Ax}, p_{Ay}, and p_{Az} are the components of momentum of particle A, and similarly for the other particles, then Eq. (8.14) is equivalent to the component equations

$$P_x = p_{Ax} + p_{Bx} + \cdots, \quad P_y = p_{Ay} + p_{By} + \cdots, \quad P_z = p_{Az} + p_{Bz} + \cdots \tag{8.15}$$

If the vector sum of the external forces on the system is zero, then P_x, P_y, and P_z are all constant.

In some ways the principle of conservation of momentum is more general than the principle of conservation of total mechanical energy. For example, total mechanical energy is conserved only when the internal forces are *conservative*—that is, when the forces allow two-way conversion between kinetic and potential energies. But conservation of momentum is valid even when the internal forces are *not* conservative. In this chapter we'll analyze situations in which both momentum and total mechanical energy are conserved, and others in which only momentum is conserved. These two principles play a fundamental role in all areas of physics, and we'll encounter them throughout our study of physics.

Figure **8.11** When applying conservation of momentum, remember that momentum is a vector quantity!



PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 8.1 Conservation of Momentum

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Confirm that the vector sum of the external forces acting on the system of particles is zero. If it isn't zero, you can't use conservation of momentum.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Treat each object as a particle. Draw "before" and "after" sketches, including velocity vectors. Assign algebraic symbols to each magnitude, angle, and component. Use letters to label each particle and subscripts 1 and 2 for "before" and "after" quantities. Include any given values.
2. Define a coordinate system and show it in your sketches; define the positive direction for each axis.
3. Identify the target variables.

EXECUTE *the solution:*

4. Write an equation in symbols equating the total initial and final x-components of momentum, using $p_x = mv_x$ for each particle. Write a corresponding equation for the y-components. Components can be positive or negative, so be careful with signs!
5. In some problems, energy considerations (discussed in Section 8.4) give additional equations relating the velocities.
6. Solve your equations to find the target variables.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Does your answer make physical sense? If your target variable is a certain object's momentum, check that the direction of the momentum is reasonable.

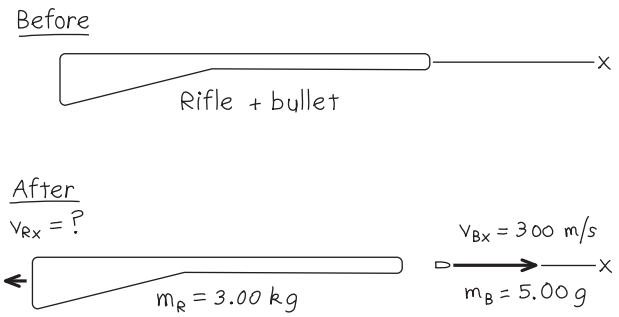
EXAMPLE 8.4 Recoil of a rifle

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A marksman holds a rifle of mass $m_R = 3.00$ kg loosely, so it can recoil freely. He fires a bullet of mass $m_B = 5.00$ g horizontally with a velocity relative to the ground of $v_{Bx} = 300$ m/s. What is the recoil velocity v_{Rx} of the rifle? What are the final momentum and kinetic energy of the bullet and rifle?

IDENTIFY and SET UP If the marksman exerts negligible horizontal forces on the rifle, then there is no net horizontal force on the system (the bullet and rifle) during the firing, and the total horizontal momentum of the system is conserved. **Figure 8.12** shows our sketch. We take the positive x-axis in the direction of aim. The rifle and the bullet are initially at rest, so the initial x-component of total momentum is zero. After the shot is fired, the bullet's x-momentum is $p_{Bx} = m_B v_{Bx}$ and the rifle's x-momentum is $p_{Rx} = m_R v_{Rx}$. Our target variables are v_{Rx}, p_{Bx}, p_{Rx}, and the final kinetic energies $K_B = \frac{1}{2} m_B v_{Bx}^2$ and $K_R = \frac{1}{2} m_R v_{Rx}^2$.

Figure 8.12 Our sketch for this problem.



EXECUTE Conservation of the x-component of total momentum gives

$$P_x = 0 = m_B v_{Bx} + m_R v_{Rx}$$

$$v_{Rx} = -\frac{m_B}{m_R} v_{Bx} = -\left(\frac{0.00500 \text{ kg}}{3.00 \text{ kg}}\right)(300 \text{ m/s}) = -0.500 \text{ m/s}$$

The negative sign means that the recoil is in the direction opposite to that of the bullet.

The final momenta and kinetic energies are

$$p_{Bx} = m_B v_{Bx} = (0.00500 \text{ kg})(300 \text{ m/s}) = 1.50 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$$

$$K_B = \tfrac{1}{2} m_B v_{Bx}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.00500 \text{ kg})(300 \text{ m/s})^2 = 225 \text{ J}$$

$$p_{Rx} = m_R v_{Rx} = (3.00 \text{ kg})(-0.500 \text{ m/s}) = -1.50 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$$

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2} m_R v_{Rx}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(3.00 \text{ kg})(-0.500 \text{ m/s})^2 = 0.375 \text{ J}$$

EVALUATE The bullet and rifle have equal and opposite final *momenta* thanks to Newton's third law: They experience equal and opposite interaction forces that act for the same *time,* so the impulses are equal and opposite. But the bullet travels a much greater *distance* than the rifle during the interaction. Hence the force on the bullet does more work than the force on the rifle, giving the bullet much greater *kinetic energy* than the rifle. The 600:1 ratio of the two kinetic energies is the inverse of the ratio of the masses; in fact, you can show that this always happens in recoil situations. (See Exercise 8.26 for an application of these ideas to the recoil of atomic nuclei from a fission reaction.)

KEYCONCEPT The momentum of a system is conserved if no net external force acts on the system. If the momentum of one part of the system changes by $\Delta\vec{p}$, the momentum of the other parts of the system changes by $-\Delta\vec{p}$ so that the total momentum remains the same.

EXAMPLE 8.5 Collision along a straight line

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Two gliders with different masses move toward each other on a frictionless air track (**Fig. 8.13a**). After they collide (Fig. 8.13b), glider B has a final velocity of +2.0 m/s (Fig. 8.13c). What is the final velocity of glider A? How do the changes in momentum and in velocity compare?

IDENTIFY and SET UP As for the skaters in Fig. 8.10, the total vertical force on each glider is zero, and the net external force on each individual glider is the horizontal force exerted on it by the other glider. The net external force on the *system* of two gliders is zero, so their total momentum is conserved. We take the positive x-axis to be to the right. We are given the masses and initial velocities of both gliders and the final velocity of glider B. Our target variables are v_{A2x} (the final x-component of velocity of glider A) and the changes in momentum and in velocity of the two gliders (the value *after* the collision minus the value *before* the collision).

EXECUTE The x-component of total momentum before the collision is

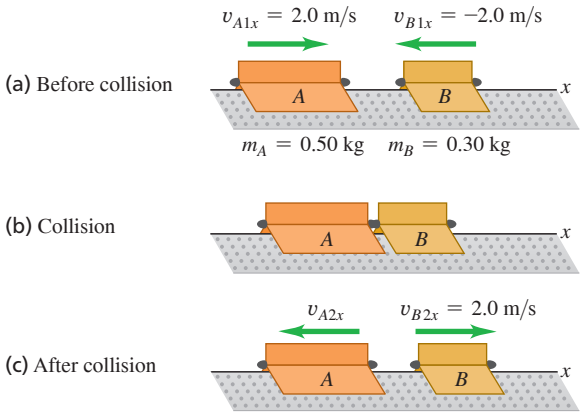
$$P_x = m_A v_{A1x} + m_B v_{B1x}$$

$$= (0.50 \text{ kg})(2.0 \text{ m/s}) + (0.30 \text{ kg})(-2.0 \text{ m/s}) = 0.40 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$$

This is positive (to the right in Fig. 8.13) because A has a greater magnitude of momentum than B. The x-component of total momentum has the same value after the collision, so

$$P_x = m_A v_{A2x} + m_B v_{B2x}$$

Figure 8.13 Two gliders colliding on an air track.



We solve for v_{A2x}:

$$v_{A2x} = \frac{P_x - m_B v_{B2x}}{m_A} = \frac{0.40 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s} - (0.30 \text{ kg})(2.0 \text{ m/s})}{0.50 \text{ kg}}$$

$$= -0.40 \text{ m/s}$$

Continued

The changes in the x-momenta are

$$\begin{aligned} m_A v_{A2x} - m_A v_{A1x} &= (0.50\text{ kg})(-0.40\text{ m/s}) - (0.50\text{ kg})(2.0\text{ m/s}) \\ &= -1.2\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} \\ m_B v_{B2x} - m_B v_{B1x} &= (0.30\text{ kg})(2.0\text{ m/s}) - (0.30\text{ kg})(-2.0\text{ m/s}) \\ &= +1.2\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} \end{aligned}$$

The changes in x-velocities are

$$\begin{aligned} v_{A2x} - v_{A1x} &= (-0.40\text{ m/s}) - 2.0\text{ m/s} = -2.4\text{ m/s} \\ v_{B2x} - v_{B1x} &= 2.0\text{ m/s} - (-2.0\text{ m/s}) = +4.0\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

EVALUATE The gliders were subjected to equal and opposite interaction forces for the same time during their collision. By the impulse–momentum theorem, they experienced equal and opposite impulses and therefore equal and opposite changes in momentum. But by Newton's second law, the less massive glider (B) had a greater magnitude of acceleration and hence a greater velocity change.

KEYCONCEPT In any collision, momentum is conserved: The total momentum of the colliding objects has the same value just after the collision as just before the collision.

EXAMPLE 8.6 Collision in a horizontal plane

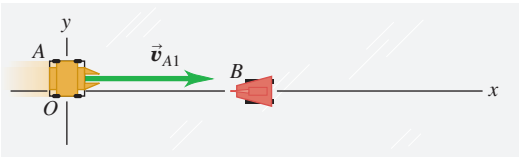
WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Figure 8.14a shows two battling robots on a frictionless surface. Robot A, with mass 20 kg, initially moves at 2.0 m/s parallel to the x-axis. It collides with robot B, which has mass 12 kg and is initially at rest. After the collision, robot A moves at 1.0 m/s in a direction that makes an angle $\alpha = 30°$ with its initial direction (Figure 8.14b). What is the final velocity of robot B?

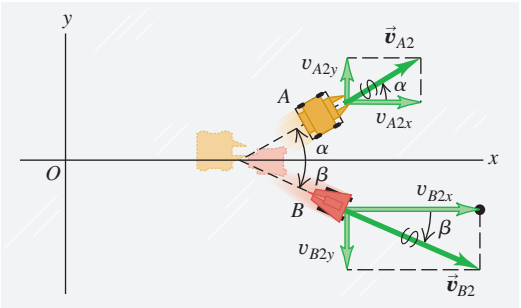
IDENTIFY and SET UP There are no horizontal external forces, so the x- and y-components of the total momentum of the system are conserved. Hence the sum of the x-components of momentum *before* the collision (subscript 1) must equal the sum *after* the collision (subscript 2), and similarly for the sums of the y-components. Our target variable is $\vec{v}_{B2}$, the final velocity of robot B.

Figure 8.14 Views from above of the robot velocities.

(a) Before collision



(b) After collision



EXECUTE The momentum-conservation equations and their solutions for v_{B2x} and v_{B2y} are

$$\begin{aligned} m_A v_{A1x} + m_B v_{B1x} &= m_A v_{A2x} + m_B v_{B2x} \\ v_{B2x} &= \frac{m_A v_{A1x} + m_B v_{B1x} - m_A v_{A2x}}{m_B} \\ &= \frac{\left[\begin{array}{l}(20\text{ kg})(2.0\text{ m/s}) + (12\text{ kg})(0) \\ \quad - (20\text{ kg})(1.0\text{ m/s})(\cos 30°)\end{array}\right]}{12\text{ kg}} = 1.89\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} m_A v_{A1y} + m_B v_{B1y} &= m_A v_{A2y} + m_B v_{B2y} \\ v_{B2y} &= \frac{m_A v_{A1y} + m_B v_{B1y} - m_A v_{A2y}}{m_B} \\ &= \frac{\left[\begin{array}{l}(20\text{ kg})(0) + (12\text{ kg})(0) \\ \quad - (20\text{ kg})(1.0\text{ m/s})(\sin 30°)\end{array}\right]}{12\text{ kg}} = -0.83\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

Figure 8.14b shows the motion of robot B after the collision. The magnitude of $\vec{v}_{B2}$ is

$$v_{B2} = \sqrt{(1.89\text{ m/s})^2 + (-0.83\text{ m/s})^2} = 2.1\text{ m/s}$$

and the angle of its direction from the positive x-axis is

$$\beta = \arctan\frac{-0.83\text{ m/s}}{1.89\text{ m/s}} = -24°$$

EVALUATE Let's confirm that the components of total momentum before and after the collision are equal. Initially robot A has x-momentum $m_A v_{A1x} = (20\text{ kg})(2.0\text{ m/s}) = 40\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$ and zero y-momentum; robot B has zero momentum. Afterward, the momentum components are $m_A v_{A2x} = (20\text{ kg})(1.0\text{ m/s})(\cos 30°) = 17\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$ and $m_B v_{B2x} = (12\text{ kg})(1.89\text{ m/s}) = 23\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$; the total x-momentum is 40 kg · m/s, the same as before the collision. The final y-components are $m_A v_{A2y} = (20\text{ kg})(1.0\text{ m/s})(\sin 30°) = 10\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$ and $m_B v_{B2y} = (12\text{ kg})(-0.83\text{ m/s}) = -10\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$; the total y-component of momentum is zero, as before the collision.

KEYCONCEPT In problems that involve a two-dimensional collision, write separate conservation equations for the x-component and y-component of total momentum.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 8.2 A spring-loaded toy sits at rest on a horizontal, frictionless surface. When the spring releases, the toy breaks into equal-mass pieces A, B, and C, which slide along the surface. Piece A moves off in the negative x-direction, while piece B moves off in the negative y-direction. (a) What are the signs of the velocity components of piece C? (b) Which of the three pieces is moving the fastest?

ANSWER (a) $v_{Cx} > 0$, $v_{Cy} > 0$, (b) **piece** C There are no external horizontal forces, so the x- and y-components of the total momentum of the system are conserved. Both components of the total momentum are zero before the spring releases, so they must be zero after the spring releases. Hence,

$$P_x = 0 = m_A v_{A2x} + m_B v_{B2x} + m_C v_{C2x}$$
$$P_y = 0 = m_A v_{A2y} + m_B v_{B2y} + m_C v_{C2y}$$

We are given that $m_A = m_B = m_C$, $v_{A2x} < 0$, $v_{A2y} = 0$, $v_{Bx} = 0$, and $v_{B2y} < 0$. You can solve the above equations to show that $v_{C2x} = -v_{A2x} > 0$ and $v_{C2y} = -v_{B2y} > 0$, so both velocity components of piece C are positive. Piece C has speed $\sqrt{v_{C2x}^2 + v_{C2y}^2} = \sqrt{v_{A2x}^2 + v_{B2y}^2}$, which is greater than the speed of either piece A or piece B.

8.3 MOMENTUM CONSERVATION AND COLLISIONS

To most people the term "collision" is likely to mean some sort of automotive disaster. We'll broaden the meaning to include any strong interaction between objects that lasts a relatively short time. So we include not only car accidents but also balls colliding on a billiard table, neutrons hitting atomic nuclei in a nuclear reactor, and a close encounter of a spacecraft with the planet Saturn.

If the forces between the colliding objects are much larger than any external forces, as is the case in most collisions, we can ignore the external forces and treat the objects as an *isolated* system. Then momentum is conserved and the total momentum of the system has the same value before and after the collision. Two cars colliding at an icy intersection provide a good example. Even two cars colliding on dry pavement can be treated as an isolated system during the collision if the forces between the cars are much larger than the friction forces of pavement against tires.

Elastic and Inelastic Collisions

If the forces between the objects are also *conservative,* so no mechanical energy is lost or gained in the collision, the total *kinetic* energy of the system is the same after the collision as before. Such a collision is called an **elastic collision.** A collision between two marbles or two billiard balls is almost completely elastic. **Figure 8.15** shows a model for an elastic collision. When the gliders collide, their springs are momentarily compressed and some of the original kinetic energy is momentarily converted to elastic potential energy. Then the gliders bounce apart, the springs expand, and this potential energy is converted back to kinetic energy.

A collision in which the total kinetic energy after the collision is *less* than before the collision is called an **inelastic collision.** A meatball landing on a plate of spaghetti and a bullet embedding itself in a block of wood are examples of inelastic collisions. An inelastic collision in which the colliding objects stick together and move as one object after the collision is called a **completely inelastic collision. Figure 8.16** shows an example; we have replaced the spring bumpers in Fig. 8.15 with Velcro®, which sticks the two objects together.

Figure **8.15** Two gliders undergoing an elastic collision on a frictionless surface. Each glider has a steel spring bumper that exerts a conservative force on the other glider.

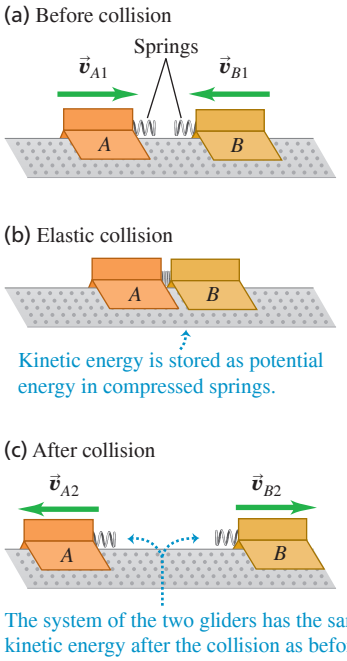
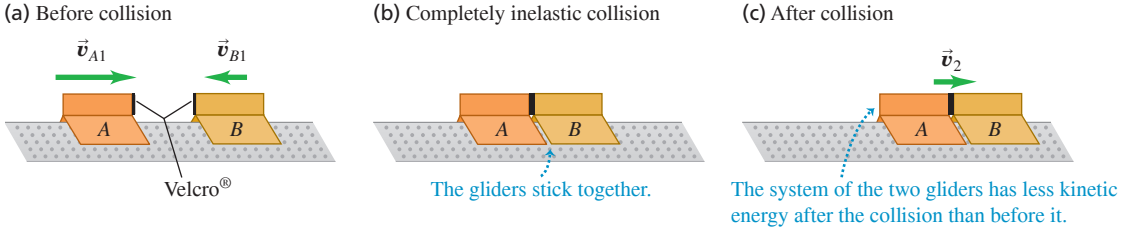


Figure **8.16** Two gliders undergoing a completely inelastic collision. The spring bumpers on the gliders are replaced by Velcro, so the gliders stick together after collision.



CAUTION An inelastic collision doesn't have to be completely inelastic Inelastic collisions include many situations in which the objects do *not* stick. If two cars bounce off each other in a "fender bender," the work done to deform the fenders cannot be recovered as kinetic energy of the cars, so the collision is inelastic (**Fig. 8.17**).

Figure **8.17** Cars are designed so that collisions are inelastic—the structure of the car absorbs as much of the energy of the collision as possible. This absorbed energy cannot be recovered, since it goes into a permanent deformation of the car.

Remember this rule: **In any collision in which external forces can be ignored, momentum is conserved and the total momentum before equals the total momentum after; in elastic collisions *only,* the total kinetic energy before equals the total kinetic energy after.**

Completely Inelastic Collisions

Let's look at what happens to momentum and kinetic energy in a *completely* inelastic collision of two objects (A and B), as in Fig. 8.16. Because the two objects stick together after the collision, they have the same final velocity $\vec{v}_2$:

$$\vec{v}_{A2} = \vec{v}_{B2} = \vec{v}_2$$

Conservation of momentum gives the relationship

$$m_A\vec{v}_{A1} + m_B\vec{v}_{B1} = (m_A + m_B)\vec{v}_2 \quad \text{(completely inelastic collision)} \tag{8.16}$$

If we know the masses and initial velocities, we can compute the common final velocity $\vec{v}_2$.

Suppose, for example, that an object with mass m_A and initial x-component of velocity v_{A1x} collides inelastically with an object with mass m_B that is initially at rest ($v_{B1x} = 0$). From Eq. (8.16) the common x-component of velocity v_{2x} of both objects after the collision is

$$v_{2x} = \frac{m_A}{m_A + m_B}v_{A1x} \qquad \begin{array}{l}\text{(completely inelastic collision,}\\ B \text{ initially at rest)}\end{array} \tag{8.17}$$

Let's verify that the total kinetic energy after this completely inelastic collision is less than before the collision. The motion is purely along the x-axis, so the kinetic energies K_1 and K_2 before and after the collision, respectively, are

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}m_A v_{A1x}^2$$

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_A + m_B)v_{2x}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_A + m_B)\left(\frac{m_A}{m_A + m_B}\right)^2 v_{A1x}^2$$

The ratio of final to initial kinetic energy is

$$\frac{K_2}{K_1} = \frac{m_A}{m_A + m_B} \qquad \begin{array}{l}\text{(completely inelastic collision,}\\ B \text{ initially at rest)}\end{array} \tag{8.18}$$

The right side is always less than unity because the denominator is always greater than the numerator. Even when the initial velocity of m_B is not zero, the kinetic energy after a completely inelastic collision is always less than before.

Please note: Don't memorize Eq. (8.17) or (8.18)! We derived them only to prove that kinetic energy is always lost in a completely inelastic collision.

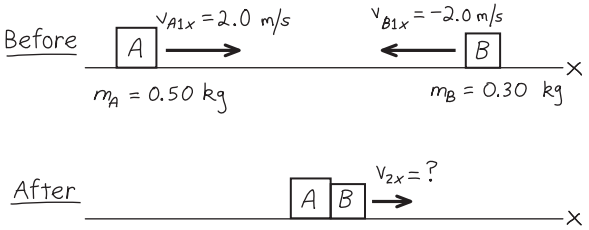
EXAMPLE 8.7 A completely inelastic collision

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

We repeat the collision described in Example 8.5 (Section 8.2), but this time equip the gliders so that they stick together when they collide. Find the common final x-velocity, and compare the initial and final kinetic energies of the system.

IDENTIFY and SET UP There are no external forces in the x-direction, so the x-component of momentum is conserved. **Figure 8.18** shows our sketch. Our target variables are the final x-velocity, v_{2x}, and the initial and final kinetic energies, K_1 and K_2.

Figure **8.18** Our sketch for this problem.



EXECUTE From conservation of momentum,

$$m_A v_{A1x} + m_B v_{B1x} = (m_A + m_B) v_{2x}$$

$$v_{2x} = \frac{m_A v_{A1x} + m_B v_{B1x}}{m_A + m_B}$$

$$= \frac{(0.50\ \text{kg})(2.0\ \text{m/s}) + (0.30\ \text{kg})(-2.0\ \text{m/s})}{0.50\ \text{kg} + 0.30\ \text{kg}}$$

$$= 0.50\ \text{m/s}$$

Because v_{2x} is positive, the gliders move together to the right after the collision. Before the collision, the kinetic energies are

$$K_A = \tfrac{1}{2} m_A v_{A1x}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.50\ \text{kg})(2.0\ \text{m/s})^2 = 1.0\ \text{J}$$

$$K_B = \tfrac{1}{2} m_B v_{B1x}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.30\ \text{kg})(-2.0\ \text{m/s})^2 = 0.60\ \text{J}$$

The total kinetic energy before the collision is $K_1 = K_A + K_B = 1.6\ \text{J}$. The kinetic energy after the collision is

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_A + m_B) v_{2x}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.50\ \text{kg} + 0.30\ \text{kg})(0.50\ \text{m/s})^2$$

$$= 0.10\ \text{J}$$

EVALUATE The final kinetic energy is only $\frac{1}{16}$ of the original; $\frac{15}{16}$ of the total mechanical energy is converted to other forms. If there is a wad of chewing gum between the gliders, it squashes and becomes warmer. If there is a spring between the gliders that is compressed as they lock together, the energy is stored as potential energy of the spring. In both cases the *total* energy of the system is conserved, although *kinetic* energy is not. In an isolated system, however, momentum is *always* conserved whether the collision is elastic or not.

KEYCONCEPT In a completely inelastic collision, the colliding objects come together and stick. Momentum is conserved, but kinetic energy is not.

EXAMPLE 8.8 The ballistic pendulum

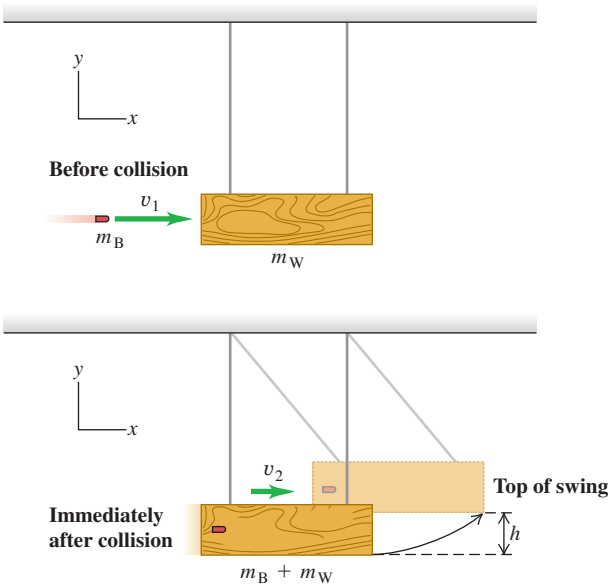
WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Figure 8.19 shows a ballistic pendulum, a simple system for measuring the speed of a bullet. A bullet of mass m_B makes a completely inelastic collision with a block of wood of mass m_W, which is suspended like a pendulum. After the impact, the block swings up to a maximum height h. In terms of h, m_B, and m_W, what is the initial speed v_1 of the bullet?

IDENTIFY We'll analyze this event in two stages: (1) the bullet embeds itself in the block, and (2) the block swings upward. The first stage happens so quickly that the block does not move appreciably. The supporting strings remain nearly vertical, so negligible external horizontal force acts on the bullet–block system, and the horizontal component of momentum is conserved. Total mechanical energy is *not* conserved during this stage, however, because a nonconservative force does work (the force of friction between bullet and block).

In the second stage, the block and bullet move together. The only forces acting on this system are gravity (a conservative force) and the string tensions (which do no work). Thus, as the block swings, *total mechanical energy* is conserved. Momentum is *not* conserved during this stage, however, because there is a net external force (the forces of gravity and string tension don't cancel when the strings are inclined).

Figure 8.19 A ballistic pendulum.



SET UP We take the positive x-axis to the right and the positive y-axis upward. Our target variable is v_1. Another unknown quantity is the speed v_2 of the system just after the collision. We'll use momentum conservation in the first stage to relate v_1 to v_2, and we'll use energy conservation in the second stage to relate v_2 to h.

EXECUTE In the first stage, all velocities are in the $+x$-direction. Momentum conservation gives

$$m_B v_1 = (m_B + m_W) v_2$$

$$v_1 = \frac{m_B + m_W}{m_B} v_2$$

At the beginning of the second stage, the system has kinetic energy $K = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_B + m_W) v_2^2$. The system swings up and comes to rest for an instant at a height h, where its kinetic energy is zero and the potential energy is $(m_B + m_W)gh$; it then swings back down. Energy conservation gives

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(m_B + m_W) v_2^2 = (m_B + m_W) gh$$

$$v_2 = \sqrt{2gh}$$

We substitute this expression for v_2 into the momentum equation:

$$v_1 = \frac{m_B + m_W}{m_B} \sqrt{2gh}$$

EVALUATE Let's plug in realistic numbers: $m_B = 5.00\ \text{g} = 0.00500\ \text{kg}$, $m_W = 2.00\ \text{kg}$, and $h = 3.00\ \text{cm} = 0.0300\ \text{m}$:

$$v_1 = \frac{0.00500\ \text{kg} + 2.00\ \text{kg}}{0.00500\ \text{kg}} \sqrt{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.0300\ \text{m})} = 307\ \text{m/s}$$

$$v_2 = \sqrt{2gh} = \sqrt{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.0300\ \text{m})} = 0.767\ \text{m/s}$$

The speed v_2 of the block after impact is *much* lower than the initial speed v_1 of the bullet. The kinetic energy of the bullet before impact is $\tfrac{1}{2}(0.00500\ \text{kg})(307\ \text{m/s})^2 = 236\ \text{J}$. Just after impact the kinetic energy of the system is $\tfrac{1}{2}(2.005\ \text{kg})(0.767\ \text{m/s})^2 = 0.589\ \text{J}$. Nearly all the kinetic energy disappears as the wood splinters and the bullet and block become warmer.

KEYCONCEPT Conservation of momentum holds true only when the net external force is zero. In some situations momentum is conserved during part of the motion (such as during a collision) but not during other parts.

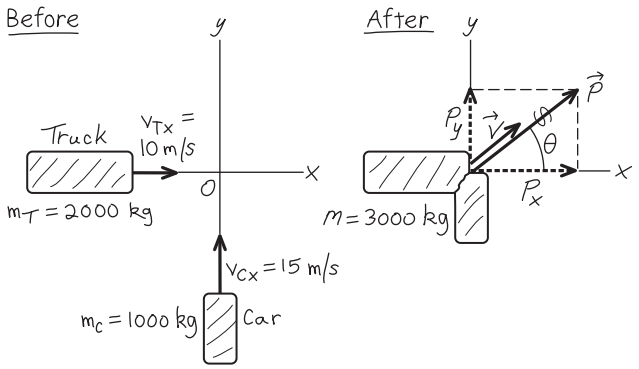
EXAMPLE 8.9 An automobile collision

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A 1000 kg car traveling north at 15 m/s collides with a 2000 kg truck traveling east at 10 m/s. The occupants, wearing seat belts, are uninjured, but the two vehicles move away from the impact point as one. The insurance adjustor asks you to find the velocity of the wreckage just after impact. What is your answer?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Any horizontal external forces (such as friction) on the vehicles during the collision are very small compared with the forces that the colliding vehicles exert on each other. (We'll verify this below.) So we can treat the cars as an isolated system, and the momentum of the system is conserved. **Figure 8.20** shows our sketch and the x- and y-axes. We can use Eqs. (8.15) to find the total momentum $\vec{\boldsymbol{P}}$ before the collision. The momentum has the same value just after the collision; hence we can find the velocity $\vec{\boldsymbol{V}}$ just after the collision (our target variable) by using $\vec{\boldsymbol{P}} = M\vec{\boldsymbol{V}}$, where $M = m_C + m_T = 3000$ kg is the mass of the wreckage.

Figure 8.20 Our sketch for this problem.



EXECUTE From Eqs. (8.15), the components of $\vec{\boldsymbol{P}}$ are

$$P_x = p_{Cx} + p_{Tx} = m_C v_{Cx} + m_T v_{Tx}$$
$$= (1000\text{ kg})(0) + (2000\text{ kg})(10\text{ m/s}) = 2.0 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$
$$P_y = p_{Cy} + p_{Ty} = m_C v_{Cy} + m_T v_{Ty}$$
$$= (1000\text{ kg})(15\text{ m/s}) + (2000\text{ kg})(0) = 1.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

The magnitude of $\vec{\boldsymbol{P}}$ is

$$P = \sqrt{(2.0 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s})^2 + (1.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s})^2}$$
$$= 2.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

and its direction is given by the angle θ shown in Fig. 8.20:

$$\tan\theta = \frac{P_y}{P_x} = \frac{1.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}}{2.0 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}} = 0.75 \quad \theta = 37°$$

From $\vec{\boldsymbol{P}} = M\vec{\boldsymbol{V}}$, the direction of the velocity $\vec{\boldsymbol{V}}$ just after the collision is also $\theta = 37°$. The velocity magnitude is

$$V = \frac{P}{M} = \frac{2.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}}{3000\text{ kg}} = 8.3\text{ m/s}$$

EVALUATE As you can show, the initial kinetic energy is 2.1×10^5 J and the final value is 1.0×10^5 J. In this inelastic collision, the total kinetic energy is less after the collision than before.

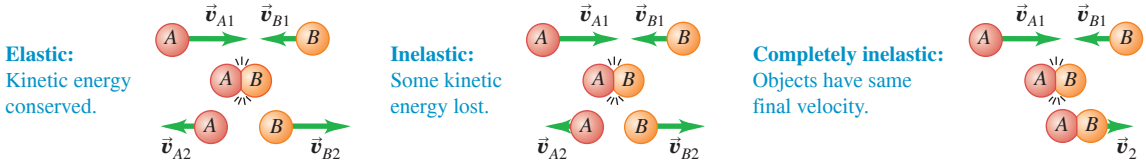
We can now justify our neglect of the external forces on the vehicles during the collision. The car's weight is about 10,000 N; if the coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.5, the friction force on the car during the impact is about 5000 N. The car's initial kinetic energy is $\frac{1}{2}(1000\text{ kg})(15\text{ m/s})^2 = 1.1 \times 10^5$ J, so -1.1×10^5 J of work must be done to stop it. If the car crumples by 0.20 m in stopping, a force of magnitude $(1.1 \times 10^5\text{ J})/(0.20\text{ m}) = 5.5 \times 10^5$ N would be needed; that's 110 times the friction force. So it's reasonable to treat the external force of friction as negligible compared with the internal forces the vehicles exert on each other.

KEYCONCEPT You can use conservation of momentum in collision problems even though external forces act on the system. That's because the external forces are typically small compared to the internal forces that the colliding objects exert on each other.

Classifying Collisions

It's important to remember that we can classify collisions according to energy considerations (**Fig. 8.21**). A collision in which kinetic energy is conserved is called *elastic*. (We'll explore this type in more depth in the next section.) A collision in which the total kinetic energy decreases is called *inelastic*. When the two objects have a common final velocity, we say that the collision is *completely inelastic*. There are also cases in which the final kinetic energy is *greater* than the initial value. Rifle recoil, discussed in Example 8.4 (Section 8.2), is an example.

Figure 8.21 Collisions are classified according to energy considerations.



Finally, we emphasize again that we can typically use momentum conservation for collisions even when external forces are acting on the system. That's because the net external force acting on the colliding objects is typically small in comparison with the internal forces during the collision (as in Example 8.9).

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 8.3 For each situation, state whether the collision is elastic or inelastic. If it is inelastic, state whether it is completely inelastic. (a) You drop a ball from your hand. It collides with the floor and bounces back up so that it just reaches your hand. (b) You drop a different ball from your hand and let it collide with the ground. This ball bounces back up to half the height from which it was dropped. (c) You drop a ball of clay from your hand. When it collides with the ground, it stops.

ANSWER (a) **elastic,** (b) **inelastic,** (c) **completely inelastic** In each case gravitational potential energy is converted to kinetic energy as the ball falls, and the collision is between the ball and the ground. In (a) all of the initial energy is converted back to gravitational potential energy, so no kinetic energy is lost in the bounce and the collision is elastic. In (b) there is less gravitational potential energy at the end than at the beginning, so some kinetic energy is lost in the bounce. Hence the collision is inelastic. In (c) the ball loses all of its kinetic energy, the ball and the ground stick together, and the collision is completely inelastic.

8.4 ELASTIC COLLISIONS

We saw in Section 8.3 that an *elastic collision* in an isolated system is one in which kinetic energy (as well as momentum) is conserved. Elastic collisions occur when the forces between the colliding objects are *conservative*. When two billiard balls collide, they squash a little near the surface of contact, but then they spring back. Some of the kinetic energy is stored temporarily as elastic potential energy, but at the end it is reconverted to kinetic energy (**Fig. 8.22**).

Figure **8.22** Billiard balls deform very little when they collide, and they quickly spring back from any deformation they do undergo. Hence the force of interaction between the balls is almost perfectly conservative, and the collision is almost perfectly elastic.

Let's look at a *one-dimensional* elastic collision between two objects A and B, in which all the velocities lie along the same line. We call this line the x-axis, so each momentum and velocity has only an x-component. We call the x-velocities before the collision v_{A1x} and v_{B1x}, and those after the collision v_{A2x} and v_{B2x}. From conservation of kinetic energy we have

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_A{v_{A1x}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_B{v_{B1x}}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m_A{v_{A2x}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_B{v_{B2x}}^2$$

and conservation of momentum gives

$$m_Av_{A1x} + m_Bv_{B1x} = m_Av_{A2x} + m_Bv_{B2x}$$

If the masses m_A and m_B and the initial velocities v_{A1x} and v_{B1x} are known, we can solve these two equations to find the two final velocities v_{A2x} and v_{B2x}.

Elastic Collisions, One Object Initially at Rest

The general solution to the above equations is a little complicated, so we'll concentrate on the particular case in which object B is at rest before the collision (so $v_{B1x} = 0$). Think of object B as a target for object A to hit. Then the kinetic energy and momentum conservation equations are, respectively,

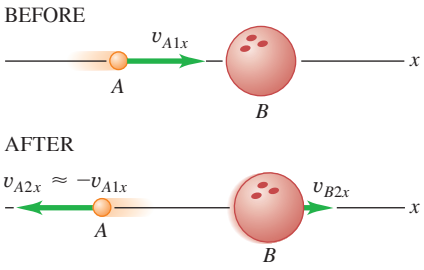
$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_A{v_{A1x}}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m_A{v_{A2x}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_B{v_{B2x}}^2 \tag{8.19}$$

$$m_Av_{A1x} = m_Av_{A2x} + m_Bv_{B2x} \tag{8.20}$$

We can solve for v_{A2x} and v_{B2x} in terms of the masses and the initial velocity v_{A1x}. This involves some fairly strenuous algebra, but it's worth it. No pain, no gain! The simplest approach is somewhat indirect, but along the way it uncovers an additional interesting feature of elastic collisions.

Figure **8.23** One-dimensional elastic collisions between objects with different masses.

(a) Moving Ping-Pong ball strikes initially stationary bowling ball.



(b) Moving bowling ball strikes initially stationary Ping-Pong ball.

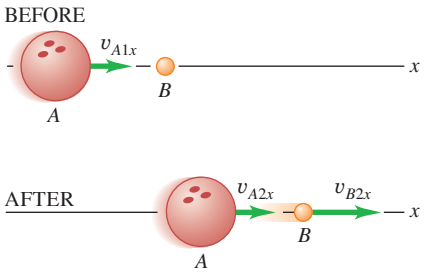
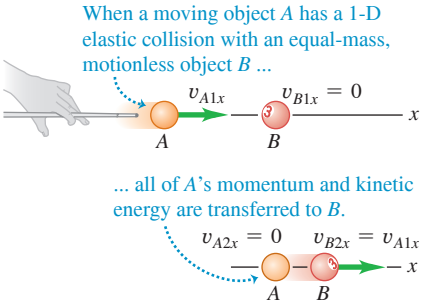


Figure **8.24** A one-dimensional elastic collision between objects of equal mass.



First we rearrange Eqs. (8.19) and (8.20) as follows:

$$m_B v_{B2x}^2 = m_A(v_{A1x}^2 - v_{A2x}^2) = m_A(v_{A1x} - v_{A2x})(v_{A1x} + v_{A2x}) \tag{8.21}$$

$$m_B v_{B2x} = m_A(v_{A1x} - v_{A2x}) \tag{8.22}$$

Now we divide Eq. (8.21) by Eq. (8.22) to obtain

$$v_{B2x} = v_{A1x} + v_{A2x} \tag{8.23}$$

We substitute this expression back into Eq. (8.22) to eliminate v_{B2x} and then solve for v_{A2x}:

$$m_B(v_{A1x} + v_{A2x}) = m_A(v_{A1x} - v_{A2x})$$

$$v_{A2x} = \frac{m_A - m_B}{m_A + m_B} v_{A1x} \tag{8.24}$$

Finally, we substitute this result back into Eq. (8.23) to obtain

$$v_{B2x} = \frac{2m_A}{m_A + m_B} v_{A1x} \tag{8.25}$$

Now we can interpret the results. Suppose A is a Ping-Pong ball and B is a bowling ball. Then we expect A to bounce off after the collision with a velocity nearly equal to its original value but in the opposite direction (**Fig. 8.23a**), and we expect B's velocity to be much less. That's just what the equations predict. When m_A is much smaller than m_B, the fraction in Eq. (8.24) is approximately equal to (-1), so v_{A2x} is approximately equal to $-v_{A1x}$. The fraction in Eq. (8.25) is much smaller than unity, so v_{B2x} is much less than v_{A1x}. Figure 8.23b shows the opposite case, in which A is the bowling ball and B the Ping-Pong ball and m_A is much larger than m_B. What do you expect to happen then? Check your predictions against Eqs. (8.24) and (8.25).

Another interesting case occurs when the masses are equal (**Fig. 8.24**). If $m_A = m_B$, then Eqs. (8.24) and (8.25) give $v_{A2x} = 0$ and $v_{B2x} = v_{A1x}$. That is, the object that was moving stops dead; it gives all its momentum and kinetic energy to the object that was at rest. This behavior is familiar to all pool players.

Elastic Collisions and Relative Velocity

Let's return to the more general case in which A and B have different masses. Equation (8.23) can be rewritten as

$$v_{A1x} = v_{B2x} - v_{A2x} \tag{8.26}$$

Here $v_{B2x} - v_{A2x}$ is the velocity of B relative to A *after* the collision; from Eq. (8.26), this equals v_{A1x}, which is the *negative* of the velocity of B relative to A *before* the collision. (We discussed relative velocity in Section 3.5.) The relative velocity has the same magnitude, but opposite sign, before and after the collision. The sign changes because A and B are approaching each other before the collision but moving apart after the collision. If we view this collision from a second coordinate system moving with constant velocity relative to the first, the velocities of the objects are different but the *relative* velocities are the same. Hence our statement about relative velocities holds for *any* straight-line elastic collision, even when neither object is at rest initially. *In a straight-line elastic collision of two objects, the relative velocities before and after the collision have the same magnitude but opposite sign.* This means that if B is moving before the collision, Eq. (8.26) becomes

$$v_{B2x} - v_{A2x} = -(v_{B1x} - v_{A1x}) \tag{8.27}$$

It turns out that a *vector* relationship similar to Eq. (8.27) is a general property of *all* elastic collisions, even when both objects are moving initially and the velocities do not all lie along the same line. This result provides an alternative and equivalent definition of an elastic collision: *In an elastic collision, the relative velocity of the two objects has the same magnitude before and after the collision.* Whenever this condition is satisfied, the total kinetic energy is also conserved.

When an elastic two-object collision isn't head-on, the velocities don't all lie along a single line. If they all lie in a plane, then each final velocity has two unknown components, and there are four unknowns in all. Conservation of energy and conservation of the x- and y-components of momentum give only three equations. To determine the final velocities uniquely, we need additional information, such as the direction or magnitude of one of the final velocities.

EXAMPLE 8.10 An elastic straight-line collision

We repeat the air-track collision of Example 8.5 (Section 8.2), but now we add ideal spring bumpers to the gliders so that the collision is elastic. What are the final velocities of the gliders?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The net external force on the system is zero, so the momentum of the system is conserved. **Figure 8.25** shows our sketch. We'll find our target variables, v_{A2x} and v_{B2x}, by using Eq. (8.27), the relative-velocity relationship for an elastic collision, and the momentum-conservation equation.

EXECUTE From Eq. (8.27),

$$\begin{aligned} v_{B2x} - v_{A2x} &= -(v_{B1x} - v_{A1x}) \\ &= -(-2.0\ \text{m/s} - 2.0\ \text{m/s}) = 4.0\ \text{m/s} \end{aligned}$$

From conservation of momentum,

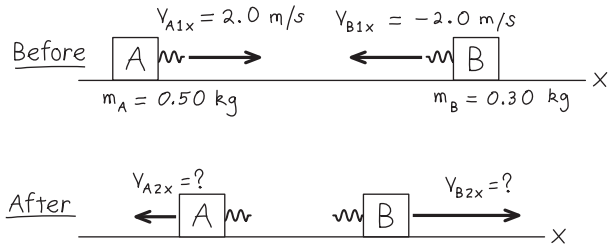
$$\begin{aligned} m_A v_{A1x} + m_B v_{B1x} &= m_A v_{A2x} + m_B v_{B2x} \\ (0.50\ \text{kg})(2.0\ \text{m/s}) + (0.30\ \text{kg})(-2.0\ \text{m/s}) &= (0.50\ \text{kg})v_{A2x} + (0.30\ \text{kg})v_{B2x} \\ 0.50\,v_{A2x} + 0.30\,v_{B2x} &= 0.40\ \text{m/s} \end{aligned}$$

(To get the last equation we divided both sides of the equation just above it by 1 kg. This makes the units the same as in the first equation.) Solving these equations simultaneously, we find

$$v_{A2x} = -1.0\ \text{m/s} \qquad v_{B2x} = 3.0\ \text{m/s}$$

EVALUATE Both objects reverse their direction of motion; A moves to the left at 1.0 m/s and B moves to the right at 3.0 m/s. This is unlike the result of Example 8.5 because that collision was *not* elastic. The more massive glider A slows down in the collision and so loses kinetic energy.

Figure **8.25** Our sketch for this problem.



The less massive glider B speeds up and gains kinetic energy. The total kinetic energy before the collision (which we calculated in Example 8.7) is 1.6 J. The total kinetic energy after the collision is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(0.50\ \text{kg})(-1.0\ \text{m/s})^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}(0.30\ \text{kg})(3.0\ \text{m/s})^2 = 1.6\ \text{J}$$

The kinetic energies before and after this elastic collision are equal. Kinetic energy is transferred from A to B, but none of it is lost.

CAUTION Be careful with the elastic collision equations You could *not* have solved this problem by using Eqs. (8.24) and (8.25), which apply only if object B is initially *at rest*. Always be sure that you use equations that are applicable!

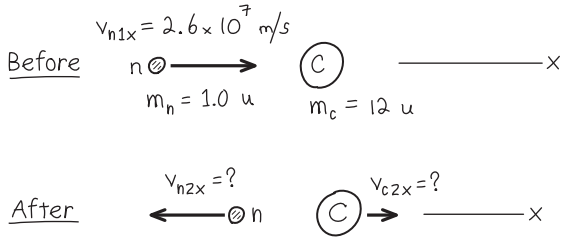
KEYCONCEPT In an elastic collision both total momentum and total kinetic energy are conserved. The relative velocity of the two colliding objects has the same magnitude after the collision as before, but in the opposite direction.

EXAMPLE 8.11 Moderating fission neutrons in a nuclear reactor

The fission of uranium nuclei in a nuclear reactor produces high-speed neutrons. Before such neutrons can efficiently cause additional fissions, they must be slowed down by collisions with nuclei in the *moderator* of the reactor. The first nuclear reactor (built in 1942 at the University of Chicago) used carbon (graphite) as the moderator. Suppose a neutron (mass 1.0 u) traveling at 2.6×10^7 m/s undergoes a head-on elastic collision with a carbon nucleus (mass 12 u) initially at rest. Neglecting external forces during the collision, find the velocities after the collision. (1 u is the *atomic mass unit,* equal to 1.66×10^{-27} kg.)

IDENTIFY and SET UP We ignore external forces, so momentum is conserved in the collision. The collision is elastic, so kinetic energy is also conserved. **Figure 8.26** shows our sketch. We take the x-axis to be in the direction in which the neutron is moving initially. The collision is head-on, so both particles move along this same axis after the collision. The carbon nucleus is initially at rest, so we can use Eqs. (8.24) and (8.25); we replace A by n (for the neutron) and B by C (for the carbon nucleus). We have $m_n = 1.0$ u, $m_C = 12$ u, and $v_{n1x} = 2.6 \times 10^7$ m/s. The target variables are the final velocities v_{n2x} and v_{C2x}.

Figure **8.26** Our sketch for this problem.



EXECUTE You can do the arithmetic. (*Hint:* There's no reason to convert atomic mass units to kilograms.) The results are

$$v_{n2x} = -2.2 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s} \qquad v_{C2x} = 0.4 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s}$$

Continued

EVALUATE The neutron ends up with $|(m_n - m_C)/(m_n + m_C)| = \frac{11}{13}$ of its initial speed, and the speed of the recoiling carbon nucleus is $|2m_n/(m_n + m_C)| = \frac{2}{13}$ of the neutron's initial speed. Kinetic energy is proportional to speed squared, so the neutron's final kinetic energy is $\left(\frac{11}{13}\right)^2 \approx 0.72$ of its original value. After a second head-on collision, its kinetic energy is $(0.72)^2$, or about half its original value, and so on. After a few dozen collisions (few of which are head-on), the neutron speed will be low enough that it can efficiently cause a fission reaction in a uranium nucleus.

KEYCONCEPT When a particle undergoes a head-on elastic collision with a more massive, initially stationary target, the particle bounces back in the opposite direction. The recoiling target carries away some of the particle's initial kinetic energy.

EXAMPLE 8.12 A two-dimensional elastic collision

Figure 8.27 shows an elastic collision of two pucks (masses $m_A = 0.500$ kg and $m_B = 0.300$ kg) on a frictionless air-hockey table. Puck A has an initial velocity of 4.00 m/s in the positive x-direction and a final velocity of 2.00 m/s in an unknown direction α. Puck B is initially at rest. Find the final speed v_{B2} of puck B and the angles α and β.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll use the equations for conservation of energy and conservation of x- and y-momentum. These three equations should be enough to solve for the three target variables.

EXECUTE The collision is elastic, so the initial and final kinetic energies of the system are equal:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_A v_{A1}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m_A v_{A2}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_B v_{B2}^2$$

$$v_{B2}^2 = \frac{m_A v_{A1}^2 - m_A v_{A2}^2}{m_B}$$

$$= \frac{(0.500\text{ kg})(4.00\text{ m/s})^2 - (0.500\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})^2}{0.300\text{ kg}}$$

$$v_{B2} = 4.47\text{ m/s}$$

Conservation of the x- and y-components of total momentum gives

$$m_A v_{A1x} = m_A v_{A2x} + m_B v_{B2x}$$

$$(0.500\text{ kg})(4.00\text{ m/s}) = (0.500\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})(\cos\alpha) + (0.300\text{ kg})(4.47\text{ m/s})(\cos\beta)$$

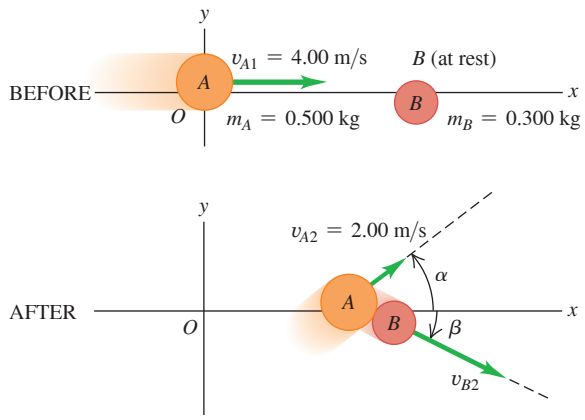
$$0 = m_A v_{A2y} + m_B v_{B2y}$$

$$0 = (0.500\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})(\sin\alpha) - (0.300\text{ kg})(4.47\text{ m/s})(\sin\beta)$$

These are two simultaneous equations for α and β. You can supply the details of the solution. (*Hint:* Solve the first equation for $\cos\beta$ and the second for $\sin\beta$; square each equation and add. Since $\sin^2\beta + \cos^2\beta = 1$, this eliminates β and leaves an equation that you can solve for $\cos\alpha$ and hence for α. Substitute this value into either of the two equations and solve for β.) The results are

$$\alpha = 36.9° \qquad \beta = 26.6°$$

Figure **8.27** An elastic collision that isn't head-on.



EVALUATE To check the answers we confirm that the y-momentum, which was zero before the collision, is in fact zero after the collision. The y-momenta are

$$p_{A2y} = (0.500\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})(\sin 36.9°) = +0.600\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

$$p_{B2y} = -(0.300\text{ kg})(4.47\text{ m/s})(\sin 26.6°) = -0.600\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

and their sum is indeed zero.

KEYCONCEPT There are three conservation equations for a problem that involves a two-dimensional elastic collision: one for kinetic energy, one for the x-component of momentum, and one for the y-component of momentum.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 8.4 Most present-day nuclear reactors use water as a moderator (see Example 8.11). Are water molecules (mass $m_w = 18.0$ u) a better or worse moderator than carbon atoms? (One advantage of water is that it also acts as a coolant for the reactor's radioactive core.)

ANSWER **worse** After colliding with a water molecule initially at rest, the neutron has speed $|(m_n - m_w)/(m_n + m_w)| = |(1.0\text{ u} - 18\text{ u})/(1.0\text{ u} + 18\text{ u})| = \frac{17}{19}$ of its initial speed, and its kinetic energy is $\left(\frac{17}{19}\right)^2 = 0.80$ of the initial value. Hence a water molecule is a worse moderator than a carbon atom, for which the corresponding numbers are $\frac{11}{13}$ and $\left(\frac{11}{13}\right)^2 = 0.72$.

8.5 CENTER OF MASS

We can restate the principle of conservation of momentum in a useful way by using the concept of **center of mass.** Suppose we have several particles with masses m_1, m_2, and so on. Let the coordinates of m_1 be (x_1, y_1), those of m_2 be (x_2, y_2), and so on. We define the center of mass of the system as the point that has coordinates (x_{cm}, y_{cm}) given by

$$x_{cm} = \frac{m_1x_1 + m_2x_2 + m_3x_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i x_i}{\sum_i m_i}$$

$$y_{cm} = \frac{m_1y_1 + m_2y_2 + m_3y_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i y_i}{\sum_i m_i} \quad \text{(center of mass)} \qquad (8.28)$$

We can express the position of the center of mass as a vector $\vec{r}_{cm}$:

Position vector of **center of mass** of a system of particles

$$\vec{r}_{cm} = \frac{m_1\vec{r}_1 + m_2\vec{r}_2 + m_3\vec{r}_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i\vec{r}_i}{\sum_i m_i} \qquad (8.29)$$

Position vectors of individual particles

Masses of individual particles

We say that the center of mass is a *mass-weighted average* position of the particles.

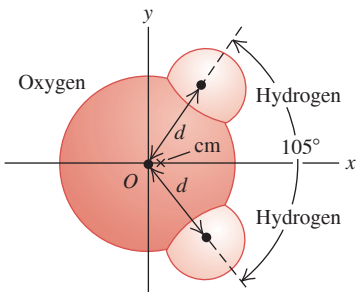
EXAMPLE 8.13 Center of mass of a water molecule

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Figure 8.28 shows a simple model of a water molecule. The oxygen–hydrogen separation is $d = 9.57 \times 10^{-11}$ m. Each hydrogen atom has mass 1.0 u, and the oxygen atom has mass 16.0 u. Find the position of the center of mass.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Nearly all the mass of each atom is concentrated in its nucleus, whose radius is only about 10^{-5} times the overall radius of the atom. Hence we can safely represent each atom as a point particle. Figure 8.28 shows our coordinate system, with the x-axis chosen to lie along the molecule's symmetry axis. We'll use Eqs. (8.28) to find x_{cm} and y_{cm}.

Figure 8.28 Where is the center of mass of a water molecule?



EXECUTE The oxygen atom is at $x = 0$, $y = 0$. The x-coordinate of each hydrogen atom is $d\cos(105°/2)$; the y-coordinates are $\pm d\sin(105°/2)$. From Eqs. (8.28),

$$x_{cm} = \frac{\left[\begin{array}{c}(1.0\text{ u})(d\cos 52.5°) + (1.0\text{ u})(d\cos 52.5°)\\ + (16.0\text{ u})(0)\end{array}\right]}{1.0\text{ u} + 1.0\text{ u} + 16.0\text{ u}} = 0.068d$$

$$y_{cm} = \frac{\left[\begin{array}{c}(1.0\text{ u})(d\sin 52.5°) + (1.0\text{ u})(-d\sin 52.5°)\\ + (16.0\text{ u})(0)\end{array}\right]}{1.0\text{ u} + 1.0\text{ u} + 16.0\text{ u}} = 0$$

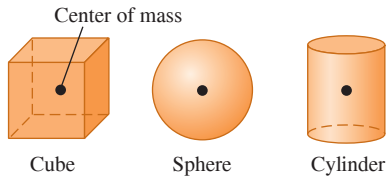
Substituting $d = 9.57 \times 10^{-11}$ m, we find

$$x_{cm} = (0.068)(9.57 \times 10^{-11}\text{ m}) = 6.5 \times 10^{-12}\text{ m}$$

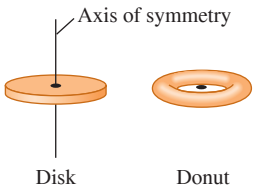
EVALUATE The center of mass is much closer to the oxygen atom (located at the origin) than to either hydrogen atom because the oxygen atom is much more massive. The center of mass lies along the molecule's *axis of symmetry*. If the molecule is rotated 180° around this axis, it looks exactly the same as before. The position of the center of mass can't be affected by this rotation, so it *must* lie on the axis of symmetry.

KEYCONCEPT The x-coordinate of the center of mass of a collection of particles is a weighted sum of the x-coordinates of the individual particles, and similarly for the y-coordinate.

Figure **8.29** Locating the center of mass of a symmetric object.

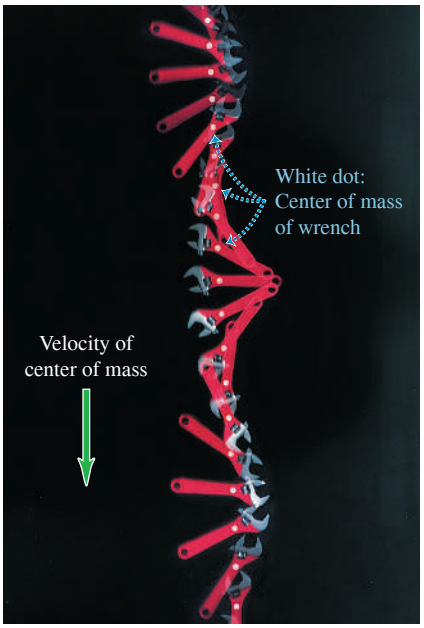


If a homogeneous object has a geometric center, that is where the center of mass is located.



If an object has an axis of symmetry, the center of mass lies along it. As in the case of the donut, the center of mass may not be within the object.

Figure **8.30** The net external force on this wrench is almost zero as it spins on a smooth, horizontal surface (seen from above). Hence the center of mass moves in a straight line with nearly constant velocity.



For solid objects, in which we have (at least on a macroscopic level) a continuous distribution of matter, the sums in Eqs. (8.28) have to be replaced by integrals. The calculations can get quite involved, but we can say three general things about such problems (**Fig. 8.29**). First, whenever a homogeneous object has a geometric center, such as a billiard ball, a sugar cube, or a can of frozen orange juice, the center of mass is at the geometric center. Second, whenever an object has an axis of symmetry, such as a wheel or a pulley, the center of mass always lies on that axis. Third, there is no law that says the center of mass has to be within the object. For example, the center of mass of a donut is in the middle of the hole.

Motion of the Center of Mass

To see the significance of the center of mass of a collection of particles, we must ask what happens to the center of mass when the particles move. The x- and y-components of velocity of the center of mass, $v_{\text{cm-}x}$ and $v_{\text{cm-}y}$, are the time derivatives of x_{cm} and y_{cm}. Also, dx_1/dt is the x-component of velocity of particle 1, so $dx_1/dt = v_{1x}$, and so on. Taking time derivatives of Eqs. (8.28), we get

$$v_{\text{cm-}x} = \frac{m_1v_{1x} + m_2v_{2x} + m_3v_{3x} + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots}$$
$$v_{\text{cm-}y} = \frac{m_1v_{1y} + m_2v_{2y} + m_3v_{3y} + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} \tag{8.30}$$

These equations are equivalent to the single vector equation obtained by taking the time derivative of Eq. (8.29):

$$\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{m_1\vec{v}_1 + m_2\vec{v}_2 + m_3\vec{v}_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} \tag{8.31}$$

We denote the *total* mass $m_1 + m_2 + \cdots$ by M. We can then rewrite Eq. (8.31) as

Total mass of a system of particles; Momenta of individual particles; Velocity of center of mass; Total momentum of system

$$M\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} = m_1\vec{v}_1 + m_2\vec{v}_2 + m_3\vec{v}_3 + \cdots = \vec{P} \tag{8.32}$$

So *the total momentum $\vec{P}$ of a system equals the total mass times the velocity of the center of mass.* When you catch a baseball, you are really catching a collection of a very large number of molecules of masses m_1, m_2, m_3, ... The impulse you feel is due to the total momentum of this entire collection. But this impulse is the same as if you were catching a single particle of mass $M = m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots$ moving with $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}$, the velocity of the collection's center of mass. So Eq. (8.32) helps us justify representing an extended object as a particle.

For a system of particles on which the net external force is zero, so that the total momentum $\vec{P}$ is constant, the velocity of the center of mass $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} = \vec{P}/M$ is also constant. **Figure 8.30** shows an example. The overall motion of the wrench appears complicated, but the center of mass follows a straight line, as though all the mass were concentrated at that point.

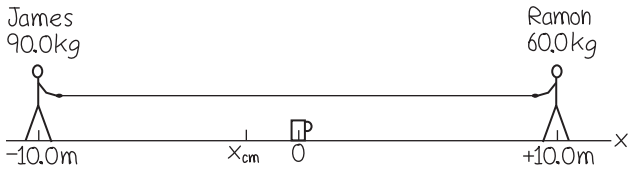
EXAMPLE 8.14 A tug-of-war on the ice

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

James (mass 90.0 kg) and Ramon (mass 60.0 kg) are 20.0 m apart on a frozen pond. Midway between them is a mug of their favorite beverage. They pull on the ends of a light rope stretched between them. When James has moved 6.0 m toward the mug, how far and in what direction has Ramon moved?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The surface is horizontal and (we assume) frictionless, so the net external force on the system of James, Ramon, and the rope is zero; their total momentum is conserved. Initially there is no motion, so the total momentum is zero. The velocity of the center of mass is therefore zero, and it remains at rest. Let's take the origin at the

Figure **8.31** Our sketch for this problem.



position of the mug and let the $+x$-axis extend from the mug toward Ramon. **Figure 8.31** shows our sketch. We use the first of Eqs. (8.28) to calculate the position of the center of mass; we ignore the mass of the light rope.

EXECUTE The initial x-coordinates of James and Ramon are -10.0 m and $+10.0$ m, respectively, so the x-coordinate of the center of mass is

$$x_{cm} = \frac{(90.0\text{ kg})(-10.0\text{ m}) + (60.0\text{ kg})(10.0\text{ m})}{90.0\text{ kg} + 60.0\text{ kg}} = -2.0\text{ m}$$

When James moves 6.0 m toward the mug, his new x-coordinate is -4.0 m; we'll call Ramon's new x-coordinate x_2. The center of mass doesn't move, so

$$x_{cm} = \frac{(90.0\text{ kg})(-4.0\text{ m}) + (60.0\text{ kg})x_2}{90.0\text{ kg} + 60.0\text{ kg}} = -2.0\text{ m}$$

$$x_2 = 1.0\text{ m}$$

James has moved 6.0 m and is still 4.0 m from the mug, but Ramon has moved 9.0 m and is only 1.0 m from it.

EVALUATE The ratio of the distances moved, $(6.0\text{ m})/(9.0\text{ m}) = \frac{2}{3}$, is the *inverse* ratio of the masses. Can you see why? Because the surface is frictionless, the two men will keep moving and collide at the center of mass; Ramon will reach the mug first. This is independent of how hard either person pulls; pulling harder just makes them move faster.

KEYCONCEPT If there is no net external force on a system of particles, the center of mass of the system maintains the same velocity. As a special case, if the center of mass is at rest, it remains at rest.

External Forces and Center-of-Mass Motion

If the net external force on a system of particles is not zero, then total momentum is not conserved and the velocity of the center of mass changes. Let's look at this situation in more detail.

Equations (8.31) and (8.32) give the *velocity* of the center of mass in terms of the velocities of the individual particles. We take the time derivatives of these equations to show that the *accelerations* are related in the same way. Let $\vec{a}_{cm} = d\vec{v}_{cm}/dt$ be the acceleration of the center of mass; then

$$M\vec{a}_{cm} = m_1\vec{a}_1 + m_2\vec{a}_2 + m_3\vec{a}_3 + \cdots \tag{8.33}$$

Now $m_1\vec{a}_1$ is equal to the vector sum of forces on the first particle, and so on, so the right side of Eq. (8.33) is equal to the vector sum $\Sigma\vec{F}$ of *all* the forces on *all* the particles. Just as we did in Section 8.2, we can classify each force as *external* or *internal*. The sum of all forces on all the particles is then

$$\Sigma\vec{F} = \Sigma\vec{F}_{ext} + \Sigma\vec{F}_{int} = M\vec{a}_{cm}$$

Because of Newton's third law, all of the internal forces cancel in pairs, and $\Sigma\vec{F}_{int} = \mathbf{0}$. What survives on the left side is the sum of only the *external* forces:

Net external force on an object or a collection of particles $\Sigma\vec{F}_{ext} = M\vec{a}_{cm}$ (Total mass of object or collection of particles; Acceleration of center of mass) (8.34)

When an object or a collection of particles is acted on by external forces, the center of mass moves as though all the mass were concentrated at that point and it were acted on by a net external force equal to the sum of the external forces on the system.

This result is central to the whole subject of mechanics. In fact, we've been using this result all along; without it, we would not be able to represent an extended object as a point particle when we apply Newton's laws. It explains why only *external* forces can affect the motion of an extended object. If you pull upward on your belt, your belt exerts an equal downward force on your hands; these are *internal* forces that cancel and have no effect on the overall motion of your body.

As an example, suppose that a cannon shell traveling in a parabolic trajectory (ignoring air resistance) explodes in flight, splitting into two fragments with equal mass (**Fig. 8.32**, next page). The fragments follow new parabolic paths, but the center of mass continues on the original parabolic trajectory, as though all the mass were still concentrated at that point.

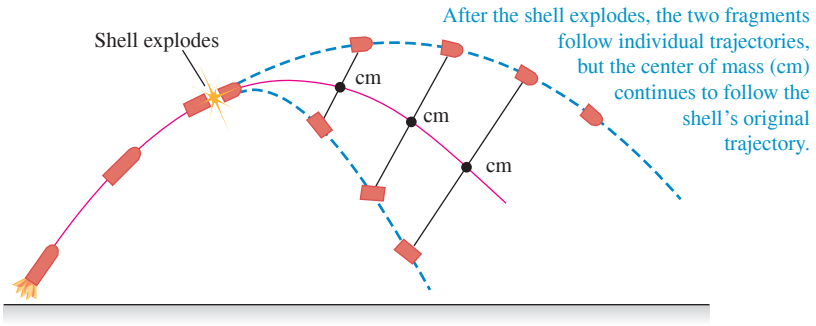


Figure **8.32** A shell explodes into two fragments in flight. If air resistance is ignored, the center of mass continues on the same trajectory as the shell's path before the explosion.

This property of the center of mass is important when we analyze the motion of rigid objects. In Chapter 10 we'll describe the motion of an extended object as a combination of translational motion of the center of mass and rotational motion about an axis through the center of mass. This property also plays an important role in the motion of astronomical objects. It's not correct to say that the moon orbits the earth; rather, both the earth and the moon move in orbits around their common center of mass.

There's one more useful way to describe the motion of a system of particles. Using $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}} = d\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}/dt$, we can rewrite Eq. (8.33) as

$$M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}} = M\frac{d\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}}{dt} = \frac{d(M\vec{v}_{\text{cm}})}{dt} = \frac{d\vec{P}}{dt} \tag{8.35}$$

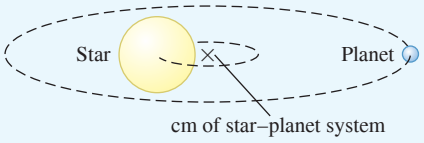
The total system mass M is constant, so we're allowed to move it inside the derivative. Substituting Eq. (8.35) into Eq. (8.34), we find

$$\Sigma\vec{F}_{\text{ext}} = \frac{d\vec{P}}{dt} \quad \text{(extended object or system of particles)} \tag{8.36}$$

This equation looks like Eq. (8.4). The difference is that Eq. (8.36) describes a *system* of particles, such as an extended object, while Eq. (8.4) describes a single particle. The interactions between the particles that make up the system can change the individual momenta of the particles, but the *total* momentum $\vec{P}$ of the system can be changed only by external forces acting from outside the system.

If the net external force is zero, Eqs. (8.34) and (8.36) show that the center-of-mass acceleration $\vec{a}_{\text{cm}}$ is zero (so the center-of-mass velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}$ is constant) and the total momentum $\vec{P}$ is constant. This is just our statement from Section 8.3: If the net external force on a system is zero, momentum is conserved.

APPLICATION Finding Planets Beyond Our Solar System Planets orbiting distant stars are so faint that they cannot be seen with even the best telescopes. But they can be detected by using the idea that a planet and its parent star orbit around their common center of mass (cm). If we observe a star "wobbling" around a point, we can infer that there is an unseen companion planet and can actually determine the planet's mass. Hundreds of planets around distant stars have been discovered in this way.

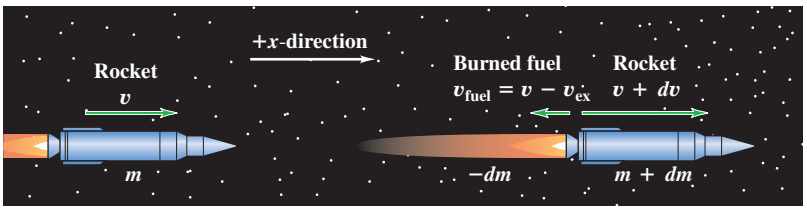


TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 8.5 Will the center of mass in Fig. 8.32 continue on the same parabolic trajectory even after one of the fragments hits the ground? Why or why not?

ANSWER no If gravity is the only force acting on the system of two fragments, the center of mass will follow the parabolic trajectory of a freely falling object. Once a fragment lands, however, the ground exerts a normal force on that fragment. Hence the net external force on the system has changed, and the trajectory of the center of mass changes in response.

8.6 ROCKET PROPULSION

Momentum considerations are particularly useful for analyzing a system in which the masses of parts of the system change with time. In such cases we can't use Newton's second law $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ directly because m changes. Rocket propulsion is an important example of this situation. A rocket is propelled forward by rearward ejection of burned fuel that initially was in the rocket (which is why rocket fuel is also called *propellant*). The forward force on the rocket is the reaction to the backward force on the ejected material. The total mass of the system is constant, but the mass of the rocket itself decreases as material is ejected.



At time *t*, the rocket has mass m and x-component of velocity v.

At time $t + dt$, the rocket has mass $m + dm$ (where dm is inherently *negative*) and x-component of velocity $v + dv$. The burned fuel has x-component of velocity $v_{fuel} = v - v_{ex}$ and mass $-dm$. (The minus sign is needed to make $-dm$ *positive* because dm is negative.)

Figure **8.33** A rocket moving in gravity-free outer space at (a) time t and (b) time $t + dt$.

For simplicity, let's consider a rocket in outer space, where there is no gravitational force and no air resistance. Let m denote the mass of the rocket, which will change as it expends fuel. We choose our x-axis to be along the rocket's direction of motion. **Figure 8.33a** shows the rocket at a time t, when its mass is m and its x-velocity relative to our coordinate system is v. (To simplify, we'll drop the subscript x in this discussion.) The x-component of total momentum at this instant is $P_1 = mv$. In a short time interval dt, the mass of the rocket changes by an amount dm. This is an inherently negative quantity because the rocket's mass m *decreases* with time. During dt, a *positive* mass $-dm$ of burned fuel is ejected from the rocket. Let v_{ex} be the exhaust *speed* of this material *relative to the rocket;* the burned fuel is ejected opposite the direction of motion, so its x-component of *velocity* relative to the rocket is $-v_{ex}$. The x-velocity v_{fuel} of the burned fuel relative to our coordinate system is then

$$v_{fuel} = v + (-v_{ex}) = v - v_{ex}$$

and the x-component of momentum of the ejected mass $(-dm)$ is

$$(-dm)v_{fuel} = (-dm)(v - v_{ex})$$

Figure 8.33b shows that at the end of the time interval dt, the x-velocity of the rocket and unburned fuel has increased to $v + dv$, and its mass has decreased to $m + dm$ (remember that dm is negative). The rocket's momentum at this time is

$$(m + dm)(v + dv)$$

Thus the *total* x-component of momentum P_2 of the rocket plus ejected fuel at time $t + dt$ is

$$P_2 = (m + dm)(v + dv) + (-dm)(v - v_{ex})$$

According to our initial assumption, the rocket and fuel are an isolated system. Thus momentum is conserved, and the total x-component of momentum of the system must be the same at time t and at time $t + dt$: $P_1 = P_2$. Hence

$$mv = (m + dm)(v + dv) + (-dm)(v - v_{ex})$$

This can be simplified to

$$m\,dv = -dm\,v_{ex} - dm\,dv$$

We can ignore the term $(-dm\,dv)$ because it is a product of two small quantities and thus is much smaller than the other terms. Dropping this term, dividing by dt, and rearranging, we find

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = -v_{ex}\frac{dm}{dt} \tag{8.37}$$

Now dv/dt is the acceleration of the rocket, so the left side of Eq. (8.37) (mass times acceleration) equals the net external force F, or *thrust,* on the rocket:

$$F = -v_{ex}\frac{dm}{dt} \tag{8.38}$$

BIO APPLICATION Jet Propulsion in Squids Both a jet engine and a squid use variations in their mass to provide propulsion: They increase their mass by taking in fluid (air for a jet engine, water for a squid) at low speed, then decrease their mass by ejecting that fluid at high speed. The Caribbean reef squid (*Sepioteuthis sepioidea*), shown here, can use jet propulsion to vault to a height of 2 m above the water and fly a total distance of 10 m—about 50 times its body length!

Figure **8.34** To provide enough thrust to lift its payload into space, this *Atlas V* launch vehicle ejects more than 1000 kg of burned fuel per second at speeds of nearly 4000 m/s.

The thrust is proportional both to the relative speed v_{ex} of the ejected fuel and to the mass of fuel ejected per unit time, $-dm/dt$. (Remember that dm/dt is negative because it is the rate of change of the rocket's mass, so F is positive.)

The x-component of acceleration of the rocket is

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -\frac{v_{ex}}{m}\frac{dm}{dt} \tag{8.39}$$

This is positive because v_{ex} is positive (remember, it's the exhaust *speed*) and dm/dt is negative. The rocket's mass m decreases continuously while the fuel is being consumed. If v_{ex} and dm/dt are constant, the acceleration increases until all the fuel is gone.

Equation (8.38) tells us that an effective rocket burns fuel at a rapid rate (large $-dm/dt$) and ejects the burned fuel at a high relative speed (large v_{ex}), as in **Fig. 8.34**. In the early days of rocket propulsion, people who didn't understand conservation of momentum thought that a rocket couldn't function in outer space because "it doesn't have anything to push against." In fact, rockets work *best* in outer space, where there is no air resistance! The launch vehicle in Fig. 8.34 is *not* "pushing against the ground" to ascend.

If the exhaust speed v_{ex} is constant, we can integrate Eq. (8.39) to relate the velocity v at any time to the remaining mass m. At time $t = 0$, let the mass be m_0 and the velocity be v_0. Then we rewrite Eq. (8.39) as

$$dv = -v_{ex}\frac{dm}{m}$$

We change the integration variables to v' and m', so we can use v and m as the upper limits (the final speed and mass). Then we integrate both sides, using limits v_0 to v and m_0 to m, and take the constant v_{ex} outside the integral:

$$\int_{v_0}^{v} dv' = -\int_{m_0}^{m} v_{ex}\frac{dm'}{m'} = -v_{ex}\int_{m_0}^{m}\frac{dm'}{m'}$$

$$v - v_0 = -v_{ex}\ln\frac{m}{m_0} = v_{ex}\ln\frac{m_0}{m} \tag{8.40}$$

The ratio m_0/m is the original mass divided by the mass after the fuel has been exhausted. In practical spacecraft this ratio is made as large as possible to maximize the speed gain, which means that the initial mass of the rocket is almost all fuel. The final velocity of the rocket will be greater in magnitude (and is often *much* greater) than the relative speed v_{ex} if $\ln(m_0/m) > 1$—that is, if $m_0/m > e = 2.71828\ldots$.

We've assumed throughout this analysis that the rocket is in gravity-free outer space. However, gravity must be taken into account when a rocket is launched from the surface of a planet, as in Fig. 8.34.

EXAMPLE 8.15 Acceleration of a rocket

The engine of a rocket in outer space, far from any planet, is turned on. The rocket ejects burned fuel at a constant rate; in the first second of firing, it ejects $\frac{1}{120}$ of its initial mass m_0 at a relative speed of 2400 m/s. What is the rocket's initial acceleration?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We are given the rocket's exhaust speed v_{ex} and the fraction of the initial mass lost during the first second of firing, from which we can find dm/dt. We'll use Eq. (8.39) to find the acceleration of the rocket.

EXECUTE The initial rate of change of mass is

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = -\frac{m_0/120}{1\text{ s}} = -\frac{m_0}{120\text{ s}}$$

From Eq. (8.39),

$$a = -\frac{v_{ex}}{m_0}\frac{dm}{dt} = -\frac{2400\text{ m/s}}{m_0}\left(-\frac{m_0}{120\text{ s}}\right) = 20\text{ m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE The answer doesn't depend on m_0. If v_{ex} is the same, the initial acceleration is the same for a 120,000 kg spacecraft that ejects 1000 kg/s as for a 60 kg astronaut equipped with a small rocket that ejects 0.5 kg/s.

KEYCONCEPT The thrust provided by a rocket equals the exhaust speed multiplied by the mass of fuel ejected per unit time. The resulting acceleration equals the thrust divided by the rocket's mass.

EXAMPLE 8.16 Speed of a rocket

Suppose that $\frac{3}{4}$ of the initial mass of the rocket in Example 8.15 is fuel, so the fuel is completely consumed at a constant rate in 90 s. The final mass of the rocket is $m = m_0/4$. If the rocket starts from rest in our coordinate system, find its speed at the end of this time.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE We are given the initial velocity $v_0 = 0$, the exhaust speed $v_{ex} = 2400$ m/s, and the final mass m as a fraction of the initial mass m_0. We'll use Eq. (8.40) to find the final speed v:

$$v = v_0 + v_{ex}\ln\frac{m_0}{m} = 0 + (2400\text{ m/s})(\ln 4) = 3327\text{ m/s}$$

EVALUATE Let's examine what happens as the rocket gains speed. (To illustrate our point, we use more figures than are significant.) At the start of the flight, when the velocity of the rocket is zero, the ejected fuel is moving backward at 2400 m/s relative to our frame of reference. As the rocket moves forward and speeds up, the fuel's speed relative to our system decreases; when the rocket speed reaches 2400 m/s, this relative speed is *zero*. [Knowing the rate of fuel consumption, you can solve Eq. (8.40) to show that this occurs at about $t = 75.6$ s.] After this time the ejected burned fuel moves *forward,* not backward, in our system. Relative to our frame of reference, the last bit of ejected fuel has a forward velocity of 3327 m/s − 2400 m/s = 927 m/s.

KEYCONCEPT Because the mass of a rocket decreases as it ejects fuel, its acceleration is not constant even if the thrust is constant.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 8.6 (a) If a rocket in gravity-free outer space has the same thrust at all times, is its acceleration constant, increasing, or decreasing? (b) If the rocket has the same acceleration at all times, is the thrust constant, increasing, or decreasing?

ANSWER

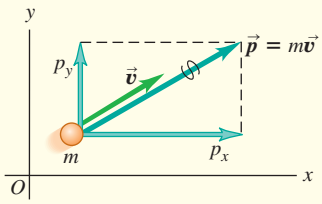
(a) **increasing**, (b) **decreasing** From Eqs. (8.37) and (8.38), the thrust F is equal to $m(dv/dt)$, where m is the rocket's mass and dv/dt is its acceleration. Because m decreases with time, if the thrust F is constant, then the acceleration must increase with time (the same force acts on a smaller mass); if the acceleration dv/dt is constant, then the thrust must decrease with time (a smaller force is all that's needed to accelerate a smaller mass).

CHAPTER 8 SUMMARY

Momentum of a particle: The momentum $\vec{p}$ of a particle is a vector quantity equal to the product of the particle's mass m and velocity $\vec{v}$. Newton's second law says that the net external force on a particle is equal to the rate of change of the particle's momentum.

$$\vec{p} = m\vec{v} \tag{8.2}$$

$$\Sigma\vec{F} = \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt} \tag{8.4}$$

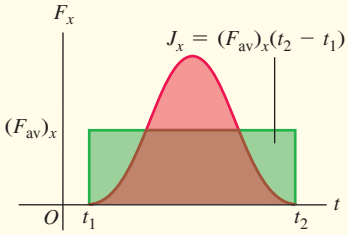


Impulse and momentum: If a constant net external force $\Sigma\vec{F}$ acts on a particle for a time interval Δt from t_1 to t_2, the impulse $\vec{J}$ of the net external force is the product of the net external force and the time interval. If $\Sigma\vec{F}$ varies with time, $\vec{J}$ is the integral of the net external force over the time interval. In any case, the change in a particle's momentum during a time interval equals the impulse of the net external force that acted on the particle during that interval. The momentum of a particle equals the impulse that accelerated it from rest to its present speed. (See Examples 8.1–8.3.)

$$\vec{J} = \Sigma\vec{F}(t_2 - t_1) = \Sigma\vec{F}\,\Delta t \tag{8.5}$$

$$\vec{J} = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \Sigma\vec{F}\,dt \tag{8.7}$$

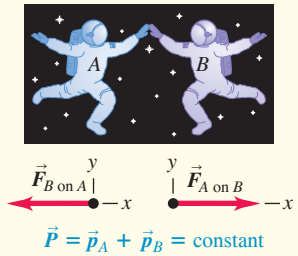
$$\vec{J} = \vec{p}_2 - \vec{p}_1 \tag{8.6}$$



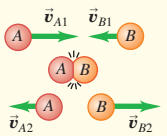
Conservation of momentum: An internal force is a force exerted by one part of a system on another. An external force is a force exerted on any part of a system by something outside the system. If the net external force on a system is zero, the total momentum of the system $\vec{P}$ (the vector sum of the momenta of the individual particles that make up the system) is constant, or conserved. Each component of total momentum is separately conserved. (See Examples 8.4–8.6.)

$$\vec{P} = \vec{p}_A + \vec{p}_B + \cdots = m_A\vec{v}_A + m_B\vec{v}_B + \cdots \tag{8.14}$$

If $\Sigma\vec{F} = \mathbf{0}$, then $\vec{P}$ = constant.



Collisions: In typical collisions, the initial and final total momenta are equal. In an elastic collision between two objects, the initial and final total kinetic energies are also equal, and the initial and final relative velocities have the same magnitude. In an inelastic two-object collision, the total kinetic energy is less after the collision than before. If the two objects have the same final velocity, the collision is completely inelastic. (See Examples 8.7–8.12.)

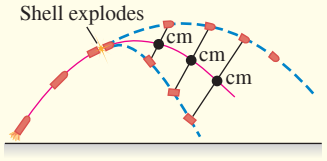


Center of mass: The position vector of the center of mass of a system of particles, $\vec{r}_{cm}$, is a weighted average of the positions $\vec{r}_1$, $\vec{r}_2$, ... of the individual particles. The total momentum $\vec{P}$ of a system equals the system's total mass M multiplied by the velocity of its center of mass, $\vec{v}_{cm}$. The center of mass moves as though all the mass M were concentrated at that point. If the net external force on the system is zero, the center-of-mass velocity $\vec{v}_{cm}$ is constant. If the net external force is not zero, the center of mass accelerates as though it were a particle of mass M being acted on by the same net external force. (See Examples 8.13 and 8.14.)

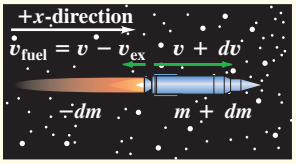
$$\vec{r}_{cm} = \frac{m_1\vec{r}_1 + m_2\vec{r}_2 + m_3\vec{r}_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i\vec{r}_i}{\sum_i m_i} \tag{8.29}$$

$$\vec{P} = m_1\vec{v}_1 + m_2\vec{v}_2 + m_3\vec{v}_3 + \cdots = M\vec{v}_{cm} \tag{8.32}$$

$$\Sigma\vec{F}_{ext} = M\vec{a}_{cm} \tag{8.34}$$



Rocket propulsion: In rocket propulsion, the mass of a rocket changes as the fuel is used up and ejected from the rocket. Analysis of the motion of the rocket must include the momentum carried away by the spent fuel as well as the momentum of the rocket itself. (See Examples 8.15 and 8.16.)



Chapter 8 Media Assets

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE VARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 8.4, 8.5, and 8.6 (Section 8.2) before attempting these problems.

VP8.6.1 You hold glider A of mass 0.125 kg and glider B of mass 0.375 kg at rest on an air track with a compressed spring of negligible mass between them. When you release the gliders, the spring pushes them apart. (a) Once the gliders are no longer in contact with the spring, glider A is moving to the right at 0.600 m/s. What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of glider B at this time? (b) Glider A moving to the right at 0.600 m/s then collides head-on with a third glider C of mass 0.750 kg that is moving to the left at 0.400 m/s. After this collision, glider C is moving to the left at 0.150 m/s. What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of glider A after this collision?

VP8.6.2 Two hockey players skating on essentially frictionless ice collide head-on. Madeleine, of mass 65.0 kg, is moving at 6.00 m/s to the east just before the collision and at 3.00 m/s to the west just after the collision. Buffy, of mass 55.0 kg, is moving at 3.50 m/s to the east just after the collision. (a) Find Buffy's velocity (magnitude and direction) just before the collision. (b) What are the changes in the velocities of the two hockey players during the collision? Take east to be the positive direction. Who has the greater magnitude of velocity change: more massive Madeleine or less massive Buffy?

VP8.6.3 A 2.40 kg stone is sliding in the $+x$-direction on a horizontal, frictionless surface. It collides with a 4.00 kg stone at rest. After the collision the 2.40 kg stone is moving at 3.60 m/s at an angle of 30.0° measured from the $+x$-direction toward the $+y$-direction, and the 4.00 kg stone is moving at an angle of 45.0° measured from the $+x$-direction toward the $-y$-direction. (a) What is the y-component of momentum of the 2.40 kg stone after the collision? What must be the y-component of momentum of the 4.00 kg stone after the collision? (b) What is the speed of the 4.00 kg stone after the collision? (c) What is the x-component of the total momentum of the two stones after the collision? (d) What is the speed of the 2.40 kg stone before the collision?

VP8.6.4 A hockey puck of mass m is moving in the $+x$-direction at speed v_{P1} on a frictionless, horizontal surface. It collides with a stone of mass $2m$ that is initially at rest. After the collision the hockey puck is moving at an angle θ measured from the $+x$-direction toward the $+y$-direction, and the stone is moving at the same angle θ but measured from the $+x$-direction toward the $-y$-direction. (a) In order for the y-component of momentum to be conserved, what must be the ratio of the final speed v_{S2} of the stone to the final speed v_{P2} of the hockey puck? (b) Use conservation of the x-component of momentum to find v_{S2} and v_{P2} in terms of v_{P1} and θ.

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 8.7, 8.8, and 8.9 (Section 8.3) before attempting these problems.

VP8.9.1 Two blocks of clay, one of mass 1.00 kg and one of mass 4.00 kg, undergo a completely inelastic collision. Before the collision one of the blocks is at rest and the other block is moving with kinetic energy 32.0 J. (a) If the 4.00 kg block is initially at rest and the 1.00 kg block is moving, what is the initial speed of the 1.00 kg block? What is the common final speed of the two blocks? How much kinetic energy is lost in the collision? (b) If the 1.00 kg block is initially at rest and the 4.00 kg block is moving, what is the initial speed of the 4.00 kg block? What is the common final speed of the two blocks? How much kinetic energy is lost in the collision? (c) In which case is more of the initial kinetic energy lost in a completely inelastic collision: a moving object collides (i) with a heavier object at rest or (ii) with a lighter object at rest?

VP8.9.2 A 0.500 kg block of cheese sliding on a frictionless tabletop collides with and sticks to a 0.200 kg apple. Before the collision the cheese was moving at 1.40 m/s and the apple was at rest. The cheese and apple then slide together off the edge of the table and fall to the floor 0.600 m below. (a) Find the speed of the cheese and apple just after the collision. In this collision, what is conserved: momentum, total mechanical energy, both, or neither? (b) What is the speed of the cheese and apple just before they hit the floor? During the fall from the tabletop to the floor, what is conserved: momentum, total mechanical energy, both, or neither?

VP8.9.3 A 2.40 kg can of coffee moving at 1.50 m/s in the $+x$-direction on a kitchen counter collides head-on with a 1.20 kg box of macaroni that is initially at rest. After the collision the can of coffee is moving at 0.825 m/s in the $+x$-direction. (a) What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the box of macaroni after the collision? (b) What are the kinetic energies of the can before and after the collision, and of the box after the collision? (c) Is this collision elastic, inelastic, or completely inelastic? How can you tell?

VP8.9.4 A block of mass m moving due east at speed v collides with and sticks to a block of mass $2m$ that is moving at the same speed v but in a direction 45.0° north of east. Find the direction in which the two blocks move after the collision.

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 8.13 and 8.14 (Section 8.5) before attempting these problems.

VP8.14.1 Find the x- and y-coordinates of the center of mass of a system composed of the following particles: a 0.500 kg particle at the origin; a 1.25 kg particle at $x = 0.150$ m, $y = 0.200$ m; and a 0.750 kg particle at $x = 0.200$ m, $y = -0.800$ m.

VP8.14.2 Three objects lie along the x-axis. A 3.00 kg object is at the origin, a 2.00 kg object is at $x = 1.50$ m, and a 1.20 kg object is at an unknown position. The center of mass of the system of three objects is at $x = -0.200$ m. What is the position of the 1.20 kg object?

VP8.14.3 You hold a 0.125 kg glider A and a 0.500 kg glider B at rest on an air track with a compressed spring of negligible mass between them. When you release the gliders, the spring pushes them apart so that they move in opposite directions. When glider A has moved 0.960 m to the left from its starting position, how far to the right from its starting position has glider B moved?

VP8.14.4 Three objects each have mass m. Each object feels a force from the other two, but not from any other object. Initially the first object is at $x = -L$, $y = 0$; the second object is at $x = +L$, $y = 0$; and the third object is at $x = 0$, $y = L$. At a later time the first object is at $x = -L/3$, $y = +L/4$; and the second object is at $x = +L/2$, $y = -L$. At this later time, where is the third object?

BRIDGING PROBLEM One Collision After Another

Sphere A, of mass 0.600 kg, is initially moving to the right at 4.00 m/s. Sphere B, of mass 1.80 kg, is initially to the right of sphere A and moving to the right at 2.00 m/s. After the two spheres collide, sphere B is moving at 3.00 m/s in the same direction as before. (a) What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of sphere A after this collision? (b) Is this collision elastic or inelastic? (c) Sphere B then has an off-center collision with sphere C, which has mass 1.20 kg and is initially at rest. After this collision, sphere B is moving at 19.0° to its initial direction at 2.00 m/s. What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of sphere C after this collision? (d) What is the impulse (magnitude and direction) imparted to sphere B by sphere C when they collide? (e) Is this second collision elastic or inelastic? (f) What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the center of mass of the system of three spheres (A, B, and C) after the second collision? No external forces act on any of the spheres in this problem.

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Momentum is conserved in these collisions. Can you explain why?
2. Choose the x- and y-axes, and use your choice of axes to draw three figures that show the spheres (i) before the first collision, (ii) after the first collision but before the second collision, and (iii) after the second collision. Assign subscripts to values in each of situations (i), (ii), and (iii).
3. Make a list of the target variables, and choose the equations that you'll use to solve for these.

EXECUTE

4. Solve for the velocity of sphere A after the first collision. Does A slow down or speed up in the collision? Does this make sense?
5. Now that you know the velocities of both A and B after the first collision, decide whether or not this collision is elastic. (How will you do this?)
6. The second collision is two-dimensional, so you'll have to demand that *both* components of momentum are conserved. Use this to find the speed and direction of sphere C after the second collision. (*Hint:* After the first collision, sphere B maintains the same velocity until it hits sphere C.)
7. Use the definition of impulse to find the impulse imparted to sphere B by sphere C. Remember that impulse is a vector.
8. Use the same technique that you employed in step 5 to decide whether the second collision is elastic.
9. Find the velocity of the center of mass after the second collision.

EVALUATE

10. Compare the directions of the vectors you found in steps 6 and 7. Is this a coincidence? Why or why not?
11. Find the velocity of the center of mass before and after the first collision. Compare to your result from step 9. Again, is this a coincidence? Why or why not?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q8.1 In splitting logs with a hammer and wedge, is a heavy hammer more effective than a lighter hammer? Why?

Q8.2 Suppose you catch a baseball and then someone invites you to catch a bowling ball with either the same momentum or the same kinetic energy as the baseball. Which would you choose? Explain.

Q8.3 When rain falls from the sky, what happens to its momentum as it hits the ground? Is your answer also valid for Newton's famous apple?

Q8.4 A car has the same kinetic energy when it is traveling south at 30 m/s as when it is traveling northwest at 30 m/s. Is the momentum of the car the same in both cases? Explain.

Q8.5 A truck is accelerating as it speeds down the highway. One inertial frame of reference is attached to the ground with its origin at a fence post. A second frame of reference is attached to a police car that is traveling down the highway at constant velocity. Is the momentum of the truck the same in these two reference frames? Explain. Is the rate of change of the truck's momentum the same in these two frames? Explain.

Q8.6 (a) If the momentum of a *single* point object is equal to zero, must the object's kinetic energy also be zero? (b) If the momentum of a *pair* of point objects is equal to zero, must the kinetic energy of those objects also be zero? (c) If the kinetic energy of a pair of point objects is equal to zero, must the momentum of those objects also be zero? Explain your reasoning in each case.

Q8.7 A woman holding a large rock stands on a frictionless, horizontal sheet of ice. She throws the rock with speed v_0 at an angle α above the horizontal. Consider the system consisting of the woman plus the rock. Is the momentum of the system conserved? Why or why not? Is any component of the momentum of the system conserved? Again, why or why not?

Q8.8 In Example 8.7 (Section 8.3), where the two gliders of Fig. 8.18 stick together after the collision, the collision is inelastic because $K_2 < K_1$. In Example 8.5 (Section 8.2), is the collision inelastic? Explain.

Q8.9 In a completely inelastic collision between two objects, where the objects stick together after the collision, is it possible for the final kinetic energy of the system to be zero? If so, give an example in which this would occur. If the final kinetic energy is zero, what must the initial momentum of the system be? Is the initial kinetic energy of the system zero? Explain.

Q8.10 Since for a particle the kinetic energy is given by $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ and the momentum by $\vec{\boldsymbol{P}} = m\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$, it is easy to show that $K = p^2/2m$. How, then, is it possible to have an event during which the total momentum of the system is constant but the total kinetic energy changes?

Q8.11 In each of Examples 8.10, 8.11, and 8.12 (Section 8.4), verify that the relative velocity vector of the two objects has the same magnitude before and after the collision. In each case, what happens to the *direction* of the relative velocity vector?

Q8.12 A glass dropped on the floor is more likely to break if the floor is concrete than if it is wood. Why? (Refer to Fig. 8.3b.)

Q8.13 In Fig. 8.23b, the kinetic energy of the Ping-Pong ball is larger after its interaction with the bowling ball than before. From where does the extra energy come? Describe the event in terms of conservation of energy.

Q8.14 A machine gun is fired at a steel plate. Is the average force on the plate from the bullet impact greater if the bullets bounce off or if they are squashed and stick to the plate? Explain.

Q8.15 A net external force of 4 N acts on an object initially at rest for 0.25 s and gives it a final speed of 5 m/s. How could a net external force of 2 N produce the same final speed?

Q8.16 A net external force with x-component $\sum F_x$ acts on an object from time t_1 to time t_2. The x-component of the momentum of the object is the same at t_1 as it is at t_2, but $\sum F_x$ is not zero at all times between t_1 and t_2. What can you say about the graph of $\sum F_x$ versus t?

Q8.17 A tennis player hits a tennis ball with a racket. Consider the system made up of the ball and the racket. Is the total momentum of the system the same just before and just after the hit? Is the total momentum just after the hit the same as 2 s later, when the ball is in midair at the high point of its trajectory? Explain any differences between the two cases.

Q8.18 In Example 8.4 (Section 8.2), consider the system consisting of the rifle plus the bullet. What is the speed of the system's center of mass after the rifle is fired? Explain.

Q8.19 An egg is released from rest from the roof of a building and falls to the ground. As the egg falls, what happens to the momentum of the system of the egg plus the earth?

Q8.20 A woman stands in the middle of a perfectly smooth, frictionless, frozen lake. She can set herself in motion by throwing things, but suppose she has nothing to throw. Can she propel herself to shore *without* throwing anything?

Q8.21 At the highest point in its parabolic trajectory, a shell explodes into two fragments. Is it possible for *both* fragments to fall straight down after the explosion? Why or why not?

Q8.22 When an object breaks into two pieces (explosion, radioactive decay, recoil, etc.), the lighter fragment gets more kinetic energy than the heavier one. This is a consequence of momentum conservation, but can you also explain it by using Newton's laws of motion?

Q8.23 An apple falls from a tree and feels no air resistance. As it is falling, which of these statements about it are true? (a) Only its momentum is conserved; (b) only its total mechanical energy is conserved; (c) both its momentum and its total mechanical energy are conserved; (d) its kinetic energy is conserved.

Q8.24 Two pieces of clay collide and stick together. During the collision, which of these statements are true? (a) Only the momentum of the clay is conserved; (b) only the total mechanical energy of the clay is conserved; (c) both the momentum and the total mechanical energy of the clay are conserved; (d) the kinetic energy of the clay is conserved.

Q8.25 Two objects of mass M and $5M$ are at rest on a horizontal, frictionless table with a compressed spring of negligible mass between them. When the spring is released, which of the following statements are true? (a) The two objects receive equal magnitudes of momentum; (b) the two objects receive equal amounts of kinetic energy from the spring; (c) the heavier object gains more kinetic energy than the lighter object; (d) the lighter object gains more kinetic energy than the heavier object. Explain your reasoning in each case.

Q8.26 A very heavy SUV collides head-on with a very light compact car. Which of these statements about the collision are correct? (a) The amount of kinetic energy lost by the SUV is equal to the amount of kinetic energy gained by the compact; (b) the amount of momentum lost by the SUV is equal to the amount of momentum gained by the compact; (c) the compact feels a considerably greater force during the collision than the SUV does; (d) both cars lose the same amount of kinetic energy.

EXERCISES

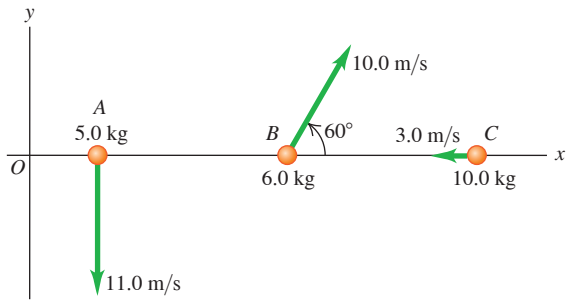
Section 8.1 Momentum and Impulse

8.1 • (a) What is the magnitude of the momentum of a 10,000 kg truck whose speed is 12.0 m/s? (b) What speed would a 2000 kg SUV have to attain in order to have (i) the same momentum? (ii) the same kinetic energy?

8.2 • In a certain track and field event, the shotput has a mass of 7.50 kg and is released with a speed of 16.0 m/s at 40.0° above the horizontal over a competitor's straight left leg. What are the initial horizontal and vertical components of the momentum of this shotput?

8.3 • Objects A, B, and C are moving as shown in **Fig. E8.3**. Find the x- and y-components of the net momentum of the particles if we define the system to consist of (a) A and C, (b) B and C, (c) all three objects.

Figure **E8.3**



8.4 • Two vehicles are approaching an intersection. One is a 2300 kg pickup traveling at 14.0 m/s from east to west (the $-x$-direction), and the other is a 1600 kg sedan going from south to north (the $+y$-direction) at 24.0 m/s. (a) Find the x- and y-components of the net momentum of this system. (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the net momentum?

8.5 • In a game of American football, one 110 kg lineman is running to the right at 2.65 m/s while another 125 kg lineman is running directly toward him at 2.80 m/s. What are (a) the magnitude and direction of the net momentum of these two athletes, and (b) their total kinetic energy?

8.6 •• BIO **Biomechanics.** The mass of a regulation tennis ball is 57 g (although it can vary slightly), and tests have shown that the ball is in contact with the tennis racket for 30 ms. (This number can also vary, depending on the racket and swing.) We shall assume a 30.0 ms contact time. One of the fastest-known served tennis balls was served by "Big Bill" Tilden in 1931, and its speed was measured to be 73 m/s. (a) What impulse and what total force did Big Bill exert on the tennis ball in his record serve? (b) If Big Bill's opponent returned his serve with a speed of 55 m/s, what total force and what impulse did he exert on the ball, assuming only horizontal motion?

8.7 • **Force of a Golf Swing.** A 0.0450 kg golf ball initially at rest is given a speed of 24.9 m/s when a club strikes it. If the club and ball are in contact for 2.40 ms, what average force acts on the ball? Is the effect of the ball's weight during the time of contact significant? Why or why not?

8.8 • **Force of a Baseball Swing.** A baseball has mass 0.143 kg. (a) If the velocity of a pitched ball has a magnitude of 40.5 m/s and the batted ball's velocity is 54.5 m/s in the opposite direction, find the magnitude of the change in momentum of the ball and of the impulse applied to it by the bat. (b) If the ball remains in contact with the bat for 1.50 ms, find the magnitude of the average force applied by the bat.

8.9 • A 0.160 kg hockey puck is moving on an icy, frictionless, horizontal surface. At $t = 0$, the puck is moving to the right at 3.00 m/s. (a) Calculate the velocity of the puck (magnitude and direction) after a force of 25.0 N directed to the right has been applied for 0.050 s. (b) If, instead, a force of 12.0 N directed to the left is applied from $t = 0$ to $t = 0.050$ s, what is the final velocity of the puck?

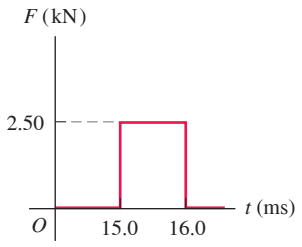
8.10 •• A bat strikes a 0.145 kg baseball. Just before impact, the ball is traveling horizontally to the right at 40.0 m/s; when it leaves the bat, the ball is traveling to the left at an angle of 30° above horizontal with a speed of 52.0 m/s. If the ball and bat are in contact for 1.75 ms, find the horizontal and vertical components of the average force on the ball.

8.11 • **CALC** At time $t = 0$ a 2150 kg rocket in outer space fires an engine that exerts an increasing force on it in the $+x$-direction. This force obeys the equation $F_x = At^2$, where t is time, and has a magnitude of 781.25 N when $t = 1.25$ s. (a) Find the SI value of the constant A, including its units. (b) What impulse does the engine exert on the rocket during the 1.50 s interval starting 2.00 s after the engine is fired? (c) By how much does the rocket's velocity change during this interval? Assume constant mass.

8.12 •• A packing crate with mass 80.0 kg is at rest on a horizontal, frictionless surface. At $t = 0$ a net horizontal force in the $+x$-direction is applied to the crate. The force has a constant value of 80.0 N for 12.0 s and then decreases linearly with time so it becomes zero after an additional 6.00 s. What is the final speed of the crate, 18.0 s after the force was first applied?

8.13 • A 2.00 kg stone is sliding to the right on a frictionless, horizontal surface at 6.00 m/s when it is suddenly struck by an object that exerts a large horizontal force on it for a short period of time. The graph in **Fig. E8.13** shows the magnitude of this force as a function of time. (a) What impulse does this force exert on the stone? (b) Just after the force stops acting, find the magnitude and direction of the stone's velocity if the force acts (i) to the right or (ii) to the left.

Figure **E8.13**



8.14 •• **CALC** Starting at $t = 0$, a horizontal net external force $\vec{F} = (0.280\ \text{N/s})t\hat{\imath} + (-0.450\ \text{N/s}^2)t^2\hat{\jmath}$ is applied to a box that has an initial momentum $\vec{p} = (-3.00\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s})\hat{\imath} + (4.00\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s})\hat{\jmath}$. What is the momentum of the box at $t = 2.00$ s?

8.15 • A young ice skater with mass 40.0 kg has fallen and is sliding on the frictionless ice of a skating rink with a speed of 20.0 m/s. (a) What is the magnitude of her linear momentum when she has this speed? (b) What is her kinetic energy? (c) What constant net horizontal force must be applied to the skater to bring her to rest in 5.00 s?

Section 8.2 Conservation of Momentum

8.16 • A 65.5 kg astronaut is doing a repair in space on the orbiting space station. She throws a 2.50 kg tool away from her at 3.10 m/s relative to the space station. With what speed and in what direction will she begin to move?

8.17 •• The expanding gases that leave the muzzle of a rifle also contribute to the recoil. A .30 caliber bullet has mass 7.20×10^{-3} kg and a speed of 601 m/s relative to the muzzle when fired from a rifle that has mass 2.90 kg. The loosely held rifle recoils at a speed of 1.95 m/s relative to the earth. Find the momentum of the propellant gases in a coordinate system attached to the earth as they leave the muzzle of the rifle.

8.18 • Two figure skaters, one weighing 625 N and the other 725 N, push off against each other on frictionless ice. (a) If the heavier skater travels at 1.50 m/s, how fast will the lighter one travel? (b) How much kinetic energy is "created" during the skaters' maneuver, and where does this energy come from?

8.19 • **BIO Animal Propulsion.** Squids and octopuses propel themselves by expelling water. They do this by keeping water in a cavity and then suddenly contracting the cavity to force out the water through an opening. A 7.50 kg squid (including the water in the cavity) at rest suddenly sees a dangerous predator. (a) If the squid has 1.65 kg of water in its cavity, at what speed must it expel this water suddenly to achieve a speed of 2.70 m/s to escape the predator? Ignore any drag effects of the surrounding water. (b) How much kinetic energy does the squid create by this maneuver?

8.20 •• You are standing on a sheet of ice that covers your courtyard; there is negligible friction between your feet and the ice. A friend throws you a 0.400 kg ball that is traveling horizontally at 10.0 m/s. Your mass is 70.0 kg. (a) If you catch the ball, with what speed do you and the ball move afterward? (b) If the ball hits you and bounces off your chest, so afterward it is moving horizontally at 7.0 m/s in the opposite direction, what is your speed after the collision?

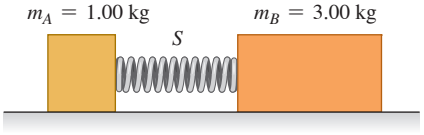
8.21 •• On a frictionless, horizontal air table, puck A (with mass 0.245 kg) is moving toward puck B (with mass 0.360 kg), which is initially at rest. After the collision, puck A has a velocity of 0.118 m/s to the left, and puck B has a velocity of 0.660 m/s to the right. (a) What was the speed of puck A before the collision? (b) Calculate the change in the total kinetic energy of the system that occurs during the collision.

8.22 •• When cars are equipped with flexible bumpers, they will bounce off each other during low-speed collisions, thus causing less damage. In one such accident, a 1800 kg car traveling to the right at 1.60 m/s collides with a 1450 kg car going to the left at 1.10 m/s. Measurements show that the heavier car's speed just after the collision was 0.270 m/s in its original direction. Ignore any road friction during the collision. (a) What was the speed of the lighter car just after the collision? (b) Calculate the change in the combined kinetic energy of the two-car system during this collision.

8.23 •• Two identical 1.60 kg masses are pressed against opposite ends of a light spring of force constant 1.85 N/cm, compressing the spring by 20.0 cm from its normal length. Find the speed of each mass when it has moved free of the spring on a frictionless, horizontal table.

8.24 • Block A in **Fig. E8.24** has mass 1.00 kg, and block B has mass 3.00 kg. The blocks are forced together, compressing a spring S between them; then the system is released from rest on a level, frictionless surface. The spring, which has negligible mass, is not fastened to either block and drops to the surface after it has expanded. Block B acquires a speed of 1.10 m/s. (a) What is the final speed of block A? (b) How much potential energy was stored in the compressed spring?

Figure **E8.24**



8.25 •• A hunter on a frozen, essentially frictionless pond uses a rifle that shoots 4.20 g bullets at 975 m/s. The mass of the hunter (including his gun) is 69.5 kg, and the hunter holds tight to the gun after firing it. Find the recoil velocity of the hunter if he fires the rifle (a) horizontally and (b) at 58.0° above the horizontal.

8.26 • An atomic nucleus suddenly bursts apart (fissions) into two pieces. Piece A, of mass m_A, travels off to the left with speed v_A. Piece B, of mass m_B, travels off to the right with speed v_B. (a) Use conservation of momentum to solve for v_B in terms of m_A, m_B, and v_A. (b) Use the results of part (a) to show that $K_A/K_B = m_B/m_A$,where K_A and K_B are the kinetic energies of the two pieces.

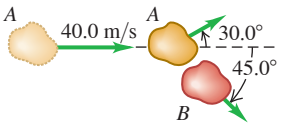
8.27 •• Two ice skaters, Daniel (mass 70.0 kg) and Rebecca (mass 45.0 kg), are practicing. Daniel stops to tie his shoelace and, while at rest, is struck by Rebecca, who is moving at 14.0 m/s before she collides with him. After the collision, Rebecca has a velocity of magnitude 8.00 m/s at an angle of 55.1° from her initial direction. Both skaters move on the frictionless, horizontal surface of the rink. (a) What are the magnitude and direction of Daniel's velocity after the collision? (b) What is the change in total kinetic energy of the two skaters as a result of the collision?

8.28 •• You are standing on a large sheet of frictionless ice and holding a large rock. In order to get off the ice, you throw the rock so it has velocity 12.9 m/s relative to the earth at an angle of 31.0° above the horizontal. If your mass is 67.0 kg and the rock's mass is 14.9 kg, what is your speed after you throw the rock? (See Discussion Question Q8.7.)

8.29 •• You (mass 55 kg) are riding a frictionless skateboard (mass 5.0 kg) in a straight line at a speed of 4.5 m/s. A friend standing on a balcony above you drops a 2.5 kg sack of flour straight down into your arms. (a) What is your new speed while you hold the sack? (b) Since the sack was dropped vertically, how can it affect your *horizontal* motion? Explain. (c) Now you try to rid yourself of the extra weight by throwing the sack straight up. What will be your speed while the sack is in the air? Explain.

8.30 •• **Asteroid Collision.** Two asteroids of equal mass in the asteroid belt between Mars and Jupiter collide with a glancing blow. Asteroid A, which was initially traveling at 40.0 m/s, is deflected 30.0° from its original direction, while asteroid B, which was initially at rest, travels at 45.0° to the original direction of A (**Fig. E8.30**). (a) Find the speed of each asteroid after the collision. (b) What fraction of the original kinetic energy of asteroid A dissipates during this collision?

Figure **E8.30**



Section 8.3 Momentum Conservation and Collisions

8.31 • An ice hockey forward with mass 70.0 kg is skating due north with a speed of 5.5 m/s. As the forward approaches the net for a slap shot, a defensive player (mass 110 kg) skates toward him in order to apply a body-check. The defensive player is traveling south at 4.0 m/s just before they collide. If the two players become intertwined and move together after they collide, in what direction and at what speed do they move after the collision? Friction between the two players and the ice can be neglected.

8.32 • Two skaters collide and grab on to each other on frictionless ice. One of them, of mass 66.0 kg, is moving to the right at 2.00 m/s, while the other, of mass 65.0 kg, is moving to the left at 2.80 m/s. What are the magnitude and direction of the velocity of these skaters just after they collide?

8.33 •• A 16.0 kg fish swimming at 1.10 m/s suddenly gobbles up a 4.40 kg fish that is initially stationary. Ignore any drag effects of the water. (a) Find the speed of the large fish just after it eats the small one. (b) How much mechanical energy was dissipated during this meal?

8.34 •• **CP** An apple with mass M is hanging at rest from the lower end of a light vertical rope. A dart of mass $M/4$ is shot vertically upward, strikes the bottom of the apple, and remains embedded in it. If the speed of the dart is v_0 just before it strikes the apple, how high does the apple move upward because of its collision with the dart?

8.35 •• Two large blocks of wood are sliding toward each other on the frictionless surface of a frozen pond. Block A has mass 4.00 kg and is initially sliding east at 2.00 m/s. Block B has mass 6.00 kg and is initially sliding west at 2.50 m/s. The blocks collide head-on. After the collision block B is sliding east at 0.50 m/s. What is the decrease in the total kinetic energy of the two blocks as a result of the collision?

8.36 • A 1050 kg sports car is moving westbound at 13.0 m/s on a level road when it collides with a 6320 kg truck driving east on the same road at 11.0 m/s. The two vehicles remain locked together after the collision. (a) What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the two vehicles just after the collision? (b) At what speed should the truck have been moving so that both it and the car are stopped in the collision? (c) Find the change in kinetic energy of the system of two vehicles for the situations of part (a) and part (b). For which situation is the change in kinetic energy greater in magnitude?

8.37 •• On a very muddy football field, a 90 kg defender tackles a 75 kg forward. Immediately before the collision, the defender is slipping with a velocity of 8.8 m/s north and the forward is sliding with a velocity of 7.2 m/s east. What is the velocity (magnitude and direction) at which the two players move together immediately after the collision?

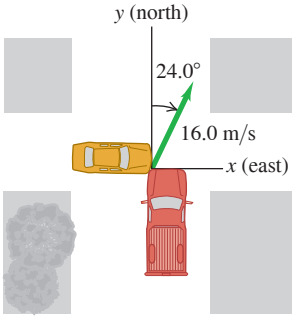
8.38 •• **Accident Analysis.** Two cars collide at an intersection. Car A, with a mass of 1900 kg, is going from west to east, while car B, of mass 1500 kg, is going from north to south at 16 m/s. As a result, the two cars become enmeshed and move as one. As an expert witness, you inspect the scene and determine that, after the collision, the enmeshed cars moved at an angle of 60° south of east from the point of impact. (a) How fast were the enmeshed cars moving just after the collision? (b) How fast was car A going just before the collision?

8.39 •• Jack (mass 55.0 kg) is sliding due east with speed 8.00 m/s on the surface of a frozen pond. He collides with Jill (mass 48.0 kg), who is initially at rest. After the collision, Jack is traveling at 5.00 m/s in a direction 34.0° north of east. What is Jill's velocity (magnitude and direction) after the collision? Ignore friction.

8.40 •• **BIO Bird Defense.** To protect their young in the nest, peregrine falcons will fly into birds of prey (such as ravens) at high speed. In one such episode, a 570 g falcon flying at 18.0 m/s hit a 1.40 kg raven flying at 9.0 m/s. The falcon hit the raven at right angles to its original path and bounced back at 5.0 m/s. (These figures were estimated by the author as he watched this attack occur in northern New Mexico.) (a) By what angle did the falcon change the raven's direction of motion? (b) What was the raven's speed right after the collision?

8.41 • At the intersection of Newcastle Road and University Road, a yellow supermini car with mass 950 kg traveling east on University collides with a red pick-up truck with mass 1900 kg that is traveling north on Newcastle and has run a red light (**Fig. E8.41**). The two vehicles stick together as a result of the collision, and the wreckage slides at 16.0 m/s in the direction 24.0° east of north. Calculate the speed of each vehicle before the collision. The collision occurs during a heavy rainstorm; ignore friction forces between the vehicles and the wet road.

Figure **E8.41**

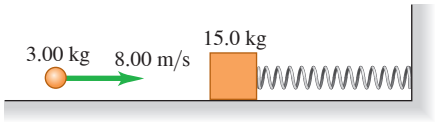


8.42 •• A 5.00 g bullet is fired horizontally into a 1.20 kg wooden block resting on a horizontal surface. The coefficient of kinetic friction between block and surface is 0.20. The bullet remains embedded in the block, which is observed to slide 0.310 m along the surface before stopping. What was the initial speed of the bullet?

8.43 •• **A Ballistic Pendulum.** A 12.0 g rifle bullet is fired with a speed of 380 m/s into a ballistic pendulum with mass 9.00 kg, suspended from a cord 70.0 cm long (see Example 8.8 in Section 8.3). Compute (a) the vertical height through which the pendulum rises, (b) the initial kinetic energy of the bullet, and (c) the kinetic energy of the bullet and pendulum immediately after the bullet becomes embedded in the wood.

8.44 •• **Combining Conservation Laws.** A 15.0 kg block is attached to a very light horizontal spring of force constant 575.0 N/m and is resting on a frictionless horizontal table (**Fig. E8.44**). Suddenly it is struck by a 3.00 kg stone traveling horizontally at 8.00 m/s to the right, whereupon the stone rebounds at 2.00 m/s horizontally to the left. Find the maximum distance that the block will compress the spring after the collision.

Figure **E8.44**



8.45 •• **CP** A 4.00 kg ornament is hanging by a 1.40 m wire when the ornament is suddenly hit by a 3.00 kg missile traveling horizontally at 14.0 m/s. The missile embeds itself in the ornament during the collision. What is the tension in the wire immediately after the collision?

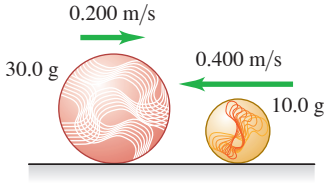
Section 8.4 Elastic Collisions

8.46 •• A 0.160 kg glider is moving to the right with a speed of 0.90 m/s on a frictionless, horizontal air track. The glider has a head-on collision with a 0.291 kg glider that is moving to the left with a speed of 2.27 m/s. Find the final velocity (magnitude and direction) of each glider if the collision is elastic.

8.47 •• Blocks A (mass 6.00 kg) and B (mass 10.50 kg) move on a frictionless, horizontal surface. Initially, block B is at rest and block A is moving toward it at 7.00 m/s. The blocks are equipped with ideal spring bumpers, as in Example 8.10 (Section 8.4). The collision is head-on, so all motion before and after the collision is along a straight line. (a) Find the maximum energy stored in the spring bumpers and the velocity of each block at that time. (b) Find the velocity of each block after they have moved apart.

8.48 • A 10.0 g marble slides to the left at a speed of 0.400 m/s on the frictionless, horizontal surface of an icy New York sidewalk and has a head-on, elastic collision with a larger 30.0 g marble sliding to the right at a speed of 0.200 m/s (**Fig. E8.48**). (a) Find the velocity of each marble (magnitude and direction) after the collision. (Since the collision is head-on, all motion is along a line.) (b) Calculate the *change in momentum* (the momentum after the collision minus the momentum before the collision) for each marble. Compare your values for each marble. (c) Calculate the *change in kinetic energy* (the kinetic energy after the collision minus the kinetic energy before the collision) for each marble. Compare your values for each marble.

Figure **E8.48**



8.49 •• **Moderators.** Canadian nuclear reactors use *heavy water* moderators in which elastic collisions occur between the neutrons and deuterons of mass 2.0 u (see Example 8.11 in Section 8.4). (a) What is the speed of a neutron, expressed as a fraction of its original speed, after a head-on, elastic collision with a deuteron that is initially at rest? (b) What is its kinetic energy, expressed as a fraction of its original kinetic energy? (c) How many such successive collisions will reduce the speed of a neutron to 1/59,000 of its original value?

8.50 •• You are at the controls of a particle accelerator, sending a beam of 3.60×10^7 m/s protons (mass m) at a gas target of an unknown element. Your detector tells you that some protons bounce straight back after a collision with one of the nuclei of the unknown element. All such protons rebound with a speed of 3.30×10^7 m/s. Assume that the initial speed of the target nucleus is negligible and the collision is elastic. (a) Find the mass of one nucleus of the unknown element. Express your answer in terms of the proton mass m. (b) What is the speed of the unknown nucleus immediately after such a collision?

8.51 •• Object B is at rest when object A collides with it. The collision is one-dimensional and elastic. After the collision object B has half the velocity that object A had before the collision. (a) Which object has the greater mass? (b) How much greater? (c) If the velocity of object A before the collision was 6.0 m/s to the right, what is its velocity after the collision?

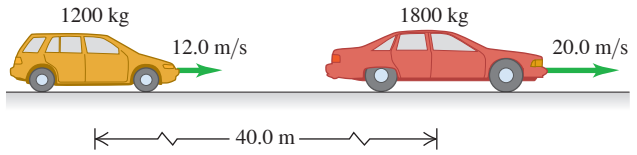
Section 8.5 Center of Mass

8.52 • Find the position of the center of mass of the system of the sun and Jupiter. (Since Jupiter is more massive than the rest of the solar planets combined, this is essentially the position of the center of mass of the solar system.) Does the center of mass lie inside or outside the sun? Use the data listed at the back of the book.

8.53 •• **Pluto and Charon.** Pluto's diameter is approximately 2370 km, and the diameter of its satellite Charon is 1250 km. Although the distance varies, they are often about 19,700 km apart, center to center. Assuming that both Pluto and Charon have the same composition and hence the same average density, find the location of the center of mass of this system relative to the center of Pluto.

8.54 • A 1200 kg SUV is moving along a straight highway at 12.0 m/s. Another car, with mass 1800 kg and speed 20.0 m/s, has its center of mass 40.0 m ahead of the center of mass of the SUV (**Fig. E8.54**). Find (a) the position of the center of mass of the system consisting of the two cars; (b) the magnitude of the system's total momentum, by using the given data; (c) the speed of the system's center of mass; (d) the system's total momentum, by using the speed of the center of mass. Compare your result with that of part (b).

Figure **E8.54**



8.55 • A uniform cube with mass 0.500 kg and volume 0.0270 m^3 is sitting on the floor. A uniform sphere with radius 0.400 m and mass 0.800 kg sits on top of the cube. How far is the center of mass of the two-object system above the floor?

8.56 • At one instant, the center of mass of a system of two particles is located on the x-axis at $x = 2.0$ m and has a velocity of $(5.0 \text{ m/s})\hat{\imath}$. One of the particles is at the origin. The other particle has a mass of 0.10 kg and is at rest on the x-axis at $x = 8.0$ m. (a) What is the mass of the particle at the origin? (b) Calculate the total momentum of this system. (c) What is the velocity of the particle at the origin?

8.57 •• In Example 8.14 (Section 8.5), Ramon pulls on the rope to give himself a speed of 1.10 m/s. What is James's speed?

8.58 • **CALC** A system consists of two particles. At $t = 0$ one particle is at the origin; the other, which has a mass of 0.50 kg, is on the y-axis at $y = 6.0$ m. At $t = 0$ the center of mass of the system is on the y-axis at $y = 2.4$ m. The velocity of the center of mass is given by $(0.75\text{m/s}^3)t^2\hat{\imath}$. (a) Find the total mass of the system. (b) Find the acceleration of the center of mass at any time t. (c) Find the net external force acting on the system at $t = 3.0$ s.

8.59 • **CALC** A radio-controlled model airplane has a momentum given by $[(-0.75 \text{ kg·m/s}^3)t^2 + (3.0 \text{ kg·m/s})]\hat{\imath} + (0.25 \text{ kg·m/s}^2)t\hat{\jmath}$. What are the x-, y-, and z-components of the net external force on the airplane?

8.60 •• You have three identical, uniform, square pieces of wood, each with side length L. You stack the three pieces of wood at the edge of the horizontal top of a table. The first block extends a distance $L/4$ past the edge of the table. The next block extends a distance $L/4$ past the edge of the first block, so a distance $L/2$ past the edge of the table. The third block extends a distance $L/4$ past the edge of the block beneath it, so $3L/4$ past the edge of the table. The stack is unstable if the center of mass of the stack extends beyond the edge of the table. Calculate the horizontal location of the center of mass of the three-block stack.

Section 8.6 Rocket Propulsion

8.61 •• A 70 kg astronaut floating in space in a 110 kg MMU (manned maneuvering unit) experiences an acceleration of 0.029 m/s^2 when he fires one of the MMU's thrusters. (a) If the speed of the escaping N_2 gas relative to the astronaut is 490 m/s, how much gas is used by the thruster in 5.0 s? (b) What is the thrust of the thruster?

8.62 • A small rocket burns 5.40×10^{-2} kg of fuel per second, ejecting it as a gas with a velocity relative to the rocket of magnitude 1550 m/s. (a) What is the thrust of the rocket? (b) Would the rocket operate in outer space where there is no atmosphere? If so, how would you steer it? Could you brake it?

PROBLEMS

8.63 •• **CP** A large shipping crate is at rest on the horizontal floor of a warehouse. The coefficient of static friction between the crate and the floor is $\mu_s = 0.500$; the coefficient of kinetic friction is $\mu_k = 0.300$. (a) Estimate the mass of the heaviest crate you could start sliding by pushing on it horizontally. Based on this estimate, what is the magnitude of the maximum force you can apply? (b) If you continue to push on the crate with a constant force equal to the force calculated in part (a), use the impulse–momentum theorem to calculate how long you must push on the crate to give it a speed of 8.0 m/s. Don't forget to take into account the kinetic friction force. (c) With the same force, how far would the crate travel before reaching a speed of 8.0 m/s? Use the work–energy theorem.

8.64 •• A steel ball with mass 36.0 g is dropped from a height of 2.07 m onto a horizontal steel slab. The ball rebounds to a height of 1.54 m. (a) Calculate the impulse delivered to the ball during impact. (b) If the ball is in contact with the slab for 2.50 ms, find the average force on the ball during impact.

8.65 •• Just before it is struck by a racket, a tennis ball weighing 0.560 N has a velocity of $(20.0 \text{ m/s})\hat{\imath} - (4.0 \text{ m/s})\hat{\jmath}$. During the 3.00 ms that the racket and ball are in contact, the net external force on the ball is constant and equal to $-(380 \text{ N})\hat{\imath} + (110 \text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$. What are the x- and y-components (a) of the impulse of the net external force applied to the ball; (b) of the final velocity of the ball?

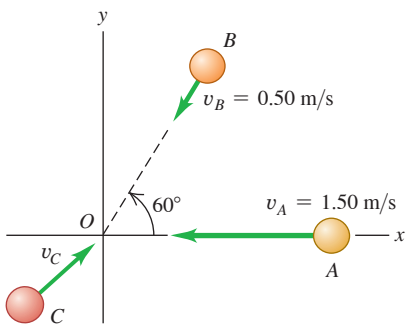
8.66 •• Starting at $t = 0$ a net external force in the $+x$-direction is applied to an object that has mass 2.00 kg. A graph of the force as a function of time is a straight line that passes through the origin and has slope 3.00 N/s. If the object is at rest at $t = 0$, what is the magnitude of the force when the object has reached a speed of 9.00 m/s?

8.67 •• Blocks A (mass 2.00 kg) and B (mass 10.00 kg, to the right of A) move on a frictionless, horizontal surface. Initially, block B is moving to the left at 0.500 m/s and block A is moving to the right at 2.00 m/s. The blocks are equipped with ideal spring bumpers, as in Example 8.10 (Section 8.4). The collision is head-on, so all motion before and after it is along a straight line. Find (a) the maximum energy stored in the spring bumpers and the velocity of each block at that time; (b) the velocity of each block after they have moved apart.

8.68 •• A railroad handcar is moving along straight, frictionless tracks with negligible air resistance. In the following cases, the car initially has a total mass (car and contents) of 150 kg and is traveling east with a velocity of magnitude 4.70 m/s. Find the *final velocity* of the car in each case, assuming that the handcar does not leave the tracks. (a) A 20.0 kg mass is thrown sideways out of the car with a velocity of magnitude 2.40 m/s relative to the car's initial velocity. (b) A 20.0 kg mass is thrown backward out of the car with a velocity of 4.70 m/s relative to the initial motion of the car. (c) A 20.0 kg mass is thrown into the car with a velocity of 6.30 m/s relative to the ground and opposite in direction to the initial velocity of the car.

8.69 • Spheres A (mass 0.020 kg), B (mass 0.030 kg), and C (mass 0.050 kg) are approaching the origin as they slide on a frictionless air table. The initial velocities of A and B are given in **Fig. P8.69**. All three spheres arrive at the origin at the same time and stick together. (a) What must the x- and y-components of the initial velocity of C be if all three objects are to end up moving at 0.50 m/s in the $+x$-direction after the collision? (b) If C has the velocity found in part (a), what is the change in the kinetic energy of the system of three spheres as a result of the collision?

Figure **P8.69**



8.70 •• Starting at $t = 0$ a net external force $F(t)$ in the $+x$-direction is applied to an object that has mass 3.00 kg and is initially at rest. The force is zero at $t = 0$ and increases linearly to 5.00 N at $t = 4.00$ s. The force then decreases linearly until it becomes zero at $t = 10.0$ s. (a) Draw a graph of F versus t from $t = 0$ to $t = 10.0$ s. (b) What is the speed of the object at $t = 10.0$ s?

8.71 •• **CP** An 8.00 kg block of wood sits at the edge of a frictionless table, 2.20 m above the floor. A 0.500 kg blob of clay slides along the length of the table with a speed of 24.0 m/s, strikes the block of wood, and sticks to it. The combined object leaves the edge of the table and travels to the floor. What horizontal distance has the combined object traveled when it reaches the floor?

8.72 ••• CP A small wooden block with mass 0.800 kg is suspended from the lower end of a light cord that is 1.60 m long. The block is initially at rest. A bullet with mass 12.0 g is fired at the block with a horizontal velocity v_0. The bullet strikes the block and becomes embedded in it. After the collision the combined object swings on the end of the cord. When the block has risen a vertical height of 0.800 m, the tension in the cord is 4.80 N. What was the initial speed v_0 of the bullet?

8.73 •• **Combining Conservation Laws.** A 5.00 kg chunk of ice is sliding at 12.0 m/s on the floor of an ice-covered valley when it collides with and sticks to another 5.00 kg chunk of ice that is initially at rest (**Fig. P8.73**). Since the valley is icy, there is no friction. After the collision, how high above the valley floor will the combined chunks go?

Figure P8.73

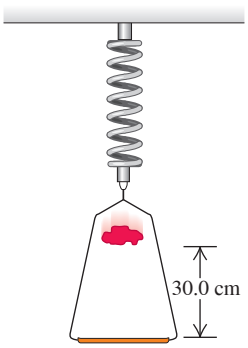
8.74 •• CP Block B (mass 4.00 kg) is at rest at the edge of a smooth platform, 2.60 m above the floor. Block A (mass 2.00 kg) is sliding with a speed of 8.00 m/s along the platform toward block B. A strikes B and rebounds with a speed of 2.00 m/s. The collision projects B horizontally off the platform. What is the speed of B just before it strikes the floor?

8.75 •• Two carts of equal mass are on a horizontal, frictionless air track. Initially cart A is moving toward stationary cart B with a speed of v_A. The carts undergo an inelastic collision, and after the collision the total kinetic energy of the two carts is one-half their initial total kinetic energy before the collision. What is the speed of each cart after the collision?

8.76 •• **Automobile Accident Analysis.** You are called as an expert witness to analyze the following auto accident: Car B, of mass 1900 kg, was stopped at a red light when it was hit from behind by car A, of mass 1500 kg. The cars locked bumpers during the collision and slid to a stop with brakes locked on all wheels. Measurements of the skid marks left by the tires showed them to be 7.15 m long. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the tires and the road was 0.65. (a) What was the speed of car A just before the collision? (b) If the speed limit was 60 km/h, was car A speeding, and if so, by how many kilometers per hour was it *exceeding* the speed limit?

8.77 •• **Accident Analysis**. A 1600 kg sedan goes through a wide intersection traveling from north to south when it is hit by a 2200 kg SUV traveling from east to west. The two cars become enmeshed due to the impact and slide as one thereafter. On-the-scene measurements show that the coefficient of kinetic friction between the tires of these cars and the pavement is 0.75, and the cars slide to a halt at a point 5.36 m west and 6.37 m south of the impact point. How fast was each car traveling just before the collision?

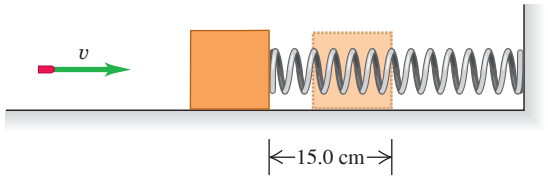
Figure P8.78



8.78 ••• CP A 0.150 kg frame, when suspended from a coil spring, stretches the spring 0.0400 m. A 0.200 kg lump of putty is dropped from rest onto the frame from a height of 30.0 cm (**Fig. P8.78**). Find the maximum distance the frame moves downward from its initial equilibrium position.

8.79 • A rifle bullet with mass 8.00 g strikes and embeds itself in a block with mass 0.992 kg that rests on a frictionless, horizontal surface and is attached to an ideal spring (**Fig. P8.79**). The impact compresses the spring 15.0 cm. Calibration of the spring shows that a force of 0.750 N is required to compress the spring 0.250 cm. (a) Find the magnitude of the block's velocity just after impact. (b) What was the initial speed of the bullet?

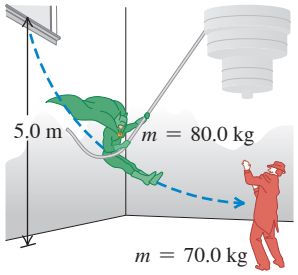
Figure P8.79



8.80 •• **A Ricocheting Bullet.** A 0.100 kg stone rests on a frictionless, horizontal surface. A bullet of mass 6.00 g, traveling horizontally at 350 m/s, strikes the stone and rebounds horizontally at right angles to its original direction with a speed of 250 m/s. (a) Compute the magnitude and direction of the velocity of the stone after it is struck. (b) Is the collision perfectly elastic?

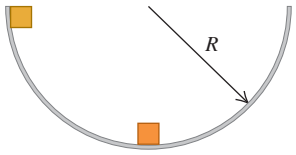
8.81 •• A movie stuntman (mass 80.0 kg) stands on a window ledge 5.0 m above the floor (**Fig. P8.81**). Grabbing a rope attached to a chandelier, he swings down to grapple with the movie's villain (mass 70.0 kg), who is standing directly under the chandelier. (Assume that the stuntman's center of mass moves downward 5.0 m. He releases the rope just as he reaches the villain.) (a) With what speed do the entwined foes start to slide across the floor? (b) If the coefficient of kinetic friction of their bodies with the floor is $\mu_k = 0.275$, how far do they slide?

Figure P8.81



8.82 •• CP Two identical masses are released from rest in a smooth hemispherical bowl of radius R from the positions shown in **Fig. P8.82**. Ignore friction between the masses and the surface of the bowl. If the masses stick together when they collide, how high above the bottom of the bowl will they go after colliding?

Figure P8.82



8.83 •• Objects A and B undergo a one-dimensional elastic collision. The initial speed of A is v_{Ai} and the initial speed of B is zero. Equations (8.24) and (8.25) give the final velocity components of the objects after the collision. Let $m_A = \alpha m_B$, where α is a constant. (a) What is the value of α if the final kinetic energy of B equals the initial kinetic energy of A? (b) What is α if the final kinetic energies of A and B are equal?

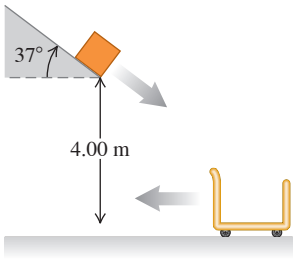
8.84 ••• CP A 22.00 kg lead sphere is hanging from a hook by a thin wire 4.00 m long and is free to swing in a complete circle. Suddenly it is struck horizontally by a 3.00 kg steel dart that embeds itself in the lead sphere. What must be the minimum initial speed of the dart so that the combination makes a complete circular loop after the collision?

8.85 •• A 4.00 g bullet, traveling horizontally with a velocity of magnitude 400 m/s, is fired into a wooden block with mass 0.800 kg, initially at rest on a level surface. The bullet passes through the block and emerges with its speed reduced to 190 m/s. The block slides a distance of 72.0 cm along the surface from its initial position. (a) What is the coefficient of kinetic friction between block and surface? (b) What is the decrease in kinetic energy of the bullet? (c) What is the kinetic energy of the block at the instant after the bullet passes through it?

8.86 •• A 5.00 g bullet is shot *through* a 1.00 kg wood block suspended on a string 2.00 m long. The center of mass of the block rises a distance of 0.38 cm. Find the speed of the bullet as it emerges from the block, along a horizontal, straight line, if its initial speed is 450 m/s.

8.87 •• CP In a shipping company distribution center, an open cart of mass 50.0 kg is rolling to the left at a speed of 5.00 m/s (**Fig. P8.87**). Ignore friction between the cart and the floor. A 15.0 kg package slides down a chute that is inclined at 37° from the horizontal and leaves the end of the chute with a speed of 3.00 m/s. The package lands in the cart and they roll together. If the lower end of the chute is a vertical distance of 4.00 m above the bottom of the cart, what are (a) the speed of the package just before it lands in the cart and (b) the final speed of the cart?

Figure **P8.87**



8.88 ••• **Neutron Decay**. A neutron at rest decays (breaks up) to a proton and an electron. Energy is released in the decay and appears as kinetic energy of the proton and electron. The mass of a proton is 1836 times the mass of an electron. What fraction of the total energy released goes into the kinetic energy of the proton?

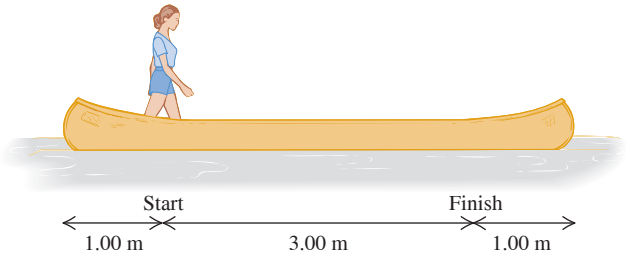
8.89 •• CP In a game of physics and skill, a rigid block (A) with mass m sits at rest at the edge of a frictionless air table, 1.20 m above the floor. You slide an identical block (B) with initial speed v_B toward A. The blocks have a head-on elastic collision, and block A leaves the table with a horizontal velocity. The goal of the game is to have block A land on a target on the floor. The target is a horizontal distance of 2.00 m from the edge of the table. What is the initial speed v_B that accomplishes this? Neglect air resistance.

8.90 •• Razia and Nivaan are sitting in a sleigh that is at rest on frictionless ice. Jonathan's weight is 800 N, Razia's weight is 600 N, and that of the sleigh is 1000 N. They see a poisonous spider on the floor of the sleigh and immediately jump off. Nivaan jumps to the left with a velocity of 5.00 m/s at 30.0° above the horizontal (relative to the ice), and Razia jumps to the right at 7.00 m/s at 36.9° above the horizontal (relative to the ice). Calculate the sleigh's horizontal velocity (magnitude and direction) after they jump out.

8.91 •• Friends Kemal and Ali stand at opposite ends of a uniform log that is floating in a lake. The log is 3.4 m long and has mass 280 kg. Kemal has mass 26.0 kg; Ali has mass 35.5 kg. Initially, the log and the two friends are at rest relative to the shore. Kemal then offers Ali a cookie, and Ali walks to Kemal's end of the log to get it. Relative to the shore, what distance has the log moved by the time Ali reaches Kemal? Ignore any horizontal force that the water exerts on the log, and assume that neither friend falls off the log.

8.92 •• A 45.0 kg woman stands up in a 60.0 kg canoe 5.00 m long. She walks from a point 1.00 m from one end to a point 1.00 m from the other end (**Fig. P8.92**). If you ignore resistance to motion of the canoe in the water, how far does the canoe move during this process?

Figure **P8.92**



8.93 •• CP Two sticky spheres are suspended from light ropes of length L that are attached to the ceiling at a common point. Sphere A has mass $2m$ and is hanging at rest with its rope vertical. Sphere B has mass m and is held so that its rope makes an angle with the vertical that puts B a vertical height H above A. Sphere B is released from rest and swings down, collides with sphere A, and sticks to it. In terms of H, what is the maximum height above the original position of A reached by the combined spheres after their collision?

8.94 •• CP In a fireworks display, a rocket is launched from the ground with a speed of 18.0 m/s and a direction of 51.0° above the horizontal. During the flight, the rocket explodes into two pieces of equal mass (see Fig. 8.32). (a) What horizontal distance from the launch point will the center of mass of the two pieces be after both have landed on the ground? (b) If one piece lands a horizontal distance of 26.0 m from the launch point, where does the other piece land?

8.95 •• A block with mass 0.500 kg sits at rest on a light but not long vertical spring that has spring constant 80.0 N/m and one end on the floor. (a) How much elastic potential energy is stored in the spring when the block is sitting at rest on it? (b) A second identical block is dropped onto the first from a height of 4.00 m above the first block and sticks to it. What is the maximum elastic potential energy stored in the spring during the motion of the blocks after the collision? (c) What is the maximum distance the first block moves down after the second block has landed on it?

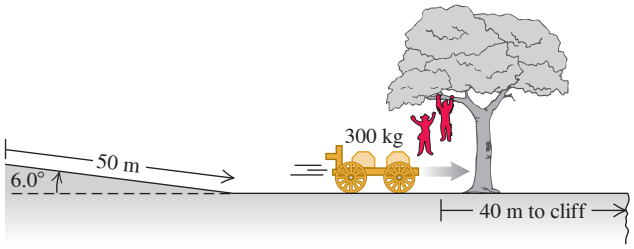
8.96 •• CP A 20.0 kg projectile is fired at an angle of 60.0° above the horizontal with a speed of 80.0 m/s. At the highest point of its trajectory, the projectile explodes into two fragments with equal mass, one of which falls vertically with zero initial speed. Ignore air resistance. (a) How far from the point of firing does the other fragment strike if the terrain is level? (b) How much energy is released during the explosion?

8.97 ••• CP A fireworks rocket is fired vertically upward. At its maximum height of 80.0 m, it explodes and breaks into two pieces: one with mass 1.40 kg and the other with mass 0.28 kg. In the explosion, 860 J of chemical energy is converted to kinetic energy of the two fragments. (a) What is the speed of each fragment just after the explosion? (b) It is observed that the two fragments hit the ground at the same time. What is the distance between the points on the ground where they land? Assume that the ground is level and air resistance can be ignored.

8.98 ••• A 12.0 kg shell is launched at an angle of 55.0° above the horizontal with an initial speed of 150 m/s. At its highest point, the shell explodes into two fragments, one three times heavier than the other. The two fragments reach the ground at the same time. Ignore air resistance. If the heavier fragment lands back at the point from which the shell was launched, where will the lighter fragment land, and how much energy was released in the explosion?

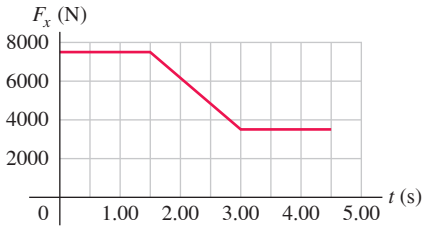
8.99 • CP An outlaw cuts loose a wagon with two boxes of gold, of total mass 300 kg, when the wagon is at rest 50 m up a 6.0° slope. The outlaw plans to have the wagon roll down the slope and across the level ground, and then fall into a canyon where his accomplices wait. But in a tree 40 m from the canyon's cliff wait the Lone Ranger (mass 75.0 kg) and Tonto (mass 60.0 kg). They drop vertically into the wagon as it passes beneath them (**Fig. P8.99**). (a) If they require 5.0 s to grab the gold and jump out, will they make it before the wagon goes over the cliff? The wagon rolls with negligible friction. (b) When the two heroes drop into the wagon, is the kinetic energy of the system of heroes plus wagon conserved? If not, does it increase or decrease, and by how much?

Figure **P8.99**



8.100 •• DATA The mass of a 2004 Prius is 1310 kg and the mass of its driver is 84 kg. The car is initially at rest. Starting at $t = 0$, a net horizontal force $F_x(t)$ in the $+x$-direction is applied to the car. The force as a function of time is given in **Fig. P8.100**. (a) For the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 4.50$ s, what is the impulse applied to the car? (b) What is the speed of the car at $t = 4.50$ s? (c) At $t = 4.50$ s, the 3500 N net external force is replaced by a constant net braking force $B_x = -5200$ N. Once the braking force is first applied, how long does it take the car to stop? (d) How much work must be done on the car by the braking force to stop the car? (e) What distance does the car travel from the time the braking force is first applied until the car stops?

Figure **P8.100**



8.101 •• DATA In your job in a police lab, you must design an apparatus to measure the muzzle velocities of bullets fired from handguns. Your solution is to attach a 2.00 kg wood block that rests on a horizontal surface to a light horizontal spring. The other end of the spring is attached to a wall. Initially the spring is at its equilibrium length. A bullet is fired horizontally into the block and remains embedded in it. After the bullet strikes the block, the block compresses the spring a maximum distance d. You have measured that the coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and the horizontal surface is 0.38. The table lists some firearms that you'll test:

Bullet ID	Type	Bullet Mass (mg)	Muzzle Velocity (m/s)
A	.38Spec Glaser Blue	5184	508.10
B	.38Spec Federal	8100	288.04
C	.44Spec Remington	15552	259.38
D	.44Spec Winchester	12960	249.63
E	.45ACP Glaser Blue	9072	413.00

Source: www.chuckhawks.com

(a) Of bullets A through E, which will produce the maximum compression of the spring? The minimum? (b) You want the maximum compression of the spring to be 0.25 m. What must be the force constant of the spring? (c) For the bullet that produces the minimum spring compression, what is the compression d if the spring has the force constant calculated in part (b)?

8.102 •• DATA You are investigating an accident that occurred early on a foggy morning in Oxfordshire. A 2015 Prius Hatchback traveling due north collided in a highway intersection with a 2012 Nissan Pathfinder that was traveling due east. After the collision, the wreckage of the two vehicles was locked together and skidded across the level ground until it struck a tree. You measure that the tree is 11 m from the point of impact. The line from the point of impact to the tree is in a direction 39° north of east. From experience, you estimate that the coefficient of kinetic friction between the ground and the wreckage is 0.45. Shortly before the collision, a police officer with a laser speed gun measured the speed of the Prius to be 80 km/h and, according to a witness, the Prius driver made no attempt to slow down. Four people with a total mass of 230 kg were in the Nissan. The only person in the Prius was the 80 kg driver. The Nissan with its passengers had a mass of 2362 kg, and the Prius with its driver had a mass of 1460 kg. (a) What was the Nissan's speed just before the collision? (b) How fast was the wreckage traveling just before it struck the tree?

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

8.103 •• CALC A Variable-Mass Raindrop. In a rocket-propulsion problem the mass is variable. Another such problem is a raindrop falling through a cloud of small water droplets. Some of these small droplets adhere to the raindrop, thereby *increasing* its mass as it falls. The force on the raindrop is

$$F_{\text{ext}} = \frac{dp}{dt} = m\frac{dv}{dt} + v\frac{dm}{dt}$$

Suppose the mass of the raindrop depends on the distance x that it has fallen. Then $m = kx$, where k is a constant, and $dm/dt = kv$. This gives, since $F_{\text{ext}} = mg$,

$$mg = m\frac{dv}{dt} + v(kv)$$

Or, dividing by k,

$$xg = x\frac{dv}{dt} + v^2$$

This is a differential equation that has a solution of the form $v = at$, where a is the acceleration and is constant. Take the initial velocity of the raindrop to be zero. (a) Using the proposed solution for v, find the acceleration a. (b) Find the distance the raindrop has fallen in $t = 3.00$ s. (c) Given that $k = 2.00$ g/m, find the mass of the raindrop at $t = 3.00$ s. (For many more intriguing aspects of this problem, see K. S. Krane, *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 49 (1981), pp. 113–117.)

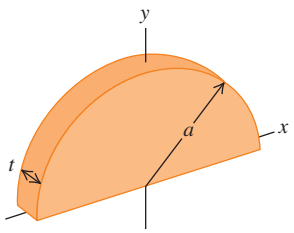
8.104 •• **CALC** In Section 8.5 we calculated the center of mass by considering objects composed of a *finite* number of point masses or objects that, by symmetry, could be represented by a finite number of point masses. For a solid object whose mass distribution does not allow for a simple determination of the center of mass by symmetry, the sums of Eqs. (8.28) must be generalized to integrals

$$x_{cm} = \frac{1}{M}\int x\,dm \qquad y_{cm} = \frac{1}{M}\int y\,dm$$

where x and y are the coordinates of the small piece of the object that has mass dm. The integration is over the whole of the object. Consider a thin rod of length L, mass M, and cross-sectional area A. Let the origin of the coordinates be at the left end of the rod and the positive x-axis lie along the rod. (a) If the density $\rho = M/V$ of the object is uniform, perform the integration described above to show that the x-coordinate of the center of mass of the rod is at its geometrical center. (b) If the density of the object varies linearly with x—that is, $\rho = \alpha x$, where α is a positive constant—calculate the x-coordinate of the rod's center of mass.

8.105 •• **CALC** Use the methods of Challenge Problem 8.104 to calculate the x- and y-coordinates of the center of mass of a semicircular metal plate with uniform density ρ and thickness t. Let the radius of the plate be a. The mass of the plate is thus $M = \frac{1}{2}\rho\pi a^2 t$. Use the coordinate system indicated in **Fig. P8.105**.

Figure **P8.105**



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO Momentum and the Archerfish. Archerfish are tropical fish that hunt by shooting drops of water from their mouths at insects above the water's surface to knock them into the water, where the fish can eat them. A 65 g fish at rest just at the surface of the water can expel a 0.30 g drop of water in a short burst of 5.0 ms. High-speed measurements show that the water has a speed of 2.5 m/s just after the archerfish expels it.

8.106 What is the momentum of one drop of water immediately after it leaves the fish's mouth? (a) 7.5×10^{-4} kg · m/s; (b) 1.5×10^{-4} kg · m/s; (c) 7.5×10^{-3} kg · m/s; (d) 1.5×10^{-3} kg · m/s.

8.107 What is the speed of the archerfish immediately after it expels the drop of water? (a) 0.0025 m/s; (b) 0.012 m/s; (c) 0.75 m/s; (d) 2.5 m/s.

8.108 What is the average force the fish exerts on the drop of water? (a) 0.00015 N; (b) 0.00075 N; (c) 0.075 N; (d) 0.15 N.

8.109 The fish shoots the drop of water at an insect that hovers on the water's surface, so just before colliding with the insect, the drop is still moving at the speed it had when it left the fish's mouth. In the collision, the drop sticks to the insect, and the speed of the insect and water just after the collision is measured to be 2.0 m/s. What is the insect's mass? (a) 0.038 g; (b) 0.075 g; (c) 0.24 g; (d) 0.38 g.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(ii) Both hailstones have the same magnitude of momentum $p = mv$ (the product of mass and speed), but the faster, lighter hailstone has twice the kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ of the slower, heavier one. Hence, the lightweight hailstone can do the most work on whatever it hits (and do the most damage) in the process of coming to a halt (see Section 8.1).

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP8.6.1 (a) 0.200 m/s, to the left (b) 0.900 m/s, to the left
VP8.6.2 (a) 7.14 m/s, to the west (b) −9.00 m/s for Madeleine, +10.6 m/s for Buffy; Buffy
VP8.6.3 (a) +4.32 kg · m/s; −4.32 kg · m/s (b) 1.53 m/s (c) +11.8 kg · m/s (d) 4.92 m/s
VP8.6.4 (a) 1/2 (b) $v_{P2} = v_{P1}/2\cos\theta$, $v_{S2} = v_{P1}/4\cos\theta$
VP8.9.1 (a) 8.00 m/s before, 1.60 m/s after; 25.6 J lost (b) 4.00 m/s before, 3.20 m/s after; 6.4 J lost (c) case (i)
VP8.9.2 (a) 1.00 m/s; momentum (b) 3.57 m/s; total mechanical energy
VP8.9.3 (a) 1.35 m/s, in the $+x$-direction (b) can before, 2.70 J; can after, 0.817 J; box after, 1.09 J (c) inelastic; kinetic energy is lost, but the objects do not stick together after the collision
VP8.9.4 30.4°, north of east
VP8.14.1 $x_{cm} = +0.135$ m, $y_{cm} = -0.140$ m
VP8.14.2 $x = -3.53$ m
VP8.14.3 0.240 m
VP8.14.4 $x = -L/6$, $y = +7L/4$

Bridging Problem

(a) 1.00 m/s, to the right
(b) elastic
(c) 1.93 m/s, at −30.4°
(d) 2.31 kg · m/s, at 149.6°
(e) inelastic
(f) 1.67 m/s, in the $+x$-direction

? Each blade on a rotating airplane propeller is like a long, thin rod. If each blade were stretched to double its length (while the mass of each blade and the propeller's angular speed stay the same), by what factor would the kinetic energy of the rotating blades increase? (i) 2; (ii) 4; (iii) 8; (iv) the kinetic energy would not change; (v) the kinetic energy would decrease, not increase.

9 Rotation of Rigid Bodies

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **9.1** How to describe the rotation of a rigid body in terms of angular coordinate, angular velocity, and angular acceleration.
- **9.2** How to analyze rigid-body rotation when the angular acceleration is constant.
- **9.3** How to relate the rotation of a rigid body to the linear velocity and linear acceleration of a point on the body.
- **9.4** The meaning of a body's moment of inertia about a rotation axis, and how it relates to rotational kinetic energy.
- **9.5** How to relate the values of a body's moment of inertia for two different but parallel rotation axes.
- **9.6** How to calculate the moment of inertia of bodies with various shapes.

You'll need to review...

- **1.10** Vector product of two vectors.
- **2.2–2.4** Linear velocity, linear acceleration, and motion with constant acceleration.
- **3.4** Motion in a circle.
- **7.1** Using mechanical energy to solve problems.

What do the motions of an airplane propeller, a Blu-ray disc, a Ferris wheel, and a circular saw blade have in common? None of these can be represented adequately as a moving *point;* each involves an object that *rotates* about an axis that is stationary in some inertial frame of reference.

Rotation occurs at all scales, from the motions of electrons in atoms to the motions of entire galaxies. We need to develop some general methods for analyzing the motion of a rotating object. In this chapter and the next we consider objects that have definite size and definite shape, and that in general can have rotational as well as translational motion.

Real-world objects can be very complicated; the forces that act on them can deform them—stretching, twisting, and squeezing them. We'll ignore these deformations for now and assume that the object has a perfectly definite and unchanging shape and size. We call this idealized model a **rigid body.** This chapter and the next are mostly about rotational motion of a rigid body.

We begin with kinematic language for *describing* rotational motion. Next we look at the kinetic energy of rotation, the key to using energy methods for rotational motion. Then in Chapter 10 we'll develop dynamic principles that relate the forces on a body to its rotational motion.

9.1 ANGULAR VELOCITY AND ACCELERATION

In analyzing rotational motion, let's think first about a rigid body that rotates about a *fixed axis*—an axis that is at rest in some inertial frame of reference and does not change direction relative to that frame. The rotating rigid body might be a motor shaft, a chunk of beef on a barbecue skewer, or a merry-go-round.

Figure 9.1 shows a rigid body rotating about a fixed axis. The axis passes through point O and is perpendicular to the plane of the diagram, which we'll call the xy-plane. One way to describe the rotation of this body would be to choose a particular point P on the body and to keep track of the x- and y-coordinates of P. This isn't very convenient, since it takes two numbers (the two coordinates x and y) to specify the rotational

position of the body. Instead, we notice that the line OP is fixed in the body and rotates with it. The angle θ that OP makes with the $+x$-axis is a single **angular cooordinate** that completely describes the body's rotational position.

The angular coordinate θ of a rigid body rotating around a fixed axis can be positive or negative. If we choose positive angles to be measured counterclockwise from the positive x-axis, then the angle θ in Fig. 9.1 is positive. If we instead choose the positive rotation direction to be clockwise, then θ in Fig. 9.1 is negative. When we considered the motion of a particle along a straight line, it was essential to specify the direction of positive displacement along that line; when we discuss rotation around a fixed axis, it's just as essential to specify the direction of positive rotation.

The most natural way to measure the angle θ is not in degrees but in **radians.** As **Fig. 9.2a** shows, one radian (1 rad) is the angle subtended at the center of a circle by an arc with a length equal to the radius of the circle. In Fig. 9.2b an angle θ is subtended by an arc of length s on a circle of radius r. The value of θ (in radians) is equal to s divided by r:

$$\theta = \frac{s}{r} \qquad \text{or} \qquad s = r\theta \qquad (\theta \text{ in radians}) \tag{9.1}$$

An angle in radians is the ratio of two lengths, so it is a pure number, without dimensions. If $s = 3.0$ m and $r = 2.0$ m, then $\theta = 1.5$, but we'll often write this as 1.5 rad to distinguish it from an angle measured in degrees or revolutions.

The circumference of a circle (that is, the arc length all the way around the circle) is 2π times the radius, so there are 2π (about 6.283) radians in one complete revolution (360°). Therefore

$$1 \text{ rad} = \frac{360^\circ}{2\pi} = 57.3^\circ$$

Similarly, $180^\circ = \pi$ rad, $90^\circ = \pi/2$ rad, and so on. If we had measured angle θ in degrees, we would have needed an extra factor of $(2\pi/360)$ on the right-hand side of $s = r\theta$ in Eq. (9.1). By measuring angles in radians, we keep the relationship between angle and distance along an arc as simple as possible.

Angular Velocity

The coordinate θ shown in Fig. 9.1 specifies the rotational position of a rigid body at a given instant. We can describe the rotational *motion* of such a rigid body in terms of the rate of change of θ. We'll do this in an analogous way to our description of straight-line motion in Chapter 2. In **Fig. 9.3a**, a reference line OP in a rotating body makes an angle θ_1 with the $+x$-axis at time t_1. At a later time t_2 the angle has changed to θ_2. We define the **average angular velocity** $\omega_{\text{av-}z}$ (the Greek letter omega) of the body in the time interval $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ as the ratio of the **angular displacement** $\Delta\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_1$ to Δt:

$$\omega_{\text{av-}z} = \frac{\theta_2 - \theta_1}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} \tag{9.2}$$

Figure **9.1** A speedometer needle (an example of a rigid body) rotating counterclockwise about a fixed axis.

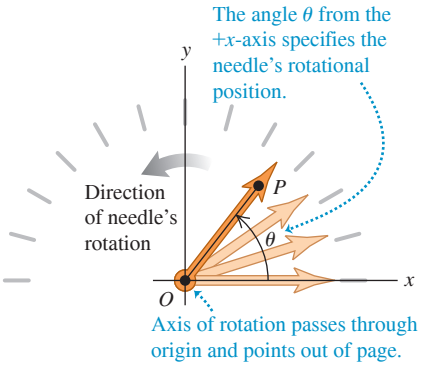
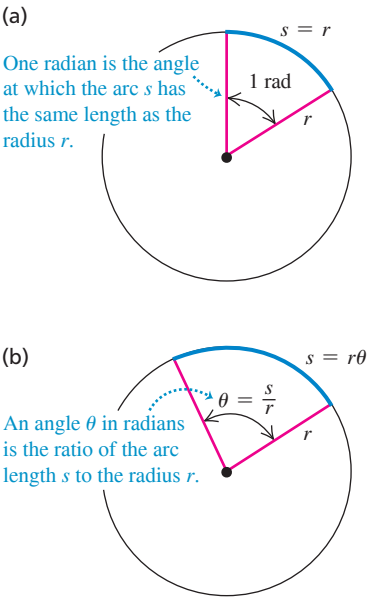


Figure **9.2** Measuring angles in radians.



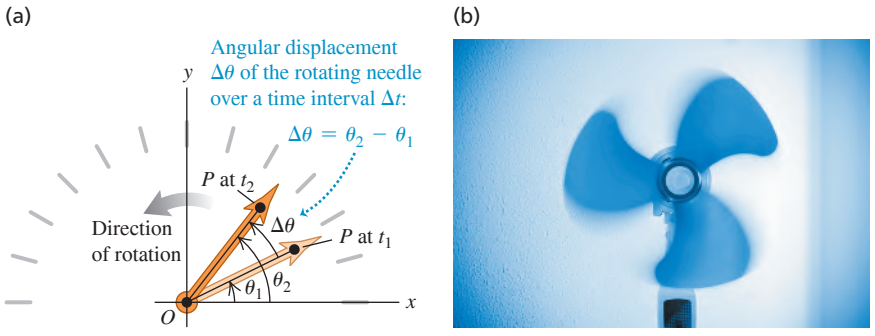


Figure **9.3** (a) Angular displacement $\Delta\theta$ of a rotating body. (b) Every part of a rotating rigid body has the same average angular velocity $\Delta\theta/\Delta t$.

The subscript z indicates that the body in Fig. 9.3a is rotating about the z-axis, which is perpendicular to the plane of the diagram. The **instantaneous angular velocity** ω_z is the limit of $\omega_{\text{av-}z}$ as Δt approaches zero:

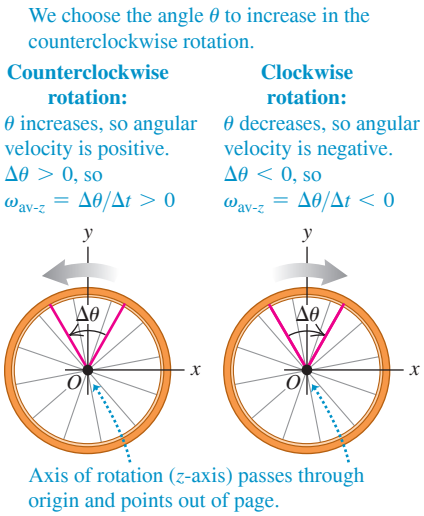
The **instantaneous angular velocity** of a rigid body rotating around the z-axis ... equals the limit of the body's average angular velocity as the time interval approaches zero ... and equals the instantaneous rate of change of the body's angular coordinate.

$$\omega_z = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\theta}{dt} \tag{9.3}$$

When we refer simply to "angular velocity," we mean the instantaneous angular velocity, not the average angular velocity.

The angular velocity ω_z can be positive or negative, depending on the direction in which the rigid body is rotating (**Fig. 9.4**). The angular *speed* ω, which we'll use in Sections 9.3 and 9.4, is the magnitude of angular velocity. Like linear speed v, the angular speed is never negative.

Figure **9.4** A rigid body's average angular velocity (shown here) and instantaneous angular velocity can be positive or negative.



CAUTION **Angular velocity vs. linear velocity** Keep in mind the distinction between *angular* velocity ω_z and *linear* velocity v_x (see Section 2.2). If an object has a linear velocity v_x, the object as a whole is *moving* along the x-axis. By contrast, if an object has an angular velocity ω_z, then it is *rotating* around the z-axis. We do *not* mean that the object is moving along the z-axis.

Different points on a rotating rigid body move different distances in a given time interval, depending on how far each point lies from the rotation axis. But because the body is rigid, *all* points rotate through the same angle in the same time (Fig. 9.3b). Hence *at any instant, every part of a rotating rigid body has the same angular velocity.*

If angle θ is in radians, the unit of angular velocity is the radian per second (rad/s). Other units, such as the revolution per minute (rev/min or rpm), are often used. Since 1 rev $= 2\pi$ rad, two useful conversions are

$$1 \text{ rev/s} = 2\pi \text{ rad/s} \qquad \text{and} \qquad 1 \text{ rev/min} = 1 \text{ rpm} = \frac{2\pi}{60} \text{ rad/s}$$

That is, 1 rad/s is about 10 rpm.

EXAMPLE 9.1 Calculating angular velocity

The angular position θ of a 0.36-m-diameter flywheel is given by

$$\theta = (2.0 \text{ rad/s}^3)t^3$$

(a) Find θ, in radians and in degrees, at $t_1 = 2.0$ s and $t_2 = 5.0$ s. (b) Find the distance that a particle on the flywheel rim moves from $t_1 = 2.0$ s to $t_2 = 5.0$ s. (c) Find the average angular velocity, in rad/s and in rev/min, over that interval. (d) Find the instantaneous angular velocities at $t_1 = 2.0$ s and $t_2 = 5.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variables are θ_1 and θ_2 (the angular positions at times t_1 and t_2) and the angular displacement $\Delta\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_1$. We'll find these from the given expression for θ as a function of time. Knowing $\Delta\theta$, we'll find the distance traveled and the average angular velocity between t_1 and t_2 by using Eqs. (9.1) and (9.2), respectively. To find the instantaneous angular velocities ω_{1z} (at time t_1) and ω_{2z} (at time t_2), we'll take the derivative of the given equation for θ with respect to time, as in Eq. (9.3).

EXECUTE (a) We substitute the values of t into the equation for θ:

$$\theta_1 = (2.0 \text{ rad/s}^3)(2.0 \text{ s})^3 = 16 \text{ rad}$$

$$= (16 \text{ rad})\frac{360^\circ}{2\pi \text{ rad}} = 920^\circ$$

$$\theta_2 = (2.0 \text{ rad/s}^3)(5.0 \text{ s})^3 = 250 \text{ rad}$$

$$= (250 \text{ rad})\frac{360^\circ}{2\pi \text{ rad}} = 14{,}000^\circ$$

(b) During the interval from t_1 to t_2 the flywheel's angular displacement is $\Delta\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_1 = 250 \text{ rad} - 16 \text{ rad} = 234 \text{ rad}$. The radius r is half the diameter, or 0.18 m. To use Eq. (9.1), the angles *must* be expressed in radians:

$$s = r\theta_2 - r\theta_1 = r\Delta\theta = (0.18 \text{ m})(234 \text{ rad}) = 42 \text{ m}$$

We can drop "radians" from the unit for s because θ is a dimensionless number; like r, s is measured in meters.

(c) From Eq. (9.2),

$$\omega_{\text{av-}z} = \frac{\theta_2 - \theta_1}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{250\text{ rad} - 16\text{ rad}}{5.0\text{ s} - 2.0\text{ s}} = 78\text{ rad/s}$$

$$= \left(78\frac{\text{rad}}{\text{s}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ rev}}{2\pi\text{ rad}}\right)\left(\frac{60\text{ s}}{1\text{ min}}\right) = 740\text{ rev/min}$$

(d) From Eq. (9.3),

$$\omega_z = \frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}[(2.0\text{ rad/s}^3)t^3] = (2.0\text{rad/s}^3)(3t^2) = (6.0\text{rad/s}^3)t^2$$

At times $t_1 = 2.0$ s and $t_2 = 5.0$ s we have

$$\omega_{1z} = (6.0\text{ rad/s}^3)(2.0\text{ s})^2 = 24\text{ rad/s}$$

$$\omega_{2z} = (6.0\text{ rad/s}^3)(5.0\text{ s})^2 = 150\text{ rad/s}$$

EVALUATE The angular velocity $\omega_z = (6.0\text{ rad/s}^3)t^2$ increases with time. Our results are consistent with this; the instantaneous angular velocity at the end of the interval ($\omega_{2z} = 150$ rad/s) is greater than at the beginning ($\omega_{1z} = 24$ rad/s), and the average angular velocity $\omega_{\text{av-}z} = 78$ rad/s over the interval is intermediate between these two values.

KEYCONCEPT To find the *average* angular velocity of a rotating rigid body, first find the body's angular displacement (final angular position minus initial angular position) during a time interval. Then divide the result by that time interval. To find the rigid body's *instantaneous* angular velocity, take the derivative of its angular position with respect to time.

Angular Velocity as a Vector

As we have seen, our notation for the angular velocity ω_z about the z-axis is reminiscent of the notation v_x for the ordinary velocity along the x-axis (see Section 2.2). Just as v_x is the x-component of the velocity vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$, ω_z is the z-component of an angular velocity *vector* $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ directed along the axis of rotation. As **Fig. 9.5a** shows, the direction of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ is given by the right-hand rule that we used to define the vector product in Section 1.10. If the rotation is about the z-axis, then $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ has only a z-component. This component is positive if $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ is along the positive z-axis and negative if $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ is along the negative z-axis (Fig. 9.5b).

The vector formulation is especially useful when the direction of the rotation axis *changes*. We'll examine such situations briefly at the end of Chapter 10. In this chapter, however, we'll consider only situations in which the rotation axis is fixed. Hence throughout this chapter we'll use "angular velocity" to refer to ω_z, the component of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ along the axis.

CAUTION **The angular velocity vector is perpendicular to the plane of rotation, not in it** It's a common error to think that an object's angular velocity vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ points in the direction in which some particular part of the object is moving. Another error is to think that $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ is a "curved vector" that points around the rotation axis in the direction of rotation (like the curved arrows in Figs. 9.1, 9.3, and 9.4). Neither of these is true! Angular velocity is an attribute of the *entire* rotating rigid body, not any one part, and there's no such thing as a curved vector. We choose the direction of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ to be along the rotation axis—*perpendicular* to the plane of rotation—because that axis is common to every part of a rotating rigid body.

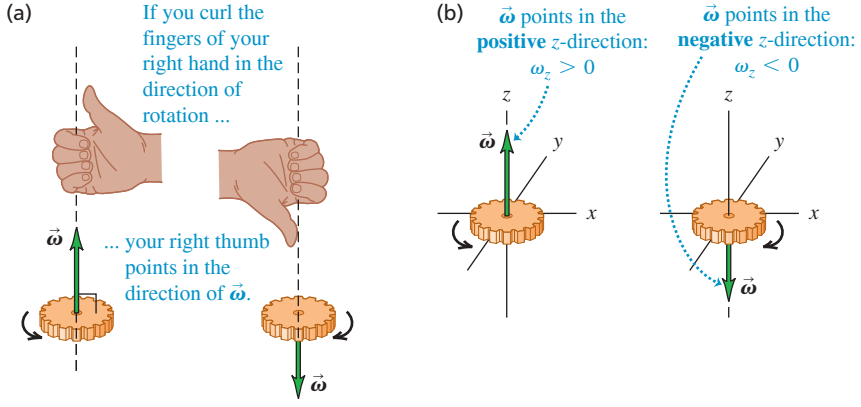


Figure 9.5 (a) The right-hand rule for the direction of the angular velocity vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$. Reversing the direction of rotation reverses the direction of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$. (b) The sign of ω_z for rotation along the z-axis.

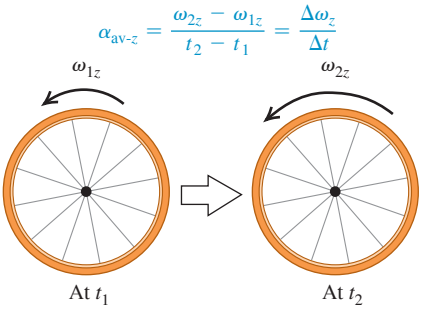
Angular Acceleration

A rigid body whose angular velocity changes has an *angular acceleration*. When you pedal your bicycle harder to make the wheels turn faster or apply the brakes to bring the wheels to a stop, you're giving the wheels an angular acceleration.

If ω_{1z} and ω_{2z} are the instantaneous angular velocities at times t_1 and t_2, we define the **average angular acceleration** $\alpha_{\text{av-}z}$ over the interval $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ as the change in angular velocity divided by Δt (**Fig. 9.6**):

$$\alpha_{\text{av-}z} = \frac{\omega_{2z} - \omega_{1z}}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{\Delta\omega_z}{\Delta t} \tag{9.4}$$

Figure **9.6** Calculating the average angular acceleration of a rotating rigid body.



The **instantaneous angular acceleration** α_z is the limit of $\alpha_{\text{av-}z}$ as $\Delta t \to 0$:

The **instantaneous angular acceleration** of a rigid body rotating around the z-axis ...

$$\alpha_z = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\omega_z}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\omega_z}{dt} \tag{9.5}$$

... equals the limit of the body's average angular acceleration as the time interval approaches zero ...

... and equals the instantaneous rate of change of the body's angular velocity.

The usual unit of angular acceleration is the radian per second per second, or rad/s^2. From now on we'll use the term "angular acceleration" to mean the instantaneous angular acceleration rather than the average angular acceleration.

Because $\omega_z = d\theta/dt$, we can also express angular acceleration as the second derivative of the angular coordinate:

$$\alpha_z = \frac{d}{dt}\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} \tag{9.6}$$

You've probably noticed that we use Greek letters for angular kinematic quantities: θ for angular position, ω_z for angular velocity, and α_z for angular acceleration. These are analogous to x for position, v_x for velocity, and a_x for acceleration in straight-line motion. In each case, velocity is the rate of change of position with respect to time and acceleration is the rate of change of velocity with respect to time. We sometimes use the terms "*linear* velocity" for v_x and "*linear* acceleration" for a_x to distinguish clearly between these and the *angular* quantities introduced in this chapter.

If the angular acceleration α_z is positive, then the angular velocity ω_z is increasing; if α_z is negative, then ω_z is decreasing. The rotation is speeding up if α_z and ω_z have the same sign and slowing down if α_z and ω_z have opposite signs. (These are exactly the same relationships as those between *linear* acceleration a_x and *linear* velocity v_x for straight-line motion; see Section 2.3.)

EXAMPLE 9.2 Calculating angular acceleration

For the flywheel of Example 9.1, (a) find the average angular acceleration between $t_1 = 2.0$ s and $t_2 = 5.0$ s. (b) Find the instantaneous angular accelerations at $t_1 = 2.0$ s and $t_2 = 5.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We use Eqs. (9.4) and (9.5) for the average and instantaneous angular accelerations.

EXECUTE (a) From Example 9.1, the values of ω_z at the two times are

$$\omega_{1z} = 24 \text{ rad/s} \qquad \omega_{2z} = 150 \text{ rad/s}$$

From Eq. (9.4), the average angular acceleration is

$$\alpha_{\text{av-}z} = \frac{150 \text{ rad/s} - 24 \text{ rad/s}}{5.0 \text{ s} - 2.0 \text{ s}} = 42 \text{ rad/s}^2$$

(b) We found in Example 9.1 that $\omega_z = (6.0 \text{ rad/s}^3)t^2$ for the flywheel. From Eq. (9.5), the value of α_z at any time t is

$$\alpha_z = \frac{d\omega_z}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}[(6.0 \text{ rad/s}^3)(t^2)] = (6.0 \text{ rad/s}^3)(2t)$$
$$= (12 \text{ rad/s}^3)t$$

Hence

$$\alpha_{1z} = (12 \text{ rad/s}^3)(2.0 \text{ s}) = 24 \text{ rad/s}^2$$
$$\alpha_{2z} = (12 \text{ rad/s}^3)(5.0 \text{ s}) = 60 \text{ rad/s}^2$$

EVALUATE The angular acceleration is *not* constant in this situation. The angular velocity ω_z is always increasing because α_z is always positive. Furthermore, the rate at which angular velocity increases is itself increasing, since α_z increases with time.

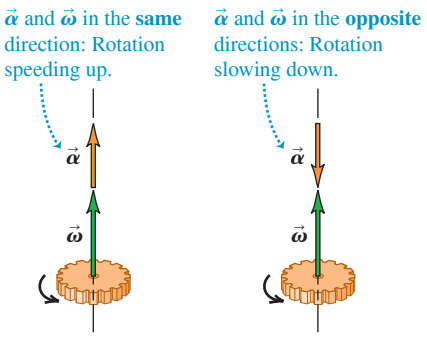
KEYCONCEPT To find the average angular acceleration of a rotating rigid body, first find the change in its angular velocity (final angular velocity minus initial angular velocity) during a time interval. Then divide the result by the time interval.

Angular Acceleration as a Vector

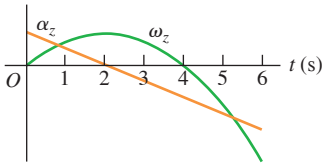
Just as we did for angular velocity, it's useful to define an angular acceleration *vector* $\vec{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$. Mathematically, $\vec{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ is the time derivative of the angular velocity vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$. If the object rotates around the fixed z-axis, then $\vec{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ has only a z-component α_z. In this case, $\vec{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ is in the same direction as $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ if the rotation is speeding up and opposite to $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ if the rotation is slowing down (**Fig. 9.7**).

The vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ will be particularly useful in Chapter 10 when we discuss what happens when the rotation axis changes direction. In this chapter, however, the rotation axis will always be fixed and we need only the z-component α_z.

Figure **9.7** When the rotation axis is fixed, both the angular acceleration and angular velocity vectors lie along that axis.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.1 The figure shows a graph of ω_z and α_z versus time for a particular rotating body. (a) During which time intervals is the rotation speeding up? (i) $0 < t < 2$ s; (ii) 2 s $< t <$ 4 s; (iii) 4 s $< t <$ 6 s. (b) During which time intervals is the rotation slowing down? (i) $0 < t < 2$ s; (ii) 2 s $< t <$ 4 s; (iii) 4 s $< t <$ 6 s.



ANSWER

(a) **(i) and (iii)**, (b) **(ii)** The rotation is speeding up when the angular velocity and angular acceleration have the same sign, and slowing down when they have opposite signs. Hence it is speeding up for $0 < t < 2$ s (both ω_z and α_z are positive) and for 4 s $< t <$ 6 s (both ω_z and α_z are negative) but is slowing down for 2 s $< t <$ 4 s (ω_z is positive and α_z is negative). Note that the body is rotating in one direction for $t <$ 4 s (ω_z is positive) and in the opposite direction for $t >$ 4 s (ω_z is negative).

9.2 ROTATION WITH CONSTANT ANGULAR ACCELERATION

In Chapter 2 we found that straight-line motion is particularly simple when the acceleration is constant. This is also true of rotational motion about a fixed axis. When the angular acceleration is constant, we can derive equations for angular velocity and angular position by using the same procedure that we used for straight-line motion in Section 2.4. In fact, the equations we are about to derive are identical to Eqs. (2.8), (2.12), (2.13), and (2.14) if we replace x with θ, v_x with ω_z, and a_x with α_z. We suggest that you review Section 2.4 before continuing.

Let ω_{0z} be the angular velocity of a rigid body at time $t = 0$ and ω_z be its angular velocity at a later time t. The angular acceleration α_z is constant and equal to the average value for any interval. From Eq. (9.4) with the interval from 0 to t,

$$\alpha_z = \frac{\omega_z - \omega_{0z}}{t - 0} \quad \text{or}$$

Angular velocity at time t of a rigid body with **constant angular acceleration**

$$\omega_z = \omega_{0z} + \alpha_z t \tag{9.7}$$

Angular velocity of body at time 0; Time; Constant angular acceleration of body

The product $\alpha_z t$ is the total change in ω_z between $t = 0$ and the later time t; angular velocity ω_z at time t is the sum of the initial value ω_{0z} and this total change.

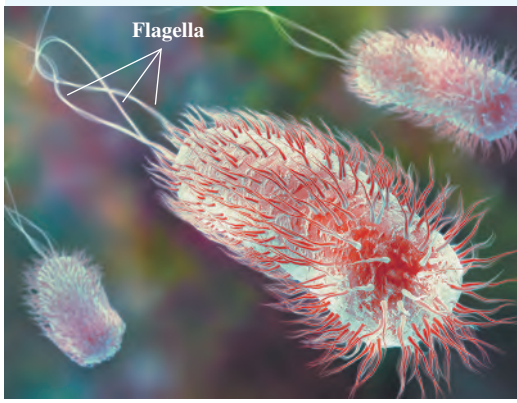
With constant angular acceleration, the angular velocity changes at a uniform rate, so its average value between 0 and t is the average of the initial and final values:

$$\omega_{\text{av-}z} = \frac{\omega_{0z} + \omega_z}{2} \tag{9.8}$$

We also know that $\omega_{\text{av-}z}$ is the total angular displacement $(\theta - \theta_0)$ divided by the time interval $(t - 0)$:

$$\omega_{\text{av-}z} = \frac{\theta - \theta_0}{t - 0} \tag{9.9}$$

BIO APPLICATION Rotational Motion in Bacteria *Escherichia coli* bacteria (about 2 μm by 0.5 μm) are found in the lower intestines of humans and other warm-blooded animals. The bacteria swim by rotating their long, corkscrew-shaped flagella, which act like the blades of a propeller. Each flagellum is powered by a remarkable motor (made of protein) located at the base of the bacterial cell. The motor can rotate the flagellum at angular speeds from 200 to 1000 rev/min (about 20 to 100 rad/s) and can vary its speed to give the flagellum an angular acceleration.



When we equate Eqs. (9.8) and (9.9) and multiply the result by t, we get

Angular position at time t of a rigid body with **constant angular acceleration**

$$\theta - \theta_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}(\omega_{0z} + \omega_z)t \tag{9.10}$$

Angular position of body at time 0; Time; Angular velocity of body at time 0; Angular velocity of body at time t

To obtain a relationship between θ and t that doesn't contain ω_z, we substitute Eq. (9.7) into Eq. (9.10):

$$\theta - \theta_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[\omega_{0z} + (\omega_{0z} + \alpha_z t)\right]t \quad \text{or}$$

Angular position at time t of a rigid body with **constant angular acceleration**

$$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_{0z}t + \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha_z t^2 \tag{9.11}$$

Angular position of body at time 0; Time; Angular velocity of body at time 0; Constant angular acceleration of body

That is, if at the initial time $t = 0$ the body is at angular position θ_0 and has angular velocity ω_{0z}, then its angular position θ at any later time t is θ_0, plus the rotation $\omega_{0z}t$ it would have if the angular velocity were constant, plus an additional rotation $\frac{1}{2}\alpha_z t^2$ caused by the changing angular velocity.

Following the same procedure as for straight-line motion in Section 2.4, we can combine Eqs. (9.7) and (9.11) to obtain a relationship between θ and ω_z that does not contain t. We invite you to work out the details, following the same procedure we used to get Eq. (2.13). We get

Angular velocity at time t of a rigid body with **constant angular acceleration**

$$\omega_z^2 = \omega_{0z}^2 + 2\alpha_z(\theta - \theta_0) \tag{9.12}$$

Angular velocity of body at time 0; Constant angular acceleration of body; Angular position of body at time t; Angular position of body at time 0

CAUTION **Constant angular acceleration** Keep in mind that all of these results are valid *only* when the angular acceleration α_z is *constant;* do not try to apply them to problems in which α_z is *not* constant. **Table 9.1** shows the analogy between Eqs. (9.7), (9.10), (9.11), and (9.12) for fixed-axis rotation with constant angular acceleration and the corresponding equations for straight-line motion with constant linear acceleration.

TABLE 9.1 Comparison of Linear and Angular Motions with Constant Acceleration

Straight-Line Motion with Constant Linear Acceleration		**Fixed-Axis Rotation with Constant Angular Acceleration**	
a_x = constant		α_z = constant	
$v_x = v_{0x} + a_x t$	(2.8)	$\omega_z = \omega_{0z} + \alpha_z t$	(9.7)
$x = x_0 + v_{0x}t + \frac{1}{2}a_x t^2$	(2.12)	$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_{0z}t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha_z t^2$	(9.11)
$v_x^2 = v_{0x}^2 + 2a_x(x - x_0)$	(2.13)	$\omega_z^2 = \omega_{0z}^2 + 2\alpha_z(\theta - \theta_0)$	(9.12)
$x - x_0 = \frac{1}{2}(v_{0x} + v_x)t$	(2.14)	$\theta - \theta_0 = \frac{1}{2}(\omega_{0z} + \omega_z)t$	(9.10)

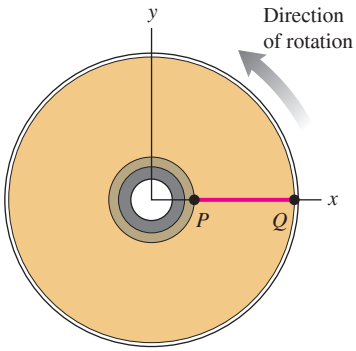
EXAMPLE 9.3 Rotation with constant angular acceleration

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

You have finished watching a movie on Blu-ray and the disc is slowing to a stop. The disc's angular velocity at $t = 0$ is 27.5 rad/s, and its angular acceleration is a constant -10.0 rad/s^2. A line PQ on the disc's surface lies along the $+x$-axis at $t = 0$ (**Fig. 9.8**). (a) What is the disc's angular velocity at $t = 0.300$ s? (b) What angle does the line PQ make with the $+x$-axis at this time?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The angular acceleration of the disc is constant, so we can use any of the equations derived in this section (Table 9.1). Our target variables are the angular velocity ω_z and the angular displacement θ at $t = 0.300$ s. Given $\omega_{0z} = 27.5$ rad/s, $\theta_0 = 0$, and $\alpha_z = -10.0$ rad/s^2, it's easiest to use Eqs. (9.7) and (9.11) to find the target variables.

Figure 9.8 A line PQ on a rotating Blu-ray disc at $t = 0$.



EXECUTE (a) From Eq. (9.7), at $t = 0.300$ s we have

$$\omega_z = \omega_{0z} + \alpha_z t = 27.5 \text{ rad/s} + (-10.0 \text{ rad/s}^2)(0.300 \text{ s})$$
$$= 24.5 \text{ rad/s}$$

(b) From Eq. (9.11),

$$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_{0z} t + \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha_z t^2$$
$$= 0 + (27.5 \text{ rad/s})(0.300 \text{ s}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(-10.0 \text{ rad/s}^2)(0.300 \text{ s})^2$$
$$= 7.80 \text{ rad} = 7.80 \text{ rad}\left(\frac{1 \text{ rev}}{2\pi \text{ rad}}\right) = 1.24 \text{ rev}$$

The disc has made one complete revolution plus an additional 0.24 revolution—that is, 360° plus $(0.24 \text{ rev})(360°/\text{rev}) = 87°$. Hence the line PQ makes an angle of 87° with the $+x$-axis.

EVALUATE Our answer to part (a) tells us that the disc's angular velocity has decreased, as it should since $\alpha_z < 0$. We can use our result for ω_z from part (a) with Eq. (9.12) to check our result for θ from part (b). To do so, we solve Eq. (9.12) for θ:

$$\omega_z^2 = \omega_{0z}^2 + 2\alpha_z(\theta - \theta_0)$$
$$\theta = \theta_0 + \left(\frac{\omega_z^2 - \omega_{0z}^2}{2\alpha_z}\right)$$
$$= 0 + \frac{(24.5 \text{ rad/s})^2 - (27.5 \text{ rad/s})^2}{2(-10.0 \text{ rad/s}^2)} = 7.80 \text{ rad}$$

This agrees with our previous result from part (b).

KEYCONCEPT The relationships among angular position θ, angular velocity ω_z, and angular acceleration α_z for a rigid body rotating with constant angular acceleration are the same as the relationships among position x, velocity v_x, and acceleration a_x for an object moving in a straight line with constant linear acceleration.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.2 Suppose the disc in Example 9.3 was initially spinning at twice the rate (55.0 rad/s rather than 27.5 rad/s) and slowed down at twice the rate (-20.0 rad/s^2 rather than -10.0 rad/s^2). (a) Compared to the situation in Example 9.3, how long would it take the disc to come to a stop? (i) The same amount of time; (ii) twice as much time; (iii) 4 times as much time; (iv) $\frac{1}{2}$ as much time; (v) $\frac{1}{4}$ as much time. (b) Compared to the situation in Example 9.3, through how many revolutions would the disc rotate before coming to a stop? (i) The same number of revolutions; (ii) twice as many revolutions; (iii) 4 times as many revolutions; (iv) $\frac{1}{2}$ as many revolutions; (v) $\frac{1}{4}$ as many revolutions.

ANSWER

(a) **(i)**, (b) **(ii)** When the disc comes to rest, $\omega_z = 0$. From Eq. (9.7), the *time* when this occurs is $t = (\omega_z - \omega_{0z})/\alpha_z = -\omega_{0z}/\alpha_z$ (this is a positive time because α_z is negative). If we double the initial angular velocity ω_{0z} and also double the angular acceleration α_z, their ratio is unchanged and the rotation stops in the same amount of time. The *angle* through which the disc rotates is given by Eq. (9.10): $\theta - \theta_0 = \frac{1}{2}(\omega_{0z} + \omega_z)t = \frac{1}{2}\omega_{0z}t$ (since the final angular velocity is $\omega_z = 0$). The initial angular velocity ω_{0z} has been doubled but the time t is the same, so the angular displacement $\theta - \theta_0$ (and hence the number of revolutions) has doubled. You can also come to the same conclusion by using Eq. (9.12).

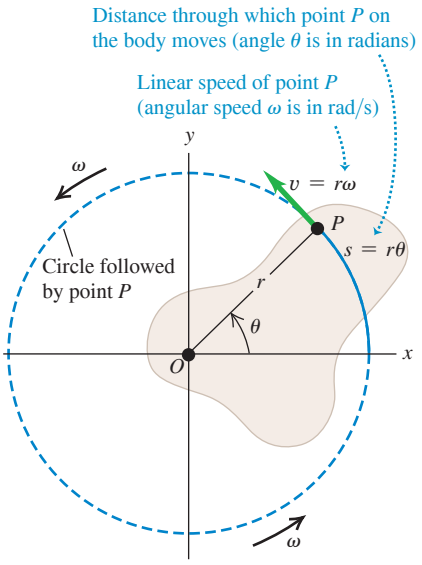
9.3 RELATING LINEAR AND ANGULAR KINEMATICS

How do we find the linear speed and acceleration of a particular point in a rotating rigid body? We need to answer this question to proceed with our study of rotation. For example, to find the kinetic energy of a rotating body, we have to start from $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ for a particle, and this requires that we know the speed v for each particle in the body. So it's worthwhile to develop general relationships between the *angular* speed and acceleration of a rigid body rotating about a fixed axis and the *linear* speed and acceleration of a specific point or particle in the body.

Linear Speed in Rigid-Body Rotation

When a rigid body rotates about a fixed axis, every particle in the body moves in a circular path that lies in a plane perpendicular to the axis and is centered on the axis. A particle's speed is directly proportional to the body's angular velocity; the faster the rotation,

Figure 9.9 A rigid body rotating about a fixed axis through point O.



the greater the speed of each particle. In **Fig. 9.9**, point P is a constant distance r from the axis, so it moves in a circle of radius r. At any time, Eq. (9.1) relates the angle θ (in radians) and the arc length s:

$$s = r\theta$$

We take the time derivative of this, noting that r is constant for any specific particle, and take the absolute value of both sides:

$$\left|\frac{ds}{dt}\right| = r\left|\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right|$$

Now $|ds/dt|$ is the absolute value of the rate of change of arc length, which is equal to the instantaneous *linear* speed v of the particle. The absolute value of the rate of change of the angle, $|d\theta/dt|$, is the instantaneous **angular speed** ω—that is, the magnitude of the instantaneous angular velocity in rad/s. Thus

Linear speed of a point on a rotating rigid body: $v = r\omega$ — **Angular speed** of the rotating rigid body; r: Distance of that point from rotation axis (9.13)

The farther a point is from the axis, the greater its linear speed. The *direction* of the linear velocity *vector* is tangent to its circular path at each point (Fig. 9.9).

CAUTION **Speed vs. velocity** Keep in mind the distinction between the linear and angular *speeds* v and ω, which appear in Eq. (9.13), and the linear and angular *velocities* v_x and ω_z. The quantities without subscripts, v and ω, are never negative; they are the magnitudes of the vectors $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$ and $\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$, respectively, and their values tell you only how fast a particle is moving (v) or how fast a body is rotating (ω). The quantities with subscripts, v_x and ω_z, can be either positive or negative; their signs tell you the direction of the motion.

Linear Acceleration in Rigid-Body Rotation

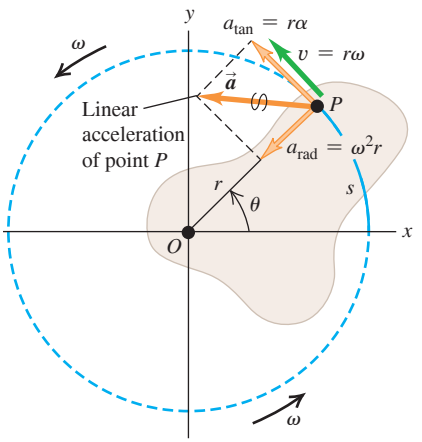
We can represent the acceleration $\vec{\boldsymbol{a}}$ of a particle moving in a circle in terms of its centripetal and tangential components, a_{rad} and a_{tan} (**Fig. 9.10**), as we did in Section 3.4. (You should review that section now.) We found that the **tangential component of acceleration** a_{tan}, the component parallel to the instantaneous velocity, acts to change the *magnitude* of the particle's velocity (i.e., the speed) and is equal to the rate of change of speed. Taking the derivative of Eq. (9.13), we find

Tangential acceleration of a point on a rotating rigid body: $a_{\text{tan}} = \dfrac{dv}{dt} = r\dfrac{d\omega}{dt} = r\alpha$ (9.14)

$\dfrac{dv}{dt}$: Rate of change of linear speed of that point; r: Distance of that point from rotation axis; $\dfrac{d\omega}{dt}$: Rate of change of angular speed of body

Figure 9.10 A rigid body whose rotation is speeding up. The acceleration of point P has a component a_{rad} toward the rotation axis (perpendicular to $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$) and a component a_{tan} along the circle that point P follows (parallel to $\vec{\boldsymbol{v}}$).

Radial and tangential acceleration components:
- $a_{\text{rad}} = \omega^2 r$ is point P's centripetal acceleration.
- $a_{\text{tan}} = r\alpha$ means that P's rotation is speeding up (the body has angular acceleration).



This component of $\vec{\boldsymbol{a}}$ is always tangent to the circular path of point P (Fig. 9.10).

The quantity $\alpha = d\omega/dt$ in Eq. (9.14) is the rate of change of the angular *speed*. It is not quite the same as $\alpha_z = d\omega_z/dt$, which is the rate of change of the angular *velocity*. For example, consider a object rotating so that its angular velocity vector points in the $-z$-direction (see Fig. 9.5b). If the body is gaining angular speed at a rate of 10 rad/s per second, then $\alpha = 10\ \text{rad/s}^2$. But ω_z is negative and becoming more negative as the rotation gains speed, so $\alpha_z = -10\ \text{rad/s}^2$. The rule for rotation about a fixed axis is that α is equal to α_z if ω_z is positive but equal to $-\alpha_z$ if ω_z is negative.

The component of $\vec{\boldsymbol{a}}$ in Fig. 9.10 directed toward the rotation axis, the **centripetal component of acceleration** a_{rad}, is associated with the change of *direction* of the velocity of point P. In Section 3.4 we worked out the relationship $a_{\text{rad}} = v^2/r$. We can express this in terms of ω by using Eq. (9.13):

Centripetal acceleration of a point on a rotating rigid body

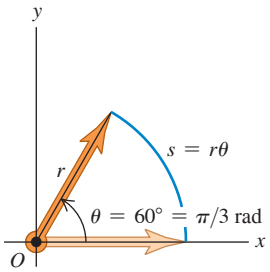
$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v^2}{r} = \omega^2 r \qquad (9.15)$$

(v: linear speed of that point; ω: angular speed of body; r: distance of that point from rotation axis)

This is true at each instant, *even when ω and v are not constant.* The centripetal component always points toward the axis of rotation.

CAUTION **Use angles in radians** Remember that Eq. (9.1), $s = r\theta$, is valid *only* when θ is measured in radians. The same is true of any equation derived from this, including Eqs. (9.13), (9.14), and (9.15). When you use these equations, you *must* express the angular quantities in radians, not revolutions or degrees (**Fig. 9.11**).

Figure **9.11** Always use radians when relating linear and angular quantities.



In any equation that relates linear quantities to angular quantities, the angles MUST be expressed in radians ...

RIGHT! ▶ $s = (\pi/3)r$

... never in degrees or revolutions.

WRONG ▶ $s = 60r$

Equations (9.1), (9.13), and (9.14) also apply to any particle that has the same tangential velocity as a point in a rotating rigid body. For example, when a rope wound around a circular cylinder unwraps without stretching or slipping, its speed and acceleration at any instant are equal to the speed and tangential acceleration of the point at which it is tangent to the cylinder. The same principle holds for situations such as bicycle chains and sprockets, belts and pulleys that turn without slipping, and so on. We'll have several opportunities to use these relationships later in this chapter and in Chapter 10. Note that Eq. (9.15) for the centripetal component a_{rad} is applicable to the rope or chain *only* at points that are in contact with the cylinder or sprocket. Other points do not have the same acceleration toward the center of the circle that points on the cylinder or sprocket have.

EXAMPLE 9.4 Throwing a discus

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

An athlete whirls a discus in a circle of radius 80.0 cm. At a certain instant, the athlete is rotating at 10.0 rad/s and the angular speed is increasing at 50.0 rad/s^2. For this instant, find the tangential and centripetal components of the acceleration of the discus and the magnitude of the acceleration.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We treat the discus as a particle traveling in a circular path (**Fig. 9.12a**), so we can use the ideas developed in this section. We are given $r = 0.800$ m, $\omega = 10.0$ rad/s, and $\alpha = 50.0$ rad/s^2 (Fig. 9.12b). We'll use Eqs. (9.14) and (9.15) to find the acceleration components a_{tan} and a_{rad}, respectively; we'll then find the magnitude a by using the Pythagorean theorem.

EXECUTE From Eqs. (9.14) and (9.15),

$$a_{\text{tan}} = r\alpha = (0.800\text{ m})(50.0\text{ rad/s}^2) = 40.0\text{ m/s}^2$$
$$a_{\text{rad}} = \omega^2 r = (10.0\text{ rad/s})^2(0.800\text{ m}) = 80.0\text{ m/s}^2$$

Then

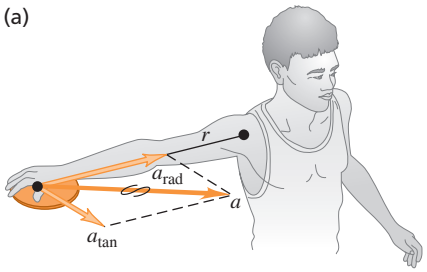
$$a = \sqrt{a_{\text{tan}}^2 + a_{\text{rad}}^2} = 89.4\text{ m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE Note that we dropped the unit "radian" from our results for a_{tan}, a_{rad}, and a. We can do this because "radian" is a dimensionless quantity. Can you show that if the angular speed doubles to 20.0 rad/s while α remains the same, the acceleration magnitude a increases to 322 m/s^2?

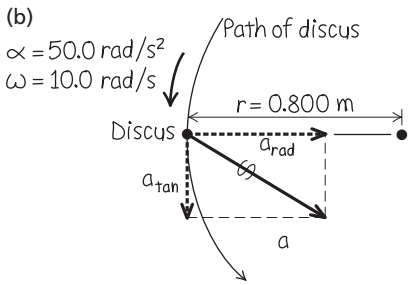
KEYCONCEPT Points on a rigid body have a *centripetal* (radial) acceleration component $a_{\text{rad}} = \omega^2 r$ whenever the rigid body is rotating; they have a *tangential* acceleration component $a_{\text{tan}} = r\alpha$ *only* if the angular speed ω is changing. These two acceleration components are perpendicular, so you can use the Pythagorean theorem to relate them to the magnitude of the acceleration.

Figure **9.12** (a) Whirling a discus in a circle. (b) Our sketch showing the acceleration components for the discus.

(a)



(b)



EXAMPLE 9.5 Designing a propeller

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

You are designing an airplane propeller that is to turn at 2400 rpm (**Fig. 9.13a**). The forward airspeed of the plane is to be 75.0 m/s, and the speed of the propeller tips through the air must not exceed 270 m/s. (This is about 80% of the speed of sound in air. If the propeller tips moved faster, they would produce a lot of noise.) (a) What is the maximum possible propeller radius? (b) With this radius, what is the acceleration of the propeller tip?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We consider a particle at the tip of the propeller; our target variables are the particle's distance from the axis and its acceleration. The speed of this particle through the air, which cannot exceed 270 m/s, is due to both the propeller's rotation and the forward motion of the airplane. Figure 9.13b shows that the particle's velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{tip}}$ is the vector sum of its tangential velocity due to the propeller's rotation of magnitude $v_{\text{tan}} = \omega r$, given by Eq. (9.13), and the forward velocity of the airplane of magnitude $v_{\text{plane}} = 75.0$ m/s. The propeller rotates in a plane perpendicular to the direction of flight, so $\vec{v}_{\text{tan}}$ and $\vec{v}_{\text{plane}}$ are perpendicular to each other, and we can use the Pythagorean theorem to obtain an expression for v_{tip} from v_{tan} and v_{plane}. We'll then set $v_{\text{tip}} = 270$ m/s and solve for the radius r. The angular speed of the propeller is constant, so the acceleration of the propeller tip has only a radial component; we'll find it by using Eq. (9.15).

EXECUTE We first convert ω to rad/s (see Fig. 9.11):

$$\omega = 2400 \text{ rpm} = \left(2400 \frac{\text{rev}}{\text{min}}\right)\left(\frac{2\pi \text{ rad}}{1 \text{ rev}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ min}}{60 \text{ s}}\right) = 251 \text{ rad/s}$$

(a) From Fig. 9.13b and Eq. (9.13),

$$v_{\text{tip}}^2 = v_{\text{plane}}^2 + v_{\text{tan}}^2 = v_{\text{plane}}^2 + r^2\omega^2 \quad \text{so}$$

$$r^2 = \frac{v_{\text{tip}}^2 - v_{\text{plane}}^2}{\omega^2} \quad \text{and} \quad r = \frac{\sqrt{v_{\text{tip}}^2 - v_{\text{plane}}^2}}{\omega}$$

If $v_{\text{tip}} = 270$ m/s, the maximum propeller radius is

$$r = \frac{\sqrt{(270 \text{ m/s})^2 - (75.0 \text{ m/s})^2}}{251 \text{ rad/s}} = 1.03 \text{ m}$$

(b) The centripetal acceleration of the particle is, from Eq. (9.15),

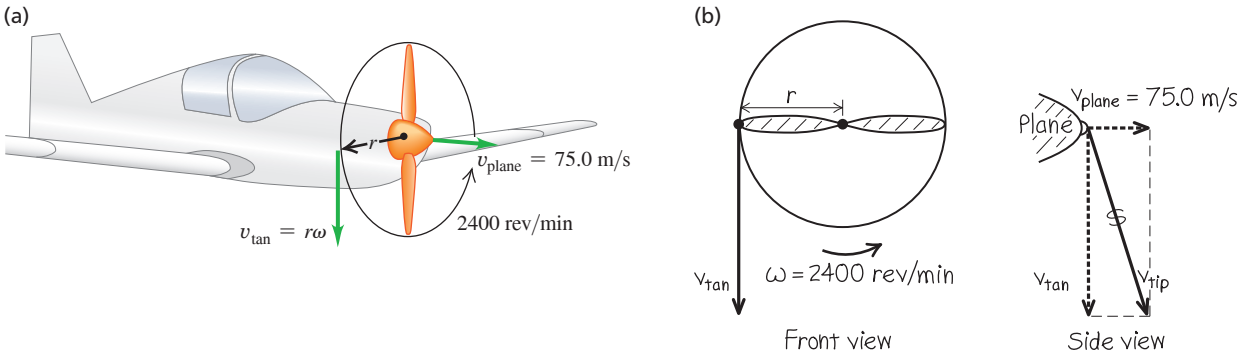
$$a_{\text{rad}} = \omega^2 r = (251 \text{ rad/s})^2(1.03 \text{ m})$$
$$= 6.5 \times 10^4 \text{ m/s}^2$$

The tangential acceleration a_{tan} is zero because ω is constant.

EVALUATE From $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, the propeller must exert a force of 6.5×10^4 N on each kilogram of material at its tip! This is why propellers are made out of tough material such as aluminum alloy.

KEYCONCEPT If a rotating rigid body is also moving as a whole through space, use vector addition to find the velocity of a point on the rigid body.

Figure 9.13 (a) A propeller-driven airplane in flight. (b) Our sketch showing the velocity components for the propeller tip.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.3 Information is stored on a Blu-ray disc (see Fig. 9.8) in a coded pattern of tiny pits. The pits are arranged in a track that spirals outward toward the rim of the disc. As the disc spins inside a player, the track is scanned at a constant *linear* speed. How must the rotation speed ω of the disc change as the player's scanning head moves outward over the track? (i) ω must increase; (ii) ω must decrease; (iii) ω must stay the same.

ANSWER (ii) From Eq. (9.13), $v = r\omega$. To maintain a constant linear speed v, the angular speed ω must decrease as the scanning head moves outward (greater r).

9.4 ENERGY IN ROTATIONAL MOTION

A rotating rigid body consists of mass in motion, so it has kinetic energy. As we'll see, we can express this kinetic energy in terms of the body's angular speed and a new quantity, called *moment of inertia,* that depends on the body's mass and how the mass is distributed.

To begin, we think of a body as being made up of a large number of particles, with masses $m_1, m_2, \ldots$ at distances $r_1, r_2, \ldots$ from the axis of rotation. We label the particles with the index i: The mass of the ith particle is m_i and r_i is the *perpendicular* distance from the axis to the ith particle. (The particles need not all lie in the same plane.)

When a rigid body rotates about a fixed axis, the speed v_i of the ith particle is given by Eq. (9.13), $v_i = r_i\omega$, where ω is the body's angular speed. Different particles have different values of r_i, but ω is the same for all (otherwise, the body wouldn't be rigid). The kinetic energy of the ith particle can be expressed as

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_i v_i^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m_i r_i^2\omega^2$$

The body's *total* kinetic energy is the sum of the kinetic energies of all its particles:

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}m_1 r_1^2\omega^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_2 r_2^2\omega^2 + \cdots = \sum_i \tfrac{1}{2}m_i r_i^2\omega^2$$

Taking the common factor $\frac{1}{2}\omega^2$ out of this expression, we get

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_1 r_1^2 + m_2 r_2^2 + \cdots)\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\Big(\sum_i m_i r_i^2\Big)\omega^2$$

The quantity in parentheses, obtained by multiplying the mass of each particle by the square of its distance from the axis of rotation and adding these products, is called the **moment of inertia** I of the body for this rotation axis:

Moment of inertia of a body for a given rotation axis

$$I = m_1 r_1^2 + m_2 r_2^2 + \cdots = \sum_i m_i r_i^2 \qquad (9.16)$$

Masses of the particles that make up the body

Perpendicular distances of the particles from rotation axis

"Moment" means that I depends on how the body's mass is distributed in space; it has nothing to do with a "moment" of time. For a body with a given rotation axis and a given total mass, the greater the distances from the axis to the particles that make up the body, the greater the moment of inertia I. In a rigid body, all distances r_i are constant and I is independent of how the body rotates around the given axis. The SI unit of I is the kilogram-meter^2 (kg · m^2).

Using Eq. (9.16), we see that the **rotational kinetic energy** K of a rigid body is

Rotational kinetic energy of a rigid body rotating around an axis

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 \qquad (9.17)$$

Moment of inertia of body for given rotation axis

Angular speed of body

The kinetic energy given by Eq. (9.17) is *not* a new form of energy; it's simply the sum of the kinetic energies of the individual particles that make up the rotating rigid body. To use Eq. (9.17), ω *must* be measured in radians per second, not revolutions or degrees per second, to give K in joules. That's because we used $v_i = r_i\omega$ in our derivation.

Equation (9.17) gives a simple physical interpretation of moment of inertia: *The greater the moment of inertia, the greater the kinetic energy of a rigid body rotating with a given angular speed* ω. We learned in Chapter 6 that the kinetic energy of an object equals the amount of work done to accelerate that object from rest. So the greater a body's moment of inertia, the harder it is to start the body rotating if it's at rest and the harder it is to stop its rotation if it's already rotating (**Fig. 9.14**). For this reason, I is also called the *rotational inertia*.

BIO APPLICATION Moment of Inertia of a Bird's Wing When a bird flaps its wings, it rotates the wings up and down around the shoulder. A hummingbird has small wings with a small moment of inertia, so the bird can move its wings rapidly (up to 70 beats per second). By contrast, the Andean condor (*Vultur gryphus*) has immense wings that are hard to move due to their large moment of inertia. Condors flap their wings at about one beat per second on takeoff, but at most times prefer to soar while holding their wings steady.

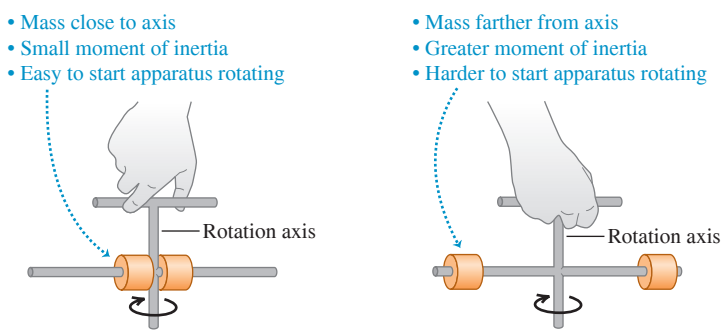


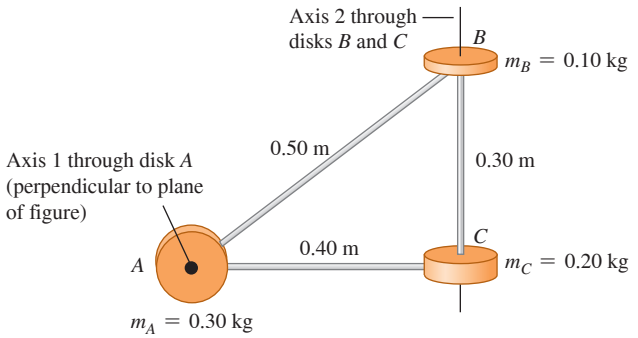
Figure **9.14** An apparatus free to rotate around a vertical axis. To vary the moment of inertia, the two equal-mass cylinders can be locked into different positions on the horizontal shaft.

EXAMPLE 9.6 Moments of inertia for different rotation axes

A machine part (**Fig. 9.15**) consists of three small disks linked by lightweight struts. (a) What is this body's moment of inertia about axis 1 through the center of disk A, perpendicular to the plane of the diagram? (b) What is its moment of inertia about axis 2 through the centers of disks B and C? (c) What is the body's kinetic energy if it rotates about axis 1 with angular speed $\omega = 4.0$ rad/s?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll consider the disks as massive particles located at the centers of the disks, and consider the struts as massless. In parts (a) and (b), we'll use Eq. (9.16) to find the moments of inertia. Given the moment of inertia about axis 1, we'll use Eq. (9.17) in part (c) to find the rotational kinetic energy.

Figure 9.15 An oddly shaped machine part.



EXECUTE (a) The particle at point A lies *on* axis 1 through A, so its distance r from the axis is zero and it contributes nothing to the moment of inertia. Hence only B and C contribute in Eq. (9.16):

$$I_1 = \Sigma m_i r_i^2 = (0.10\text{ kg})(0.50\text{ m})^2 + (0.20\text{ kg})(0.40\text{ m})^2$$
$$= 0.057\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

(b) The particles at B and C both lie on axis 2, so neither particle contributes to the moment of inertia. Hence only A contributes:

$$I_2 = \Sigma m_i r_i^2 = (0.30\text{ kg})(0.40\text{ m})^2 = 0.048\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

(c) From Eq. (9.17),

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2} I_1 \omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.057\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(4.0\text{ rad/s})^2 = 0.46\text{ J}$$

EVALUATE The moment of inertia about axis 2 is smaller than that about axis 1. Hence, of the two axes, it's easier to make the machine part rotate about axis 2.

KEYCONCEPT The moment of inertia I of a rigid body about an axis depends on the position and orientation of the axis. The value of I for a given rigid body can be very different for different axes.

CAUTION Moment of inertia depends on the choice of axis Example 9.6 shows that the moment of inertia of a body depends on the location and orientation of the axis. It's not enough to say, "The moment of inertia is 0.048 kg · m^2." We have to be specific and say, "The moment of inertia *about the axis through B and C* is 0.048 kg · m^2."

In Example 9.6 we represented the body as several point masses, and we evaluated the sum in Eq. (9.16) directly. When the body is a *continuous* distribution of matter, such as a solid cylinder or plate, the sum becomes an integral, and we need to use calculus to calculate the moment of inertia. We'll give several examples of such calculations in Section 9.6; meanwhile, **Table 9.2** gives moments of inertia for several familiar shapes in terms of their masses and dimensions. Each body shown in Table 9.2 is *uniform;* that is, the density has the same value at all points within the solid parts of the body.

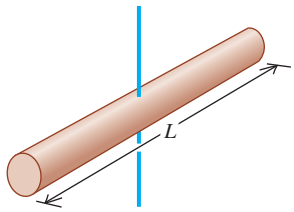
CAUTION Computing moments of inertia You may be tempted to try to compute the moment of inertia of a body by assuming that all the mass is concentrated at the center of mass and multiplying the total mass by the square of the distance from the center of mass to the axis. That doesn't work! For example, when a uniform thin rod of length L and mass M is pivoted about an axis through one end, perpendicular to the rod, the moment of inertia is $I = ML^2/3$ [case (b) in Table 9.2]. If we took the mass as concentrated at the center, a distance $L/2$ from the axis, we would obtain the *incorrect* result $I = M(L/2)^2 = ML^2/4$.

Now that we know how to calculate the kinetic energy of a rotating rigid body, we can apply the energy principles of Chapter 7 to rotational motion. The Problem-Solving Strategy on the next page, along with the examples that follow, shows how this is done.

TABLE 9.2 Moments of Inertia of Various Bodies

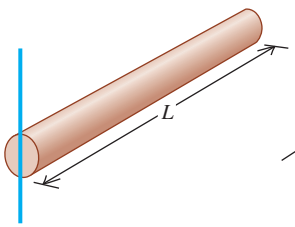
(a) Slender rod, axis through center

$I = \frac{1}{12}ML^2$



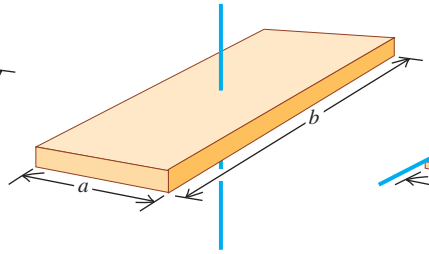
(b) Slender rod, axis through one end

$I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$



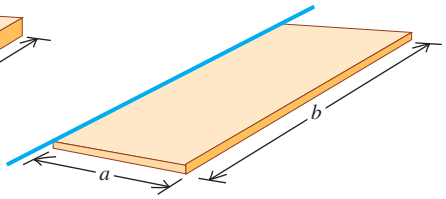
(c) Rectangular plate, axis through center

$I = \frac{1}{12}M(a^2 + b^2)$



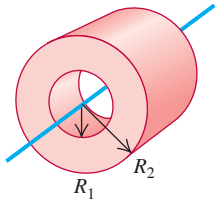
(d) Thin rectangular plate, axis along edge

$I = \frac{1}{3}Ma^2$



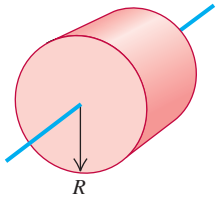
(e) Hollow cylinder

$I = \frac{1}{2}M(R_1^2 + R_2^2)$



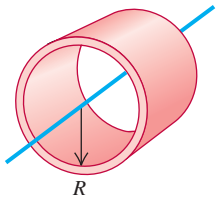
(f) Solid cylinder

$I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$



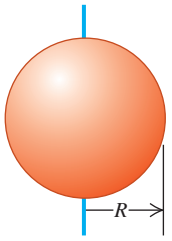
(g) Thin-walled hollow cylinder

$I = MR^2$



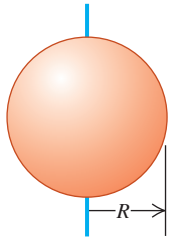
(h) Solid sphere

$I = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$



(i) Thin-walled hollow sphere

$I = \frac{2}{3}MR^2$



PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 9.1 Rotational Energy

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* You can use work–energy relationships and conservation of energy to find relationships involving the position and motion of a rigid body rotating around a fixed axis. The energy method is usually not helpful for problems that involve elapsed time. In Chapter 10 we'll see how to approach rotational problems of this kind.

SET UP *the problem* using Problem-Solving Strategy 7.1 (Section 7.1) with the following additional steps:

5. You can use Eqs. (9.13) and (9.14) in problems involving a rope (or the like) wrapped around a rotating rigid body, if the rope doesn't slip. These equations relate the linear speed and tangential acceleration of a point on the body to the body's angular velocity and angular acceleration. (See Examples 9.7 and 9.8.)
6. Use Table 9.2 to find moments of inertia. Use the parallel-axis theorem, Eq. (9.19) (to be derived in Section 9.5), to find moments of inertia for rotation about axes parallel to those shown in the table.

EXECUTE *the solution:* Write expressions for the initial and final kinetic and potential energies K_1, K_2, U_1, and U_2 and for the nonconservative work W_{other} (if any), where K_1 and K_2 must now include any rotational kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$. Substitute these expressions into Eq. (7.14), $K_1 + U_1 + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_2$ (if nonconservative work is done), or Eq. (7.12), $K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2$ (if only conservative work is done), and solve for the target variables. It's helpful to draw bar graphs showing the initial and final values of K, U, and $E = K + U$.

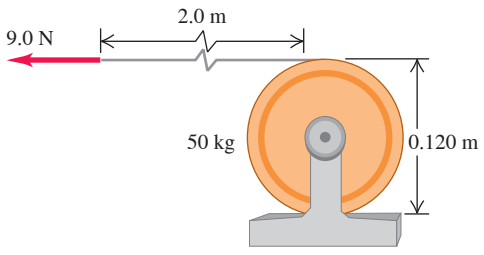
EVALUATE *your answer:* Check whether your answer makes physical sense.

EXAMPLE 9.7 An unwinding cable I

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

We wrap a light, nonstretching cable around a solid cylinder, of mass 50 kg and diameter 0.120 m, that rotates in frictionless bearings about a stationary horizontal axis (**Fig. 9.16**). We pull the free end of the cable with a constant 9.0 N force for a distance of 2.0 m; it turns the cylinder as it unwinds without slipping. The cylinder is initially at rest. Find its final angular speed and the final speed of the cable.

Figure 9.16 A cable unwinds from a cylinder (side view).



IDENTIFY We'll solve this problem by using energy methods. We'll assume that the cable is massless, so only the cylinder has kinetic energy. There are no changes in gravitational potential energy. There is friction

Continued

between the cable and the cylinder, but because the cable doesn't slip, there is no motion of the cable relative to the cylinder and no mechanical energy is lost in frictional work. Because the cable is massless, the force that the cable exerts on the cylinder rim is equal to the applied force F.

SET UP Point 1 is when the cable begins to move. The cylinder starts at rest, so $K_1 = 0$. Point 2 is when the cable has moved a distance $s = 2.0\text{ m}$ and the cylinder has kinetic energy $K_2 = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$. One of our target variables is ω; the other is the speed of the cable at point 2, which is equal to the tangential speed v of the cylinder at that point. We'll use Eq. (9.13) to find v from ω.

EXECUTE The work done on the cylinder is $W_{\text{other}} = Fs = (9.0\text{ N})(2.0\text{ m}) = 18\text{ J}$. From Table 9.2 the moment of inertia is

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}mR^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(50\text{ kg})(0.060\text{ m})^2 = 0.090\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

(The radius R is half the diameter.) From Eq. (7.14), $K_1 + U_1 + W_{\text{other}} = K_2 + U_2$, so

$$0 + 0 + W_{\text{other}} = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 + 0$$

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{2W_{\text{other}}}{I}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(18\text{ J})}{0.090\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2}} = 20\text{ rad/s}$$

From Eq. (9.13), the final tangential speed of the cylinder, and hence the final speed of the cable, is

$$v = R\omega = (0.060\text{ m})(20\text{ rad/s}) = 1.2\text{ m/s}$$

EVALUATE If the cable mass is not negligible, some of the 18 J of work would go into the kinetic energy of the cable. Then the cylinder would have less kinetic energy and a lower angular speed than we calculated here.

KEYCONCEPT When using energy methods to solve problems about rotating rigid bodies, follow the same general steps as in Chapter 7, but include any rotational kinetic energy, $K = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$.

EXAMPLE 9.8 An unwinding cable II

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

We wrap a light, nonstretching cable around a solid cylinder with mass M and radius R. The cylinder rotates with negligible friction about a stationary horizontal axis. We tie the free end of the cable to a block of mass m and release the block from rest at a distance h above the floor. As the block falls, the cable unwinds without stretching or slipping. Find the speed of the falling block and the angular speed of the cylinder as the block strikes the floor.

IDENTIFY As in Example 9.7, the cable doesn't slip and so friction does no work. We assume that the cable is massless, so that the forces it exerts on the cylinder and the block have equal magnitudes. At its upper end the force and displacement are in the same direction, and at its lower end they are in opposite directions, so the cable does no *net* work and $W_{\text{other}} = 0$. Only gravity does work, and mechanical energy is conserved.

SET UP **Figure 9.17a** shows the situation before the block begins to fall (point 1). The initial kinetic energy is $K_1 = 0$. We take the gravitational potential energy to be zero when the block is at floor level (point 2), so $U_1 = mgh$ and $U_2 = 0$. (We ignore the gravitational potential energy for the rotating cylinder, since its height doesn't change.) Just before the block hits the floor (Fig. 9.17b), the block has kinetic energy due to its translational motion and the cylinder has kinetic energy due to its rotation. The total kinetic energy is the sum of these:

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2$$

The moment of inertia of the cylinder is $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$. Also, $v = R\omega$ since the speed of the falling block must be equal to the tangential speed at the outer surface of the cylinder.

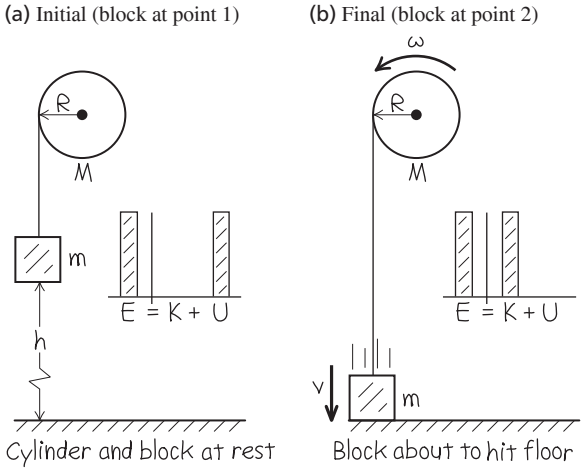
EXECUTE We use our expressions for K_1, U_1, K_2, and U_2 and the relationship $\omega = v/R$ in Eq. (7.4), $K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2$, and solve for v:

$$0 + mgh = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2\right)\left(\frac{v}{R}\right)^2 + 0 = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(m + \tfrac{1}{2}M\right)v^2$$

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2gh}{1 + M/2m}}$$

The final angular speed of the cylinder is $\omega = v/R$.

Figure 9.17 Our sketches for this problem.



EVALUATE When M is much larger than m, v is very small; when M is much smaller than m, v is nearly equal to $\sqrt{2gh}$, the speed of a body that falls freely from height h. Both of these results are as we would expect.

KEYCONCEPT When a block is attached to a string that wraps around a cylinder or pulley of radius R, the speed v of the block is related to the angular speed ω of the cylinder or pulley by $v = R\omega$. You can use this to find the combined kinetic energy of the two objects.

Gravitational Potential Energy for an Extended Body

In Example 9.8 the cable was of negligible mass, so we could ignore its kinetic energy as well as the gravitational potential energy associated with it. If the mass is *not* negligible, we need to know how to calculate the *gravitational potential energy* associated with such an extended body. If the acceleration of gravity g is the same at all points on the body, the gravitational potential energy is the same as though all the mass were concentrated at the center of mass of the body. Suppose we take the y-axis vertically upward. Then for a body with total mass M, the gravitational potential energy U is simply

$$U = Mgy_{\text{cm}} \quad \text{(gravitational potential energy for an extended body)} \qquad (9.18)$$

where y_{cm} is the y-coordinate of the center of mass. This expression applies to any extended body, whether it is rigid or not (**Fig. 9.18**).

To prove Eq. (9.18), we again represent the body as a collection of mass elements m_i. The potential energy for element m_i is $m_i g y_i$, so the total potential energy is

$$U = m_1 g y_1 + m_2 g y_2 + \cdots = (m_1 y_1 + m_2 y_2 + \cdots)g$$

But from Eq. (8.28), which defines the coordinates of the center of mass,

$$m_1 y_1 + m_2 y_2 + \cdots = (m_1 + m_2 + \cdots)y_{\text{cm}} = My_{\text{cm}}$$

where $M = m_1 + m_2 + \cdots$ is the total mass. Combining this with the above expression for U, we find $U = Mgy_{\text{cm}}$ in agreement with Eq. (9.18).

We leave the application of Eq. (9.18) to the problems. In Chapter 10 we'll use this equation to help us analyze rigid-body problems in which the axis of rotation moves.

Figure **9.18** In a technique called the "Fosbury flop" after its innovator, this athlete arches her body as she passes over the bar in the high jump. As a result, her center of mass actually passes *under* the bar. This technique requires a smaller increase in gravitational potential energy [Eq. (9.18)] than the older method of straddling the bar.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.4 Suppose the cylinder and block in Example 9.8 have the same mass, so $m = M$. Just before the block strikes the floor, which statement is correct about the relationship between the kinetic energy K_{block} of the falling block and the rotational kinetic energy K_{cylinder} of the cylinder? (i) $K_{\text{block}} > K_{\text{cylinder}}$; (ii) $K_{\text{block}} < K_{\text{cylinder}}$; (iii) $K_{\text{block}} = K_{\text{cylinder}}$.

ANSWER

(i) The kinetic energy in the falling block is $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$, and the kinetic energy in the rotating cylinder is $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}mR^2\right)\left(v/R\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}mv^2$. Hence the total kinetic energy of the system is $\frac{3}{4}mv^2$, of which two-thirds is in the block and one-third is in the cylinder.

9.5 PARALLEL-AXIS THEOREM

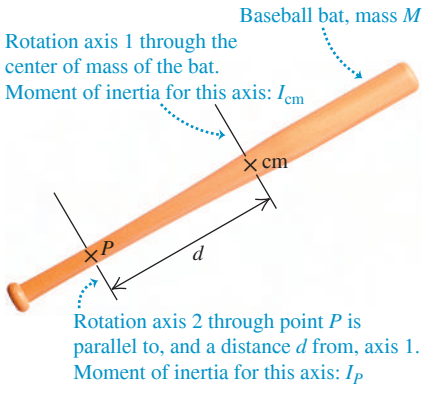
We pointed out in Section 9.4 that a body doesn't have just one moment of inertia. In fact, it has infinitely many, because there are infinitely many axes about which it might rotate. But there is a simple relationship, called the **parallel-axis theorem,** between the moment of inertia of a body about an axis through its center of mass and the moment of inertia about any other axis parallel to the original axis (**Fig. 9.19**):

Parallel-axis theorem:
Moment of inertia of a body for a rotation axis through point P

$$I_P = I_{\text{cm}} + Md^2 \qquad (9.19)$$

I_{cm}: Moment of inertia of body for a parallel axis through center of mass
M: Mass of body
d: Distance between two parallel axes

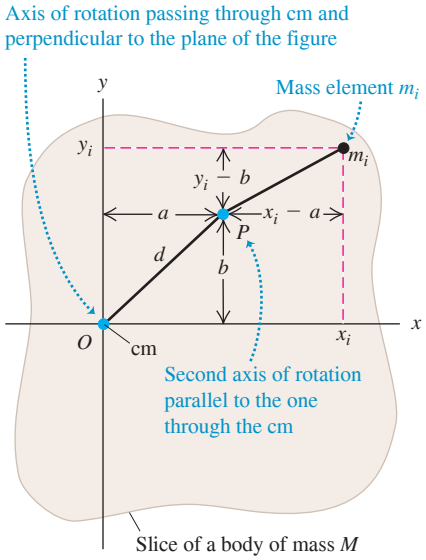
Figure **9.19** The parallel-axis theorem.



Parallel-axis theorem: $I_P = I_{\text{cm}} + Md^2$

To prove this theorem, we consider two axes, both parallel to the z-axis: one through the center of mass and the other through a point P (**Fig. 9.20**, next page). First we take a very thin slice of the body, parallel to the xy-plane and perpendicular to the z-axis. We take the origin of our coordinate system to be at the center of mass of the body; the coordinates of the center of mass are then $x_{\text{cm}} = y_{\text{cm}} = z_{\text{cm}} = 0$. The axis through the center of mass passes through this thin slice at point O, and the parallel axis passes through point P, whose x- and y-coordinates are (a, b). The distance of this axis from the axis through the center of mass is d, where $d^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

Figure 9.20 The mass element m_i has coordinates (x_i, y_i) with respect to an axis of rotation through the center of mass (cm) and coordinates $(x_i - a, y_i - b)$ with respect to the parallel axis through point P.



We can write an expression for the moment of inertia I_P about the axis through point P. Let m_i be a mass element in our slice, with coordinates (x_i, y_i, z_i). Then the moment of inertia I_{cm} of the slice about the axis through the center of mass (at O) is

$$I_{cm} = \sum_i m_i(x_i^2 + y_i^2)$$

The moment of inertia of the slice about the axis through P is

$$I_P = \sum_i m_i[(x_i - a)^2 + (y_i - b)^2]$$

These expressions don't involve the coordinates z_i measured perpendicular to the slices, so we can extend the sums to include *all* particles in *all* slices. Then I_P becomes the moment of inertia of the *entire* body for an axis through P. We then expand the squared terms and regroup, and obtain

$$I_P = \sum_i m_i(x_i^2 + y_i^2) - 2a\sum_i m_i x_i - 2b\sum_i m_i y_i + (a^2 + b^2)\sum_i m_i$$

The first sum is I_{cm}. From Eq. (8.28), the definition of the center of mass, the second and third sums are proportional to x_{cm} and y_{cm}; these are zero because we have taken our origin to be the center of mass. The final term is d^2 multiplied by the total mass, or Md^2. This completes our proof that $I_P = I_{cm} + Md^2$.

As Eq. (9.19) shows, a rigid body has a lower moment of inertia about an axis through its center of mass than about any other parallel axis. Thus it's easier to start a body rotating if the rotation axis passes through the center of mass. This suggests that it's somehow most natural for a rotating body to rotate about an axis through its center of mass; we'll make this idea more quantitative in Chapter 10.

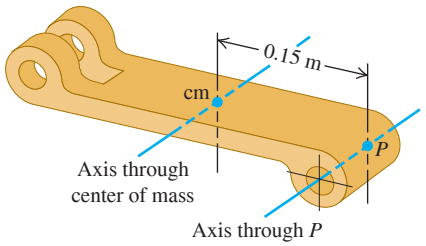
EXAMPLE 9.9 Using the parallel-axis theorem

A part of a mechanical linkage (**Fig. 9.21**) has a mass of 3.6 kg. Its moment of inertia I_P about an axis 0.15 m from its center of mass is $I_P = 0.132\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. What is the moment of inertia I_{cm} about a parallel axis through the center of mass?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE We'll determine the target variable I_{cm} by using the parallel-axis theorem, Eq. (9.19). Rearranging the equation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} I_{cm} &= I_P - Md^2 = 0.132\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2 - (3.6\ \text{kg})(0.15\ \text{m})^2 \\ &= 0.051\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Figure 9.21 Calculating I_{cm} from a measurement of I_P.



EVALUATE As we expect, I_{cm} is less than I_P; the moment of inertia for an axis through the center of mass has a lower value than for any other parallel axis.

KEYCONCEPT You can use the parallel-axis theorem to relate the moment of inertia of a rigid body about any axis to the moment of inertia of the same rigid body through a parallel axis through its center of mass.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.5 A pool cue is a wooden rod of uniform composition and is tapered with a larger diameter at one end than at the other end. Use the parallel-axis theorem to decide whether a pool cue has a larger moment of inertia for an axis perpendicular to the length of the rod that is (i) through the thicker end or (ii) through the thinner end.

ANSWER (ii) More of the mass of the pool cue is concentrated at the thicker end, so the center of mass is closer to that end. The moment of inertia through a point P at either end is $I_P = I_{cm} + Md^2$; the thinner end is farther from the center of mass, so the distance d and the moment of inertia I_P are greater for the thinner end.

9.6 MOMENT-OF-INERTIA CALCULATIONS

If a rigid body is a continuous distribution of mass—like a solid cylinder or a solid sphere—it cannot be represented by a few point masses. In this case the *sum* of masses and distances that defines the moment of inertia [Eq. (9.16)] becomes an *integral*. Imagine dividing the body into elements of mass dm that are very small, so that all points in a particular element are at essentially the same perpendicular distance from the axis of rotation. We call this distance r, as before. Then the moment of inertia is

$$I = \int r^2\, dm \tag{9.20}$$

To evaluate the integral, we have to represent r and dm in terms of the same integration variable. When the body is effectively one-dimensional, such as the slender rods (a) and (b) in Table 9.2, we can use a coordinate x along the length and relate dm to an increment dx. For a three-dimensional body it is usually easiest to express dm in terms of an element of volume dV and the *density* ρ of the body. Density is mass per unit volume, $\rho = dm/dV$, so we may write Eq. (9.20) as

$$I = \int r^2 \rho\, dV$$

This expression tells us that a body's moment of inertia depends on how its density varies within its volume (**Fig. 9.22**). If the body is uniform in density, then we may take ρ outside the integral:

$$I = \rho \int r^2\, dV \tag{9.21}$$

To use this equation, we have to express the volume element dV in terms of the differentials of the integration variables, such as $dV = dx\, dy\, dz$. The element dV must always be chosen so that all points within it are at very nearly the same distance from the axis of rotation. The limits on the integral are determined by the shape and dimensions of the body. For regularly shaped bodies, this integration is often easy to do.

Figure **9.22** By measuring small variations in the orbits of satellites, geophysicists can measure the earth's moment of inertia. This tells us how our planet's mass is distributed within its interior. The data show that the earth is far denser at the core than in its outer layers.

EXAMPLE 9.10 Hollow or solid cylinder, rotating about axis of symmetry

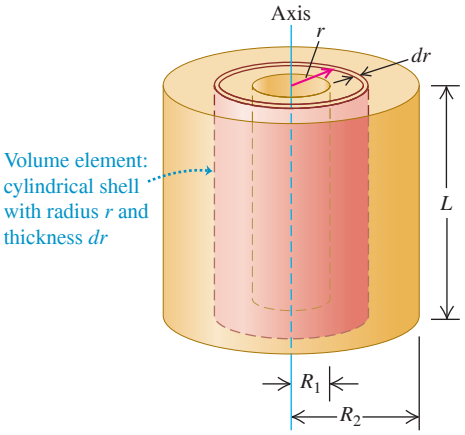
Figure 9.23 shows a hollow cylinder of uniform mass density ρ with length L, inner radius R_1, and outer radius R_2. (It might be a steel cylinder in a printing press.) Using integration, find its moment of inertia about its axis of symmetry.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We choose as a volume element a thin cylindrical shell of radius r, thickness dr, and length L. All parts of this shell are at very nearly the same distance r from the axis. The volume of the shell is very nearly that of a flat sheet with thickness dr, length L, and width $2\pi r$ (the circumference of the shell). The mass of the shell is

$$dm = \rho\, dV = \rho(2\pi r L\, dr)$$

We'll use this expression in Eq. (9.20), integrating from $r = R_1$ to $r = R_2$.

Figure **9.23** Finding the moment of inertia of a hollow cylinder about its symmetry axis.



EXECUTE From Eq. (9.20), the moment of inertia is

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int r^2\, dm = \int_{R_1}^{R_2} r^2 \rho(2\pi r L\, dr) \\ &= 2\pi\rho L \int_{R_1}^{R_2} r^3\, dr = \frac{2\pi\rho L}{4}(R_2^4 - R_1^4) \\ &= \frac{\pi\rho L}{2}(R_2^2 - R_1^2)(R_2^2 + R_1^2) \end{aligned}$$

[In the last step we used the identity $a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b)$.] Let's express this result in terms of the total mass M of the body, which is its density ρ multiplied by the total volume V. The cylinder's volume is

$$V = \pi L(R_2^2 - R_1^2)$$

so its total mass M is

$$M = \rho V = \pi L \rho (R_2^2 - R_1^2)$$

Comparing with the above expression for I, we see that

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2} M(R_1^2 + R_2^2)$$

Continued

EVALUATE Our result agrees with Table 9.2, case (e). If the cylinder is solid, with outer radius $R_2 = R$ and inner radius $R_1 = 0$, its moment of inertia is

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2$$

in agreement with case (f). If the cylinder wall is very thin, we have $R_1 \approx R_2 = R$ and the moment of inertia is

$$I = MR^2$$

in agreement with case (g). We could have predicted this last result without calculation; in a thin-walled cylinder, all the mass is at the same distance $r = R$ from the axis, so $I = \int r^2\,dm = R^2\int dm = MR^2$.

KEYCONCEPT Use integration to calculate the moment of inertia of a rigid body that is a continuous distribution of mass. If the body is symmetrical, divide it into volume elements that make use of its symmetry.

EXAMPLE 9.11 Uniform sphere with radius *R*, axis through center

Find the moment of inertia of a solid sphere of uniform mass density ρ (like a billiard ball) about an axis through its center.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We divide the sphere into thin, solid disks of thickness dx (**Fig. 9.24**), whose moment of inertia we know from Table 9.2, case (f). We'll integrate over these to find the total moment of inertia.

EXECUTE The radius and hence the volume and mass of a disk depend on its distance x from the center of the sphere. The radius r of the disk shown in Fig. 9.24 is

$$r = \sqrt{R^2 - x^2}$$

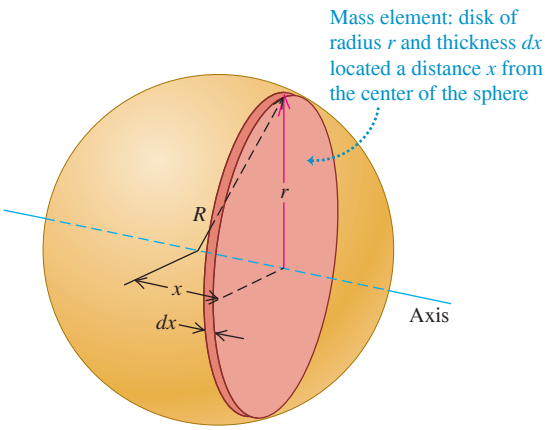
Its volume is

$$dV = \pi r^2\,dx = \pi(R^2 - x^2)\,dx$$

and so its mass is

$$dm = \rho\,dV = \pi\rho(R^2 - x^2)\,dx$$

Figure 9.24 Finding the moment of inertia of a sphere about an axis through its center.



From Table 9.2, case (f), the moment of inertia of a disk of radius r and mass dm is

$$dI = \tfrac{1}{2}r^2\,dm = \tfrac{1}{2}(R^2 - x^2)[\pi\rho(R^2 - x^2)dx]$$
$$= \frac{\pi\rho}{2}(R^2 - x^2)^2\,dx$$

Integrating this expression from $x = 0$ to $x = R$ gives the moment of inertia of the right hemisphere. The total I for the entire sphere, including both hemispheres, is just twice this:

$$I = (2)\frac{\pi\rho}{2}\int_0^R (R^2 - x^2)^2\,dx$$

Carrying out the integration, we find

$$I = \frac{8\pi\rho R^5}{15}$$

The volume of the sphere is $V = 4\pi R^3/3$, so in terms of its mass M its density is

$$\rho = \frac{M}{V} = \frac{3M}{4\pi R^3}$$

Hence our expression for I becomes

$$I = \left(\frac{8\pi R^5}{15}\right)\left(\frac{3M}{4\pi R^3}\right) = \tfrac{2}{5}MR^2$$

EVALUATE This is just as in Table 9.2, case (h). Note that the moment of inertia $I = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$ of a solid sphere of mass M and radius R is less than the moment of inertia $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$ of a solid *cylinder* of the same mass and radius, because more of the sphere's mass is located close to the axis.

KEYCONCEPT When calculating a moment of inertia by integration, in general use geometry to determine the size and moment of inertia of each volume element.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 9.6 Two hollow cylinders have the same inner and outer radii and the same mass, but they have different lengths. One is made of low-density wood and the other of high-density lead. Which cylinder has the greater moment of inertia around its axis of symmetry? (i) The wood cylinder; (ii) the lead cylinder; (iii) the two moments of inertia are equal.

ANSWER (iii) Our result from Example 9.10 does *not* depend on the cylinder length L. The moment of inertia depends on only the *radial* distribution of mass, not on its distribution along the axis.

CHAPTER 9 SUMMARY

Rotational kinematics: When a rigid body rotates about a stationary axis (usually called the z-axis), the body's position is described by an angular coordinate θ. The angular velocity ω_z is the time derivative of θ, and the angular acceleration α_z is the time derivative of ω_z or the second derivative of θ. (See Examples 9.1 and 9.2.) If the angular acceleration is constant, then θ, ω_z, and α_z are related by simple kinematic equations analogous to those for straight-line motion with constant linear acceleration. (See Example 9.3.)

$$\omega_z = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\theta}{dt} \tag{9.3}$$

$$\alpha_z = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\omega_z}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\omega_z}{dt} \tag{9.5}$$

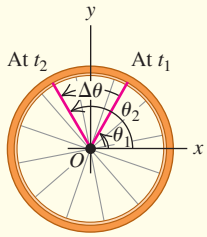
Constant α_z only:

$$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_{0z}t + \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha_z t^2 \tag{9.11}$$

$$\theta - \theta_0 = \tfrac{1}{2}(\omega_{0z} + \omega_z)t \tag{9.10}$$

$$\omega_z = \omega_{0z} + \alpha_z t \tag{9.7}$$

$$\omega_z^2 = \omega_{0z}^2 + 2\alpha_z(\theta - \theta_0) \tag{9.12}$$

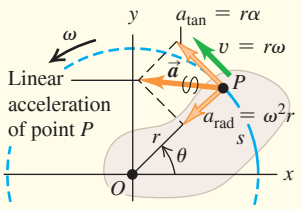


Relating linear and angular kinematics: The angular speed ω of a rigid body is the magnitude of the body's angular velocity. The rate of change of ω is $\alpha = d\omega/dt$. For a particle in the body a distance r from the rotation axis, the speed v and the components of the acceleration $\vec{a}$ are related to ω and α. (See Examples 9.4 and 9.5.)

$$v = r\omega \tag{9.13}$$

$$a_{\text{tan}} = \frac{dv}{dt} = r\frac{d\omega}{dt} = r\alpha \tag{9.14}$$

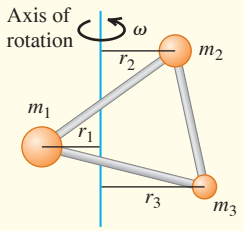
$$a_{\text{rad}} = \frac{v^2}{r} = \omega^2 r \tag{9.15}$$



Moment of inertia and rotational kinetic energy: The moment of inertia I of a body about a given axis is a measure of its rotational inertia: The greater the value of I, the more difficult it is to change the state of the body rotation. The moment of inertia can be expressed as a sum over the particles m_i that make up the body, each of which is at its own perpendicular distance r_i from the axis. The rotational kinetic energy of a rigid body rotating about a fixed axis depends on the angular speed ω and the moment of inertia I for that rotation axis. (See Examples 9.6–9.8.)

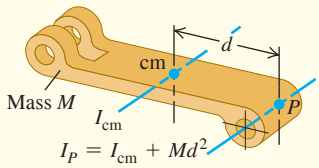
$$I = m_1 r_1^2 + m_2 r_2^2 + \cdots = \sum_i m_i r_i^2 \tag{9.16}$$

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2} I\omega^2 \tag{9.17}$$



Calculating the moment of inertia: The parallel-axis theorem relates the moments of inertia of a rigid body of mass M about two parallel axes: an axis through the center of mass (moment of inertia I_{cm}) and a parallel axis a distance d from the first axis (moment of inertia I_P). (See Example 9.9.) If the body has a continuous mass distribution, the moment of inertia can be calculated by integration. (See Examples 9.10 and 9.11.)

$$I_P = I_{\text{cm}} + Md^2 \tag{9.19}$$



Chapter 9 Media Assets

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 9.3 (Section 9.2) before attempting these problems.

VP9.3.1 A machine part is initially rotating at 0.500 rad/s. Its rotation speeds up with constant angular acceleration 2.50 rad/s^2. Through what angle has the machine part rotated when its angular speed equals 3.25 rad/s? Give your answer in (a) radians, (b) degrees, and (c) revolutions.

VP9.3.2 The rotor of a helicopter is gaining angular speed with constant angular acceleration. At $t = 0$ it is rotating at 1.25 rad/s. From $t = 0$ to $t = 2.00$ s, the rotor rotates through 8.00 rad. (a) What is the angular acceleration of the rotor? (b) Through what angle (in radians) does the rotor rotate from $t = 0$ to $t = 4.00$ s?

VP9.3.3 A jeweler's grinding wheel slows down at a constant rate from 185 rad/s to 105 rad/s while it rotates through 16.0 revolutions. How much time does this take?

VP9.3.4 A disk rotates around an axis through its center that is perpendicular to the plane of the disk. The disk has a line drawn on it that extends from the axis of the disk to the rim. At $t = 0$ this line lies along the x-axis and the disk is rotating with positive angular velocity ω_{0z}. The disk has constant positive angular acceleration α_z. At what time after $t = 0$ has the line on the disk rotated through an angle θ?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 9.4 and 9.5 (Section 9.3) before attempting these problems.

VP9.5.1 Shortly after a vinyl record (radius 0.152 m) starts rotating on a turntable, its angular velocity is 1.60 rad/s and increasing at a rate of 8.00 rad/s^2. At this instant, for a point at the rim of the record, what are (a) the tangential component of acceleration, (b) the centripetal component of acceleration, and (c) the magnitude of acceleration?

VP9.5.2 A superhero swings a magic hammer over her head in a horizontal plane. The end of the hammer moves around a circular path of radius 1.50 m at an angular speed of 6.00 rad/s. As the superhero swings the hammer, she then ascends vertically at a constant 2.00 m/s. (a) What is the speed of the end of the hammer relative to the ground? (b) What is the acceleration (magnitude and direction) of the end of the hammer?

VP9.5.3 If the magnitude of the acceleration of a propeller blade's tip exceeds a certain value a_{max}, the blade tip will fracture. If the propeller has radius r, is initially at rest, and has angular acceleration of magnitude α, at what angular speed ω will the blade tip fracture?

VP9.5.4 At a certain instant, a rotating turbine wheel of radius R has angular speed ω (measured in rad/s). (a) What must be the magnitude α of its angular acceleration (measured in rad/s^2) at this instant if the acceleration vector $\vec{a}$ of a point on the rim of the wheel makes an angle of exactly 30° with the velocity vector $\vec{v}$ of that point? (b) At this same instant, what is the angle between $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{v}$ for a point on the wheel halfway between the axis of rotation and the rim?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 9.7 and 9.8 (Section 9.4) before attempting these problems.

VP9.8.1 A solid cylinder of mass 12.0 kg and radius 0.250 m is free to rotate without friction around its central axis. If you do 75.0 J of work on the cylinder to increase its angular speed, what will be its final angular speed if the cylinder (a) starts from rest; (b) is initially rotating at 12.0 rad/s?

VP9.8.2 A square plate has mass 0.600 kg and sides of length 0.150 m. It is free to rotate without friction around an axis through its center and perpendicular to the plane of the plate. How much work must you do on the plate to change its angular speed (a) from 0 to 40.0 rad/s and (b) from 40.0 rad/s to 80.0 rad/s?

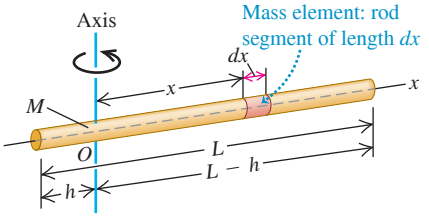
VP9.8.3 A hollow cylinder of mass 2.00 kg, inner radius 0.100 m, and outer radius 0.200 m is free to rotate without friction around a horizontal shaft of radius 0.100 m along the axis of the cylinder. You wrap a light, nonstretching cable around the cylinder and tie the free end to a 0.500 kg block of cheese. You release the cheese from rest a distance h above the floor. (a) If the cheese is moving downward at 4.00 m/s just before it hits the ground, what is the value of h? (b) What is the angular speed of the cylinder just before the cheese hits the ground?

VP9.8.4 A pulley in the shape of a solid cylinder of mass 1.50 kg and radius 0.240 m is free to rotate around a horizontal shaft along the axis of the pulley. There is friction between the pulley and this shaft. A light, nonstretching cable is wrapped around the pulley, and the free end is tied to a 2.00 kg textbook. You release the textbook from rest a distance 0.900 m above the floor. Just before the textbook hits the floor, the angular speed of the pulley is 10.0 rad/s. (a) What is the speed of the textbook just before it hits the floor? (b) How much work was done on the pulley by the force of friction while the textbook was falling to the floor?

BRIDGING PROBLEM A Rotating, Uniform Thin Rod

Figure 9.25 shows a slender uniform rod with mass M and length L. It might be a baton held by a twirler in a marching band (without the rubber end caps). (a) Use integration to compute its moment of inertia about an axis through O, at an arbitrary distance h from one end. (b) Initially the rod is at rest. It is given a constant angular acceleration of magnitude α around the axis through O. Find how much work is done on the rod in a time t. (c) At time t, what is the *linear* acceleration of the point on the rod farthest from the axis?

Figure 9.25 A thin rod with an axis through O.



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Make a list of the target variables for this problem.
2. To calculate the moment of inertia of the rod, you'll have to divide the rod into infinitesimal elements of mass. If an element has length dx, what is the mass of the element? What are the limits of integration?
3. What is the angular speed of the rod at time t? How does the work required to accelerate the rod from rest to this angular speed compare to the rod's kinetic energy at time t?
4. At time t, does the point on the rod farthest from the axis have a centripetal acceleration? A tangential acceleration? Why or why not?

EXECUTE

5. Do the integration required to find the moment of inertia.
6. Use your result from step 5 to calculate the work done in time t to accelerate the rod from rest.
7. Find the linear acceleration components for the point in question at time t. Use these to find the magnitude of the acceleration.

EVALUATE

8. Check your results for the special cases $h = 0$ (the axis passes through one end of the rod) and $h = L/2$ (the axis passes through the middle of the rod). Are these limits consistent with Table 9.2? With the parallel-axis theorem?
9. Is the acceleration magnitude from step 7 constant? Would you expect it to be?

PROBLEMS

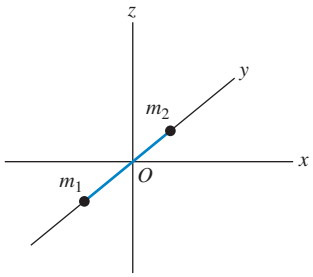
•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q9.1 Which of the following formulas is valid if the angular acceleration of an object is *not* constant? Explain your reasoning in each case. (a) $v = r\omega$; (b) $a_{\text{tan}} = r\alpha$; (c) $\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha t$; (d) $a_{\text{tan}} = r\omega^2$; (e) $K = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$.

Q9.2 A diatomic molecule can be modeled as two point masses, m_1 and m_2, slightly separated (**Fig. Q9.2**). If the molecule is oriented along the y-axis, it has kinetic energy K when it spins about the x-axis. What will its kinetic energy (in terms of K) be if it spins at the same angular speed about (a) the z-axis and (b) the y-axis?

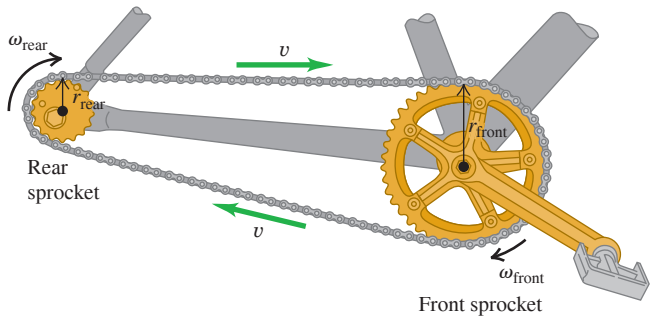
Figure **Q9.2**



Q9.3 What is the difference between tangential and radial acceleration for a point on a rotating body?

Q9.4 In **Fig. Q9.4,** all points on the chain have the same linear speed. Is the magnitude of the linear acceleration also the same for all points on the chain? How are the angular accelerations of the two sprockets related? Explain.

Figure **Q9.4**



Q9.5 In Fig. Q9.4, how are the radial accelerations of points at the teeth of the two sprockets related? Explain.

Q9.6 A flywheel rotates with constant angular velocity. Does a point on its rim have a tangential acceleration? A radial acceleration? Are these accelerations constant in magnitude? In direction? In each case give your reasoning.

Q9.7 What is the purpose of the spin cycle of a washing machine? Explain in terms of acceleration components.

Q9.8 You are designing a flywheel to store kinetic energy. If all of the following uniform objects have the same mass and same angular velocity, which one will store the greatest amount of kinetic energy? Which will store the least? Explain. (a) A solid sphere of diameter D rotating about a diameter; (b) a solid cylinder of diameter D rotating about an axis perpendicular to each face through its center; (c) a thin-walled hollow cylinder of diameter D rotating about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the circular face at its center; (d) a solid, thin bar of length D rotating about an axis perpendicular to it at its center.

Q9.9 Can you think of a body that has the same moment of inertia for all possible axes? If so, give an example, and if not, explain why this is not possible. Can you think of a body that has the same moment of inertia for all axes passing through a certain point? If so, give an example and indicate where the point is located.

Q9.10 To maximize the moment of inertia of a flywheel while minimizing its weight, what shape and distribution of mass should it have? Explain.

Q9.11 How might you determine experimentally the moment of inertia of an irregularly shaped body about a given axis?

Q9.12 A cylindrical body has mass M and radius R. Can the mass be distributed within the body in such a way that its moment of inertia about its axis of symmetry is greater than MR^2? Explain.

Q9.13 Describe how you could use part (b) of Table 9.2 to derive the result in part (d).

Q9.14 A hollow spherical shell of radius R that is rotating about an axis through its center has rotational kinetic energy K. If you want to modify this sphere so that it has three times as much kinetic energy at the same angular speed while keeping the same mass, what should be its radius in terms of R?

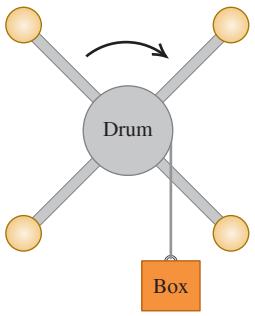
Q9.15 For the equations for I given in parts (a) and (b) of Table 9.2 to be valid, must the rod have a circular cross section? Is there any restriction on the size of the cross section for these equations to apply? Explain.

Q9.16 In part (d) of Table 9.2, the thickness of the plate must be much less than a for the expression given for I to apply. But in part (c), the expression given for I applies no matter how thick the plate is. Explain.

Q9.17 Two identical balls, A and B, are each attached to very light string, and each string is wrapped around the rim of a pulley of mass M on a frictionless axle. The only difference is that the pulley for ball A is a solid disk, while the one for ball B is a hollow disk, like part (e) in Table 9.2. If both balls are released from rest and fall the same distance, which one will have more kinetic energy, or will they have the same kinetic energy? Explain your reasoning.

Q9.18 An elaborate pulley consists of four identical balls at the ends of spokes extending out from a rotating drum (**Fig. Q9.18**). A box is connected to a light, thin rope wound around the rim of the drum. When it is released from rest, the box acquires a speed V after having fallen a distance d. Now the four balls are moved inward closer to the drum, and the box is again released from rest. After it has fallen a distance d, will its speed be equal to V, greater than V, or less than V? Show or explain why.

Figure **Q9.18**



Q9.19 You can use any angular measure—radians, degrees, or revolutions—in some of the equations in Chapter 9, but you can use only radian measure in others. Identify those for which using radians is necessary and those for which it is not, and in each case give your reasoning.

Q9.20 When calculating the moment of inertia of an object, can we treat all its mass as if it were concentrated at the center of mass of the object? Justify your answer.

Q9.21 A wheel is rotating about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the wheel and passing through the center of the wheel. The angular speed of the wheel is increasing at a constant rate. Point A is on the rim of the wheel and point B is midway between the rim and center of the wheel. For each of the following quantities, is its magnitude larger at point A or at point B, or is it the same at both points? (a) Angular speed; (b) tangential speed; (c) angular acceleration; (d) tangential acceleration; (e) radial acceleration. Justify each answer.

Q9.22 Estimate your own moment of inertia about a vertical axis through the center of the top of your head when you are standing up straight with your arms outstretched. Make reasonable approximations and measure or estimate necessary quantities.

EXERCISES

Section 9.1 Angular Velocity and Acceleration

9.1 • (a) What angle in radians is subtended by an arc 1.57 m long on the circumference of a circle of radius 2.45 m? What is this angle in degrees? (b) An arc 13.3 cm long on the circumference of a circle subtends an angle of 125°. What is the radius of the circle? (c) The angle between two radii of a circle with radius 1.60 m is 0.800 rad. What length of arc is intercepted on the circumference of the circle by the two radii?

9.2 • An airplane propeller is rotating at 1860 rpm (rev/min). (a) Compute the propeller's angular velocity in rad/s. (b) How many seconds does it take for the propeller to turn through 40°?

9.3 • **CP CALC** The angular velocity of a flywheel obeys the equation $\omega_z(t) = A + Bt^2$, where t is in seconds and A and B are constants having numerical values 2.75 (for A) and 1.60 (for B). (a) What are the units of A and B if ω_z is in rad/s? (b) What is the angular acceleration of the wheel at (i) $t = 0$ and (ii) $t = 2.50$ s? (c) Through what angle does the flywheel turn during the first 1.80 s? (*Hint:* See Section 2.6.)

9.4 •• **CALC** A fan blade rotates with angular velocity given by $\omega_z(t) = \gamma - \beta t^2$, where $\gamma = 4.85$ rad/s and $\beta = 0.790$ rad/s^3. (a) Calculate the angular acceleration as a function of time. (b) Calculate the instantaneous angular acceleration α_z at $t = 3.50$ s and the average angular acceleration $\alpha_{av\text{-}z}$ for the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 3.50$ s. How do these two quantities compare? If they are different, why?

9.5 •• **CALC** A child is pushing a merry-go-round. The angle through which the merry-go-round has turned varies with time according to $\theta(t) = \gamma t + \beta t^3$, where $\gamma = 0.428$ rad/s and $\beta = 1.00 \times 10^{-2}$ rad/s^3. (a) Calculate the angular velocity of the merry-go-round as a function of time. (b) What is the initial value of the angular velocity? (c) Calculate the instantaneous value of the angular velocity ω_z at $t = 4.55$ s and the average angular velocity $\omega_{av\text{-}z}$ for the time interval $t = 0$ to $t = 4.55$ s. Show that $\omega_{av\text{-}z}$ is *not* equal to the average of the instantaneous angular velocities at $t = 0$ and $t = 4.55$ s, and explain.

9.6 • **CALC** At $t = 0$ the current to a dc electric motor is reversed, resulting in an angular displacement of the motor shaft given by $\theta(t) = (241 \text{ rad/s})t - (20.2 \text{ rad/s}^2)t^2 - (1.51 \text{ rad/s}^3)t^3$. (a) At what time is the angular velocity of the motor shaft zero? (b) Calculate the angular acceleration at the instant that the motor shaft has zero angular velocity. (c) How many revolutions does the motor shaft turn through between the time when the current is reversed and the instant when the angular velocity is zero? (d) How fast was the motor shaft rotating at $t = 0$, when the current was reversed? (e) Calculate the average angular velocity for the time period from $t = 0$ to the time calculated in part (a).

9.7 • **CALC** The angle θ through which a disk drive turns is given by $\theta(t) = a + bt - ct^3$, where a, b, and c are constants, t is in seconds, and θ is in radians. When $t = 0$, $\theta = \pi/4$ rad and the angular velocity is 2.30 rad/s. When $t = 1.20$ s, the angular acceleration is 1.30 rad/s^2. (a) Find a, b, and c, including their units. (b) What is the angular acceleration when $\theta = \pi/4$ rad? (c) What are θ and the angular velocity when the angular acceleration is 4.20 rad/s^2?

9.8 • A wheel is rotating about an axis that is in the z-direction. The angular velocity ω_z is -6.00 rad/s at $t = 0$, increases linearly with time, and is $+4.00$ rad/s at $t = 7.00$ s. We have taken counterclockwise rotation to be positive. (a) Is the angular acceleration during this time interval positive or negative? (b) During what time interval is the speed of the wheel increasing? Decreasing? (c) What is the angular displacement of the wheel at $t = 7.00$ s?

Section 9.2 Rotation with Constant Angular Acceleration

9.9 • A bicycle wheel has an initial angular velocity of 1.35 rad/s. (a) If its angular acceleration is constant and equal to 0.310 rad/s^2, what is its angular velocity at $t = 2.65$ s? (b) Through what angle has the wheel turned between $t = 0$ and $t = 2.65$ s?

9.10 •• An electric fan is turned off, and its angular velocity decreases uniformly from 550 rev/min to 210 rev/min in 4.40 s. (a) Find the angular acceleration in rev/s^2 and the number of revolutions made by the motor in the 4.40 s interval. (b) How many more seconds are required for the fan to come to rest if the angular acceleration remains constant at the value calculated in part (a)?

9.11 •• The rotating blade of a blender turns with constant angular acceleration 1.59 rad/s^2. (a) How much time does it take to reach an angular velocity of 36.1 rad/s, starting from rest? (b) Through how many revolutions does the blade turn in this time interval?

9.12 •• A wheel rotates from rest with constant angular acceleration. If it rotates through 8.00 revolutions in the first 2.50 s, how many more revolutions will it rotate through in the next 5.00 s?

9.13 •• A turntable rotates with a constant 2.50 rad/s^2 angular acceleration. After 4.15 s it has rotated through an angle of 61.0 rad. What was the angular velocity of the wheel at the beginning of the 4.15 s interval?

9.14 • A circular saw blade 0.180 m in diameter starts from rest. In 6.35 s it accelerates with constant angular acceleration to an angular velocity of 148 rad/s. Find the angular acceleration and the angle through which the blade has turned.

9.15 •• A high-speed flywheel in a motor is spinning at 500 rpm when a power failure suddenly occurs. The flywheel has mass 44.0 kg and diameter 71.0 cm. The power is off for 34.0 s, and during this time the flywheel slows due to friction in its axle bearings. During the time the power is off, the flywheel makes 170 complete revolutions. (a) At what rate is the flywheel spinning when the power comes back on? (b) How long after the beginning of the power failure would it have taken the flywheel to stop if the power had not come back on, and how many revolutions would the wheel have made during this time?

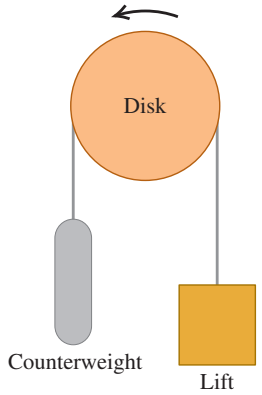
9.16 •• At $t = 0$ a grinding wheel has an angular velocity of 27.0 rad/s. It has a constant angular acceleration of 31.0 rad/s^2 until a circuit breaker trips at $t = 2.50$ s. From then on, it turns through 430 rad as it coasts to a stop at constant angular acceleration. (a) Through what total angle did the wheel turn between $t = 0$ and the time it stopped? (b) At what time did it stop? (c) What was its acceleration as it slowed down?

9.17 •• A safety device brings the blade of a power mower from an initial angular speed of ω_1 to rest in 1.00 revolution. At the same constant acceleration, how many revolutions would it take the blade to come to rest from an initial angular speed ω_3 that was three times as great, $\omega_3 = 3\omega_1$?

Section 9.3 Relating Linear and Angular Kinematics

9.18 • In a charming 19th-century hotel, an old-style lift is connected to a counterweight by a cable that passes over a rotating disk 3.00 m in diameter (**Fig. E9.18**). The lift is raised and lowered by turning the disk, and the cable does not slip on the rim of the disk but turns with it. (a) At how many rpm must the disk turn to raise the lift at 20.0 cm/s? (b) To start the lift moving, it must be accelerated at $\frac{1}{8}g$. What must be the angular acceleration of the disk, in rad/s^2? (c) Through what angle (in radians and degrees) has the disk turned when it has raised the lift 3.30 m between floors?

Figure **E9.18**



9.19 • Spin cycles of washing machines remove water from clothes by producing a large radial acceleration at the rim of the cylindrical tub that holds the water and clothes. Estimate the diameter of the tub in a typical home washing machine. (a) What is the rotation rate, in rev/min, of the tub during the spin cycle if the radial acceleration of points on the tub wall is $3g$? (b) At this rotation rate, what is the tangential speed in m/s of a point on the tub wall?

9.20 • **Compact Disc.** A compact disc (CD) stores music in a coded pattern of tiny pits 10^{-7} m deep. The pits are arranged in a track that spirals outward toward the rim of the disc; the inner and outer radii of this spiral are 25.0 mm and 58.0 mm, respectively. As the disc spins inside a CD player, the track is scanned at a constant *linear* speed of 1.25 m/s. (a) What is the angular speed of the CD when the innermost part of the track is scanned? The outermost part of the track? (b) The maximum playing time of a CD is 74.0 min. What would be the length of the track on such a maximum-duration CD if it were stretched out in a straight line? (c) What is the average angular acceleration of a maximum-duration CD during its 74.0 min playing time? Take the direction of rotation of the disc to be positive.

9.21 •• A wheel of diameter 20.0 cm starts from rest and rotates with a constant angular acceleration of 3.50 rad/s^2. Compute the radial acceleration of a point on the rim for the instant the wheel completes its second revolution from the relationship (a) $a_{\text{rad}} = \omega^2 r$ and (b) $a_{\text{rad}} = v^2/r$.

9.22 •• You are to design a rotating cylindrical axle to lift 800 N buckets of cement from the ground to a rooftop 78.0 m above the ground. The buckets will be attached to a hook on the free end of a cable that wraps around the rim of the axle; as the axle turns, the buckets will rise. (a) What should the diameter of the axle be in order to raise the buckets at a steady 2.00 cm/s when it is turning at 7.5 rpm? (b) If instead the axle must give the buckets an upward acceleration of 0.400 m/s^2, what should the angular acceleration of the axle be?

9.23 • The blade of an electric saw rotates at 2600 rev/min. Estimate the diameter of a typical saw that is used to saw boards in home construction and renovation. What is the linear speed in m/s of a point on the rim of the circular saw blade?

9.24 •• An electric turntable 0.720 m in diameter is rotating about a fixed axis with an initial angular velocity of 0.280 rev/s and a constant angular acceleration of 0.891 rev/s^2. (a) Compute the angular velocity of the turntable after 0.203 s. (b) Through how many revolutions has the turntable spun in this time interval? (c) What is the tangential speed of a point on the rim of the turntable at $t = 0.203$ s? (d) What is the magnitude of the *resultant* acceleration of a point on the rim at $t = 0.203$ s?

9.25 •• **Centrifuge.** An advertisement claims that a centrifuge takes up only 0.127 m of bench space but can produce a radial acceleration of 2600g at 4330 rev/min. Calculate the required radius of the centrifuge. Is the claim realistic?

9.26 • At $t = 3.00$ s a point on the rim of a 0.200-m-radius wheel has a tangential speed of 50.0 m/s as the wheel slows down with a tangential acceleration of constant magnitude 10.0 m/s^2. (a) Calculate the wheel's constant angular acceleration. (b) Calculate the angular velocities at $t = 3.00$ s and $t = 0$. (c) Through what angle did the wheel turn between $t = 0$ and $t = 3.00$ s? (d) At what time will the radial acceleration equal g?

9.27 • A rotating wheel with diameter 0.600 m is speeding up with constant angular acceleration. The speed of a point on the rim of the wheel increases from 3.00 m/s to 6.00 m/s while the wheel turns through 4.00 revolutions. What is the angular acceleration of the wheel?

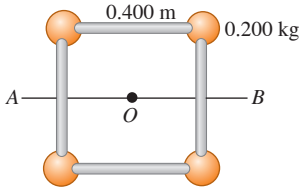
9.28 • The earth is approximately spherical, with a diameter of 1.27×10^7 m. It takes 24.0 hours for the earth to complete one revolution. What are the tangential speed and radial acceleration of a point on the surface of the earth, at the equator?

9.29 • A flywheel with radius 0.300 m starts from rest and accelerates with a constant angular acceleration of 0.600 rad/s^2. For a point on the rim of the flywheel, what are the magnitudes of the tangential, radial, and resultant accelerations after 2.00 s of acceleration?

Section 9.4 Energy in Rotational Motion

9.30 • Four small spheres, each of which you can regard as a point of mass 0.200 kg, are arranged in a square 0.400 m on a side and connected by extremely light rods (**Fig. E9.30**). Find the moment of inertia of the system about an axis (a) through the center of the square, perpendicular to its plane (an axis through point O in the figure); (b) bisecting two opposite sides of the square (an axis along the line AB in the figure); (c) that passes through the centers of the upper left and lower right spheres and through point O.

Figure **E9.30**



9.31 • Calculate the moment of inertia of each of the following uniform objects about the axes indicated. Consult Table 9.2 as needed. (a) A thin 2.80 kg rod of length 60.0 cm, about an axis perpendicular to it and passing through (i) one end and (ii) its center, and (iii) about an axis parallel to the rod and passing through it. (b) A 5.00 kg sphere 20.0 cm in diameter, about an axis through its center, if the sphere is (i) solid and (ii) a thin-walled hollow shell. (c) An 8.50 kg cylinder, of length 27.0 cm and diameter 12.0 cm, about the central axis of the cylinder, if the cylinder is (i) thin-walled and hollow, and (ii) solid.

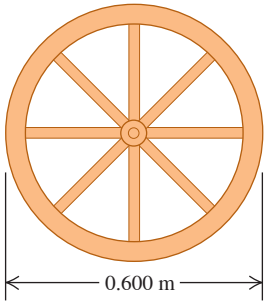
9.32 •• Three small blocks, each with mass m, are clamped at the ends and at the center of a rod of length L and negligible mass. Compute the moment of inertia of the system about an axis perpendicular to the rod and passing through (a) the center of the rod and (b) a point one-fourth of the length from one end.

9.33 • A uniform bar has two small balls glued to its ends. The bar is 2.00 m long and has mass 4.00 kg, while the balls each have mass 0.300 kg and can be treated as point masses. Find the moment of inertia of this combination about an axis (a) perpendicular to the bar through its center; (b) perpendicular to the bar through one of the balls; (c) parallel to the bar through both balls; and (d) parallel to the bar and 0.500 m from it.

9.34 •• You are a project manager for a manufacturing company. One of the machine parts on the assembly line is a thin, uniform rod that is 60.0 cm long and has mass 0.400 kg. (a) What is the moment of inertia of this rod for an axis at its center, perpendicular to the rod? (b) One of your engineers has proposed to reduce the moment of inertia by bending the rod at its center into a V-shape, with a 60.0° angle at its vertex. What would be the moment of inertia of this bent rod about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the V at its vertex?

9.35 •• A wagon wheel is constructed as shown in **Fig. E9.35**. The radius of the wheel is 0.300 m, and the rim has mass 1.48 kg. Each of the eight spokes that lie along a diameter and are 0.300 m long has mass 0.300 kg. What is the moment of inertia of the wheel about an axis through its center and perpendicular to the plane of the wheel? (Use Table 9.2.)

Figure **E9.35**



9.36 •• A uniform sphere made of modeling clay has radius R and moment of inertia I_1 for rotation about a diameter. It is flattened to a disk with the same radius R. In terms of I_1, what is the moment of inertia of the disk for rotation about an axis that is at the center of the disk and perpendicular to its flat surface?

9.37 •• A rotating flywheel has moment of inertia 12.0 kg • m^2 for an axis along the axle about which the wheel is rotating. Initially the flywheel has 30.0 J of kinetic energy. It is slowing down with an angular acceleration of magnitude 0.500 rev/s^2. How long does it take for the rotational kinetic energy to become half its initial value, so it is 15.0 J?

9.38 •• An airplane propeller is 1.73 m in length (from tip to tip) with mass 109 kg and is rotating at 2500 rpm (rev/min) about an axis through its center. You can model the propeller as a slender rod. (a) What is its rotational kinetic energy? (b) Suppose that, due to weight constraints, you had to reduce the propeller's mass to 75.0% of its original mass, but you still needed to keep the same size and kinetic energy. What would its angular speed have to be, in rpm?

9.39 •• A uniform sphere with mass M and radius R is rotating with angular speed ω_1 about a frictionless axle along a diameter of the sphere. The sphere has rotational kinetic energyK_1. A thin-walled hollow sphere has the same mass and radius as the uniform sphere. It is also rotating about a fixed axis along its diameter. In terms of ω_1, what angular speed must the hollow sphere have if its kinetic energy is also K_1, the same as for the uniform sphere?

9.40 • A wheel is turning about an axis through its center with constant angular acceleration. Starting from rest, at $t = 0$, the wheel turns through 8.75 revolutions in 11.0 s. At $t = 11.0$ s the kinetic energy of the wheel is 39.0 J. For an axis through its center, what is the moment of inertia of the wheel?

9.41 • A uniform sphere with mass 25.5 kg and radius 0.380 m is rotating at constant angular velocity about a stationary axis that lies along a diameter of the sphere. If the kinetic energy of the sphere is 158 J, what is the tangential velocity of a point on the rim of the sphere?

9.42 •• A hollow spherical shell has mass 8.05 kg and radius 0.220 m. It is initially at rest and then rotates about a stationary axis that lies along a diameter with a constant acceleration of 0.870 rad/s^2. What is the kinetic energy of the shell after it has turned through 5.00 rev?

9.43 • Wheel A has three times the moment of inertia about its axis of rotation as wheel B. Wheel B's angular speed is four times that of wheel A. (a) Which wheel has the greater rotational kinetic energy? (b) If K_A and K_B are the rotational kinetic energies of the wheels, what is K_A/K_B?

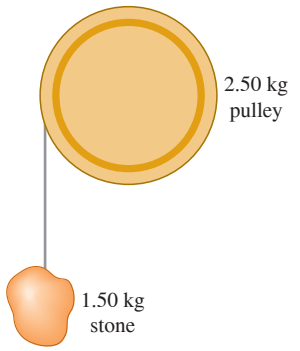
9.44 •• You need to design an industrial turntable that is 60.0 cm in diameter and has a kinetic energy of 0.250 J when turning at 45.0 rpm (rev/min). (a) What must be the moment of inertia of the turntable about the rotation axis? (b) If your workshop makes this turntable in the shape of a uniform solid disk, what must be its mass?

9.45 •• Energy is to be stored in a 70.0 kg flywheel in the shape of a uniform solid disk with radius $R = 1.20$ m. To prevent structural failure of the flywheel, the maximum allowed radial acceleration of a point on its rim is 3500 m/s^2. What is the maximum kinetic energy that can be stored in the flywheel?

9.46 •• You are designing a flywheel. It is to start from rest and then rotate with a constant angular acceleration of 0.200 rev/s^2. The design specifications call for it to have a rotational kinetic energy of 240 J after it has turned through 30.0 revolutions. What should be the moment of inertia of the flywheel about its rotation axis?

9.47 •• A frictionless pulley has the shape of a uniform solid disk of mass 2.90 kg and radius 10.0 cm. A 1.60 kg stone is attached to a very light wire that is wrapped around the rim of the pulley (**Fig. E9.47**), and the system is released from rest. (a) How far must the stone fall so that the pulley has 3.30 J of kinetic energy? (b) What percent of the total kinetic energy does the pulley have?

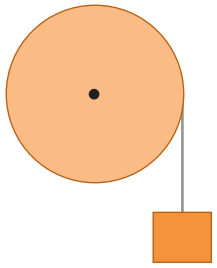
Figure **E9.47**



9.48 •• A bucket of mass m is tied to a massless cable that is wrapped around the outer rim of a uniform pulley of radius R, on a frictionless axle, similar to the system shown in Fig. E9.47. In terms of the stated variables, what must be the moment of inertia of the pulley so that it always has half as much kinetic energy as the bucket?

9.49 •• CP A thin, light wire is wrapped around the rim of a wheel (**Fig. E9.49**). The wheel rotates without friction about a stationary horizontal axis that passes through the center of the wheel. The wheel is a uniform disk with radius $R = 0.280$ m. An object of mass $m = 4.20$ kg is suspended from the free end of the wire. The system is released from rest and the suspended object descends with constant acceleration. If the suspended object moves downward a distance of 3.00 m in 2.00 s, what is the mass of the wheel?

Figure **E9.49**



Section 9.5 Parallel-Axis Theorem

9.50 •• Find the moment of inertia of a hoop (a thin-walled, hollow ring) with mass M and radius R about an axis perpendicular to the hoop's plane at an edge.

9.51 •• About what axis will a uniform, balsa-wood sphere have the same moment of inertia as does a thin-walled, hollow, lead sphere of the same mass and radius, with the axis along a diameter?

9.52 • (a) For the thin rectangular plate shown in part (d) of Table 9.2, find the moment of inertia about an axis that lies in the plane of the plate, passes through the center of the plate, and is parallel to the axis shown. (b) Find the moment of inertia of the plate for an axis that lies in the plane of the plate, passes through the center of the plate, and is perpendicular to the axis in part (a).

9.53 •• A thin, rectangular sheet of metal has mass M and sides of length a and b. Use the parallel-axis theorem to calculate the moment of inertia of the sheet for an axis that is perpendicular to the plane of the sheet and that passes through one corner of the sheet.

9.54 •• A thin uniform rod of mass M and length L is bent at its center so that the two segments are now perpendicular to each other. Find its moment of inertia about an axis perpendicular to its plane and passing through (a) the point where the two segments meet and (b) the midpoint of the line connecting its two ends.

Section 9.6 Moment-of-Inertia Calculations

9.55 •• CALC Use Eq. (9.20) to calculate the moment of inertia of a uniform, solid disk with mass M and radius R for an axis perpendicular to the plane of the disk and passing through its center.

9.56 • CALC Use Eq. (9.20) to calculate the moment of inertia of a slender, uniform rod with mass M and length L about an axis at one end, perpendicular to the rod.

9.57 •• CALC A slender rod with length L has a mass per unit length that varies with distance from the left end, where $x = 0$, according to $dm/dx = \gamma x$, where γ has units of kg/m^2. (a) Calculate the total mass of the rod in terms of γ and L. (b) Use Eq. (9.20) to calculate the moment of inertia of the rod for an axis at the left end, perpendicular to the rod. Use the expression you derived in part (a) to express I in terms of M and L. How does your result compare to that for a uniform rod? Explain. (c) Repeat part (b) for an axis at the right end of the rod. How do the results for parts (b) and (c) compare? Explain.

PROBLEMS

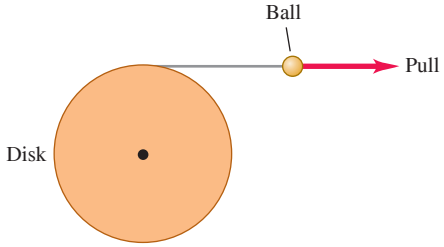
9.58 •• CALC A uniform disk with radius $R = 0.390$ m and mass 28.0 kg rotates in a horizontal plane on a frictionless vertical axle that passes through the center of the disk. The angle through which the disk has turned varies with time according to $\theta(t) = (1.30 \text{ rad/s})t + (6.30 \text{ rad/s}^2)t^2$. What is the resultant linear acceleration of a point on the rim of the disk at the instant when the disk has turned through 0.200 rev?

9.59 •• CP A circular saw blade with radius 0.135 m starts from rest and turns in a vertical plane with a constant angular acceleration of 3.50 rev/s^2. After the blade has turned through 150 rev, a small piece of the blade breaks loose from the top of the blade. After the piece breaks loose, it travels with a velocity that is initially horizontal and equal to the tangential velocity of the rim of the blade. The piece travels a vertical distance of 0.725 m to the floor. How far does the piece travel horizontally, from where it broke off the blade until it strikes the floor?

9.60 • CALC A roller in a printing press turns through an angle $\theta(t)$ given by $\theta(t) = \gamma t^2 - \beta t^3$, where $\gamma = 3.20$ rad/s^2 and $\beta = 0.500$ rad/s^3. (a) Calculate the angular velocity of the roller as a function of time. (b) Calculate the angular acceleration of the roller as a function of time. (c) What is the maximum positive angular velocity, and at what value of t does it occur?

9.61 •• CP CALC A disk of radius 25.0 cm is free to turn about an axle perpendicular to it through its center. It has very thin but strong string wrapped around its rim, and the string is attached to a ball that is pulled tangentially away from the rim of the disk (**Fig. P9.61**). The pull increases in magnitude and produces an acceleration of the ball that obeys the equation $a(t) = At$, where t is in seconds and A is a constant. The cylinder starts from rest, and at the end of the third second, the ball's acceleration is 1.80 m/s^2. (a) Find A. (b) Express the angular acceleration of the disk as a function of time. (c) How much time after the disk has begun to turn does it reach an angular speed of 15.0 rad/s? (d) Through what angle has the disk turned just as it reaches 15.0 rad/s? (*Hint:* See Section 2.6.)

Figure **P9.61**

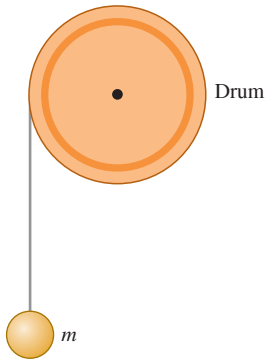


9.62 •• You are designing a rotating metal flywheel that will be used to store energy. The flywheel is to be a uniform disk with radius 25.0 cm. Starting from rest at $t = 0$, the flywheel rotates with constant angular acceleration 3.00 rad/s^2 about an axis perpendicular to the flywheel at its center. If the flywheel has a density (mass per unit volume) of 8600 kg/m^3, what thickness must it have to store 800 J of kinetic energy at $t = 8.00$ s?

9.63 •• A uniform wheel in the shape of a solid disk is mounted on a frictionless axle at its center. The wheel has mass 5.00 kg and radius 0.800 m. A thin rope is wrapped around the wheel, and a block is suspended from the free end of the rope. The system is released from rest and the block moves downward. What is the mass of the block if the wheel turns through 8.00 revolutions in the first 5.00 s after the block is released?

9.64 •• Engineers are designing a system by which a falling mass m imparts kinetic energy to a rotating uniform drum to which it is attached by thin, very light wire wrapped around the rim of the drum (**Fig. P9.64**). There is no appreciable friction in the axle of the drum, and everything starts from rest. This system is being tested on earth, but it is to be used on Mars, where the acceleration due to gravity is 3.71 m/s^2. In the earth tests, when m is set to 15.0 kg and allowed to fall through 6.00 m, it gives 300.0 J of kinetic energy to the drum. (a) If the system is operated on Mars, through what distance would the 15.0 kg mass have to fall to give the same amount of kinetic energy to the drum? (b) How fast would the 15.0 kg mass be moving on Mars just as the drum gained 300.0 J of kinetic energy?

Figure **P9.62**



9.65 •• Consider the system of two blocks shown in Fig. P9.77. There is no friction between block A and the tabletop. The mass of block B is 5.00 kg. The pulley rotates about a frictionless axle, and the light rope doesn't slip on the pulley surface. The pulley has radius 0.200 m and moment of inertia 1.30 kg • m^2. If the pulley is rotating with an angular speed of 8.00 rad/s after the block has descended 1.20 m, what is the mass of block A?

9.66 •• The motor of a table saw is rotating at 3450 rev/min. A pulley attached to the motor shaft drives a second pulley of half the diameter by means of a V-belt. A circular saw blade of diameter 0.208 m is mounted on the same rotating shaft as the second pulley. (a) The operator is careless and the blade catches and throws back a small piece of wood. This piece of wood moves with linear speed equal to the tangential speed of the rim of the blade. What is this speed? (b) Calculate the radial acceleration of points on the outer edge of the blade to see why sawdust doesn't stick to its teeth.

9.67 ••• While riding a multispeed bicycle, the rider can select the radius of the rear sprocket that is fixed to the rear axle. The front sprocket of a bicycle has radius 13.5 cm. If the angular speed of the front sprocket is 0.600 rev/s, what is the radius of the rear sprocket for which the tangential speed of a point on the rim of the rear wheel will be 5.50 m/s? The rear wheel has radius 0.310 m.

9.68 ••• A computer disk drive is turned on starting from rest and has constant angular acceleration. If it took 0.610 s for the drive to make its *second* complete revolution, (a) how long did it take to make the first complete revolution, and (b) what is its angular acceleration, in rad/s^2?

9.69 •• CP Consider the system shown in Fig. E9.49. The suspended block has mass 1.50 kg. The system is released from rest and the block descends as the wheel rotates on a frictionless axle. As the wheel is rotating, the tension in the light wire is 9.00 N. What is the kinetic energy of the wheel 2.00 s after the system is released?

9.70 •• A uniform disk has radius R_0 and mass M_0. Its moment of inertia for an axis perpendicular to the plane of the disk at the disk's center is $\frac{1}{2}M_0R_0^2$. You have been asked to halve the disk's moment of inertia by cutting out a circular piece at the center of the disk. In terms of R_0, what should be the radius of the circular piece that you remove?

9.71 •• **Measuring *I*.** As an intern at an engineering firm, you are asked to measure the moment of inertia of a large wheel for rotation about an axis perpendicular to the wheel at its center. You measure the diameter of the wheel to be 0.640 m. Then you mount the wheel on frictionless bearings on a horizontal frictionless axle at the center of the wheel. You wrap a light rope around the wheel and hang an 8.20 kg block of wood from the free end of the rope, as in Fig. E9.49. You release the system from rest and find that the block descends 12.0 m in 4.00 s. What is the moment of inertia of the wheel for this axis?

9.72 ••• A uniform, solid disk with mass m and radius R is pivoted about a horizontal axis through its center. A small object of the same mass m is glued to the rim of the disk. If the disk is released from rest with the small object at the end of a horizontal radius, find the angular speed when the small object is directly below the axis.

9.73 •• CP A meter stick with a mass of 0.170 kg is pivoted about one end so it can rotate without friction about a horizontal axis. The meter stick is held in a horizontal position and released. As it swings through the vertical, calculate (a) the change in gravitational potential energy that has occurred; (b) the angular speed of the stick; (c) the linear speed of the end of the stick opposite the axis. (d) Compare the answer in part (c) to the speed of a particle that has fallen 1.00 m, starting from rest.

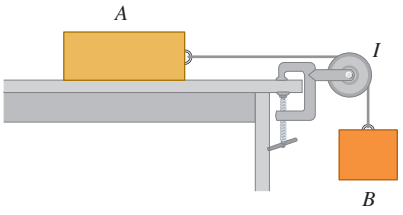
9.74 •• A physics student of mass 43.0 kg is standing at the edge of the flat roof of a building, 12.0 m above the pavement. An unfriendly dog is running across the roof toward her. Next to her is a large wheel mounted on a horizontal axle at its center. The wheel, used to lift objects from the ground to the roof, has a light crank attached to it and a light rope wrapped around it; the free end of the rope hangs over the edge of the roof. The student grabs the end of the rope and steps off the roof. If the wheel has radius 0.300 m and a moment of inertia of 9.60 kg • m^2 for rotation about the axle, how long does it take her to reach the pavement, and how fast will she be moving just before she lands? Ignore friction in the axle.

9.75 ••• A slender rod is 80.0 cm long and has mass 0.120 kg. A small 0.0200 kg sphere is welded to one end of the rod, and a small 0.0500 kg sphere is welded to the other end. The rod, pivoting about a stationary, frictionless axis at its center, is held horizontal and released from rest. What is the linear speed of the 0.0500 kg sphere as it passes through its lowest point?

9.76 •• Exactly one turn of a flexible rope with mass m is wrapped around a uniform cylinder with mass M and radius R. The cylinder rotates without friction about a horizontal axle along the cylinder axis. One end of the rope is attached to the cylinder. The cylinder starts with angular speed ω_0. After one revolution of the cylinder the rope has unwrapped and, at this instant, hangs vertically down, tangent to the cylinder. Find the angular speed of the cylinder and the linear speed of the lower end of the rope at this time. Ignore the thickness of the rope. [*Hint:* Use Eq. (9.18).]

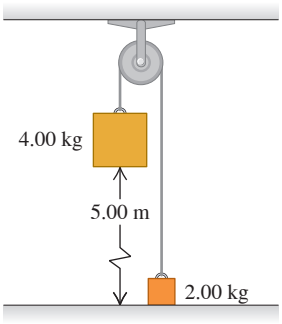
9.77 • The pulley in **Fig. P9.77** has radius R and a moment of inertia I. The rope does not slip over the pulley, and the pulley spins on a frictionless axle. The coefficient of kinetic friction between block A and the tabletop is μ_k. The system is released from rest, and block B descends. Block A has mass m_A and block B has mass m_B. Use energy methods to calculate the speed of block B as a function of the distance d that it has descended.

Figure **P9.77**



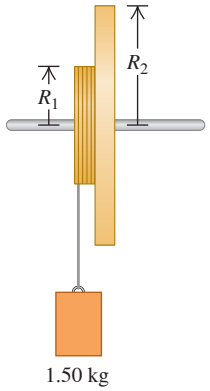
9.78 •• The pulley in **Fig. P9.78** has radius 0.160 m and moment of inertia 0.380 kg · m^2. The rope does not slip on the pulley rim. Use energy methods to calculate the speed of the 4.00 kg block just before it strikes the floor.

Figure **P9.78**



9.79 •• Two metal disks, one with radius $R_1 = 2.55$ cm and mass $M_1 = 0.85$ kg and the other with radius $R_2 = 5.02$ cm and mass $M_2 = 1.58$ kg, are welded together and mounted on a frictionless axis through their common center (**Fig. P9.79**). (a) What is the total moment of inertia of the two disks? (b) A light string is wrapped around the edge of the smaller disk, and a 1.50 kg block is suspended from the free end of the string. If the block is released from rest at a distance of 2.03 m above the floor, what is its speed just before it strikes the floor? (c) Repeat part (b), this time with the string wrapped around the edge of the larger disk. In which case is the final speed of the block greater? Explain.

Figure **P9.79**

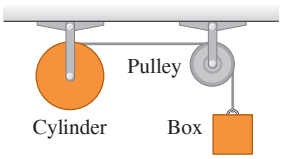


9.80 •• A thin, light wire is wrapped around the rim of a wheel as shown in Fig. E9.49. The wheel rotates about a stationary horizontal axle that passes through the center of the wheel. The wheel has radius 0.190 m and moment of inertia for rotation about the axle of $I = 0.380$ kg · m^2. A small block with mass 0.300 kg is suspended from the free end of the wire. When the system is released from rest, the block descends with constant acceleration. The bearings in the wheel at the axle are rusty, so friction there does −5.75 J of work as the block descends 3.00 m. What is the magnitude of the angular velocity of the wheel after the block has descended 3.00 m?

9.81 ••• In the system shown in Fig. 9.17, a 12.0 kg mass is released from rest and falls, causing the uniform 10.0 kg cylinder of diameter 30.0 cm to turn about a frictionless axle through its center. How far will the mass have to descend to give the cylinder 480 J of kinetic energy?

9.82 • In **Fig. P9.82**, the cylinder and pulley turn without friction about stationary horizontal axles that pass through their centers. A light rope is wrapped around the cylinder, passes over the pulley, and has a 3.00 kg box suspended from its free end. There is no slipping between the rope and the pulley surface. The uniform cylinder has mass 5.00 kg and radius 40.0 cm. The pulley is a uniform disk with mass 2.00 kg and radius 20.0 cm. The box is released from rest and descends as the rope unwraps from the cylinder. Find the speed of the box when it has fallen 2.50 m.

Figure **P9.82**



9.83 •• **BIO Human Rotational Energy.** A dancer is spinning at 72 rpm about an axis through her center with her arms outstretched (**Fig. P9.83**). From biomedical measurements, the typical distribution of mass in a human body is as follows:

Head: 7.0%
Arms: 13% (for both)
Trunk and legs: 80.0%

Suppose you are this dancer. Using this information plus length measurements on your own body, calculate (a) your moment of inertia about your spin axis and (b) your rotational kinetic energy. Use Table 9.2 to model reasonable approximations for the pertinent parts of your body.

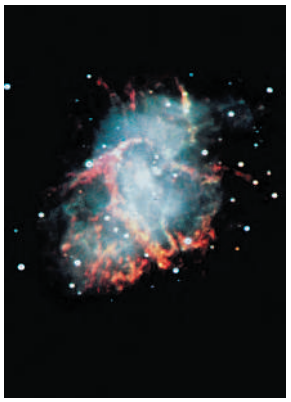
Figure **P9.83**

9.84 ••• A thin, uniform rod is bent into a square of side length a. If the total mass is M, find the moment of inertia about an axis through the center and perpendicular to the plane of the square. (*Hint:* Use the parallel-axis theorem.)

9.85 •• **CALC** A sphere with radius $R = 0.200$ m has density ρ that decreases with distance r from the center of the sphere according to $\rho = 3.00 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3 $- (9.00 \times 10^3$ kg/m$^4)r$. (a) Calculate the total mass of the sphere. (b) Calculate the moment of inertia of the sphere for an axis along a diameter.

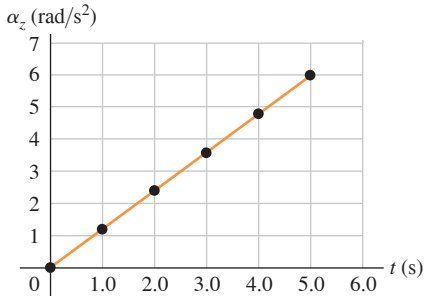
9.86 •• **CALC Neutron Stars and Supernova Remnants.** The Crab Nebula is a cloud of glowing gas about 10 light-years across, located about 6500 light-years from the earth (**Fig. P9.86**). It is the remnant of a star that underwent a *supernova explosion,* seen on earth in 1054 A.D. Energy is released by the Crab Nebula at a rate of about 5×10^{31} W, about 10^5 times the rate at which the sun radiates energy. The Crab Nebula obtains its energy from the rotational kinetic energy of a rapidly spinning *neutron star* at its center. This object rotates once every 0.0331 s, and this period is increasing by 4.22×10^{-13} s for each second of time that elapses. (a) If the rate at which energy is lost by the neutron star is equal to the rate at which energy is released by the nebula, find the moment of inertia of the neutron star. (b) Theories of supernovae predict that the neutron star in the Crab Nebula has a mass about 1.4 times that of the sun. Modeling the neutron star as a solid uniform sphere, calculate its radius in kilometers. (c) What is the linear speed of a point on the equator of the neutron star? Compare to the speed of light. (d) Assume that the neutron star is uniform and calculate its density. Compare to the density of ordinary rock (3000 kg/m^3) and to the density of an atomic nucleus (about 10^{17} kg/m^3). Justify the statement that a neutron star is essentially a large atomic nucleus.

Figure **P9.86**



9.87 •• **DATA** A technician is testing a computer-controlled, variable-speed motor. She attaches a thin disk to the motor shaft, with the shaft at the center of the disk. The disk starts from rest, and sensors attached to the motor shaft measure the angular acceleration α_z of the shaft as a function of time. The results from one test run are shown in **Fig. P9.87**. (a) Through how many revolutions has the disk turned in the first 5.0 s? Can you use Eq. (9.11)? Explain. What is the angular velocity, in rad/s, of the disk (b) at $t = 5.0$ s; (c) when it has turned through 2.00 rev?

Figure **P9.87**



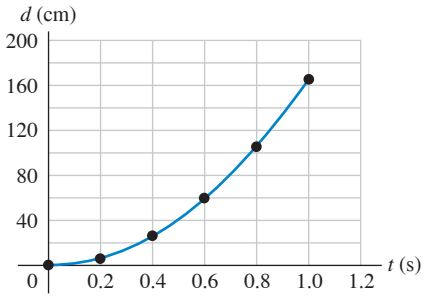
9.88 •• **DATA** You are analyzing the motion of a large flywheel that has radius 0.800 m. In one test run, the wheel starts from rest and turns in a horizontal plane with constant angular acceleration. An accelerometer on the rim of the flywheel measures the magnitude of the resultant acceleration a of a point on the rim of the flywheel as a function of the angle $\theta - \theta_0$ through which the wheel has turned. You collect these results:

$\theta - \theta_0$ (rad)	0.50	1.00	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	3.50	4.00
a (m/s^2)	0.678	1.07	1.52	1.98	2.45	2.92	3.39	3.87

Construct a graph of a^2 (in m^2/s^4) versus $(\theta - \theta_0)^2$ (in rad^2). (a) What are the slope and y-intercept of the straight line that gives the best fit to the data? (b) Use the slope from part (a) to find the angular acceleration of the flywheel. (c) What is the linear speed of a point on the rim of the flywheel when the wheel has turned through an angle of 135°? (d) When the flywheel has turned through an angle of 90.0°, what is the angle between the linear velocity of a point on its rim and the resultant acceleration of that point?

9.89 •• **DATA** You are rebuilding a 1967 Chevrolet Camaro. To decide whether to replace the flywheel with a newer, lighter-weight one, you want to determine the moment of inertia of the original, 35.6-cm-diameter flywheel. It is not a uniform disk, so you can't use $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$ to calculate the moment of inertia. You remove the flywheel from the car and use low-friction bearings to mount it on a horizontal, stationary rod that passes through the center of the flywheel, which can then rotate freely (about 2 m above the ground). After gluing one end of a long piece of flexible fishing line to the rim of the flywheel, you wrap the line a number of turns around the rim and suspend a 5.60 kg metal block from the free end of the line. When you release the block from rest, it descends as the flywheel rotates. With high-speed photography you measure the distance d the block has moved downward as a function of the time since it was released. The equation for the graph shown in **Fig. P9.89** that gives a good fit to the data points is $d = (165 \text{ cm/s}^2)t^2$. (a) Based on the graph, does the block fall with constant acceleration? Explain. (b) Use the graph to calculate the speed of the block when it has descended 1.50 m. (c) Apply conservation of mechanical energy to the system of flywheel and block to calculate the moment of inertia of the flywheel. (d) You are relieved that the fishing line doesn't break. Apply Newton's second law to the block to find the tension in the line as the block descended.

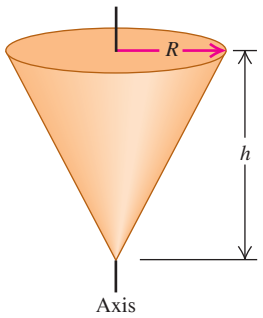
Figure **P9.89**



CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

9.90 ••• **CALC** Calculate the moment of inertia of a uniform solid cone about an axis through its center (**Fig. P9.90**). The cone has mass M and altitude h. The radius of its circular base is R.

Figure **P9.90**



9.91 ••• **CALC** On a compact disc (CD), music is coded in a pattern of tiny pits arranged in a track that spirals outward toward the rim of the disc. As the disc spins inside a CD player, the track is scanned at a constant *linear* speed of $v = 1.25$ m/s. Because the radius of the track varies as it spirals outward, the *angular* speed of the disc must change as the CD is played. (See Exercise 9.20.) Let's see what angular acceleration is required to keep v constant. The equation of a spiral is $r(\theta) = r_0 + \beta\theta$, where r_0 is the radius of the spiral at $\theta = 0$ and β is a constant. On a CD, r_0 is the inner radius of the spiral track. If we take the rotation direction of the CD to be positive, β must be positive so that r increases as the disc turns and θ increases. (a) When the disc rotates through a small angle $d\theta$, the distance scanned along the track is $ds = r\,d\theta$. Using the above expression for $r(\theta)$, integrate ds to find the total distance s scanned along the track as a function of the total angle θ through which the disc has rotated. (b) Since the track is scanned at a constant linear speed v, the distance s found in part (a) is equal to vt. Use this to find θ as a function of time. There will be two solutions for θ; choose the positive one, and explain why this is the solution to choose. (c) Use your expression for $\theta(t)$ to find the angular velocity ω_z and the angular acceleration α_z as functions of time. Is α_z constant? (d) On a CD, the inner radius of the track is 25.0 mm, the track radius increases by 1.55 μm per revolution, and the playing time is 74.0 min. Find r_0, β, and the total number of revolutions made during the playing time. (e) Using your results from parts (c) and (d), make graphs of ω_z (in rad/s) versus t and α_z (in rad/s^2) versus t between $t = 0$ and $t = 74.0$ min.

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO The Spinning Eel. American eels (*Anguilla rostrata*) are freshwater fish with long, slender bodies that we can treat as uniform cylinders 1.0 m long and 10 cm in diameter. An eel compensates for its small jaw and teeth by holding onto prey with its mouth and then rapidly spinning its body around its long axis to tear off a piece of flesh. Eels have been recorded to spin at up to 14 revolutions per second when feeding in this way. Although this feeding method is costly in terms of energy, it allows the eel to feed on larger prey than it otherwise could.

9.92 A field researcher uses the slow-motion feature on her phone's camera to shoot a video of an eel spinning at its maximum rate. The camera records at 120 frames per second. Through what angle does the eel rotate from one frame to the next? (a) 1°; (b) 10°; (c) 22°; (d) 42°.

9.93 The eel is observed to spin at 14 spins per second clockwise, and 10 seconds later it is observed to spin at 8 spins per second counterclockwise. What is the magnitude of the eel's average angular acceleration during this time? (a) $6/10\ \text{rad/s}^2$; (b) $6\pi/10\ \text{rad/s}^2$; (c) $12\pi/10\ \text{rad/s}^2$; (d) $44\pi/10\ \text{rad/s}^2$.

9.94 The eel has a certain amount of rotational kinetic energy when spinning at 14 spins per second. If it swam in a straight line instead, about how fast would the eel have to swim to have the same amount of kinetic energy as when it is spinning? (a) 0.5 m/s; (b) 0.7 m/s; (c) 3 m/s; (d) 5 m/s.

9.95 A new species of eel is found to have the same mass but one-quarter the length and twice the diameter of the American eel. How does its moment of inertia for spinning around its long axis compare to that of the American eel? The new species has (a) half the moment of inertia as the American eel; (b) the same moment of inertia as the American eel; (c) twice the moment of inertia as the American eel; (d) four times the moment of inertia as the American eel.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(ii) The rotational kinetic energy of a rigid body rotating around an axis is $K = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$, where I is the body's moment of inertia for that axis and ω is the rotational speed. Table 9.2 shows that the moment of inertia for a slender rod of mass M and length L with an axis through one end (like a wind turbine blade) is $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$. If we double L while M and ω stay the same, both the moment of inertia I and the kinetic energy K increase by a factor of $2^2 = 4$.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP9.3.1 (a) 2.06 rad (b) 118° (c) 0.328 rev
VP9.3.2 (a) $2.75\ \text{rad/s}^2$ (b) 27.0 rad
VP9.3.3 0.693 s
VP9.3.4 $t = (-\omega_{0z} + \sqrt{\omega_{0z}{}^2 + 2\alpha_z\theta})/\alpha_z$
VP9.5.1 (a) $1.22\ \text{m/s}^2$ (b) $0.389\ \text{m/s}^2$ (c) $1.28\ \text{m/s}^2$
VP9.5.2 (a) 9.22 m/s (b) $54.0\ \text{m/s}^2$, toward the axis of rotation
VP9.5.3 $\left(\frac{a_{\text{max}}{}^2}{r^2} - \alpha^2\right)^{1/4}$
VP9.5.4 (a) $\sqrt{3}\omega^2$ (b) 30°
VP9.8.1 (a) 20.0 rad/s (b) 23.3 rad/s
VP9.8.2 (a) 1.80 J (b) 5.4 J
VP9.8.3 (a) 2.86 m (b) 20.0 rad/s
VP9.8.4 (a) 2.40 m/s (b) –9.72 J

Bridging Problem

(a) $I = \left[\frac{M}{L}\left(\frac{x^3}{3}\right)\right]_{-h}^{L-h} = \frac{1}{3}M(L^2 - 3Lh + 3h^2)$

(b) $W = \frac{1}{6}M(L^2 - 3Lh + 3h^2)\alpha^2t^2$

(c) $a = (L - h)\alpha\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2t^4}$

? These jugglers toss the pins so that they rotate in midair. Each pin is of uniform composition, so its weight is concentrated toward its thick end. If we ignore air resistance but not the effects of gravity, will the angular speed of a pin in flight (i) increase continuously; (ii) decrease continuously; (iii) alternately increase and decrease; or (iv) remain the same?

10 Dynamics of Rotational Motion

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

10.1 What is meant by the torque produced by a force.
10.2 How the net torque on a rigid body affects the body's rotational motion.
10.3 How to analyze the motion of a rigid body that both rotates and moves as a whole through space.
10.4 How to solve problems that involve work and power for rotating rigid bodies.
10.5 What is meant by the angular momentum of a particle or rigid body.
10.6 How the angular momentum of an object can remain constant even if the object changes shape.
10.7 Why a spinning gyroscope undergoes precession.

You'll need to review...

1.10 Vector product of two vectors.
5.2 Newton's second law.
6.1–6.4 Work, the work–energy theorem, and power.
8.2, 8.3, 8.5 External versus internal forces, inelastic collisions, and center-of-mass motion.
9.1–9.5 Rotational motion and the parallel-axis theorem.

We learned in Chapters 4 and 5 that a net force applied to an object gives that object an acceleration. But what does it take to give an object an *angular* acceleration? That is, what does it take to start a stationary object rotating or to bring a spinning object to a halt? A force is required, but it must be applied in a way that gives a twisting or turning action.

In this chapter we'll define a new physical quantity, *torque,* that describes the twisting or turning effort of a force. We'll find that the net torque acting on a rigid body determines its angular acceleration, in the same way that the net force on an object determines its linear acceleration. We'll also look at work and power in rotational motion so as to understand, for example, how energy is transferred by an electric motor. Next we'll develop a new conservation principle, *conservation of angular momentum,* that is tremendously useful for understanding the rotational motion of both rigid and nonrigid bodies. We'll finish this chapter by studying *gyroscopes,* rotating devices that don't fall over when you might think they should—but that actually behave in accordance with the dynamics of rotational motion.

10.1 TORQUE

We know that forces acting on an object can affect its **translational motion**—that is, the motion of the object as a whole through space. Now we want to learn which aspects of a force determine how effective it is in causing or changing *rotational* motion. The magnitude and direction of the force are important, but so is the point on the object where the force is applied. In **Fig. 10.1** a wrench is being used to loosen a tight bolt. Force $\vec{F}_b$, applied near the end of the handle, is more effective than an equal force $\vec{F}_a$ applied near the bolt. Force $\vec{F}_c$ does no good; it's applied at the same point and has the same magnitude as $\vec{F}_b$, but it's directed along the length of the handle. The quantitative measure of the tendency of a force to cause or change an object's rotational motion is called *torque;* we say that $\vec{F}_a$ applies a torque about point O to the wrench in Fig. 10.1, $\vec{F}_b$ applies a greater torque about O, and $\vec{F}_c$ applies zero torque about O.

Figure 10.2 shows three examples of how to calculate torque. The object can rotate about an axis that is perpendicular to the plane of the figure and passes through point O. Three forces act on the object in the plane of the figure. The tendency of the first of these forces, $\vec{F}_1$, to cause a rotation about O depends on its magnitude F_1. It also depends on the *perpendicular* distance l_1 between point O and the **line of action** of the force (that is, the line along which the force vector lies). We call the distance l_1 the **lever arm** (or **moment arm**) of force $\vec{F}_1$ about O. The twisting effort is directly proportional to both F_1 and l_1, so we define the **torque** (or *moment*) of the force $\vec{F}_1$ with respect to O as the product $F_1 l_1$. We use the Greek letter τ (tau) for torque. If a force of magnitude F has a line of action that is a perpendicular distance l from O, the torque is

$$\tau = Fl \tag{10.1}$$

Physicists usually use the term "torque," while engineers usually use "moment" (unless they are talking about a rotating shaft).

The lever arm of $\vec{F}_1$ in Fig. 10.2 is the perpendicular distance l_1, and the lever arm of $\vec{F}_2$ is the perpendicular distance l_2. The line of action of $\vec{F}_3$ passes through point O, so the lever arm for $\vec{F}_3$ is zero and its torque with respect to O is zero. In the same way, force $\vec{F}_c$ in Fig. 10.1 has zero torque with respect to point O; $\vec{F}_b$ has a greater torque than $\vec{F}_a$ because its lever arm is greater.

CAUTION **Torque is always measured about a point** Torque is *always* defined with reference to a specific point. If we shift the position of this point, the torque of each force may change. For example, the torque of force $\vec{F}_3$ in Fig. 10.2 is zero with respect to point O but *not* with respect to point A. It's not enough to refer to "the torque of $\vec{F}$"; you must say "the torque of $\vec{F}$ with respect to point X" or "the torque of $\vec{F}$ about point X."

Force $\vec{F}_1$ in Fig. 10.2 tends to cause *counterclockwise* rotation about O, while $\vec{F}_2$ tends to cause *clockwise* rotation. To distinguish between these two possibilities, we need to choose a positive sense of rotation. With the choice that *counterclockwise torques are positive and clockwise torques are negative,* the torques of $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ about O are

$$\tau_1 = +F_1 l_1 \qquad \tau_2 = -F_2 l_2$$

Figure 10.2 shows this choice for the sign of torque. We'll often use the symbol ⊕ to indicate our choice of the positive sense of rotation.

The SI unit of torque is the newton-meter. In our discussion of work and energy we called this combination the joule. But torque is *not* work or energy, and torque should be expressed in newton-meters, *not* joules.

Figure 10.3 shows a force $\vec{F}$ applied at point P, located at position $\vec{r}$ with respect to point O. There are three ways to calculate the torque of $\vec{F}$:

1. Find the lever arm l and use $\tau = Fl$.
2. Determine the angle ϕ between the vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$; the lever arm is $r\sin\phi$, so $\tau = rF\sin\phi$.
3. Represent $\vec{F}$ in terms of a radial component F_{rad} along the direction of $\vec{r}$ and a tangential component F_{tan} at right angles, perpendicular to $\vec{r}$. (We call this component *tangential* because if the object rotates, the point where the force acts moves in a circle, and this component is tangent to that circle.) Then $F_{\text{tan}} = F\sin\phi$ and $\tau = r(F\sin\phi) = F_{\text{tan}} r$. The component F_{rad} produces *no* torque with respect to O because its lever arm with respect to that point is zero (compare to forces $\vec{F}_c$ in Fig. 10.1 and $\vec{F}_3$ in Fig. 10.2).

Summarizing these three expressions for torque, we have

Magnitude of torque due to force $\vec{F}$ relative to point O

$$\tau = Fl = rF\sin\phi = F_{\text{tan}} r \tag{10.2}$$

- l: Lever arm of $\vec{F}$
- r: Magnitude of $\vec{r}$ (vector from O to where $\vec{F}$ acts)
- F: Magnitude of $\vec{F}$
- ϕ: Angle between $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$
- F_{tan}: Tangential component of $\vec{F}$

Figure **10.1** Which of these three equal-magnitude forces is most likely to loosen the tight bolt?

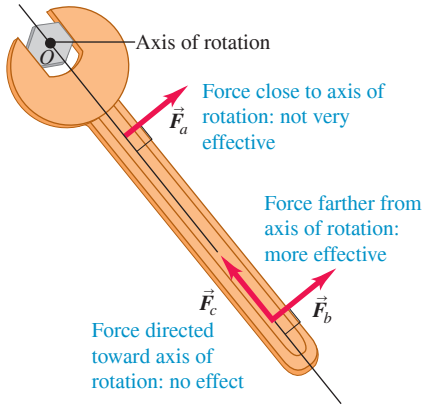


Figure **10.2** The torque of a force about a point is the product of the force magnitude and the lever arm of the force.

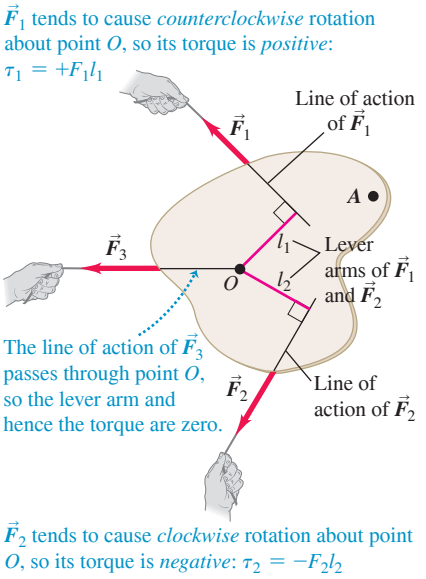


Figure **10.3** Three ways to calculate the torque of force $\vec{F}$ about point O. In this figure, $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ are in the plane of the page and the torque vector $\vec{\tau}$ points out of the page toward you.

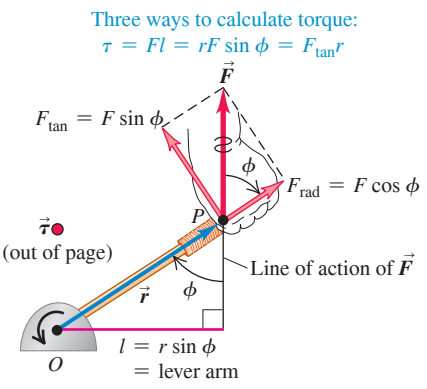
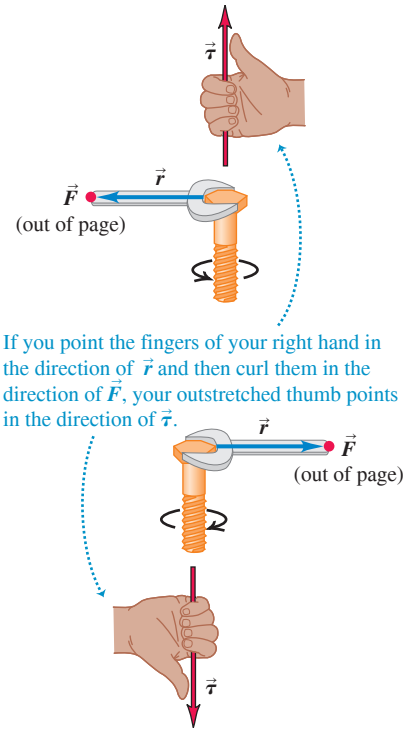


Figure 10.4 The torque vector $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ is directed along the axis of the bolt, perpendicular to both $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$. The fingers of the right hand curl in the direction of the rotation that the torque tends to cause.



Torque as a Vector

We saw in Section 9.1 that angular velocity and angular acceleration can be represented as vectors; the same is true for torque. To see how to do this, note that the quantity $rF\sin\phi$ in Eq. (10.2) is the magnitude of the *vector product* $\vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ that we defined in Section 1.10. (Go back and review that definition.) We generalize the definition of torque as follows: When a force $\vec{F}$ acts at a point having a position vector $\vec{r}$ with respect to an origin O, as in Fig. 10.3, the torque $\vec{\tau}$ of the force with respect to O is the *vector* quantity

Torque vector due to force $\vec{F}$ relative to point O $\quad \vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ (Vector from O to where $\vec{F}$ acts; Force $\vec{F}$) (10.3)

The torque as defined in Eq. (10.2) is the magnitude of the torque vector $\vec{r} \times \vec{F}$. The direction of $\vec{\tau}$ is perpendicular to both $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$. In particular, if both $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ lie in a plane perpendicular to the axis of rotation, as in Fig. 10.3, then the torque vector $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ is directed along the axis of rotation, with a sense given by the right-hand rule (see Fig. 1.30 and **Fig. 10.4**).

Because $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ is perpendicular to the plane of the vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$, it's common to have diagrams like Fig. 10.4, in which one of the vectors is perpendicular to the page. We use a dot (•) to represent a vector that points out of the page and a cross (×) to represent a vector that points into the page (see Figs. 10.3 and 10.4).

In the following sections we'll usually be concerned with rotation of an object about an axis oriented in a specified constant direction. In that case, only the component of torque along that axis will matter. We often call that component the torque with respect to the specified *axis*.

EXAMPLE 10.1 Applying a torque

To loosen a pipe fitting, a plumber slips a piece of scrap pipe (a "cheater") over his wrench handle. He stands on the end of the cheater, applying his 900 N weight at a point 0.80 m from the center of the fitting (**Fig. 10.5a**). The wrench handle and cheater make an angle of 19° with the horizontal. Find the magnitude and direction of the torque he applies about the center of the fitting.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Figure 10.5b shows the vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$ and the angle between them ($\phi = 109°$). Equation (10.1) or (10.2) will tell us the magnitude of the torque. The right-hand rule with Eq. (10.3), $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$, will tell us the direction of the torque.

EXECUTE To use Eq. (10.1), we first calculate the lever arm l. As Fig. 10.5b shows,

$$l = r\sin\phi = (0.80\text{ m})\sin 109° = 0.76\text{ m}$$

Then Eq. (10.1) tells us that the magnitude of the torque is

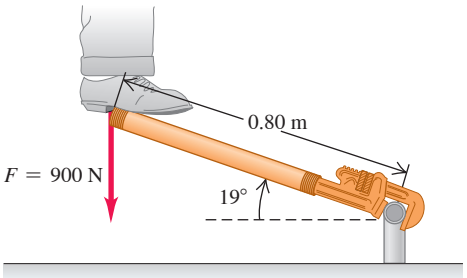
$$\tau = Fl = (900\text{ N})(0.76\text{ m}) = 680\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

We get the same result from Eq. (10.2):

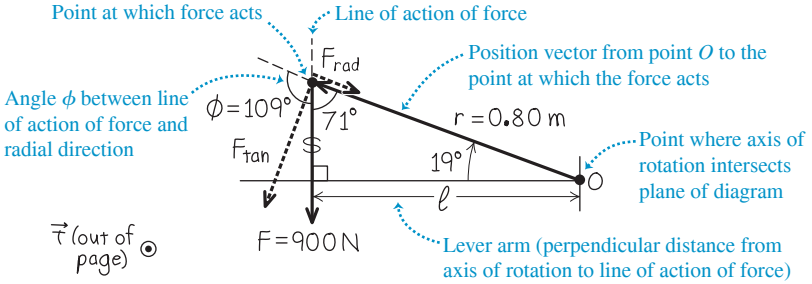
$$\tau = rF\sin\phi = (0.80\text{ m})(900\text{ N})(\sin 109°) = 680\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

Figure 10.5 (a) Loosening a pipe fitting by standing on a "cheater." (b) Our vector diagram to find the torque about O.

(a) Diagram of situation



(b) Free-body diagram



Alternatively, we can find $F_{\tan}$, the tangential component of $\vec{F}$ that acts perpendicular to $\vec{r}$. Figure 10.5b shows that this component is at an angle of $109° - 90° = 19°$ from $\vec{F}$, so $F_{\tan} = F(\cos 19°) = (900\ \text{N})(\cos 19°) = 851\ \text{N}$. Then, from Eq. (10.2),

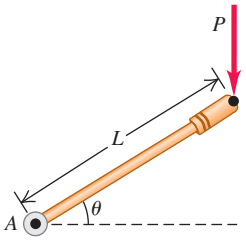
$$\tau = F_{\tan} r = (851\ \text{N})(0.80\ \text{m}) = 680\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}$$

Curl the fingers of your right hand from the direction of $\vec{r}$ (in the plane of Fig. 10.5b, to the left and up) into the direction of $\vec{F}$ (straight down). Then your right thumb points out of the plane of the figure: This is the direction of $\vec{\tau}$.

EVALUATE To check the direction of $\vec{\tau}$, note that the force in Fig. 10.5 tends to produce a counterclockwise rotation about O. If you curl the fingers of your right hand in a counterclockwise direction, the thumb points out of the plane of Fig. 10.5, which is indeed the direction of the torque.

KEYCONCEPT You can determine the magnitude of the torque due to a force $\vec{F}$ in any of three ways: (i) from the magnitude of $\vec{F}$ and the lever arm; (ii) from the magnitude of $\vec{F}$, the magnitude of the vector $\vec{r}$ from the origin to where $\vec{F}$ acts, and the angle between $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{F}$; or (iii) from the magnitude of $\vec{r}$ and the tangential component of $\vec{F}$. Find the direction of the torque using the right-hand rule.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.1 The accompanying figure shows a force of magnitude P being applied to one end of a lever of length L. What is the magnitude of the torque of this force about point A? (i) $PL\sin\theta$; (ii) $PL\cos\theta$; (iii) $PL\tan\theta$; (iv) $PL/\sin\theta$; (v) PL.



ANSWER

(ii) The force of magnitude P acts along a vertical line, so the lever arm is the horizontal distance from A to the line of action. This is the horizontal component of distance L, which is $L\cos\theta$. Hence the magnitude of the torque is the product of the force magnitude P and the lever arm $L\cos\theta$, or $\tau = PL\cos\theta$.

10.2 TORQUE AND ANGULAR ACCELERATION FOR A RIGID BODY

We're now ready to develop the fundamental relationship for the rotational dynamics of a rigid body (an object with a definite and unchanging shape and size). We'll show that the angular acceleration of a rotating rigid body is directly proportional to the sum of the torque components along the axis of rotation. The proportionality factor is the moment of inertia.

To develop this relationship, let's begin as we did in Section 9.4 by envisioning the rigid body as being made up of a large number of particles. We choose the axis of rotation to be the z-axis; the first particle has mass m_1 and distance r_1 from this axis (**Fig. 10.6**). The *net force* $\vec{F}_1$ acting on this particle has a component $F_{1,\text{rad}}$ along the radial direction, a component $F_{1,\tan}$ that is tangent to the circle of radius r_1 in which the particle moves as the body rotates, and a component F_{1z} along the axis of rotation. Newton's second law for the tangential component is

$$F_{1,\tan} = m_1 a_{1,\tan} \tag{10.4}$$

We can express the tangential acceleration of the first particle in terms of the angular acceleration α_z of the body by using Eq. (9.14): $a_{1,\tan} = r_1\alpha_z$. Using this relationship and multiplying both sides of Eq. (10.4) by r_1, we obtain

$$F_{1,\tan} r_1 = m_1 r_1^2 \alpha_z \tag{10.5}$$

From Eq. (10.2), $F_{1,\tan} r_1$ is the *torque* of the net force with respect to the rotation axis, equal to the component τ_{1z} of the torque vector along the rotation axis. The subscript z is a reminder that the torque affects rotation around the z-axis, in the same way that the subscript on F_{1z} is a reminder that this force affects the motion of particle 1 along the z-axis.

Neither of the components $F_{1,\text{rad}}$ or F_{1z} contributes to the torque about the z-axis, since neither tends to change the particle's rotation about that axis. So $\tau_{1z} = F_{1,\tan} r_1$ is the total torque acting on the particle with respect to the rotation axis. Also, $m_1 r_1^2$ is I_1, the moment of inertia of the particle about the rotation axis. Hence we can rewrite Eq. (10.5) as

$$\tau_{1z} = I_1 \alpha_z = m_1 r_1^2 \alpha_z$$

Figure **10.6** As a rigid body rotates around the z-axis, a net force $\vec{F}_1$ acts on one particle of the body. Only the force component $F_{1,\tan}$ can affect the rotation, because only $F_{1,\tan}$ exerts a torque about O with a z-component (along the rotation axis).

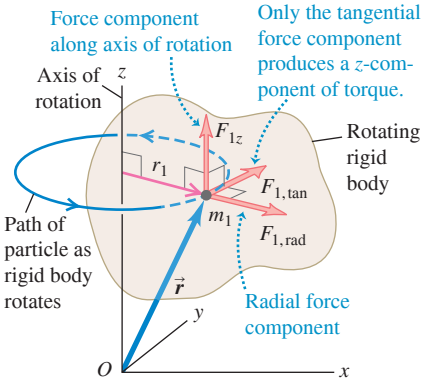
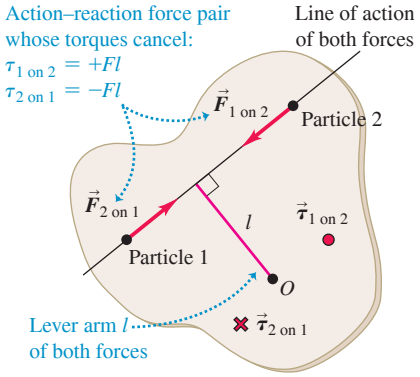


Figure **10.7** Loosening or tightening a screw requires giving it an angular acceleration and hence applying a torque. To make this easier, use a screwdriver with a large-radius handle. This provides a large lever arm for the force your hand applies.

Figure **10.8** Why only *external* torques affect a rigid body's rotation: Any two particles in the body exert equal and opposite forces on each other. If the forces act along the line joining the particles, the lever arms of the forces with respect to an axis through O are the same and the torques due to the two forces are equal and opposite.



We write such an equation for every particle in the body, then add all these equations:

$$\tau_{1z} + \tau_{2z} + \cdots = I_1\alpha_z + I_2\alpha_z + \cdots = m_1 r_1^2 \alpha_z + m_2 r_2^2 \alpha_z + \cdots$$

or

$$\Sigma\tau_{iz} = \left(\Sigma m_i r_i^2\right)\alpha_z \tag{10.6}$$

The left side of Eq. (10.6) is the sum of all the torques about the rotation axis that act on all the particles. The right side is $I = \Sigma m_i r_i^2$, the total moment of inertia about the rotation axis, multiplied by the angular acceleration α_z. Note that α_z is the same for every particle because this is a *rigid* body. Thus Eq. (10.6) says that for the rigid body as a whole,

Rotational analog of Newton's second law for a rigid body:

$$\Sigma\tau_z = I\alpha_z \tag{10.7}$$

Net torque on a rigid body about z-axis; Moment of inertia of rigid body about z-axis; Angular acceleration of rigid body about z-axis

Just as Newton's second law says that a net *force* on a particle causes an *acceleration* in the direction of the net force, Eq. (10.7) says that a net *torque* on a rigid body about an axis causes an *angular acceleration* about that axis (**Fig. 10.7**).

Our derivation assumed that the angular acceleration α_z is the same for all particles in the body. So Eq. (10.7) is valid *only* for *rigid* bodies. Hence this equation doesn't apply to a rotating tank of water or a swirling tornado of air, different parts of which have different angular accelerations. Note that since our derivation used Eq. (9.14), $a_{\text{tan}} = r\alpha_z$, α_z must be measured in rad/s^2.

The torque on each particle is due to the net force on that particle, which is the vector sum of external and internal forces (see Section 8.2). According to Newton's third law, the *internal* forces that any pair of particles in the rigid body exert on each other are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction (**Fig. 10.8**). If these forces act along the line joining the two particles, their lever arms with respect to any axis are also equal. So the torques for each such pair are equal and opposite, and add to zero. Hence *all* the internal torques add to zero, so the sum $\Sigma\tau_z$ in Eq. (10.7) includes only the torques of the *external* forces.

Often, an important external force acting on a rigid body is its *weight.* This force is not concentrated at a single point; it acts on every particle in the entire body. Nevertheless, if $\vec{g}$ has the same value at all points, we always get the correct torque (about any specified axis) if we assume that all the weight is concentrated at the *center of mass* of the body. We'll prove this statement in Chapter 11, but meanwhile we'll use it for some of the problems in this chapter.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 10.1 Rotational Dynamics for Rigid Bodies

Our strategy for solving problems in rotational dynamics is very similar to Problem-Solving Strategy 5.2 for solving problems involving Newton's second law.

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Equation (10.7), $\Sigma\tau_z = I\alpha_z$, is useful whenever torques act on a rigid body. Sometimes you can use an energy approach instead, as we did in Section 9.4. However, if the target variable is a force, a torque, an acceleration, an angular acceleration, or an elapsed time, using $\Sigma\tau_z = I\alpha_z$ is almost always best.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Sketch the situation and identify the body or bodies to be analyzed. Indicate the rotation axis.
2. For each body, draw a free-body diagram that shows the body's *shape,* including all dimensions and angles. Label pertinent quantities with algebraic symbols.
3. Choose coordinate axes for each body and indicate a positive sense of rotation (clockwise or counterclockwise) for each rotating body. If you know the sense of α_z, pick that as the positive sense of rotation.

EXECUTE *the solution:*

1. For each body, decide whether it undergoes translational motion, rotational motion, or both. Then apply $\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ (as in Section 5.2), $\Sigma\tau_z = I\alpha_z$, or both to the body.
2. Express in algebraic form any *geometrical* relationships between the motions of two or more bodies. An example is a string that unwinds, without slipping, from a pulley or a wheel that rolls without slipping (discussed in Section 10.3). These relationships usually appear as relationships between linear and/or angular accelerations.
3. Ensure that you have as many independent equations as there are unknowns. Solve the equations to find the target variables.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Check that the algebraic signs of your results make sense. As an example, if you are unrolling thread from a spool, your answers should not tell you that the spool is turning in the direction that rolls the thread back onto the spool! Check that any algebraic results are correct for special cases or for extreme values of quantities.

EXAMPLE 10.2 An unwinding cable I

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Figure 10.9a shows the situation that we analyzed in Example 9.7 using energy methods. What is the cable's acceleration?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We can't use the energy method of Section 9.4, which doesn't involve acceleration. Instead we'll apply rotational dynamics to find the angular acceleration of the cylinder (Fig. 10.9b). We'll then find a relationship between the motion of the cable and the motion of the cylinder rim, and use this to find the acceleration of the cable. The cylinder rotates counterclockwise when the cable is pulled, so we take counterclockwise rotation to be positive. The net force on the cylinder must be zero because its center of mass remains at rest. The force F exerted by the cable produces a torque about the rotation axis. The weight (magnitude Mg) and the normal force (magnitude n) exerted by the cylinder's bearings produce *no* torque about the rotation axis because both act along lines through that axis.

EXECUTE The lever arm of F is equal to the radius $R = 0.060$ m of the cylinder, so the torque is $\tau_z = FR$. (This torque is positive, as it tends to cause a counterclockwise rotation.) From Table 9.2, case (f), the moment of inertia of the cylinder about the rotation axis is $I = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$. Then Eq. (10.7) tells us that

$$\alpha_z = \frac{\tau_z}{I} = \frac{FR}{MR^2/2} = \frac{2F}{MR} = \frac{2(9.0\text{ N})}{(50\text{ kg})(0.060\text{ m})} = 6.0\text{ rad/s}^2$$

(We can add "rad" to our result because radians are dimensionless.)

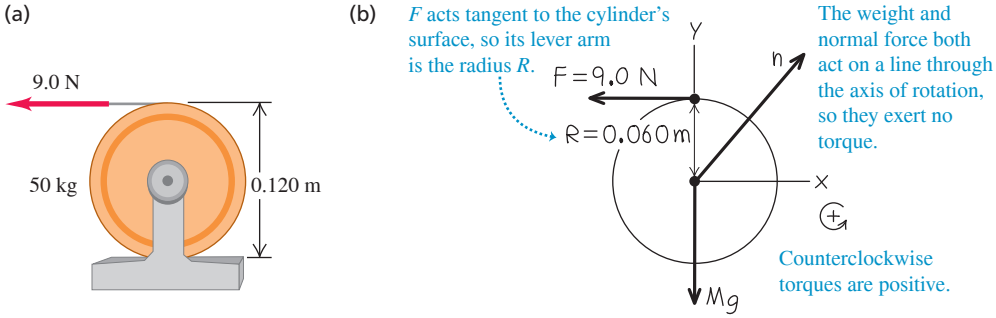
To get the linear acceleration of the cable, recall from Section 9.3 that the acceleration of a cable unwinding from a cylinder is the same as the tangential acceleration of a point on the surface of the cylinder where the cable is tangent to it. This tangential acceleration is given by Eq. (9.14):

$$a_{\text{tan}} = R\alpha_z = (0.060\text{ m})(6.0\text{ rad/s}^2) = 0.36\text{ m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE Can you use this result, together with an equation from Chapter 2, to determine the speed of the cable after it has been pulled 2.0 m? Does your result agree with that of Example 9.7?

KEYCONCEPT For any problem involving torques on a rigid body, first draw a free-body diagram to identify where on the rigid body each external force acts with respect to the axis of rotation. Then apply the rotational analog of Newton's second law, $\Sigma\tau_z = I\alpha_z$.

Figure 10.9 (a) Cylinder and cable. (b) Our free-body diagram for the cylinder.



EXAMPLE 10.3 An unwinding cable II

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

In Example 9.8 (Section 9.4), what are the acceleration of the falling block and the tension in the cable?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll apply translational dynamics to the block and rotational dynamics to the cylinder. As in Example 10.2, we'll relate the linear acceleration of the block (our target variable) to the angular acceleration of the cylinder. **Figure 10.10** (next page) shows our sketch of the situation and a free-body diagram for each object. We take the positive sense of rotation for the cylinder to be counterclockwise and the positive direction of the y-coordinate for the block to be downward.

EXECUTE For the block, Newton's second law gives

$$\Sigma F_y = mg + (-T) = ma_y$$

For the cylinder, the only torque about its axis is that due to the cable tension T. Hence Eq. (10.7) gives

$$\Sigma\tau_z = RT = I\alpha_z = \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2\alpha_z$$

As in Example 10.2, the acceleration of the cable is the same as the tangential acceleration of a point on the cylinder rim. From Eq. (9.14), this acceleration is $a_y = a_{\text{tan}} = R\alpha_z$. We use this to replace $R\alpha_z$ with a_y in the cylinder equation above, and divide by R. The result is $T = \frac{1}{2}Ma_y$. Now we substitute this expression for T into Newton's second law for the block and solve for the acceleration a_y:

$$mg - \tfrac{1}{2}Ma_y = ma_y$$

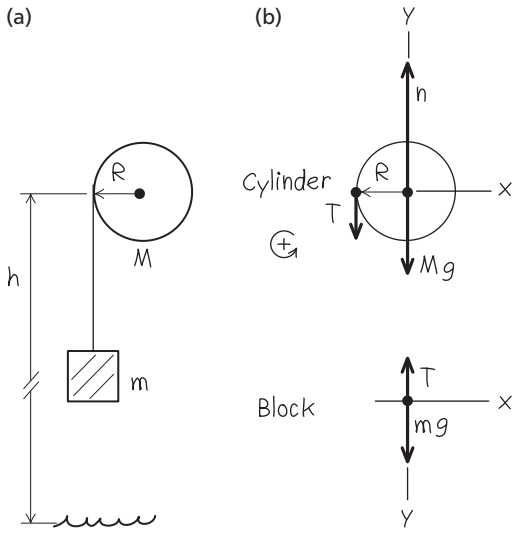
$$a_y = \frac{g}{1 + M/2m}$$

To find the cable tension T, we substitute our expression for a_y into the block equation:

$$T = mg - ma_y = mg - m\left(\frac{g}{1 + M/2m}\right) = \frac{mg}{1 + 2m/M}$$

Continued

Figure 10.10 (a) Our diagram of the situation. (b) Our free-body diagrams for the cylinder and the block. We assume the cable has negligible mass.



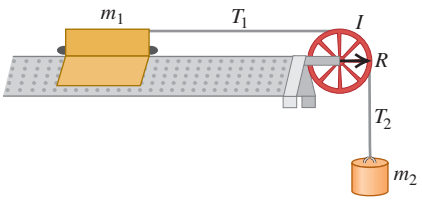
EVALUATE The acceleration is positive (in the downward direction) and less than g, as it should be, since the cable is holding back the block. The cable tension is *not* equal to the block's weight mg; if it were, the block could not accelerate.

Let's check some particular cases. When M is much larger than m, the tension is nearly equal to mg and the acceleration is correspondingly much less than g. When M is zero, $T = 0$ and $a_y = g$; the object falls freely. If the object starts from rest ($v_{0y} = 0$) a height h above the floor, its y-velocity when it strikes the floor is given by $v_y{}^2 = v_{0y}{}^2 + 2a_y h = 2a_y h$, so

$$v_y = \sqrt{2a_y h} = \sqrt{\frac{2gh}{1 + M/2m}}$$

We found this result from energy considerations in Example 9.8.

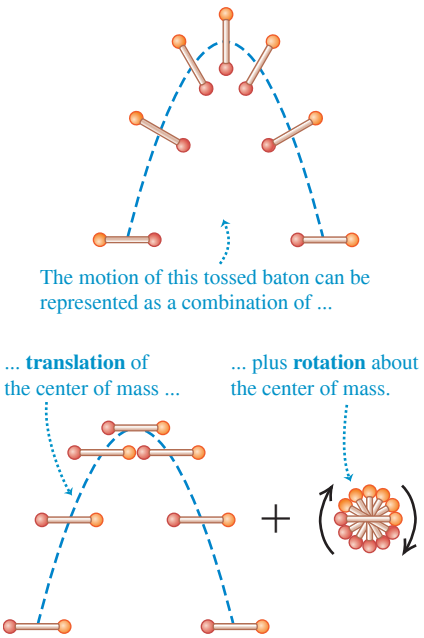
KEYCONCEPT When an object is connected to a string that wraps around a rotating pulley of radius R, the linear acceleration a_y of the object is related to the angular acceleration α_z of the pulley by $a_y = R\alpha_z$.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.2 The figure shows a glider of mass m_1 that can slide without friction on a horizontal air track. It is attached to an object of mass m_2 by a massless string. The pulley has radius R and moment of inertia I about its axis of rotation. When released, the hanging object accelerates downward, the glider accelerates to the right, and the string turns the pulley without slipping or stretching. Rank the magnitudes of the following forces that act during the motion, in order from largest to smallest magnitude. (i) The tension force (magnitude T_1) in the horizontal part of the string; (ii) the tension force (magnitude T_2) in the vertical part of the string; (iii) the weight $m_2 g$ of the hanging object.

ANSWER **(iii), (ii), (i)** For the hanging object of mass m_2 to accelerate downward, the net force on it must be downward. Hence the magnitude $m_2 g$ of the downward weight force must be greater than the magnitude T_2 of the upward tension force. For the pulley to have a clockwise angular acceleration, the net torque on the pulley must be clockwise. Tension T_2 tends to rotate the pulley clockwise, while tension T_1 tends to rotate the pulley counterclockwise. Both tension forces have the same lever arm R, so there is a clockwise torque $T_2 R$ and a counterclockwise torque $T_1 R$. For the net torque to be clockwise, T_2 must be greater than T_1. Hence $m_2 g > T_2 > T_1$.

Figure 10.11 The motion of a rigid body is a combination of translational motion of the center of mass and rotation around the center of mass.



10.3 RIGID-BODY ROTATION ABOUT A MOVING AXIS

We can extend our analysis of rigid-body rotational dynamics to some cases in which the axis of rotation moves. When that happens, the motion of the rigid body is **combined translation and rotation.** The key to understanding such situations is this: Every possible motion of a rigid body can be represented as a combination of *translational motion of the center of mass* and *rotation about an axis through the center of mass.* This is true even when the center of mass accelerates, so it is not at rest in any inertial frame. **Figure 10.11** illustrates this for the motion of a tossed baton: The center of mass of the baton follows a parabolic curve, as though the baton were a particle located at the center of mass. A rolling ball is another example of combined translational and rotational motions.

Combined Translation and Rotation: Energy Relationships

It's beyond our scope to prove that rigid-body motion can always be divided into translation of the center of mass and rotation about the center of mass. But we *can* prove this for the kinetic energy K of a rigid body that has both translational and rotational motions. For such a rigid body, K is the sum of two parts:

Kinetic energy of *translation* of center of mass (cm) — Kinetic energy of *rotation* around axis through cm

Kinetic energy of a rigid body with both translation and rotation

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{\text{cm}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}I_{\text{cm}}\omega^2 \qquad (10.8)$$

Mass of rigid body — Speed of cm — Moment of inertia of rigid body about axis through cm — Angular speed of rigid body

To prove this relationship, we again imagine the rigid body to be made up of particles. For a typical particle with mass m_i (**Fig. 10.12**), the velocity $\vec{v}_i$ of this particle relative to an inertial frame is the vector sum of the velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}$ of the center of mass and the velocity $\vec{v}_i'$ of the particle *relative to* the center of mass:

$$\vec{v}_i = \vec{v}_{\text{cm}} + \vec{v}_i' \qquad (10.9)$$

The kinetic energy K_i of this particle in the inertial frame is $\frac{1}{2}m_i v_i^2$, which we can also express as $\frac{1}{2}m_i(\vec{v}_i \cdot \vec{v}_i)$. Substituting Eq. (10.9) into this, we get

$$\begin{aligned} K_i &= \tfrac{1}{2}m_i(\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} + \vec{v}_i') \cdot (\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} + \vec{v}_i') \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}m_i(\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} \cdot \vec{v}_{\text{cm}} + 2\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} \cdot \vec{v}_i' + \vec{v}_i' \cdot \vec{v}_i') \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}m_i(v_{\text{cm}}^2 + 2\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} \cdot \vec{v}_i' + v_i'^2) \end{aligned}$$

The total kinetic energy is the sum $\sum K_i$ for all the particles making up the rigid body. Expressing the three terms in this equation as separate sums, we get

$$K = \sum K_i = \sum\left(\tfrac{1}{2}m_i v_{\text{cm}}^2\right) + \sum(m_i\vec{v}_{\text{cm}} \cdot \vec{v}_i') + \sum\left(\tfrac{1}{2}m_i v_i'^2\right)$$

The first and second terms have common factors that we take outside the sum:

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}(\textstyle\sum m_i)v_{\text{cm}}^2 + \vec{v}_{\text{cm}} \cdot (\textstyle\sum m_i\vec{v}_i') + \sum\left(\tfrac{1}{2}m_i v_i'^2\right) \qquad (10.10)$$

Now comes the reward for our effort. In the first term, $\sum m_i$ is the total mass M. The second term is zero because $\sum m_i\vec{v}_i'$ is M times the velocity of the center of mass *relative to the center of mass,* and this is zero by definition. The last term is the sum of the kinetic energies of the particles computed by using their speeds with respect to the center of mass; this is just the kinetic energy of rotation around the center of mass. Using the same steps that led to Eq. (9.17) for the rotational kinetic energy of a rigid body, we can write this last term as $\frac{1}{2}I_{\text{cm}}\omega^2$, where I_{cm} is the moment of inertia with respect to the axis through the center of mass and ω is the angular speed. So Eq. (10.10) becomes Eq. (10.8):

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{\text{cm}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}I_{\text{cm}}\omega^2$$

Rolling Without Slipping

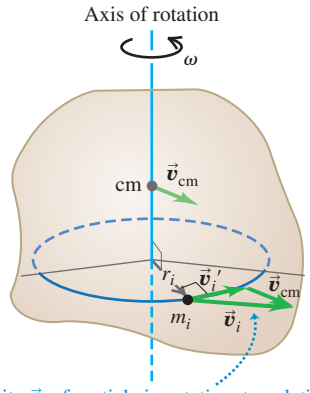
An important case of combined translation and rotation is **rolling without slipping.** The rolling wheel in **Fig. 10.13** (next page) is symmetrical, so its center of mass is at its geometric center. We view the motion in an inertial frame of reference in which the surface on which the wheel rolls is at rest. In this frame, the point on the wheel that contacts the surface must be instantaneously *at rest* so that it does not slip. Hence the velocity $\vec{v}_1'$ of the point of contact relative to the center of mass must have the same magnitude but opposite direction as the center-of-mass velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}$. If the wheel's radius is R and its angular speed about the center of mass is ω, then the magnitude of $\vec{v}_1'$ is $R\omega$; hence

Condition for rolling without slipping:

Speed of center of mass of rolling wheel — Radius of wheel — Angular speed of wheel

$$v_{\text{cm}} = R\omega \qquad (10.11)$$

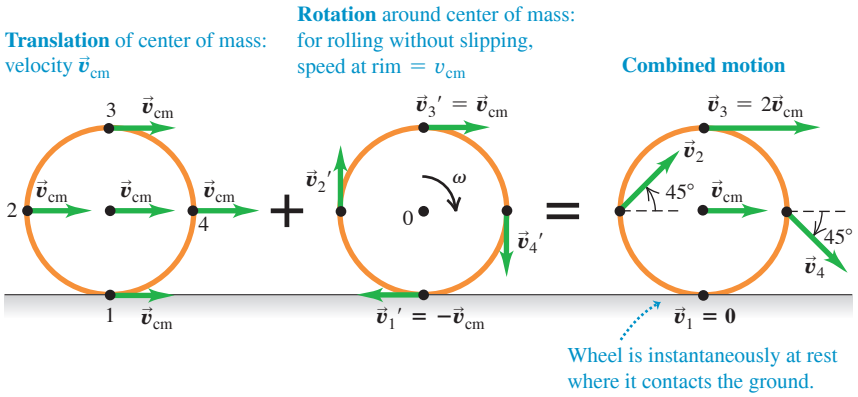
Figure **10.12** A rigid body with both translational and rotational motions.



Velocity $\vec{v}_i$ of particle in rotating, translating rigid body = (velocity $\vec{v}_{\text{cm}}$ of center of mass) + (particle's velocity $\vec{v}_i'$ relative to center of mass)

BIO APPLICATION Combined Translation and Rotation A maple seed consists of a pod attached to a much lighter, flattened wing. Airflow around the wing slows the falling seed to about 1 m/s and causes the seed to rotate about its center of mass. The seed's slow fall means that a breeze can carry the seed some distance from the parent tree. In the absence of wind, the seed's center of mass falls straight down.

Figure **10.13** The motion of a rolling wheel is the sum of the translational motion of the center of mass and the rotational motion of the wheel around the center of mass.



As Fig. 10.13 shows, the velocity of a point on the wheel is the vector sum of the velocity of the center of mass and the velocity of the point relative to the center of mass. Thus while point 1, the point of contact, is instantaneously at rest, point 3 at the top of the wheel is moving forward *twice as fast* as the center of mass, and points 2 and 4 at the sides have velocities at 45° to the horizontal.

At any instant we can think of the wheel as rotating about an "instantaneous axis" of rotation that passes through the point of contact with the ground. The angular velocity ω is the same for this axis as for an axis through the center of mass; an observer at the center of mass sees the rim make the same number of revolutions per second as does an observer at the rim watching the center of mass spin around him. If we think of the motion of the rolling wheel in Fig. 10.13 in this way, the kinetic energy of the wheel is $K = \frac{1}{2}I_1\omega^2$, where I_1 is the moment of inertia of the wheel about an axis through point 1. But by the parallel-axis theorem, Eq. (9.19), $I_1 = I_{cm} + MR^2$, where M is the total mass of the wheel and I_{cm} is the moment of inertia with respect to an axis through the center of mass. Using Eq. (10.11), we find that the wheel's kinetic energy is as given by Eq. (10.8):

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I_1\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}I_{cm}\omega^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}I_{cm}\omega^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{cm}{}^2$$

Figure **10.14** The smoke rising from this drag racer's rear tires shows that the tires are slipping on the road, so v_{cm} is *not* equal to $R\omega$.

CAUTION **Rolling without slipping** The relationship $v_{cm} = R\omega$ holds *only* if there is rolling without slipping. When a drag racer first starts to move, the rear tires are spinning very fast even though the racer is hardly moving, so $R\omega$ is greater than v_{cm} (**Fig. 10.14**). If a driver applies the brakes too heavily so that the car skids, the tires will spin hardly at all and $R\omega$ is less than v_{cm}.

If a rigid body changes height as it moves, we must also consider gravitational potential energy. We saw in Section 9.4 that for any extended object of mass M, rigid or not, the gravitational potential energy U is the same as if we replaced the object by a particle of mass M located at the object's center of mass, so

$$U = Mgy_{cm}$$

EXAMPLE 10.4 Speed of a primitive yo-yo

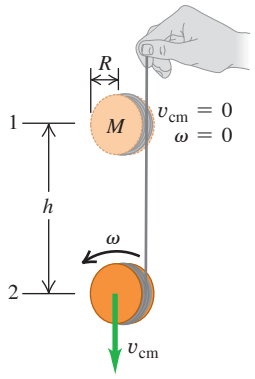
A primitive yo-yo has a massless string wrapped around a solid cylinder with mass M and radius R (**Fig. 10.15**). You hold the free end of the string stationary and release the cylinder from rest. The string unwinds but does not slip or stretch as the cylinder descends and rotates. Using energy considerations, find the speed v_{cm} of the cylinder's center of mass after it has descended a distance h.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Since you hold the upper end of the string fixed, your hand does no work on the string–cylinder system. There is friction between the string and the cylinder, but the string doesn't slip so no mechanical energy is lost. Hence we can use conservation of mechanical energy. The initial kinetic energy of the cylinder is $K_1 = 0$, and its final kinetic energy K_2 is given by Eq. (10.8); the massless string has no kinetic energy. The moment of inertia is $I_{cm} = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$, and by Eq. (9.13) $\omega = v_{cm}/R$ because the string doesn't slip. The potential energies are $U_1 = Mgh$ and $U_2 = 0$.

EXECUTE From Eq. (10.8), the kinetic energy at point 2 is

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{cm}{}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2\right)\left(\frac{v_{cm}}{R}\right)^2 = \tfrac{3}{4}Mv_{cm}{}^2$$

Figure 10.15 Calculating the speed of a primitive yo-yo.



The kinetic energy is $1\frac{1}{2}$ times what it would be if the yo-yo were falling at speed v_{cm} without rotating. Two-thirds of the total kinetic energy $\left(\frac{1}{2}Mv_{cm}^2\right)$ is translational and one-third $\left(\frac{1}{4}Mv_{cm}^2\right)$ is rotational. Using conservation of energy,

$$K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2$$
$$0 + Mgh = \tfrac{3}{4}Mv_{cm}^2 + 0$$
$$v_{cm} = \sqrt{\tfrac{4}{3}gh}$$

EVALUATE No mechanical energy was lost or gained, so from the energy standpoint the string is merely a way to convert some of the gravitational potential energy (which is released as the cylinder falls) into rotational kinetic energy rather than translational kinetic energy. Because not all of the released energy goes into translation, v_{cm} is less than the speed $\sqrt{2gh}$ of an object dropped from height h with no strings attached.

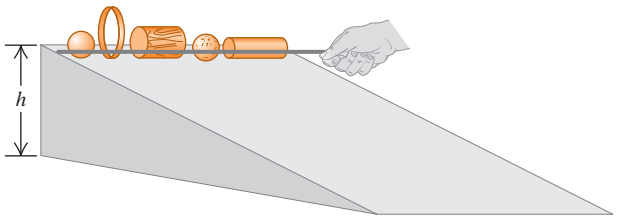
KEYCONCEPT If a rigid body is both translating (moving as a whole through space) and rotating, its total kinetic energy is the sum of the kinetic energy of translation of the center of mass and the kinetic energy of rotation around an axis through the center of mass.

EXAMPLE 10.5 Race of the rolling bodies

In a physics demonstration, an instructor "races" various rigid bodies that roll without slipping from rest down an inclined plane (**Fig. 10.16**). What shape should a body have to reach the bottom of the incline first?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Kinetic friction does no work if the bodies roll without slipping. We can also ignore the effects of *rolling friction,* introduced in Section 5.3, if the bodies and the surface of the incline are rigid. (Later in this section we'll explain why this is so.) We can therefore use conservation of energy. Each body starts from rest at the top of an incline with height h, so $K_1 = 0$, $U_1 = Mgh$, and $U_2 = 0$. Equation (10.8) gives the kinetic energy at the bottom of the incline; since the bodies roll without slipping, $\omega = v_{cm}/R$. We can express the moments of inertia of the four round bodies in Table 9.2, cases (f)–(i), as $I_{cm} = cMR^2$, where c is a number less than or equal to 1 that depends on the shape of the body, Our goal is to find the value of c that gives the body the greatest speed v_{cm} after its center of mass has descended a vertical distance h.

Figure 10.16 Which body rolls down the incline fastest, and why?



EXECUTE From conservation of energy,

$$K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2$$
$$0 + Mgh = \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{cm}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}cMR^2\left(\frac{v_{cm}}{R}\right)^2 + 0$$
$$Mgh = \tfrac{1}{2}(1 + c)Mv_{cm}^2$$
$$v_{cm} = \sqrt{\frac{2gh}{1 + c}}$$

EVALUATE For a given value of c, the speed v_{cm} after descending a distance h is *independent* of the body's mass M and radius R. Hence *all* uniform solid cylinders $\left(c = \frac{1}{2}\right)$ have the same speed at the bottom, regardless of their mass and radii. The values of c tell us that the order of finish for uniform bodies will be as follows: (1) any solid sphere $\left(c = \frac{2}{5}\right)$, (2) any solid cylinder $\left(c = \frac{1}{2}\right)$, (3) any thin-walled, hollow sphere $\left(c = \frac{2}{3}\right)$, and (4) any thin-walled, hollow cylinder $(c = 1)$. Small-c bodies always beat large-c bodies because less of their kinetic energy is tied up in rotation, so more is available for translation.

KEYCONCEPT For a rigid body that rolls without slipping, has a given mass and radius, and moves with a given center-of-mass speed, the kinetic energy of rotation depends on the shape of the rigid body.

Combined Translation and Rotation: Dynamics

We can also analyze the combined translational and rotational motions of a rigid body from the standpoint of dynamics. We showed in Section 8.5 that for an extended object, the acceleration of the center of mass is the same as that of a particle of the same mass acted on by all the external forces on the actual object:

$$\sum \vec{F}_{ext} = M\vec{a}_{cm} \qquad (10.12)$$

Net external force on an object; Total mass of object; Acceleration of center of mass

The rotational motion about the center of mass is described by the rotational analog of Newton's second law, Eq. (10.7):

$$\sum \tau_z = I_{\text{cm}}\alpha_z \qquad (10.13)$$

Net torque on a rigid body about z-axis through center of mass; Moment of inertia of rigid body about z-axis; Angular acceleration of rigid body about z-axis

Figure 10.17 The axle of a bicycle wheel passes through the wheel's center of mass and is an axis of symmetry. Hence the rotation of the wheel is described by Eq. (10.13), provided the bicycle doesn't turn or tilt to one side (which would change the orientation of the axle).

It's not immediately obvious that Eq. (10.13) should apply to the motion of a translating rigid body; after all, our derivation of $\sum \tau_z = I\alpha_z$ in Section 10.2 assumed that the axis of rotation was stationary. But Eq. (10.13) is valid *even when the axis of rotation moves,* provided the following two conditions are met:

1. The axis through the center of mass must be an axis of symmetry.
2. The axis must not change direction.

These conditions are satisfied for many types of rotation (**Fig. 10.17**). Note that in general this moving axis of rotation is *not* at rest in an inertial frame of reference.

We can now solve dynamics problems involving a rigid body that undergoes translational and rotational motions at the same time, provided that the rotation axis satisfies the two conditions just mentioned. Problem-Solving Strategy 10.1 (Section 10.2) is equally useful here, and you should review it now. Keep in mind that when a rigid body undergoes translational and rotational motions at the same time, we need two separate equations of motion *for the same body* Eq. (10.12) for the translation of the center of mass and Eq. (10.13) for rotation about an axis through the center of mass.

EXAMPLE 10.6 Acceleration of a primitive yo-yo

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

For the primitive yo-yo in Example 10.4 (**Fig. 10.18a**), find the downward acceleration of the cylinder and the tension in the string.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Figure 10.18b shows our free-body diagram for the yo-yo, including our choice of positive coordinate directions. Our target variables are $a_{\text{cm-}y}$ and T. We'll use Eq. (10.12) for the translational motion of the center of mass and Eq. (10.13) for the rotational motion around the center of mass. We'll also use Eq. (10.11), which says that the string unwinds without slipping. As in Example 10.4, the moment of inertia of the yo-yo for an axis through its center of mass is $I_{\text{cm}} = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$.

EXECUTE From Eq. (10.12),

$$\sum F_y = Mg + (-T) = Ma_{\text{cm-}y} \qquad (10.14)$$

From Eq. (10.13),

$$\sum \tau_z = TR = I_{\text{cm}}\alpha_z = \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2\alpha_z \qquad (10.15)$$

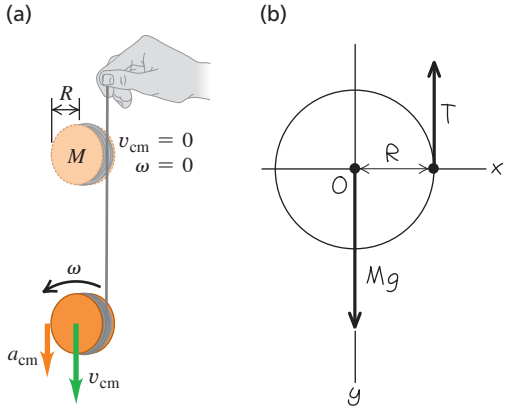
From Eq. (10.11), $v_{\text{cm-}z} = R\omega_z$; the derivative of this expression with respect to time gives us

$$a_{\text{cm-}y} = R\alpha_z \qquad (10.16)$$

We now use Eq. (10.16) to eliminate α_z from Eq. (10.15) and then solve Eqs. (10.14) and (10.15) simultaneously for T and $a_{\text{cm-}y}$:

$$a_{\text{cm-}y} = \tfrac{2}{3}g \qquad T = \tfrac{1}{3}Mg$$

Figure 10.18 Dynamics of a primitive yo-yo (see Fig. 10.15).



EVALUATE The string slows the fall of the yo-yo, but not enough to stop it completely. Hence $a_{\text{cm-}y}$ is less than the free-fall value g and T is less than the yo-yo weight Mg.

KEYCONCEPT To analyze the motion of a rigid body that is both translating and rotating, use Newton's second law for the translational motion of the center of mass and the rotational analog of Newton's second law for the rotation around the center of mass.

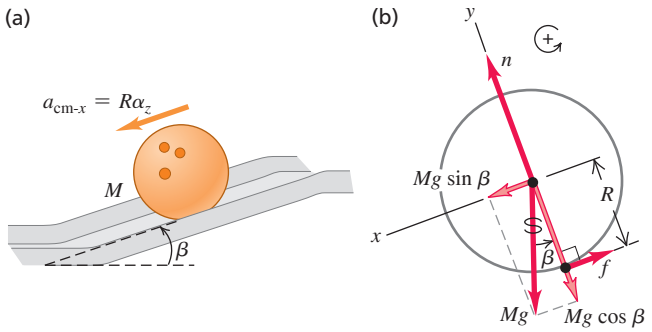
EXAMPLE 10.7 Acceleration of a rolling sphere

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A bowling ball of mass M rolls without slipping down a ramp that is inclined at an angle β to the horizontal (**Fig. 10.19a**). What are the ball's acceleration and the magnitude of the friction force on the ball? Treat the ball as a uniform solid sphere, ignoring the finger holes.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The free-body diagram (Fig. 10.19b) shows that only the friction force exerts a torque about the center of mass. Our target variables are the acceleration $a_{\text{cm-}x}$ of the ball's center of mass and the magnitude f of the friction force. (Because the ball does not slip at the instantaneous point of contact with the ramp, this is a *static* friction force; it prevents slipping and gives the ball its angular acceleration.) We use Eqs. (10.12) and (10.13) as in Example 10.6.

Figure 10.19 A bowling ball rolling down a ramp.



EXECUTE The ball's moment of inertia is $I_{\text{cm}} = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$. The equations of motion are

$$\Sigma F_x = Mg\sin\beta + (-f) = Ma_{\text{cm-}x} \qquad (10.17)$$

$$\Sigma\tau_z = fR = I_{\text{cm}}\alpha_z = \left(\tfrac{2}{5}MR^2\right)\alpha_z \qquad (10.18)$$

The ball rolls without slipping, so as in Example 10.6 we use $a_{\text{cm-}x} = R\alpha_z$ to eliminate α_z from Eq. (10.18):

$$fR = \tfrac{2}{5}MRa_{\text{cm-}x}$$

This equation and Eq. (10.17) are two equations for the unknowns $a_{\text{cm-}x}$ and f. We solve Eq. (10.17) for f, substitute that expression into the above equation to eliminate f, and solve for $a_{\text{cm-}x}$:

$$a_{\text{cm-}x} = \tfrac{5}{7}g\sin\beta$$

Finally, we substitute this acceleration into Eq. (10.17) and solve for f:

$$f = \tfrac{2}{7}Mg\sin\beta$$

EVALUATE The ball's acceleration is just $\frac{5}{7}$ as large as that of an object *sliding* down the slope without friction. If the ball descends a vertical distance h as it rolls down the ramp, its displacement along the ramp is $h/\sin\beta$. You can show that the speed of the ball at the bottom of the ramp is $v_{\text{cm}} = \sqrt{\frac{10}{7}gh}$, the same as our result from Example 10.5 with $c = \frac{2}{5}$.

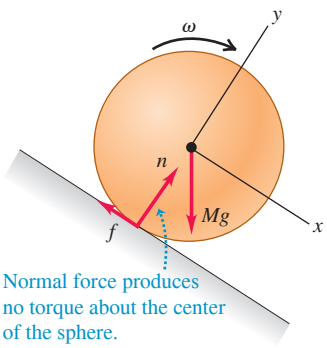
If the ball were rolling *uphill* without slipping, the force of friction would still be directed uphill as in Fig. 10.19b. Can you see why?

KEYCONCEPT If an object is rolling without slipping on an incline, a friction force must act on it. The direction of this friction force is always such as to prevent slipping.

Rolling Friction

In Example 10.5 we said that we can ignore rolling friction if both the rolling body and the surface over which it rolls are perfectly rigid. In **Fig. 10.20a** a perfectly rigid sphere is rolling down a perfectly rigid incline. The line of action of the normal force passes through the center of the sphere, so its torque is zero; there is no sliding at the point of contact, so the friction force does no work. Figure 10.20b shows a more realistic situation, in which the surface "piles up" in front of the sphere and the sphere rides in a shallow trench. Because of these deformations, the contact forces on the sphere no longer act along a single point but over an area; the forces are concentrated on the front of the sphere as shown. As a result, the normal force now exerts a torque that opposes the rotation. In addition, there is some sliding of the sphere over the surface due to the deformation, causing

(a) Perfectly rigid sphere rolling on a perfectly rigid surface



(b) Rigid sphere rolling on a deformable surface

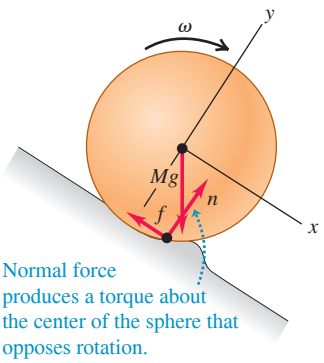


Figure 10.20 Rolling down (a) a perfectly rigid surface and (b) a deformable surface. In (b) the deformation is greatly exaggerated, and the force n is the component of the contact force that points normal to the plane of the surface before it is deformed.

BIO APPLICATION Rolling for Reproduction One of the few organisms that uses rolling as a means of locomotion is the weed called Russian thistle (*Kali tragus*). The plant breaks off at its base, forming a rounded tumbleweed that disperses its seeds as it rolls. Because a tumbleweed deforms easily, it is subject to substantial rolling friction. Hence it quickly slows to a stop unless propelled by the wind.

mechanical energy to be lost. The combination of these two effects is the phenomenon of *rolling friction*. Rolling friction also occurs if the rolling body is deformable, such as an automobile tire. Often the rolling body and the surface are rigid enough that rolling friction can be ignored, as we have assumed in all the examples in this section.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.3 Suppose the solid cylinder used as a yo-yo in Example 10.6 is replaced by a hollow cylinder of the same mass and radius. (a) Will the acceleration of the yo-yo (i) increase, (ii) decrease, or (iii) remain the same? (b) Will the string tension (i) increase, (ii) decrease, or (iii) remain the same?

ANSWER (a) **(ii)**, (b) **(i)** If you redo the calculation of Example 10.6 with a hollow cylinder (moment of inertia $I_{cm} = MR^2$) instead of a solid cylinder (moment of inertia $I_{cm} = \frac{1}{2}MR^2$), you'll find $a_{cm\text{-}y} = \frac{1}{2}g$ and $T = \frac{1}{2}Mg$ (instead of $a_{cm\text{-}y} = \frac{2}{3}g$ and $T = \frac{1}{3}Mg$ for a solid cylinder). Hence the acceleration is less but the tension is greater. You can come to the same conclusion without doing the calculation. The greater moment of inertia means that the hollow cylinder will rotate more slowly and hence will roll downward more slowly. To slow the downward motion, a greater upward tension force is needed to oppose the downward force of gravity.

10.4 WORK AND POWER IN ROTATIONAL MOTION

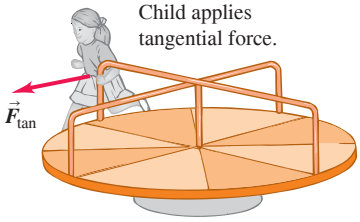
When you pedal a bicycle, you apply forces to a rotating body and do work on it. Similar things happen in many other real-life situations, such as a rotating motor shaft driving a power tool or a car engine propelling the vehicle. Let's see how to apply our ideas about work from Chapter 6 to rotational motion.

Suppose a tangential force $\vec{F}_{\text{tan}}$ acts at the rim of a pivoted disk—for example, a child running while pushing on a playground merry-go-round (**Fig. 10.21a**). The disk rotates through an infinitesimal angle $d\theta$ about a fixed axis during an infinitesimal time interval dt (Fig. 10.21b). The work dW done by the force $\vec{F}_{\text{tan}}$ while a point on the rim moves a distance ds is $dW = F_{\text{tan}}\,ds$. If $d\theta$ is measured in radians, then $ds = R\,d\theta$ and

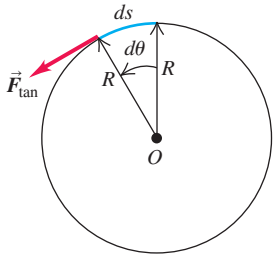
$$dW = F_{\text{tan}}R\,d\theta$$

Figure **10.21** A tangential force applied to a rotating body does work.

(a)



(b) Overhead view of merry-go-round



Now $F_{\text{tan}}R$ is the *torque* τ_z due to the force $\vec{F}_{\text{tan}}$, so

$$dW = \tau_z\,d\theta \tag{10.19}$$

As the disk rotates from θ_1 to θ_2, the total work done by the torque is

Work done by a torque τ_z

$$W = \int_{\theta_1}^{\theta_2} \tau_z\,d\theta \tag{10.20}$$

Upper limit = final angular position; Integral of the torque with respect to angle; Lower limit = initial angular position

If the torque remains *constant* while the angle changes, then the work is the product of torque and angular displacement:

Work done by a constant torque τ_z

$$W = \tau_z(\theta_2 - \theta_1) = \tau_z\Delta\theta \tag{10.21}$$

Torque; Final minus initial angular position = angular displacement

If torque is expressed in newton-meters (N · m) and angular displacement in radians, the work is in joules. Equation (10.21) is the rotational analog of Eq. (6.1), $W = Fs$, and Eq. (10.20) is the analog of Eq. (6.7), $W = \int F_x\,dx$, for the work done by a force in a straight-line displacement.

If the force in Fig. 10.21 had an axial component (parallel to the rotation axis) or a radial component (directed toward or away from the axis), that component would do no

work because the displacement of the point of application has only a tangential component. An axial or radial component of force would also make no contribution to the torque about the axis of rotation. So Eqs. (10.20) and (10.21) are correct for *any* force, no matter what its components.

When a torque does work on a rotating rigid body, the kinetic energy changes by an amount equal to the work done. We can prove this by using exactly the same procedure that we used in Eqs. (6.11) through (6.13) for the translational kinetic energy of a particle. Let τ_z represent the *net* torque on the body so that $\tau_z = I\alpha_z$ from Eq. (10.7), and assume that the body is rigid so that the moment of inertia I is constant. We then transform the integrand in Eq. (10.20) into an integrand with respect to ω_z as follows:

$$\tau_z\,d\theta = (I\alpha_z)\,d\theta = I\frac{d\omega_z}{dt}d\theta = I\frac{d\theta}{dt}d\omega_z = I\omega_z\,d\omega_z$$

Since τ_z is the net torque, the integral in Eq. (10.20) is the *total* work done on the rotating rigid body. This equation then becomes

Total work done on a rotating rigid body = work done by the net external torque

$$W_{\text{tot}} = \int_{\omega_1}^{\omega_2} I\omega_z\,d\omega_z = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_1^2 \qquad (10.22)$$

Final rotational kinetic energy

Initial rotational kinetic energy

The change in the rotational kinetic energy of a *rigid* body equals the work done by forces exerted from outside the body (**Fig. 10.22**). This equation is analogous to Eq. (6.13), the work–energy theorem for a particle.

Figure **10.22** The rotational kinetic energy of a helicopter's main rotor is equal to the total work done to set it spinning. When it is spinning at a constant rate, positive work is done on the rotor by the engine and negative work is done on it by air resistance. Hence the net work being done is zero and the kinetic energy remains constant.

How does *power* relate to torque? When we divide both sides of Eq. (10.19) by the time interval dt during which the angular displacement occurs, we find

$$\frac{dW}{dt} = \tau_z\frac{d\theta}{dt}$$

But dW/dt is the rate of doing work, or *power* P, and $d\theta/dt$ is angular velocity ω_z:

Power due to a torque acting on a rigid body

$$P = \tau_z\omega_z \qquad (10.23)$$

Torque with respect to rigid body's rotation axis

Angular velocity of rigid body about axis

This is the analog of the relationship $P = \vec{F}\cdot\vec{v}$ that we developed in Section 6.4 for particle motion.

EXAMPLE 10.8 Calculating power from torque

An electric motor exerts a constant 10 N · m torque on a grindstone, which has a moment of inertia of 2.0 kg · m^2 about its shaft. The system starts from rest. Find the work W done by the motor in 8.0 s and the grindstone's kinetic energy K at this time. What average power P_{av} is delivered by the motor?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The only torque acting is that due to the motor. Since this torque is constant, the grindstone's angular acceleration α_z is constant. We'll use Eq. (10.7) to find α_z, and then use this in the kinematics equations from Section 9.2 to calculate the angle $\Delta\theta$ through which the grindstone rotates in 8.0 s and its final angular velocity ω_z. From these we'll calculate W, K, and P_{av}.

EXECUTE We have $\sum\tau_z = 10$ N · m and $I = 2.0$ kg · m^2, so $\sum\tau_z = I\alpha_z$ yields $\alpha_z = 5.0$ rad/s^2. From Eqs. (9.11) and (10.21),

$$\Delta\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha_z t^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(5.0\text{ rad/s}^2)(8.0\text{ s})^2 = 160\text{ rad}$$

$$W = \tau_z\Delta\theta = (10\text{ N}\cdot\text{m})(160\text{ rad}) = 1600\text{ J}$$

From Eqs. (9.7) and (9.17),

$$\omega_z = \alpha_z t = (5.0\text{ rad/s}^2)(8.0\text{ s}) = 40\text{ rad/s}$$

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_z^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(2.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(40\text{ rad/s})^2 = 1600\text{ J}$$

The average power is the work done divided by the time interval:

$$P_{\text{av}} = \frac{1600\text{ J}}{8.0\text{ s}} = 200\text{ J/s} = 200\text{ W}$$

Continued

EVALUATE The initial kinetic energy was zero, so the work done W must equal the final kinetic energy K [Eq. (10.22)]. This is just as we calculated. We can check our result $P_{\text{av}} = 200$ W by considering the *instantaneous* power $P = \tau_z\omega_z$. Because ω_z increases continuously, P increases continuously as well; its value increases from zero at $t = 0$ to $(10\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m})(40\ \text{rad/s}) = 400$ W at $t = 8.0$ s. Both ω_z and P increase *uniformly* with time, so the *average* power is just half this maximum value, or 200 W.

KEYCONCEPT If a torque acts on a rigid body, the work done equals torque times angular displacement and the power equals torque times angular velocity.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.4 You apply equal torques to two different cylinders. Cylinder 1 has a moment of inertia twice as large as cylinder 2. Each cylinder is initially at rest. After one complete rotation, which cylinder has the greater kinetic energy? (i) Cylinder 1; (ii) cylinder 2; (iii) both cylinders have the same kinetic energy.

ANSWER **(iii)** You apply the same torque over the same angular displacement to both cylinders. Hence, by Eq. (10.21), you do the same amount of work to both cylinders and impart the same kinetic energy to both. (The one with the smaller moment of inertia ends up with a greater angular speed, but that isn't what we are asked. Compare Conceptual Example 6.5 in Section 6.2.)

10.5 ANGULAR MOMENTUM

Every rotational quantity that we have encountered in Chapters 9 and 10 is the analog of some quantity in the translational motion of a particle. The analog of *momentum* of a particle is **angular momentum,** a vector quantity denoted as $\vec{L}$. Its relationship to momentum $\vec{p}$ (which we'll often call *linear momentum* for clarity) is exactly the same as the relationship of torque to force, $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$. For a particle with constant mass m and velocity $\vec{v}$, the angular momentum is

Angular momentum of a particle relative to origin O of an inertial frame of reference

Position vector of particle relative to O

$$\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p} = \vec{r} \times m\vec{v} \tag{10.24}$$

Linear momentum of particle = mass times velocity

The value of $\vec{L}$ depends on the choice of origin O, since it involves the particle's position vector $\vec{r}$ relative to O. The units of angular momentum are $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}$.

In **Fig. 10.23** a particle moves in the xy-plane; its position vector $\vec{r}$ and momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ are shown. The angular momentum vector $\vec{L}$ is perpendicular to the xy-plane. The right-hand rule for vector products shows that its direction is along the $+z$-axis, and its magnitude is

$$L = mvr\sin\phi = mvl \tag{10.25}$$

where l is the perpendicular distance from the line of $\vec{v}$ to O. This distance plays the role of "lever arm" for the momentum vector.

When a net force $\vec{F}$ acts on a particle, its velocity and momentum change, so its angular momentum may also change. We can show that the *rate of change* of angular momentum is equal to the torque of the net force. We take the time derivative of Eq. (10.24), using the rule for the derivative of a product:

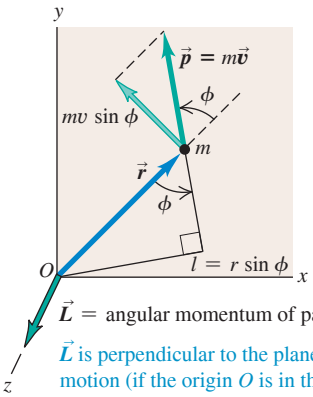
$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \left(\frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} \times m\vec{v}\right) + \left(\vec{r} \times m\frac{d\vec{v}}{dt}\right) = (\vec{v} \times m\vec{v}) + (\vec{r} \times m\vec{a})$$

The first term is zero because it contains the vector product of the vector $\vec{v} = d\vec{r}/dt$ with itself. In the second term we replace $m\vec{a}$ with the net force $\vec{F}$:

$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F} = \vec{\tau} \quad \text{(for a particle acted on by net force } \vec{F}\text{)} \tag{10.26}$$

The rate of change of angular momentum of a particle equals the torque of the net force acting on it. Compare this result to Eq. (8.4): The rate of change $d\vec{p}/dt$ of the *linear* momentum of a particle equals the net force that acts on it.

Figure **10.23** Calculating the angular momentum $\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times m\vec{v} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p}$ of a particle with mass m moving in the xy-plane.



Angular Momentum of a Rigid Body

We can use Eq. (10.25) to find the total angular momentum of a *rigid body* rotating about the z-axis with angular speed ω. First consider a thin slice of the body lying in the xy-plane (**Fig. 10.24**). Each particle in the slice moves in a circle centered at the origin, and at each instant its velocity $\vec{v}_i$ is perpendicular to its position vector $\vec{r}_i$, as shown. Hence in Eq. (10.25), $\phi = 90°$ for every particle. A particle with mass m_i at a distance r_i from O has a speed v_i equal to $r_i\omega$. From Eq. (10.25) the magnitude L_i of its angular momentum is

$$L_i = m_i(r_i\omega)\,r_i = m_i r_i^2\omega \tag{10.27}$$

The direction of each particle's angular momentum, as given by the right-hand rule for the vector product, is along the $+z$-axis.

The *total* angular momentum of the slice of the rigid body that lies in the xy-plane is the sum $\sum L_i$ of the angular momenta L_i of all of its particles. From Eq. (10.27),

$$L = \sum L_i = (\sum m_i r_i^2)\omega = I\omega$$

where I is the moment of inertia of the slice about the z-axis.

We can do this same calculation for the other slices of the rigid body, all parallel to the xy-plane. For points that do not lie in the xy-plane, a complication arises because the $\vec{r}$ vectors have components in the z-direction as well as in the x- and y-directions; this gives the angular momentum of each particle a component perpendicular to the z-axis. But *if the z-axis is an axis of symmetry,* the perpendicular components for particles on opposite sides of this axis add up to zero (**Fig. 10.25**). So when a rigid body rotates about an axis of symmetry, its angular momentum vector $\vec{L}$ lies along the symmetry axis, and its magnitude is $L = I\omega$.

The angular velocity vector $\vec{\omega}$ also lies along the rotation axis, as we saw in Section 9.1. Hence for a rigid body rotating around an axis of symmetry, $\vec{L}$ and $\vec{\omega}$ are in the same direction (**Fig. 10.26**). So we have the *vector* relationship

Angular momentum of a rigid body rotating around a symmetry axis

$$\vec{L} = I\vec{\omega} \tag{10.28}$$

(I: Moment of inertia of rigid body about symmetry axis; $\vec{\omega}$: Angular velocity vector of rigid body)

From Eq. (10.26) the rate of change of angular momentum of a particle equals the torque of the net force acting on the particle. For any system of particles (including both rigid and nonrigid bodies), the rate of change of the *total* angular momentum equals the sum of the torques of all forces acting on all the particles. The torques of the *internal* forces add to zero if these forces act along the line from one particle to another, as in Fig. 10.8, and so the sum of the torques includes only the torques of the *external* forces. (We saw a similar cancellation in our discussion of center-of-mass motion in Section 8.5.) So we conclude that

For a system of particles:

$$\sum\vec{\tau} = \frac{d\vec{L}} \tag{10.29}$$

($\sum\vec{\tau}$: Sum of external torques on the system; $\vec{L}$: Rate of change of total angular momentum of system)

Finally, if the system of particles is a rigid body rotating about a symmetry axis (the z-axis), then $L_z = I\omega_z$ and I is constant. If this axis has a fixed direction in space, then vectors $\vec{L}$ and $\vec{\omega}$ change only in magnitude, not in direction. In that case, $dL_z/dt = I\,d\omega_z/dt = I\alpha_z$, or

$$\sum\tau_z = I\alpha_z$$

Figure **10.24** Calculating the angular momentum of a particle of mass m_i in a rigid body rotating at angular speed ω. (Compare Fig. 10.23.)

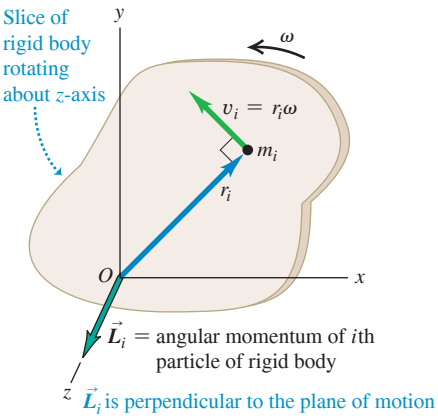


Figure **10.25** Two particles of the same mass located symmetrically on either side of the rotation axis of a rigid body. The angular momentum vectors $\vec{L}_1$ and $\vec{L}_2$ of the two particles do not lie along the rotation axis, but their vector sum $\vec{L}_1 + \vec{L}_2$ does.

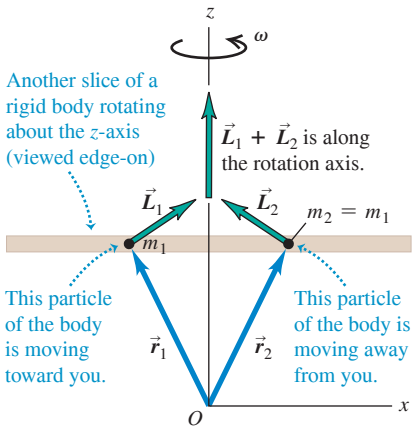


Figure **10.26** For rotation about an axis of symmetry, $\vec{\omega}$ and $\vec{L}$ are parallel and along the axis. The directions of both vectors are given by the right-hand rule (compare Fig. 9.5).

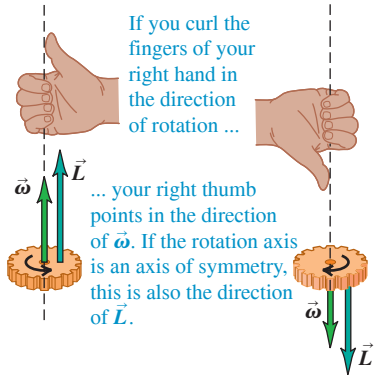
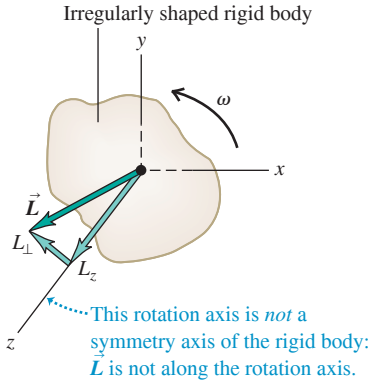


Figure 10.27 If the rotation axis of a rigid body is not a symmetry axis, $\vec{L}$ does not in general lie along the rotation axis. Even if $\vec{\omega}$ is constant, the direction of $\vec{L}$ changes and a net torque is required to maintain rotation.



which is again our basic relationship for the dynamics of rigid-body rotation. If the body is *not* rigid, I may change; in that case, L changes even when ω is constant. For a nonrigid body, Eq. (10.29) is still valid, even though Eq. (10.7) is not.

When the axis of rotation is *not* a symmetry axis, the angular momentum is in general *not* parallel to the axis (**Fig. 10.27**). As the rigid body rotates, the angular momentum vector $\vec{L}$ traces out a cone around the rotation axis. Because $\vec{L}$ changes, there must be a net external torque acting on the body even though the angular velocity magnitude ω may be constant. If the body is an unbalanced wheel on a car, this torque is provided by friction in the bearings, which causes the bearings to wear out. "Balancing" a wheel means distributing the mass so that the rotation axis is an axis of symmetry; then $\vec{L}$ points along the rotation axis, and no net torque is required to keep the wheel turning.

In fixed-axis rotation we often use the term "angular momentum of the body" to refer to only the *component* of $\vec{L}$ along the rotation axis of the body (the z-axis in Fig. 10.27), with a positive or negative sign to indicate the sense of rotation just as with angular velocity.

EXAMPLE 10.9 Angular momentum and torque

A turbine fan in a jet engine has a moment of inertia of 2.5 kg · m^2 about its axis of rotation. As the turbine starts up, its angular velocity is given by $\omega_z = (40\ \text{rad/s}^3)t^2$. (a) Find the fan's angular momentum as a function of time, and find its value at $t = 3.0$ s. (b) Find the net torque on the fan as a function of time, and find its value at $t = 3.0$ s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The fan rotates about its axis of symmetry (the z-axis). Hence the angular momentum vector has only a z-component L_z, which we can determine from the angular velocity ω_z. Since the direction of angular momentum is constant, the net torque likewise has only a component τ_z along the rotation axis. We'll use Eq. (10.28) to find L_z from ω_z and then Eq. (10.29) to find τ_z.

EXECUTE (a) From Eq. (10.28),

$$L_z = I\omega_z = (2.5\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(40\ \text{rad/s}^3)t^2$$
$$= (100\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^3)t^2$$

(We dropped the dimensionless quantity "rad" from the final expression.) At $t = 3.0$ s, $L_z = 900\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}$.

(b) From Eq. (10.29),

$$\tau_z = \frac{dL_z}{dt} = (100\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^3)(2t) = (200\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^3)t$$

At $t = 3.0$ s,

$$\tau_z = (200\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^3)(3.0\ \text{s})$$
$$= 600\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 600\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$$

EVALUATE As a check on our expression for τ_z, note that the angular acceleration of the turbine is $\alpha_z = d\omega_z/dt = (40\ \text{rad/s}^3)(2t) = (80\ \text{rad/s}^3)t$. Hence from Eq. (10.7), the torque on the fan is $\tau_z = I\alpha_z = (2.5\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(80\ \text{rad/s}^3)t = (200\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^3)t$, just as we calculated.

KEYCONCEPT The angular momentum vector of a rotating rigid body points along the rigid body's rotation axis. The rate of change of angular momentum equals the net external torque on the rigid body.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.5 A ball is attached to one end of a piece of string. You hold the other end of the string and whirl the ball in a circle around your hand. (a) If the ball moves at a constant speed, is its linear momentum $\vec{p}$ constant? Why or why not? (b) Is its angular momentum $\vec{L}$ constant? Why or why not?

ANSWER (a) **no,** (b) **yes** As the ball goes around the circle, the magnitude of $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$ remains the same (the speed is constant) but its direction changes, so the linear momentum vector isn't constant. But $\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p}$ *is* constant: It has a constant magnitude (both the speed and the perpendicular distance from your hand to the ball are constant) and a constant direction (along the rotation axis, perpendicular to the plane of the ball's motion). The linear momentum changes because there is a net *force* $\vec{F}$ on the ball (toward the center of the circle). The angular momentum remains constant because there is no net *torque*; the vector $\vec{r}$ points from your hand to the ball and the force $\vec{F}$ on the ball is directed toward your hand, so the vector product $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ is zero.

10.6 CONSERVATION OF ANGULAR MOMENTUM

We have just seen that angular momentum can be used for an alternative statement of the basic dynamic principle for rotational motion. It also forms the basis for the principle of **conservation of angular momentum.** Like conservation of energy and of linear momentum, this principle is a universal conservation law, valid at all scales from atomic and nuclear systems to the motions of galaxies. This principle follows directly from Eq. (10.29): $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}} = d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}/dt$. If $\sum\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}} = \mathbf{0}$, then $d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}/dt = \mathbf{0}$, and $\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}$ is constant.

CONSERVATION OF ANGULAR MOMENTUM **When the net external torque acting on a system is zero, the total angular momentum of the system is constant (conserved).**

A circus acrobat, a diver, and an ice skater pirouetting on one skate all take advantage of this principle. Suppose an acrobat has just left a swing; she has her arms and legs extended and is rotating counterclockwise about her center of mass. When she pulls her arms and legs in, her moment of inertia I_{cm} with respect to her center of mass changes from a large value I_1 to a much smaller value I_2. The only external force acting on her is her weight, which has no torque with respect to an axis through her center of mass. So her angular momentum $L_z = I_{\text{cm}}\omega_z$ remains constant, and her angular velocity ω_z increases as I_{cm} decreases. That is,

$$I_1\omega_{1z} = I_2\omega_{2z} \quad \text{(zero net external torque)} \tag{10.30}$$

When a skater or ballerina spins with arms outstretched and then pulls her arms in, her angular velocity increases as her moment of inertia decreases. In each case there is conservation of angular momentum in a system in which the net external torque is zero.

When a system has several parts, the internal forces that the parts exert on one another cause changes in the angular momenta of the parts, but the *total* angular momentum doesn't change. Here's an example. Consider two objects A and B that interact with each other but not with anything else, such as the astronauts we discussed in Section 8.2 (see Fig. 8.9). Suppose object A exerts a force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_{A\text{ on }B}$ on object B; the corresponding torque (with respect to whatever point we choose) is $\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}_{A\text{ on }B}$. According to Eq. (10.29), this torque is equal to the rate of change of angular momentum of B:

$$\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}_{A\text{ on }B} = \frac{d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}_B}{dt}$$

At the same time, object B exerts a force $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_{B\text{ on }A}$ on object A, with a corresponding torque $\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}_{B\text{ on }A}$, and

$$\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}_{B\text{ on }A} = \frac{d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}_A}{dt}$$

From Newton's third law, $\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_{B\text{ on }A} = -\vec{\boldsymbol{F}}_{A\text{ on }B}$. Furthermore, if the forces act along the same line, as in Fig. 10.8, their lever arms with respect to the chosen axis are equal. Thus the *torques* of these two forces are equal and opposite, and $\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}_{B\text{ on }A} = -\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}_{A\text{ on }B}$. So if we add the two preceding equations, we find

$$\frac{d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}_A}{dt} + \frac{d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}_B}{dt} = \mathbf{0}$$

or, because $\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}_A + \vec{\boldsymbol{L}}_B$ is the *total* angular momentum $\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}$ of the system,

$$\frac{d\vec{\boldsymbol{L}}}{dt} = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{(zero net external torque)} \tag{10.31}$$

That is, the total angular momentum of the system is constant. The torques of the internal forces can transfer angular momentum from one object to the other, but they can't change the *total* angular momentum of the system (**Fig. 10.28**).

Figure **10.28** A falling cat twists different parts of its body in different directions so that it lands feet first. At all times during this process the angular momentum of the cat as a whole remains zero.

EXAMPLE 10.10 Anyone can be a ballerina

A physics professor stands at the center of a frictionless turntable with arms outstretched and a 5.0 kg dumbbell in each hand (**Fig. 10.29**). He is set rotating about the vertical axis, making one revolution in 2.0 s. Find his final angular velocity if he pulls the dumbbells inward to his stomach. His moment of inertia (without the dumbbells) is 3.0 kg · m^2 with arms outstretched and 2.2 kg · m^2 with his hands at his stomach. The dumbbells are 1.0 m from the axis initially and 0.20 m at the end.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE No external torques act about the z-axis, so L_z is constant. We'll use Eq. (10.30) to find the final angular velocity ω_{2z}. The moment of inertia of the system is $I = I_{\text{prof}} + I_{\text{dumbbells}}$. We treat each dumbbell as a particle of mass m that contributes mr^2 to $I_{\text{dumbbells}}$, where r is the perpendicular distance from the axis to the dumbbell. Initially we have

$$I_1 = 3.0\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 + 2(5.0\ \text{kg})(1.0\ \text{m})^2 = 13\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$$

$$\omega_{1z} = \frac{1\ \text{rev}}{2.0\ \text{s}} = 0.50\ \text{rev/s}$$

The final moment of inertia is

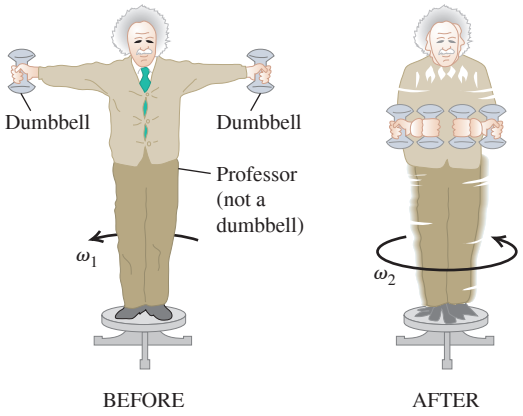
$$I_2 = 2.2\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 + 2(5.0\ \text{kg})(0.20\ \text{m})^2 = 2.6\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$$

From Eq. (10.30), the final angular velocity is

$$\omega_{2z} = \frac{I_1}{I_2}\omega_{1z} = \frac{13\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{2.6\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}(0.50\ \text{rev/s}) = 2.5\ \text{rev/s} = 5\omega_{1z}$$

Can you see why we didn't have to change "revolutions" to "radians" in this calculation?

Figure 10.29 Fun with conservation of angular momentum.



EVALUATE The angular momentum remained constant, but the angular velocity increased by a factor of 5, from $\omega_{1z} = (0.50\ \text{rev/s}) \times (2\pi\ \text{rad/rev}) = 3.14\ \text{rad/s}$ to $\omega_{2z} = (2.5\ \text{rev/s})(2\pi\ \text{rad/rev}) = 15.7\ \text{rad/s}$. The initial and final kinetic energies are then

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}I_1\omega_{1z}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(13\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2)(3.14\ \text{rad/s})^2 = 64\ \text{J}$$

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}I_2\omega_{2z}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(2.6\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2)(15.7\ \text{rad/s})^2 = 320\ \text{J}$$

The fivefold increase in kinetic energy came from the work that the professor did in pulling his arms and the dumbbells inward.

KEYCONCEPT If there is zero net external torque on a rigid body, its angular momentum is conserved. If the body changes shape so that its moment of inertia changes, its angular velocity changes to keep the angular momentum constant.

EXAMPLE 10.11 A rotational "collision"

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

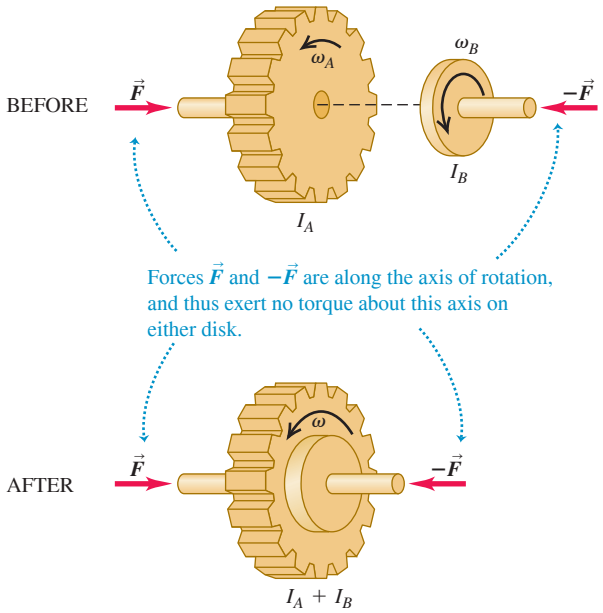
Figure 10.30 shows two disks: an engine flywheel (A) and a clutch plate (B) attached to a transmission shaft. Their moments of inertia are I_A and I_B; initially, they are rotating in the same direction with constant angular speeds ω_A and ω_B, respectively. We push the disks together with forces acting along the axis, so as not to apply any torque on either disk. The disks rub against each other and eventually reach a common angular speed ω. Derive an expression for ω.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE There are no external torques, so the only torque acting on either disk is the torque applied by the other disk. Hence the total angular momentum of the system of two disks is conserved. At the end they rotate together as one object with total moment of inertia $I = I_A + I_B$ and angular speed ω. Figure 10.30 shows that all angular velocities are in the same direction, so we can regard ω_A, ω_B, and ω as components of angular velocity along the rotation axis. Conservation of angular momentum gives

$$I_A\omega_A + I_B\omega_B = (I_A + I_B)\omega$$

$$\omega = \frac{I_A\omega_A + I_B\omega_B}{I_A + I_B}$$

Figure 10.30 When the net external torque is zero, angular momentum is conserved.



EVALUATE This "collision" is analogous to a completely inelastic collision (see Section 8.3). When two objects in translational motion along the

same axis collide and stick, the linear momentum of the system is conserved. Here two objects in *rotational* motion around the same axis "collide" and stick, and the *angular* momentum of the system is conserved.

The kinetic energy of a system decreases in a completely inelastic collision. Here kinetic energy is lost because nonconservative (friction) internal forces act while the two disks rub together. Suppose flywheel *A* has a mass of 2.0 kg, a radius of 0.20 m, and an initial angular speed of 50 rad/s (about 500 rpm), and clutch plate *B* has a mass of 4.0 kg, a radius of 0.10 m, and an initial angular speed of 200 rad/s. Can you show that the final kinetic energy is only two-thirds of the initial kinetic energy?

KEYCONCEPT In processes that conserve angular momentum, the kinetic energy can change if nonconservative forces act.

EXAMPLE 10.12 Angular momentum in a crime bust

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

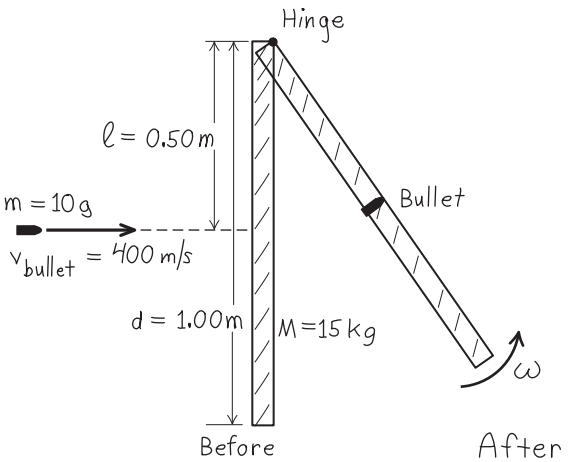
A door 1.00 m wide, of mass 15 kg, can rotate freely about a vertical axis through its hinges. A bullet with a mass of 10 g and a speed of 400 m/s strikes the center of the door, in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door, and embeds itself there. Find the door's angular speed. Is kinetic energy conserved?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We consider the door and bullet as a system. There is no external torque about the hinge axis, so angular momentum about this axis is conserved. **Figure 10.31** shows our sketch. The initial angular momentum is that of the bullet, as given by Eq. (10.25). The final angular momentum is that of a rigid body composed of the door and the embedded bullet. We'll equate these quantities and solve for the resulting angular speed ω of the door and bullet.

EXECUTE From Eq. (10.25), the initial angular momentum of the bullet is

$$L = mvl = (0.010\text{ kg})(400\text{ m/s})(0.50\text{ m}) = 2.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}$$

Figure 10.31 The swinging door seen from above.



The final angular momentum is $I\omega$, where $I = I_{\text{door}} + I_{\text{bullet}}$. From Table 9.2, case (d), for a door of width $d = 1.00$ m,

$$I_{\text{door}} = \frac{Md^2}{3} = \frac{(15\text{ kg})(1.00\text{ m})^2}{3} = 5.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

The moment of inertia of the bullet (with respect to the axis along the hinges) is

$$I_{\text{bullet}} = ml^2 = (0.010\text{ kg})(0.50\text{ m})^2 = 0.0025\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

Conservation of angular momentum requires that $mvl = I\omega$, or

$$\omega = \frac{mvl}{I} = \frac{2.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}}{5.0\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2 + 0.0025\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2} = 0.40\text{ rad/s}$$

The initial and final kinetic energies are

$$K_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.010\text{ kg})(400\text{ m/s})^2 = 800\text{ J}$$

$$K_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(5.0025\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(0.40\text{ rad/s})^2 = 0.40\text{ J}$$

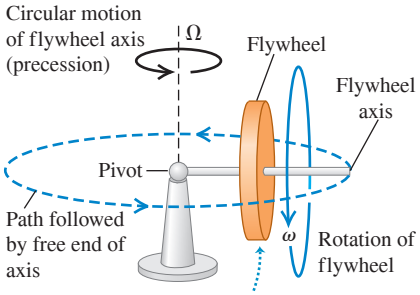
EVALUATE The final kinetic energy is only $\frac{1}{2000}$ of the initial value! We did not expect kinetic energy to be conserved: The collision is inelastic because nonconservative friction forces act during the impact. The door's final angular speed is quite slow: At 0.40 rad/s, it takes 3.9 s to swing through 90° ($\pi/2$ radians).

KEYCONCEPT The total angular momentum of a system that includes a rigid body and a particle is the sum of the angular momenta for the rigid body and for the particle. You can find the magnitude of the angular momentum of a particle about a rotation axis by multiplying the magnitude of its linear momentum by the perpendicular distance from the axis to the line of the particle's velocity.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.6 If the polar ice caps were to melt completely due to global warming, the melted ice would redistribute itself over the earth. This change would cause the length of the day (the time needed for the earth to rotate once on its axis) to (i) increase; (ii) decrease; (iii) remain the same. (*Hint:* Use angular momentum ideas. Assume that the sun, moon, and planets exert negligibly small torques on the earth.)

ANSWER (i) In the absence of external torques, the earth's angular momentum $L_z = I\omega_z$ would remain constant. The melted ice would move from the poles toward the equator—that is, away from our planet's rotation axis—and the earth's moment of inertia I would increase slightly. Hence the angular velocity ω_z would decrease slightly and the day would be slightly longer.

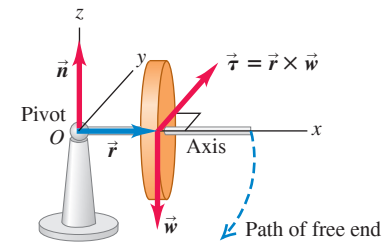
Figure **10.32** A gyroscope supported at one end. The horizontal circular motion of the flywheel and axis is called precession. The angular speed of precession is Ω.



When the flywheel and its axis are stationary, they will fall to the table surface. When the flywheel spins, it and its axis "float" in the air while moving in a circle about the pivot.

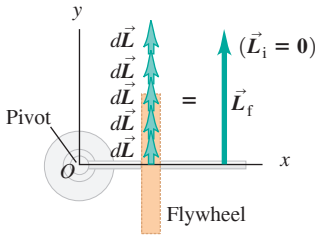
Figure **10.33** (a) If the flywheel in Fig. 10.32 is initially not spinning, its initial angular momentum is zero. (b) In each successive time interval dt, the torque produces a change $d\vec{L} = \vec{\tau}\,dt$ in the angular momentum. The flywheel acquires an angular momentum $\vec{L}$ in the same direction as $\vec{\tau}$, and the flywheel axis falls.

(a) Nonrotating flywheel falls



When the flywheel is not rotating, its weight creates a torque around the pivot, causing it to fall along a circular path until its axis rests on the table surface.

(b) View from above as flywheel falls



In falling, the flywheel rotates about the pivot and thus acquires an angular momentum $\vec{L}$. The *direction* of $\vec{L}$ stays constant.

10.7 GYROSCOPES AND PRECESSION

In all the situations we've looked at so far in this chapter, the axis of rotation either has stayed fixed or has moved and kept the same direction (such as rolling without slipping). But a variety of new physical phenomena, some quite unexpected, can occur when the axis of rotation changes direction. For example, consider a toy gyroscope that's supported at one end (**Fig. 10.32**). If we hold it with the flywheel axis horizontal and let go, the free end of the axis simply drops owing to gravity—*if* the flywheel isn't spinning. But if the flywheel *is* spinning, what happens is quite different. One possible motion is a steady circular motion of the axis in a horizontal plane, combined with the spin motion of the flywheel about the axis. This surprising, nonintuitive motion of the axis is called **precession.** Precession is found in nature as well as in rotating machines such as gyroscopes. As you read these words, the earth itself is precessing; its spin axis (through the north and south poles) slowly changes direction, going through a complete cycle of precession every 26,000 years.

To study this strange phenomenon of precession, we must remember that angular velocity, angular momentum, and torque are all *vector* quantities. In particular, we need the general relationship between the net torque $\Sigma\vec{\tau}$ that acts on an object and the rate of change of the object's angular momentum $\vec{L}$, given by Eq. (10.29), $\Sigma\vec{\tau} = d\vec{L}/dt$. Let's first apply this equation to the case in which the flywheel is *not* spinning (**Fig. 10.33a**). We take the origin O at the pivot and assume that the flywheel is symmetrical, with mass M and moment of inertia I about the flywheel axis. The flywheel axis is initially along the x-axis. The only external forces on the gyroscope are the normal force $\vec{n}$ acting at the pivot (assumed to be frictionless) and the weight $\vec{w}$ of the flywheel that acts at its center of mass, a distance r from the pivot. The normal force has zero torque with respect to the pivot, and the weight has a torque $\vec{\tau}$ in the y-direction, as shown in Fig. 10.33a. Initially, there is no rotation, and the initial angular momentum $\vec{L}_i$ is zero. From Eq. (10.29) the *change* $d\vec{L}$ in angular momentum in a short time interval dt following this is

$$d\vec{L} = \vec{\tau}\,dt \tag{10.32}$$

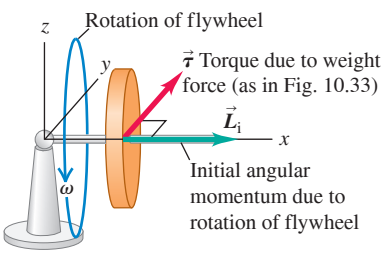
This change is in the y-direction because $\vec{\tau}$ is. As each additional time interval dt elapses, the angular momentum changes by additional increments $d\vec{L}$ in the y-direction because the direction of the torque is constant (Fig. 10.33b). The steadily increasing horizontal angular momentum means that the gyroscope rotates downward faster and faster around the y-axis until it hits either the stand or the table on which it sits.

Now let's see what happens if the flywheel *is* spinning initially, so the initial angular momentum $\vec{L}_i$ is not zero (**Fig. 10.34a**). Since the flywheel rotates around its symmetry axis, $\vec{L}_i$ lies along this axis. But each change in angular momentum $d\vec{L}$ is perpendicular to the flywheel axis because the torque $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{w}$ is perpendicular to that axis (Fig. 10.34b).

Figure **10.34** (a) The flywheel is spinning initially with angular momentum $\vec{L}_i$. The forces (not shown) are the same as those in Fig. 10.33a. (b) Because the initial angular momentum is not zero, each change $d\vec{L} = \vec{\tau}\,dt$ in angular momentum is perpendicular to $\vec{L}$. As a result, the magnitude of $\vec{L}$ remains the same but its direction changes continuously.

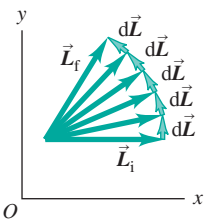
(a) Rotating flywheel

When the flywheel is rotating, the system starts with an angular momentum $\vec{L}_i$ parallel to the flywheel's axis of rotation.



(b) View from above

Now the effect of the torque is to cause the angular momentum to precess around the pivot. The gyroscope circles around its pivot without falling.



This causes the *direction* of $\vec{L}$ to change, but not its magnitude. The changes $d\vec{L}$ are always in the horizontal xy-plane, so the angular momentum vector and the flywheel axis with which it moves are always horizontal. That is, the axis doesn't fall—it precesses.

If this still seems mystifying to you, think about a ball attached to a string. If the ball is initially at rest and you pull the string toward you, the ball moves toward you also. But if the ball is initially moving and you continuously pull the string in a direction perpendicular to the ball's motion, the ball moves in a circle around your hand; it does not approach your hand at all. In the first case the ball has zero linear momentum $\vec{p}$ to start with; when you apply a force $\vec{F}$ toward you for a time dt, the ball acquires a momentum $d\vec{p} = \vec{F}\,dt$, which is also toward you. But if the ball already has linear momentum $\vec{p}$, a change in momentum $d\vec{p}$ that's perpendicular to $\vec{p}$ changes the direction of motion, not the speed. Replace $\vec{p}$ with $\vec{L}$ and $\vec{F}$ with $\vec{\tau}$ in this argument, and you'll see that precession is simply the rotational analog of uniform circular motion.

At the instant shown in Fig. 10.34a, the gyroscope has angular momentum $\vec{L}$. A short time interval dt later, the angular momentum is $\vec{L} + d\vec{L}$; the infinitesimal change in angular momentum is $d\vec{L} = \vec{\tau}\,dt$, which is perpendicular to $\vec{L}$. As the vector diagram in **Fig. 10.35** shows, this means that the flywheel axis of the gyroscope has turned through a small angle $d\phi$ given by $d\phi = |d\vec{L}|/|\vec{L}|$. The rate at which the axis moves, $d\phi/dt$, is called the **precession angular speed;** denoting this quantity by Ω, we find

$$\Omega = \frac{d\phi}{dt} = \frac{|d\vec{L}|/|\vec{L}|}{dt} = \frac{\tau_z}{L_z} = \frac{wr}{I\omega} \tag{10.33}$$

Thus the precession angular speed is *inversely* proportional to the angular speed of spin about the axis. A rapidly spinning gyroscope precesses slowly; if friction in its bearings causes the flywheel to slow down, the precession angular speed *increases*! The precession angular speed of the earth is very slow (1 rev/26,000 yr) because its spin angular momentum L_z is large and the torque τ_z, due to the gravitational influences of the moon and sun, is relatively small.

As a gyroscope precesses, its center of mass moves in a circle with radius r in a horizontal plane. Its vertical component of acceleration is zero, so the upward normal force $\vec{n}$ exerted by the pivot must be just equal in magnitude to the weight. The circular motion of the center of mass with angular speed Ω requires a force $\vec{F}$ directed toward the center of the circle, with magnitude $F = M\Omega^2 r$. This force must also be supplied by the pivot.

One key assumption that we made in our analysis of the gyroscope was that the angular momentum vector $\vec{L}$ is associated with only the spin of the flywheel and is purely horizontal. But there will also be a vertical component of angular momentum associated with the precessional motion of the gyroscope. By ignoring this, we've tacitly assumed that the precession is *slow*—that is, that the precession angular speed Ω is very much less than the spin angular speed ω. As Eq. (10.33) shows, a large value of ω automatically gives a small value of Ω, so this approximation is reasonable. When the precession is not slow, additional effects show up, including an up-and-down wobble or *nutation* of the flywheel axis that's superimposed on the precessional motion. You can see nutation occurring in a gyroscope as its spin slows down, so that Ω increases and the vertical component of $\vec{L}$ can no longer be ignored.

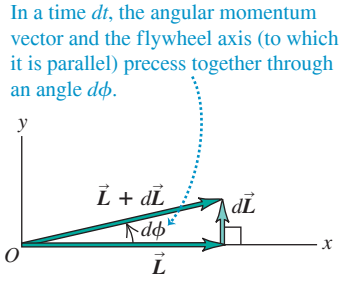


Figure **10.35** Detailed view of part of Fig. 10.34b.

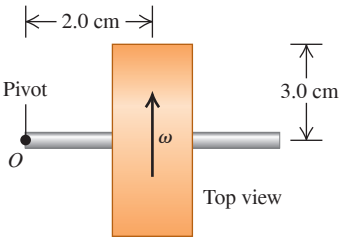
EXAMPLE 10.13 A precessing gyroscope

Figure 10.36a shows a top view of a spinning, cylindrical gyroscope wheel. The pivot is at O, and the mass of the axle is negligible. (a) As seen from above, is the precession clockwise or counterclockwise? (b) If the gyroscope takes 4.0 s for one revolution of precession, what is the angular speed of the wheel?

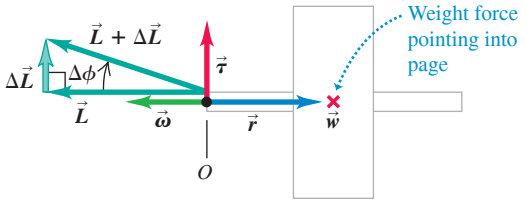
IDENTIFY and SET UP We'll determine the direction of precession by using the right-hand rule as in Fig. 10.34, which shows the same kind of gyroscope as Fig. 10.36. We'll use the relationship between precession angular speed Ω and spin angular speed ω, Eq. (10.33), to find ω.

Figure **10.36** In which direction and at what speed does this gyroscope precess?

(a) Top view



(b) Vector diagram



EXECUTE (a) The right-hand rule shows that $\vec{\omega}$ and $\vec{L}$ are to the left in Fig. 10.36b. The weight $\vec{w}$ points into the page in this top view and acts at the center of mass (denoted by $\times$ in the figure). The torque $\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{w}$ is toward the top of the page, so $d\vec{L}/dt$ is also toward the top of the page. Adding a small $d\vec{L}$ to the initial vector $\vec{L}$ changes the direction of $\vec{L}$ as shown, so the precession is clockwise as seen from above.

(b) Be careful not to confuse ω and Ω! The precession angular speed is $\Omega = (1 \text{ rev})/(4.0 \text{ s}) = (2\pi \text{ rad})/(4.0 \text{ s}) = 1.57 \text{ rad/s}$. The weight is mg, and if the wheel is a solid, uniform cylinder, its moment of inertia about its symmetry axis is $I = \frac{1}{2}mR^2$. From Eq. (10.33),

$$\omega = \frac{wr}{I\Omega} = \frac{mgr}{(mR^2/2)\Omega} = \frac{2gr}{R^2\Omega}$$

$$= \frac{2(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(2.0 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m})}{(3.0 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m})^2 (1.57 \text{ rad/s})}$$

$$= 280 \text{ rad/s} = 2600 \text{ rev/min}$$

EVALUATE The precession angular speed Ω is only about 0.6% of the spin angular speed ω, so this is an example of slow precession.

KEYCONCEPT A spinning rigid body will precess if the net external torque on the rigid body is perpendicular to the body's angular momentum vector.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 10.7 Suppose the mass of the flywheel in Fig. 10.34 is doubled but all other dimensions and the spin angular speed remain the same. What effect would this change have on the precession angular speed Ω? (i) Ω would increase by a factor of 4; (ii) Ω would double; (iii) Ω would be unaffected; (iv) Ω would be one-half as much; (v) Ω would be one-quarter as much.

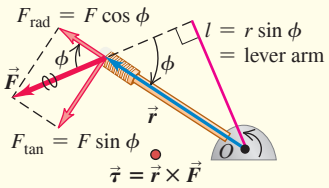
ANSWER **(iii)** Doubling the flywheel mass would double both its moment of inertia I and its weight w, so the ratio I/w would be unchanged. Equation (10.33) shows that the precession angular speed depends on this ratio, so there would be *no* effect on the value of Ω.

CHAPTER 10 SUMMARY

Torque: When a force $\vec{F}$ acts on an object, the torque of that force with respect to a point O has a magnitude given by the product of the force magnitude F and the lever arm l. More generally, torque is a vector $\vec{\tau}$ equal to the vector product of $\vec{r}$ (the position vector of the point at which the force acts) and $\vec{F}$. (See Example 10.1.)

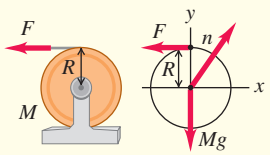
$$\tau = Fl = rF\sin\phi = F_{\text{tan}}r \quad (10.2)$$

$$\vec{\tau} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F} \quad (10.3)$$



Rotational dynamics: The rotational analog of Newton's second law says that the net torque acting on an object equals the product of the object's moment of inertia and its angular acceleration. (See Examples 10.2 and 10.3.)

$$\Sigma\tau_z = I\alpha_z \quad (10.7)$$



Combined translation and rotation: If a rigid body is both moving through space and rotating, its motion can be regarded as translational motion of the center of mass plus rotational motion about an axis through the center of mass. Thus the kinetic energy is a sum of translational and rotational kinetic energies. For dynamics, Newton's second law describes the motion of the center of mass, and the rotational equivalent of Newton's second law describes rotation about the center of mass. In the case of rolling without slipping, there is a special relationship between the motion of the center of mass and the rotational motion. (See Examples 10.4–10.7.)

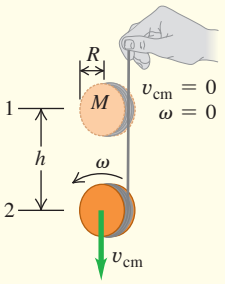
$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{\text{cm}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}I_{\text{cm}}\omega^2 \quad (10.8)$$

$$\Sigma\vec{F}_{\text{ext}} = M\vec{a}_{\text{cm}} \quad (10.12)$$

$$\Sigma\tau_z = I_{\text{cm}}\alpha_z \quad (10.13)$$

$$v_{\text{cm}} = R\omega \quad (10.11)$$

(rolling without slipping)



Work done by a torque: A torque that acts on a rigid body as it rotates does work on that body. The work can be expressed as an integral of the torque. The work–energy theorem says that the total rotational work done on a rigid body is equal to the change in rotational kinetic energy. The power, or rate at which the torque does work, is the product of the torque and the angular velocity (See Example 10.8.)

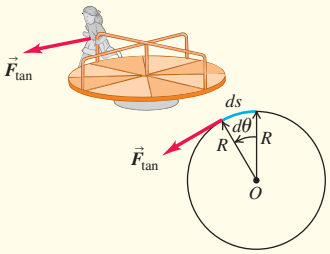
$$W = \int_{\theta_1}^{\theta_2} \tau_z\, d\theta \quad (10.20)$$

$$W = \tau_z(\theta_2 - \theta_1) = \tau_z\Delta\theta \quad (10.21)$$

(constant torque only)

$$W_{\text{tot}} = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_1^2 \quad (10.22)$$

$$P = \tau_z\omega_z \quad (10.23)$$



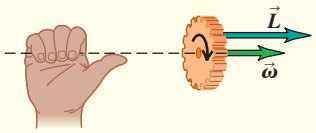
Angular momentum: The angular momentum of a particle with respect to point O is the vector product of the particle's position vector $\vec{r}$ relative to O and its momentum $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$. When a symmetrical object rotates about a stationary axis of symmetry, its angular momentum is the product of its moment of inertia and its angular velocity vector $\vec{\omega}$. If the object is not symmetrical or the rotation (z) axis is not an axis of symmetry, the component of angular momentum along the rotation axis is $I\omega_z$. (See Example 10.9.)

$$\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p} = \vec{r} \times m\vec{v} \quad (10.24)$$

(particle)

$$\vec{L} = I\vec{\omega} \quad (10.28)$$

(rigid body rotating about axis of symmetry)

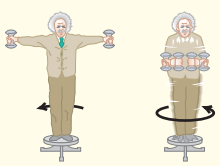


Rotational dynamics and angular momentum: The net external torque on a system is equal to the rate of change of its angular momentum. If the net external torque on a system is zero, the total angular momentum of the system is constant (conserved). (See Examples 10.10–10.13.)

$$\Sigma\vec{\tau} = \frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} \quad (10.29)$$

$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = 0 \quad (10.31)$$

(zero net external torque)



Chapter 10 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE VARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 10.2 and 10.3 (Section 10.2) before attempting these problems.

VP10.3.1 In the cylinder and cable apparatus of Example 10.2, you apply a force to the cable so that a point on the horizontal part of the cable accelerates to the left at 0.60 m/s^2. What are the magnitudes of (a) the angular acceleration of the cylinder, (b) the torque that the cable exerts on the cylinder, and (c) the force that you exert on the cable?

VP10.3.2 In the cylinder, cable, and block apparatus of Example 10.3, you replace the solid cylinder with a thin-walled, hollow cylinder of mass M and radius R. Find (a) the acceleration of the falling block and (b) the tension in the cable as the block falls.

VP10.3.3 A bucket of mass m is hanging from the free end of a rope whose other end is wrapped around a drum (radius R, mass M) that can rotate with negligible friction about a stationary horizontal axis. The drum is not a uniform cylinder and has unknown moment of inertia. When you release the bucket from rest, you find that it has a downward acceleration of magnitude a. What are (a) the tension in the cable between the drum and the bucket and (b) the moment of inertia of the drum about its rotation axis?

VP10.3.4 In the cylinder, cable, and block apparatus of Example 10.3, you attach an electric motor to the axis of the cylinder of mass M and radius R and turn the motor on. As a result the block of mass m moves upward with an upward acceleration of magnitude a. What are (a) the tension in the cable between the cylinder and the block, (b) the magnitude of the torque that the cable exerts on the cylinder, and (c) the magnitude of the torque that the motor exerts on the cylinder?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 10.6 and 10.7 (Section 10.3) before attempting these problems.

VP10.7.1 In the primitive yo-yo apparatus of Example 10.6, you replace the solid cylinder with a hollow cylinder of mass M, outer radius R, and inner radius $R/2$. Find (a) the downward acceleration of the hollow cylinder and (b) the tension in the string.

VP10.7.2 A thin-walled, hollow sphere of mass M rolls without slipping down a ramp that is inclined at an angle β to the horizontal. Find (a) the acceleration of the sphere, (b) the magnitude of the friction force that the ramp exerts on the sphere, and (c) the magnitude of the torque that this force exerts on the sphere.

VP10.7.3 You redo the primitive yo-yo experiment of Example 10.6, but instead of holding the free end of the string stationary, you move your hand vertically so that the tension in the string equals $2Mg/3$. (a) What is the magnitude of the vertical acceleration of the yo-yo's center of mass? Does it accelerate upward or downward? (b) What is the angular acceleration of the yo-yo around its axis?

VP10.7.4 You place a solid cylinder of mass M on a ramp that is inclined at an angle β to the horizontal. The coefficient of static friction for the cylinder on the ramp is μ_s. (a) If the cylinder rolls downhill without slipping, what is the magnitude of the friction force that the ramp exerts on the cylinder? (b) You find by varying the angle of the ramp that the cylinder rolls without slipping if β is less than a certain critical value but the cylinder slips if β is greater than this critical value. What is this critical value of β?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 10.11 and 10.12 (Section 10.6) before attempting these problems.

VP10.12.1 In the situation shown in Example 10.11, suppose disk A has moment of inertia I_A and initial angular speed ω_A, while disk B has moment of inertia $I_A/4$ and initial angular speed $\omega_A/2$. Initially disks A and B are rotating in the *same* direction. (a) What is the final common angular speed of the two disks? (b) What fraction of the initial rotational kinetic energy remains as rotational kinetic energy after the disks have come to their final common angular speed?

VP10.12.2 In the situation shown in Example 10.11, suppose disk A has moment of inertia I_A and initial angular speed ω_A, while disk B has moment of inertia $I_A/4$ and initial angular speed $\omega_A/2$. Initially disks A and B are rotating in *opposite* directions. (a) What is the final common angular speed of the two disks? (b) What fraction of the initial rotational kinetic energy remains as rotational kinetic energy after the disks have come to their final common angular speed?

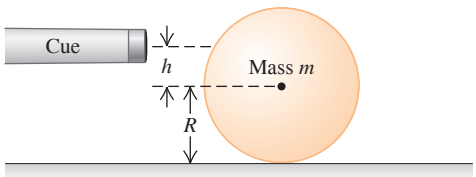
VP10.12.3 Suppose that instead of hitting the center of the door, the bullet in Example 10.12 strikes the door at the edge farthest away from the hinge and embeds itself there. (a) What is the angular speed of the door just after the bullet embeds itself? (b) What fraction of the initial kinetic energy of the bullet remains as kinetic energy after the collision?

VP10.12.4 A thin-walled, hollow sphere of mass M and radius R is free to rotate around a vertical shaft that passes through the center of the sphere. Initially the sphere is at rest. A small ball of clay of the same mass M moving horizontally at speed v grazes the surface of the sphere at its equator. After grazing the surface, the ball of clay is moving at speed $v/2$. (a) What is the angular momentum of the ball of clay about the shaft before it grazes the surface? After it grazes the surface? (b) What is the angular speed of the sphere after being grazed by the ball of clay? (c) What fraction of the ball of clay's initial kinetic energy remains as the combined kinetic energy of the sphere and the ball of clay?

BRIDGING PROBLEM Billiard Physics

A cue ball (a uniform solid sphere of mass m and radius R) is at rest on a level pool table. Using a pool cue, you give the ball a sharp, horizontal hit of magnitude F at a height h above the center of the ball (**Fig. 10.37**). The force of the hit is much greater than the friction force f that the table surface exerts on the ball. The hit lasts for a short time Δt. (a) For what value of h will the ball roll without slipping? (b) If you hit the ball dead center ($h = 0$), the ball will slide across the table for a while, but eventually it will roll without slipping. What will the speed of its center of mass be then?

Figure 10.37 Hitting a cue ball with a cue.



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Draw a free-body diagram for the ball for the situation in part (a), including your choice of coordinate axes. Note that the cue exerts both an impulsive force on the ball and an impulsive torque around the center of mass.
2. The cue force applied for a time Δt gives the ball's center of mass a speed v_{cm}, and the cue torque applied for that same time gives the ball an angular speed ω. How must v_{cm} and ω be related for the ball to roll without slipping?
3. Draw two free-body diagrams for the ball in part (b): one showing the forces during the hit and the other showing the forces after the hit but before the ball is rolling without slipping.
4. What is the angular speed of the ball in part (b) just after the hit? While the ball is sliding, does v_{cm} increase or decrease? Does ω increase or decrease? What is the relationship between v_{cm} and ω when the ball is finally rolling without slipping?

EXECUTE

5. In part (a), use the impulse–momentum theorem to find the speed of the ball's center of mass immediately after the hit. Then use the rotational version of the impulse–momentum theorem to find the angular speed immediately after the hit. (*Hint:* To write the rotational version of the impulse–momentum theorem, remember that the relationship between torque and angular momentum is the same as that between force and linear momentum.)
6. Use your results from step 5 to find the value of h that will cause the ball to roll without slipping immediately after the hit.
7. In part (b), again find the ball's center-of-mass speed and angular speed immediately after the hit. Then write Newton's second law for the translational motion and rotational motion of the ball as it slides. Use these equations to write expressions for v_{cm} and ω as functions of the elapsed time t since the hit.
8. Using your results from step 7, find the time t when v_{cm} and ω have the correct relationship for rolling without slipping. Then find the value of v_{cm} at this time.

EVALUATE

9. If you have access to a pool table, test the results of parts (a) and (b) for yourself!
10. Can you show that if you used a hollow cylinder rather than a solid ball, you would have to hit the top of the cylinder to cause rolling without slipping as in part (a)?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q10.1 Can a single force applied to an object change both its translational and rotational motions? Explain.

Q10.2 Suppose you could use wheels of any type in the design of a soapbox-derby racer (an unpowered, four-wheel vehicle that coasts from rest down a hill). To conform to the rules on the total weight of the vehicle and rider, should you design with large massive wheels or small light wheels? Should you use solid wheels or wheels with most of the mass at the rim? Explain.

Q10.3 Serious bicyclists say that if you reduce the weight of a bike, it is more effective if you do so in the wheels rather than in the frame. Why would reducing weight in the wheels make it easier on the bicyclist than reducing the same amount in the frame?

Q10.4 The harder you hit the brakes while driving forward, the more the front end of your car will move down (and the rear end move up). Why? What happens when cars accelerate forward? Why do drag racers not use front-wheel drive only?

Q10.5 When an acrobat walks on a tightrope, she extends her arms straight out from her sides. She does this to make it easier for her to catch herself if she should tip to one side or the other. Explain how this works. [*Hint:* Think about Eq. (10.7).]

Q10.6 When you turn on an electric motor, it takes longer to come up to final speed if a grinding wheel is attached to the shaft. Why?

Q10.7 The work done by a force is the product of force and distance. The torque due to a force is the product of force and distance. Does this mean that torque and work are equivalent? Explain.

Q10.8 A valued client brings a treasured ball to your engineering firm, wanting to know whether the ball is solid or hollow. He has tried tapping on it, but that has given insufficient information. Design a simple, inexpensive experiment that you could perform quickly, without injuring the precious ball, to find out whether it is solid or hollow.

Q10.9 You make two versions of the same object out of the same material having uniform density. For one version, all the dimensions are exactly twice as great as for the other one. If the same torque acts on both versions, giving the smaller version angular acceleration α, what will be the angular acceleration of the larger version in terms of α?

Q10.10 Two identical masses are attached to frictionless pulleys by very light strings wrapped around the rim of the pulley and are released from rest. Both pulleys have the same mass and same diameter, but one is solid and the other is a hoop. As the masses fall, in which case is the tension in the string greater, or is it the same in both cases? Justify your answer.

Q10.11 The force of gravity acts on the baton in Fig. 10.11, and forces produce torques that cause a body's angular velocity to change. Why, then, is the angular velocity of the baton in the figure constant?

Q10.12 Without slipping, a certain solid uniform ball rolls at speed v on a horizontal surface and then up a hill to a maximum height h_0. How does the maximum height change (in terms of h_0) if you make only the following changes: (a) double the ball's diameter, (b) double its mass, (c) double both its diameter and mass, (d) double its angular speed at the bottom of the hill?

Q10.13 A wheel is rolling without slipping on a horizontal surface. In an inertial frame of reference in which the surface is at rest, is there any point on the wheel that has a velocity that is purely vertical? Is there any point that has a horizontal velocity component opposite to the velocity of the center of mass? Explain. Do your answers change if the wheel is slipping as it rolls? Why or why not?

Q10.14 A hoop, a uniform solid cylinder, a spherical shell, and a uniform solid sphere are released from rest at the top of an incline. What is the order in which they arrive at the bottom of the incline? Does it matter whether or not the masses and radii of the objects are all the same? Explain.

Q10.15 A ball is rolling along at speed v without slipping on a horizontal surface when it comes to a hill that rises at a constant angle above the horizontal. In which case will it go higher up the hill: if the hill has enough friction to prevent slipping or if the hill is perfectly smooth? Justify your answer in both cases in terms of energy conservation and in terms of Newton's second law.

Q10.16 You are standing at the center of a large horizontal turntable in a fairground funhouse. The turntable is set rotating on frictionless bearings, and it rotates freely (that is, there is no motor driving the turntable). As you walk toward the edge of the turntable, what happens to the combined angular momentum of you and the turntable? What happens to the rotation speed of the turntable? Explain.

Q10.17 **Global Warming.** If the earth's climate continues to warm, ice near the poles will melt, and the water will be added to the oceans. What effect will this have on the length of the day? Justify your answer.

Q10.18 If two spinning objects have the same angular momentum, do they necessarily have the same rotational kinetic energy? If they have the same rotational kinetic energy, do they necessarily have the same angular momentum? Explain.

Q10.19 A student is sitting on a frictionless rotating stool with her arms outstretched as she holds equal heavy weights in each hand. If she suddenly lets go of the weights, will her angular speed increase, stay the same, or decrease? Explain.

Q10.20 A point particle travels in a straight line at constant speed, and the closest distance it comes to the origin of coordinates is a distance l. With respect to this origin, does the particle have nonzero angular momentum? As the particle moves along its straight-line path, does its angular momentum with respect to the origin change?

Q10.21 In Example 10.10 (Section 10.6) the angular speed ω changes, and this must mean that there is nonzero angular acceleration. But there is no torque about the rotation axis if the forces the professor applies to the weights are directly, radially inward. Then, by Eq. (10.7), α_z must be zero. Explain what is wrong with this reasoning that leads to this apparent contradiction.

Q10.22 In Example 10.10 (Section 10.6) the rotational kinetic energy of the professor and dumbbells increases. But since there are no external torques, no work is being done to change the rotational kinetic energy. Then, by Eq. (10.22), the kinetic energy must remain the same! Explain what is wrong with this reasoning, which leads to an apparent contradiction. Where *does* the extra kinetic energy come from?

Q10.23 As discussed in Section 10.6, the angular momentum of a circus acrobat is conserved as she tumbles through the air. Is her *linear* momentum conserved? Why or why not?

Q10.24 If you stop a spinning raw egg for the shortest possible instant and then release it, the egg will start spinning again. If you do the same to a hard-boiled egg, it will remain stopped. Try it. Explain it.

Q10.25 A helicopter has a large main rotor that rotates in a horizontal plane and provides lift. There is also a small rotor on the tail that rotates in a vertical plane. What is the purpose of the tail rotor? (*Hint:* If there were no tail rotor, what would happen when the pilot changed the angular speed of the main rotor?) Some helicopters have no tail rotor, but instead have two large main rotors that rotate in a horizontal plane. Why is it important that the two main rotors rotate in opposite directions?

Q10.26 In a common design for a gyroscope, the flywheel and flywheel axis are enclosed in a light, spherical frame with the flywheel at the center of the frame. The gyroscope is then balanced on top of a pivot so that the flywheel is directly above the pivot. Does the gyroscope precess if it is released while the flywheel is spinning? Explain.

Q10.27 A gyroscope is precessing about a vertical axis. What happens to the precession angular speed if the following changes are made, with all other variables remaining the same? (a) The angular speed of the spinning flywheel is doubled; (b) the total weight is doubled; (c) the moment of inertia about the axis of the spinning flywheel is doubled; (d) the distance from the pivot to the center of gravity is doubled. (e) What happens if all of the variables in parts (a) through (d) are doubled? In each case justify your answer.

Q10.28 A gyroscope takes 3.8 s to precess 1.0 revolution about a vertical axis. Two minutes later, it takes only 1.9 s to precess 1.0 revolution. No one has touched the gyroscope. Explain.

Q10.29 A gyroscope is precessing as in Fig. 10.32. What happens if you gently add some weight to the end of the flywheel axis farthest from the pivot?

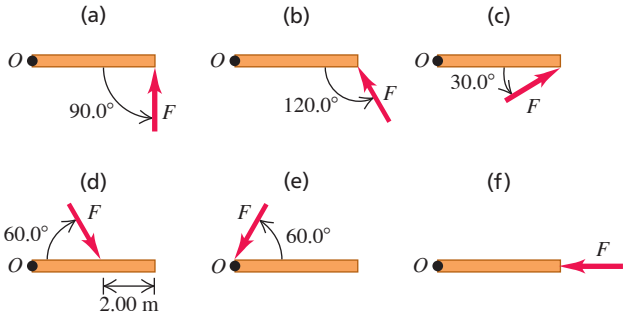
Q10.30 A bullet spins on its axis as it emerges from a rifle. Explain how this prevents the bullet from tumbling and keeps the streamlined end pointed forward.

EXERCISES

Section 10.1 Torque

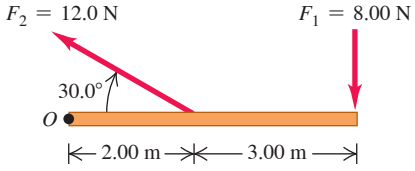
10.1 • Calculate the torque (magnitude and direction) about point O due to the force $\vec{F}$ in each of the cases sketched in **Fig. E10.1.** In each case, both the force $\vec{F}$ and the rod lie in the plane of the page, the rod has length 4.00 m, and the force has magnitude $F = 15.0$ N.

Figure **E10.1**



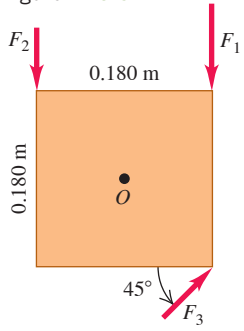
10.2 • Calculate the net torque about point O for the two forces applied as in **Fig. E10.2**. The rod and both forces are in the plane of the page.

Figure **E10.2**



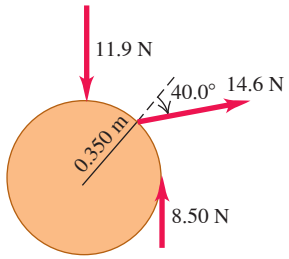
10.3 •• A square metal plate 0.180 m on each side is pivoted about an axis through point O at its center and perpendicular to the plate (**Fig. E10.3**). Calculate the net torque about this axis due to the three forces shown in the figure if the magnitudes of the forces are $F_1 = 24.0$ N, $F_2 = 15.8$ N, and $F_3 = 15.5$ N. The plate and all forces are in the plane of the page.

Figure **E10.3**



10.4 • Three forces are applied to a wheel of radius 0.350 m, as shown in **Fig. E10.4**. One force is perpendicular to the rim, one is tangent to it, and the other one makes a 40.0° angle with the radius. What is the net torque on the wheel due to these three forces for an axis perpendicular to the wheel and passing through its center?

Figure **E10.4**

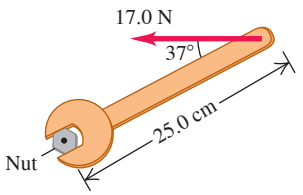


10.5 • One force acting on a machine part is $\vec{F} = (-5.00\text{ N})\hat{\imath} + (4.00\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$. The vector from the origin to the point where the force is applied is $\vec{r} = (-0.450\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (0.150\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$. (a) In a sketch, show $\vec{r}$, $\vec{F}$, and the origin. (b) Use the right-hand rule to determine the direction of the torque. (c) Calculate the vector torque for an axis at the origin produced by this force. Verify that the direction of the torque is the same as you obtained in part (b).

10.6 • A metal bar is in the xy-plane with one end of the bar at the origin. A force $\vec{F} = (7.71\text{ N})\hat{\imath} + (-3.08\text{ N})\hat{\jmath}$ is applied to the bar at the point $x = 2.47$ m, $y = 3.19$ m. (a) In terms of unit vectors $\hat{\imath}$ and $\hat{\jmath}$, what is the position vector $\vec{r}$ for the point where the force is applied? (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the torque with respect to the origin produced by $\vec{F}$?

10.7 • A machinist is using a wrench to loosen a nut. The wrench is 25.0 cm long, and he exerts a 17.0 N force at the end of the handle at 37° with the handle (**Fig. E10.7**). (a) What torque does the machinist exert about the center of the nut? (b) What is the maximum torque he could exert with a force of this magnitude, and how should the force be oriented?

Figure **E10.7**



Section 10.2 Torque and Angular Acceleration for a Rigid Body

10.8 •• A uniform disk with mass 40.0 kg and radius 0.200 m is pivoted at its center about a horizontal, frictionless axle that is stationary. The disk is initially at rest, and then a constant force $F = 30.0$ N is applied tangent to the rim of the disk. (a) What is the magnitude v of the tangential velocity of a point on the rim of the disk after the disk has turned through 0.200 revolution? (b) What is the magnitude a of the resultant acceleration of a point on the rim of the disk after the disk has turned through 0.200 revolution?

10.9 •• The flywheel of an engine has moment of inertia 2.00 kg · m^2 about its rotation axis. What constant torque is required to bring it up to an angular speed of 450 rev/min in 7.90 s, starting from rest?

10.10 • A cord is wrapped around the rim of a solid uniform wheel 0.290 m in radius and of mass 7.80 kg. A steady horizontal pull of 32.0 N to the right is exerted on the cord, pulling it off tangentially from the wheel. The wheel is mounted on frictionless bearings on a horizontal axle through its center. (a) Compute the angular acceleration of the wheel and the acceleration of the part of the cord that has already been pulled off the wheel. (b) Find the magnitude and direction of the force that the axle exerts on the wheel. (c) Which of the answers in parts (a) and (b) would change if the pull were upward instead of horizontal?

10.11 •• A machine part has the shape of a solid uniform sphere of mass 225 g and diameter 3.00 cm. It is spinning about a frictionless axle through its center, but at one point on its equator it is scraping against metal, resulting in a friction force of 0.0200 N at that point. (a) Find its angular acceleration. (b) How long will it take to decrease its rotational speed by 22.5 rad/s?

10.12 •• CP A stone is suspended from the free end of a wire that is wrapped around the outer rim of a pulley, similar to what is shown in Fig. 10.10. The pulley is a uniform disk with mass 10.8 kg and radius 45.0 cm and turns on frictionless bearings. You measure that the stone travels 12.4 m in the first 2.50 s starting from rest. Find (a) the mass of the stone and (b) the tension in the wire.

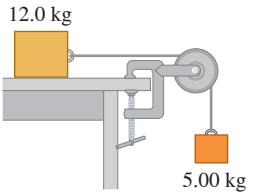
10.13 •• CP A 2.00 kg textbook rests on a frictionless, horizontal surface. A cord attached to the book passes over a pulley whose diameter is 0.150 m, to a hanging book with mass 3.00 kg. The system is released from rest, and the books are observed to move 1.20 m in 0.800 s. (a) What is the tension in each part of the cord? (b) What is the moment of inertia of the pulley about its rotation axis?

10.14 •• CP A 15.0 kg bucket of water is suspended by a very light rope wrapped around a solid uniform cylinder 0.300 m in diameter with mass 12.0 kg. The cylinder pivots on a frictionless axle through its center. The bucket is released from rest at the top of a well and falls 10.0 m to the water. (a) What is the tension in the rope while the bucket is falling? (b) With what speed does the bucket strike the water? (c) What is the time of fall? (d) While the bucket is falling, what is the force exerted on the cylinder by the axle?

10.15 • A wheel rotates without friction about a stationary horizontal axis at the center of the wheel. A constant tangential force equal to 74.0 N is applied to the rim of the wheel. The wheel has radius 0.130 m. Starting from rest, the wheel has an angular speed of 14.5 rev/s after 3.78 s. What is the moment of inertia of the wheel?

10.16 •• A 12.0 kg box resting on a horizontal, frictionless surface is attached to a 5.00 kg weight by a thin, light wire that passes over a frictionless pulley (**Fig. E10.16**). The pulley has the shape of a uniform solid disk of mass 2.10 kg and diameter 0.560 m. After the system is released, find (a) the tension in the wire on both sides of the pulley, (b) the acceleration of the box, and (c) the horizontal and vertical components of the force that the axle exerts on the pulley.

Figure **E10.16**



10.17 •• CP A solid cylinder with radius 0.140 m is mounted on a frictionless, stationary axle that lies along the cylinder axis. The cylinder is initially at rest. Then starting at $t = 0$ a constant horizontal force of 3.00 N is applied tangential to the surface of the cylinder. You measure the angular displacement $\theta - \theta_0$ of the cylinder as a function of the time t since the force was first applied. When you plot $\theta - \theta_0$ (in radians) as a function of t^2 (in s^2), your data lie close to a straight line. If the slope of this line is 16.0 rad/s^2, what is the moment of inertia of the cylinder for rotation about the axle?

10.18 •• CP Two spheres are rolling without slipping on a horizontal floor. They are made of different materials, but each has mass 5.00 kg and radius 0.120 m. For each the translational speed of the center of mass is 4.00 m/s. Sphere A is a uniform solid sphere and sphere B is a thin-walled, hollow sphere. How much work, in joules, must be done on each sphere to bring it to rest? For which sphere is a greater magnitude of work required? Explain. (The spheres continue to roll without slipping as they slow down.)

Section 10.3 Rigid-Body Rotation About a Moving Axis

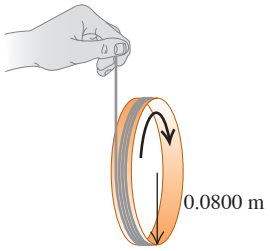
10.19 • A 2.20 kg hoop 1.20 m in diameter is rolling to the right without slipping on a horizontal floor at a steady 2.60 rad/s. (a) How fast is its center moving? (b) What is the total kinetic energy of the hoop? (c) Find the velocity vector of each of the following points, as viewed by a person at rest on the ground: (i) the highest point on the hoop; (ii) the lowest point on the hoop; (iii) a point on the right side of the hoop, midway between the top and the bottom. (d) Find the velocity vector for each of the points in part (c), but this time as viewed by someone moving along with the same velocity as the hoop.

10.20 •• Example 10.7 calculates the friction force needed for a uniform sphere to roll down an incline without slipping. The incline is at an angle β above the horizontal. And the example discusses that the friction is static. (a) If the maximum friction force is given by $f = \mu_s n$, where n is the normal force that the ramp exerts on the sphere, in terms of β what is the minimum coefficient of static friction needed if the sphere is to roll without slipping? (b) Based on your result in part (a), what does the minimum required μ_s become in the limits $\beta \to 90°$ and $\beta \to 0°$?

10.21 • What fraction of the total kinetic energy is rotational for the following objects rolling without slipping on a horizontal surface? (a) A uniform solid cylinder; (b) a uniform sphere; (c) a thin-walled, hollow sphere; (d) a hollow cylinder with outer radius R and inner radius $R/2$.

10.22 •• A string is wrapped several times around the rim of a small hoop with radius 8.00 cm and mass 0.180 kg. The free end of the string is held in place and the hoop is released from rest (**Fig. E10.22**). After the hoop has descended 75.0 cm, calculate (a) the angular speed of the rotating hoop and (b) the speed of its center.

Figure **E10.22**



10.23 •• A solid ball is released from rest and slides down a hillside that slopes downward at 70.0° from the horizontal. (a) What minimum value must the coefficient of static friction between the hill and ball surfaces have for no slipping to occur? (b) Would the coefficient of friction calculated in part (a) be sufficient to prevent a hollow ball (such as a football) from slipping? Justify your answer. (c) In part (a), why did we use the coefficient of static friction and not the coefficient of kinetic friction?

10.24 •• A hollow, spherical shell with mass 2.00 kg rolls without slipping down a 38.0° slope. (a) Find the acceleration, the friction force, and the minimum coefficient of static friction needed to prevent slipping. (b) How would your answers to part (a) change if the mass were doubled to 4.00 kg?

10.25 •• A 386 N wheel comes off a moving truck and rolls without slipping along a highway. At the bottom of a hill it is rotating at 27.1 rad/s. The radius of the wheel is 0.632 m, and its moment of inertia about its rotation axis is $0.800MR^2$. Friction does work on the wheel as it rolls up the hill to a stop, a height h above the bottom of the hill; this work has absolute value 3506 J. Calculate h.

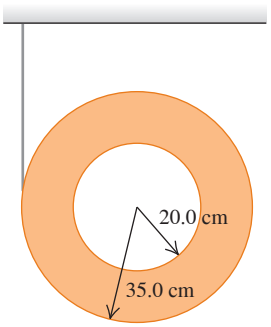
10.26 •• A uniform marble rolls down a symmetrical bowl, starting from rest at the top of the left side. The top of each side is a distance h above the bottom of the bowl. The left half of the bowl is rough enough to cause the marble to roll without slipping, but the right half has no friction because it is coated with oil. (a) How far up the smooth side will the marble go, measured vertically from the bottom? (b) How high would the marble go if both sides were as rough as the left side? (c) How do you account for the fact that the marble goes *higher* with friction on the right side than without friction?

10.27 •• At a typical bowling alley the distance from the line where the ball is released (foul line) to the first pin is 18.29 m. Estimate the time it takes the ball to reach the pins after you release it if it rolls without slipping and has a constant translational speed. Assume that the mass of the ball is 5.44 kg and its diameter 21.6 cm. (a) Use your estimate to calculate the rotation rate of the ball, in rev/s. (b) What is its total kinetic energy in joules and what fraction of the total is its rotational kinetic energy? Ignore the finger holes and treat the bowling ball as a uniform sphere.

10.28 • Two uniform solid balls are rolling without slipping at a constant speed. Ball 1 has twice the diameter, half the mass, and one-third the speed of ball 2. The kinetic energy of ball 2 is 27.0 J. What is the kinetic energy of ball 1?

10.29 •• A thin, light string is wrapped around the outer rim of a uniform hollow cylinder of mass 4.80 kg having inner and outer radii as shown in **Fig. E10.29**. The cylinder is then released from rest. (a) How far must the cylinder fall before its center is moving at 6.44 m/s? (b) If you just dropped this cylinder without any string, how fast would its center be moving when it had fallen the distance in part (a)? (c) Why do you get two different answers when the cylinder falls the same distance in both cases?

Figure **E10.29**



10.30 •• **A Ball Rolling Uphill.** A bowling ball rolls without slipping up a ramp that slopes upward at an angle β to the horizontal (see Example 10.7 in Section 10.3). Treat the ball as a uniform solid sphere, ignoring the finger holes. (a) Draw the free-body diagram for the ball. Explain why the friction force must be directed *uphill.* (b) What is the acceleration of the center of mass of the ball? (c) What minimum coefficient of static friction is needed to prevent slipping?

10.31 •• A size-5 football of diameter 22.6 cm and mass 426 g rolls up a hill without slipping, reaching a maximum height of 5.00 m above the base of the hill. We can model this ball as a thin-walled hollow sphere. (a) At what rate was it rotating at the base of the hill? (b) How much rotational kinetic energy did it have then? Neglect rolling friction and assume the system's total mechanical energy is conserved.

Section 10.4 Work and Power in Rotational Motion

10.32 • An engine delivers 130 kW to an aircraft propeller at 2400 rev/min. (a) How much torque does the aircraft engine provide? (b) How much work does the engine do in one revolution of the propeller?

10.33 • A playground merry-go-round has radius 2.20 m and moment of inertia 2400 kg · m^2 about a vertical axle through its center, and it turns with negligible friction. (a) A child applies an 21.0 N force tangentially to the edge of the merry-go-round for 17.0 s. If the merry-go-round is initially at rest, what is its angular speed after this 17.0 s interval? (b) How much work did the child do on the merry-go-round? (c) What is the average power supplied by the child?

10.34 •• An electric motor consumes 10.8 kJ of electrical energy in 1.00 min. If one-third of this energy goes into heat and other forms of internal energy of the motor, with the rest going to the motor output, how much torque will this engine develop if you run it at 2300 rpm?

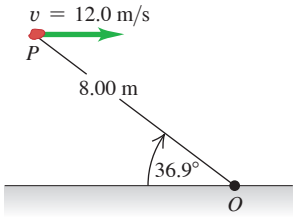
10.35 • A 2.00 kg grinding wheel is in the form of a solid cylinder of radius 0.100 m. (a) What constant torque will bring it from rest to an angular speed of 1000 rev/min in 3.0 s? (b) Through what angle has it turned during that time? (c) Use Eq. (10.21) to calculate the work done by the torque. (d) What is the grinding wheel's kinetic energy when it is rotating at 1000 rev/min? Compare your answer to the result in part (c).

10.36 •• An airplane propeller is 2.28 m in length (from tip to tip) and has a mass of 157 kg. When the airplane's engine is first started, it applies a constant torque of 1900 N · m to the propeller, which starts from rest. (a) What is the angular acceleration of the propeller? Model the propeller as a slender rod and see Table 9.2. (b) What is the propeller's angular speed after making 5.00 revolutions? (c) How much work is done by the engine during the first 5.00 revolutions? (d) What is the average power output of the engine during the first 5.00 revolutions? (e) What is the instantaneous power output of the motor at the instant that the propeller has turned through 5.00 revolutions?

Section 10.5 Angular Momentum

10.37 • A 4.00 kg rock has a horizontal velocity of magnitude 12.0 m/s when it is at point P in **Fig. E10.37**. (a) At this instant, what are the magnitude and direction of its angular momentum relative to point O? (b) If the only force acting on the rock is its weight, what is the rate of change (magnitude and direction) of its angular momentum at this instant?

Figure **E10.37**



10.38 •• A woman with mass 55 kg is standing on the rim of a large disk that is rotating at 0.47 rev/s about an axis through its center. The disk has mass 119 kg and radius 3.5 m. Calculate the magnitude of the total angular momentum of the woman–disk system. (Assume that you can treat the woman as a point.)

10.39 •• Find the magnitude of the angular momentum of the second hand on a clock about an axis through the center of the clock face. The clock hand has a length of 15.0 cm and a mass of 6.00 g. Take the second hand to be a slender rod rotating with constant angular velocity about one end.

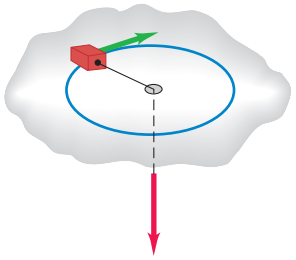
10.40 •• (a) Calculate the magnitude of the angular momentum of the earth in a circular orbit around the sun. Is it reasonable to model it as a particle? (b) Calculate the magnitude of the angular momentum of the earth due to its rotation around an axis through the north and south poles, modeling it as a uniform sphere. Consult Appendix B and the astronomical data at the back of the book.

10.41 •• **CALC** A hollow, thin-walled sphere of mass 12.0 kg and diameter 49.0 cm is rotating about an axle through its center. The angle (in radians) through which it turns as a function of time (in seconds) is given by $\theta(t) = At^2 + Bt^4$, where A has numerical value 1.10 and B has numerical value 1.60. (a) What are the units of the constants A and B? (b) At the time 4.00 s, find (i) the angular momentum of the sphere and (ii) the net torque on the sphere.

Section 10.6 Conservation of Angular Momentum

10.42 • **CP** A small block on a frictionless, horizontal surface has a mass of 2.40×10^{-2} kg. It is attached to a massless cord passing through a hole in the surface (**Fig. E10.42**). The block is originally revolving at a distance of 0.300 m from the hole with an angular speed of 1.95 rad/s. The cord is then pulled from below, shortening the radius of the circle in which the block revolves to 0.150 m. Model the block as a particle. (a) Is the angular momentum of the block conserved? Why or why not? (b) What is the new angular speed? (c) Find the change in kinetic energy of the block. (d) How much work was done in pulling the cord?

Figure **E10.42**

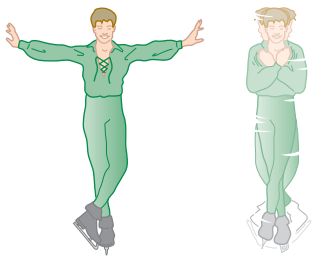


10.43 •• Under some circumstances, a star can collapse into an extremely dense object made mostly of neutrons and called a *neutron star*. The density of a neutron star is roughly 10^{14} times as great as that of ordinary solid matter. Suppose we represent the star as a uniform, solid, rigid sphere, both before and after the collapse. The star's initial radius was 9.0×10^5 km (comparable to our sun); its final radius is 16 km. If the original star rotated once in 32 days, find the angular speed of the neutron star.

10.44 •• A diver comes off a board with arms straight up and legs straight down, giving her a moment of inertia about her rotation axis of 18 kg · m^2. She then tucks into a small ball, decreasing this moment of inertia to 3.6 kg · m^2. While tucked, she makes two complete revolutions in 1.0 s. If she hadn't tucked at all, how many revolutions would she have made in the 1.5 s from board to water?

10.45 •• **The Spinning Figure Skater.** The outstretched hands and arms of a figure skater preparing for a spin can be considered a slender rod pivoting about an axis through its center (**Fig. E10.45**). When the skater's hands and arms are brought in and wrapped around his body to execute the spin, the hands and arms can be considered a thin-walled, hollow cylinder. His hands and arms have a combined mass of 7.0 kg. When outstretched, they span 1.7 m; when wrapped, they form a cylinder of radius 24 cm. The moment of inertia about the rotation axis of the remainder of his body is constant and equal to 0.40 kg · m^2. If his original angular speed is 0.30 rev/s, what is his final angular speed?

Figure **E10.45**



10.46 •• A solid wood door 1.00 m wide and 2.00 m high is hinged along one side and has a total mass of 42.0 kg. Initially open and at rest, the door is struck at its center by a handful of sticky mud with mass 0.500 kg, traveling perpendicular to the door at 13.0 m/s just before impact. Find the final angular speed of the door. Does the mud make a significant contribution to the moment of inertia?

10.47 •• A large wooden turntable in the shape of a flat uniform disk has a radius of 2.00 m and a total mass of 140 kg. The turntable is initially rotating at 4.00 rad/s about a vertical axis through its center. Suddenly, a 80.0 kg parachutist makes a soft landing on the turntable at a point near the outer edge. (a) Find the angular speed of the turntable after the parachutist lands. (Assume that you can treat the parachutist as a particle.) (b) Compute the kinetic energy of the system before and after the parachutist lands. Why are these kinetic energies not equal?

10.48 •• **Asteroid Collision!** Suppose that an asteroid traveling straight toward the center of the earth were to collide with our planet at the equator and bury itself just below the surface. What would have to be the mass of this asteroid, in terms of the earth's mass M, for the day to become 22.0% longer than it presently is as a result of the collision? Assume that the asteroid is very small compared to the earth and that the earth is uniform throughout.

10.49 •• A small 10.0 g bug stands at one end of a thin uniform bar that is initially at rest on a smooth horizontal table. The other end of the bar pivots about a nail driven into the table and can rotate freely, without friction. The bar has mass 50.0 g and is 100 cm in length. The bug jumps off in the horizontal direction, perpendicular to the bar, with a speed of 20.0 cm/s relative to the table. (a) What is the angular speed of the bar just after the frisky insect leaps? (b) What is the total kinetic energy of the system just after the bug leaps? (c) Where does this energy come from?

10.50 •• A thin uniform rod has a length of 0.500 m and is rotating in a circle on a frictionless table. The axis of rotation is perpendicular to the length of the rod at one end and is stationary. The rod has an angular velocity of 0.38 rad/s and a moment of inertia about the axis of 2.70×10^{-3} kg · m^2. A bug initially standing on the rod at the axis of rotation decides to crawl out to the other end of the rod. When the bug has reached the end of the rod and sits there, its tangential speed is 0.164 m/s. The bug can be treated as a point mass. What is the mass of (a) the rod; (b) the bug?

10.51 •• You live on a planet far from ours. Based on extensive communication with a physicist on earth, you have determined that all laws of physics on your planet are the same as ours and you have adopted the same units of seconds and meters as on earth. But you suspect that the value of g, the acceleration of an object in free fall near the surface of your planet, is different from what it is on earth. To test this, you take a solid uniform cylinder and let it roll down an incline. The vertical height h of the top of the incline above the lower end of the incline can be varied. You measure the speed v_{cm} of the center of mass of the cylinder when it reaches the bottom for various values of h. You plot v_{cm}^2 (in m^2/s^2) versus h (in m) and find that your data lie close to a straight line with a slope of 6.42 m/s^2. What is the value of g on your planet?

10.52 •• A uniform, 4.0 kg, square, solid wooden gate 1.5 m on each side hangs vertically from a frictionless pivot at the center of its upper edge. A 1.1 kg raven flying horizontally at 4.5 m/s flies into this door at its center and bounces back at 2.0 m/s in the opposite direction. (a) What is the angular speed of the gate just after it is struck by the unfortunate raven? (b) During the collision, why is the angular momentum conserved but not the linear momentum?

10.53 •• A teenager is standing at the rim of a large horizontal uniform wooden disk that can rotate freely about a vertical axis at its center. The mass of the disk (in kg) is M and its radius (in m) is R. The mass of the teenager (in kg) is m. The disk and teenager are initially at rest. The teenager then throws a large rock that has a mass (in kg) of m_{rock}. As it leaves the thrower's hands, the rock is traveling horizontally with speed v (in m/s) relative to the earth in a direction tangent to the rim of the disk. The teenager remains at rest relative to the disk and so rotates with it after throwing the rock. In terms of M, R, m, m_{rock}, and v, what is the angular speed of the disk? Treat the teenager as a point mass.

10.54 •• A uniform solid disk made of wood is horizontal and rotates freely about a vertical axle at its center. The disk has radius 0.600 m and mass 1.60 kg and is initially at rest. A bullet with mass 0.0200 kg is fired horizontally at the disk, strikes the rim of the disk at a point perpendicular to the radius of the disk, and becomes embedded in its rim, a distance of 0.600 m from the axle. After being struck by the bullet, the disk rotates at 4.00 rad/s. What is the horizontal velocity of the bullet just before it strikes the disk?

Section 10.7 Gyroscopes and Precession

10.55 • **Stabilization of the Hubble Space Telescope.** The Hubble Space Telescope is stabilized to within an angle of about 2-millionths of a degree by means of a series of gyroscopes that spin at 19,200 rpm. Although the structure of these gyroscopes is actually quite complex, we can model each of the gyroscopes as a thin-walled cylinder of mass 2.0 kg and diameter 5.0 cm, spinning about its central axis. How large a torque would it take to cause these gyroscopes to precess through an angle of 1.20×10^{-6} degree during a 5.50 hour exposure of a galaxy?

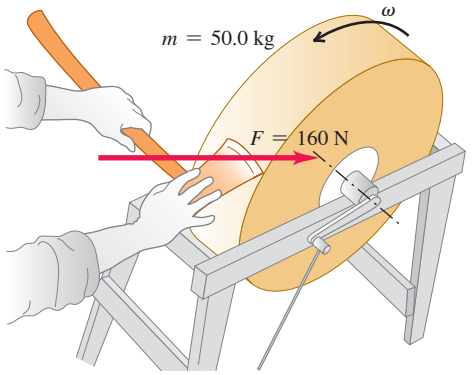
10.56 • **A Gyroscope on the Moon.** A certain gyroscope precesses at a rate of 0.70 rad/s when used on earth. If it were taken to a lunar base, where the acceleration due to gravity is $0.165g$, what would be its precession rate?

PROBLEMS

10.57 •• You are riding your bicycle on a city street, and you are staying a constant distance behind a car that is traveling at the speed limit of 45 km/h. Estimate the diameters of the bicycle wheels and sprockets and use these estimated quantities to calculate the number of revolutions per minute made by the large sprocket to which the pedals are attached. Do a Web search if you aren't familiar with the parts of a bicycle.

10.58 •• A 70.0 kg grindstone is a solid disk 0.510 m in diameter. You press an ax down on the rim with a normal force of 180 N (**Fig. P10.58**). The coefficient of kinetic friction between the blade and the stone is 0.60, and there is a constant friction torque of 6.50 N · m between the axle of the stone and its bearings. (a) How much force must be applied tangentially at the end of a crank handle 0.500 m long to bring the stone from rest to 120 rev/min in 9.00 s? (b) After the grindstone attains an angular speed of 120 rev/min, what tangential force at the end of the handle is needed to maintain a constant angular speed of 120 rev/min? (c) How much time does it take the grindstone to come from 120 rev/min to rest if it is acted on by the axle friction alone?

Figure P10.58

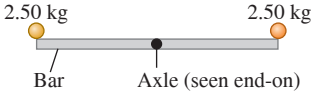


10.59 ••• A grindstone in the shape of a solid disk with diameter 0.520 m and a mass of 50.0 kg is rotating at 810 rev/min. You press an ax against the rim with a normal force of 190 N (Fig. P10.58), and the grindstone comes to rest in 7.10 s. Find the coefficient of friction between the ax and the grindstone. You can ignore friction in the bearings.

10.60 •• CP Block A rests on a horizontal tabletop. A light horizontal rope is attached to it and passes over a pulley, and block B is suspended from the free end of the rope. The light rope that connects the two blocks does not slip over the surface of the pulley (radius 0.080 m) because the pulley rotates on a frictionless axle. The horizontal surface on which block A (mass 2.50 kg) moves is frictionless. The system is released from rest, and block B (mass 6.00 kg) moves downward 1.80 m in 2.00 s. (a) What is the tension force that the rope exerts on block B? (b) What is the tension force on block A? (c) What is the moment of inertia of the pulley for rotation about the axle on which it is mounted?

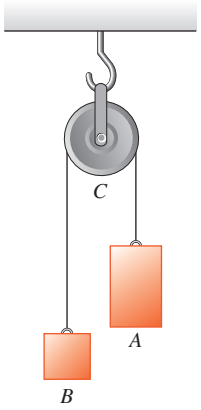
10.61 ••• A thin, uniform, 3.80 kg bar, 80.0 cm long, has very small 2.50 kg balls glued on at either end (**Fig. P10.61**). It is supported horizontally by a thin, horizontal, frictionless axle passing through its center and perpendicular to the bar. Suddenly the right-hand ball becomes detached and falls off, but the other ball remains glued to the bar. (a) Find the angular acceleration of the bar just after the ball falls off. (b) Will the angular acceleration remain constant as the bar continues to swing? If not, will it increase or decrease? (c) Find the angular velocity of the bar just as it swings through its vertical position.

Figure P10.61



10.62 •• Example 10.7 discusses a uniform solid sphere rolling without slipping down a ramp that is at an angle β above the horizontal. Now consider the same sphere rolling without slipping up the ramp. (a) In terms of g and β, calculate the acceleration of the center of mass of the sphere. Is your result larger or smaller than the acceleration when the sphere rolls down the ramp, or is it the same? (b) Calculate the friction force (in terms of M, g, and β) for the sphere to roll without slipping as it moves up the incline. Is the result larger, smaller, or the same as the friction force required to prevent slipping as the sphere rolls down the incline?

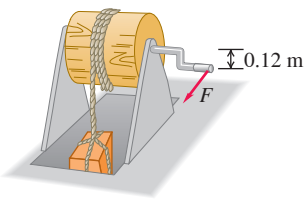
Figure **P10.63**



10.63 •• **The Atwood's Machine. Figure P10.63** illustrates an Atwood's machine. Find the linear accelerations of blocks A and B, the angular acceleration of the wheel C, and the tension in each side of the cord if there is no slipping between the cord and the surface of the wheel. Let the masses of blocks A and B be 3.50 kg and 2.00 kg, respectively, the moment of inertia of the wheel about its axis be 0.400 kg · m^2, and the radius of the wheel be 0.100 m.

10.64 ••• The mechanism shown in **Fig. P10.64** is used to raise a crate of supplies from a ship's hold. The crate has total mass 50 kg. A rope is wrapped around a wooden cylinder that turns on a metal axle. The cylinder has radius 0.25 m and moment of inertia $I = 2.9$ kg · m^2 about the axle. The crate is suspended from the free end of the rope. One end of the axle pivots on frictionless bearings; a crank handle is attached to the other end. When the crank is turned, the end of the handle rotates about the axle in a vertical circle of radius 0.12 m, the cylinder turns, and the crate is raised. What magnitude of the force $\vec{F}$ applied tangentially to the rotating crank is required to raise the crate with an acceleration of 1.40 m/s^2? (You can ignore the mass of the rope as well as the moments of inertia of the axle and the crank.)

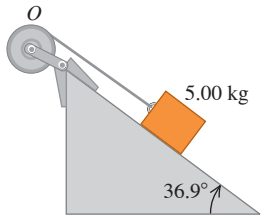
Figure **P10.64**



10.65 •• A solid uniform sphere and a thin-walled, hollow sphere have the same mass M and radius R. If they roll without slipping up a ramp that is inclined at an angle β above the horizontal and if both have the same v_{cm} before they start up the incline, calculate the maximum height above their starting point reached by each object. Which object reaches the greater height, or do both of them reach the same height?

10.66 •• A block with mass $m = 5.00$ kg slides down a surface inclined 36.9° to the horizontal (**Fig. P10.66**). The coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.26. A string attached to the block is wrapped around a flywheel on a fixed axis at O. The flywheel has mass 6.25 kg and moment of inertia 0.500 kg · m^2 with respect to the axis of rotation. The string pulls without slipping at a perpendicular distance of 0.400 m from that axis. (a) What is the acceleration of the block down the plane? (b) What is the tension in the string?

Figure **P10.66**

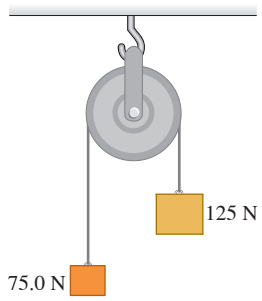


10.67 •• **CP** A wheel with radius 0.0600 m rotates about a horizontal frictionless axle at its center. The moment of inertia of the wheel about the axle is 2.50 kg · m^2. The wheel is initially at rest. Then at $t = 0$ a force $F = (5.00\ \text{N/s})t$ is applied tangentially to the wheel and the wheel starts to rotate. What is the magnitude of the force at the instant when the wheel has turned through 8.00 revolutions?

10.68 •• A lawn roller in the form of a thin-walled, hollow cylinder with mass M is pulled horizontally with a constant horizontal force F applied by a handle attached to the axle. If it rolls without slipping, find the acceleration and the friction force.

10.69 • Two weights are connected by a very light, flexible cord that passes over an 70.0 N frictionless pulley of radius 0.400 m. The pulley is a solid uniform disk and is supported by a hook connected to the ceiling (**Fig. P10.69**). What force does the ceiling exert on the hook?

Figure **P10.69**

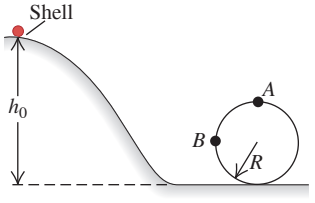


10.70 •• A large uniform horizontal turntable rotates freely about a vertical axle at its center. You measure the radius of the turntable to be 3.00 m. To determine the moment of inertia I of the turntable about the axle, you start the turntable rotating with angular speed ω, which you measure. You then drop a small object of mass m onto the rim of the turntable. After the object has come to rest relative to the turntable, you measure the angular speed ω_f of the rotating turntable. You plot the quantity $(\omega - \omega_f)/\omega_f$ (with both ω and ω_f in rad/s) as a function of m (in kg). You find that your data lie close to a straight line that has slope 0.250 kg^{-1}. What is the moment of inertia I of the turntable?

10.71 • **The Yo-yo.** A yo-yo is made from two uniform disks, each with mass m and radius R, connected by a light axle of radius b. A light, thin string is wound several times around the axle and then held stationary while the yo-yo is released from rest, dropping as the string unwinds. Find the linear acceleration and angular acceleration of the yo-yo and the tension in the string.

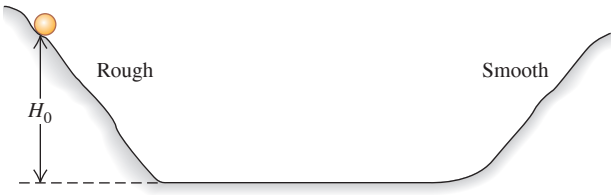
10.72 •• **CP** A thin-walled, hollow spherical shell of mass m and radius r starts from rest and rolls without slipping down a track (**Fig. P10.72**). Points A and B are on a circular part of the track having radius R. The diameter of the shell is very small compared to h_0 and R, and the work done by rolling friction is negligible. (a) What is the minimum height h_0 for which this shell will make a complete loop-the-loop on the circular part of the track? (b) How hard does the track push on the shell at point B, which is at the same level as the center of the circle? (c) Suppose that the track had no friction and the shell was released from the same height h_0 you found in part (a). Would it make a complete loop-the-loop? How do you know? (d) In part (c), how hard does the track push on the shell at point A, the top of the circle? How hard did it push on the shell in part (a)?

Figure **P10.72**



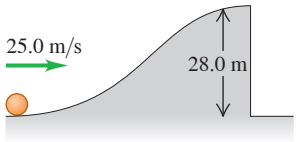
10.73 •• A basketball (which can be closely modeled as a hollow spherical shell) rolls down a mountainside into a valley and then up the opposite side, starting from rest at a height H_0 above the bottom. In **Fig. P10.73**, the rough part of the terrain prevents slipping while the smooth part has no friction. Neglect rolling friction and assume the system's total mechanical energy is conserved. (a) How high, in terms of H_0, will the ball go up the other side? (b) Why doesn't the ball return to height H_0? Has it lost any of its original potential energy?

Figure **P10.73**



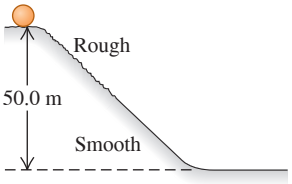
10.74 •• **CP** A solid uniform ball rolls without slipping up a hill (**Fig. P10.74**). At the top of the hill, it is moving horizontally, and then it goes over the vertical cliff. Neglect rolling friction and assume the system's total mechanical energy is conserved. (a) How far from the foot of the cliff does the ball land, and how fast is it moving just before it lands? (b) Notice that when the balls lands, it has a greater translational speed than when it was at the bottom of the hill. Does this mean that the ball somehow gained energy? Explain!

Figure **P10.74**



10.75 •• **Rolling Stones.** A solid, uniform, spherical boulder starts from rest and rolls down a 50.0-m-high hill, as shown in **Fig. P10.75**. The top half of the hill is rough enough to cause the boulder to roll without slipping, but the lower half is covered with ice and there is no friction. What is the translational speed of the boulder when it reaches the bottom of the hill? Neglect rolling friction and assume the system's total mechanical energy is conserved.

Figure **P10.75**



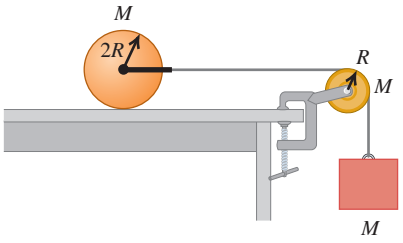
10.76 ••• You are designing a system for moving aluminum cylinders from the ground to a loading dock. You use a sturdy wooden ramp that is 6.00 m long and inclined at 37.0° above the horizontal. Each cylinder is fitted with a light, frictionless yoke through its center, and a light (but strong) rope is attached to the yoke. Each cylinder is uniform and has mass 460 kg and radius 0.300 m. The cylinders are pulled up the ramp by applying a constant force $\vec{F}$ to the free end of the rope. $\vec{F}$ is parallel to the surface of the ramp and exerts no torque on the cylinder. The coefficient of static friction between the ramp surface and the cylinder is 0.120. (a) What is the largest magnitude $\vec{F}$ can have so that the cylinder still rolls without slipping as it moves up the ramp? (b) If the cylinder starts from rest at the bottom of the ramp and rolls without slipping as it moves up the ramp, what is the shortest time it can take the cylinder to reach the top of the ramp?

10.77 •• A 43.0-cm-diameter wheel, consisting of a rim and six spokes, is constructed from a thin, rigid plastic material having a linear mass density of 25.0 g/cm. This wheel is released from rest at the top of a hill 51.0 m high. (a) How fast is it rolling when it reaches the bottom of the hill? (b) How would your answer change if the linear mass density and the diameter of the wheel were each doubled?

10.78 ••• A uniform, 0.0300 kg rod of length 0.400 m rotates in a horizontal plane about a fixed axis through its center and perpendicular to the rod. Two small rings, each with mass 0.0200 kg, are mounted so that they can slide without friction along the rod. They are initially held by catches at positions 0.0500 m on each side of the center of the rod, and the system is rotating at 48.0 rev/min. With no other changes in the system, the catches are released, and the rings slide outward along the rod and fly off at the ends. What is the angular speed (a) of the system at the instant when the rings reach the ends of the rod; (b) of the rod after the rings leave it?

10.79 • A uniform solid cylinder with mass M and radius $2R$ rests on a horizontal tabletop. A string is attached by a yoke to a frictionless axle through the center of the cylinder so that the cylinder can rotate about the axle. The string runs over a disk-shaped pulley with mass M and radius R that is mounted on a frictionless axle through its center. A block of mass M is suspended from the free end of the string (**Fig. P10.79**). The string doesn't slip over the pulley surface, and the cylinder rolls without slipping on the tabletop. Find the magnitude of the acceleration of the block after the system is released from rest.

Figure **P10.79**



10.80 ••• A 5.00 kg ball is dropped from a height of 12.0 m above one end of a uniform bar that pivots at its center. The bar has mass 8.00 kg and is 4.00 m in length. At the other end of the bar sits another 5.00 kg ball, unattached to the bar. The dropped ball sticks to the bar after the collision. How high will the other ball go after the collision?

10.81 •• A uniform rod of length L rests on a frictionless horizontal surface. The rod pivots about a fixed frictionless axis at one end. The rod is initially at rest. A bullet traveling parallel to the horizontal surface and perpendicular to the rod with speed v strikes the rod at its center and becomes embedded in it. The mass of the bullet is one-fourth the mass of the rod. (a) What is the final angular speed of the rod? (b) What is the ratio of the kinetic energy of the system after the collision to the kinetic energy of the bullet before the collision?

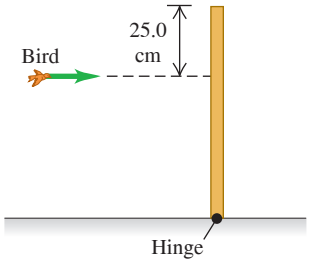
10.82 •• **CP** A large turntable with radius 6.00 m rotates about a fixed vertical axis, making one revolution in 8.00 s. The moment of inertia of the turntable about this axis is 1200 kg · m^2. You stand, barefooted, at the rim of the turntable and very slowly walk toward the center, along a radial line painted on the surface of the turntable. Your mass is 70.0 kg. Since the radius of the turntable is large, it is a good approximation to treat yourself as a point mass. Assume that you can maintain your balance by adjusting the positions of your feet. You find that you can reach a point 3.00 m from the center of the turntable before your feet begin to slip. What is the coefficient of static friction between the bottoms of your feet and the surface of the turntable?

10.83 •• In your job as a mechanical engineer you are designing a flywheel and clutch-plate system like the one in Example 10.11. Disk A is made of a lighter material than disk B, and the moment of inertia of disk A about the shaft is one-third that of disk B. The moment of inertia of the shaft is negligible. With the clutch disconnected, A is brought up to an angular speed ω_0; B is initially at rest. The accelerating torque is then removed from A, and A is coupled to B. (Ignore bearing friction.) The design specifications allow for a maximum of 2400 J of thermal energy to be developed when the connection is made. What can be the maximum value of the original kinetic energy of disk A so as not to exceed the maximum allowed value of the thermal energy?

10.84 •• A local ice hockey team has asked you to design an apparatus for measuring the speed of the hockey puck after a slap shot. Your design is a 2.00-m-long, uniform rod pivoted about one end so that it is free to rotate horizontally on the ice without friction. The 0.800 kg rod has a light basket at the other end to catch the 0.163 kg puck. The puck slides across the ice with velocity $\vec{v}$ (perpendicular to the rod), hits the basket, and is caught. After the collision, the rod rotates. If the rod makes one revolution every 0.736 s after the puck is caught, what was the puck's speed just before it hit the rod?

10.85 ••• A 500.0 g bird is flying horizontally at 2.25 m/s, not paying much attention, when it suddenly flies into a stationary vertical bar, hitting it 25.0 cm below the top (**Fig. P10.85**). The bar is uniform, 0.750 m long, has a mass of 1.50 kg, and is hinged at its base. The collision stuns the bird so that it just drops to the ground afterward (but soon recovers to fly happily away). What is the angular velocity of the bar (a) just after it is hit by the bird and (b) just as it reaches the ground?

Figure **P10.85**



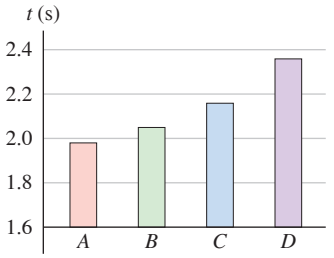
10.86 ••• CP A small block with mass 0.200 kg is attached to a string passing through a hole in a frictionless, horizontal surface (see Fig. E10.42). The block is originally revolving in a circle with a radius of 0.790 m about the hole with a tangential speed of 3.70 m/s. The string is then pulled slowly from below, shortening the radius of the circle in which the block revolves. The breaking strength of the string is 31.0 N. What is the radius of the circle when the string breaks?

10.87 • A 50 kg runner runs around the edge of a horizontal turntable mounted on a vertical, frictionless axis through its center. The runner's velocity relative to the earth has magnitude 3.0 m/s. The turntable is rotating in the opposite direction with an angular velocity of magnitude 0.22 rad/s relative to the earth. The radius of the turntable is 2.6 m, and its moment of inertia about the axis of rotation is 84 kg · m^2. Find the final angular velocity of the system if the runner comes to rest relative to the turntable. (You can model the runner as a particle.)

10.88 •• DATA The 2017 Aston Martin DB11 can be equipped either with a V12 engine or with a V8 engine. The V12 engine is reported to produce a maximum power of 447 kW at 6500 rpm and a maximum torque of 700 N · m from 1500 rpm. (a) Calculate the torque, at 6500 rpm. Is your answer smaller than the specified maximum value? (b) Calculate the power at 4500 rpm. Is your answer smaller than the specified maximum value? (c) The V8 engine is reported to produce 375 kw at 6000 rpm. What is the torque at 6000 rpm?

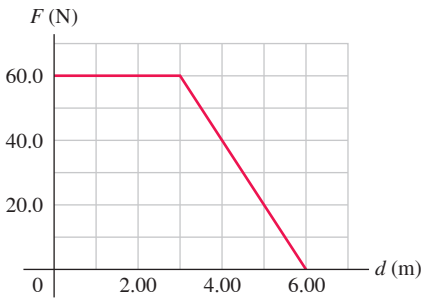
10.89 •• DATA You have one object of each of these shapes, all with mass 0.840 kg: a uniform solid cylinder, a thin-walled hollow cylinder, a uniform solid sphere, and a thin-walled hollow sphere. You release each object from rest at the same vertical height h above the bottom of a long wooden ramp that is inclined at 35.0° from the horizontal. Each object rolls without slipping down the ramp. You measure the time t that it takes each one to reach the bottom of the ramp; **Fig. P10.89** shows the results. (a) From the bar graphs, identify objects A through D by shape. (b) Which of objects A through D has the greatest total kinetic energy at the bottom of the ramp, or do all have the same kinetic energy? (c) Which of objects A through D has the greatest rotational kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$ at the bottom of the ramp, or do all have the same rotational kinetic energy? (d) What minimum coefficient of static friction is required for all four objects to roll without slipping?

Figure **P10.89**



10.90 ••• DATA You are testing a small flywheel (radius 0.166 m) that will be used to store a small amount of energy. The flywheel is pivoted with low-friction bearings about a horizontal shaft through the flywheel's center. A thin, light cord is wrapped multiple times around the rim of the flywheel. Your lab has a device that can apply a specified horizontal force $\vec{F}$ to the free end of the cord. The device records both the magnitude of that force as a function of the horizontal distance the end of the cord has traveled and the time elapsed since the force was first applied. The flywheel is initially at rest. (a) You start with a test run to determine the flywheel's moment of inertia I. The magnitude F of the force is a constant 25.0 N, and the end of the rope moves 8.35 m in 2.00 s. What is I? (b) In a second test, the flywheel again starts from rest but the free end of the rope travels 6.00 m; **Fig. P10.90** shows the force magnitude F as a function of the distance d that the end of the rope has moved. What is the kinetic energy of the flywheel when $d = 6.00$ m? (c) What is the angular speed of the flywheel, in rev/min, when $d = 6.00$ m?

Figure **P10.90**



CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

10.91 ••• CP CALC A block with mass m is revolving with linear speed v_1 in a circle of radius r_1 on a frictionless horizontal surface (see Fig. E10.42). The string is slowly pulled from below until the radius of the circle in which the block is revolving is reduced to r_2. (a) Calculate the tension T in the string as a function of r, the distance of the block from the hole. Your answer will be in terms of the initial velocity v_1 and the radius r_1. (b) Use $W = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} \vec{T}(r) \cdot d\vec{r}$ to calculate the work done by $\vec{T}$ when r changes from r_1 to r_2. (c) Compare the results of part (b) to the change in the kinetic energy of the block.

10.92 ••• When an object is rolling without slipping, the rolling friction force is much less than the friction force when the object is sliding; a coin will roll on its edge much farther than it will slide on its flat side (see Section 5.3). When an object is rolling without slipping on a horizontal surface, we can approximate the friction force to be zero, so that a_x and α_z are approximately zero and v_x and ω_z are approximately constant. Rolling without slipping means $v_x = r\omega_z$ and $a_x = r\alpha_z$. If an object is set in motion on a surface *without* these equalities, sliding (kinetic) friction will act on the object as it slips until rolling without slipping is established. A solid cylinder with mass M and radius R, rotating with angular speed ω_0 about an axis through its center, is set on a horizontal surface for which the kinetic friction coefficient is μ_k. (a) Draw a free-body diagram for the cylinder on the surface. Think carefully about the direction of the kinetic friction force on the cylinder. Calculate the accelerations a_x of the center of mass and α_z of rotation about the center of mass. (b) The cylinder is initially slipping completely, so initially $\omega_z = \omega_0$ but $v_x = 0$. Rolling without slipping sets in when $v_x = r\omega_z$. Calculate the *distance* the cylinder rolls before slipping stops. (c) Calculate the work done by the friction force on the cylinder as it moves from where it was set down to where it begins to roll without slipping.

10.93 ••• A demonstration gyroscope wheel is constructed by removing the tire from a bicycle wheel 0.640 m in diameter, wrapping lead wire around the rim, and taping it in place. The shaft projects 0.210 m at each side of the wheel, and a woman holds the ends of the shaft in her hands. The mass of the system is 8.50 kg; its entire mass may be assumed to be located at its rim. The shaft is horizontal, and the wheel is spinning about the shaft at 5.10 rev/s. Find the magnitude and direction of the force each hand exerts on the shaft (a) when the shaft is at rest; (b) when the shaft is rotating in a horizontal plane about its center at 5.20×10^{-2} rev/s; (c) when the shaft is rotating in a horizontal plane about its center at 0.315 rev/s. (d) At what rate must the shaft rotate in order that it may be supported at one end only?

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO Human Moment of Inertia. The moment of inertia of the human body about an axis through its center of mass is important in the application of biomechanics to sports such as diving and gymnastics. We can measure the body's moment of inertia in a particular position while a person remains in that position on a horizontal turntable, with the body's center of mass on the turntable's rotational axis. The turntable with the person on it is then accelerated from rest by a torque that is produced by using a rope wound around a pulley on the shaft of the turntable. From the measured tension in the rope and the angular acceleration, we can calculate the body's moment of inertia about an axis through its center of mass.

Overhead view of a female gymnast lying in somersault position atop a turntable

10.94 The moment of inertia of the empty turntable is 1.5 kg · m^2. With a constant torque of 2.5 N · m, the turntable–person system takes 3.0 s to spin from rest to an angular speed of 1.0 rad/s. What is the person's moment of inertia about an axis through her center of mass? Ignore friction in the turntable axle. (a) 2.5 kg · m^2; (b) 6.0 kg · m^2; (c) 7.5 kg · m^2; (d) 9.0 kg · m^2.

10.95 While the turntable is being accelerated, the person suddenly extends her legs. What happens to the turntable? (a) It suddenly speeds up; (b) it rotates with constant speed; (c) its acceleration decreases; (d) it suddenly stops rotating.

10.96 A doubling of the torque produces a greater angular acceleration. Which of the following would do this, assuming that the tension in the rope doesn't change? (a) Increasing the pulley diameter by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$; (b) increasing the pulley diameter by a factor of 2; (c) increasing the pulley diameter by a factor of 4; (d) decreasing the pulley diameter by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$.

10.97 If the body's center of mass were not placed on the rotational axis of the turntable, how would the person's measured moment of inertia compare to the moment of inertia for rotation about the center of mass? (a) The measured moment of inertia would be too large; (b) the measured moment of inertia would be too small; (c) the two moments of inertia would be the same; (d) it depends on where the body's center of mass is placed relative to the center of the turntable.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iv) A tossed pin rotates around its center of mass (which is located toward its thick end). This is also the point at which the gravitational force acts on the pin, so this force exerts no torque on the pin. Hence the pin rotates with constant angular momentum, and its angular speed remains the same.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP10.3.1 (a) 10 rad/s^2 (b) 0.90 N · m (c) 15 N

VP10.3.2 (a) $a_y = \dfrac{g}{1 + M/m}$ (b) $T = \dfrac{mg}{1 + m/M} = \dfrac{Mg}{1 + M/m}$

VP10.3.3 (a) $T = m(g - a)$ (b) $I = mR^2\left(\dfrac{g}{a} - 1\right)$

VP10.3.4 (a) $T = m(g + a)$ (b) $\tau_{\text{cable on cylinder}} = mR(g + a)$ (c) $\tau_{\text{motor on cylinder}} = mR(g + a) + \frac{1}{2}MRa$

VP10.7.1 (a) $a_{\text{cm-}y} = \frac{8}{13}g$ (b) $T = \frac{5}{13}Mg$

VP10.7.2 (a) $a_{\text{cm-}x} = \frac{3}{5}g\sin\beta$ (b) $f = \frac{2}{5}Mg\sin\beta$ (c) $\tau = \frac{2}{5}MgR\sin\beta$

VP10.7.3 (a) $a_{\text{cm}} = \frac{1}{3}g$, downward (b) $\alpha_z = \frac{4g}{3R}$

VP10.7.4 (a) $f = \frac{1}{3}Mg\sin\beta$ (b) $\beta_{\text{critical}} = \arctan 3\mu_s$

VP10.12.1 (a) $\frac{9}{10}\omega_A$ (b) $\frac{81}{85} = 0.953$

VP10.12.2 (a) $\frac{7}{10}\omega_A$ (b) $\frac{49}{85} = 0.576$

VP10.12.3 (a) 0.80 rad/s (b) $0.0020 = 1/500$

VP10.12.4 (a) MRv before, $MRv/2$ after (b) $\omega = \dfrac{3v}{4R}$ (c) $\frac{5}{8}$

Bridging Problem

(a) $h = \dfrac{2R}{5}$

(b) $\frac{5}{7}$ of the speed it had just after the hit

? This Roman aqueduct uses the principle of the arch to sustain the weight of the structure and the water it carries. Are the blocks that make up the arch being (i) compressed, (ii) stretched, (iii) a combination of these, or (iv) neither compressed nor stretched?

11 Equilibrium and Elasticity

We've devoted a good deal of effort to understanding why and how objects accelerate in response to the forces that act on them. But very often we're interested in making sure that objects *don't* accelerate. Any building, from a multistory skyscraper to the humblest shed, must be designed so that it won't topple over. Similar concerns arise with a suspension bridge, a ladder leaning against a wall, or a crane hoisting a bucket full of concrete.

An object that can be modeled as a *particle* is in equilibrium whenever the vector sum of the forces acting on it is zero. But for the situations we've just described, that condition isn't enough. If forces act at different points on an extended object, an additional requirement must be satisfied to ensure that the object has no tendency to *rotate:* The sum of the *torques* about any point must be zero. This requirement is based on the principles of rotational dynamics developed in Chapter 10. We can compute the torque due to the weight of an object by using the concept of center of gravity, which we introduce in this chapter.

Idealized rigid bodies don't bend, stretch, or squash when forces act on them. But all real materials are *elastic* and do deform to some extent. Elastic properties of materials are tremendously important. You want the wings of an airplane to be able to bend a little, but you'd rather not have them break off. Tendons in your limbs need to stretch when you exercise, but they must return to their relaxed lengths when you stop. Many of the necessities of everyday life, from rubber bands to suspension bridges, depend on the elastic properties of materials. In this chapter we'll introduce the concepts of *stress, strain,* and *elastic modulus* and a simple principle called *Hooke's law,* which helps us predict what deformations will occur when forces are applied to a real (not perfectly rigid) object.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **11.1** The conditions that must be satisfied for an object or structure to be in equilibrium.
- **11.2** What the center of gravity of an object is and how it relates to the object's stability.
- **11.3** How to solve problems that involve rigid bodies in equilibrium.
- **11.4** How to analyze situations in which an object is deformed by tension, compression, pressure, or shear.
- **11.5** What happens when an object is stretched so much that it deforms or breaks.

You'll need to review...

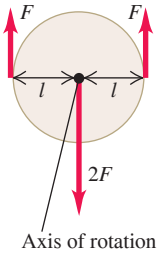
- **4.2, 5.1** Newton's first law.
- **5.3** Static friction.
- **6.3, 7.2** Hooke's law for an ideal spring.
- **8.5** Center of mass.
- **10.2, 10.5** Torque, rotational dynamics, and angular momentum.

11.1 CONDITIONS FOR EQUILIBRIUM

We learned in Sections 4.2 and 5.1 that a particle is in *equilibrium*—that is, the particle does not accelerate—in an inertial frame of reference if the vector sum of all the forces acting on the particle is zero, $\sum\vec{F} = \mathbf{0}$. For an *extended* object, the equivalent statement is that the center of mass of the object has zero acceleration if the vector sum of all external

Figure **11.1** To be in static equilibrium, an object at rest must satisfy *both* conditions for equilibrium: It can have no tendency to accelerate as a whole or to start rotating.

(a) This object is in static equilibrium.

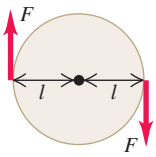


Equilibrium conditions:

First condition satisfied: Net force = 0, so object at rest has no tendency to start moving as a whole.

Second condition satisfied: Net torque about the axis = 0, so object at rest has no tendency to start rotating.

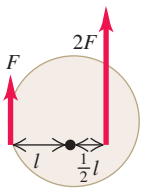
(b) This object has no tendency to accelerate as a whole, but it has a tendency to start rotating.



First condition satisfied: Net force = 0, so object at rest has no tendency to start moving as a whole.

Second condition NOT satisfied: There is a net clockwise torque about the axis, so object at rest will start rotating clockwise.

(c) This object has a tendency to accelerate as a whole but no tendency to start rotating.



First condition NOT satisfied: There is a net upward force, so object at rest will start moving upward.

Second condition satisfied: Net torque about the axis = 0, so object at rest has no tendency to start rotating.

forces acting on the object is zero, as discussed in Section 8.5. This is often called the **first condition for equilibrium:**

First condition for equilibrium: For the center of mass of an object at rest to remain at rest ... $\sum \vec{F} = \mathbf{0}$ ... the *net external force* on the object must be *zero*. (11.1)

A second condition for an extended object to be in equilibrium is that the object must have no tendency to *rotate*. A rigid body that, in an inertial frame, is not rotating about a certain point has zero angular momentum about that point. If it is not to start rotating about that point, the rate of change of angular momentum must *also* be zero. From the discussion in Section 10.5, particularly Eq. (10.29), this means that the sum of torques due to all the external forces acting on the object must be zero. A rigid body in equilibrium can't have any tendency to start rotating about *any* point, so the sum of external torques must be zero about any point. This is the **second condition for equilibrium:**

Second condition for equilibrium: For a nonrotating object to remain nonrotating ... $\sum \vec{\tau} = \mathbf{0}$ ...the *net external torque around any point* on the object must be *zero*. (11.2)

In this chapter we'll apply the first and second conditions for equilibrium to situations in which a rigid body is at rest (no translation or rotation). Such a rigid body is said to be in **static equilibrium** (**Fig. 11.1**). But the same conditions apply to a rigid body in uniform *translational* motion (without rotation), such as an airplane in flight with constant speed, direction, and altitude. Such a rigid body is in equilibrium but is not static.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 11.1 Which situation satisfies both the first and second conditions for equilibrium? (i) A seagull gliding at a constant angle below the horizontal and at a constant speed; (ii) an automobile crankshaft turning at an increasing angular speed in the engine of a parked car; (iii) a thrown baseball that does not rotate as it sails through the air.

ANSWER (i) Situation (i) satisfies both equilibrium conditions because the seagull has zero acceleration (so $\sum \vec{F} = \mathbf{0}$) and no tendency to start rotating (so $\sum \vec{\tau} = \mathbf{0}$). Situation (ii) satisfies the first condition because the crankshaft as a whole does not accelerate through space, but it does not satisfy the second condition; the crankshaft has an angular acceleration, so $\sum \vec{\tau}$ is not zero. Situation (iii) satisfies the second condition (there is no tendency to rotate) but not the first one; the baseball accelerates in its flight (due to gravity and air resistance), so $\sum \vec{F}$ is not zero.

11.2 CENTER OF GRAVITY

In most equilibrium problems, one of the forces acting on the object is its weight. We need to be able to calculate the *torque* of this force. The weight doesn't act at a single point; it is distributed over the entire object. But we can always calculate the torque due to the object's weight by assuming that the entire force of gravity (weight) is concentrated at a point called the **center of gravity** (abbreviated "cg"). The acceleration due to gravity decreases with altitude; but if we can ignore this variation over the vertical dimension of the object, then the object's center of gravity is identical to its *center of mass* (abbreviated "cm"), which we defined in Section 8.5. We stated this result without proof in Section 10.2, and now we'll prove it.

First let's review the definition of the center of mass. For a collection of particles with masses m_1, m_2, ... and coordinates (x_1, y_1, z_1), (x_2, y_2, z_2), ..., the coordinates x_{cm}, y_{cm}, and z_{cm} of the center of mass of the collection are

$$x_{cm} = \frac{m_1x_1 + m_2x_2 + m_3x_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i x_i}{\sum_i m_i}$$

$$y_{\text{cm}} = \frac{m_1 y_1 + m_2 y_2 + m_3 y_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i y_i}{\sum_i m_i} \quad \text{(center of mass)} \qquad (11.3)$$

$$z_{\text{cm}} = \frac{m_1 z_1 + m_2 z_2 + m_3 z_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i z_i}{\sum_i m_i}$$

Also, x_{cm}, y_{cm}, and z_{cm} are the components of the position vector $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ of the center of mass, so Eqs. (11.3) are equivalent to the vector equation

Position vector of center of mass of a system of particles

$$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{m_1\vec{r}_1 + m_2\vec{r}_2 + m_3\vec{r}_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_i \vec{r}_i}{\sum_i m_i} \qquad (11.4)$$

Position vectors of individual particles

Masses of individual particles

Now consider the gravitational torque on an object of arbitrary shape (**Fig. 11.2**). We assume that the acceleration due to gravity $\vec{g}$ is the same at every point in the object. Every particle in the object experiences a gravitational force, and the total weight of the object is the vector sum of a large number of parallel forces. A typical particle has mass m_i and weight $\vec{w}_i = m_i\vec{g}$. If $\vec{r}_i$ is the position vector of this particle with respect to an arbitrary origin O, then the torque vector $\vec{\tau}_i$ of the weight $\vec{w}_i$ with respect to O is, from Eq. (10.3),

$$\vec{\tau}_i = \vec{r}_i \times \vec{w}_i = \vec{r}_i \times m_i\vec{g}$$

The *total* torque due to the gravitational forces on all the particles is

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{\tau} &= \sum_i \vec{\tau}_i = \vec{r}_1 \times m_1\vec{g} + \vec{r}_2 \times m_2\vec{g} + \cdots \\ &= (m_1\vec{r}_1 + m_2\vec{r}_2 + \cdots) \times \vec{g} \\ &= \left(\sum_i m_i\vec{r}_i\right) \times \vec{g}\end{aligned}$$

When we multiply and divide this result by the total mass of the object,

$$M = m_1 + m_2 + \cdots = \sum_i m_i$$

we get

$$\vec{\tau} = \frac{m_1\vec{r}_1 + m_2\vec{r}_2 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + \cdots} \times M\vec{g} = \frac{\sum_i m_i\vec{r}_i}{\sum_i m_i} \times M\vec{g}$$

The fraction in this equation is just the position vector $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ of the center of mass, with components x_{cm}, y_{cm}, and z_{cm}, as given by Eq. (11.4), and $M\vec{g}$ is equal to the total weight $\vec{w}$ of the object. Thus

$$\vec{\tau} = \vec{r}_{\text{cm}} \times M\vec{g} = \vec{r}_{\text{cm}} \times \vec{w} \qquad (11.5)$$

The total gravitational torque, given by Eq. (11.5), is the same as though the total weight $\vec{w}$ were acting at the position $\vec{r}_{\text{cm}}$ of the center of mass, which we also call the *center of gravity*. **If $\vec{g}$ has the same value at all points on an object, its center of gravity**

Figure **11.2** The center of gravity (cg) and center of mass (cm) of an extended object.

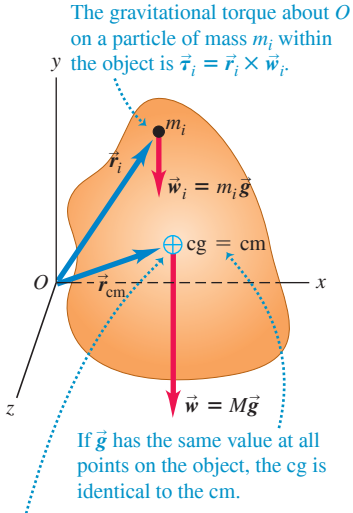


Figure 11.3 The acceleration due to gravity at the bottom of the 452-m-tall Petronas Towers in Malaysia is only 0.014% greater than at the top. The center of gravity of the towers is only about 2 cm below the center of mass.

is identical to its center of mass. Note, however, that the center of mass is defined independently of any gravitational effect.

While the value of $\vec{g}$ varies somewhat with elevation, the variation is extremely slight (**Fig. 11.3**). We'll assume throughout this chapter that the center of gravity and center of mass are identical unless explicitly stated otherwise.

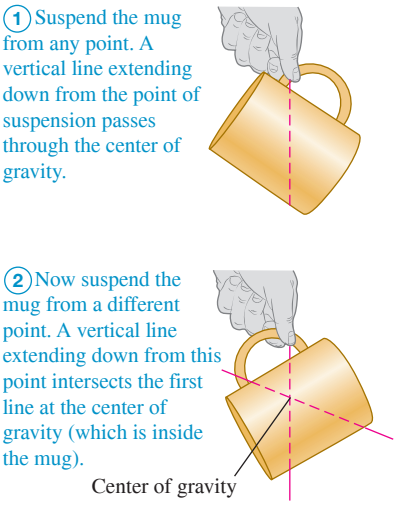
Finding and Using the Center of Gravity

We can often use symmetry considerations to locate the center of gravity of an object, just as we did for the center of mass. The center of gravity of a homogeneous sphere, cube, or rectangular plate is at its geometric center. The center of gravity of a right circular cylinder or cone is on its axis of symmetry.

For an object with a more complex shape, we can sometimes locate the center of gravity by thinking of the object as being made of symmetrical pieces. For example, we could approximate the human body as a collection of solid cylinders, with a sphere for the head. Then we can locate the center of gravity of the combination with Eqs. (11.3), letting m_1, m_2, . . . be the masses of the individual pieces and (x_1, y_1, z_1), (x_2, y_2, z_2), . . . be the coordinates of their centers of gravity.

When an object in rotational equilibrium and acted on by gravity is supported or suspended at a single point, the center of gravity is always at or directly above or below the point of suspension. If it were anywhere else, the weight would have a torque with respect to the point of suspension, and the object could not be in rotational equilibrium. **Figure 11.4** shows an application of this idea.

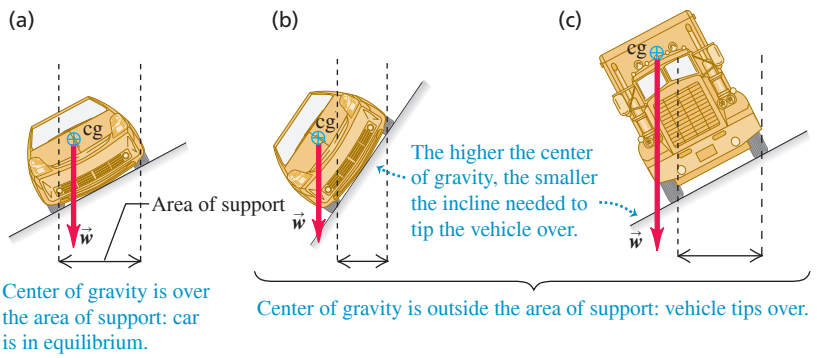
Figure 11.4 Finding the center of gravity of an irregularly shaped object—in this case, a coffee mug.



Using the same reasoning, we can see that an object supported at several points must have its center of gravity somewhere within the area bounded by the supports. This explains why a car can drive on a straight but slanted road if the slant angle is relatively small (**Fig. 11.5a**) but will tip over if the angle is too steep (Fig. 11.5b). The truck in Fig. 11.5c has a higher center of gravity than the car and will tip over on a shallower incline.

The lower the center of gravity and the larger the area of support, the harder it is to overturn an object. Four-legged animals such as deer and horses have a large area of support bounded by their legs; hence they are naturally stable and need only small feet or hooves. Animals that walk on two legs, such as humans and birds, need relatively large feet to give them a reasonable area of support. If a two-legged animal holds its body approximately horizontal, like a chicken or the dinosaur *Tyrannosaurus rex,* it must perform a balancing act as it walks to keep its center of gravity over the foot that is on the ground. A chicken does this by moving its head; *T. rex* probably did it by moving its massive tail.

Figure 11.5 In (a) the center of gravity is within the area bounded by the supports, and the car is in equilibrium. The car in (b) and the truck in (c) will tip over because their centers of gravity lie outside the area of support.



EXAMPLE 11.1 Walking the plank

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

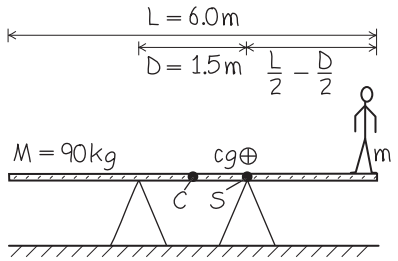
A uniform plank of length $L = 6.0$ m and mass $M = 90$ kg rests on sawhorses separated by $D = 1.5$ m and equidistant from the center of the plank. Cousin Throckmorton wants to stand on the right-hand end of the plank. If the plank is to remain at rest, how massive can Throckmorton be?

IDENTIFY and SET UP To just balance, Throckmorton's mass m must be such that the center of gravity of the plank–Throcky system is directly over the right-hand sawhorse (**Fig. 11.6**). We take the origin at C, the geometric center and center of gravity of the plank, and take the positive x-axis horizontally to the right. Then the centers of gravity of the plank and Throcky are at $x_P = 0$ and $x_T = L/2 = 3.0$ m, respectively, and the right-hand sawhorse is at $x_S = D/2$. We'll use Eqs. (11.3) to locate the center of gravity x_{cg} of the plank–Throcky system.

EXECUTE From the first of Eqs. (11.3),

$$x_{cg} = \frac{M(0) + m(L/2)}{M + m} = \frac{m}{M + m}\frac{L}{2}$$

Figure 11.6 Our sketch for this problem.



We set $x_{cg} = x_S$ and solve for m:

$$\frac{m}{M + m}\frac{L}{2} = \frac{D}{2}$$

$$mL = (M + m)D$$

$$m = M\frac{D}{L - D} = (90\text{ kg})\frac{1.5\text{ m}}{6.0\text{ m} - 1.5\text{ m}} = 30\text{ kg}$$

EVALUATE As a check, let's repeat the calculation with the origin at the right-hand sawhorse. Now $x_S = 0$, $x_P = -D/2$, and $x_T = (L/2) - (D/2)$, and we require $x_{cg} = x_S = 0$:

$$x_{cg} = \frac{M(-D/2) + m[(L/2) - (D/2)]}{M + m} = 0$$

$$m = \frac{MD/2}{(L/2) - (D/2)} = M\frac{D}{L - D} = 30\text{ kg}$$

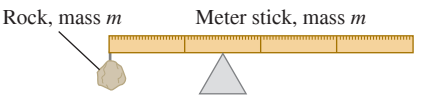
The result doesn't depend on our choice of origin.

A 60 kg adult could stand only halfway between the right-hand sawhorse and the end of the plank. Can you see why?

KEYCONCEPT If an extended object supported at two or more points is to be in equilibrium, its center of gravity must be somewhere within the area bounded by the supports. If the object is supported at only one point, its center of gravity must be above that point.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 11.2 A rock is attached to the left end of a uniform meter stick that has the same mass as the rock. In order for the combination of rock and meter stick to balance atop the triangular object in **Fig. 11.7**, how far from the left end of the stick should the triangular object be placed? (i) Less than 0.25 m; (ii) 0.25 m; (iii) between 0.25 m and 0.50 m; (iv) 0.50 m; (v) more than 0.50 m.

Figure 11.7 At what point will the meter stick with rock attached be in balance?



ANSWER **(ii)** In equilibrium, the center of gravity must be at the point of support. Since the rock and meter stick have the same mass and hence the same weight, the center of gravity of the system is midway between their respective centers. The center of gravity of the meter stick alone is 0.50 m from the left end (that is, at the middle of the meter stick), so the center of gravity of the combination of rock and meter stick is 0.25 m from the left end.

11.3 SOLVING RIGID-BODY EQUILIBRIUM PROBLEMS

There are just two key conditions for rigid-body equilibrium: The vector sum of the forces on the object must be zero, and the sum of the torques about any point must be zero. To keep things simple, we'll restrict our attention to situations in which we can treat all forces as acting in a single plane, which we'll call the xy-plane. Then we need consider only the x- and y-components of force in Eq. (11.1), and in Eq. (11.2) we need consider only the z-components of torque (perpendicular to the plane). The first and second conditions for equilibrium are then

$$\Sigma F_x = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \Sigma F_y = 0 \quad \text{(first condition for equilibrium, forces in } xy\text{-plane)}$$

$$\Sigma \tau_z = 0 \quad \text{(second condition for equilibrium, forces in } xy\text{-plane)} \tag{11.6}$$

CAUTION **Choosing the reference point for calculating torques** In equilibrium problems, the choice of reference point for calculating torques in $\Sigma\tau_z$ is completely arbitrary. But once you make your choice, you must use the *same* point to calculate *all* the torques on an object. Choose the point so as to simplify the calculations as much as possible.

The challenge is to apply these simple conditions to specific problems. Problem-Solving Strategy 11.1 is very similar to the suggestions given in Section 5.1 for the equilibrium of a particle. You should compare it with Problem-Solving Strategy 10.1 (Section 10.2) for rotational dynamics problems.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 11.1 Equilibrium of a Rigid Body

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* The first and second conditions for equilibrium ($\Sigma F_x = 0$, $\Sigma F_y = 0$, and $\Sigma \tau_z = 0$) are applicable to any rigid body that is not accelerating in space and not rotating.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Sketch the physical situation and identify the object in equilibrium to be analyzed. Sketch the object accurately; do *not* represent it as a point. Include dimensions.
2. Draw a free-body diagram showing all forces acting *on* the object. Show the point on the object at which each force acts.
3. Choose coordinate axes and specify their direction. Specify a positive direction of rotation for torques. Represent forces in terms of their components with respect to the chosen axes.
4. Choose a reference point about which to compute torques. Choose wisely; you can eliminate from your torque equation any force whose line of action goes through the point you choose. The object doesn't actually have to be pivoted about an axis through the reference point.

EXECUTE *the solution* as follows:

1. Write equations expressing the equilibrium conditions. Remember that $\Sigma F_x = 0$, $\Sigma F_y = 0$, and $\Sigma \tau_z = 0$ are *separate* equations. You can compute the torque of a force by finding the torque of each of its components separately, each with its appropriate lever arm and sign, and adding the results.
2. To obtain as many equations as you have unknowns, you may need to compute torques with respect to two or more reference points; choose them wisely, too.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Check your results by writing $\Sigma \tau_z = 0$ with respect to a different reference point. You should get the same answers.

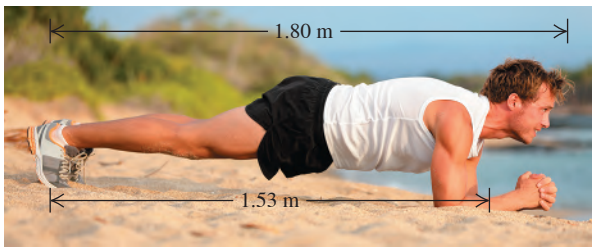
EXAMPLE 11.2 Locating your center of gravity while you work out

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

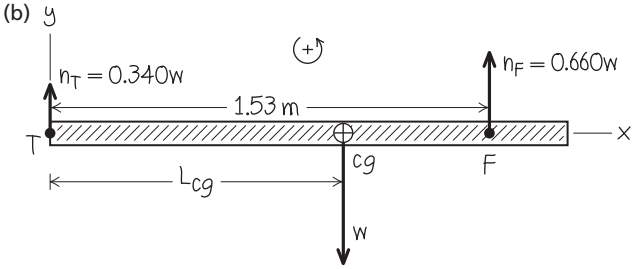
The *plank* (**Fig. 11.8a**) is a great way to strengthen abdominal, back, and shoulder muscles. You can also use this exercise position to locate your center of gravity. Holding plank position with a scale under his toes and another under his forearms, one athlete measured that 66.0% of his weight was supported by his forearms and 34.0% by his toes. (That is, the total normal forces on his forearms and toes were $0.660w$ and $0.340w$, respectively, where w is the athlete's weight.) He is 1.80 m tall, and in plank position the distance from his toes to the middle of his forearms is 1.53 m. How far from his toes is his center of gravity?

Figure 11.8 An athlete in plank position.

(a)



(b)



IDENTIFY and SET UP We can use the two conditions for equilibrium, Eqs. (11.6), for an athlete at rest. So both the net force and net torque on the athlete are zero. Figure 11.8b shows a free-body diagram, including x- and y-axes and our convention that counterclockwise torques are positive. The weight w acts at the center of gravity, which is between the two supports (as it must be; see Section 11.2). Our target variable is the distance L_{cg}, the lever arm of the weight with respect to the toes T, so it is wise to take torques with respect to T. The torque due to the weight is negative (it tends to cause a clockwise rotation around T), and the torque due to the upward normal force at the forearms F is positive (it tends to cause a counterclockwise rotation around T).

EXECUTE The first condition for equilibrium is satisfied (Fig. 11.8b): $\Sigma F_x = 0$ because there are no x-components and $\Sigma F_y = 0$ because $0.340w + 0.660w + (-w) = 0$. We write the torque equation and solve for L_{cg}:

$$\Sigma \tau_z = 0.340w(0) - wL_{cg} + 0.660w(1.53\text{ m}) = 0$$
$$L_{cg} = 1.01\text{ m}$$

EVALUATE The center of gravity is slightly below our athlete's navel (as it is for most people), closer to his head than to his toes. It's also closer to his forearms than to his toes, which is why his forearms support most of his weight. You can check our result by writing the torque equation about the forearms F. You'll find that his center of gravity is 0.52 m from his forearms, or $(1.53\text{ m}) - (0.52\text{ m}) = 1.01\text{ m}$ from his toes.

KEYCONCEPT For an extended object to be in equilibrium, both the net external *force* and the net external *torque* on the object must be zero. The weight of the object acts at its center of gravity.

EXAMPLE 11.3 Will the ladder slip?

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Sir Lancelot, who weighs 800 N, is assaulting a castle by climbing a uniform ladder that is 5.0 m long and weighs 180 N (**Fig. 11.9a**). The bottom of the ladder rests on a ledge and leans across the moat in equilibrium against a frictionless, vertical castle wall. The ladder makes an angle of 53.1° with the horizontal. Lancelot pauses one-third of the way up the ladder. (a) Find the normal and friction forces on the base of the ladder. (b) Find the minimum coefficient of static friction needed to prevent slipping at the base. (c) Find the magnitude and direction of the contact force on the base of the ladder.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The ladder–Lancelot system is stationary, so we can use the two conditions for equilibrium to solve part (a). In part (b), we need the relationship among the static friction force, coefficient of static friction, and normal force (see Section 5.3). In part (c), the contact force is the vector sum of the normal and friction forces acting at the base of the ladder, found in part (a). Figure 11.9b shows the free-body diagram, with x- and y-directions as shown and with counterclockwise torques taken to be positive. The ladder's center of gravity is at its geometric center. Lancelot's 800 N weight acts at a point one-third of the way up the ladder.

The wall exerts only a normal force n_1 on the top of the ladder. The forces on the base are an upward normal force n_2 and a static friction force f_s, which must point to the right to prevent slipping. The magnitudes n_2 and f_s are the target variables in part (a). From Eq. (5.4), these magnitudes are related by $f_s \leq \mu_s n_2$; the coefficient of static friction μ_s is the target variable in part (b).

EXECUTE (a) From Eqs. (11.6), the first condition for equilibrium gives

$$\Sigma F_x = f_s + (-n_1) = 0$$
$$\Sigma F_y = n_2 + (-800\ \text{N}) + (-180\ \text{N}) = 0$$

These are two equations for the three unknowns n_1, n_2, and f_s. The second equation gives $n_2 = 980$ N. To obtain a third equation, we use the second condition for equilibrium. We take torques about point B, about which n_2 and f_s have no torque. The 53.1° angle creates a 3-4-5 right triangle, so from Fig. 11.9b the lever arm for the ladder's weight is 1.5 m, the lever arm for Lancelot's weight is 1.0 m, and the lever arm for n_1 is 4.0 m. The torque equation for point B is then

$$\Sigma \tau_B = n_1(4.0\ \text{m}) - (180\ \text{N})(1.5\ \text{m}) - (800\ \text{N})(1.0\ \text{m}) + n_2(0) + f_s(0) = 0$$

Solving for n_1, we get $n_1 = 268$ N. We substitute this into the $\Sigma F_x = 0$ equation and get $f_s = 268$ N.

(b) The static friction force f_s cannot exceed $\mu_s n_2$, so the *minimum* coefficient of static friction to prevent slipping is

$$(\mu_s)_{\text{min}} = \frac{f_s}{n_2} = \frac{268\ \text{N}}{980\ \text{N}} = 0.27$$

(c) The components of the contact force $\vec{F}_B$ at the base are the static friction force f_s and the normal force n_2, so

$$\vec{F}_B = f_s\hat{\imath} + n_2\hat{\jmath} = (268\ \text{N})\hat{\imath} + (980\ \text{N})\hat{\jmath}$$

The magnitude and direction of $\vec{F}_B$ (Fig. 11.9c) are

$$F_B = \sqrt{(268\ \text{N})^2 + (980\ \text{N})^2} = 1020\ \text{N}$$
$$\theta = \arctan\frac{980\ \text{N}}{268\ \text{N}} = 75°$$

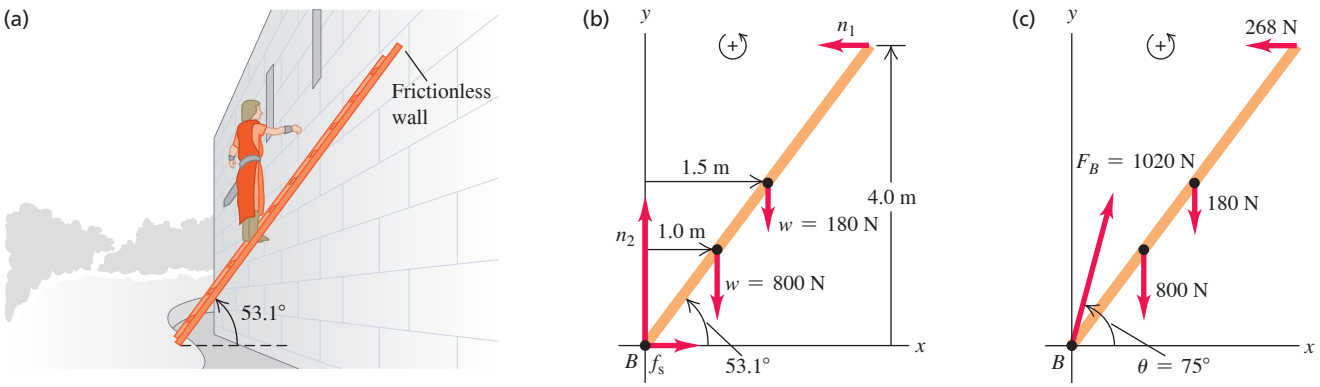
EVALUATE As Fig. 11.9c shows, the contact force $\vec{F}_B$ is *not* directed along the length of the ladder. Can you show that if $\vec{F}_B$ were directed along the ladder, there would be a net counterclockwise torque with respect to the top of the ladder, and equilibrium would be impossible?

As Lancelot climbs higher on the ladder, the lever arm and torque of his weight about B increase. This increases the values of n_1, f_s, and the required friction coefficient $(\mu_s)_{\text{min}}$, so the ladder is more and more likely to slip as he climbs (see Exercise 11.12). A simple way to make slipping less likely is to use a larger ladder angle (say, 75° rather than 53.1°). This decreases the lever arms with respect to B of the weights of the ladder and Lancelot and increases the lever arm of n_1, all of which decrease the required friction force.

If we had assumed friction on the wall as well as on the floor, the problem would be impossible to solve by using the equilibrium conditions alone. (Try it!) The difficulty is that it's no longer adequate to treat the object as being perfectly rigid. Another problem of this kind is a four-legged table; there's no way to use the equilibrium conditions alone to find the force on each separate leg.

KEYCONCEPT In an equilibrium problem, you can calculate torques around any point you choose. The torque equation will not include any force whose line of action goes through your chosen point, so choosing the point wisely can simplify your calculations.

Figure **11.9** (a) Sir Lancelot pauses a third of the way up the ladder, fearing it will slip. (b) Free-body diagram for the system of Sir Lancelot and the ladder. (c) The contact force at B is the superposition of the normal force and the static friction force.



EXAMPLE 11.4 Equilibrium and pumping iron

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Figure 11.10a shows a horizontal human arm lifting a dumbbell. The forearm is in equilibrium under the action of the weight $\vec{w}$ of the dumbbell, the tension $\vec{T}$ in the tendon connected to the biceps muscle, and the force $\vec{E}$ exerted on the forearm by the upper arm at the elbow joint. We ignore the weight of the forearm itself. (For clarity, in the drawing we've exaggerated the distance from the elbow to the point A where the tendon is attached.) Given the weight w and the angle θ between the tension force and the horizontal, find T and the two components of $\vec{E}$ (three unknown scalar quantities in all).

IDENTIFY and SET UP The system is at rest, so we use the conditions for equilibrium. We represent $\vec{T}$ and $\vec{E}$ in terms of their components (Fig. 11.10b). We guess that the directions of E_x and E_y are as shown; the signs of E_x and E_y as given by our solution will tell us the actual directions. Our target variables are T, E_x, and E_y.

EXECUTE To find T, we take torques about the elbow joint so that the torque equation does not contain E_x, E_y, or T_x, then solve for T_y and hence T:

$$\Sigma\tau_{\text{elbow}} = Lw - DT_y = 0$$

$$T_y = \frac{Lw}{D} = T\sin\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad T = \frac{Lw}{D\sin\theta}$$

To find E_x and E_y, we use the first conditions for equilibrium:

$$\Sigma F_x = T_x + (-E_x) = 0$$

$$E_x = T_x = T\cos\theta = \frac{Lw}{D\sin\theta}\cos\theta = \frac{Lw}{D}\cot\theta = \frac{Lw}{D}\frac{D}{h} = \frac{Lw}{h}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = T_y + E_y + (-w) = 0$$

$$E_y = w - \frac{Lw}{D} = -\frac{(L-D)w}{D}$$

The negative sign for E_y tells us that it should actually point *down* in Fig. 11.10b.

EVALUATE We can check our results for E_x and E_y by taking torques about points A and B, about both of which T has zero torque:

$$\Sigma\tau_A = (L-D)w + DE_y = 0 \qquad \text{so} \qquad E_y = -\frac{(L-D)w}{D}$$

$$\Sigma\tau_B = Lw - hE_x = 0 \qquad \text{so} \qquad E_x = \frac{Lw}{h}$$

As a realistic example, take $w = 200$ N, $D = 0.050$ m, $L = 0.30$ m, and $\theta = 80°$, so that $h = D\tan\theta = (0.050\text{ m})(5.67) = 0.28$ m. Using our results for T, E_x, and E_y, we find

$$T = \frac{Lw}{D\sin\theta} = \frac{(0.30\text{ m})(200\text{ N})}{(0.050\text{ m})(0.98)} = 1220\text{ N}$$

$$E_y = -\frac{(L-D)w}{D} = -\frac{(0.30\text{ m} - 0.050\text{ m})(200\text{ N})}{0.050\text{ m}} = -1000\text{ N}$$

$$E_x = \frac{Lw}{h} = \frac{(0.30\text{ m})(200\text{ N})}{0.28\text{ m}} = 210\text{ N}$$

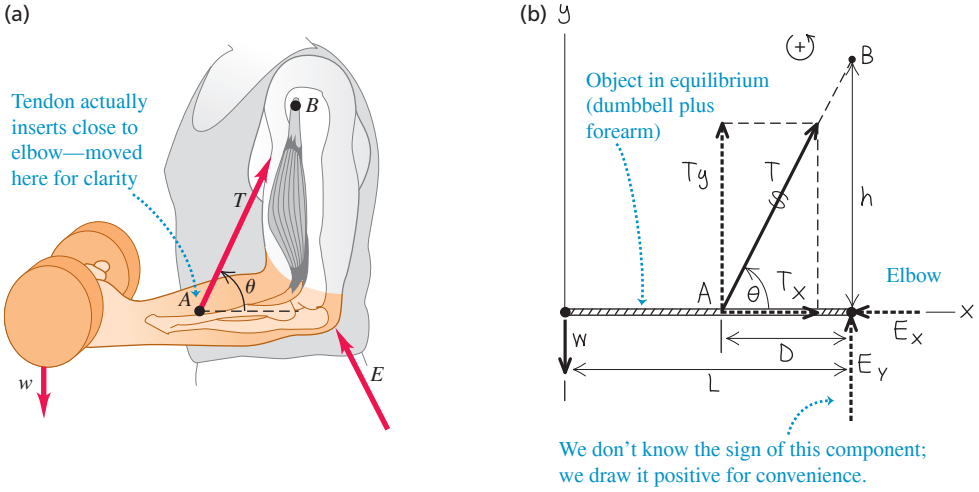
The magnitude of the force at the elbow is

$$E = \sqrt{E_x^2 + E_y^2} = 1020\text{ N}$$

Note that T and E are *much* larger than the 200 N weight of the dumbbell. A forearm weighs only about 20 N, so it was reasonable to ignore its weight.

KEYCONCEPT In a two-dimensional equilibrium problem, you have *three* equilibrium equations: two from the condition that the net external force is zero and one from the condition that the net external torque is zero. Use these equations to solve for the unknowns.

Figure 11.10 (a) The situation. (b) Our free-body diagram for the forearm. The weight of the forearm is ignored, and the distance D is greatly exaggerated for clarity.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 11.3 A metal advertising sign (weight w) for a specialty shop is suspended from the end of a horizontal rod of length L and negligible mass (**Fig. 11.11**). The rod is supported by a cable at an angle θ from the horizontal and by a hinge at point P. Rank the following force magnitudes in order from greatest to smallest: (i) the weight w of the sign; (ii) the tension in the cable; (iii) the vertical component of force exerted on the rod by the hinge at P.

ANSWER **(ii), (i), (iii)** This is the same situation described in Example 11.4, with the rod replacing the forearm, the hinge replacing the elbow, and the cable replacing the tendon. The only difference is that the cable attachment point is at the end of the rod, so the distances D and L are identical. From Example 11.4, the tension is

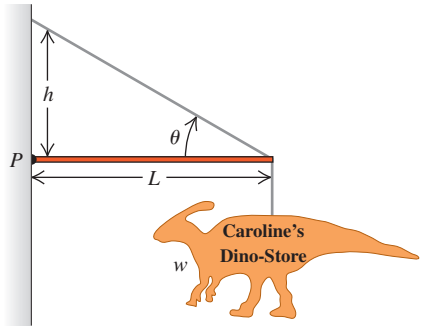
$$T = \frac{Lw}{L\sin\theta} = \frac{w}{\sin\theta}$$

Since $\sin\theta$ is less than 1, the tension T is greater than the weight w. The vertical component of the force exerted by the hinge is

$$E_y = -\frac{(L-L)w}{L} = 0$$

In this situation, the hinge exerts *no* vertical force. To see this, calculate torques around the right end of the horizontal rod: The only force that exerts a torque around this point is the vertical component of the hinge force, so this force component must be zero.

Figure **11.11** What are the tension in the diagonal cable and the vertical component of force exerted by the hinge at P?



11.4 STRESS, STRAIN, AND ELASTIC MODULI

The rigid body is a useful idealized model, but the stretching, squeezing, and twisting of real objects when forces are applied are often too important to ignore. **Figure 11.12** shows three examples. We want to study the relationship between the forces and deformations for each case.

You don't have to look far to find a deformable object; it's as plain as the nose on your face (**Fig. 11.13**). If you grasp the tip of your nose between your index finger and thumb, you'll find that the harder you pull your nose outward or push it inward, the more it stretches or compresses. Likewise, the harder you squeeze your index finger and thumb together, the more the tip of your nose compresses. If you try to twist the tip of your nose, you'll get a greater amount of twist if you apply stronger forces.

These observations illustrate a general rule. In each case you apply a **stress** to your nose; the amount of stress is a measure of the forces causing the deformation, on a "force per unit area" basis. And in each case the stress causes a deformation, or **strain.** More careful versions of the experiments with your nose suggest that for relatively small stresses, the resulting strain is proportional to the stress: The greater the deforming forces, the greater the resulting deformation. This proportionality is called **Hooke's law,** and the ratio of stress to strain is called the **elastic modulus:**

Measure of forces applied to deform an object

Hooke's law: $$\frac{\text{Stress}}{\text{Strain}} = \text{Elastic modulus}$$ (11.7)

Property of material of which object is made

Measure of how much deformation results from stress

Figure **11.13** When you pinch your nose, the force per area that you apply to your nose is called *stress*. The fractional change in the size of your nose (the change in size divided by the initial size) is called *strain*. The deformation is *elastic* because your nose springs back to its initial size when you stop pinching.

Figure **11.12** Three types of stress. (a) Guitar strings under *tensile stress,* being stretched by forces acting at their ends. (b) A diver under *bulk stress,* being squeezed from all sides by forces due to water pressure. (c) A ribbon under *shear stress,* being deformed and eventually cut by forces exerted by the scissors.

(a)

(b)

(c)

The value of the elastic modulus depends on what the object is made of but not its shape or size. If a material returns to its original state after the stress is removed, it is called **elastic;** Hooke's law is a special case of elastic behavior. If a material instead remains deformed after the stress is removed, it is called **plastic.** Here we'll consider elastic behavior only; we'll return to plastic behavior in Section 11.5.

We used one form of Hooke's law in Section 6.3: The elongation of an ideal spring is proportional to the stretching force. Remember that Hooke's "law" is not really a general law; it is valid over only a limited range of stresses. In Section 11.5 we'll see what happens beyond that limited range.

Tensile and Compressive Stress and Strain

The simplest elastic behavior to understand is the stretching of a bar, rod, or wire when its ends are pulled (Fig. 11.12a). **Figure 11.14** shows an object that initially has uniform cross-sectional area A and length l_0. We then apply forces of equal magnitude $F_\perp$ but opposite directions at the ends (this ensures that the object has no tendency to move left or right). We say that the object is in **tension.** We've already talked a lot about tension in ropes and strings; it's the same concept here. The subscript $\perp$ is a reminder that the forces act perpendicular to the cross section.

We define the **tensile stress** at the cross section as the ratio of the force $F_\perp$ to the cross-sectional area A:

$$\text{Tensile stress} = \frac{F_\perp}{A} \tag{11.8}$$

This is a *scalar* quantity because $F_\perp$ is the *magnitude* of the force. The SI unit of stress is the **pascal** (abbreviated Pa and named for the 17th-century French scientist and philosopher Blaise Pascal). Equation (11.8) shows that 1 pascal equals 1 newton per square meter (N/m^2):

$$1 \text{ pascal} = 1 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ N/m}^2$$

The units of stress are the same as those of *pressure,* which we'll encounter often in later chapters.

Under tension the object in Fig. 11.14 stretches to a length $l = l_0 + \Delta l$. The elongation Δl does not occur only at the ends; every part of the object stretches in the same proportion. The **tensile strain** of the object equals the fractional change in length, which is the ratio of the elongation Δl to the original length l_0:

$$\text{Tensile strain} = \frac{l - l_0}{l_0} = \frac{\Delta l}{l_0} \tag{11.9}$$

Tensile strain is stretch per unit length. It is a ratio of two lengths, always measured in the same units, and so is a pure (dimensionless) number with no units.

Experiment shows that for a sufficiently small tensile stress, stress and strain are proportional, as in Eq. (11.7). The corresponding elastic modulus is called **Young's modulus,** denoted by Y:

Young's modulus for tension

$$Y = \frac{\text{Tensile stress}}{\text{Tensile strain}} = \frac{F_\perp/A}{\Delta l/l_0} = \frac{F_\perp}{A}\frac{l_0}{\Delta l} \tag{11.10}$$

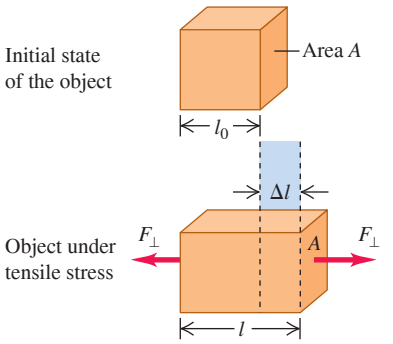
Force applied perpendicular to cross section

Original length (see Fig. 11.14)

Cross-sectional area of object

Elongation (see Fig. 11.14)

Figure **11.14** An object in tension. The net force on the object is zero, but the object deforms. The tensile stress (the ratio of the force to the cross-sectional area) produces a tensile strain (the elongation divided by the initial length). The elongation Δl is exaggerated for clarity.



Tensile stress $= \frac{F_\perp}{A}$ Tensile strain $= \frac{\Delta l}{l_0}$

BIO APPLICATION Young's Modulus of a Tendon The anterior tibial tendon connects your foot to the large muscle that runs along the side of your shinbone. (You can feel this tendon at the front of your ankle.) Measurements show that this tendon has a Young's modulus of 1.2×10^9 Pa, much less than for the metals listed in Table 11.1. Hence this tendon stretches substantially (up to 2.5% of its length) in response to the stresses experienced in walking and running.

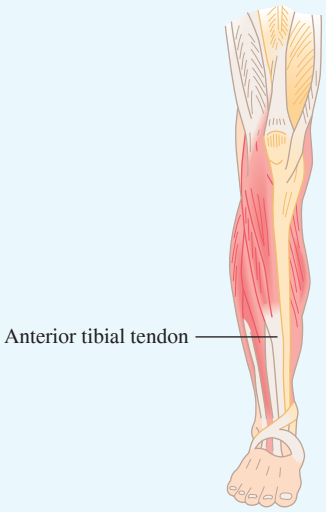


TABLE 11.1 Approximate Elastic Moduli

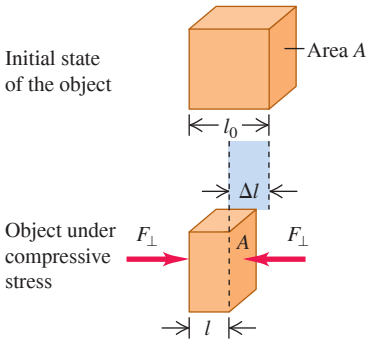
Material	Young's Modulus, Y (Pa)	Bulk Modulus, B (Pa)	Shear Modulus, S (Pa)
Aluminum	7.0×10^{10}	7.5×10^{10}	2.5×10^{10}
Brass	9.0×10^{10}	6.0×10^{10}	3.5×10^{10}
Copper	11×10^{10}	14×10^{10}	4.4×10^{10}
Iron	21×10^{10}	16×10^{10}	7.7×10^{10}
Lead	1.6×10^{10}	4.1×10^{10}	0.6×10^{10}
Nickel	21×10^{10}	17×10^{10}	7.8×10^{10}
Silicone rubber	0.001×10^{10}	0.2×10^{10}	0.0002×10^{10}
Steel	20×10^{10}	16×10^{10}	7.5×10^{10}
Tendon (typical)	0.12×10^{10}	—	—

Since strain is a pure number, the units of Young's modulus are the same as those of stress: force per unit area. **Table 11.1** lists some typical values. (This table also gives values of two other elastic moduli that we'll discuss later in this chapter.) A material with a large value of Y is relatively unstretchable; a large stress is required for a given strain. For example, the value of Y for cast steel (2×10^{11} Pa) is much larger than that for a tendon (1.2×10^{9} Pa).

When the forces on the ends of a bar are pushes rather than pulls (**Fig. 11.15**), the bar is in **compression** and the stress is a **compressive stress.** The **compressive strain** of an object in compression is defined in the same way as the tensile strain, but Δl has the opposite direction. Hooke's law and Eq. (11.10) are valid for compression as well as tension if the compressive stress is not too great. For many materials, Young's modulus has the same value for both tensile and compressive stresses. Composite materials such as concrete and stone are an exception; they can withstand compressive stresses but fail under comparable tensile stresses. Stone was the primary building material used by ancient civilizations such as the Babylonians, Assyrians, and Romans, so their structures had to be designed to avoid tensile stresses. Hence they used arches in doorways and bridges, where the weight of the overlying material compresses the stones of the arch together and does not place them under tension.

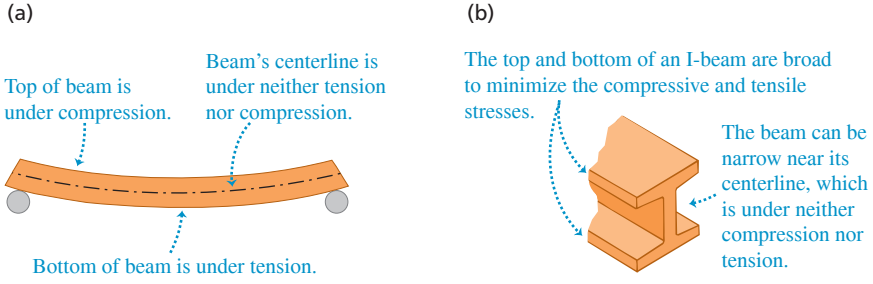
In many situations, objects can experience both tensile and compressive stresses at the same time. For example, a horizontal beam supported at each end sags under its own weight. As a result, the top of the beam is under compression while the bottom of the beam is under tension (**Fig. 11.16a**). To minimize the stress and hence the bending strain, the top and bottom of the beam are given a large cross-sectional area. There is neither compression nor tension along the centerline of the beam, so this part can have a small cross section; this helps keep the weight of the beam to a minimum and further helps reduce the stress. The result is an I-beam of the familiar shape used in building construction (Fig. 11.16b).

Figure **11.15** An object in compression. The compressive stress and compressive strain are defined in the same way as tensile stress and strain (see Fig. 11.14), except that Δl now denotes the distance that the object contracts.



Compressive stress $= \frac{F_\perp}{A}$ Compressive strain $= \frac{\Delta l}{l_0}$

Figure **11.16** (a) A beam supported at both ends is under both compression and tension. (b) The cross-sectional shape of an I-beam minimizes both stress and weight.



EXAMPLE 11.5 Tensile stress and strain

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A steel rod 2.0 m long has a cross-sectional area of 0.30 cm^2. It is hung by one end from a support, and a 550 kg milling machine is hung from its other end. Determine the stress on the rod and the resulting strain and elongation.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE The rod is under tension, so we can use Eq. (11.8) to find the tensile stress; Eq. (11.9), with the value of Young's modulus Y for steel from Table 11.1, to find the corresponding strain; and Eq. (11.10) to find the elongation Δl:

$$\text{Tensile stress} = \frac{F_\perp}{A} = \frac{(550\ \text{kg})(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)}{3.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2} = 1.8 \times 10^8\ \text{Pa}$$

$$\text{Strain} = \frac{\Delta l}{l_0} = \frac{\text{Stress}}{Y} = \frac{1.8 \times 10^8\ \text{Pa}}{20 \times 10^{10}\ \text{Pa}} = 9.0 \times 10^{-4}$$

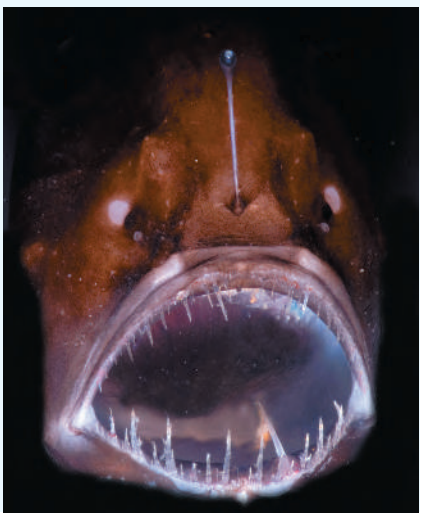
$$\text{Elongation} = \Delta l = (\text{Strain}) \times l_0 = (9.0 \times 10^{-4})(2.0\ \text{m}) = 0.0018\ \text{m} = 1.8\ \text{mm}$$

EVALUATE This small elongation, resulting from a load of over half a tonne, is a testament to the stiffness of steel. (We've ignored the relatively small stress due to the weight of the rod itself.)

KEYCONCEPT For an object under tensile or compressive stress, the stress equals the force exerted on either end of the object divided by the cross-sectional area of either end. The strain equals the fractional change in length. The ratio of stress to strain equals Young's modulus for the material of which the object is made.

CAUTION Pressure vs. force Unlike force, pressure has no intrinsic direction: The pressure on the surface of an immersed object is the same no matter how the surface is oriented. Hence pressure is a *scalar* quantity, not a vector quantity.

BIO APPLICATION Bulk Stress on an Anglerfish The anglerfish (*Melanocetus johnsonii*) is found in oceans throughout the world at depths as great as 1000 m, where the pressure (that is, the bulk stress) is about 100 atmospheres. Anglerfish are able to withstand such stress because they have no internal air spaces, unlike fish found in the upper ocean, where pressures are lower. The largest anglerfish are about 12 cm long.



Bulk Stress and Strain

When a scuba diver plunges deep into the ocean, the water exerts nearly uniform pressure everywhere on his surface and squeezes him to a slightly smaller volume (see Fig. 11.12b). This is a different situation from the tensile and compressive stresses and strains we have discussed. The uniform pressure on all sides of the diver is a **bulk stress** (or **volume stress**), and the resulting deformation—a **bulk strain** (or **volume strain**)—is a change in his volume.

If an object is immersed in a fluid (liquid or gas) at rest, the fluid exerts a force on any part of the object's surface; this force is *perpendicular* to the surface. (If we tried to make the fluid exert a force parallel to the surface, the fluid would slip sideways to counteract the effort.) The force $F_\perp$ per unit area that the fluid exerts on an immersed object is called the **pressure** p in the fluid:

$$\text{Pressure in a fluid:}\quad p = \frac{F_\perp}{A} \qquad (11.11)$$

($F_\perp$: Force that fluid applies to surface of an immersed object; A: Area over which force is exerted)

Pressure has the same units as stress; commonly used units include 1 Pa ($= 1\ \text{N/m}^2$), and 1 **atmosphere** (1 atm). One atmosphere is the approximate average pressure of the earth's atmosphere at sea level:

$$1\ \text{atmosphere} = 1\ \text{atm} = 1.013 \times 10^5\ \text{Pa}$$

The pressure in a fluid increases with depth. For example, the pressure in the ocean increases by about 1 atm every 10 m. If an immersed object is relatively small, however, we can ignore these pressure differences for purposes of calculating bulk stress. We'll then treat the pressure as having the same value at all points on an immersed object's surface.

Pressure plays the role of stress in a volume deformation. The corresponding strain is the fractional change in volume (**Fig. 11.17**)—that is, the ratio of the volume change ΔV to the original volume V_0:

$$\text{Bulk (volume) strain} = \frac{\Delta V}{V_0} \qquad (11.12)$$

Volume strain is the change in volume per unit volume. Like tensile or compressive strain, it is a pure number, without units.

When Hooke's law is obeyed, an increase in pressure (bulk stress) produces a *proportional* bulk strain (fractional change in volume). The corresponding elastic modulus (ratio of stress to strain) is called the **bulk modulus,** denoted by B. When the pressure on an object changes by a small amount Δp, from p_0 to $p_0 + \Delta p$, and the resulting bulk strain is $\Delta V/V_0$, Hooke's law takes the form

$$B = \frac{\text{Bulk stress}}{\text{Bulk strain}} = -\frac{\Delta p}{\Delta V/V_0} \qquad (11.13)$$

Bulk modulus for compression

Δp: Additional pressure on object

$\Delta V/V_0$: Change in volume (see Fig. 11.17) / Original volume (see Fig. 11.17)

We include a minus sign in this equation because an *increase* of pressure always causes a *decrease* in volume. In other words, if Δp is positive, ΔV is negative. The bulk modulus B itself is a positive quantity.

For small pressure changes in a solid or a liquid, we consider B to be constant. The bulk modulus of a *gas,* however, depends on the initial pressure p_0. Table 11.1 includes values of B for several solid materials. Its units, force per unit area, are the same as those of pressure (and of tensile or compressive stress).

The reciprocal of the bulk modulus is called the **compressibility** and is denoted by k. From Eq. (11.13),

$$k = \frac{1}{B} = -\frac{\Delta V/V_0}{\Delta p} = -\frac{1}{V_0}\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta p} \qquad \text{(compressibility)} \qquad (11.14)$$

Compressibility is the fractional decrease in volume, $-\Delta V/V_0$, per unit increase Δp in pressure. The units of compressibility are those of *reciprocal pressure,* Pa^{-1} or atm^{-1}.

Table 11.2 lists the values of compressibility k for several liquids. For example, the compressibility of water is $46.4 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{atm}^{-1}$, which means that the volume of water decreases by 46.4 parts per million for each 1 atmosphere increase in pressure. Materials with small bulk modulus B and large compressibility k are easiest to compress.

Figure **11.17** An object under bulk stress. Without the stress, the cube has volume V_0; when the stress is applied, the cube has a smaller volume V. The volume change ΔV is exaggerated for clarity.

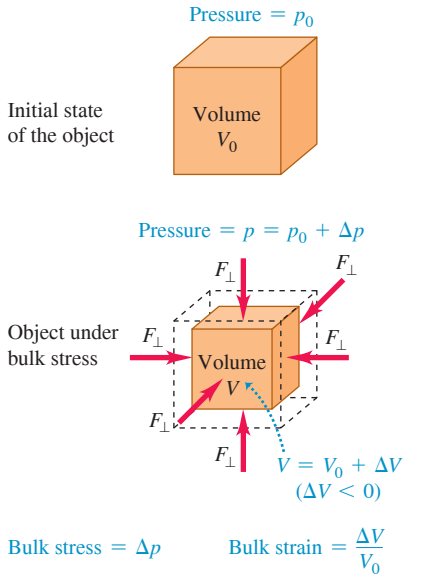


TABLE 11.2 Compressibilities of Liquids

Liquid	Compressibility, k	
	Pa^{-1}	atm^{-1}
Carbon disulfide	93×10^{-11}	94×10^{-6}
Ethyl alcohol	110×10^{-11}	111×10^{-6}
Glycerin	21×10^{-11}	21×10^{-6}
Mercury	3.7×10^{-11}	3.8×10^{-6}
Water	45.8×10^{-11}	46.4×10^{-6}

EXAMPLE 11.6 Bulk stress and strain

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A hydraulic press contains $0.25\ \text{m}^3$ (250 L) of oil. Find the decrease in the volume of the oil when it is subjected to a pressure increase $\Delta p = 1.6 \times 10^7\ \text{Pa}$ (about 160 atm). The bulk modulus of the oil is $B = 5.0 \times 10^9\ \text{Pa}$ (about 5.0×10^4 atm), and its compressibility is $k = 1/B = 20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{atm}^{-1}$.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE This example uses the ideas of bulk stress and strain. We are given both the bulk modulus and the compressibility, and our target variable is ΔV. Solving Eq. (11.13) for ΔV, we find

$$\Delta V = -\frac{V_0 \Delta p}{B} = -\frac{(0.25\ \text{m}^3)(1.6 \times 10^7\ \text{Pa})}{5.0 \times 10^9\ \text{Pa}}$$
$$= -8.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3 = -0.80\ \text{L}$$

Alternatively, we can use Eq. (11.14) with the approximate unit conversions given above:

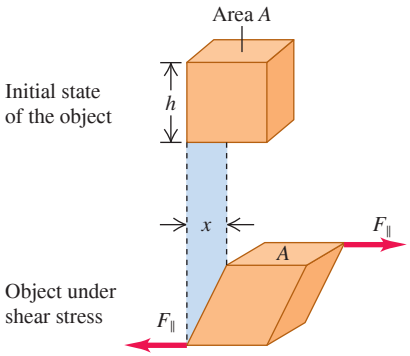
$$\Delta V = -kV_0\Delta p = -(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{atm}^{-1})(0.25\ \text{m}^3)(160\ \text{atm})$$
$$= -8.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3$$

EVALUATE The negative value of ΔV means that the volume decreases when the pressure increases. The 160 atm pressure increase is large, but the *fractional* volume change is very small:

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V_0} = \frac{-8.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3}{0.25\ \text{m}^3} = -0.0032 \qquad \text{or} \qquad -0.32\%$$

KEYCONCEPT For an object under bulk stress, the stress equals the additional pressure applied to all sides of the object. The strain equals the fractional change in volume. The ratio of stress to strain equals the bulk modulus for the material of which the object is made.

Figure **11.18** An object under shear stress. Forces are applied tangent to opposite surfaces of the object (in contrast to the situation in Fig. 11.14, in which the forces act perpendicular to the surfaces). The deformation x is exaggerated for clarity.



$$\text{Shear stress} = \frac{F_\parallel}{A} \qquad \text{Shear strain} = \frac{x}{h}$$

Shear Stress and Strain

The third kind of stress-strain situation is called *shear.* The ribbon in Fig. 11.12c is under **shear stress:** One part of the ribbon is being pushed up while an adjacent part is being pushed down, producing a deformation of the ribbon. **Figure 11.18** shows an object being deformed by a shear stress. In the figure, forces of equal magnitude but opposite direction act *tangent* to the surfaces of opposite ends of the object. We define the shear stress as the force $F_\parallel$ acting tangent to the surface divided by the area A on which it acts:

$$\text{Shear stress} = \frac{F_\parallel}{A} \tag{11.15}$$

Shear stress, like the other two types of stress, is a force per unit area.

Figure 11.18 shows that one face of the object under shear stress is displaced by a distance x relative to the opposite face. We define **shear strain** as the ratio of the displacement x to the transverse dimension h:

$$\text{Shear strain} = \frac{x}{h} \tag{11.16}$$

In real-life situations, x is typically much smaller than h. Like all strains, shear strain is a dimensionless number; it is a ratio of two lengths.

If the forces are small enough that Hooke's law is obeyed, the shear strain is *proportional* to the shear stress. The corresponding elastic modulus (ratio of shear stress to shear strain) is called the **shear modulus,** denoted by S:

Shear modulus for shear

$$S = \frac{\text{Shear stress}}{\text{Shear strain}} = \frac{F_\parallel/A}{x/h} = \frac{F_\parallel}{A}\frac{h}{x} \tag{11.17}$$

Force applied tangent to surface of object

Transverse dimension (see Fig. 11.18)

Area over which force is exerted

Deformation (see Fig. 11.18)

Table 11.1 gives several values of shear modulus. For a given material, S is usually one-third to one-half as large as Young's modulus Y for tensile stress. Keep in mind that the concepts of shear stress, shear strain, and shear modulus apply to *solid* materials only. The reason is that *shear* refers to deforming an object that has a definite shape (see Fig. 11.18). This concept doesn't apply to gases and liquids, which do not have definite shapes.

EXAMPLE 11.7 Shear stress and strain

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Suppose the object in Fig. 11.18 is the brass base plate of an outdoor sculpture that experiences shear forces in an earthquake. The plate is 0.80 m square and 0.50 cm thick. What is the force exerted on each of its edges if the resulting displacement x is 0.16 mm?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This example uses the relationship among shear stress, shear strain, and shear modulus. Our target variable is the force $F_\parallel$ exerted parallel to each edge, as shown in Fig. 11.18. We'll find the shear strain from Eq. (11.16), the shear stress from Eq. (11.17), and $F_\parallel$ from Eq. (11.15). Table 11.1 gives the shear modulus of brass. In Fig. 11.18, h represents the 0.80 m length of each side of the plate. The area A in Eq. (11.15) is the product of the 0.80 m length and the 0.50 cm thickness.

EXECUTE From Eq. (11.16),

$$\text{Shear strain} = \frac{x}{h} = \frac{1.6 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}}{0.80\ \text{m}} = 2.0 \times 10^{-4}$$

From Eq. (11.17),

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Shear stress} &= (\text{Shear strain}) \times S \\ &= (2.0 \times 10^{-4})(3.5 \times 10^{10}\ \text{Pa}) = 7.0 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Pa}\end{aligned}$$

Finally, from Eq. (11.15),

$$\begin{aligned}F_\parallel &= (\text{Shear stress}) \times A \\ &= (7.0 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Pa})(0.80\ \text{m})(0.0050\ \text{m}) = 2.8 \times 10^{4}\ \text{N}\end{aligned}$$

EVALUATE The shear force supplied by the earthquake is comparable to the weight of a 3 tonne mass! The large shear modulus of brass makes it hard to deform. Further, the plate is relatively thick (0.50 cm), so the area A is relatively large and a substantial force $F_\parallel$ is needed to provide the necessary stress $F_\parallel/A$.

KEYCONCEPT For an object under shear stress, the stress equals the force exerted tangent to either of two opposite surfaces of the object divided by the area of that surface. The strain equals the deformation divided by the distance between the two surfaces. The ratio of stress to strain equals the shear modulus for the material of which the object is made.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 11.4 A copper rod of cross-sectional area 0.500 cm^2 and length 1.00 m is elongated by 2.00×10^{-2} mm, and a steel rod of the same cross-sectional area but 0.100 m in length is elongated by 2.00×10^{-3} mm. (a) Which rod has greater tensile *strain*? (i) The copper rod; (ii) the steel rod; (iii) the strain is the same for both. (b) Which rod is under greater tensile *stress*? (i) The copper rod; (ii) the steel rod; (iii) the stress is the same for both.

ANSWER (a) **(iii)**, (b) **(ii)** In (a), the copper rod has 10 times the elongation Δl of the steel rod, but it also has 10 times the original length l_0. Hence the tensile strain $\Delta l/l_0$ is the same for both rods. In (b), the stress is equal to Young's modulus Y multiplied by the strain. From Table 11.1, steel has a larger value of Y, so a greater stress is required to produce the same strain.

11.5 ELASTICITY AND PLASTICITY

Hooke's law—the proportionality of stress and strain in elastic deformations—has a limited range of validity. In the preceding section we used phrases such as "if the forces are small enough that Hooke's law is obeyed." Just what *are* the limitations of Hooke's law? What's more, if you pull, squeeze, or twist *anything* hard enough, it will bend or break. Can we be more precise than that?

To address these questions, let's look at a graph of tensile stress as a function of tensile strain. **Figure 11.19** shows a typical graph of this kind for a metal such as copper or soft iron. The strain is shown as the *percent* elongation; the horizontal scale is not uniform beyond the first portion of the curve, up to a strain of less than 1%. The first portion is a straight line, indicating Hooke's law behavior with stress directly proportional to strain. This straight-line portion ends at point *a*; the stress at this point is called the *proportional limit.*

From *a* to *b*, stress and strain are no longer proportional, and Hooke's law is *not* obeyed. However, from *a* to *b* (and *O* to *a*), the behavior of the material is *elastic:* If the load is gradually removed starting at any point between *O* and *b*, the curve is retraced until the material returns to its original length. This elastic deformation is *reversible*.

Point *b*, the end of the elastic region, is called the *yield point;* the stress at the yield point is called the *elastic limit*. When we increase the stress beyond point *b*, the strain continues to increase. But if we remove the load at a point like *c* beyond the elastic limit, the material does *not* return to its original length. Instead, it follows the red line in Fig. 11.19. The material has deformed *irreversibly* and acquired a *permanent set*. This is the *plastic* behavior mentioned in Section 11.4.

Once the material has become plastic, a small additional stress produces a relatively large increase in strain, until a point *d* is reached at which *fracture* takes place. That's what happens if a steel guitar string in Fig. 11.12a is tightened too much: The string breaks at the fracture point. Steel is *brittle* because it breaks soon after reaching its elastic limit; other materials, such as soft iron, are *ductile*—they can be given a large permanent stretch without breaking. (The material depicted in Fig. 11.19 is ductile, since it can stretch by more than 30% before breaking.)

Unlike uniform materials such as metals, stretchable biological materials such as tendons and ligaments have no true plastic region. That's because these materials are made of a collection of microscopic fibers; when stressed beyond the elastic limit, the fibers tear apart from each other. (A torn ligament or tendon is one that has fractured in this way.)

If a material is still within its elastic region, something very curious can happen when it is stretched and then allowed to relax. **Figure 11.20** is a stress-strain curve for vulcanized rubber that has been stretched by more than seven times its original length. The stress is not proportional to the strain, but the behavior is elastic because when the load is removed, the material returns to its original length. However, the material follows *different* curves for increasing and decreasing stress. This is called *elastic hysteresis.* The work done by the material when it returns to its original shape is less than the work required to deform it; that's due to internal friction. Rubber with large elastic hysteresis is very useful for absorbing vibrations, such as in engine mounts and shock-absorber bushings for cars. Tendons display similar behavior.

The stress required to cause actual fracture of a material is called the *breaking stress,* the *ultimate strength,* or (for tensile stress) the *tensile strength*. Two materials, such as

Figure 11.19 Typical stress-strain diagram for a ductile metal under tension.

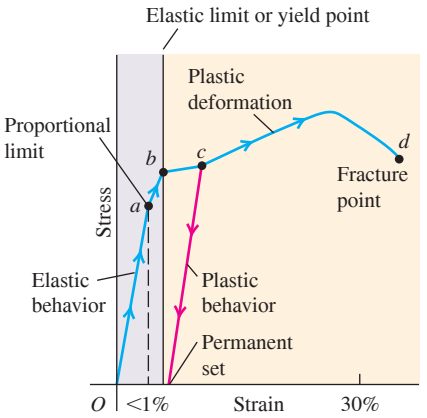


Figure 11.20 Typical stress-strain diagram for vulcanized rubber. The curves are different for increasing and decreasing stress, a phenomenon called elastic hysteresis.

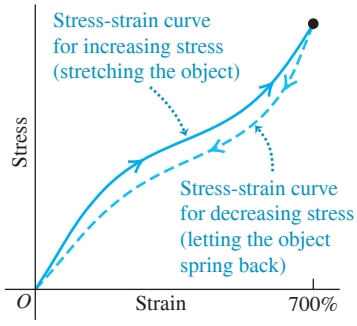


TABLE 11.3 Approximate Breaking Stresses

Material	Breaking Stress (Pa or N/m^2)
Aluminum	2.2×10^8
Brass	4.7×10^8
Glass	10×10^8
Iron	3.0×10^8
Steel	$5-20 \times 10^8$
Tendon (typical)	1×10^8

two types of steel, may have very similar elastic constants but vastly different breaking stresses. **Table 11.3** gives typical values of breaking stress for several materials in tension. Comparing Tables 11.1 and 11.3 shows that iron and steel are comparably *stiff* (they have almost the same value of Young's modulus), but steel is *stronger* (it has a larger breaking stress than does iron).

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 11.5 While parking your car, you accidentally back into a steel post. You pull forward until the car no longer touches the post and then get out to inspect the damage. What does your rear bumper look like if the strain in the impact was (a) less than at the proportional limit; (b) greater than at the proportional limit but less than at the yield point; (c) greater than at the yield point but less than at the fracture point; and (d) greater than at the fracture point?

ANSWER

In (a) and (b), the bumper will have sprung back to its original shape (although the paint may be scratched). In (c), the bumper will have a permanent dent or deformation. In (d), the bumper will be torn or broken.

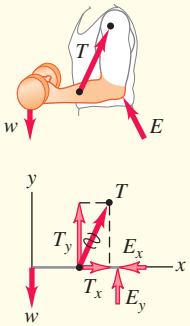
CHAPTER 11 SUMMARY

Conditions for equilibrium: For a rigid body to be in equilibrium, two conditions must be satisfied. First, the vector sum of forces must be zero. Second, the sum of torques about any point must be zero. The torque due to the weight of an object can be found by assuming the entire weight is concentrated at the center of gravity, which is at the same point as the center of mass if $\vec{g}$ has the same value at all points. (See Examples 11.1–11.4.)

$$\Sigma\vec{F} = \mathbf{0} \tag{11.1}$$

$$\Sigma\vec{\tau} = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{about } \textit{any} \text{ point} \tag{11.2}$$

$$\vec{r}_{\text{cm}} = \frac{m_1\vec{r}_1 + m_2\vec{r}_2 + m_3\vec{r}_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} \tag{11.4}$$

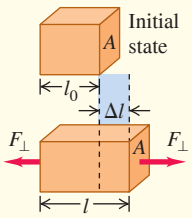


Stress, strain, and Hooke's law: Hooke's law states that in elastic deformations, stress (force per unit area) is proportional to strain (fractional deformation). The proportionality constant is called the elastic modulus.

$$\frac{\text{Stress}}{\text{Strain}} = \text{Elastic modulus} \tag{11.7}$$

Tensile and compressive stress: Tensile stress is tensile force per unit area, $F_\perp/A$. Tensile strain is fractional change in length, $\Delta l/l_0$. The elastic modulus for tension is called Young's modulus Y. Compressive stress and strain are defined in the same way. (See Example 11.5.)

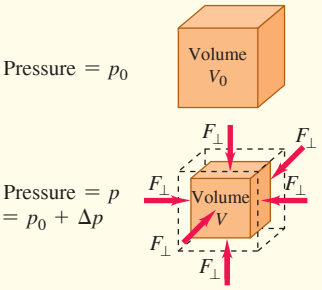
$$Y = \frac{\text{Tensile stress}}{\text{Tensile strain}} = \frac{F_\perp/A}{\Delta l/l_0} = \frac{F_\perp}{A}\,\frac{l_0}{\Delta l} \tag{11.10}$$



Bulk stress: Pressure in a fluid is force per unit area. Bulk stress is pressure change, Δp, and bulk strain is fractional volume change, $\Delta V/V_0$. The elastic modulus for compression is called the bulk modulus, B. Compressibility, k, is the reciprocal of bulk modulus: $k = 1/B$. (See Example 11.6.)

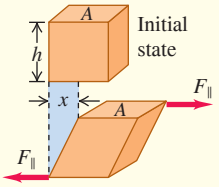
$$p = \frac{F_\perp}{A} \tag{11.11}$$

$$B = \frac{\text{Bulk stress}}{\text{Bulk strain}} = -\frac{\Delta p}{\Delta V/V_0} \tag{11.13}$$



Shear stress: Shear stress is force per unit area, $F_\parallel/A$, for a force applied tangent to a surface. Shear strain is the displacement x of one side divided by the transverse dimension h. The elastic modulus for shear is called the shear modulus, S. (See Example 11.7.)

$$S = \frac{\text{Shear stress}}{\text{Shear strain}} = \frac{F_\parallel/A}{x/h} = \frac{F_\parallel}{A}\,\frac{h}{x} \tag{11.17}$$



The limits of Hooke's law: The proportional limit is the maximum stress for which stress and strain are proportional. Beyond the proportional limit, Hooke's law is not valid. The elastic limit is the stress beyond which irreversible deformation occurs. The breaking stress, or ultimate strength, is the stress at which the material breaks.

Chapter 11 Media Assets

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 11.1 (Section 11.2) before attempting these problems.

VP11.1.1 A uniform plank 8.00 m in length with mass 40.0 kg is supported at two points located 1.00 m and 5.00 m, respectively, from the left-hand end. What is the maximum additional mass you could place on the right-hand end of the plank and have the plank still be at rest?

VP11.1.2 A bowling ball (which we can regard as a uniform sphere) has a mass of 7.26 kg and a radius of 0.216 m. A baseball has a mass of 0.145 kg. If you connect these two balls with a lightweight rod, what must be the distance between the center of the bowling ball and the center of the baseball so that the system of the two balls and the rod will balance at the point where the rod touches the surface of the bowling ball?

VP11.1.3 Three small objects are arranged along a uniform rod of mass m and length L: one of mass m at the left end, one of mass m at the center, and one of mass $2m$ at the right end. How far to the left or right of the rod's center should you place a support so that the rod with the attached objects will balance there?

VP11.1.4 A small airplane with full fuel tanks, but no occupants or baggage, has a mass of 1.17×10^3 kg and a center of gravity that is 2.58 m behind the nose of the airplane. The pilot's seat is 2.67 m behind the nose, and the baggage compartment is 4.30 m behind the nose. A 75.0 kg pilot boards the plane and is the only occupant. If the center of gravity of the airplane with pilot can be no more than 2.76 m behind the nose for in-flight stability, what is the maximum mass that the baggage compartment can hold?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 11.2, 11.3, and 11.4 (Section 11.3) before attempting these problems.

VP11.4.1 The rear wheels of a truck support 57.0% of the weight of the truck, while the front wheels support 43.0% of the weight. The center of gravity of the truck is 2.52 m in front of the rear wheels. What is the wheelbase of the truck (the distance between the front and rear wheels)?

VP11.4.2 A small airplane is sitting at rest on the ground. Its center of gravity is 2.58 m behind the nose of the airplane, the front wheel (nose wheel) is 0.800 m behind the nose, and the main wheels are 3.02 m behind the nose. What percentage of the airplane's weight is supported by the nose wheel, and what percentage is supported by the main wheels?

VP11.4.3 Figure 11.11 shows a metal advertising sign of weight w suspended from the end of a horizontal rod of negligible mass and length L. The end of the rod with the sign is supported by a cable at an angle θ from the horizontal, and the other end is supported by a hinge at point P. (a) Using the idea that there is zero net torque about the end of the rod with the attached sign, find the vertical component of the force $\vec{F}_{\text{hinge}}$ exerted by the hinge. (b) Using the idea that there is zero net vertical force on the rod with the attached sign, find the tension in the cable. (c) Using the idea that there is zero net horizontal force on the rod with the attached sign, find the horizontal component of the force exerted by the hinge.

VP11.4.4 Suppose that in Figure 11.11 the horizontal rod has weight w (the same as the hanging sign). (a) Using the idea that there is zero net torque about the end of the rod with the attached sign, find the vertical component of the force $\vec{F}_{\text{hinge}}$ exerted by the hinge. (b) Using the idea that there is zero net vertical force on the rod with the attached sign, find the tension in the cable. (c) Using the idea that there is zero net horizontal force on the rod with the attached sign, find the horizontal component of the force exerted by the hinge.

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 11.5, 11.6, and 11.7 (Section 11.4) before attempting these problems.

VP11.7.1 A copper wire has a radius of 4.5 mm. When forces of a certain equal magnitude but opposite directions are applied to the ends of the wire, the wire stretches by 5.0×10^{-3} of its original length. (a) What is the tensile stress on the wire? (b) What is the magnitude of the force on either end?

VP11.7.2 An aluminum cylinder with a radius of 2.5 cm and a height of 82 cm is used as one leg of a workbench. The workbench pushes down on the cylinder with a force of 3.2×10^4 N. (a) What is the compressive strain of the cylinder? (b) By what distance does the cylinder's height decrease as a result of the forces on it?

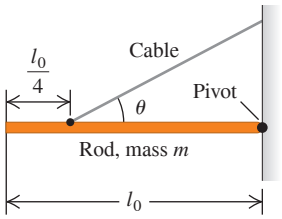
VP11.7.3 The pressure on the surface of a sphere of radius 1.2 cm is increased by 2.5×10^7 Pa. Calculate the resulting decrease in volume of the sphere if it is made (a) of lead and (b) of mercury.

VP11.7.4 You apply forces of magnitude 4.2×10^4 N to the top and bottom surfaces of a brass cube. The forces are tangent to each surface and parallel to the sides of each surface. If the cube is 2.5 cm on a side, what is the resulting shear displacement?

BRIDGING PROBLEM In Equilibrium and Under Stress

A horizontal, uniform, solid copper rod has an original length l_0, cross-sectional area A, Young's modulus Y, bulk modulus B, shear modulus S, and mass m. It is supported by a frictionless pivot at its right end and by a cable a distance $l_0/4$ from its left end (**Fig. 11.21**). Both pivot and cable are attached so that they exert their forces uniformly over the rod's cross section. The cable makes an angle θ with the rod and compresses it. (a) Find the tension in the cable. (b) Find the magnitude and direction of the force exerted by the pivot on the right end of the rod. How does this magnitude compare to the cable tension? How does this angle compare to θ? (c) Find the change in length of the rod due to the stresses exerted by the cable and pivot on the rod. (The length change is small compared to the original length l_0.) (d) By what factor would your answer in part (c) increase if the solid copper rod were twice as long but had the same cross-sectional area?

Figure 11.21 What are the forces on the rod? What are the stress and strain?



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Draw a free-body diagram for the rod. Be careful to place each force in the correct location.
2. List the unknown quantities, and decide which are the target variables.
3. What conditions must be met so that the rod remains at rest? What kind of stress (and resulting strain) is involved? Use your answers to select the appropriate equations.

EXECUTE

4. Use your equations to solve for the target variables. (*Hint:* You can make the solution easier by carefully choosing the point around which you calculate torques.)
5. Use trigonometry to decide whether the pivot force or the cable tension has the greater magnitude and whether the angle of the pivot force is greater than, less than, or equal to θ.

EVALUATE

6. Check whether your answers are reasonable. Which force, the cable tension or the pivot force, holds up more of the weight of the rod? Does this make sense?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q11.1 Does a rigid object in uniform rotation about a fixed axis satisfy the first and second conditions for equilibrium? Why? Does it then follow that every particle in this object is in equilibrium? Explain.

Q11.2 (a) Is it possible for an object to be in translational equilibrium (the first condition) but *not* in rotational equilibrium (the second condition)? Illustrate your answer with a simple example. (b) Can an object be in rotational equilibrium yet *not* in translational equilibrium? Justify your answer with a simple example.

Q11.3 Car tires are sometimes "balanced" on a machine that pivots the tire and wheel about the center. Weights are placed around the wheel rim until it does not tip from the horizontal plane. Discuss this procedure in terms of the center of gravity.

Q11.4 Does the center of gravity of a solid object always lie within the material of the object? If not, give a counterexample.

Q11.5 In Section 11.2 we always assumed that the value of g was the same at all points on the object. This is *not* a good approximation if the dimensions of the object are great enough, because the value of g decreases with altitude. If this is taken into account, will the center of gravity of a long, vertical rod be above, below, or at its center of mass? Explain how this can be used to keep the long axis of an orbiting spacecraft pointed toward the earth. (This would be useful for a weather satellite that must always keep its camera lens trained on the earth.) The moon is not exactly spherical but is somewhat elongated. Explain why this same effect is responsible for keeping the same face of the moon pointed toward the earth at all times.

Q11.6 You are balancing a wrench by suspending it at a single point. Is the equilibrium stable, unstable, or neutral if the point is above, at, or below the wrench's center of gravity? In each case give the reasoning behind your answer. (For rotation, a rigid object is in *stable* equilibrium if a small rotation of the object produces a torque that tends to return the object to equilibrium; it is in *unstable* equilibrium if a small rotation produces a torque that tends to take the object farther from equilibrium; and it is in *neutral* equilibrium if a small rotation produces no torque.)

Q11.7 You can probably stand flatfooted on the floor and then rise up and balance on your tiptoes. Why are you unable do it if your toes are touching the wall of your room? (Try it!)

Q11.8 You freely pivot a horseshoe from a horizontal nail through one of its nail holes. You then hang a long string with a weight at its bottom from the same nail, so that the string hangs vertically in front of the horseshoe without touching it. How do you know that the horseshoe's center of gravity is along the line behind the string? How can you locate the center of gravity by repeating the process at another nail hole? Will the center of gravity be within the solid material of the horseshoe?

Q11.9 An object consists of a ball of weight W glued to the end of a uniform bar also of weight W. If you release it from rest, with the bar horizontal, what will its behavior be as it falls if air resistance is negligible? Will it (a) remain horizontal; (b) rotate about its center of gravity; (c) rotate about the ball; or (d) rotate so that the ball swings downward? Explain your reasoning.

Q11.10 Suppose that the object in Question 11.9 is released from rest with the bar tilted at 60° above the horizontal with the ball at the upper end. As it is falling, will it (a) rotate about its center of gravity until it is horizontal; (b) rotate about its center of gravity until it is vertical with the ball at the bottom; (c) rotate about the ball until it is vertical with the ball at the bottom; or (d) remain at 60° above the horizontal?

Q11.11 Why must a water skier moving with constant velocity lean backward? What determines how far back she must lean? Draw a free-body diagram for the water skier to justify your answers.

Q11.12 In pioneer days, when a Conestoga wagon was stuck in the mud, people would grasp the wheel spokes and try to turn the wheels, rather than simply pushing the wagon. Why?

Q11.13 The mighty Zimbo claims to have leg muscles so strong that he can stand flat on his feet and lean forward to pick up an apple on the floor with his teeth. Should you pay to see him perform, or do you have any suspicions about his claim? Why?

Q11.14 Why is it easier to hold a 10 kg dumbbell in your hand at your side than it is to hold it with your arm extended horizontally?

Q11.15 Certain features of a person, such as height and mass, are fixed (at least over relatively long periods of time). Are the following features also fixed? (a) location of the center of gravity of the body; (b) moment of inertia of the body about an axis through the person's center of mass. Explain your reasoning.

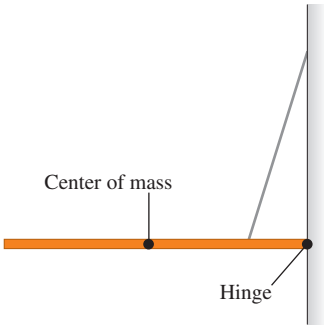
Q11.16 During pregnancy, women often develop back pains from leaning backward while walking. Why do they have to walk this way?

Q11.17 Why is a tapered water glass with a narrow base easier to tip over than a glass with straight sides? Does it matter whether the glass is full or empty?

Q11.18 When a tall, heavy refrigerator is pushed across a rough floor, what factors determine whether it slides or tips?

Q11.19 A uniform beam is suspended horizontally and attached to a wall by a small hinge (**Fig. Q11.19**). What are the directions (upward or downward, and to the left or the right) of the components of the force that the hinge exerts *on the beam*? Explain.

Figure **Q11.19**



Q11.20 If a metal wire has its length doubled and its diameter tripled, by what factor does its Young's modulus change?

Q11.21 A metal wire of diameter D stretches by 0.100 mm when supporting a weight W. If the same-length wire is used to support a weight three times as heavy, what would its diameter have to be (in terms of D) so it still stretches only 0.100 mm?

Q11.22 Compare the mechanical properties of a steel cable, made by twisting many thin wires together, with the properties of a solid steel rod of the same diameter. What advantages does each have?

Q11.23 The material in human bones and elephant bones is essentially the same, but an elephant has much thicker legs. Explain why, in terms of breaking stress.

Q11.24 There is a small but appreciable amount of elastic hysteresis in the large tendon at the back of a horse's leg. Explain how this can cause damage to the tendon if a horse runs too hard for too long a time.

Q11.25 When rubber mounting blocks are used to absorb machine vibrations through elastic hysteresis, as mentioned in Section 11.5, what becomes of the energy associated with the vibrations?

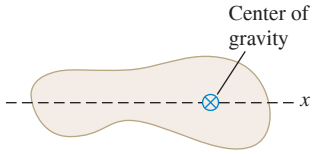
EXERCISES

Section 11.2 Center of Gravity

11.1 •• A 0.140 kg, 42.1-cm-long uniform bar has a small 0.055 kg mass glued to its left end and a small 0.150 kg mass glued to the other end. The two small masses can each be treated as point masses. You want to balance this system horizontally on a fulcrum placed just under its center of gravity. How far from the left end should the fulcrum be placed?

11.2 •• The center of gravity of a 4.00 kg irregular object is shown in **Fig. E11.2.** You need to move the center of gravity 3.00 cm to the left by gluing on a 1.70 kg mass, which will then be considered as part of the object. Where should the center of gravity of this additional mass be located?

Figure **E11.2**



11.3 • A uniform rod is 2.20 m long and has mass 1.50 kg. A 2.20 kg clamp is attached to the rod. How far should the center of gravity of the clamp be from the left-hand end of the rod in order for the center of gravity of the composite object to be 1.30 m from the left-hand end of the rod?

11.4 • Consider the free-body diagram shown in Fig. 11.9b. (a) What is the horizontal distance of the center of gravity of the person–ladder system from the point where the ladder touches the ground? (b) What is the torque about the rotation axis shown in the figure (point B) computed by taking the total weight of the person plus ladder acting at the center of gravity? (c) How does the result in part (b) compare to the sum of the individual torques computed in Example 11.3 for the weight of the person and the weight of the ladder?

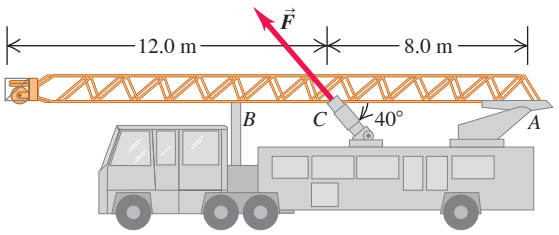
11.5 •• A uniform steel rod has mass 0.300 kg and length 40.0 cm and is horizontal. A uniform sphere with radius 8.00 cm and mass 0.900 kg is welded to one end of the bar, and a uniform sphere with radius 6.00 cm and mass 0.380 kg is welded to the other end of the bar. The centers of the rod and of each sphere all lie along a horizontal line. How far is the center of gravity of the combined object from the center of the rod?

Section 11.3 Solving Rigid-Body Equilibrium Problems

11.6 • A uniform 300 N trapdoor in a floor is hinged at one side. Find the net upward force needed to begin to open it and the total force exerted on the door by the hinges (a) if the upward force is applied at the center and (b) if the upward force is applied at the center of the edge opposite the hinges.

11.7 •• **Raising a Ladder.** A ladder carried by a fire truck is 20.0 m long. The ladder weighs 3100 N and its center of gravity is at its center. The ladder is pivoted at one end (A) about a pin (**Fig. E11.7**); ignore the friction torque at the pin. The ladder is raised into position by a force applied by a hydraulic piston at C. Point C is 8.0 m from A, and the force $\vec{F}$ exerted by the piston makes an angle of 40° with the ladder. What magnitude must $\vec{F}$ have to just lift the ladder off the support bracket at B? Start with a free-body diagram of the ladder.

Figure **E11.7**

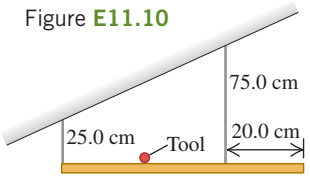


11.8 •• Two people are carrying a uniform wooden board that is 3.00 m long and weighs 160 N. If one person applies an upward force equal to 60 N at one end, at what point does the other person lift? Begin with a free-body diagram of the board.

11.9 •• Two people carry a heavy electric motor by placing it on a light board 2.70 m long. One person lifts at one end with a force of 370 N, and the other lifts the opposite end with a force of 700 N. (a) What is the weight of the motor, and where along the board is its center of gravity located? (b) Suppose the board is not light but weighs 210 N, with its center of gravity at its center, and the two people each exert the same forces as before. What is the weight of the motor in this case, and where is its center of gravity located?

11.10 •• An 80.0 cm, uniform, 59.0 N shelf is supported horizontally by two vertical wires attached to the sloping ceiling (**Fig. E11.10**). A very small 18.0 N tool is placed on the shelf midway between the points where the wires are attached to it. Find the tension in each wire. Begin by making a free-body diagram of the shelf.

Figure **E11.10**

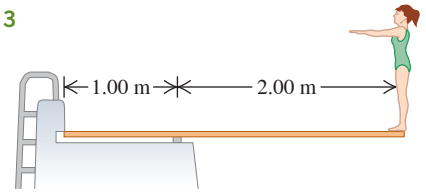


11.11 •• A 362 N, uniform, 1.99 m bar is suspended horizontally by two vertical cables at each end. Cable *A* can support a maximum tension of 511.0 N without breaking, and cable *B* can support up to 356.0 N. You want to place a small weight on this bar. (a) What is the heaviest weight you can put on without breaking either cable, and (b) where should you put this weight?

11.12 •• A uniform ladder 5.0 m long rests against a frictionless, vertical wall with its lower end 3.0 m from the wall. The ladder weighs 160 N. The coefficient of static friction between the foot of the ladder and the ground is 0.40. A man weighing 740 N climbs slowly up the ladder. Start by drawing a free-body diagram of the ladder. (a) What is the maximum friction force that the ground can exert on the ladder at its lower end? (b) What is the actual friction force when the man has climbed 1.0 m along the ladder? (c) How far along the ladder can the man climb before the ladder starts to slip?

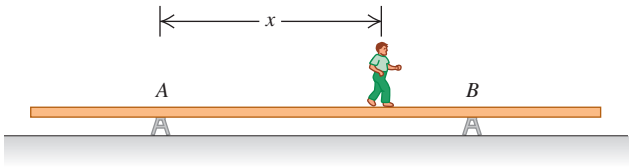
11.13 • A diving board 3.00 m long is supported at a point 1.00 m from the end, and a diver weighing 500 N stands at the free end (**Fig. E11.13**). The diving board is of uniform cross section and weighs 280 N. Find (a) the force at the support point and (b) the force at the left-hand end.

Figure **E11.13**



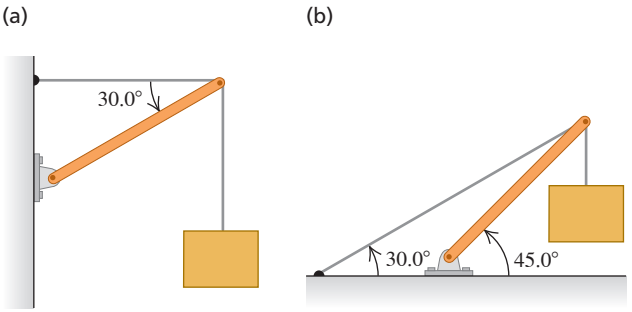
11.14 • A uniform aluminum beam 9.00 m long, weighing 300 N, rests symmetrically on two supports 5.00 m apart (**Fig. E11.14**). A boy weighing 600 N starts at point *A* and walks toward the right. (a) In the same diagram construct two graphs showing the upward forces F_A and F_B exerted on the beam at points *A* and *B*, as functions of the coordinate *x* of the boy. Let 1 cm = 100 N vertically and 1 cm = 1.00 m horizontally. (b) From your diagram, how far beyond point *B* can the boy walk before the beam tips? (c) How far from the right end of the beam should support *B* be placed so that the boy can walk just to the end of the beam without causing it to tip?

Figure **E11.14**



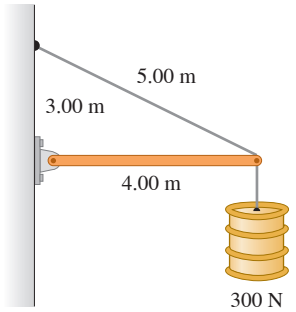
11.15 • Find the tension *T* in each cable and the magnitude and direction of the force exerted on the strut by the pivot in each of the arrangements in **Fig. E11.15**. In each case let *w* be the weight of the suspended crate full of priceless art objects. The strut is uniform and also has weight *w*. Start each case with a free-body diagram of the strut.

Figure **E11.15**



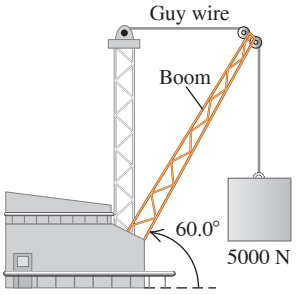
11.16 • The horizontal beam in **Fig. E11.16** weighs 190 N, and its center of gravity is at its center. Find (a) the tension in the cable and (b) the horizontal and vertical components of the force exerted on the beam at the wall.

Figure **E11.16**



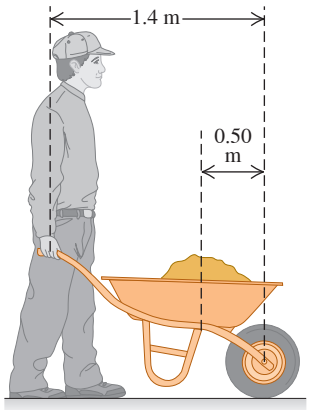
11.17 •• The boom shown in **Fig. E11.17** weighs 2600 N and is attached to a frictionless pivot at its lower end. It is not uniform; the distance of its center of gravity from the pivot is 35% of its length. Find (a) the tension in the guy wire and (b) the horizontal and vertical components of the force exerted on the boom at its lower end. Start with a free-body diagram of the boom.

Figure **E11.17**



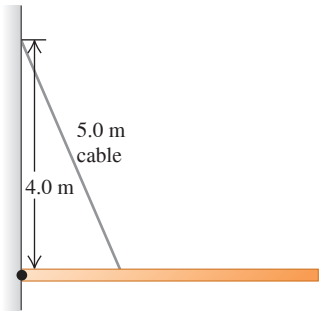
11.18 •• You are pushing an 80.0 N wheelbarrow as shown in **Fig. E11.18**. You lift upward on the handle of the wheelbarrow so that the only point of contact between the wheelbarrow and the ground is at the front wheel. Assume the distances are as shown in the figure, where 0.50 m is the horizontal distance from the center of the wheel to the center of gravity of the wheelbarrow. The center of gravity of the dirt in the wheelbarrow is assumed to also be a horizontal distance of 0.50 m from the center of the wheel. Estimate the maximum total upward force that you can apply to the wheelbarrow handles. (a) If you apply this estimated force, what is the maximum weight of dirt that you can carry in the wheelbarrow? (b) If the dirt has the weight you calculated in part (a), what upward force does the ground apply to the wheel of the wheelbarrow?

Figure **E11.18**



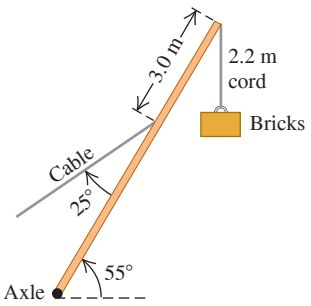
11.19 •• A 9.00-m-long uniform beam is hinged to a vertical wall and held horizontally by a 5.00-m-long cable attached to the wall 4.00 m above the hinge (**Fig. E11.19**). The metal of this cable has a test strength of 1.00 kN, which means that it will break if the tension in it exceeds that amount. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the beam. (b) What is the heaviest beam that the cable can support in this configuration? (c) Find the horizontal and vertical components of the force the hinge exerts on the beam. Is the vertical component upward or downward?

Figure **E11.19**



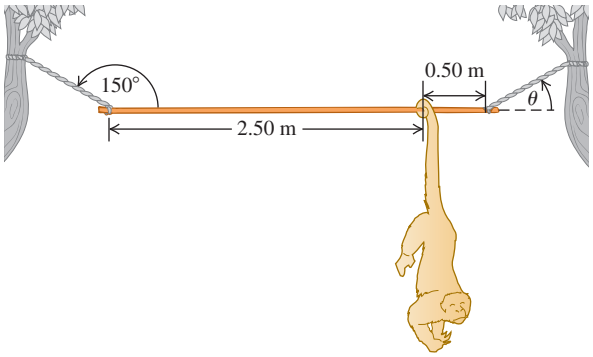
11.20 •• A 15,000 N crane pivots around a friction-free axle at its base and is supported by a cable making a 25° angle with the crane (**Fig. E11.20**). The crane is 16 m long and is not uniform, its center of gravity being 7.0 m from the axle as measured along the crane. The cable is attached 3.0 m from the upper end of the crane. When the crane is raised to 55° above the horizontal holding an 11,000 N pallet of bricks by a 2.2 m, very light cord, find (a) the tension in the cable and (b) the horizontal and vertical components of the force that the axle exerts on the crane. Start with a free-body diagram of the crane.

Figure **E11.20**



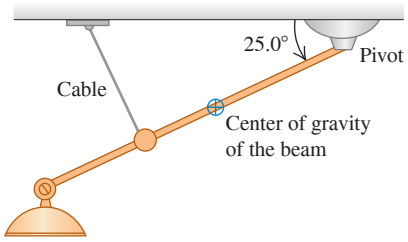
11.21 •• A 3.00-m-long, 290 N, uniform rod at the zoo is held in a horizontal position by two ropes at its ends (**Fig. E11.21**). The left rope makes an angle of 150° with the rod, and the right rope makes an angle θ with the horizontal. A 86 N howler monkey (*Alouatta seniculus*) hangs motionless 0.50 m from the right end of the rod as he carefully studies you. Calculate the tensions in the two ropes and the angle θ. First make a free-body diagram of the rod.

Figure **E11.21**



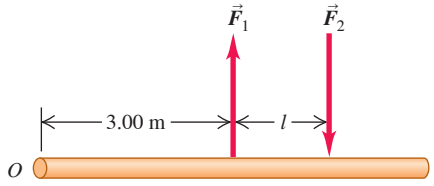
11.22 •• A nonuniform beam 4.45 m long and weighing 1.10 kN makes an angle of 25.0° below the horizontal. It is held in position by a frictionless pivot at its upper right end and by a cable 3.10 m farther down the beam and perpendicular to it (**Fig. E11.22**). The center of gravity of the beam is 2.10 m down the beam from the pivot. Lighting equipment exerts a 4.93 kN downward force on the lower left end of the beam. Find the tension T in the cable and the horizontal and vertical components of the force exerted on the beam by the pivot. Start by sketching a free-body diagram of the beam.

Figure **E11.22**



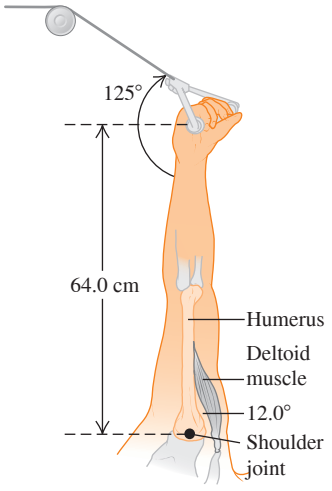
11.23 • **A Couple.** Two forces equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, acting on an object at two different points, form what is called a *couple.* Two antiparallel forces with equal magnitudes $F_1 = F_2 = 6.30$ N are applied to a rod as shown in **Fig. E11.23**. (a) What should the distance l between the forces be if they are to provide a net torque of 6.50 N · m about the left end of the rod? (b) Is the sense of this torque clockwise or counterclockwise? (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for a pivot at the point on the rod where $\vec{F}_2$ is applied.

Figure **E11.23**



11.24 •• BIO **A Good Workout.** You are doing exercises on a Nautilus machine in a gym to strengthen your deltoid (shoulder) muscles. Your arms are raised vertically and can pivot around the shoulder joint, and you grasp the cable of the machine in your hand 64.0 cm from your shoulder joint. The deltoid muscle is attached to the humerus 15.0 cm from the shoulder joint and makes a 12.0° angle with that bone (**Fig. E11.24**). If you have set the tension in the cable of the machine to 36.0 N on each arm, what is the tension in each deltoid muscle if you simply hold your outstretched arms in place? (*Hint:* Start by making a clear free-body diagram of your arm.)

Figure **E11.24**



11.25 •• A uniform rod has one end attached to a vertical wall by a frictionless hinge. A horizontal wire runs from the other end of the rod to a point on the wall above the hinge and holds the rod at an angle θ above the horizontal. You vary the angle θ by changing the length of the wire, and for each θ you measure the tension T in the wire. You plot your data in the form of a T-versus-cotθ graph. The data lie close to a straight line that has slope 30.0 N. What is the mass of the rod?

Section 11.4 Stress, Strain, and Elastic Moduli

11.26 • BIO **Biceps Muscle.** A relaxed biceps muscle requires a force of 25.0 N for an elongation of 3.0 cm; the same muscle under maximum tension requires a force of 500 N for the same elongation. Find Young's modulus for the muscle tissue under each of these conditions if the muscle is assumed to be a uniform cylinder with length 0.200 m and cross-sectional area 50.0 cm^2.

11.27 •• A circular steel wire 1.98 m long must stretch no more than 0.24 cm when a tensile force of 440 N is applied to each end of the wire. What minimum diameter is required for the wire?

11.28 •• Two cylindrical rods, one steel and the other copper, are joined end to end. Each rod is 0.750 m long and 1.50 cm in diameter. The combination is subjected to a tensile force with magnitude 4000 N. For each rod, what are (a) the strain and (b) the elongation?

11.29 •• A metal rod that is 5.00 m long and 0.54 cm^2 in cross-sectional area is found to stretch 0.11 cm under a tension of 4600 N. What is Young's modulus for this metal?

11.30 •• **Stress on a Mountaineer's Rope.** A nylon rope used by mountaineers elongates 1.10 m under the weight of a 65.0 kg climber. If the rope is 45.0 m in length and 7.0 mm in diameter, what is Young's modulus for nylon?

11.31 • A lead sphere has volume 6.0 cm^3 when it is resting on a lab table, where the pressure applied to the sphere is atmospheric pressure. The sphere is then placed in the fluid of a hydraulic press. What increase in the pressure above atmospheric pressure produces a 0.50% decrease in the volume of the sphere?

11.32 •• A vertical, solid steel post 29 cm in diameter and 2.10 m long is required to support a load of 8200 kg. You can ignore the weight of the post. What are (a) the stress in the post; (b) the strain in the post; and (c) the change in the post's length when the load is applied?

11.33 •• BIO **Compression of Human Bone.** The bulk modulus for bone is 15 GPa. (a) If a diver-in-training is put into a pressurized suit, by how much would the pressure have to be raised (in atmospheres) above atmospheric pressure to compress her bones by 0.15% of their original volume? (b) Given that the pressure in the ocean increases by 1.0×10^4 Pa for every meter of depth below the surface, how deep would this diver have to go for her bones to compress by 0.15%? Does it seem that bone compression is a problem she needs to be concerned with when diving?

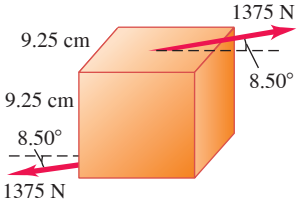
11.34 • A solid gold bar is pulled up from the hold of the sunken RMS *Titanic*. (a) What happens to its volume as it goes from the pressure at the ship to the lower pressure at the ocean's surface? (b) The pressure difference is proportional to the depth. How many times greater would the volume change have been had the ship been twice as deep? (c) The bulk modulus of lead is one-fourth that of gold. Find the ratio of the volume change of a solid lead bar to that of a gold bar of equal volume for the same pressure change.

11.35 • A specimen of oil having an initial volume of 590 cm^3 is subjected to a pressure increase of 4.0×10^6 Pa, and the volume is found to decrease by 0.47 cm^3. What is the bulk modulus of the material? The compressibility?

11.36 •• In the Challenger Deep of the Marianas Trench, the depth of seawater is 10.9 km and the pressure is 1.16×10^8 Pa (about 1.15×10^3 atm). (a) If a cubic meter of water is taken from the surface to this depth, what is the change in its volume? (Normal atmospheric pressure is about 1.0×10^5 Pa. Assume that k for seawater is the same as the freshwater value given in Table 11.2.) (b) What is the density of seawater at this depth? (At the surface, seawater has a density of 1.03×10^3 kg/m^3.)

11.37 •• A square steel plate is 10.0 cm on a side and 0.500 cm thick. (a) Find the shear strain that results if two forces, each of magnitude 9.0×10^5 N and in opposite directions, act tangent to the surfaces of a pair of opposite sides of the object, as in Fig. 11.18. (b) Find the displacement x in centimeters.

Figure **E11.38**



11.38 • In lab tests on a 9.25 cm cube of a certain material, a force of 1375 N directed at 8.50° to the cube (**Fig. E11.38**) causes the cube to deform through an angle of 1.24°. What is the shear modulus of the material?

11.39 •• A steel wire with radius r_{steel} has a fractional increase in length of $(\Delta l/l_0)_{steel}$ when the tension in the wire is increased from zero to T_{steel}. An aluminum wire has radius r_{al} that is twice the radius of the steel wire: $r_{al} = 2r_{steel}$. In terms of T_{steel}, what tension in the aluminum wire produces the same fractional change in length as in the steel wire?

11.40 •• You apply a force of magnitude $F_\perp$ to one end of a wire and another force $F_\perp$ in the opposite direction to the other end of the wire. The cross-sectional area of the wire is 8.00 mm^2. You measure the fractional change in the length of the wire, $\Delta l/l_0$, for several values of $F_\perp$. When you plot your data with $\Delta l/l_0$ on the vertical axis and $F_\perp$ (in units of N) on the horizontal axis, the data lie close to a line that has slope 8.0×10^{-7} N^{-1}. What is the value of Young's modulus for this wire?

11.41 • An increase in applied pressure Δp_1 produces a fractional volume change of $(\Delta V/V_0)_1$ for a sample of glycerin. In terms of Δp_1, what pressure increase above atmospheric pressure is required to produce the same volume change $(\Delta V/V_0)_1$ for a sample of ethyl alcohol?

Section 11.5 Elasticity and Plasticity

11.42 •• A brass wire is to withstand a tensile force of 350 N without breaking. What minimum diameter must the wire have?

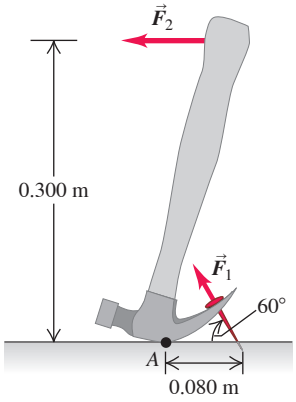
11.43 •• In a materials testing laboratory, a metal wire made from a new alloy is found to break when a tensile force of 87.8 N is applied perpendicular to each end. If the diameter of the wire is 1.19 mm, what is the breaking stress of the alloy?

11.44 •• CP A steel cable with cross-sectional area 2.70 cm^2 has an elastic limit of 2.40×10^8 Pa. Find the maximum upward acceleration that can be given a 1190 kg lift supported by the cable if the stress is not to exceed one-third of the elastic limit.

PROBLEMS

11.45 •• You are using a hammer to pull a nail from the floor, as shown in **Fig. P11.45**. Force $\vec{F}_2$ is the force you apply to the handle, and force $\vec{F}_1$ is the force the hammer applies to the nail. Estimate the maximum magnitude of the force $\vec{F}_2$ that you could apply to the hammer. If you apply this force, what is the magnitude of the force $\vec{F}_1$ that the hammer applies to the nail?

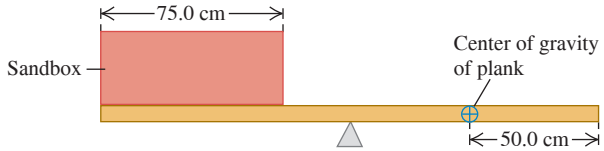
Figure **P11.45**



11.46 ••• A door 1.05 m wide and 2.20 m high weighs 284 N and is supported by two hinges, one 0.50 m from the top and the other 0.50 m from the bottom. Each hinge supports half the total weight of the door. Assuming that the door's center of gravity is at its center, find the horizontal components of force exerted on the door by each hinge.

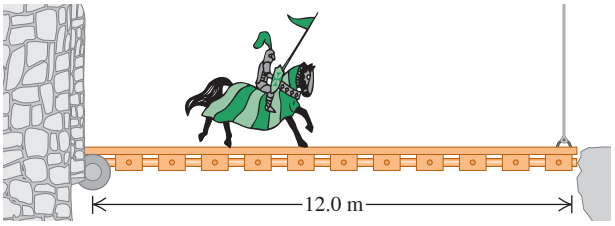
11.47 ••• A box of negligible mass rests at the left end of a 2.00 m, 25.0 kg plank (**Fig. P11.47**). The width of the box is 75.0 cm, and sand is to be distributed uniformly throughout it. The center of gravity of the nonuniform plank is 50.0 cm from the right end. What mass of sand should be put into the box so that the plank balances horizontally on a fulcrum placed just below its midpoint?

Figure **P11.47**



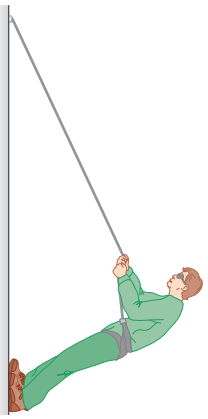
11.48 • Sir Lancelot rides slowly out of the castle at Camelot and onto the 12.0-m-long drawbridge that passes over the moat (**Fig. P11.48**). Unbeknownst to him, his enemies have partially severed the vertical cable holding up the front end of the bridge so that it will break under a tension of 5.80×10^3 N. The bridge has mass 200 kg and its center of gravity is at its center. Lancelot, his lance, his armor, and his horse together have a combined mass of 600 kg. Will the cable break before Lancelot reaches the end of the drawbridge? If so, how far from the castle end of the bridge will the center of gravity of the horse plus rider be when the cable breaks?

Figure **P11.48**



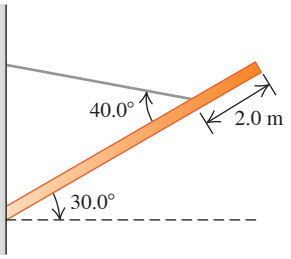
11.49 ••• **Mountain Climbing.** Mountaineers often use a rope to lower themselves down the face of a cliff (this is called *rappelling*). They do this with their body nearly horizontal and their feet pushing against the cliff (**Fig. P11.49**). Suppose that an 82.0 kg climber, who is 1.90 m tall and has a center of gravity 1.1 m from his feet, rappels down a vertical cliff with his body raised 35.0° above the horizontal. He holds the rope 1.40 m from his feet, and it makes a 25.0° angle with the cliff face. (a) What tension does his rope need to support? (b) Find the horizontal and vertical components of the force that the cliff face exerts on the climber's feet. (c) What minimum coefficient of static friction is needed to prevent the climber's feet from slipping on the cliff face if he has one foot at a time against the cliff?

Figure **P11.49**



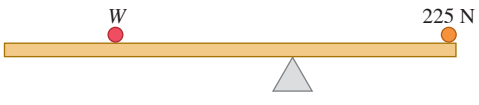
11.50 •• A uniform, 8.0 m, 1150 kg beam is hinged to a wall and supported by a thin cable attached 2.0 m from the free end of the beam (**Fig. P11.50**). The beam is supported at an angle of 30.0° above the horizontal. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the beam. (b) Find the tension in the cable. (c) How hard does the beam push inward on the wall?

Figure **P11.50**



11.51 •• A uniform, 251 N rod that is 1.80 m long carries a 225 N weight at its right end and an unknown weight W toward the left end (**Fig. P11.51**). When W is placed 47.2 cm from the left end of the rod, the system just balances horizontally when the fulcrum is located 67.3 cm from the right end. (a) Find W. (b) If W is now moved 29.1 cm to the right, how far and in what direction must the fulcrum be moved to restore balance?

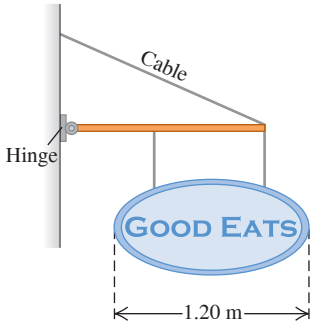
Figure **P11.51**



11.52 ••• A claw hammer is used to pull a nail out of a board (see Fig. P11.45). The nail is at an angle of 60° to the board, and a force $\vec{F}_1$ of magnitude 400 N applied to the nail is required to pull it from the board. The hammer head contacts the board at point A, which is 0.080 m from where the nail enters the board. A horizontal force $\vec{F}_2$ is applied to the hammer handle at a distance of 0.300 m above the board. What magnitude of force $\vec{F}_2$ is required to apply the required 400 N force (F_1) to the nail? (Ignore the weight of the hammer.)

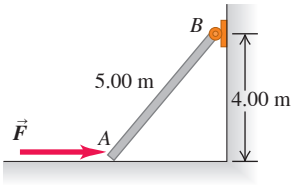
11.53 •• You open a restaurant and hope to entice customers by hanging out a sign (**Fig. P11.53**). The uniform horizontal beam supporting the sign is 1.50 m long, has a mass of 19.0 kg, and is hinged to the wall. The sign itself is uniform with a mass of 35.0 kg and overall length of 1.20 m. The two wires supporting the sign are each 32.0 cm long, are 95.0 cm apart, and are equally spaced from the middle of the sign. The cable supporting the beam is 2.20 m long. (a) What minimum tension must your cable be able to support without having your sign come crashing down? (b) What minimum vertical force must the hinge be able to support without pulling out of the wall?

Figure **P11.53**



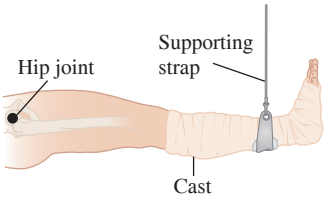
11.54 • End A of the bar AB in **Fig. P11.54** rests on a frictionless horizontal surface, and end B is hinged. A horizontal force $\vec{F}$ of magnitude 102 N is exerted on end A. Ignore the weight of the bar. What are the horizontal and vertical components of the force exerted by the bar on the hinge at B?

Figure **P11.54**



11.55 •• BIO **Supporting a Broken Leg.** A therapist tells a 70 kg patient with a broken leg that he must have his leg in a cast suspended horizontally. For minimum discomfort, the leg should be supported by a vertical strap attached at the center of mass of the leg–cast system (**Fig. P11.55**). To comply with these instructions, the patient consults a table of typical mass distributions and finds that both upper legs (thighs) together typically account for 21.5% of body weight and the center of mass of each thigh is 18.0 cm from the hip joint. The patient also reads that the two lower legs (including the feet) are 14.0% of body weight, with a center of mass 69.0 cm from the hip joint. The cast has a mass of 5.40 kg, and its center of mass is 78.0 cm from the hip joint. How far from the hip joint should the supporting strap be attached to the cast?

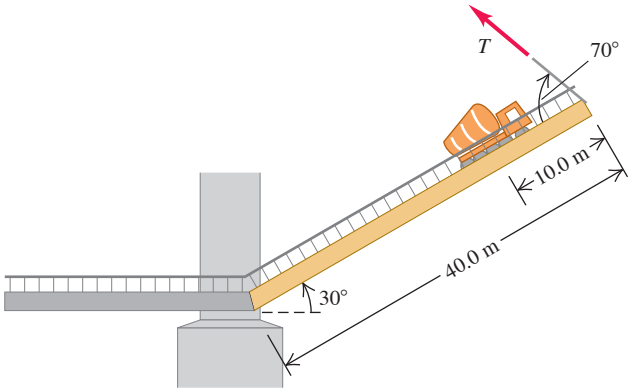
Figure **P11.55**



11.56 • **A Truck on a Drawbridge.** A loaded cement mixer drives onto an old drawbridge, where it stalls with its center of gravity three-quarters of the way across the span. The truck driver radios for help, sets the handbrake, and waits. Meanwhile, a boat approaches, so the drawbridge is raised by means of a cable attached to the end opposite the hinge (**Fig. P11.56**). The drawbridge is 40.0 m long and has a mass of 18,000 kg; its center of gravity is at its midpoint. The cement mixer, with driver, has mass 30,000 kg. When the drawbridge has been raised to an angle of 30° above the horizontal, the cable makes an angle of

70° with the surface of the bridge. (a) What is the tension T in the cable when the drawbridge is held in this position? (b) What are the horizontal and vertical components of the force the hinge exerts on the span?

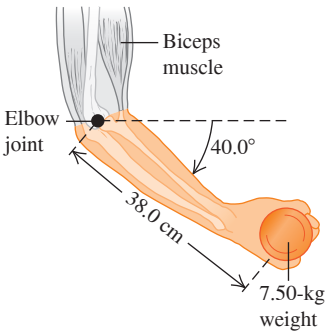
Figure P11.56



11.57 •• CP The left-hand end of a uniform rod of length L and mass m is attached to a vertical wall by a frictionless hinge. The rod is held at an angle θ above the horizontal by a horizontal wire that runs between the wall and the right-hand end of the rod. (a) If the tension in the wire is T, what is the magnitude of the angle θ that the rod makes with the horizontal? (b) The wire breaks and the rod rotates about the hinge. What is the angular speed of the rod as the rod passes through a horizontal position?

11.58 •• BIO **Pumping Iron.** A 72.0 kg weightlifter doing arm raises holds a 7.50 kg weight. Her arm pivots around the elbow joint, starting 40.0° below the horizontal (**Fig. P11.58**). Biometric measurements have shown that, together, the forearms and the hands account for 6.00% of a person's weight. Since the upper arm is held vertically, the biceps muscle always acts vertically and is attached to the bones of the forearm 5.50 cm from the elbow joint. The center of mass of this person's forearm–hand combination is 16.0 cm from the elbow joint, along the bones of the forearm, and she holds the weight 38.0 cm from her elbow joint. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the forearm. (b) What force does the biceps muscle exert on the forearm? (c) Find the magnitude and direction of the force that the elbow joint exerts on the forearm. (d) As the weightlifter raises her arm toward a horizontal position, will the force in the biceps muscle increase, decrease, or stay the same? Why?

Figure P11.58



11.59 •• The left-hand end of a light rod of length L is attached to a vertical wall by a frictionless hinge. An object of mass m is suspended from the rod at a point a distance αL from the hinge, where $0 < \alpha \leq 1.00$. The rod is held in a horizontal position by a light wire that runs from the right-hand end of the rod to the wall. The wire makes an angle θ with the rod. (a) What is the angle β that the net force exerted by the hinge on the rod makes with the horizontal? (b) What is the value of α for which $\beta = \theta$? (c) What is β when $\alpha = 1.00$?

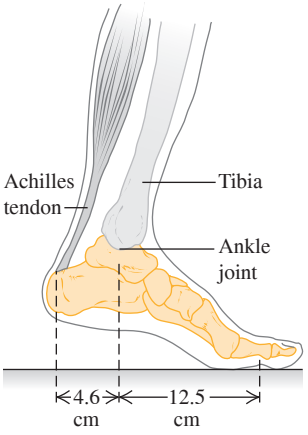
11.60 •• The left-hand end of a slender uniform rod of mass m is placed against a vertical wall. The rod is held in a horizontal position by friction at the wall and by a light wire that runs from the right-hand end of the rod to a point on the wall above the rod. The wire makes an angle θ with the rod. (a) What must the magnitude of the friction force be in order for the rod to remain at rest? (b) If the coefficient of static friction between the rod and the wall is μ_s, what is the maximum angle between the wire and the rod at which the rod doesn't slip at the wall?

11.61 •• A uniform, 6.6-m-long beam weighing 5180 N is hinged to a wall and supported by a thin cable attached 1.8 m from the free end of the beam. The cable runs between the beam and the wall and makes a 47° angle with the beam. What is the tension in the cable when the beam is at an angle of 28° above the horizontal?

11.62 •• CP A uniform drawbridge must be held at a 37° angle above the horizontal to allow ships to pass underneath. The drawbridge weighs 45,000 N and is 14.0 m long. A cable is connected 3.5 m from the hinge where the bridge pivots (measured along the bridge) and pulls horizontally on the bridge to hold it in place. (a) What is the tension in the cable? (b) Find the magnitude and direction of the force the hinge exerts on the bridge. (c) If the cable suddenly breaks, what is the magnitude of the angular acceleration of the drawbridge just after the cable breaks? (d) What is the angular speed of the drawbridge as it becomes horizontal?

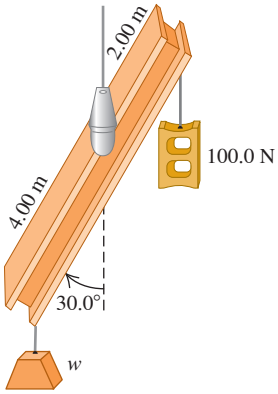
11.63 •• BIO **Tendon-Stretching Exercises.** As part of an exercise program, a 75 kg person does toe raises in which he raises his entire body weight on the ball of one foot (**Fig. P11.63**). The Achilles tendon pulls straight upward on the heel bone of his foot. This tendon is 25 cm long and has a cross-sectional area of 78 mm^2 and a Young's modulus of 1470 MPa. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the person's foot (everything below the ankle joint). Ignore the weight of the foot. (b) What force does the Achilles tendon exert on the heel during this exercise? Express your answer in newtons and in multiples of his weight. (c) By how many millimeters does the exercise stretch his Achilles tendon?

Figure P11.63



11.64 •• (a) In **Fig. P11.64** a 6.00-m-long, uniform beam is hanging from a point 1.00 m to the right of its center. The beam weighs 140 N and makes an angle of 30.0° with the vertical. At the right-hand end of the beam a 100.0 N weight is hung; an unknown weight w hangs at the left end. If the system is in equilibrium, what is w? You can ignore the thickness of the beam. (b) If the beam makes, instead, an angle of 45.0° with the vertical, what is w?

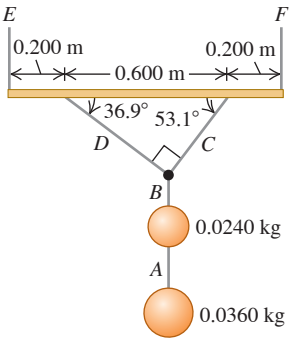
Figure P11.64



11.65 •• The left-hand end of a uniform rod of mass 2.00 kg and length 1.20 m is attached to a vertical wall by a frictionless hinge. The rod is held in a horizontal position by an aluminum wire that runs between the right-hand end of the rod and a point on the wall that is above the hinge. The cross-sectional radius of the wire is 2.50 mm, and the wire makes an angle of 30.0° with the rod. (a) What is the length of the wire? (b) An object of mass 90.0 kg is suspended from the right-hand end of the rod. What is the increase in the length of the wire when this object is added? In your analysis do you need to be concerned that the lengthening of the wire means that the rod is no longer horizontal?

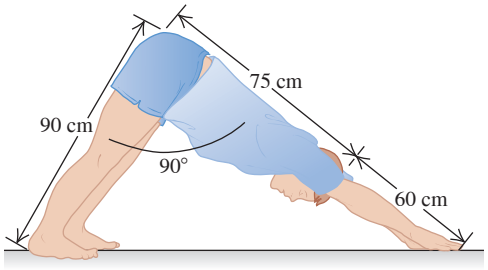
11.66 • A holiday decoration consists of two shiny glass spheres with masses 0.0240 kg and 0.0360 kg suspended from a uniform rod with mass 0.120 kg and length 1.00 m (**Fig. P11.66**). The rod is suspended from the ceiling by a vertical cord at each end, so that it is horizontal. Calculate the tension in each of the cords *A* through *F*.

Figure **P11.66**



11.67 •• **BIO Downward-Facing Dog.** The yoga exercise "Downward-Facing Dog" requires stretching your hands straight out above your head and bending down to lean against the floor. This exercise is performed by a 750 N person as shown in **Fig. P11.67**. When he bends his body at the hip to a 90° angle between his legs and trunk, his legs, trunk, head, and arms have the dimensions indicated. Furthermore, his legs and feet weigh a total of 277 N, and their center of mass is 41 cm from his hip, measured along his legs. The person's trunk, head, and arms weigh 473 N, and their center of gravity is 65 cm from his hip, measured along the upper body. (a) Find the normal force that the floor exerts on each foot and on each hand, assuming that the person does not favor either hand or either foot. (b) Find the friction force on each foot and on each hand, assuming that it is the same on both feet and on both hands (but not necessarily the same on the feet as on the hands). [*Hint:* First treat his entire body as a system; then isolate his legs (or his upper body).]

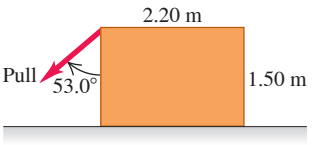
Figure **P11.67**



11.68 •• **CP** A brass wire is 1.40 m long and has a cross-sectional area of 6.00 mm^2. A small steel ball with mass 0.0800 kg is attached to the end of the wire. You hold the other end of the wire and whirl the ball in a vertical circle of radius 1.40 m. What speed must the ball have at the lowest point of its path if its fractional change in length of the brass wire at this point from its unstretched length is 2.0×10^{-5}? Treat the ball as a point mass.

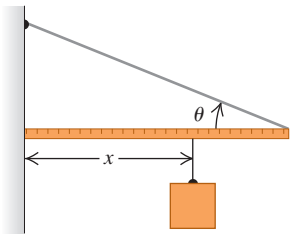
11.69 • A worker wants to turn over a uniform, 1250 N, rectangular crate by pulling at 53.0° on one of its vertical sides (**Fig. P11.69**). The floor is rough enough to prevent the crate from slipping. (a) What pull is needed to just start the crate to tip? (b) How hard does the floor push upward on the crate? (c) Find the friction force on the crate. (d) What is the minimum coefficient of static friction needed to prevent the crate from slipping on the floor?

Figure **P11.69**



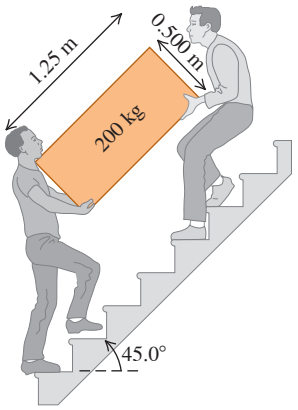
11.70 ••• One end of a uniform meter stick is placed against a vertical wall (**Fig. P11.70**). The other end is held by a lightweight cord that makes an angle θ with the stick. The coefficient of static friction between the end of the meter stick and the wall is 0.40. (a) What is the maximum value the angle θ can have if the stick is to remain in equilibrium? (b) Let the angle θ be 18°. A block of the same weight as the meter stick is suspended from the stick, as shown, at a distance x from the wall. What is the minimum value of x for which the stick will remain in equilibrium? (c) When $\theta = 18°$, how large must the coefficient of static friction be so that the block can be attached 10 cm from the left end of the stick without causing it to slip?

Figure **P11.70**



11.71 •• Two friends are carrying a 200 kg crate up a flight of stairs. The crate is 1.25 m long and 0.500 m high, and its center of gravity is at its center. The stairs make a 45.0° angle with respect to the floor. The crate also is carried at a 45.0° angle, so that its bottom side is parallel to the slope of the stairs (**Fig. P11.71**). If the force each person applies is vertical, what is the magnitude of each of these forces? Is it better to be the person above or below on the stairs?

Figure **P11.71**



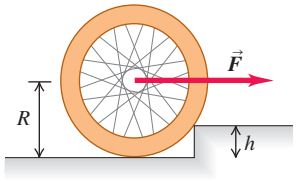
11.72 ••• In a city park a nonuniform wooden beam 4.00 m long is suspended horizontally by a light steel cable at each end. The cable at the left-hand end makes an angle of 30.0° with the vertical and has tension 620 N. The cable at the right-hand end of the beam makes an angle of 50.0° with the vertical. As an employee of the Parks and Recreation Department, you are asked to find the weight of the beam and the location of its center of gravity.

11.73 •• **CALC BIO** Refer to the discussion of holding a dumbbell in Example 11.4 (Section 11.3). The maximum weight that can be held in this way is limited by the maximum allowable tendon tension T (determined by the strength of the tendons) and by the distance D from the elbow to where the tendon attaches to the forearm. (a) Let T_{max} represent the maximum value of the tendon tension. Use the results of Example 11.4 to express w_{max} (the maximum weight that can be held) in terms of T_{max}, L, D, and h. Your expression should *not* include the angle θ. (b) The tendons of different primates are attached to the forearm at different values of D. Calculate the derivative of w_{max} with respect to D, and

determine whether the derivative is positive or negative. (c) A chimpanzee tendon is attached to the forearm at a point farther from the elbow than for humans. Use this to explain why chimpanzees have stronger arms than humans. (The disadvantage is that chimpanzees have less flexible arms than do humans.)

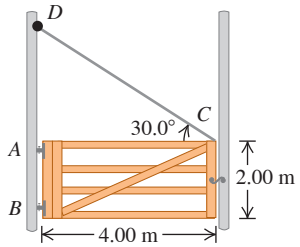
11.74 •• You are trying to raise a bicycle wheel of mass m and radius R up over a curb of height h. To do this, you apply a horizontal force $\vec{F}$ (**Fig. P11.74**). What is the smallest magnitude of the force $\vec{F}$ that will succeed in raising the wheel onto the curb when the force is applied (a) at the center of the wheel and (b) at the top of the wheel? (c) In which case is less force required?

Figure P11.74



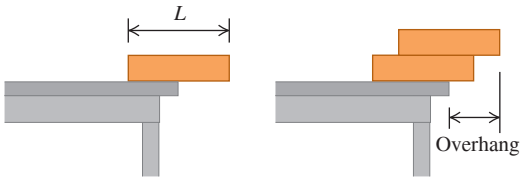
11.75 • **The Farmyard Gate.** A gate 4.00 m wide and 2.00 m high weighs 550 N. Its center of gravity is at its center, and it is hinged at A and B. To relieve the strain on the top hinge, a wire CD is connected as shown in **Fig. P11.75**. The tension in CD is increased until the horizontal force at hinge A is zero. What is (a) the tension in the wire CD; (b) the magnitude of the horizontal component of the force at hinge B; (c) the combined vertical force exerted by hinges A and B?

Figure P11.75



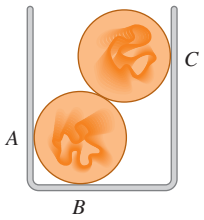
11.76 • If you put a uniform block at the edge of a table, the center of the block must be over the table for the block not to fall off. (a) If you stack two identical blocks at the table edge, the center of the top block must be over the bottom block, and the center of gravity of the two blocks together must be over the table. In terms of the length L of each block, what is the maximum overhang possible (**Fig. P11.76**)? (b) Repeat part (a) for three identical blocks and for four identical blocks. (c) Is it possible to make a stack of blocks such that the uppermost block is not directly over the table at all? How many blocks would it take to do this? (Try.)

Figure P11.76



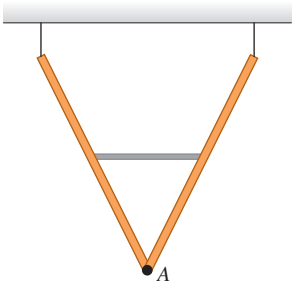
11.77 ••• Two uniform, 75.0 g marbles 2.00 cm in diameter are stacked as shown in **Fig. P11.77** in a container that is 3.00 cm wide. (a) Find the force that the container exerts on the marbles at the points of contact A, B, and C. (b) What force does each marble exert on the other?

Figure P11.77



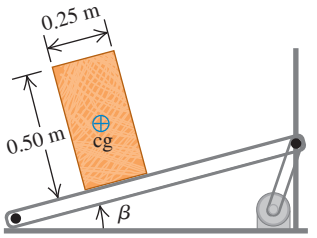
11.78 •• Two identical, uniform beams weighing 260 N each are connected at one end by a frictionless hinge. A light horizontal crossbar attached at the midpoints of the beams maintains an angle of 53.0° between the beams. The beams are suspended from the ceiling by vertical wires such that they form a "V" (**Fig. P11.78**). (a) What force does the crossbar exert on each beam? (b) Is the crossbar under tension or compression? (c) What force (magnitude and direction) does the hinge at point A exert on each beam?

Figure P11.78



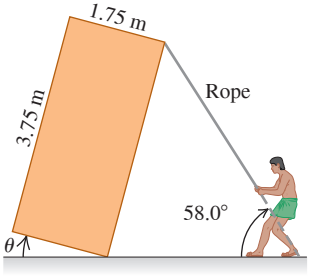
11.79 • An engineer is designing a conveyor system for loading hay bales into a wagon (**Fig. P11.79**). Each bale is 0.25 m wide, 0.50 m high, and 0.63 m long (the dimension perpendicular to the plane of the figure), with mass 30.8 kg. The center of gravity of each bale is at its geometrical center. The coefficient of static friction between a bale and the conveyor belt is 0.67, and the belt moves with constant speed. (a) The angle β of the conveyor is slowly increased. At some critical angle a bale will tip (if it doesn't slip first), and at some different critical angle it will slip (if it doesn't tip first). Find the two critical angles and determine which happens at the smaller angle. (b) Would the outcome of part (a) be different if the coefficient of friction were 0.40?

Figure P11.79



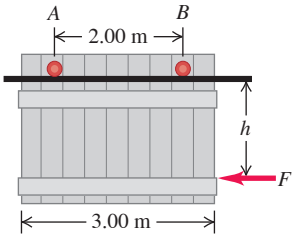
11.80 ••• **Pyramid Builders.** Ancient pyramid builders are balancing a uniform rectangular slab of stone tipped at an angle θ above the horizontal using a rope (**Fig. P11.80**). The rope is held by five workers who share the force equally. (a) If $\theta = 16.6°$, what force does each worker exert on the rope? (b) As θ increases, does each worker have to exert more or less force than in part (a), assuming they do not change the angle of the rope? Why? (c) At what angle do the workers need to exert *no force* to balance the slab? What happens if θ exceeds this value?

Figure P11.80



11.81 •• A garage door is mounted on an overhead rail (**Fig. P11.81**). The wheels at A and B have rusted so that they do not roll, but rather slide along the track. The coefficient of kinetic friction is 0.49. The distance between the wheels is 2.00 m, and each is 0.50 m from the vertical sides of the door. The door is uniform and weighs 958 N. It is pushed to the left at constant speed by a horizontal force $\vec{F}$. (a) If the distance h is 1.43 m, what is the vertical component of the force exerted on each wheel by the track? (b) Find the maximum value h can have without causing one wheel to leave the track.

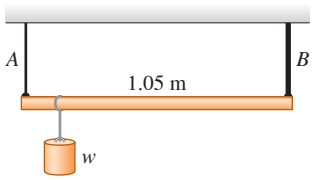
Figure P11.81



11.82 ••• CP A 11.1 kg mass, fastened to the end of an aluminum wire with an unstretched length of 0.54 m, is whirled in a vertical circle with a constant angular speed of 130 rev/min. The cross-sectional area of the wire is 1.3×10^{-2} cm^2. Calculate the elongation of the wire when the mass is (a) at the lowest point of the path and (b) at the highest point of its path.

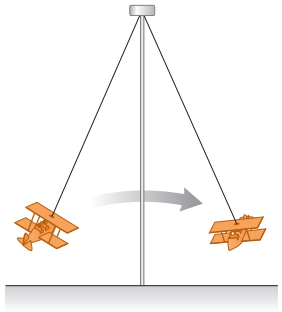
11.83 ••• A 1.05-m-long rod of negligible weight is supported at its ends by wires A and B of equal length (**Fig. P11.83**). The cross-sectional area of A is 1.96 mm^2 and that of B is 4.29 mm^2. Young's modulus for wire A is 2.50×10^{11} Pa; that for B is 1.10×10^{11} Pa. At what point along the rod should a weight w be suspended to produce (a) equal stresses in A and B and (b) equal strains in A and B?

Figure P11.83



11.84 ••• CP An amusement park ride consists of airplane-shaped cars attached to steel rods (**Fig. P11.84**). Each rod has a length of 16.0 m and a cross-sectional area of 8.20 cm^2. (a) How much is each rod stretched when it is vertical and the ride is at rest? (Assume that each car plus two people seated in it has a total weight of 1830 N.) (b) When operating, the ride has a maximum angular speed of 8.6 rev/min. How much is the rod stretched then?

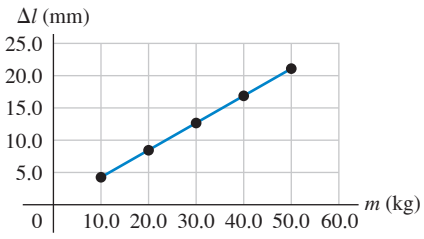
Figure P11.84



11.85 ••• CP BIO **Stress on the Shin Bone.** The compressive strength of our bones is important in everyday life. Young's modulus for bone is about 1.4×10^{10} Pa. Bone can take only about a 1.0% change in its length before fracturing. (a) What is the maximum force that can be applied to a bone whose minimum cross-sectional area is 3.0 cm^2? (This is approximately the cross-sectional area of a tibia, or shin bone, at its narrowest point.) (b) Estimate the maximum height from which a 70 kg man could jump and not fracture his tibia. Take the time between when he first touches the floor and when he has stopped to be 0.030 s, and assume that the stress on his two legs is distributed equally.

11.86 •• DATA You are to use a long, thin wire to build a pendulum in a science museum. The wire has an unstretched length of 22.0 m and a circular cross section of diameter 0.860 mm; it is made of an alloy that has a large breaking stress. One end of the wire will be attached to the ceiling, and a 9.50 kg metal sphere will be attached to the other end. As the pendulum swings back and forth, the wire's maximum angular displacement from the vertical will be 36.0°. You must determine the maximum amount the wire will stretch during this motion. So, before you attach the metal sphere, you suspend a test mass (mass m) from the wire's lower end. You then measure the increase in length Δl of the wire for several different test masses. **Figure P11.86**, a graph of Δl versus m, shows the results and the straight line that gives the best fit to the data. The equation for this line is $\Delta l = (0.422 \text{ mm/kg})m$. (a) Assume that $g = 9.80$ m/s^2, and use Fig. P11.86 to calculate Young's modulus Y for this wire. (b) You remove the test masses, attach the 9.50 kg sphere, and release the sphere from rest, with the wire displaced by 36.0°. Calculate the amount the wire will stretch as it swings through the vertical. Ignore air resistance.

Figure P11.86



11.87 •• DATA You need to measure the mass M of a 4.00-m-long bar. The bar has a square cross section but has some holes drilled along its length, so you suspect that its center of gravity isn't in the middle of the bar. The bar is too long for you to weigh on your scale. So, first you balance the bar on a knife-edge pivot and determine that the bar's center of gravity is 1.88 m from its left-hand end. You then place the bar on the pivot so that the point of support is 1.50 m from the left-hand end of the bar. Next you suspend a 2.00 kg mass (m_1) from the bar at a point 0.200 m from the left-hand end. Finally, you suspend a mass $m_2 = 1.00$ kg from the bar at a distance x from the left-hand end and adjust x so that the bar is balanced. You repeat this step for other values of m_2 and record each corresponding value of x. The table gives your results.

m_2 (kg)	1.00	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00
x (m)	3.50	2.83	2.50	2.32	2.16	2.00

(a) Draw a free-body diagram for the bar when m_1 and m_2 are suspended from it. (b) Apply the static equilibrium equation $\Sigma\tau_z = 0$ with the axis at the location of the knife-edge pivot. Solve the equation for x as a function of m_2. (c) Plot x versus $1/m_2$. Use the slope of the best-fit straight line and the equation you derived in part (b) to calculate that bar's mass M. Use $g = 9.80$ m/s^2. (d) What is the y-intercept of the straight line that fits the data? Explain why it has this value.

11.88 ••• DATA You are a construction engineer working on the interior design of a retail store in a mall. A 2.00-m-long uniform bar of mass 8.50 kg is to be attached at one end to a wall, by means of a hinge that allows the bar to rotate freely with very little friction. The bar will be held in a horizontal position by a light cable from a point on the bar (a distance x from the hinge) to a point on the wall above the hinge. The cable makes an angle θ with the bar. The architect has proposed four possible ways to connect the cable and asked you to assess them:

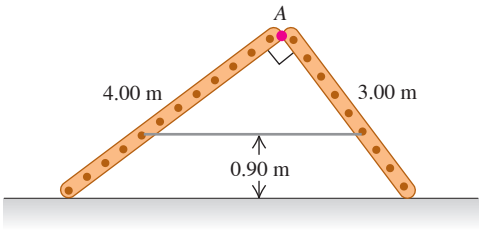
Alternative	A	B	C	D
x (m)	2.00	1.50	0.75	0.50
θ (degrees)	30	60	37	75

(a) There is concern about the strength of the cable that will be required. Which set of x and θ values in the table produces the smallest tension in the cable? The greatest? (b) There is concern about the breaking strength of the sheetrock wall where the hinge will be attached. Which set of x and θ values produces the smallest horizontal component of the force the bar exerts on the hinge? The largest? (c) There is also concern about the required strength of the hinge and the strength of its attachment to the wall. Which set of x and θ values produces the smallest magnitude of the vertical component of the force the bar exerts on the hinge? The largest? (*Hint:* Does the direction of the vertical component of the force the hinge exerts on the bar depend on where along the bar the cable is attached?) (d) Is one of the alternatives given in the table preferable? Should any of the alternatives be avoided? Discuss.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

11.89 ••• Two ladders, 4.00 m and 3.00 m long, are hinged at point A and tied together by a horizontal rope 0.90 m above the floor (**Fig. P11.89**). The ladders weigh 480 N and 360 N, respectively, and the center of gravity of each is at its center. Assume that the floor is freshly waxed and frictionless. (a) Find the upward force at the bottom of each ladder. (b) Find the tension in the rope. (c) Find the magnitude

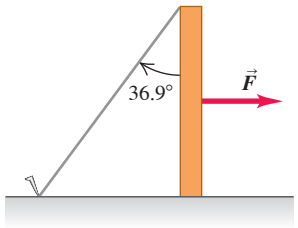
Figure P11.89



of the force one ladder exerts on the other at point A. (d) If an 800 N painter stands at point A, find the tension in the horizontal rope.

11.90 ••• Knocking Over a Post. One end of a post weighing 400 N and with height h rests on a rough horizontal surface with $\mu_s = 0.30$. The upper end is held by a rope fastened to the surface and making an angle of 36.9° with the post (**Fig. P11.90**). A horizontal force $\vec{F}$ is exerted on the post as shown. (a) If the force $\vec{F}$ is applied at the midpoint of the post, what is the largest value it can have without causing the post to slip? (b) How large can the force be without causing the post to slip if its point of application is $\frac{6}{10}$ of the way from the ground to the top of the post? (c) Show that if the point of application of the force is too high, the post cannot be made to slip, no matter how great the force. Find the critical height for the point of application.

Figure P11.90

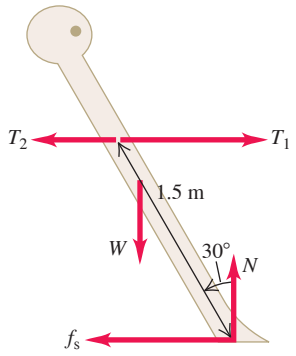


11.91 ••• CP An angler hangs a 4.50 kg fish from a vertical steel wire 1.50 m long and 5.00×10^{-3} cm^2 in cross-sectional area. The upper end of the wire is securely fastened to a support. (a) Calculate the amount the wire is stretched by the hanging fish. The angler now applies a varying force $\vec{F}$ at the lower end of the wire, pulling it very slowly downward by 0.500 mm from its equilibrium position. For this downward motion, calculate (b) the work done by gravity; (c) the work done by the force $\vec{F}$; (d) the work done by the force the wire exerts on the fish; and (e) the change in the elastic potential energy (the potential energy associated with the tensile stress in the wire). Compare the answers in parts (d) and (e).

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO Torques and Tug-of-War. In a study of the biomechanics of the tug-of-war, a 2.0-m-tall, 80.0 kg competitor in the middle of the line is considered to be a rigid body leaning back at an angle of 30.0° to the vertical. The competitor is pulling on a rope that is held horizontal a distance of 1.5 m from his feet (as measured along the line of the body). At the moment shown in the figure, the man is stationary and the tension in the rope in front of him is $T_1 = 1160$ N. Since there is friction between the rope and his hands, the tension in the rope behind him, T_2, is not equal to T_1. His center of mass is halfway between his feet and the top of his head. The coefficient of static friction between his feet and the ground is 0.65.

Figure 11.92 Side view.



11.92 What is tension T_2 in the rope behind him? (a) 590 N; (b) 650 N; (c) 860 N; (d) 1100 N.

11.93 If he leans slightly farther back (increasing the angle between his body and the vertical) but remains stationary in this new position, which of the following statements is true? Assume that the rope remains horizontal. (a) The difference between T_1 and T_2 will increase, balancing the increased torque about his feet that his weight produces when he leans farther back; (b) the difference between T_1 and T_2 will decrease, balancing the increased torque about his feet that his weight produces when he leans farther back; (c) neither T_1 nor T_2 will change, because no other forces are changing; (d) both T_1 and T_2 will change, but the difference between them will remain the same.

11.94 His body is again leaning back at 30.0° to the vertical, but now the height at which the rope is held above—but still parallel to—the ground is varied. The tension in the rope in front of the competitor (T_1) is measured as a function of the shortest distance between the rope and the ground (the holding height). Tension T_1 is found to decrease as the holding height increases. What could explain this observation? As the holding height increases, (a) the moment arm of the rope about his feet decreases due to the angle that his body makes with the vertical; (b) the moment arm of the weight about his feet decreases due to the angle that his body makes with the vertical; (c) a smaller tension in the rope is needed to produce a torque sufficient to balance the torque of the weight about his feet; (d) his center of mass moves down to compensate, so less tension in the rope is required to maintain equilibrium.

11.95 His body is leaning back at 30.0° to the vertical, but the coefficient of static friction between his feet and the ground is suddenly reduced to 0.50. What will happen? (a) His entire body will accelerate forward; (b) his feet will slip forward; (c) his feet will slip backward; (d) his feet will not slip.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(i) Each stone in the arch is under compression, not tension. This is because the forces on the stones tend to push them inward toward the center of the arch and thus squeeze them together. Compared to a solid supporting wall, a wall with arches is just as strong yet much more economical to build.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP11.1.1 13.3 kg
VP11.1.2 11.0 m
VP11.1.3 $L/10$ to the right of center
VP11.1.4 141 kg
VP11.4.1 5.86 m
VP11.4.2 nose wheel: 19.8%, main wheels: 80.2%
VP11.4.3 (a) $F_{\text{hinge-}y} = 0$ (b) $T = w/\sin\theta$ (c) $F_{\text{hinge-}x} = w/\tan\theta$
VP11.4.4 (a) $F_{\text{hinge-}y} = w/2$ (b) $T = 3w/2\sin\theta$ (c) $F_{\text{hinge-}x} = 3w/2\tan\theta$
VP11.7.1 (a) 5.5×10^8 Pa (b) 3.5×10^4 N
VP11.7.2 (a) 2.3×10^{-4} (b) 0.19 mm
VP11.7.3 (a) 4.4×10^{-9} m^3 (b) 6.7×10^{-9} m^3
VP11.7.4 4.8×10^{-5} m

Bridging Problem

(a) $T = \dfrac{2mg}{3\sin\theta}$

(b) $F = \dfrac{2mg}{3\sin\theta}\sqrt{\cos^2\theta + \frac{1}{4}\sin^2\theta}, \quad \phi = \arctan\left(\frac{1}{2}\tan\theta\right)$

(c) $\Delta l = \dfrac{mgl_0}{2AY\tan\theta}$

(d) 4

? A colorful tail-spot wrasse (*Halichoeres melanurus*) is about 10 cm long and can float in the ocean with little effort, while a manta ray (*Manta birostris*) is more than 5 m across and must "flap" its fins continuously to keep from sinking. Which of these best explains the difference? A manta ray has (i) a different shape; (ii) greater mass; (iii) greater volume; (iv) a greater product of mass and volume; (v) a greater ratio of mass to volume.

12 Fluid Mechanics

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **12.1** The meaning of the density of a material and the average density of an object.
- **12.2** What is meant by the pressure in a fluid, and how it is measured.
- **12.3** How to calculate the buoyant force that a fluid exerts on an object immersed in it.
- **12.4** The significance of laminar versus turbulent fluid flow, and how the speed of flow in a tube depends on the tube's size.
- **12.5** How to use Bernoulli's equation to relate pressure and flow speed at different points in certain types of flow.
- **12.6** How viscous flow and turbulent flow differ from ideal flow.

You'll need to review...

- **7.1** Mechanical energy change when forces other than gravity do work.
- **11.4** Pressure and its units.

Fluids play a vital role in many aspects of everyday life. We drink them, breathe them, swim in them. They circulate through our bodies and control our weather. The physics of fluids is therefore crucial to our understanding of both nature and technology.

We begin our study with **fluid statics,** the study of fluids at rest in equilibrium situations. Like other equilibrium situations, it is based on Newton's first and third laws. We'll explore the key concepts of density, pressure, and buoyancy. **Fluid dynamics,** the study of fluids in motion, is much more complex; indeed, it is one of the most complex branches of mechanics. Fortunately, we can analyze many important situations by using simple idealized models and familiar principles such as Newton's laws and conservation of energy. Even so, we'll barely scratch the surface of this broad and interesting topic.

12.1 GASES, LIQUIDS, AND DENSITY

A **fluid** is any substance that can flow and change the shape of the volume that it occupies. (By contrast, a solid tends to maintain its shape.) We use the term "fluid" for both gases and liquids. The key difference between them is that a liquid has *cohesion,* while a gas does not. The molecules in a liquid are close to one another, so they can exert attractive forces on each other and thus tend to stay together (that is, to cohere). That's why a quantity of liquid maintains the same volume as it flows: If you pour 500 mL of water into a pan, the water will still occupy a volume of 500 mL. The molecules of a gas, by contrast, are separated on average by distances far larger than the size of a molecule. Hence the forces between molecules are weak, there is little or no cohesion, and a gas can easily change in volume. If you open the valve on a tank of compressed oxygen that has a volume of 500 mL, the oxygen will expand to a far greater volume.

An important property of *any* material, fluid or solid, is its **density,** defined as its mass per unit volume. A homogeneous material such as ice or iron has the same density throughout. We use ρ (the Greek letter rho) for density. For a homogeneous material,

$$\text{Density of a homogeneous material: } \rho = \frac{m}{V} \quad \begin{matrix} \leftarrow \text{Mass of material} \\ \leftarrow \text{Volume occupied by material} \end{matrix} \qquad (12.1)$$

Two objects made of the same material have the same density even though they may have different masses and different volumes. That's because the *ratio* of mass to volume is the same for both objects (**Fig. 12.1**).

The SI unit of density is the kilogram per cubic meter ($1\ \text{kg/m}^3$). The cgs unit, the gram per cubic centimeter ($1\ \text{g/cm}^3$), is also widely used:

$$1\ \text{g/cm}^3 = 1000\ \text{kg/m}^3$$

The densities of some common substances at ordinary temperatures are given in **Table 12.1**. Note the wide range of magnitudes. The densest material found on earth is the metal osmium ($\rho = 22{,}500\ \text{kg/m}^3$), but its density pales by comparison to the densities of exotic astronomical objects, such as white dwarf stars and neutron stars.

The **specific gravity** of a material is the ratio of its density to the density of water at 4.0°C, $1000\ \text{kg/m}^3$; it is a pure number without units. For example, the specific gravity of aluminum is 2.7. "Specific gravity" is a poor term, since it has nothing to do with gravity; "relative density" would have been a better choice.

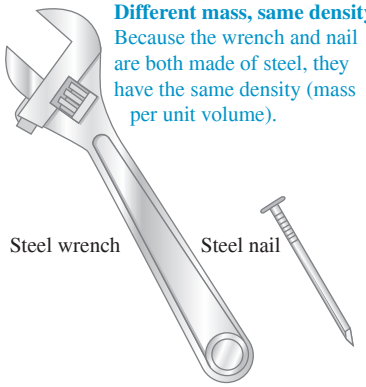
The density of some materials varies from point to point within the material. One example is the material of the human body, which includes low-density fat (about $940\ \text{kg/m}^3$) and high-density bone (from 1700 to $2500\ \text{kg/m}^3$). Two others are the earth's atmosphere (which is less dense at high altitudes) and oceans (which are denser at greater depths). For these materials, Eq. (12.1) describes the **average density.** In general, the density of a material depends on environmental factors such as temperature and pressure.

TABLE 12.1 Densities of Some Common Substances

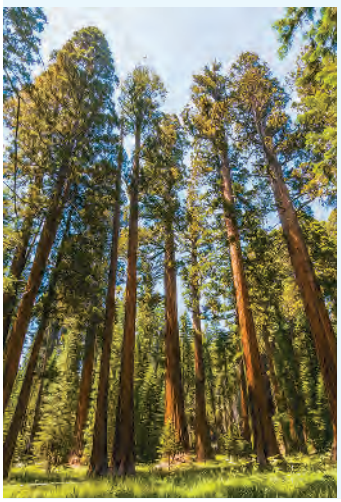
Material	Density (kg/m^3)*	Material	Density (kg/m^3)*
Air (1 atm, 20°C)	1.20	Iron, steel	7.8×10^3
Ethanol	0.81×10^3	Brass	8.6×10^3
Benzene	0.90×10^3	Copper	8.9×10^3
Ice	0.92×10^3	Silver	10.5×10^3
Water	1.00×10^3	Lead	11.3×10^3
Seawater	1.03×10^3	Mercury	13.6×10^3
Blood	1.06×10^3	Gold	19.3×10^3
Glycerin	1.26×10^3	Platinum	21.4×10^3
Concrete	2×10^3	White dwarf star	10^{10}
Aluminum	2.7×10^3	Neutron star	10^{18}

*To obtain the densities in grams per cubic centimeter, simply divide by 10^3.

Figure **12.1** Two objects with different masses and different volumes but the same density.



BIO APPLICATION Liquid Cohesion in Trees How do trees—some of which grow to heights greater than 100 m—supply water to their highest leaves? The answer lies in the strong cohesive forces between molecules of liquid water. Narrow pipes within the tree extend upward from the roots to the leaves. As water evaporates from the leaves, cohesive forces pull replacement water upward through these pipes.



EXAMPLE 12.1 The weight of a roomful of air

Find the mass and weight of the air at 20°C in a living room with a 4.0 m × 5.0 m floor and a ceiling 3.0 m high, and the mass and weight of an equal volume of water.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We assume that the air density is the same throughout the room. (Air is less dense at high elevations than near sea level, but the density varies negligibly over the room's 3.0 m height; see Section 12.2.) We use Eq. (12.1) to relate the mass m_{air} to the room's volume V (which we'll calculate) and the air density ρ_{air} (given in Table 12.1).

EXECUTE We have $V = (4.0\ \text{m})(5.0\ \text{m})(3.0\ \text{m}) = 60\ \text{m}^3$, so from Eq. (12.1),

$$m_{\text{air}} = \rho_{\text{air}} V = (1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3)(60\ \text{m}^3) = 72\ \text{kg}$$

$$w_{\text{air}} = m_{\text{air}} g = (72\ \text{kg})(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2) = 700\ \text{N}$$

The mass and weight of an equal volume of water are

$$m_{\text{water}} = \rho_{\text{water}} V = (1000\ \text{kg/m}^3)(60\ \text{m}^3) = 6.0 \times 10^4\ \text{kg}$$

$$w_{\text{water}} = m_{\text{water}} g = (6.0 \times 10^4\ \text{kg})(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)$$

$$= 5.9 \times 10^5\ \text{N}$$

EVALUATE A roomful of air weighs about the same as an average adult. Water is nearly a thousand times denser than air, so its mass and weight are larger by the same factor. The weight of a roomful of water would collapse the floor of an ordinary house.

KEYCONCEPT To find the density of a uniform substance, divide the mass of the substance by the volume that it occupies.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 12.1 Rank the following objects in order from highest to lowest average density: (i) mass $m = 4.00$ kg, volume $V = 1.60 \times 10^{-3}$ m^3; (ii) $m = 8.00$ kg, $V = 1.60 \times 10^{-3}$ m^3; (iii) $m = 8.00$ kg, $V = 3.20 \times 10^{-3}$ m^3; (iv) $m = 2560$ kg, $V = 0.640$ m^3; (v) $m = 2560$ kg, $V = 1.28$ m^3.

ANSWER (ii), (iv), (i) and (iii) (tie), (v) In each case the average density equals the mass divided by the volume: (i) $\rho = (4.00\ \text{kg})/(1.60 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3) = 2.50 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (ii) $\rho = (8.00\ \text{kg})/(1.60 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3) = 5.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (iii) $\rho = (8.00\ \text{kg})/(3.20 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3) = 2.50 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (iv) $\rho = (2560\ \text{kg})/(0.640\ \text{m}^3) = 4.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; (v) $\rho = (2560\ \text{kg})/(1.28\ \text{m}^3) = 2.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$. Note that compared to object (i), object (ii) has double the mass but the same volume and so has double the average density. Object (iii) has double the mass and double the volume of object (i), so (i) and (iii) have the same average density. Finally, object (v) has the same mass as object (iv) but double the volume, so (v) has half the average density of (iv).

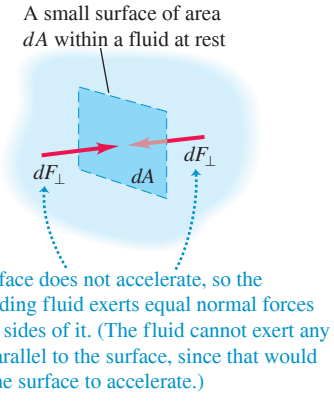
12.2 PRESSURE IN A FLUID

A fluid exerts a force perpendicular to any surface in contact with it, such as a container wall or an object immersed in the fluid. This is the force that you feel pressing on your legs when you dangle them in a swimming pool. Even when a fluid as a whole is at rest, the molecules that make up the fluid are in motion; the force exerted by the fluid is due to molecules colliding with their surroundings.

Imagine a surface *within* a fluid at rest. For this surface and the fluid to remain at rest, the fluid must exert forces of equal magnitude but opposite direction on the surface's two sides. Consider a small surface of area dA centered on a point in the fluid; the normal force exerted by the fluid on each side is $dF_\perp$ (**Fig. 12.2**). We define the **pressure** p at that point as the normal force per unit area—that is, the ratio of $dF_\perp$ to dA (**Fig. 12.3**):

$$\text{Pressure at a point in a fluid: } p = \frac{dF_\perp}{dA} \quad \begin{matrix}\text{Normal force exerted by fluid on a small surface at that point} \\ \text{Area of surface}\end{matrix} \tag{12.2}$$

Figure 12.2 Forces acting on a small surface within a fluid at rest.



If the pressure is the same at all points of a finite plane surface with area A, then

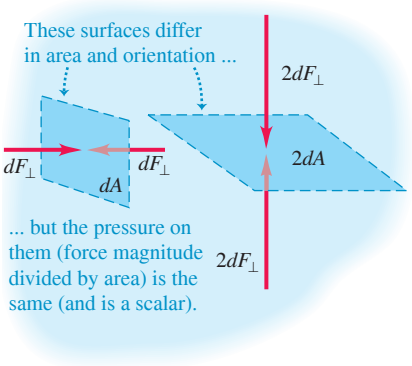
$$p = \frac{F_\perp}{A} \tag{12.3}$$

where $F_\perp$ is the net normal force on one side of the surface. The SI unit of pressure is the **pascal,** where

$$1 \text{ pascal} = 1 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ N/m}^2$$

We introduced the pascal in Chapter 11. Two related units, used principally in meteorology, are the *bar,* equal to 10^5 Pa, and the *millibar,* equal to 100 Pa.

Figure 12.3 Pressure is a scalar with units of newtons per square meter. By contrast, force is a vector with units of newtons.



Atmospheric pressure p_a is the pressure of the earth's atmosphere, the pressure at the bottom of this sea of air in which we live. This pressure varies with weather changes and with elevation. Normal atmospheric pressure at sea level (an average value) is 1 *atmosphere* (atm), defined to be exactly 101,325 Pa. To four significant figures,

$$\begin{aligned}(p_a)_{\text{av}} &= 1 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} \\ &= 1.013 \text{ bar} = 1013 \text{ millibar}\end{aligned}$$

CAUTION **Don't confuse pressure and force** In everyday language "pressure" and "force" mean pretty much the same thing. In fluid mechanics, however, these words describe very different quantities. Pressure acts perpendicular to any surface in a fluid, no matter how that surface is oriented (Fig. 12.3). Hence pressure has no direction of its own; it's a scalar. By contrast, force is a vector with a definite direction. Remember, too, that pressure is force per unit area. As Fig. 12.3 shows, a surface with twice the area has twice as much force exerted on it by the fluid, so the pressure is the same.

EXAMPLE 12.2 The force of air

In the room described in Example 12.1, what is the total downward force on the floor due to an air pressure of 1.00 atm?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This example uses the relationship among the pressure p of a fluid (air), the area A subjected to that pressure, and the resulting normal force $F_\perp$ the fluid exerts. The pressure is uniform, so we use Eq. (12.3), $F_\perp = pA$, to determine $F_\perp$. The floor is horizontal, so $F_\perp$ is vertical (downward).

EXECUTE We have $A = (4.0\text{ m})(5.0\text{ m}) = 20\text{ m}^2$, so from Eq. (12.3),

$$F_\perp = pA = (1.013 \times 10^5\text{ N/m}^2)(20\text{ m}^2)$$
$$= 2.0 \times 10^6\text{ N}$$

EVALUATE Unlike the water in Example 12.1, $F_\perp$ will not collapse the floor here, because there is an *upward* force of equal magnitude on the floor's underside. If the house has a basement, this upward force is exerted by the air underneath the floor. In this case, if we ignore the thickness of the floor, the *net* force due to air pressure is zero.

KEYCONCEPT To find the force exerted by a fluid perpendicular to a surface, multiply the pressure of the fluid by the surface's area. This relationship comes from the definition of pressure as the normal force per unit area within the fluid.

Pressure, Depth, and Pascal's Law

If the weight of the fluid can be ignored, the pressure in a fluid is the same throughout its volume. We used that approximation in our discussion of bulk stress and strain in Section 11.4. But often the fluid's weight is *not* negligible, and pressure variations are important. Atmospheric pressure is less at high altitude than at sea level, which is why airliner cabins have to be pressurized. When you dive into deep water, you can feel the increased pressure on your ears.

We can derive a relationship between the pressure p at any point in a fluid at rest and the elevation y of the point. We'll assume that the density ρ has the same value throughout the fluid (that is, the density is *uniform*), as does the acceleration due to gravity g. If the fluid is in equilibrium, any thin element of the fluid with thickness dy is also in equilibrium (**Fig. 12.4a**). The bottom and top surfaces each have area A, and they are at elevations y and $y + dy$ above some reference level where $y = 0$. The fluid element has volume $dV = A\,dy$, mass $dm = \rho\,dV = \rho A\,dy$, and weight $dw = dm\,g = \rho g A\,dy$.

What are the other forces on this fluid element (Fig 12.4b)? Let's call the pressure at the bottom surface p; then the total y-component of upward force on this surface is pA. The pressure at the top surface is $p + dp$, and the total y-component of (downward) force on the top surface is $-(p + dp)A$. The fluid element is in equilibrium, so the total y-component of force, including the weight and the forces at the bottom and top surfaces, must be zero:

$$\Sigma F_y = 0$$

so

$$pA - (p + dp)A - \rho g A\,dy = 0$$

When we divide out the area A and rearrange, we get

$$\frac{dp}{dy} = -\rho g \tag{12.4}$$

This equation shows that when y increases, p decreases; that is, as we move upward in the fluid, pressure decreases, as we expect. If p_1 and p_2 are the pressures at elevations y_1 and y_2, respectively, and if ρ and g are constant, then

Pressure difference between two points in a **fluid of uniform density**

$$p_2 - p_1 = -\rho g(y_2 - y_1)$$

Uniform density of fluid; Heights of the two points; Acceleration due to gravity ($g > 0$)

(12.5)

Figure **12.4** The forces on an element of fluid in equilibrium.

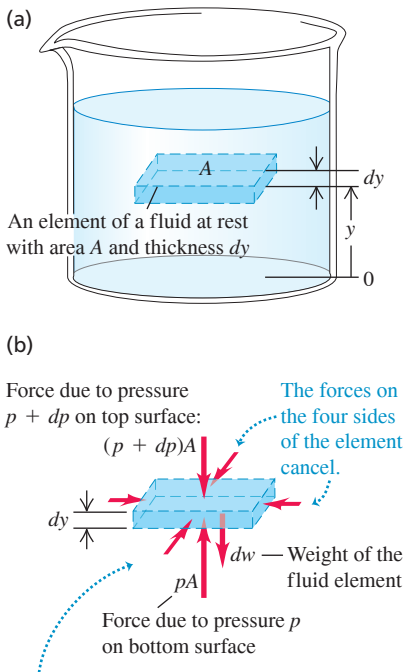
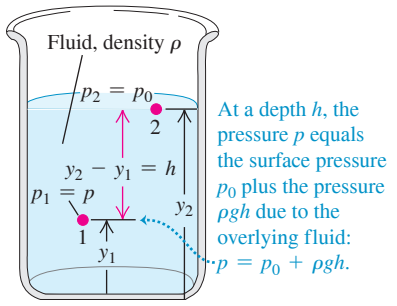


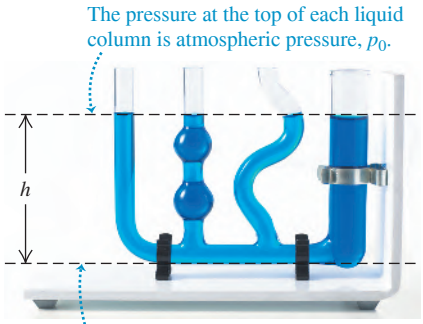
Figure 12.5 How pressure varies with depth in a fluid with uniform density.



Pressure difference between levels 1 and 2: $p_2 - p_1 = -\rho g(y_2 - y_1)$

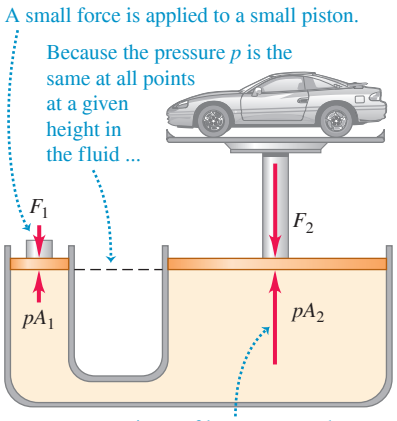
The pressure is greater at the lower level.

Figure 12.6 Each fluid column has the same height, no matter what its shape.



The difference between p and p_0 is ρgh, where h is the distance from the top to the bottom of the liquid column. Hence all columns have the same height.

Figure 12.7 The hydraulic lift is an application of Pascal's law. The size of the fluid-filled container is exaggerated for clarity.



It's often convenient to express Eq. (12.5) in terms of the *depth* below the surface of a fluid (**Fig. 12.5**). Take point 1 at any level in the fluid and let p represent the pressure at this point. Take point 2 at the *surface* of the fluid, where the pressure is p_0 (subscript zero for zero depth). The depth of point 1 below the surface is $h = y_2 - y_1$, and Eq. (12.5) becomes

$$p_0 - p = -\rho g(y_2 - y_1) = -\rho gh \qquad \text{or}$$

Pressure at depth h in a fluid of uniform density

$$p = p_0 + \rho gh \qquad (12.6)$$

p_0: Pressure at surface of fluid; ρ: Uniform density of fluid; g: Acceleration due to gravity ($g > 0$); h: Depth below surface

The pressure p at a depth h is greater than the pressure p_0 at the surface by an amount ρgh. Note that the pressure is the same at any two points at the same level in the fluid. The *shape* of the container does not matter (**Fig. 12.6**).

Equation (12.6) shows that if we increase the pressure p_0 at the top surface, possibly by using a piston that fits tightly inside the container to push down on the fluid surface, the pressure p at any depth increases by exactly the same amount. This observation is called *Pascal's law.*

PASCAL'S LAW **Pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to every portion of the fluid and the walls of the containing vessel.**

The hydraulic lift (**Fig. 12.7**) illustrates Pascal's law. A piston with small cross-sectional area A_1 exerts a force F_1 on the surface of a liquid such as oil. The applied pressure $p = F_1/A_1$ is transmitted through the connecting pipe to a larger piston of area A_2. The applied pressure is the same in both cylinders, so

$$p = \frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{F_2}{A_2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad F_2 = \frac{A_2}{A_1}F_1 \qquad (12.7)$$

The hydraulic lift is a force-multiplying device with a multiplication factor equal to the ratio of the areas of the two pistons. Dentist's chairs, car lifts and jacks, many lifts, and hydraulic brakes all use this principle.

For gases the assumption that the density ρ is uniform is realistic over only short vertical distances. In a room with a ceiling height of 3.0 m filled with air of uniform density 1.2 kg/m^3, the difference in pressure between floor and ceiling, given by Eq. (12.6), is

$$\rho gh = (1.2\ \text{kg/m}^3)(9.8\ \text{m/s}^2)(3.0\ \text{m}) = 35\ \text{Pa}$$

or about 0.00035 atm, a very small difference. But between sea level and the summit of Mount Everest (8882 m) the density of air changes by nearly a factor of 3, and in this case we cannot use Eq. (12.6). Liquids, by contrast, are nearly incompressible, and it is usually a very good approximation to regard their density as independent of pressure.

Absolute Pressure and Gauge Pressure

If the pressure inside a car tire is equal to atmospheric pressure, the tire is flat. The pressure has to be *greater* than atmospheric to support the car, so the significant quantity is the *difference* between the inside and outside pressures. When we say that the pressure in a car tire is "3 bar" (equal to 3.0×10^5 Pa), we mean that it is *greater* than atmospheric pressure (1.01×10^5 Pa) by this amount. The *total* pressure in the tire is then 4.01 bar or 4.01×10^5 Pa. The excess pressure above atmospheric pressure is usually called **gauge pressure,** and the total pressure is called **absolute pressure.** If the pressure is *less* than atmospheric, as in a partial vacuum, the gauge pressure is negative.

EXAMPLE 12.3 Finding absolute and gauge pressures

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Water stands 12.0 m deep in a storage tank whose top is open to the atmosphere. What are the absolute and gauge pressures at the bottom of the tank?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Table 11.2 indicates that water is nearly incompressible, so we can treat it as having uniform density. The level of the top of the tank corresponds to point 2 in Fig. 12.5, and the level of the bottom of the tank corresponds to point 1. Our target variable is p in Eq. (12.6). We have $h = 12.0$ m and $p_0 = 1$ atm $= 1.01 \times 10^5$ Pa.

EXECUTE From Eq. (12.6), the pressures are

absolute: $p = p_0 + \rho g h$

$= (1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}) + (1000 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(12.0 \text{ m})$

$= 2.19 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} = 2.16 \text{ atm}$

gauge: $p - p_0 = (2.19 - 1.01) \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$

$= 1.18 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} = 1.16 \text{ atm}$

EVALUATE A pressure gauge at the bottom of such a tank would probably be calibrated to read gauge pressure rather than absolute pressure.

KEYCONCEPT Absolute pressure is the total pressure at a given point in a fluid. Gauge pressure is the difference between absolute pressure and atmospheric pressure.

Pressure Gauges

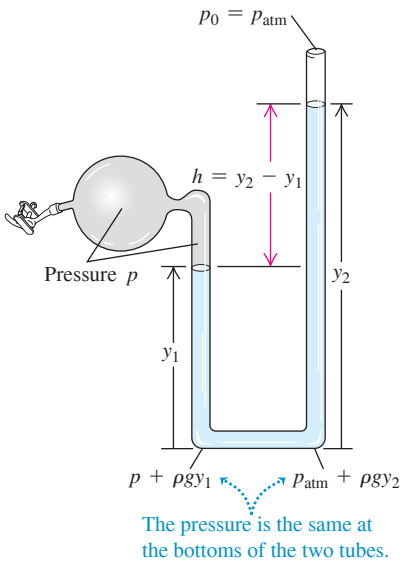
The simplest pressure gauge is the open-tube *manometer* (**Fig. 12.8a**). The U-shaped tube contains a liquid of density ρ, often mercury or water. The left end of the tube is connected to the container where the pressure p is to be measured, and the right end is open to the atmosphere at pressure $p_0 = p_{\text{atm}}$. The pressure at the bottom of the tube due to the fluid in the left column is $p + \rho g y_1$, and the pressure at the bottom due to the fluid in the right column is $p_{\text{atm}} + \rho g y_2$. These pressures are measured at the same level, so they must be equal:

$$p + \rho g y_1 = p_{\text{atm}} + \rho g y_2$$
$$p - p_{\text{atm}} = \rho g (y_2 - y_1) = \rho g h \qquad (12.8)$$

In Eq. (12.8), p is the *absolute pressure,* and the difference $p - p_{\text{atm}}$ between absolute and atmospheric pressure is the gauge pressure. Thus the gauge pressure is proportional to the difference in height $h = y_2 - y_1$ of the liquid columns.

Another common pressure gauge is the **mercury barometer.** It consists of a long glass tube, closed at one end, that has been filled with mercury and then inverted in a dish of mercury (Fig. 12.8b). The space above the mercury column contains only mercury vapor;

BIO APPLICATION Gauge Pressure of Blood Blood-pressure readings, such as 130/80, give the maximum and minimum gauge pressures in the arteries, measured in mm Hg or torr. Blood pressure varies with vertical position within the body; the standard reference point is the upper arm, level with the heart.



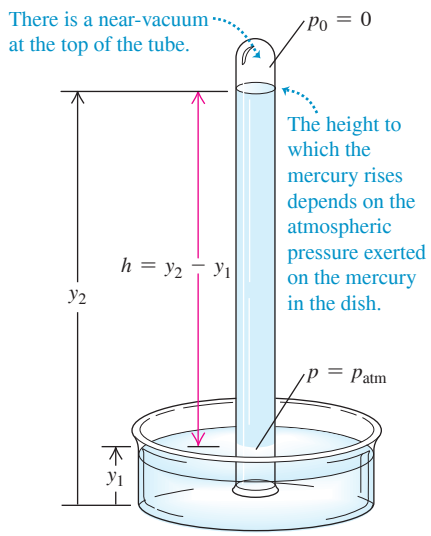
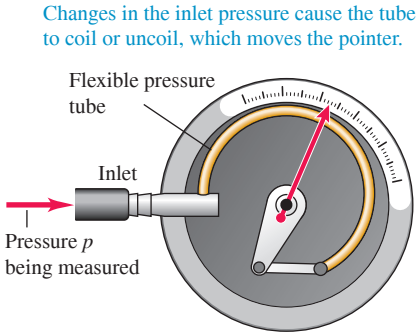


Figure 12.8 Two types of pressure gauge.

Figure 12.9 (a) A Bourdon pressure gauge. When the pressure inside the flexible tube increases, the tube straightens out a little, deflecting the attached pointer. (b) This Bourdon-type pressure gauge is connected to a high-pressure gas line. The gauge pressure shown is just over 5 bars ($1\ \text{bar} = 10^5\ \text{Pa}$).

(a)



(b)

its pressure is negligibly small, so the pressure p_0 at the top of the mercury column is practically zero. From Eq. (12.6),

$$p_{\text{atm}} = p = 0 + \rho g(y_2 - y_1) = \rho g h \tag{12.9}$$

So the height h of the mercury column indicates the atmospheric pressure p_{atm}.

Pressures are often described in terms of the height of the corresponding mercury column, as so many "millimeters of mercury" (abbreviated mm Hg). A pressure of 1 mm Hg is called *1 torr,* after Evangelista Torricelli, inventor of the mercury barometer. But these units depend on the density of mercury, which varies with temperature, and on the value of g, which varies with location, so the pascal is the preferred unit of pressure.

Many types of pressure gauges use a flexible sealed tube (**Fig. 12.9**). A change in the pressure either inside or outside the tube causes a change in its dimensions. This change is detected optically, electrically, or mechanically.

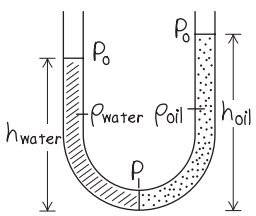
EXAMPLE 12.4 A tale of two fluids

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A manometer tube is partially filled with water. Oil (which does not mix with water) is poured into the left arm of the tube until the oil–water interface is at the midpoint of the tube as shown in **Fig. 12.10**. Both arms of the tube are open to the air. Find a relationship between the heights h_{oil} and h_{water}.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Figure 12.10 shows our sketch. The relationship between pressure and depth given by Eq. (12.6) applies to fluids of uniform density only; we have two fluids of different densities, so we must write a separate pressure–depth relationship for each. Both fluid columns have pressure p at the bottom (where they are in contact and in equilibrium), and both are at atmospheric pressure p_0 at the top (where both are in contact with and in equilibrium with the air).

Figure 12.10 Our sketch for this problem.



EXECUTE Writing Eq. (12.6) for each fluid gives

$$p = p_0 + \rho_{\text{water}} g h_{\text{water}}$$
$$p = p_0 + \rho_{\text{oil}} g h_{\text{oil}}$$

Since the pressure p at the bottom of the tube is the same for both fluids, we set these two expressions equal to each other and solve for h_{oil} in terms of h_{water}:

$$h_{\text{oil}} = \frac{\rho_{\text{water}}}{\rho_{\text{oil}}} h_{\text{water}}$$

EVALUATE Water ($\rho_{\text{water}} = 1000\ \text{kg/m}^3$) is denser than oil ($\rho_{\text{oil}} \approx 850\ \text{kg/m}^3$), so h_{oil} is greater than h_{water} as Fig. 12.10 shows. It takes a greater height of low-density oil to produce the same pressure p at the bottom of the tube.

KEYCONCEPT The pressure is the same at all points *at the same level* in a fluid at rest. This is true even if the fluid contains different substances with different densities.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 12.2 Mercury is less dense at high temperatures than at low temperatures. Suppose you move a mercury barometer from the cold interior of a tightly sealed refrigerator to outdoors on a hot summer day. You find that the column of mercury remains at the same height in the tube. Compared to the air pressure inside the refrigerator, is the air pressure outdoors (i) higher, (ii) lower, or (iii) the same? (Ignore the very small change in the dimensions of the glass tube due to the temperature change.)

ANSWER

(ii) From Eq. (12.9), the pressure outside the barometer is equal to the product $\rho g h$. When the barometer is taken out of the refrigerator, the density ρ decreases while the height h of the mercury column remains the same. Hence the air pressure must be lower outdoors than inside the refrigerator.

12.3 BUOYANCY

An object immersed in water seems to weigh less than when it is in air. When the object is less dense than the fluid, it floats. The human body usually floats in water, and a helium-filled balloon floats in air. These are examples of **buoyancy,** a phenomenon described by *Archimedes's principle:*

ARCHIMEDES'S PRINCIPLE **When an object is completely or partially immersed in a fluid, the fluid exerts an upward force on the object equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the object.**

To prove this principle, we consider an arbitrary element of fluid at rest. The dashed curve in **Fig. 12.11a** outlines such an element. The arrows labeled $dF_\perp$ represent the forces exerted on the element's surface by the surrounding fluid.

The entire fluid is in equilibrium, so the sum of all the y-components of force on this element of fluid is zero. Hence the sum of the y-components of the *surface* forces must be an upward force equal in magnitude to the weight mg of the fluid inside the surface. Also, the sum of the torques on the element of fluid must be zero, so the line of action of the resultant y-component of surface force must pass through the center of gravity of this element of fluid.

Now we replace the fluid inside the surface with a solid object that has exactly the same shape (Fig. 12.11b). The pressure at every point is the same as before. So the total upward force exerted on the object by the fluid is also the same, again equal in magnitude to the weight mg of the fluid displaced to make way for the object. We call this upward force the **buoyant force** on the solid object. The line of action of the buoyant force again passes through the center of gravity of the displaced fluid (which doesn't necessarily coincide with the center of gravity of the object).

When a balloon floats in equilibrium in air, its weight (including the gas inside it) must be the same as the weight of the air displaced by the balloon. A fish's flesh is denser than water, yet many fish can float while submerged. These fish have a gas-filled cavity within their bodies, which makes the fish's *average* density the same as water's. ?

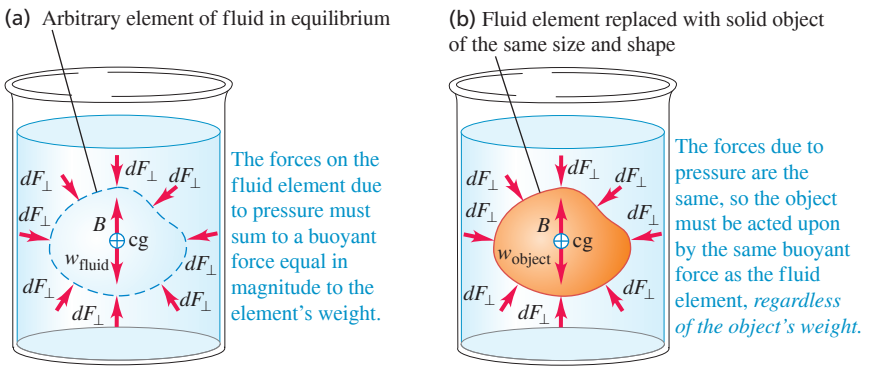
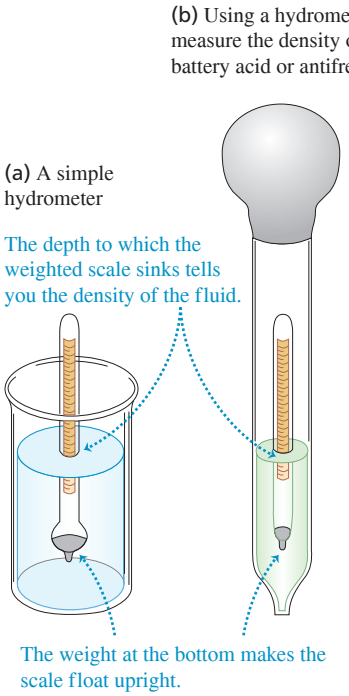


Figure 12.11 Archimedes's principle.

Figure 12.12 Measuring the density of a fluid.



So the net weight of the fish is the same as the weight of the water it displaces. An object whose average density is *less* than that of a liquid can float partially submerged at the free upper surface of the liquid. A ship made of steel (which is much denser than water) can float because the ship is hollow, with air occupying much of its interior volume, so its average density is less than that of water. The greater the density of the liquid, the less of the object is submerged. When you swim in seawater (density 1030 kg/m^3), your body floats higher than in freshwater (1000 kg/m^3).

A practical example of buoyancy is the hydrometer, used to measure the density of liquids (**Fig. 12.12a**). The calibrated float sinks into the fluid until the weight of the fluid it displaces is exactly equal to its own weight. The hydrometer floats *higher* in denser liquids than in less dense liquids, and a scale in the top stem permits direct density readings. Hydrometers like this are used in medical diagnosis to measure the density of urine (which depends on a patient's level of hydration). Figure 12.12b shows a type of hydrometer used to measure the density of battery acid or antifreeze. The bottom of the large tube is immersed in the liquid; the bulb is squeezed to expel air and is then released, like a giant medicine dropper. The liquid rises into the outer tube, and the hydrometer floats in this liquid.

CAUTION **The buoyant force depends on the fluid density** The buoyant force on an object is proportional to the density of the *fluid* in which the object is immersed, *not* the density of the object. If a wooden block and an iron block have the same volume and both are submerged in water, both experience the same buoyant force. The wooden block rises and the iron block sinks because this buoyant force is greater than the weight of the wooden block but less than the weight of the iron block.

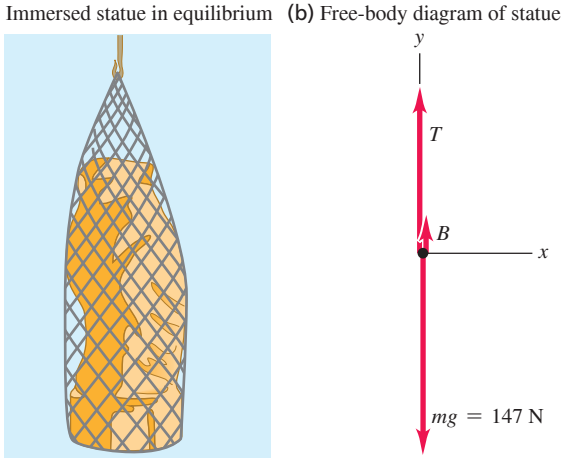
EXAMPLE 12.5 Buoyancy

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A 15.0 kg solid gold statue is raised from the sea bottom (**Fig. 12.13a**). What is the tension in the hoisting cable (assumed massless) when the statue is (a) at rest and completely underwater and (b) at rest and completely out of the water?

IDENTIFY and SET UP In both cases the statue is in equilibrium and experiences three forces: its weight, the cable tension, and a buoyant force equal in magnitude to the weight of the fluid displaced by the statue (seawater in part (a), air in part (b)). Figure 12.13b shows the free-body diagram for the statue. Our target variables are the values of the tension in seawater (T_{sw}) and in air (T_{air}). We are given the mass m_{statue}, and we can calculate the buoyant force in seawater (B_{sw}) and in air (B_{air}) by using Archimedes's principle.

Figure 12.13 What is the tension in the cable hoisting the statue?



EXECUTE (a) To find B_{sw}, we first find the statue's volume V by using the density of gold from Table 12.1:

$$V = \frac{m_{statue}}{\rho_{gold}} = \frac{15.0\ \text{kg}}{19.3 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3} = 7.77 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3$$

The buoyant force B_{sw} equals the weight of this same volume of seawater. Using Table 12.1 again:

$$\begin{aligned} B_{sw} &= w_{sw} = m_{sw}g = \rho_{sw}Vg \\ &= (1.03 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3)(7.77 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3)(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) \\ &= 7.84\ \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

The statue is at rest, so the net external force acting on it is zero. From Fig. 12.13b,

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma F_y &= B_{sw} + T_{sw} + (-m_{statue}g) = 0 \\ T_{sw} &= m_{statue}g - B_{sw} = (15.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) - 7.84\ \text{N} \\ &= 147\ \text{N} - 7.84\ \text{N} = 139\ \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

A spring scale attached to the upper end of the cable will indicate a tension 7.84 N less than the statue's actual weight $m_{statue}g = 147$ N.

(b) The density of air is about 1.2 kg/m^3, so the buoyant force of air on the statue is

$$\begin{aligned} B_{air} &= \rho_{air}Vg \\ &= (1.2\ \text{kg/m}^3)(7.77 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^3)(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) \\ &= 9.1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

This is negligible compared to the statue's actual weight $m_{statue}g = 147$ N. So within the precision of our data, the tension in the cable with the statue in air is $T_{air} = m_{statue}g = 147$ N.

EVALUATE The denser the fluid, the greater the buoyant force and the smaller the cable tension. If the fluid had the same density as the statue, the buoyant force would be equal to the statue's weight and the tension would be zero (the cable would go slack). If the fluid were denser than the statue, the tension would be *negative:* The buoyant force would be greater than the statue's weight, and a downward force would be required to keep the statue from rising upward.

KEYCONCEPT The buoyant force on an object immersed in a fluid is equal to the weight of the fluid that the object displaces (Archimedes's principle). The greater the density of the fluid, the greater the buoyant force that the fluid exerts.

Surface Tension

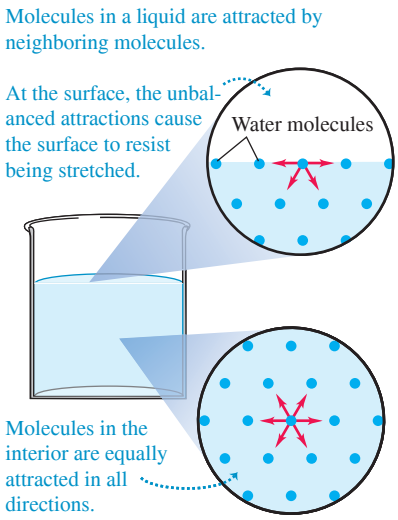
We've seen that if an object is less dense than water, it will float partially submerged. But a paper clip can rest *atop* a water surface even though its density is several times that of water. This is an example of **surface tension:** The surface of the liquid behaves like a membrane under tension (**Fig. 12.14**). Surface tension arises because the molecules of the liquid exert attractive forces on each other. There is zero net force on a molecule within the interior of the liquid, but a surface molecule is drawn into the interior (**Fig. 12.15**). Thus the liquid tends to minimize its surface area, just as a stretched membrane does.

Surface tension explains why raindrops are spherical (*not* teardrop-shaped): A sphere has a smaller surface area for its volume than any other shape. It also explains why hot, soapy water is used for washing. To wash clothing thoroughly, water must be forced through the tiny spaces between the fibers (**Fig. 12.16**). This requires increasing the surface area of the water, which is difficult to achieve because of surface tension. The job is made easier by increasing the temperature of the water and adding soap, both of which decrease the surface tension.

Surface tension is important for a millimeter-sized water drop, which has a relatively large surface area for its volume. (A sphere of radius r has surface area $4\pi r^2$ and volume $(4\pi/3)r^3$. The ratio of surface area to volume is $3/r$, which increases with decreasing radius.) But for large quantities of liquid, the ratio of surface area to volume is relatively small, and surface tension is negligible compared to pressure forces. For the remainder of this chapter, we'll consider only fluids in bulk and ignore the effects of surface tension.

Figure 12.14 The surface of the water acts like a membrane under tension, allowing this water strider to "walk on water."

Figure 12.15 A molecule at the surface of a liquid is attracted into the bulk liquid, which tends to reduce the liquid's surface area.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 12.3 You place a container of seawater on a scale and note the reading on the scale. You now suspend the statue of Example 12.5 in the water (**Fig. 12.17**). How does the scale reading change? (i) It increases by 7.84 N; (ii) it decreases by 7.84 N; (iii) it remains the same; (iv) none of these.

Figure 12.17 How does the scale reading change when the statue is immersed in water?

ANSWER

(i) Consider the water, the statue, and the container together as a system; the total weight of the system does not depend on whether the statue is immersed. The total supporting force, including the tension T and the upward force F of the scale on the container (equal to the scale reading), is the same in both cases. But we saw in Example 12.5 that T decreases by 7.84 N when the statue is immersed, so the scale reading F must *increase* by 7.84 N. An alternative viewpoint is that the water exerts an upward buoyant force of 7.84 N on the statue, so the statue must exert an equal downward force on the water, making the scale reading 7.84 N greater than the weight of water and container.

Figure 12.16 Surface tension makes it difficult to force water through small crevices. The required water pressure p can be reduced by using hot, soapy water, which has less surface tension.

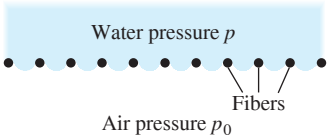


Figure **12.18** A flow tube bounded by flow lines. In steady flow, fluid cannot cross the walls of a flow tube.

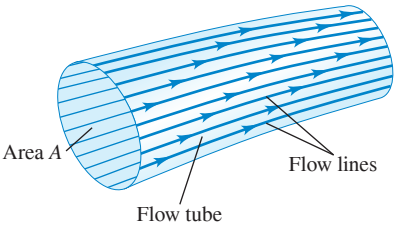
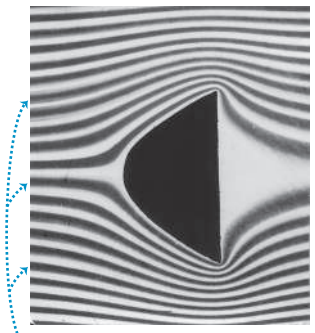
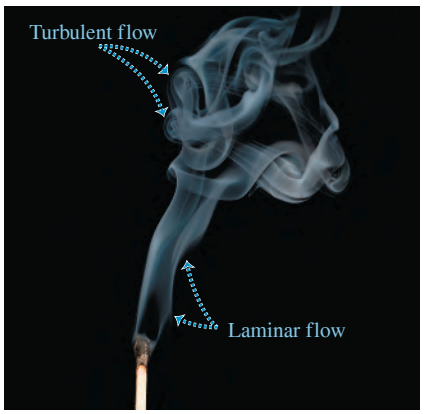


Figure **12.19** Laminar flow around an obstacle.



Dark-colored dye follows streamlines of laminar flow (flow is from left to right).

Figure **12.20** The flow of smoke rising from this burnt match is laminar up to a certain point, and then becomes turbulent.



12.4 FLUID FLOW

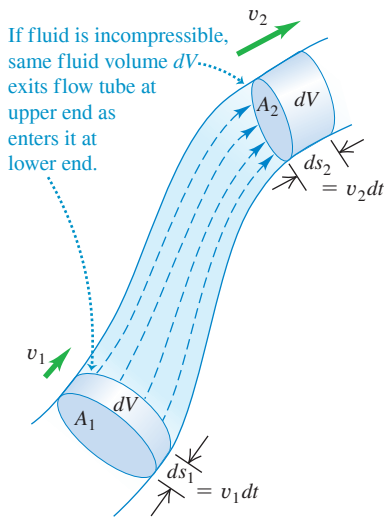
We are now ready to consider *motion* of a fluid. Fluid flow can be extremely complex, as shown by the currents in river rapids or the swirling flames of a campfire. But we can represent some situations by relatively simple idealized models. An **ideal fluid** is a fluid that is *incompressible* (that is, its density cannot change) and has no internal friction (called **viscosity**). Liquids are approximately incompressible in most situations, and we may also treat a gas as incompressible if the pressure differences from one region to another are not too great. Internal friction in a fluid causes shear stresses when two adjacent layers of fluid move relative to each other, as when fluid flows inside a tube or around an obstacle. In some cases we can ignore these shear forces in comparison with forces arising from gravitation and pressure differences.

The path of an individual particle in a moving fluid is called a **flow line.** In **steady flow,** the overall flow pattern does not change with time, so every element passing through a given point follows the same flow line. In this case the "map" of the fluid velocities at various points in space remains constant, although the velocity of a particular particle may change in both magnitude and direction during its motion. A **streamline** is a curve whose tangent at any point is in the direction of the fluid velocity at that point. When the flow pattern changes with time, the streamlines do not coincide with the flow lines. We'll consider only steady-flow situations, for which flow lines and streamlines are identical.

The flow lines passing through the edge of an imaginary element of area, such as area A in **Fig. 12.18**, form a tube called a **flow tube.** From the definition of a flow line, in steady flow no fluid can cross the side walls of a given flow tube.

Figure 12.19 shows the pattern of fluid flow from left to right around an obstacle. The photograph was made by injecting dye into water flowing between two closely spaced glass plates. This pattern is typical of **laminar flow,** in which adjacent layers of fluid slide smoothly past each other and the flow is steady. (A *lamina* is a thin sheet.) At sufficiently high flow rates, or when boundary surfaces cause abrupt changes in velocity, the flow can become irregular and chaotic. This is called **turbulent flow** (**Fig. 12.20**). In turbulent flow there is no steady-state pattern; the flow pattern changes continuously.

Figure **12.21** A flow tube with changing cross-sectional area.



If fluid is incompressible, product Av (tube area times speed) has same value at all points along tube.

The Continuity Equation

The mass of a moving fluid doesn't change as it flows. This leads to an important relationship called the **continuity equation.** Consider a portion of a flow tube between two stationary cross sections with areas A_1 and A_2 (**Fig. 12.21**). The fluid speeds at these sections are v_1 and v_2, respectively. As we mentioned above, no fluid flows in or out across the side walls of such a tube. During a small time interval dt, the fluid at A_1 moves a distance $ds_1 = v_1\,dt$, so a cylinder of fluid with height $v_1\,dt$ and volume $dV_1 = A_1 v_1\,dt$ flows into the tube across A_1. During this same interval, a cylinder of volume $dV_2 = A_2 v_2\,dt$ flows out of the tube across A_2.

Let's first consider the case of an incompressible fluid so that the density ρ has the same value at all points. The mass dm_1 flowing into the tube across A_1 in time dt is $dm_1 = \rho A_1 v_1\, dt$. Similarly, the mass dm_2 that flows out across A_2 in the same time is $dm_2 = \rho A_2 v_2\, dt$. In steady flow the total mass in the tube is constant, so $dm_1 = dm_2$ and

$$\rho A_1 v_1\, dt = \rho A_2 v_2\, dt \qquad \text{or}$$

Continuity equation for an incompressible fluid:

$$A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2 \tag{12.10}$$

(A_1, A_2: Cross-sectional area of flow tube at two points (see Fig. 12.21); v_1, v_2: Speed of flow at the two points)

The product Av is the *volume flow rate* dV/dt, the rate at which volume crosses a section of the tube:

Volume flow rate of a fluid:

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = Av \tag{12.11}$$

(A: Cross-sectional area of flow tube; v: Speed of flow)

The *mass flow rate* is the mass flow per unit time through a cross section. This is equal to the density ρ times the volume flow rate dV/dt.

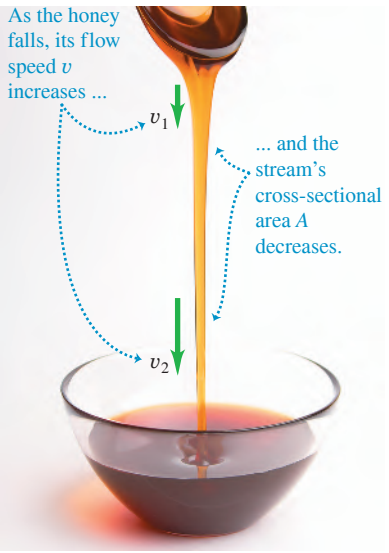
Equation (12.10) shows that the volume flow rate has the same value at all points along any flow tube (**Fig. 12.22**). When the cross section of a flow tube decreases, the speed increases, and vice versa. A broad, deep part of a river has a larger cross section and slower current than a narrow, shallow part, but the volume flow rates are the same in both. This is the essence of the familiar maxim, "Still waters run deep." If a water pipe with 2 cm diameter is connected to a pipe with 1 cm diameter, the flow speed is four times as great in the 1 cm part as in the 2 cm part.

We can generalize Eq. (12.10) for the case in which the fluid is *not* incompressible. If ρ_1 and ρ_2 are the densities at sections 1 and 2, then

$$\rho_1 A_1 v_1 = \rho_2 A_2 v_2 \quad \text{(continuity equation, compressible fluid)} \tag{12.12}$$

If the fluid is denser at point 2 than at point 1 ($\rho_2 > \rho_1$), the volume flow rate at point 2 will be less than at point 1 ($A_2 v_2 < A_1 v_1$). We leave the details to you. If the fluid is incompressible so that ρ_1 and ρ_2 are always equal, Eq. (12.12) reduces to Eq. (12.10).

Figure **12.22** The continuity equation, Eq. (12.10), helps explain the shape of a stream of honey poured from a spoon.



The volume flow rate $dV/dt = Av$ remains constant.

EXAMPLE 12.6 Flow of an incompressible fluid

Incompressible oil of density 850 kg/m^3 is pumped through a cylindrical pipe at a rate of 9.5 liters per second. (a) The first section of the pipe has a diameter of 8.0 cm. What is the flow speed of the oil? What is the mass flow rate? (b) The second section of the pipe has a diameter of 4.0 cm. What are the flow speed and mass flow rate in that section?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Since the oil is incompressible, the volume flow rate has the *same* value (9.5 L/s) in both sections of pipe. The mass flow rate (the density times the volume flow rate) also has the same value in both sections. (This is just the statement that no fluid is lost or added anywhere along the pipe.) We use the volume flow rate equation, Eq. (12.11), to determine the speed v_1 in the 8.0-cm-diameter section and the continuity equation for incompressible flow, Eq. (12.10), to find the speed v_2 in the 4.0-cm-diameter section.

EXECUTE (a) From Eq. (12.11) the volume flow rate in the first section is $dV/dt = A_1 v_1$, where A_1 is the cross-sectional area of the pipe of diameter 8.0 cm and radius 4.0 cm. Hence

$$v_1 = \frac{dV/dt}{A_1} = \frac{(9.5\ \text{L/s})(10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3/\text{L})}{\pi(4.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2} = 1.9\ \text{m/s}$$

The mass flow rate is $\rho\, dV/dt = (850\ \text{kg/m}^3)(9.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3/\text{s}) = 8.1\ \text{kg/s}$.

(b) From the continuity equation, Eq. (12.10),

$$v_2 = \frac{A_1}{A_2} v_1 = \frac{\pi(4.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2}{\pi(2.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2}(1.9\ \text{m/s}) = 7.6\ \text{m/s} = 4v_1$$

The volume and mass flow rates are the same as in part (a).

EVALUATE The second section of pipe has one-half the diameter and one-fourth the cross-sectional area of the first section. Hence the speed must be four times greater in the second section, which is just what our result shows.

KEYCONCEPT The continuity equation states that as an incompressible fluid moves through a flow tube, the volume flow rate (the flow tube's cross-sectional area times the flow speed) is the same *at all points* along the flow tube. The narrower the flow tube, the faster the flow speed.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 12.4 A maintenance crew is working on a section of a three-lane highway, leaving only one lane open to traffic. The result is much slower traffic flow (a traffic jam). Do cars on a highway behave like the molecules of (i) an incompressible fluid or (ii) a compressible fluid?

ANSWER **(ii)** A highway that narrows from three lanes to one is like a pipe whose cross-sectional area narrows to one-third of its value. If cars behaved like the molecules of an incompressible fluid, then as the cars encountered the one-lane section, the spacing between cars (the "density") would stay the same but the cars would triple their speed. This would keep the "volume flow rate" (number of cars per second passing a point on the highway) the same. In real life cars behave like the molecules of a *compressible* fluid: They end up packed closer (the "density" increases) and fewer cars per second pass a point on the highway (the "volume flow rate" decreases).

12.5 BERNOULLI'S EQUATION

According to the continuity equation, the speed of fluid flow can vary along the paths of the fluid. The pressure can also vary; it depends on height as in the static situation (see Section 12.2), and it also depends on the speed of flow. We can derive an important relationship called *Bernoulli's equation,* which relates the pressure, flow speed, and height for flow of an ideal, incompressible fluid. Bernoulli's equation is useful in analyzing many kinds of fluid flow.

The dependence of pressure on speed follows from the continuity equation, Eq. (12.10). When an incompressible fluid flows along a flow tube with varying cross section, its speed *must* change, and so an element of fluid must have an acceleration. If the tube is horizontal, the force that causes this acceleration has to be applied by the surrounding fluid. This means that the pressure *must* be different in regions of different cross section; if it were the same everywhere, the net force on every fluid element would be zero. When a horizontal flow tube narrows and a fluid element speeds up, it must be moving toward a region of lower pressure in order to have a net forward force to accelerate it. If the elevation also changes, this causes an additional pressure difference.

Deriving Bernoulli's Equation

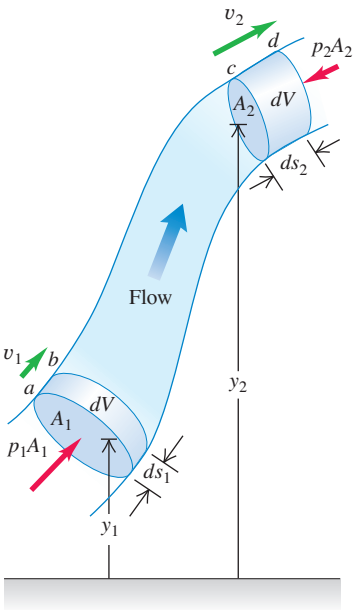


Figure **12.23** Deriving Bernoulli's equation. The net work done on a fluid element by the pressure of the surrounding fluid equals the change in the kinetic energy plus the change in the gravitational potential energy.

To derive Bernoulli's equation, we apply the work–energy theorem to the fluid in a section of a flow tube. In **Fig. 12.23** we consider the element of fluid that at some initial time lies between the two cross sections a and c. The speeds at the lower and upper ends are v_1 and v_2. In a small time interval dt, the fluid that is initially at a moves to b, a distance $ds_1 = v_1\,dt$, and the fluid that is initially at c moves to d, a distance $ds_2 = v_2\,dt$. The cross-sectional areas at the two ends are A_1 and A_2, as shown. The fluid is incompressible; hence by the continuity equation, Eq. (12.10), the volume of fluid dV passing *any* cross section during time dt is the same. That is, $dV = A_1\,ds_1 = A_2\,ds_2$.

Let's compute the *work* done on this fluid element during dt. If there is negligible internal friction in the fluid (i.e., no viscosity), the only nongravitational forces that do work on the element are due to the pressure of the surrounding fluid. The pressures at the two ends are p_1 and p_2; the force on the cross section at a is p_1A_1, and the force at c is p_2A_2. The net work dW done on the element by the surrounding fluid during this displacement is therefore

$$dW = p_1A_1\,ds_1 - p_2A_2\,ds_2 = (p_1 - p_2)dV \tag{12.13}$$

The term $p_2A_2ds_2$ has a negative sign because the force at c opposes the displacement of the fluid.

The work dW is due to forces other than the conservative force of gravity, so it equals the change in the total mechanical energy (kinetic energy plus gravitational potential energy) associated with the fluid element. The mechanical energy for the fluid between sections b and c does not change. At the beginning of dt the fluid between a and b has volume $A_1\,ds_1$, mass $\rho A_1\,ds_1$, and kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}\rho(A_1\,ds_1)v_1^2$. At the end of dt the fluid between c and d has kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}\rho(A_2\,ds_2)v_2^2$. The net change in kinetic energy dK during time dt is

$$dK = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho\,dV(v_2^2 - v_1^2) \tag{12.14}$$

What about the change in gravitational potential energy? At the beginning of time interval dt, the potential energy for the mass between a and b is $dm\, gy_1 = \rho\, dV\, gy_1$. At the end of dt, the potential energy for the mass between c and d is $dm\, gy_2 = \rho\, dV\, gy_2$. The net change in potential energy dU during dt is

$$dU = \rho\, dV\, g(y_2 - y_1) \tag{12.15}$$

Combining Eqs. (12.13), (12.14), and (12.15) in the energy equation $dW = dK + dU$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}(p_1 - p_2)dV &= \tfrac{1}{2}\rho\, dV(v_2^2 - v_1^2) + \rho\, dV\, g(y_2 - y_1)\\ p_1 - p_2 &= \tfrac{1}{2}\rho(v_2^2 - v_1^2) + \rho g(y_2 - y_1)\end{aligned} \tag{12.16}$$

This is **Bernoulli's equation.** It states that the work done on a unit volume of fluid by the surrounding fluid is equal to the sum of the changes in kinetic and potential energies per unit volume that occur during the flow. We may also interpret Eq. (12.16) in terms of pressures. The first term on the right is the pressure difference associated with the change of speed of the fluid. The second term on the right is the additional pressure difference caused by the weight of the fluid and the difference in elevation of the two ends.

We can also express Eq. (12.16) in a more convenient form as

$$p_1 + \rho g y_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = p_2 + \rho g y_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 \tag{12.17}$$

Subscripts 1 and 2 refer to *any* two points along the flow tube, so we can write

Bernoulli's equation for an ideal, incompressible fluid:

Pressure; Fluid density; Value is **same** at all points in flow tube.

$$p + \rho g y + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 = \text{constant} \tag{12.18}$$

Acceleration due to gravity; Elevation; Flow speed

Note that when the fluid is *not* moving (so $v_1 = v_2 = 0$), Eq. (12.17) reduces to the pressure relationship we derived for a fluid at rest, Eq. (12.5).

CAUTION **Bernoulli's equation applies in certain situations only** We stress again that Bernoulli's equation is valid for only incompressible, steady flow of a fluid with no internal friction (no viscosity). It's a simple equation, but don't be tempted to use it in situations in which it doesn't apply!

BIO APPLICATION Why Healthy Giraffes Have High Blood Pressure Bernoulli's equation suggests that as blood flows upward at roughly constant speed v from the heart to the brain, the pressure p will drop as the blood's height y increases. For blood to reach the brain with the required minimal pressure, the human heart provides a maximum (systolic) gauge pressure of about 120 mm Hg. The vertical distance from heart to brain is much larger for a giraffe, so its heart must produce a much greater maximum gauge pressure (about 280 mm Hg).

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 12.1 Bernoulli's Equation

Bernoulli's equation is derived from the work–energy theorem, so much of Problem-Solving Strategy 7.1 (Section 7.1) applies here.

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Bernoulli's equation is applicable to steady flow of an incompressible fluid that has no internal friction (see Section 12.6). It is generally applicable to flows through large pipes and to flows within bulk fluids (e.g., air flowing around an airplane or water flowing around a fish).

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Identify the points 1 and 2 referred to in Bernoulli's equation, Eq. (12.17).
2. Define your coordinate system, particularly the level at which $y = 0$. Take the positive y-direction to be upward.
3. List the unknown and known quantities in Eq. (12.17). Decide which unknowns are the target variables.

EXECUTE *the solution* as follows: Write Bernoulli's equation and solve for the unknowns. You may need the continuity equation, Eq. (12.10), to relate the two speeds in terms of cross-sectional areas of pipes or containers. You may also need Eq. (12.11) to find the volume flow rate.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Verify that the results make physical sense. Check that you have used consistent units: In SI units, pressure is in pascals, density in kilograms per cubic meter, and speed in meters per second. The pressures must be either *all* absolute pressures or *all* gauge pressures.

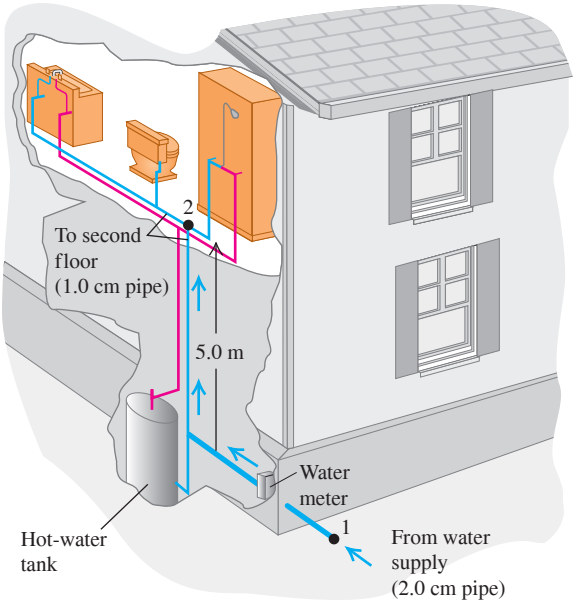
EXAMPLE 12.7 Water pressure in the home

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Water enters a house (**Fig. 12.24**) through a pipe with an inside diameter of 2.0 cm at an absolute pressure of 4.0×10^5 Pa (about 4 atm). A 1.0-cm-diameter pipe leads to the second-floor bathroom 5.0 m above. When the flow speed at the inlet pipe is 1.5 m/s, find the flow speed, pressure, and volume flow rate in the bathroom.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We assume that the water flows at a steady rate. Water is effectively incompressible, so we can use the continuity equation. It's reasonable to ignore internal friction because the pipe has a relatively large diameter, so we can also use Bernoulli's equation. Let points 1 and 2 be at the inlet pipe and at the bathroom, respectively. We are given the pipe diameters at points 1 and 2, from which we calculate the areas A_1 and A_2, as well as the speed $v_1 = 1.5$ m/s and pressure $p_1 = 4.0 \times 10^5$ Pa at the inlet pipe. We take $y_1 = 0$ and $y_2 = 5.0$ m. We find the speed v_2 from the continuity equation and the pressure p_2 from Bernoulli's equation. Knowing v_2, we calculate the volume flow rate v_2A_2.

Figure 12.24 What is the water pressure in the second-story bathroom of this house?



EXECUTE From the continuity equation, Eq. (12.10),

$$v_2 = \frac{A_1}{A_2}v_1 = \frac{\pi(1.0\text{ cm})^2}{\pi(0.50\text{ cm})^2}(1.5\text{ m/s}) = 6.0\text{ m/s}$$

From Bernoulli's equation, Eq. (12.16),

$$\begin{aligned} p_2 &= p_1 - \tfrac{1}{2}\rho(v_2^2 - v_1^2) - \rho g(y_2 - y_1) \\ &= 4.0 \times 10^5\text{ Pa} - \tfrac{1}{2}(1.0 \times 10^3\text{ kg/m}^3)(36\text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2 - 2.25\text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2) \\ &\quad - (1.0 \times 10^3\text{ kg/m}^3)(9.8\text{ m/s}^2)(5.0\text{ m}) \\ &= 4.0 \times 10^5\text{ Pa} - 0.17 \times 10^5\text{ Pa} - 0.49 \times 10^5\text{ Pa} \\ &= 3.3 \times 10^5\text{ Pa} = 3.3\text{ atm} \end{aligned}$$

The volume flow rate is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dV}{dt} &= A_2v_2 = \pi(0.50 \times 10^{-2}\text{ m})^2(6.0\text{ m/s}) \\ &= 4.7 \times 10^{-4}\text{ m}^3/\text{s} = 0.47\text{ L/s} \end{aligned}$$

EVALUATE This is a reasonable flow rate for a bathroom faucet or shower. Note that if the water is turned off, both v_1 and v_2 are zero, the term $\frac{1}{2}\rho(v_2^2 - v_1^2)$ in Bernoulli's equation vanishes, and p_2 rises from 3.3×10^5 Pa to 3.5×10^5 Pa.

KEYCONCEPT Bernoulli's equation allows you to relate the flow speeds at two different points in a fluid to the pressures and heights at those two points.

EXAMPLE 12.8 Speed of efflux

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Figure 12.25 shows a petrol storage tank with cross-sectional area A_1, filled to a depth h. The space above the petrol contains air at pressure p_0, and the petrol flows out the bottom of the tank through a short pipe with cross-sectional area A_2. Derive expressions for the flow speed in the pipe and the volume flow rate.

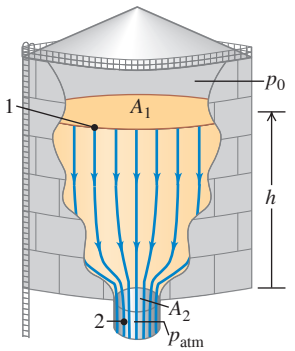
IDENTIFY and SET UP We consider the entire volume of moving liquid as a single flow tube of an incompressible fluid with negligible internal friction. Hence, we can use Bernoulli's equation. Points 1 and 2 are at the surface of the petrol and at the exit pipe, respectively. At point 1 the pressure is p_0, which we assume to be fixed; at point 2 it is atmospheric pressure p_{atm}. We take $y = 0$ at the exit pipe, so $y_1 = h$ and $y_2 = 0$. Because A_1 is very much larger than A_2, the upper surface of the petrol will drop very slowly and so v_1 is essentially zero. We find v_2 from Eq. (12.17) and the volume flow rate from Eq. (12.11).

EXECUTE We apply Bernoulli's equation to points 1 and 2:

$$p_0 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g h = p_{\text{atm}} + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g(0)$$

$$v_2^2 = v_1^2 + 2\left(\frac{p_0 - p_{\text{atm}}}{\rho}\right) + 2gh$$

Figure 12.25 Calculating the speed of efflux for petrol flowing out the bottom of a storage tank.



Using $v_1 = 0$, we find

$$v_2 = \sqrt{2\left(\frac{p_0 - p_{\text{atm}}}{\rho}\right) + 2gh}$$

From Eq. (12.11), the volume flow rate is $dV/dt = v_2A_2$.

EVALUATE The speed v_2, sometimes called the *speed of efflux,* depends on both the pressure difference $(p_0 - p_{atm})$ and the height h of the liquid level in the tank. If the top of the tank is vented to the atmosphere, $p_0 = p_{atm}$ and $p_0 - p_{atm} = 0$. Then

$$v_2 = \sqrt{2gh}$$

That is, the speed of efflux from an opening at a distance h below the top surface of the liquid is the *same* as the speed an object would acquire in falling freely through a height h. This result is called *Torricelli's theorem.* It is valid also for a hole in a side wall at a depth h below the surface. If $p_0 = p_{atm}$, the volume flow rate is

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = A_2\sqrt{2gh}$$

KEYCONCEPT When solving problems about the flow of an incompressible fluid with negligible internal friction, you can use both Bernoulli's equation and the continuity equation.

EXAMPLE 12.9 The Venturi meter

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

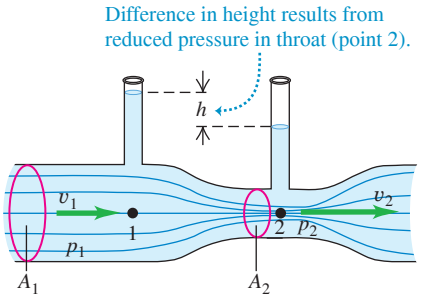
Figure 12.26 shows a *Venturi meter,* used to measure flow speed in a pipe. Derive an expression for the flow speed v_1 in terms of the cross-sectional areas A_1 and A_2.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The flow is steady, and we assume the fluid is incompressible and has negligible internal friction. Hence we can apply Bernoulli's equation to the wide part (point 1) and narrow part (point 2, the *throat*) of the pipe. Equation (12.6) relates h to the pressure difference $p_1 - p_2$.

EXECUTE Points 1 and 2 have the same vertical coordinate $y_1 = y_2$, so Eq. (12.17) says

$$p_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = p_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$$

Figure 12.26 The Venturi meter.



From the continuity equation, $v_2 = (A_1/A_2)v_1$. Substituting this and rearranging, we get

$$p_1 - p_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2\left[\left(\frac{A_1}{A_2}\right)^2 - 1\right]$$

From Eq. (12.6), the pressure difference $p_1 - p_2$ is also equal to ρgh. Substituting this and solving for v_1, we get

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2gh}{(A_1/A_2)^2 - 1}}$$

EVALUATE Because A_1 is greater than A_2, v_2 is greater than v_1 and the pressure p_2 in the throat is *less* than p_1. Those pressure differences produce a net force to the right that makes the fluid speed up as it enters the throat, and a net force to the left that slows it as it leaves.

KEYCONCEPT When an incompressible fluid with negligible internal friction flows through a pipe of varying size, the pressure and flow speed both change. Where the cross-sectional area is small, the pressure is low and the speed is high; where the cross-sectional area is large, the pressure is high and the speed is low.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 12.10 Lift on an airplane wing

Figure 12.27a (next page) shows flow lines around a cross section of an airplane wing. The flow lines crowd together above the wing, corresponding to increased flow speed and reduced pressure, just as in the Venturi throat in Example 12.9. Hence the downward force of the air on the top side of the wing is less than the upward force of the air on the underside of the wing, and there is a net upward force or *lift.* Lift is not simply due to the impulse of air striking the underside of the wing; in fact, the reduced pressure on the upper wing surface makes the greatest contribution to the lift. (This simplified discussion ignores the formation of vortices.)

We can understand the lift force on the basis of momentum changes instead. The vector diagram in Fig. 12.27a shows that there is a net *downward* change in the vertical component of momentum of the air flowing past the wing, corresponding to the downward force the wing exerts on the air. The reaction force *on* the wing is *upward,* as we concluded above.

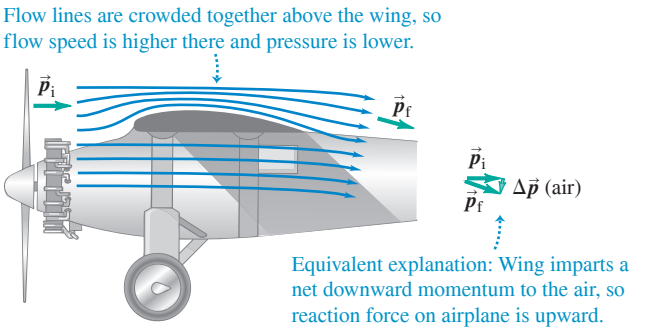
Similar flow patterns and lift forces are found in the vicinity of any humped object in a wind. A moderate wind makes an umbrella "float"; a strong wind can turn it inside out. At high speed, lift can reduce traction on a car's tires; a "spoiler" at the car's tail, shaped like an upside-down wing, provides a compensating downward force.

CAUTION A misconception about wings Some discussions of lift claim that air travels faster over the top of a wing because "it has farther to travel." This claim assumes that air molecules that part company at the front of the wing, one traveling over the wing and one under it, must meet again at the wing's trailing edge. Not so! Figure 12.27b shows a computer simulation of parcels of air flowing around an airplane wing. Parcels that are adjacent at the front of the wing do *not* meet at the trailing edge; the flow over the top of the wing is much faster than if the parcels had to meet. In accordance with Bernoulli's equation, this faster speed means that there is even lower pressure above the wing (and hence greater lift) than the "farther-to-travel" claim would suggest.

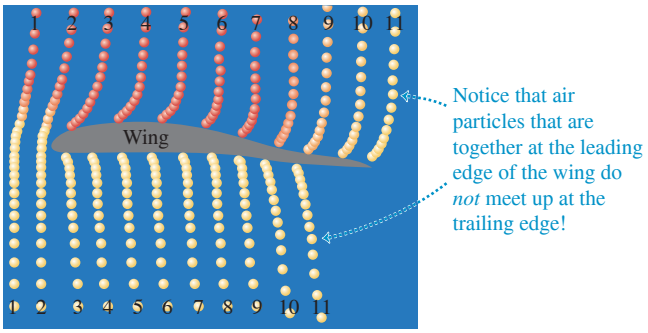
Continued

Figure 12.27 Flow around an airplane wing.

(a) Flow lines around an airplane wing



(b) Computer simulation of air parcels flowing around a wing, showing that air moves much faster over the top than over the bottom



KEYCONCEPT The pressure in a flowing incompressible fluid with negligible internal friction is low at points where the flow lines are crowded together, such as above the upper surface of an airplane wing.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 12.5 Which is the most accurate statement of Bernoulli's principle? (i) Fast-moving air causes lower pressure; (ii) lower pressure causes fast-moving air; (iii) both (i) and (ii) are equally accurate.

ANSWER (ii) Newton's second law tells us that an object accelerates (its velocity changes) in response to a net force. In fluid flow, a pressure difference between two points means that fluid particles moving between those two points experience a force, and this force causes the fluid particles to accelerate and change speed.

12.6 VISCOSITY AND TURBULENCE

In our discussion of fluid flow we assumed that the fluid had no internal friction and that the flow was laminar. While these assumptions are often quite valid, in many important physical situations the effects of viscosity (internal friction) and turbulence (nonlaminar flow) are extremely important. Let's take a brief look at some of these situations.

Viscosity

Viscosity is internal friction in a fluid. Viscous forces oppose the motion of one portion of a fluid relative to another. Viscosity is the reason it takes effort to paddle a canoe through calm water, but it is also the reason the paddle works. Viscous effects are important in the flow of fluids in pipes, the flow of blood, the lubrication of engine parts, and many other situations.

Figure 12.28 Lava is an example of a viscous fluid. The viscosity decreases with increasing temperature: The hotter the lava, the more easily it can flow.

Fluids that flow readily, such as water or petrol have smaller viscosities than do "thick" liquids such as honey or motor oil. Viscosities of all fluids are strongly temperature dependent, increasing for gases and decreasing for liquids as the temperature increases (**Fig. 12.28**). Oils for engine lubrication must flow equally well in cold and warm conditions, and so are designed to have as *little* temperature variation of viscosity as possible.

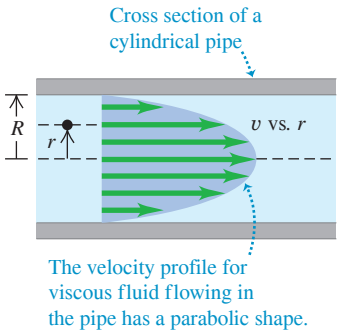
A viscous fluid always tends to cling to a solid surface in contact with it. There is always a thin *boundary layer* of fluid near the surface, in which the fluid is nearly at rest with respect to the surface. That's why dust particles can cling to a fan blade even when it is rotating rapidly, and why you can't get all the dirt off your car by just squirting a hose at it.

Viscosity has important effects on the flow of liquids through pipes, including the flow of blood in the circulatory system. First think about a fluid with zero viscosity so that we can apply Bernoulli's equation, Eq. (12.17). If the two ends of a long cylindrical pipe are at the same height $(y_1 = y_2)$ and the flow speed is the same at both ends

($v_1 = v_2$), Bernoulli's equation tells us that the pressure is the same at both ends of the pipe. But this isn't true if we account for viscosity. To see why, consider **Fig. 12.29,** which shows the flow-speed profile for laminar flow of a viscous fluid in a long cylindrical pipe. Due to viscosity, the speed is *zero* at the pipe walls (to which the fluid clings) and is greatest at the center of the pipe. The motion is like a lot of concentric tubes sliding relative to one another, with the central tube moving fastest and the outermost tube at rest. Viscous forces between the tubes oppose this sliding, so to keep the flow going we must apply a greater pressure at the back of the flow than at the front. That's why you have to keep squeezing a tube of toothpaste or a packet of ketchup (both viscous fluids) to keep the fluid coming out of its container. Your fingers provide a pressure at the back of the flow that is far greater than the atmospheric pressure at the front of the flow.

The pressure difference required to sustain a given volume flow rate through a cylindrical pipe of length L and radius R turns out to be proportional to L/R^4. If we decrease R by one-half, the required pressure increases by $2^4 = 16$; decreasing R by a factor of 0.90 (a 10% reduction) increases the required pressure difference by a factor of $(1/0.90)^4 = 1.52$ (a 52% increase). This simple relationship explains the connection between a high-cholesterol diet (which tends to narrow the arteries) and high blood pressure. Due to the R^4 dependence, even a small narrowing of the arteries can result in substantially elevated blood pressure and added strain on the heart muscle.

Figure **12.29** Velocity profile for a viscous fluid in a cylindrical pipe.



Turbulence

When the speed of a flowing fluid exceeds a certain critical value, the flow is no longer laminar. Instead, the flow pattern becomes extremely irregular and complex, and it changes continuously with time; there is no steady-state pattern. This irregular, chaotic flow is called **turbulence.** Figure 12.20 shows the contrast between laminar and turbulent flow for smoke rising in air. Bernoulli's equation is *not* applicable to regions where turbulence occurs because the flow is not steady.

Whether a flow is laminar or turbulent depends in part on the fluid's viscosity. The greater the viscosity, the greater the tendency for the fluid to flow in sheets (laminae) and the more likely the flow is to be laminar. (When we discussed Bernoulli's equation in Section 12.5, we assumed that the flow was laminar and that the fluid had zero viscosity. In fact, a *little* viscosity is needed to ensure that the flow is laminar.)

For a fluid of a given viscosity, flow speed is a determining factor for the onset of turbulence. A flow pattern that is stable at low speeds suddenly becomes unstable when a critical speed is reached. Irregularities in the flow pattern can be caused by roughness in the pipe wall, variations in the density of the fluid, and many other factors. At low flow speeds, these disturbances damp out; the flow pattern is *stable* and tends to maintain its laminar nature (**Fig. 12.30a**). When the critical speed is reached, however, the flow pattern becomes unstable. The disturbances no longer damp out but grow until they destroy the entire laminar-flow pattern (Fig. 12.30b).

BIO APPLICATION Listening for Turbulent Flow Normal blood flow in the human aorta is laminar, but a small disturbance such as a heart pathology can cause the flow to become turbulent. Turbulence makes noise, which is why listening to blood flow with a stethoscope is a useful diagnostic technique.

Figure **12.30** The flow of water from a faucet can be (a) laminar or (b) turbulent.

(a) Low speed: laminar flow

(b) High speed: turbulent flow

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 12.11 The curve ball

Does a curve ball *really* curve? Yes, it does, and the reason is turbulence. **Figure 12.31a** shows a nonspinning ball moving through the air from left to right. The flow lines show that to an observer moving with the ball, the air stream appears to move from right to left. Because of the high speeds involved (typically near 35 m/s, or 126 km/h), there is a region of *turbulent* flow behind the ball.

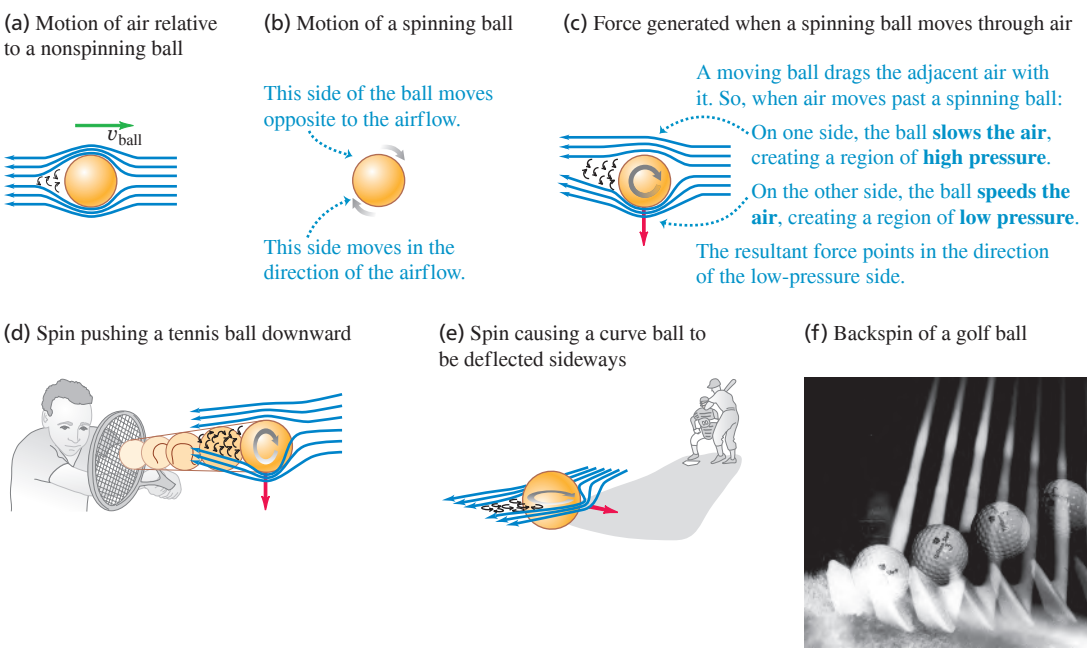
Figure 12.31b shows a *spinning* ball with "top spin." Layers of air near the ball's surface are pulled around in the direction of the spin by friction between the ball and air and by the air's internal friction (viscosity). Hence air moves relative to the ball's surface more slowly at the top of the ball than at the bottom, and turbulence occurs farther forward on the top side than on the bottom. As a result, the average pressure at the top of the ball is now greater than that at the bottom, and the resulting net force deflects the ball downward (Fig. 12.31c). "Top spin" is used in tennis to keep a fast serve in the court (Fig. 12.31d).

In baseball, a curve ball spins about a nearly *vertical* axis and the resulting deflection is sideways. In that case, Fig. 12.31c is a *top* view of the situation. A curve ball thrown by a left-handed pitcher spins as shown in Fig. 12.31e and will curve *toward* a right-handed batter, making it harder to hit.

A similar effect occurs when golf balls acquire "backspin" from impact with the grooved, slanted club face. Figure 12.31f shows the backspin of a golf ball just after impact. The resulting pressure difference between the top and bottom of the ball causes a *lift* force that keeps the ball in the air longer than would be possible without spin. A well-hit drive appears, from the tee, to "float" or even curve *upward* during the initial portion of its flight. This is a real effect, not an illusion. The dimples on the golf ball play an essential role; the viscosity of air gives a dimpled ball a much longer trajectory than an undimpled one with the same initial velocity and spin.

KEYCONCEPT Even in a fluid with low viscosity (that is, little internal friction) such as air, the effects of viscosity can be important for determining how that fluid flows around objects.

Figure **12.31** (a)–(e) Analyzing the motion of a spinning ball through the air. (f) Stroboscopic photograph of a golf ball being struck by a club. The picture was taken at 1000 flashes per second. The ball rotates about once in eight flashes, corresponding to an angular speed of 125 rev/s, or 7500 rpm. Source: Harold Edgerton at MIT, copyright 2014. Courtesy of Palm Press, Inc.



TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 12.6 How much more thumb pressure must a nurse use to administer an injection with a hypodermic needle of inside diameter 0.30 mm compared to one with inside diameter 0.60 mm? Assume that the two needles have the same length and that the volume flow rate is the same in both cases. (i) Twice as much; (ii) 4 times as much; (iii) 8 times as much; (iv) 16 times as much; (v) 32 times as much.

ANSWER **(iv)** The required pressure is proportional to $1/R^4$, where R is the inside radius of the needle (half the inside diameter). With the smaller-diameter needle, the pressure is greater by a factor of $[(0.60\text{ mm})/(0.30\text{ mm})]^4 = 2^4 = 16$.

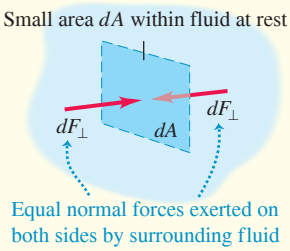
CHAPTER 12 SUMMARY

Density and pressure: Density is mass per unit volume. If a mass m of homogeneous material has volume V, its density ρ is the ratio m/V. Specific gravity is the ratio of the density of a material to the density of water. (See Example 12.1.)

Pressure is normal force per unit area. Pascal's law states that pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to every portion of the fluid. Absolute pressure is the total pressure in a fluid; gauge pressure is the difference between absolute pressure and atmospheric pressure. The SI unit of pressure is the pascal (Pa): 1 Pa $=$ 1 N/m^2. (See Example 12.2.)

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{12.1}$$

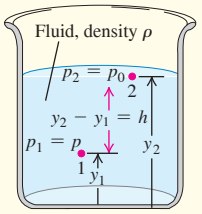
$$p = \frac{dF_\perp}{dA} \tag{12.2}$$



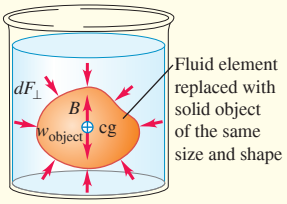
Pressures in a fluid at rest: The pressure difference between points 1 and 2 in a static fluid of uniform density ρ (an incompressible fluid) is proportional to the difference between the elevations y_1 and y_2. If the pressure at the surface of an incompressible liquid at rest is p_0, then the pressure at a depth h is greater by an amount ρgh. (See Examples 12.3 and 12.4.)

$$p_2 - p_1 = -\rho g(y_2 - y_1)$$
(pressure in a fluid of uniform density) (12.5)

$$p = p_0 + \rho gh$$
(pressure in a fluid of uniform density) (12.6)



Buoyancy: Archimedes's principle states that when an object is immersed in a fluid, the fluid exerts an upward buoyant force on the object equal to the weight of the fluid that the object displaces. (See Example 12.5.)



Fluid flow: An ideal fluid is incompressible and has no viscosity (no internal friction). A flow line is the path of a fluid particle; a streamline is a curve tangent at each point to the velocity vector at that point. A flow tube is a tube bounded at its sides by flow lines. In laminar flow, layers of fluid slide smoothly past each other. In turbulent flow, there is great disorder and a constantly changing flow pattern.

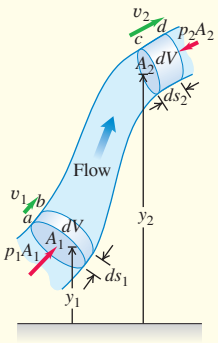
Conservation of mass in an incompressible fluid is expressed by the continuity equation, which relates the flow speeds v_1 and v_2 for two cross sections A_1 and A_2 in a flow tube. The product Av equals the volume flow rate, dV/dt, the rate at which volume crosses a section of the tube. (See Example 12.6.)

Bernoulli's equation states that a quantity involving the pressure p, flow speed v, and elevation y has the same value anywhere in a flow tube, assuming steady flow in an ideal fluid. This equation can be used to relate the properties of the flow at any two points. (See Examples 12.7–12.10.)

$$A_1v_1 = A_2v_2$$
(continuity equation, incompressible fluid) (12.10)

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = Av$$
(volume flow rate) (12.11)

$$p + \rho gy + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 = \text{constant}$$
(Bernoulli's equation) (12.18)



Chapter 12 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 12.3 and 12.4 (Section 12.2) before attempting these problems.

VP12.4.1 Liquefied natural gas (LNG) in a vertical storage tank has a density of 455 kg/m^3. The depth of LNG in the tank is 2.00 m, and the absolute pressure of the air inside the tank above the upper surface of the LNG is 1.22×10^5 Pa. What is the absolute pressure at the bottom of the tank?

VP12.4.2 You fill a vertical glass tube to a depth of 15.0 cm with freshwater. You then pour on top of the water an additional 15.0 cm of petrol (density 7.40×10^2 kg/m^3), which does not mix with water. The upper surface of the petrol is exposed to the air. Find the gauge pressure (a) at the interface between the petrol and water and (b) at the bottom of the tube.

VP12.4.3 In an open-tube manometer (see Fig. 12.8a), the absolute pressure in the container of gas on the left is 2.10×10^5 Pa. If atmospheric pressure is 1.01×10^5 Pa and the liquid in the manometer is mercury (density 1.36×10^4 kg/m^3), what will be the difference in the heights of the left and right columns of liquid?

VP12.4.4 In the manometer tube shown in Fig. 12.10, the oil in the right-hand arm is olive oil of density 916 kg/m^3. (a) If the top of the oil is 25.0 cm above the bottom of the tube, what is the height of the top of the water above the bottom of the tube? (b) What is the gauge pressure 15.0 cm beneath the surface of the water? (c) At what depth below the surface of the oil is the gauge pressure the same as in part (b)?

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 12.5 (Section 12.3) before attempting these problems.

VP12.5.1 An object of volume 7.50×10^{-4} m^3 and density 1.15×10^3 kg/m^3 is completely submerged in a fluid. (a) Calculate the weight of this object. (b) Calculate the buoyant force on this object if the fluid is (i) air (density 1.20 kg/m^3), (ii) water (density 1.00×10^3 kg/m^3), and (iii) glycerin (density 1.26×10^3 kg/m^3). In each case state whether the object will rise or sink if released while submerged in the fluid.

VP12.5.2 A sphere of volume 1.20×10^{-3} m^3 hangs from a cable. When the sphere is completely submerged in water, the tension in the cable is 29.4 N. (a) What is the buoyant force on the submerged sphere? (b) What is the weight of the sphere? (c) What is the density of the sphere?

VP12.5.3 A cube of volume 5.50×10^{-3} m^3 and density 7.50×10^3 kg/m^3 hangs from a cable. When the cube has the lower half of its volume submerged in an unknown liquid, the tension in the cable is 375 N. What is the density of the liquid? (Ignore the small buoyant force exerted by the air on the upper half of the cube.)

VP12.5.4 A wooden cylinder of length L and cross-sectional area A is partially submerged in a liquid with the axis of the cylinder oriented straight up and down. The density of the liquid is ρ_L. (a) If the length of the cylinder that is below the surface of the liquid is d, what is the buoyant force that the liquid exerts on the cylinder? (b) If the cylinder floats in the position described in part (a), what is the density of the cylinder? (Ignore the small buoyant force exerted by the air on the part of the cylinder above the surface of the liquid.)

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 12.7, 12.8, and 12.9 (Section 12.5) before attempting these problems.

VP12.9.1 A pipe leads from a storage tank on the roof of a building to the ground floor. The absolute pressure of the water in the storage tank where it connects to the pipe is 3.0×10^5 Pa, the pipe has a radius of 1.0 cm where it connects to the storage tank, and the speed of flow in this pipe is 1.6 m/s. The pipe on the ground floor has a radius of 0.50 cm and is 9.0 m below the storage tank. Find (a) the speed of flow and (b) the pressure in the pipe on the ground floor.

VP12.9.2 The storage tank in Fig. 12.25 contains ethanol (density 8.1×10^2 kg/m^3). The tank is 4.0 m in radius, the short pipe at the bottom of the tank is 1.0 cm in radius, and the height of ethanol in the tank is 3.2 m. The volume flow rate of ethanol from the short pipe is 4.4×10^{-3} m^3/s. (a) What is the speed at which ethanol flows out of the short pipe? (b) What is the gauge pressure of the air inside the tank in the space above the ethanol?

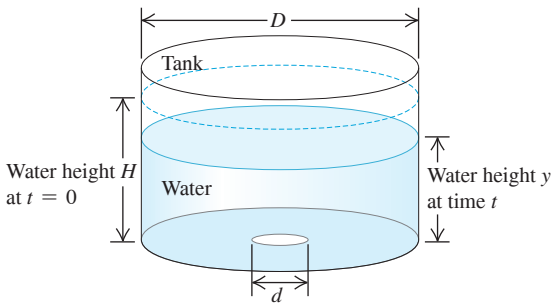
VP12.9.3 In a Venturi meter (see Fig. 12.26) that uses freshwater, the pressure difference between points 1 and 2 is 8.1×10^2 Pa, and the wide and narrow parts of the pipe have radii 2.5 cm and 1.2 cm, respectively. Find (a) the difference in the heights of the liquid levels in the two vertical tubes and (b) the volume flow rate through the horizontal pipe.

VP12.9.4 In the storage tank shown in Fig. 12.25, suppose area A_1 is *not* very much larger than area A_2. In this case we cannot treat the speed v_1 of the upper surface of the petrol as zero. Derive an expression for the flow speed in the pipe in this situation in terms of p_0, p_{atm} g, h, A_1, A_2 and ρ.

BRIDGING PROBLEM How Long to Drain?

A large cylindrical tank with diameter D is open to the air at the top. The tank contains water to a height H. A small circular hole with diameter d, where $d \ll D$, is then opened at the bottom of the tank (**Fig. 12.32**). Ignore any effects of viscosity. (a) Find y, the height of water in the tank a time t after the hole is opened, as a function of t. (b) How long does it take to drain the tank completely? (c) If you double height H, by what factor does the time to drain the tank increase?

Figure 12.32 A water tank that is open at the top and has a hole at the bottom.



SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Draw a sketch of the situation that shows all of the relevant dimensions.
2. List the unknown quantities, and decide which of these are the target variables.
3. At what speed does water flow out of the bottom of the tank? How is this related to the volume flow rate of water out of the tank? How is the volume flow rate related to the rate of change of y?

EXECUTE

4. Use your results from step 3 to write an equation for dy/dt.
5. Your result from step 4 is a relatively simple differential equation. With your knowledge of calculus, you can integrate it to find y as a function of t. (*Hint:* Once you've done the integration, you'll still have to do a little algebra.)
6. Use your result from step 5 to find the time when the tank is empty. How does your result depend on the initial height H?

EVALUATE

7. Check whether your answers are reasonable. A good check is to draw a graph of y versus t. According to your graph, what is the algebraic sign of dy/dt at different times? Does this make sense?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q12.1 A cube of oak wood with very smooth faces normally floats in water. Suppose you submerge it completely and press one face flat against the bottom of a tank so that no water is under that face. Will the block float to the surface? Is there a buoyant force on it? Explain.

Q12.2 A rubber hose is attached to a funnel, and the free end is bent around to point upward. When water is poured into the funnel, it rises in the hose to the same level as in the funnel, even though the funnel has a lot more water in it than the hose does. Why? What supports the extra weight of the water in the funnel?

Q12.3 Comparing Example 12.1 (Section 12.1) and Example 12.2 (Section 12.2), it seems that 700 N of air is exerting a downward force of 2.0×10^6 N on the floor. How is this possible?

Q12.4 Equation (12.7) shows that an area ratio of 100 to 1 can give 100 times more output force than input force. Doesn't this violate conservation of energy? Explain.

Q12.5 You have probably noticed that the lower the tire pressure, the larger the contact area between the tire and the road. Why?

Q12.6 In hot-air ballooning, a large balloon is filled with air heated by a gas burner at the bottom. Why must the air be heated? How does the balloonist control ascent and descent?

Q12.7 In describing the size of a large ship, one uses such expressions as "it displaces 20,000 tonnes." What does this mean? Can the weight of the ship be obtained from this information?

Q12.8 You drop a solid sphere of aluminum in a bucket of water that sits on the ground. The buoyant force equals the weight of water displaced; this is less than the weight of the sphere, so the sphere sinks to the bottom. If you take the bucket with you on a lift that accelerates upward, the apparent weight of the water increases and the buoyant force on the sphere increases. Could the acceleration of the lift be great enough to make the sphere pop up out of the water? Explain.

Q12.9 A rigid, lighter-than-air dirigible filled with helium cannot continue to rise indefinitely. Why? What determines the maximum height it can attain?

Q12.10 Which has a greater buoyant force on it: a 25 cm^3 piece of wood floating with part of its volume above water or a 25 cm^3 piece of submerged iron? Or, must you know their masses before you can answer? Explain.

Q12.11 The purity of gold can be tested by weighing it in air and in water. How? Do you think you could get away with making a fake gold brick by gold-plating some cheaper material?

Q12.12 During the Great Mississippi Flood of 1993, the levees in St. Louis tended to rupture first at the bottom. Why?

Q12.13 A cargo ship travels from the Atlantic Ocean (salt water) to Lake Ontario (freshwater) via the St. Lawrence River. The ship rides several centimeters lower in the water in Lake Ontario than it did in the ocean. Explain.

Q12.14 You push a piece of wood under the surface of a swimming pool. After it is completely submerged, you keep pushing it deeper and deeper. As you do this, what will happen to the buoyant force on it? Will the force keep increasing, stay the same, or decrease? Why?

Q12.15 An old question is "Which weighs more, a kilogram of feathers or a kilogram of lead?" Will a kilogram of feathers balance a kilogram of lead on opposite pans of an equal-arm balance? Explain, taking into account buoyant forces.

Q12.16 Suppose the door that opens into a room makes an airtight but frictionless fit in its frame. Do you think you could open the door if the air pressure outside the room were standard atmospheric pressure and the air pressure inside the room was 1% greater? Explain.

Q12.17 At a certain depth in an incompressible liquid, the absolute pressure is p. At twice this depth, will the absolute pressure be equal to $2p$, greater than $2p$, or less than $2p$? Justify your answer.

Q12.18 A piece of iron is glued to the top of a block of wood. When the block is placed in a bucket of water with the iron on top, the block floats. The block is now turned over so that the iron is submerged beneath the wood. Does the block float or sink? Does the water level in the bucket rise, drop, or stay the same? Explain.

Q12.19 You take an empty glass jar and push it into a tank of water with the open mouth of the jar downward, so that the air inside the jar is trapped and cannot get out. If you push the jar deeper into the water, does the buoyant force on the jar stay the same? If not, does it increase or decrease? Explain.

Q12.20 You are floating in a canoe in the middle of a swimming pool. Your friend is at the edge of the pool, carefully noting the level of the water on the side of the pool. You have a bowling ball with you in the canoe. If you carefully drop the bowling ball over the side of the canoe and it sinks to the bottom of the pool, does the water level in the pool rise or fall?

Q12.21 You are floating in a canoe in the middle of a swimming pool. A large bird flies up and lights on your shoulder. Does the water level in the pool rise or fall?

Q12.22 Two identical buckets are filled to the brim with water, but one of them has a piece of wood floating in it. Which bucket of water weighs more? Explain.

Q12.23 An ice cube floats in a glass of water. When the ice melts, will the water level in the glass rise, fall, or remain unchanged? Explain.

Q12.24 A helium-filled balloon is tied to a light string inside a car at rest. The other end of the string is attached to the floor of the car, so the balloon pulls the string vertical. The car's windows are closed. Now the car accelerates forward. Does the balloon move? If so, does it move forward or backward? Justify your reasoning with reference to buoyancy. (If you have a chance, try this experiment yourself—but with someone else driving!)

Q12.25 If the velocity at each point in space in steady-state fluid flow is constant, how can a fluid particle accelerate?

Q12.26 In a store-window vacuum cleaner display, a table-tennis ball is suspended in midair in a jet of air blown from the outlet hose of a tank-type vacuum cleaner. The ball bounces around a little but always moves back toward the center of the jet, even if the jet is tilted from the vertical. How does this behavior illustrate Bernoulli's equation?

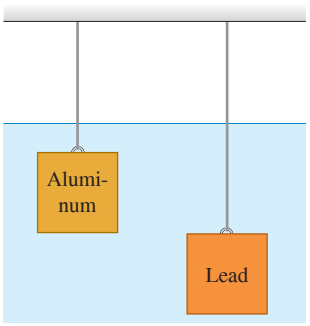
Q12.27 A tornado consists of a rapidly whirling air vortex. Why is the pressure always much lower in the center than at the outside? How does this condition account for the destructive power of a tornado?

Q12.28 Airports at high elevations have longer runways for takeoffs and landings than do airports at sea level. One reason is that aircraft engines develop less power in the thin air well above sea level. What is another reason?

Q12.29 When a smooth-flowing stream of water comes out of a faucet, it narrows as it falls. Explain.

Q12.30 Identical-size lead and aluminum cubes are suspended at different depths by two wires in a large vat of water (**Fig. Q12.30**). (a) Which cube experiences a greater buoyant force? (b) For which cube is the tension in the wire greater? (c) Which cube experiences a greater force on its lower face? (d) For which cube is the difference in pressure between the upper and lower faces greater?

Figure **Q12.30**



EXERCISES

Section 12.1 Gases, Liquids, and Density

12.1 •• On a part-time job, you are asked to bring a cylindrical iron rod of length 86.0 cm and diameter 2.30 cm from a storage room to a machinist. Will you need a cart? (To answer, calculate the weight of the rod.)

12.2 •• A cube 5.0 cm on each side is made of a metal alloy. After you drill a cylindrical hole 2.0 cm in diameter all the way through and perpendicular to one face, you find that the cube weighs 6.30 N. (a) What is the density of this metal? (b) What did the cube weigh before you drilled the hole in it?

12.3 • You purchase a rectangular piece of metal that has dimensions $4.9 \times 14.7 \times 29.4$ mm and mass 1.11×10^{-2} kg. The seller tells you that the metal is gold. To check this, you compute the average density of the piece. What value do you get? Were you cheated?

12.4 • (a) What is the average density of the sun? (b) What is the average density of a neutron star that has the same mass as the sun but a radius of only 20.0 km?

12.5 •• A uniform lead sphere and a uniform aluminum sphere have the same mass. What is the ratio of the radius of the aluminum sphere to the radius of the lead sphere?

12.6 •• A hollow cylindrical copper pipe is 1.70 m long and has an outside diameter of 3.90 cm and an inside diameter of 2.70 cm. How much does it weigh?

Section 12.2 Pressure in a Fluid

12.7 •• **Oceans on Mars.** Scientists have found evidence that Mars may once have had an ocean 0.800 km deep. The acceleration due to gravity on Mars is 3.71 m/s^2. (a) What would be the gauge pressure at the bottom of such an ocean, assuming it was freshwater? (b) To what depth would you need to go in the earth's ocean to experience the same gauge pressure?

12.8 •• BIO (a) Calculate the difference in blood pressure between the feet and top of the head for a person who is 1.65 m tall. (b) Consider a cylindrical segment of a blood vessel 2.00 cm long and 1.50 mm in diameter. What *additional* outward force would such a vessel need to withstand in the person's feet compared to a similar vessel in her head?

12.9 • BIO In intravenous feeding, a needle is inserted in a vein in the patient's arm and a tube leads from the needle to a reservoir of fluid (density 1050 kg/m^3) located at height h above the arm. The top of the reservoir is open to the air. If the gauge pressure inside the vein is 5980 Pa, what is the minimum value of h that allows fluid to enter the vein? Assume the needle diameter is large enough that you can ignore the viscosity (see Section 12.6) of the fluid.

12.10 • A barrel contains a 0.170 m layer of oil floating on water that is 0.270 m deep. The density of the oil is 590 kg/m^3. (a) What is the gauge pressure at the oil–water interface? (b) What is the gauge pressure at the bottom of the barrel?

12.11 • A U-shaped tube with both arms open to the air has a 35.0 cm column of liquid of unknown density in its right arm. Beneath this liquid and not mixing with it is glycerin that extends into the left arm of the tube. The surface of the glycerin in the left arm is 12.0 cm below the surface of the unknown liquid in the right arm. What is the density of the unknown liquid?

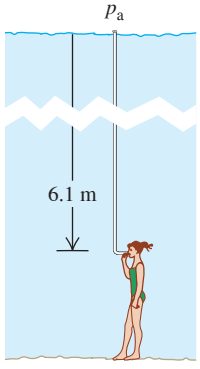
12.12 •• You are designing a diving bell to withstand the pressure of seawater at a depth of 200 m. (a) What is the gauge pressure at this depth? (You can ignore changes in the density of the water with depth.) (b) At this depth, what is the net force due to the water outside and the air inside the bell on a circular glass window 30.0 cm in diameter if the pressure inside the diving bell equals the pressure at the surface of the water? (Ignore the small variation of pressure over the surface of the window.)

12.13 •• BIO **Ear Damage from Diving.** If the force on the tympanic membrane (eardrum) increases by about 1.5 N above the force from atmospheric pressure, the membrane can be damaged. When you go scuba diving in the ocean, below what depth could damage to your eardrum start to occur? The eardrum is typically 8.2 mm in diameter. (Consult Table 12.1.)

12.14 •• The liquid in the open-tube manometer in Fig. 12.8a is mercury, $y_1 = 3.00$ cm, and $y_2 = 7.00$ cm. Atmospheric pressure is 980 millibars. What are (a) the absolute pressure at the bottom of the U-shaped tube; (b) the absolute pressure in the open tube at a depth of 4.00 cm below the free surface; (c) the absolute pressure of the gas in the container; (d) the gauge pressure of the gas in pascals?

12.15 • BIO There is a maximum depth at which a diver can breathe through a snorkel tube (**Fig. E12.15**) because as the depth increases, so does the pressure difference, which tends to collapse the diver's lungs. Since the snorkel connects the air in the lungs to the atmosphere at the surface, the pressure inside the lungs is atmospheric pressure. What is the external–internal pressure difference when the diver's lungs are at a depth of 6.1 m? Assume that the diver is in freshwater. (A scuba diver breathing from compressed air tanks can operate at greater depths than can a snorkeler, since the pressure of the air inside the scuba diver's lungs increases to match the external pressure of the water.)

Figure **E12.15**



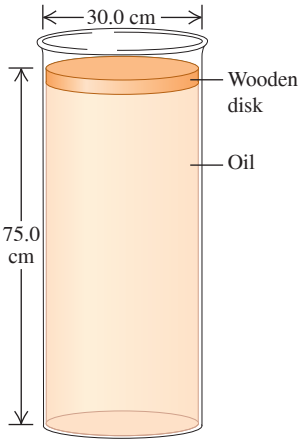
12.16 •• BIO The lower end of a long plastic straw is immersed below the surface of the water in a plastic cup. An average person sucking on the upper end of the straw can pull water into the straw to a vertical height of 1.1 m above the surface of the water in the cup. (a) What is the lowest gauge pressure that the average person can achieve inside his lungs? (b) Explain why your answer in part (a) is negative.

12.17 •• An electrical short cuts off all power to a submersible diving vehicle when it is 30 m below the surface of the ocean. The crew must push out a hatch of area 0.75 m^2 and weight 300 N on the bottom to escape. If the pressure inside is 1.0 atm, what downward force must the crew exert on the hatch to open it?

12.18 •• A tall cylinder with a cross-sectional area 10.0 cm^2 is partially filled with mercury; the surface of the mercury is 6.00 cm above the bottom of the cylinder. Water is slowly poured in on top of the mercury, and the two fluids don't mix. What volume of water must be added to double the gauge pressure at the bottom of the cylinder?

12.19 •• A cylindrical disk of wood weighing 45.0 N and having a diameter of 30.0 cm floats on a cylinder of oil of density 0.850 g/cm^3 (**Fig. E12.19**). The cylinder of oil is 75.0 cm deep and has a diameter the same as that of the wood. (a) What is the gauge pressure at the top of the oil column? (b) Suppose now that someone puts a weight of 91.0 N on top of the wood, but no oil seeps around the edge of the wood. What is the *change* in pressure at (i) the bottom of the oil and (ii) halfway down in the oil?

Figure **E12.19**



12.20 • You are doing experiments from a research ship in the Atlantic Ocean. On a day when the atmospheric pressure at the surface of the water is 1.03×10^5 Pa, at what depth below the surface of the water is the absolute pressure (a) twice the pressure at the surface and (b) four times the pressure at the surface?

12.21 •• **Hydraulic Lift I.** For the hydraulic lift shown in Fig. 12.7, what must be the ratio of the diameter of the vessel at the car to the diameter of the vessel where the force F_1 is applied so that a 1520 kg car can be lifted with a force F_1 of just 125 N?

12.22 • **Hydraulic Lift II.** The piston of a hydraulic automobile lift is 0.30 m in diameter. What gauge pressure, in pascals, is required to lift a car with a mass of 1200 kg? Also express this pressure in atmospheres.

12.23 • Early barometers contained wine instead of mercury. On a day when the height h of the liquid in the barometer tube is 750 mm for a mercury barometer, what is h for a barometer that uses wine with density 990 kg/m^3?

Section 12.3 Buoyancy

12.24 • Estimate the fraction of your body's total volume that is above the surface of the water when you float in seawater (density 1030 kg/m^3). (a) Use this estimate and your weight to calculate the total volume of your body. (b) What is your average density? How does your average density compare to the density of seawater?

12.25 •• A 900 N athlete in very good condition does not float in a freshwater pool. To keep him from sinking to the bottom, an upward force of 20 N must be applied to him. What are his volume and his average density?

12.26 •• A rock has mass 1.80 kg. When the rock is suspended from the lower end of a string and totally immersed in water, the tension in the string is 12.8 N. What is the smallest density of a liquid in which the rock will float?

12.27 • A 950 kg cylindrical can buoy floats vertically in sea-water. The diameter of the buoy is 0.860 m. Calculate the additional distance the buoy will sink when an 70.0-kg man stands on top of it.

12.28 •• A slab of ice floats on a freshwater lake. What minimum volume must the slab have for a 45.0 kg woman to be able to stand on it without getting her feet wet?

12.29 •• An ore sample weighs 16.20 N in air. When the sample is suspended by a light cord and totally immersed in water, the tension in the cord is 12.90 N. Find the total volume and the density of the sample.

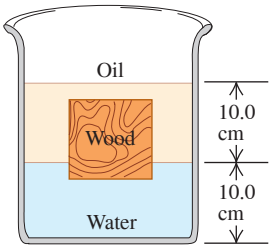
12.30 •• You are preparing some apparatus for a visit to a newly discovered planet Caasi having oceans of glycerine and a surface acceleration due to gravity of 4.15 m/s^2. If your apparatus floats in the oceans on earth with 16.0% of its volume submerged, what percentage will be submerged in the glycerine oceans of Caasi?

12.31 •• A rock with density 1200 kg/m^3 is suspended from the lower end of a light string. When the rock is in air, the tension in the string is 28.0 N. What is the tension in the string when the rock is totally immersed in a liquid with density 750 kg/m^3?

12.32 • A hollow plastic sphere is held below the surface of a freshwater lake by a cord anchored to the bottom of the lake. The sphere has a volume of 0.680 m^3 and the tension in the cord is 950 N. (a) Calculate the buoyant force exerted by the water on the sphere. (b) What is the mass of the sphere? (c) The cord breaks and the sphere rises to the surface. When the sphere comes to rest, what fraction of its volume will be submerged?

12.33 •• A cubical block of wood, 10.0 cm on a side, floats at the interface between oil and water with its lower surface 1.50 cm below the interface (**Fig. E12.33**). The density of the oil is 790 kg/m^3. (a) What is the gauge pressure at the upper face of the block? (b) What is the gauge pressure at the lower face of the block? (c) What are the mass and density of the block?

Figure **E12.33**



12.34 • A solid aluminum ingot weighs 94 N in air. (a) What is its volume? (b) The ingot is suspended from a rope and totally immersed in water. What is the tension in the rope (the *apparent* weight of the ingot in water)?

12.35 •• A rock is suspended by a light string. When the rock is in air, the tension in the string is 39.2 N. When the rock is totally immersed in water, the tension is 28.4 N. When the rock is totally immersed in an unknown liquid, the tension is 21.5 N. What is the density of the unknown liquid?

12.36 • A uniform plastic block floats in water with 30.0% of its volume above the surface of the water. The block is placed in a second liquid and floats with 20.0% of its volume above the surface of the liquid. What is the density of the second liquid?

12.37 •• A large plastic cylinder with mass 30.0 kg and density 370 kg/m^3 is in the water of a lake. A light vertical cable runs between the bottom of the cylinder and the bottom of the lake and holds the cylinder so that 30.0% of its volume is above the surface of the water. What is the tension in the cable?

Section 12.4 Fluid Flow

12.38 •• Water runs into a fountain, filling all the pipes, at a steady rate of 7.41×10^{-2} m^3/s. (a) How fast will it shoot out of a hole 4.56 cm in diameter? (b) At what speed will it shoot out if the diameter of the hole is three times as large?

12.39 •• A shower head has 20 circular openings, each with radius 1.0 mm. The shower head is connected to a pipe with radius 0.98 cm. If the speed of water in the pipe is 3.5 m/s, what is its speed as it exits the shower-head openings?

12.40 • Water is flowing in a pipe with a varying cross-sectional area, and at all points the water completely fills the pipe. At point 1 the cross-sectional area of the pipe is 0.070 m^2, and the magnitude of the fluid velocity is 3.50 m/s. (a) What is the fluid speed at points in the pipe where the cross-sectional area is (a) 0.105 m^2 and (b) 0.047 m^2? (c) Calculate the volume of water discharged from the open end of the pipe in 1.00 hour.

12.41 • Water is flowing in a pipe with a circular cross section but with varying cross-sectional area, and at all points the water completely fills the pipe. (a) At one point in the pipe the radius is 0.105 m. What is the speed of the water at this point if water is flowing into this pipe at a steady rate of 1.20 m^3/s? (b) At a second point in the pipe the water speed is 4.10 m/s. What is the radius of the pipe at this point?

12.42 •• On another planet that you are exploring, a large tank is open to the atmosphere and contains ethanol. A horizontal pipe of cross-sectional area 9.0×10^{-4} m^2 has one end inserted into the tank just above the bottom of the tank. The other end of the pipe is open to the atmosphere. The viscosity of the ethanol can be neglected. You measure the volume flow rate of the ethanol from the tank as a function of the depth h of the ethanol in the tank. If you graph the volume flow rate squared as a function of h, your data lie close to a straight line that has slope 1.94×10^{-5} m^5/s^2. What is the value of g, the acceleration of a free-falling object at the surface of the planet?

12.43 •• A large, cylindrical water tank with diameter 3.00 m is on a platform 2.00 m above the ground. The vertical tank is open to the air and the depth of the water in the tank is 2.00 m. There is a hole with diameter 0.500 cm in the side of the tank just above the bottom of the tank. The hole is plugged with a cork. You remove the cork and collect in a bucket the water that flows out the hole. (a) When 5.00 L of water flows out of the tank, what is the change in the height of the water in the tank? (b) How long does it take you to collect 5.00 L of water in the bucket? Based on your answer in part (a), is it reasonable to ignore the change in the depth of the water in the tank as 5.00 L of water flow out?

Section 12.5 Bernoulli's Equation

12.44 • A soft drink (mostly water) flows in a pipe at a beverage plant with a mass flow rate that would fill 220 0.355-L cans per minute. At point 2 in the pipe, the gauge pressure is 152 kPa and the cross-sectional area is 8.00 cm^2. At point 1, 1.35 m above point 2, the cross-sectional area is 2.00 cm^2. Find the (a) mass flow rate; (b) volume flow rate; (c) flow speeds at points 1 and 2; (d) gauge pressure at point 1.

12.45 •• A sealed tank containing seawater to a height of 12.5 m also contains air above the water at a gauge pressure of 2.90 atm. Water flows out from the bottom through a small hole. How fast is this water moving?

12.46 •• BIO **Artery Blockage.** A medical technician is trying to determine what percentage of a patient's artery is blocked by plaque. To do this, she measures the blood pressure just before the region of blockage and finds that it is 1.20×10^4 Pa, while in the region of blockage it is 1.15×10^4 Pa. Furthermore, she knows that blood flowing through the normal artery just before the point of blockage is traveling at 30.0 cm/s, and the specific gravity of this patient's blood is 1.06. What percentage of the cross-sectional area of the patient's artery is blocked by the plaque?

12.47 • What gauge pressure is required in the city water mains for a stream from a fire hose connected to the mains to reach a vertical height of 10.0 m? (Assume that the mains have a much larger diameter than the fire hose.)

12.48 • A small circular hole 6.00 mm in diameter is cut in the side of a large water tank, 14.0 m below the water level in the tank. The top of the tank is open to the air. Find (a) the speed of efflux of the water and (b) the volume discharged per second.

12.49 • At a certain point in a horizontal pipeline, the water's speed is 2.50 m/s and the gauge pressure is 1.80×10^4 Pa. Find the gauge pressure at a second point in the line if the cross-sectional area at the second point is twice that at the first.

12.50 •• At one point in a pipeline the water's speed is 3.00 m/s and the gauge pressure is 5.00×10^4 Pa. Find the gauge pressure at a second point in the line, 11.0 m lower than the first, if the pipe diameter at the second point is twice that at the first.

12.51 •• A golf course sprinkler system discharges water from a horizontal pipe at the rate of 7200 cm^3/s. At one point in the pipe, where the radius is 4.00 cm, the water's absolute pressure is 2.40×10^5 Pa. At a second point in the pipe, the water passes through a constriction where the radius is 2.00 cm. What is the water's absolute pressure as it flows through this constriction?

Section 12.6 Viscosity and Turbulence

12.52 • A pressure difference of 6.00×10^4 Pa is required to maintain a volume flow rate of 0.800 m^3/s for a viscous fluid flowing through a section of cylindrical pipe that has radius 0.240 m. What pressure difference is required to maintain the same volume flow rate if the radius of the pipe is decreased to 0.0900 m?

12.53 •• BIO **Clogged Artery.** Viscous blood is flowing through an artery partially clogged by cholesterol. A surgeon wants to remove enough of the cholesterol to double the flow rate of blood through this artery. If the original diameter of the artery is D, what should be the new diameter (in terms of D) to accomplish this for the same pressure gradient?

PROBLEMS

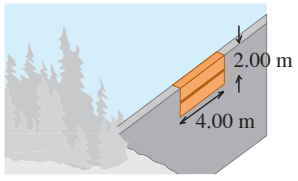
12.54 •• CP The deepest point known in any of the earth's oceans is in the Marianas Trench, 10.92 km deep. (a) Assuming water is incompressible, what is the pressure at this depth? Use the density of seawater. (b) The actual pressure is 1.16×10^8 Pa; your calculated value will be less because the density actually varies with depth. Using the compressibility of water and the actual pressure, find the density of the water at the bottom of the Marianas Trench. What is the percent change in the density of the water?

12.55 ••• CALC A swimming pool is 5.0 m long, 4.0 m wide, and 3.0 m deep. Compute the force exerted by the water against (a) the bottom and (b) either end. (*Hint:* Calculate the force on a thin, horizontal strip at a depth h, and integrate this over the end of the pool.) Do not include the force due to air pressure.

12.56 •• A rock is suspended from the lower end of a light string. When the rock is totally immersed in water, the tension in the string is 1.20 N. When the rock is totally immersed in ethanol, the tension in the string is 1.60 N. Use the densities in Table 12.1 to calculate the weight of the rock.

12.57 ••• CP CALC The upper edge of a gate in a dam runs along the water surface. The gate is 2.00 m high and 4.00 m wide and is hinged along a horizontal line through its center (**Fig. P12.57**). Calculate the torque about the hinge arising from the force due to the water. (*Hint:* Use a procedure similar to that used in Problem 12.55; calculate the torque on a thin, horizontal strip at a depth h and integrate this over the gate.)

Figure P12.57



12.58 ••• A large tank has a 40.0-cm-deep layer of water floating on top of a 60.0-cm-deep layer of glycerin. A dense wooden cube has a side length of 2.00 cm and a mass of 9.20×10^{-3} kg. When the cube floats in the tank, what fraction of its volume is below the surface of the glycerin?

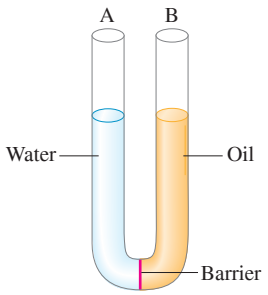
12.59 •• A block of plastic in the shape of a rectangular solid that has height 8.00 cm and area A for its top and bottom surfaces is floating in water. You place coins on the top surface of the block (at the center, so the top surface of the block remains horizontal). By measuring the height of the block above the surface of the water, you can determine the height h below the surface. You measure h for various values of the total mass m of the coins that you have placed on the block. You plot h versus m and find that your data lie close to a straight line that has slope 0.0390 m/kg and y-intercept 0.0312 m. What is the mass of the block?

12.60 •• **Ballooning on Mars.** It has been proposed that we could explore Mars using inflated balloons to hover just above the surface. The buoyancy of the atmosphere would keep the balloon aloft. The density of the Martian atmosphere is 0.0154 kg/m^3 (although this varies with temperature). Suppose we construct these balloons of a thin but tough plastic having a density such that each square meter has a mass of 5.30 g. We inflate them with a very light gas whose mass we canignore. (a) What should be the radius and mass of these balloons so they just hover above the surface of Mars? (b) If we released one of the balloons from part (a) on earth, where the atmospheric density is 1.20 kg/m^3, what would be its initial acceleration assuming it was the same size as on Mars? Would it go up or down? (c) If on Mars these balloons have five times the radius found in part (a), how heavy an instrument package could they carry?

12.61 •• A 0.120 kg cube of ice (frozen water) is floating in glycerine. The gylcerine is in a tall cylinder that has inside radius 3.30 cm. The level of the glycerine is well below the top of the cylinder. If the ice completely melts, by what distance does the height of liquid in the cylinder change? Does the level of liquid rise or fall? That is, is the surface of the water above or below the original level of the glycerine before the ice melted?

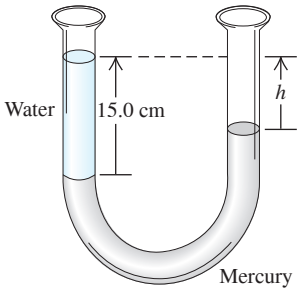
12.62 •• A narrow, U-shaped glass tube with open ends is filled with 25.0 cm of oil (of specific gravity 0.80) and 25.0 cm of water on opposite sides, with a barrier separating the liquids (**Fig. P12.62**). (a) Assume that the two liquids do not mix, and find the final heights of the columns of liquid in each side of the tube after the barrier is removed. (b) For the following cases, arrive at your answer by simple physical reasoning, not by calculations: (i) What would be the height on each side if the oil and water had equal densities? (ii) What would the heights be if the oil's density were much less than that of water?

Figure **P12.62**



12.63 • A U-shaped tube open to the air at both ends contains some mercury. A quantity of water is carefully poured into the left arm of the U-shaped tube until the vertical height of the water column is 15.0 cm (**Fig. P12.63**). (a) What is the gauge pressure at the water–mercury interface? (b) Calculate the vertical distance h from the top of the mercury in the right-hand arm of the tube to the top of the water in the left-hand arm.

Figure **P12.63**



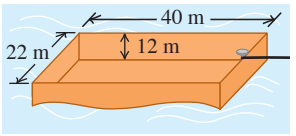
12.64 •• CALC **The Great Molasses Flood.** On the afternoon of January 15, 1919, an unusually warm day in Boston, a 17.7-m-high, 27.4-m-diameter cylindrical metal tank used for storing molasses ruptured. Molasses flooded into the streets in a 5-m-deep stream, killing pedestrians and horses and knocking down buildings. The molasses had a density of 1600 kg/m^3. If the tank was full before the accident, what was the total outward force the molasses exerted on its sides? (*Hint:* Consider the outward force on a circular ring of the tank wall of width dy and at a depth y below the surface. Integrate to find the total outward force. Assume that before the tank ruptured, the pressure at the surface of the molasses was equal to the air pressure outside the tank.)

12.65 •• A large, 40.0 kg cubical block of wood with uniform density is floating in a freshwater lake with 20.0% of its volume above the surface of the water. You want to load bricks onto the floating block and then push it horizontally through the water to an island where you are building an outdoor grill. (a) What is the volume of the block? (b) What is the maximum mass of bricks that you can place on the block without causing it to sink below the water surface?

12.66 ••• A hot-air balloon has a volume of 2800 m^3. The balloon fabric (the envelope) weighs 910 N. The basket with gear and full propane tanks weighs 2000 N. If the balloon can barely lift an additional 2800 N of passengers, breakfast, and champagne when the outside air density is 1.23 kg/m^3, what is the average density of the heated gases in the envelope?

12.67 • An open barge has the dimensions shown in **Fig. P12.67**. If the barge is made out of 4.9-cm-thick steel plate on each of its four sides and its bottom, what mass of coal can the barge carry in freshwater without sinking? Is there enough room in the barge to hold this amount of coal? (The density of coal is about 1500 kg/m^3.)

Figure **P12.67**



12.68 ••• A piece of wood is 0.570 m long, 0.250 m wide, and 0.076 m thick. Its density is 700 kg/m^3. What volume of lead must be fastened underneath it to sink the wood in calm water so that its top is just even with the water level? What is the mass of this volume of lead?

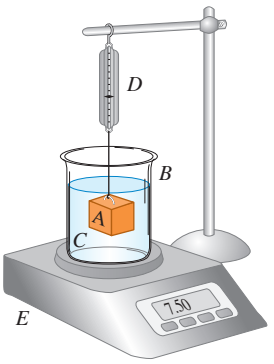
12.69 •• A liter of milk in a full plastic bottle is sitting on the edge of your kitchen table. Estimate the vertical distance between the top surface of the milk and the bottom of the bottle. Also estimate the distance from the tabletop to the floor. You punch a small hole in the side of the bottle just above the bottom of the bottle, and milk flows out the hole. When the milk first starts to flow out the hole, what horizontal distance does it travel before reaching the floor? Assume the milk is in free fall after it has passed through the hole, and neglect the viscosity of the milk.

12.70 •• Ethanol is flowing in a pipe and at all points completely fills the pipe. At point A in the pipe the gauge pressure is p and the cross-sectional area of the pipe is 0.0500 m^2. The other end of the pipe (point B) is open to the air, has cross-sectional area 0.0200 m^2, and is at a vertical height of 3.00 m above point A. What must the gauge pressure p be at A if the volume flow rate out of the pipe at point B is 0.0800 m^3/s?

12.71 •• CP A firehose must be able to shoot water to the top of a building 28.0 m tall when aimed straight up. Water enters this hose at a steady rate of 0.500 m^3/s and shoots out of a round nozzle. Neglect air resistance. (a) What is the maximum diameter this nozzle can have? (b) If the only nozzle available has a diameter twice as great, what is the highest point the water can reach?

12.72 •• Block A in **Fig. P12.72** hangs by a cord from spring balance D and is submerged in a liquid C contained in beaker B. The mass of the beaker is 1.30 kg; the mass of the liquid is 1.80 kg. Balance D reads 2.15 kg, and balance E reads 7.50 kg. The volume of block A is 4.00×10^{-3}m^3. (a) What is the density of the liquid? (b) What will each balance read if block A is pulled up out of the liquid?

Figure **P12.72**



12.73 ••• **CALC** A closed and elevated vertical cylindrical tank with diameter 2.00 m contains water to a depth of 0.800 m. A worker accidently pokes a circular hole with diameter 0.0200 m in the bottom of the tank. As the water drains from the tank, compressed air above the water in the tank maintains a gauge pressure of 5.00×10^3 Pa at the surface of the water. Ignore any effects of viscosity. (a) Just after the hole is made, what is the speed of the water as it emerges from the hole? What is the ratio of this speed to the efflux speed if the top of the tank is open to the air? (b) How much time does it take for all the water to drain from the tank? What is the ratio of this time to the time it takes for the tank to drain if the top of the tank is open to the air?

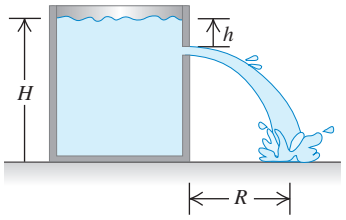
12.74 •• A plastic ball has radius 12.0 cm and floats in water with 24.0% of its volume submerged. (a) What force must you apply to the ball to hold it at rest totally below the surface of the water? (b) If you let go of the ball, what is its acceleration the instant you release it?

12.75 ••• A cubical block of density ρ_B and with sides of length L floats in a liquid of greater density ρ_L. (a) What fraction of the block's volume is above the surface of the liquid? (b) The liquid is denser than water (density ρ_W) and does not mix with it. If water is poured on the surface of that liquid, how deep must the water layer be so that the water surface just rises to the top of the block? Express your answer in terms of L, ρ_B, ρ_L, and ρ_W. (c) Find the depth of the water layer in part (b) if the liquid is mercury, the block is made of iron, and $L = 11.5$ cm.

12.76 •• A barge is in a rectangular lock on a freshwater river. The lock is 57.0 m long and 22.0 m wide, and the steel doors on each end are closed. With the barge floating in the lock, a 2.10×10^6 N load of scrap metal is put onto the barge. The metal has density 9500 kg/m^3. (a) When the load of scrap metal, initially on the bank, is placed onto the barge, what vertical distance does the water in the lock rise? (b) The scrap metal is now pushed overboard into the water. Does the water level in the lock rise, fall, or remain the same? If it rises or falls, by what vertical distance does it change?

12.77 • **CP** Water stands at a depth H in a large, open tank whose side walls are vertical (**Fig. P12.77**). A hole is made in one of the walls at a depth h below the water surface. (a) At what distance R from the foot of the wall does the emerging stream strike the floor? (b) How far above the bottom of the tank could a second hole be cut so that the stream emerging from it could have the same range as for the first hole?

Figure **P12.77**



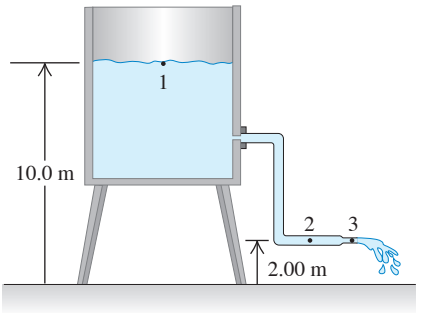
12.78 •• Your uncle is in the below-deck galley of his boat while you are spear fishing in the water nearby. An errant spear makes a small hole in the boat's hull, and water starts to leak into the galley. (a) If the hole is 0.900 m below the water surface and has area 1.20 cm^2, how long does it take 10.0 L of water to leak into the boat? (b) Do you need to take into consideration the fact that the boat sinks lower into the water as water leaks in?

12.79 •• **CP** You hold a hose at waist height and spray water horizontally with it. The hose nozzle has a diameter of 1.80 cm, and the water splashes on the ground a distance of 0.950 m horizontally from the nozzle. If you constrict the nozzle to a diameter of 0.750 cm, how far from the nozzle, horizontally, will the water travel before it hits the ground? (Ignore air resistance.)

12.80 ••• A cylindrical bucket, open at the top, is 26.0 cm high and 14.0 cm in diameter. A circular hole with a cross-sectional area 1.95 cm^2 is cut in the center of the bottom of the bucket. Water flows into the bucket from a tube above it at the rate of 2.27×10^{-4} m^3/s. How high will the water in the bucket rise?

12.81 • Water flows steadily from an open tank as in **Fig. P12.81.** The elevation of point 1 is 10.0 m, and the elevation of points 2 and 3 is 2.00 m. The cross-sectional area at point 2 is 0.0480 m^2; at point 3 it is 0.0160 m^2. The area of the tank is very large compared with the cross-sectional area of the pipe. Assuming that Bernoulli's equation applies, compute (a) the discharge rate in cubic meters per second and (b) the gauge pressure at point 2.

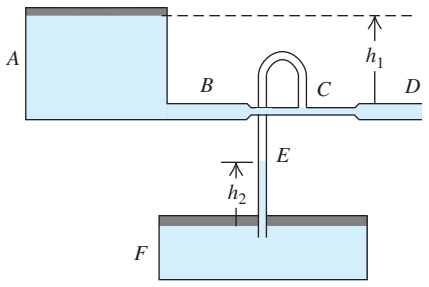
Figure **P12.81**



12.82 •• **CP** In 2011 the radius of Cyclone Yasi was about 300 km. The wind speed near the center ("eye") of the cyclone, whose radius was about 50 km, reached about 285 km/h. As air swirled in from the rim of the cyclone toward the eye, its angular momentum remained roughly constant. Estimate (a) the wind speed at the rim of the cyclone; (b) the pressure difference at the earth's surface between the eye and the rim. (*Hint:* See Table 12.1.) Where is the pressure greater? (c) If the kinetic energy of the swirling air in the eye could be converted completely to gravitational potential energy, how high would the air go? (d) In fact, the air in the eye is lifted to heights of several kilometers. How can you reconcile this with your answer to part (c)?

12.83 •• Two very large open tanks A and F (**Fig. P12.83**) contain the same liquid. A horizontal pipe BCD, having a constriction at C and open to the air at D, leads out of the bottom of tank A, and a vertical pipe E opens into the constriction at C and dips into the liquid in tank F. Assume streamline flow and no viscosity. If the cross-sectional area at C is one-half the area at D and if D is a distance h_1 below the level of the liquid in A, to what height h_2 will liquid rise in pipe E? Express your answer in terms of h_1.

Figure **P12.83**

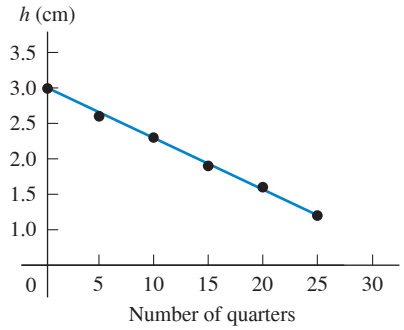


12.84 • A liquid flowing from a vertical pipe has a definite shape as it flows from the pipe. To get the equation for this shape, assume that the liquid is in free fall once it leaves the pipe. Just as it leaves the pipe, the liquid has speed v_0 and the radius of the stream of liquid is r_0. (a) Find an equation for the speed of the liquid as a function of the distance y it has fallen. Combining this with the equation of continuity, find an expression for the radius of the stream as a function of y. (b) If water flows out of a vertical pipe at a speed of 1.20 m/s, how far below the outlet will the radius be one-half the original radius of the stream?

12.85 •• **DATA** The density values in Table 12.1 are listed in increasing order. A chemistry student notices that the first four chemical elements that are included are also listed in order of increasing atomic mass. (a) See whether there is a simple relationship between density and atomic mass by plotting a graph of density (in g/cm^3) versus atomic mass for all eight elements in that table. (See Appendix F for their atomic masses in grams per mole.) (b) Can you draw a straight line or simple curve through the points to find a "simple" relationship? (c) Explain why "More massive atoms result in more dense solids" does not tell the whole story.

12.86 •• **DATA** You have a bucket containing an unknown liquid. You also have a cube-shaped wooden block that you measure to be 8.0 cm on a side, but you don't know the mass or density of the block. To find the density of the liquid, you perform an experiment. First you place the wooden block in the liquid and measure the height of the top of the floating block above the liquid surface. Then you stack various numbers of U.S. quarter-dollar coins onto the block and measure the new value of h. The straight line that gives the best fit to the data you have collected is shown in **Fig. P12.86.** Find the mass of one quarter (see www.usmint.gov for quarters dated 2012). Use this information and the slope and intercept of the straight-line fit to your data to calculate (a) the density of the liquid (in kg/m^3) and (b) the mass of the block (in kg).

Figure **P12.86**



12.87 ••• **DATA** The Environmental Protection Agency is investigating an abandoned chemical plant. A large, closed cylindrical tank contains an unknown liquid. You must determine the liquid's density and the height of the liquid in the tank (the vertical distance from the surface of the liquid to the bottom of the tank). To maintain various values of the gauge pressure in the air that is above the liquid in the tank, you can use compressed air. You make a small hole at the bottom of the side of the tank, which is on a concrete platform—so the hole is 50.0 cm above the ground. The table gives your measurements of the horizontal distance R that the initially horizontal stream of liquid pouring out of the tank travels before it strikes the ground and the gauge pressure p_g of the air in the tank.

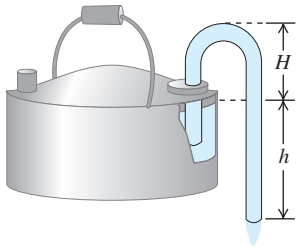
p_g (atm)	0.50	1.00	2.00	3.00	4.00
R (m)	5.4	6.5	8.2	9.7	10.9

(a) Graph R^2 as a function of p_g. Explain why the data points fall close to a straight line. Find the slope and intercept of that line. (b) Use the slope and intercept found in part (a) to calculate the height h (in meters) of the liquid in the tank and the density of the liquid (in kg/m^3). Use $g = 9.80$ m/s^2. Assume that the liquid is nonviscous and that the hole is small enough compared to the tank's diameter so that the change in h during the measurements is very small.

CHALLENGE PROBLEM

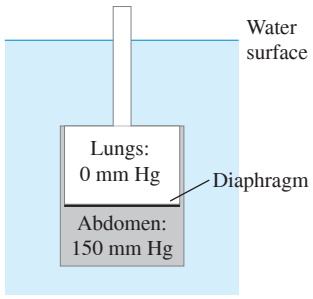
12.88 ••• A *siphon* (**Fig. P12.88**) is a convenient device for removing liquids from containers. To establish the flow, the tube must be initially filled with fluid. Let the fluid have density ρ, and let the atmospheric pressure be p_{atm}. Assume that the cross-sectional area of the tube is the same at all points along it. (a) If the lower end of the siphon is at a distance h below the surface of the liquid in the container, what is the speed of the fluid as it flows out the lower end of the siphon? (Assume that the container has a very large diameter, and ignore any effects of viscosity.) (b) A curious feature of a siphon is that the fluid initially flows "uphill." What is the greatest height H that the high point of the tube can have if flow is still to occur?

Figure **P12.88**



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO Elephants Under Pressure. An elephant can swim or walk with its chest several meters underwater while the animal breathes through its trunk, which remains above the water surface and acts like a snorkel. The elephant's tissues are at an increased pressure due to the surrounding water, but the lungs are at atmospheric pressure because they are connected to the air through the trunk. The figure shows the gauge pressures in an elephant's lungs and abdomen when the elephant's chest is submerged to a particular depth in a lake. In this situation, the elephant's diaphragm, which separates the lungs from the abdomen, must sustain the difference in pressure between the lungs and the abdomen. The diaphragm of an elephant is typically 3.0 cm thick and 120 cm in diameter. (See "Why Doesn't the Elephant Have a Pleural Space?" by John B. West, *Physiology*, Vol. 17:47–50, April 1, 2002.)



12.89 For the situation shown, the tissues in the elephant's abdomen are at a gauge pressure of 150 mm Hg. This pressure corresponds to what distance below the surface of a lake? (a) 1.5 m; (b) 2.0 m; (c) 3.0 m; (d) 15 m.

12.90 The maximum force the muscles of the diaphragm can exert is 24,000 N. What maximum pressure difference can the diaphragm withstand? (a) 160 mm Hg; (b) 760 mm Hg; (c) 920 mm Hg; (d) 5000 mm Hg.

12.91 How does the force the diaphragm experiences due to the difference in pressure between the lungs and abdomen depend on the abdomen's distance below the water surface? The force (a) increases linearly with distance; (b) increases as distance squared; (c) increases as distance cubed; (d) increases exponentially with distance.

12.92 If the elephant were to snorkel in salt water, which is more dense than freshwater, would the maximum depth at which it could snorkel be different from that in freshwater? (a) Yes—that depth would increase, because the pressure would be lower at a given depth in salt water than in freshwater; (b) yes—that depth would decrease, because the pressure would be higher at a given depth in salt water than in freshwater; (c) no, because pressure differences within the submerged elephant depend on only the density of air, not the density of the water; (d) no, because the buoyant force on the elephant would be the same in both cases.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(v) The ratio of mass to volume is density. The flesh of both the wrasse and the ray is denser than seawater, but a wrasse has a gas-filled body cavity called a swimbladder. Hence the *average* density of the wrasse's body is the same as that of seawater, and the fish neither sinks nor rises. Rays have no such cavity, so they must swim continuously to avoid sinking: Their fins provide lift, much like the wings of a bird or airplane (see Section 12.5).

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

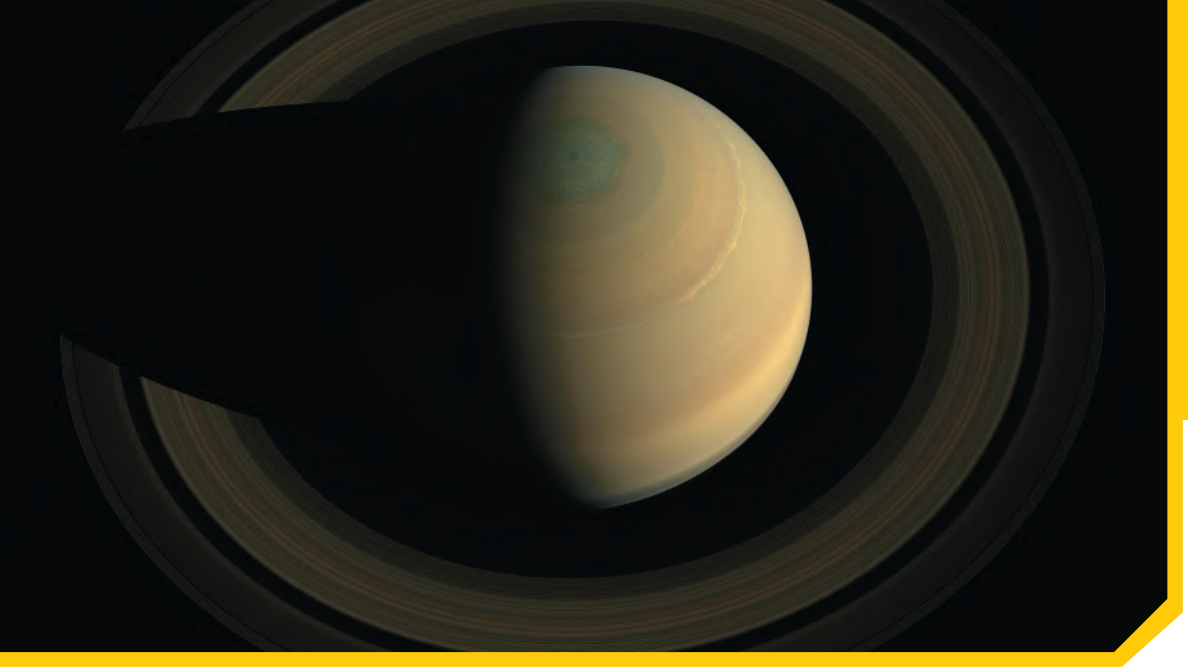
VP12.4.1 1.31×10^5 Pa
VP12.4.2 (a) 1.09×10^3 Pa (b) 2.56×10^3 Pa
VP12.4.3 81.8 cm
VP12.4.4 (a) 22.9 cm (b) 1.47×10^3 Pa (c) 16.4 cm
VP12.5.1 (a) 8.45 N (b) (i) 8.82×10^{-3} N, sink; (ii) 7.35 N, sink; (iii) 9.26 N, rise
VP12.5.2 (a) 11.8 N (b) 41.2 N (c) 3.50×10^3 kg/m^3
VP12.5.3 1.1×10^3 kg/m^3
VP12.5.4 (a) $B = \rho_L A d g$ (b) $\rho_{\text{cylinder}} = \rho_L (d/L)$
VP12.9.1 (a) 6.4 m/s (b) 3.7×10^5 Pa
VP12.9.2 (a) 14 m/s (b) 5.4×10^4 Pa
VP12.9.3 (a) 8.3 cm (b) 5.9×10^{-4} m^3/s
VP12.9.4 $v_2 = \sqrt{\left[2\left(\frac{p_0 - p_{\text{atm}}}{\rho}\right) + 2gh\right] \Big/ \left[1 - \left(\frac{A_2}{A_1}\right)^2\right]}$

Bridging Problem

(a) $y = H - \left(\frac{d}{D}\right)^2 \sqrt{2gH}\, t + \left(\frac{d}{D}\right)^4 \frac{gt^2}{2}$

(b) $T = \sqrt{\frac{2H}{g}} \left(\frac{D}{d}\right)^2$

(c) $\sqrt{2}$



? The rings of Saturn are made of countless individual orbiting particles. Compared with a ring particle that orbits far from Saturn, does a ring particle close to Saturn orbit with (i) the same speed and greater acceleration; (ii) a faster speed and the same acceleration; (iii) a slower speed and the same acceleration; (iv) a faster speed and greater acceleration; or (v) none of these?

13 Gravitation

Some of the earliest investigations in physical science started with questions that people asked about the night sky. Why doesn't the moon fall to earth? Why do the planets move across the sky? Why doesn't the earth fly off into space rather than remaining in orbit around the sun? The study of gravitation provides the answers to these and many related questions.

As we remarked in Chapter 5, gravitation is one of the four classes of interactions found in nature, and it was the earliest of the four to be studied extensively. Newton discovered in the 17th century that the same interaction that makes an apple fall out of a tree also keeps the planets in their orbits around the sun. This was the beginning of *celestial mechanics,* the study of the dynamics of objects in space. Today, our knowledge of celestial mechanics allows us to determine how to put a satellite into any desired orbit around the earth or to choose just the right trajectory to send a spacecraft to another planet.

In this chapter you'll learn the basic law that governs gravitational interactions. This law is *universal:* Gravity acts in the same fundamental way between the earth and your body, between the sun and a planet, and between a planet and one of its moons. We'll apply the law of gravitation to phenomena such as the variation of weight with altitude, the orbits of satellites around the earth, and the orbits of planets around the sun.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **13.1** How to calculate the gravitational forces that any two objects exert on each other.
- **13.2** How to relate the weight of an object to the general expression for gravitational force.
- **13.3** How to use and interpret the generalized expression for gravitational potential energy.
- **13.4** How to calculate the speed, orbital period, and total mechanical energy of a satellite in a circular orbit.
- **13.5** How to apply and interpret the three laws that describe the motion of planets.
- **13.6** Why the gravitational force exerted by a spherically symmetric planet is the same as if all of the planet's mass were concentrated at its center.
- **13.7** How the earth's rotation affects the apparent weight of an object at different latitudes.
- **13.8** What black holes are, how to calculate their properties, and how astronomers discover them.

You'll need to review...

- **3.3** Projectile motion.
- **4.4** Weight.
- **5.2** Apparent weightlessness.
- **5.4** Force and acceleration in uniform circular motion.
- **5.5** The fundamental forces of nature.
- **7.1** Gravitational potential energy and total mechanical energy conservation.
- **7.4** Force and potential energy.

13.1 NEWTON'S LAW OF GRAVITATION

The gravitational attraction that's most familiar to you is your *weight,* the force that attracts you toward the earth. By studying the motions of the moon and planets, Newton discovered a fundamental **law of gravitation** that describes the gravitational attraction between *any* two objects. Newton published this law in 1687 along with his three laws of motion. In modern language, it says

NEWTON'S LAW OF GRAVITATION **Every particle of matter in the universe attracts every other particle with a force that is directly proportional to the product of the masses of the particles and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them.**

Figure 13.1 The gravitational forces that two particles of masses m_1 and m_2 exert on each other.

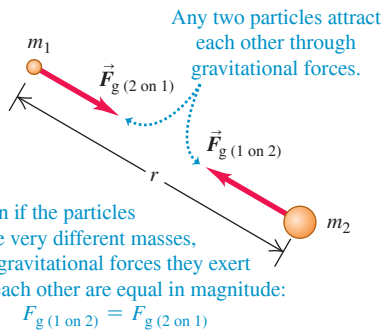


Figure 13.1 depicts this law, which we can express as an equation:

Newton's **law of gravitation:** Magnitude of attractive gravitational force between any two particles

$$F_g = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2} \qquad (13.1)$$

Gravitational constant (same for any two particles); Masses of particles; Distance between particles

The **gravitational constant** G in Eq. (13.1) is a fundamental physical constant that has the same value for *any* two particles. We'll see shortly what the value of G is and how this value is measured.

Equation (13.1) tells us that the gravitational force between two particles decreases with increasing distance r: If the distance is doubled, the force is only one-fourth as great, and so on. Although many of the stars in the night sky are far more massive than the sun, they are so far away that their gravitational force on the earth is negligibly small.

CAUTION **Don't confuse *g* and *G*** The symbols g and G are similar, but they represent two very different gravitational quantities. Lowercase g is the acceleration due to gravity, which relates the weight w of an object to its mass m: $w = mg$. The value of g is different at different locations on the earth's surface and on the surfaces of other planets. By contrast, capital G relates the gravitational force between any two objects to their masses and the distance between them. We call G a *universal* constant because it has the same value for any two objects, no matter where in space they are located. We'll soon see how the values of g and G are related.

Gravitational forces always act along the line joining the two particles and form an action–reaction pair. Even when the masses of the particles are different, the two interaction forces have equal magnitude (Fig. 13.1). The attractive force that your body exerts on the earth has the same magnitude as the force that the earth exerts on you. When you fall from a diving board into a swimming pool, the entire earth rises up to meet you! (You don't notice this because the earth's mass is greater than yours by a factor of about 10^{23}. Hence the earth's acceleration is only 10^{-23} as great as yours.)

Gravitation and Spherically Symmetric Objects

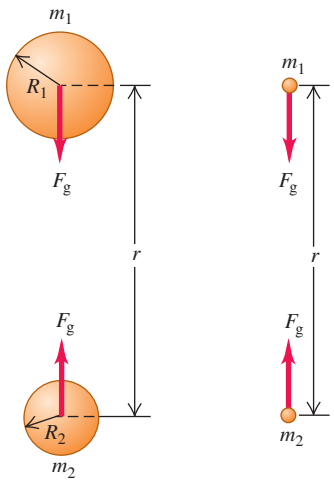
We have stated the law of gravitation in terms of the interaction between two *particles*. It turns out that the gravitational interaction of any two objects that have *spherically symmetric* mass distributions (such as solid spheres or spherical shells) is the same as though we concentrated all the mass of each at its center, as in **Fig. 13.2**. Thus, if we model the earth as a spherically symmetric object with mass m_E, the force it exerts on a particle or on a spherically symmetric object with mass m, at a distance r between centers, is

$$F_g = \frac{Gm_Em}{r^2} \qquad (13.2)$$

Figure 13.2 The gravitational effect *outside* any spherically symmetric mass distribution is the same as though all of the mass were concentrated at its center.

(a) The gravitational force between two spherically symmetric masses m_1 and m_2 ...

(b) ... is the same as if we concentrated all the mass of each sphere at the sphere's center.



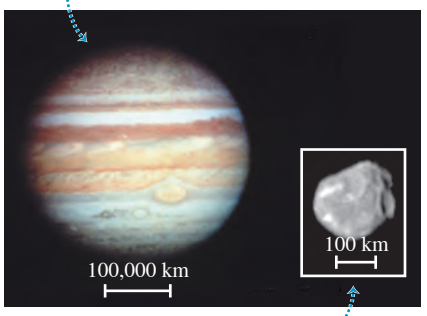
provided that the object lies outside the earth. A force of the same magnitude is exerted *on* the earth by the object. (We'll prove these statements in Section 13.6.)

At points *inside* the earth the situation is different. If we could drill a hole to the center of the earth and measure the gravitational force on an object at various depths, we would find that toward the center of the earth the force *decreases,* rather than increasing as $1/r^2$. As the object enters the interior of the earth (or other spherical object), some of the earth's mass is on the side of the object opposite from the center and pulls in the opposite direction. Exactly at the center, the earth's gravitational force on the object is zero.

Spherically symmetric objects are an important case because moons, planets, and stars all tend to be spherical. Since all particles in an object gravitationally attract each other, the particles tend to move to minimize the distance between them. As a result, the object naturally tends to assume a spherical shape, just as a lump of clay forms into a sphere if

you squeeze it with equal forces on all sides. This effect is greatly reduced in celestial objects of low mass, since the gravitational attraction is less, and these objects tend *not* to be spherical (**Fig. 13.3**).

Figure **13.3** Spherical and nonspherical objects: the planet Jupiter and one of Jupiter's small moons, Amalthea.



Determining the Value of *G*

To determine the value of the gravitational constant G, we have to *measure* the gravitational force between two objects of known masses m_1 and m_2 at a known distance r. The force is extremely small for objects that are small enough to be brought into the laboratory, but it can be measured with an instrument called a *torsion balance,* which Sir Henry Cavendish used in 1798 to determine G.

Figure 13.4 shows a modern version of the Cavendish torsion balance. A light, rigid rod shaped like an inverted T is supported by a very thin, vertical quartz fiber. Two small spheres, each of mass m_1, are mounted at the ends of the horizontal arms of the T. When we bring two large spheres, each of mass m_2, to the positions shown, the attractive gravitational forces twist the T through a small angle. To measure this angle, we shine a beam of light on a mirror fastened to the T. The reflected beam strikes a scale, and as the T twists, the reflected beam moves along the scale.

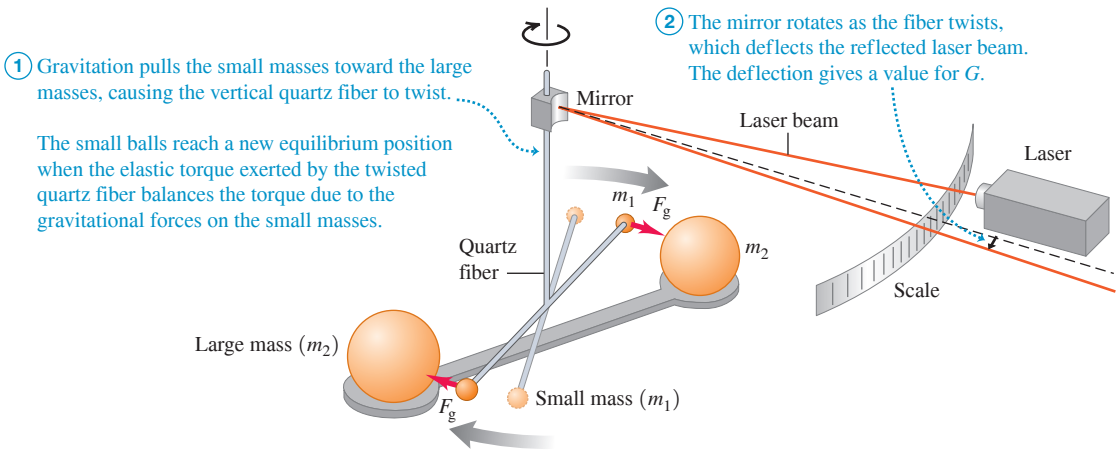
After calibrating the Cavendish balance, we can measure gravitational forces and thus determine G. The accepted value as of this writing (2018) is

$$G = 6.67408(31) \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}$$

To three significant figures, $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}$. Because $1\ \mathrm{N} = 1\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s^2}$, the units of G can also be expressed as $\mathrm{m^3/(kg \cdot s^2)}$.

Gravitational forces combine vectorially. If each of two masses exerts a force on a third, the *total* force on the third mass is the vector sum of the individual forces of the first two. Example 13.3 makes use of this property, which is often called *superposition of forces* (see Section 4.1).

Figure **13.4** The principle of the Cavendish balance, used for determining the value of G. The angle of deflection has been exaggerated here for clarity.



EXAMPLE 13.1 Calculating gravitational force

The mass m_1 of one of the small spheres of a Cavendish balance is 0.0100 kg, the mass m_2 of the nearest large sphere is 0.500 kg, and the center-to-center distance between them is 0.0500 m. Find the gravitational force F_g on each sphere due to the other.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE Because the spheres are spherically symmetric, we can calculate F_g by treating them as *particles* separated by 0.0500 m, as in Fig. 13.2. Each sphere experiences the same magnitude of force from the other sphere. We use Newton's law of gravitation, Eq. (13.1), to determine F_g:

$$F_g = \frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2})(0.0100\ \mathrm{kg})(0.500\ \mathrm{kg})}{(0.0500\ \mathrm{m})^2}$$

$$= 1.33 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{N}$$

Continued

EVALUATE It's remarkable that such a small force could be measured—or even detected—more than 200 years ago. Only a very massive object such as the earth exerts a gravitational force we can feel.

CAUTION **Newton's third law applies to gravitational forces, too** Even though the large sphere in this example has 50 times the mass of the small sphere, each sphere feels the *same* magnitude of force from the other. But because their masses are different, the accelerations of the two objects in response to that magnitude of force are different (see the following example).

KEYCONCEPT Any two objects exert attractive gravitational forces on each other that are proportional to the product of the masses of the two objects and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between their centers (Newton's law of gravitation).

EXAMPLE 13.2 Acceleration due to gravitational attraction

Suppose the two spheres in Example 13.1 are placed with their centers 0.0500 m apart at a point in space far removed from all other objects. What is the magnitude of the acceleration of each, relative to an inertial system?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE Each sphere exerts on the other a gravitational force of the same magnitude F_g, which we found in Example 13.1. We can ignore any other forces. The *acceleration* magnitudes a_1 and a_2 are different because the masses are different. To determine these we'll use Newton's second law:

$$a_1 = \frac{F_g}{m_1} = \frac{1.33 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{N}}{0.0100\ \text{kg}} = 1.33 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m/s}^2$$

$$a_2 = \frac{F_g}{m_2} = \frac{1.33 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{N}}{0.500\ \text{kg}} = 2.66 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE The larger sphere has 50 times the mass of the smaller one and hence has $\frac{1}{50}$ the acceleration. These accelerations are *not* constant; the gravitational forces increase as the spheres move toward each other.

KEYCONCEPT The gravitational forces that two objects exert on each other are always equal in magnitude. The accelerations caused by these forces, however, will be different in magnitude for the two objects if they have different masses.

EXAMPLE 13.3 Superposition of gravitational forces

Many stars belong to *systems* of two or more stars held together by their mutual gravitational attraction. **Figure 13.5** shows a three-star system at an instant when the stars are at the vertices of a 45° right triangle. Find the total gravitational force exerted on the small star by the two large ones.

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE We use the principle of superposition: The total force $\vec{F}$ on the small star is the vector sum of the forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ due to each large star, as Fig. 13.5 shows. We assume that the stars are spheres as in Fig. 13.2. We first calculate the magnitudes F_1 and F_2 from Eq. (13.1) and then compute the vector sum by using components:

$$F_1 = \frac{\left[\begin{array}{c}(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2) \\ \times\ (8.00 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg})(1.00 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg})\end{array}\right]}{(2.00 \times 10^{12}\ \text{m})^2 + (2.00 \times 10^{12}\ \text{m})^2} = 6.67 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N}$$

$$F_2 = \frac{\left[\begin{array}{c}(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2) \\ \times\ (8.00 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg})(1.00 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg})\end{array}\right]}{(2.00 \times 10^{12}\ \text{m})^2} = 1.33 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N}$$

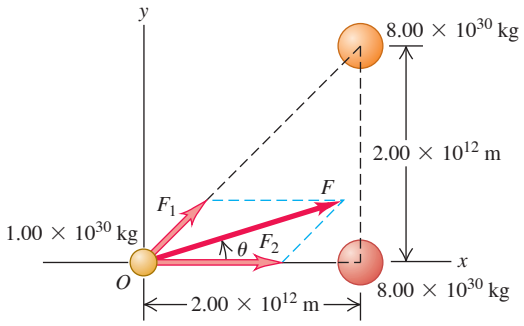
The x- and y-components of these forces are

$$F_{1x} = (6.67 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N})(\cos 45°) = 4.72 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N}$$
$$F_{1y} = (6.67 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N})(\sin 45°) = 4.72 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N}$$
$$F_{2x} = 1.33 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N}$$
$$F_{2y} = 0$$

The components of the total force $\vec{F}$ on the small star are

$$F_x = F_{1x} + F_{2x} = 1.81 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N}$$
$$F_y = F_{1y} + F_{2y} = 4.72 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N}$$

Figure 13.5 The total gravitational force on the small star (at O) is the vector sum of the forces exerted on it by the two larger stars. (For comparison, the mass of the sun—a rather ordinary star—is 1.99×10^{30} kg and the earth–sun distance is 1.50×10^{11} m.)



The magnitude of $\vec{F}$ and its angle θ (see Fig. 13.5) are

$$F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2} = \sqrt{(1.81 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N})^2 + (4.72 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N})^2}$$
$$= 1.87 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N}$$
$$\theta = \arctan\frac{F_y}{F_x} = \arctan\frac{4.72 \times 10^{25}\ \text{N}}{1.81 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N}} = 14.6°$$

EVALUATE While the force magnitude F is tremendous, the magnitude of the resulting acceleration is not: $a = F/m = (1.87 \times 10^{26}\ \text{N})/(1.00 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg}) = 1.87 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m/s}^2$. Furthermore, the force $\vec{F}$ is *not* directed toward the center of mass of the two large stars.

KEYCONCEPT When there are two objects that exert gravitational forces on a third object, use vector addition to find the magnitude and direction of the net gravitational force on the third object.

Why Gravitational Forces Are Important

Comparing Examples 13.1 and 13.3 shows that gravitational forces are negligible between ordinary household-sized objects but very substantial between objects that are the size of stars. Indeed, gravitation is *the* most important force on the scale of planets, stars, and galaxies (**Fig. 13.6**). It is responsible for holding our earth together and for keeping the planets in orbit about the sun. The mutual gravitational attraction between different parts of the sun compresses material at the sun's core to very high densities and temperatures, making it possible for nuclear reactions to take place there. These reactions generate the sun's energy output, which makes it possible for life to exist on earth and for you to read these words.

The gravitational force is so important on the cosmic scale because it acts *at a distance,* without any direct contact between objects. Electric and magnetic forces have this same remarkable property, but they are less important on astronomical scales because large accumulations of matter are electrically neutral; that is, they contain equal amounts of positive and negative charge. As a result, the electric and magnetic forces between stars or planets are very small or zero. The strong and weak interactions that we discussed in Section 5.5 also act at a distance, but their influence is negligible at distances much greater than the diameter of an atomic nucleus (about 10^{-14} m).

A useful way to describe forces that act at a distance is in terms of a *field*. One object sets up a disturbance or field at all points in space, and the force that acts on a second object at a particular point is its response to the first object's field at that point. There is a field associated with each force that acts at a distance, and so we refer to gravitational fields, electric fields, magnetic fields, and so on. We won't need the field concept for our study of gravitation in this chapter, so we won't discuss it further here. But in later chapters we'll find that the field concept is an extraordinarily powerful tool for describing electric and magnetic interactions.

Figure **13.6** Our solar system is part of a spiral galaxy like this one, which contains roughly 10^{11} stars as well as gas, dust, and other matter. The entire assemblage is held together by the mutual gravitational attraction of all the matter in the galaxy.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.1 The planet Saturn has about 100 times the mass of the earth and is about 10 times farther from the sun than the earth is. Compared to the acceleration of the earth caused by the sun's gravitational pull, how great is the acceleration of Saturn due to the sun's gravitation? (i) 100 times greater; (ii) 10 times greater; (iii) the same; (iv) $\frac{1}{10}$ as great; (v) $\frac{1}{100}$ as great.

ANSWER (v) From Eq. (13.1), the gravitational force of the sun (mass m_1) on a planet (mass m_2) a distance r away has magnitude $F_g = Gm_1m_2/r^2$. Compared to the earth, Saturn has a value of r^2 that is $10^2 = 100$ times greater and a value of m_2 that is also 100 times greater. Hence the *force* that the sun exerts on Saturn has the same magnitude as the force that the sun exerts on earth. The *acceleration* of a planet equals the net force divided by the planet's mass: Since Saturn has 100 times more mass than the earth, its acceleration is $\frac{1}{100}$ as great as that of the earth.

13.2 WEIGHT

We defined the *weight* of an object in Section 4.4 as the attractive gravitational force exerted on it by the earth. We can now broaden our definition and say that *the weight of an object is the total gravitational force exerted on the object by all other objects in the universe*. When the object is near the surface of the earth, we can ignore all other gravitational forces and consider the weight as just the earth's gravitational attraction. At the surface of the moon we consider an object's weight to be the gravitational attraction of the moon, and so on.

If we again model the earth as a spherically symmetric object with radius R_E, the weight of a small object at the earth's surface (a distance R_E from its center) is

Weight of an object at the earth's surface ... = ... equals gravitational force the earth exerts on object.

$$w = F_g = \frac{Gm_Em}{R_E^2} \tag{13.3}$$

Gravitational constant; Mass of the earth; Mass of object; Radius of the earth

APPLICATION Walking and Running on the Moon You automatically transition from a walk to a run when the vertical force you exert on the ground—which, by Newton's third law, equals the vertical force the ground exerts on you—exceeds your weight. This transition from walking to running happens at much lower speeds on the moon, where objects weigh only 17% as much as on earth. Hence, the Apollo astronauts found themselves running even when moving relatively slowly during their moon "walks."

But we also know from Section 4.4 that the weight w of an object is the force that causes the acceleration g of free fall, so by Newton's second law, $w = mg$. Equating this with Eq. (13.3) and dividing by m, we find

Acceleration due to gravity at the earth's surface: $g = \dfrac{Gm_E}{R_E^2}$ (13.4)

(G: Gravitational constant; m_E: Mass of the earth; R_E: Radius of the earth)

The acceleration due to gravity g is independent of the mass m of the object because m doesn't appear in this equation. We already knew that, but we can now see how it follows from the law of gravitation.

We can *measure* all the quantities in Eq. (13.4) except for m_E, so this relationship allows us to compute the mass of the earth. Solving Eq. (13.4) for m_E and using $R_E = 6370\text{ km} = 6.37 \times 10^6\text{ m}$ and $g = 9.80\text{ m/s}^2$, we find

$$m_E = \frac{gR_E^2}{G} = 5.96 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg}$$

This is very close to the currently accepted value of 5.972×10^{24} kg. Once Cavendish had measured G, he computed the mass of the earth in just this way.

At a point above the earth's surface a distance r from the center of the earth (a distance $r - R_E$ above the surface), the weight of an object is given by Eq. (13.3) with R_E replaced by r:

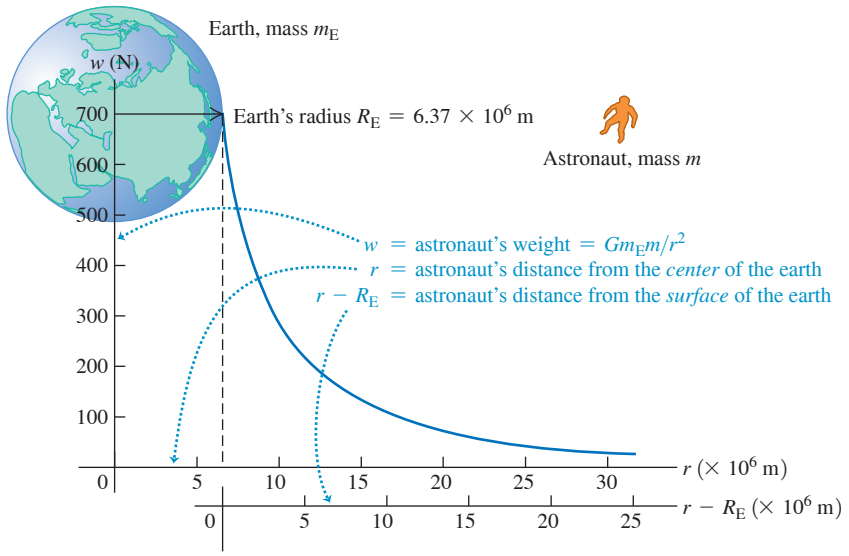
$$w = F_g = \frac{Gm_E m}{r^2} \tag{13.5}$$

The weight of an object decreases inversely with the square of its distance from the earth's center (**Fig. 13.7**). **Figure 13.8** shows how the weight varies with height above the earth for an astronaut who weighs 700 N at the earth's surface.

The *apparent* weight of an object on earth differs slightly from the earth's gravitational force because the earth rotates and is therefore not precisely an inertial frame of reference. We've ignored this relatively small effect in our discussion but will consider it carefully in Section 13.7.

Figure **13.7** In an airliner at high altitude, you are farther from the center of the earth than when on the ground and hence weigh slightly less. Can you show that at an altitude of 10 km above the surface, you weigh 0.3% less than you do on the ground?

Figure **13.8** An astronaut who weighs 700 N at the earth's surface experiences less gravitational attraction when above the surface. The relevant distance r is from the astronaut to the *center* of the earth (*not* from the astronaut to the earth's surface).



While the earth is an approximately spherically symmetric distribution of mass, it is *not* uniform throughout its volume. To demonstrate this, let's first calculate the average *density,* or mass per unit volume, of the earth. If we assume a spherical earth, the volume is

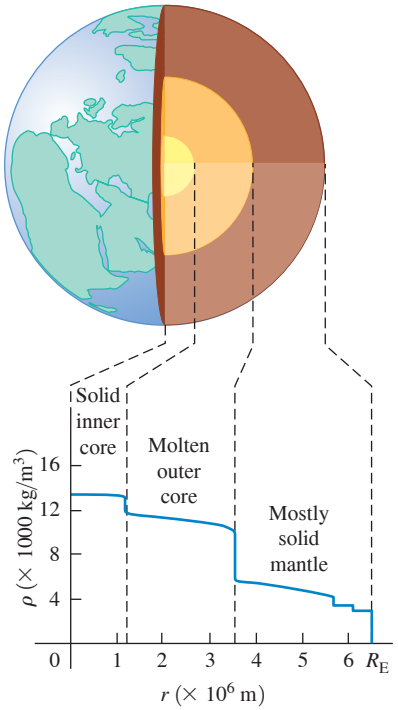
$$V_E = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi R_E^3 = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi(6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m})^3$$
$$= 1.08 \times 10^{21}\ \text{m}^3$$

The average density ρ (the Greek letter rho) of the earth is the total mass divided by the total volume:

$$\rho = \frac{m_E}{V_E} = \frac{5.97 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg}}{1.08 \times 10^{21}\ \text{m}^3}$$
$$= 5500\ \text{kg/m}^3 = 5.5\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

(Compare to the density of water, $1000\ \text{kg/m}^3 = 1.00\ \text{g/cm}^3$.) If the earth were uniform, rocks near the earth's surface would have this same density. In fact, the density of surface rocks is substantially lower, ranging from about $2000\ \text{kg/m}^3$ for sedimentary rocks to about $3300\ \text{kg/m}^3$ for basalt. So the earth *cannot* be uniform, and its interior must be much more dense than its surface in order that the *average* density be $5500\ \text{kg/m}^3$. According to geophysical models of the earth's interior, the maximum density at the center is about $13{,}000\ \text{kg/m}^3$. **Figure 13.9** is a graph of density as a function of distance from the center.

Figure **13.9** The density ρ of the earth decreases with increasing distance r from its center.



EXAMPLE 13.4 Gravity on Mars

A robotic lander with an earth weight of 3430 N is sent to Mars, which has radius $R_M = 3.39 \times 10^6$ m and mass $m_M = 6.42 \times 10^{23}$ kg. Find the weight F_g of the lander on the Martian surface and the acceleration there due to gravity, g_M.

IDENTIFY and SET UP To find F_g we use Eq. (13.3), replacing m_E and R_E with m_M and R_M. We determine the lander mass m from the lander's earth weight w and then find g_M from $F_g = mg_M$.

EXECUTE The lander's earth weight is $w = mg$, so

$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{3430\ \text{N}}{9.80\ \text{m/s}^2} = 350\ \text{kg}$$

The mass is the same no matter where the lander is. From Eq. (13.3), the lander's weight on Mars is

$$F_g = \frac{Gm_M m}{R_M^2}$$
$$= \frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(6.42 \times 10^{23}\ \text{kg})(350\ \text{kg})}{(3.39 \times 10^6\ \text{m})^2}$$
$$= 1.30 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$$

The acceleration due to gravity on Mars is

$$g_M = \frac{F_g}{m} = \frac{1.30 \times 10^3\ \text{N}}{350\ \text{kg}} = 3.7\ \text{m/s}^2$$

EVALUATE Even though Mars has just 11% of the earth's mass (6.42×10^{23} kg versus 5.97×10^{24} kg), the acceleration due to gravity g_M (and hence an object's weight F_g) is roughly 40% as large as on earth. That's because g_M is also inversely proportional to the square of the planet's radius, and Mars has only 53% the radius of earth (3.39×10^6 m versus 6.37×10^6 m).

You can check our result for g_M by using Eq. (13.4), with appropriate replacements. Do you get the same answer?

KEYCONCEPT An object's weight at the surface of a planet equals the gravitational force exerted on the object by that planet. The distance between the planet and the object equals the planet's radius. The acceleration due to gravity at a planet's surface is proportional to the planet's mass and inversely proportional to the square of its radius.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.2 Rank the following hypothetical planets in order from highest to lowest value of g at the surface. (Here m_P and R_P are the mass and radius of the planet, and m_E and R_E are the mass and radius of the earth.)

(i) $m_P = 2m_E$, $R_P = 2R_E$;
(ii) $m_P = 4m_E$, $R_P = 4R_E$;
(iii) $m_P = 4m_E$, $R_P = 2R_E$;
(iv) $m_P = 2m_E$, $R_P = 4R_E$.

ANSWER (iii) $4/2^2 = 1$ time as great—that is, the same as on earth; and (iv) $2/4^2 = \frac{1}{8}$ as great.

(iii), (i), (ii), (iv) From Eq. (13.4), the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of a planet of mass m_P and radius R_P is $g_P = Gm_P/R_P^2$. That is, g_P is directly proportional to the planet's mass and inversely proportional to the square of its radius. It follows that compared to the value of g at the earth's surface, the value of g_P on each planet is (i) $2/2^2 = \frac{1}{2}$ as great; (ii) $4/4^2 = \frac{1}{4}$ as great; (iii) $4/2^2 = 1$ time as great—that is, the same as on earth; and (iv) $2/4^2 = \frac{1}{8}$ as great.

13.3 GRAVITATIONAL POTENTIAL ENERGY

When we first introduced gravitational potential energy in Section 7.1, we assumed that the earth's gravitational force on an object of mass m doesn't depend on the object's height. This led to the expression $U = mgy$. But Eq. (13.2), $F_g = Gm_Em/r^2$, shows that the gravitational force exerted by the earth (mass m_E) *does* in general depend on the distance r from the object to the earth's center. For problems in which an object can be far from the earth's surface, we need a more general expression for gravitational potential energy.

To find this expression, we follow the same steps as in Section 7.1. We consider an object of mass m outside the earth, and first compute the work W_{grav} done by the gravitational force when the object moves directly away from or toward the center of the earth from $r = r_1$ to $r = r_2$, as in **Fig. 13.10**. This work is given by

$$W_{grav} = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} F_r\, dr \tag{13.6}$$

where F_r is the radial component of the gravitational force $\vec{F}$—that is, the component in the direction *outward* from the center of the earth. Because $\vec{F}$ points directly *inward* toward the center of the earth, F_r is negative. It differs from Eq. (13.2), the magnitude of the gravitational force, by a minus sign:

$$F_r = -\frac{Gm_Em}{r^2} \tag{13.7}$$

Substituting Eq. (13.7) into Eq. (13.6), we see that W_{grav} is given by

$$W_{grav} = -Gm_Em\int_{r_1}^{r_2}\frac{dr}{r^2} = \frac{Gm_Em}{r_2} - \frac{Gm_Em}{r_1} \tag{13.8}$$

The path doesn't have to be a straight line; it could also be a curve like the one in Fig. 13.10. By an argument similar to that in Section 7.1, this work depends on only the initial and final values of r, not on the path taken. This also proves that the gravitational force is always *conservative*.

We now define the corresponding potential energy U so that $W_{grav} = U_1 - U_2$, as in Eq. (7.3). Comparing this with Eq. (13.8), we see that the appropriate definition for **gravitational potential energy** is

Gravitational potential energy (general expression)

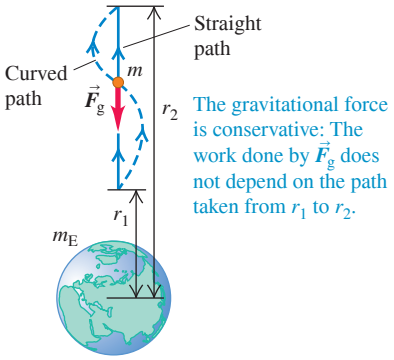
$$U = -\frac{Gm_Em}{r} \tag{13.9}$$

Gm_Em: Gravitational constant · Mass of the earth; m: Mass of object; r: Distance of object from the earth's center

Figure 13.11 shows how the gravitational potential energy depends on the distance r between the object of mass m and the center of the earth. When the object moves away from the earth, r increases, the gravitational force does negative work, and U increases (i.e., becomes less negative). When the object "falls" toward earth, r decreases, the gravitational work is positive, and the potential energy decreases (i.e., becomes more negative).

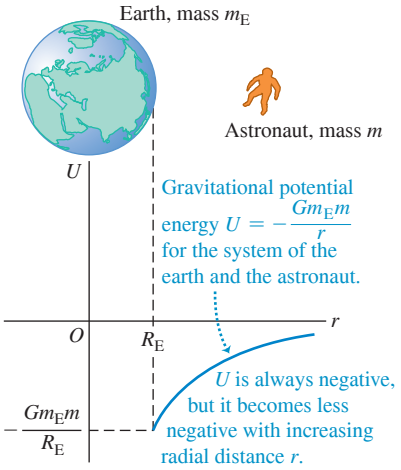
CAUTION Don't worry about gravitational potential energy being negative You may be troubled by Eq. (13.9) because it states that gravitational potential energy is always negative. But in fact you've seen negative values of U before. In using the formula $U = mgy$ in Section 7.1, we found that U was negative whenever the object of mass m was at a value of y below the arbitrary height we chose to be $y = 0$—that is, whenever the object and the earth were closer together than some

Figure **13.10** Calculating the work done on an object by the gravitational force as the object moves from radial coordinate r_1 to r_2.



CAUTION Gravitational force vs. gravitational potential energy Don't confuse the expressions for gravitational force, Eq. (13.7), and gravitational potential energy, Eq. (13.9). The force F_r is proportional to $1/r^2$, while potential energy U is proportional to $1/r$.

Figure **13.11** A graph of the gravitational potential energy U for the system of the earth (mass m_E) and an astronaut (mass m) versus the astronaut's distance r from the center of the earth.



arbitrary distance. (See, for instance, Example 7.2 in Section 7.1.) In defining U by Eq. (13.9), we have chosen U to be zero when the object of mass m is infinitely far from the earth ($r = \infty$). As the object moves toward the earth, gravitational potential energy decreases and so becomes negative.

If we wanted, we could make $U = 0$ at the earth's surface, where $r = R_E$, by adding the quantity Gm_Em/R_E to Eq. (13.9). This would make U positive when $r > R_E$. We won't do this for two reasons: One, it would complicate the expression for U; two, the added term would not affect the *difference* in potential energy between any two points, which is the only physically significant quantity.

If the earth's gravitational force on an object is the only force that does work, then the total mechanical energy of the system of the earth and object is constant, or *conserved.* In the following example we'll use this principle to calculate **escape speed,** the speed required for an object to escape completely from a planet.

EXAMPLE 13.5 "From the earth to the moon"

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

In Jules Verne's 1865 story with this title, three men went to the moon in a shell fired from a giant cannon sunk in the earth in Florida. (a) Find the minimum muzzle speed needed to shoot a shell straight up to a height above the earth equal to the earth's radius R_E. (b) Find the minimum muzzle speed that would allow a shell to escape from the earth completely (the *escape speed*). Neglect air resistance, the earth's rotation, and the gravitational pull of the moon. The earth's radius and mass are $R_E = 6.37 \times 10^6$ m and $m_E = 5.97 \times 10^{24}$ kg.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Once the shell leaves the cannon muzzle, only the (conservative) gravitational force does work. Hence we can use conservation of total mechanical energy to find the speed at which the shell must leave the muzzle so as to come to a halt (a) at two earth radii from the earth's center and (b) at an infinite distance from earth. The energy-conservation equation is $K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2$, with U given by Eq. (13.9).

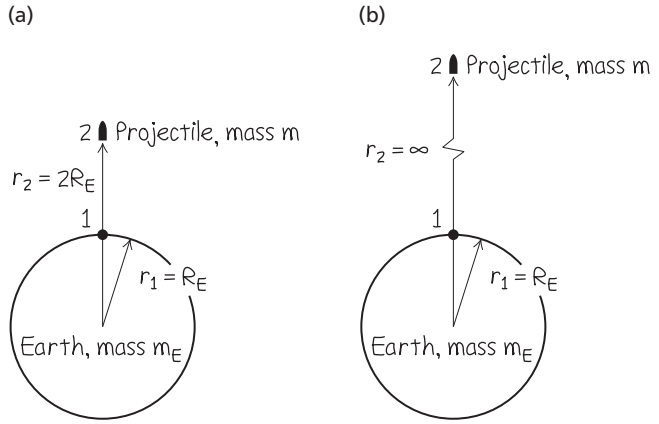
In **Fig. 13.12** point 1 is at $r_1 = R_E$, where the shell leaves the cannon with speed v_1 (the target variable). Point 2 is where the shell reaches its maximum height; in part (a) $r_2 = 2R_E$ (Fig. 13.12a), and in part (b) $r_2 = \infty$ (Fig 13.12b). In both cases $v_2 = 0$ and $K_2 = 0$. Let m be the mass of the shell (with passengers).

EXECUTE (a) We solve the energy-conservation equation for v_1:

$$K_1 + U_1 = K_2 + U_2$$

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 + \left(-\frac{Gm_Em}{R_E}\right) = 0 + \left(-\frac{Gm_Em}{2R_E}\right)$$

Figure 13.12 Our sketches for this problem.



$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{Gm_E}{R_E}} = \sqrt{\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg})}{6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m}}}$$

$$= 7910\ \text{m/s}\ (= 28{,}500\ \text{km/h})$$

(b) Now $r_2 = \infty$ so $U_2 = 0$ (see Fig. 13.11). Since $K_2 = 0$, the total mechanical energy $K_2 + U_2$ is zero in this case. Again we solve the energy-conservation equation for v_1:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 + \left(-\frac{Gm_Em}{R_E}\right) = 0 + 0$$

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2Gm_E}{R_E}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{2(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg})}{6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m}}}$$

$$= 1.12 \times 10^4\ \text{m/s}\ (= 40{,}200\ \text{km/h})$$

EVALUATE Our results don't depend on the mass of the shell or the direction of launch. A modern spacecraft launched from Florida must attain essentially the speed found in part (b) to escape the earth; however, before launch it's already moving at 410 m/s to the east because of the earth's rotation. Launching to the east takes advantage of this "free" contribution toward escape speed.

To generalize, the initial speed v_1 needed for an object to escape from the surface of a spherical object of mass M and radius R (ignoring air resistance) is $v_1 = \sqrt{2GM/R}$ (escape speed). This equation yields 5.03×10^3 m/s for Mars, 6.02×10^4 m/s for Jupiter, and 6.18×10^5 m/s for the sun.

If the initial speed is greater than the speed $v_1 = \sqrt{GM_E/R_E}$ that we found in part (a), the shell will still be moving when it gets to $r_2 = 2R_E$. In the same way, if the initial speed is greater than the escape speed $v_1 = \sqrt{2GM_E/R_E}$ that we found in part (b), the shell will still be moving even when it is very far from the earth (at $r_2 = \infty$).

KEYCONCEPT When an object moves far away from a planet's surface, use Eq. (13.11) for the gravitational potential energy. The potential energy for the system of planet and object increases as the object moves farther away; it reaches its maximum value of zero when the object is infinitely far away.

More on Gravitational Potential Energy

As a final note, let's show that when we are close to the earth's surface, Eq. (13.9) reduces to the familiar $U = mgy$ from Chapter 7. We first rewrite Eq. (13.8) as

$$W_{\text{grav}} = Gm_{\text{E}}m\frac{r_1 - r_2}{r_1 r_2}$$

If the object stays close to the earth, then in the denominator we may replace r_1 and r_2 by R_{E}, the earth's radius, so

$$W_{\text{grav}} = Gm_{\text{E}}m\frac{r_1 - r_2}{R_{\text{E}}^2}$$

According to Eq. (13.4), $g = Gm_{\text{E}}/R_{\text{E}}^2$, so

$$W_{\text{grav}} = mg(r_1 - r_2)$$

If we replace the r's by y's, this is just Eq. (7.1) for the work done by a constant gravitational force. In Section 7.1 we used this equation to derive Eq. (7.2), $U = mgy$, so we may consider Eq. (7.2) for gravitational potential energy to be a special case of the more general Eq. (13.9).

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.3 If a planet has the same surface gravity as the earth (that is, the same value of g at the surface), what is its escape speed? (i) The same as the earth's; (ii) less than the earth's; (iii) greater than the earth's; (iv) any of these are possible.

ANSWER (iv) For a planet of mass m_{P} and radius R_{P}, the surface gravity is $g = Gm_{\text{P}}/R_{\text{P}}^2$ while the escape speed is $v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{2Gm_{\text{P}}/R_{\text{P}}}$. Comparing these two expressions, you get $v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{2gR_{\text{P}}}$. So even if a planet has the same value of g as the earth, its escape speed can be different, depending on how its radius R_{P} compares with the earth's radius. For the planet Saturn, for example, m_{P} is about 100 times the earth's mass and R_{P} is about 10 times the earth's radius. The value of g is different than on earth by a factor of $(100)/(10)^2 = 1$ (i.e., it is the same as on earth), while the escape speed is greater by a factor of $\sqrt{100/10} = 3.2$.

13.4 THE MOTION OF SATELLITES

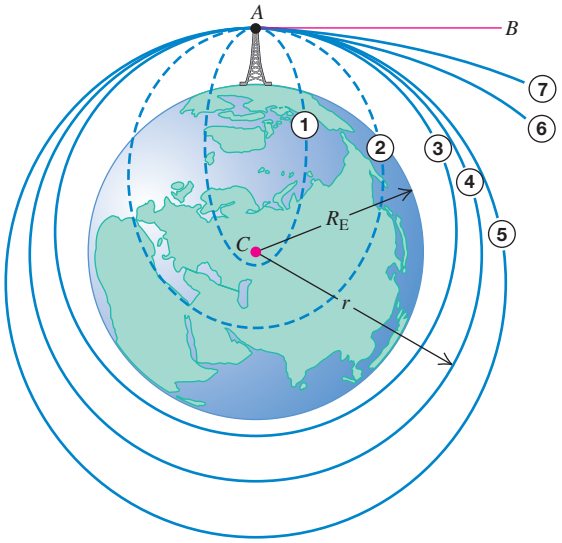
Figure 13.13 With a mass of approximately 4.5×10^5 kg and a width of over 108 m, the International Space Station is the largest satellite ever placed in orbit.

Artificial satellites orbiting the earth are a familiar part of technology (**Fig. 13.13**). But how do they stay in orbit, and what determines the properties of their orbits? We can use Newton's laws and the law of gravitation to provide the answers. In the next section we'll analyze the motion of planets in the same way.

To begin, think back to the discussion of projectile motion in Section 3.3. In Example 3.6 a motorcycle rider rides horizontally off the edge of a cliff, launching himself into a parabolic path that ends on the flat ground at the base of the cliff. If he survives and repeats the experiment with increased launch speed, he will land farther from the starting point. We can imagine him launching himself with great enough speed that the earth's curvature becomes significant. As he falls, the earth curves away beneath him. If he is going fast enough, and if his launch point is high enough that he clears the mountaintops, he may be able to go right on around the earth without ever landing.

Figure 13.14 shows a variation on this theme. We launch a projectile from point A in the direction AB, tangent to the earth's surface. Trajectories 1 through 7 show the effect of increasing the initial speed. In trajectories 3 through 5 the projectile misses the earth and becomes a satellite. If there is no retarding force such as air resistance, the projectile's speed when it returns to point A is the same as its initial speed and it repeats its motion indefinitely.

Trajectories 1 through 5 close on themselves and are called **closed orbits.** All closed orbits are ellipses or segments of ellipses; trajectory 4 is a circle, a special case of an ellipse. (We'll discuss the properties of an ellipse in Section 13.5.) Trajectories 6 and 7 are **open orbits.** For these paths the projectile never returns to its starting point but travels ever farther away from the earth.



A projectile is launched from *A* toward *B*. Trajectories (1) through (7) show the effect of increasing initial speed.

Figure **13.14** Trajectories of a projectile launched from a great height (ignoring air resistance). Orbits 1 and 2 would be completed as shown if the earth were a point mass at *C*. (This illustration is based on one in Isaac Newton's *Principia*.)

Satellites: Circular Orbits

A *circular* orbit, like trajectory 4 in Fig. 13.14, is the simplest case. It is also an important case, since many artificial satellites have nearly circular orbits and the orbits of the planets around the sun are also fairly circular. The only force acting on a satellite in circular orbit around the earth is the earth's gravitational attraction, which is directed toward the center of the earth and hence toward the center of the orbit (**Fig. 13.15**). As we discussed in Section 5.4, this means that the satellite is in *uniform* circular motion and its speed is constant. The satellite isn't falling *toward* the earth; rather, it's constantly falling *around* the earth. In a circular orbit the speed is just right to keep the distance from the satellite to the center of the earth constant.

Let's see how to find the constant speed v of a satellite in a circular orbit. The radius of the orbit is r, measured from the *center* of the earth; the acceleration of the satellite has magnitude $a_{rad} = v^2/r$ and is always directed toward the center of the circle. By the law of gravitation, the net force (gravitational force) on the satellite of mass m has magnitude $F_g = Gm_E m/r^2$ and is in the same direction as the acceleration. Newton's second law ($\Sigma\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$) then tells us that

$$\frac{Gm_E m}{r^2} = \frac{mv^2}{r}$$

Solving this for v, we find

Speed of satellite in a circular orbit around the earth

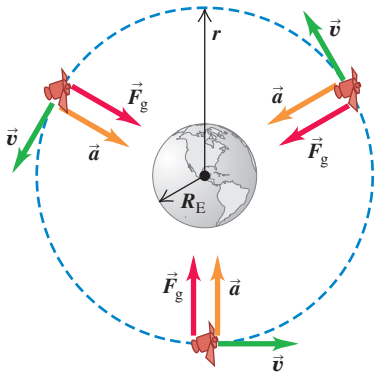
$$v = \sqrt{\frac{Gm_E}{r}} \qquad (13.10)$$

(G: Gravitational constant; m_E: Mass of the earth; r: Radius of orbit)

This relationship shows that we can't choose the orbit radius r and the speed v independently; for a given radius r, the speed v for a circular orbit is determined.

The satellite's mass m doesn't appear in Eq. (13.10), which shows that the motion of a satellite does not depend on its mass. An astronaut on board an orbiting space station is herself a satellite of the earth, held by the earth's gravity in the same orbit as the station. The astronaut has the same velocity and acceleration as the station, so nothing is pushing her against the station's floor or walls. She is in a state of *apparent weightlessness,* as in a freely falling lift; see the discussion following Example 5.9 in Section 5.2. (*True* weightlessness would occur only if the astronaut were infinitely far from any other masses, so that the gravitational force on her would be zero.) Indeed, every part of her body is apparently weightless; she feels nothing pushing her stomach against her intestines or her head against her shoulders (**Fig. 13.16**).

Figure **13.15** The force $\vec{F}_g$ due to the earth's gravitational attraction provides the centripetal acceleration that keeps a satellite in orbit. Compare to Fig. 5.28.



The satellite is in a circular orbit: Its acceleration $\vec{a}$ is always perpendicular to its velocity $\vec{v}$, so its speed v is constant.

Figure **13.16** These astronauts are in a state of apparent weightlessness. Who is right side up?

Apparent weightlessness is not just a feature of circular orbits; it occurs whenever gravity is the only force acting on a spacecraft. Hence it occurs for orbits of any shape, including open orbits such as trajectories 6 and 7 in Fig. 13.14.

We can derive a relationship between the radius r of a circular orbit and the period T, the time for one revolution. The speed v is the distance $2\pi r$ traveled in one revolution, divided by the period:

$$v = \frac{2\pi r}{T} \tag{13.11}$$

We solve Eq. (13.11) for T and substitute v from Eq. (13.10):

Period of a circular orbit around the earth

$$T = \frac{2\pi r}{v} = 2\pi r\sqrt{\frac{r}{Gm_E}} = \frac{2\pi r^{3/2}}{\sqrt{Gm_E}} \tag{13.12}$$

r: Radius of orbit; v: Orbital speed; G: Gravitational constant; m_E: Mass of the earth

Equations (13.10) and (13.12) show that larger orbits correspond to slower speeds and longer periods. As an example, the International Space Station (Fig. 13.13) orbits 6800 km from the center of the earth (400 km above the earth's surface) with an orbital speed of 7.7 km/s and an orbital period of 93 min. The moon orbits the earth in a much larger orbit of radius 384,000 km, and so has a much slower orbital speed (1.0 km/s) and a much longer orbital period (27.3 days).

It's interesting to compare Eq. (13.10) to the calculation of escape speed in Example 13.5. We see that the escape speed from a spherical object with radius R is $\sqrt{2}$ times greater than the speed of a satellite in a circular orbit at that radius. If our spacecraft is in circular orbit around *any* planet, we have to multiply our speed by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$ to escape to infinity, regardless of the planet's mass.

Since the speed v in a circular orbit is determined by Eq. (13.10) for a given orbit radius r, the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is determined as well. Using Eqs. (13.9) and (13.10), we have

$$\begin{aligned} E = K + U &= \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \left(-\frac{Gm_E m}{r}\right) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}m\left(\frac{Gm_E}{r}\right) - \frac{Gm_E m}{r} \\ &= -\frac{Gm_E m}{2r} \qquad \text{(circular orbit)} \end{aligned} \tag{13.13}$$

The total mechanical energy in a circular orbit is negative and equal to one-half the potential energy. Increasing the orbit radius r means increasing the total mechanical energy (that is, making E less negative). If the satellite is in a relatively low orbit that encounters the outer fringes of earth's atmosphere, the total mechanical energy decreases due to negative work done by the force of air resistance; as a result, the orbit radius decreases until the satellite hits the ground or burns up in the atmosphere.

We have talked mostly about earth satellites, but we can apply the same analysis to the circular motion of *any* object under its gravitational attraction to a stationary object. **Figure 13.17** shows an example.

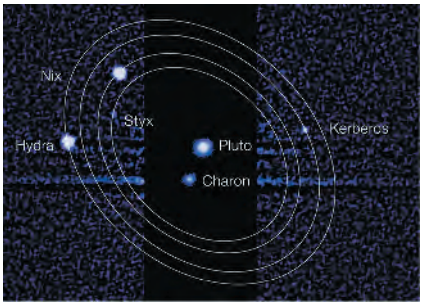


Figure **13.17** The dwarf planet Pluto is known to have at least five satellites. In accordance with Eqs. (13.10) and (13.12), the larger the satellite's orbit around Pluto, the slower the satellite's orbital speed and the longer its orbital period.

EXAMPLE 13.6 A satellite orbit

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

You wish to put a 1000 kg satellite into a circular orbit 340 km above the earth's surface. (a) What speed, period, and radial acceleration will it have? (b) How much work must be done to the satellite to put it in orbit? (c) How much additional work would have to be done to make the satellite escape the earth? The earth's radius and mass are given in Example 13.5 (Section 13.3).

IDENTIFY and SET UP The satellite is in a circular orbit, so we can use the equations derived in this section. In part (a), we first find the radius r of the satellite's orbit from its altitude. We then calculate the speed v and period T from Eqs. (13.10) and (13.12) and the acceleration from $a_{rad} = v^2/r$. In parts (b) and (c), the work required is the difference between the initial and final total mechanical energies, which for a circular orbit is given by Eq. (13.13).

EXECUTE (a) The radius of the satellite's orbit is $r = 6370\text{ km} + 340\text{ km} = 6710\text{ km} = 6.71 \times 10^6\text{ m}$. From Eq. (13.10), the orbital speed is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{Gm_E}{r}} = \sqrt{\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg})}{6.71 \times 10^6\text{ m}}} = 7700\text{ m/s}$$

We find the orbital period from Eq. (13.12):

$$T = \frac{2\pi r}{v} = \frac{2\pi(6.67 \times 10^6\text{ m})}{7700\text{ m/s}} = 5470\text{ s} = 91.2\text{ min}$$

Finally, the radial acceleration is

$$a_{rad} = \frac{v^2}{r} = \frac{(7700\text{ m/s})^2}{6.71 \times 10^6\text{ m}} = 8.84\text{ m/s}^2$$

This is the value of g at a height of 340 km above the earth's surface; it is about 10% less than the value of g at the surface.

(b) The work required is the difference between E_2, the total mechanical energy when the satellite is in orbit, and E_1, the total mechanical energy when the satellite was at rest on the launch pad. From Eq. (13.13), the energy in orbit is

$$E_2 = -\frac{Gm_Em}{2r} = -\frac{(6.71 \times 10^{-11}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg})(1000\text{ kg})}{2(6.71 \times 10^6\text{ m})} = -2.97 \times 10^{10}\text{ J}$$

The satellite's kinetic energy is zero on the launch pad ($r = R_E$), so

$$E_1 = K_1 + U_1 = 0 + \left(-\frac{Gm_Em}{R_E}\right) = -\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.97 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg})(1000\text{ kg})}{6.37 \times 10^6\text{ m}} = -6.25 \times 10^{10}\text{ J}$$

Hence the work required is

$$W_{required} = E_2 - E_1 = (-2.97 \times 10^{10}\text{ J}) - (-6.25 \times 10^{10}\text{ J}) = 3.28 \times 10^{10}\text{ J}$$

(c) We saw in part (b) of Example 13.5 that the minimum total mechanical energy for a satellite to escape to infinity is zero. Here, the total mechanical energy in the circular orbit is $E_2 = -2.97 \times 10^{10}$ J; to increase this to zero, an amount of work equal to 2.97×10^{10} J would have to be done on the satellite, presumably by rocket engines attached to it.

EVALUATE In part (b) we ignored the satellite's initial kinetic energy (while it was still on the launch pad) due to the rotation of the earth. How much difference does this make? (See Example 13.5 for useful data.)

KEYCONCEPT The larger the radius of a satellite's orbit, the greater (less negative) the total mechanical energy, the greater (less negative) the potential energy, and the smaller the kinetic energy (the satellite moves more slowly in a larger orbit). The radius of a satellite's orbit is always measured from the center of the earth.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.4 Your personal spacecraft is in a low-altitude circular orbit around the earth. Air resistance from the outer regions of the atmosphere does negative work on the spacecraft, causing the radius of the circular orbit to decrease slightly. Does the speed of the spacecraft (i) remain the same, (ii) increase, or (iii) decrease?

ANSWER (ii) Equation (13.10) shows that in a smaller-radius orbit, the spacecraft has a faster speed. The negative work done by air resistance decreases the *total* mechanical energy $E = K + U$; the kinetic energy K increases (becomes more positive), but the gravitational potential energy U decreases (becomes more negative) by a greater amount.

13.5 KEPLER'S LAWS AND THE MOTION OF PLANETS

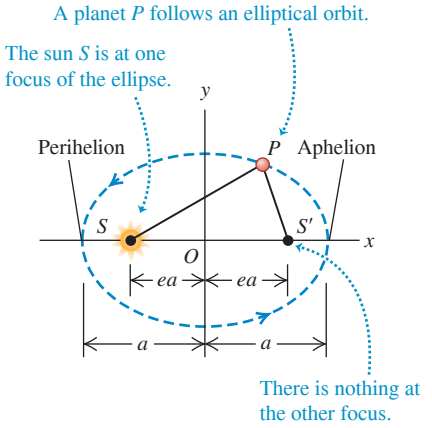
The name *planet* comes from a Greek word meaning "wanderer," and indeed the planets continuously change their positions in the sky relative to the background of stars. One of the great intellectual accomplishments of the 16th and 17th centuries was the threefold realization that the earth is also a planet, that all planets orbit the sun, and that the apparent motions of the planets as seen from the earth can be used to determine their orbits precisely.

The first and second of these ideas were published by Nicolaus Copernicus in Poland in 1543. The nature of planetary orbits was deduced between 1601 and 1619 by the German astronomer and mathematician Johannes Kepler, using precise data on apparent planetary motions compiled by his mentor, the Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe. By trial and error, Kepler discovered three empirical laws that accurately described the motions of the planets:

KEPLER'S LAWS

1. **Each planet moves in an elliptical orbit, with the sun at one focus of the ellipse.**
2. **A line from the sun to a given planet sweeps out equal areas in equal times.**
3. **The periods of the planets are proportional to the $\frac{3}{2}$ powers of the major axis lengths of their orbits.**

Figure 13.18 Geometry of an ellipse. The sum of the distances SP and $S'P$ is the same for every point on the curve. The sizes of the sun (S) and planet (P) are exaggerated for clarity.



Kepler did not know *why* the planets moved in this way. Three generations later, when Newton turned his attention to the motion of the planets, he discovered that each of Kepler's laws can be *derived;* they are consequences of Newton's laws of motion and the law of gravitation. Let's see how each of Kepler's laws arises.

Kepler's First Law

First consider the elliptical orbits described in Kepler's first law. **Figure 13.18** shows the geometry of an ellipse. The longest dimension is the *major axis,* with half-length a; this half-length is called the **semi-major axis.** The sum of the distances from S to P and from S' to P is the same for all points on the curve. S and S' are the *foci* (plural of *focus*). The sun is at S (*not* at the center of the ellipse) and the planet is at P; we think of both as points because the size of each is very small in comparison to the distance between them. There is nothing at the other focus, S'.

The distance of each focus from the center of the ellipse is ea, where e is a dimensionless number between 0 and 1 called the **eccentricity.** If $e = 0$, the two foci coincide and the ellipse is a circle. The actual orbits of the planets are fairly circular; their eccentricities range from 0.007 for Venus to 0.206 for Mercury. (The earth's orbit has $e = 0.017$.) The point in the planet's orbit closest to the sun is the *perihelion,* and the point most distant is the *aphelion.*

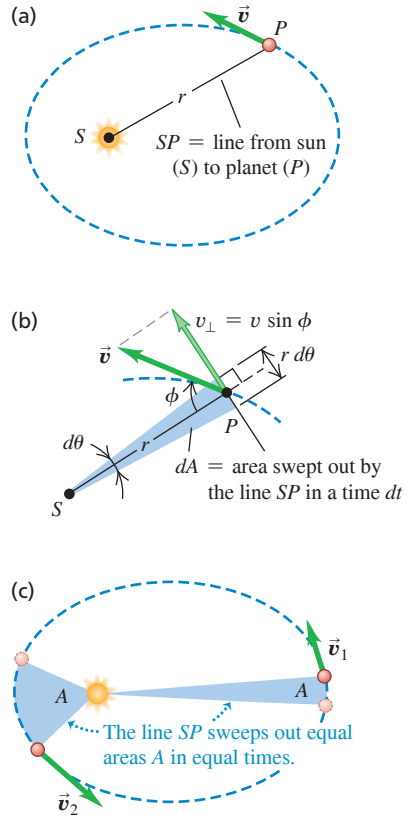
Newton showed that for an object acted on by an attractive force proportional to $1/r^2$, the only possible closed orbits are a circle or an ellipse; he also showed that open orbits (trajectories 6 and 7 in Fig. 13.14) must be parabolas or hyperbolas. These results can be derived from Newton's laws and the law of gravitation, together with a lot more differential equations than we're ready for.

Kepler's Second Law

Figure 13.19 shows Kepler's second law. In a small time interval dt, the line from the sun S to the planet P turns through an angle $d\theta$. The area swept out is the colored triangle with height r, base length $r\,d\theta$, and area $dA = \frac{1}{2}r^2\,d\theta$ in Fig. 13.19b. The rate at which area is swept out, dA/dt, is called the *sector velocity:*

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \tfrac{1}{2}r^2\frac{d\theta}{dt} \tag{13.14}$$

Figure 13.19 (a) The planet (P) moves about the sun (S) in an elliptical orbit. (b) In a time dt the line SP sweeps out an area $dA = \frac{1}{2}(r\,d\theta)r = \frac{1}{2}r^2\,d\theta$. (c) The planet's speed varies so that the line SP sweeps out the same area A in a given time t regardless of the planet's position in its orbit.



The essence of Kepler's second law is that the sector velocity has the same value at all points in the orbit. When the planet is close to the sun, r is small and $d\theta/dt$ is large; when the planet is far from the sun, r is large and $d\theta/dt$ is small.

To see how Kepler's second law follows from Newton's laws, we express dA/dt in terms of the velocity vector $\vec{v}$ of the planet P. The component of $\vec{v}$ perpendicular to the radial line is $v_\perp = v\sin\phi$. From Fig. 13.19b the displacement along the direction of $v_\perp$ during time dt is $r\,d\theta$, so we also have $v_\perp = r\,d\theta/dt$. Using this relationship in Eq. (13.14), we find

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \tfrac{1}{2}rv\sin\phi \qquad \text{(sector velocity)} \tag{13.15}$$

Now $rv\sin\phi$ is the magnitude of the vector product $\vec{r}\times\vec{v}$, which in turn is $1/m$ times the angular momentum $\vec{L} = \vec{r}\times m\vec{v}$ of the planet with respect to the sun. So we have

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \frac{1}{2m}|\vec{r}\times m\vec{v}| = \frac{L}{2m} \tag{13.16}$$

Thus Kepler's second law—that sector velocity is constant—means that angular momentum is constant!

It is easy to see why the angular momentum of the planet *must* be constant. According to Eq. (10.26), the rate of change of $\vec{L}$ equals the torque of the gravitational force $\vec{F}$ acting on the planet:

$$\frac{d\vec{L}}{dt} = \vec{\tau} = \vec{r}\times\vec{F}$$

In our situation, $\vec{r}$ is the vector from the sun to the planet, and the force $\vec{F}$ is directed from the planet to the sun (**Fig. 13.20**). So these vectors always lie along the same line, and

their vector product $\vec{r} \times \vec{F}$ is zero. Hence $d\vec{L}/dt = \mathbf{0}$. This conclusion does not depend on the $1/r^2$ behavior of the force; angular momentum is conserved for *any* force that acts always along the line joining the particle to a fixed point. Such a force is called a *central force*. (Kepler's first and third laws are valid for a $1/r^2$ force *only*.)

Conservation of angular momentum also explains why the orbit lies in a plane. The vector $\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times m\vec{v}$ is always perpendicular to the plane of the vectors $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{v}$; since $\vec{L}$ is constant in magnitude *and* direction, $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{v}$ always lie in the same plane, which is just the plane of the planet's orbit.

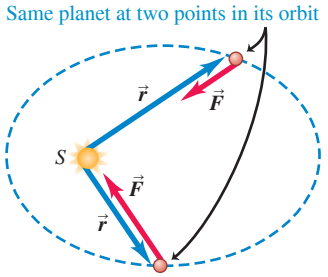
Kepler's Third Law

We have already derived Kepler's third law for the particular case of circular orbits. Equation (13.12) shows that the period of a satellite or planet in a circular orbit is proportional to the $\frac{3}{2}$ power of the orbit radius. Newton was able to show that this same relationship holds for an *elliptical* orbit, with the orbit radius r replaced by the semi-major axis a:

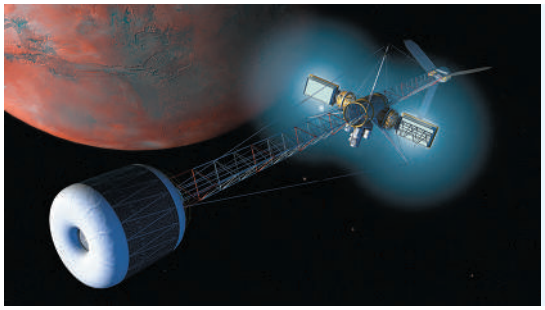
$$T = \frac{2\pi a^{3/2}}{\sqrt{Gm_S}} \qquad \text{(elliptical orbit around the sun)} \tag{13.17}$$

Since the planet orbits the sun, not the earth, we have replaced the earth's mass m_E in Eq. (13.12) with the sun's mass m_S. Note that the period does not depend on the eccentricity e. An asteroid in an elongated elliptical orbit with semi-major axis a will have the same orbital period as a planet in a circular orbit of radius a. The key difference is that the asteroid moves at different speeds at different points in its elliptical orbit (Fig. 13.19c), while the planet's speed is constant around its circular orbit.

Figure **13.20** Because the gravitational force that the sun exerts on a planet produces zero torque around the sun, the planet's angular momentum around the sun remains constant.



- Gravitational force $\vec{F}$ on planet has different magnitudes at different points but is always opposite to vector $\vec{r}$ from sun S to planet.
- Hence $\vec{F}$ produces zero torque around sun.
- Hence angular momentum $\vec{L}$ of planet around sun is constant in both magnitude and direction.



BIO APPLICATION Biological Hazards of Interplanetary Travel A spacecraft sent from earth to another planet spends most of its journey coasting along an elliptical orbit with the sun at one focus. Rockets are used at only the start and end of the journey, and even the trip to a nearby planet like Mars takes several months. During its journey, the spacecraft is exposed to cosmic rays— radiation that emanates from elsewhere in our galaxy. (On earth we're shielded from this radiation by our planet's magnetic field, as we'll describe in Chapter 27.) This poses no problem for a robotic spacecraft but would be a severe medical hazard for astronauts undertaking such a voyage.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 13.7 Orbital speeds

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

At what point in an elliptical orbit (see Fig. 13.19) does a planet move the fastest? The slowest?

SOLUTION Total mechanical energy is conserved as a planet moves in its orbit. The planet's kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ is maximum when the potential energy $U = -Gm_Sm/r$ is minimum (that is, most negative; see Fig. 13.11), which occurs when the sun–planet distance r is a minimum. Hence the speed v is greatest at perihelion. Similarly, K is minimum when r is maximum, so the speed is slowest at aphelion.

Your intuition about falling objects is helpful here. As the planet falls inward toward the sun, it picks up speed, and its speed is maximum when closest to the sun. The planet slows down as it moves away from the sun, and its speed is minimum at aphelion.

KEYCONCEPT Total mechanical energy remains constant for a planet in an elliptical orbit. The planet's kinetic energy (and speed) therefore increases as it moves closer to the sun and the gravitational potential energy decreases (becomes more negative).

EXAMPLE 13.8 Kepler's third law

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

The asteroid Pallas has an orbital period of 4.62 years and an orbital eccentricity of 0.233. Find the semi-major axis of its orbit.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We need Kepler's third law, which relates the period T and the semi-major axis a for an orbiting object (such as an asteroid). We use Eq. (13.17) to determine a; from the data at the back of the book we have $m_S = 1.99 \times 10^{30}$ kg, and a conversion factor from Appendix B gives $T = (4.62\text{ y})(3.156 \times 10^7\text{ s/y}) = 1.46 \times 10^8$ s. Note that we don't need the value of the eccentricity.

Continued

EXECUTE From Eq. (13.17), $a^{3/2} = [(Gm_S)^{1/2}T]/2\pi$. To solve for a, we raise both sides of this expression to the $\frac{2}{3}$ power and then substitute the values of G, m_S, and T:

$$a = \left(\frac{Gm_S T^2}{4\pi^2}\right)^{1/3} = 4.15 \times 10^{11}\ \text{m}$$

(Plug in the numbers yourself to check.)

EVALUATE Our result is intermediate between the semi-major axes of Mars and Jupiter. Most known asteroids orbit in an "asteroid belt" between the orbits of these two planets.

KEYCONCEPT Kepler's third law allows you to relate the period of an orbit, the semi-major axis of that orbit, and the mass of the object being orbited.

EXAMPLE 13.9 Comet Halley

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Comet Halley (**Fig. 13.21**) moves in an elongated elliptical orbit around the sun. Its distances from the sun at perihelion and aphelion are 8.80×10^7 km and 5.25×10^9 km, respectively. Find the orbital semi-major axis, eccentricity, and period in years.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We are to find the semi-major axis a, eccentricity e, and orbital period T. We can use Fig. 13.18 to find a and e from the given perihelion and aphelion distances. Knowing a, we can find T from Kepler's third law, Eq. (13.17).

EXECUTE From Fig. 13.18, the length $2a$ of the major axis equals the sum of the comet–sun distance at perihelion and the comet–sun distance at aphelion. Hence

$$a = \frac{(8.80 \times 10^7\ \text{km}) + (5.25 \times 10^9\ \text{km})}{2} = 2.67 \times 10^9\ \text{km}$$

Figure 13.18 also shows that the comet–sun distance at perihelion is $a - ea = a(1 - e)$. This distance is 8.80×10^7 km, so

$$e = 1 - \frac{8.80 \times 10^7\ \text{km}}{a} = 1 - \frac{8.80 \times 10^7\ \text{km}}{2.67 \times 10^9\ \text{km}} = 0.967$$

From Eq. (13.17), the period is

$$T = \frac{2\pi a^{3/2}}{\sqrt{Gm_S}} = \frac{2\pi(2.67 \times 10^{12}\ \text{m})^{3/2}}{\sqrt{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(1.99 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg})}}$$

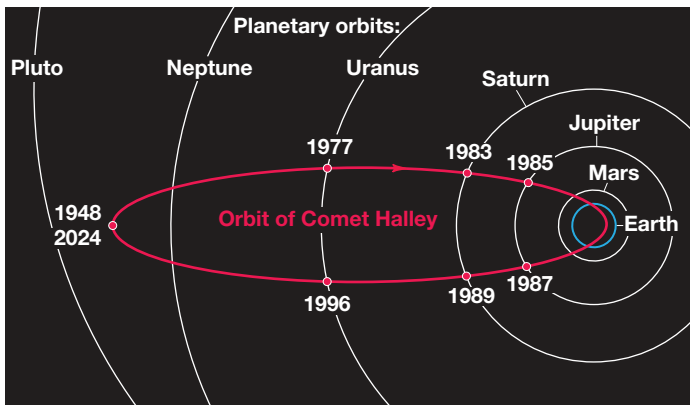
$$= 2.38 \times 10^9\ \text{s} = 75.3\ \text{y}$$

EVALUATE The eccentricity is close to 1, so the orbit is very elongated (see Fig. 13.21a). Comet Halley was at perihelion in early 1986 (Fig. 13.21b); it will next reach perihelion one period later, in 2061.

KEYCONCEPT Kepler's third law applies to orbits of any eccentricity e between 0 and 1. You can determine e from the semi-major axis of the orbit and the distance at perihelion from the orbiting object to the object being orbited.

Figure **13.21** (a) The orbit of Comet Halley. (b) Comet Halley as it appeared in 1986. At the heart of the comet is an icy object, called the nucleus, that is about 10 km across. When the comet's orbit carries it close to the sun, the heat of sunlight causes the nucleus to partially evaporate. The evaporated material forms the tail, which can be tens of millions of kilometers long.

(a)



(b)

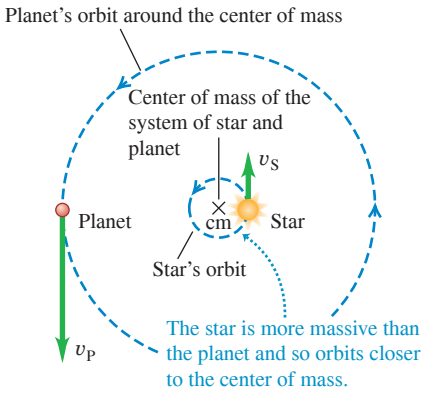
Planetary Motions and the Center of Mass

We have assumed that as a planet or comet orbits the sun, the sun remains absolutely stationary. This can't be correct; because the sun exerts a gravitational force on the planet, the planet exerts a gravitational force on the sun of the same magnitude but opposite direction. In fact, *both* the sun and the planet orbit around their common

center of mass (**Fig. 13.22**). We've made only a small error by ignoring this effect, however; the sun's mass is about 750 times the total mass of all the planets combined, so the center of mass of the solar system is not far from the center of the sun. Remarkably, astronomers have used this effect to detect the presence of planets orbiting other stars. Sensitive telescopes are able to detect the apparent "wobble" of a star as it orbits the common center of mass of the star and an unseen companion planet. (The planets are too faint to observe directly.) By analyzing these "wobbles," astronomers have discovered planets in orbit around hundreds of other stars.

The most remarkable result of Newton's analysis of planetary motion is that objects in the heavens obey the *same* laws of motion as do objects on the earth. This *Newtonian synthesis,* as it has come to be called, is one of the great unifying principles of science. It has had profound effects on the way that humanity looks at the universe—not as a realm of impenetrable mystery, but as a direct extension of our everyday world, subject to scientific study and calculation.

Figure **13.22** Both a star and its planet orbit about their common center of mass.



The planet and star are always on opposite sides of the center of mass.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.5 The orbit of Comet X has a semi-major axis that is four times longer than the semi-major axis of Comet Y. What is the ratio of the orbital period of X to the orbital period of Y? (i) 2; (ii) 4; (iii) 8; (iv) 16; (v) 32; (vi) 64.

ANSWER **(iii)** Equation (13.17) shows that the orbital period T is proportional to the $\frac{3}{2}$ power of the semi-major axis a. Hence the orbital period of Comet X is longer than that of Comet Y by a factor of $4^{3/2} = 8$.

13.6 SPHERICAL MASS DISTRIBUTIONS

We have stated without proof that the gravitational interaction between two spherically symmetric mass distributions is the same as though all the mass of each were concentrated at its center. Now we're ready to prove this statement. Newton searched for a proof for several years, and he delayed publication of the law of gravitation until he found one.

Rather than starting with two spherically symmetric masses, we'll tackle the simpler problem of a point mass m interacting with a thin spherical shell with total mass M. We'll show that when m is outside the sphere, the *potential energy* associated with this gravitational interaction is the same as though M were concentrated in a point at the center of the sphere. We learned in Section 7.4 that the force is the negative derivative of the potential energy, so the *force* on m is also the same as for a point mass M. Our result will also hold for *any* spherically symmetric mass distribution, which we can think of as being made of many concentric spherical shells.

A Point Mass Outside a Spherical Shell

We start by considering a ring on the surface of a shell (**Fig. 13.23a**, next page), centered on the line from the center of the shell to m. We do this because all of the particles that make up the ring are the same distance s from the point mass m. From Eq. (13.9) the potential energy of interaction between the earth (mass m_E) and a point mass m, separated by a distance r, is $U = -Gm_Em/r$. From this expression, we see that the potential energy of interaction between the point mass m and a particle of mass m_i within the ring is

$$U_i = -\frac{Gmm_i}{s}$$

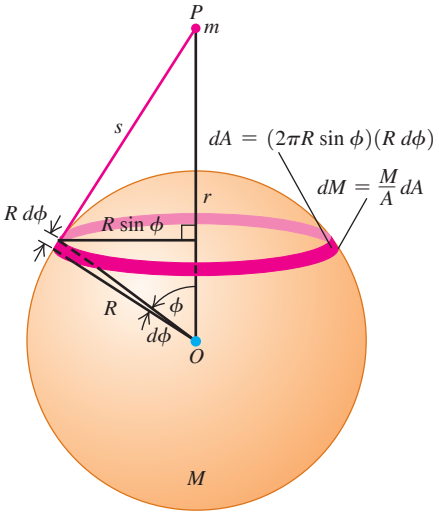
To find the potential energy dU of interaction between m and the entire ring of mass $dM = \sum_i m_i$, we sum this expression for U_i over all particles in the ring:

$$dU = \sum_i U_i = \sum_i \left(-\frac{Gmm_i}{s}\right) = -\frac{Gm}{s}\sum_i m_i = -\frac{Gm\,dM}{s} \qquad (13.18)$$

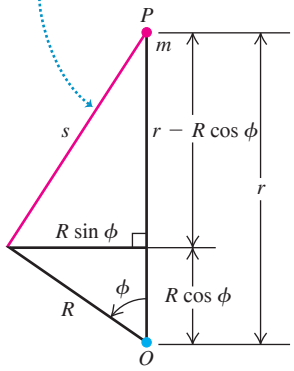
To proceed, we need to know the mass dM of the ring. We can find this with the aid of a little geometry. The radius of the shell is R, so in terms of the angle ϕ shown in the figure,

Figure 13.23 Calculating the gravitational potential energy of interaction between a point mass m outside a spherical shell and a ring on the surface of the shell of mass M.

(a) Geometry of the situation



(b) The distance s is the hypotenuse of a right triangle with sides $(r - R\cos\phi)$ and $R\sin\phi$.



the radius of the ring is $R\sin\phi$, and its circumference is $2\pi R\sin\phi$. The width of the ring is $R\,d\phi$, and its area dA is approximately equal to its width times its circumference:

$$dA = 2\pi R^2 \sin\phi\, d\phi$$

The ratio of the ring mass dM to the total mass M of the shell is equal to the ratio of the area dA of the ring to the total area $A = 4\pi R^2$ of the shell:

$$\frac{dM}{M} = \frac{2\pi R^2 \sin\phi\, d\phi}{4\pi R^2} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin\phi\, d\phi \qquad (13.19)$$

Now we solve Eq. (13.19) for dM and substitute the result into Eq. (13.18) to find the potential energy of interaction between point mass m and the ring:

$$dU = -\frac{GMm\sin\phi\, d\phi}{2s} \qquad (13.20)$$

The total potential energy of interaction between the point mass and the *shell* is the integral of Eq. (13.20) over the whole sphere as ϕ varies from 0 to π (*not* 2π!) and s varies from $r - R$ to $r + R$. To carry out the integration, we have to express the integrand in terms of a single variable; we choose s. To express ϕ and $d\phi$ in terms of s, we have to do a little more geometry. Figure 13.23b shows that s is the hypotenuse of a right triangle with sides $(r - R\cos\phi)$ and $R\sin\phi$, so the Pythagorean theorem gives

$$\begin{aligned} s^2 &= (r - R\cos\phi)^2 + (R\sin\phi)^2 \\ &= r^2 - 2rR\cos\phi + R^2 \end{aligned} \qquad (13.21)$$

We take differentials of both sides:

$$2s\, ds = 2rR\sin\phi\, d\phi$$

Next we divide this by $2rR$ and substitute the result into Eq. (13.20):

$$dU = -\frac{GMm}{2s}\frac{s\, ds}{rR} = -\frac{GMm}{2rR}\, ds \qquad (13.22)$$

We can now integrate Eq. (13.22), recalling that s varies from $r - R$ to $r + R$:

$$U = -\frac{GMm}{2rR}\int_{r-R}^{r+R} ds = -\frac{GMm}{2rR}[(r + R) - (r - R)] \qquad (13.23)$$

Finally, we have

$$U = -\frac{GMm}{r} \qquad \text{(point mass } m \text{ outside spherical shell } M) \qquad (13.24)$$

This is equal to the potential energy of two point masses m and M at a distance r. So we have proved that the gravitational potential energy of spherical shell M and point mass m at any distance r is the same as though they were point masses. Because the force is given by $F_r = -dU/dr$, the force is also the same.

The Gravitational Force Between Spherical Mass Distributions

Any spherically symmetric mass distribution can be thought of as a combination of concentric spherical shells. Because of the principle of superposition of forces, what is true of one shell is also true of the combination. So we have proved half of what we set out to prove: that the gravitational interaction between any spherically symmetric mass distribution and a point mass is the same as though all the mass of the spherically symmetric distribution were concentrated at its center.

The other half is to prove that *two* spherically symmetric mass distributions interact as though both were points. That's easier. In Fig. 13.23a the forces the two objects exert on each other are an action–reaction pair, and they obey Newton's third law. So we have also proved that the force that m exerts *on* sphere M is the same as though M were a point. But now if we replace m with a spherically symmetric mass distribution centered at m's location, the resulting gravitational force on any part of M is the same as before, and so is the total force. This completes our proof.

A Point Mass Inside a Spherical Shell

We assumed at the beginning that the point mass m was outside the spherical shell, so our proof is valid only when m is outside a spherically symmetric mass distribution. When m is *inside* a spherical shell, the geometry is as shown in **Fig. 13.24**. The entire analysis goes just as before; Eqs. (13.18) through (13.22) are still valid. But when we get to Eq. (13.23), the limits of integration have to be changed to $R - r$ and $R + r$. We then have

$$U = -\frac{GMm}{2rR}\int_{R-r}^{R+r} ds = -\frac{GMm}{2rR}[(R + r) - (R - r)] \qquad (13.25)$$

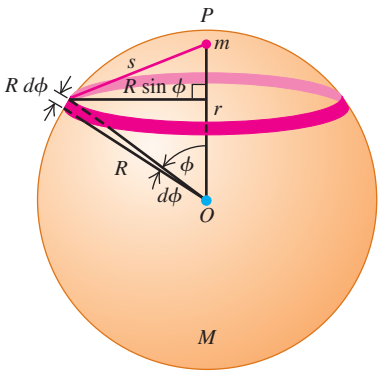
and the final result is

$$U = -\frac{GMm}{R} \qquad \text{(point mass } m \text{ inside spherical shell } M\text{)} \qquad (13.26)$$

Compare this result to Eq. (13.24): Instead of having r, the distance between m and the center of M, in the denominator, we have R, the radius of the shell. This means that U in Eq. (13.26) doesn't depend on r and thus has the same value everywhere inside the shell. When m moves around inside the shell, no work is done on it, so the force on m at any point inside the shell must be zero.

More generally, at any point in the interior of any spherically symmetric mass distribution (not necessarily a shell), at a distance r from its center, the gravitational force on a point mass m is the same as though we removed all the mass at points farther than r from the center and concentrated all the remaining mass at the center.

Figure 13.24 When a point mass m is *inside* a uniform spherical shell of mass M, the potential energy is the same no matter where inside the shell the point mass is located. The force from the masses' mutual gravitational interaction is zero.

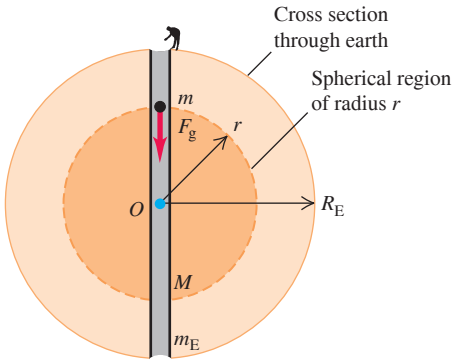


EXAMPLE 13.10 "Journey to the center of the earth"

Imagine that we drill a hole through the earth along a diameter and drop a mail pouch down the hole. Derive an expression for the gravitational force F_g on the pouch as a function of its distance from the earth's center. Assume that the earth's density is uniform (not a very realistic model; see Fig. 13.9).

IDENTIFY and SET UP From the discussion immediately above, the value of F_g at a distance r from the earth's center is determined by only the mass M within a spherical region of radius r (**Fig. 13.25**). Hence F_g is the same as if all the mass within radius r were concentrated at the center of the earth. The mass of a uniform sphere is proportional to the volume of the sphere, which is $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ for a sphere of arbitrary radius r and $\frac{4}{3}\pi R_E^3$ for the entire earth.

Figure 13.25 A hole through the center of the earth (assumed to be uniform). When an object is a distance r from the center, only the mass inside a sphere of radius r exerts a net gravitational force on it.



EXECUTE The ratio of the mass M of the sphere of radius r to the mass m_E of the earth is

$$\frac{M}{m_E} = \frac{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3}{\frac{4}{3}\pi R_E^3} = \frac{r^3}{R_E^3} \qquad \text{so} \qquad M = m_E\frac{r^3}{R_E^3}$$

The magnitude of the gravitational force on m is then

$$F_g = \frac{GMm}{r^2} = \frac{Gm}{r^2}\left(m_E\frac{r^3}{R_E^3}\right) = \frac{Gm_Em}{R_E^3}r$$

EVALUATE Inside this uniform-density sphere, F_g is *directly proportional* to the distance r from the center, rather than to $1/r^2$ as it is outside the sphere. At the surface $r = R_E$, we have $F_g = Gm_Em/R_E^2$, as we should. In the next chapter we'll learn how to compute the time it would take for the mail pouch to emerge on the other side of the earth.

KEYCONCEPT The gravitational force on a particle at a point a radius r from the center of a spherically symmetric mass distribution is caused solely by the mass *inside* a sphere of radius r. The mass outside radius r has no effect on the particle.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.6 In the classic 1913 science-fiction novel *At the Earth's Core,* by Edgar Rice Burroughs, explorers discover that the earth is a hollow sphere and that an entire civilization lives on the inside of the sphere. Would it be possible to stand and walk on the inner surface of a hollow, nonrotating planet?

ANSWER **No.** Our analysis shows that there is *zero* gravitational force inside a hollow spherical shell. Hence visitors to the interior of a hollow planet would find themselves weightless, and they could not stand or walk on the planet's inner surface.

13.7 APPARENT WEIGHT AND THE EARTH'S ROTATION

Because the earth rotates on its axis, it is not precisely an inertial frame of reference. For this reason the apparent weight of an object on earth is not precisely equal to the earth's gravitational attraction, which we'll call the **true weight** $\vec{w}_0$ of the object. **Figure 13.26** is a cutaway view of the earth, showing three observers. Each one holds a spring scale with an object of mass m hanging from it. Each scale applies a tension force $\vec{F}$ to the object hanging from it, and the reading on each scale is the magnitude F of this force. If the observers are unaware of the earth's rotation, each one *thinks* that the scale reading equals the weight of the object because he thinks the object on his spring scale is in equilibrium. So each observer thinks that the tension $\vec{F}$ must be opposed by an equal and opposite force $\vec{w}$, which we call the **apparent weight.** But if the objects are rotating with the earth, they are *not* precisely in equilibrium. Our problem is to find the relationship between the apparent weight $\vec{w}$ and the true weight $\vec{w}_0$.

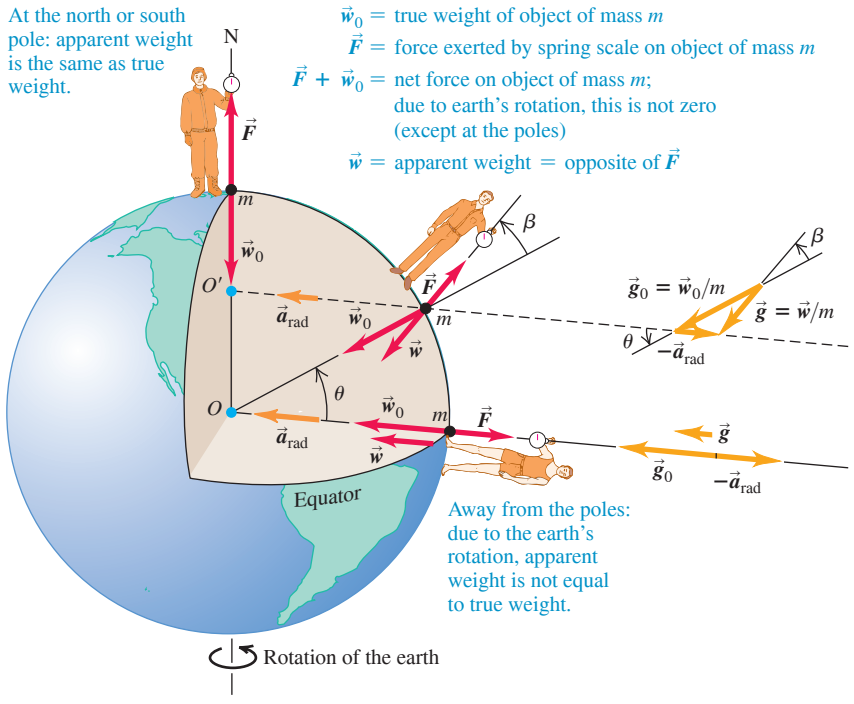
If we assume that the earth is spherically symmetric, then the true weight $\vec{w}_0$ has magnitude Gm_Em/R_E^2, where m_E and R_E are the mass and radius of the earth. This value is the same for all points on the earth's surface. If the center of the earth can be taken as the origin of an inertial coordinate system, then the object at the north pole really *is* in equilibrium in an inertial system, and the reading on that observer's spring scale is equal to w_0. But the object at the equator is moving in a circle of radius R_E with speed v, and there must be a net inward force equal to the mass times the centripetal acceleration:

$$w_0 - F = \frac{mv^2}{R_E}$$

So the magnitude of the apparent weight (equal to the magnitude of F) is

$$w = w_0 - \frac{mv^2}{R_E} \qquad \text{(at the equator)} \tag{13.27}$$

Figure **13.26** Except at the poles, the reading for an object being weighed on a scale (the *apparent weight*) is less than the gravitational force of attraction on the object (the *true weight*). The reason is that a net force is needed to provide a centripetal acceleration as the object rotates with the earth. For clarity, the illustration greatly exaggerates the angle β between the true and apparent weight vectors.



If the earth were not rotating, the object when released would have a free-fall acceleration $g_0 = w_0/m$. Since the earth *is* rotating, the falling object's actual acceleration relative to the observer at the equator is $g = w/m$. Dividing Eq. (13.27) by m and using these relationships, we find

$$g = g_0 - \frac{v^2}{R_E} \qquad \text{(at the equator)}$$

To evaluate v^2/R_E, we note that in 86,164 s a point on the equator moves a distance equal to the earth's circumference, $2\pi R_E = 2\pi(6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m})$. (The solar day, 86,400 s, is $\frac{1}{365}$ longer than this because in one day the earth also completes $\frac{1}{365}$ of its orbit around the sun.) Thus we find

$$v = \frac{2\pi(6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m})}{86{,}164\ \text{s}} = 465\ \text{m/s}$$

$$\frac{v^2}{R_E} = \frac{(465\ \text{m/s})^2}{6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m}} = 0.0339\ \text{m/s}^2$$

So for a spherically symmetric earth the acceleration due to gravity should be about 0.03 m/s^2 less at the equator than at the poles.

At locations intermediate between the equator and the poles, the true weight $\vec{w}_0$ and the centripetal acceleration are not along the same line, and we need to write a vector equation corresponding to Eq. (13.27). From Fig. 13.26 we see that the appropriate equation is

$$\vec{w} = \vec{w}_0 - m\vec{a}_{\text{rad}} = m\vec{g}_0 - m\vec{a}_{\text{rad}} \qquad (13.28)$$

The difference in the magnitudes of g and g_0 lies between zero and 0.0339 m/s^2. As Fig. 13.26 shows, the *direction* of the apparent weight differs from the direction toward the center of the earth by a small angle β, which is 0.1° or less.

Table 13.1 gives the values of g at several locations. In addition to moderate variations with latitude, there are small variations due to elevation, differences in local density, and the earth's deviation from perfect spherical symmetry.

TABLE 13.1 Variations of g with Latitude and Elevation

Station	North Latitude	Elevation (m)	g (m/s^2)
Canal Zone	09°	0	9.78243
Jamaica	18°	0	9.78591
Bermuda	32°	0	9.79806
Denver, CO	40°	1638	9.79609
Pittsburgh, PA	40.5°	235	9.80118
Cambridge, MA	42°	0	9.80398
Greenland	70°	0	9.82534

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.7 Imagine a planet that has the same mass and radius as the earth but that makes 10 rotations during the time the earth makes one rotation. What would be the difference between the acceleration due to gravity at the planet's equator and the acceleration due to gravity at its poles? (i) 0.00339 m/s^2; (ii) 0.0339 m/s^2; (iii) 0.339 m/s^2; (iv) 3.39 m/s^2.

ANSWER **(iv)** The discussion following Eq. (13.27) shows that the difference between the acceleration due to gravity at the equator and at the poles is v^2/R_E. Since this planet has the same radius and hence the same circumference as the earth, the speed v at its equator must be 10 times the speed at the earth's equator. Hence v^2/R_E is $10^2 = 100$ times greater than for the earth, or $100(0.0339\ \text{m/s}^2) = 3.39\ \text{m/s}^2$. The acceleration due to gravity at the poles is 9.80 m/s^2, while at the equator it is dramatically less, $9.80\ \text{m/s}^2 - 3.39\ \text{m/s}^2 = 6.41\ \text{m/s}^2$. You can show that if this planet were to rotate 17.0 times faster than the earth, the acceleration due to gravity at the equator would be *zero* and loose objects would fly off the equator's surface!

13.8 BLACK HOLES

In 1916 Albert Einstein presented his general theory of relativity, which included a new concept of the nature of gravitation. In his theory, a massive object actually changes the geometry of the space around it. Other objects sense this altered geometry and respond by being attracted to the first object. The general theory of relativity is beyond our scope in this chapter, but we can look at one of its most startling predictions: the existence of **black holes,**

objects whose gravitational influence is so great that nothing—not even light—can escape them. We can understand the basic idea of a black hole by using Newtonian principles.

The Escape Speed from a Star

Think first about the properties of our own sun. Its mass $M = 1.99 \times 10^{30}$ kg and radius $R = 6.96 \times 10^8$ m are much larger than those of any planet, but compared to other stars, our sun is not exceptionally massive. You can find the sun's average density ρ in the same way we found the average density of the earth in Section 13.2:

$$\rho = \frac{M}{V} = \frac{M}{\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3} = \frac{1.99 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg}}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(6.96 \times 10^8\ \text{m})^3} = 1410\ \text{kg/m}^3$$

The sun's temperatures range from 5800 K (about 5500°C or 10,000°F) at the surface up to 1.5×10^7 K (about 2.7×10^7°F) in the interior, so it surely contains no solids or liquids. Yet gravitational attraction pulls the sun's gas atoms together until the sun is, on average, 41% denser than water and about 1200 times as dense as the air we breathe.

Now think about the escape speed for an object at the surface of the sun. In Example 13.5 (Section 13.3) we found that the escape speed from the surface of a spherical mass M with radius R is $v = \sqrt{2GM/R}$. Substituting $M = \rho V = \rho\left(\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3\right)$ into the expression for escape speed gives

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2GM}{R}} = \sqrt{\frac{8\pi G\rho}{3}}R \tag{13.29}$$

Using either form of this equation, you can show that the escape speed for an object at the surface of our sun is $v = 6.18 \times 10^5$ m/s (about 2.2 million km/h). This value, roughly $\frac{1}{500}$ the speed of light in vacuum, is independent of the mass of the escaping object; it depends on only the mass and radius (or average density and radius) of the sun.

Now consider various stars with the same average density ρ and different radii R. Equation (13.29) shows that for a given value of density ρ, the escape speed v is directly proportional to R. In 1783 the Rev. John Michell noted that if an object with the same average density as the sun had about 500 times the radius of the sun, its escape speed would be greater than the speed of light in vacuum, c. With his statement that "all light emitted from such a body would be made to return towards it," Michell became the first person to suggest the existence of what we now call a black hole.

Black Holes, the Schwarzschild Radius, and the Event Horizon

The first expression for escape speed in Eq. (13.29) suggests that an object of mass M will act as a black hole if its radius R is less than or equal to a certain critical radius. How can we determine this critical radius? You might think that you can find the answer by simply setting $v = c$ in Eq. (13.29). As a matter of fact, this does give the correct result, but only because of two compensating errors. The kinetic energy of light is *not* $mc^2/2$, and the gravitational potential energy near a black hole is *not* given by Eq. (13.9). In 1916, Karl Schwarzschild used Einstein's general theory of relativity to derive an expression for the critical radius R_S, now called the **Schwarzschild radius.** The result turns out to be the same as though we had set $v = c$ in Eq. (13.29), so

$$c = \sqrt{\frac{2GM}{R_S}}$$

Solving for the Schwarzschild radius R_S, we find

Schwarzschild radius of a black hole

$$R_S = \frac{2GM}{c^2}$$

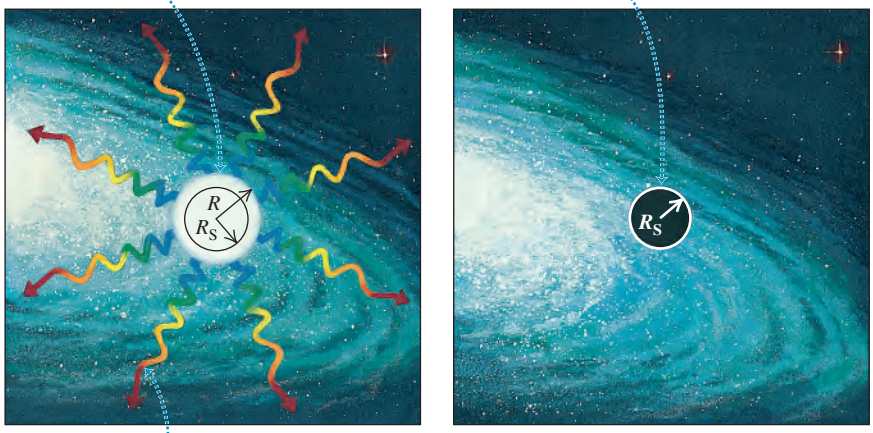
G: Gravitational constant; M: Mass of black hole; c: Speed of light in vacuum

(13.30)

Figure **13.27** (a) An object with a radius R greater than the Schwarzschild radius R_S. (b) If the object collapses to a radius smaller than R_S, it is a black hole with an escape speed greater than the speed of light. The surface of the sphere of radius R_S is called the event horizon of the black hole.

(a) When the radius R of an object is greater than the Schwarzschild radius R_S, light can escape from the surface of the object.

(b) If all the mass of the object lies inside radius R_S, the object is a black hole: No light can escape from it.



Gravity acting on the escaping light "red shifts" it to longer wavelengths.

If a spherical, nonrotating object with mass M has a radius less than R_S, then *nothing* (not even light) can escape from the surface of the object, and the object is a black hole (**Fig. 13.27**). In this case, any other object within a distance R_S of the center of the black hole is trapped by the gravitational attraction of the black hole and cannot escape from it.

The surface of the sphere with radius R_S surrounding a black hole is called the **event horizon:** Since light can't escape from within that sphere, we can't see events occurring inside. All that an observer outside the event horizon can know about a black hole is its mass (from its gravitational effects on other objects), its electric charge (from the electric forces it exerts on other charged objects), and its angular momentum (because a rotating black hole tends to drag space—and everything in that space—around with it). All other information about the object is irretrievably lost when it collapses inside its event horizon.

EXAMPLE 13.11 Black hole calculations

Astrophysical theory suggests that a burned-out star whose mass is at least three solar masses will collapse under its own gravity to form a black hole. If it does, what is the radius of its event horizon?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE The radius in question is the Schwarzschild radius. We use Eq. (13.30) with a value of M equal to three solar masses, or $M = 3(1.99 \times 10^{30}\,\text{kg}) = 6.0 \times 10^{30}\,\text{kg}$:

$$R_S = \frac{2GM}{c^2} = \frac{2(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(6.0 \times 10^{30}\,\text{kg})}{(3.00 \times 10^8\,\text{m/s})^2}$$

$$= 8.9 \times 10^3\,\text{m} = 8.9\,\text{km}$$

EVALUATE The average density of such an object is

$$\rho = \frac{M}{\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3} = \frac{6.0 \times 10^{30}\,\text{kg}}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(8.9 \times 10^3\,\text{m})^3} = 2.0 \times 10^{18}\,\text{kg/m}^3$$

This is about 10^{15} times as great as the density of familiar matter on earth and is comparable to the densities of atomic nuclei. In fact, once the object collapses to a radius of R_S, nothing can prevent it from collapsing further. All of the mass ends up being crushed down to a single point called a *singularity* at the center of the event horizon. This point has zero volume and so has *infinite* density.

KEYCONCEPT The event horizon of a black hole has a radius of R_S, the Schwarzschild radius, which is proportional to the mass of the black hole. Nothing can escape from inside the event horizon.

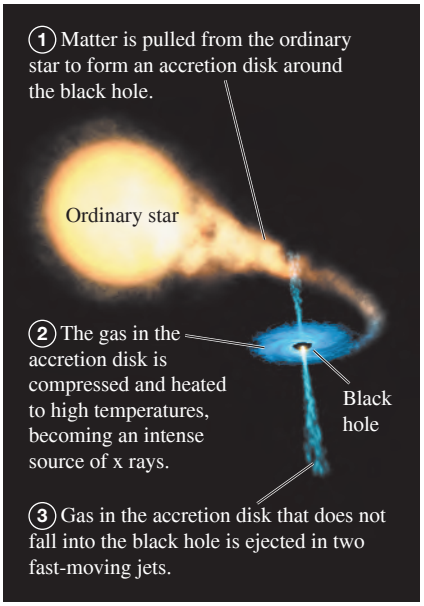
A Visit to a Black Hole

At points far from a black hole, its gravitational effects are the same as those of any normal object with the same mass. If the sun collapsed to form a black hole, the orbits of the planets would be unaffected. But things get dramatically different close to the black hole. If you decided to become a martyr for science and jump into a black hole, the friends you left behind would notice several odd effects as you moved toward the event horizon, most of them associated with effects of general relativity.

If you carried a radio transmitter to send back your comments on what was happening, your friends would have to retune their receiver continuously to lower and lower frequencies, an effect called the *gravitational red shift*. Consistent with this shift, they would observe that your clocks (electronic or biological) would appear to run more and more slowly, an effect called *time dilation*. In fact, during their lifetimes they would never see you make it to the event horizon.

In your frame of reference, you would make it to the event horizon in a rather short time but in a rather disquieting way. As you fell feet first into the black hole, the gravitational pull on your feet would be greater than that on your head, which would be slightly farther away from the black hole. The *differences* in gravitational force on different parts of your body would be great enough to stretch you along the direction toward the black hole and compress you perpendicular to it. These effects (called *tidal forces*) would rip you to atoms, and then rip your atoms apart, before you reached the event horizon.

Figure **13.28** In a *binary* star system, two stars orbit each other; in the special case shown here, one of the stars is a black hole. The black hole itself cannot be seen, but the x rays from its accretion disk can be detected.



Detecting Black Holes

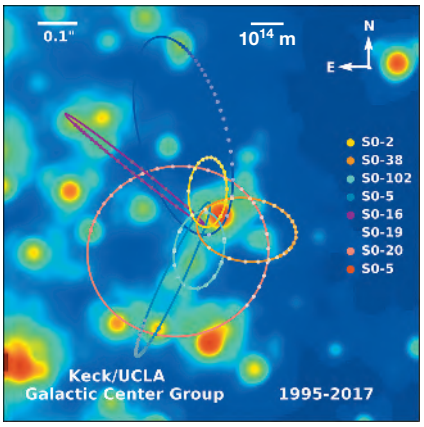
If light cannot escape from a black hole and if black holes are as small as Example 13.11 suggests, how can we know that such things exist? The answer is that any gas or dust near the black hole tends to be pulled into an *accretion disk* that swirls around and into the black hole, rather like a whirlpool (**Fig. 13.28**). Friction within the accretion disk's gas causes it to lose mechanical energy and spiral into the black hole; as it moves inward, it is compressed together. This causes heating of the gas, just as air compressed in a bicycle pump gets hotter. Temperatures in excess of 10^6 K can occur in the accretion disk, so hot that the disk emits not just visible light (as do objects that are "red-hot" or "white-hot") but x rays. Astronomers look for these x rays (emitted by the gas material *before* it crosses the event horizon) to signal the presence of a black hole. Several promising candidates have been found, and astronomers now express considerable confidence in the existence of black holes.

Black holes in binary star systems like the one depicted in Fig. 13.28 have masses a few times greater than the sun's mass. There is also mounting evidence for the existence of much larger *supermassive black holes*. One example lies at the center of our Milky Way galaxy, some 26,000 light-years from earth in the direction of the constellation Sagittarius. High-resolution images of the galactic center reveal stars moving at speeds greater than 1500 km/s about an unseen object that lies at the position of a source of radio waves called Sgr A* (**Fig. 13.29**). By analyzing these motions, astronomers can infer the period T and semi-major axis a of each star's orbit. The mass m_X of the unseen object can be calculated from Kepler's third law in the form given in Eq. (13.17), with the mass of the sun m_S replaced by m_X:

$$T = \frac{2\pi a^{3/2}}{\sqrt{Gm_X}} \qquad \text{so} \qquad m_X = \frac{4\pi^2 a^3}{GT^2}$$

The conclusion is that the mysterious dark object at the galactic center has a mass of 8.2×10^{36} kg, or 4.1 *million* times the mass of the sun. Yet observations with radio telescopes show that it has a radius no more than 4.4×10^{10} m, about one-third of the distance from the earth to the sun. These observations suggest that this massive, compact object is a black hole with a Schwarzschild radius of 1.1×10^{10} m. Astronomers hope to improve the resolution of their observations so that they can actually see the event horizon of this black hole.

Figure **13.29** This false-color image shows the motions of stars at the center of our galaxy over a 17-year period. Analysis of these orbits by using Kepler's third law indicates that the stars are moving about an unseen object that is some 4.1×10^6 times the mass of the sun. The scale bar indicates a length of 10^{14} m (670 times the distance from the earth to the sun).



Additional evidence for the existence of black holes has come from observations of *gravitational radiation*. Einstein's general theory of relativity, which we'll discuss in Chapter 37, predicts that space itself is curved by the presence of massive objects like a planet, star, or black hole. If a massive object accelerates in a certain manner, it produces ripples in the curvature of space that radiate outward from the object. The disturbances caused by such gravitational radiation are incredibly feeble, but can be measured with sensitive detectors if the objects that produce them are very massive and have tremendous accelerations. This can happen when two massive black holes are in close orbits around each other. Each black hole has an acceleration as it moves around its curved orbit, so it emits gravitational radiation that carries away energy. This makes the orbits of the black holes smaller, so they move faster and emit gravitational radiation at an ever faster rate. The orbits keep shrinking until the two black holes finally merge. Since 2015 scientists have detected the gravitational radiation from several such black hole mergers. From the data, they conclude that the merging black holes have masses from 7 to 36 times the mass of the sun. (Rainer Weiss, Kip Thorne, and Barry Barish were awarded the 2017 Nobel Prize in Physics for their contributions to these discoveries.)

Other lines of research suggest that even larger black holes, in excess of 10^9 times the mass of the sun, lie at the centers of other galaxies. Observational and theoretical studies of black holes of all sizes continue to be an exciting area of research in both physics and astronomy.

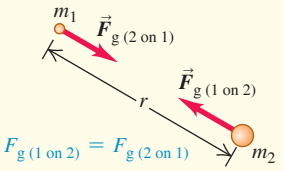
TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 13.8 If the sun somehow collapsed to form a black hole, what effect would this event have on the orbit of the earth? The orbit would (i) shrink; (ii) expand; (iii) remain the same size.

ANSWER **(iii)** If the sun collapsed into a black hole (which, according to our understanding of stars, it cannot do), the sun would have a much smaller radius but the same mass. The sun's gravitational force on the earth doesn't depend on the sun's radius, so the earth's orbit would be unaffected.

CHAPTER 13 SUMMARY

Newton's law of gravitation: *Any* two particles with masses m_1 and m_2, a distance r apart, attract each other with forces inversely proportional to r^2. These forces form an action–reaction pair and obey Newton's third law. When two or more objects exert gravitational forces on a particular object, the total gravitational force on that individual object is the vector sum of the forces exerted by the other objects. The gravitational interaction between spherical mass distributions, such as planets or stars, is the same as if all the mass of each distribution were concentrated at the center. (See Examples 13.1–13.3 and 13.10.)

$$F_g = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2} \qquad (13.1)$$



Gravitational force, weight, and gravitational potential energy: The weight w of an object is the total gravitational force exerted on it by all other objects in the universe. Near the surface of the earth (mass m_E and radius R_E), the weight is essentially equal to the gravitational force of the earth alone. The gravitational potential energy U of two masses m and m_E separated by a distance r is inversely proportional to r. The potential energy is never positive; it is zero only when the two objects are infinitely far apart. (See Examples 13.4 and 13.5.)

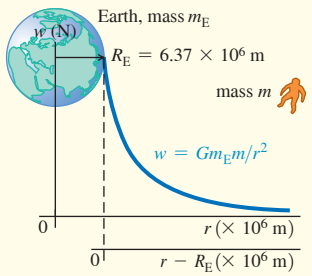
$$w = F_g = \frac{Gm_Em}{R_E^2} \qquad (13.3)$$

(weight at earth's surface)

$$g = \frac{Gm_E}{R_E^2} \qquad (13.4)$$

(acceleration due to gravity at earth's surface)

$$U = -\frac{Gm_Em}{r} \qquad (13.9)$$



Continued

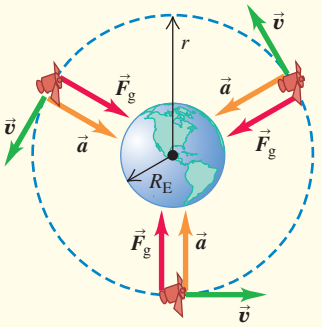
Orbits: When a satellite moves in a circular orbit, the centripetal acceleration is provided by the gravitational attraction of the earth. Kepler's three laws describe the more general case: an elliptical orbit of a planet around the sun or a satellite around a planet. (See Examples 13.6–13.9.)

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{Gm_E}{r}} \qquad (13.10)$$

(speed in circular orbit)

$$T = \frac{2\pi r}{v} = 2\pi r\sqrt{\frac{r}{Gm_E}} = \frac{2\pi r^{3/2}}{\sqrt{Gm_E}}$$

(period in circular orbit) (13.12)



Black holes: If a nonrotating spherical mass distribution with total mass M has a radius less than its Schwarzschild radius R_S, it is called a black hole. The gravitational interaction prevents anything, including light, from escaping from within a sphere with radius R_S. (See Example 13.11.)

$$R_S = \frac{2GM}{c^2} \qquad (13.30)$$

(Schwarzschild radius)

If all of the object is inside its Schwarzschild radius $R_S = 2GM/c^2$, the object is a black hole.

Chapter 13 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 13.5 (Section 13.3) before attempting these problems.

VP13.5.1 The *New Horizons* spacecraft (mass 478 kg) was launched from earth in 2006 and flew past Pluto in 2015. What minimum amount of work has to be done on a spacecraft of this mass to send it from the earth's surface to infinitely far away from the earth? Neglect air resistance and the gravitational effects of the sun, moon, and other planets.

VP13.5.2 A piece of spacecraft debris initially at rest falls to the earth's surface from a height above the earth equal to one-half of the earth's radius. Find the speed at which the piece of debris hits the surface. Neglect air resistance and the gravitational pull of the moon.

VP13.5.3 An astronaut on Mars (mass 6.42×10^{23} kg, radius 3.39×10^6 m) launches a probe straight upward from the surface at 3.00×10^3 m/s. What is the maximum height above the surface that the probe reaches? Neglect air resistance and the gravitational pull of the two small moons of Mars.

VP13.5.4 In order to rendezvous with an asteroid passing close to the earth, a spacecraft must be moving at 8.50×10^3 m/s relative to the earth at a distance of 2.50×10^8 m from the center of the earth. At what speed must this spacecraft be launched from the earth's surface? Neglect air resistance and the gravitational pull of the moon.

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 13.6 (Section 13.4) before attempting these problems.

VP13.6.1 You wish to place a spacecraft in a circular orbit around the earth so that its orbital speed will be 4.00×10^3 m/s. What are this orbit's (a) radius, (b) altitude above the earth's surface, and (c) period (in hours)?

VP13.6.2 You are designing a spacecraft intended to monitor a human expedition to Mars (mass 6.42×10^{23} kg, radius 3.39×10^6 m). This spacecraft will orbit around the Martian equator with an orbital period of 24.66 h, the same as the rotation period of Mars, so that it will always be above the same point on the equator. (a) What must be the radius of the orbit? (b) What will be the speed of the spacecraft in its orbit?

VP13.6.3 A spacecraft of mass 1.00×10^3 kg orbits the sun (mass 1.99×10^{30} kg) in a circular orbit of radius 1.50×10^{11} m (equal to the average distance from the sun to the earth). You wish to move the spacecraft into a smaller circular orbit around the sun of radius 1.08×10^{11} m (equal to the average distance from the sun to Venus). In doing this, what will be the changes in (a) the spacecraft's kinetic energy, (b) the gravitational potential energy of the sun–spacecraft system, and (c) the total mechanical energy of the sun–spacecraft system? Neglect the gravitational pulls of the planets on the spacecraft.

VP13.6.4 A satellite of mass 1.50×10^3 kg is at point P, at an altitude of 3.50×10^6 m above the earth's surface, and traveling at 7.50×10^3 m/s. (a) If you wanted to put the satellite into a circular orbit at this altitude above the earth's surface, how much work would you have to do on it at point P? (b) If instead you wanted to make the satellite escape the earth, how much work would you have to do on it at point P?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 13.7, 13.8, and 13.9 (Section 13.5) before attempting these problems.

VP13.9.1 Some comets are in highly elongated orbits that come very close to the sun at perihelion. The distance from one such comet to the center of the sun is 6.00×10^9 m at perihelion and 3.00×10^{12} m at aphelion. For this comet's orbit, find (a) the semi-major axis, (b) the eccentricity, and (c) the period (in years).

VP13.9.2 The orbit of a certain asteroid around the sun has period 7.85 y and eccentricity 0.250. Find (a) the semi-major axis and the distances from the sun to the asteroid at (b) perihelion and (c) aphelion.

VP13.9.3 The minor planet (33340) 1998 VG_{44} makes exactly two orbits of the sun during the time that Neptune makes three orbits. The eccentricity of the orbit of this minor planet is 0.25, and the orbit radius of Neptune is 4.5×10^{12} m. (a) Find the semi-major axis of this minor planet. (b) Find the distance between the sun and the minor planet at perihelion. At perihelion, is this minor planet inside or outside the orbit of Neptune?

VP13.9.4 In 2017 astronomers discovered a planet orbiting the star HATS-43. The orbit of the planet around HATS-43 has semi-major axis 7.41×10^9 m, eccentricity 0.173, and period 4.39 days. Find (a) the distance between HATS-43 and the planet at its closest approach and (b) the mass of HATS-43. (For comparison, the distance between the sun and Mercury at its closest approach is 4.60×10^{10} m and the mass of the sun is 1.99×10^{30} kg.)

BRIDGING PROBLEM Speeds in an Elliptical Orbit

A comet orbits the sun (mass m_S) in an elliptical orbit of semi-major axis a and eccentricity e. (a) Find expressions for the speeds of the comet at perihelion and aphelion. (b) Evaluate these expressions for Comet Halley (see Example 13.9), and find the kinetic energy, gravitational potential energy, and total mechanical energy for this comet at perihelion and aphelion. Take the mass of Comet Halley to be 2.2×10^{14} kg.

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Sketch the situation; show all relevant dimensions. Label the perihelion and aphelion. (See Figure 13.18.)
2. List the unknown quantities, and identify the target variables.
3. Just as for a satellite orbiting the earth, the total mechanical energy is conserved for a comet orbiting the sun. (Why?) What other quantity is conserved as the comet moves in its orbit? (*Hint:* See Section 13.5.)

EXECUTE

4. You'll need at least two equations that involve the two unknown speeds, and you'll need expressions for the sun–comet distances at perihelion and aphelion. (*Hint:* See Fig. 13.18.)
5. Solve the equations for your target variables. Compare your expressions: Which speed is lower? Does this make sense?
6. Use your expressions from step 5 to find the perihelion and aphelion speeds for Comet Halley. (*Hint:* See back of the book.)
7. Use your results from step 6 to find the kinetic energy K, gravitational potential energy U, and total mechanical energy E for Comet Halley at perihelion and aphelion.

EVALUATE

8. Check whether your results from part (a) make sense for the special case of a circular orbit ($e = 0$).
9. In part (b), how do your calculated values of E at perihelion and aphelion compare? Does this make sense? What does it mean that E is negative?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q13.1 A student wrote: "The only reason an apple falls downward to meet the earth instead of the earth rising upward to meet the apple is that the earth is much more massive and so exerts a much greater pull." Please comment.

Q13.2 If all planets had the same average density, how would the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of a planet depend on its radius?

Q13.3 Is a kilogram of butter on Earth the same amount as a kilogram of butter on Mars? Is the weight of a kilogram of butter on Mars the same as on Earth? Explain.

Q13.4 Example 13.2 (Section 13.1) shows that the acceleration of each sphere caused by the gravitational force is inversely proportional to the mass of that sphere. So why does the force of gravity give all masses the same acceleration when they are dropped near the surface of the earth?

Q13.5 When will you attract the sun more: today at noon, or tonight at midnight? Explain.

Q13.6 Since the moon is constantly attracted toward the earth by the gravitational interaction, why doesn't it crash into the earth?

Q13.7 A spaceship makes a circular orbit with period T around a star. If it were to orbit, at the same distance, a star with three times the mass of the original star, would the new period (in terms of T) be (a) $3T$, (b) $T\sqrt{3}$, (c) T, (d) $T/\sqrt{3}$, or (e) $T/3$?

Q13.8 A planet makes a circular orbit with period T around a star. If the planet were to orbit at the same distance around this star, but the planet had three times as much mass, what would the new period (in terms of T) be: (a) $3T$, (b) $T\sqrt{3}$, (c) T, (d) $T/\sqrt{3}$, or (e) $T/3$?

Q13.9 The sun pulls on the moon with a force that is more than twice the magnitude of the force with which the earth attracts the moon. Why, then, doesn't the sun take the moon away from the earth?

Q13.10 Which takes more fuel: a voyage from the earth to the moon or from the moon to the earth? Explain.

Q13.11 A planet is moving at constant speed in a circular orbit around a star. In one complete orbit, what is the net amount of work done on the planet by the star's gravitational force: positive, negative, or zero? What if the planet's orbit is an ellipse, so that the speed is not constant? Explain your answers.

Q13.12 Does the escape speed for an object at the earth's surface depend on the direction in which it is launched? Explain. Does your answer depend on whether or not you include the effects of air resistance?

Q13.13 If a projectile is fired straight up from the earth's surface, what would happen if the total mechanical energy (kinetic plus potential) is (a) less than zero, and (b) greater than zero? In each case, ignore air resistance and the gravitational effects of the sun, the moon, and the other planets.

Q13.14 Discuss whether this statement is correct: "In the absence of air resistance, the trajectory of a projectile thrown near the earth's surface is an *ellipse,* not a parabola."

Q13.15 The earth is closer to the sun in November than in May. In which of these months does it move faster in its orbit? Explain why.

Q13.16 A communications firm wants to place a satellite in orbit so that it is always directly above the earth's 45th parallel (latitude 45° north). This means that the plane of the orbit will not pass through the center of the earth. Is such an orbit possible? Why or why not?

Q13.17 At what point in an elliptical orbit is the acceleration maximum? At what point is it minimum? Justify your answers.

Q13.18 What would Kepler's third law be for circular orbits if an amendment to Newton's law of gravitation made the gravitational force inversely proportional to r^3? Would this change affect Kepler's other two laws? Explain.

Q13.19 In the elliptical orbit of Comet Halley shown in Fig. 13.21a, the sun's gravity is responsible for making the comet fall inward from aphelion to perihelion. But what is responsible for making the comet move from perihelion back outward to aphelion?

Q13.20 Many people believe that orbiting astronauts feel weightless because they are "beyond the pull of the earth's gravity." How far from the earth would a spacecraft have to travel to be truly beyond the earth's gravitational influence? If a spacecraft were really unaffected by the earth's gravity, would it remain in orbit? Explain. What is the real reason astronauts in orbit feel weightless?

Q13.21 As part of their training before going into orbit, astronauts ride in an airliner that is flown along the same parabolic trajectory as a freely falling projectile. Explain why this gives the same experience of apparent weightlessness as being in orbit.

EXERCISES

Section 13.1 Newton's Law of Gravitation

13.1 • What is the ratio of the gravitational pull of the sun on the moon to that of the earth on the moon? (Assume the distance of the moon from the sun can be approximated by the distance of the earth from the sun.) Use the data at the back of the book. Is it more accurate to say that the moon orbits the earth, or that the moon orbits the sun?

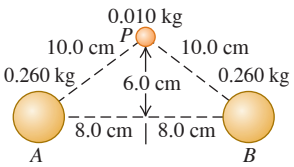
13.2 • You are sitting in the front row in your physics class. Estimate the gravitational force that the instructor exerts on you. Identify the assumptions and approximations you made to reach your answer. How does the magnitude that you estimate for this force compare with the gravity force exerted on you by the earth?

13.3 • **Rendezvous in Space!** A couple of astronauts agree to rendezvous in space after hours. Their plan is to let gravity bring them together. One of them has a mass of 65 kg and the other a mass of 72 kg, and they start from rest 20.0 m apart. (a) Make a free-body diagram of each astronaut, and use it to find his or her initial acceleration. As a rough approximation, we can model the astronauts as uniform spheres. (b) If the astronauts' acceleration remained constant, how many days would they have to wait before reaching each other? (Careful! They *both* have acceleration toward each other.) (c) Would their acceleration, in fact, remain constant? If not, would it increase or decrease? Why?

13.4 •• Two uniform spheres, each with mass M and radius R, touch each other. What is the magnitude of their gravitational force of attraction?

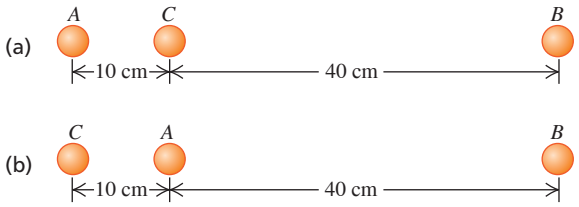
13.5 • Two uniform spheres, each of mass 0.260 kg, are fixed at points A and B (**Fig. E13.5**). Find the magnitude and direction of the initial acceleration of a uniform sphere with mass 0.010 kg if released from rest at point P and acted on only by forces of gravitational attraction of the spheres at A and B.

Figure **E13.5**



13.6 •• Find the magnitude and direction of the net gravitational force on mass A due to masses B and C in **Fig. E13.6.** Each mass is 2.00 kg.

Figure **E13.6**



13.7 • A typical adult human has a mass of about 70 kg. (a) What force does a full moon exert on such a human when it is directly overhead with its center 378,000 km away? (b) Compare this force with the force exerted on the human by the earth.

13.8 •• An 8.00 kg point mass and a 12.0 kg point mass are held in place 50.0 cm apart. A particle of mass m is released from a point between the two masses 20.0 cm from the 8.00 kg mass along the line connecting the two fixed masses. Find the magnitude and direction of the acceleration of the particle.

13.9 •• A particle of mass $3m$ is located 2.00 m from a particle of mass m. (a) Where should you put a third mass M so that the net gravitational force on M due to the two masses is exactly zero? (b) Is the equilibrium of M at this point stable or unstable (i) for points along the line connecting m and $3m$, and (ii) for points along the line passing through M and perpendicular to the line connecting m and $3m$?

13.10 •• The point masses m and $2m$ lie along the x-axis, with m at the origin and $2m$ at $x = L$. A third point mass M is moved along the x-axis. (a) At what point is the net gravitational force on M due to the other two masses equal to zero? (b) Sketch the x-component of the net force on M due to m and $2m$, taking quantities to the right as positive. Include the regions $x < 0$, $0 < x < L$, and $x > L$. Be especially careful to show the behavior of the graph on either side of $x = 0$ and $x = L$.

Section 13.2 Weight

13.11 •• At what distance above the surface of the earth is the acceleration due to the earth's gravity 0.755 m/s^2 if the acceleration due to gravity at the surface has magnitude 9.80 m/s^2?

13.12 • The mass of Venus is 81.5% that of the earth, and its radius is 94.9% that of the earth. (a) Compute the acceleration due to gravity on the surface of Venus from these data. (b) If a rock weighs 75.0 N on earth, what would it weigh at the surface of Venus?

13.13 • Titania, the largest moon of the planet Uranus, has $\frac{1}{8}$ the radius of the earth and $\frac{1}{1700}$ the mass of the earth. (a) What is the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of Titania? (b) What is the average density of Titania? (This is less than the density of rock, which is one piece of evidence that Titania is made primarily of ice.)

13.14 • Rhea, one of Saturn's moons, has a radius of 764 km and an acceleration due to gravity of 0.265 m/s^2 at its surface. Calculate its mass and average density.

13.15 • A science-fiction author asks for your help. He wants to write about a newly discovered spherically symmetric planet that has the same average density as the earth but with a 25% larger radius. (a) What is g on this planet? (b) If he decides to have his explorers weigh the same on this planet as on earth, how should he change its average density?

Section 13.3 Gravitational Potential Energy

13.16 •• **Volcanoes on Io.** Jupiter's moon Io has active volcanoes (in fact, it is the most volcanically active object in the solar system) that eject material as high as 500 km (or even higher) above the surface. Io has a mass of 8.93×10^{22} kg and a radius of 1821 km. For this calculation, ignore any variation in gravity over the 500 km range of the debris. How high would this material go on earth if it were ejected with the same speed as on Io?

13.17 • Use the results of Example 13.5 (Section 13.3) to calculate the escape speed for a spacecraft (a) from the surface of Mars and (b) from the surface of Jupiter. Use the data at the back of the book. (c) Why is the escape speed for a spacecraft independent of the spacecraft's mass?

13.18 •• Ten days after it was launched toward Mars in December 1998, the *Mars Climate Orbiter* spacecraft (mass 629 kg) was 2.87×10^6 km from the earth and traveling at 1.20×10^4 km/h relative to the earth. At this time, what were (a) the spacecraft's kinetic energy relative to the earth and (b) the potential energy of the earth–spacecraft system?

13.19 •• A planet orbiting a distant star has radius 3.24×10^6 m. The escape speed for an object launched from this planet's surface is 7.65×10^3 m/s. What is the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of the planet?

13.20 •• Estimate the cruising altitude of an airplane during a transatlantic flight. If you are a passenger in the plane when it is at this altitude, what is the percentage change in the gravitational energy of the system of you and the earth compared to when you were in the airport waiting to board the plane? For which of your two locations is the gravitational potential energy greater? (*Hint:* Use the power series for $(1 + x)^n$ given in Appendix D.)

13.21 • You are standing on the surface of a planet that has spherical symmetry and a radius of 5.00×10^6 m. The gravitational potential energy U of the system composed of you and the planet is $-1.20 \times 10^{+9}$ J if we choose U to be zero when you are very far from the planet. What is the magnitude of the gravity force that the planet exerts on you when you are standing on its surface?

Section 13.4 The Motion of Satellites

13.22 • A satellite of mass m is in a circular orbit around a spherical planet of mass m_p. The kinetic energy of the satellite is K_A when its orbit radius is r_A. In terms of r_A, what must the orbit radius be in order for the kinetic energy of the satellite to be $2K_A$?

13.23 • Let the gravitational potential energy of the earth–satellite system be zero in the limit that the orbit radius is very large, so the total mechanical energy of the satellite–earth system is given by Eq. (13.13). If the kinetic energy of the satellite is 2.00×10^6 J, what are the total energy and the gravitational potential energy of the satellite–earth system?

13.24 • An earth satellite moves in a circular orbit with an orbital speed of 6200 m/s. Find (a) the time of one revolution of the satellite; (b) the radial acceleration of the satellite in its orbit.

13.25 • For a satellite to be in a circular orbit 890 km above the surface of the earth, (a) what orbital speed must it be given, and (b) what is the period of the orbit (in hours)?

13.26 •• **Aura Mission.** On July 15, 2004 NASA launched the *Aura* spacecraft to study the earth's climate and atmosphere. This satellite was injected into an orbit 705 km above the earth's surface. Assume a circular orbit. (a) How many hours does it take this satellite to make one orbit? (b) How fast (in km/s) is the *Aura* spacecraft moving?

13.27 •• Two satellites are in circular orbits around a planet that has radius 9.00×10^6 m. One satellite has mass 89.0 kg, orbital radius 6.80×10^7 m, and orbital speed 4800 m/s. The second satellite has mass 83.0 kg and orbital radius 3.70×10^7 m. What is the orbital speed of this second satellite?

13.28 •• **International Space Station.** In its orbit each day, the International Space Station makes 15.65 revolutions around the earth. Assuming a circular orbit, how high is this satellite above the surface of the earth?

13.29 • Deimos, a moon of Mars, is about 12 km in diameter with mass 1.5×10^{15} kg. Suppose you are stranded alone on Deimos and want to play a one-person game of baseball. You would be the pitcher, and you would be the batter! (a) With what speed would you have to throw a baseball so that it would go into a circular orbit just above the surface and return to you so you could hit it? Do you think you could actually throw it at this speed? (b) How long (in hours) after throwing the ball should you be ready to hit it? Would this be an action-packed baseball game?

Section 13.5 Kepler's Laws and the Motion of Planets

13.30 •• **Hot Jupiters.** In 2004 astronomers reported the discovery of a large Jupiter-sized planet orbiting very close to the star HD 179949 (hence the term "hot Jupiter"). The orbit was just $\frac{1}{9}$ the distance of Mercury from our sun, and it takes the planet only 3.09 days to make one orbit (assumed to be circular). (a) What is the mass of the star? Express your answer in kilograms and as a multiple of our sun's mass. (b) How fast (in km/s) is this planet moving?

13.31 •• The star Rho^1 Cancri is 57 light-years from the earth and has a mass 0.85 times that of our sun. A planet has been detected in a circular orbit around Rho^1 Cancri with an orbital radius equal to 0.11 times the radius of the earth's orbit around the sun. What are (a) the orbital speed and (b) the orbital period of the planet of Rho^1 Cancri?

13.32 •• In March 2006, two small satellites were discovered orbiting Pluto, one at a distance of 48,000 km and the other at 64,000 km. Pluto already was known to have a large satellite Charon, orbiting at 19,600 km with an orbital period of 6.39 days. Assuming that the satellites do not affect each other, find the orbital periods of the two small satellites *without* using the mass of Pluto.

13.33 • The dwarf planet Pluto has an elliptical orbit with a semi-major axis of 5.91×10^{12} m and eccentricity 0.249. (a) Calculate Pluto's orbital period. Express your answer in seconds and in earth years. (b) During Pluto's orbit around the sun, what are its closest and farthest distances from the sun?

13.34 •• **Planets Beyond the Solar System.** On October 15, 2001, a planet was discovered orbiting around the star HD 68988. Its orbital distance was measured to be 10.5 million kilometers from the center of the star, and its orbital period was estimated at 6.3 days. What is the mass of HD 68988? Express your answer in kilograms and in terms of our sun's mass. (Consult the data at the back of the book.)

Section 13.6 Spherical Mass Distributions

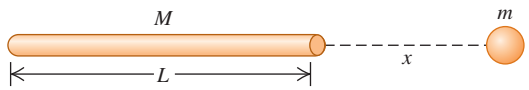
13.35 •• A thin spherical shell has radius $r_A = 4.00$ m and mass $m_A = 20.0$ kg. It is concentric with a second thin spherical shell that has radius $r_B = 6.00$ m and mass $m_B = 40.0$ kg. What is the net gravitational force that the two shells exert on a point mass of 0.0200 kg that is a distance r from the common center of the two shells, for (a) $r = 2.00$ m (inside both shells), (b) $r = 5.00$ m (in the space between the two shells), and (c) $r = 8.00$ m (outside both shells)?

13.36 • A uniform, spherical, 2000.0 kg shell has a radius of 5.00 m. (a) Find the gravitational force this shell exerts on a 2.20 kg point mass placed at the following distances from the center of the shell: (i) 5.02 m, (ii) 4.99 m, (iii) 2.72 m. (b) Sketch a qualitative graph of the magnitude of the gravitational force this sphere exerts on a point mass m as a function of the distance r of m from the center of the sphere. Include the region from $r = 0$ to $r \to \infty$.

13.37 •• A uniform, solid, 1000.0 kg sphere has a radius of 5.00 m. (a) Find the gravitational force this sphere exerts on a 2.00 kg point mass placed at the following distances from the center of the sphere: (i) 5.01 m, (ii) 2.50 m. (b) Sketch a qualitative graph of the magnitude of the gravitational force this sphere exerts on a point mass m as a function of the distance r of m from the center of the sphere. Include the region from $r = 0$ to $r \to \infty$.

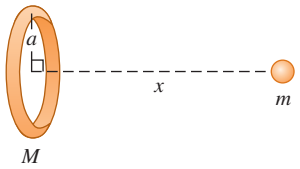
13.38 • **CALC** A thin, uniform rod has length L and mass M. A small uniform sphere of mass m is placed a distance x from one end of the rod, along the axis of the rod (**Fig. E13.38**). (a) Calculate the gravitational potential energy of the rod–sphere system. Take the potential energy to be zero when the rod and sphere are infinitely far apart. Show that your answer reduces to the expected result when x is much larger than L. (*Hint:* Use the power series expansion for $\ln(1 + x)$ given in Appendix D.) (b) Use $F_x = -dU/dx$ to find the magnitude and direction of the gravitational force exerted on the sphere by the rod (see Section 7.4). Show that your answer reduces to the expected result when x is much larger than L.

Figure **E13.38**



13.39 • **CALC** Consider the ring-shaped object in **Fig. E13.39**. A particle with mass m is placed a distance x from the center of the ring, along the line through the center of the ring and perpendicular to its plane. (a) Calculate the gravitational potential energy U of this system. Take the potential energy to be zero when the two objects are far apart. (b) Show that your answer to part (a) reduces to the expected result when x is much larger than the radius a of the ring. (c) Use $F_x = -dU/dx$ to find the magnitude and direction of the force on the particle (see Section 7.4). (d) Show that your answer to part (c) reduces to the expected result when x is much larger than a. (e) What are the values of U and F_x when $x = 0$? Explain why these results make sense.

Figure **E13.39**



13.40 • Define the gravitational field $\vec{g}$ at some point to be equal to the gravitational force $\vec{F}_g$ on a small object placed at that point divided by the mass m of the object, so $\vec{g} = \vec{F}_g/m$. A spherical shell has mass M and radius R. What is the magnitude of the gravitational field at the following distances from the center of the shell: (a) $r < R$ and (b) $r > R$?

Section 13.7 Apparent Weight and the Earth's Rotation

13.41 • The acceleration due to gravity at the north pole of Neptune is approximately $10.7\ \text{m/s}^2$. Neptune has mass 1.02×10^{26} kg and radius 2.5×10^4 km and rotates once around its axis in about 16 h. (a) What is the gravitational force on a 4.7 kg object at the north pole of Neptune? (b) What is the apparent weight of this same object at Neptune's equator? (Note that Neptune's "surface" is gaseous, not solid, so it is impossible to stand on it.)

13.42 •• **A Visit to Santa.** You decide to visit Santa Claus at the north pole to put in a good word about your splendid behavior throughout the year. While there, you notice that the elf Sneezy, when hanging from a rope, produces a tension of 395.0 N in the rope. If Sneezy hangs from a similar rope while delivering presents at the earth's equator, what will the tension in it be? (Recall that the earth is rotating about an axis through its north and south poles.) Consult the data at the back of the book and start with a free-body diagram of Sneezy at the equator.

Section 13.8 Black Holes

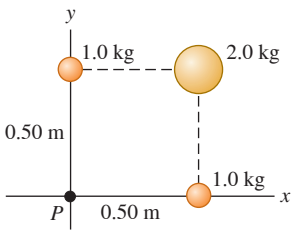
13.43 •• **At the Galaxy's Core.** Astronomers have observed a small, massive object at the center of our Milky Way galaxy (see Section 13.8). A ring of material orbits this massive object; the ring has a diameter of about 15 light-years and an orbital speed of about 240 km/s. (a) Determine the mass of the object at the center of the Milky Way galaxy. Give your answer both in kilograms and in solar masses (one solar mass is the mass of the sun). (b) Observations of stars, as well as theories of the structure of stars, suggest that it is impossible for a single star to have a mass of more than about 50 solar masses. Can this massive object be a single, ordinary star? (c) Many astronomers believe that the massive object at the center of the Milky Way galaxy is a black hole. If so, what must the Schwarzschild radius of this black hole be? Would a black hole of this size fit inside the earth's orbit around the sun?

13.44 • In 2005 astronomers announced the discovery of a large black hole in the galaxy Markarian 766 having clumps of matter orbiting around once every 27 hours and moving at 30,000 km/s. (a) How far are these clumps from the center of the black hole? (b) What is the mass of this black hole, assuming circular orbits? Express your answer in kilograms and as a multiple of our sun's mass. (c) What is the radius of its event horizon?

PROBLEMS

13.45 • Three uniform spheres are fixed at the positions shown in **Fig. P13.45**. (a) What are the magnitude and direction of the force on a 0.0150 kg particle placed at P? (b) If the spheres are in deep outer space and a 0.0150 kg particle is released from rest 300 m from the origin along a line 45° below the $-x$-axis, what will the particle's speed be when it reaches the origin?

Figure **P13.45**



13.46 ••• **CP** **Exploring Europa.** There is strong evidence that Europa, a satellite of Jupiter, has a liquid ocean beneath its icy surface. Many scientists think we should land a vehicle there to search for life. Before launching it, we would want to test such a lander under the gravity conditions at the surface of Europa. One way to do this is to put the lander at the end of a rotating arm in an orbiting earth satellite. If the arm is 4.25 m long and pivots about one end, at what angular speed (in rpm) should it spin so that the acceleration of the lander is the same as the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of Europa? The mass of Europa is 4.80×10^{22} kg and its diameter is 3120 km.

13.47 ••• **CP** An experiment is performed in deep space with two uniform spheres, one with mass 50.0 kg and the other with mass 100.0 kg. They have equal radii, $r = 0.20$ m. The spheres are released from rest with their centers 40.0 m apart. They accelerate toward each other because of their mutual gravitational attraction. You can ignore all gravitational forces other than that between the two spheres. (a) Explain why linear momentum is conserved. (b) When their centers are 20.0 m apart, find (i) the speed of each sphere and (ii) the magnitude of the relative velocity with which one sphere is approaching the other. (c) How far from the initial position of the center of the 50.0 kg sphere do the surfaces of the two spheres collide?

13.48 •• **Mission to Titan.** On December 25, 2004, the *Huygens* probe separated from the *Cassini* spacecraft orbiting Saturn and began a 22 day journey to Saturn's moon Titan, on whose surface it landed. Besides the data at the back of the book, it is useful to know that Titan is 1.22×10^6 km from the center of Saturn and has a mass of 1.35×10^{23} kg and a diameter of 5150 km. At what distance from Titan should the gravitational pull of Titan the gravitational pull of Saturn?

13.49 • **Geosynchronous Satellites.** Many satellites are moving in a circle in the earth's equatorial plane. They are at such a height above the earth's surface that they always remain above the same point. (a) Find the altitude of these satellites above the earth's surface. (Such an orbit is said to be *geosynchronous.*) (b) Explain, with a sketch, why the radio signals from these satellites cannot directly reach receivers on earth that are north of 81.3° N latitude.

13.50 •• Two spherically symmetric planets with no atmosphere have the same average density, but planet B has twice the radius of planet A. A small satellite of mass m_A has period T_A when it orbits planet A in a circular orbit that is just above the surface of the planet. A small satellite of mass m_B has period T_B when it orbits planet B in a circular orbit that is just above the surface of the planet. How does T_B compare to T_A?

13.51 ••• What is the escape speed from a 355-km-diameter asteroid with a density of 2320 kg/m^3?

13.52 ••• A landing craft with mass 1.22×10^4 kg is in a circular orbit 5.90×10^5 m above the surface of a planet. The period of the orbit is 5800 s. The astronauts in the lander measure the diameter of the planet to be 9.50×10^6 m. The lander sets down at the north pole of the planet. What is the weight of an 85.0 kg astronaut as he steps out onto the planet's surface?

13.53 •• Planet X rotates in the same manner as the earth, around an axis through its north and south poles, and is perfectly spherical. An astronaut who weighs 942.0 N on the earth weighs 920.0 N at the north pole of Planet X and only 856.0 N at its equator. The distance from the north pole to the equator is 1.883×10^4 km, measured along the surface of Planet X. (a) How long is the day on Planet X? (b) If a 4.600×10^4 kg satellite is placed in a circular orbit 2000 km above the surface of Planet X, what will be its orbital period?

13.54 ••• **CALC** Example 13.10 assumes a constant density for the earth, but Fig. 13.9 shows that this is not accurate. (a) Approximate the density graph in Fig. 13.9 by a straight line running from 13,000 kg/m^3 at $r = 0$ to 3000 kg/m^3 at $r = R_E$. Divide the earth into concentric shells of width dr and therefore volume $dV = 4\pi r^2 dr$. Integrate to find the mass enclosed as a function of the distance from the earth's center. (b) Find the expression for the magnitude of the gravitational force on a mass m at a distance r from the earth's center.

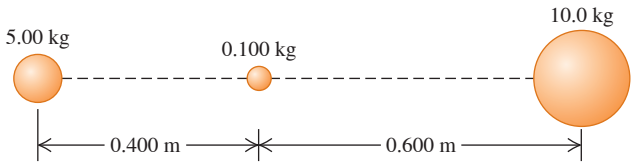
13.55 •• **CP** An astronaut, whose mission is to go where no one has gone before, lands on a spherical planet in a distant galaxy. As she stands on the surface of the planet, she releases a small rock from rest and finds that it takes the rock 0.600 s to fall 1.90 m. If the radius of the planet is 9.00×10^7 m, what is the mass of the planet?

13.56 ••• **CP** Your starship, the *Aimless Wanderer*, lands on the mysterious planet Mongo. As chief scientist-engineer, you make the following measurements: A 2.50 kg stone thrown upward from the ground at 14.0 m/s returns to the ground in 9.00 s; the circumference of Mongo at the equator is 2.00×10^5 km; and there is no appreciable atmosphere on Mongo. The starship commander, Captain Confusion, asks for the following information: (a) What is the mass of Mongo? (b) If the *Aimless Wanderer* goes into a circular orbit 30,000 km above the surface of Mongo, how many hours will it take the ship to complete one orbit?

13.57 •• **CP** You are exploring a distant planet. When your spaceship is in a circular orbit at a distance of 630 km above the planet's surface, the ship's orbital speed is 4900 m/s. By observing the planet, you determine its radius to be 4.48×10^6 m. You then land on the surface and, at a place where the ground is level, launch a small projectile with initial speed 12.6 m/s at an angle of 30.8° above the horizontal. If resistance due to the planet's atmosphere is negligible, what is the horizontal range of the projectile?

13.58 •• The 0.100 kg sphere in **Fig. P13.58** is released from rest at the position shown in the sketch, with its center 0.400 m from the center of the 5.00 kg mass. Assume that the only forces on the 0.100 kg sphere are the gravitational forces exerted by the other two spheres and that the 5.00 kg and 10.0 kg spheres are held in place at their initial positions. What is the speed of the 0.100 kg sphere when it has moved 0.400 m to the right from its initial position?

Figure **P13.58**



13.59 • The magnitude of the gravitational flux Φ_g through a surface with area A is defined such that it is equal to gA when the gravitational field $\vec{g}$ (see Exercise 13.40) is at all points on the surface constant and perpendicular to the surface. For a spherically symmetric object with radius R and mass M, this is the case for a surface that is spherical with radius r and concentric with the object. Consider the case where $r > R$. For this surface calculate the magnitude of the gravitational flux through the surface due to the gravitation field of the object. Does your answer depend on the radius r of the spherical surface? (We'll consider a similar result for the electric field in Chapter 22.)

13.60 ••• **CALC** A narrow uniform rod has length $2a$. The linear mass density of the rod is ρ, so the mass m of a length l of the rod is ρl. (a) A point mass is located a perpendicular distance r from the center of the rod. Calculate the magnitude and direction of the force that the rod exerts on the point mass. (*Hint:* Let the rod be along the y-axis with the center of the rod at the origin, and divide the rod into infinitesimal segments that have length dy and that are located at coordinate y. The mass of the segment is $dm = \rho\, dy$. Write expressions for the x- and y-components of the force on the point mass, and integrate from $-a$ to $+a$ to find the components of the total force. Use the integrals in Appendix D.) (b) What does your result become for $a \gg r$? (*Hint:* Use the power series for $(1 + x)^n$ given in Appendix D.) (c) For $a \gg r$, what is the gravitational field $\vec{g} = \vec{F}_g/m$ at a distance r from the rod? (d) Consider a cylinder of radius r and length L whose axis is along the rod. As in part (c), let the length of the rod be much greater than both the radius and length of the cylinder. Then the gravitational field is constant on the curved side of the cylinder and perpendicular to it, so the gravitational flux Φ_g through this surface is equal to gA, where $A = 2\pi rL$ is the area of the curved side of the cylinder (see Problem 13.59). Calculate this flux. Write your result in terms of the mass M of the portion of the rod that is inside the cylindrical surface. How does your result depend on the radius of the cylindrical surface?

13.61 • **Falling Hammer.** A hammer with mass m is dropped from rest from a height h above the earth's surface. This height is not necessarily small compared with the radius R_E of the earth. Ignoring air resistance, derive an expression for the speed v of the hammer when it reaches the earth's surface. Your expression should involve h, R_E, and m_E (the earth's mass).

13.62 • (a) Calculate how much work is required to launch a spacecraft of mass m from the surface of the earth (mass m_E, radius R_E) and place it in a circular *low earth orbit*—that is, an orbit whose altitude above the earth's surface is much less than R_E. (As an example, the International Space Station is in low earth orbit at an altitude of about 400 km, much less than $R_E = 6370$ km.) Ignore the kinetic energy that the spacecraft has on the ground due to the earth's rotation. (b) Calculate the minimum amount of additional work required to move the spacecraft from low earth orbit to a very great distance from the earth. Ignore the gravitational effects of the sun, the moon, and the other planets. (c) Justify the statement "In terms of energy, low earth orbit is halfway to the edge of the universe."

13.63 • **Binary Star—Equal Masses.** Two identical stars with mass M orbit around their center of mass. Each orbit is circular and has radius R, so that the two stars are always on opposite sides of the circle. (a) Find the gravitational force of one star on the other. (b) Find the orbital speed of each star and the period of the orbit. (c) How much energy would be required to separate the two stars to infinity?

13.64 •• CP **Binary Star—Different Masses.** Two stars, with masses M_1 and M_2, are in circular orbits around their center of mass. The star with mass M_1 has an orbit of radius R_1; the star with mass M_2 has an orbit of radius R_2. (a) Show that the ratio of the orbital radii of the two stars equals the reciprocal of the ratio of their masses—that is, $R_1/R_2 = M_2/M_1$. (b) Explain why the two stars have the same orbital period, and show that the period T is given by $T = 2\pi(R_1 + R_2)^{3/2}/\sqrt{G(M_1 + M_2)}$. (c) The two stars in a certain binary star system move in circular orbits. The first star, Alpha, has an orbital speed of 36.0 km/s. The second star, Beta, has an orbital speed of 12.0 km/s. The orbital period is 137 d. What are the masses of each of the two stars? (d) One of the best candidates for a black hole is found in the binary system called A0620-0090. The two objects in the binary system are an orange star, V616 Monocerotis, and a compact object believed to be a black hole (see Fig. 13.28). The orbital period of A0620-0090 is 7.75 hours, the mass of V616 Monocerotis is estimated to be 0.67 times the mass of the sun, and the mass of the black hole is estimated to be 3.8 times the mass of the sun. Assuming that the orbits are circular, find the radius of each object's orbit and the orbital speed of each object. Compare these answers to the orbital radius and orbital speed of the earth in its orbit around the sun.

13.65 ••• Comets travel around the sun in elliptical orbits with large eccentricities. If a comet has speed 2.3×10^4 m/s when at a distance of 2.9×10^{11} m from the center of the sun, what is its speed when at a distance of 5.2×10^{10} m?

13.66 • The planet Uranus has a radius of 25,360 km and a surface acceleration due to gravity of 9.0 m/s^2 at its poles. Its moon Miranda (discovered by Kuiper in 1948) is in a circular orbit about Uranus at an altitude of 104,000 km above the planet's surface. Miranda has a mass of 6.6×10^{19} kg and a radius of 236 km. (a) Calculate the mass of Uranus from the given data. (b) Calculate the magnitude of Miranda's acceleration due to its orbital motion about Uranus. (c) Calculate the acceleration due to Miranda's gravity at the surface of Miranda. (d) Do the answers to parts (b) and (c) mean that an object released 1 m above Miranda's surface on the side toward Uranus will fall *up* relative to Miranda? Explain.

13.67 ••• CP Consider a spacecraft in an elliptical orbit around the earth. At the low point, or perigee, of its orbit, it is 400 km above the earth's surface; at the high point, or apogee, it is 4000 km above the earth's surface. (a) What is the period of the spacecraft's orbit? (b) Using conservation of angular momentum, find the ratio of the spacecraft's speed at perigee to its speed at apogee. (c) Using conservation of energy, find the speed at perigee and the speed at apogee. (d) It is necessary to have the spacecraft escape from the earth completely. If the spacecraft's rockets are fired at perigee, by how much would the speed have to be increased to achieve this? What if the rockets were fired at apogee? Which point in the orbit is more efficient to use?

13.68 •• A rocket with mass 5.00×10^3 kg is in a circular orbit of radius 7.20×10^6 m around the earth. The rocket's engines fire for a period of time to increase that radius to 8.80×10^6 m, with the orbit again circular. (a) What is the change in the rocket's kinetic energy? Does the kinetic energy increase or decrease? (b) What is the change in the rocket's gravitational potential energy? Does the potential energy increase or decrease? (c) How much work is done by the rocket engines in changing the orbital radius?

13.69 ••• A 3230 kg spacecraft is in a circular orbit 1960 km above the surface of Mars. How much work must the spacecraft engines perform to move the spacecraft to a circular orbit that is 4670 km above the surface?

13.70 •• A satellite with mass 848 kg is in a circular orbit with an orbital speed of 9640 m/s around the earth. What is the new orbital speed after friction from the earth's upper atmosphere has done -7.50×10^9 J of work on the satellite? Does the speed increase or decrease?

13.71 ••• CALC Planets are not uniform inside. Normally, they are densest at the center and have decreasing density outward toward the surface. Model a spherically symmetric planet, with the same radius as the earth, as having a density that decreases linearly with distance from the center. Let the density be 1.20×10^4 kg/m^3 at the center and 1800 kg/m^3 at the surface. What is the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of this planet?

13.72 •• One of the brightest comets of the 20th century was Comet Hyakutake, which passed close to the sun in early 1996. The orbital period of this comet is estimated to be about 30,000 years. Find the semi-major axis of this comet's orbit. Compare it to the average sun–Pluto distance and to the distance to Alpha Centauri, the nearest star to the sun, which is 4.3 light-years distant.

13.73 ••• CALC An object in the shape of a thin ring has radius a and mass M. A uniform sphere with mass m and radius R is placed with its center at a distance x to the right of the center of the ring, along a line through the center of the ring, and perpendicular to its plane (see Fig. E13.39). What is the gravitational force that the sphere exerts on the ring-shaped object? Show that your result reduces to the expected result when x is much larger than a.

13.74 •• CALC A uniform wire with mass M and length L is bent into a semicircle. Find the magnitude and direction of the gravitational force this wire exerts on a point with mass m placed at the center of curvature of the semicircle.

13.75 • CALC A shaft is drilled from the surface to the center of the earth (see Fig. 13.25). As in Example 13.10 (Section 13.6), make the unrealistic assumption that the density of the earth is uniform. With this approximation, the gravitational force on an object with mass m, that is inside the earth at a distance r from the center, has magnitude $F_g = Gm_E mr/R_E^3$ (as shown in Example 13.10) and points toward the center of the earth. (a) Derive an expression for the gravitational potential energy $U(r)$ of the object–earth system as a function of the object's distance from the center of the earth. Take the potential energy to be zero when the object is at the center of the earth. (b) If an object is released in the shaft at the earth's surface, what speed will it have when it reaches the center of the earth?

13.76 •• DATA For each of the eight planets Mercury to Neptune, the semi-major axis a of their orbit and their orbital period T are as follows:

Planet	Semi-major Axis (10^6 km)	Orbital Period (days)
Mercury	57.9	88.0
Venus	108.2	224.7
Earth	149.6	365.2
Mars	227.9	687.0
Jupiter	778.3	4331
Saturn	1426.7	10,747
Uranus	2870.7	30,589
Neptune	4498.4	59,800

(a) Explain why these values, when plotted as T^2 versus a^3, fall close to a straight line. Which of Kepler's laws is being tested? However, the values of T^2 and a^3 cover such a wide range that this plot is not a very practical way to graph the data. (Try it.) Instead, plot $\log(T)$ (with T in seconds) versus $\log(a)$ (with a in meters). Explain why the data should also fall close to a straight line in such a plot. (b) According to Kepler's laws, what should be the slope of your $\log(T)$ versus $\log(a)$ graph in part (a)? Does your graph have this slope? (c) Using $G = 6.674 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$, calculate the mass of the sun from the y-intercept of your graph. How does your calculated value compare with the value given in the table at the back of the book? (d) The only asteroid visible to the naked eye (and then only under ideal viewing conditions) is Vesta, which has an orbital period of 1325.4 days. What is the length of the semi-major axis of Vesta's orbit? Where does this place Vesta's orbit relative to the orbits of the eight major planets? Some scientists argue that Vesta should be called a minor planet rather than an asteroid.

13.77 •• DATA For a spherical planet with mass M, volume V, and radius R, derive an expression for the acceleration due to gravity at the planet's surface, g, in terms of the average density of the planet, $\rho = M/V$, and the planet's diameter, $D = 2R$. The table gives the values of D and g for the eight major planets:

Planet	D (km)	g (m/s^2)
Mercury	4879	3.7
Venus	12,104	8.9
Earth	12,756	9.8
Mars	6792	3.7
Jupiter	142,984	23.1
Saturn	120,536	9.0
Uranus	51,118	8.7
Neptune	49,528	11.0

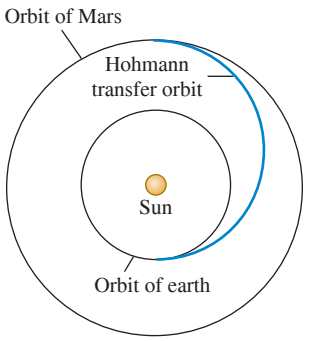
(a) Treat the planets as spheres. Your equation for g as a function of ρ and D shows that if the average density of the planets is constant, a graph of g versus D will be well represented by a straight line. Graph g as a function of D for the eight major planets. What does the graph tell you about the variation in average density? (b) Calculate the average density for each major planet. List the planets in order of decreasing density, and give the calculated average density of each. (c) The earth is not a uniform sphere and has greater density near its center. It is reasonable to assume this might be true for the other planets. Discuss the effect this has on your analysis. (d) If Saturn had the same average density as the earth, what would be the value of g at Saturn's surface?

13.78 ••• DATA For a planet in our solar system, assume that the axis of orbit is at the sun and is circular. Then the angular momentum about that axis due to the planet's orbital motion is $L = MvR$. (a) Derive an expression for L in terms of the planet's mass M, orbital radius R, and period T of the orbit. (b) Using the data in the table at the back of the book, calculate the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum for each of the eight major planets. (Assume a circular orbit.) Add these values to obtain the total angular momentum of the major planets due to their orbital motion. (All the major planets orbit in the same direction in close to the same plane, so adding the magnitudes to get the total is a reasonable approximation.) (c) The rotational period of the sun is 24.6 days. Using the data given at the back of the book, calculate the angular momentum the sun has due to the rotation about its axis. (Assume that the sun is a uniform sphere.) (d) How does the rotational angular momentum of the sun compare with the total orbital angular momentum of the planets? How does the mass of the sun compare with the total mass of the planets? The fact that the sun has most of the mass of the solar system but only a small fraction of its total angular momentum must be accounted for in models of how the solar system formed. (e) The sun has a density that decreases with distance from its center. Does this mean that your calculation in part (c) overestimates or underestimates the rotational angular momentum of the sun? Or doesn't the nonuniform density have any effect?

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

13.79 ••• **Interplanetary Navigation.** The most efficient way to send a spacecraft from the earth to another planet is to use a *Hohmann transfer orbit* (**Fig. P13.79**). If the orbits of the departure and destination planets are circular, the Hohmann transfer orbit is an elliptical orbit whose perihelion and aphelion are tangent to the orbits of the two planets. The rockets are fired briefly at the departure planet to put the spacecraft into the transfer orbit; the spacecraft then coasts until it reaches the destination planet. The rockets are then fired again to put the spacecraft into the same orbit about the sun as the destination planet. (a) For a flight from earth to Mars, in what direction must the rockets be fired at the earth and at Mars: in the direction of motion or opposite the direction of motion? What about for a flight from Mars to the earth? (b) How long does a one-way trip from the earth to Mars take, between the firings of the rockets? (c) To reach Mars from the earth, the launch must be timed so that Mars will be at the right spot when the spacecraft reaches Mars's orbit around the sun. At launch, what must the angle between a sun–Mars line and a sun–earth line be? Use the data at the back of the book.

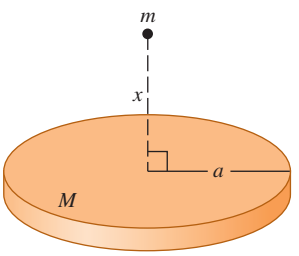
Figure P13.79



13.80 ••• CP **Tidal Forces near a Black Hole.** An astronaut inside a spacecraft, which protects her from harmful radiation, is orbiting a black hole at a distance of 120 km from its center. The black hole is 5.00 times the mass of the sun and has a Schwarzschild radius of 15.0 km. The astronaut is positioned inside the spaceship such that one of her 0.030 kg ears is 6.0 cm farther from the black hole than the center of mass of the spacecraft and the other ear is 6.0 cm closer. (a) What is the tension between her ears? Would the astronaut find it difficult to keep from being torn apart by the gravitational forces? (Since her whole body orbits with the same angular velocity, one ear is moving too slowly for the radius of its orbit and the other is moving too fast. Hence her head must exert forces on her ears to keep them in their orbits.) (b) Is the center of gravity of her head at the same point as the center of mass? Explain.

13.81 ••• CALC Mass M is distributed uniformly over a disk of radius a. Find the gravitational force (magnitude and direction) between this disk-shaped mass and a particle with mass m located a distance x above the center of the disk (**Fig. P13.81**). Does your result reduce to the correct expression as x becomes very large? (*Hint:* Divide the disk into infinitesimally thin concentric rings, use the expression derived in Exercise 13.39 for the gravitational force due to each ring, and integrate to find the total force.)

Figure P13.81



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

Exoplanets. As planets with a wide variety of properties are being discovered outside our solar system, astrobiologists are considering whether and how life could evolve on planets that might be very different from earth. One recently discovered extrasolar planet, or exoplanet, orbits a star whose mass is 0.70 times the mass of our sun. This planet has been found to have 2.3 times the earth's diameter and 7.9 times the earth's mass. For planets in this size range, computer models indicate a relationship between the planet's density and composition:

Density Compared with That of the Earth	Composition
2–3 times	Mostly iron
0.9–2 times	Iron core with a rock mantle
0.4–0.9 times	Iron core with a rock mantle and some lighter elements, such as (water) ice
<0.4 times	Hydrogen and/or helium gas

Based on S. Seager et al., "Mass–Radius Relationships for Solid Exoplanets"; arXiv:0707.2895 [astro-ph].

13.82 Based on these data, what is the most likely composition of this planet? (a) Mostly iron; (b) iron and rock; (c) iron and rock with some lighter elements; (d) hydrogen and helium gases.

13.83 How many times the acceleration due to gravity g near the earth's surface is the acceleration due to gravity near the surface of this exoplanet? (a) About $0.29g$; (b) about $0.65g$; (c) about $1.5g$; (d) about $7.9g$.

13.84 Observations of this planet over time show that it is in a nearly circular orbit around its star and completes one orbit in only 9.5 days. How many times the orbital radius r of the earth around our sun is this exoplanet's orbital radius around its sun? Assume that the earth is also in a nearly circular orbit. (a) $0.026r$; (b) $0.078r$; (c) $0.70r$; (d) $2.3r$.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iv) For a satellite a distance r from the center of its planet, the orbital speed is proportional to $\sqrt{1/r}$ and the acceleration due to gravity is proportional to $1/r^2$ (see Section 13.4). Hence a particle that orbits close to Saturn has a faster speed and a greater acceleration than one that orbits farther away.

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP13.5.1 2.99×10^{10} J
VP13.5.2 6.46×10^{3} m/s
VP13.5.3 1.88×10^{6} m
VP13.5.4 1.39×10^{4} m/s
VP13.6.1 (a) 2.49×10^{7} m (b) 1.85×10^{7} m (c) 10.9 h
VP13.6.2 (a) 2.04×10^{7} m (b) 1.45×10^{3} m/s
VP13.6.3 (a) $+1.72 \times 10^{11}$ J (b) -3.44×10^{11} J (c) -1.72×10^{11} J
VP13.6.4 (a) -1.19×10^{10} J (b) $+1.83 \times 10^{10}$ J
VP13.9.1 (a) 1.50×10^{12} m (b) 0.996 (c) 31.8 y
VP13.9.2 (a) 5.91×10^{11} m (b) 4.43×10^{11} m (c) 7.39×10^{11} m
VP13.9.3 (a) 5.9×10^{12} m (b) 4.4×10^{12} m; inside
VP13.9.4 (a) 6.13×10^{9} m (b) 1.67×10^{30} kg

Bridging Problem

(a) Perihelion: $v_P = \sqrt{\dfrac{Gm_S}{a}\dfrac{(1+e)}{(1-e)}}$

aphelion: $v_A = \sqrt{\dfrac{Gm_S}{a}\dfrac{(1-e)}{(1+e)}}$

(b) $v_P = 54.4$ km/s, $v_A = 0.913$ km/s; $K_P = 3.26 \times 10^{23}$ J, $U_P = -3.31 \times 10^{23}$ J, $E_P = -5.47 \times 10^{21}$ J; $K_A = 9.17 \times 10^{19}$ J, $U_A = -5.56 \times 10^{21}$ J, $E_A = -5.47 \times 10^{21}$ J

? Dogs walk with much quicker strides than do humans. Is this primarily because, compared to human legs, dogs' legs (i) are shorter; (ii) are less massive; (iii) have a higher ratio of muscle to fat; (iv) have paws rather than toes; or (v) more than one of these?

14 Periodic Motion

Many kinds of motion repeat themselves over and over: the vibration of a quartz crystal in a watch, the swinging pendulum of a grandfather clock, the sound vibrations produced by a clarinet or an organ pipe, and the back-and-forth motion of the pistons in a car engine. This kind of motion, called **periodic motion** or **oscillation,** is the subject of this chapter. Understanding periodic motion will be essential for our later study of waves, sound, alternating electric currents, and light.

An object that undergoes periodic motion always has a stable equilibrium position. When it is moved away from this position and released, a force or torque comes into play to pull it back toward equilibrium. But by the time it gets there, it has picked up some kinetic energy, so it overshoots, stopping somewhere on the other side, and is again pulled back toward equilibrium. Picture a ball rolling back and forth in a round bowl or a pendulum that swings back and forth past its straight-down position.

In this chapter we'll concentrate on two simple examples of systems that can undergo periodic motions: spring-mass systems and pendulums. We'll also study why oscillations often tend to die out with time and why some oscillations can build up to greater and greater displacements from equilibrium when periodically varying forces act.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **14.1** How to describe oscillations in terms of amplitude, period, frequency, and angular frequency.
- **14.2** How to do calculations with simple harmonic motion, an important type of oscillation.
- **14.3** How to use energy concepts to analyze simple harmonic motion.
- **14.4** How to apply the ideas of simple harmonic motion to different physical situations.
- **14.5** How to analyze the motions of a simple pendulum.
- **14.6** What a physical pendulum is, and how to calculate the properties of its motion.
- **14.7** What determines how rapidly an oscillation dies out.
- **14.8** How a driving force applied to an oscillator at a particular frequency can cause a very large response, or resonance.

You'll need to review...

- **1.3** Time standards.
- **3.4** Uniform circular motion.
- **6.3** Hooke's law.
- **7.2, 7.4** Elastic potential energy; relating force and potential energy.
- **9.3** Relating angular motion and linear motion.
- **10.2** Newton's second law for rotational motion.

14.1 DESCRIBING OSCILLATION

Figure 14.1 (next page) shows one of the simplest systems that can have periodic motion. An object with mass m rests on a frictionless horizontal guide system, such as a linear air track, so it can move along the x-axis only. The object is attached to a spring of negligible mass that can be either stretched or compressed. The left end of the spring is held fixed, and the right end is attached to the object. The spring force is the only horizontal force acting on the object; the vertical normal and gravitational forces always add to zero.

It's simplest to define our coordinate system so that the origin O is at the equilibrium position, where the spring is neither stretched nor compressed. Then x is the x-component of the **displacement** of the object from equilibrium and is also the change in the length of the spring. The spring exerts a force on the object with x-component F_x, and the x-component of acceleration is $a_x = F_x/m$.

Figure 14.1 A system that can have periodic motion.

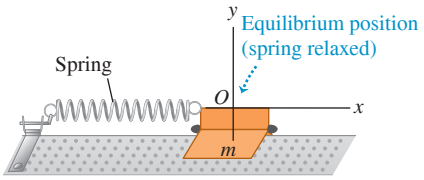


Figure 14.2 Model for periodic motion. When the object is displaced from its equilibrium position at $x = 0$, the spring exerts a restoring force back toward the equilibrium position.

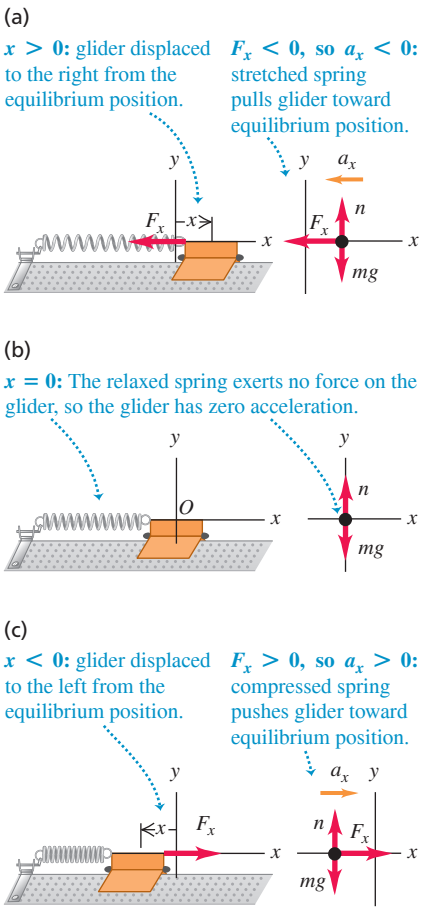


Figure 14.2 shows the object for three different displacements of the spring. Whenever the object is displaced from its equilibrium position, the spring force tends to restore it to the equilibrium position. We call a force with this character a **restoring force.** Oscillation can occur only when there is a restoring force tending to return the system to equilibrium.

Let's analyze how oscillation occurs in this system. If we displace the object to the right to $x = A$ and then let go, the net force and the acceleration are to the left (Fig. 14.2a). The speed increases as the object approaches the equilibrium position O. When the object is at O, the net force acting on it is zero (Fig. 14.2b), but because of its motion it *overshoots* the equilibrium position. On the other side of the equilibrium position the object is still moving to the left, but the net force and the acceleration are to the right (Fig. 14.2c); hence the speed decreases until the object comes to a stop. We'll show later that with an ideal spring, the stopping point is at $x = -A$. The object then accelerates to the right, overshoots equilibrium again, and stops at the starting point $x = A$, ready to repeat the whole process. The object is oscillating! If there is no friction or other force to remove mechanical energy from the system, this motion repeats forever; the restoring force perpetually draws the object back toward the equilibrium position, only to have the object overshoot time after time.

In different situations the force may depend on the displacement x from equilibrium in different ways. But oscillation *always* occurs if the force is a *restoring* force that tends to return the system to equilibrium.

Amplitude, Period, Frequency, and Angular Frequency

Here are some terms that we'll use in discussing periodic motions of all kinds:

The **amplitude** of the motion, denoted by A, is the maximum magnitude of displacement from equilibrium—that is, the maximum value of $|x|$. It is always positive. If the spring in Fig. 14.2 is an ideal one, the total overall range of the motion is $2A$. The SI unit of A is the meter. A complete vibration, or **cycle,** is one complete round trip—say, from A to $-A$ and back to A, or from O to A, back through O to $-A$, and back to O. Note that motion from one side to the other (say, $-A$ to A) is a half-cycle, not a whole cycle.

The **period,** T, is the time to complete one cycle. It is always positive. The SI unit is the second, but it is sometimes expressed as "seconds per cycle."

The **frequency,** f, is the number of cycles in a unit of time. It is always positive. The SI unit of frequency is the *hertz,* named for the 19th-century German physicist Heinrich Hertz:

$$1 \text{ hertz} = 1 \text{ Hz} = 1 \text{ cycle/s} = 1 \text{ s}^{-1}$$

The **angular frequency,** ω, is 2π times the frequency:

$$\omega = 2\pi f$$

We'll learn shortly why ω is a useful quantity. It represents the rate of change of an angular quantity (not necessarily related to a rotational motion) that is always measured in radians, so its units are rad/s. Since f is in cycle/s, we may regard the number 2π as having units rad/cycle.

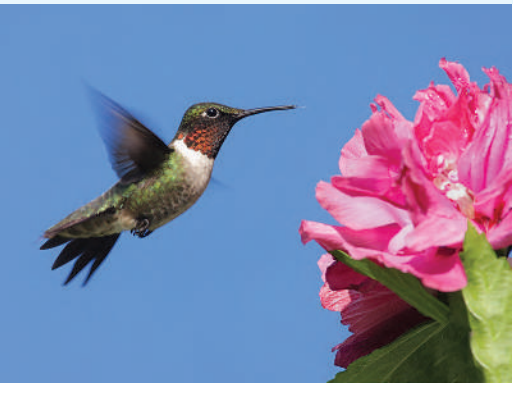
By definition, period and frequency are reciprocals of each other:

In periodic motion **frequency and period** are reciprocals of each other.

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \qquad T = \frac{1}{f} \tag{14.1}$$

(Period: T; Frequency: f)

BIO APPLICATION Wing Frequencies The ruby-throated hummingbird (*Archilochus colubris*) normally flaps its wings at about 50 Hz, producing the sound that gives hummingbirds their name. Insects can flap their wings at even faster rates, from 330 Hz for a house fly and 600 Hz for a mosquito to an amazing 1040 Hz for the tiny biting midge.



Also, from the definition of ω,

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T} \qquad (14.2)$$

Angular frequency related to frequency and period

Frequency

Period

CAUTION **One period spans a complete cycle** Keep in mind that the period of an oscillation is the time for a complete cycle—for example, the time to travel from $x = -A$ to $x = +A$ *and* back again to $x = -A$.

EXAMPLE 14.1 Period, frequency, and angular frequency

An ultrasonic transducer used for medical diagnosis oscillates at 6.7 MHz $= 6.7 \times 10^6$ Hz. How long does each oscillation take, and what is the angular frequency?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The target variables are the period T and the angular frequency ω. We can find these from the given frequency f in Eqs. (14.1) and (14.2).

EXECUTE From Eqs. (14.1) and (14.2),

$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{6.7 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz}} = 1.5 \times 10^{-7} \text{ s} = 0.15\ \mu\text{s}$$

$$\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi(6.7 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz})$$

$$= (2\pi \text{ rad/cycle})(6.7 \times 10^6 \text{ cycle/s}) = 4.2 \times 10^7 \text{ rad/s}$$

EVALUATE This is a very rapid vibration, with large f and ω and small T. A slow vibration has small f and ω and large T.

KEYCONCEPT The period of an oscillation is the reciprocal of the oscillation frequency. The angular frequency equals the frequency multiplied by 2π.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.1 An object like that shown in Fig. 14.2 oscillates back and forth. For each of the following values of the object's x-velocity v_x and x-acceleration a_x, state whether its displacement x is positive, negative, or zero. (a) $v_x > 0$ and $a_x > 0$; (b) $v_x > 0$ and $a_x < 0$; (c) $v_x < 0$ and $a_x > 0$; (d) $v_x < 0$ and $a_x < 0$; (e) $v_x = 0$ and $a_x < 0$; (f) $v_x > 0$ and $a_x = 0$.

ANSWER (a) $x < 0$, (b) $x > 0$, (c) $x < 0$, (d) $x > 0$, (e) $x < 0$, (f) $x = 0$ Figure 14.2 shows that both the net x-component of force F_x and the x-acceleration a_x are positive when $x < 0$ (so the object is displaced to the left and the spring is compressed), while both F_x and a_x are negative when $x > 0$ (so the object is displaced to the right and the spring is stretched). Hence x and a_x always have *opposite* signs. This is true whether the object is moving to the right ($v_x > 0$), to the left ($v_x < 0$), or not at all ($v_x = 0$), since the force exerted by the spring depends on only whether it is compressed or stretched and by what distance. This explains the answers to (a) through (e). If the acceleration is zero as in (f), the net force must also be zero and so the spring must be relaxed; hence $x = 0$.

14.2 SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

The simplest kind of oscillation occurs when the restoring force F_x is *directly proportional* to the displacement from equilibrium x. This happens if the spring in Figs. 14.1 and 14.2 is an ideal one that obeys *Hooke's law* (see Section 6.3). The constant of proportionality between F_x and x is the force constant k. On either side of the equilibrium position, F_x and x always have opposite signs. In Section 6.3 we represented the force acting *on* a stretched ideal spring as $F_x = kx$. The x-component of force the spring exerts *on the object* is the negative of this, so

$$F_x = -kx \qquad (14.3)$$

Restoring force exerted by an ideal spring

x-component of force

Displacement

Force constant of spring

This equation gives the correct magnitude and sign of the force, whether x is positive, negative, or zero (**Fig. 14.3**). The force constant k is always positive and has units of N/m (a useful alternative set of units is kg/s^2). We are assuming that there is no friction, so Eq. (14.3) gives the *net* force on the object.

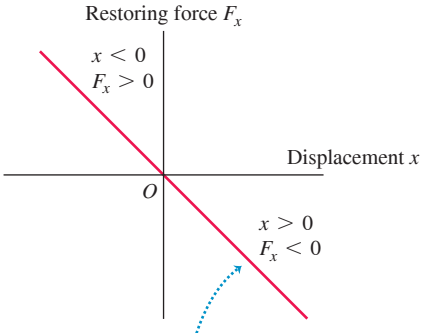


Figure 14.3 An idealized spring exerts a restoring force that obeys Hooke's law, $F_x = -kx$. Oscillation with such a restoring force is called simple harmonic motion.

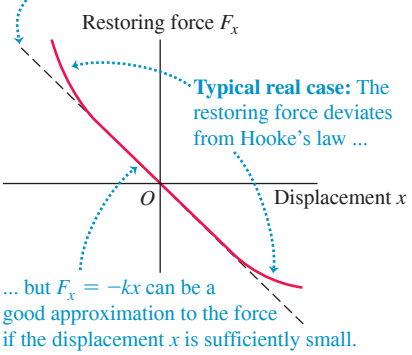
The restoring force exerted by an idealized spring is directly proportional to the displacement (Hooke's law, $F_x = -kx$): the graph of F_x versus x is a straight line.

When the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement from equilibrium, as given by Eq. (14.3), the oscillation is called **simple harmonic motion (SHM).** The acceleration $a_x = d^2x/dt^2 = F_x/m$ of an object in SHM is

$$a_x = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\frac{k}{m}x \qquad (14.4)$$

Equation for simple harmonic motion. a_x: x-component of acceleration. d^2x/dt^2: second derivative of displacement. k: force constant of restoring force. m: mass of object. x: displacement.

Figure **14.4** In most real oscillations Hooke's law applies provided the object doesn't move too far from equilibrium. In such a case small-amplitude oscillations are approximately simple harmonic.



The minus sign means that, in SHM, the acceleration and displacement always have opposite signs. This acceleration is *not* constant, so don't even think of using the constant-acceleration equations from Chapter 2. We'll see shortly how to solve this equation to find the displacement x as a function of time. An object that undergoes simple harmonic motion is called a **harmonic oscillator.**

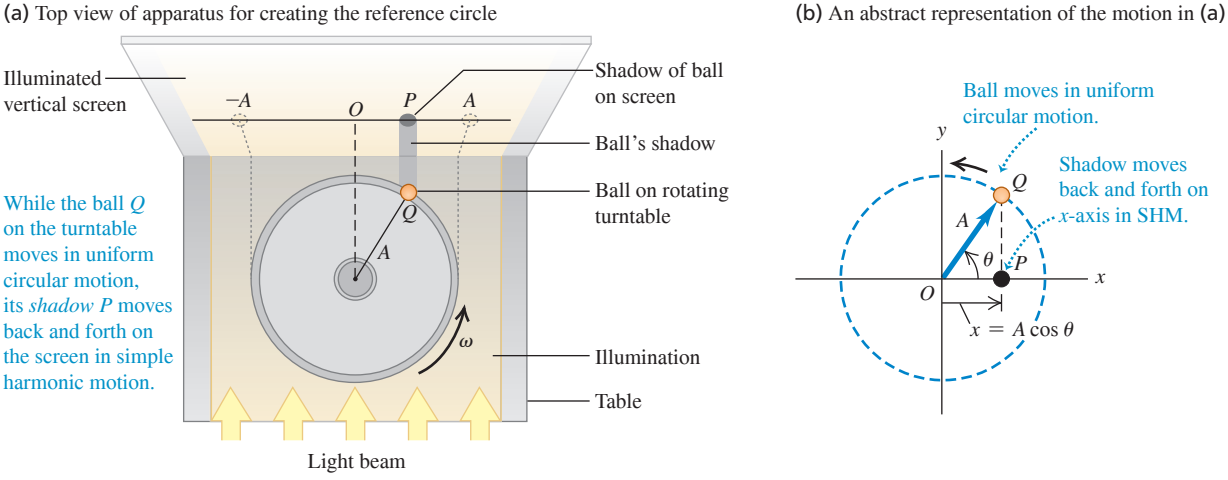
Why is simple harmonic motion important? Not all periodic motions are simple harmonic; in periodic motion in general, the restoring force depends on displacement in a more complicated way than in Eq. (14.3). But in many systems the restoring force is *approximately* proportional to displacement if the displacement is sufficiently small (**Fig. 14.4**). That is, if the amplitude is small enough, the oscillations of such systems are approximately simple harmonic and therefore approximately described by Eq. (14.4). Thus we can use SHM as an approximate model for many different periodic motions, such as the vibration of a tuning fork, the electric current in an alternating-current circuit, and the oscillations of atoms in molecules and solids.

Circular Motion and the Equations of SHM

To explore the properties of simple harmonic motion, we must express the displacement x of the oscillating object as a function of time, $x(t)$. The second derivative of this function, d^2x/dt^2, must be equal to $(-k/m)$ times the function itself, as required by Eq. (14.4). As we mentioned, the formulas for constant acceleration from Section 2.4 are no help because the acceleration changes constantly as the displacement x changes. Instead, we'll find $x(t)$ by noting that SHM is related to *uniform circular motion,* which we studied in Section 3.4.

Figure 14.5a shows a top view of a horizontal disk of radius A with a ball attached to its rim at point Q. The disk rotates with constant angular speed ω (measured in rad/s), so the ball moves in uniform circular motion. A horizontal light beam casts a shadow of the ball on a screen. The shadow at point P oscillates back and forth as the ball moves in a circle. We then arrange an object attached to an ideal spring, like the combination shown in

Figure **14.5** (a) Relating uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion. (b) The ball's shadow moves exactly like an object oscillating on an ideal spring.



Figs. 14.1 and 14.2, so that the object oscillates parallel to the shadow. We'll prove that the motions of the object and of the ball's shadow are *identical* if the amplitude of the object's oscillation is equal to the disk radius A, and if the angular frequency $2\pi f$ of the oscillating object is equal to the angular speed ω of the rotating disk. That is, *simple harmonic motion is the projection of uniform circular motion onto a diameter.*

We can verify this remarkable statement by finding the acceleration of the shadow at P and comparing it to the acceleration of an object undergoing SHM, given by Eq. (14.4). The circle in which the ball moves so that its projection matches the motion of the oscillating object is called the **reference circle;** we'll call the point Q the *reference point.* We take the reference circle to lie in the xy-plane, with the origin O at the center of the circle (Fig. 14.5b). At time t the vector OQ from the origin to reference point Q makes an angle θ with the positive x-axis. As point Q moves around the reference circle with constant angular speed ω, vector OQ rotates with the same angular speed. Such a rotating vector is called a **phasor.** (This term was in use long before the invention of the *Star Trek* stun gun with a similar name.) We'll use phasors again when we study alternating-current circuits in Chapter 31 and the interference of light in Chapters 35 and 36.

The x-component of the phasor at time t is just the x-coordinate of the point Q:

$$x = A\cos\theta \tag{14.5}$$

This is also the x-coordinate of the shadow P, which is the *projection* of Q onto the x-axis. Hence the x-velocity of the shadow P along the x-axis is equal to the x-component of the velocity vector of point Q (**Fig. 14.6a**), and the x-acceleration of P is equal to the x-component of the acceleration vector of Q (Fig. 14.6b). Since point Q is in uniform circular motion, its acceleration vector $\vec{a}_Q$ is always directed toward O. Furthermore, the magnitude of $\vec{a}_Q$ is constant and given by the angular speed squared times the radius of the circle (see Section 9.3):

$$a_Q = \omega^2 A \tag{14.6}$$

Figure 14.6b shows that the x-component of $\vec{a}_Q$ is $a_x = -a_Q\cos\theta$. Combining this with Eqs. (14.5) and (14.6), we get that the acceleration of point P is

$$a_x = -a_Q\cos\theta = -\omega^2 A\cos\theta \quad \text{or} \tag{14.7}$$

$$a_x = -\omega^2 x \tag{14.8}$$

The acceleration of point P is directly proportional to the displacement x and always has the opposite sign. These are precisely the hallmarks of simple harmonic motion.

Equation (14.8) is *exactly* the same as Eq. (14.4) for the acceleration of a harmonic oscillator, provided that the angular speed ω of the reference point Q is related to the force constant k and mass m of the oscillating object by

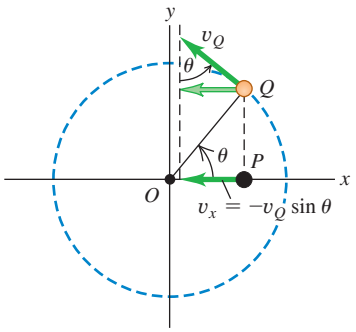
$$\omega^2 = \frac{k}{m} \quad \text{or} \quad \omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \tag{14.9}$$

We have been using the same symbol ω for the angular *speed* of the reference point Q and the angular *frequency* of the oscillating point P. The reason is that these quantities are equal! If point Q makes one complete revolution in time T, then point P goes through one complete cycle of oscillation in the same time; hence T is the period of the oscillation. During time T the point Q moves through 2π radians, so its angular speed is $\omega = 2\pi/T$. But this is the same as Eq. (14.2) for the angular frequency of the point P, which verifies our statement about the two interpretations of ω. This is why we introduced angular frequency in Section 14.1; this quantity makes the connection between oscillation and circular motion. So we reinterpret Eq. (14.9) as an expression for the angular frequency of simple harmonic motion:

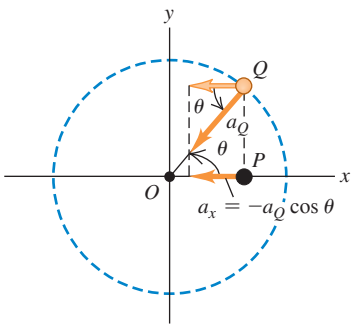
Angular frequency for simple harmonic motion $\omega = \sqrt{\dfrac{k}{m}}$ ← Force constant of restoring force; ← Mass of object (14.10)

Figure **14.6** The (a) x-velocity and (b) x-acceleration of the ball's shadow P (see Fig. 14.5) are the x-components of the velocity and acceleration vectors, respectively, of the ball Q.

(a) Using the reference circle to determine the x-velocity of point P



(b) Using the reference circle to determine the x-acceleration of point P



CAUTION Don't confuse frequency and angular frequency You can run into trouble if you don't make the distinction between frequency f and angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi f$. Frequency tells you how many cycles of oscillation occur per second, while angular frequency tells you how many radians per second this corresponds to on the reference circle. In solving problems, pay careful attention to whether the goal is to find f or ω.

When you start an object oscillating in SHM, the value of ω is not yours to choose; it is predetermined by the values of k and m. The units of k are N/m or kg/s^2, so k/m is in (kg/s^2)/kg = s^{-2}. When we take the square root in Eq. (14.10), we get s^{-1}, or more properly rad/s because this is an *angular* frequency (recall that a radian is not a true unit).

According to Eqs. (14.1) and (14.2), the frequency f and period T are

Frequency for simple harmonic motion (Angular frequency)

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \qquad (14.11)$$

(k: Force constant of restoring force; m: Mass of object)

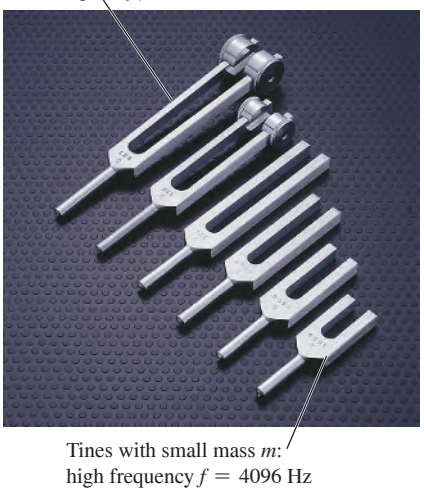
Period for simple harmonic motion

$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \qquad (14.12)$$

(T: Period; f: Frequency; ω: Angular frequency; m: Mass of object; k: Force constant of restoring force)

We see from Eq. (14.12) that a larger mass m will have less acceleration and take a longer time for a complete cycle (**Fig. 14.7**). A stiffer spring (one with a larger force constant k) exerts a greater force at a given deformation x, causing greater acceleration and a shorter time T per cycle.

Figure **14.7** The greater the mass m in a tuning fork's tines, the lower the frequency of oscillation $f = (1/2\pi)\sqrt{k/m}$ and the lower the pitch of the sound that the tuning fork produces.



Period and Amplitude in SHM

Equations (14.11) and (14.12) show that the period and frequency of simple harmonic motion are completely determined by the mass m and the force constant k. *In simple harmonic motion the period and frequency do not depend on the amplitude A*. For given values of m and k, the time of one complete oscillation is the same whether the amplitude is large or small. Equation (14.3) shows why we should expect this. Larger A means that the object reaches larger values of $|x|$ and is subjected to larger restoring forces. This increases the average speed of the object over a complete cycle; this exactly compensates for having to travel a larger distance, so the same total time is involved.

The oscillations of a tuning fork are essentially simple harmonic motion, so it always vibrates with the same frequency, independent of amplitude. This is why a tuning fork can be used as a standard for musical pitch. If it were not for this characteristic of simple harmonic motion, it would be impossible to play most musical instruments in tune. If you encounter an oscillating object with a period that *does* depend on the amplitude, the oscillation is *not* simple harmonic motion.

EXAMPLE 14.2 Angular frequency, frequency, and period in SHM

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

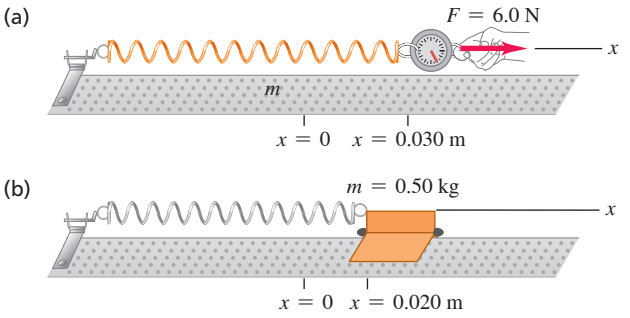
A spring is mounted horizontally, with its left end fixed. A spring balance attached to the free end and pulled toward the right (**Fig. 14.8a**) indicates that the stretching force is proportional to the displacement, and a force of 6.0 N causes a displacement of 0.030 m. We replace the spring balance with a 0.50 kg glider, pull it 0.020 m to the right along a frictionless air track, and release it from rest (Fig. 14.8b). (a) Find the force constant k of the spring. (b) Find the angular frequency ω, frequency f, and period T of the resulting oscillation.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Because the spring force (equal in magnitude to the stretching force) is proportional to the displacement, the motion is simple harmonic. We find k from Hooke's law, Eq. (14.3), and ω, f, and T from Eqs. (14.10), (14.11), and (14.12), respectively.

EXECUTE (a) When $x = 0.030$ m, the force the spring exerts on the spring balance is $F_x = -6.0$ N. From Eq. (14.3),

$$k = -\frac{F_x}{x} = -\frac{-6.0\text{ N}}{0.030\text{ m}} = 200\text{ N/m} = 200\text{ kg/s}^2$$

Figure **14.8** (a) The force exerted *on* the spring (shown by the vector F) has x-component $F_x = +6.0$ N. The force exerted *by* the spring has x-component $F_x = -6.0$ N. (b) A glider is attached to the same spring and allowed to oscillate.



(b) From Eqs. (14.10), (14.11), and (14.12), with $m = 0.50$ kg,

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{200\ \text{kg/s}^2}{0.50\ \text{kg}}} = 20\ \text{rad/s}$$

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{20\ \text{rad/s}}{2\pi\ \text{rad/cycle}} = 3.2\ \text{cycle/s} = 3.2\ \text{Hz}$$

$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{3.2\ \text{cycle/s}} = 0.31\ \text{s}$$

EVALUATE The amplitude of the oscillation is 0.020 m, the distance that we pulled the glider before releasing it. In SHM the angular frequency, frequency, and period are all independent of the amplitude. Note that a period is usually stated in "seconds" rather than "seconds per cycle."

KEYCONCEPT The magnitude of the force exerted by an ideal spring equals the spring constant k times the distance the spring is stretched or compressed. An object of mass m attached to an ideal spring oscillates in simple harmonic motion, with its period, frequency, and angular frequency determined by the values of k and m.

Displacement, Velocity, and Acceleration in SHM

We still need to find the displacement x as a function of time for a harmonic oscillator. Equation (14.4) for an object in SHM along the x-axis is identical to Eq. (14.8) for the x-coordinate of the reference point in uniform circular motion with constant angular speed $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. Hence Eq. (14.5), $x = A\cos\theta$, describes the x-coordinate for both situations. If at $t = 0$ the phasor OQ makes an angle ϕ (the Greek letter phi) with the positive x-axis, then at any later time t this angle is $\theta = \omega t + \phi$. We substitute this into Eq. (14.5) to obtain

Displacement in simple harmonic motion as a function of time

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \qquad (14.13)$$

Amplitude; Time; Phase angle; Angular frequency $= \sqrt{k/m}$

Figure 14.9 shows a graph of Eq. (14.13) for the particular case $\phi = 0$. We could also have written Eq. (14.13) in terms of a sine function rather than a cosine by using the identity $\cos\alpha = \sin(\alpha + \pi/2)$. *In simple harmonic motion the displacement is a periodic, sinusoidal function of time.* There are many other periodic functions, but none so simple as a sine or cosine function.

The value of the cosine function is always between -1 and 1, so in Eq. (14.13), x is always between $-A$ and A. This confirms that A is the amplitude of the motion.

The cosine function in Eq. (14.13) repeats itself whenever time t increases by one period T, or when $\omega t + \phi$ increases by 2π radians. Thus, if we start at time $t = 0$, the time T to complete one cycle is

$$\omega T = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}T = 2\pi \qquad \text{or} \qquad T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

which is just Eq. (14.12). Changing either m or k changes the period T (**Figs. 14.10a** and 14.10b), but T does not depend on the amplitude A (Fig. 14.10c).

Figure **14.9** Graph of x versus t [see Eq. (14.13)] for simple harmonic motion. The case shown has $\phi = 0$.

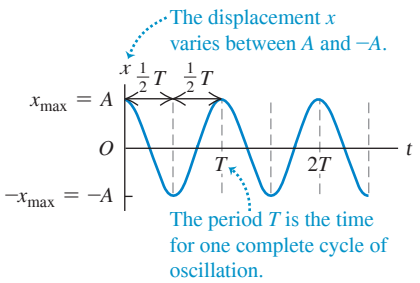
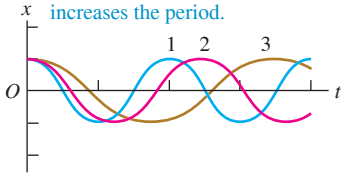


Figure **14.10** Variations of simple harmonic motion. All cases shown have $\phi = 0$ [see Eq. (14.13)].

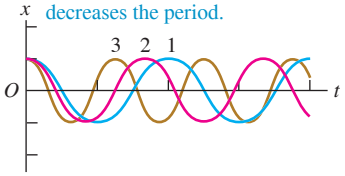
(a) Increasing m; same A and k

Mass m increases from curve 1 to 2 to 3. Increasing m alone increases the period.



(b) Increasing k; same A and m

Force constant k increases from curve 1 to 2 to 3. Increasing k alone decreases the period.



(c) Increasing A; same k and m

Amplitude A increases from curve 1 to 2 to 3. Changing A alone has no effect on the period.

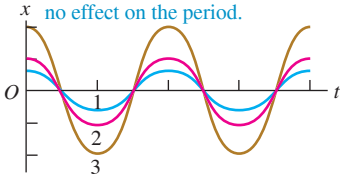
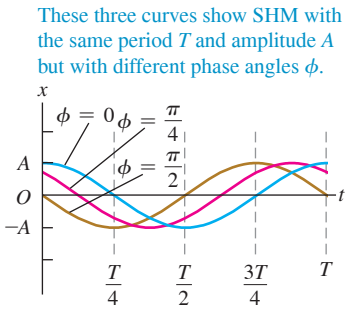


Figure **14.11** Variations of simple harmonic motion: same m, k, and A but different phase angles ϕ.



The constant ϕ in Eq. (14.13) is called the **phase angle.** It tells us at what point in the cycle the motion was at $t = 0$ (equivalent to where around the circle the point Q was at $t = 0$). We denote the displacement at $t = 0$ by x_0. Putting $t = 0$ and $x = x_0$ in Eq. (14.13), we get

$$x_0 = A\cos\phi \tag{14.14}$$

If $\phi = 0$, then $x_0 = A\cos 0 = A$, and the object starts at its maximum positive displacement. If $\phi = \pi$, then $x_0 = A\cos\pi = -A$, and the particle starts at its maximum *negative* displacement. If $\phi = \pi/2$, then $x_0 = A\cos(\pi/2) = 0$, and the particle is initially at the origin. **Figure 14.11** shows the displacement x versus time for three different phase angles.

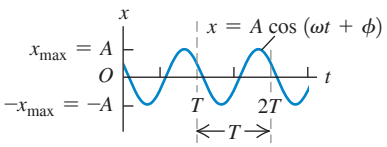
We find the velocity v_x and acceleration a_x as functions of time for a harmonic oscillator by taking derivatives of Eq. (14.13) with respect to time:

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} = -\omega A\sin(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \text{(velocity in SHM)} \tag{14.15}$$

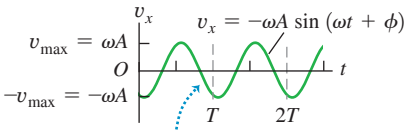
$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega^2 A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \text{(acceleration in SHM)} \tag{14.16}$$

Figure **14.12** Graphs of (a) x versus t, (b) v_x versus t, and (c) a_x versus t for an object in SHM. For the motion depicted in these graphs, $\phi = \pi/3$.

(a) Displacement x as a function of time t

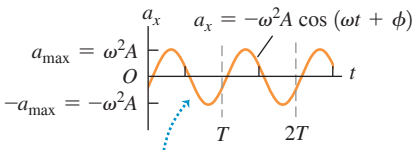


(b) Velocity v_x as a function of time t



The v_x-t graph is shifted by $\frac{1}{4}$ cycle from the x-t graph.

(c) Acceleration a_x as a function of time t



The a_x-t graph is shifted by $\frac{1}{4}$ cycle from the v_x-t graph and by $\frac{1}{2}$ cycle from the x-t graph.

The velocity v_x oscillates between

$$v_{max} = +\omega A \quad \text{and} \quad -v_{max} = -\omega A,$$

and the acceleration a_x oscillates between

$$a_{max} = +\omega^2 A \quad \text{and} \quad -a_{max} = -\omega^2 A$$

(**Fig. 14.12**). Comparing Eq. (14.16) with Eq. (14.13) and recalling that $\omega^2 = k/m$ from Eq. (14.9), we see that

$$a_x = -\omega^2 x = -\frac{k}{m}x$$

which is just Eq. (14.4) for simple harmonic motion. This confirms that Eq. (14.13) for x as a function of time is correct.

We actually derived Eq. (14.16) earlier in a geometrical way by taking the x-component of the acceleration vector of the reference point Q. This was done in Fig. 14.6b and Eq. (14.7) (recall that $\theta = \omega t + \phi$). In the same way, we could have derived Eq. (14.15) by taking the x-component of the velocity vector of Q, as shown in Fig. 14.6b. We'll leave the details for you to work out.

Note that the sinusoidal graph of displacement versus time (Fig. 14.12a) is shifted by one-quarter period from the graph of velocity versus time (Fig. 14.12b) and by one-half

period from the graph of acceleration versus time (Fig. 14.12c). **Figure 14.13** shows why this is so. When the object is passing through the equilibrium position so that $x = 0$, the velocity equals either v_{max} or $-v_{max}$ (depending on which way the object is moving) and the acceleration is zero. When the object is at either its most positive displacement, $x = +A$, or its most negative displacement, $x = -A$, the velocity is zero and the object is instantaneously at rest. At these points, the restoring force $F_x = -kx$ and the acceleration of the object have their maximum magnitudes. At $x = +A$ the acceleration is negative and equal to $-a_{max}$. At $x = -A$ the acceleration is positive: $a_x = +a_{max}$.

Here's how we can determine the amplitude A and phase angle ϕ for an oscillating object if we are given its initial displacement x_0 and initial velocity v_{0x}. The initial velocity v_{0x} is the velocity at time $t = 0$; putting $v_x = v_{0x}$ and $t = 0$ in Eq. (14.15), we find

$$v_{0x} = -\omega A \sin\phi \tag{14.17}$$

To find ϕ, we divide Eq. (14.17) by Eq. (14.14). This eliminates A and gives an equation that we can solve for ϕ:

$$\frac{v_{0x}}{x_0} = \frac{-\omega A \sin\phi}{A\cos\phi} = -\omega\tan\phi$$

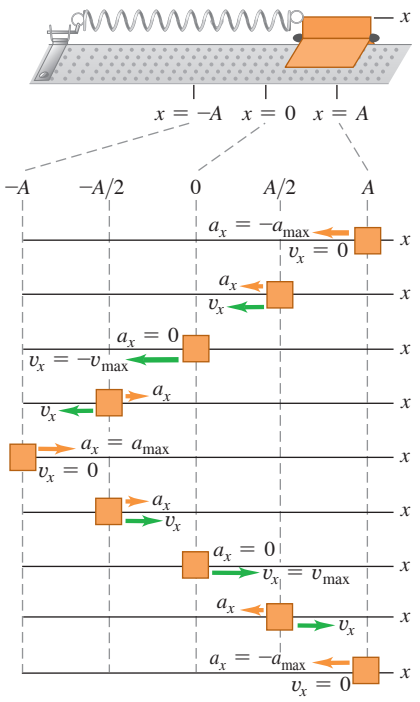
$$\phi = \arctan\left(-\frac{v_{0x}}{\omega x_0}\right) \qquad \text{(phase angle in SHM)} \tag{14.18}$$

It is also easy to find the amplitude A if we are given x_0 and v_{0x}. We'll sketch the derivation, and you can fill in the details. Square Eq. (14.14); then divide Eq. (14.17) by ω, square it, and add to the square of Eq. (14.14). The right side will be $A^2(\sin^2\phi + \cos^2\phi)$, which is equal to A^2. The final result is

$$A = \sqrt{x_0^2 + \frac{{v_{0x}}^2}{\omega^2}} \qquad \text{(amplitude in SHM)} \tag{14.19}$$

Note that when the object has both an initial displacement x_0 and a nonzero initial velocity v_{0x}, the amplitude A is *not* equal to the initial displacement. That's reasonable; if you start the object at a positive x_0 but give it a positive velocity v_{0x}, it will go *farther* than x_0 before it turns and comes back, and so $A > x_0$.

Figure **14.13** How x-velocity v_x and x-acceleration a_x vary during one cycle of SHM.



PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 14.1 Simple Harmonic Motion I: Describing Motion

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* An oscillating system undergoes simple harmonic motion (SHM) *only* if the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Identify the known and unknown quantities, and determine which are the target variables.
2. Distinguish between two kinds of quantities. *Properties of the system* include the mass m, the force constant k, and quantities derived from m and k, such as the period T, frequency f, and angular frequency ω. These are independent of *properties of the motion*, which describe how the system behaves when it is set into motion in a particular way; they include the amplitude A, maximum velocity v_{max}, and phase angle ϕ, and values of x, v_x, and a_x at particular times.
3. If necessary, define an x-axis as in Fig. 14.13, with the equilibrium position at $x = 0$.

EXECUTE *the solution* as follows:

1. Use the equations given in Sections 14.1 and 14.2 to solve for the target variables.
2. To find the values of x, v_x, and a_x at particular times, use Eqs. (14.13), (14.15), and (14.16), respectively. If both the initial displacement x_0 and initial velocity v_{0x} are given, determine ϕ and A from Eqs. (14.18) and (14.19). If the object has an initial positive displacement x_0 but zero initial velocity ($v_{0x} = 0$), then the amplitude is $A = x_0$ and the phase angle is $\phi = 0$. If it has an initial positive velocity v_{0x} but no initial displacement ($x_0 = 0$), the amplitude is $A = v_{0x}/\omega$ and the phase angle is $\phi = -\pi/2$. Express all phase angles in *radians*.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Make sure that your results are consistent. For example, suppose you used x_0 and v_{0x} to find general expressions for x and v_x at time t. If you substitute $t = 0$ into these expressions, you should get back the given values of x_0 and v_{0x}.

EXAMPLE 14.3 Describing SHM

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

We give the glider of Example 14.2 an initial displacement $x_0 = +0.015$ m and an initial velocity $v_{0x} = +0.40$ m/s. (a) Find the period, amplitude, and phase angle of the resulting motion. (b) Write equations for the displacement, velocity, and acceleration as functions of time.

IDENTIFY and SET UP As in Example 14.2, the oscillations are SHM. We use equations from this section and the given values $k = 200$ N/m, $m = 0.50$ kg, x_0, and v_{0x} to calculate the target variables A and ϕ and to obtain expressions for x, v_x, and a_x.

EXECUTE (a) In SHM the period and angular frequency are *properties of the system* that depend on only k and m, not on the amplitude, and so are the same as in Example 14.2 ($T = 0.31$ s and $\omega = 20$ rad/s). From Eq. (14.19), the amplitude is

$$A = \sqrt{x_0^2 + \frac{v_{0x}^2}{\omega^2}} = \sqrt{(0.015\text{ m})^2 + \frac{(0.40\text{ m/s})^2}{(20\text{ rad/s})^2}} = 0.025\text{ m}$$

We use Eq. (14.18) to find the phase angle:

$$\phi = \arctan\left(-\frac{v_{0x}}{\omega x_0}\right)$$

$$= \arctan\left(-\frac{0.40\text{ m/s}}{(20\text{ rad/s})(0.015\text{ m})}\right) = -53° = -0.93\text{ rad}$$

(b) The displacement, velocity, and acceleration at any time are given by Eqs. (14.13), (14.15), and (14.16), respectively. We substitute the values of A, ω, and ϕ into these equations:

$$x = (0.025\text{ m})\cos[(20\text{ rad/s})t - 0.93\text{ rad}]$$

$$v_x = -(0.50\text{ m/s})\sin[(20\text{ rad/s})t - 0.93\text{ rad}]$$

$$a_x = -(10\text{ m/s}^2)\cos[(20\text{ rad/s})t - 0.93\text{ rad}]$$

EVALUATE You can check the expressions for x and v_x by confirming that if you substitute $t = 0$, they yield $x = x_0 = 0.015$ m and $v_x = v_{0x} = 0.40$ m/s.

KEYCONCEPT You can determine the amplitude and phase angle of a simple harmonic oscillation from the initial position, initial velocity, and angular frequency of the motion.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.2 A glider is attached to a spring as shown in Fig. 14.13. If the glider is moved to $x = 0.10$ m and released from rest at time $t = 0$, it will oscillate with amplitude $A = 0.10$ m and phase angle $\phi = 0$. (a) Suppose instead that at $t = 0$ the glider is at $x = 0.10$ m and is moving to the right in Fig. 14.13. In this situation is the amplitude greater than, less than, or equal to 0.10 m? Is the phase angle greater than, less than, or equal to zero? (b) Suppose instead that at $t = 0$ the glider is at $x = 0.10$ m and is moving to the left in Fig. 14.13. In this situation is the amplitude greater than, less than, or equal to 0.10 m? Is the phase angle greater than, less than, or equal to zero?

ANSWER (a) $A > 0.10$ m, $\phi < 0$; (b) $A > 0.10$ m, $\phi > 0$ In both situations the initial ($t = 0$) x-velocity v_{0x} is nonzero, so from Eq. (14.19) the amplitude $A = \sqrt{x_0^2 + (v_{0x}^2/\omega^2)}$ is greater than the initial x-coordinate $x_0 = 0.10$ m. From Eq. (14.18) the phase angle is $\phi = \arctan(-v_{0x}/\omega x_0)$, which is positive if the quantity $-v_{0x}/\omega x_0$ (the argument of the arctangent function) is positive and negative if $-v_{0x}/\omega x_0$ is negative. In part (a) both x_0 and v_{0x} are positive, so $-v_{0x}/\omega x_0 > 0$ and $\phi > 0$. In part (b) x_0 is positive and v_{0x} is negative, so $-v_{0x}/\omega x_0 < 0$ and $\phi < 0$.

14.3 ENERGY IN SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

We can learn even more about simple harmonic motion by using energy considerations. The only horizontal force on the object in SHM in Figs. 14.2 and 14.13 is the conservative force exerted by an ideal spring. The vertical forces do no work, so the total mechanical energy of the system is *conserved*. We also assume that the mass of the spring itself is negligible.

The kinetic energy of the object is $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ and the potential energy of the spring is $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, just as in Section 7.2. There are no nonconservative forces that do work, so the total mechanical energy $E = K + U$ is conserved:

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \text{constant} \qquad (14.20)$$

(Since the motion is one-dimensional, $v^2 = v_x^2$.)

The total mechanical energy E is also directly related to the amplitude A of the motion. When the object reaches the point $x = A$, its maximum displacement from equilibrium, it momentarily stops as it turns back toward the equilibrium position. That is, when $x = A$ (or $-A$), $v_x = 0$. At this point the energy is entirely potential, and $E = \frac{1}{2}kA^2$. Because E is constant, it is equal to $\frac{1}{2}kA^2$ at any other point. Combining this expression with Eq. (14.20), we get

Total mechanical energy in simple harmonic motion

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 = \text{constant} \qquad (14.21)$$

(Mass; Force constant of restoring force; Velocity; Displacement; Amplitude)

We can verify this equation by substituting x and v_x from Eqs. (14.13) and (14.15) and using $\omega^2 = k/m$ from Eq. (14.9):

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m[-\omega A\sin(\omega t + \phi)]^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}k[A\cos(\omega t + \phi)]^2$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2\sin^2(\omega t + \phi) + \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2\cos^2(\omega t + \phi) = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2$$

(Recall that $\sin^2\alpha + \cos^2\alpha = 1$.) Hence our expressions for displacement and velocity in SHM are consistent with energy conservation, as they must be.

We can use Eq. (14.21) to solve for the velocity v_x of the object at a given displacement x:

$$v_x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}\sqrt{A^2 - x^2} \qquad (14.22)$$

The $\pm$ sign means that at a given value of x the object can be moving in either direction. For example, when $x = \pm A/2$,

$$v_x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}\sqrt{A^2 - \left(\pm\frac{A}{2}\right)^2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}A$$

Equation (14.22) also shows that the *maximum* speed v_{max} occurs at $x = 0$. Using Eq. (14.10), $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$, we find that

$$v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}A = \omega A \qquad (14.23)$$

This agrees with Eq. (14.15): v_x oscillates between $-\omega A$ and $+\omega A$.

Interpreting *E*, *K*, and *U* in SHM

Figure 14.14 shows the energy quantities E, K, and U at $x = 0$, $x = \pm A/2$, and $x = \pm A$. **Figure 14.15** (next page) is a graphical display of Eq. (14.21); energy (kinetic, potential, and total) is plotted vertically and the coordinate x is plotted horizontally. The parabolic curve in Fig. 14.15a represents the potential energy $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. The horizontal line represents the total mechanical energy E, which is constant and does not vary with x. At any value of x between $-A$ and A, the vertical distance from the x-axis to the parabola is U; since $E = K + U$, the remaining vertical distance up to the horizontal line is K. Figure 14.15b shows both K and U as functions of x. The horizontal line for E intersects the potential-energy curve at $x = -A$ and $x = A$, so at these points the energy is entirely potential, the kinetic energy is zero, and the object comes momentarily to rest before reversing direction. As the object oscillates between $-A$ and A, the energy is continuously transformed from potential to kinetic and back again.

Figure **14.14** Graphs of E, K, and U versus displacement in SHM. The velocity of the object is *not* constant, so these images of the object at equally spaced positions are *not* equally spaced in time.

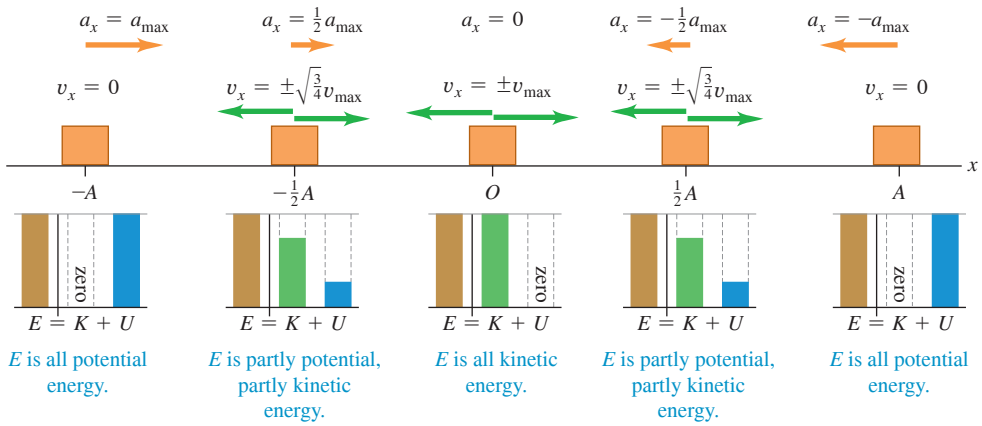
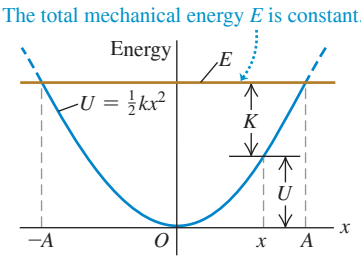


Figure **14.15** Kinetic energy K, potential energy U, and total mechanical energy E as functions of displacement for SHM. At each value of x the sum of the values of K and U equals the constant value of E. Can you show that the energy is half kinetic and half potential at $x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}A$?

(a) The potential energy U and total mechanical energy E for an object in SHM as a function of displacement x



(b) The same graph as in (a), showing kinetic energy K as well

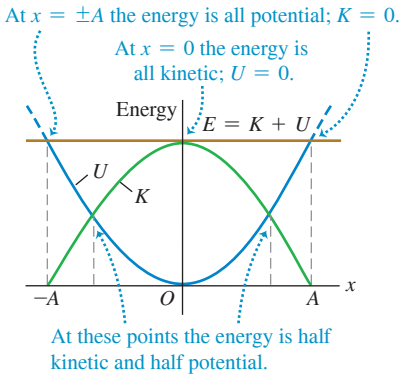


Figure 14.15a shows the connection between the amplitude A and the corresponding total mechanical energy $E = \frac{1}{2}kA^2$. If we tried to make x greater than A (or less than $-A$), U would be greater than E, and K would have to be negative. But K can never be negative, so x can't be greater than A or less than $-A$.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 14.2 Simple Harmonic Motion II: Energy

The SHM energy equation, Eq. (14.21), is a useful relationship among velocity, displacement, and total mechanical energy. If a problem requires you to relate displacement, velocity, and acceleration without reference to time, consider using Eq. (14.4) (from Newton's second law) or Eq. (14.21) (from energy conservation). Because Eq. (14.21) involves x^2 and v_x^2, you must infer the *signs* of x and v_x from the situation. For instance, if the object is moving from the equilibrium position toward the point of greatest positive displacement, then x is positive and v_x is positive.

EXAMPLE 14.4 Velocity, acceleration, and energy in SHM

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

(a) Find the maximum and minimum velocities attained by the oscillating glider of Example 14.2. (b) Find the maximum and minimum accelerations. (c) Find the velocity v_x and acceleration a_x when the glider is halfway from its initial position to the equilibrium position $x = 0$. (d) Find the total mechanical energy, potential energy, and kinetic energy at this position.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The problem concerns properties of the motion at specified *positions,* not at specified *times,* so we can use the energy relationships of this section. Figure 14.13 shows our choice of x-axis. The maximum displacement from equilibrium is $A = 0.020$ m. We use Eqs. (14.22) and (14.4) to find v_x and a_x for a given x. We then use Eq. (14.21) for given x and v_x to find the total, potential, and kinetic energies E, U, and K.

EXECUTE (a) From Eq. (14.22), the velocity v_x at any displacement x is

$$v_x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}\sqrt{A^2 - x^2}$$

The glider's maximum *speed* occurs when it is moving through $x = 0$:

$$v_{max} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}\,A = \sqrt{\frac{200\text{ N/m}}{0.50\text{ kg}}}(0.020\text{ m}) = 0.40\text{ m/s}$$

Its maximum and minimum (most negative) *velocities* are $+0.40$ m/s and -0.40 m/s, which occur when it is moving through $x = 0$ to the right and left, respectively.

(b) From Eq. (14.4), $a_x = -(k/m)x$. The glider's maximum (most positive) acceleration occurs at the most negative value of x, $x = -A$:

$$a_{max} = -\frac{k}{m}(-A) = -\frac{200\text{ N/m}}{0.50\text{ kg}}(-0.020\text{ m}) = 8.0\text{ m/s}^2$$

The minimum (most negative) acceleration is $a_{min} = -8.0\text{ m/s}^2$, which occurs at $x = +A = +0.020$ m.

(c) The point halfway from $x = x_0 = A$ to $x = 0$ is $x = A/2 = 0.010$ m. From Eq. (14.22), at this point

$$v_x = -\sqrt{\frac{200\text{ N/m}}{0.50\text{ kg}}}\sqrt{(0.020\text{ m})^2 - (0.010\text{ m})^2} = -0.35\text{ m/s}$$

We choose the negative square root because the glider is moving from $x = A$ toward $x = 0$. From Eq. (14.4),

$$a_x = -\frac{200\text{ N/m}}{0.50\text{ kg}}(0.010\text{ m}) = -4.0\text{ m/s}^2$$

Figure 14.14 shows the conditions at $x = 0$, $\pm A/2$, and $\pm A$.

(d) The energies are

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(200\text{ N/m})(0.020\text{ m})^2 = 0.040\text{ J}$$

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(200\text{ N/m})(0.010\text{ m})^2 = 0.010\text{ J}$$

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.50\text{ kg})(-0.35\text{ m/s})^2 = 0.030\text{ J}$$

EVALUATE At $x = A/2$, the total mechanical energy is one-fourth potential energy and three-fourths kinetic energy. You can confirm this by inspecting Fig. 14.15b.

KEYCONCEPT In simple harmonic motion, the sum of kinetic energy and elastic potential energy is conserved. You can use this to find the velocity of an object in SHM as a function of its displacement.

EXAMPLE 14.5 Energy and momentum in SHM

A block of mass M attached to a horizontal spring with force constant k is moving in SHM with amplitude A_1. As the block passes through its equilibrium position, a lump of putty of mass m is dropped from a small height and sticks to it. (a) Find the new amplitude and period of the motion. (b) Repeat part (a) if the putty is dropped onto the block when it is at one end of its path.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The problem involves the motion at a given position, not a given time, so we can use energy methods. **Figure 14.16** shows our sketches. Before the putty falls, the total mechanical energy of the block–spring system is constant. In part (a), the putty–block collision is completely inelastic: The horizontal component of momentum is conserved, kinetic energy decreases, and the amount of mass that's oscillating increases. After the collision, the total mechanical energy remains constant at its new value. In part (b) the oscillating mass also increases, but the block isn't moving when the putty is added; there is effectively no collision at all, and no mechanical energy is lost. We find the amplitude A_2 after each collision from the final energy of the system by using Eq. (14.21) and conservation of momentum. The period T_2 after the collision is the same in both parts (a) and (b) because the final mass is the same; we find it by using Eq. (14.12).

EXECUTE (a) Before the collision the total mechanical energy of the block and spring is $E_1 = \frac{1}{2}kA_1^2$. The block is at $x = 0$, so $U = 0$ and the energy is purely kinetic (Fig. 14.16a). If we let v_1 be the speed of the block at this point, then $E_1 = \frac{1}{2}kA_1^2 = \frac{1}{2}Mv_1^2$ and

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{k}{M}}A_1$$

During the collision the x-component of momentum of the block–putty system is conserved. (Why?) Just before the collision this component is the sum of Mv_1 (for the block) and zero (for the putty). Just after the collision the block and putty move together with speed v_2, so their combined x-component of momentum is $(M + m)v_2$. From conservation of momentum,

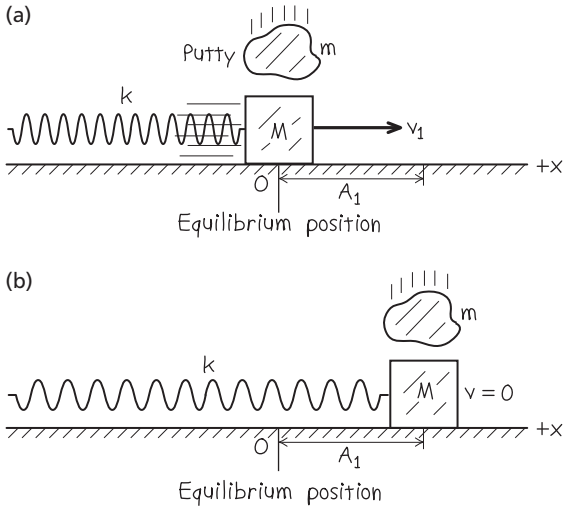
$$Mv_1 + 0 = (M + m)v_2 \qquad \text{so} \qquad v_2 = \frac{M}{M + m}v_1$$

The collision lasts a very short time, so the block and putty are still at the equilibrium position just after the collision. The energy is still purely kinetic but is *less* than before the collision:

$$E_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(M + m)v_2^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{M^2}{M + m}v_1^2$$

$$= \frac{M}{M + m}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}Mv_1^2\right) = \left(\frac{M}{M + m}\right)E_1$$

Figure **14.16** Our sketches for this problem.



Since $E_2 = \frac{1}{2}kA_2^2$, where A_2 is the amplitude after the collision,

$$\tfrac{1}{2}kA_2^2 = \left(\frac{M}{M + m}\right)\tfrac{1}{2}kA_1^2$$

$$A_2 = A_1\sqrt{\frac{M}{M + m}}$$

From Eq. (14.12), the period of oscillation after the collision is

$$T_2 = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{M + m}{k}}$$

(b) When the putty falls, the block is instantaneously at rest (Fig. 14.16b). The x-component of momentum is zero both before and after the collision. The block and putty have zero kinetic energy just before and just after the collision. The energy is all potential energy stored in the spring, so adding the putty has *no effect* on the total mechanical energy. That is, $E_2 = E_1 = \frac{1}{2}kA_1^2$, and the amplitude is unchanged: $A_2 = A_1$. The period is again $T_2 = 2\pi\sqrt{(M + m)/k}$.

EVALUATE Energy is lost in part (a) because the putty slides against the moving block during the collision, and energy is dissipated by kinetic friction. No energy is lost in part (b) because there is no sliding during the collision.

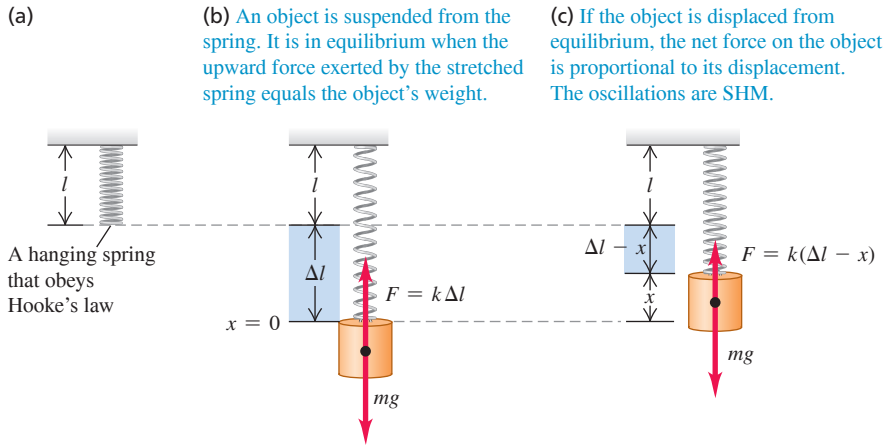
KEYCONCEPT You can use conservation of total mechanical energy in simple harmonic motion to help solve problems that involve motion at a given position, not at a given time.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.3 (a) To double the total energy for a mass-spring system oscillating in SHM, by what factor must the amplitude increase? (i) 4; (ii) 2; (iii) $\sqrt{2} = 1.414$; (iv) $\sqrt[4]{2} = 1.189$. (b) By what factor will the frequency change due to this amplitude increase? (i) 4; (ii) 2; (iii) $\sqrt{2} = 1.414$; (iv) $\sqrt[4]{2} = 1.189$; (v) it does not change.

ANSWER

(a) **(iii)**, (b) **(v)** To increase the total energy $E = \frac{1}{2}kA^2$ by a factor of 2, the amplitude A must increase by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$. Because the motion is SHM, changing the amplitude has no effect on the frequency.

Figure **14.17** An object attached to a hanging spring.



14.4 APPLICATIONS OF SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

So far, we've looked at a grand total of *one* situation in which simple harmonic motion (SHM) occurs: an object attached to an ideal horizontal spring. But SHM can occur in any system in which there is a restoring force that is directly proportional to the displacement from equilibrium, as given by Eq. (14.3), $F_x = -kx$. The restoring force originates in different ways in different situations, so we must find the force constant k for each case by examining the net force on the system. Once this is done, it's straightforward to find the angular frequency ω, frequency f, and period T; we just substitute the value of k into Eqs. (14.10), (14.11), and (14.12), respectively. Let's use these ideas to examine several examples of simple harmonic motion.

Vertical SHM

Suppose we hang a spring with force constant k (**Fig. 14.17a**) and suspend from it an object with mass m. Oscillations will now be vertical; will they still be SHM? In Fig. 14.17b the object hangs at rest, in equilibrium. In this position the spring is stretched an amount Δl just great enough that the spring's upward vertical force $k\,\Delta l$ on the object balances its weight mg:

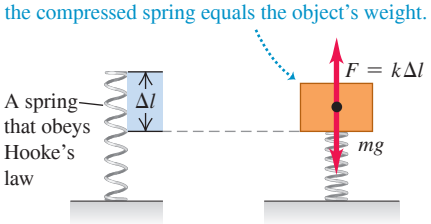
$$k\,\Delta l = mg$$

Take $x = 0$ to be this equilibrium position and take the positive x-direction to be upward. When the object is a distance x *above* its equilibrium position (Fig. 14.17c), the extension of the spring is $\Delta l - x$. The upward force it exerts on the object is then $k(\Delta l - x)$, and the net x-component of force on the object is

$$F_{\text{net}} = k(\Delta l - x) + (-mg) = -kx$$

that is, a net downward force of magnitude kx. Similarly, when the object is *below* the equilibrium position, there is a net upward force with magnitude kx. In either case there is a restoring force with magnitude kx. If the object is set in vertical motion, it oscillates in SHM with the same angular frequency as though it were horizontal, $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. So vertical SHM doesn't differ in any essential way from horizontal SHM. The only real change is that the equilibrium position $x = 0$ no longer corresponds to the point at which the spring is unstretched. The same ideas hold if an object with weight mg is placed atop a compressible spring (**Fig. 14.18**) and compresses it a distance Δl.

Figure **14.18** If the weight mg compresses the spring a distance Δl, the force constant is $k = mg/\Delta l$ and the angular frequency for vertical SHM is $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$—the same as if the object were suspended from the spring (see Fig. 14.17).



EXAMPLE 14.6 Vertical SHM in an old car

The shock absorbers in an old car with mass 1000 kg are completely worn out. When a 980 N person climbs slowly into the car at its center of gravity, the car sinks 2.8 cm. The car (with the person aboard) hits a bump, and the car starts oscillating up and down in SHM. Model the car and person as a single object on a single spring, and find the period and frequency of the oscillation.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The situation is like that shown in Fig. 14.18. The compression of the spring when the person's weight is added tells us the force constant, which we can use to find the period and frequency (the target variables).

EXECUTE When the force increases by 980 N, the spring compresses an additional 0.028 m, and the x-coordinate of the car changes by -0.028 m. Hence the effective force constant (including the effect of the entire suspension) is

$$k = -\frac{F_x}{x} = -\frac{980\text{ N}}{-0.028\text{ m}} = 3.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg/s}^2$$

The person's mass is $w/g = (980\text{ N})/(9.8\text{ m/s}^2) = 100$ kg. The *total* oscillating mass is $m = 1000\text{ kg} + 100\text{ kg} = 1100$ kg. The period T is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{1100\text{ kg}}{3.5 \times 10^4\text{ kg/s}^2}} = 1.11\text{ s}$$

The frequency is $f = 1/T = 1/(1.11\text{ s}) = 0.90$ Hz.

EVALUATE A persistent oscillation with a period of about 1 second makes for a very unpleasant ride. The purpose of shock absorbers is to make such oscillations die out (see Section 14.7).

KEYCONCEPT The same equations apply to both horizontal and vertical simple harmonic motion. The only effect of gravity on vertical SHM is to change the equilibrium position of the oscillating object.

Angular SHM

A mechanical watch keeps time based on the oscillations of a balance wheel (**Fig. 14.19**). The wheel has a moment of inertia I about its axis. A coil spring exerts a restoring torque τ_z that is proportional to the angular displacement θ from the equilibrium position. We write $\tau_z = -\kappa\theta$, where κ (the Greek letter kappa) is a constant called the *torsion constant*. Using the rotational analog of Newton's second law for a rigid body, $\sum\tau_z = I\alpha_z = I\,d^2\theta/dt^2$, Eq. (10.7), we find

$$-\kappa\theta = I\alpha \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{\kappa}{I}\theta$$

This equation is exactly the same as Eq. (14.4) for simple harmonic motion, with x replaced by θ and k/m replaced by κ/I. So we are dealing with a form of *angular* simple harmonic motion. The angular frequency ω and frequency f are given by Eqs. (14.10) and (14.11), respectively, with the same replacement:

Angular simple harmonic motion

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa}{I}} \quad \text{and} \quad f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{\kappa}{I}} \qquad (14.24)$$

(ω: Angular frequency; f: Frequency; κ/I: Torsion constant divided by moment of inertia)

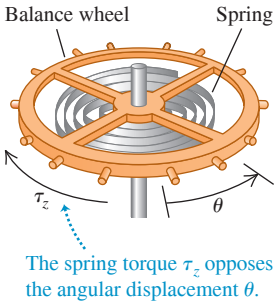
The angular displacement θ as a function of time is given by

$$\theta = \Theta\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

where Θ (the capital Greek letter theta) plays the role of an angular amplitude.

It's a good thing that the motion of a balance wheel *is* simple harmonic. If it weren't, the frequency might depend on the amplitude, and the watch would run too fast or too slow as the spring ran down.

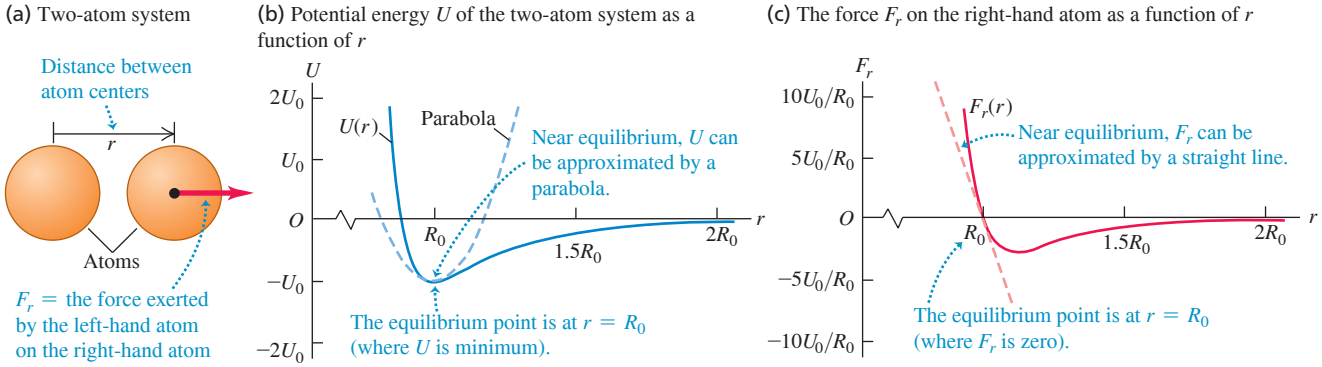
Figure 14.19 The balance wheel of a mechanical watch. The spring exerts a restoring torque that is proportional to the angular displacement θ, so the motion is angular SHM.



Vibrations of Molecules

The following discussion of the vibrations of molecules uses the binomial theorem. If you aren't familiar with this theorem, you should read about it in the appropriate section of a math textbook.

Figure **14.20** (a) Two atoms with centers separated by r. (b) Potential energy U and (c) force F_r in the van der Waals interaction.



When two atoms are separated by a few atomic diameters, they can exert attractive forces on each other. But if the atoms are so close that their electron shells overlap, the atoms repel each other. Between these limits, there can be an equilibrium separation distance at which two atoms form a *molecule*. If these atoms are displaced slightly from equilibrium, they will oscillate.

Let's consider one type of interaction between atoms called the *van der Waals interaction*. Our immediate task here is to study oscillations, so we won't go into the details of how this interaction arises. Let the center of one atom be at the origin and let the center of the other atom be a distance r away (**Fig. 14.20a**); the equilibrium distance between centers is $r = R_0$. Experiment shows that the van der Waals interaction can be described by the potential-energy function

$$U = U_0\left[\left(\frac{R_0}{r}\right)^{12} - 2\left(\frac{R_0}{r}\right)^{6}\right] \tag{14.25}$$

where U_0 is a positive constant with units of joules. When the two atoms are very far apart, $U = 0$; when they are separated by the equilibrium distance $r = R_0$, $U = -U_0$. From Section 7.4, the force on the second atom is the negative derivative of Eq. (14.25):

$$F_r = -\frac{dU}{dr} = U_0\left[\frac{12R_0^{12}}{r^{13}} - 2\frac{6R_0^{6}}{r^{7}}\right] = 12\frac{U_0}{R_0}\left[\left(\frac{R_0}{r}\right)^{13} - \left(\frac{R_0}{r}\right)^{7}\right] \tag{14.26}$$

Figures 14.20b and 14.20c plot the potential energy and force, respectively. The force is positive for $r < R_0$ and negative for $r > R_0$, so it is a *restoring* force.

Let's examine the restoring force F_r in Eq. (14.26). We let x represent the displacement from equilibrium:

$$x = r - R_0 \qquad \text{so} \qquad r = R_0 + x$$

In terms of x, the force F_r in Eq. (14.26) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} F_r &= 12\frac{U_0}{R_0}\left[\left(\frac{R_0}{R_0 + x}\right)^{13} - \left(\frac{R_0}{R_0 + x}\right)^{7}\right] \\ &= 12\frac{U_0}{R_0}\left[\frac{1}{(1 + x/R_0)^{13}} - \frac{1}{(1 + x/R_0)^{7}}\right] \end{aligned} \tag{14.27}$$

This looks nothing like Hooke's law, $F_x = -kx$, so we might be tempted to conclude that molecular oscillations cannot be SHM. But let us restrict ourselves to *small-amplitude* oscillations so that the absolute value of the displacement x is small in comparison to R_0 and the absolute value of the ratio x/R_0 is much less than 1. We can then simplify Eq. (14.27) by using the *binomial theorem:*

$$(1 + u)^n = 1 + nu + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}u^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}u^3 + \cdots \tag{14.28}$$

If $|u|$ is much less than 1, each successive term in Eq. (14.28) is much smaller than the one it follows, and we can safely approximate $(1 + u)^n$ by just the first two terms. In Eq. (14.27), u is replaced by x/R_0 and n equals -13 or -7, so

$$\frac{1}{(1 + x/R_0)^{13}} = (1 + x/R_0)^{-13} \approx 1 + (-13)\frac{x}{R_0}$$

$$\frac{1}{(1 + x/R_0)^{7}} = (1 + x/R_0)^{-7} \approx 1 + (-7)\frac{x}{R_0}$$

$$F_r \approx 12\frac{U_0}{R_0}\left[\left(1 + (-13)\frac{x}{R_0}\right) - \left(1 + (-7)\frac{x}{R_0}\right)\right] = -\left(\frac{72U_0}{R_0^2}\right)x \qquad (14.29)$$

This is just Hooke's law, with force constant $k = 72U_0/R_0^2$. (Note that k has the correct units, J/m^2 or N/m.) So oscillations of molecules bound by the van der Waals interaction can be simple harmonic motion, provided that the amplitude is small in comparison to R_0 so that the approximation $|x/R_0| \ll 1$ used in the derivation of Eq. (14.29) is valid.

You can also use the binomial theorem to show that the potential energy U in Eq. (14.25) can be written as $U \approx \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + C$, where $C = -U_0$ and k is again equal to $72U_0/R_0{}^2$. Adding a constant to the potential-energy function has no effect on the physics, so the system of two atoms is fundamentally no different from a mass attached to a horizontal spring for which $U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$.

EXAMPLE 14.7 Molecular vibration

Two argon atoms form the molecule Ar_2 as a result of a van der Waals interaction with $U_0 = 1.68 \times 10^{-21}$ J and $R_0 = 3.82 \times 10^{-10}$ m. Find the frequency of small oscillations of one Ar atom about its equilibrium position.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This is the situation shown in Fig. 14.20. Because the oscillations are small, we can use Eq. (14.29) to find the force constant k and Eq. (14.11) to find the frequency f of SHM.

EXECUTE From Eq. (14.29),

$$k = \frac{72U_0}{R_0^2} = \frac{72(1.68 \times 10^{-21}\ \text{J})}{(3.82 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m})^2} = 0.829\ \text{J/m}^2 = 0.829\ \text{N/m}$$

(This force constant is comparable to that of a loose toy spring like a Slinky™.) From Appendix F, the average atomic mass of argon is $(39.948\ \text{u})(1.66 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg/1 u}) = 6.63 \times 10^{-26}$ kg.

From Eq. (14.11), if one atom is fixed and the other oscillates,

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{0.829\ \text{N/m}}{6.63 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}}} = 5.63 \times 10^{11}\ \text{Hz}$$

EVALUATE Our answer for f isn't quite right. If no net external force acts on the molecule, its center of mass (halfway between the atoms) doesn't accelerate, so *both* atoms must oscillate with the same amplitude in opposite directions. It turns out that we can account for this by replacing m with $m/2$ in our expression for f. This makes f larger by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$, so the correct frequency is $f = \sqrt{2}(5.63 \times 10^{11}\ \text{Hz}) = 7.96 \times 10^{11}$ Hz. What's more, on the atomic scale we must use *quantum mechanics* rather than Newtonian mechanics to describe motion; happily, quantum mechanics also yields $f = 7.96 \times 10^{11}$ Hz.

KEYCONCEPT Molecular vibrations, as well as the vibrations of many other systems, are approximately simple harmonic if the oscillation amplitude is sufficiently small.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.4 A block attached to a hanging ideal spring oscillates up and down with a period of 10 s on earth. If you take the block and spring to Mars, where the acceleration due to gravity is only about 40% as large as on earth, what will be the new period of oscillation? (i) 10 s; (ii) more than 10 s; (iii) less than 10 s.

ANSWER

(i) The oscillation period of an object of mass m attached to a hanging spring of force constant k is given by $T = 2\pi\sqrt{m/k}$, the same expression as for an object attached to a horizontal spring. Neither m nor k changes when the apparatus is taken to Mars, so the period is unchanged. The only difference is that in equilibrium, the spring will stretch a shorter distance on Mars than on earth due to the weaker gravity.

Figure 14.21 The dynamics of a simple pendulum.

(a) A real pendulum

(b) An idealized simple pendulum

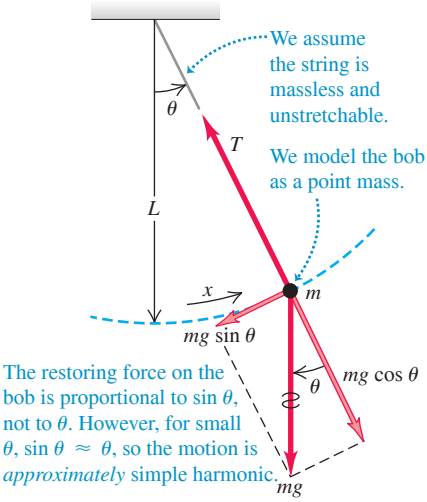
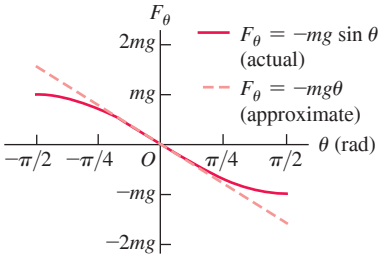


Figure 14.22 For small angular displacements θ, the restoring force $F_\theta = -mg\sin\theta$ on a simple pendulum is approximately equal to $-mg\theta$; that is, it is approximately proportional to the displacement θ. Hence for small angles the oscillations are simple harmonic.



14.5 THE SIMPLE PENDULUM

A **simple pendulum** is an idealized model consisting of a point mass suspended by a massless, unstretchable string. When the point mass is pulled to one side of its straight-down equilibrium position and released, it oscillates about the equilibrium position. Familiar situations such as a wrecking ball on a crane's cable or a person on a swing (**Fig. 14.21a**) can be modeled as simple pendulums.

The path of the point mass (sometimes called a *pendulum bob*) is not a straight line but the arc of a circle with radius L equal to the length of the string (Fig. 14.21b). We use as our coordinate the distance x measured along the arc. If the motion is simple harmonic, the restoring force must be directly proportional to x or (because $x = L\theta$) to θ. Is it?

Figure 14.21b shows the radial and tangential components of the forces on the mass. The restoring force F_θ is the tangential component of the net force:

$$F_\theta = -mg\sin\theta \tag{14.30}$$

Gravity provides the restoring force F_θ; the tension T merely acts to make the point mass move in an arc. Since F_θ is proportional to $\sin\theta$, not to θ, the motion is *not* simple harmonic. However, if angle θ is *small,* $\sin\theta$ is very nearly equal to θ in radians (**Fig. 14.22**). (When $\theta = 0.1$ rad, about 6°, $\sin\theta = 0.0998$. That's only 0.2% different.) With this approximation, Eq. (14.30) becomes

$$F_\theta = -mg\theta = -mg\frac{x}{L} = -\frac{mg}{L}x \tag{14.31}$$

The restoring force is then proportional to the coordinate for small displacements, and the force constant is $k = mg/L$. From Eq. (14.10) the angular frequency ω of a simple pendulum with small amplitude is

Angular frequency of simple pendulum, small amplitude

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{mg/L}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \tag{14.32}$$

(k: Acceleration due to gravity; m: Pendulum mass (cancels); L: Pendulum length)

The corresponding frequency and period relationships are

Frequency of simple pendulum, small amplitude

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \tag{14.33}$$

(ω: Angular frequency; g: Acceleration due to gravity; L: Pendulum length)

Period of simple pendulum, small amplitude

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{1}{f} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \tag{14.34}$$

(ω: Angular frequency; f: Frequency; L: Pendulum length; g: Acceleration due to gravity)

These expressions don't involve the *mass* of the particle. That's because the gravitational restoring force is proportional to m, so the mass appears on *both* sides of $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$ and cancels out. (The same physics explains why objects of different masses fall with the same acceleration in a vacuum.) For small oscillations, the period of a pendulum for a given value of g is determined entirely by its length.

Equations (14.32) through (14.34) tell us that a long pendulum (large L) has a longer period than a shorter one. Increasing g increases the restoring force, causing the frequency to increase and the period to decrease.

The motion of a pendulum is only *approximately* simple harmonic. When the maximum angular displacement Θ (amplitude) is not small, the departures from simple harmonic motion can be substantial. In general, the period T is given by

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}\left(1 + \frac{1^2}{2^2}\sin^2\frac{\Theta}{2} + \frac{1^2\cdot 3^2}{2^2\cdot 4^2}\sin^4\frac{\Theta}{2} + \cdots\right) \tag{14.35}$$

We can compute T to any desired degree of precision by taking enough terms in the series. You can confirm that when $\Theta = 15°$, the true period is longer than that given by the approximate Eq. (14.34) by less than 0.5%.

A pendulum is a useful timekeeper because the period is *very nearly* independent of amplitude, provided that the amplitude is small. Thus, as a pendulum clock runs down and the amplitude of the swings decreases a little, the clock still keeps very nearly correct time.

EXAMPLE 14.8 A simple pendulum

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Find the period and frequency of a simple pendulum 1.000 m long at a location where $g = 9.800\ \text{m/s}^2$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This is a simple pendulum, so we can use Eq. (14.34) to determine the pendulum's period T from its length and Eq. (14.1) to find the frequency f from T.

EXECUTE From Eqs. (14.34) and (14.1),

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{1.000\ \text{m}}{9.800\ \text{m/s}^2}} = 2.007\ \text{s}$$

and

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{2.007\ \text{s}} = 0.4982\ \text{Hz}$$

EVALUATE The period is almost exactly 2 s. When the metric system was established, the second was *defined* as half the period of a 1 m simple pendulum. This was a poor standard, however, because the value of g varies from place to place. We discussed more modern time standards in Section 1.3.

KEYCONCEPT The period of a simple pendulum depends only on the length of the pendulum and the value of g, not on the mass of the pendulum bob.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.5 When an object oscillating on a horizontal spring passes through its equilibrium position, its acceleration is zero (see Fig. 14.2b). When the bob of an oscillating simple pendulum passes from left to right through its equilibrium position, is its acceleration (i) zero; (ii) to the left; (iii) to the right; (iv) upward; or (v) downward?

ANSWER

(iv) Just as for an object oscillating on a spring, at the equilibrium position the *speed* of a pendulum bob is instantaneously not changing (this is where the speed is maximum, so its derivative at this time is zero). But the *direction* of motion is changing because the pendulum bob follows a circular path. Hence the bob must have a component of acceleration perpendicular to the path and toward the center of the circle (see Section 3.4). To cause this acceleration at the equilibrium position when the string is vertical, the upward tension force at this position must be greater than the weight of the bob. This causes a net upward force on the bob and an upward acceleration toward the center of the circular path.

14.6 THE PHYSICAL PENDULUM

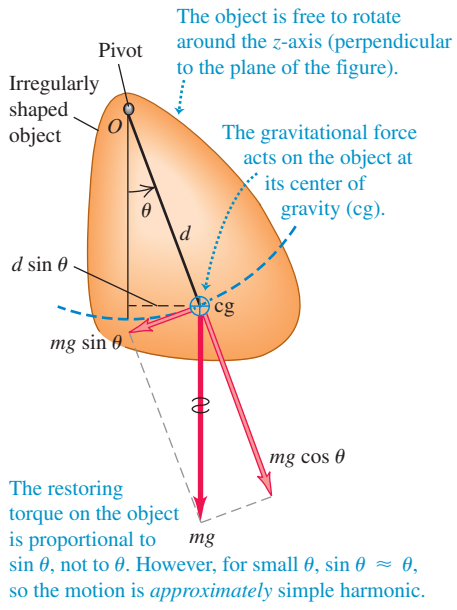
A **physical pendulum** is any *real* pendulum that uses an extended object, in contrast to the idealized *simple* pendulum with all of its mass concentrated at a point. **Figure 14.23** shows an object of irregular shape pivoted so that it can turn without friction about an axis through point O. In equilibrium the center of gravity (cg) is directly below the pivot; in the position shown, the object is displaced from equilibrium by an angle θ, which we use as a coordinate for the system. The distance from O to the center of gravity is d, the moment of inertia of the object about the axis of rotation through O is I, and the total mass is m. When the object is displaced as shown, the weight mg causes a restoring torque

$$\tau_z = -(mg)(d\sin\theta) \tag{14.36}$$

The negative sign shows that the restoring torque is clockwise when the displacement is counterclockwise, and vice versa.

When the object is released, it oscillates about its equilibrium position. The motion is not simple harmonic because the torque τ_z is proportional to $\sin\theta$ rather than to θ itself. However, if θ is small, we can approximate $\sin\theta$ by θ in radians, just as we did in

Figure 14.23 Dynamics of a physical pendulum.



analyzing the simple pendulum. Then the motion is *approximately* simple harmonic. With this approximation,

$$\tau_z = -(mgd)\theta$$

From Section 10.2, the equation of motion is $\sum\tau_z = I\alpha_z$, so

$$-(mgd)\theta = I\alpha_z = I\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2}$$

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{mgd}{I}\theta \tag{14.37}$$

Comparing this with Eq. (14.4), we see that the role of (k/m) for the spring-mass system is played here by the quantity (mgd/I). Thus the angular frequency is

Angular frequency of physical pendulum, small amplitude

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgd}{I}}$$

(m: Mass; g: Acceleration due to gravity; d: Distance from rotation axis to center of gravity; I: Moment of inertia)

(14.38)

The frequency f is $1/2\pi$ times this, and the period T is $1/f$:

Period of physical pendulum, small amplitude

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}}$$

(I: Moment of inertia; d: Distance from rotation axis to center of gravity; m: Mass; g: Acceleration due to gravity)

(14.39)

Equation (14.39) is the basis of a common method for experimentally determining the moment of inertia of an object with a complicated shape. First locate the center of gravity by balancing the object. Then suspend the object so that it is free to oscillate about an axis, and measure the period T of small-amplitude oscillations. Finally, use Eq. (14.39) to calculate the moment of inertia I of the object about this axis from T, the object's mass m, and the distance d from the axis to the center of gravity. Biomechanics researchers use this method to find the moments of inertia of an animal's limbs. This information is important for analyzing how an animal walks, as we'll see in the second of the two following examples.

EXAMPLE 14.9 Physical pendulum versus simple pendulum

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

If the object in Fig. 14.23 is a uniform rod with length L, pivoted at one end, what is the period of its motion as a pendulum?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is the oscillation period T of a rod that acts as a physical pendulum. We find the rod's moment of inertia in Table 9.2, and then determine T from Eq. (14.39).

EXECUTE The moment of inertia of a uniform rod about an axis through one end is $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$. The distance from the pivot to the rod's center of gravity is $d = L/2$. Then from Eq. (14.39),

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{3}ML^2}{MgL/2}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{2L}{3g}}$$

EVALUATE If the rod is a meter stick ($L = 1.00$ m) and $g = 9.80$ m/s^2, then

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{2(1.00\text{ m})}{3(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}} = 1.64\text{ s}$$

The period is smaller by a factor of $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 0.816$ than that of a simple pendulum of the same length (see Example 14.8). The rod's moment of inertia around one end, $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$, is one-third that of the simple pendulum, and the rod's cg is half as far from the pivot as that of the simple pendulum. You can show that, taken together in Eq. (14.39), these two differences account for the factor $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ by which the periods differ.

KEYCONCEPT The period of a physical pendulum depends on the value of g, the distance from the pivot to the physical pendulum's center of gravity, and how the mass is distributed within the physical pendulum.

EXAMPLE 14.10 *Tyrannosaurus rex* and the physical pendulum

All walking animals, including humans, have a natural walking pace—a number of steps per minute that is more comfortable than a faster or slower pace. Suppose that this pace corresponds to the oscillation of the leg as a physical pendulum. (a) How does this pace depend on the length L of the leg from hip to foot? Treat the leg as a uniform rod pivoted at the hip joint. (b) Fossil evidence shows that *T. rex*, a two-legged dinosaur that lived about 65 million years ago, had a leg length $L = 3.1$ m and a stride length $S = 4.0$ m (the distance from one footprint to the next print of the same foot; see **Fig. 14.24**). Estimate the walking speed of *T. rex*.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variables are (a) the relationship between walking pace and leg length L and (b) the walking speed of *T. rex*. We treat the leg as a physical pendulum, with a period of oscillation as found in Example 14.9. We can find the walking speed from the period and the stride length.

EXECUTE (a) From Example 14.9 the period of oscillation of the leg is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{2L/3g}$, which is proportional to $\sqrt{L}$. Each step takes half of one period, so the walking pace (in steps per second) equals twice the oscillation frequency $f = 1/T$ and is proportional to $1/\sqrt{L}$. The longer the leg, the slower the pace.

(b) In our model, *T. rex* traveled one stride length S in a time

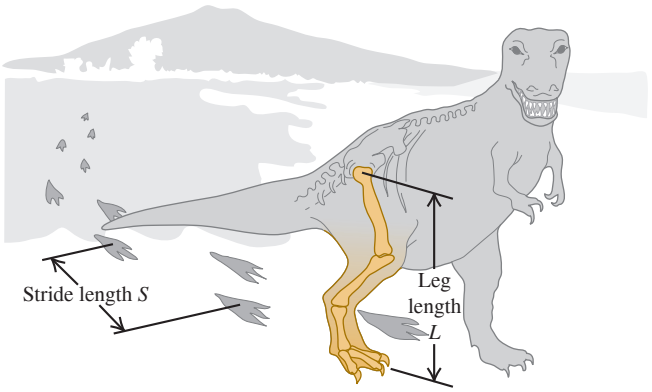
$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{2L}{3g}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{2(3.1\text{ m})}{3(9.8\text{ m/s}^2)}} = 2.9\text{ s}$$

so its walking speed was

$$v = \frac{S}{T} = \frac{4.0\text{ m}}{2.9\text{ s}} = 1.4\text{ m/s} = 5.0\text{ km/h}$$

This is roughly the walking speed of an adult human.

Figure **14.24** The walking speed of *Tyrannosaurus rex* can be estimated from leg length L and stride length S.



EVALUATE A uniform rod isn't a very good model for a leg. The legs of many animals, including both *T. rex* and humans, are tapered; there is more mass between hip and knee than between knee and foot. The center of mass is therefore less than $L/2$ from the hip; a reasonable guess would be about $L/4$. The moment of inertia is therefore *considerably* less than $ML^2/3$—say, $ML^2/15$. Use the analysis of Example 14.9 with these corrections; you'll get a shorter oscillation period and an even greater walking speed for *T. rex*.

KEYCONCEPT You can apply the idea of a physical pendulum to many oscillating systems, including the swinging limbs of humans and animals.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.6 The center of gravity of a simple pendulum of mass m and length L is located at the pendulum bob, a distance L from the pivot point. The center of gravity of a uniform rod of the same mass m and length $2L$ pivoted at one end is also a distance L from the pivot point. Compared to the period of the simple pendulum, is the period of this uniform rod (i) longer; (ii) shorter; or (iii) the same?

ANSWER (i) The period of a physical pendulum is given by Eq. (14.39), $T = 2\pi\sqrt{I/mgd}$. The distance $d = L$ from the pivot to the center of gravity is the same for both the rod and the simple pendulum, as is the mass m. Thus for any displacement angle θ the same restoring torque acts on both the rod and the simple pendulum. However, the rod has a greater moment of inertia: $I_{\text{rod}} = \frac{1}{3}m(2L)^2 = \frac{4}{3}mL^2$ and $I_{\text{simple}} = mL^2$ (all the mass of the pendulum is a distance L from the pivot). Hence the rod has a longer period.

14.7 DAMPED OSCILLATIONS

The idealized oscillating systems we have discussed so far are frictionless. There are no nonconservative forces, the total mechanical energy is constant, and a system set into motion continues oscillating forever with no decrease in amplitude.

Real-world systems always have some dissipative forces, however, and oscillations die out with time unless we replace the dissipated mechanical energy (**Fig. 14.25**). A mechanical pendulum clock continues to run because potential energy stored in the spring or a hanging weight system replaces the mechanical energy lost due to friction in the pivot and the gears. But eventually the spring runs down or the weights reach the bottom of their travel. Then no more energy is available, and the pendulum swings decrease in amplitude and stop.

Figure **14.25** A swinging bell left to itself will eventually stop oscillating due to damping forces (air resistance and friction at the point of suspension).

The decrease in amplitude caused by dissipative forces is called **damping** (*not* "dampening"), and the corresponding motion is called **damped oscillation.** The simplest case is a simple harmonic oscillator with a frictional damping force that is directly proportional to the *velocity* of the oscillating object. This behavior occurs in friction involving viscous fluid flow, such as in shock absorbers or sliding between oil-lubricated surfaces. We then have an additional force on the object due to friction, $F_x = -bv_x$, where $v_x = dx/dt$ is the velocity and b is a constant that describes the strength of the damping force. The negative sign shows that the force is always opposite in direction to the velocity. The *net* force on the object is then

$$\Sigma F_x = -kx - bv_x \tag{14.40}$$

and Newton's second law for the system is

$$-kx - bv_x = ma_x \qquad \text{or} \qquad -kx - b\frac{dx}{dt} = m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \tag{14.41}$$

Equation (14.41) is a differential equation for x; it's the same as Eq. (14.4), the equation for the acceleration in SHM, but with the added term $-bdx/dt$. We won't go into how to solve this equation; we'll just present the solution. If the damping force is relatively small, the motion is described by

Displacement of oscillator, little damping

$$x = Ae^{-(b/2m)t}\cos(\omega' t + \phi) \tag{14.42}$$

Initial amplitude; Damping constant; Mass; Time; Angular frequency of damped oscillations; Phase angle

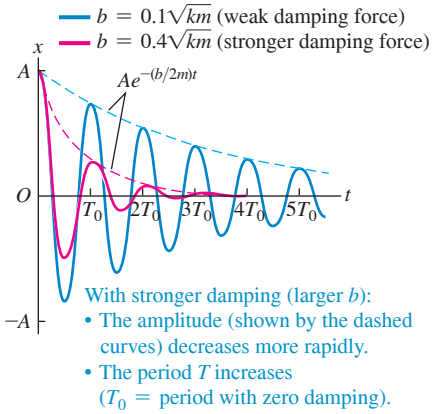
The angular frequency of these damped oscillations is given by

Angular frequency of oscillator, little damping

$$\omega' = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \frac{b^2}{4m^2}} \tag{14.43}$$

Force constant of restoring force; Damping constant; Mass

Figure **14.26** Graph of displacement versus time for an oscillator with little damping [see Eq. (14.42)] and with phase angle $\phi = 0$. The curves are for two values of the damping constant b.



CAUTION When frequencies are imaginary Note that when there is overdamping and b is greater than $2\sqrt{km}$, the argument of the square root in Eq. (14.43) is negative and the angular frequency of oscillation ω is an imaginary number. This is a mathematical clue that there is *no* oscillation in this case.

You can verify that Eq. (14.42) is a solution of Eq. (14.41) by calculating the first and second derivatives of x, substituting them into Eq. (14.41), and checking whether the left and right sides are equal.

The motion described by Eq. (14.42) differs from the undamped case in two ways. First, the amplitude $Ae^{-(b/2m)t}$ is not constant but decreases with time because of the exponential factor $e^{-(b/2m)t}$. **Figure 14.26** is a graph of Eq. (14.42) for $\phi = 0$; the larger the value of b, the more quickly the amplitude decreases.

Second, the angular frequency ω', given by Eq. (14.43), is no longer equal to $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$ but is somewhat smaller. It becomes zero when b becomes so large that

$$\frac{k}{m} - \frac{b^2}{4m^2} = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad b = 2\sqrt{km} \tag{14.44}$$

When Eq. (14.44) is satisfied, the condition is called **critical damping.** The system no longer oscillates but returns to its equilibrium position without oscillation when it is displaced and released.

If b is greater than $2\sqrt{km}$, the condition is called **overdamping.** Again there is no oscillation, but the system returns to equilibrium more slowly than with critical damping. For the overdamped case the solutions of Eq. (14.41) have the form

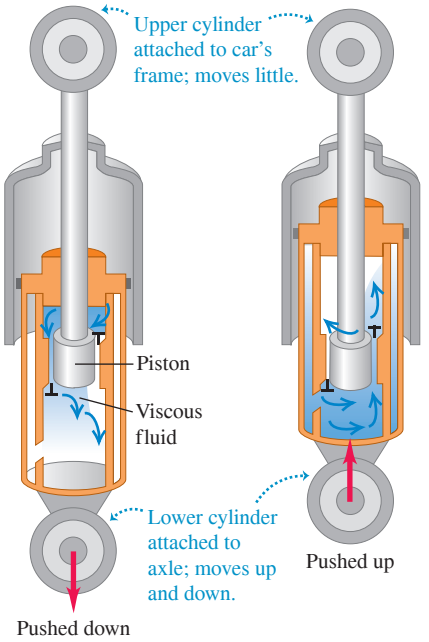
$$x = C_1e^{-a_1t} + C_2e^{-a_2t}$$

where C_1 and C_2 are constants that depend on the initial conditions and a_1 and a_2 are constants determined by m, k, and b.

When b is less than the critical value, as in Eq. (14.42), the condition is called **underdamping.** The system oscillates with steadily decreasing amplitude.

In a vibrating tuning fork or guitar string, it is usually desirable to have as little damping as possible. By contrast, damping plays a beneficial role in the oscillations of an automobile's suspension system. The shock absorbers provide a velocity-dependent damping force so that when the car goes over a bump, it doesn't continue bouncing forever (**Fig. 14.27**). For optimal passenger comfort, the system should be critically damped or slightly underdamped. Too much damping would be counterproductive; if the suspension is overdamped and the car hits a second bump just after the first one, the springs in the suspension will still be compressed somewhat from the first bump and will not be able to fully absorb the impact.

Figure **14.27** An automobile shock absorber. The viscous fluid causes a damping force that depends on the relative velocity of the two ends of the unit.



Energy in Damped Oscillations

In damped oscillations the damping force is nonconservative; the total mechanical energy of the system is not constant but decreases continuously, approaching zero after a long time. To derive an expression for the rate of change of energy, we first write an expression for the total mechanical energy E at any instant:

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2$$

To find the rate of change of this quantity, we take its time derivative:

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = mv_x\frac{dv_x}{dt} + kx\frac{dx}{dt}$$

But $dv_x/dt = a_x$ and $dx/dt = v_x$, so

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = v_x(ma_x + kx)$$

From Eq. (14.41), $ma_x + kx = -b\,dx/dt = -bv_x$, so

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = v_x(-bv_x) = -bv_x^2 \qquad \text{(damped oscillations)} \qquad (14.45)$$

The right side of Eq. (14.45) is negative whenever the oscillating object is in motion, whether the x-velocity v_x is positive or negative. This shows that as the object moves, the energy decreases, though not at a uniform rate. The term $-bv_x^2 = (-bv_x)v_x$ (force times velocity) is the rate at which the damping force does (negative) work on the system (that is, the damping *power*). This equals the rate of change of the total mechanical energy of the system.

Similar behavior occurs in electric circuits containing inductance, capacitance, and resistance. There is a natural frequency of oscillation, and the resistance plays the role of the damping constant b. We'll study these circuits in detail in Chapters 30 and 31.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.7 An airplane is flying in a straight line at a constant altitude. If a wind gust strikes and raises the nose of the airplane, the nose will bob up and down until the airplane eventually returns to its original attitude. Are these oscillations (i) undamped; (ii) underdamped; (iii) critically damped; or (iv) overdamped?

ANSWER

(ii) The oscillations are underdamped with a decreasing amplitude on each cycle of oscillation, like those graphed in Fig. 14.26. If the oscillations were undamped, they would continue indefinitely with the same amplitude. If they were critically damped or overdamped, the nose would not bob up and down but would return smoothly to the original equilibrium attitude without overshooting.

14.8 FORCED OSCILLATIONS AND RESONANCE

A damped oscillator left to itself will eventually stop moving. But we can maintain a constant-amplitude oscillation by applying a force that varies with time in a periodic way. As an example, consider your cousin Throckmorton on a playground swing. You can keep him swinging with constant amplitude by giving him a push once each cycle. We call this additional force a **driving force.**

BIO APPLICATION Forced Oscillations This ladybird (family Coccinellidae) flies by means of a forced oscillation. Unlike the wings of birds, this insect's wings are extensions of its exoskeleton. Muscles attached to the inside of the exoskeleton apply a periodic driving force that deforms the exoskeleton rhythmically, causing the attached wings to beat up and down. The oscillation frequency of the wings and exoskeleton is the same as the frequency of the driving force.

Damped Oscillation with a Periodic Driving Force

If we apply a periodic driving force with angular frequency ω_d to a damped harmonic oscillator, the motion that results is called a **forced oscillation** or a *driven oscillation*. It is different from the motion that occurs when the system is simply displaced from equilibrium and then left alone, in which case the system oscillates with a **natural angular frequency** ω' determined by m, k, and b, as in Eq. (14.43). In a forced oscillation, however, the angular frequency with which the mass oscillates is equal to the driving angular frequency ω_d. This does *not* have to be equal to the natural angular frequency ω'. If you grab the ropes of Throckmorton's swing, you can force the swing to oscillate with any frequency you like.

Suppose we force the oscillator to vibrate with an angular frequency ω_d that is nearly *equal* to the angular frequency ω' it would have with no driving force. What happens? The oscillator is naturally disposed to oscillate at $\omega = \omega'$, so we expect the amplitude of the resulting oscillation to be larger than when the two frequencies are very different. Detailed analysis and experiment show that this is just what happens. The easiest case to analyze is a *sinusoidally* varying force—say, $F(t) = F_{max}\cos\omega_d t$. If we vary the frequency ω_d of the driving force, the amplitude of the resulting forced oscillation varies in an interesting way (**Fig. 14.28**). When there is very little damping (small b), the amplitude goes through a sharp peak as the driving angular frequency ω_d nears the natural oscillation angular frequency ω'. When the damping is increased (larger b), the peak becomes broader and smaller in height and shifts toward lower frequencies.

Using more differential equations than we're ready for, we could find an expression for the amplitude A of the forced oscillation as a function of the driving angular frequency. Here is the result:

Amplitude of a forced oscillator

$$A = \frac{F_{max}}{\sqrt{(k - m\omega_d^2)^2 + b^2\omega_d^2}} \tag{14.46}$$

Maximum value of driving force; Damping constant; Force constant of restoring force; Mass; Driving angular frequency

When $k - m\omega_d^2 = 0$, the first term under the radical is zero, so A has a maximum near $\omega_d = \sqrt{k/m}$. The height of the curve at this point is proportional to $1/b$; the less damping, the higher the peak. At the low-frequency extreme, when $\omega_d = 0$, we get $A = F_{max}/k$. This corresponds to a *constant* force F_{max} and a constant displacement $A = F_{max}/k$ from equilibrium, as we might expect.

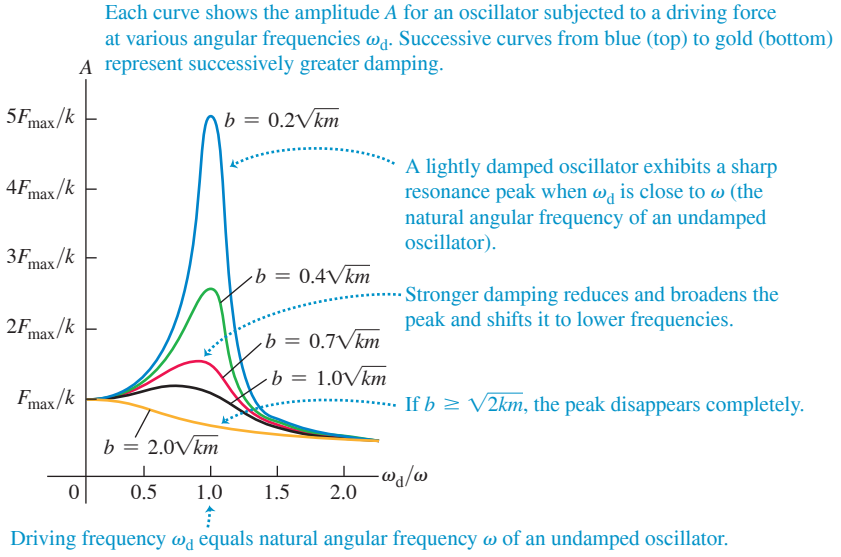


Figure **14.28** Graph of the amplitude A of forced oscillation as a function of the angular frequency ω_d of the driving force. The horizontal axis shows the ratio of ω_d to the angular frequency $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$ of an undamped oscillator. Each curve has a different value of the damping constant b.

Resonance and Its Consequences

The peaking of the amplitude at driving frequencies close to the natural frequency of the system is called **resonance.** Physics is full of examples of resonance; building up the oscillations of a child on a swing by pushing with a frequency equal to the swing's natural frequency is one. A vibrating rattle in a car that occurs only at a certain engine speed is another example. Inexpensive loudspeakers often have an annoying boom or buzz when a musical note coincides with the natural frequency of the speaker cone or housing. In Chapter 16 we'll study examples of resonance that involve sound. Resonance also occurs in electric circuits, as we'll see in Chapter 31; a tuned circuit in a radio receiver responds strongly to waves with frequencies near its natural frequency. This phenomenon lets us select one radio station and reject other stations.

Resonance in mechanical systems can be destructive. A company of soldiers once destroyed a bridge by marching across it in step; the frequency of their steps was close to a natural frequency of the bridge, and the resulting oscillation had large enough amplitude to tear the bridge apart. Ever since, marching soldiers have been ordered to break step before crossing a bridge. Some years ago, vibrations of the engines of a particular type of airplane had just the right frequency to resonate with the natural frequencies of its wings. Large oscillations built up, and occasionally the wings fell off.

BIO APPLICATION Canine Resonance Unlike humans, dogs have no sweat glands and so must pant in order to cool down. The frequency at which a dog pants is very close to the resonant frequency of its respiratory system. This causes the maximum amount of air inflow and outflow and so minimizes the effort that the dog must exert to cool itself.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 14.8 When driven at a frequency near its natural frequency, an oscillator with very little damping has a much greater response than the same oscillator with more damping. When driven at a frequency that is much higher or lower than the natural frequency, which oscillator will have the greater response: (i) the one with very little damping or (ii) the one with more damping?

ANSWER

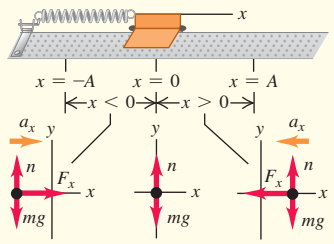
(i) Figure 14.28 shows that the curve of amplitude versus driving frequency moves upward at *all* frequencies as the value of the damping constant b is decreased. Hence for fixed values of k and m, the oscillator with the least damping (smallest value of b) will have the greatest response at any driving frequency.

CHAPTER 14 SUMMARY

Periodic motion: Periodic motion is motion that repeats itself in a definite cycle. It occurs whenever an object has a stable equilibrium position and a restoring force that acts when the object is displaced from equilibrium. Period T is the time for one cycle. Frequency f is the number of cycles per unit time. Angular frequency ω is 2π times the frequency. (See Example 14.1.)

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \qquad T = \frac{1}{f} \tag{14.1}$$

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T} \tag{14.2}$$



Simple harmonic motion: If the restoring force F_x in periodic motion is directly proportional to the displacement x, the motion is called simple harmonic motion (SHM). In many cases this condition is satisfied if the displacement from equilibrium is small. The angular frequency, frequency, and period in SHM do not depend on the amplitude but on only the mass m and force constant k. The displacement, velocity, and acceleration in SHM are sinusoidal functions of time; the amplitude A and phase angle ϕ of the oscillation are determined by the initial displacement and velocity of the object. (See Examples 14.2, 14.3, 14.6, and 14.7.)

$$F_x = -kx \tag{14.3}$$

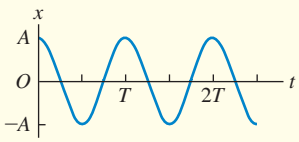
$$a_x = \frac{F_x}{m} = -\frac{k}{m}x \tag{14.4}$$

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \tag{14.10}$$

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \tag{14.11}$$

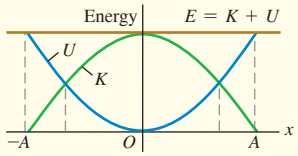
$$T = \frac{1}{f} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \tag{14.12}$$

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{14.13}$$



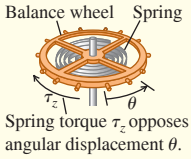
Energy in simple harmonic motion: Energy is conserved in SHM. The total energy can be expressed in terms of the force constant k and amplitude A. (See Examples 14.4 and 14.5.)

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 = \text{constant} \quad (14.21)$$



Angular simple harmonic motion: In angular SHM, the frequency and angular frequency are related to the moment of inertia I and the torsion constant κ.

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa}{I}} \quad \text{and} \quad f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{\kappa}{I}} \quad (14.24)$$

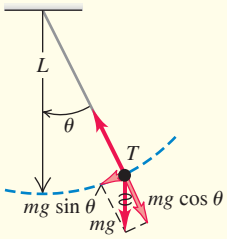


Simple pendulum: A simple pendulum consists of a point mass m at the end of a massless string of length L. Its motion is approximately simple harmonic for sufficiently small amplitude; the angular frequency, frequency, and period then depend on only g and L, not on the mass or amplitude. (See Example 14.8.)

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \quad (14.32)$$

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \quad (14.33)$$

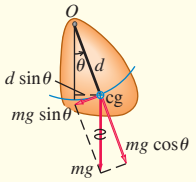
$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{1}{f} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \quad (14.34)$$



Physical pendulum: A physical pendulum is any object suspended from an axis of rotation. The angular frequency and period for small-amplitude oscillations are independent of amplitude but depend on the mass m, distance d from the axis of rotation to the center of gravity, and moment of inertia I about the axis. (See Examples 14.9 and 14.10.)

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgd}{I}} \quad (14.38)$$

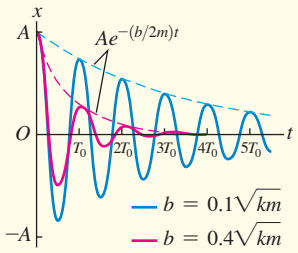
$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}} \quad (14.39)$$



Damped oscillations: When a force $F_x = -bv_x$ is added to a simple harmonic oscillator, the motion is called a damped oscillation. If $b < 2\sqrt{km}$ (called underdamping), the system oscillates with a decaying amplitude and an angular frequency ω' that is lower than it would be without damping. If $b = 2\sqrt{km}$ (called critical damping) or $b > 2\sqrt{km}$ (called overdamping), when the system is displaced it returns to equilibrium without oscillating.

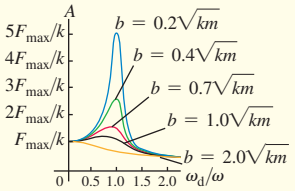
$$x = Ae^{-(b/2m)t}\cos(\omega' t + \phi) \quad (14.42)$$

$$\omega' = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \frac{b^2}{4m^2}} \quad (14.43)$$



Forced oscillations and resonance: When a sinusoidally varying driving force is added to a damped harmonic oscillator, the resulting motion is called a forced oscillation or driven oscillation. The amplitude is a function of the driving frequency ω_d and reaches a peak at a driving frequency close to the natural frequency of the system. This behavior is called resonance.

$$A = \frac{F_{max}}{\sqrt{(k - m\omega_d^2)^2 + b^2\omega_d^2}} \quad (14.46)$$



Chapter 14 Media Assets

GUIDED PRACTICE

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 14.2 and 14.3 (Section 14.2) before attempting these problems.

VP14.3.1 A glider of mass 0.400 kg is placed on a frictionless, horizontal air track. One end of a horizontal spring is attached to the glider, and the other end is attached to the end of the track. When released, the glider oscillates in SHM with frequency 4.15 Hz. (a) Find the period and angular frequency of the motion. (b) Find the force constant k of the spring. (c) Find the magnitude of the force that the spring exerts on the glider when the spring is stretched by 0.0200 m.

VP14.3.2 A hockey puck attached to a horizontal spring oscillates on a frictionless, horizontal surface. The spring has force constant 4.50 N/m and the oscillation period is 1.20 s. (a) What is the mass of the puck? (b) During an oscillation, the acceleration of the puck has maximum magnitude 1.20 m/s^2. What is the amplitude of the oscillation?

VP14.3.3 The piston of a petrol engine oscillates in SHM with frequency 50.0 Hz. At one point in the cycle the piston is 0.0300 m from equilibrium and moving at 12.4 m/s. (a) What is the amplitude of the motion? (b) What is the maximum speed the piston attains during its oscillation?

VP14.3.4 A cat is sleeping on a platform that oscillates from side to side in SHM. The combined mass of the cat and platform is 5.00 kg, and the force constant of the horizontal spring attached to the platform that makes it oscillate is 185 N/m. Ignore friction. (a) What is the frequency of the oscillation? (b) The cat will wake up if the acceleration of the platform is greater than 1.52 m/s^2. What is the maximum amplitude of oscillation that will allow the cat to stay asleep?

Be sure to review EXAMPLE 14.4 (Section 14.3) before attempting these problems.

VP14.4.1 A hockey puck oscillates on a frictionless, horizontal track while attached to a horizontal spring. The puck has mass 0.150 kg and the spring has force constant 8.00 N/m. The maximum speed of the puck during its oscillation is 0.350 m/s. (a) What is the amplitude of the oscillation? (b) What is the total mechanical energy of the oscillation? (c) What are the potential energy and the kinetic energy of the puck when the displacement of the glider is 0.0300 m?

VP14.4.2 A block of mass 0.300 kg attached to a horizontal spring oscillates on a frictionless surface. The oscillation has amplitude 0.0440 m, and total mechanical energy $E = 6.00 \times 10^{-2}$ J. Find (a) the force constant of the spring and (b) the block's speed when the potential energy equals exactly $E/2$.

VP14.4.3 A glider attached to a horizontal spring oscillates on a horizontal air track. The total mechanical energy of the oscillation is 4.00×10^{-3} J, the amplitude of the oscillation is 0.0300 m, and the maximum speed of the glider is 0.125 m/s. (a) What are the force constant of the spring and the mass of the glider? (b) What is the maximum acceleration of the glider? (c) What is the magnitude of the glider's acceleration when the potential energy equals 3.00×10^{-3} J?

VP14.4.4 An object is undergoing SHM with amplitude A. For what values of the displacement is the kinetic energy equal to (a) $\frac{1}{3}$ of the total mechanical energy; (b) $\frac{4}{5}$ of the total mechanical energy?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 14.8 and 14.9 (Sections 14.5 and 14.6) before attempting these problems.

VP14.9.1 On an alien planet, a simple pendulum of length 0.500 m has oscillation frequency 0.609 Hz. Find (a) the period of the pendulum and (b) the acceleration due to gravity on this planet's surface.

VP14.9.2 What must be the length of a simple pendulum if its oscillation frequency is to be equal to that of an air-track glider of mass 0.350 kg attached to a spring of force constant 8.75 N/m?

VP14.9.3 At a bicycle repair shop, a bicycle tire of mass M and radius R is suspended from a peg on the wall. The moment of inertia of the tire around the peg is $2MR^2$. If the tire is displaced from equilibrium and starts swinging back and forth, what will be its frequency of oscillation?

VP14.9.4 A rod has length 0.900 m and mass 0.600 kg and is pivoted at one end. The rod is *not* uniform; the center of mass of the rod is not at its center but is 0.500 m from the pivot. The period of the rod's motion as a pendulum is 1.59 s. What is the moment of inertia of the rod around the pivot?

BRIDGING PROBLEM Oscillating and Rolling

Two uniform, solid cylinders of radius R and total mass M are connected along their common axis by a short, light rod and rest on a horizontal tabletop (**Fig. 14.29**). A frictionless ring at the rod's center is attached to a spring of force constant k; the spring's other end is fixed. The cylinders are pulled to the left a distance x, stretching the spring, then released from rest. Due to friction between the tabletop and the cylinders, the cylinders roll without slipping as they oscillate. Show that the motion of the center of mass of the cylinders is simple harmonic, and find its period.

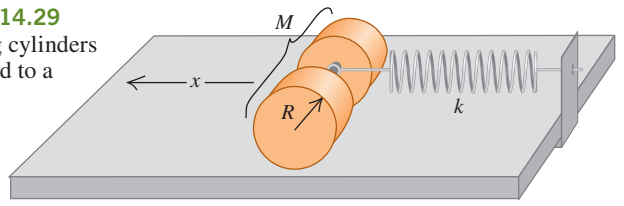


Figure 14.29 Rolling cylinders attached to a spring.

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. What condition must be satisfied for the motion of the center of mass of the cylinders to be simple harmonic?
2. Which equations should you use to describe (a) the translational and rotational motions of the cylinders; (b) Which equation should you use to describe the condition that the cylinders roll without slipping? (*Hint:* See Section 10.3.)
3. Sketch the situation and choose a coordinate system. List the unknown quantities and decide which is the target variable.

EXECUTE

4. Draw a free-body diagram for the cylinders when they are displaced a distance x from equilibrium.
5. Solve the equations to find an expression for the acceleration of the center of mass of the cylinders. What does this expression tell you?
6. Use your result from step 5 to find the period of oscillation of the center of mass of the cylinders.

EVALUATE

7. What would be the period of oscillation if there were no friction and the cylinders didn't roll? Is this period larger or smaller than your result from step 6? Is this reasonable?

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q14.1 An object is moving with SHM of amplitude A on the end of a spring. If the amplitude is doubled, what happens to the total distance the object travels in one period? What happens to the period? What happens to the maximum speed of the object? Discuss how these answers are related.

Q14.2 Think of several examples in everyday life of motions that are, at least approximately, simple harmonic. In what respects does each differ from SHM?

Q14.3 Does a tuning fork or similar tuning instrument undergo SHM? Why is this a crucial question for musicians?

Q14.4 A box containing a pebble is attached to an ideal horizontal spring and is oscillating on a friction-free air table. When the box has reached its maximum distance from the equilibrium point, the pebble is suddenly lifted out vertically without disturbing the box. Will the following characteristics of the motion increase, decrease, or remain the same in the subsequent motion of the box? Justify each answer. (a) Frequency; (b) period; (c) amplitude; (d) the maximum kinetic energy of the box; (e) the maximum speed of the box.

Q14.5 If a uniform spring is cut in half, what is the force constant of each half? Justify your answer. How would the frequency of SHM using a half-spring differ from the frequency using the same mass and the entire spring?

Q14.6 A glider is attached to a fixed ideal spring and oscillates on a horizontal, friction-free air track. A coin rests atop the glider and oscillates with it. At what points in the motion is the friction force on the coin greatest? The least? Justify your answers.

Q14.7 Two identical gliders on an air track are connected by an ideal spring. Could such a system undergo SHM? Explain. How would the period compare with that of a single glider attached to a spring whose other end is rigidly attached to a stationary object? Explain.

Q14.8 You are captured by Martians, taken into their ship, and put to sleep. You awake some time later and find yourself locked in a small room with no windows. All the Martians have left you with is your digital watch, your school ring, and your long silver-chain necklace. Explain how you can determine whether you are still on earth or have been transported to Mars.

Q14.9 The system shown in Fig. 14.17 is mounted in a lift. What happens to the period of the motion (does it increase, decrease, or remain the same) if the lift (a) accelerates upward at 5.0 m/s^2; (b) moves upward at a steady 5.0 m/s; (c) accelerates downward at 5.0 m/s^2? Justify your answers.

Q14.10 If a pendulum has a period of 2.5 s on earth, what would be its period in a space station orbiting the earth? If a mass hung from a vertical spring has a period of 5.0 s on earth, what would its period be in the space station? Justify your answers.

Q14.11 A simple pendulum is mounted in a lift. What happens to the period of the pendulum (does it increase, decrease, or remain the same) if the lift (a) accelerates upward at 5.0 m/s^2; (b) moves upward at a steady 5.0 m/s; (c) accelerates downward at 5.0 m/s^2; (d) accelerates downward at 9.8 m/s^2? Justify your answers.

Q14.12 What should you do to the length of the string of a simple pendulum to (a) double its frequency; (b) double its period; (c) double its angular frequency?

Q14.13 If a pendulum clock is taken to a mountaintop, does it gain or lose time, assuming it is correct at a lower elevation? Explain.

Q14.14 When the amplitude of a simple pendulum increases, should its period increase or decrease? Give a qualitative argument; do not rely on Eq. (14.35). Is your argument also valid for a physical pendulum?

Q14.15 Why do short dogs (like Chihuahuas) walk with quicker strides than do tall dogs (like Great Danes)?

Q14.16 At what point in the motion of a simple pendulum is the string tension greatest? Least? In each case give the reasoning behind your answer.

Q14.17 Could a standard of time be based on the period of a certain standard pendulum? What advantages and disadvantages would such a standard have compared to the actual present-day standard discussed in Section 1.3?

Q14.18 For a simple pendulum, clearly distinguish between ω (the angular speed) and ω (the angular frequency). Which is constant and which is variable?

Q14.19 In designing structures in an earthquake-prone region, how should the natural frequencies of oscillation of a structure relate to typical earthquake frequencies? Why? Should the structure have a large or small amount of damping?

EXERCISES

Section 14.1 Describing Oscillation

14.1 • **BIO** (a) **Music.** When a person sings, his or her vocal cords vibrate in a repetitive pattern that has the same frequency as the note that is sung. If someone sings the note B flat, which has a frequency of 466 Hz, how much time does it take the person's vocal cords to vibrate through one complete cycle, and what is the angular frequency of the cords? (b) **Hearing.** When sound waves strike the eardrum, this membrane vibrates with the same frequency as the sound. The highest pitch that young humans can hear has a period of 50.0 μs. What are the frequency and angular frequency of the vibrating eardrum for this sound? (c) **Vision.** When light having vibrations with angular frequency ranging from 2.7×10^{15} rad/s to 4.7×10^{15} rad/s strikes the retina of the eye, it stimulates the receptor cells there and is perceived as visible light. What are the limits of the period and frequency of this light? (d) **Ultrasound.** High-frequency sound waves (ultrasound) are used to probe the interior of the body, much as x rays do. To detect small objects such as tumors, a frequency of around 4.80 MHz is used. What are the period and angular frequency of the molecular vibrations caused by this pulse of sound?

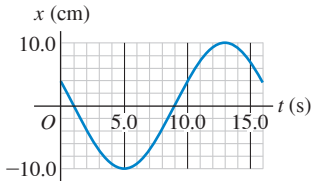
14.2 • If an object on a horizontal, frictionless surface is attached to a spring, displaced, and then released, it will oscillate. If it is displaced 0.115 m from its equilibrium position and released with zero initial speed, then after 0.815 s its displacement is found to be 0.115 m on the opposite side, and it has passed the equilibrium position once during this interval. Find (a) the amplitude; (b) the period; (c) the frequency.

14.3 • The tip of a tuning fork goes through 440 complete vibrations in 0.500 s. Find the angular frequency and the period of the motion.

14.4 • The displacement of an oscillating object as a function of time is shown in **Fig. E14.4.** What are (a) the frequency; (b) the amplitude; (c) the period; (d) the angular frequency of this motion?

14.5 •• A machine part is undergoing SHM with a frequency of 5.10 Hz and amplitude 1.80 cm. How long does it take the part to go from $x = 0$ to $x = -1.80$ cm?

Figure **E14.4**

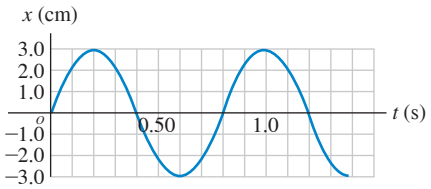


Section 14.2 Simple Harmonic Motion

14.6 • You are pushing your niece on a playground swing. The swing seat is suspended from a horizontal bar by two light chains. Based on your experience with swings, estimate the length of each chain. Treat the motion of the child as that of a simple pendulum and assume that for safety the amplitude of the motion is kept small. You give your niece a light push each time she reaches her closest distance from you. How much time elapses between your pushes?

14.7 • A 2.40 kg ball is attached to an unknown spring and allowed to oscillate. **Figure E14.7** shows a graph of the ball's position x as a function of time t. What are the oscillation's (a) period, (b) frequency, (c) angular frequency, and (d) amplitude? (e) What is the force constant of the spring?

Figure **E14.7**



14.8 •• In a physics lab, you attach a 0.200 kg air-track glider to the end of an ideal spring of negligible mass and start it oscillating. The elapsed time from when the glider first moves through the equilibrium point to the second time it moves through that point is 2.60 s. Find the spring's force constant.

14.9 • When a body of unknown mass is attached to an ideal spring with force constant 128 N/m, it is found to vibrate with a frequency of 6.20 Hz. Find (a) the period of the motion; (b) the angular frequency; (c) the mass of the body.

14.10 • When a 0.800 kg mass oscillates on an ideal spring, the frequency is 1.41 Hz. What will the frequency be if 0.260 kg are (a) added to the original mass and (b) subtracted from the original mass? Try to solve this problem *without* finding the force constant of the spring.

14.11 •• An object is undergoing SHM with period 0.820 s and amplitude 0.320 m. At $t = 0$ the object is at $x = 0.320$ m and is instantaneously at rest. Calculate the time it takes the object to go (a) from $x = 0.320$ m to $x = 0.160$ m and (b) from $x = 0.160$ m to $x = 0$.

14.12 • A small block is attached to an ideal spring and is moving in SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface. When the block is at $x = 0.310$ m, the acceleration of the block is -5.96 m/s^2. What is the frequency of the motion?

14.13 • A 2.00 kg, frictionless block is attached to an ideal spring with force constant 300 N/m. At $t = 0$ the spring is neither stretched nor compressed and the block is moving in the negative direction at 12.0 m/s. Find (a) the amplitude and (b) the phase angle. (c) Write an equation for the position as a function of time.

14.14 •• Repeat Exercise 14.13, but assume that at $t = 0$ the block has velocity -4.00 m/s and displacement $+0.200$ m away from equilibrium.

14.15 •• A block of mass m is undergoing SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface while attached to a light, horizontal spring. The spring has force constant k, and the amplitude of the SHM is A. The block has $v = 0$, and $x = +A$ at $t = 0$. It first reaches $x = 0$ when $t = T/4$, where T is the period of the motion. (a) In terms of T, what is the time t when the block first reaches $x = A/2$? (b) The block has its maximum speed when $t = T/4$. What is the value of t when the speed of the block first reaches the value $v_{max}/2$? (c) Does $v = v_{max}/2$ when $x = A/2$?

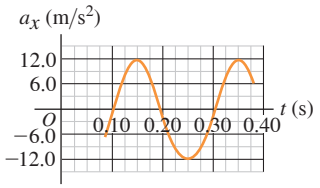
14.16 •• A small block is attached to an ideal spring and is moving in SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface. When the amplitude of the motion is 0.090 m, it takes the block 2.70 s to travel from $x = 0.090$ m to $x = -0.090$ m. If the amplitude is doubled, to 0.180 m, how long does it take the block to travel (a) from $x = 0.180$ m to $x = -0.180$ m and (b) from $x = 0.090$ m to $x = -0.090$ m?

14.17 • **BIO Weighing Astronauts.** This procedure has been used to "weigh" astronauts in space: A 42.5 kg chair is attached to a spring and allowed to oscillate. When it is empty, the chair takes 1.30 s to make one complete vibration. But with an astronaut sitting in it, with her feet off the floor, the chair takes 2.54 s for one cycle. What is the mass of the astronaut?

14.18 • A 0.450 kg object undergoing SHM has $a_x = -2.50$ m/s^2 when $x = 0.400$ m. What is the time for one oscillation?

14.19 • On a frictionless, horizontal air track, a glider oscillates at the end of an ideal spring of force constant 2.30 N/cm. The graph in **Fig. E14.19** shows the acceleration of the glider as a function of time. Find (a) the mass of the glider; (b) the maximum displacement of the glider from the equilibrium point; (c) the maximum force the spring exerts on the glider.

Figure **E14.19**



14.20 • A 0.500 kg mass on a spring has velocity as a function of time given by $v_x(t) = -(3.60 \text{ cm/s}) \sin[(4.71 \text{ rad/s})t - (\pi/2)]$. What are (a) the period; (b) the amplitude; (c) the maximum acceleration of the mass; (d) the force constant of the spring?

14.21 • A 2.20-kg mass on a spring has displacement as a function of time given by

$$x(t) = (7.40 \text{ cm}) \cos[(4.16 \text{ rad/s})t - 2.42]$$

Find (a) the time for one complete vibration; (b) the force constant of the spring; (c) the maximum speed of the mass; (d) the maximum force on the mass; (e) the position, speed, and acceleration of the mass at $t = 1.00$ s; (f) the force on the mass at that time.

14.22 • **BIO Weighing a Virus.** In February 2004, scientists at Purdue University used a highly sensitive technique to measure the mass of a vaccinia virus (the kind used in smallpox vaccine). The procedure involved measuring the frequency of oscillation of a tiny sliver of silicon (just 28 nm long) with a laser, first without the virus and then after the virus had attached itself to the silicon. The difference in mass caused a change in the frequency. We can model such a process as a mass on a spring. (a) Show that the ratio of the frequency with the virus attached (f_{S+V}) to the frequency without the virus (f_S) is given by $f_{S+V}/f_S = 1/\sqrt{1 + (m_V/m_S)}$, where m_V is the mass of the virus and m_S is the mass of the silicon sliver. Notice that it is *not* necessary to know or measure the force constant of the spring. (b) In some data, the silicon sliver has a mass of 2.12×10^{-16} g and a frequency of 2.04×10^{15} Hz without the virus and 2.86×10^{14} Hz with the virus. What is the mass of the virus, in grams and in femtograms?

14.23 •• **CALC** The *jerk* is defined to be the time rate of change of the acceleration. (a) If the velocity of an object undergoing SHM is given by $v_x = -\omega A \sin(\omega t)$, what is the equation for the x-component of the jerk as a function of time? (b) What is the value of x for the object when the x-component of the jerk has its largest positive value? (c) What is x when the x-component of the jerk is most negative? (d) When it is zero? (e) If v_x equals -0.040 s^2 times the x-component of the jerk for all t, what is the period of the motion?

Section 14.3 Energy in Simple Harmonic Motion

14.24 •• For the oscillating object in Fig. E14.4, what are (a) its maximum speed and (b) its maximum acceleration?

14.25 • A small block is attached to an ideal spring and is moving in SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface. The amplitude of the motion is 0.165 m. The maximum speed of the block is 3.90 m/s. What is the maximum magnitude of the acceleration of the block?

14.26 • A small block is attached to an ideal spring and is moving in SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface. The amplitude of the motion is 0.200 m and the period is 3.45 s. What are the speed and acceleration of the block when $x = 0.160$ m?

14.27 • A 0.155 kg toy is undergoing SHM on the end of a horizontal spring with force constant $k = 305$ N/m. When the toy is 1.25×10^{-2} m from its equilibrium position, it is observed to have a speed of 0.295 m/s. What are the toy's (a) total energy at any point of its motion; (b) amplitude of motion; (c) maximum speed during its motion?

14.28 •• A harmonic oscillator has angular frequency ω and amplitude A. (a) What are the magnitudes of the displacement and velocity when the elastic potential energy is equal to the kinetic energy? (Assume that $U = 0$ at equilibrium.) (b) How often does this occur in each cycle? What is the time between occurrences? (c) At an instant when the displacement is equal to $A/2$, what fraction of the total energy of the system is kinetic and what fraction is potential?

14.29 • A 0.500 kg glider, attached to the end of an ideal spring with force constant $k = 450$ N/m, undergoes SHM with an amplitude of 0.040 m. Compute (a) the maximum speed of the glider; (b) the speed of the glider when it is at $x = -0.015$ m; (c) the magnitude of the maximum acceleration of the glider; (d) the acceleration of the glider at $x = -0.015$ m; (e) the total mechanical energy of the glider at any point in its motion.

14.30 •• A block of mass m is undergoing SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface while attached to a light, horizontal spring. The spring has force constant k, and the amplitude of the motion of the block is A. (a) The average speed is the total distance traveled by the block divided by the time it takes it to travel this distance. Calculate the average speed for one cycle of the SHM. (b) How does the average speed for one cycle compare to the maximum speed v_{max}? (c) Is the average speed more or less than half the maximum speed? Based on your answer, does the block spend more time while traveling at speeds greater than $v_{max}/2$ or less than $v_{max}/2$?

14.31 •• A block of mass m is undergoing SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface while it is attached to a light, horizontal spring that has force constant k. The amplitude of the SHM of the block is A. What is the distance $|x|$ of the block from its equilibrium position when its speed v is half its maximum speed v_{max}? Is this distance larger or smaller than $A/2$?

14.32 •• A block with mass $m = 0.300$ kg is attached to one end of an ideal spring and moves on a horizontal frictionless surface. The other end of the spring is attached to a wall. When the block is at $x = +0.240$ m, its acceleration is $a_x = -12.0$ m/s^2 and its velocity is $v_x = +4.00$ m/s. What are (a) the spring's force constant k; (b) the amplitude of the motion; (c) the maximum speed of the block during its motion; and (d) the maximum magnitude of the block's acceleration during its motion?

14.33 •• You are watching an object that is moving in SHM. When the object is displaced 0.600 m to the right of its equilibrium position, it has a velocity of 2.20 m/s to the right and an acceleration of 8.40 m/s^2 to the left. How much farther from this point will the object move before it stops momentarily and then starts to move back to the left?

14.34 •• A mass is oscillating with amplitude A at the end of a spring. How far (in terms of A) is this mass from the equilibrium position of the spring when the elastic potential energy equals the kinetic energy?

14.35 • A 2.00 kg frictionless block attached to an ideal spring with force constant 315 N/m is undergoing simple harmonic motion. When the block has displacement +0.200 m, it is moving in the negative x-direction with a speed of 4.00 m/s. Find (a) the amplitude of the motion; (b) the block's maximum acceleration; and (c) the maximum force the spring exerts on the block.

Section 14.4 Applications of Simple Harmonic Motion

14.36 • A proud deep-sea fisherman hangs a 65.0 kg fish from an ideal spring having negligible mass. The fish stretches the spring 0.180 m. (a) Find the force constant of the spring. The fish is now pulled down 5.00 cm and released. (b) What is the period of oscillation of the fish? (c) What is the maximum speed it will reach?

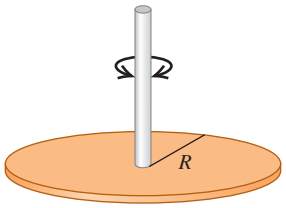
14.37 • A 180 g glider on a horizontal, frictionless air track is attached to a fixed ideal spring with force constant 180 N/m. At the instant you make measurements on the glider, it is moving at 0.765 m/s and is 2.50 cm from its equilibrium point. Use *energy conservation* to find (a) the amplitude of the motion and (b) the maximum speed of the glider. (c) What is the angular frequency of the oscillations?

14.38 •• A uniform, solid metal disk of mass 6.90 kg and diameter 21.0 cm hangs in a horizontal plane, supported at its center by a vertical metal wire. You find that it requires a horizontal force of 4.25 N tangent to the rim of the disk to turn it by 3.37°, thus twisting the wire. You now remove this force and release the disk from rest. (a) What is the torsion constant for the metal wire? (b) What are the frequency and period of the torsional oscillations of the disk? (c) Write the equation of motion for $\theta(t)$ for the disk.

14.39 • A thrill-seeking cat with mass 4.00 kg is attached by a harness to an ideal spring of negligible mass and oscillates vertically in SHM. The amplitude is 0.050 m, and at the highest point of the motion the spring has its natural unstretched length. Calculate the elastic potential energy of the spring (take it to be zero for the unstretched spring), the kinetic energy of the cat, the gravitational potential energy of the system relative to the lowest point of the motion, and the sum of these three energies when the cat is (a) at its highest point; (b) at its lowest point; (c) at its equilibrium position.

14.40 • A thin metal disk with mass 2.00×10^{-3} kg and radius 2.20 cm is attached at its center to a long fiber (**Fig. E14.40**). The disk, when twisted and released, oscillates with a period of 1.00 s. Find the torsion constant of the fiber.

Figure **E14.40**



14.41 •• A certain alarm clock ticks four times each second, with each tick representing half a period. The balance wheel consists of a thin rim with radius 0.54 cm, connected to the balance shaft by thin spokes of negligible mass. The total mass of the balance wheel is 1.0 g. (a) What is the moment of inertia of the balance wheel about its shaft? (b) What is the torsion constant of the coil spring (Fig. 14.19)?

14.42 •• You want to find the moment of inertia of a complicated machine part about an axis through its center of mass. You suspend it from a wire along this axis. The wire has a torsion constant of 0.490 N · m/rad. You twist the part a small amount about this axis and let it go, timing 128 oscillations in 270 s. What is its moment of inertia?

Section 14.5 The Simple Pendulum

14.43 •• You pull a simple pendulum 0.255 m long to the side through an angle of 3.50° and release it. (a) How much time does it take the pendulum bob to reach its highest speed? (b) How much time does it take if the pendulum is released at an angle of 1.75° instead of 3.50°?

14.44 •• Equation (14.35) shows that the equation $T = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$ for the period of a simple pendulum is an approximation that is accurate only when the angular displacement Θ of the pendulum is small. For what value of Θ is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$ in error by 2.0%? In your calculation consider only the first correction term in Eq. (14.35).

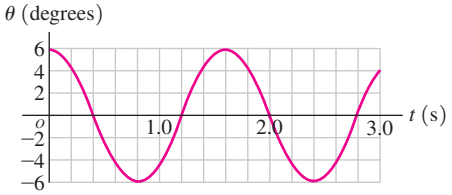
14.45 • A building in San Francisco has light fixtures consisting of small 2.35 kg bulbs with shades hanging from the ceiling at the end of light, thin cords 1.50 m long. If a minor earthquake occurs, how many swings per second will these fixtures make?

14.46 • **A Pendulum on Mars.** A certain simple pendulum has a period on the earth of 1.40 s. What is its period on the surface of Mars, where $g = 3.71$ m/s^2?

14.47 • After landing on an unfamiliar planet, a space explorer constructs a simple pendulum of length 55.0 cm. She finds that the pendulum makes 105 complete swings in 135 s. What is the value of g on this planet?

14.48 •• In the laboratory, a student studies a pendulum by graphing the angle θ that the string makes with the vertical as a function of time t, obtaining the graph shown in **Fig. E14.48.** (a) What are the period, frequency, angular frequency, and amplitude of the pendulum's motion? (b) How long is the pendulum? (c) Is it possible to determine the mass of the bob?

Figure **E14.48**



14.49 •• A small sphere with mass m is attached to a massless rod of length L that is pivoted at the top, forming a simple pendulum. The pendulum is pulled to one side so that the rod is at an angle θ from the vertical, and released from rest. (a) In a diagram, show the pendulum just after it is released. Draw vectors representing the *forces* acting on the small sphere and the *acceleration* of the sphere. Accuracy counts! At this point, what is the linear acceleration of the sphere? (b) Repeat part (a) for the instant when the pendulum rod is at an angle $\theta/2$ from the vertical. (c) Repeat part (a) for the instant when the pendulum rod is vertical. At this point, what is the linear speed of the sphere?

Section 14.6 The Physical Pendulum

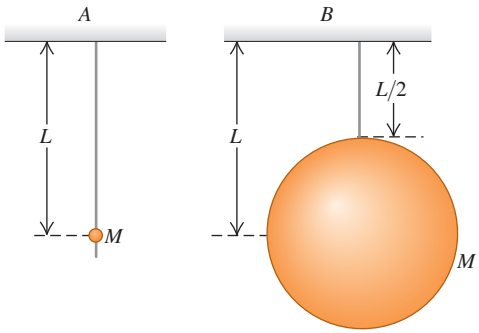
14.50 •• We want to hang a thin hoop on a horizontal nail and have the hoop make one complete small-angle oscillation each 2.0 s. What must the hoop's radius be?

14.51 • Two pendulums have the same dimensions (length L) and total mass (m). Pendulum A is a very small ball swinging at the end of a uniform massless bar. In pendulum B, half the mass is in the ball and half is in the uniform bar. Find the period of each pendulum for small oscillations. Which one takes longer for a swing?

14.52 •• A 1.80 kg monkey wrench is pivoted 0.250 m from its center of mass and allowed to swing as a physical pendulum. The period for small-angle oscillations is 0.940 s. (a) What is the moment of inertia of the wrench about an axis through the pivot? (b) If the wrench is initially displaced 0.400 rad from its equilibrium position, what is the angular speed of the wrench as it passes through the equilibrium position?

14.53 •• The two pendulums shown in **Fig. E14.53** each consist of a uniform solid ball of mass M supported by a rigid massless rod, but the ball for pendulum A is very tiny while the ball for pendulum B is much larger. Find the period of each pendulum for small displacements. Which ball takes longer to complete a swing?

Figure **E14.53**



14.54 •• **CP** A holiday ornament in the shape of a hollow sphere with mass $M = 1.0 \times 10^{-2}$ kg and radius $R = 5.5 \times 10^{-2}$ m is hung from a tree limb by a small loop of wire attached to the surface of the sphere. If the ornament is displaced a small distance and released, it swings back and forth as a physical pendulum with negligible friction. Calculate its period. (*Hint:* Use the parallel-axis theorem to find the moment of inertia of the sphere about the pivot at the tree limb.)

Section 14.7 Damped Oscillations

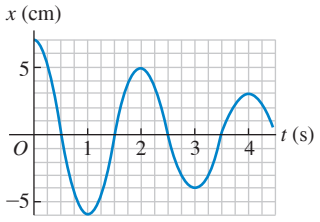
14.55 • An object is moving in damped SHM, and the damping constant can be varied. If the angular frequency of the motion is ω when the damping constant is zero, what is the angular frequency, expressed in terms of ω, when the damping constant is one-half the critical damping value?

14.56 •• A 50.0 g hard-boiled egg moves on the end of a spring with force constant $k = 25.0\ \text{N/m}$. Its initial displacement is 0.300 m. A damping force $F_x = -bv_x$ acts on the egg, and the amplitude of the motion decreases to 0.100 m in 5.00 s. Calculate the magnitude of the damping constant b.

14.57 • An unhappy 0.300 kg rodent, moving on the end of a spring with force constant $k = 2.50\ \text{N/m}$, is acted on by a damping force $F_x = -bv_x$. (a) If the constant b has the value 0.900 kg/s, what is the frequency of oscillation of the rodent? (b) For what value of the constant b will the motion be critically damped?

14.58 •• A mass is vibrating at the end of a spring of force constant 225 N/m. **Figure E14.58** shows a graph of its position x as a function of time t. (a) At what times is the mass not moving? (b) How much energy did this system originally contain? (c) How much energy did the system lose between $t = 1.0$ s and $t = 4.0$ s? Where did this energy go?

Figure **E14.58**



Section 14.8 Forced Oscillations and Resonance

14.59 • A sinusoidally varying driving force is applied to a damped harmonic oscillator of force constant k and mass m. If the damping constant has a value b_1, the amplitude is A_1 when the driving angular frequency equals $\sqrt{k/m}$. In terms of A_1, what is the amplitude for the same driving frequency and the same driving force amplitude F_{max}, if the damping constant is (a) $3b_1$ and (b) $b_1/2$?

14.60 •• Equation (14.46) and Fig.14.28 describe a damped and driven oscillator. (a) For a damping constant $b = 0.20\sqrt{km}$, confirm that the amplitude A is $5F_{\text{max}}/k$ when $\omega_d = \omega$, where $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$ is the natural angular frequency. (b) Repeat part (a) for $b = 0.40\sqrt{km}$, and confirm that the amplitude A is $2.5F_{\text{max}}/k$ when $\omega_d = \omega$. (c) As a measure of the width of the resonance peak, calculate A when $\omega_d = \omega/2$ for $b = 0.20\sqrt{km}$ and for $b = 0.40\sqrt{km}$. In each case, what is the ratio of the amplitude for $\omega_d = \omega$ to the amplitude for $\omega_d = \omega/2$? For which value of the damping constant does the amplitude increase by the larger factor?

PROBLEMS

14.61 •• Object A has mass m_A and is in SHM on the end of a spring with force constant k_A. Object B has mass m_B and is in SHM on the end of a spring with force constant k_B. The amplitude A_A for object A is twice the amplitude A_B for the motion of object B. Also, $m_B = 4m_A$ and $k_A = 9k_B$. (a) What is the ratio of the maximum speeds of the two objects, $v_{\text{max},A}/v_{\text{max},B}$? (b) What is the ratio of their maximum accelerations, $a_{\text{max},A}/a_{\text{max},B}$?

14.62 ••• An object is undergoing SHM with period 0.300 s and amplitude 6.00 cm. At $t = 0$ the object is instantaneously at rest at $x = 6.00$ cm. Calculate the time it takes the object to go from $x = 6.00$ cm to $x = -1.50$ cm.

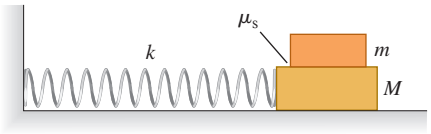
14.63 •• An object is undergoing SHM with period 1.230 s and amplitude 0.590 m. At $t = 0$ the object is at $x = 0$ and is moving in the negative x-direction. How far is the object from the equilibrium position when $t = 0.475$ s?

14.64 • Four passengers with combined mass 250 kg compress the springs of a car with worn-out shock absorbers by 4.00 cm when they get in. Model the car and passengers as a single object on a single ideal spring. If the loaded car has a period of vibration of 1.92 s, what is the period of vibration of the empty car?

14.65 •• An object with mass m is moving in SHM. It has amplitude A_1 and total mechanical energy E_1 when the spring has force constant k_1. You want to quadruple the total mechanical energy, so $E_2 = 4E_1$, and halve the amplitude, so $A_2 = A_1/2$, by using a different spring, one with force constant k_2. (a) How is k_2 related to k_1? (b) What effect will the change in spring constant and amplitude have on the maximum speed of the moving object?

14.66 •• CP A block with mass M rests on a frictionless surface and is connected to a horizontal spring of force constant k. The other end of the spring is attached to a wall (**Fig. P14.66**). A second block with mass m rests on top of the first block. The coefficient of static friction between the blocks is μ_s. Find the *maximum* amplitude of oscillation such that the top block will not slip on the bottom block.

Figure **P14.66**



14.67 •• A block with mass m is undergoing SHM on a horizontal, frictionless surface while attached to a light, horizontal spring that has force constant k. You use motion sensor equipment to measure the maximum speed of the block during its oscillations. You repeat the measurement for the same spring and blocks of different masses while keeping the amplitude A at a constant value of 12.0 cm. You plot your data as v_{max}^2 versus $1/m$ and find that the data lie close to a straight line that has slope 8.62 N · m. What is the force constant k of the spring?

14.68 •• CP Consider the system of two blocks and a spring shown in Fig. P14.66. The horizontal surface is frictionless, but there is static friction between the two blocks. The spring has force constant $k = 150\ \text{N/m}$. The masses of the two blocks are $m = 0.500$ kg and $M = 4.00$ kg. You set the blocks into motion by releasing block M with the spring stretched a distance d from equilibrium. You start with small values of d, and then repeat with successively larger values. For small values of d, the blocks move together in SHM. But for larger values of d the top block slips relative to the bottom block when the bottom block is released. (a) What is the period of the motion of the two blocks when d is small enough to have no slipping? (b) The largest value d can have and there be no slipping is $d = 8.8$ cm. What is the coefficient of static friction μ_s between the surfaces of the two blocks?

14.69 ••• A 1.70 kg, horizontal, uniform tray is attached to a vertical ideal spring of force constant 185 N/m and a 290 g metal ball is in the tray. The spring is below the tray, so it can oscillate up and down. The tray is then pushed down to point A, which is 16.1 cm below the equilibrium point, and released from rest. (a) How high above point A will the tray be when the metal ball leaves the tray? (*Hint:* This does *not* occur when the ball and tray reach their maximum speeds.) (b) How much time elapses between releasing the system at point A and the ball leaving the tray? (c) How fast is the ball moving just as it leaves the tray?

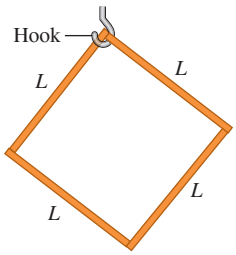
14.70 • CP A 10.5 kg mass is traveling to the right with a speed of 2.10 m/s on a smooth horizontal surface when it collides with and sticks to a second 10.5 kg mass that is initially at rest but is attached to a light spring with force constant 120.0 N/m. (a) Find the frequency, amplitude, and period of the subsequent oscillations. (b) How long does it take the system to return the first time to the position it had immediately after the collision?

14.71 ••• An apple weighs 1.00 N. When you hang it from the end of a long spring of force constant 1.50 N/m and negligible mass, it bounces up and down in SHM. If you stop the bouncing and let the apple swing from side to side through a small angle, the frequency of this simple pendulum is half the bounce frequency. (Because the angle is small, the back-and-forth swings do not cause any appreciable change in the length of the spring.) What is the unstretched length of the spring (with the apple removed)?

14.72 ••• CP **SHM of a Floating Object.** An object with height h, mass M, and a uniform cross-sectional area A floats upright in a liquid with density ρ. (a) Calculate the vertical distance from the surface of the liquid to the bottom of the floating object at equilibrium. (b) A downward force with magnitude F is applied to the top of the object. At the new equilibrium position, how much farther below the surface of the liquid is the bottom of the object than it was in part (a)? (Assume that some of the object remains above the surface of the liquid.) (c) Your result in part (b) shows that if the force is suddenly removed, the object will oscillate up and down in SHM. Calculate the period of this motion in terms of the density ρ of the liquid, the mass M, and the cross-sectional area A of the object. You can ignore the damping due to fluid friction (see Section 14.7).

14.73 •• CP A square object of mass m is constructed of four identical uniform thin sticks, each of length L, attached together. This object is hung on a hook at its upper corner (**Fig. P14.73**). If it is rotated slightly to the left and then released, at what frequency will it swing back and forth?

Figure P14.73



14.74 ••• An object with mass 0.200 kg is acted on by an elastic restoring force with force constant 10.0 N/m. (a) Graph elastic potential energy U as a function of displacement x over a range of x from −0.300 m to +0.300 m. On your graph, let 1 cm = 0.05 J vertically and 1 cm = 0.05 m horizontally. The object is set into oscillation with an initial potential energy of 0.140 J and an initial kinetic energy of 0.060 J. Answer the following questions by referring to the graph. (b) What is the amplitude of oscillation? (c) What is the potential energy when the displacement is one-half the amplitude? (d) At what displacement are the kinetic and potential energies equal? (e) What is the value of the phase angle ϕ if the initial velocity is positive and the initial displacement is negative?

14.75 • CALC A 2.00 kg bucket containing 10.0 kg of water is hanging from a vertical ideal spring of force constant 450 N/m and oscillating up and down with an amplitude of 3.00 cm. Suddenly the bucket springs a leak in the bottom such that water drops out at a steady rate of 2.00 g/s. When the bucket is half full, find (a) the period of oscillation and (b) the rate at which the period is changing with respect to time. Is the period getting longer or shorter? (c) What is the shortest period this system can have?

14.76 •• Quantum mechanics is used to describe the vibrational motion of molecules, but analysis using classical physics gives some useful insight. In a classical model the vibrational motion can be treated as SHM of the atoms connected by a spring. The two atoms in a diatomic molecule vibrate about their center of mass, but in the molecule HI, where one atom is much more massive than the other, we can treat the hydrogen atom as oscillating in SHM while the iodine atom remains at rest. (a) A classical estimate of the vibrational frequency is $f = 7 \times 10^{13}$ Hz. The mass of a hydrogen atom differs little from the mass of a proton. If the HI molecule is modeled as two atoms connected by a spring, what is the force constant of the spring? (b) The vibrational energy of the molecule is measured to be about 5×10^{-20} J. In the classical model, what is the maximum speed of the H atom during its SHM? (c) What is the amplitude of the vibrational motion? How does your result compare to the equilibrium distance between the two atoms in the HI molecule, which is about 1.6×10^{-10} m?

14.77 •• A 5.00 kg partridge is suspended from a pear tree by an ideal spring of negligible mass. When the partridge is pulled down 0.100 m below its equilibrium position and released, it vibrates with a period of 4.20 s. (a) What is its speed as it passes through the equilibrium position? (b) What is its acceleration when it is 0.050 m above the equilibrium position? (c) When it is moving upward, how much time is required for it to move from a point 0.050 m below its equilibrium position to a point 0.050 m above it? (d) The motion of the partridge is stopped, and then it is removed from the spring. How much does the spring shorten?

14.78 •• A slender rod of length 80.0 cm and mass 0.400 kg has its center of gravity at its geometrical center. But its density is not uniform; it increases by the same amount from the center of the rod out to either end. You want to determine the moment of inertia I_{cm} of the rod for an axis perpendicular to the rod at its center, but you don't know its density as a function of distance along the rod, so you can't use an integration method to calculate I_{cm}. Therefore, you make the following measurements: You suspend the rod about an axis that is a distance d (measured in meters) above the center of the rod and measure the period T (measured in seconds) for small-amplitude oscillations about the axis. You repeat this for several values of d. When you plot your data as $T^2 - 4\pi^2 d/g$ versus $1/d$, the data lie close to a straight line that has slope 0.320 m · s^2. What is the value of I_{cm} for the rod?

14.79 •• CP **SHM of a Butcher's Scale.** A spring of negligible mass and force constant $k = 400$ N/m is hung vertically, and a 0.200 kg pan is suspended from its lower end. A butcher drops a 2.2 kg steak onto the pan from a height of 0.40 m. The steak makes a totally inelastic collision with the pan and sets the system into vertical SHM. What are (a) the speed of the pan and steak immediately after the collision; (b) the amplitude of the subsequent motion; (c) the period of that motion?

14.80 •• A 40.0 N force stretches a vertical spring 0.250 m. (a) What mass must be suspended from the spring so that the system will oscillate with a period of 1.00 s? (b) If the amplitude of the motion is 0.050 m and the period is that specified in part (a), where is the object and in what direction is it moving 0.35 s after it has passed the equilibrium position, moving downward? (c) What force (magnitude and direction) does the spring exert on the object when it is 0.030 m below the equilibrium position, moving upward?

14.81 •• **Don't Miss the Boat.** While on a visit to Switzerland, you sign up to take an excursion around Lake Geneva. When you go to the dock where the 1500 kg boat is tied, you find that the boat is bobbing up and down in the waves, executing simple harmonic motion with amplitude 20 cm. The boat takes 3.5 s to make one complete up-and-down cycle. When the boat is at its highest point, its deck is at the same height as the stationary dock. As you watch the boat bob up and down, you (mass 60 kg) begin to feel a bit woozy, due in part to the previous night's dinner of cheese fondue. As a result, you refuse to board the boat unless the level of the boat's deck is within 10 cm of the dock level. How much time do you have to board the boat comfortably during each cycle of up-and-down motion?

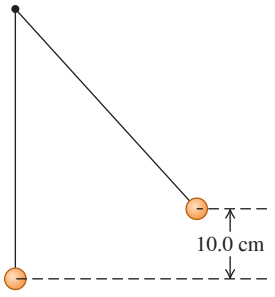
14.82 • CP An interesting, though highly impractical example of oscillation is the motion of an object dropped down a hole that extends from one side of the earth, through its center, to the other side. With the assumption (not realistic) that the earth is a sphere of uniform density, prove that the motion is simple harmonic and find the period. [*Note:* The gravitational force on the object as a function of the object's distance r from the center of the earth was derived in Example 13.10 (Section 13.6). The motion is simple harmonic if the acceleration a_x and the displacement from equilibrium x are related by Eq. (14.8), and the period is then $T = 2\pi/\omega$.]

14.83 ••• CP A rifle bullet with mass 8.53 g and initial horizontal velocity 280 m/s strikes and embeds itself in a block with mass 0.992 kg that rests on a frictionless surface and is attached to one end of an ideal spring. The other end of the spring is attached to the wall. The impact compresses the spring a maximum distance of 18.0 cm. After the impact, the block moves in SHM. Calculate the period of this motion.

14.84 ••• CP Two uniform solid spheres, each with mass $M = 0.813$ kg and radius $R = 0.0800$ m, are connected by a short, light rod that is along a diameter of each sphere and are at rest on a horizontal tabletop. A spring with force constant $k = 164$ N/m has one end attached to the wall and the other end attached to a frictionless ring that passes over the rod at the center of mass of the spheres, which is midway between the centers of the two spheres. The spheres are each pulled the same distance from the wall, stretching the spring, and released. There is sufficient friction between the tabletop and the spheres for the spheres to roll without slipping as they move back and forth on the end of the spring. Show that the motion of the center of mass of the spheres is simple harmonic and calculate the period.

14.85 • CP In **Fig. P14.85** the upper ball is released from rest, collides with the stationary lower ball, and sticks to it. The strings are both 50.0 cm long. The upper ball has mass 2.00 kg, and it is initially 10.0 cm higher than the lower ball, which has mass 3.00 kg. Find the frequency and maximum angular displacement of the motion after the collision.

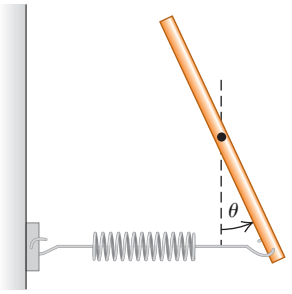
Figure **P14.85**



14.86 •• **The Silently Ringing Bell.** A large, 34.0 kg bell is hung from a wooden beam so it can swing back and forth with negligible friction. The bell's center of mass is 0.45 m below the pivot. The bell's moment of inertia about an axis at the pivot is 34.0 kg · m^2. The clapper is a small, 1.8 kg mass attached to one end of a slender rod of length L and negligible mass. The other end of the rod is attached to the inside of the bell; the rod can swing freely about the same axis as the bell. What should be the length L of the clapper rod for the bell to ring silently—that is, for the period of oscillation for the bell to equal that of the clapper?

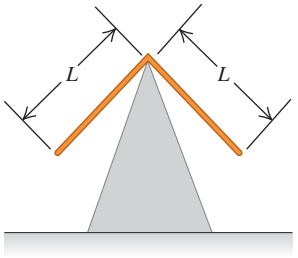
14.87 •• CALC A slender, uniform, metal rod with mass M is pivoted without friction about an axis through its midpoint and perpendicular to the rod. A horizontal spring with force constant k is attached to the lower end of the rod, with the other end of the spring attached to a rigid support. If the rod is displaced by a small angle Θ from the vertical (**Fig. P14.87**) and released, show that it moves in angular SHM and calculate the period. (*Hint:* Assume that the angle Θ is small enough for the approximations $\sin\Theta \approx \Theta$ and $\cos\Theta \approx 1$ to be valid. The motion is simple harmonic if $d^2\theta/dt^2 = -\omega^2\theta$, and the period is then $T = 2\pi/\omega$.)

Figure **P14.87**



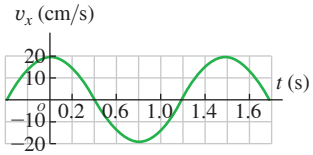
14.88 ••• Two identical thin rods, each with mass m and length L, are joined at right angles to form an L-shaped object. This object is balanced on top of a sharp edge (**Fig. P14.88**). If the L-shaped object is deflected slightly, it oscillates. Find the frequency of oscillation.

Figure **P14.88**



14.89 •• DATA A mass m is attached to a spring of force constant 75 N/m and allowed to oscillate. **Figure P14.89** shows a graph of its velocity component v_x as a function of time t. Find (a) the period, (b) the frequency, and (c) the angular frequency of this motion. (d) What is the amplitude (in cm), and at what times does the mass reach this position? (e) Find the maximum acceleration magnitude of the mass and the times at which it occurs. (f) What is the value of m?

Figure **P14.89**



14.90 •• DATA You hang various masses m from the end of a vertical, 0.250 kg spring that obeys Hooke's law and is tapered, which means the diameter changes along the length of the spring. Since the mass of the spring is not negligible, you must replace m in the equation $T = 2\pi\sqrt{m/k}$ with $m + m_{\text{eff}}$, where m_{eff} is the effective mass of the oscillating spring. (See Challenge Problem 14.93.) You vary the mass m and measure the time for 10 complete oscillations, obtaining these data:

m (kg)	0.100	0.200	0.300	0.400	0.500
Time (s)	8.7	10.5	12.2	13.9	15.1

(a) Graph the square of the period T versus the mass suspended from the spring, and find the straight line of best fit. (b) From the slope of that line, determine the force constant of the spring. (c) From the vertical intercept of the line, determine the spring's effective mass. (d) What fraction is m_{eff} of the spring's mass? (e) If a 0.450 kg mass oscillates on the end of the spring, find its period, frequency, and angular frequency.

14.91 ••• DATA Experimenting with pendulums, you attach a light string to the ceiling and attach a small metal sphere to the lower end of the string. When you displace the sphere 2.00 m to the left, it nearly touches a vertical wall; with the string taut, you release the sphere from rest. The sphere swings back and forth as a simple pendulum, and you measure its period T. You repeat this act for strings of various lengths L, each time starting the motion with the sphere displaced 2.00 m to the left of the vertical position of the string. In each case the sphere's radius is very small compared with L. Your results are given in the table:

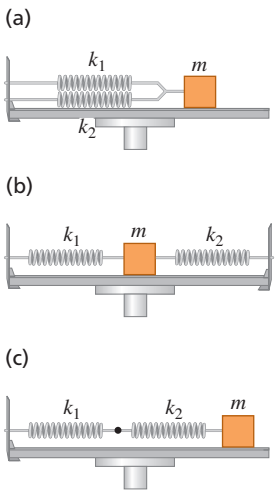
L (m)	12.00	10.00	8.00	6.00	5.00	4.00	3.00	2.50	2.30
T (s)	6.96	6.36	5.70	4.95	4.54	4.08	3.60	3.35	3.27

(a) For the five largest values of L, graph T^2 versus L. Explain why the data points fall close to a straight line. Does the slope of this line have the value you expected? (b) Add the remaining data to your graph. Explain why the data start to deviate from the straight-line fit as L decreases. To see this effect more clearly, plot T/T_0 versus L, where $T_0 = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$ and $g = 9.80$ m/s^2. (c) Use your graph of T/T_0 versus L to estimate the angular amplitude of the pendulum (in degrees) for which the equation $T = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$ is in error by 5%.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

14.92 ••• The Effective Force Constant of Two Springs. Two springs with the same unstretched length but different force constants k_1 and k_2 are attached to a block with mass m on a level, frictionless surface. Calculate the effective force constant k_{eff} in each of the three cases (a), (b), and (c) depicted in **Fig. P14.92.** (The effective force constant is defined by $\Sigma F_x = -k_{\text{eff}}x$.) (d) An object with mass m, suspended from a uniform spring with a force constant k, vibrates with a frequency f_1. When the spring is cut in half and the same object is suspended from one of the halves, the frequency is f_2. What is the ratio f_1/f_2?

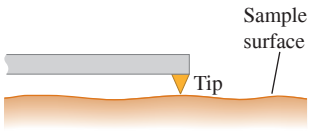
Figure **P14.92**



14.93 ••• CALC A Spring with Mass. The preceding problems in this chapter have assumed that the springs had negligible mass. But of course no spring is completely massless. To find the effect of the spring's mass, consider a spring with mass M, equilibrium length L_0, and spring constant k. When stretched or compressed to a length L, the potential energy is $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where $x = L - L_0$. (a) Consider a spring, as described above, that has one end fixed and the other end moving with speed v. Assume that the speed of points along the length of the spring varies linearly with distance l from the fixed end. Assume also that the mass M of the spring is distributed uniformly along the length of the spring. Calculate the kinetic energy of the spring in terms of M and v. (*Hint:* Divide the spring into pieces of length dl; find the speed of each piece in terms of l, v, and L; find the mass of each piece in terms of dl, M, and L; and integrate from 0 to L. The result is *not* $\frac{1}{2}Mv^2$, since not all of the spring moves with the same speed.) (b) Take the time derivative of the conservation of energy equation, Eq. (14.21), for a mass m moving on the end of a *massless* spring. By comparing your results to Eq. (14.8), which defines ω, show that the angular frequency of oscillation is $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. (c) Apply the procedure of part (b) to obtain the angular frequency of oscillation ω of the spring considered in part (a). If the *effective mass* M' of the spring is defined by $\omega = \sqrt{k/M'}$, what is M' in terms of M?

MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO "Seeing" Surfaces at the Nanoscale. One technique for making images of surfaces at the nanometer scale, including membranes and biomolecules, is dynamic atomic force microscopy. In this technique, a small tip is attached to a cantilever, which is a flexible, rectangular slab supported at one end, like a diving board. The cantilever vibrates, so the tip moves up and down in simple harmonic motion. In one operating mode, the resonant frequency for a cantilever with force constant $k = 1000$ N/m is 100 kHz. As the oscillating tip is brought within a few nanometers of the surface of a sample (as shown in the figure), it experiences an attractive force from the surface. For an oscillation with a small amplitude (typically, 0.050 nm), the force F that the sample surface exerts on the tip varies linearly with the displacement x of the tip, $|F| = k_{\text{surf}}x$, where k_{surf} is the effective force constant for this force. The net force on the tip is therefore $(k + k_{\text{surf}})x$, and the frequency of the oscillation changes slightly due to the interaction with the surface. Measurements of the frequency as the tip moves over different parts of the sample's surface can provide information about the sample.



14.94 If we model the vibrating system as a mass on a spring, what is the mass necessary to achieve the desired resonant frequency when the tip is not interacting with the surface? (a) 25 ng; (b) 100 ng; (c) 2.5 μg; (d) 100 μg.

14.95 In the model of Problem 14.94, what is the total mechanical energy of the vibration when the tip is not interacting with the surface? (a) 1.2×10^{-18} J; (b) 1.2×10^{-16} J; (c) 1.2×10^{-9} J; (d) 5.0×10^{-8} J.

14.96 By what percentage does the frequency of oscillation change if $k_{\text{surf}} = 5$ N/m? (a) 0.1%; (b) 0.2%; (c) 0.5%; (d) 1.0%.

ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(i) The back-and-forth motion of a leg during walking is like a physical pendulum, for which the oscillation period is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{I/mgd}$ [see Eq. (14.39)]. In this expression I is the moment of inertia of the pendulum, m is its mass, and d is the distance from the rotation axis to the pendulum center of mass. I is proportional to m, so the mass cancels out of this expression for T. Hence only the dimensions of the leg matter. (See Examples 14.9 and 14.10.)

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP14.3.1 (a) $T = 0.241$ s, $\omega = 26.1$ rad/s (b) 272 N/m (c) 5.44 N
VP14.3.2 (a) 0.164 kg (b) 0.0438 m
VP14.3.3 (a) 0.0496 m (b) 15.6 m/s
VP14.3.4 (a) 0.968 Hz (b) 4.11×10^{-2} m
VP14.4.1 (a) 0.0479 m (b) 9.19×10^{-3} J (c) $U = 3.60 \times 10^{-3}$ J, $K = 5.59 \times 10^{-3}$ J
VP14.4.2 (a) 62.0 N/m (b) 0.447 m/s
VP14.4.3 (a) $k = 8.89$ N/m, $m = 0.512$ kg (b) 0.521 m/s^2 (c) 0.451 m/s^2
VP14.4.4 (a) $x = \pm A\sqrt{2/3}$ (b) $x = \pm A\sqrt{1/5}$
VP14.9.1 (a) 1.64 s (b) 7.32 m/s^2
VP14.9.2 0.392 m
VP14.9.3 $\dfrac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\dfrac{g}{2R}}$
VP14.9.4 0.188 kg · m^2

BRIDGING PROBLEM

$T = 2\pi\sqrt{3M/2k}$

? When an earthquake strikes, the news of the event travels through the body of the earth in the form of seismic waves. Which aspects of a seismic wave determine how much power is carried by the wave: (i) the amplitude; (ii) the frequency; (iii) both the amplitude and the frequency; or (iv) neither the amplitude nor the frequency?

15 Mechanical Waves

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **15.1** What is meant by a mechanical wave, and the different varieties of mechanical waves.
- **15.2** How to use the relationship among speed, frequency, and wavelength for a periodic wave.
- **15.3** How to interpret and use the mathematical expression for a sinusoidal periodic wave.
- **15.4** How to calculate the speed of waves on a rope or string.
- **15.5** How to calculate the rate at which a mechanical wave transports energy.
- **15.6** What happens when mechanical waves overlap and interfere.
- **15.7** The properties of standing waves on a string, and how to analyze these waves.
- **15.8** How stringed instruments produce sounds of specific frequencies.

You'll need to review...

- **8.1** The impulse–momentum theorem.
- **14.1, 14.2** Periodic motion and simple harmonic motion.

Ripples on a pond, musical sounds, seismic tremors triggered by an earthquake—all these are *wave* phenomena. Waves can occur whenever a system is disturbed from equilibrium and when the disturbance can travel, or *propagate,* from one region of the system to another. As a wave propagates, it carries energy. The energy in light waves from the sun warms the surface of our planet; the energy in seismic waves can crack our planet's crust.

This chapter and the next are about mechanical waves—waves that travel within some material called a *medium*. (Chapter 16 is concerned with sound, an important type of mechanical wave.) We'll begin this chapter by deriving the basic equations for describing waves, including the important special case of *sinusoidal* waves in which the wave pattern is a repeating sine or cosine function. To help us understand waves in general, we'll look at the simple case of waves that travel on a stretched string or rope.

Waves on a string are important in music. When a musician strums a guitar or bows a violin, she makes waves that travel in opposite directions along the instrument's strings. What happens when these oppositely directed waves overlap is called *interference*. We'll discover that sinusoidal waves can occur on a guitar or violin string only for certain special frequencies, called *normal-mode frequencies,* determined by the properties of the string. These normal-mode frequencies determine the pitch of the musical sounds that a stringed instrument produces. (In the next chapter we'll find that interference also helps explain the pitches of *wind* instruments such as pipe organs.)

Not all waves are mechanical in nature. *Electromagnetic* waves—including light, radio waves, infrared and ultraviolet radiation, and x rays—can propagate even in empty space, where there is *no* medium. We'll explore these and other nonmechanical waves in later chapters.

15.1 TYPES OF MECHANICAL WAVES

A **mechanical wave** is a disturbance that travels through some material or substance called the **medium** for the wave. As the wave travels through the medium, the particles that make up the medium undergo displacements of various kinds, depending on the nature of the wave.

Figure 15.1 Three ways to make a wave that moves to the right. (a) The hand moves the string up and then returns, producing a transverse wave. (b) The piston moves to the right, compressing the gas or liquid, and then returns, producing a longitudinal wave. (c) The board moves to the right and then returns, producing a combination of longitudinal and transverse waves.

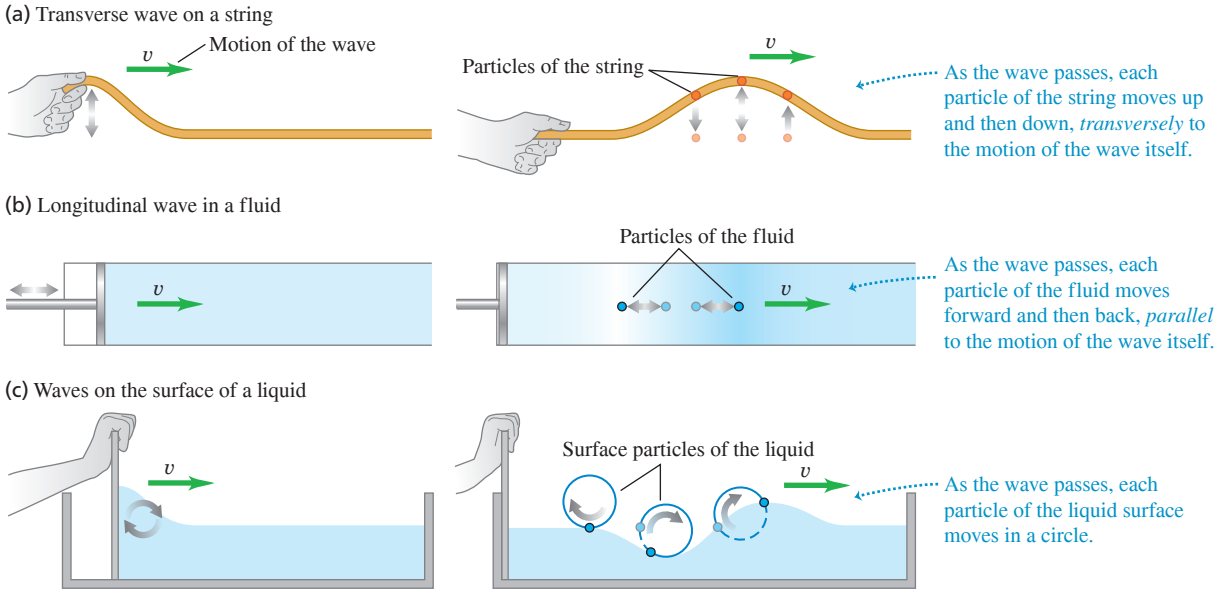


Figure 15.1 shows three varieties of mechanical waves. In Fig. 15.1a the medium is a string or rope under tension. If we give the left end a small upward shake or wiggle, the wiggle travels along the length of the string. Successive sections of string go through the same motion that we gave to the end, but at successively later times. Because the displacements of the medium are perpendicular or *transverse* to the direction of travel of the wave along the medium, this is called a **transverse wave.**

In Fig. 15.1b the medium is a liquid or gas in a tube with a rigid wall at the right end and a movable piston at the left end. If we give the piston a single back-and-forth motion, displacement and pressure fluctuations travel down the length of the medium. This time the motions of the particles of the medium are back and forth along the *same* direction that the wave travels. We call this a **longitudinal wave.**

In Fig. 15.1c the medium is a liquid in a channel, such as water in an irrigation ditch or canal. When we move the flat board at the left end forward and back once, a wave disturbance travels down the length of the channel. In this case the displacements of the water have *both* longitudinal and transverse components.

Each of these systems has an equilibrium state. For the stretched string it is the state in which the system is at rest, stretched out along a straight line. For the fluid in a tube it is a state in which the fluid is at rest with uniform pressure. And for the liquid in a trough it is a smooth, level water surface. In each case the wave motion is a disturbance from equilibrium that travels from one region of the medium to another. And in each case forces tend to restore the system to its equilibrium position when it is displaced, just as the force of gravity tends to pull a pendulum toward its straight-down equilibrium position when it is displaced.

These examples have three things in common. First, in each case the disturbance travels or *propagates* with a definite speed through the medium. This speed is called the speed of propagation, or simply the **wave speed.** Its value is determined in each case by the mechanical properties of the medium. We'll use the symbol v for wave speed. (The wave speed is *not* the same as the speed with which particles move when they are disturbed by the wave. We'll return to this point in Section 15.3.) Second, the medium itself does not travel through space; its individual particles undergo back-and-forth or up-and-down motions around their equilibrium positions. The overall pattern of the wave disturbance is what travels. Third, to set any of these systems into motion, we have to put in

BIO APPLICATION Waves on a Snake's Body A snake moves itself along the ground by producing waves that travel backward along its body from its head to its tail. The waves remain stationary with respect to the ground as they push against the ground, so the snake moves forward.

Figure **15.2** "Doing the wave" at a sports stadium is an example of a mechanical wave: The disturbance propagates through the crowd, but there is no transport of matter (none of the spectators moves from one seat to another).

energy by doing mechanical work on the system. The wave motion transports this energy from one region of the medium to another. *Waves transport energy, but not matter, from one region to another* (**Fig. 15.2**).

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.1 What type of wave is "the wave" shown in Fig. 15.2? (i) Transverse; (ii) longitudinal; (iii) a combination of transverse and longitudinal.

ANSWER

(i) The "wave" travels horizontally from one spectator to the next along each row of the stadium, but the displacement of each spectator is vertically upward. Since the displacement is perpendicular to the direction in which the wave travels, the wave is transverse.

15.2 PERIODIC WAVES

The transverse wave on a stretched string in Fig. 15.1a is an example of a *wave pulse*. The hand exerts a transverse force that shakes the string up and down just once, producing a single "wiggle," or pulse, that travels along the length of the string. The tension in the string restores its straight-line shape once the pulse has passed.

A more interesting situation develops when we give the free end of the string a repetitive, or *periodic,* motion. (You should review the discussion of periodic motion in Chapter 14 before going ahead.) Each particle in the string undergoes periodic motion as the wave propagates, and we have a **periodic wave.**

Periodic Transverse Waves

Suppose we move one end of the string up and down with *simple harmonic motion* (SHM) as in **Fig. 15.3**, with amplitude A, frequency f, angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi f$, and period $T = 1/f = 2\pi/\omega$. The wave that results is a symmetric sequence of *crests* and *troughs*. As we'll see, periodic waves with SHM are particularly easy to analyze; we

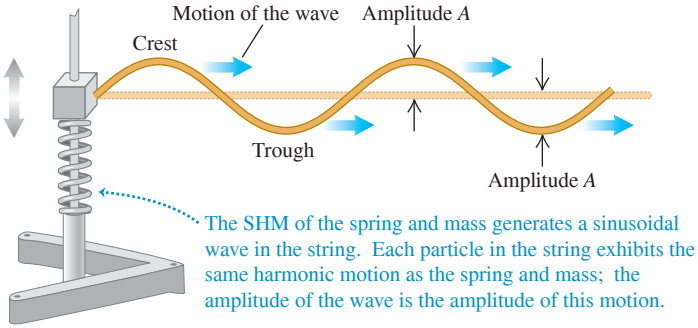


Figure **15.3** A block of mass m attached to a spring undergoes simple harmonic motion, producing a sinusoidal wave that travels to the right on the string. (In a real-life system a driving force would have to be applied to the block to replace the energy carried away by the wave.)

call them **sinusoidal waves.** It turns out that *any* periodic wave can be represented as a combination of sinusoidal waves. So this kind of wave motion is worth special attention.

In Fig. 15.3 the wave is a *continuous succession* of transverse sinusoidal disturbances. **Figure 15.4** shows the shape of a part of the string near the left end at time intervals of $\frac{1}{8}$ of a period, for a total time of one period. The wave shape advances steadily toward the right, as indicated by the highlighted area. As the wave moves, any point on the string (any of the red dots, for example) oscillates up and down about its equilibrium position with simple harmonic motion. *When a sinusoidal wave passes through a medium, every particle in the medium undergoes simple harmonic motion with the same frequency.*

CAUTION **Wave motion vs. particle motion** Don't confuse the motion of the *transverse wave* along the string and the motion of a *particle* of the string. The wave moves with constant speed v *along* the length of the string, while the motion of the particle is simple harmonic and *transverse* (perpendicular) to the length of the string.

For a periodic wave, the shape of the string at any instant is a repeating pattern. The **wavelength** λ (the Greek letter lambda) of the wave is the distance from one crest to the next, or from one trough to the next, or from any point to the corresponding point on the next repetition of the wave shape. The wave pattern travels with constant speed v and advances a distance of one wavelength λ in a time interval of one period T. So the wave speed is $v = \lambda/T$ or, because $f = 1/T$ from Eq. (14.1),

For a **periodic wave:** $v = \lambda f$ (15.1)

(Wave speed; Wavelength; Frequency)

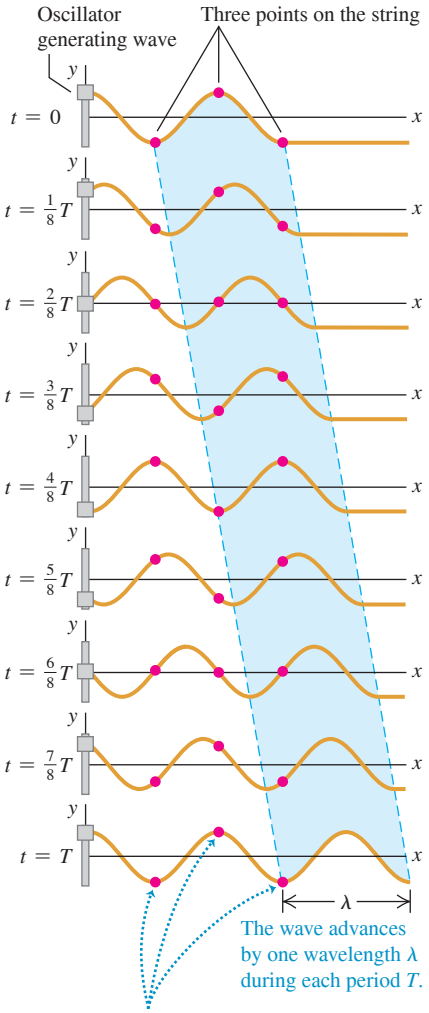
The speed of propagation equals the product of wavelength and frequency. The frequency is a property of the *entire* periodic wave because all points on the string oscillate with the same frequency f.

Waves on a string propagate in just one dimension (in Fig. 15.4, along the x-axis). But the ideas of frequency, wavelength, and amplitude apply equally well to waves that propagate in two or three dimensions. **Figure 15.5** shows a wave propagating in two dimensions on the surface of a tank of water. As with waves on a string, the wavelength is the distance from one crest to the next, and the amplitude is the height of a crest above the equilibrium level.

In many important situations including waves on a string, the wave speed v is determined entirely by the mechanical properties of the medium. In this case, increasing f causes λ to decrease so the product $v = \lambda f$ remains the same, and waves of *all* frequencies propagate with the same wave speed. In this chapter we'll consider *only* waves of this kind. (In later chapters we'll study the propagation of light waves in transparent materials where the wave speed depends on frequency; this turns out to be the reason raindrops create a rainbow.)

Figure **15.4** A sinusoidal transverse wave traveling to the right along a string. The vertical scale is exaggerated.

The string is shown at time intervals of $\frac{1}{8}$ period for a total of one period T. The highlighting shows the motion of one wavelength of the wave.



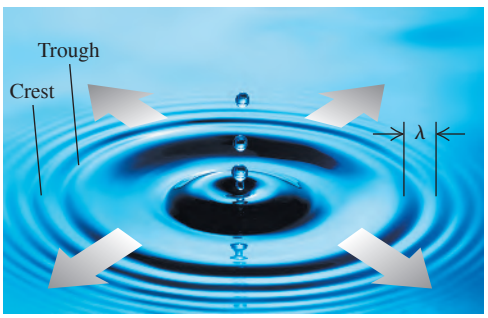


Figure **15.5** A series of drops falling into water produces a periodic wave that spreads radially outward. The wave crests and troughs are concentric circles. The wavelength λ is the radial distance between adjacent crests or adjacent troughs.

Figure 15.6 Using an oscillating piston to make a sinusoidal longitudinal wave in a fluid.

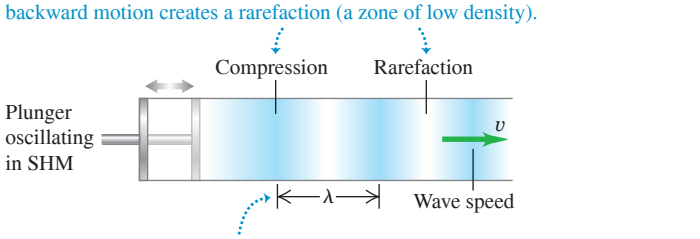
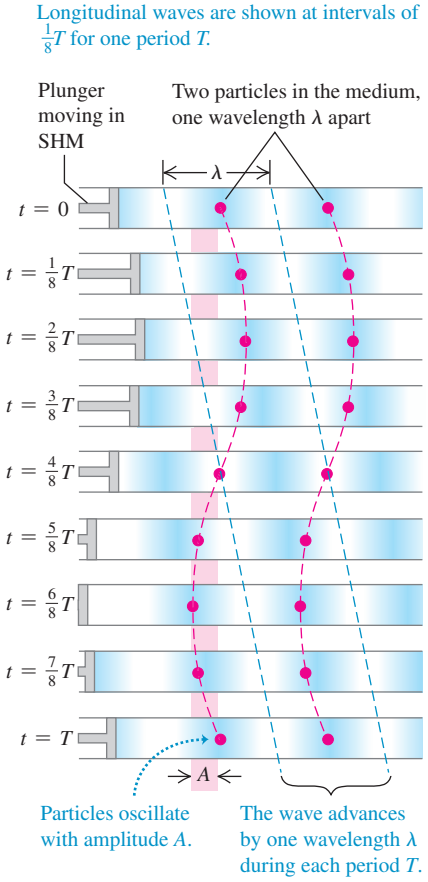


Figure 15.7 A sinusoidal longitudinal wave traveling to the right in a fluid. The wave has the same amplitude A and period T as the oscillation of the piston.



Periodic Longitudinal Waves

To understand the mechanics of a periodic *longitudinal* wave, consider a long tube filled with a fluid, with a piston at the left end as in Fig. 15.1b. If we push the piston in, we compress the fluid near the piston, increasing the pressure in this region. This region then pushes against the neighboring region of fluid, and so on, and a wave pulse moves along the tube.

Now suppose we move the piston back and forth in SHM along a line parallel to the axis of the tube (**Fig. 15.6**). This motion forms regions in the fluid where the pressure and density are greater or less than the equilibrium values. We call a region of increased density a *compression;* a region of reduced density is a *rarefaction*. Figure 15.6 shows compressions as darkly shaded areas and rarefactions as lightly shaded areas. The wavelength is the distance from one compression to the next or from one rarefaction to the next.

Figure 15.7 shows the wave propagating in the fluid-filled tube at time intervals of $\frac{1}{8}$ of a period, for a total time of one period. The pattern of compressions and rarefactions moves steadily to the right, just like the pattern of crests and troughs in a sinusoidal transverse wave (compare Fig. 15.4). Each particle in the fluid oscillates in SHM parallel to the direction of wave propagation (that is, left and right) with the same amplitude A and period T as the piston. The particles shown by the two red dots in Fig. 15.7 are one wavelength apart, and so oscillate in phase with each other.

Just like the sinusoidal transverse wave shown in Fig. 15.4, in one period T the longitudinal wave in Fig. 15.7 travels one wavelength λ to the right. Hence the fundamental equation $v = \lambda f$ holds for longitudinal waves as well as for transverse waves, and indeed for *all* types of periodic waves. Just as for transverse waves, in this chapter and the next we'll consider only situations in which the speed of longitudinal waves does not depend on the frequency.

EXAMPLE 15.1 Wavelength of a musical sound

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

Sound waves are longitudinal waves in air. The speed of sound depends on temperature; at 20°C it is 344 m/s. What is the wavelength of a sound wave in air at 20°C if the frequency is 262 Hz (the approximate frequency of middle C on a piano)?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem involves Eq. (15.1), $v = \lambda f$, which relates wave speed v, wavelength λ, and frequency f for a periodic wave. The target variable is the wavelength λ. We are given $v = 344$ m/s and $f = 262$ Hz $= 262\ \text{s}^{-1}$.

EXECUTE We solve Eq. (15.1) for λ:

$$\lambda = \frac{v}{f} = \frac{344\ \text{m/s}}{262\ \text{Hz}} = \frac{344\ \text{m/s}}{262\ \text{s}^{-1}} = 1.31\ \text{m}$$

EVALUATE The speed v of sound waves does *not* depend on the frequency. Hence $\lambda = v/f$ says that wavelength changes in inverse proportion to frequency. As an example, high (soprano) C is two octaves above middle C. Each octave corresponds to a factor of 2 in frequency, so the frequency of high C is four times that of middle C: $f = 4(262\ \text{Hz}) = 1048$ Hz. Hence the *wavelength* of high C is *one-fourth* as large: $\lambda = (1.31\ \text{m})/4 = 0.328$ m.

KEYCONCEPT The product of a wave's wavelength and frequency has the same value no matter what the frequency is. This product equals the wave speed.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.2 If you double the wavelength of a wave on a particular string without changing the physical properties of the string, what happens to the wave speed v and the frequency f? (i) v doubles and f is unchanged; (ii) v is unchanged and f doubles; (iii) v becomes one-half as great and f is unchanged; (iv) v is unchanged and f becomes one-half as great; (v) none of these.

ANSWER

(iv) The speed of waves on a string, v, does not depend on the wavelength. We can rewrite the relationship $v = \lambda f$ as $f = v/\lambda$, which tells us that if the wavelength λ doubles, the frequency f becomes one-half as great.

15.3 MATHEMATICAL DESCRIPTION OF A WAVE

Many characteristics of periodic waves can be described by using the concepts of wave speed, amplitude, period, frequency, and wavelength. Often, though, we need a more detailed description of the positions and motions of individual particles of the medium at particular times during wave propagation.

As a specific example, let's look at waves on a stretched string. If we ignore the sag of the string due to gravity, the equilibrium position of the string is along a straight line. We take this to be the x-axis of a coordinate system. Waves on a string are *transverse;* during wave motion a particle with equilibrium position x is displaced some distance y in the direction perpendicular to the x-axis. The value of y depends on which particle we are talking about (that is, y depends on x) and also on the time t when we look at it. Thus y is a *function* of both x and t; $y = y(x, t)$. We call $y(x, t)$ the **wave function** that describes the wave. If we know this function for a particular wave motion, we can use it to find the displacement (from equilibrium) of any particle at any time. From this we can find the velocity and acceleration of any particle, the shape of the string, and anything else we want to know about the behavior of the string at any time.

Wave Function for a Sinusoidal Wave

Let's see how to determine the form of the wave function for a sinusoidal wave. Suppose a sinusoidal wave travels from left to right (the direction of increasing x) along the string, as in **Fig. 15.8**. Every particle of the string oscillates in simple harmonic motion with the same amplitude and frequency. But the oscillations of particles at different points on the string are *not* all in step with each other. The particle at point B in Fig. 15.8 is at its maximum positive value of y at $t = 0$ and returns to $y = 0$ at $t = \frac{2}{8}T$; these same events occur for a particle at point A or point C at $t = \frac{4}{8}T$ and $t = \frac{6}{8}T$, exactly one half-period later. For any two particles of the string, the motion of the particle on the right (in terms of the wave, the "downstream" particle) lags behind the motion of the particle on the left by an amount proportional to the distance between the particles.

Hence the cyclic motions of various points on the string are out of step with each other by various fractions of a cycle. We call these differences *phase differences,* and we say that the *phase* of the motion is different for different points. For example, if one point has its maximum positive displacement at the same time that another has its maximum negative displacement, the two are a half-cycle out of phase. (This is the case for points A and B, or points B and C.)

Suppose that the displacement of a particle at the left end of the string $(x = 0)$, where the wave originates, is given by

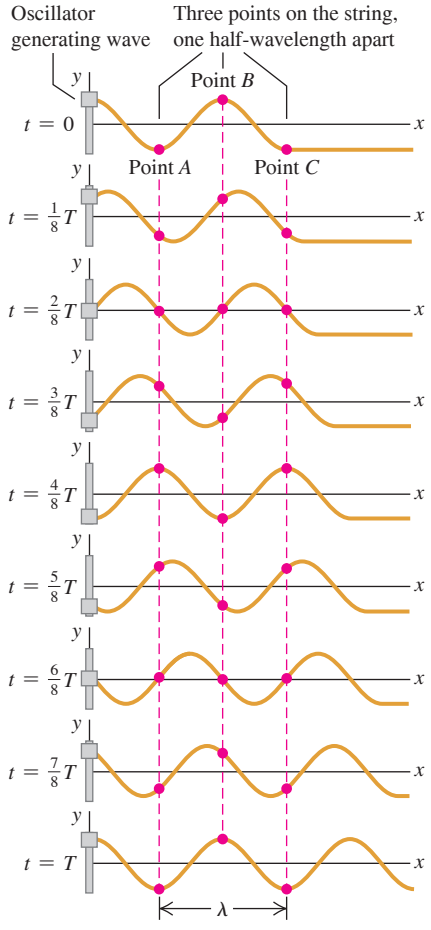
$$y(x = 0, t) = A\cos\omega t = A\cos 2\pi f t \qquad (15.2)$$

That is, the particle oscillates in SHM with amplitude A, frequency f, and angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi f$. The notation $y(x = 0, t)$ reminds us that the motion of this particle is a special case of the wave function $y(x, t)$ that describes the entire wave. At $t = 0$ the particle at $x = 0$ is at its maximum positive displacement $(y = A)$ and is instantaneously at rest (because y is a maximum).

The wave disturbance travels from $x = 0$ to some point x to the right of the origin in an amount of time given by x/v, where v is the wave speed. So the motion of point x at time t

Figure **15.8** Tracking the oscillations of three points on a string as a sinusoidal wave propagates along it.

The string is shown at time intervals of $\frac{1}{8}$ period for a total of one period T.



is the same as the motion of point $x = 0$ at the earlier time $t - x/v$. Hence we can find the displacement of point x at time t by simply replacing t in Eq. (15.2) by $(t - x/v)$:

$$y(x, t) = A\cos\left[\omega\left(t - \frac{x}{v}\right)\right]$$

Because $\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$, we can rewrite the wave function as

Wave function for a sinusoidal wave propagating in +x-direction

$$y(x, t) = A\cos\left[\omega\left(\frac{x}{v} - t\right)\right] \qquad (15.3)$$

Amplitude; Position; Time; Angular frequency $= 2\pi f$; Wave speed

The displacement $y(x, t)$ is a function of both the location x of the point and the time t. We could make Eq. (15.3) more general by allowing for different values of the phase angle, as we did for SHM in Section 14.2, but for now we omit this.

We can rewrite the wave function given by Eq. (15.3) in several different but useful forms. We can express it in terms of the period $T = 1/f$ and the wavelength $\lambda = v/f = 2\pi v/\omega$:

Wave function for a sinusoidal wave propagating in +x-direction

$$y(x, t) = A\cos\left[2\pi\left(\frac{x}{\lambda} - \frac{t}{T}\right)\right] \qquad (15.4)$$

Amplitude; Position; Time; Wavelength; Period

It's convenient to define a quantity k, called the **wave number:**

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \qquad \text{(wave number)} \qquad (15.5)$$

Substituting $\lambda = 2\pi/k$ and $f = \omega/2\pi$ into Eq. (15.1), $v = \lambda f$, gives

$$\omega = vk \qquad \text{(periodic wave)} \qquad (15.6)$$

We can then rewrite Eq. (15.4) as

Wave function for a sinusoidal wave propagating in +x-direction

$$y(x, t) = A\cos(kx - \omega t) \qquad (15.7)$$

Amplitude; Position; Time; Wave number $= 2\pi/\lambda$; Angular frequency $= 2\pi f$

Which of these various forms for the wave function $y(x, t)$ we use in any specific problem is a matter of convenience. Note that ω has units rad/s, so for unit consistency in Eqs. (15.6) and (15.7) the wave number k must have the units rad/m. (Warning: Some textbooks define the wave number as $1/\lambda$ rather than $2\pi/\lambda$.)

CAUTION **Amplitude is independent of wavelength or frequency** We learned in Section 15.2 that the frequency and wavelength of a wave are closely related: Increasing the frequency decreases the wavelength, and decreasing the frequency increases the wavelength. The amplitude of a wave, however, does not depend on the frequency or the wavelength. Changing the frequency or wavelength has no effect on the amplitude, and changing the wave amplitude by itself has no effect on the frequency or wavelength.

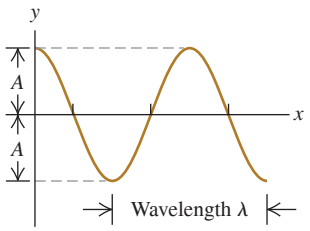
Graphing the Wave Function

Figure 15.9a graphs the wave function $y(x, t)$ as a function of x for a specific time t. This graph gives the displacement y of a particle from its equilibrium position as a function of the coordinate x of the particle. If the wave is a transverse wave on a string, the graph in Fig. 15.9a represents the shape of the string at that instant, like a flash photograph of the string. In particular, at time $t = 0$,

$$y(x, t = 0) = A\cos kx = A\cos 2\pi\frac{x}{\lambda}$$

Figure **15.9** Two graphs of the wave function $y(x, t)$ in Eq. (15.7). (a) Graph of displacement y versus coordinate x at time $t = 0$. (b) Graph of displacement y versus time t at coordinate $x = 0$. The vertical scale is exaggerated in both (a) and (b).

(a) If we use Eq. (15.7) to plot y as a function of x for time $t = 0$, the curve shows the *shape* of the string at $t = 0$.



(b) If we use Eq. (15.7) to plot y as a function of t for position $x = 0$, the curve shows the *displacement* y of the particle at $x = 0$ as a function of time.

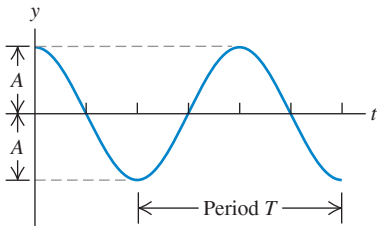


Figure 15.9b is a graph of the wave function versus time t for a specific coordinate x. This graph gives the displacement y of the particle at x as a function of time; that is, it describes the motion of that particle. At position $x = 0$,

$$y(x = 0, t) = A\cos(-\omega t) = A\cos\omega t = A\cos 2\pi\frac{t}{T}$$

This is consistent with our original statement about the motion at $x = 0$, Eq. (15.2).

CAUTION **Wave graphs** Although they may look the same, Figs. 15.9a and 15.9b are *not* identical. Figure 15.9a is a picture of the shape of the string at $t = 0$, while Fig. 15.9b is a graph of the displacement y of a particle at $x = 0$ as a function of time.

More on the Wave Function

We can modify Eqs. (15.3) through (15.7) to represent a wave traveling in the *negative* x-direction. In this case the displacement of point x at time t is the same as the motion of point $x = 0$ at the *later* time $(t + x/v)$, so in Eq. (15.2) we replace t by $(t + x/v)$. For a wave traveling in the negative x-direction,

$$y(x, t) = A\cos\left[\omega\left(\frac{x}{v} + t\right)\right] = A\cos\left[2\pi\left(\frac{x}{\lambda} + \frac{t}{T}\right)\right] = A\cos(kx + \omega t) \quad (15.8)$$

(sinusoidal wave moving in $-x$-direction)

In the expression $y(x, t) = A\cos(kx \pm \omega t)$ for a wave traveling in the $-x$- or $+x$-direction, the quantity $(kx \pm \omega t)$ is called the **phase.** It plays the role of an angular quantity (always measured in radians) in Eq. (15.7) or (15.8), and its value for any values of x and t determines what part of the sinusoidal cycle is occurring at a particular point and time. For a crest (where $y = A$ and the cosine function has the value 1), the phase could be $0, \pm 2\pi, \pm 4\pi$, and so on; for a trough (where $y = -A$ and the cosine has the value -1), it could be $\pm\pi, \pm 3\pi, \pm 5\pi$, and so on.

The wave speed is the speed with which we have to move along with the wave to keep alongside a point of a given phase, such as a particular crest of a wave on a string. For a wave traveling in the $+x$-direction, that means $kx - \omega t =$ constant. Taking the derivative with respect to t, we find $k\,dx/dt = \omega$, or

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{\omega}{k}$$

Comparing this with Eq. (15.6), we see that dx/dt is equal to the speed v of the wave. Because of this relationship, v is sometimes called the *phase velocity* of the wave. (*Phase speed* would be a better term.)

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 15.1 Mechanical Waves

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* As always, identify the target variables; these may include mathematical *expressions* (for example, the wave function for a given situation). Note that wave problems fall into two categories. *Kinematics* problems, concerned with describing wave motion, involve wave speed v, wavelength λ (or wave number k), frequency f (or angular frequency ω), and amplitude A. They may also involve the position, velocity, and acceleration of individual particles in the medium. *Dynamics* problems also use concepts from Newton's laws. Later in this chapter we'll encounter problems that involve the relationship of wave speed to the mechanical properties of the medium.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. List the given quantities. Sketch graphs of y versus x (like Fig. 15.9a) and of y versus t (like Fig. 15.9b), and label them with known values.
2. Identify useful equations. These may include Eq. (15.1) $(v = \lambda f)$, Eq. (15.6) $(\omega = vk)$, and Eqs. (15.3), (15.4), and (15.7), which express the wave function in various forms. From the wave function, you can find the value of y at any point (value of x) and at any time t.
3. If you need to determine the wave speed v and don't know both λ and f, you may be able to use a relationship between v and the mechanical properties of the system. (In the next section we'll develop this relationship for waves on a string.)

EXECUTE *the solution:* Solve for the unknown quantities using the equations you've identified. To determine the wave function from Eq. (15.3), (15.4), or (15.7), you must know A and any two of v, λ, and f (or v, k, and ω).

EVALUATE *your answer:* Confirm that the values of v, f, and λ (or v, ω, and k) agree with the relationships given in Eq. (15.1) or (15.6). If you've calculated the wave function, check one or more special cases for which you can predict the results.

EXAMPLE 15.2 Wave on a clothesline

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Cousin Throckmorton holds one end of the clothesline taut and wiggles it up and down sinusoidally with frequency 2.00 Hz and amplitude 0.075 m. The wave speed on the clothesline is $v = 12.0$ m/s. At $t = 0$ Throcky's end has maximum positive displacement and is instantaneously at rest. Assume that no wave bounces back from the far end. (a) Find the wave amplitude A, angular frequency ω, period T, wavelength λ, and wave number k. (b) Write a wave function describing the wave. (c) Write equations for the displacement, as a function of time, of Throcky's end of the clothesline and of a point 3.00 m from that end.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This is a kinematics problem about the clothesline's wave motion. Throcky produces a sinusoidal wave that propagates along the clothesline, so we can use all of the expressions of this section. In part (a) our target variables are A, ω, T, λ, and k. We use the relationships $\omega = 2\pi f$, $f = 1/T$, $v = \lambda f$, and $k = 2\pi/\lambda$. In parts (b) and (c) our target "variables" are expressions for displacement, which we'll obtain from an appropriate equation for the wave function. We take the positive x-direction to be the direction in which the wave propagates, so either Eq. (15.4) or (15.7) will yield the desired expression. A photograph of the clothesline at time $t = 0$ would look like Fig. 15.9a, with the maximum displacement at $x = 0$ (the end that Throcky holds).

EXECUTE (a) The wave amplitude and frequency are the same as for the oscillations of Throcky's end of the clothesline, $A = 0.075$ m and $f = 2.00$ Hz. Hence

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \left(2\pi \frac{\text{rad}}{\text{cycle}}\right)\left(2.00 \frac{\text{cycles}}{\text{s}}\right)$$
$$= 4.00\pi \text{ rad/s} = 12.6 \text{ rad/s}$$

The period is $T = 1/f = 0.500$ s, and from Eq. (15.1),

$$\lambda = \frac{v}{f} = \frac{12.0 \text{ m/s}}{2.00 \text{ s}^{-1}} = 6.00 \text{ m}$$

We find the wave number from Eq. (15.5) or (15.6):

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} = \frac{2\pi \text{ rad}}{6.00 \text{ m}} = 1.05 \text{ rad/m}$$

or

$$k = \frac{\omega}{v} = \frac{4.00\pi \text{ rad/s}}{12.0 \text{ m/s}} = 1.05 \text{ rad/m}$$

(b) We write the wave function using Eq. (15.4) and the values of A, T, and λ from part (a):

$$y(x, t) = A\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{x}{\lambda} - \frac{t}{T}\right)$$
$$= (0.075 \text{ m})\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{x}{6.00 \text{ m}} - \frac{t}{0.500 \text{ s}}\right)$$
$$= (0.075 \text{ m})\cos[(1.05 \text{ rad/m})x - (12.6 \text{ rad/s})t]$$

We can also get this same expression from Eq. (15.7) by using the values of ω and k from part (a).

(c) We can find the displacement as a function of time at $x = 0$ and $x = +3.00$ m by substituting these values into the wave function from part (b):

$$y(x = 0, t) = (0.075 \text{ m})\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{0}{6.00 \text{ m}} - \frac{t}{0.500 \text{ s}}\right)$$
$$= (0.075 \text{ m})\cos(12.6 \text{ rad/s})t$$
$$y(x = +3.00 \text{ m}, t) = (0.075 \text{ m})\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{3.00 \text{ m}}{6.00 \text{ m}} - \frac{t}{0.500 \text{ s}}\right)$$
$$= (0.075 \text{ m})\cos[\pi - (12.6 \text{ rad/s})t]$$
$$= -(0.075 \text{ m})\cos(12.6 \text{ rad/s})t$$

EVALUATE In part (b), the quantity $(1.05 \text{ rad/m})x - (12.6 \text{ rad/s})t$ is the *phase* of a point x on the string at time t. The two points in part (c) oscillate in SHM with the same frequency and amplitude, but their oscillations differ in phase by $(1.05 \text{ rad/m})(3.00 \text{ m}) = 3.15 \text{ rad} = \pi$ radians within rounding error—that is, one half-cycle—because the points are separated by one half-wavelength: $\lambda/2 = (6.00 \text{ m})/2 = 3.00$ m. Thus, while a graph of y versus t for the point at $x = 0$ is a cosine curve (like Fig. 15.9b), a graph of y versus t for the point $x = 3.00$ m is a *negative* cosine curve (the same as a cosine curve shifted by one half-cycle).

Using the expression for $y(x = 0, t)$ in part (c), can you show that the end of the string at $x = 0$ is instantaneously at rest at $t = 0$, as stated at the beginning of this example? (*Hint:* Calculate the y-velocity at this point by taking the derivative of y with respect to t.)

KEYCONCEPT The wave function of a wave describes the displacement from equilibrium of the wave medium. It gives this displacement at any position in the medium and at any time.

Particle Velocity and Acceleration in a Sinusoidal Wave

From the wave function we can get an expression for the transverse velocity of any *particle* in a transverse wave. We call this v_y to distinguish it from the wave propagation speed v. To find the transverse velocity v_y at a particular point x, we take the derivative of the wave function $y(x, t)$ with respect to t, keeping x constant. If the wave function is

$$y(x, t) = A\cos(kx - \omega t)$$

then

$$v_y(x, t) = \frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial t} = \omega A \sin(kx - \omega t) \qquad (15.9)$$

The ∂ in this expression is a modified d, used to remind us that $y(x, t)$ is a function of *two* variables and that we are allowing only one (t) to vary. The other (x) is constant because we are looking at a particular point on the string. This derivative is called a *partial*

derivative. If you haven't yet encountered partial derivatives in your study of calculus, don't fret; it's a simple idea.

Equation (15.9) shows that the transverse velocity of a particle varies with time, as we expect for simple harmonic motion. The maximum particle speed is ωA; this can be greater than, less than, or equal to the wave speed v, depending on the amplitude and frequency of the wave.

The *acceleration* of any particle is the *second* partial derivative of $y(x, t)$ with respect to t:

$$a_y(x, t) = \frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)}{\partial t^2} = -\omega^2 A \cos(kx - \omega t) = -\omega^2 y(x, t) \tag{15.10}$$

The acceleration of a particle equals $-\omega^2$ times its displacement, which is the result we obtained in Section 14.2 for simple harmonic motion.

We can also compute partial derivatives of $y(x, t)$ with respect to x, holding t constant. The first partial derivative $\partial y(x, t)/\partial x$ is the *slope* of the string at point x and at time t. The second partial derivative with respect to x tells us the *curvature* of the string:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)}{\partial x^2} = -k^2 A \cos(kx - \omega t) = -k^2 y(x, t) \tag{15.11}$$

From Eqs. (15.10) and (15.11) and the relationship $\omega = vk$ we see that

$$\frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)/\partial t^2}{\partial^2 y(x, t)/\partial x^2} = \frac{\omega^2}{k^2} = v^2 \quad \text{and}$$

Wave equation involves second partial derivatives of wave function:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)}{\partial t^2} \tag{15.12}$$

Second partial derivative with respect to x (left); Wave speed (right); Second partial derivative with respect to t (right)

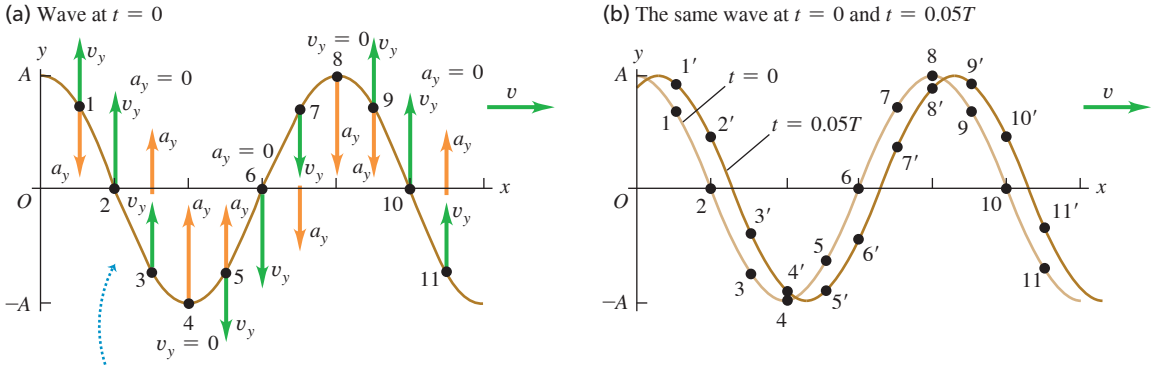
We've derived Eq. (15.12) for a wave traveling in the positive x-direction. You can show that the wave function for a sinusoidal wave propagating in the *negative* x-direction, $y(x, t) = A \cos(kx + \omega t)$, also satisfies this equation.

Equation (15.12), called the **wave equation,** is one of the most important equations in all of physics. Whenever it occurs, we know that a disturbance can propagate as a wave along the x-axis with wave speed v. The disturbance need not be a sinusoidal wave; we'll see in the next section that *any* wave on a string obeys Eq. (15.12), whether the wave is periodic or not. In Chapter 32 we'll find that electric and magnetic fields satisfy the wave equation; the wave speed will turn out to be the speed of light, which will lead us to the conclusion that light is an electromagnetic wave.

Figure 15.10a (next page) shows the transverse velocity v_y and transverse acceleration a_y, given by Eqs. (15.9) and (15.10), for several points on a string as a sinusoidal wave passes along it. At points where the string has an upward curvature $(\partial^2 y/\partial x^2 > 0)$, the acceleration is positive $(a_y = \partial^2 y/\partial t^2 > 0)$; this follows from the wave equation, Eq. (15.12). For the same reason the acceleration is negative $(a_y = \partial^2 y/\partial t^2 < 0)$ at points where the string has a downward curvature $(\partial^2 y/\partial x^2 < 0)$, and the acceleration is zero $(a_y = \partial^2 y/\partial t^2 = 0)$ at points of inflection where the curvature is zero $(\partial^2 y/\partial x^2 = 0)$. Remember that v_y and a_y are the *transverse* velocity and acceleration of points on the string; these points move along the y-direction, not along the propagation direction of the wave. Figure 15.10b shows these motions for several points on the string.

For *longitudinal* waves, the wave function $y(x, t)$ still measures the displacement of a particle of the medium from its equilibrium position. The difference is that for a longitudinal wave, this displacement is *parallel* to the x-axis instead of perpendicular to it. We'll discuss longitudinal waves in detail in Chapter 16.

Figure **15.10** (a) Another view of the wave at $t = 0$ in Fig. 15.9a. The vectors show the transverse velocity v_y and transverse acceleration a_y at several points on the string. (b) From $t = 0$ to $t = 0.05T$, a particle at point 1 is displaced to point $1'$, a particle at point 2 is displaced to point $2'$, and so on.



- Acceleration a_y at each point on the string is proportional to displacement y at that point.
- Acceleration is upward where string curves upward, downward where string curves downward.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.3 Figure 15.8 shows a sinusoidal wave of period T on a string at times 0, $\frac{1}{8}T$, $\frac{2}{8}T$, $\frac{3}{8}T$, $\frac{4}{8}T$, $\frac{5}{8}T$, $\frac{6}{8}T$, $\frac{7}{8}T$, and T. (a) At which time is point A on the string moving upward with maximum speed? (b) At which time does point B on the string have the greatest upward acceleration? (c) At which time does point C on the string have a downward acceleration and a downward velocity?

ANSWER ▮ (a) $\frac{2}{8}T$, (b) $\frac{4}{8}T$, (c) $\frac{5}{8}T$ Since the wave is sinusoidal, each point on the string oscillates in simple harmonic motion (SHM). Hence we can apply all of the ideas from Chapter 14 about SHM to the wave depicted in Fig. 15.8. (a) A particle in SHM has its maximum speed when it is passing through the equilibrium position ($y = 0$ in Fig. 15.8). The particle at point A is moving upward through this position at $t = \frac{2}{8}T$. (b) In vertical SHM the greatest *upward* acceleration occurs when a particle is at its maximum *downward* displacement. This occurs for the particle at point B at $t = \frac{4}{8}T$. (c) A particle in vertical SHM has a *downward* acceleration when its displacement is *upward*. The particle at C has an upward displacement and is moving downward at $t = \frac{5}{8}T$.

15.4 SPEED OF A TRANSVERSE WAVE

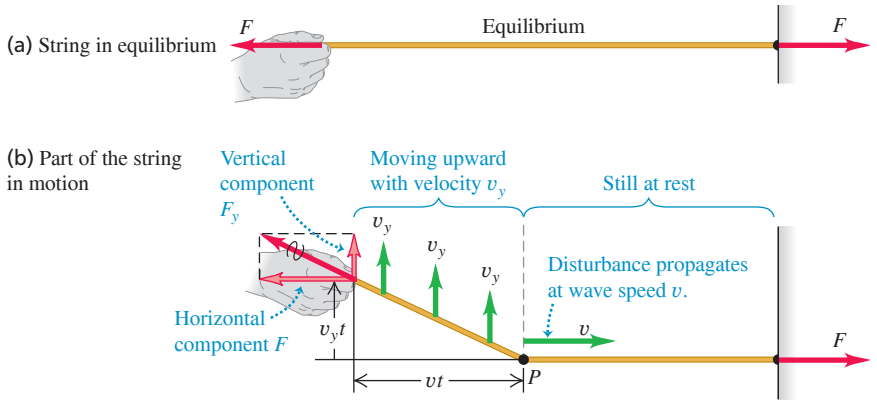
One of the key properties of any wave is the wave *speed*. Light waves in air have a much greater speed of propagation than do sound waves in air (3.00×10^8 m/s versus 344 m/s); that's why you see the flash from a bolt of lightning before you hear the clap of thunder. In this section we'll see what determines the speed of propagation of one particular kind of wave: transverse waves on a string. The speed of these waves is important to understand because it is an essential part of analyzing stringed musical instruments, as we'll discuss later in this chapter. Furthermore, the speeds of many kinds of mechanical waves turn out to have the same basic mathematical expression as does the speed of waves on a string.

What determines the speed of transverse waves on a string are the *tension* in the string and its *mass per unit length* (also called *linear mass density*). Increasing the tension also increases the restoring forces that tend to straighten the string when it is disturbed, thus increasing the wave speed. Increasing the mass per unit length makes the motion more sluggish, and so decreases the wave speed. We'll develop the exact relationship among wave speed, tension, and mass per unit length by two different methods. The first is simple in concept and considers a specific wave shape; the second is more general but also more formal.

Wave Speed on a String: First Method

We consider a perfectly flexible string (**Fig. 15.11**). In the equilibrium position the tension is F and the linear mass density (mass per unit length) is μ. (When portions of the string are displaced from equilibrium, the mass per unit length decreases a little,

Figure **15.11** Propagation of a transverse wave on a string.



and the tension increases a little.) We ignore the weight of the string so that when the string is at rest in the equilibrium position, the string forms a perfectly straight line as in Fig. 15.11a.

Starting at time $t = 0$, we apply a constant upward force F_y at the left end of the string. We might expect that the end would move with constant acceleration; that would happen if the force were applied to a *point* mass. But here the effect of the force F_y is to set successively more and more mass in motion. The wave travels with constant speed v, so the division point P between moving and nonmoving portions moves with the same constant speed v (Fig. 15.11b).

Figure 15.11b shows that all particles in the moving portion of the string move upward with constant *velocity* v_y, not constant acceleration. To see why this is so, we note that the *impulse* of the force F_y up to time t is $F_y t$. According to the impulse–momentum theorem (see Section 8.1), the impulse is equal to the change in the total transverse component of momentum of the moving part of the string. Because the system started with *zero* transverse momentum, this is equal to the total transverse momentum mv_y at time t:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Transverse impulse} &= \text{Transverse momentum} \\ F_y t &= m v_y \end{aligned} \tag{15.13}$$

The total momentum thus must increase proportionately with time. But since the division point P moves with constant speed, the length of string that is in motion and hence the total mass m in motion are also proportional to the time t that the force has been acting. So the *change* of momentum must be associated entirely with the increasing amount of mass in motion, not with an increasing velocity of an individual mass element. That is, mv_y changes because m, not v_y, changes.

At time t, the left end of the string has moved up a distance $v_y t$, and the boundary point P has advanced a distance vt. The total force at the left end of the string has components F and F_y. Why F? There is no motion in the direction along the length of the string, so there is no unbalanced horizontal force. Therefore F, the magnitude of the horizontal component, does not change when the string is displaced. In the displaced position the tension is $(F^2 + F_y^2)^{1/2}$; this is greater than F, so the string stretches somewhat.

To derive an expression for the wave speed v, we note that in Fig. 15.11b the right triangle whose vertex is at P, with sides $v_y t$ and vt, is similar to the right triangle whose vertex is at the position of the hand, with sides F_y and F. Hence

$$\frac{F_y}{F} = \frac{v_y t}{vt} \qquad F_y = F\frac{v_y}{v}$$

and

$$\text{Transverse impulse} = F_y t = F\frac{v_y}{v}t$$

Figure **15.12** These transmission cables have a relatively large amount of mass per unit length (μ) and a low tension (F). If the cables are disturbed—say, by a bird landing on them—transverse waves will travel along them at a slow speed $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$.

The mass m of the moving portion of the string is the product of the mass per unit length μ and the length vt, or μvt. The transverse momentum is the product of this mass and the transverse velocity v_y:

$$\text{Transverse momentum} = mv_y = (\mu vt)v_y$$

Substituting these into Eq. (15.13), we obtain

$$F\frac{v_y}{v}t = \mu v t v_y$$

We solve this for the wave speed v:

Speed of a transverse wave on a string

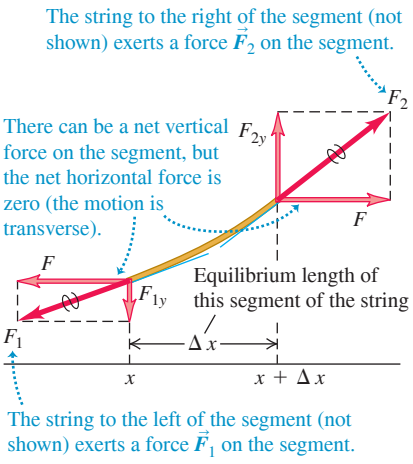
$$v = \sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}} \qquad (15.14)$$

(F: Tension in string; μ: Mass per unit length)

Equation (15.14) confirms that the wave speed v increases when the tension F increases but decreases when the mass per unit length μ increases (**Fig. 15.12**).

Note that v_y does not appear in Eq. (15.14); thus the wave speed doesn't depend on v_y. Our calculation considered only a very special kind of pulse, but we can consider *any* shape of wave disturbance as a series of pulses with different values of v_y. So even though we derived Eq. (15.14) for a special case, it is valid for *any* transverse wave motion on a string, including the sinusoidal and other periodic waves we discussed in Section 15.3. Note also that the wave speed doesn't depend on the amplitude or frequency of the wave, in accordance with our assumptions in Section 15.3.

Figure **15.13** Free-body diagram for a segment of string. The force at each end of the string is tangent to the string at the point of application.



Wave Speed on a String: Second Method

Here is an alternative derivation of Eq. (15.14). If you aren't comfortable with partial derivatives, it can be omitted. We apply Newton's second law, $\sum\vec{F} = m\vec{a}$, to a small segment of string whose length in the equilibrium position is Δx (**Fig. 15.13**). The mass of the segment is $m = \mu\,\Delta x$. The x-components of the forces have equal magnitude F and add to zero because the motion is transverse and there is no component of acceleration in the x-direction. To obtain F_{1y} and F_{2y}, we note that the ratio F_{1y}/F is equal in magnitude to the *slope* of the string at point x and that F_{2y}/F is equal to the slope at point $x + \Delta x$. Taking proper account of signs, we find

$$\frac{F_{1y}}{F} = -\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_x \qquad \frac{F_{2y}}{F} = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x+\Delta x} \qquad (15.15)$$

The notation reminds us that the derivatives are evaluated at points x and $x + \Delta x$, respectively. From Eq. (15.15) we find that the net y-component of force is

$$F_y = F_{1y} + F_{2y} = F\left[\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x+\Delta x} - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_x\right] \qquad (15.16)$$

We now equate F_y from Eq. (15.16) to the mass $\mu\,\Delta x$ times the y-component of acceleration $\partial^2 y/\partial t^2$:

$$F\left[\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x+\Delta x} - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_x\right] = \mu\,\Delta x\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad (15.17)$$

or, dividing Eq. (15.17) by $F\Delta x$,

$$\frac{\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x+\Delta x} - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_x}{\Delta x} = \frac{\mu}{F}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad (15.18)$$

We now take the limit as $\Delta x \to 0$. In this limit, the left side of Eq. (15.18) becomes the derivative of $\partial y/\partial x$ with respect to x (at constant t)—that is, the *second* (partial) derivative of y with respect to x:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\mu}{F}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad (15.19)$$

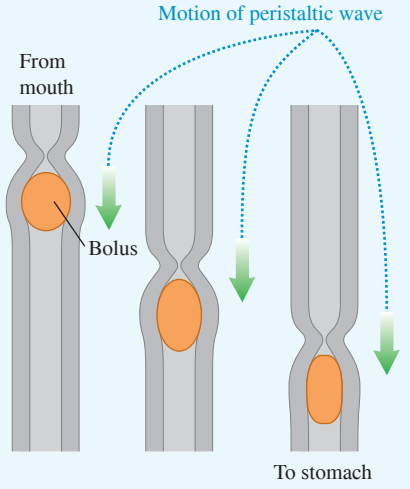
Now, Eq. (15.19) has exactly the same form as the *wave equation,* Eq. (15.12), that we derived at the end of Section 15.3. That equation and Eq. (15.19) describe the very same wave motion, so they must be identical. Comparing the two equations, we see that for this to be so, we must have

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}}$$

which is the same expression as Eq. (15.14).

In going through this derivation, we didn't make any special assumptions about the shape of the wave. Since our derivation led us to rediscover Eq. (15.12), the wave equation, we conclude that the wave equation is valid for waves on a string that have *any* shape.

BIO APPLICATION Eating and Transverse Waves Swallowing food causes peristalsis, in which a transverse wave propagates down your esophagus. The wave is a radial contraction of the esophagus that pushes the bolus (the mass of swallowed food) toward the stomach. Unlike the speed of waves on a uniform string, the speed of this peristaltic wave is not constant: It averages about 3 cm/s in the upper esophagus, about 5 cm/s in the mid-esophagus, and about 2.5 cm/s in the lower esophagus.



The Speed of Mechanical Waves

Equation (15.14) gives the wave speed for only the special case of mechanical waves on a stretched string or rope. Remarkably, it turns out that for many types of mechanical waves, including waves on a string, the expression for wave speed has the same general form:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\text{Restoring force returning the system to equilibrium}}{\text{Inertia resisting the return to equilibrium}}}$$

To interpret this expression, let's look at the now-familiar case of waves on a string. The tension F in the string plays the role of the restoring force; it tends to bring the string back to its undisturbed, equilibrium configuration. The mass of the string—or, more properly, the linear mass density μ—provides the inertia that prevents the string from returning instantaneously to equilibrium. Hence we have $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$ for the speed of waves on a string.

In Chapter 16 we'll see a similar expression for the speed of sound waves in a gas. Roughly speaking, the gas pressure provides the force that tends to return the gas to its undisturbed state when a sound wave passes through. The inertia is provided by the density, or mass per unit volume, of the gas.

EXAMPLE 15.3 Calculating wave speed

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

One end of a 2.00 kg rope is tied to a support at the top of a mine shaft 80.0 m deep (**Fig. 15.14**). The rope is stretched taut by a 20.0 kg box of rocks attached at the bottom. (a) A geologist at the bottom of the shaft signals to a colleague at the top by jerking the rope sideways. What is the speed of a transverse wave on the rope? (b) If a point on the rope is in transverse SHM with $f = 2.00$ Hz, how many cycles of the wave are there in the rope's length?

IDENTIFY and SET UP In part (a) we can find the wave speed (our target variable) by using the *dynamic* relationship $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$ [Eq. (15.14)]. In part (b) we find the wavelength from the *kinematic* relationship $v = f\lambda$; from that we can find the target variable, the number of wavelengths that fit into the rope's 80.0 m length. We'll assume that the rope is massless (even though its weight is 10% that of the box), so that the box alone provides the tension in the rope.

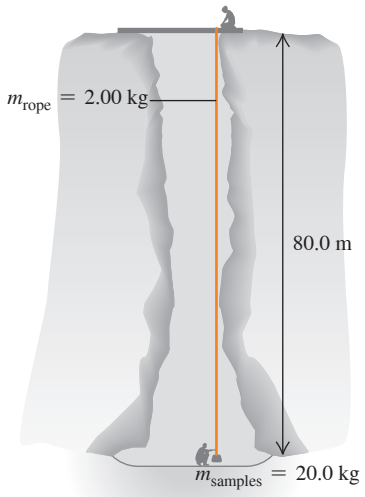
EXECUTE (a) The tension in the rope due to the box is

$$F = m_{\text{box}}g = (20.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2) = 196\text{ N}$$

and the rope's linear mass density is

$$\mu = \frac{m_{\text{rope}}}{L} = \frac{2.00\text{ kg}}{80.0\text{ m}} = 0.0250\text{ kg/m}$$

Figure **15.14** Using transverse waves to send signals along a vertical rope.



Continued

Hence, from Eq. (15.14), the wave speed is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{196\ \text{N}}{0.0250\ \text{kg/m}}} = 88.5\ \text{m/s}$$

(b) From Eq. (15.1), the wavelength is

$$\lambda = \frac{v}{f} = \frac{88.5\ \text{m/s}}{2.00\ \text{s}^{-1}} = 44.3\ \text{m}$$

There are $(80.0\ \text{m})/(44.3\ \text{m}) = 1.81$ wavelengths (that is, cycles of the wave) in the rope.

EVALUATE Because of the rope's weight, its tension is greater at the top than at the bottom. Hence both the wave speed and the wavelength increase as a wave travels up the rope. If you take account of this, can you verify that the wave speed at the top of the rope is 92.9 m/s?

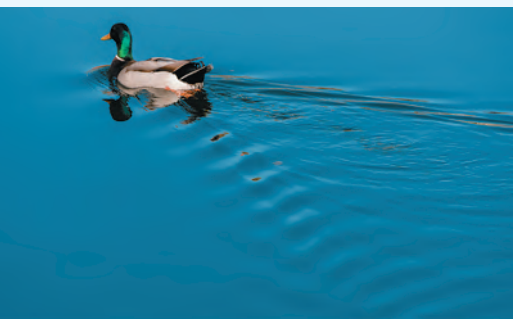
KEYCONCEPT The speed of a transverse wave on a string is determined by the tension in the string and the string's linear mass density (mass per unit length). For a given string, the wave speed is independent of frequency or wavelength.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.4 The six strings of a guitar are the same length and under nearly the same tension, but they have different thicknesses. On which string do waves travel the fastest? (i) The thickest string; (ii) the thinnest string; (iii) the wave speed is the same on all strings.

ANSWER

(ii) The relationship $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$ [Eq. (15.14)] says that the wave speed is greatest on the string with the smallest linear mass density. This is the thinnest string, which has the smallest amount of mass m and hence the smallest linear mass density $\mu = m/L$ (all strings are the same length).

BIO APPLICATION Surface Waves and the Swimming Speed of Ducks
When a duck swims, it necessarily produces waves on the surface of the water. The faster the duck swims, the larger the wave amplitude and the more power the duck must supply to produce these waves. The maximum power available from their leg muscles limits the maximum swimming speed of ducks to only about 0.7 m/s (2.5 km/h).



15.5 ENERGY IN WAVE MOTION

Every wave motion has *energy* associated with it. The energy we receive from sunlight and the destructive effects of ocean surf and earthquakes bear this out. To produce any of the wave motions we have discussed in this chapter, we have to apply a force to a portion of the wave medium; the point where the force is applied moves, so we do *work* on the system. As the wave propagates, each portion of the medium exerts a force and does work on the adjoining portion. In this way a wave can transport energy from one region of space to another.

As an example, let's look again at transverse waves on a string. How is energy transferred from one portion of the string to another? Picture a wave traveling from left to right (the positive x-direction) past a point a on the string (**Fig. 15.15a**). The string to the left of point a exerts a force on the string to the right of it, and vice versa. In Fig. 15.15b we show the components F_x and F_y of the force that the string to the left of a exerts on the string to the right of a. As in Figs. 15.11 and 15.13, the magnitude of the horizontal component F_x equals the tension F in the undisturbed string. Note that F_y/F is equal to the negative of the *slope* of the string at a, and this slope is also given by $\partial y/\partial x$. Putting these together, we have

$$F_y(x, t) = -F\frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial x} \tag{15.20}$$

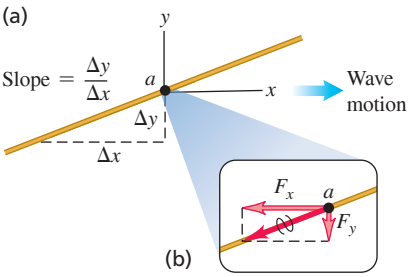
We need the negative sign because F_y is negative when the slope is positive (as in Fig. 15.15b). We write the vertical force as $F_y(x, t)$ as a reminder that its value may be different at different points along the string and at different times.

When point a moves in the y-direction, the force F_y does *work* on this point and therefore transfers energy into the part of the string to the right of a. The corresponding power P (rate of doing work) at the point a is the transverse force $F_y(x, t)$ at a times the transverse velocity $v_y(x, t) = \partial y(x, t)/\partial t$ of that point:

$$P(x, t) = F_y(x, t)v_y(x, t) = -F\frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial x}\frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial t} \tag{15.21}$$

This power is the *instantaneous* rate at which energy is transferred along the string at position x and time t. Note that energy is transferred only at points where the string has a nonzero slope ($\partial y/\partial x$ is nonzero), so that the tension force has a transverse component, and where the string has a nonzero transverse velocity ($\partial y/\partial t$ is nonzero) so that the transverse force can do work.

Figure **15.15** (a) Point a on a string carrying a wave from left to right. (b) The components of the force exerted on the part of the string to the right of point a by the part of the string to the left of point a.



Equation (15.21) is valid for *any* wave on a string, sinusoidal or not. For a sinusoidal wave with wave function given by Eq. (15.7), we have

$$\begin{aligned} y(x,t) &= A\cos(kx-\omega t) \\ \frac{\partial y(x,t)}{\partial x} &= -kA\sin(kx-\omega t) \\ \frac{\partial y(x,t)}{\partial t} &= \omega A\sin(kx-\omega t) \\ P(x,t) &= Fk\omega A^2\sin^2(kx-\omega t) \end{aligned} \tag{15.22}$$

By using the relationships $\omega = vk$ and $v^2 = F/\mu$, we can also express Eq. (15.22) in the alternative form

$$P(x,t) = \sqrt{\mu F}\,\omega^2 A^2\sin^2(kx-\omega t) \tag{15.23}$$

The $\sin^2$ function is never negative, so the instantaneous power in a sinusoidal wave is either positive (so that energy flows in the positive x-direction) or zero (at points where there is no energy transfer). Energy is never transferred in the direction opposite to the direction of wave propagation (**Fig. 15.16**).

The maximum value of the instantaneous power $P(x,t)$ occurs when the $\sin^2$ function has the value unity:

$$P_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\mu F}\,\omega^2 A^2 \tag{15.24}$$

The *average* value of the $\sin^2$ function, averaged over any whole number of cycles, is $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence we see from Eq. (15.23) that the *average* power P_{av} is just one-half the maximum instantaneous power P_{max} (Fig. 15.16):

Average power, sinusoidal wave on a string

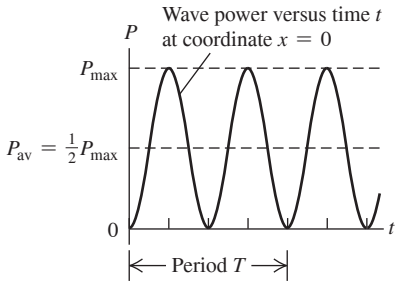
$$P_{\text{av}} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{\mu F}\,\omega^2 A^2 \tag{15.25}$$

Wave angular frequency; Wave amplitude; Mass per unit length; Tension in string

The average rate of energy transfer is proportional to the square of the amplitude and to the square of the frequency. This proportionality is a general result for mechanical waves of all types, including seismic waves (see the photo that opens this chapter). For a mechanical wave, the rate of energy transfer quadruples if the frequency is doubled (for the same amplitude) or if the amplitude is doubled (for the same frequency).

Electromagnetic waves turn out to be a bit different. While the average rate of energy transfer in an electromagnetic wave is proportional to the square of the amplitude, just as for mechanical waves, it is independent of the value of ω.

Figure **15.16** The instantaneous power $P(x,t)$ in a sinusoidal wave as given by Eq. (15.23), shown as a function of time at coordinate $x = 0$. The power is never negative, which means that energy never flows opposite to the direction of wave propagation.



EXAMPLE 15.4 Power in a wave

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

(a) In Example 15.2 (Section 15.3), at what maximum rate does Throcky put energy into the clothesline? That is, what is his maximum instantaneous power? The linear mass density of the clothesline is $\mu = 0.250$ kg/m, and Throcky applies tension $F = 36.0$ N. (b) What is his average power? (c) As Throcky tires, the amplitude decreases. What is the average power when the amplitude is 7.50 mm?

IDENTIFY and SET UP In part (a) our target variable is the *maximum instantaneous* power P_{max}, while in parts (b) and (c) it is the *average* power. For part (a) we'll use Eq. (15.24), and for parts (b) and (c) we'll use Eq. (15.25); Example 15.2 gives us all the needed quantities.

EXECUTE (a) From Eq. (15.24),

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\text{max}} &= \sqrt{\mu F}\,\omega^2 A^2 \\ &= \sqrt{(0.250\text{ kg/m})(36.0\text{ N})}(4.00\pi\text{ rad/s})^2(0.075\text{ m})^2 \\ &= 2.66\text{ W} \end{aligned}$$

(b) From Eqs. (15.24) and (15.25), the average power is one-half of the maximum instantaneous power, so

$$P_{\text{av}} = \tfrac{1}{2}P_{\text{max}} = \tfrac{1}{2}(2.66\text{ W}) = 1.33\text{ W}$$

Continued

(c) The new amplitude is $\frac{1}{10}$ of the value we used in parts (a) and (b). From Eq. (15.25), the average power is proportional to A^2, so the new average power is

$$P_{\text{av}} = \left(\tfrac{1}{10}\right)^2(1.33\ \text{W}) = 0.0133\ \text{W} = 13.3\ \text{mW}$$

EVALUATE Equation (15.23) shows that P_{max} occurs when $\sin^2(kx - \omega t) = 1$. At any given position x, this happens twice per period of the wave—once when the sine function is equal to $+1$, and once when it's equal to -1. The *minimum* instantaneous power is zero; this occurs when $\sin^2(kx - \omega t) = 0$, which also happens twice per period.

Can you confirm that the given values of μ and F give the wave speed mentioned in Example 15.2?

KEYCONCEPT The power (energy per second) carried by a wave on a string depends on the string tension and the linear mass density, as well as the frequency and amplitude of the wave. If the wave is sinusoidal, the average power equals one-half of the maximum instantaneous power.

Wave Intensity

Waves on a string carry energy in one dimension (along the direction of the string). But other types of waves, including sound waves in air and seismic waves within the earth, carry energy across all three dimensions of space. For waves of this kind, we define the **intensity** (denoted by I) to be *the time average rate at which energy is transported by the wave, per unit area,* across a surface perpendicular to the direction of propagation. Intensity I is average power per unit area and is usually measured in watts per square meter (W/m^2).

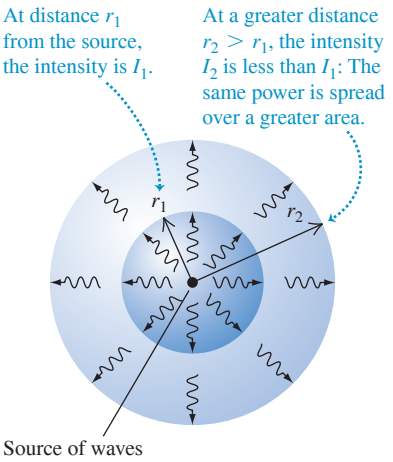
If waves spread out equally in all directions from a source, the intensity at a distance r from the source is inversely proportional to r^2 (**Fig. 15.17**). This result, called the *inverse-square law for intensity,* follows directly from energy conservation. If the power output of the source is P, then the average intensity I_1 through a sphere with radius r_1 and surface area $4\pi r_1^2$ is

$$I_1 = \frac{P}{4\pi r_1^2}$$

A similar expression gives the average intensity I_2 through a sphere with a different radius r_2. If no energy is absorbed between the two spheres, the power P must be the same for both, and

$$4\pi r_1^2 I_1 = 4\pi r_2^2 I_2$$

Figure **15.17** The greater the distance from a wave source, the greater the area over which the wave power is distributed and the smaller the wave intensity.



Inverse-square law for intensity:
Intensity is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from source.

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{r_2^2}{r_1^2} \qquad (15.26)$$

(I_1: Intensity at point 1; I_2: Intensity at point 2; r_2: Distance from source to point 2; r_1: Distance from source to point 1)

EXAMPLE 15.5 The inverse-square law

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A siren on a tall pole radiates sound waves uniformly in all directions. At a distance of 15.0 m from the siren, the sound intensity is $0.250\ \text{W/m}^2$. At what distance is the intensity $0.010\ \text{W/m}^2$?

IDENTIFY and SET UP Because sound is radiated uniformly in all directions, we can use the inverse-square law, Eq. (15.26). At $r_1 = 15.0$ m the intensity is $I_1 = 0.250\ \text{W/m}^2$, and the target variable is the distance r_2 at which the intensity is $I_2 = 0.010\ \text{W/m}^2$.

EXECUTE We solve Eq. (15.26) for r_2:

$$r_2 = r_1\sqrt{\frac{I_1}{I_2}} = (15.0\ \text{m})\sqrt{\frac{0.250\ \text{W/m}^2}{0.010\ \text{W/m}^2}} = 75.0\ \text{m}$$

EVALUATE As a check on our answer, note that r_2 is five times greater than r_1. By the inverse-square law, the intensity I_2 should be $1/5^2 = 1/25$ as great as I_1, and indeed it is.

By using the inverse-square law, we've assumed that the sound waves travel in straight lines away from the siren. A more realistic solution, which is beyond our scope, would account for the reflection of sound waves from the ground.

KEYCONCEPT If waves emitted from a source spread out equally in all directions, the wave intensity is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.5 Four identical strings each carry a sinusoidal wave of frequency 10 Hz. The string tension and wave amplitude are different for different strings. Rank the following strings in order from highest to lowest value of the average wave power: (i) tension 10 N, amplitude 1.0 mm; (ii) tension 40 N, amplitude 1.0 mm; (iii) tension 10 N, amplitude 4.0 mm; (iv) tension 20 N, amplitude 2.0 mm.

ANSWER

(iii), (iv), (ii), (i) Equation (15.25) says that the average power in a sinusoidal wave on a string is $P_{\text{av}} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\mu F}\,\omega^2 A^2$. All four strings are identical, so all have the same mass, length, and linear mass density μ. The frequency f is the same for each wave, as is the angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi f$. Hence the average wave power for each string is proportional to the square root of the string tension F and the square of the amplitude A. Compared to string (i), the average power in each string is (ii) $\sqrt{4} = 2$ times greater; (iii) $4^2 = 16$ times greater; and (iv) $\sqrt{2}(2)^2 = 4\sqrt{2}$ times greater.

15.6 WAVE INTERFERENCE, BOUNDARY CONDITIONS, AND SUPERPOSITION

Up to this point we've been discussing waves that propagate continuously in the same direction. But when a wave strikes the boundaries of its medium, all or part of the wave is *reflected*. When you yell at a building wall or a cliff face some distance away, the sound wave is reflected from the rigid surface and you hear an echo. When you flip the end of a rope whose far end is tied to a rigid support, a pulse travels the length of the rope and is reflected back to you. In both cases, the initial and reflected waves overlap in the same region of the medium. We use the term **interference** to refer to what happens when two or more waves pass through the same region at the same time.

As a simple example of wave reflections and the role of the boundary of a wave medium, let's look again at transverse waves on a stretched string. What happens when a wave pulse or a sinusoidal wave arrives at the *end* of the string?

If the end is fastened to a rigid support as in **Fig. 15.18**, it is a *fixed* end that cannot move. The arriving wave exerts a force on the support (drawing 4 in Fig. 15.18); the reaction to this force, exerted by the support on the string, "kicks back" on the string and sets up a reflected pulse or wave traveling in the reverse direction (drawing 7). The reflected pulse moves in the opposite direction from the initial, or *incident,* pulse, and its displacement is also opposite.

The opposite situation from an end that is held stationary is a *free* end, one that is perfectly free to move in the direction perpendicular to the length of the string. For example, the string might be tied to a light ring that slides on a frictionless rod perpendicular to the string, as in **Fig. 15.19**. The ring and rod maintain the tension but exert no transverse force. When a wave arrives at this free end, the ring slides along the rod. The ring reaches a maximum displacement, and both it and the string come momentarily to rest, as in drawing 4 in Fig. 15.19. But the string is now stretched, giving increased tension, so the free end of the string is pulled back down, and again a reflected pulse is produced (drawing 7). As for a fixed end, the reflected pulse moves in the opposite direction from the initial pulse, but now the direction of the displacement is the same as for the initial pulse. The conditions at the end of the string, such as a rigid support or the complete absence of transverse force, are called **boundary conditions.**

The formation of the reflected pulse is similar to the overlap of two pulses traveling in opposite directions. **Figure 15.20** (next page) shows two pulses with the same shape, one inverted with respect to the other, traveling in opposite directions. As the pulses overlap and pass each other, the total displacement of the string is the *algebraic sum* of the displacements at that point in the individual pulses. Because these two pulses have the same shape, the total displacement at point O in the middle of the figure is zero at all times. Thus the motion of the left half of the string would be the same if we cut the string at point O, threw away the right side, and held the end at O fixed. The two pulses on the left side then correspond to the incident and reflected pulses, combining so that the total displacement at O is *always* zero. For this to occur, the reflected pulse must be inverted relative to the incident pulse, just as for reflection from the fixed end in Fig. 15.18.

Figure **15.18** Reflection of a wave pulse at a fixed end of a string. Time increases from top to bottom.

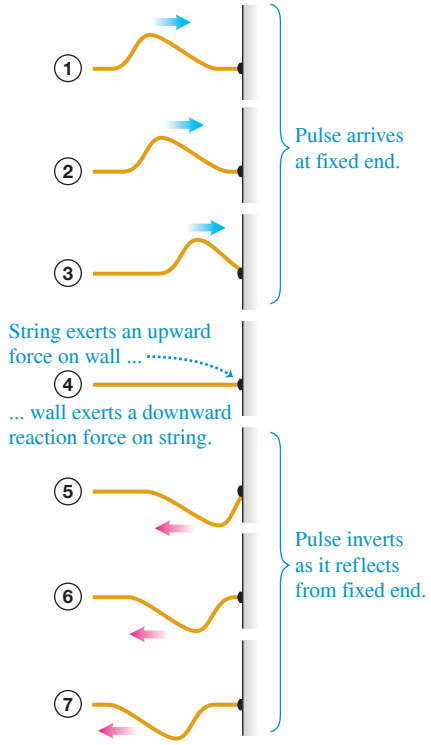


Figure **15.19** Reflection of a wave pulse at a free end of a string. Time increases from top to bottom. (Compare to Fig. 15.18.)

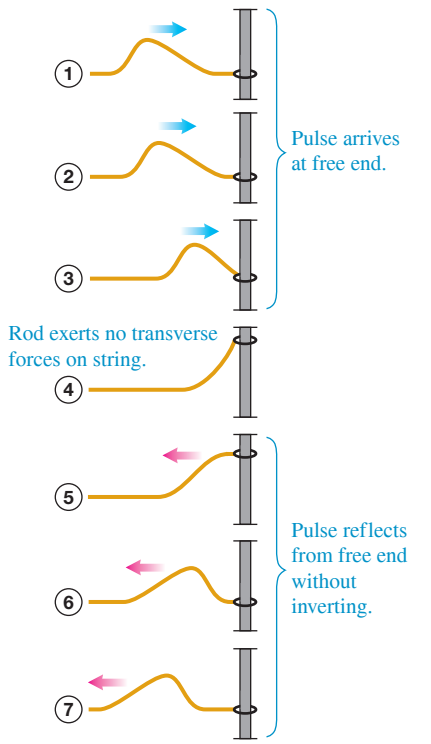


Figure 15.20 Overlap of two wave pulses—one right side up, one inverted—traveling in opposite directions. Time increases from top to bottom.

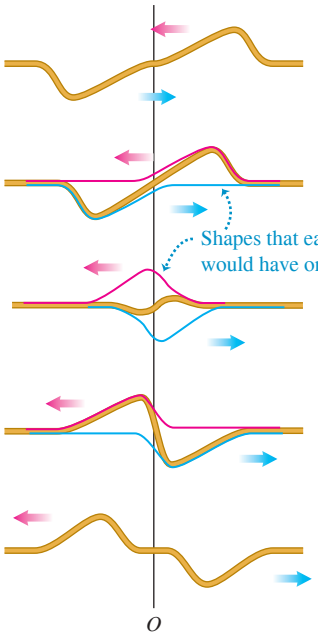


Figure 15.21 Overlap of two wave pulses—both right side up—traveling in opposite directions. Time increases from top to bottom. Compare to Fig. 15.20.

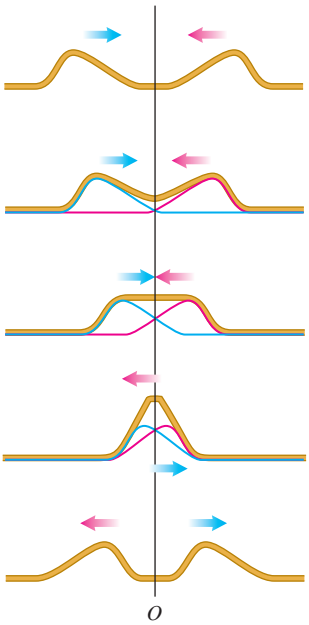


Figure 15.21 shows two pulses with the same shape, traveling in opposite directions but *not* inverted relative to each other. The displacement at point O in the middle of the figure is not zero, but the slope of the string at this point is always zero. According to Eq. (15.20), this corresponds to the absence of any transverse force at this point. In this case the motion of the left half of the string would be the same as if we cut the string at point O and attached the end to a frictionless sliding ring (Fig. 15.19) that maintains tension without exerting any transverse force. In other words, this situation corresponds to reflection of a pulse at a free end of a string at point O. In this case the reflected pulse is *not* inverted.

The Principle of Superposition

Combining the displacements of the separate pulses at each point to obtain the actual displacement is an example of the **principle of superposition:** When two waves overlap, the actual displacement of any point on the string at any time is obtained by adding the displacement the point would have if only the first wave were present and the displacement it would have if only the second wave were present. In other words, the wave function $y(x, t)$ for the resulting motion is obtained by *adding* the two wave functions for the two separate waves:

Principle of superposition:

Wave functions of two overlapping waves

$$y(x, t) = y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t) \tag{15.27}$$

Wave function of combined wave = sum of individual wave functions

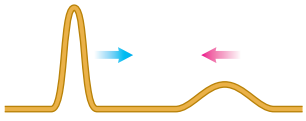
Mathematically, this additive property of wave functions follows from the form of the wave equation, Eq. (15.12) or (15.19), which every physically possible wave function must satisfy. Specifically, the wave equation is *linear;* that is, it contains the function $y(x, t)$ only to the first power (there are no terms involving $y(x, t)^2$, $y(x, t)^{1/2}$, etc.). As a result, if any two functions $y_1(x, t)$ and $y_2(x, t)$ satisfy the wave equation separately, their sum $y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t)$ also satisfies it and is therefore a physically possible motion. Because this principle depends on the linearity of the wave equation and the corresponding linear-combination property of its solutions, it is also called the *principle of linear superposition*. For some physical systems, such as a medium that does not obey Hooke's law, the wave equation is *not* linear; this principle does not hold for such systems.

The principle of superposition is of central importance in all types of waves. When a friend talks to you while you are listening to music, you can distinguish the speech and the music from each other. This is precisely because the total sound wave reaching your ears is the algebraic sum of the wave produced by your friend's voice and the wave produced by the speakers of your stereo. If two sound waves did *not* combine in this simple linear way, the sound you would hear in this situation would be a hopeless jumble. Superposition also applies to electromagnetic waves (such as light).

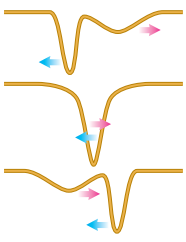
TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.6

Figure 15.22 shows two wave pulses with different shapes traveling in different directions along a string. Make a series of sketches like Fig. 15.21 showing the shape of the string as the two pulses approach, overlap, and then pass each other.

Figure 15.22 Two wave pulses with different shapes.



ANSWER



15.7 STANDING WAVES ON A STRING

We've looked at the reflection of a wave *pulse* on a string when it arrives at a boundary point (either a fixed end or a free end). Now let's consider what happens when a *sinusoidal* wave on a string is reflected by a fixed end. We'll again approach the problem by considering the superposition of two waves propagating through the string, one representing the incident wave and the other representing the wave reflected at the fixed end.

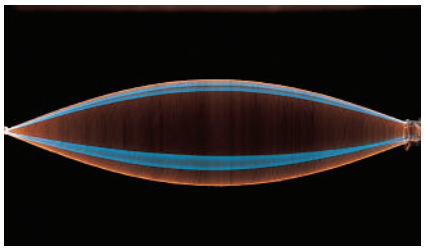
Figure 15.23 shows a string that is fixed at its left end. Its right end is moved up and down in simple harmonic motion to produce a wave that travels to the left; the wave reflected from the fixed end travels to the right. The resulting motion when the two waves combine no longer looks like two waves traveling in opposite directions. The string appears to be subdivided into segments, as in the time-exposure photographs of Figs. 15.23a, 15.23b, 15.23c, and 15.23d. Figure 15.23e shows two instantaneous shapes of the string in Fig. 15.23b. Let's compare this behavior with the waves we studied in Sections 15.1 through 15.5. In a wave that travels along the string, the amplitude is constant and the wave pattern moves with a speed equal to the wave speed. Here, instead, the wave pattern remains in the same position along the string and its amplitude fluctuates. There are particular points called **nodes** (labeled N in Fig. 15.23e) that never move at all. Midway between the nodes are points called **antinodes** (labeled A in Fig. 15.23e) where the amplitude of motion is greatest. Because the wave pattern doesn't appear to be moving in either direction along the string, it is called a **standing wave.** (To emphasize the difference, a wave that *does* move along the string is called a **traveling wave.**)

The principle of superposition explains how the incident and reflected waves combine to form a standing wave. In **Fig. 15.24** (next page) the red curves show a wave traveling to the left. The blue curves show a wave traveling to the right with the same propagation speed, wavelength, and amplitude. The waves are shown at nine instants, $\frac{1}{16}$ of a period apart. At each point along the string, we add the displacements (the values of y) for the two separate waves; the result is the total wave on the string, shown in gold.

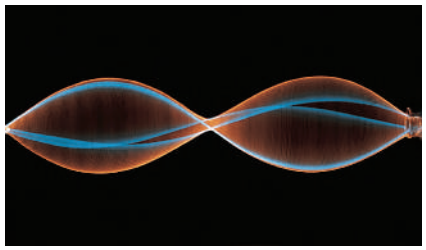
At certain instants, such as $t = \frac{1}{4}T$, the two wave patterns are exactly in phase with each other, and the shape of the string is a sine curve with twice the amplitude of either

Figure 15.23 (a)–(d) Time exposures of standing waves in a stretched string. From (a) to (d), the frequency of oscillation of the right-hand end increases and the wavelength of the standing wave decreases. (e) The extremes of the motion of the standing wave in part (b), with nodes at the center and at the ends. The right-hand end of the string moves very little compared to the antinodes and so is essentially a node.

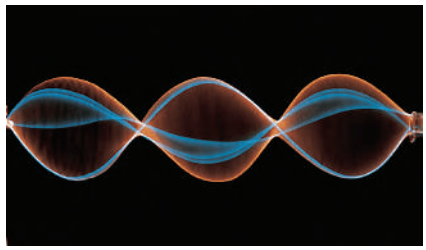
(a) String is one-half wavelength long.



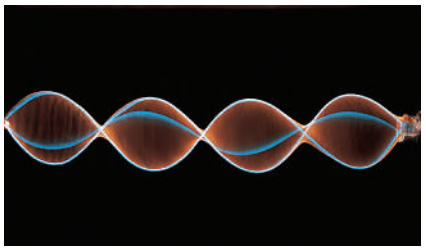
(b) String is one wavelength long.



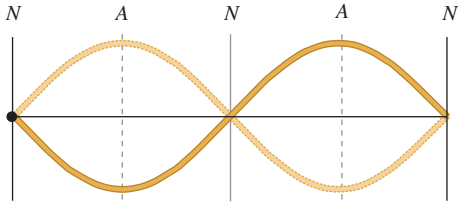
(c) String is one and a half wavelengths long.



(d) String is two wavelengths long.



(e) The shape of the string in (b) at two different instants



N = **nodes:** points at which the string never moves

A = **antinodes:** points at which the amplitude of string motion is greatest

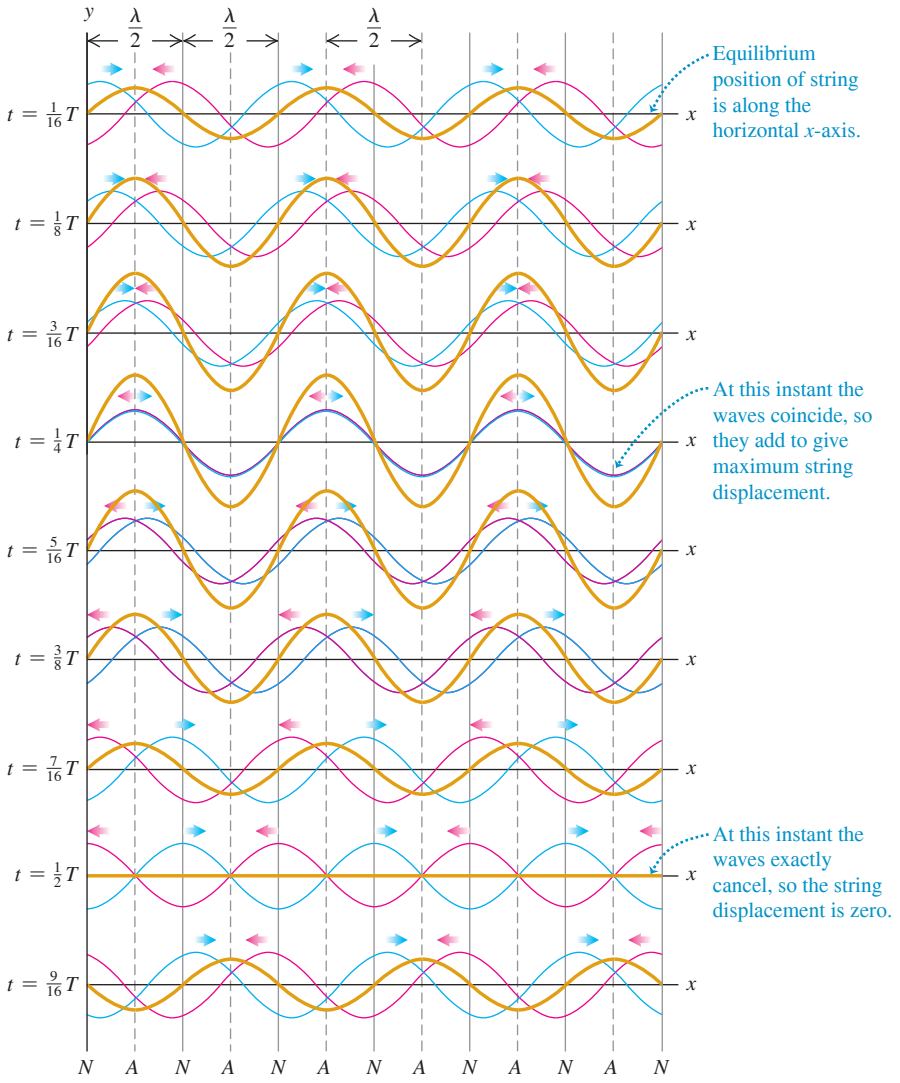


Figure **15.24** Formation of a standing wave. A wave traveling to the left (red curves) combines with a wave traveling to the right (blue curves) to form a standing wave (gold curves).

individual wave. At other instants, such as $t = \frac{1}{2}T$, the two waves are exactly out of phase with each other, and the total wave at that instant is zero. The resultant displacement is *always* zero at those places marked *N* at the bottom of Fig. 15.24. These are the *nodes.* At a node the displacements of the two waves in red and blue are always equal and opposite and cancel each other out. This cancellation is called **destructive interference.** Midway between the nodes are the points of *greatest* amplitude, or the *antinodes,* marked *A*. At the antinodes the displacements of the two waves in red and blue are always identical, giving a large resultant displacement; this phenomenon is called **constructive interference.** We can see from the figure that the distance between successive nodes or between successive antinodes is one half-wavelength, or $\lambda/2$.

We can derive a wave function for the standing wave of Fig. 15.24 by adding the wave functions $y_1(x, t)$ and $y_2(x, t)$ for two waves with equal amplitude, period, and wavelength traveling in opposite directions. Here $y_1(x, t)$ (the red curves in Fig. 15.24) represents an incoming, or *incident,* wave traveling to the left along the $+x$-axis, arriving at the point $x = 0$ and being reflected; $y_2(x, t)$ (the blue curves in Fig. 15.24) represents the *reflected* wave traveling to the right from $x = 0$. We noted in Section 15.6 that the wave reflected from a fixed end of a string is inverted, so we give a negative sign to one of the waves:

$$y_1(x, t) = -A\cos(kx + \omega t) \quad \text{(incident wave traveling to the left)}$$

$$y_2(x, t) = A\cos(kx - \omega t) \quad \text{(reflected wave traveling to the right)}$$

The change in sign corresponds to a shift in *phase* of 180° or π radians. At $x = 0$ the motion from the reflected wave is $A\cos\omega t$ and the motion from the incident wave is $-A\cos\omega t$, which we can also write as $A\cos(\omega t + \pi)$. From Eq. (15.27), the wave function for the standing wave is the sum of the individual wave functions:

$$y(x, t) = y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t) = A[-\cos(kx + \omega t) + \cos(kx - \omega t)]$$

We can rewrite each of the cosine terms by using the identities for the cosine of the sum and difference of two angles: $\cos(a \pm b) = \cos a\cos b \mp \sin a\sin b$. Applying these and combining terms, we obtain the wave function for the standing wave:

$$y(x, t) = y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t) = (2A\sin kx)\sin\omega t \qquad \text{or}$$

Standing wave on a string, fixed end at $x = 0$:

Wave function; Standing-wave amplitude

$$y(x, t) = (A_{SW}\sin kx)\sin\omega t \qquad (15.28)$$

Time; Wave number; Position; Angular frequency

The standing-wave amplitude A_{SW} is twice the amplitude A of either of the original traveling waves: $A_{SW} = 2A$.

Equation (15.28) has two factors: a function of x and a function of t. The factor $A_{SW}\sin kx$ shows that at each instant the shape of the string is a sine curve. But unlike a wave traveling along a string, the wave shape stays in the same position, oscillating up and down as described by the $\sin\omega t$ factor. This behavior is shown by the gold curves in Fig. 15.24. Each point in the string still undergoes simple harmonic motion, but all the points between any successive pair of nodes oscillate *in phase*. This is in contrast to the phase differences between oscillations of adjacent points that we see with a traveling wave.

We can use Eq. (15.28) to find the positions of the nodes; these are the points for which $\sin kx = 0$, so the displacement is *always* zero. This occurs when $kx = 0, \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi, \ldots$, or, using $k = 2\pi/\lambda$,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 0, \frac{\pi}{k}, \frac{2\pi}{k}, \frac{3\pi}{k}, \ldots \\ &= 0, \frac{\lambda}{2}, \frac{2\lambda}{2}, \frac{3\lambda}{2}, \ldots \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{array}{l}\text{(nodes of a standing wave on}\\ \text{a string, fixed end at } x = 0)\end{array} \qquad (15.29)$$

In particular, there is a node at $x = 0$, as there should be, since this point is a fixed end of the string.

A standing wave, unlike a traveling wave, *does not* transfer energy from one end to the other. The two waves that form it would individually carry equal amounts of power in opposite directions. There is a local flow of energy from each node to the adjacent antinodes and back, but the *average* rate of energy transfer is zero at every point. If you use the wave function of Eq. (15.28) to evaluate the wave power given by Eq. (15.21), you will find that the average power is zero.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 15.2 Standing Waves

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* Identify the target variables. Then determine whether the problem is purely *kinematic* (involving only such quantities as wave speed v, wavelength λ, and frequency f) or whether *dynamic* properties of the medium (such as F and μ for transverse waves on a string) are also involved.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Sketch the shape of the standing wave at a particular instant. This will help you visualize the nodes (label them N) and antinodes (A). The distance between adjacent nodes (or antinodes) is $\lambda/2$; the distance between a node and the adjacent antinode is $\lambda/4$.
2. Choose the equations you'll use. The wave function for the standing wave, like Eq. (15.28), is often useful.
3. You can determine the wave speed if you know λ and f (or, equivalently, $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ and $\omega = 2\pi f$) or if you know the relevant properties of the medium (for a string, F and μ).

EXECUTE *the solution:* Solve for the target variables. Once you've found the wave function, you can find the displacement y at any point x and at any time t. You can find the velocity and acceleration of a particle in the medium by taking the first and second partial derivatives of y with respect to time.

EVALUATE *your answer:* Compare your numerical answers with your sketch. Check that the wave function satisfies the boundary conditions (for example, the displacement should be zero at a fixed end).

EXAMPLE 15.6 Standing waves on a guitar string

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A guitar string lies along the x-axis when in equilibrium. The end of the string at $x = 0$ (the bridge of the guitar) is fixed. A sinusoidal wave with amplitude $A = 0.750\text{ mm} = 7.50 \times 10^{-4}\text{ m}$ and frequency $f = 440\text{ Hz}$, corresponding to the red curves in Fig. 15.24, travels along the string in the $-x$-direction at 143 m/s. It is reflected from the fixed end, and the superposition of the incident and reflected waves forms a standing wave. (a) Find the equation giving the displacement of a point on the string as a function of position and time. (b) Locate the nodes. (c) Find the amplitude of the standing wave and the maximum transverse velocity and acceleration.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This is a *kinematics* problem (see Problem-Solving Strategy 15.1 in Section 15.3). The target variables are: in part (a), the wave function of the standing wave; in part (b), the locations of the nodes; and in part (c), the maximum displacement y, transverse velocity v_y, and transverse acceleration a_y. Since there is a fixed end at $x = 0$, we can use Eqs. (15.28) and (15.29) to describe this standing wave. We'll need the relationships $\omega = 2\pi f$, $v = \omega/k$, and $v = \lambda f$.

EXECUTE (a) The standing-wave amplitude is $A_{SW} = 2A = 1.50 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}$ (twice the amplitude of either the incident or reflected wave). The angular frequency and wave number are

$$\omega = 2\pi f = (2\pi\text{ rad})(440\text{ s}^{-1}) = 2760\text{ rad/s}$$

$$k = \frac{\omega}{v} = \frac{2760\text{ rad/s}}{143\text{ m/s}} = 19.3\text{ rad/m}$$

Equation (15.28) then gives

$$\begin{aligned} y(x,t) &= (A_{SW}\sin kx)\sin\omega t \\ &= [(1.50 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m})\sin(19.3\text{ rad/m})x]\sin(2760\text{ rad/s})t \end{aligned}$$

(b) From Eq. (15.29), the positions of the nodes are $x = 0$, $\lambda/2$, λ, $3\lambda/2$, ... The wavelength is $\lambda = v/f = (143\text{ m/s})/(440\text{ Hz}) = 0.325\text{ m}$, so the nodes are at $x = 0$, 0.163 m, 0.325 m, 0.488 m, ...

(c) From the expression for $y(x, t)$ in part (a), the maximum displacement from equilibrium is $A_{SW} = 1.50 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m} = 1.50\text{ mm}$. This occurs at the *antinodes,* which are midway between adjacent nodes (that is, at $x = 0.081$ m, 0.244 m, 0.406 m, . . .).

For a particle on the string at any point x, the transverse (y-) velocity is

$$\begin{aligned} v_y(x,t) &= \frac{\partial y(x,t)}{\partial t} \\ &= [(1.50 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m})\sin(19.3\text{ rad/m})x] \\ &\quad \times [(2760\text{ rad/s})\cos(2760\text{ rad/s})t] \\ &= [(4.15\text{ m/s})\sin(19.3\text{ rad/m})x]\cos(2760\text{ rad/s})t \end{aligned}$$

At an antinode, $\sin(19.3\text{ rad/m})x = \pm 1$ and the transverse velocity varies between $+4.15$ m/s and -4.15 m/s. As is always the case in SHM, the maximum velocity occurs when the particle is passing through the equilibrium position ($y = 0$).

The transverse acceleration $a_y(x, t)$ is the *second* partial derivative of $y(x, t)$ with respect to time. You can show that

$$\begin{aligned} a_y(x,t) &= \frac{\partial v_y(x,t)}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 y(x,t)}{\partial t^2} \\ &= [(-1.15 \times 10^4\text{ m/s}^2)\sin(19.3\text{ rad/m})x]\sin(2760\text{ rad/s})t \end{aligned}$$

At the antinodes, the transverse acceleration varies between $+1.15 \times 10^4\text{ m/s}^2$ and $-1.15 \times 10^4\text{ m/s}^2$.

EVALUATE The maximum transverse velocity at an antinode is quite respectable (about 15 km/h). But the maximum transverse acceleration is tremendous, 1170 times the acceleration due to gravity! Guitar strings are actually fixed at *both* ends; we'll see the consequences of this in the next section.

KEYCONCEPT A sinusoidal standing wave is the superposition of two sinusoidal waves of the same amplitude and frequency traveling in opposite directions. The wave nodes, which are spaced one half-wavelength apart, are points where the displacement in the standing wave is always zero.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.7 Suppose the frequency of the standing wave in Example 15.6 were doubled from 440 Hz to 880 Hz. Would all of the nodes for $f = 440$ Hz also be nodes for $f = 880$ Hz? If so, would there be additional nodes for $f = 880$ Hz? If not, which nodes are absent for $f = 880$ Hz?

ANSWER **Yes, yes** Doubling the frequency makes the wavelength half as large. Hence the spacing between nodes (equal to $\lambda/2$) is also half as large. There are nodes at all of the previous positions, but there is also a new node between every pair of old nodes.

15.8 NORMAL MODES OF A STRING

When we described standing waves on a string rigidly held at one end, as in Fig. 15.23, we made no assumptions about the length of the string or about what was happening at the other end. Let's now consider a string of a definite length L, rigidly held at *both* ends. Such strings are found in many musical instruments, including pianos, violins, and guitars. When a guitar string is plucked, a wave is produced in the string; this wave is reflected and re-reflected from the ends of the string, making a standing wave. This standing wave on the string in turn produces a sound wave in the air, with a frequency determined by the properties of the string. This is what makes stringed instruments so useful in making music.

To understand a standing wave on a string fixed at both ends, we first note that the standing wave must have a node at *both* ends of the string. We saw in the preceding section that adjacent nodes are one half-wavelength $(\lambda/2)$ apart, so the length of the string must be $\lambda/2$, or $2(\lambda/2)$, or $3(\lambda/2)$, or in general some integer number of half-wavelengths:

$$L = n\frac{\lambda}{2} \quad (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \quad \text{(string fixed at both ends)} \tag{15.30}$$

That is, if a string with length L is fixed at both ends, a standing wave can exist only if its wavelength satisfies Eq. (15.30).

Solving this equation for λ and labeling the possible values of λ as λ_n, we find

$$\lambda_n = \frac{2L}{n} \quad (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \quad \text{(string fixed at both ends)} \tag{15.31}$$

Waves can exist on the string if the wavelength is *not* equal to one of these values, but there cannot be a steady wave pattern with nodes and antinodes, and the total wave cannot be a standing wave. Equation (15.31) is illustrated by the standing waves shown in Figs. 15.23a, 15.23b, 15.23c, and 15.23d; these represent $n = 1$, 2, 3, and 4, respectively.

Corresponding to the series of possible standing-wave wavelengths λ_n is a series of possible standing-wave frequencies f_n, each related to its corresponding wavelength by $f_n = v/\lambda_n$. The smallest frequency f_1 corresponds to the largest wavelength (the $n = 1$ case), $\lambda_1 = 2L$:

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{2L} \quad \text{(string fixed at both ends)} \tag{15.32}$$

This is called the **fundamental frequency.** The other standing-wave frequencies are $f_2 = 2v/2L$, $f_3 = 3v/2L$, and so on. These are all integer multiples of f_1, such as $2f_1$, $3f_1$, $4f_1$, and so on. We can express *all* the frequencies as

Standing-wave frequencies, string fixed at both ends:

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{2L} = nf_1 \quad (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \tag{15.33}$$

(Wave speed; Length of string; Fundamental frequency $= v/2L$)

These frequencies are called **harmonics,** and the series is called a **harmonic series.** Musicians sometimes call f_2, f_3, and so on **overtones;** f_2 is the second harmonic or the first overtone, f_3 is the third harmonic or the second overtone, and so on. The first harmonic is the same as the fundamental frequency (**Fig. 15.25**).

For a string with fixed ends at $x = 0$ and $x = L$, the wave function $y(x, t)$ of the nth standing wave is given by Eq. (15.28) (which satisfies the condition that there is a node at $x = 0$), with $\omega = \omega_n = 2\pi f_n$ and $k = k_n = 2\pi/\lambda_n$:

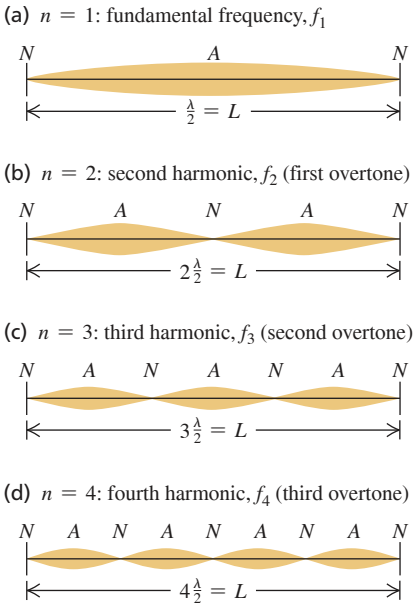
$$y_n(x, t) = A_{SW} \sin k_n x \sin \omega_n t \tag{15.34}$$

You can confirm that this wave function has nodes at both $x = 0$ and $x = L$.

A **normal mode** of an oscillating system is a motion in which all particles of the system move sinusoidally with the same frequency. For a system made up of a string of length L fixed at both ends, each of the frequencies given by Eq. (15.33) corresponds to a possible normal-mode pattern. **Figure 15.26** shows the first four normal-mode patterns and their associated frequencies and wavelengths; these correspond to Eq. (15.34) with $n = 1$, 2, 3, and 4. By contrast, a harmonic oscillator, which has only one oscillating particle, has only one normal mode and one characteristic frequency. The string fixed at both ends has infinitely many normal modes $(n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots)$ because it is made up of a very large (effectively infinite) number of particles. More complicated oscillating systems also have infinite numbers of normal modes, though with more complex normal-mode patterns (**Fig. 15.27**, next page).

Figure **15.25** Each string of a violin naturally oscillates at its harmonic frequencies, producing sound waves in the air with the same frequencies.

Figure **15.26** The first four normal modes of a string fixed at both ends. (Compare these to the photographs in Fig. 15.23.)



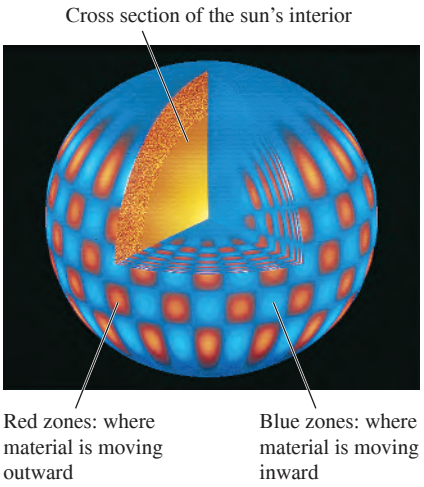


Figure **15.27** Astronomers have discovered that the sun oscillates in several different normal modes. This computer simulation shows one such mode.

Complex Standing Waves

If we could displace a string so that its shape is the same as one of the normal-mode patterns and then release it, it would vibrate with the frequency of that mode. Such a vibrating string would displace the surrounding air with the same frequency, producing a traveling sinusoidal sound wave that your ears would perceive as a pure tone. But when a string is struck (as in a piano) or plucked (as is done to guitar strings), the shape of the displaced string is *not* one of the patterns in Fig. 15.26. The motion is therefore a combination or *superposition* of many normal modes. Several simple harmonic motions of different frequencies are present simultaneously, and the displacement of any point on the string is the superposition of the displacements associated with the individual modes. The sound produced by the vibrating string is likewise a superposition of traveling sinusoidal sound waves, which you perceive as a rich, complex tone with the fundamental frequency f_1. The standing wave on the string and the traveling sound wave in the air have similar **harmonic content** (the extent to which frequencies higher than the fundamental are present). The harmonic content depends on how the string is initially set into motion. If you pluck the strings of an acoustic guitar in the normal location over the sound hole, the sound that you hear has a different harmonic content than if you pluck the strings next to the fixed end on the guitar body.

It is possible to represent every possible motion of the string as some superposition of normal-mode motions. Finding this representation for a given vibration pattern is called *harmonic analysis*. The sum of sinusoidal functions that represents a complex wave is called a *Fourier series*. **Figure 15.28** shows how a standing wave that is produced by plucking a guitar string of length L at a point $L/4$ from one end can be represented as a combination of sinusoidal functions.

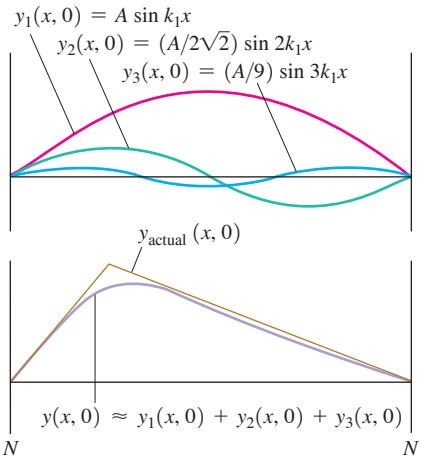


Figure **15.28** When a guitar string is plucked (pulled into a triangular shape) and released, a standing wave results. The standing wave is well represented (except at the sharp maximum point) by the sum of just three sinusoidal functions. Including additional sinusoidal functions further improves the representation.

Standing Waves and String Instruments

From Eq. (15.32), the fundamental frequency of a vibrating string is $f_1 = v/2L$. The speed v of waves on the string is determined by Eq. (15.14), $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$. Combining these equations, we find

Fundamental frequency, string fixed at both ends

$$f_1 = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}} \qquad (15.35)$$

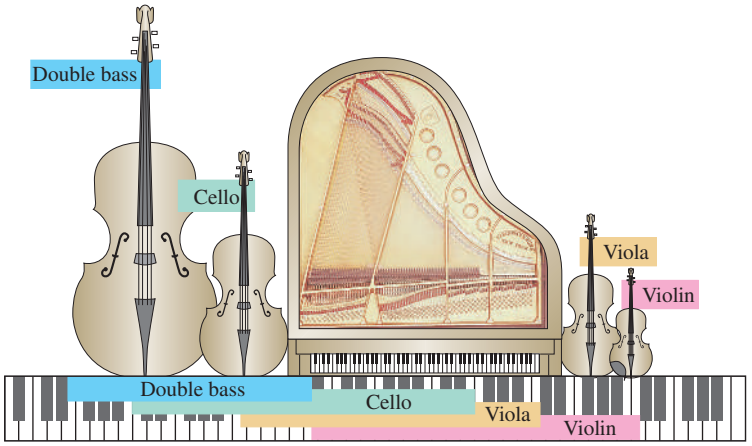
(F: Tension in string; μ: Mass per unit length; L: Length of string)

This is also the fundamental frequency of the sound wave created in the surrounding air by the vibrating string. The inverse dependence of frequency on length L is

illustrated by the long strings of the bass (low-frequency) section of the piano or the double bass compared with the shorter strings of the treble section of the piano or the violin (**Fig. 15.29**). The pitch of a violin or guitar is usually varied by pressing a string against the fingerboard with the fingers to change the length L of the vibrating portion of the string. Increasing the tension F increases the wave speed v and thus increases the frequency (and the pitch). All string instruments are "tuned" to the correct frequencies by varying the tension; you tighten the string to raise the pitch. Finally, increasing the mass per unit length μ decreases the wave speed and thus the frequency. The lower notes on a steel guitar are produced by thicker strings, and one reason for winding the bass strings of a piano with wire is to obtain the desired low frequency from a relatively short string.

Wind instruments such as saxophones and trombones also have normal modes. As for stringed instruments, the frequencies of these normal modes determine the pitch of the musical tones that these instruments produce. We'll discuss these instruments and many other aspects of sound in Chapter 16.

Figure **15.29** Comparing the range of a concert grand piano to the ranges of a double bass, a cello, a viola, and a violin. In all cases, longer strings produce bass notes and shorter strings produce treble notes.



EXAMPLE 15.7 A giant double bass

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

In an attempt to get your name in *Guinness World Records,* you build a double bass with strings of length 5.00 m between fixed points. One string, with linear mass density 40.0 g/m, is tuned to a 20.0 Hz fundamental frequency (the lowest frequency that the human ear can hear). Calculate (a) the tension of this string, (b) the frequency and wavelength on the string of the second harmonic, and (c) the frequency and wavelength on the string of the second overtone.

IDENTIFY and SET UP In part (a) the target variable is the string tension F; we'll use Eq. (15.35), which relates F to the known values $f_1 = 20.0$ Hz, $L = 5.00$ m, and $\mu = 40.0$ g/m. In parts (b) and (c) the target variables are the frequency and wavelength of a given harmonic and a given overtone. We determine these from the given length of the string and the fundamental frequency, using Eqs. (15.31) and (15.33).

EXECUTE (a) We solve Eq. (15.35) for F:

$$F = 4\mu L^2 f_1^2 = 4(40.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg/m})(5.00\ \text{m})^2(20.0\ \text{s}^{-1})^2$$
$$= 1600\ \text{N}$$

(b) From Eqs. (15.33) and (15.31), the frequency and wavelength of the second harmonic ($n = 2$) are

$$f_2 = 2f_1 = 2(20.0\ \text{Hz}) = 40.0\ \text{Hz}$$
$$\lambda_2 = \frac{2L}{2} = \frac{2(5.00\ \text{m})}{2} = 5.00\ \text{m}$$

(c) The second overtone is the "second tone over" (above) the fundamental—that is, $n = 3$. Its frequency and wavelength are

$$f_3 = 3f_1 = 3(20.0\ \text{Hz}) = 60.0\ \text{Hz}$$
$$\lambda_3 = \frac{2L}{3} = \frac{2(5.00\ \text{m})}{3} = 3.33\ \text{m}$$

EVALUATE The string tension in a real double bass is typically a few hundred newtons; the tension in part (a) is a bit higher than that. The wavelengths in parts (b) and (c) are equal to the length of the string and two-thirds the length of the string, respectively, which agrees with the drawings of standing waves in Fig. 15.26.

KEYCONCEPT A string with its ends fixed vibrates in a type of standing wave called a normal mode when all of its particles move sinusoidally with the same frequency. The frequencies of oscillation of the normal modes are integer multiples of a minimum normal-mode frequency, called the fundamental frequency.

EXAMPLE 15.8 From waves on a string to sound waves in air

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

What are the frequency and wavelength of the sound waves produced in the air when the string in Example 15.7 is vibrating at its fundamental frequency? The speed of sound in air at 20°C is 344 m/s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variables are the frequency and wavelength for the *sound wave* produced by the double bass string. The frequency of the sound wave is the same as the fundamental frequency f_1 of the standing wave, because the string forces the surrounding air to vibrate at the same frequency. The wavelength of the sound wave is $\lambda_{1(\text{sound})} = v_{\text{sound}}/f_1$.

EXECUTE We have $f = f_1 = 20.0$ Hz, so

$$\lambda_{1(\text{sound})} = \frac{v_{\text{sound}}}{f_1} = \frac{344 \text{ m/s}}{20.0 \text{ Hz}} = 17.2 \text{ m}$$

EVALUATE In Example 15.7, the wavelength of the fundamental on the string was $\lambda_{1(\text{string})} = 2L = 2(5.00 \text{ m}) = 10.0 \text{ m}$. Here $\lambda_{1(\text{sound})} = 17.2$ m is greater than that by the factor of $17.2/10.0 = 1.72$. This is as it should be: Because the frequencies of the sound wave and the standing wave are equal, $\lambda = v/f$ says that the wavelengths in air and on the string are in the same ratio as the corresponding wave speeds; here $v_{\text{sound}} = 344$ m/s is greater than $v_{\text{string}} = (10.0 \text{ m})(20.0 \text{ Hz}) = 200$ m/s by just the factor 1.72.

KEYCONCEPT A string vibrating at a certain frequency produces sound waves of the same frequency in the surrounding air. The standing wave on the string and the sound wave will have different wavelengths, however, if the speed of waves on the string does not equal the speed of sound.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 15.8 While a guitar string is vibrating, you gently touch the midpoint of the string to ensure that the string does not vibrate at that point. Which normal modes *cannot* be present on the string while you are touching it in this way?

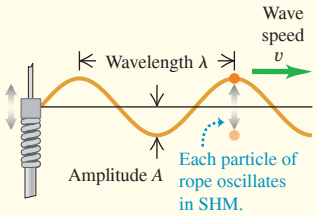
ANSWER ▮ $n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$ When you touch the string at its center, you are producing a node at the center. Hence only standing waves with a node at $x = L/2$ are allowed. From Figure 15.26 you can see that the normal modes $n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$ cannot be present.

CHAPTER 15 SUMMARY

Waves and their properties: A wave is any disturbance that propagates from one region to another. A mechanical wave travels within some material called the medium. The wave speed v depends on the type of wave and the properties of the medium.

In a periodic wave, the motion of each point of the medium is periodic with frequency f and period T. The wavelength λ is the distance over which the wave pattern repeats, and the amplitude A is the maximum displacement of a particle in the medium. The product of λ and f equals the wave speed. A sinusoidal wave is a special periodic wave in which each point moves in simple harmonic motion. (See Example 15.1.)

$$v = \lambda f \tag{15.1}$$



Wave functions and wave dynamics: The wave function $y(x, t)$ describes the displacements of individual particles in the medium. Equations (15.3), (15.4), and (15.7) give the wave equation for a sinusoidal wave traveling in the $+x$-direction. If the wave is moving in the $-x$-direction, the minus signs in the cosine functions are replaced by plus signs. (See Example 15.2.)

The wave function obeys a partial differential equation called the wave equation, Eq. (15.12).

The speed of transverse waves on a string depends on the tension F and mass per unit length μ. (See Example 15.3.)

$$y(x, t) = A\cos\left[\omega\left(\frac{x}{v} - t\right)\right] \tag{15.3}$$

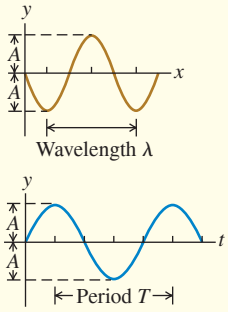
$$y(x, t) = A\cos 2\pi\left[\left(\frac{x}{\lambda} - \frac{t}{T}\right)\right] \tag{15.4}$$

$$y(x, t) = A\cos(kx - \omega t) \tag{15.7}$$

where $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ and $\omega = 2\pi f = vk$

$$\frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y(x, t)}{\partial t^2} \tag{15.12}$$

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}}\ \text{(waves on a string)} \tag{15.14}$$



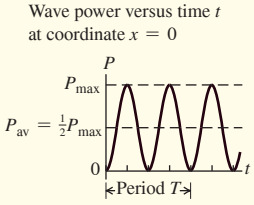
Wave power: Wave motion conveys energy from one region to another. For a sinusoidal mechanical wave, the average power P_{av} is proportional to the square of the wave amplitude and the square of the frequency. For waves that spread out in three dimensions, the wave intensity I is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source. (See Examples 15.4 and 15.5.)

$$P_{av} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{\mu F}\,\omega^2 A^2 \tag{15.25}$$

(average power, sinusoidal wave)

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{r_2^2}{r_1^2} \tag{15.26}$$

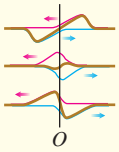
(inverse-square law for intensity)



Wave superposition: A wave reflects when it reaches a boundary of its medium. At any point where two or more waves overlap, the total displacement is the sum of the displacements of the individual waves (principle of superposition).

$$y(x, t) = y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t) \tag{15.27}$$

(principle of superposition)



Standing waves on a string: When a sinusoidal wave is reflected from a fixed or free end of a stretched string, the incident and reflected waves combine to form a standing sinusoidal wave with nodes and antinodes. Adjacent nodes are spaced a distance $\lambda/2$ apart, as are adjacent antinodes. (See Example 15.6.)

When both ends of a string with length L are held fixed, standing waves can occur only when L is an integer multiple of $\lambda/2$. Each frequency with its associated vibration pattern is called a normal mode. (See Examples 15.7 and 15.8.)

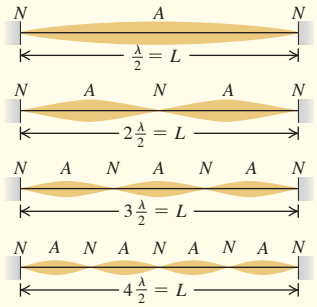
$$y(x, t) = (A_{SW}\sin kx)\sin\omega t \tag{15.28}$$

(standing wave on a string, fixed end at $x = 0$)

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{2L} = nf_1\ (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \tag{15.33}$$

$$f_1 = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{F}{\mu}} \tag{15.35}$$

(string fixed at both ends)



Chapter 15 Media Assets

For assigned homework and other learning materials, go to Mastering Physics.

GUIDED PRACTICE

KEY EXAMPLE √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 15.1, 15.2, and 15.3 (Sections 15.2, 15.3, and 15.4) before attempting these problems.

VP15.3.1 A boat is at anchor outside a harbor. A steady sinusoidal ocean wave makes the boat bob up and down with a period of 5.10 s and an amplitude of 1.00 m. The wave has wavelength 30.5 m. For this wave, what are (a) the frequency, (b) the wave speed, (c) the angular frequency, and (d) the wave number?

VP15.3.2 Sound waves in the thin Martian atmosphere travel at 245 m/s. (a) What are the period and wavelength of a 125 Hz sound wave in the Martian atmosphere? (b) What are the frequency and angular frequency of a sound wave in the Martian atmosphere that has wavelength 3.00 m?

VP15.3.3 You are testing a mountain climbing rope that has a linear mass density of 0.0650 kg/m. The rope is held horizontal and is under a tension of 8.00×10^2 N to simulate the stress of supporting a mountain climber's weight. (a) What is the speed of transverse waves on this rope? (b) You oscillate one end of the rope up and down in SHM with frequency 25.0 Hz and amplitude 5.00 mm. What is the wavelength of the resulting waves on the rope? (c) At $t = 0$ the end you are oscillating is at its maximum positive displacement and is instantaneously at rest. Write an equation for the displacement as a function of time at a point 2.50 m from that end. Assume that no wave bounces back from the other end.

VP15.3.4 The tension in a long string is 25.0 N. You oscillate one end of the string up and down with frequency 45.0 Hz. When this end is at its maximum upward displacement, the nearest point that is at its maximum negative displacement is 0.400 m down the string. What are (a) the speed of waves on the string and (b) the linear mass density of the string?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 15.4 and 15.5 (Section 15.5) before attempting these problems.

VP15.5.1 An athlete exerts a tension of 6.00×10^2 N on one end of a horizontal rope that has length 50.0 m and mass 2.50 kg. The other end is tied to a post. If she wiggles the rope with period 0.575 s and amplitude 3.00 cm, what are (a) the angular frequency of the oscillation and (b) the average rate at which energy is transferred along the rope?

VP15.5.2 A length of piano wire (mass density 5.55×10^{-4} kg/m) is under 185 N of tension. A sinusoidal wave of frequency 256 Hz carries a maximum power of 5.20 W along the wire. What is the amplitude of this wave?

VP15.5.3 A portable audio speaker has a power output of 8.00 W. (a) If the speaker emits sound equally in all directions, what is the sound intensity at a distance of 2.00 m from the speaker? (b) At what distance from the speaker is the intensity equal to 0.045 W/m^2?

VP15.5.4 The "ears" of a frog are two circular membranes located behind the frog's eyes. In one species of frog each membrane is 0.500 cm in radius. If a source of sound has a power output of 2.50×10^{-6} W, emits sound equally in all directions, and is located 1.50 m from the frog, how much sound energy arrives at one of the membranes each second?

Be sure to review EXAMPLES 15.6, 15.7, and 15.8 (Sections 15.7 and 15.8) before attempting these problems.

VP15.8.1 For a standing wave on a string, the distance between nodes is 0.125 m, the frequency is 256 Hz, and the amplitude is 1.40×10^{-3} m. What are (a) the speed of waves on this string, (b) the maximum transverse velocity at an antinode, and (c) the maximum transverse acceleration at an antinode?

VP15.8.2 The G string of a guitar has a fundamental frequency of 196 Hz. The linear mass density of the string is 2.29×10^{-3} kg/m, and the length of string that is free to vibrate (between the nut and bridge of the guitar) is 0.641 m. What are (a) the speed of waves on the G string and (b) the tension in this string?

VP15.8.3 A cable is stretched between two posts 3.00 m apart. The speed of waves on this cable is 96.0 m/s, and the tension in the cable is 175 N. If a standing wave on this cable has five antinodes, what are (a) the wavelength of the standing wave, (b) the frequency of the standing wave, and (c) the linear mass density of the cable?

VP15.8.4 One of the strings on a musical instrument is 0.500 m in length and has linear mass density 1.17×10^{-3} kg/m. The second harmonic on this string has frequency 512 Hz. (a) What is the tension in the string? (b) The speed of sound in air at 20°C is 344 m/s. If the string is vibrating at its fundamental frequency, what is the wavelength of the sound wave that the string produces in air?

BRIDGING PROBLEM Waves on a Rotating Rope

A uniform rope with length L and mass m is held at one end and whirled in a horizontal circle with angular velocity ω. You can ignore the force of gravity on the rope. (a) At a point on the rope a distance r from the end that is held, what is the tension F? (b) What is the speed of transverse waves at this point? (c) Find the time required for a transverse wave to travel from one end of the rope to the other.

SOLUTION GUIDE

IDENTIFY and SET UP

1. Draw a sketch of the situation and label the distances r and L. The tension in the rope will be different at different values of r. Do you see why? Where on the rope do you expect the tension to be greatest? Where do you expect it will be least?
2. Where on the rope do you expect the wave speed to be greatest? Where do you expect it will be least?
3. Think about the portion of the rope that is farther out than r from the end that is held. What forces act on this portion? (Remember that you can ignore gravity.) What is the mass of this portion? How far is its center of mass from the rotation axis?
4. List the unknown quantities and decide which are your target variables.

EXECUTE

5. Draw a free-body diagram for the portion of the rope that is farther out than r from the end that is held.

6. Use your free-body diagram to help you determine the tension in the rope at distance r.
7. Use your result from step 6 to find the wave speed at distance r.
8. Use your result from step 7 to find the time for a wave to travel from one end to the other. (*Hint:* The wave speed is $v = dr/dt$, so the time for the wave to travel a distance dr along the rope is $dt = dr/v$. Integrate this to find the total time. See Appendix D.)

EVALUATE

9. Do your results for parts (a) and (b) agree with your expectations from steps 1 and 2? Are the units correct?
10. Check your result for part (a) by considering the net force on a small segment of the rope at distance r with length dr and mass $dm = (m/L)dr$. [*Hint:* The tension forces on this segment are $F(r)$ on one side and $F(r + dr)$ on the other side. You will get an equation for dF/dr that you can integrate to find F as a function of r.]

PROBLEMS

•, ••, •••: Difficulty levels. **CP**: Cumulative problems incorporating material from earlier chapters. **CALC**: Problems requiring calculus. **DATA**: Problems involving real data, scientific evidence, experimental design, and/or statistical reasoning. **BIO**: Biosciences problems.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

Q15.1 Two waves travel on the same string. Is it possible for them to have (a) different frequencies; (b) different wavelengths; (c) different speeds; (d) different amplitudes; (e) the same frequency but different wavelengths? Explain your reasoning.

Q15.2 Under a tension F, it takes 2.00 s for a pulse to travel the length of a taut wire. What tension is required (in terms of F) for the pulse to take 6.00 s instead? Explain how you arrive at your answer.

Q15.3 What kinds of energy are associated with waves on a stretched string? How could you detect such energy experimentally?

Q15.4 The amplitude of a wave decreases gradually as the wave travels along a long, stretched string. What happens to the energy of the wave when this happens?

Q15.5 For the wave motions discussed in this chapter, does the speed of propagation depend on the amplitude? What makes you say this?

Q15.6 The speed of ocean waves depends on the depth of the water; the deeper the water, the faster the wave travels. Use this to explain why ocean waves crest and "break" as they near the shore.

Q15.7 Is it possible to have a longitudinal wave on a stretched string? Why or why not? Is it possible to have a transverse wave on a steel rod? Again, why or why not? If your answer is yes in either case, explain how you would create such a wave.

Q15.8 For transverse waves on a string, is the wave speed the same as the speed of any part of the string? Explain the difference between these two speeds. Which one is constant?

Q15.9 The four strings on a violin have different thicknesses, but are all under approximately the same tension. Do waves travel faster on the thick strings or the thin strings? Why? How does the fundamental vibration frequency compare for the thick versus the thin strings?

Q15.10 A sinusoidal wave can be described by a cosine function, which is negative just as often as positive. So why isn't the average power delivered by this wave zero?

Q15.11 Two strings of different mass per unit length μ_1 and μ_2 are tied together and stretched with a tension F. A wave travels along the string and passes the discontinuity in μ. Which of the following wave properties will be the same on both sides of the discontinuity, and which will change: speed of the wave; frequency; wavelength? Explain the physical reasoning behind each answer.

Q15.12 A long rope with mass m is suspended from the ceiling and hangs vertically. A wave pulse is produced at the lower end of the rope, and the pulse travels up the rope. Does the speed of the wave pulse change as it moves up the rope, and if so, does it increase or decrease? Explain.

Q15.13 In a transverse wave on a string, the motion of the string is perpendicular to the length of the string. How, then, is it possible for energy to move along the length of the string?

Q15.14 Energy can be transferred along a string by wave motion. However, in a standing wave on a string, no energy can ever be transferred past a node. Why not?

Q15.15 Can a standing wave be produced on a string by superposing two waves traveling in opposite directions with the same frequency but different amplitudes? Why or why not? Can a standing wave be produced by superposing two waves traveling in opposite directions with different frequencies but the same amplitude? Why or why not?

Q15.16 If you stretch a rubber band and pluck it, you hear a (somewhat) musical tone. How does the frequency of this tone change as you stretch the rubber band further? (Try it!) Does this agree with Eq. (15.35) for a string fixed at both ends? Explain.

Q15.17 A musical interval of an *octave* corresponds to a factor of 2 in frequency. By what factor must the tension in a guitar or violin string be increased to raise its pitch one octave? To raise it two octaves? Explain your reasoning. Is there any danger in attempting these changes in pitch?

Q15.18 By touching a string lightly at its center while bowing, a violinist can produce a note exactly one octave above the note to which the string is tuned—that is, a note with exactly twice the frequency. Why is this possible?

Q15.19 As we discussed in Section 15.1, water waves are a combination of longitudinal and transverse waves. Defend the following statement: "When water waves hit a vertical wall, the wall is a node of the longitudinal displacement but an antinode of the transverse displacement."

Q15.20 Violins are short instruments, while cellos and basses are long. In terms of the frequency of the waves they produce, explain why this is so.

Q15.21 What is the purpose of the frets on a guitar? In terms of the frequency of the vibration of the strings, explain their use.

EXERCISES

Section 15.2 Periodic Waves

15.1 • The speed of sound in air at 20°C is 344 m/s. (a) What is the wavelength of a sound wave with a frequency of 784 Hz, corresponding to the note G_5 on a piano, and how many milliseconds does each vibration take? (b) What is the wavelength of a sound wave one octave higher (twice the frequency) than the note in part (a)?

15.2 • **BIO Ultrasound Imaging.** Sound having frequencies above the range of human hearing (about 20,000 Hz) is called *ultrasound.* Waves above this frequency can be used to penetrate the body and to produce images by reflecting from surfaces. In a typical ultrasound scan, the waves travel through body tissue with a speed of 1500 m/s. For a good, detailed image, the wavelength should be no more than 1.0 mm. What frequency sound is required for a good scan?

15.3 • **Tsunami!** On December 26, 2004, a great earthquake occurred off the coast of Sumatra and triggered immense waves (tsunami) that killed more than 200,000 people. Satellites observing these waves from space measured 800 km from one wave crest to the next and a period between waves of 1.0 hour. What was the speed of these waves in m/s and in km/h? Does your answer help you understand why the waves caused such devastation?

15.4 •• A fisherman notices that his boat is moving up and down periodically, owing to waves on the surface of the water. It takes 3.0 s for the boat to travel from its highest point to its lowest, a total distance of 0.69 m. The fisherman sees that the wave crests are spaced 8.0 m apart. (a) How fast are the waves traveling? (b) What is the amplitude of each wave? (c) If the total vertical distance traveled by the boat were 0.35 m but the other data remained the same, how would the answers to parts (a) and (b) change?

15.5 • **BIO** (a) **Audible wavelengths.** The range of audible frequencies is from about 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz. What is the range of the wavelengths of audible sound in air? (b) **Visible light.** The range of visible light extends from 380 nm to 750 nm. What is the range of visible frequencies of light? (c) **Brain surgery.** Surgeons can remove brain tumors by using a cavitron ultrasonic surgical aspirator, which produces sound waves of frequency 23 kHz. What is the wavelength of these waves in air? (d) **Sound in the body.** What would be the wavelength of the sound in part (c) in bodily fluids in which the speed of sound is 1480 m/s but the frequency is unchanged?

Section 15.3 Mathematical Description of a Wave

15.6 • A small bead of mass 4.00 g is attached to a horizontal string. Transverse waves of amplitude $A = 0.800$ cm and frequency $f = 20.0$ Hz are set up on the string. Assume the mass of the bead is small enough that the bead doesn't alter the wave motion. During the wave motion, what is the maximum vertical force that the string exerts on the bead?

15.7 • Transverse waves on a string have wave speed 8.00 m/s, amplitude 0.0700 m, and wavelength 0.320 m. The waves travel in the $-x$-direction, and at $t = 0$ the $x = 0$ end of the string has its maximum upward displacement. (a) Find the frequency, period, and wave number of these waves. (b) Write a wave function describing the wave. (c) Find the transverse displacement of a particle at $x = 0.360$ m at time $t = 0.150$ s. (d) How much time must elapse from the instant in part (c) until the particle at $x = 0.360$ m next has maximum upward displacement?

15.8 • A certain transverse wave is described by

$$y(x, t) = (6.00\text{ mm})\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{x}{28.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{t}{3.10 \times 10^{-2}\text{ s}}\right)$$

Determine the wave's (a) amplitude; (b) wavelength; (c) frequency; (d) speed of propagation; (e) direction of propagation.

15.9 • **CALC** Which of the following wave functions satisfies the wave equation, Eq. (15.12)? (a) $y(x, t) = A\cos(kx + \omega t)$; (b) $y(x, t) = A\sin(kx + \omega t)$; (c) $y(x, t) = A(\cos kx + \cos \omega t)$. (d) For the wave of part (b), write the equations for the transverse velocity and transverse acceleration of a particle at point x.

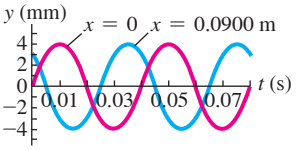
15.10 • A water wave traveling in a straight line on a lake is described by the equation

$$y(x, t) = (2.75\text{ cm})\cos(0.410\text{ rad/cm}\,x + 6.20\text{ rad/s}\,t)$$

where y is the displacement perpendicular to the undisturbed surface of the lake. (a) How much time does it take for one complete wave pattern to go past a fisherman in a boat at anchor, and what horizontal distance does the wave crest travel in that time? (b) What are the wave number and the number of waves per second that pass the fisherman? (c) How fast does a wave crest travel past the fisherman, and what is the maximum speed of his cork floater as the wave causes it to bob up and down?

15.11 • A sinusoidal wave is propagating along a stretched string that lies along the x-axis. The displacement of the string as a function of time is graphed in **Fig. E15.11** for particles at $x = 0$ and at $x = 0.0900$ m. (a) What is the amplitude of the wave? (b) What is the period of the wave? (c) You are told that the two points $x = 0$ and $x = 0.0900$ m are within one wavelength of each other. If the wave is moving in the $+x$-direction, determine the wavelength and the wave speed. (d) If instead the wave is moving in the $-x$-direction, determine the wavelength and the wave speed. (e) Would it be possible to determine definitively the wavelengths in parts (c) and (d) if you were not told that the two points were within one wavelength of each other? Why or why not?

Figure **E15.11**



15.12 •• **CALC Speed of Propagation vs. Particle Speed.** (a) Show that Eq. (15.3) may be written as

$$y(x, t) = A\cos\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(x - vt)\right]$$

(b) Use $y(x, t)$ to find an expression for the transverse velocity v_y of a particle in the string on which the wave travels. (c) Find the maximum speed of a particle of the string. Under what circumstances is this equal to the propagation speed v? Less than v? Greater than v?

15.13 •• A transverse wave on a string has amplitude 0.300 cm, wavelength 12.0 cm, and speed 6.00 cm/s. It is represented by $y(x, t)$ as given in Exercise 15.12. (a) At time $t = 0$, compute y at 1.5 cm intervals of x (that is, at $x = 0$, $x = 1.5$ cm, $x = 3.0$ cm, and so on) from $x = 0$ to $x = 12.0$ cm. Graph the results. This is the shape of the string at time $t = 0$. (b) Repeat the calculations for the same values of x at times $t = 0.400$ s and $t = 0.800$ s. Graph the shape of the string at these instants. In what direction is the wave traveling?

Section 15.4 Speed of a Transverse Wave

15.14 • A musical novice learns that doubling the fundamental increases the pitch by one octave and decides to do that to a guitar string. What factor increase in tension would be necessary? Do you think this would be a good idea?

15.15 • One end of a horizontal rope is attached to a prong of an electrically driven tuning fork that vibrates the rope transversely at 122 Hz. The other end passes over a pulley and supports a 1.50 kg mass. The linear mass density of the rope is 5.70×10^{-2} kg/m. (a) What is the speed of a transverse wave on the rope? (b) What is the wavelength? (c) How would your answers to parts (a) and (b) change if the mass were increased to 3.00 kg?

15.16 • With what tension must a rope with length 2.70 m and mass 0.145 kg be stretched for transverse waves of frequency 45.0 Hz to have a wavelength of 0.770 m?

15.17 •• The upper end of a 3.90-m-long steel wire is fastened to the ceiling, and a 52.0 kg object is suspended from the lower end of the wire. You observe that it takes a transverse pulse 0.0492 s to travel from the bottom to the top of the wire. What is the mass of the wire?

15.18 •• A 1.60 m string of weight 0.0121 N is tied to the ceiling at its upper end, and the lower end supports a weight W. Ignore the very small variation in tension along the length of the string that is produced by the weight of the string. When you pluck the string slightly, the waves traveling up the string obey the equation

$$y(x, t) = (8.50 \text{ mm})\cos(172 \text{ rad/m}\, x - 2730 \text{ rad/s}\, t)$$

Assume that the tension of the string is constant and equal to W. (a) How much time does it take a pulse to travel the full length of the string? (b) What is the weight W? (c) How many wavelengths are on the string at any instant of time? (d) What is the equation for waves traveling *down* the string?

15.19 • A thin, 71.0 cm wire has a mass of 16.5 g. One end is tied to a nail, and the other end is attached to a screw that can be adjusted to vary the tension in the wire. (a) To what tension (in newtons) must you adjust the screw so that a transverse wave of wavelength 3.40 cm makes 876 vibrations per second? (b) How fast would this wave travel?

15.20 •• A heavy rope 6.00 m long and weighing 29.4 N is attached at one end to a ceiling and hangs vertically. A 0.500 kg mass is suspended from the lower end of the rope. What is the speed of transverse waves on the rope at the (a) bottom of the rope, (b) middle of the rope, and (c) top of the rope? (d) Is the tension in the middle of the rope the average of the tensions at the top and bottom of the rope? Is the wave speed at the middle of the rope the average of the wave speeds at the top and bottom? Explain.

Section 15.5 Energy in Wave Motion

15.21 •• In Example 15.4 the average power that Throckmorton puts into the clothesline is small, about 1 W. How much better can you do? Assume a rope that has linear mass density 0.500 kg/m. The rope is long and is attached to a post at one end. You hold the other end of the rope in your hand and supply sinusoidal wave pulses by moving your arm up and down. Estimate the amplitude of the pulses to be the length of your arm. Estimate the maximum tension you can supply to the rope by pulling on it horizontally, and estimate the time for you to complete each pulse. (a) Ignoring any effects from reflection of the pulses from the other end of the rope, what average power can you supply to the rope? (b) You try to increase your power output by halving the amplitude so you can double the frequency of the pulses. What change in P_{av} does this produce?

15.22 •• A piano wire with mass 2.90 g and length 76.0 cm is stretched with a tension of 33.0 N. A wave with frequency 115.0 Hz and amplitude 1.7 mm travels along the wire. (a) Calculate the average power carried by the wave. (b) What happens to the average power if the wave amplitude is halved?

15.23 • A horizontal wire is stretched with a tension of 94.0 N, and the speed of transverse waves for the wire is 406 m/s. What must the amplitude of a traveling wave of frequency 69.0 Hz be for the average power carried by the wave to be 0.365 W?

15.24 •• **Threshold of Pain.** You are investigating the report of a UFO landing in an isolated portion of New Mexico, and you encounter a strange object that is radiating sound waves uniformly in all directions. Assume that the sound comes from a point source and that you can ignore reflections. You are slowly walking toward the source. When you are 7.5 m from it, you measure its intensity to be 0.11 W/m^2. An intensity of 1.0 W/m^2 is often used as the "threshold of pain." How much closer to the source can you move before the sound intensity reaches this threshold?

15.25 •• A jet plane at takeoff can produce sound of intensity 10.0 W/m^2 at 31.0 m away. But you prefer the tranquil sound of normal conversation, which is 1.0 μW/m^2. Assume that the plane behaves like a point source of sound. (a) What is the closest distance you should live from the airport runway to preserve your peace of mind? (b) What intensity from the jet does your friend experience if she lives twice as far from the runway as you do? (c) What power of sound does the jet produce at takeoff?

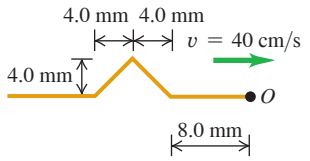
15.26 • A fellow student with a mathematical bent tells you that the wave function of a traveling wave on a thin rope is $y(x, t) = 2.10 \text{ mm}\cos[(7.08 \text{ rad/m})x + (740 \text{ rad/s})t]$. Being more practical, you measure the rope to have a length of 1.30 m and a mass of 0.00334 kg. You are then asked to determine the following: (a) amplitude; (b) frequency; (c) wavelength; (d) wave speed; (e) direction the wave is traveling; (f) tension in the rope; (g) average power transmitted by the wave.

15.27 • **Energy Output.** By measurement you determine that sound waves are spreading out equally in all directions from a point source and that the intensity is 2.0×10^{-2} W/m^2 at a distance of 4.2 m from the source. (a) What is the intensity at a distance of 3.4 m from the source? (b) How much sound energy does the source emit in one hour if its power output remains constant?

Section 15.6 Wave Interference, Boundary Conditions, and Superposition

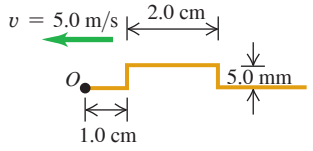
15.28 • **Reflection.** A wave pulse on a string has the dimensions shown in **Fig. E15.28** at $t = 0$. The wave speed is 40 cm/s. (a) If point O is a fixed end, draw the total wave on the string at t = 15 ms, 20 ms, 25 ms, 30 ms, 35 ms, 40 ms, and 45 ms. (b) Repeat part (a) for the case in which point O is a free end.

Figure **E15.28**



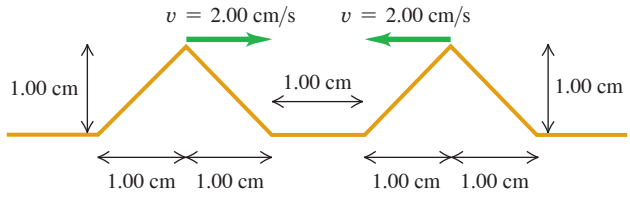
15.29 • **Reflection.** A wave pulse on a string has the dimensions shown in **Fig. E15.29** at $t = 0$. The wave speed is 5.0 m/s. (a) If point O is a fixed end, draw the total wave on the string at t = 1.0 ms, 2.0 ms, 3.0 ms, 4.0 ms, 5.0 ms, 6.0 ms, and 7.0 ms. (b) Repeat part (a) for the case in which point O is a free end.

Figure **E15.29**



15.30 • **Interference of Triangular Pulses.** Two triangular wave pulses are traveling toward each other on a stretched string as shown in **Fig. E15.30**. Each pulse is identical to the other and travels at 2.00 cm/s. The leading edges of the pulses are 1.00 cm apart at $t = 0$. Sketch the shape of the string at t = 0.250 s, t = 0.500 s, t = 0.750 s, t = 1.000 s, and t = 1.250 s.

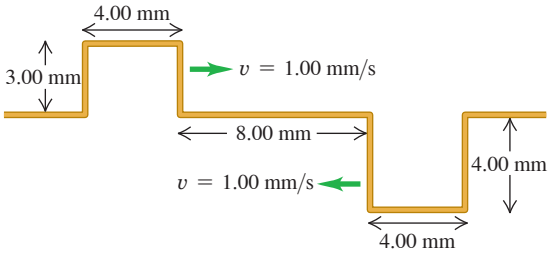
Figure **E15.30**



15.31 • Suppose that the left-traveling pulse in Exercise 15.30 is *below* the level of the stretched string instead of above it. Make the same sketches that you did in that exercise.

15.32 •• Interference of Rectangular Pulses. Figure E15.32 shows two rectangular wave pulses on a stretched string traveling toward each other. Each pulse is traveling with a speed of 1.00 mm/s and has the height and width shown in the figure. If the leading edges of the pulses are 8.00 mm apart at $t = 0$, sketch the shape of the string at $t = 4.00$ s, $t = 6.00$ s, and $t = 10.0$ s.

Figure **E15.32**



Section 15.7 Standing Waves on a String
Section 15.8 Normal Modes of a String

15.33 •• CALC For a violin, estimate the length of the portions of the strings that are free to vibrate. (a) The frequency of the note played by the open E5 string vibrating in its fundamental standing wave is 659 Hz. Use your estimate of the length to calculate the wave speed for the transverse waves on the string. (b) The vibrating string produces sound waves in air with the same frequency as that of the string. Use 344 m/s for the speed of sound in air and calculate the wavelength of the E5 note in air. Which is larger: the wavelength on the string or the wavelength in air? (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for a double bass, which is typically played by a person standing up. Start your calculation by estimating the length of the double bass string that is free to vibrate. The G2 string produces a note with frequency 98 Hz when vibrating in its fundamental standing wave.

15.34 •• CALC Adjacent antinodes of a standing wave on a string are 15.0 cm apart. A particle at an antinode oscillates in simple harmonic motion with amplitude 0.850 cm and period 0.0750 s. The string lies along the $+x$-axis and is fixed at $x = 0$. (a) How far apart are the adjacent nodes? (b) What are the wavelength, amplitude, and speed of the two traveling waves that form this pattern? (c) Find the maximum and minimum transverse speeds of a point at an antinode. (d) What is the shortest distance along the string between a node and an antinode?

15.35 • Standing waves on a wire are described by Eq. (15.28), with $A_{SW} = 2.90$ mm, $\omega = 905$ rad/s, and $k = 0.720\pi$ rad/m. The left end of the wire is at $x = 0$. At what distances from the left end are (a) the nodes of the standing wave and (b) the antinodes of the standing wave?

15.36 • A 1.54-m-long rope is stretched between two supports with a tension that makes the speed of transverse waves 47.3 m/s. What are the wavelength and frequency of (a) the fundamental; (b) the second overtone; (c) the fourth harmonic?

15.37 • A wire with mass 40.0 g is stretched so that its ends are tied down at points 80.0 cm apart. The wire vibrates in its fundamental mode with frequency 60.0 Hz and with an amplitude at the antinodes of 0.300 cm. (a) What is the speed of propagation of transverse waves in the wire? (b) Compute the tension in the wire. (c) Find the maximum transverse velocity and acceleration of particles in the wire.

15.38 • A piano tuner stretches a steel piano wire with a tension of 800 N. The steel wire is 0.400 m long and has a mass of 3.00 g. (a) What is the frequency of its fundamental mode of vibration? (b) What is the number of the highest harmonic that could be heard by a person who is capable of hearing frequencies up to 10,000 Hz?

15.39 • CALC A thin, taut string tied at both ends and oscillating in its third harmonic has its shape described by the equation $y(x, t) = (5.60 \text{ cm})\sin[(0.0340 \text{ rad/cm})x]\sin[(50.0 \text{ rad/s})t]$, where the origin is at the left end of the string, the x-axis is along the string, and the y-axis is perpendicular to the string. (a) Draw a sketch that shows the standing-wave pattern. (b) Find the amplitude of the two traveling waves that make up this standing wave. (c) What is the length of the string? (d) Find the wavelength, frequency, period, and speed of the traveling waves. (e) Find the maximum transverse speed of a point on the string. (f) What would be the equation $y(x, t)$ for this string if it were vibrating in its eighth harmonic?

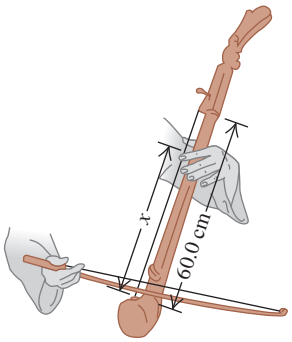
15.40 • The wave function of a standing wave is $y(x, t) = (4.44 \text{ mm})\sin[(32.5 \text{ rad/m})x]\sin[(754 \text{ rad/s})t]$. For the two traveling waves that make up this standing wave, find the (a) amplitude; (b) wavelength; (c) frequency; (d) wave speed; (e) wave functions. (f) From the information given, can you determine which harmonic this is? Explain.

15.41 • Standing waves are produced on a string that is held fixed at both ends. The tension in the string is kept constant. (a) For the second overtone standing wave the node-to-node distance is 8.00 cm. What is the length of the string? (b) What is the node-to-node distance for the fourth harmonic standing wave?

15.42 •• One string of a certain musical instrument is 80.0 cm long and has a mass of 8.71 g. It is being played in a room where the speed of sound is 344 m/s. (a) To what tension must you adjust the string so that, when vibrating in its second overtone, it produces sound of wavelength 0.752 m? (Assume that the breaking stress of the wire is very large and isn't exceeded.) (b) What frequency sound does this string produce in its fundamental mode of vibration?

15.43 • The portion of the string of a certain musical instrument between the bridge and upper end of the finger board (that part of the string that is free to vibrate) is 60.0 cm long, and this length of the string has mass 1.99 g. The string sounds an A_4 note (440 Hz) when played. (a) Where must the player put a finger (what distance x from the bridge) to play a D_5 note (587 Hz)? (See **Fig. E15.43**.) For both the A_4 and D_5 notes, the string vibrates in its fundamental mode. (b) Without retuning, is it possible to play a G_4 note (392 Hz) on this string? Why or why not?

Figure **E15.43**



15.44 • (a) A horizontal string tied at both ends is vibrating in its fundamental mode. The traveling waves have speed v, frequency f, amplitude A, and wavelength λ. Calculate the maximum transverse velocity and maximum transverse acceleration of points located at (i) $x = \lambda/2$, (ii) $x = \lambda/4$, and (iii) $x = \lambda/8$, from the left-hand end of the string. (b) At each of the points in part (a), what is the amplitude of the motion? (c) At each of the points in part (a), how much time does it take the string to go from its largest upward displacement to its largest downward displacement?

PROBLEMS

15.45 •• A sinusoidal wave with wavelength 0.400 m travels along a string. The maximum transverse speed of a point on the string is 3.00 m/s and the maximum transverse acceleration is 8.50×10^4 m/s^2. What are the propagation speed v and the amplitude A of the wave?

15.46 • A transverse wave on a rope is given by

$$y(x, t) = (0.750 \text{ cm})\cos\pi[(0.400 \text{ cm}^{-1})x + (250 \text{ s}^{-1})t]$$

(a) Find the amplitude, period, frequency, wavelength, and speed of propagation. (b) Sketch the shape of the rope at these values of t: 0, 0.0005 s, 0.0010 s. (c) Is the wave traveling in the $+x$- or $-x$-direction? (d) The mass per unit length of the rope is 0.0500 kg/m. Find the tension. (e) Find the average power of this wave.

15.47 • **CALC** A transverse sine wave with an amplitude of 2.50 mm and a wavelength of 1.80 m travels from left to right along a long, horizontal, stretched string with a speed of 36.0 m/s. Take the origin at the left end of the undisturbed string. At time $t = 0$ the left end of the string has its maximum upward displacement. (a) What are the frequency, angular frequency, and wave number of the wave? (b) What is the function $y(x, t)$ that describes the wave? (c) What is $y(t)$ for a particle at the left end of the string? (d) What is $y(t)$ for a particle 1.35 m to the right of the origin? (e) What is the maximum magnitude of transverse velocity of any particle of the string? (f) Find the transverse displacement and the transverse velocity of a particle 1.35 m to the right of the origin at time $t = 0.0625$ s.

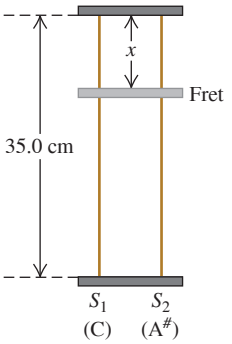
15.48 •• **CP** A 1800 N irregular beam is hanging horizontally by its ends from the ceiling by two vertical wires (A and B), each 1.28 m long and weighing 0.300 N. The center of gravity of this beam is one-third of the way along the beam from the end where wire A is attached. If you pluck both strings at the same time at the beam, what is the time delay between the arrival of the two pulses at the ceiling? Which pulse arrives first? (Ignore the effect of the weight of the wires on the tension in the wires.)

15.49 ••• **CP** One end of a light uniform rod is attached to a wall by a frictionless hinge. The rod is held in a horizontal position by a wire that runs from the other end of the rod to the wall. The wire has length 2.00 m and makes an angle of 30.0° with the rod. A block with mass m is suspended by a light rope attached to the middle of the rod. The transverse fundamental standing wave on the wire has frequency f. The mass m is varied and for each value the frequency is measured. You plot f^2 versus m and find that your data lie close to a straight line with slope 20.4 $\text{kg}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$. What is the mass of the wire? Assume that the change in the length of the wire when the tension changes is small enough to neglect.

15.50 •• **Weightless Ant.** An ant with mass m is standing peacefully on top of a horizontal, stretched rope. The rope has mass per unit length μ and is under tension F. Without warning, Cousin Throckmorton starts a sinusoidal transverse wave of wavelength λ propagating along the rope. The motion of the rope is in a vertical plane. What minimum wave amplitude will make the ant become momentarily weightless? Assume that m is so small that the presence of the ant has no effect on the propagation of the wave.

15.51 •• You must determine the length of a long, thin wire that is suspended from the ceiling in the atrium of a tall building. A 2.00-cm-long piece of the wire is left over from its installation. Using an analytical balance, you determine that the mass of the spare piece is 14.5 μg. You then hang a 0.400 kg mass from the lower end of the long, suspended wire. When a small-amplitude transverse wave pulse is sent up that wire, sensors at both ends measure that it takes the wave pulse 26.7 ms to travel the length of the wire. (a) Use these measurements to calculate the length of the wire. Assume that the weight of the wire has a negligible effect on the speed of the transverse waves. (b) Discuss the accuracy of the approximation made in part (a).

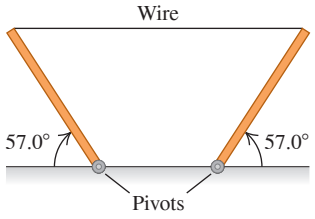
Figure **P15.52**



15.52 •• **Music.** You are designing a two-string instrument with metal strings 35.0 cm long, as shown in **Fig. P15.52**. Both strings are under the *same tension.* String S_1 has a mass of 8.40 g and produces the note middle C (frequency 262 Hz) in its fundamental mode. (a) What should be the tension in the string? (b) What should be the mass of string S_2 so that it will produce A-sharp (frequency 466 Hz) as its fundamental? (c) To extend the range of your instrument, you include a fret located just under the strings but not normally touching them. How far from the upper end should you put this fret so that when you press S_1 tightly against it, this string will produce C-sharp (frequency 277 Hz) in its fundamental? That is, what is x in the figure? (d) If you press S_2 against the fret, what frequency of sound will it produce in its fundamental?

15.53 ••• **CP** A 5.00 m, 0.732 kg wire is used to support two uniform 235 N posts of equal length (**Fig. P15.53**). Assume that the wire is essentially horizontal and that the speed of sound is 344 m/s. A strong wind is blowing, causing the wire to vibrate in its 5th overtone. What are the frequency and wavelength of the sound this wire produces?

Figure **P15.53**



15.54 ••• **CP** You are exploring a newly discovered planet. The radius of the planet is 6.90×10^7 m. You suspend a lead weight from the lower end of a light string that is 4.00 m long and has mass 0.0280 kg. You measure that it takes 0.0620 s for a transverse pulse to travel from the lower end to the upper end of the string. On the earth, for the same string and lead weight, it takes 0.0370 s for a transverse pulse to travel the length of the string. The weight of the string is small enough that you ignore its effect on the tension in the string. Assuming that the mass of the planet is distributed with spherical symmetry, what is its mass?

15.55 •• For a string stretched between two supports, two successive standing-wave frequencies are 535 Hz and 635 Hz. There are other standing-wave frequencies lower than 535 Hz and higher than 635 Hz. If the speed of transverse waves on the string is 390 m/s, what is the length of the string? Assume that the mass of the wire is small enough for its effect on the tension in the wire to be ignored.

15.56 •• Transverse standing waves are produced on a string that has length 0.800 m and is held fixed at each end. Each standing-wave pattern has a node at the fixed ends plus additional nodes along the length of the string. You measure the frequencies f_n for standing waves that have n of these nodes along their length. The tension in the string is kept constant. You plot n versus f_n and find that your data lie close to a straight line that has slope 7.30×10^{-3} s. What is the speed of transverse waves on the string?

15.57 ••• **CP** A 1.80-m-long uniform bar that weighs 539 N is suspended in a horizontal position by two vertical wires that are attached to the ceiling. One wire is aluminum and the other is copper. The aluminum wire is attached to the left-hand end of the bar, and the copper wire is attached 0.40 m to the left of the right-hand end. Each wire has length 0.600 m and a circular cross section with radius 0.320 mm. What is the fundamental frequency of transverse standing waves for each wire?

15.58 •• **CALC** A transverse standing wave is set up on a string that is held fixed at both ends. The amplitude of the standing wave at an antinode is 1.80 mm and the speed of propagation of transverse waves on the string is 260 m/s. The string extends along the x-axis, with one of the fixed ends at $x = 0$, so that there is a node at $x = 0$. The smallest value of x where there is an antinode is $x = 0.150$ m. (a) What is the maximum transverse speed of a point on the string at an antinode? (b) What is the maximum transverse speed of a point on the string at $x = 0.075$ m?

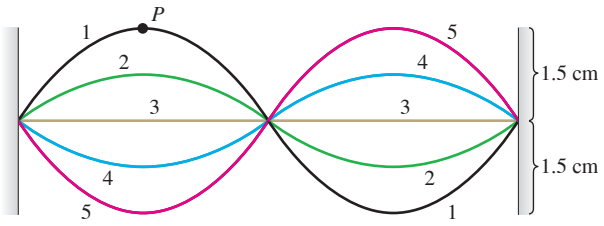
15.59 •• A horizontal wire is tied to supports at each end and vibrates in its second-overtone standing wave. The tension in the wire is 5.00 N, and the node-to-node distance in the standing wave is 6.28 cm. (a) What is the length of the wire? (b) A point at an antinode of the standing wave on the wire travels from its maximum upward displacement to its maximum downward displacement in 8.40 ms. What is the wire's mass?

15.60 ••• **CP** A vertical copper wire of length 1.20 m and diameter 1.024 mm has a 100.0 N ball hanging from it. (a) What is the wavelength of the third harmonic for this wire? (b) A 500.0 N ball now *replaces* the original ball. What is the change in the wavelength of the third harmonic caused by replacing the light ball with the heavy one? (*Hint:* See Table 11.1 for Young's modulus.)

15.61 ••• A sinusoidal transverse wave travels on a string. The string has length 7.80 m and mass 5.80 g. The wave speed is 35.0 m/s, and the wavelength is 0.250 m. (a) If the wave is to have an average power of 46.0 W, what must be the amplitude of the wave? (b) For this same string, if the amplitude and wavelength are the same as in part (a), what is the average power for the wave if the tension is increased such that the wave speed is doubled?

15.62 •• A vibrating string 46.0 cm long is under a tension of 0.950 N. The results from five successive stroboscopic pictures are shown in **Fig. P15.62**. The strobe rate is set at 5000 flashes per minute, and observations reveal that the maximum displacement occurred at flashes 1 and 5 with no other maxima in between. (a) Find the period, frequency, and wavelength for the traveling waves on this string. (b) In what normal mode (harmonic) is the string vibrating? (c) What is the speed of the traveling waves on the string? (d) How fast is point P moving when the string is in (i) position 1 and (ii) position 3? (e) What is the mass of this string?

Figure **P15.62**



15.63 ••• **CP** A 1.005 m chain consists of small spherical beads, each with a mass of 1.00 g and a diameter of 5.00 mm, threaded on an elastic strand with negligible mass such that adjacent beads are separated by a center-to-center distance of 10.0 mm. There are beads at each end of the chain. The strand has a spring constant of 28.8 N/m. The chain is stretched horizontally on a frictionless tabletop to a length of 1.50 m, and the beads at both ends are fixed in place. (a) What is the linear mass density of the chain? (b) What is the tension in the chain? (c) With what speed would a pulse travel down the chain? (d) The chain is set vibrating and exhibits a standing-wave pattern with four antinodes. What is the frequency of this motion? (e) If the beads are numbered sequentially from 1 to 101, what are the numbers of the five beads that remain motionless? (f) The 13th bead has a maximum speed of 7.54 m/s. What is the amplitude of that bead's motion? (g) If $x_0 = 0$ corresponds to the center of the 1st bead and $x_{101} = 1.50$ m corresponds to the center of the 101st bead, what is the position x_n of the nth bead? (h) What is the maximum speed of the 30th bead?

15.64 •• A strong string of mass 3.00 g and length 2.20 m is tied to supports at each end and is vibrating in its fundamental mode. The maximum transverse speed of a point at the middle of the string is 9.00 m/s. The tension in the string is 330 N. (a) What is the amplitude of the standing wave at its antinode? (b) What is the magnitude of the maximum transverse acceleration of a point at the antinode?

15.65 •• A thin string 2.50 m in length is stretched with a tension of 90.0 N between two supports. When the string vibrates in its first overtone, a point at an antinode of the standing wave on the string has an amplitude of 3.50 cm and a maximum transverse speed of 28.0 m/s. (a) What is the string's mass? (b) What is the magnitude of the maximum transverse acceleration of this point on the string?

15.66 ••• **CALC** A guitar string is vibrating in its fundamental mode, with nodes at each end. The length of the segment of the string that is free to vibrate is 0.382 m. The maximum transverse acceleration of a point at the middle of the segment is 8.70×10^3 m/s^2 and the maximum transverse velocity is 3.70 m/s. (a) What is the amplitude of this standing wave? (b) What is the wave speed for the transverse traveling waves on this string?

15.67 ••• A uniform cylindrical steel wire, 55.0 cm long and 1.14 mm in diameter, is fixed at both ends. To what tension must it be adjusted so that, when vibrating in its first overtone, it produces the note D-sharp of frequency 311 Hz? Assume that it stretches an insignificant amount. (*Hint:* See Table 12.1.)

15.68 •• A string with both ends held fixed is vibrating in its third harmonic. The waves have a speed of 192 m/s and a frequency of 240 Hz. The amplitude of the standing wave at an antinode is 0.400 cm. (a) Calculate the amplitude at points on the string a distance of (i) 40.0 cm; (ii) 20.0 cm; and (iii) 10.0 cm from the left end of the string. (b) At each point in part (a), how much time does it take the string to go from its largest upward displacement to its largest downward displacement? (c) Calculate the maximum transverse velocity and the maximum transverse acceleration of the string at each of the points in part (a).

15.69 ••• **CP** A large rock that weighs 164.0 N is suspended from the lower end of a thin wire that is 3.00 m long. The density of the rock is 3200 kg/m^3. The mass of the wire is small enough that its effect on the tension in the wire can be ignored. The upper end of the wire is held fixed. When the rock is in air, the fundamental frequency for transverse standing waves on the wire is 42.0 Hz. When the rock is totally submerged in a liquid, with the top of the rock just below the surface, the fundamental frequency for the wire is 28.0 Hz. What is the density of the liquid?

15.70 •• (a) Estimate the tension you would need to apply to a standard small rubber band to stretch it between your fingers to a doubled length of 10 cm. (b) Such a rubber band has a typical mass of 0.10 g. Use this value to estimate the mass density of the stretched rubber band. (c) Use your estimated values to determine the expected frequency of vibration when the string is plucked. (d) Is this result realistic?

15.71 •• **Tuning an Instrument.** A musician tunes the C-string of her instrument to a fundamental frequency of 65.4 Hz. The vibrating portion of the string is 0.625 m long and has a mass of 14.7 g. (a) With what tension must the musician stretch it? (b) What percent increase in tension is needed to increase the frequency from 65.4 Hz to 73.4 Hz, corresponding to a rise in pitch from C to D?

15.72 • **Holding Up Under Stress.** A string or rope will break apart if it is placed under too much tensile stress [see Eq. (11.8)]. Thicker ropes can withstand more tension without breaking because the thicker the rope, the greater the cross-sectional area and the smaller the stress. One type of steel has density 7810 kg/m^3 and will break if the tensile stress exceeds 7.0×10^8 N/m^2. You want to make a guitar string from 4.2 g of this type of steel. In use, the guitar string must be able to withstand a tension of 900 N without breaking. Your job is to determine (a) the maximum length and minimum radius the string can have; (b) the highest possible fundamental frequency of standing waves on this string, if the entire length of the string is free to vibrate.

15.73 •• **DATA** In your physics lab, an oscillator is attached to one end of a horizontal string. The other end of the string passes over a frictionless pulley. You suspend a mass M from the free end of the string, producing tension Mg in the string. The oscillator produces transverse waves of frequency f on the string. You don't vary this frequency during the experiment, but you try strings with three different linear mass densities μ. You also keep a fixed distance between the end of the string where the oscillator is attached and the point where the string is in contact with the pulley's rim. To produce standing waves on the string, you vary M; then you measure the node-to-node distance d for each standing-wave pattern and obtain the following data:

String	A	A	B	B	C
μ (g/cm)	0.0260	0.0260	0.0374	0.0374	0.0482
M (g)	559	249	365	207	262
d (cm)	48.1	31.9	32.0	24.2	23.8

(a) Explain why you obtain only certain values of d. (b) Graph μd^2 (in kg · m) versus M (in kg). Explain why the data plotted this way should fall close to a straight line. (c) Use the slope of the best straight-line fit to the data to determine the frequency f of the waves produced on the string by the oscillator. Take $g = 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$. (d) For string A ($\mu = 0.0260$ g/cm), what value of M (in grams) would be required to produce a standing wave with a node-to-node distance of 24.0 cm? Use the value of f that you calculated in part (c).

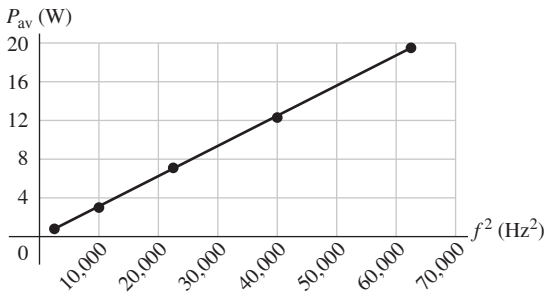
15.74 •• **DATA** *Scale length* is the length of the part of a guitar string that is free to vibrate. A standard value of scale length for an acoustic guitar is 648 mm. The frequency of the fundamental standing wave on a string is determined by the string's scale length, tension, and linear mass density. The standard frequencies f to which the strings of a six-string guitar are tuned are given in the table:

String	E2	A2	D3	G3	B3	E4
f (Hz)	82.4	110.0	146.8	196.0	246.9	329.6

Assume that a typical value of the tension of a guitar string is 78.0 N (although tension varies somewhat for different strings). (a) Calculate the linear mass density μ (in g/cm) for the E2, G3, and E4 strings. (b) Just before your band is going to perform, your G3 string breaks. The only replacement string you have is an E2. If your strings have the linear mass densities calculated in part (a), what must be the tension in the replacement string to bring its fundamental frequency to the G3 value of 196.0 Hz?

15.75 •• **DATA** You are measuring the frequency dependence of the average power P_{av} transmitted by traveling waves on a wire. In your experiment you use a wire with linear mass density 3.5 g/m. For a transverse wave on the wire with amplitude 4.0 mm, you measure P_{av} (in watts) as a function of the frequency f of the wave (in Hz). You have chosen to plot P_{av} as a function of f^2 (**Fig. P15.75**). (a) Explain why values of P_{av} plotted versus f^2 should be well fit by a straight line. (b) Use the slope of the straight-line fit to the data shown in Fig. P15.75 to calculate the speed of the waves. (c) What angular frequency ω would result in $P_{\text{av}} = 10.0$ W?

Figure **P15.75**

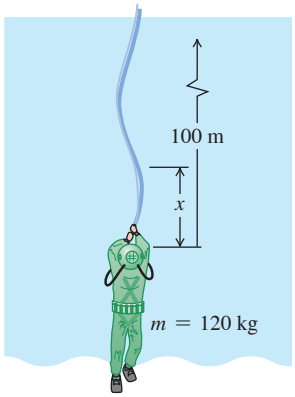


CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

15.76 •• A rectangular neoprene sheet has width $W = 1.00$ m and length $L = 4.00$ m. The two shorter edges are affixed to rigid steel bars that are used to stretch the sheet taut and horizontal. The force applied to either end of the sheet is $F = 81.0$ N. The sheet has a total mass $M = 4.00$ kg. The left edge of the sheet is wiggled vertically in a uniform sinusoidal motion with amplitude $A = 10.0$ cm and frequency $f = 1.00$ Hz. This sends waves spanning the width of the sheet rippling from left to right. The right side of the sheet moves upward and downward freely as these waves complete their traversal. (a) Use a two-dimensional generalization of the discussion in Section 15.4 to derive an expression for the velocity with which the waves move along the sheet in terms of generic values of *W, L, F, M, f,* and *A*. What is the value of this speed for the specified choices of these parameters? (b) If the positive x-axis is oriented rightward and the steel bars are parallel to the y-axis, the height of the sheet may be characterized as $z(x, y) = A\sin(kx - \omega t)$. What is the value of the wave number k? (c) Write down an expression with generic parameters for the rate of rightward energy transfer by the slice of sheet at a given value of x at generic time t. (d) The power at $x = 0$ is supplied by the agent wiggling the left bar upward and downward. How much energy is supplied each second by that agent? Express your answer in terms of generic parameters and also as a specific energy for the given parameters.

15.77 ••• **CP** **CALC** A deep-sea diver is suspended beneath the surface of Loch Ness by a 100-m-long cable that is attached to a boat on the surface (**Fig. P15.77**). The diver and his suit have a total mass of 120 kg and a volume of 0.0800 m^3. The cable has a diameter of 2.00 cm and a linear mass density of $\mu = 1.10$ kg/m. The diver thinks he sees something moving in the murky depths and jerks the end of the cable back and forth to send transverse waves up the cable as a signal to his companions in the boat. (a) What is the tension in the cable at its lower end, where it is attached to the diver? Do not forget to include the buoyant force that the water (density 1000 kg/m^3) exerts on him. (b) Calculate the tension in the cable a distance x above the diver. In your calculation, include the buoyant force on the cable. (c) The speed of transverse waves on the cable is given by $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$ [Eq. (15.14)]. The speed therefore varies along the cable, since the tension is not constant. (This expression ignores the damping force that the water exerts on the moving cable.) Integrate to find the time required for the first signal to reach the surface.

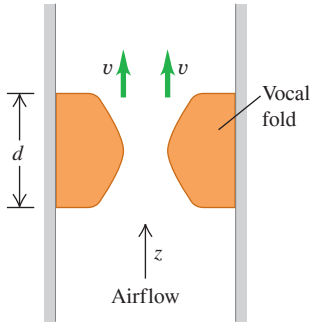
Figure **P15.77**



MCAT-STYLE PASSAGE PROBLEMS

BIO Waves on Vocal Folds. In the larynx, sound is produced by the vibration of the *vocal folds* (also called "vocal cords"). The accompanying figure is a cross section of the vocal tract at one instant in time. Air flows upward (in the $+z$-direction) through the vocal tract, causing a transverse wave to propagate vertically upward along the surface of the vocal folds. In a typical adult male, the thickness of the vocal folds in the direction of airflow is $d = 2.0$ mm. High-speed photography shows that for a frequency of vibration of $f = 125$ Hz, the wave along the surface of the vocal folds travels upward at a speed of $v = 375$ cm/s. Use t for time, z for displacement in the $+z$-direction, and λ for wavelength.

Figure **P15.79**

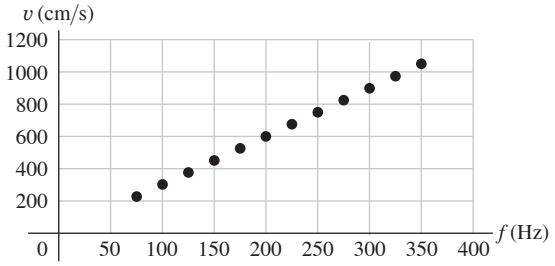


15.78 What is the wavelength of the wave that travels on the surface of the vocal folds when they are vibrating at frequency f? (a) 2.0 mm; (b) 3.3 mm; (c) 0.50 cm; (d) 3.0 cm.

15.79 Which of these is a possible mathematical description of the wave in Problem 15.78? (a) $A\sin[2\pi f(t + z/v)]$; (b) $A\sin[2\pi f(t - z/v)]$; (c) $A\sin(2\pi ft)\cos(2\pi z/\lambda)$; (d) $A\sin(2\pi ft)\sin(2\pi z/\lambda)$.

15.80 The wave speed is measured for different vibration frequencies. A graph of the wave speed as a function of frequency (**Fig. P15.80**) indicates that as the frequency increases, the wavelength (a) increases; (b) decreases; (c) doesn't change; (d) becomes undefined.

Figure **P15.80**



ANSWERS

Chapter Opening Question ?

(iii) The power of a mechanical wave depends on both its amplitude and its frequency [see Eq. (15.25)].

Key Example √ARIATION Problems

VP15.3.1 (a) 0.196 Hz (b) 5.98 m/s (c) 1.23 rad/s (d) 0.206 m^{-1}
VP15.3.2 (a) $T = 8.00 \times 10^{-3}$ s, $\lambda = 1.96$ m
(b) $f = 81.7$ Hz, $\omega = 513$ rad/s
VP15.3.3 (a) 111 m/s (b) 4.44 m
(c) $y(x = +2.50\text{ m}, t) = (5.00\text{ mm})\cos[(3.54\text{ rad}) - (157\text{ rad/s})t]$
VP15.3.4 (a) 36.0 m/s (b) 0.0193 kg/m
VP15.5.1 (a) 10.9 rad/s (b) 0.294 W
VP15.5.2 2.50×10^{-3} m
VP15.5.3 (a) 0.159 W/m^2 (b) 3.76 m
VP15.5.4 6.94×10^{-12} J
VP15.8.1 (a) 64.0 m/s (b) 2.25 m/s (c) 3.62×10^3 m/s^2
VP15.8.2 (a) 251 m/s (b) 145 N
VP15.8.3 (a) 1.20 m (b) 80.0 Hz (c) 1.90×10^{-2} kg/m
VP15.8.4 (a) 76.7 N (b) 1.34 m

Bridging Problem

(a) $F(r) = \dfrac{m\omega^2}{2L}(L^2 - r^2)$

(b) $v(r) = \omega\sqrt{\dfrac{L^2 - r^2}{2}}$

(c) $\dfrac{\pi}{\omega\sqrt{2}}$

? The sound from a horn travels more slowly on a cold winter day high in the mountains than on a warm summer day at sea level. This is because at high elevations in winter, the air has lower (i) pressure; (ii) density; (iii) humidity; (iv) temperature; (v) mass per mole.

16 Sound and Hearing

Of all the mechanical waves that occur in nature, the most important in our everyday lives are longitudinal waves in a medium—usually air—called sound waves. The reason is that the human ear is tremendously sensitive and can detect sound waves even of very low intensity. The ability to hear an unseen nocturnal predator was essential to the survival of our ancestors, so it is no exaggeration to say that we humans owe our existence to our highly evolved sense of hearing.

In Chapter 15 we described mechanical waves primarily in terms of displacement; however, because the ear is primarily sensitive to changes in pressure, it's often more appropriate to describe sound waves in terms of *pressure* fluctuations. We'll study the relationships among displacement, pressure fluctuation, and intensity and the connections between these quantities and human sound perception.

When a source of sound or a listener moves through the air, the listener may hear a frequency different from the one emitted by the source. This is the Doppler effect, which has important applications in medicine and technology.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

In this chapter, you'll learn...

- **16.1** How to describe a sound wave in terms of either particle displacements or pressure fluctuations.
- **16.2** How to calculate the speed of sound waves in different materials.
- **16.3** How to calculate the intensity of a sound wave.
- **16.4** What determines the particular frequencies of sound produced by an organ or a flute.
- **16.5** How resonance occurs in musical instruments.
- **16.6** What happens when sound waves from different sources overlap.
- **16.7** How to describe what happens when two sound waves of slightly different frequencies are combined.
- **16.8** Why the pitch of a siren changes as it moves past you.
- **16.9** Why an airplane flying faster than sound produces a shock wave.

You'll need to review...

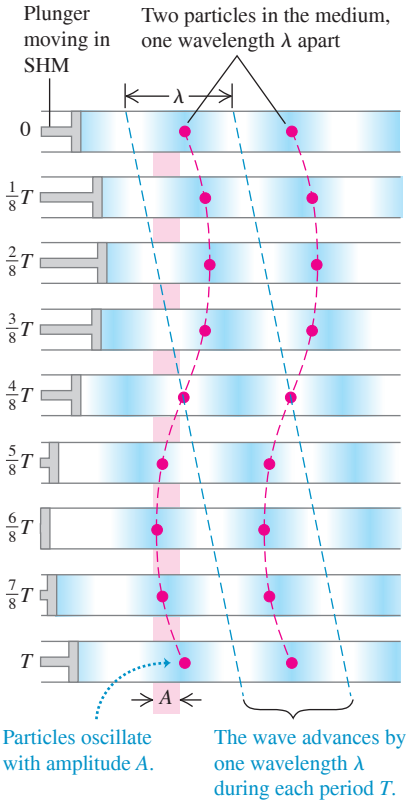
- **6.4** Power.
- **8.1** The impulse–momentum theorem.
- **11.4** Bulk modulus and Young's modulus.
- **12.2** Gauge pressure and absolute pressure.
- **14.8** Forced oscillations and resonance.
- **15.1–15.8** Mechanical waves.

16.1 SOUND WAVES

The most general definition of **sound** is a longitudinal wave in a medium. Our main concern is with sound waves in air, but sound can travel through any gas, liquid, or solid. You may be all too familiar with the propagation of sound through a solid if your neighbor's stereo speakers are right next to your wall.

The simplest sound waves are sinusoidal waves, which have definite frequency, amplitude, and wavelength. The human ear is sensitive to waves in the frequency range from about 20 to 20,000 Hz, called the **audible range,** but we also use the term "sound" for similar waves with frequencies above **(ultrasonic)** and below **(infrasonic)** the range of human hearing.

Figure **16.1** A sinusoidal longitudinal wave traveling to the right in a fluid. (Compare to Fig. 15.7.)



Sound waves usually travel outward in all directions from the source of sound, with an amplitude that depends on the direction and distance from the source. We'll return to this point in the next section. For now, we concentrate on the idealized case of a sound wave that propagates in the positive x-direction only. As we discussed in Section 15.3, for such a wave, the wave function $y(x, t)$ gives the instantaneous displacement y of a particle in the medium at position x at time t. If the wave is sinusoidal, we can express it by using Eq. (15.7):

$$y(x, t) = A\cos(kx - \omega t) \qquad \begin{matrix}\text{(sound wave propagating}\\ \text{in the } +x \text{ direction)}\end{matrix} \tag{16.1}$$

In a longitudinal wave the displacements are *parallel* to the direction of travel of the wave, so distances x and y are measured parallel to each other, not perpendicular as in a transverse wave. The amplitude A is the maximum displacement of a particle in the medium from its equilibrium position (**Fig. 16.1**). Hence A is also called the **displacement amplitude.**

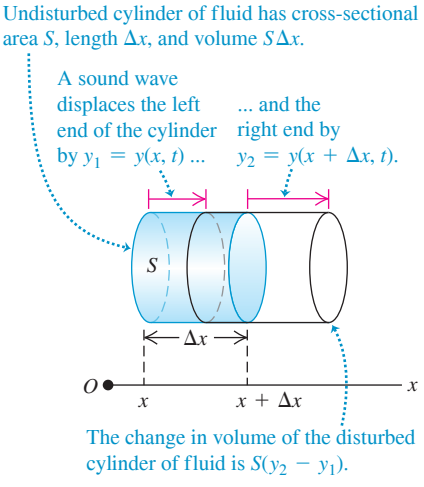
Sound Waves as Pressure Fluctuations

We can also describe sound waves in terms of variations of *pressure* at various points. In a sinusoidal sound wave in air, the pressure fluctuates sinusoidally above and below atmospheric pressure p_a with the same frequency as the motions of the air particles. The human ear operates by sensing such pressure variations. A sound wave entering the ear canal exerts a fluctuating pressure on one side of the eardrum; the air on the other side of the eardrum, vented to the outside by the Eustachian tube, is at atmospheric pressure. The pressure difference on the two sides of the eardrum sets it into motion. Microphones and similar devices also usually sense pressure differences, not displacements.

Let $p(x, t)$ be the instantaneous pressure fluctuation in a sound wave at any point x at time t. That is, $p(x, t)$ is the amount by which the pressure *differs* from normal atmospheric pressure p_a. Think of $p(x, t)$ as the *gauge pressure* defined in Section 12.2; it can be either positive or negative. The *absolute* pressure at a point is then $p_a + p(x, t)$.

To see the connection between the pressure fluctuation $p(x, t)$ and the displacement $y(x, t)$ in a sound wave propagating in the $+x$-direction, consider an imaginary cylinder of a wave medium (gas, liquid, or solid) with cross-sectional area S and its axis along the direction of propagation (**Fig. 16.2**). When no sound wave is present, the cylinder has length Δx and volume $V = S\,\Delta x$, as shown by the shaded volume in Fig. 16.2. When a wave is present, at time t the end of the cylinder that is initially at x is displaced by $y_1 = y(x, t)$, and the end that is initially at $x + \Delta x$ is displaced by $y_2 = y(x + \Delta x, t)$; this is shown by the red lines. If $y_2 > y_1$, as shown in Fig. 16.2, the cylinder's volume has increased, which causes a decrease in pressure. If $y_2 < y_1$, the cylinder's volume has decreased and the pressure has increased. If $y_2 = y_1$, the cylinder is simply shifted to the left or right; there is no volume change and no pressure fluctuation. The pressure fluctuation depends on the *difference* between the displacements at neighboring points in the medium.

Figure **16.2** As a sound wave propagates along the x-axis, the left and right ends undergo different displacements y_1 and y_2.



Quantitatively, the change in volume ΔV of the cylinder is

$$\Delta V = S(y_2 - y_1) = S[y(x + \Delta x, t) - y(x, t)]$$

In the limit as $\Delta x \to 0$, the fractional change in volume dV/V (volume change divided by original volume) is

$$\frac{dV}{V} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{S[y(x + \Delta x, t) - y(x, t)]}{S\,\Delta x} = \frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial x} \tag{16.2}$$

The fractional volume change is related to the pressure fluctuation by the bulk modulus B, which by definition [Eq. (11.3)] is $B = -p(x, t)/(dV/V)$ (see Section 11.4). Solving for $p(x, t)$, we have

$$p(x, t) = -B\frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial x} \tag{16.3}$$

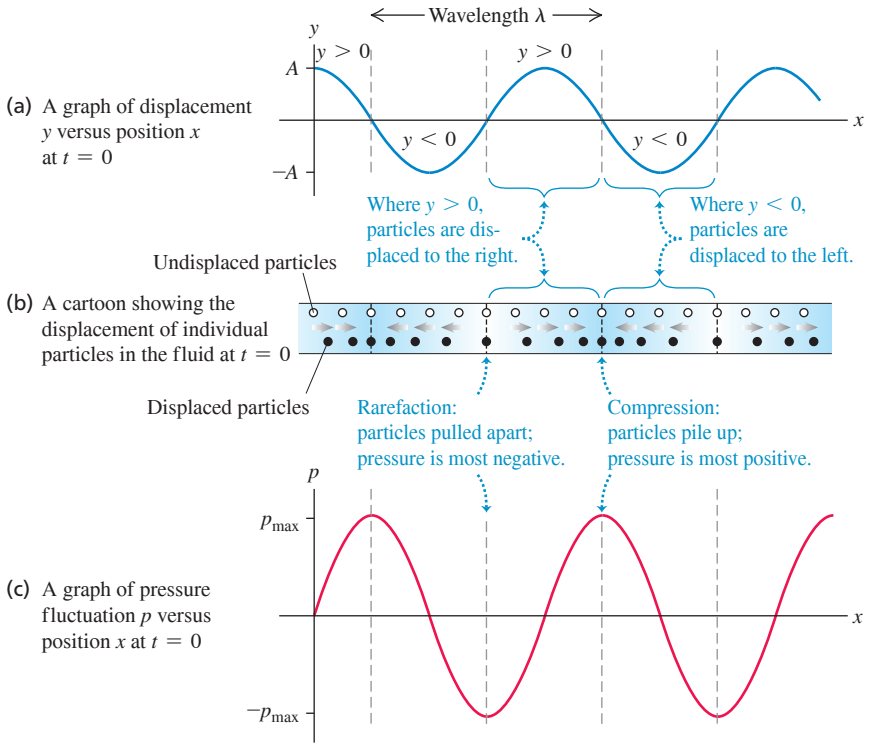


Figure **16.3** Three ways to describe a sound wave.

The negative sign arises because when $\partial y(x, t)/\partial x$ is positive, the displacement is greater at $x + \Delta x$ than at x, corresponding to an increase in volume, a decrease in pressure, and a negative pressure fluctuation.

When we evaluate $\partial y(x, t)/\partial x$ for the sinusoidal wave of Eq. (16.1), we find

$$p(x, t) = BkA \sin(kx - \omega t) \tag{16.4}$$

Figure 16.3 shows $y(x, t)$ and $p(x, t)$ for a sinusoidal sound wave at $t = 0$. It also shows how individual particles of the wave are displaced at this time. While $y(x, t)$ and $p(x, t)$ describe the same wave, these two functions are one-quarter cycle out of phase: At any time, the displacement is greatest where the pressure fluctuation is zero, and vice versa. In particular, note that the compressions (points of greatest pressure and density) and rarefactions (points of lowest pressure and density) are points of *zero* displacement.

Equation (16.4) shows that the quantity BkA represents the maximum pressure fluctuation. We call this the **pressure amplitude,** denoted by $p_{\max}$:

Pressure amplitude, sinusoidal sound wave

$$p_{\max} = BkA \tag{16.5}$$

Bulk modulus of medium; Displacement amplitude; Wave number $= 2\pi/\lambda$

Waves of shorter wavelength λ (larger wave number $k = 2\pi/\lambda$) have greater pressure variations for a given displacement amplitude because the maxima and minima are squeezed closer together. A medium with a large value of bulk modulus B is less compressible and so requires a greater pressure amplitude for a given volume change (that is, a given displacement amplitude).

CAUTION **Graphs of a sound wave** The graphs in Fig. 16.3 show the wave at only *one* instant of time. Because the wave is propagating in the $+x$-direction, as time goes by the wave patterns described by the functions $y(x, t)$ and $p(x, t)$ move to the right at the wave speed $v = \omega/k$. The particles, by contrast, simply oscillate back and forth in simple harmonic motion as shown in Fig. 16.1.

EXAMPLE 16.1 Amplitude of a sound wave in air

In a sinusoidal sound wave of moderate loudness, the maximum pressure variations are about 3.0×10^{-2} Pa above and below atmospheric pressure. Find the corresponding maximum displacement if the frequency is 1000 Hz. In air at normal atmospheric pressure and density, the speed of sound is 344 m/s and the bulk modulus is 1.42×10^5 Pa.

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem involves the relationship between two ways of describing a sound wave: in terms of displacement and in terms of pressure. The target variable is the displacement amplitude A. We are given the pressure amplitude p_{max}, wave speed v, frequency f, and bulk modulus B. Equation (16.5) relates the target variable A to p_{max}. We use $\omega = vk$ [Eq. (15.6)] to determine the wave number k from v and the angular frequency $\omega = 2\pi f$.

EXECUTE From Eq. (15.6),

$$k = \frac{\omega}{v} = \frac{2\pi f}{v} = \frac{(2\pi \text{ rad})(1000 \text{ Hz})}{344 \text{ m/s}} = 18.3 \text{ rad/m}$$

Then from Eq. (16.5), the maximum displacement is

$$A = \frac{p_{max}}{Bk} = \frac{3.0 \times 10^{-2} \text{ Pa}}{(1.42 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa})(18.3 \text{ rad/m})} = 1.2 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}$$

EVALUATE This displacement amplitude is only about $\frac{1}{100}$ the size of a human cell. The ear actually senses pressure fluctuations; it detects these minuscule displacements only indirectly.

KEYCONCEPT In a sound wave, the pressure amplitude (maximum pressure fluctuation) and displacement amplitude (maximum displacement of a particle in the medium) are proportional to each other. The proportionality constant depends on the wavelength of the sound and the bulk modulus of the medium.

EXAMPLE 16.2 Amplitude of a sound wave in the inner ear

A sound wave that enters the human ear sets the eardrum into oscillation, which in turn causes oscillation of the *ossicles,* a chain of three tiny bones in the middle ear (**Fig. 16.4**). The ossicles transmit this oscillation to the fluid (mostly water) in the inner ear; there the fluid motion disturbs hair cells that send nerve impulses to the brain with information about the sound. The area of the moving part of the eardrum is about 43 mm^2, and that of the stapes (the smallest of the ossicles) where it connects to the inner ear is about 3.2 mm^2. For the sound in Example 16.1, determine (a) the pressure amplitude and (b) the displacement amplitude of the wave in the fluid of the inner ear, in which the speed of sound is 1500 m/s.

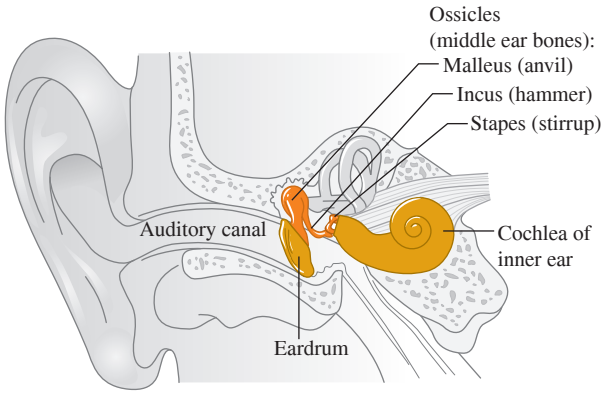
IDENTIFY and SET UP Although the sound wave here travels in liquid rather than air, the same principles and relationships among the properties of the wave apply. We can ignore the mass of the tiny ossicles (about 58 mg $= 5.8 \times 10^{-5}$ kg), so the force they exert on the inner-ear fluid is the same as that exerted on the eardrum and ossicles by the incident sound wave. (In Chapters 4 and 5 we used the same idea to say that the tension is the same at either end of a massless rope.) Hence the pressure amplitude in the inner ear, $p_{max\,(inner\ ear)}$, is greater than in the outside air, $p_{max\,(air)}$, because the same force is exerted on a smaller area (the area of the stapes versus the area of the eardrum). Given $p_{max\,(inner\ ear)}$, we find the displacement amplitude $A_{inner\ ear}$ from Eq. (16.5).

EXECUTE (a) From the area of the eardrum and the pressure amplitude in air found in Example 16.1, the maximum force exerted by the sound wave in air on the eardrum is $F_{max} = p_{max\,(air)} S_{eardrum}$. Then

$$p_{max\,(inner\ ear)} = \frac{F_{max}}{S_{stapes}} = p_{max\,(air)} \frac{S_{eardrum}}{S_{stapes}}$$

$$= (3.0 \times 10^{-2} \text{ Pa}) \frac{43 \text{ mm}^2}{3.2 \text{ mm}^2} = 0.40 \text{ Pa}$$

Figure **16.4** The anatomy of the human ear. The middle ear is the size of a small marble; the ossicles (incus, malleus, and stapes) are the smallest bones in the human body.



(b) To find the maximum displacement $A_{inner\ ear}$, we use $A = p_{max}/Bk$ as in Example 16.1. The inner-ear fluid is mostly water, which has a much greater bulk modulus B than air. From Table 11.2 the compressibility of water (unfortunately also called k) is 45.8×10^{-11} Pa^{-1}, so $B_{fluid} = 1/(45.8 \times 10^{-11} \text{ Pa}^{-1}) = 2.18 \times 10^9$ Pa.

The wave in the inner ear has the same angular frequency ω as the wave in the air because the air, eardrum, ossicles, and inner-ear fluid all oscillate together (see Example 15.8 in Section 15.8). But because the wave speed v is greater in the inner ear than in the air (1500 m/s versus 344 m/s), the wave number $k = \omega/v$ is smaller. Using the value of ω from Example 16.1, we find

$$k_{inner\ ear} = \frac{\omega}{v_{inner\ ear}} = \frac{(2\pi \text{ rad})(1000 \text{ Hz})}{1500 \text{ m/s}} = 4.2 \text{ rad/m}$$

Putting everything together, we have

$$A_{\text{inner ear}} = \frac{p_{\max\,(\text{inner ear})}}{B_{\text{fluid}}\,k_{\text{inner ear}}} = \frac{0.40\ \text{Pa}}{(2.18 \times 10^9\ \text{Pa})(4.2\ \text{rad/m})}$$
$$= 4.4 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}$$

EVALUATE In part (a) we see that the ossicles increase the pressure amplitude by a factor of $(43\ \text{mm}^2)/(3.2\ \text{mm}^2) = 13$. This amplification helps give the human ear its great sensitivity.

The displacement amplitude in the inner ear is even smaller than in the air. But *pressure* variations within the inner-ear fluid are what set the hair cells into motion, so what matters is that the pressure amplitude is larger in the inner ear than in the air.

KEYCONCEPT When a sound wave travels from one medium into a different medium, the wave frequency and angular frequency remain the same. The wave number and wavelength can change, however, as can the pressure amplitude and displacement amplitude.

Perception of Sound Waves

The physical characteristics of a sound wave are directly related to the perception of that sound by a listener. For a given frequency, the greater the pressure amplitude of a sinusoidal sound wave, the greater the perceived **loudness.** The relationship between pressure amplitude and loudness is not a simple one, and it varies from one person to another. One important factor is that the ear is not equally sensitive to all frequencies in the audible range. A sound at one frequency may seem louder than one of equal pressure amplitude at a different frequency. At 1000 Hz the minimum pressure amplitude that can be perceived with normal hearing is about 3×10^{-5} Pa; to produce the same loudness at 200 Hz or 15,000 Hz requires about 3×10^{-4} Pa. Perceived loudness also depends on the health of the ear. Age usually brings a loss of sensitivity at high frequencies.

The frequency of a sound wave is the primary factor in determining the **pitch** of a sound, the quality that lets us classify the sound as "high" or "low." The higher the frequency of a sound (within the audible range), the higher the pitch that a listener will perceive. Pressure amplitude also plays a role in determining pitch. When a listener compares two sinusoidal sound waves with the same frequency but different pressure amplitudes, the one with the greater pressure amplitude is usually perceived as louder but also as slightly lower in pitch.

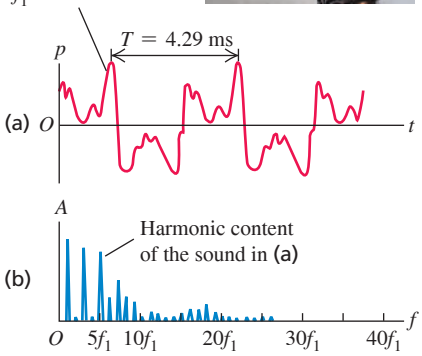
Musical sounds have wave functions that are more complicated than a simple sine function. **Figure 16.5a** shows the pressure fluctuation in the sound wave produced by a clarinet. The pattern is so complex because the column of air in a wind instrument like a clarinet vibrates at a fundamental frequency and at many harmonics at the same time. (In Section 15.8, we described this same behavior for a string that has been plucked, bowed, or struck. We'll examine the physics of wind instruments in Section 16.4.) The sound wave produced in the surrounding air has a similar amount of each harmonic—that is, a similar *harmonic content.* Figure 16.5b shows the harmonic content of the sound of a clarinet. The mathematical process of translating a pressure-time graph like Fig. 16.5a into a graph of harmonic content like Fig. 16.5b is called *Fourier analysis.*

Two tones produced by different instruments might have the same fundamental frequency (and thus the same pitch) but sound different because of different harmonic content. The difference in sound is called **timbre** and is often described in subjective terms such as reedy, mellow, and tinny. A tone that is rich in harmonics, like the clarinet tone in Figs. 16.5a and 16.5b, usually sounds thin and "reedy," while a tone containing mostly a fundamental, like the alto recorder tone in Figs. 16.5c and 16.5d, is more mellow and flute-like. The same principle applies to the human voice, which is another wind instrument; the vowels "a" and "e" sound different because of differences in harmonic content.

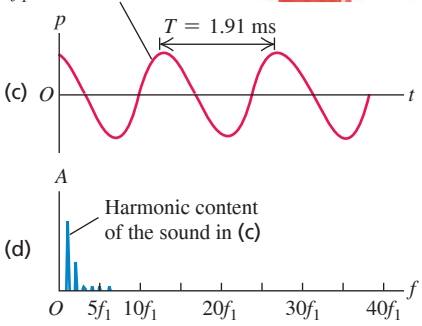
Another factor in determining tone quality is the behavior at the beginning (*attack*) and end (*decay*) of a tone. A piano tone begins with a thump and then dies away gradually. A harpsichord tone, in addition to having different harmonic content, begins much more quickly with a click, and the higher harmonics begin before the lower ones. When the key is released, the sound also dies away much more rapidly with a harpsichord than with a piano. Similar effects are present in other musical instruments.

Figure **16.5** Different representations of the sound of (a), (b) a clarinet and (c), (d) an alto recorder. (Graphs adapted from R.E. Berg and D.G. Stork, *The Physics of Sound,* Prentice-Hall, 1982.)

Pressure fluctuation versus time for a clarinet with fundamental frequency $f_1 = 233$ Hz



Pressure fluctuation versus time for an alto recorder with fundamental frequency $f_1 = 523$ Hz



BIO APPLICATION Hearing Loss from Amplified Sound Due to exposure to highly amplified music, many young musicians have suffered permanent ear damage and have hearing typical of persons 65 years of age. Headphones for personal music players used at high volume pose similar threats to hearing. Be careful!

Figure 16.6 When a wind instrument like this French horn is played, sound waves propagate through the air within the instrument's pipes. The properties of the sound that emerges from the large bell depend on the speed of these waves.

Unlike the tones made by musical instruments, **noise** is a combination of *all* frequencies, not just frequencies that are integer multiples of a fundamental frequency. (An extreme case is "white noise," which contains equal amounts of all frequencies across the audible range.) Examples include the sound of the wind and the hissing sound you make in saying the consonant "s."

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 16.1 You use an electronic signal generator to produce a sinusoidal sound wave in air. You then increase the frequency of the wave from 100 Hz to 400 Hz while keeping the pressure amplitude constant. What effect does this have on the displacement amplitude of the sound wave? (i) It becomes four times greater; (ii) it becomes twice as great; (iii) it is unchanged; (iv) it becomes $\frac{1}{2}$ as great; (v) it becomes $\frac{1}{4}$ as great.

ANSWER (v) From Eq. (16.5), the displacement amplitude is $A = p_{\max}/Bk$. The pressure amplitude $p_{\max}$ and bulk modulus B remain the same, but the frequency f increases by a factor of 4. Hence the wave number $k = \omega/v = 2\pi f/v$ also increases by a factor of 4. Since A is inversely proportional to k, the displacement amplitude becomes $\frac{1}{4}$ as great. In other words, at higher frequency a smaller maximum displacement is required to produce the same maximum pressure fluctuation.

16.2 SPEED OF SOUND WAVES

We found in Section 15.4 that the speed v of a transverse wave on a string depends on the string tension F and the linear mass density μ: $v = \sqrt{F/\mu}$. What, we may ask, is the corresponding expression for the speed of sound waves in a gas or liquid? On what properties of the medium does the speed depend?

We can make an educated guess about these questions by remembering a claim that we made in Section 15.4: For mechanical waves in general, the expression for the wave speed is of the form

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\text{Restoring force returning the system to equilibrium}}{\text{Inertia resisting the return to equilibrium}}}$$

A sound wave in a bulk fluid causes compressions and rarefactions of the fluid, so the restoring-force term in the above expression must be related to how difficult it is to compress the fluid. This is precisely what the bulk modulus B of the medium tells us. According to Newton's second law, inertia is related to mass. The "massiveness" of a bulk fluid is described by its density, or mass per unit volume, ρ. Hence we expect that the speed of sound waves should be of the form $v = \sqrt{B/\rho}$.

To check our guess, we'll derive the speed of sound waves in a fluid in a pipe. This is a situation of some importance, since all musical wind instruments are pipes in which a longitudinal wave (sound) propagates in a fluid (air) (**Fig. 16.6**). Human speech works on the same principle; sound waves propagate in your vocal tract, which is an air-filled pipe connected to the lungs at one end (your larynx) and to the outside air at the other end (your mouth). The steps in our derivation are completely parallel to those we used in Section 15.4 to find the speed of transverse waves.

Speed of Sound in a Fluid

Figure 16.7 shows a fluid with density ρ in a pipe with cross-sectional area A. In equilibrium (Fig. 16.7a), the fluid is at rest and under a uniform pressure p. We take the x-axis along the length of the pipe. This is also the direction in which we make a longitudinal wave propagate, so the displacement y is also measured along the pipe, just as in Section 16.1 (see Fig. 16.2).

At time $t = 0$ we start the piston at the left end moving toward the right with constant speed v_y. This initiates a wave motion that travels to the right along the length of the pipe, in which successive sections of fluid begin to move and become compressed at successively later times.

Figure 16.7b shows the fluid at time t. All portions of fluid to the left of point P are moving to the right with speed v_y, and all portions to the right of P are still at rest. The boundary between the moving and stationary portions travels to the right with a speed equal to

the speed of propagation or wave speed v. At time t the piston has moved a distance $v_y t$, and the boundary has advanced a distance vt. As with a transverse disturbance in a string, we can compute the speed of propagation from the impulse–momentum theorem.

The quantity of fluid set in motion in time t originally occupied a section of the cylinder with length vt, cross-sectional area A, volume vtA, and mass ρvtA. Its longitudinal momentum (that is, momentum along the length of the pipe) is

$$\text{Longitudinal momentum} = (\rho vtA)v_y$$

Next we compute the increase of pressure, Δp, in the moving fluid. The original volume of the moving fluid, Avt, has decreased by an amount $Av_y t$. From the definition of the bulk modulus B, Eq. (11.13) in Section 11.5,

$$B = \frac{-\text{Pressure change}}{\text{Fractional volume change}} = \frac{-\Delta p}{-Av_y t/Avt} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p = B\frac{v_y}{v}$$

The pressure in the moving fluid is $p + \Delta p$, and the force exerted on it by the piston is $(p + \Delta p)A$. The net force on the moving fluid (see Fig. 16.7b) is ΔpA, and the longitudinal impulse is

$$\text{Longitudinal impulse} = \Delta pAt = B\frac{v_y}{v}At$$

Because the fluid was at rest at time $t = 0$, the change in momentum up to time t is equal to the momentum at that time. Applying the impulse–momentum theorem (see Section 8.1), we find

$$B\frac{v_y}{v}At = \rho vtAv_y \tag{16.6}$$

When we solve this expression for v, we get

Speed of a longitudinal wave in a fluid

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \tag{16.7}$$

(B: Bulk modulus of fluid; ρ: Density of fluid)

which agrees with our educated guess.

While we derived Eq. (16.7) for waves in a pipe, it also applies to longitudinal waves in a bulk fluid, including sound waves traveling in air or water.

Speed of Sound in a Solid

When a longitudinal wave propagates in a *solid* rod or bar, the situation is somewhat different. The rod expands sideways slightly when it is compressed longitudinally, while a fluid in a pipe with constant cross section cannot move sideways. Using the same kind of reasoning that led us to Eq. (16.7), we can show that the speed of a longitudinal pulse in the rod is given by

Speed of a longitudinal wave in a solid rod

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{Y}{\rho}} \tag{16.8}$$

(Y: Young's modulus of rod material; ρ: Density of rod material)

We defined Young's modulus in Section 11.4.

CAUTION **Solid rods vs. bulk solids** Equation (16.8) applies to only rods whose sides are free to bulge and shrink a little as the wave travels. It does not apply to longitudinal waves in a *bulk* solid because sideways motion in any element of material is prevented by the surrounding material. The speed of longitudinal waves in a bulk solid depends on the density, the bulk modulus, and the *shear* modulus.

Note that Eqs. (16.7) and (16.8) are valid for sinusoidal and other periodic waves, not just for the special case discussed here.

Table 16.1 lists the speed of sound in several bulk materials. Sound waves travel more slowly in lead than in aluminum or steel because lead has a lower bulk modulus and shear modulus and a higher density.

Figure **16.7** A sound wave propagating in a fluid confined to a tube. (a) Fluid in equilibrium. (b) A time t after the piston begins moving to the right at speed v_y, the fluid between the piston and point P is in motion. The speed of sound waves is v.

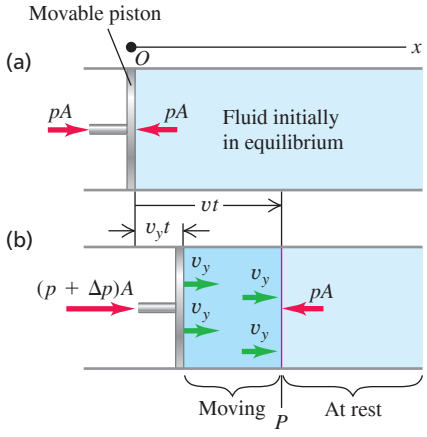


TABLE 16.1 Speed of Sound in Various Bulk Materials

Material	Speed of Sound (m/s)
Gases	
Air (20°C)	344
Helium (20°C)	999
Hydrogen (20°C)	1330
Liquids	
Liquid helium (4 K)	211
Mercury (20°C)	1451
Water (0°C)	1402
Water (20°C)	1482
Water (100°C)	1543
Solids	
Aluminum	6420
Lead	1960
Steel	5941

EXAMPLE 16.3 Wavelength of sonar waves

A ship uses a sonar system (**Fig. 16.8**) to locate underwater objects. Find the speed of sound waves in water using Eq. (16.7), and find the wavelength of a 262 Hz wave.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variables are the speed and wavelength of a sound wave in water. In Eq. (16.7), we use the density of water, $\rho = 1.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$, and the bulk modulus of water, which we find from the compressibility (see Table 11.2). Given the speed and the frequency $f = 262$ Hz, we find the wavelength from $v = f\lambda$.

EXECUTE In Example 16.2, we used Table 11.2 to find $B = 2.18 \times 10^9$ Pa. Then

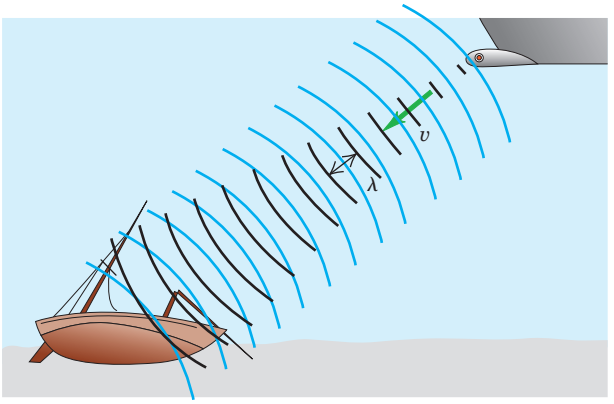
$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} = \sqrt{\frac{2.18 \times 10^9\ \text{Pa}}{1.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3}} = 1476\ \text{m/s}$$

and

$$\lambda = \frac{v}{f} = \frac{1476\ \text{m/s}}{262\ \text{s}^{-1}} = 5.64\ \text{m}$$

EVALUATE The calculated value of v agrees well with the value in Table 16.1. Water is denser than air (ρ is larger) but is also much more incompressible (B is much larger), and so the speed $v = \sqrt{B/\rho}$ is greater than the 344 m/s speed of sound in air at ordinary temperatures. The relationship $\lambda = v/f$ then says that a sound wave in water must have a longer wavelength than a wave of the same frequency in air. Indeed, we found in Example 15.1 (Section 15.2) that a 262 Hz sound wave in air has a wavelength of only 1.31 m.

Figure **16.8** A sonar system uses underwater sound waves to detect and locate submerged objects.



KEYCONCEPT The speed of sound waves in a fluid depends on the fluid's bulk modulus and density. A sound wave of a given frequency has a longer wavelength in a medium that has a faster sound speed.

Figure **16.9** This three-dimensional image of a fetus in the womb was made using a sequence of ultrasound scans. Each individual scan reveals a two-dimensional "slice" through the fetus; many such slices were then combined digitally. Ultrasound imaging is also used to study heart valve action and to detect tumors.

Dolphins emit high-frequency sound waves (typically 100,000 Hz) and use the echoes for guidance and for hunting. The corresponding wavelength in water is 1.48 cm. With this high-frequency "sonar" system they can sense objects that are roughly as small as the wavelength (but not much smaller). *Ultrasonic imaging* in medicine uses the same principle; sound waves of very high frequency and very short wavelength, called *ultrasound,* are scanned over the human body, and the "echoes" from interior organs are used to create an image. With ultrasound of frequency 5 MHz $= 5 \times 10^6$ Hz, the wavelength in water (the primary constituent of the body) is 0.3 mm, and features as small as this can be discerned in the image (**Fig. 16.9**). Ultrasound is more sensitive than x rays in distinguishing various kinds of tissues and does not have the radiation hazards associated with x rays.

Speed of Sound in a Gas

Most of the sound waves that we encounter propagate in air. To use Eq. (16.7) to find the speed of sound waves in air, we note that the bulk modulus of a gas depends on pressure: The greater the pressure applied to compress a gas, the more it resists further compression and hence the greater the bulk modulus. (That's why specific values of the bulk modulus for gases are not given in Table 11.1.) The expression for the bulk modulus of a gas for use in Eq. (16.7) is

$$B = \gamma p_0 \tag{16.9}$$

where p_0 is the equilibrium pressure of the gas. The quantity γ (the Greek letter gamma) is called the *ratio of heat capacities.* It is a dimensionless number that characterizes the thermal properties of the gas. (We'll learn more about this quantity in Chapter 19.) As an example, the ratio of heat capacities for air is $\gamma = 1.40$. At normal atmospheric pressure $p_0 = 1.013 \times 10^5$ Pa, so $B = (1.40)(1.013 \times 10^5\ \text{Pa}) = 1.42 \times 10^5$ Pa. This value is minuscule compared to the bulk modulus of a typical solid (see Table 11.1), which is approximately 10^{10} to 10^{11} Pa. This shouldn't be surprising: It's simply a statement that air is far easier to compress than steel.

The density ρ of a gas also depends on the pressure, which in turn depends on the temperature. It turns out that the ratio B/ρ for a given type of ideal gas does *not* depend on the pressure at all, only the temperature. From Eq. (16.7), this means that the speed of sound in a gas is fundamentally a function of temperature T:

Speed of sound in an ideal gas

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma RT}{M}} \tag{16.10}$$

(γ: Ratio of heat capacities; R: Gas constant; T: Absolute temperature; M: Molar mass)

This expression incorporates several quantities that we'll study in Chapters 17, 18, and 19. The temperature T is the *absolute* temperature in kelvins (K), equal to the Celsius temperature plus 273.15; thus 20.00°C corresponds to $T = 293.15$ K. The quantity M is the *molar mass,* or mass per mole of the substance of which the gas is composed. The *gas constant* R has the same value for all gases. The current best numerical value of R is

$$R = 8.3144598(48)\ \text{J/mol} \cdot \text{K}$$

which for practical calculations we can write as 8.314 J/mol · K.

For any particular gas, γ, R, and M are constants, and the wave speed is proportional to the square root of the absolute temperature. We'll see in Chapter 18 that Eq. (16.10) is almost identical to the expression for the average speed of molecules in an ideal gas. This shows that sound speeds and molecular speeds are closely related.

EXAMPLE 16.4 Speed of sound in air

Find the speed of sound in air at $T = 20$°C, and find the range of wavelengths in air to which the human ear (which can hear frequencies in the range of 20–20,000 Hz) is sensitive. The mean molar mass for air (a mixture of mostly nitrogen and oxygen) is $M = 28.8 \times 10^{-3}$ kg/mol and the ratio of heat capacities is $\gamma = 1.40$.

IDENTIFY and SET UP We use Eq. (16.10) to find the sound speed from γ, T, and M, and we use $v = f\lambda$ to find the wavelengths corresponding to the frequency limits. Note that in Eq. (16.10) temperature T *must* be expressed in kelvins, not degrees Celsius.

EXECUTE At $T = 20$°C $= 293$ K, we find

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma RT}{M}} = \sqrt{\frac{(1.40)(8.314\ \text{J/mol} \cdot \text{K})(293\ \text{K})}{28.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg/mol}}} = 344\ \text{m/s}$$

Using this value of v in $\lambda = v/f$, we find that at 20°C the frequency $f = 20$ Hz corresponds to $\lambda = 17$ m and $f = 20{,}000$ Hz to $\lambda = 1.7$ cm.

EVALUATE Our calculated value of v agrees with the measured sound speed at $T = 20$°C.

KEYCONCEPT The speed of sound in a gas is determined by the temperature of the gas, its molar mass, and its ratio of heat capacities.

A gas is actually composed of molecules in random motion, separated by distances that are large in comparison with their diameters. The vibrations that constitute a wave in a gas are superposed on the random thermal motion. At atmospheric pressure, a molecule travels an average distance of about 10^{-7} m between collisions, while the displacement amplitude of a faint sound may be only 10^{-9} m. We can think of a gas with a sound wave passing through as being comparable to a swarm of bees; the swarm as a whole oscillates slightly while individual insects move about within the swarm, apparently at random.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 16.2 Mercury is 13.6 times denser than water. Based on Table 16.1, at 20°C which of these liquids has the greater bulk modulus? (i) Mercury; (ii) water; (iii) both are about the same; (iv) not enough information is given to decide.

ANSWER (i) From Eq. (16.7), the speed of longitudinal waves (sound) in a fluid is $v = \sqrt{B/\rho}$. We can rewrite this to give an expression for the bulk modulus B in terms of the fluid density ρ and the sound speed v: $B = \rho v^2$. At 20°C the speed of sound in mercury is slightly less than in water (1451 m/s versus 1482 m/s), but the density of mercury is greater than that of water by a large factor (13.6). Hence the bulk modulus of mercury is greater than that of water by a factor of $(13.6)(1451/1482)^2 = 13.0$.

16.3 SOUND INTENSITY

Traveling sound waves, like all other traveling waves, transfer energy from one region of space to another. In Section 15.5 we introduced the *wave intensity* I, equal to the time average rate at which wave energy is transported per unit area across a surface perpendicular to the direction of propagation. Let's see how to express the intensity of a sound wave in a fluid in terms of the displacement amplitude A or pressure amplitude $p_{\max}$.

Let's consider a sound wave propagating in the $+x$-direction so that we can use our expressions from Section 16.1 for the displacement $y(x, t)$ [Eq. (16.1)] and pressure fluctuation $p(x, t)$ [Eq. (16.4)]. In Section 6.4 we saw that power equals the product of force and velocity [see Eq. (6.18)]. So the power per unit area in this sound wave equals the product of $p(x, t)$ (force per unit area) and the *particle* velocity $v_y(x, t)$, which is the velocity at time t of that portion of the wave medium at coordinate x. Using Eqs. (16.1) and (16.4), we find

$$v_y(x, t) = \frac{\partial y(x, t)}{\partial t} = \omega A \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} p(x, t)v_y(x, t) &= [BkA \sin(kx - \omega t)][\omega A \sin(kx - \omega t)] \\ &= B\omega k A^2 \sin^2(kx - \omega t) \end{aligned}$$

CAUTION **Wave velocity vs. particle velocity** Remember that the velocity of the wave as a whole is *not* the same as the particle velocity. While the wave continues to move in the direction of propagation, individual particles in the wave medium merely slosh back and forth, as shown in Fig. 16.1. Furthermore, the maximum speed of a particle of the medium can be very different from the wave speed.

The intensity is the time average value of the power per unit area $p(x, t)v_y(x, t)$. For any value of x the average value of the function $\sin^2(kx - \omega t)$ over one period $T = 2\pi/\omega$ is $\frac{1}{2}$, so

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2} B\omega k A^2 \tag{16.11}$$

Using the relationships $\omega = vk$ and $v = \sqrt{B/\rho}$, we can rewrite Eq. (16.11) as

Intensity of a sinusoidal sound wave in a fluid

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{\rho B}\,\omega^2 A^2 \tag{16.12}$$

(ω: Angular frequency $= 2\pi f$; A: Displacement amplitude; ρ: Density of fluid; B: Bulk modulus of fluid)

It is usually more useful to express I in terms of the pressure amplitude $p_{\max}$. Using Eqs. (16.5) and (16.12) and the relationship $\omega = vk$, we find

$$I = \frac{\omega p_{\max}^{\,2}}{2Bk} = \frac{v p_{\max}^{\,2}}{2B} \tag{16.13}$$

By using the wave speed relationship $v = \sqrt{B/\rho}$, we can also write Eq. (16.13) in the alternative forms

Intensity of a sinusoidal sound wave in a fluid

$$I = \frac{p_{\max}^{\,2}}{2\rho v} = \frac{p_{\max}^{\,2}}{2\sqrt{\rho B}} \tag{16.14}$$

(Pressure amplitude; Density of fluid; Wave speed; Bulk modulus of fluid)

You should verify these expressions. Comparison of Eqs. (16.12) and (16.14) shows that sinusoidal sound waves of the same intensity but different frequency have different displacement amplitudes A but the *same* pressure amplitude $p_{\max}$. This is another reason it is usually more convenient to describe a sound wave in terms of pressure fluctuations, not displacement.

The *total* average power carried across a surface by a sound wave equals the product of the intensity at the surface and the surface area, if the intensity over the surface is uniform. The total average sound power emitted by a person speaking in an ordinary conversational tone is about 10^{-5} W, while a loud shout corresponds to about 3×10^{-2} W. If all the residents of New York City were to talk at the same time, the total sound power would be about 100 W, equivalent to the electric power requirement of a medium-sized light bulb. On the other hand, the power required to fill a large auditorium or stadium with loud sound is considerable (see Example 16.7).

If the sound source emits waves in all directions equally, the intensity decreases with increasing distance r from the source according to the inverse-square law (Section 15.5): The intensity is proportional to $1/r^2$. The intensity can be increased by confining the sound waves to travel in the desired direction only (**Fig. 16.10**), although the $1/r^2$ law still applies.

The inverse-square relationship also does not apply indoors because sound energy can reach a listener by reflection from the walls and ceiling. Indeed, part of the architect's job in designing an auditorium is to tailor these reflections so that the intensity is as nearly uniform as possible over the entire auditorium.

Figure **16.10** By cupping your hands like this, you direct the sound waves emerging from your mouth so that they don't propagate to the sides. Hence you can be heard at greater distances.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY 16.1 Sound Intensity

IDENTIFY *the relevant concepts:* The relationships between the intensity and amplitude of a sound wave are straightforward. Other quantities are involved in these relationships, however, so it's particularly important to decide which is your target variable.

SET UP *the problem* using the following steps:

1. Sort the physical quantities into categories. Wave properties include the displacement and pressure amplitudes A and p_{max}. The frequency f can be determined from the angular frequency ω, the wave number k, or the wavelength λ. These quantities are related through the wave speed v, which is determined by properties of the medium (B and ρ for a liquid, and γ, T, and M for a gas).
2. List the given quantities and identify the target variables. Find relationships that take you where you want to go.

EXECUTE *the solution:* Use your selected equations to solve for the target variables. Express the temperature in kelvins (Celsius temperature plus 273.15) to calculate the speed of sound in a gas.

EVALUATE *your answer:* If possible, use an alternative relationship to check your results.

EXAMPLE 16.5 Intensity of a sound wave in air

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Find the intensity of the sound wave in Example 16.1, with $p_{max} = 3.0 \times 10^{-2}$ Pa. Assume the temperature is 20°C so that the density of air is $\rho = 1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3$ and the speed of sound is $v = 344$ m/s.

IDENTIFY and SET UP Our target variable is the intensity I of the sound wave. We are given the pressure amplitude p_{max} of the wave as well as the density ρ and wave speed v for the medium. We can determine I from p_{max}, ρ, and v from Eq. (16.14).

EXECUTE From Eq. (16.14),

$$I = \frac{p_{max}^2}{2\rho v} = \frac{(3.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{Pa})^2}{2(1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3)(344\ \text{m/s})}$$

$$= 1.1 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{J/(s} \cdot \text{m}^2) = 1.1 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{W/m}^2$$

EVALUATE This seems like a very low intensity, but it is well within the range of sound intensities encountered on a daily basis. A very loud sound wave at the threshold of pain has a pressure amplitude of about 30 Pa and an intensity of about 1 W/m^2. The pressure amplitude of the faintest sound wave that can be heard is about 3×10^{-5} Pa, and the corresponding intensity is about $10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2$. (Try these values of p_{max} in Eq. (16.14) to check that the corresponding intensities are as we have stated.)

KEYCONCEPT The intensity (power per unit area) of a sound wave is proportional to the square of the pressure amplitude of the wave. The proportionality constant depends on the density of the medium and the speed of sound in the medium.

EXAMPLE 16.6 Same intensity, different frequencies

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

What are the pressure and displacement amplitudes of a 20 Hz sound wave with the same intensity as the 1000 Hz sound wave of Examples 16.1 and 16.5?

IDENTIFY and SET UP In Examples 16.1 and 16.5 we found that for a 1000 Hz sound wave with $p_{max} = 3.0 \times 10^{-2}$ Pa, $A = 1.2 \times 10^{-8}$ m and $I = 1.1 \times 10^{-6}$ W/m^2. Our target variables are p_{max} and A for a 20 Hz sound wave of the same intensity I. We can find these using Eqs. (16.14) and (16.12), respectively.

EXECUTE We can rearrange Eqs. (16.14) and (16.12) as ${p_{max}}^2 = 2I\sqrt{\rho B}$ and $\omega^2 A^2 = 2I/\sqrt{\rho B}$, respectively. These tell us that for a given sound intensity I in a given medium (constant ρ and B), the quantities p_{max} and ωA (or, equivalently, fA) are *constants* that don't depend on frequency. From the first result we immediately have $p_{max} = 3.0 \times 10^{-2}$ Pa for $f = 20$ Hz, the same as for $f = 1000$ Hz. If we write the second result as $f_{20}A_{20} = f_{1000}A_{1000}$, we have

$$A_{20} = \left(\frac{f_{1000}}{f_{20}}\right)A_{1000}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1000\ \text{Hz}}{20\ \text{Hz}}\right)(1.2 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m}) = 6.0 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} = 0.60\ \mu\text{m}$$

EVALUATE Our result reinforces the idea that pressure amplitude is a more convenient description of a sound wave and its intensity than displacement amplitude.

KEYCONCEPT If two sound waves in a given medium have the same intensity but different frequencies, the wave with the higher frequency has the greater *displacement* amplitude. The two waves have the same *pressure* amplitude, however.

EXAMPLE 16.7 "Play it loud!"

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

For an outdoor concert we want the sound intensity to be 1 W/m^2 at a distance of 20 m from the speaker array. If the sound intensity is uniform in all directions, what is the required average acoustic power output of the array?

IDENTIFY, SET UP, and EXECUTE This example uses the definition of sound intensity as power per unit area. The total power is the target variable; the area in question is a hemisphere centered on the speaker array. We assume that the speakers are on the ground and that none of the acoustic power is directed into the ground, so the acoustic power is uniform over a hemisphere 20 m in radius. The surface area of this hemisphere is $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(4\pi)(20\ \text{m})^2$, or about 2500 m^2. The required power is the product of this area and the intensity: $(1\ \text{W/m}^2)(2500\ \text{m}^2) = 2500\ \text{W} = 2.5\ \text{kW}$.

EVALUATE The electrical power input to the speaker would need to be considerably greater than 2.5 kW, because speaker efficiency is not very high (typically a few percent for ordinary speakers, and up to 25% for horn-type speakers).

KEYCONCEPT To find the acoustic power output of a source of sound, multiply the area over which the emitted sound wave is distributed by the average intensity of the sound over that area.

The Decibel Scale

Because the ear is sensitive over a broad range of intensities, a *logarithmic* measure of intensity called **sound intensity level** is often used:

$$\beta = (10\ \text{dB}) \log \frac{I}{I_0} \tag{16.15}$$

Sound intensity level; Intensity of sound wave; Reference intensity $= 10^{-12}$ W/m^2; Logarithm to base 10

The chosen reference intensity I_0 in Eq. (16.15) is approximately the threshold of human hearing at 1000 Hz. Sound intensity levels are expressed in **decibels,** abbreviated dB. A decibel is $\frac{1}{10}$ of a *bel,* a unit named for Alexander Graham Bell (the inventor of the telephone). The bel is inconveniently large for most purposes, and the decibel is the usual unit of sound intensity level.

If the intensity of a sound wave equals I_0 or 10^{-12} W/m^2, its sound intensity level is $\beta = 0$ dB. An intensity of 1 W/m^2 corresponds to 120 dB. **Table 16.2** gives the sound intensity levels of some familiar sounds. You can use Eq. (16.15) to check the value of β given for each intensity in the table.

Because the ear is not equally sensitive to all frequencies in the audible range, some sound-level meters weight the various frequencies unequally. One such scheme leads to the so-called dBA scale; this scale deemphasizes the low and very high frequencies, where the ear is less sensitive.

TABLE 16.2 Sound Intensity Levels from Various Sources (Representative Values)

Source or Description of Sound	Sound Intensity Level, β (dB)	Intensity, I (W/m^2)
Military jet aircraft 30 m away	140	10^{2}
Threshold of pain	120	1
Riveter	95	3.2×10^{-3}
Elevated train	90	10^{-3}
Busy street traffic	70	10^{-5}
Ordinary conversation	65	3.2×10^{-6}
Quiet automobile	50	10^{-7}
Quiet radio in home	40	10^{-8}
Average whisper	20	10^{-10}
Rustle of leaves	10	10^{-11}
Threshold of hearing at 1000 Hz	0	10^{-12}

EXAMPLE 16.8 Temporary—or permanent—hearing loss

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

A 10 min exposure to 120 dB sound will temporarily shift your threshold of hearing at 1000 Hz from 0 dB up to 28 dB. Ten years of exposure to 92 dB sound will cause a *permanent* shift to 28 dB. What sound intensities correspond to 28 dB and 92 dB?

IDENTIFY and SET UP We are given two sound intensity levels β; our target variables are the corresponding intensities. We can solve Eq. (16.15) to find the intensity I that corresponds to each value of β.

EXECUTE We solve Eq. (16.15) for I by dividing both sides by 10 dB and using the relationship $10^{\log x} = x$:

$$I = I_0 10^{\beta/(10\text{ dB})}$$

For $\beta = 28$ dB and $\beta = 92$ dB, the exponents are $\beta/(10\text{ dB}) = 2.8$ and 9.2, respectively, so that

$$I_{28\text{ dB}} = (10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)10^{2.8} = 6.3 \times 10^{-10}\text{ W/m}^2$$
$$I_{92\text{ dB}} = (10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)10^{9.2} = 1.6 \times 10^{-3}\text{ W/m}^2$$

EVALUATE If your answers are a factor of 10 too large, you may have entered 10×10^{-12} in your calculator instead of 1×10^{-12}. Be careful!

KEYCONCEPT The sound intensity level (in decibels, or dB) is a logarithmic measure of the intensity of a sound wave. Adding 10 dB to the sound intensity level corresponds to multiplying the intensity by a factor of 10.

EXAMPLE 16.9 A bird sings in a meadow

WITH √ARIATION PROBLEMS

Consider an idealized bird (treated as a point source) that emits constant sound power, with intensity obeying the inverse-square law (**Fig. 16.11**). If you move twice the distance from the bird, by how many decibels does the sound intensity level drop?

IDENTIFY and SET UP The decibel scale is logarithmic, so the *difference* between two sound intensity levels (the target variable) corresponds to the *ratio* of the corresponding intensities, which is determined by the inverse-square law. We label the two points P_1 and P_2 (Fig. 16.11). We use Eq. (16.15), the definition of sound intensity level, at each point. We use Eq. (15.26), the inverse-square law, to relate the intensities at the two points.

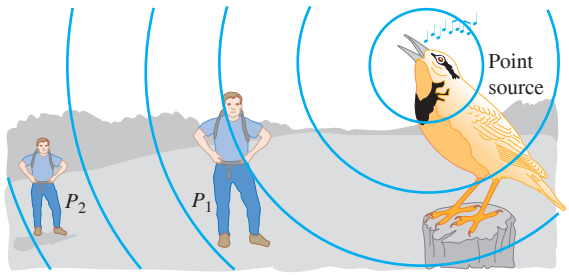
EXECUTE The difference $\beta_2 - \beta_1$ between any two sound intensity levels is related to the corresponding intensities by

$$\begin{aligned}\beta_2 - \beta_1 &= (10\text{ dB})\left(\log\frac{I_2}{I_0} - \log\frac{I_1}{I_0}\right)\\ &= (10\text{ dB})[(\log I_2 - \log I_0) - (\log I_1 - \log I_0)]\\ &= (10\text{ dB})\log\frac{I_2}{I_1}\end{aligned}$$

For this inverse-square-law source, Eq. (15.26) yields $I_2/I_1 = r_1^2/r_2^2 = \frac{1}{4}$, so

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = (10\text{ dB})\log\frac{I_2}{I_1} = (10\text{ dB})\log\tfrac{1}{4} = -6.0\text{ dB}$$

Figure **16.11** When you double your distance from a point source of sound, by how much does the sound intensity level decrease?



EVALUATE Our result is negative, which tells us (correctly) that the sound intensity level is less at P_2 than at P_1. The 6 dB difference doesn't depend on the sound intensity level at P_1; *any* doubling of the distance from an inverse-square-law source reduces the sound intensity level by 6 dB.

Note that the perceived *loudness* of a sound is not directly proportional to its intensity. For example, most people interpret an increase of 8 dB to 10 dB in sound intensity level (corresponding to increasing intensity by a factor of 6 to 10) as a doubling of loudness.

KEYCONCEPT The *difference* between the sound intensity levels of two sounds is proportional to the logarithm of the *ratio* of the intensities of those sounds.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 16.3 You double the intensity of a sound wave in air while leaving the frequency unchanged. (The pressure, density, and temperature of the air remain unchanged as well.) What effect does this have on the displacement amplitude, pressure amplitude, bulk modulus, sound speed, and sound intensity level?

ANSWER **A and p_{max} increase by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$, B and v are unchanged, β increases by 3.0 dB** Equations (16.9) and (16.10) show that the bulk modulus B and sound speed v remain the same because the physical properties of the air are unchanged. From Eqs. (16.12) and (16.14), the intensity is proportional to the square of the displacement amplitude or the square of the pressure amplitude. Hence doubling the intensity means that A and p_{max} both increase by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$. Example 16.9 shows that *multiplying* the intensity by a factor of 2 $(I_2/I_1 = 2)$ corresponds to *adding* to the sound intensity level by $(10\text{ dB})\log(I_2/I_1) = (10\text{ dB})\log 2 = 3.0\text{ dB}$.

16.4 STANDING SOUND WAVES AND NORMAL MODES

When longitudinal (sound) waves propagate in a fluid in a pipe, the waves are reflected from the ends in the same way that transverse waves on a string are reflected at its ends. The superposition of the waves traveling in opposite directions again forms a standing wave. Just as for transverse standing waves on a string (see Section 15.7), standing sound waves in a pipe can be used to create sound waves in the surrounding air. This is the principle of the human voice as well as many musical instruments, including woodwinds, brasses, and pipe organs.

Transverse waves on a string, including standing waves, are usually described only in terms of the displacement of the string. But, as we have seen, sound waves in a fluid may be described either in terms of the displacement of the fluid or in terms of the pressure variation in the fluid. To avoid confusion, we'll use the terms **displacement node** and **displacement antinode** to refer to points where particles of the fluid have zero displacement and maximum displacement, respectively.

We can demonstrate standing sound waves in a column of gas using an apparatus called a Kundt's tube (**Fig. 16.12**). A horizontal glass tube a meter or so long is closed at one end and has a flexible diaphragm at the other end that can transmit vibrations. A nearby loudspeaker is driven by an audio oscillator and amplifier; this produces sound waves that force the diaphragm to vibrate sinusoidally with a frequency that we can vary. The sound waves within the tube are reflected at the other, closed end of the tube. We spread a small amount of light powder uniformly along the bottom of the tube. As we vary the frequency of the sound, we pass through frequencies at which the amplitude of the standing waves becomes large enough for the powder to be swept along the tube at those points where the gas is in motion. The powder therefore collects at the displacement nodes (where the gas is not moving). Adjacent nodes are separated by a distance equal to $\lambda/2$.

Figure **16.12** Demonstrating standing sound waves using a Kundt's tube. The blue shading represents the density of the gas at an instant when the gas pressure at the displacement nodes is a maximum or a minimum.

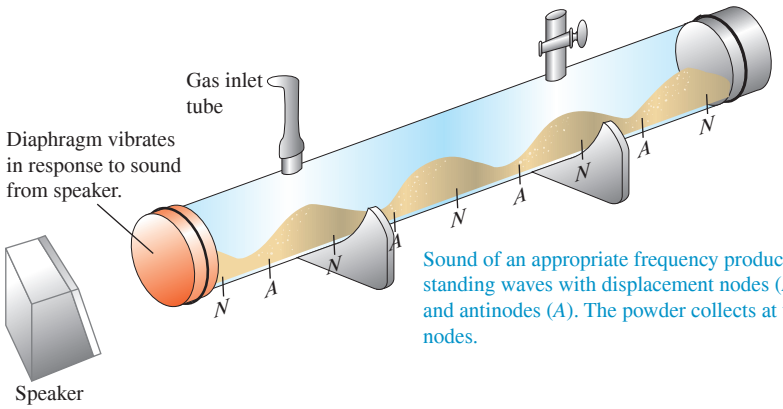


Figure 16.13 shows the motions of nine different particles within a gas-filled tube in which there is a standing sound wave. A particle at a displacement node (N) does not move, while a particle at a displacement antinode (A) oscillates with maximum amplitude. Note that particles on opposite sides of a displacement node vibrate in opposite phase. When these particles approach each other, the gas between them is compressed and the pressure rises; when they recede from each other, there is an expansion and the pressure drops. Hence at a displacement *node* the gas undergoes the maximum amount of compression and expansion, and the variations in pressure and density above and below the average have their maximum value. By contrast, particles on opposite sides of a displacement *antinode* vibrate *in phase;* the distance between the particles is nearly constant, and there is *no* variation in pressure or density at a displacement antinode.

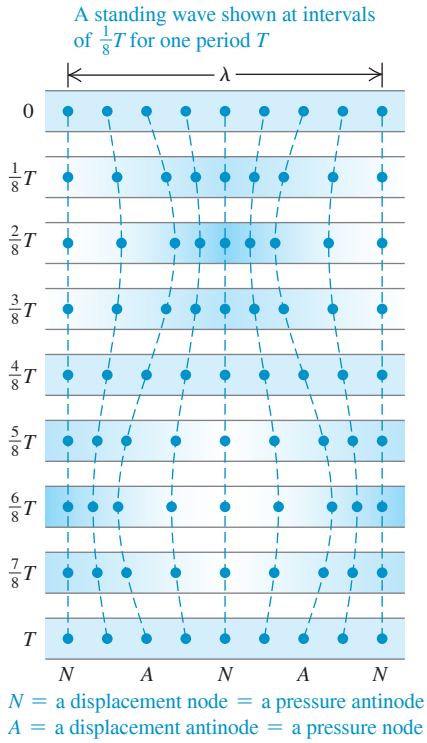
We use the term **pressure node** to describe a point in a standing sound wave at which the pressure and density do not vary and the term **pressure antinode** to describe a point at which the variations in pressure and density are greatest. Using these terms, we can summarize our observations as follows:

A pressure node is always a displacement antinode, and a pressure antinode is always a displacement node.

Figure 16.12 depicts a standing sound wave at an instant at which the pressure variations are greatest; the blue shading shows that the density and pressure of the gas have their maximum and minimum values at the displacement nodes.

When reflection takes place at a *closed* end of a pipe (an end with a rigid barrier or plug), the displacement of the particles at this end must always be zero, analogous to a fixed end of a string. Thus a closed end of a pipe is a displacement node and a pressure antinode; the particles do not move, but the pressure variations are maximum. An *open* end of a pipe is a pressure node because it is open to the atmosphere, where the pressure is constant. Because of this, an open end is always a displacement *antinode,* in analogy to a free end of a string; the particles oscillate with maximum amplitude, but the pressure does not vary. (The pressure node actually occurs somewhat beyond an open end of a pipe. But if the diameter of the pipe is small in comparison to the wavelength, which is true for most musical instruments, this effect can safely be ignored.) Thus longitudinal sound waves are reflected at the closed and open ends of a pipe in the same way that transverse waves in a string are reflected at fixed and free ends, respectively.

Figure **16.13** In a standing sound wave, a displacement node N is a pressure antinode (a point where the pressure fluctuates the most) and a displacement antinode A is a pressure node (a point where the pressure does not fluctuate at all).



CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 16.10 The sound of silence

A directional loudspeaker directs a sound wave of wavelength λ at a wall (**Fig. 16.14**). At what distances from the wall could you stand and hear no sound at all?

SOLUTION Your ear detects pressure variations in the air; you'll therefore hear no sound if your ear is at a *pressure node,* which is a displacement antinode. The wall is at a displacement node; the distance from any node to an adjacent antinode is $\lambda/4$, and the distance from one antinode to the next is $\lambda/2$ (Fig. 16.14). Hence the displacement antinodes (pressure nodes), at which no sound will be heard, are at distances $d = \lambda/4$, $d = \lambda/4 + \lambda/2 = 3\lambda/4$, $d = 3\lambda/4 + \lambda/2 = 5\lambda/4, \ldots$ from the wall. If the loudspeaker is not highly directional, this effect is hard to notice because of reflections of sound waves from the floor, ceiling, and other walls.

KEYCONCEPT In a standing sound wave, a pressure node is a displacement antinode, and vice versa. The sound is loudest at a pressure antinode; there is no sound at a pressure node.

Figure **16.14** When a sound wave is directed at a wall, it interferes with the reflected wave to create a standing wave. The N's and A's are *displacement* nodes and antinodes.

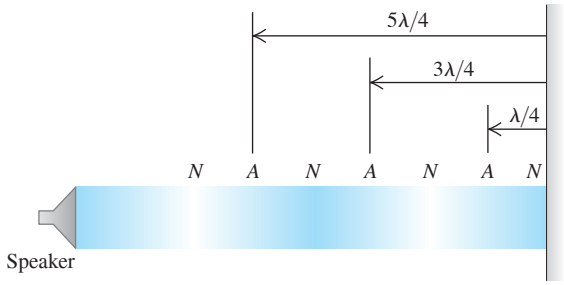


Figure **16.15** Organ pipes of different sizes produce tones with different frequencies.

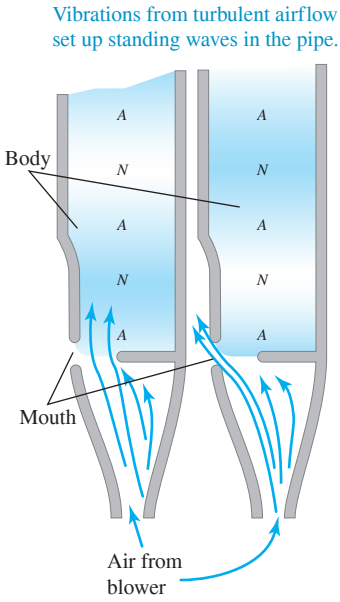
Organ Pipes and Wind Instruments

The most important application of standing sound waves is the production of musical tones. Organ pipes are one of the simplest examples (**Fig. 16.15**). Air is supplied by a blower to the bottom end of the pipe (**Fig. 16.16**). A stream of air emerges from the narrow opening at the edge of the horizontal surface and is directed against the top edge of the opening, which is called the *mouth* of the pipe. The column of air in the pipe is set into vibration, and there is a series of possible normal modes, just as with the stretched string. The mouth acts as an open end; it is a pressure node and a displacement antinode. The other end of the pipe (at the top in Fig. 16.16) may be either open or closed.

In **Fig. 16.17**, both ends of the pipe are open, so both ends are pressure nodes and displacement antinodes. An organ pipe that is open at both ends is called an *open pipe*. The fundamental frequency f_1 corresponds to a standing-wave pattern with a displacement antinode at each end and a displacement node in the middle (Fig. 16.17a). The distance between adjacent antinodes is always equal to one half-wavelength, and in this case that is equal to the length L of the pipe; $\lambda/2 = L$. The corresponding frequency, obtained from the relationship $f = v/\lambda$, is

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{2L} \qquad \text{(open pipe)} \tag{16.16}$$

Figure **16.16** Cross sections of an organ pipe at two instants one half-period apart. The *N*'s and *A*'s are *displacement* nodes and antinodes; as the blue shading shows, these are points of maximum pressure variation and zero pressure variation, respectively.



Figures 16.17b and 16.17c show the second and third harmonics; their vibration patterns have two and three displacement nodes, respectively. For these, a half-wavelength is equal to $L/2$ and $L/3$, respectively, and the frequencies are twice and three times the fundamental, respectively: $f_2 = 2f_1$ and $f_3 = 3f_1$. For *every* normal mode of an open pipe the length L must be an integer number of half-wavelengths, and the possible wavelengths λ_n are given by

$$L = n\frac{\lambda_n}{2} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lambda_n = \frac{2L}{n} \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \qquad \text{(open pipe)} \tag{16.17}$$

The corresponding frequencies f_n are given by $f_n = v/\lambda_n$, so all the normal-mode frequencies for a pipe that is open at both ends are given by

Standing waves, open pipe:

$$f_n = \frac{nv}{2L}$$

(f_n: Frequency of nth harmonic ($n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$); v: Speed of sound in pipe; L: Length of pipe)

(16.18)

The value $n = 1$ corresponds to the fundamental frequency, $n = 2$ to the second harmonic (or first overtone), and so on. Alternatively, we can say

$$f_n = nf_1 \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \qquad \text{(open pipe)} \tag{16.19}$$

with f_1 given by Eq. (16.16).

Figure 16.18 shows a *stopped pipe:* It is open at the left end but closed at the right end. The left (open) end is a displacement antinode (pressure node), but the right (closed) end is a displacement node (pressure antinode). Figure 16.18a shows the lowest-frequency

Figure **16.17** A cross section of an open pipe showing the first three normal modes. The shading indicates the pressure variations. The red curves are graphs of the displacement along the pipe axis at two instants separated in time by one half-period. The *N*'s and *A*'s are the *displacement* nodes and antinodes; interchange these to show the *pressure* nodes and antinodes.

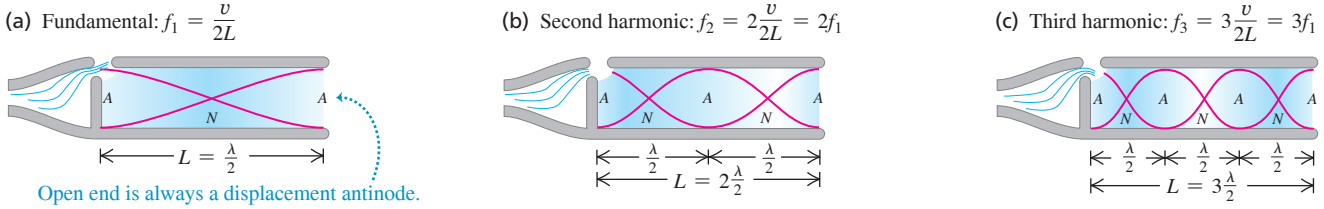
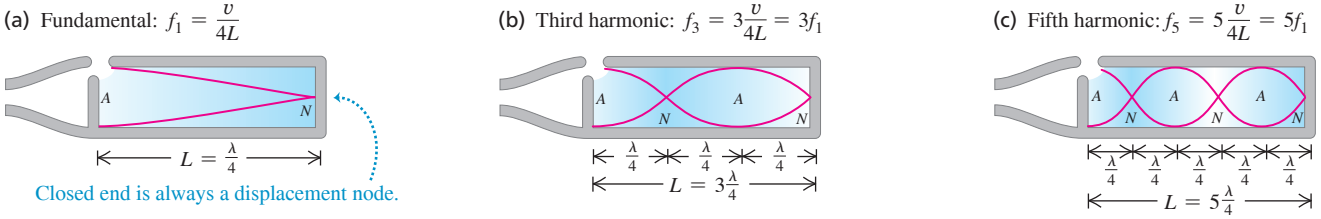


Figure **16.18** A cross section of a stopped pipe showing the first three normal modes as well as the *displacement* nodes and antinodes. Only odd harmonics are possible.



mode; the length of the pipe is the distance between a node and the adjacent antinode, or a quarter-wavelength ($L = \lambda_1/4$). The fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v/\lambda_1$, or

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{4L} \qquad \text{(stopped pipe)} \tag{16.20}$$

This is one-half the fundamental frequency for an *open* pipe of the same length. In musical language, the *pitch* of a closed pipe is one octave lower (a factor of 2 in frequency) than that of an open pipe of the same length. Figure 16.18b shows the next mode, for which the length of the pipe is *three-quarters* of a wavelength, corresponding to a frequency $3f_1$. For Fig. 16.18c, $L = 5\lambda/4$ and the frequency is $5f_1$. The possible wavelengths are given by

$$L = n\frac{\lambda_n}{4} \quad \text{or} \quad \lambda_n = \frac{4L}{n} \qquad (n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots) \quad \text{(stopped pipe)} \tag{16.21}$$

The normal-mode frequencies are given by $f_n = v/\lambda_n$, or

Standing waves, stopped pipe:

Frequency of nth harmonic ($n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$)

$$f_n = \frac{nv}{4L}$$

Speed of sound in pipe

Length of pipe

(16.22)

or

$$f_n = nf_1 \qquad (n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots) \qquad \text{(stopped pipe)} \tag{16.23}$$

with f_1 given by Eq. (16.20). We see that the second, fourth, and all *even* harmonics are missing. In a stopped pipe, the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v/4L$, and only the odd harmonics in the series ($3f_1, 5f_1, \ldots$) are possible.

A final possibility is a pipe that is closed at *both* ends, with displacement nodes and pressure antinodes at both ends. This wouldn't be of much use as a musical instrument because the vibrations couldn't get out of the pipe.

EXAMPLE 16.11 A tale of two pipes

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

On a day when the speed of sound is 344 m/s, the fundamental frequency of a particular stopped organ pipe is 220 Hz. (a) How long is this pipe? (b) The second *overtone* of this pipe has the same wavelength as the third *harmonic* of an *open* pipe. How long is the open pipe?

IDENTIFY and SET UP This problem uses the relationship between the length and normal-mode frequencies of open pipes (Fig. 16.17) and stopped pipes (Fig. 16.18). In part (a), we determine the length of the stopped pipe from Eq. (16.22). In part (b), we must determine the length of an open pipe, for which Eq. (16.18) gives the frequencies.

EXECUTE (a) For a stopped pipe $f_1 = v/4L$, so

$$L_{\text{stopped}} = \frac{v}{4f_1} = \frac{344 \text{ m/s}}{4(220 \text{ s}^{-1})} = 0.391 \text{ m}$$

(b) The frequency of the second overtone of a stopped pipe (the *third* possible frequency) is $f_5 = 5f_1 = 5(220 \text{ Hz}) = 1100$ Hz. If the wavelengths for the two pipes are the same, the frequencies are also the same. Hence the frequency of the third harmonic of the open pipe, which is at $3f_1 = 3(v/2L)$, equals 1100 Hz. Then

$$1100 \text{ Hz} = 3\left(\frac{344 \text{ m/s}}{2L_{\text{open}}}\right) \qquad \text{and} \qquad L_{\text{open}} = 0.469 \text{ m}$$

EVALUATE The 0.391 m stopped pipe has a fundamental frequency of 220 Hz; the *longer* (0.469 m) open pipe has a *higher* fundamental frequency, (1100 Hz)/3 = 367 Hz. This is not a contradiction, as you can see if you compare Figs. 16.17a and 16.18a.

KEYCONCEPT For a pipe open at both ends (an "open pipe"), the normal-mode frequencies of a standing sound wave include both even and odd multiples of the pipe's fundamental frequency. For a pipe open at one end and closed at the other (a "stopped pipe"), the only normal-mode frequencies are the odd multiples of the pipe's fundamental frequency. The fundamental frequency of a stopped pipe is half that of an open pipe of the same length.

In an organ pipe in actual use, several modes are always present at once; the motion of the air is a superposition of these modes. This situation is analogous to a string that is struck or plucked, as in Fig. 15.28. Just as for a vibrating string, a complex standing wave in the pipe produces a traveling sound wave in the surrounding air with a harmonic content similar to that of the standing wave. A very narrow pipe produces a sound wave rich in higher harmonics; a fatter pipe produces mostly the fundamental mode, heard as a softer, more flutelike tone. The harmonic content also depends on the shape of the pipe's mouth.

We have talked about organ pipes, but this discussion is also applicable to other wind instruments. The flute and the recorder are directly analogous. The most significant difference is that those instruments have holes along the pipe. Opening and closing the holes with the fingers changes the effective length L of the air column and thus changes the pitch. Any individual organ pipe, by comparison, can play only a single note. The flute and recorder behave as *open* pipes, while the clarinet acts as a *stopped* pipe (closed at the reed end, open at the bell).

Equations (16.18) and (16.22) show that the frequencies of any wind instrument are proportional to the speed of sound v in the air column inside the instrument. As Eq. (16.10) shows, v depends on temperature; it increases when temperature increases. Thus the pitch of all wind instruments rises with increasing temperature. An organ that has some of its pipes at one temperature and others at a different temperature is bound to sound out of tune.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 16.4 If you connect a hose to one end of a metal pipe and blow compressed air into it, the pipe produces a musical tone. If instead you blow compressed helium into the pipe at the same pressure and temperature, will the pipe produce (i) the same tone, (ii) a higher-pitch tone, or (iii) a lower-pitch tone?

ANSWER **(ii)** Helium is less dense and has a lower molar mass than air, so sound travels faster in helium than in air. The normal-mode frequencies for a pipe are proportional to the sound speed v, so the frequency and hence the pitch increase when the air in the pipe is replaced with helium.

16.5 RESONANCE AND SOUND

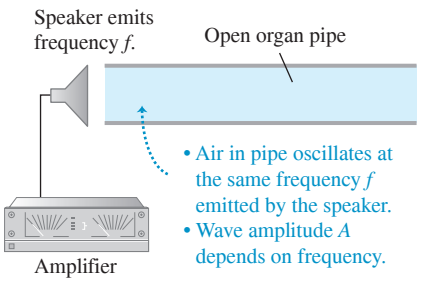
Many mechanical systems have normal modes of oscillation. As we have seen, these include columns of air (as in an organ pipe) and stretched strings (as in a guitar; see Section 15.8). In each mode, every particle of the system oscillates with simple harmonic motion at the same frequency as the mode. Air columns and stretched strings have an infinite series of normal modes, but the basic concept is closely related to the simple harmonic oscillator, discussed in Chapter 14, which has only a single normal mode (that is, only one frequency at which it oscillates after being disturbed).

Suppose we apply a periodically varying force to a system that can oscillate. The system is then forced to oscillate with a frequency equal to the frequency of the applied force (called the *driving frequency*). This motion is called a *forced oscillation*. We talked about forced oscillations of the harmonic oscillator in Section 14.8, including the phenomenon of mechanical **resonance.** A simple example of resonance is pushing Cousin Throckmorton on a swing. The swing is a pendulum; it has only a single normal mode, with a frequency determined by its length. If we push the swing periodically with this frequency, we can build up the amplitude of the motion. But if we push with a very different frequency, the swing hardly moves at all.

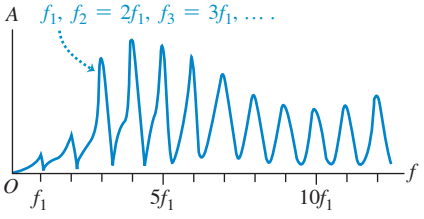
Resonance also occurs when a periodically varying force is applied to a system with many normal modes. In **Fig. 16.19a** an open organ pipe is placed next to a loudspeaker that emits pure sinusoidal sound waves of frequency f, which can be varied by adjusting the amplifier. The air in the pipe is forced to vibrate with the same frequency f as the *driving force* provided by the loudspeaker. In general the amplitude of this motion is relatively small, and the air inside the pipe will not move in any of the normal-mode patterns shown in Fig. 16.17. But if the frequency f of the force is close to one of the normal-mode frequencies, the air in the pipe moves in the normal-mode pattern for that frequency, and the amplitude can become quite large. Figure 16.19b shows the amplitude of oscillation of the air in the pipe as a function of the driving frequency f. This **resonance curve** of the pipe has peaks where f equals the

Figure **16.19** (a) The air in an open pipe is forced to oscillate at the same frequency as the sinusoidal sound waves coming from the loudspeaker. (b) The resonance curve of the open pipe graphs the amplitude of the standing sound wave in the pipe as a function of the driving frequency.

(a)



(b) Resonance curve: graph of amplitude A versus driving frequency f. Peaks occur at normal-mode frequencies of the pipe: f_1, $f_2 = 2f_1$, $f_3 = 3f_1$, … .



normal-mode frequencies of the pipe. The detailed shape of the resonance curve depends on the geometry of the pipe.

If the frequency of the force is precisely *equal* to a normal-mode frequency, the system is in resonance, and the amplitude of the forced oscillation is maximum. If there were no friction or other energy-dissipating mechanism, a driving force at a normal-mode frequency would continue to add energy to the system, the amplitude would increase indefinitely, and the peaks in the resonance curve of Fig. 16.19b would be infinitely high. But in any real system there is always some dissipation of energy, or damping, as we discussed in Section 14.8; the amplitude of oscillation in resonance may be large, but it cannot be infinite.

The "sound of the ocean" you hear when you put your ear next to a large seashell is due to resonance. The noise of the outside air moving past the seashell is a mixture of sound waves of almost all audible frequencies, which forces the air inside the seashell to oscillate. The seashell behaves like an organ pipe, with a set of normal-mode frequencies; hence the inside air oscillates most strongly at those frequencies, producing the seashell's characteristic sound. To hear a similar phenomenon, uncap a full bottle of your favorite beverage and blow across the open top. The noise is provided by your breath blowing across the top, and the "organ pipe" is the column of air inside the bottle above the surface of the liquid. If you take a drink and repeat the experiment, you'll hear a lower tone because the "pipe" is longer and the normal-mode frequencies are lower.

Resonance also occurs when a stretched string is forced to oscillate (see Section 15.8). Suppose that one end of a stretched string is held fixed while the other is given a transverse sinusoidal motion with small amplitude, setting up standing waves. If the frequency of the driving mechanism is *not* equal to one of the normal-mode frequencies of the string, the amplitude at the antinodes is fairly small. However, if the frequency is equal to any one of the normal-mode frequencies, the string is in resonance, and the amplitude at the antinodes is very much larger than that at the driven end. The driven end is not precisely a node, but it lies much closer to a node than to an antinode when the string is in resonance. The photographs of standing waves in Fig. 15.23 were made this way, with the left end of the string fixed and the right end oscillating vertically with small amplitude.

It is easy to demonstrate resonance with a piano. Push down the damper pedal (the right-hand pedal) so that the dampers are lifted and the strings are free to vibrate, and then sing a steady tone into the piano. When you stop singing, the piano seems to continue to sing the same note. The sound waves from your voice excite vibrations in the strings that have natural frequencies close to the frequencies (fundamental and harmonics) present in the note you sang.

A more spectacular example is a singer breaking a wine glass with her amplified voice. A good-quality wine glass has normal-mode frequencies that you can hear by tapping it. If the singer emits a loud note with a frequency corresponding exactly to one of these normal-mode frequencies, large-amplitude oscillations can build up and break the glass (**Fig. 16.20**).

BIO APPLICATION Resonance and the Sensitivity of the Ear The auditory canal of the human ear (see Fig. 16.4) is an air-filled pipe open at one end and closed at the other (eardrum) end. The canal is about 2.5 cm = 0.025 m long, so it has a resonance at its fundamental frequency $f_1 = v/4L = (344 \text{ m/s})/[4(0.025 \text{ m})] = 3440$ Hz. The resonance means that a sound at this frequency produces a strong oscillation of the eardrum. That's why your ear is most sensitive to sounds near 3440 Hz.

Figure **16.20** The frequency of the sound from this trumpet exactly matches one of the normal-mode frequencies of the goblet. The resonant vibrations of the goblet have such large amplitude that the goblet tears itself apart.

EXAMPLE 16.12 An organ–guitar duet

WITH VARIATION PROBLEMS

A stopped organ pipe is sounded near a guitar, causing one of the strings to vibrate with large amplitude. We vary the string tension until we find the maximum amplitude. The string is 80% as long as the pipe. If both pipe and string vibrate at their fundamental frequency, calculate the ratio of the wave speed on the string to the speed of sound in air.

IDENTIFY and SET UP The large response of the string is an example of resonance. It occurs because the organ pipe and the guitar string have the same fundamental frequency. If we let the subscripts a and s stand for the air in the pipe and the string, respectively, the condition for resonance is $f_{1a} = f_{1s}$. Equation (16.20) gives the fundamental frequency for a stopped pipe, and Eq. (15.32) gives the fundamental frequency for a guitar string held at both ends. These expressions involve the wave speed in air (v_a) and on the string (v_s) and the lengths of the pipe and string. We are given that $L_s = 0.80L_a$; our target variable is the ratio v_s/v_a.

Continued

EXECUTE From Eqs. (16.20) and (15.32), $f_{1a} = v_a/4L_a$ and $f_{1s} = v_s/2L_s$. These frequencies are equal, so

$$\frac{v_a}{4L_a} = \frac{v_s}{2L_s}$$

Substituting $L_s = 0.80L_a$ and rearranging, we get $v_s/v_a = 0.40$.

EVALUATE As an example, if the speed of sound in air is 344 m/s, the wave speed on the string is $(0.40)(344\ \text{m/s}) = 138\ \text{m/s}$. Note that while the standing waves in the pipe and on the string have the same frequency, they have different *wavelengths* $\lambda = v/f$ because the two media have different wave speeds v. Which standing wave has the greater wavelength?

KEYCONCEPT If you force or drive a mechanical system (such as a guitar string or the air in a pipe) to vibrate at a frequency f, the system will oscillate with maximum amplitude (or *resonate*) if f equals one of the normal-mode frequencies of the system.

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING OF SECTION 16.5 A stopped organ pipe of length L has a fundamental frequency of 220 Hz. For which of the following organ pipes will there be a resonance if a tuning fork of frequency 660 Hz is sounded next to the pipe? (There may be more than one correct answer.) (i) A stopped organ pipe of length L; (ii) a stopped organ pipe of length $2L$; (iii) an open organ pipe of length L; (iii) an open organ pipe of length $2L$.

ANSWER

(i) and (iv) There will be a resonance if 660 Hz is one of the pipe's normal-mode frequencies. A stopped organ pipe has normal-mode frequencies that are odd multiples of its fundamental frequency [see Eq. (16.22) and Fig. 16.18]. Hence pipe (i),which has fundamental frequency 220 Hz, also has a normal-mode frequency of $3(220\ \text{Hz}) = 660$ Hz. Pipe (ii) has twice the length of pipe (i); from Eq. (16.20), the fundamental frequency of a stopped pipe is inversely proportional to the length, so pipe (ii) has a fundamental frequency of $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(220\ \text{Hz}) = 110$ Hz. Its other normal-mode frequencies are 330 Hz, 550 Hz, 770 Hz, . . . , so a 660 Hz tuning fork will not cause resonance. Pipe (iii) is an open pipe of the same length as pipe (i), so its fundamental frequency is twice as great as for pipe (i) [compare Eqs. (16.16) and (16.20)], or $2(220\ \text{Hz}) = 440$ Hz. Its other normal-mode frequencies are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency [see Eq. (16.19)], or 880 Hz, 1320 Hz, . . . , none of which match the 660 Hz frequency of the tuning fork. Pipe (iv) is also an open pipe but with twice the length of pipe (iii) [see Eq. (16.18)], so its normal-mode frequencies are one-half those of pipe (iii): 220 Hz, 440 Hz, 660 Hz, . . . , so the third harmonic will resonate with the tuning fork.

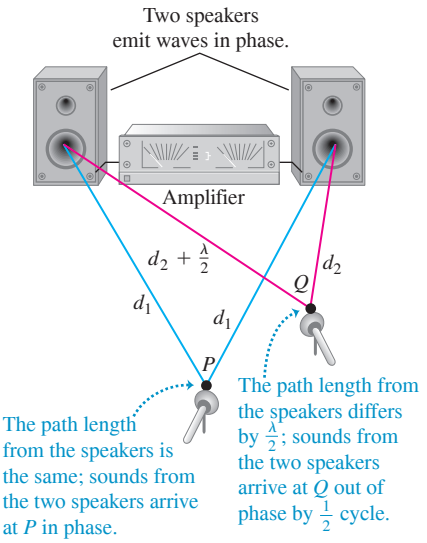
16.6 INTERFERENCE OF WAVES

Wave phenomena that occur when two or more waves overlap in the same region of space are grouped under the heading *interference*. As we have seen, standing waves are a simple example of an interference effect: Two waves traveling in opposite directions in a medium can combine to produce a standing-wave pattern with nodes and antinodes that do not move.

Figure 16.21 shows an example of another type of interference that involves waves that spread out in space. Two speakers, driven in phase by the same amplifier, emit identical sinusoidal sound waves with the same constant frequency. We place a microphone at point P in the figure, equidistant from the speakers. Wave crests emitted from the two speakers at the same time travel equal distances and arrive at point P at the same time; hence the waves arrive in phase, and there is constructive interference. The total wave amplitude that we measure at P is twice the amplitude from each individual wave.

Now let's move the microphone to point Q, where the distances from the two speakers to the microphone differ by a half-wavelength. Then the two waves arrive a half-cycle out of step, or *out of phase;* a positive crest from one speaker arrives at the same time as a negative crest from the other. Destructive interference takes place, and the amplitude measured by the microphone is much *smaller* than when only one speaker is present. If the amplitudes from the two speakers are equal, the two waves cancel each other out completely at point Q, and the total amplitude there is zero.

Figure 16.21 Two speakers driven by the same amplifier. Constructive interference occurs at point P, and destructive interference occurs at point Q.



CAUTION **Interference and traveling waves** The total wave in Fig. 16.21 is a *traveling* wave, not a standing wave. In a standing wave there is no net flow of energy in any direction; by contrast, in Fig. 16.21 there *is* an overall flow of energy from the speakers into the surrounding air, characteristic of a traveling wave. The interference between the waves from the two speakers simply causes the energy flow to be *channeled* into certain directions (for example, toward P) and away from other directions (for example, away from Q). You can see another difference between Fig. 16.21 and a standing wave by considering a point, such as Q, where destructive interference occurs. Such a point is *both* a displacement node *and* a pressure node because there is no wave at all at this point. In a standing wave, a pressure node is a displacement antinode, and vice versa.